ORGANIC CHEMISTRY

DAVID KLEIN

FOURTH EDITION

WILEY

EXAMPLES OF COMMON FUNCTIONAL GROUPS

FUNCTIONAL GROUP*	CLASSIFICATION	EXAMPLE	CHAPTER	FUNCTIONAL GROUP*	CLASSIFICATION	EXAMPLE	CHAPTER
R—X: (X = Cl, Br or I)	Alkyl halide	*n*-Propyl chloride	7		Ketone	2-Butanone	19
	Alkene	1-Butene	7, 8		Aldehyde	Butanal	19
R—C≡C—R	Alkyne	1-Butyne	9		Carboxylic acid	Pentanoic acid	20
R—OH	Alcohol	1-Butanol	12		Acyl halide	Acetyl chloride	20
R—O—R	Ether	Diethyl ether	13		Anhydride	Acetic anhydride	20
R—SH	Thiol	1-Butanethiol	13		Ester	Ethyl acetate	20
R—S—R	Sulfide	Diethyl sulfide	13		Amide	Butanamide	20
	Aromatic (or arene)	Methylbenzene	17, 18		Amine	Diethylamine	22

* The "R" refers to the remainder of the compound, usually carbon and hydrogen atoms.

Approximate pK_a Values for Commonly Encountered Structural Types

ORGANIC CHEMISTRY

DAVID KLEIN

FOURTH EDITION

WILEY

SVP, PUBLISHING STRATEGY AND QUALITY: Elizabeth Widdicombe
ASSOCIATE PUBLISHER: Sladjana Bruno
MARKETING MANAGER: Michael Olsen
SENIOR MANAGING EDITOR: Mary Donovan
EXECUTIVE MANAGING EDITOR: Valerie Zaborski
EDITORIAL ASSISTANT: Samantha Hart
COURSE CONTENT DEVELOPER: Andrew Moore
DEVELOPMENT EDITOR: Edward Dodd
SENIOR COURSE PROUCTION OPERATIONS SPECIALIST: Patricia Gutierrez
SENIOR MANAGER, COURSE DEVELOPMENT AND PRODUCTION: Svetlana Barskaya
ART DIRECTOR/COVER DESIGNER: Thomas Nery

Cover: Wiley
Cover Image: Abstract geometric texture: ©bgblue/Getty Images, Flask: Norm Christiansen, Colorful Paintbrushes: © Maartje van Caspel/Getty Images, Honeycomb slice: © eli_asenova/Getty Images, Color diffuse: © Korolkoff/Getty Images, Rosemary: © Tetiana Rostopira/Getty Images

This book was typeset in 9.5/12 STIX Two Text at Lumina Datamatics.

Copyright © 2021, 2017, 2015, 2012 John Wiley and Sons, Inc. All rights reserved.

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, scanning, or otherwise, except as permitted under Sections 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without either the prior written permission of the Publisher or authorization through payment of the appropriate per-copy fee to the Copyright Clearance Center, 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923, (978) 750-8400, fax (978) 646-8600. Requests to the Publisher for permission should be addressed to the Permissions Department, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 111 River Street, Hoboken, NJ 07030-5774, (201) 748-6011, fax (201) 748-6008.

Evaluation copies are provided to qualified academics and professionals for review purposes only, for use in their courses during the next academic year. These copies are licensed and may not be sold or transferred to a third party. Upon completion of the review period, please return the evaluation copy to Wiley. Return instructions and a free of charge return shipping label are available at www.wiley.com/go/returnlabel. Outside of the United States, please contact your local representative.

ISBN 978-1-119-659594

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Names: Klein, David R., 1972- author.
Title: Organic chemistry / David Klein.
Description: Fourth edition. | Hoboken, NJ : Wiley, [2021] | Includes bibliographical references and index.
Identifiers: LCCN 2020044903 (print) | LCCN 2020044904 (ebook) | ISBN 9781119659594 (paperback) | ISBN 9781119316152 | ISBN 9781119760825 (adobe pdf) | ISBN 9781119659402 (epub)
Subjects: LCSH: Chemistry, Organic—Textbooks.
Classification: LCC QD253.2 .K55 2021 (print) | LCC QD253.2 (ebook) | DDC 547--dc23
LC record available at https://lccn.loc.gov/2020044903
LC ebook record available at https://lccn.loc.gov/2020044904

Printed in the United States of America 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

The inside back cover will contain printing identification and country of origin if omitted from this page. In addition, if the ISBN on the back cover differs from the ISBN on this page, the one on the back cover is correct.

Dedication

To my father and mother,

You have saved me (quite literally) on so many occasions, always steering me in the right direction. I have always cherished your guidance, which has served as a compass for me in all of my pursuits. You repeatedly urged me to work on this textbook ("write the book!", you would say so often), with full confidence that it would be appreciated by students around the world. I will forever rely on the life lessons that you have taught me and the values that you have instilled in me. I love you.

To Larry,

By inspiring me to pursue a career in organic chemistry instruction, you served as the spark for the creation of this book. You showed me that any subject can be fascinating (even organic chemistry!) when presented by a masterful teacher. Your mentorship and friendship have profoundly shaped the course of my life, and I hope that this book will always serve as a source of pride and as a reminder of the impact you've had on your students.

To my wife, Vered,

This book would not have been possible without your partnership. As I worked for years in my office, you shouldered all of our life responsibilities, including taking care of all of the needs of our five amazing children. This book is our collective accomplishment and will forever serve as a testament of your constant support that I have come to depend on for everything in life. You are my rock, my partner, and my best friend. I love you.

Contents

1 A Review of General Chemistry: Electrons, Bonds, and Molecular Properties 1

1.1 Introduction to Organic Chemistry 2
1.2 The Structural Theory of Matter 3
1.3 Electrons, Bonds, and Lewis Structures 4
1.4 Identifying Formal Charges 7
1.5 Induction and Polar Covalent Bonds 8
1.6 Reading Bond-Line Structures 11
1.7 Atomic Orbitals 14
1.8 Valence Bond Theory 17
1.9 Molecular Orbital Theory 18
1.10 Hybridized Atomic Orbitals 20
1.11 Predicting Molecular Geometry: VSEPR Theory 26
1.12 Dipole Moments and Molecular Polarity 30
1.13 Intermolecular Forces and Physical Properties 33
- **WorldLinks** Biomimicry and Gecko Feet 37
- **BioLinks** Drug-Receptor Interactions 38

1.14 Solubility 39
- **BioLinks** Propofol: The Importance of Drug Solubility 40

Review of Concepts & Vocabulary • SkillBuilder Review
Practice Problems • ACS-Style Problems (Multiple Choice)
Integrated Problems • Challenge Problems

2 Molecular Representations 50

2.1 Molecular Representations 51
2.2 Drawing Bond-Line Structures 53
2.3 Identifying Functional Groups 55
- **BioLinks** Marine Natural Products 56

2.4 Carbon Atoms with Formal Charges 58
2.5 Identifying Lone Pairs 58
2.6 Three-Dimensional Bond-Line Structures 61
- **BioLinks** The Opioids 62

2.7 Introduction to Resonance 63
2.8 Curved Arrows 65
2.9 Formal Charges in Resonance Structures 68
2.10 Drawing Resonance Structures via Pattern Recognition 70
2.11 Assessing the Relative Importance of Resonance Structures 75
2.12 The Resonance Hybrid 79
2.13 Delocalized and Localized Lone Pairs 81

Review of Concepts & Vocabulary • SkillBuilder Review
Practice Problems • ACS-Style Problems (Multiple Choice)
Integrated Problems • Challenge Problems

3 Acids and Bases 93

3.1 Introduction to Brønsted-Lowry Acids and Bases 94
3.2 Flow of Electron Density: Curved-Arrow Notation 94
- **BioLinks** Antacids and Heartburn 96

3.3 Brønsted-Lowry Acidity: Comparing pK_a values 97
- **BioLinks** Drug Distribution and pK_a 103

3.4 Brønsted-Lowry Acidity: Factors Affecting the Stability of Anions 104
3.5 Brønsted-Lowry Acidity: Assessing the Relative Acidity of Cationic Acids 115
3.6 Position of Equilibrium and Choice of Reagents 120
3.7 Leveling Effect 123
3.8 Solvating Effects 124
3.9 Counterions 125
- **WorldLinks** Baking Soda versus Baking Powder 125

3.10 Lewis Acids and Bases 126

Review of Concepts & Vocabulary • SkillBuilder Review
Practice Problems • ACS-Style Problems (Multiple Choice)
Integrated Problems • Challenge Problems

4 Alkanes and Cycloalkanes 138

4.1 Introduction to Alkanes 139
4.2 Nomenclature of Alkanes 139
- **WorldLinks** Pheromones: Chemical Messengers 143
- **BioLinks** Naming Drugs 151

4.3 Constitutional Isomers of Alkanes 152
4.4 Relative Stability of Isomeric Alkanes 153
4.5 Sources and Uses of Alkanes 154
- **WorldLinks** An Introduction to Polymers 156

4.6 Drawing Newman Projections 156
4.7 Conformational Analysis of Ethane and Propane 158
4.8 Conformational Analysis of Butane 160
- **BioLinks** Drugs and Their Conformations 164

4.9 Cycloalkanes 164
- **BioLinks** Cyclopropane as an Inhalation Anesthetic 166

4.10 Conformations of Cyclohexane 167
4.11 Drawing Chair Conformations 168
4.12 Monosubstituted Cyclohexane 170
4.13 Disubstituted Cyclohexane 172

4.14 ***cis-trans* Stereoisomerism 176**
4.15 Polycyclic Systems 177

Review of Concepts & Vocabulary • SkillBuilder Review
Practice Problems • ACS-Style Problems (Multiple Choice)
Integrated Problems • Challenge Problems

5

Stereoisomerism 188

5.1 Overview of Isomerism 189
5.2 Introduction to Stereoisomerism 190
- **WorldLinks** The Sense of Smell 195

5.3 Designating Configuration Using the Cahn-Ingold-Prelog System 195
- **BioLinks** Chiral Drugs 200

5.4 Optical Activity 201
5.5 Stereoisomeric Relationships: Enantiomers and Diastereomers 207
5.6 Symmetry and Chirality 210
5.7 Fischer Projections 214
5.8 Conformationally Mobile Systems 216
5.9 Chiral Compounds that Lack a Chiral Center 217
5.10 Resolution of Enantiomers 218
5.11 *E* and *Z* Designations for Diastereomeric Alkenes 220
- **BioLinks** Phototherapy Treatment for Neonatal Jaundice 222

Review of Concepts & Vocabulary • SkillBuilder Review
Practice Problems • ACS-Style Problems (Multiple Choice)
Integrated Problems • Challenge Problems

6

Chemical Reactivity and Mechanisms 233

6.1 Enthalpy 234
6.2 Entropy 237
6.3 Gibbs Free Energy 239
- **WorldLinks** Explosives 240
- **WorldLinks** Do Living Organisms Violate the Second Law of Thermodynamics? 242

6.4 Equilibria 242
6.5 Kinetics 244
- **BioLinks** Nitroglycerin: An Explosive with Medicinal Properties 247
- **WorldLinks** Beer Making 248

6.6 Reading Energy Diagrams 249
6.7 Nucleophiles and Electrophiles 252
6.8 Mechanisms and Arrow Pushing 256
6.9 Combining the Patterns of Arrow Pushing 261
6.10 Drawing Curved Arrows 263
6.11 Carbocation Rearrangements 266
6.12 Reversible and Irreversible Reaction Arrows 268

Review of Concepts & Vocabulary • SkillBuilder Review
Practice Problems • ACS-Style Problems (Multiple Choice)
Integrated Problems • Challenge Problems

7

Alkyl Halides: Nucleophilic Substitution and Elimination Reactions 280

7.1 Introduction to Substitution and Elimination Reactions 281
7.2 Nomenclature and Uses of Alkyl Halides 282
7.3 S_N2 Reactions 286
- **BioLinks** Pharmacology and Drug Design 292

7.4 Nucleophilic Strength in S_N2 Reactions 294
- **BioLinks** S_N2 Reactions in Biological Systems—Methylation 295

7.5 Introduction to E2 Reactions 296
7.6 Stability of Alkenes and Cycloalkenes 299
7.7 Regiochemical and Stereochemical Outcomes for E2 Reactions 301
7.8 Unimolecular Reactions (S_N1 and E1) 311
7.9 Predicting Products: Substitution vs. Elimination 320
7.10 Substitution and Elimination Reactions with Other Substrates 327
7.11 Synthesis Strategies 331
- **BioLinks** Radiolabeled Compounds in Diagnostic Medicine 338

7.12 Solvent Effects in Substitution Reactions 339
- **SpecialTopic** Kinetic Isotope Effects 343

Review of Reactions • Review of Concepts & Vocabulary
SkillBuilder Review • Practice Problems
ACS-Style Problems (Multiple Choice) • Integrated Problems
Challenge Problems

8

Addition Reactions of Alkenes 356

8.1 Introduction to Addition Reactions 357
8.2 Alkenes in Nature and in Industry 358
- **WorldLinks** Pheromones to Control Insect Populations 358

8.3 Nomenclature of Alkenes 359
8.4 Addition vs. Elimination: A Thermodynamic Perspective 361
8.5 Hydrohalogenation 363
- **WorldLinks** Cationic Polymerization and Polystyrene 370

8.6 Acid-Catalyzed Hydration 371
8.7 Oxymercuration-Demercuration 375
8.8 Hydroboration-Oxidation 376
8.9 Catalytic Hydrogenation 382
- **WorldLinks** Partially Hydrogenated Fats and Oils 387

8.10 Halogenation and Halohydrin Formation 388
8.11 *Anti* Dihydroxylation 392
8.12 *Syn* Dihydroxylation 395

8.13 Oxidative Cleavage 396
8.14 Predicting the Products of an Addition Reaction 398
8.15 Synthesis Strategies 400

Review of Reactions • Review of Concepts & Vocabulary
SkillBuilder Review • Practice Problems
ACS-Style Problems (Multiple Choice)
Integrated Problems • Challenge Problems

9 Alkyne

9.1 Introduction to Alkynes 418
- **BioLinks** The Role of Molecular Rigidity 420
- **WorldLinks** Conducting Organic Polymers 421

9.2 Nomenclature of Alkynes 421
9.3 Acidity of Acetylene and Terminal Alkynes 423
9.4 Preparation of Alkynes 426
9.5 Reduction of Alkynes 428
9.6 Hydrohalogenation of Alkynes 431
9.7 Hydration of Alkynes 433
9.8 Halogenation of Alkynes 439
9.9 Ozonolysis of Alkynes 439
9.10 Alkylation of Terminal Alkynes 440
9.11 Synthesis Strategies 442

Review of Reactions • Review of Concepts & Vocabulary
SkillBuilder Review • Practice Problems
ACS-Style Problems (Multiple Choice)
Integrated Problems • Challenge Problems

10 Radical Reactions 454

10.1 Radicals 455
10.2 Common Patterns in Radical Mechanisms 460
10.3 Chlorination of Methane 463
10.4 Thermodynamic Considerations for Halogenation Reactions 467
10.5 Selectivity of Halogenation 469
10.6 Stereochemistry of Halogenation 472
10.7 Allylic Bromination 474
10.8 Atmospheric Chemistry and the Ozone Layer 477
- **WorldLinks** Fighting Fires with Chemicals 479

10.9 Autooxidation and Antioxidants 480
- **BioLinks** Why Is an Overdose of Acetaminophen Fatal? 482

10.10 Radical Addition of HBr: *Anti*-Markovnikov Addition 483
10.11 Radical Polymerization 487
10.12 Radical Processes in the Petrochemical Industry 489
10.13 Halogenation as a Synthetic Technique 489

Review of Reactions • Review of Concepts & Vocabulary
SkillBuilder Review • Practice Problems
ACS-Style Problems (Multiple Choice)
Integrated Problems • Challenge Problems

11 Synthesis 499

11.1 One-Step Syntheses 500
11.2 Functional Group Transformations 501
11.3 Reactions That Change the Carbon Skeleton 505
- **BioLinks** Vitamins 507

11.4 How to Approach a Synthesis Problem 508
- **BioLinks** The Total Synthesis of Vitamin B_{12} 512

11.5 Multi-step Synthesis and Retrosynthetic Analysis 514
- **WorldLinks** Retrosynthetic Analysis 519

11.6 Green Chemistry 519
11.7 Practical Tips for Increasing Proficiency 520
- **BioLinks** Total Synthesis of Taxol 521

Review of Concepts & Vocabulary • SkillBuilder Review
Practice Problems • ACS-Style Problems (Multiple Choice)
Integrated Problems • Challenge Problems

12 Alcohols and Phenols 529

12.1 Structure and Properties of Alcohols 530
- **BioLinks** Chain Length as a Factor in Drug Design 534

12.2 Acidity of Alcohols and Phenols 535
12.3 Preparation of Alcohols via Substitution or Addition 538
12.4 Preparation of Alcohols via Reduction 539
12.5 Preparation of Diols 546
- **WorldLinks** Antifreeze 547

12.6 Preparation of Alcohols via Grignard Reagents 547
12.7 Protection of Alcohols 552
12.8 Preparation of Phenols 553
12.9 Reactions of Alcohols: Substitution and Elimination 554
- **BioLinks** Drug Metabolism 557

12.10 Reactions of Alcohols: Oxidation 559
12.11 Biological Redox Reactions 563
- **BioLinks** Biological Oxidation of Methanol and Ethanol 565

12.12 Oxidation of Phenol 565
12.13 Synthesis Strategies 567

Review of Reactions • Review of Concepts & Vocabulary
SkillBuilder Review • Practice Problems
ACS-Style Problems (Multiple Choice)
Integrated Problems • Challenge Problems

13 Ethers and Epoxides; Thiols and Sulfides 585

13.1 Introduction to Ethers 586
13.2 Nomenclature of Ethers 586
13.3 Structure and Properties of Ethers 588
- **BioLinks** Ethers as Inhalation Anesthetics 589

13.4 Crown Ethers 590
- **WorldLinks** Chelating Agents in the Food Industry and in Medicine 592

13.5 Preparation of Ethers 593
13.6 Reactions of Ethers 596
13.7 Nomenclature of Epoxides 599
- **BioLinks** Epothilones as Novel Anticancer Agents 600

13.8 Preparation of Epoxides 600
- **BioLinks** Active Metabolites and Drug Interactions 603

13.9 Enantioselective Epoxidation 603
13.10 Ring-Opening Reactions of Epoxides 605
- **WorldLinks** Ethylene Oxide as a Sterilizing Agent for Sensitive Medical Equipment 608
- **BioLinks** Cigarette Smoke and Carcinogenic Epoxides 612

13.11 Thiols and Sulfides 613
13.12 Synthesis Strategies Involving Epoxides 617

Review of Reactions • Review of Concepts & Vocabulary
SkillBuilder Review • Practice Problems
ACS-Style Problems (Multiple Choice)
Integrated Problems • Challenge Problems

14 Infrared Spectroscopy and Mass Spectrometry 636

14.1 Introduction to Spectroscopy 637
- **WorldLinks** Microwave Ovens 639

14.2 IR Spectroscopy 639
- **BioLinks** IR Thermal Imaging for Cancer Detection 640

14.3 Signal Characteristics: Wavenumber 641
14.4 Signal Characteristics: Intensity 646
- **WorldLinks** IR Spectroscopy for Testing Blood Alcohol Levels 648

14.5 Signal Characteristics: Shape 648
14.6 Analyzing an IR Spectrum 652
14.7 Using IR Spectroscopy to Distinguish between Two Compounds 657
14.8 Introduction to Mass Spectrometry 658
- **WorldLinks** Mass Spectrometry for Detecting Explosives 660

14.9 Analyzing the $(M)^{+\bullet}$ Peak 661
14.10 Analyzing the $(M+1)^{+\bullet}$ Peak 662
14.11 Analyzing the $(M+2)^{+\bullet}$ Peak 664
14.12 Analyzing the Fragments 665
14.13 High-Resolution Mass Spectrometry 668
14.14 Gas Chromatography–Mass Spectrometry 670
14.15 Mass Spectrometry of Large Biomolecules 671
- **BioLinks** Medical Applications of Mass Spectrometry 671

14.16 Hydrogen Deficiency Index: Degrees of Unsaturation 672

Review of Concepts & Vocabulary • SkillBuilder Review
Practice Problems • ACS-Style Problems (Multiple Choice)
Integrated Problems • Challenge Problems

15 Nuclear Magnetic Resonance Spectroscopy 684

15.1 Introduction to NMR Spectroscopy 685
15.2 Acquiring a ^{1}H NMR Spectrum 687
15.3 Characteristics of a ^{1}H NMR Spectrum 688
15.4 Number of Signals 689
15.5 Chemical Shift 695
15.6 Integration 702
15.7 Multiplicity 705
15.8 Drawing the Expected ^{1}H NMR Spectrum of a Compound 713
15.9 Using ^{1}H NMR Spectroscopy to Distinguish between Compounds 715
- **BioLinks** Detection of Impurities in Heparin Sodium Using ^{1}H NMR Spectroscopy 717

15.10 Analyzing a ^{1}H NMR Spectrum 718
15.11 Acquiring a ^{13}C NMR Spectrum 721
15.12 Chemical Shifts in ^{13}C NMR Spectroscopy 721
15.13 DEPT ^{13}C NMR Spectroscopy 724
- **BioLinks** Magnetic Resonance Imaging (MRI) 727

Review of Concepts & Vocabulary • SkillBuilder Review
Practice Problems • ACS-Style Problems (Multiple Choice)
Integrated Problems • Challenge Problems

16 Conjugated Pi Systems and Pericyclic Reactions 738

16.1 Classes of Dienes 739
16.2 Conjugated Dienes 740

16.3 Molecular Orbital Theory 742
16.4 Electrophilic Addition 746
16.5 Thermodynamic Control vs. Kinetic Control 749
- **WorldLinks** Natural and Synthetic Rubbers 752

16.6 An Introduction to Pericyclic Reactions 753
16.7 Diels–Alder Reactions 754
16.8 MO Description of Cycloadditions 760
16.9 Electrocyclic Reactions 763
16.10 Sigmatropic Rearrangements 768
- **BioLinks** The Photoinduced Biosynthesis of Vitamin D 770

16.11 UV-Vis Spectroscopy 771
- **WorldLinks** Sunscreens 775

16.12 Color 776
- **WorldLinks** Bleach 777

16.13 Chemistry of Vision 777

Review of Reactions • Review of Concepts & Vocabulary
SkillBuilder Review • Practice Problems
ACS-Style Problems (Multiple Choice)
Integrated Problems • Challenge Problems

17 Aromatic Compounds 788

17.1 Introduction to Aromatic Compounds 789
- **WorldLinks** What Is Coal? 790

17.2 Nomenclature of Benzene Derivatives 790
17.3 Structure of Benzene 793
17.4 Stability of Benzene 794
- **WorldLinks** Molecular Cages 798

17.5 Aromatic Compounds Other Than Benzene 801
- **BioLinks** The Development of Nonsedating Antihistamines 806

17.6 Reactions at the Benzylic Position 808
17.7 Reduction of Benzene and Its Derivatives 813
17.8 Spectroscopy of Aromatic Compounds 815
- **WorldLinks** Buckyballs and Nanotubes 818

Review of Reactions • Review of Concepts & Vocabulary
SkillBuilder Review • Practice Problems
ACS-Style Problems (Multiple Choice)
Integrated Problems • Challenge Problems

18 Aromatic Substitution Reactions 828

18.1 Introduction to Electrophilic Aromatic Substitution 829
18.2 Halogenation 829
- **BioLinks** Halogenation in Drug Design 832

18.3 Sulfonation 833
- **WorldLinks** What Are Those Colors in Fruity Pebbles? 834

18.4 Nitration 835
- **BioLinks** The Discovery of Prodrugs 837

18.5 Friedel–Crafts Alkylation 838
18.6 Friedel–Crafts Acylation 840
18.7 Activating Groups 842
18.8 Deactivating Groups 846
18.9 Halogens: The Exception 848
18.10 Determining the Directing Effects of a Substituent 850
18.11 Multiple Substituents 853
18.12 Synthesis Strategies 859
18.13 Nucleophilic Aromatic Substitution 866
18.14 Elimination-Addition 868
18.15 Identifying the Mechanism of an Aromatic Substitution Reaction 870

Review of Reactions • Review of Concepts & Vocabulary
SkillBuilder Review • Practice Problems
ACS-Style Problems (Multiple Choice)
Integrated Problems • Challenge Problems

19 Aldehydes and Ketones 884

19.1 Introduction to Aldehydes and Ketones 885
19.2 Nomenclature 886
19.3 Preparing Aldehydes and Ketones: A Review 888
19.4 Introduction to Nucleophilic Addition Reactions 889
19.5 Oxygen Nucleophiles 892
- **BioLinks** Acetals as Prodrugs 898

19.6 Nitrogen Nucleophiles 900
- **WorldLinks** Beta-Carotene and Vision 904

19.7 Hydrolysis of Acetals, Imines, and Enamines 908
- **BioLinks** Prodrugs 911

19.8 Sulfur Nucleophiles 911
19.9 Hydrogen Nucleophiles 912
19.10 Carbon Nucleophiles 913
- **WorldLinks** Organic Cyanide Compounds in Nature 916

19.11 Baeyer–Villiger Oxidation of Aldehydes and Ketones 921
19.12 Synthesis Strategies 922
19.13 Spectroscopic Analysis of Aldehydes and Ketones 925

Review of Reactions • Review of Concepts & Vocabulary
SkillBuilder Review • Practice Problems
ACS-Style Problems (Multiple Choice)
Integrated Problems • Challenge Problems

20 Carboxylic Acids and Their Derivatives 938

20.1 Introduction to Carboxylic Acids 939
20.2 Nomenclature of Carboxylic Acids 939
20.3 Structure and Properties of Carboxylic Acids 941
20.4 Preparation of Carboxylic Acids 944
20.5 Reactions of Carboxylic Acids 945
20.6 Introduction to Carboxylic Acid Derivatives 946
- **BioLinks** Sedatives 948

20.7 Reactivity of Carboxylic Acid Derivatives 950
20.8 Preparation and Reactions of Acid Chlorides 957
20.9 Preparation and Reactions of Acid Anhydrides 962
- **BioLinks** How Does Aspirin Work? 964

20.10 Preparation of Esters 965
20.11 Reactions of Esters 966
- **WorldLinks** How Soap Is Made 967
- **BioLinks** Esters as Prodrugs 968

20.12 Preparation and Reactions of Amides 971
- **WorldLinks** Polyesters and Polyamides 972
- **BioLinks** Beta-Lactam Antibiotics 975

20.13 Preparation and Reactions of Nitriles 976
20.14 Synthesis Strategies 979
20.15 Spectroscopy of Carboxylic Acids and Their Derivatives 984

Review of Reactions • Review of Concepts & Vocabulary
SkillBuilder Review • Practice Problems
ACS-Style Problems (Multiple Choice)
Integrated Problems • Challenge Problems

21 Alpha Carbon Chemistry: Enols and Enolates 996

21.1 Introduction to Alpha Carbon Chemistry: Enols and Enolates 997
21.2 Alpha Halogenation of Enols and Enolates 1004
21.3 Aldol Reactions 1009
- **WorldLinks** Muscle Power 1012

21.4 Claisen Condensations 1020
21.5 Alkylation of the Alpha Position 1022
21.6 Conjugate Addition Reactions 1031
- **BioLinks** Glutathione Conjugation and Biological Michael Reactions 1033

21.7 Synthesis Strategies 1037

Review of Reactions • Review of Concepts & Vocabulary
SkillBuilder Review • Practice Problems
ACS-Style Problems (Multiple Choice)
Integrated Problems • Challenge Problems

22 Amines 1054

22.1 Introduction to Amines 1055
- **BioLinks** Drug Metabolism Studies 1056

22.2 Nomenclature of Amines 1056
22.3 Properties of Amines 1059
- **BioLinks** Fortunate Side Effects 1060
- **WorldLinks** Chemical Warfare Among Ants 1064

22.4 Preparation of Amines: A Review 1065
22.5 Preparation of Amines via Substitution Reactions 1066
22.6 Preparation of Amines via Reductive Amination 1069
22.7 Synthesis Strategies 1071
22.8 Acylation of Amines 1074
22.9 Hofmann Elimination 1075
22.10 Reactions of Amines with Nitrous Acid 1078
22.11 Reactions of Aryl Diazonium Ions 1080
22.12 Nitrogen Heterocycles 1084
- **BioLinks** H_2-Receptor Antagonists and the Development of Cimetidine 1085

22.13 Spectroscopy of Amines 1087

Review of Reactions • Review of Concepts & Vocabulary
SkillBuilder Review • Practice Problems
ACS-Style Problems (Multiple Choice)
Integrated Problems • Challenge Problems

23 Introduction to Organometallic Compounds 1100

23.1 General Properties of Organometallic Compounds 1101
23.2 Organolithium and Organomagnesium Compounds 1102
23.3 Lithium Dialkyl Cuprates (Gilman Reagents) 1105
23.4 The Simmons–Smith Reaction and Carbenoids 1109
23.5 Stille Coupling 1112
23.6 Suzuki Coupling 1117
23.7 Negishi Coupling 1123
23.8 The Heck Reaction 1128
23.9 Alkene Metathesis 1133
- **WorldLinks** Improving Biodiesel via Alkene Metathesis 1138

Review of Reactions • Review of Concepts & Vocabulary
SkillBuilder Review • Practice Problems
ACS-Style Problems (Multiple Choice)
Integrated Problems • Challenge Problems

24 Carbohydrates 1153

24.1 Introduction to Carbohydrates 1154
24.2 Classification of Monosaccharides 1154
24.3 Configuration of Aldoses 1157
24.4 Configuration of Ketoses 1158
24.5 Cyclic Structures of Monosaccharides 1160
24.6 Reactions of Monosaccharides 1167
24.7 Disaccharides 1174
- **BioLinks** Lactose Intolerance 1177
- **WorldLinks** Artificial Sweeteners 1178

24.8 Polysaccharides 1179
24.9 Amino Sugars 1180
24.10 *N*-Glycosides 1181
- **BioLinks** Aminoglycoside Antibiotics 1182
- **BioLinks** Erythromycin Biosynthesis 1186

Review of Reactions • Review of Concepts & Vocabulary
SkillBuilder Review • Practice Problems
ACS-Style Problems (Multiple Choice)
Integrated Problems • Challenge Problems

25 Amino Acids, Peptides, and Proteins 1194

25.1 Introduction to Amino Acids, Peptides, and Proteins 1195
25.2 Structure and Properties of Amino Acids 1196
- **WorldLinks** Nutrition and Sources of Amino Acids 1198
- **WorldLinks** Forensic Chemistry and Fingerprint Detection 1202

25.3 Amino Acid Synthesis 1203
25.4 Structure of Peptides 1207
- **BioLinks** Polypeptide Antibiotics 1212

25.5 Sequencing a Peptide 1213
25.6 Peptide Synthesis 1216
25.7 Protein Structure 1224
- **BioLinks** Diseases Caused by Misfolded Proteins 1227

25.8 Protein Function 1227

Review of Reactions • Review of Concepts & Vocabulary
SkillBuilder Review • Practice Problems
ACS-Style Problems (Multiple Choice)
Integrated Problems • Challenge Problems

26 Lipids 1238

26.1 Introduction to Lipids 1239
26.2 Waxes 1240
26.3 Triglycerides 1241
26.4 Reactions of Triglycerides 1244
- **WorldLinks** Soaps Versus Synthetic Detergents 1249

26.5 Phospholipids 1253
- **BioLinks** Polyether Antibiotics 1256

26.6 Steroids 1257
- **BioLinks** Cholesterol and Heart Disease 1260
- **BioLinks** Anabolic Steroids and Competitive Sports 1263

26.7 Prostaglandins 1263
- **BioLinks** NSAIDs and COX-2 Inhibitors 1265

26.8 Terpenes 1266

Review of Reactions • Review of Concepts & Vocabulary
SkillBuilder Review • Practice Problems
ACS-Style Problems (Multiple Choice)
Integrated Problems • Challenge Problems

27 Synthetic Polymers 1277

27.1 Introduction to Synthetic Polymers 1278
27.2 Nomenclature of Synthetic Polymers 1279
27.3 Copolymers 1280
27.4 Polymer Classification by Reaction Type 1281
27.5 Polymer Classification by Mode of Assembly 1289
27.6 Polymer Classification by Structure 1291
27.7 Polymer Classification by Properties 1294
- **WorldLinks** Safety Glass and Car Windshields 1295

27.8 Polymer Recycling 1296

Review of Reactions • Review of Concepts & Vocabulary
SkillBuilder Review • Practice Problems
ACS-Style Problems (Multiple Choice)
Integrated Problems • Challenge Problems

Appendix: Nomenclature of Polyfunctional Compounds A–1
Selected Answers ANS–1
Glossary G–1
Index I–1

Preface

WHY I WROTE THIS BOOK

Students who perform poorly on organic chemistry exams often report having invested countless hours studying. Why do many students have difficulty preparing themselves for organic chemistry exams? Certainly, there are several contributing factors, including inefficient study habits, but perhaps the most dominant factor is a fundamental *disconnect* between what students learn in the lecture hall and the tasks expected of them during an exam. To illustrate the disconnect, consider the following analogy.

Imagine that a prestigious university offers a course entitled "Bike-Riding 101." Throughout the course, physics and engineering professors explain many concepts and principles (for example, how bicycles have been engineered to minimize air resistance). Students invest significant time studying the information that was presented, and on the last day of the course, the final exam consists of riding a bike for a distance of 100 feet. A few students may have innate talents and can accomplish the task without falling. But most students will fall several times, slowly making it to the finish line, bruised and hurt; and many students will not be able to ride for even one second without falling. Why? Because there is a *disconnect* between what the students learned and what they were expected to do for their exam.

Many years ago, I noticed that a similar disconnect exists in traditional organic chemistry instruction. That is, learning organic chemistry is much like bicycle riding; just as the students in the bike-riding analogy were expected to ride a bike after attending lectures, it is often expected that organic chemistry students will independently develop the necessary skills for solving problems. While a few students have innate talents and are able to develop the necessary skills independently, most students require guidance. This guidance was not consistently integrated within existing textbooks, prompting me to write the first edition of my textbook, *Organic Chemistry*. The main goal of my text was to employ a skills-based approach to bridge the gap between theory (concepts) and practice (problem-solving skills). The second and third editions further supported this goal by introducing hundreds of additional problems based on the chemical literature, thereby exposing students to exciting real-world examples of chemical research being conducted in real laboratories. The phenomenal success of the first three editions has been extremely gratifying because it provided strong evidence that my skills-based approach is indeed effective at bridging the gap described above.

I firmly believe that the scientific discipline of organic chemistry is NOT merely a compilation of principles, but rather, it is a disciplined method of thought and analysis. Students must certainly understand the concepts and principles, but more importantly, students must learn to think like organic chemists . . . that is, they must learn to become proficient at approaching new situations methodically, based on a repertoire of skills. That is the true essence of organic chemistry.

A SKILLS-BASED APPROACH

To address the disconnect in organic chemistry instruction, I have developed a *skills-based approach* to instruction. The textbook includes all of the concepts typically covered in an organic chemistry textbook, complete with *conceptual checkpoints* that promote mastery of the concepts, but special emphasis is placed on skills development through SkillBuilders to support these concepts. Each SkillBuilder contains three parts:

Learn the Skill: contains a solved problem that demonstrates a particular skill.

Practice the Skill: includes numerous problems (similar to the solved problem in *Learn the Skill*) that give students valuable opportunities to practice and master the skill.

Apply the Skill: contains one or more problems in which the student must apply the skill to solve real-world problems (as reported in the chemical literature). These problems include conceptual, cumulative, and applied problems that encourage students to think outside of the box. Sometimes problems that foreshadow concepts introduced in later chapters are also included.

At the end of each SkillBuilder, a *Need More Practice?* reference suggests end-of-chapter problems that students can work to practice the skill.

This emphasis upon skills development provides students with a greater opportunity to develop proficiency in the key skills necessary to succeed in organic chemistry. Certainly, not all necessary skills can be covered in a textbook. However, there are certain skills that are fundamental to all other skills.

As an example, resonance structures are used repeatedly throughout the course, and students must become masters of resonance structures early in the course. Therefore, a significant portion of Chapter 2 is devoted to pattern-recognition for drawing resonance structures. Rather than just providing a list of rules and then a few follow-up problems, the skills-based approach provides students with a series of skills, each of which must be mastered in sequence. Each skill is reinforced with numerous practice problems. The sequence of skills is designed to foster and develop proficiency in drawing resonance structures.

The skills-based approach to organic chemistry instruction is a unique approach. Certainly, other textbooks contain tips for problem solving, but no other textbook consistently presents skills development as the primary vehicle for instruction.

WHAT'S NEW IN THIS EDITION

Peer review played a very strong role in the development of the first, second, and third editions of *Organic Chemistry*. For each edition, the manuscript was reviewed by several hundred professors and several thousand students. In preparing the fourth edition, peer review

has played an equally prominent role. We have received a tremendous amount of input from the market, including surveys, class tests, diary reviews, and phone interviews. All of this input has been carefully culled and has been instrumental in identifying the focus of the fourth edition.

New Features in the Fourth Edition

- Treatment of synthesis was strengthened throughout the text, with a greater focus on retrosynthetic strategies. The coverage of synthesis and retrosynthesis in Chapter 7 has been expanded (with additional examples and more problems in SkillBuilder 7.8); and in Chapter 8, alkenes are considered both as synthetic targets and possible starting materials. In Chapter 9, the coverage of synthesis with alkynide ions has been expanded, with a focus on retrosynthesis. Indeed, the coverage of retrosynthesis has been expanded similarly in each chapter, gradually developing a scaffold of advanced synthetic skills.
- The introduction of bond-line drawings has been moved from Chapter 2 to Chapter 1. This enables the use of bond-line drawings when covering the material in Chapter 1.
- SkillBuilder 2.1 (converting between condensed structures and bond-line structures) has been rewritten to show students how to interpret the condensed structures of aldehydes (RCHO) and carboxylic acids (RCO_2H).
- In Chapter 3 (acids and bases), a new section covers the relative acidity of cationic acids (with a new SkillBuilder), as well as the relative basicity of their uncharged conjugate bases. This new section (Section 3.5) covers the relative acidity of ammonium ions and the relative basicity of amines.
- In Chapter 6, the section describing nucleophilic centers and electrophilic centers has been entirely rewritten. The previous treatment (3e) would suggest that methyl chloride is a nucleophile, because of the lone pairs on the chlorine atom. Furthermore, the previous treatment (3e) would suggest that methanol is an electrophile, because the carbon atom is connected directly to an electron-withdrawing element. Both of these conclusions are false, so this section was rewritten so that students don't arrive at these false conclusions.
- Section 7.2 (nomenclature of alkyl halides) has been revised to introduce the prefix "*n*" in alkyl substituents (for example, *n*-butyl or *n*-propyl). This terminology is revisited again in Section 12.1 (nomenclature of alcohols) as well as throughout the text, where appropriate.
- In Chapter 7, when reagents are covered, a discussion has been included to explicitly show that NaOEt/EtOH represents NaOEt dissolved in EtOH as the solvent. This was not obvious to students, and it is now explicitly shown.
- Sodium hydride is not an appropriate base for performing an E2 reaction. A quick literature search shows no such examples. NaH has been removed from Chapter 7.
- Chapter 7 (substitution and elimination) has been reorganized in the following ways.
  - Nomenclature of alkenes has been moved out of Chapter 7 and into Chapter 8 (addition reactions of alkenes).
  - Biological methylating agents have been moved into a BioLinks box (rather than being a numbered section of the chapter).
  - Kinetic isotope effects have been moved into a Special Topic box (rather than being a numbered section of the chapter).
  - Solvent effects have been moved to the end of the chapter.
- In Chapter 9, the coverage of dissolving metal reductions has been revised to show that terminal alkynes cannot be reduced by this method (only internal alkynes can be reduced with a dissolving metal reduction). To reduce a terminal alkyne, it is best to perform hydrogenation with a poisoned catalyst.
- In Chapter 15 (NMR spectroscopy), the discussion of complex splitting has been revised to reflect the reality that *J* values are generally similar (~7 Hz), so a triplet of quartets or a quartet of triplets would be extremely rare. A sextet will be much more common when a signal arises from protons that have three neighbors on one side and two neighbors on the other side (for example, the protons on C2 in 1-bromopropane). The entire discussion of complex splitting has been revised accordingly.
- In the previous edition (3e), throughout Chapter 21 (alpha carbon chemistry), after enolates were first introduced, enolates were then represented throughout the chapter by showing the minor contributor to the resonance hybrid (the resonance structure with a negative charge on C, rather than O). While this simplified the mechanisms for students, it is more accurate to show the major contributor. Throughout Chapter 21, all instances of enolates (in all mechanisms) have been modified to show the major contributor to the resonance hybrid (with a negative charge on O), rather than the minor contributor.
- The end of each chapter has been enhanced with additional multiple-choice questions that mimic the style of questions on standardized exams, including the ACS, DAT, and PCAT exams. The previous edition (3e) had approximately 3 such questions at the end of each chapter. The new edition (4e) now has between 7 and 10 such questions per chapter.
- Many students have requested that an answer key (for selected problems) be included at the end of the text. This much-desired feature has been provided in the fourth edition. The end of the book now has a section with answers to selected problems.

TEXT ORGANIZATION

The sequence of chapters and topics in *Organic Chemistry, 4e* does not differ markedly from that of other organic chemistry textbooks. Indeed, the topics are presented in the traditional order, based on functional groups (alkenes, alkynes, alcohols, ethers, aldehydes and ketones, carboxylic acid derivatives, etc.). Despite this traditional order, a strong emphasis is placed on mechanisms, with a focus on pattern recognition to illustrate the similarities between reactions that would otherwise appear unrelated. No shortcuts were taken in any of the mechanisms, and all steps are clearly illustrated, including all proton transfer steps.

Two chapters (6 and 11) are devoted almost entirely to skill development and are generally not found in other textbooks. Chapter 6, *Chemical Reactivity and Mechanisms*, emphasizes skills that are necessary for drawing mechanisms, while Chapter 11,

Synthesis, prepares the students for proposing syntheses. These two chapters are strategically positioned within the traditional order described above and can be assigned to the students for independent study. That is, these two chapters do not need to be covered during precious lecture hours, but can be, if so desired.

The traditional order allows instructors to adopt the skills-based approach without having to change their lecture notes or methods. For this reason, the spectroscopy chapters (Chapters 14 and 15) were written to be stand-alone and portable, so that instructors can cover these chapters in any order desired. In fact, five of the chapters (Chapters 2, 3, 7, 12, and 13) that precede the spectroscopy chapters include end-of-chapter spectroscopy problems, for those students who covered spectroscopy earlier. Spectroscopy coverage also appears in subsequent functional group chapters, specifically Chapter 17 (*Aromatic Compounds*), Chapter 19 (*Aldehydes and Ketones*), Chapter 20 (*Carboxylic Acids and Their Derivatives*), Chapter 22 (*Amines*), Chapter 24 (*Carbohydrates*), and Chapter 25 (*Amino Acids, Peptides, and Proteins*).

THE WileyPLUS ADVANTAGE

Discover an Easier Way to Learn

The new WileyPLUS gives you the freedom and flexibility to tailor curated content and easily manage your course in order to engage and motivate students.

An Easier Way to Engage and Keep Students on Track

To assist instructors with heavy workloads, WileyPLUS offers easy ways for students to keep up with the learning curve, such as:

Flexible, Linear Learning Paths organize materials, include eTextbook content, videos, animations and practice questions into customizable modules—easy to access and follow for instructors and students.

Adaptive Practice enables students to identify and focus on areas that are particularly challenging to them. These personalized questions engage students in the material and teach them how to study on their own.

Reports and Metrics provide insight into each student performance as cumulative class metrics, allowing you to identify and address individual needs in a timely manner.

An Easier Way to Get Started and Get Help

Instructors and students shouldn't spend time on technology questions, which is why Wiley is by your side all the way. Here are just some of the ways we can help you:

The Customer Success Team helps guide instructors through the implementation, course setup, ongoing support, and engagement process.

Tech Support is available to instructors and students 24/7, because we know teaching and studying is not a 9-5 job.

WileyPLUS Studio provides a network of instructors who share insights, best practices, and product feedback. Best of all, instructors can earn rewards.

Student Partners assist other students in your class and act as the main contact for WileyPLUS questions, such as registration or course specific functionality.

An Easier Way to Succeed

The features and design of WileyPLUS are molded by what instructors and students need to succeed. Here are just a few tools that will help drive achievement in the classroom:

Accessibility is at the forefront of our design. All content and questions have been audited for accessibility, and anything that does not meet that standard has been flagged for awareness. WileyPLUS provides a learning path that complies with the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) and Web Content Accessibility Guidelines (WCAG 2.1).

Mobile Apps for course management meets everyone's on-the-go demands. Instructors can adjust assignments, grade submissions, or message your students all from your mobile device, while students can study the eTextbook content or submit timely assignments.

Recommended Assignments, based on usage data, empower instructors to choose preloaded assignments that have a proven path to success. Efficacy studies show that these pre-populated assignments are valuable to student engagement and achievement.

LMS Integration

Integrate WileyPLUS with Blackboard, Canvas, or Desire2Learn

- **Single Sign-On:** Providing instructors and students with direct access to all WileyPLUS content with the convenience of one login
- **Integrated Student Registration:** Lets students register right from your Canvas course, no course IDs or special URLs required
- **Direct Links to Readings and Assignments:** Giving instructors greater control over how they deliver information and allowing students to conveniently access their course work
- **Gradebook Synchronization:** Offers either total score or assignment-level grade integration to track all scores in one place

New to *WileyPLUS for Organic Chemistry, 4e*

Students regularly report that they prefer to work with eBooks and online problems. The ability to receive instant feedback and always having access to course materials from any mobile device adds to the appeal of an online environment. Within WileyPLUS, students can interact with all (>5,000) problems that appear throughout the textbook, both within the chapters (SkillBuilder problems and Conceptual Checkpoints problems) and at the end of the chapters (Practice, ACS-style, Integrated, and Challenge problems). For the 4th edition, all WileyPLUS problems have been reimagined by instructional designers to make them as efficient as possible. The redesigned problems are more streamlined and better focused on the learning objectives being targeted. Improvements include:

- Clear instructions are provided, and excessive drawing has been eliminated.
- Predict-the-product problems often provide a copy of the starting material in the sketch box, so students can focus on the reactive functional group(s).

- Synthesis problems are open-ended to better reflect classroom assessments.
- Mechanism problems now begin with an overview before moving into arrow-pushing.
- Advanced problems model problem-solving with guided inquiry.
- Feedback is provided to *explain* each solution, and newly written hints are now available for each problem.

In addition to the enhancements above, over 100 new videos have been created by the author using lightboard technology. Each video (5–10 minutes in duration) covers one of the boxed (numbered) mechanisms appearing in the text. In each of these mechanism videos, each step of the mechanism is described in detail, and the student sees the entire mechanism unfolding in a step-by-step fashion. The author shows how to draw the resulting intermediate and how to decide what happens next when drawing the mechanism. The reason for each step is explained, and experimental observations (regiochemical and stereochemical) are justified. The function of each reagent is explained, and curved arrows are drawn one at a time, with a discussion of how each arrow should be drawn. These new mechanism videos are designed to foster a solid grasp of the skills necessary for drawing mechanisms. Mechanisms are foundational to the study of organic chemistry, and these videos provide students with a step-by-step explanation of each boxed mechanism that appears in the text.

Adaptive Practice for *Organic Chemistry, 4e*

WileyPLUS for *Organic Chemistry, 4e* is also supported by an **adaptive practice** learning module that provides students with a personalized learning experience so that they can build and track their proficiency. The database has over 25,000 problems, all of which have been vetted by the author (a process that took almost a year of work), and are continuously updated based on user feedback. Each problem drills a single concept or skill, so that students can track which concepts and skills they need to spend more time learning. Once a student's areas of weakness have been identified (all of which are tracked and plotted), the student is provided with links to the relevant portions of the text, as well as additional problems that will develop proficiency in those areas of weakness. This provides for a personalized experience that *adapts* to each student's needs, thus the term "adaptive practice."

ADDITIONAL INSTRUCTOR RESOURCES

All resources updated and revised under guidance of Laurie Starkey, *California State Polytechnic University, Pomona.*

Testbank Revised for this edition by Mackay Steffensen, *Southern Utah University* and Ann Paterson, *Williams Baptist University.*

PowerPoint Lecture Slides and Clicker Questions Revised for this edition by Michael Cross, *Snow College*.

STUDENT RESOURCES

Student Study Guide and Solutions Manual Authored by David Klein. The fourth edition of the *Student Study Guide and Solutions Manual* to accompany *Organic Chemistry, 4e* contains:

- More detailed explanations within the solutions.
- Concept Review Exercises
- SkillBuilder Review Exercises
- Reaction Review Exercises
- Mechanism Review Exercises
- A list of new reagents for each chapter, with a description of their function.
- A list of "Common Mistakes to Avoid" in every chapter.

Molecular Visions™ Model Kit To support the learning of organic chemistry concepts and allow students the tactile experience of manipulating physical models, we offer a molecular modeling kit from the Darling Company. The model kit can be bundled with the textbook or purchased stand alone.

CONTRIBUTORS TO *ORGANIC CHEMISTRY, 4E*

I owe special thanks to my contributors for their collaboration, hard work, and creativity. The expanded coverage of synthesis and retrosynthesis was written by Laurie Starkey, *California State Polytechnic University*, *Pomona*, and many of the new BioLinks and WorldLinks application boxes throughout the text were written by Ron Swisher, *Oregon Institute of Technology*.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The feedback received from both faculty and students supported the creation, development, and execution of each edition of *Organic Chemistry*. I wish to extend sincere thanks to my colleagues (and their students) who have graciously devoted their time to offer valuable comments that helped shape this textbook.

FOURTH EDITION REVIEWERS: CLASS TEST PARTICIPANTS, FOCUS GROUP PARTICIPANTS, AND ACCURACY CHECKERS

ARIZONA Smitha Pillai (*Arizona State University, Tempe*), Cindy Browder (*Northern Arizona University*)

CALIFORNIA Roman Dembinski (*Oakland University*), Jess Estrada (*Santa Barbara City College*), Olga Fryszman (*San Diego Miramar College*), Cynthia Gilley (*San Diego Miramar College*), Jeremy Klosterman (*University of California, San Diego*), Hubert Muchalski (*California State University, Fresno*), Stevan Pecic, (*California State University, Fullerton*), Yitzhak Tor (*University of California, San Diego*), Haim Weizman (*University of California, San Diego*)

FLORIDA Kim Fields (*University of South Florida), Qun Huo (University of Central Florida*), Donna Perygin (*Jacksonville State University*)

GEORGIA Shainaz Landge (*Georgia Southern University*)

HAWAII Philip Williams (*University of Hawaii, Manoa*)

IDAHO Don Warner (*Boise State University*)

MARYLAND Tiffany Gierasch (*University of Maryland, Baltimore County*)

MASSACHUSETTS Lara Alhariri (*University of Massachusetts-Amherst*)

MICHIGAN Sean Hickey (*Wayne State University*), Simona Marincean (*University of Michigan-Dearborn*), Ron Stamper (*Mott Community College*)

MISSOURI Erin Whitteck (*Saint Louis University*), Brian Ganley (*University of Missouri*)

MINNESOTA Gabriela Uzcategui White (*University of St. Thomas*)

MISSISSIPPI Gerald Rowland (*University of Mississippi*)

NEW MEXICO Lisa Whalen (*University of New Mexico*)

NEW YORK Manashi Chatterjee (*Hunter College*)

NORTH CAROLINA Nicholas Shaw (*Appalachian State University*)

NORTH DAKOTA Alexey Leontyev (*North Dakota State University*)

OHIO Tevye Celius (*Ohio Northern University*), James Fletcher (*Creighton University*), Kelly Hall (*Ohio Northern University*)

PENNSYLVANIA Matthew Betush (*Allegheny College*). Kevin Minbiole, (*Villanova University*)

SOUTH CAROLINA Tania Houjeiry (*Clemson University*)

TEXAS Dmitriy Khon (*St. Mary's University of Texas*)

VIRGINIA Kevin Caran, (*James Madison University*)

CANADA Shegufa Shetranjiwalla (*Trent University*)

PREVIOUS EDITION REVIEWERS: CLASS TEST PARTICIPANTS, FOCUS GROUP PARTICIPANTS, AND ACCURACY CHECKERS

Philip Albiniak (*Ball State University*), Thomas Albright (*University of Houston*), Michael Aldersley, (*Rensselaer Polytechnic Institute*), David Anderson (*University of Colorado, Colorado Springs*), Rodrigo Andrade (*Temple University*), Jeremy Andreatta (*Worcester State University*), Merritt Andrus (*Brigham Young University*), Laura Anna (*Millersville University*), Cory Antonakos (*Diablo Valley College*), Ivan Aprahamian (*Dartmouth College*), Ashley Ayers (*Tarrant County College, SE Campus*), Adam Azman (*Butler University*), Yiyan Bai (*Houston Community College*), Satinder Bains (*Paradise Valley Community College*), Eric Ballard (*University of Tampa*), Edie Banner (*University of South Florida, Sarasota*), Tim Barker (*College of Charleston*), Eike Bauer (*University of Missouri, St. Louis*), Judit Beagle (*University of Dayton*), James Beil (*Lorain County Community College*), Peter Bell (*Tarleton State University*), Dianne Bennet (*Sacramento City College*), Nicole Bennett (*Appalachian State University*), Thomas Berke (*Brookdale Community College*), Daniel Bernier (*Riverside Community College*), Narayan Bhat (*University of Texas Pan American*), Gautam Bhattacharyya (*Missouri State University*), Pradip Bhowmik (*University of Nevada, Las Vegas*), Silas Blackstock (*University of Alabama*), Lea Blau (*Yeshiva University*), David Boatright (*University of West Georgia*), Megan Bolitho (*University of San Francisco*), Marco Bonizzoni (*The University of Alabama*), Charity Brannen (*Baptist College*), Adam Braunschweig (*University of Miami*), Kerry Breno (*Whitworth University*), Matthias Brewer (*The University of Vermont*), Richard Broene (*Bowdoin College*), Deborah Bromfield Lee (*Florida Southern College*), David Brook (*San Jose State University*), Cindy Browder (*Northern Arizona University*), Pradip Browmik (*University of Nevada, Las Vegas*), Banita Brown (*University of North Carolina Charlotte*), David Brown (*Florida Gulf Coast University*), Rebecca Brown (*West Kentucky Community and Technical College*), David Brownholland (*Carthage College*), Kathleen Brunke (*Christopher Newport University*), Timothy Brunker (*Towson University*), Jared Butcher (*Ohio University*), Christopher Callam (*The Ohio State University*), Arthur Cammers (*University of Kentucky, Lexington*), Martin Campbell (*Henderson State University*), Kevin Cannon (*Penn State University, Abington*), Kevin Caran (*James Madison University*), Jeffrey Carney (*Christopher Newport University*), Elaine Carter (*Los Angeles City College*), David Cartrette (*South Dakota State University*), Steven Castle (*Brigham Young University*), Brad Chamberlain (*Luther College*), Paul Chamberlain (*George Fox University*), Seveda Chamras (*Glendale Community College*), Tom Chang (*Utah State University*), Dana Chatellier (*University of Delaware*), Sarah Chavez (*Washington University*), Qi Chen (*Slippery Rock University*), Emma Chow (*Palm Beach Community College*), Jason Chruma (*University of Virginia*), Phillip Chung (*Montefiore Medical Center*), Steven Chung (*Bowling Green State University*), Nagash Clarke (*Washtenaw Community College*), Beverly Clement (*Blinn College*), Adiel Coca (*Southern Connecticut State University*), Jeremy Cody (*Rochester Institute of Technology*), Rita Collier (*Gadsden State Community College*), Lindsay Comstock (*Wake Forest University*), John J. Coniglio (*Tarrant County College*), Phillip Cook (*East Tennessee State University*), Jeff Corkill (*Eastern Washington University*), Stephen Corlett (*Laney College*), Sergio Cortes (*University of Texas at Dallas*), Philip J. Costanzo (*California Polytechnic State University, San Luis Obispo*), Wyatt Cotton (*Cincinnati State College*), Marilyn Cox (*Louisiana Tech University*), David Crich (*University of Illinois at Chicago*), Greg Crouch (*Washington State University*), Mapi Cuevas (*Santa Fe College*), Scott Davis (*Mercer University, Macon*), Frank Day (*North Shore Community College*), Peter de Lijser (*California State University, Fullerton*), Roman Dembinski (*Oakland University*), Alexei Demchenko (*University of Missouri, St. Louis*), Brahmadeo Dewprashad (*Borough of Manhattan Community College*), Preeti Dhar (*SUNY New Paltz*), Martin Di Grandi (*Fordham University*), Bonnie Dixon (*University of Maryland, College Park*), Donovan Dixon (*University of Central Florida*), Theodore Dolter (*Southwestern Illinois College*), Jason Dunham (*Ball State University*), Norma Dunlap (*Middle Tennessee State University*), Kay Dutz (*Mt. San Antonio College*), Joyce Easter (*Virginia Wesleyan College*), Jeffrey Elbert (*University of Northern Iowa*), Derek Elgin (*Coastal Carolina University*), Cory Emal (*Eastern Michigan University*), Jeffrey Engle (*Tacoma Community College*), Susan Ensel (*Hood College*), Ishan Erden (*San Francisco State University*), Brian Esselman (*University of Wisconsin State*), David Flanigan (*Hillsborough Community College*), James Fletcher (*Creighton University*), Francis Flores (*California Polytechnic State University, Pomona*), John Flygare (*Stanford University*), Frantz Folmer-Andersen (*SUNY New Paltz*), Raymond Fong (*City College of San Francisco*), Henry Forman (*University of California, Merced*), Mark Forman (*Saint Joseph's University*), Frank Foss (*University of Texas, Arlington*), Annaliese Franz (*University of California, Davis*), Andrew Frazer (*University of Central Florida*), Donna Friedman (*St. Louis Community College at Florissant Valley*), Lee Friedman (*University of Maryland, College Park*), Michael Fuertes (*Monroe County Community College*), Chammi Gamage-Miller (*Blinn College*), Brian Ganley (*University of Missouri, Columbia*), Steve Gentemann (*Southwestern Illinois College*), Tiffany Gierasch (*University of Maryland, Baltimore County*), Martha Gilchrist (*Tarrant County College*), John Gitua (*Drake University*), Randy Goff (*University of West Florida*), David Goode (*Mercer University*), Jonathan Gough (*Long Island University*), Anne Gorden (*Auburn University*), Scott Grayson (*Tulane University*), Thomas Green (*University of Alaska, Fairbanks*), Kimberly Greve (*Kalamazoo Valley Community College*), Gordon Gribble (*Dartmouth College*), Ray A. Gross, Jr. (*Prince George's Community College*), Nathaniel Grove (*University of North Carolina, Wilmington*), Yi Guo (*Montefiore Medical Center*), Sapna Gupta (*Palm Beach State College*), Rich Gurney (*Simmons College*), Kevin Gwaltney (*Kennesaw State University*), Asif Habib (*University of Wisconsin, Waukesha*), Laurel Habgood (*Rollins College*), Donovan Haines (*Sam Houston State University*), Robert Hammer (*Louisiana State University*), Scott Handy (*Middle Tennessee State University*), Christopher Hansen (*Midwestern State University*), Kenn Harding (*Texas A&M University*), Matthew Hart (*Grand Valley State University*), Jack Lee Hayes (*State Fair Community College*), Dian He (*Holy Family University*), Jason Hein (*University of California, Merced*), Rick Heldrich (*College of Charleston*), Eric Helms (*SUNY Geneseo*), Maged Henary (*Georgia State University, Langate*), Amanda Henry (*Fresno City College*), Geneive Henry (*Susquehanna University*), Christine Hermann (*Radford University*), Bruce Hietbrink (*University of Delaware*), Patricia Hill (*Millersville University*), Carl Hoeger (*University of California, San Diego*), Ling Huang (*Sacramento City College*), John Hubbard (*Marshall University*), Thomas Hughes (*Siena College*), Roxanne Hulet (*Skagit Valley College*), Christopher Hyland (*California State University, Fullerton*), Eta Isiorho (*Auburn University*), Danielle Jacobs (*Rider University*), Willian Jenks (*Iowa State University*), Christopher S. Jeffrey (*University of Nevada, Reno*), Dell Jensen (*Augustana College*), Ryan Jeske (*Ball State University*), Yu Lin Jiang (*East Tennessee State University*), Richard Johnson (*University of New Hampshire*), Stacey Johnson (*Western Piedmont Community College*), Marlon Jones (*Long Beach City College*), Paul Jones (*Wake Forest University*), Reni Joseph (*St. Louis Community College*), Cynthia Judd (*Palm Beach State College*), Eric Kantorowski (*California Polytechnic State University, San Luis Obispo*), Andrew Karatjas (*Johnson & Wales University*), Amy Keirstead (*University of New England*), Adam Keller (*Columbus State Community College*), Valerie Keller (*University of Chicago*), Steven Kennedy (*Millersville University of Pennsylvania*), Pamela Kerrigan (*College of Mount Saint Vincent*), Mushtaq Khan (*Union County College*), James Kiddle (*Western Michigan University*), Angela King (*Wake Forest University*), Kevin Kittredge (*Siena College*), Peggy Kline (*Santa Monica College*), Silvia Kolchens (*Pima Community College*), Dalila Kovacs (*Grand Valley State University*), Jennifer Koviach-Côté (*Bates College*), Paul J. Kropp (*University of North Carolina, Chapel Hill*), Jens Kuhn (*Santa Barbara City College*), Silvia Kölchens (*Pima County Community College*), Massimiliano Lamberto (*Monmouth University*), Cynthia Lamberty (*Cloud County Community College*), Shane Lamos (*St. Michael's College*), Shainaz Landge (*Georgia Southern University*), Kathleen Laurenzo (*Florida*

State College), William Lavell (*Camden County College*), Iyun Lazik (*San Jose City College*), George Lengyel (*Slippery Rock University*), Michael Leonard (*Washington & Jefferson College*), Alexey Leontyev (*North Dakota State University*), Sam Leung (*Washburn University*), Michael Lewis (*Saint Louis University*), Scott Lewis (*James Madison University*), Deborah Lieberman (*University of Cincinnati*), Harriet Lindsay (*Eastern Michigan University*), Jason Locklin (*University of Georgia*), William Loffredo (*East Stroudsburg University*), Robert Long (*Eastern New Mexico University*), Rena Lou (*Cerritos College*), Brian Love (*East Carolina University*), Carl Lovely (*University of Texas at Arlington*), Douglas Loy (*University of Arizona*), Phillip Lukeman (*St. John's University*), Frederick A. Luzzio (*University of Louisville*), Lili Ma (*Northern Kentucky University*), Javier Macossay-Torres (*University of Texas Pan American*), James MacKay (*Elizabethtown College*), Harpreet Malhotra (*Florida State College, Kent Campus*), Kirk Manfredi (*University of Northern Iowa*), Glenroy Martin (*University of Tampa*), Ned Martin (*University of North Carolina, Wilmington*), Vivian Mativo (*Georgia Perimeter College*), Barbara Mayer (*California State University, Fresno*), Megan McClory (*Stanford University*), Dominic McGrath (*University of Arizona*), LuAnne McNulty (*Butler University*), Steven Meier (*University of Central Oklahoma*), Dina Merrer (*Barnard College*), Stephen Milczanowski (*Florida State College*), Kenneth Miller (*Fort Lewis College*), Nancy Mills (*Trinity University*), Kevin Minbiole (*Villanova University*), Thomas Minehan (*California State University, Northridge*), James Miranda (*California State University, Sacramento*), Shizue Mito (*University of Texas at El Paso*), David Modarelli (*University of Akron*), Anne Moody (*Truman State University*), Jesse More (*Loyola University Maryland*), Andrew Morehead (*East Carolina University*), Kathleen Morgan (*Xavier University of Louisiana*), Jill Morris (*Grand Valley State University*), Sarah Mounter (*Columbia College of Missouri*), Anja Mueller (*Central Michigan University*), Drew Murphy (*Northeast Texas Community College*), Barbara Murray (*University of Redlands*), Joan Muyanyatta-Comar (*Georgia State University*), Kensaku Nakayama (*California State University, Long Beach*), Thomas Nalli (*Winona State University*), Richard Narske (*Augustana College*), Donna Nelson (*University of Oklahoma*), Nasri Nesnas (*Florida Institute of Technology*), William Nguyen (*Santa Ana College*), Benjamin Norris (*Frostburg State University*), James Nowick (*University of California, Irvine*), Edmond J. O'Connell (*Fairfield University*), Asmik Oganesyan (*Glendale Community College*), Kyungsoo Oh (*Indiana University, Purdue University Indianapolis*), Greg O'Neil (*Western Washington University*), Edith Onyeozili (*Florida Agricultural & Mechanical University*) Catherine Owens Welder (*Dartmouth College*; Anne B. Padias (*University of Arizona*; Hasan Palandoken (*California Polytechnic State University, San Luis Obispo*), Chandrakant Panse (*Massachusetts Bay Community College*), Sapan Parikh (*Manhattanville College*), James Parise Jr. (*Duke University*), Edward Parish (*Auburn University*), Keith O. Pascoe (*Georgia State University*), Noel Paul (*The Ohio State University*), Phillip Pelphrey (*Texas Wesleyan University*), Michael Pelter (*Purdue University, Calumet*), Libbie Pelter (*Purdue University, Calumet*), Mark Perks (*University of Maryland, Baltimore County*), Donna Perygin (*Jacksonville State University*), John Picione (*Daytona State College*), Chris Pigge (*University of Iowa*), Smitha Pillai (*Arizona State University*), Hal Pinnick (*Purdue University Calumet*), Wayne Pitcher (*Chabot College*), Tchao Podona (*Miami Dade College*), John Pollard (*University of Arizona*), Owen Priest (*Northwestern University, Evanston*), Paul Primrose (*Baylor University*), Deborah Pritchard (*Forsyth Technical Community College*), Salvatore Profeta (*Florida State University*), Christine Pruis (*Arizona State University*), Martin Pulver (*Bronx Community College*), David Pursell (*Georgia Gwinnett College*), Shanthi Rajaraman (*Richard Stockton College of New Jersey*), Sivappa Rasapalli (*University of Massachusetts, Dartmouth*), Michael Rathke (*Michigan State University*), Cathrine Reck (*Indiana University*), Tanea Reed (*Eastern Kentucky University*), Ron Reese (*Victoria College*), Mike Rennekamp (*Columbus State Community College*), Olga Rinco (*Luther College*), Melinda Ripper (*Butler County Community College*), Bobby Roberson (*Pensacola State College*), Harold Rogers (*California State University, Fullerton*), Richard Rogers (*University of South Alabama*), Mary Roslonowski (*Brevard Community College*), Robert D. Rossi (*Gloucester County College*), Eriks Rozners (*Northeastern University*), Gillian Rudd (*Northwestern State University*), Trisha Russell (*Whitworth University*), Tom Russo (*Florida State College, Kent Campus*), Lev Ryzhkov (*Towson University*), Preet-Pal S. Saluja (*Triton College*), Steve Samuel (*SUNY Old Westbury*), Patricio Santander (*Texas A&M University*), Gita Sathianathan (*California State University, Fullerton*), Sergey Savinov (*Purdue University, West Lafayette*), Ruben Savizky (*Cooper Union*), Amber Schaefer (*Texas A&M University*), Kirk Schanze (*University of Florida*), Kristian Schlick (*Montana State University*), Paul Schueler (*Raritan Valley Community College*), Alan Schwabacher (*University of Wisconsin, Milwaukee*), Pamela Seaton (*University of North Carolina, Wilmington*), Grigoriy Sereda (*University of South Dakota*), Jason Serin (*Glendale Community College*), Gary Shankweiler (*California State University, Long Beach*), Kevin Shaughnessy (*The University of Alabama*), Caroline Sheppard (*Clayton State University*), Emery Shier (*Amarillo College*), Richard Shreve (*Palm Beach State College*), John Shugart (*Coastal Carolina University*), Joel Shulman (*University of Cincinnati*), Gloria Silva (*Carnegie Mellon University*), Edward Skibo (*Arizona State University*), Joseph Sloop (*Georgia Gwinnett College*), Douglas Smith (*California State University, San Bernardino*), Michele Smith (*Georgia Southwestern State University*), Rhett Smith (*Clemson University*), Irina Smoliakova (*University of North Dakota*), Timothy Snowden (*University of Alabama*), Chad Snyder (*Western Kentucky University*), Scott Snyder (*Columbia University*), Vadim Soloshonok (*University of Oklahoma*), John Sowa (*Seton Hall University*), Teresa Speakman (*Golden West College*), Gary Spessard (*University of Oregon*), Laurie Starkey (*California Polytechnic University at Pomona*), Ashley Steelman (*University of Kentucky*), Mackay Steffensen (*Southern Utah University*), Richard Steiner (*University of Utah*), Corey Stephenson (*Boston University*), Nhu Y. Stessman (*California State University, Stanislaus*), Erland Stevens (*Davidson College*), Kevin Stewart (*Harding University*), James Stickler (*Allegany College of Maryland*), Sharon Stickley (*Columbus State Community College*), Robert Stockland (*Bucknell University*), Robert Stolow (*Tufts University*), Jennifer Swift (*Georgetown University*), Ron Swisher (*Oregon Institute of Technology*) Carole Szpunar (*Loyola University Chicago*), Claudia Taenzler (*University of Texas, Dallas*), Ming Tang (*University of California, Riverside*), John Taylor (*Rutgers University, New Brunswick*), Richard Taylor (*Miami University*), Sammer Tearli (*Collin College*), Christine Theodore (*The University of Tampa*), Marcus Thomsen (*Franklin & Marshall College*), Cynthia Tidwell (*University of Montevallo*), Eric Tillman (*Bucknell University*), Bruce Toder (*University of Rochester*), John Toivonen (*Santa Monica College*), Ana Tontcheva (*El Camino College*), William Trego (*Laney College*), Jennifer Tripp (*San Francisco State University*), Ernie Trujillo (*Wilkes University*), Ethan Tsui (*Metropolitan State University of Denver*), Lucas Tucker (*Siena College*), Daniel Turner (*University of Dayton*), Adam Urbach (*Trinity University*), Melissa Van Alstine (*Adelphi University*), Christopher Vanderwal (*University of California, Irvine*), Jennifer Van Wyk (*Southwestern Illinois College*), Aleskey Vasiliev (*East Tennessee State University*), Dennis Viernes (*University of Mary*), Heidi Vollmer-Snarr (*Brigham Young University*), Edmir Wade (*University of Southern Indiana*), Vidyullata Waghulde (*St. Louis Community College, Meramec*), Linda Waldman (*Cerritos College*), Kenneth Walsh (*University of Southern Indiana*), Reuben Walter (*Tarleton State University*), Don Warner (*Boise State University*), Sarah Weaver (*Xavier University of Louisiana*), Matthew Weinschenk (*Emory University*), Nina Weldy (*Kennesaw State University*), Andrew Wells (*Chabot College*), Peter Wepplo (*Monmouth University*), Lisa Whalen (*University of New Mexico*), Ronald Wikholm (*University of Connecticut, Storrs*), Anne Wilson (*Butler University*), Emerald Wilson (*Prince George's Community College*), Greg Wilson (*Dallas Baptist University*), Michael Wilson (*Temple University*), Leyte Winfield (*Spelman College*), Angela Winstead (*Morgan State University*), Erik Woodbury (*De Anza College*), Penny Workman (*University of Wisconsin, Marathon County*), Stephen Woski (*The University of Alabama*), Stephen Wuerz (*Highland Community College*), William Wuest (*Temple University*), Linfeng Xie (*University of Wisconsin, Oshkosh*), Hanying Xu (*Kingsborough Community College of CUNY*), Stephen Zawacki (*Erie Community College–North*), Jinsong Zhang (*California State University, Chico*), Regina Zibuck (*Wayne State University*)

CANADA

Ashley Causton (*University of Calgary*), Mike Chong (*University of Waterloo*), Andrew Dicks (*University of Toronto*), Isabelle Dionne (*Dawson College*), Paul Harrison (*McMaster University*), Torsten Hegmann (*University of Manitoba*), Bryan Hill (*Brandon University*), Philip Hultin, *University of Manitoba*), Ian Hunt (*University of Calgary*), Norman Hunter (*University of Manitoba*), Anne Johnson (*Ryerson University*), Edward Lee-Ruff (*York University*), Jimmy Lowe (*British Columbia Institute of Technology*), Isabel Molina (*Algoma University*), Scott Murphy (*University of Regina*), Michael Pollard (*York University*), Stanislaw Skonieczny (*University of Toronto*), John Sorensen (*University of Manitoba*), Jackie Stewart (*University of British Columbia*), Shirley Wacowich-Sgarbi (*Langara College*), Christopher Wilds (*Concordia University*), Vincent Ziffle (*First Nations University of Canada*)

This book could not have been created without the incredible efforts of the following people at John Wiley & Sons, Inc. Tom Nery conceived of a visually refreshing and compelling interior design and cover. Senior Course Production Specialist Patricia Gutierrez kept this book on schedule and was vital to ensuring such a high-quality product. Ed Dodd, Development Editor, was invaluable in the creation of this book. His tireless efforts, together with his day-to-day guidance and insight, made this project possible. Andrew Moore, Course Content Developer, built and managed compelling WileyPlus course assets and supplements. Marketing Manager Mike Olsen enthusiastically created an exciting message for this book. Georgia Larsen, Editorial Assistant, managed the review process. Sladjana Bruno, Associate Publisher, and Mary Donovan, Senior Managing Editor, continued the vision and supported the launch to market.

Despite my best efforts, as well as the best efforts of the reviewers, accuracy checkers, and class testers, errors may still exist. I take full responsibility for any such errors and would encourage those using my textbook to contact me with any errors that you may find.

David R. Klein, Ph.D.
Johns Hopkins University
klein@jhu.edu
or
david@kleinsv.com

1

A Review of General Chemistry

ELECTRONS, BONDS, AND MOLECULAR PROPERTIES

1.1 Introduction to Organic Chemistry
1.2 The Structural Theory of Matter
1.3 Electrons, Bonds, and Lewis Structures
1.4 Identifying Formal Charges
1.5 Induction and Polar Covalent Bonds
1.6 Reading Bond-Line Structures
1.7 Atomic Orbitals
1.8 Valence Bond Theory
1.9 Molecular Orbital Theory
1.10 Hybridized Atomic Orbitals
1.11 Predicting Molecular Geometry: VSEPR Theory
1.12 Dipole Moments and Molecular Polarity
1.13 Intermolecular Forces and Physical Properties
1.14 Solubility

Top (*Key*) Gary S Chapman/Photographer's Choice RF/Getty Images; *Top* (*Lightning*) Justin Horrocks/Getty Images

DID YOU EVER **WONDER…**
what causes lightning?

Believe it or not, the answer to this question is still the subject of debate (that's right… scientists have not yet figured out everything, contrary to popular belief). There are various theories that attempt to explain what causes the buildup of electric charge in clouds. One thing is clear, though—lightning involves a flow of electrons. By studying the nature of electrons and how electrons flow, it is possible to control where lightning will strike. A tall building can be protected by installing a lightning rod (a tall metal column at the top of the building) that attracts any nearby lightning bolt, thereby preventing a direct strike on the building itself. The lightning rod on the top of the Empire State Building is struck over a hundred times each year.

Just as scientists have discovered how to direct electrons in a bolt of lightning, chemists have also discovered how to direct electrons in chemical reactions. We will soon see that although organic chemistry is literally defined as the study of compounds containing carbon atoms, its true essence is actually the study of electrons, not atoms. Rather than thinking of reactions in terms of the motion of atoms, we must

continued >

Keystone/Hulton Archive/Getty Images

Cole Vineyard/iStockphoto

Selma ARSLAN/Shutterstock.com

Chang W. Lee/The New York Times/Redux Pictures

recognize that *reactions occur as a result of the motion of electrons*. For example, in the following reaction the curved arrows represent the motion, or flow, of electrons. This flow of electrons causes the chemical change shown:

Throughout this course, we will learn how, when, and why electrons flow during reactions. We will learn about the barriers that prevent electrons from flowing, and we will learn how to overcome those barriers. In short, we will study the behavioral patterns of electrons, enabling us to predict, and even control, the outcomes of chemical reactions.

This chapter reviews some relevant concepts from your general chemistry course that should be familiar to you. Specifically, we will focus on the central role of electrons in forming bonds and influencing molecular properties.

1.1 Introduction to Organic Chemistry

In the early nineteenth century, scientists classified all known compounds into two categories: *Organic compounds* were derived from living organisms (plants and animals), while *inorganic compounds* were derived from nonliving sources (minerals and gases). This distinction was fueled by the observation that organic compounds seemed to possess different properties than inorganic compounds. Organic compounds were often difficult to isolate and purify, and upon heating, they decomposed more readily than inorganic compounds. To explain these curious observations, many scientists subscribed to a belief that compounds obtained from living sources possessed a special "vital force" that inorganic compounds lacked. This notion, called vitalism, stipulated that it should be impossible to convert inorganic compounds into organic compounds without the introduction of an outside vital force. Vitalism was dealt a serious blow in 1828 when German chemist Friedrich Wöhler demonstrated the conversion of ammonium cyanate (a known inorganic salt) into urea, a known organic compound found in urine:

BY THE WAY
There are some carbon-containing compounds that are traditionally excluded from organic classification. For example, ammonium cyanate (seen on this page) is still classified as inorganic, despite the presence of a carbon atom. Other exceptions include sodium carbonate (Na_2CO_3) and potassium cyanide (KCN), both of which are also considered to be inorganic compounds. We will not encounter many more exceptions.

Over the decades that followed, other examples were found, and the concept of vitalism was gradually rejected. The downfall of vitalism shattered the original distinction between organic and inorganic compounds, and a new definition emerged. Specifically, **organic** compounds became defined as those compounds containing carbon atoms, while **inorganic** compounds generally were defined as those compounds lacking carbon atoms.

Organic chemistry occupies a central role in the world around us, as we are surrounded by organic compounds. The food that we eat and the clothes that we wear are comprised of organic compounds. Our ability to smell odors or see colors results from the behavior of organic compounds. Pharmaceuticals, pesticides, paints, adhesives, and plastics are all made from organic compounds. In fact, our bodies are constructed mostly from organic compounds (DNA, RNA, proteins, etc.) whose behavior and function are determined by the guiding principles of organic chemistry. The responses of our bodies to pharmaceuticals are the results of reactions guided by the principles of organic chemistry. A deep understanding of those principles enables the design of new drugs that fight disease and improve the overall quality of life and longevity. Accordingly, it is not surprising that organic chemistry is required knowledge for anyone entering the health professions.

1.2 The Structural Theory of Matter

In the mid-nineteenth century three individuals, working independently, laid the conceptual foundations for the structural theory of matter. August Kekulé, Archibald Scott Couper, and Alexander M. Butlerov each suggested that substances are defined by a specific arrangement of atoms. As an example, consider the following two compounds:

Dimethyl ether
Boiling point = −23°C

Ethanol
Boiling point = 78.4°C

These compounds have the same molecular formula (C_2H_6O), yet they differ from each other in the way the atoms are connected—that is, they differ in their constitution. As a result, they are called **constitutional isomers**. Constitutional isomers have different physical properties and different names. The first compound is a colorless gas used as an aerosol spray propellant, while the second compound is a clear liquid, commonly referred to as "alcohol," found in alcoholic beverages.

According to the structural theory of matter, each element will generally form a predictable number of bonds. For example, carbon generally forms four bonds and is therefore said to be **tetravalent**. Nitrogen generally forms three bonds and is therefore **trivalent**. Oxygen forms two bonds and is **divalent**, while hydrogen and the halogens form one bond and are **monovalent** (Figure 1.1).

Tetravalent	*Trivalent*	*Divalent*	*Monovalent*
—C—	—N—	—O—	H— X— (where X = F, Cl, Br, or I)
Carbon generally forms ***four*** bonds.	Nitrogen generally forms ***three*** bonds.	Oxygen generally forms ***two*** bonds.	Hydrogen and halogens generally form ***one*** bond.

FIGURE 1.1
Valencies of some common elements encountered in organic chemistry.

SKILLBUILDER

1.1 DRAWING CONSTITUTIONAL ISOMERS OF SMALL MOLECULES

LEARN the skill

Draw all constitutional isomers that have the molecular formula C_3H_8O.

SOLUTION

Begin by determining the valency of each atom that appears in the molecular formula. Carbon is tetravalent, hydrogen is monovalent, and oxygen is divalent. The atoms with the highest valency are connected first. So, in this case, we draw our first isomer by connecting the three carbon atoms, as well as the oxygen atom, as shown below. The drawing is completed when the monovalent atoms (H) are placed at the periphery:

STEP 1
Determine the valency of each atom that appears in the molecular formula.

STEP 2
Connect the atoms of highest valency, and place the monovalent atoms at the periphery.

This isomer (called 1-propanol) can be drawn in many different ways, some of which are shown here:

1-Propanol 1-Propanol 1-Propanol 1-Propanol

All of these drawings represent the same isomer. If we number the carbon atoms (C1, C2, and C3), with C1 being the carbon atom connected to oxygen, then all of the drawings above show the same connectivity: a three-carbon chain with an oxygen atom attached at one end of the chain.

STEP 3
Consider other ways to connect the atoms.

Thus far, we have drawn just one isomer that has the molecular formula C_3H_8O. Other constitutional isomers can be drawn if we consider other possible ways of connecting the three carbon atoms and the oxygen atom. For example, the oxygen atom can be connected to C2 (rather than C1), giving a compound called 2-propanol (shown below). Alternatively, the oxygen atom can be inserted between two carbon atoms, giving a compound called ethyl methyl ether (also shown below). For each isomer, two of the many acceptable drawings are shown:

2-Propanol

Ethyl methyl ether

If we continue to search for alternate ways of connecting the three carbon atoms and the oxygen atom, we will not find any other ways of connecting them. So in summary, there are a total of three constitutional isomers with the molecular formula C_3H_8O, shown here:

Oxygen is connected to C1 Oxygen is connected to C2 Oxygen is between two carbon atoms

Additional skills (not yet discussed) are required to draw constitutional isomers of compounds containing a ring, a double bond, or a triple bond. Those skills will be developed in Section 14.16.

PRACTICE the skill

1.1 Draw all constitutional isomers with the following molecular formula.

(a) C_3H_7Cl **(b)** C_4H_{10} **(c)** C_5H_{12} **(d)** $C_4H_{10}O$ **(e)** $C_3H_6Cl_2$

APPLY the skill

1.2 Chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs) are gases that were once widely used as refrigerants and propellants. When it was discovered that these molecules contributed to the depletion of the ozone layer, their use was banned, but CFCs continue to be detected as contaminants in the environment.[1] Draw all of the constitutional isomers of CFCs that have the molecular formula $C_2Cl_3F_3$.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 1.32, 1.42, 1.51**

1.3 Electrons, Bonds, and Lewis Structures

What Are Bonds?

As mentioned, atoms are connected to each other by bonds. That is, bonds are the "glue" that hold atoms together. But what is this mysterious glue and how does it work? In order to answer this question, we must focus our attention on electrons.

The existence of the electron was first proposed in 1874 by George Johnstone Stoney (National University of Ireland), who attempted to explain electrochemistry by suggesting the existence of

a particle bearing a unit of charge. Stoney coined the term *electron* to describe this particle. In 1897, J. J. Thomson (Cambridge University) demonstrated evidence supporting the existence of Stoney's mysterious electron and is credited with discovering the electron. In 1916, Gilbert Lewis (University of California, Berkeley) defined a **covalent bond** as the result of *two atoms sharing a pair of electrons*. As a simple example, consider the formation of a bond between two hydrogen atoms:

Each hydrogen atom has one electron. When these electrons are shared to form a bond, there is a decrease in energy, indicated by the negative value of ΔH. The energy diagram in Figure 1.2 plots the energy of the two hydrogen atoms as a function of the distance between them. Focus on the right side of the diagram, which represents the hydrogen atoms separated by a large distance. Moving toward the left on the diagram, the hydrogen atoms approach each other, and there are several forces that must be taken into account: (1) the force of repulsion between the two negatively charged electrons, (2) the force of repulsion between the two positively charged nuclei, and (3) the forces of attraction between the positively charged nuclei and the negatively charged electrons. As the hydrogen atoms get closer to each other, all of these forces get stronger. Under these circumstances, the electrons are capable of moving in such a way so as to minimize the repulsive forces between them while maximizing their attractive forces with the nuclei. This provides for a net force of attraction, which lowers the energy of the system. As the hydrogen atoms move still closer together, the energy continues to be lowered until the nuclei achieve a separation (internuclear distance) of 0.74 angstroms (Å). At that point, the force of repulsion between the nuclei begins to overwhelm the forces of attraction, causing the energy of the system to increase if the atoms are brought any closer together. The lowest point on the curve represents the lowest energy (most stable) state. This state determines both the bond length (0.74 Å) and the bond strength (436 kJ/mol).

FIGURE 1.2
An energy diagram showing the energy as a function of the internuclear distance between two hydrogen atoms.

BY THE WAY
1 Å = 10^{-10} meters.

Drawing the Lewis Structure of an Atom

Armed with the idea that a bond represents a pair of shared electrons, Lewis then devised a method for drawing structures. In his drawings, called **Lewis structures**, the electrons take center stage. We will begin by drawing individual atoms, and then we will draw Lewis structures for small molecules. First, we must review a few simple features of atomic structure:

- The nucleus of an atom is comprised of protons and neutrons. Each proton has a charge of +1, and each neutron is electrically neutral.
- For a neutral atom, the number of protons is balanced by an equal number of electrons, which have a charge of −1 and exist in shells. The first shell, which is closest to the nucleus, can contain two electrons, and the second shell can contain up to eight electrons.
- The electrons in the outermost shell of an atom are called the valence electrons. The number of valence electrons in an atom is identified by its group number in the periodic table (Figure 1.3). So, for example, carbon (C) has four valence electrons because it is in group 4A of the periodic table.

FIGURE 1.3
A periodic table showing group numbers.

The Lewis dot structure of an individual atom indicates the number of valence electrons, which are placed as dots around the periodic symbol of the atom (C for carbon, O for oxygen, etc.). For atoms

with four or fewer valence electrons, each valence electron is drawn by itself (unpaired), as seen in the following cases:

For atoms with more than four valence electrons, the first four valence electrons are drawn unpaired (as seen in the case of carbon above), and then each of the remaining valence electrons is paired up with an electron already drawn:

Drawing the Lewis Structure of a Small Molecule

The Lewis dot structures of individual atoms are combined to produce Lewis dot structures of small molecules. These drawings are constructed based on the observation that atoms tend to bond in such a way so as to achieve an electron configuration with a full valence shell, just like that of a noble gas. For example, hydrogen will form one bond to achieve the electron configuration of helium (two valence electrons), while second-row elements (C, N, O, and F) will form the necessary number of bonds so as to achieve the electron configuration of neon (eight valence electrons).

This observation, called the **octet rule**, explains why carbon is tetravalent. As just shown, it can achieve an octet of electrons by using each of its four valence electrons to form a bond. The octet rule also explains why nitrogen is trivalent. Specifically, it has five valence electrons and requires three bonds in order to achieve an octet of electrons. Notice that the nitrogen atom contains one pair of unshared, or nonbonding, electrons, called a **lone pair**.

In Chapter 2, we will discuss the octet rule in more detail; in particular, we will explore when it can be violated and when it cannot be violated. For now, let's practice drawing Lewis structures.

SKILLBUILDER

1.2 DRAWING THE LEWIS STRUCTURE OF A SMALL MOLECULE

LEARN the skill

Draw the Lewis structure of CH_2O.

SOLUTION

There are four discrete steps when drawing a Lewis structure: First determine the number of valence electrons for each atom.

STEP 1 Draw all individual atoms.

Then, connect any atoms that form more than one bond. Hydrogen atoms only form one bond each, so we will save those for last. In this case, we connect the C and the O.

STEP 2 Connect atoms that form more than one bond.

Next, connect all hydrogen atoms. We place the hydrogen atoms next to carbon, because carbon has more unpaired electrons than oxygen.

STEP 3 Connect the hydrogen atoms.

Finally, check to see if each atom (except hydrogen) has an octet. In fact, neither the carbon nor the oxygen has an octet, so in a situation like this, the unpaired electrons are shared as a double bond between carbon and oxygen.

STEP 4 Pair any unpaired electrons so that each atom achieves an octet.

Now all atoms have achieved an octet. When drawing Lewis structures, remember that you cannot simply add more electrons to the drawing. For each atom to achieve an octet, the existing electrons must be shared. The total number of valence electrons should be correct when you are finished. In this example, there was one carbon atom, two hydrogen atoms, and one oxygen atom, giving a total of 12 valence electrons (4 + 2 + 6). The drawing above MUST have 12 valence electrons, no more and no less.

PRACTICE the skill

1.3 Draw a Lewis structure for each of the following compounds:

(a) C_2H_6 **(b)** C_2H_4 **(c)** C_2H_2 **(d)** C_3H_8 **(e)** CH_3OH

1.4 Borane (BH_3) is very unstable and quite reactive. Draw a Lewis structure of borane and explain the source of the instability.

1.5 There are four constitutional isomers with the molecular formula C_3H_9N. Draw a Lewis structure for each isomer and determine the number of lone pairs on the nitrogen atom in each case.

APPLY the skill

1.6 Smoking tobacco with a water pipe, or hookah, is often perceived as being less dangerous than smoking cigarettes, but hookah smoke has been found to contain the same variety of toxins and carcinogens (cancer-causing compounds) as cigarette smoke.[2] Draw a Lewis structure for each of the following dangerous compounds found in tobacco smoke:

(a) HCN (hydrogen cyanide) **(b)** $CH_2CHCHCH_2$ (1,3-butadiene)

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problem 1.35**

1.4 Identifying Formal Charges

A **formal charge** is associated with any atom that does not exhibit the appropriate number of valence electrons. When such an atom is present in a Lewis structure, the formal charge must be drawn. Identifying a formal charge requires two discrete tasks:

1. Determine the appropriate number of valence electrons for an atom.
2. Determine whether the atom exhibits the appropriate number of electrons.

The first task can be accomplished by inspecting the periodic table. As mentioned earlier, the group number indicates the appropriate number of valence electrons for each atom. For example, carbon is in group 4A and therefore has four valence electrons. Oxygen is in group 6A and has six valence electrons.

After identifying the appropriate number of electrons for each atom in a Lewis structure, the next task is to determine if any of the atoms exhibit an unexpected number of electrons. For example, consider the structure shown on the right:

Each line represents two shared electrons (a bond). For our purposes, we must split each bond apart equally, and then count the number of electrons on each atom.

Each hydrogen atom has one valence electron, as expected. The carbon atom also has the appropriate number of valence electrons (four), but the oxygen atom does not. The oxygen atom in this structure exhibits seven valence electrons, but it should only have six. In this case, the oxygen atom has one extra electron, and it must therefore bear a negative formal charge, which is indicated as shown:

SKILLBUILDER

1.3 CALCULATING FORMAL CHARGE

LEARN the skill

Consider the nitrogen atom in the structure below and determine if it has a formal charge:

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Determine the appropriate number of valence electrons.

We begin by determining the appropriate number of valence electrons for a nitrogen atom. Nitrogen is in group 5A of the periodic table, and it should therefore have five valence electrons.

STEP 2
Determine the actual number of valence electrons in this case.

Next, we count how many valence electrons are exhibited by the nitrogen atom in this particular example.

STEP 3
Assign a formal charge.

In this case, the nitrogen atom exhibits only four valence electrons. It is missing one electron, so it must bear a positive charge, which is shown like this:

PRACTICE the skill

1.7 Identify any formal charges in the structures below:

(a)
(b)
(c)
(d)
(e)

(f)
(g)
(h)
(i)

1.8 Draw a structure for each of the following ions; in each case, indicate which atom possesses the formal charge:

(a) BH_4^- **(b)** NH_2^- **(c)** $C_2H_5^+$

APPLY the skill

1.9 If you are having trouble paying attention during a long lecture, your levels of acetylcholine (a neurotransmitter) may be to blame.[3] Identify any formal charges in acetylcholine.

Acetylcholine

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problem 1.66, 1.81a**

1.5 Induction and Polar Covalent Bonds

Chemists classify bonds into three categories: (1) covalent, (2) polar covalent, and (3) ionic. These categories emerge from the electronegativity values of the atoms sharing a bond. Electronegativity is a measure of the ability of an atom to attract electrons. Table 1.1 gives electronegativity values for elements commonly encountered in organic chemistry.

TABLE 1.1 ELECTRONEGATIVITY VALUES OF SOME COMMON ELEMENTS

Increasing electronegativity →

		H 2.1				
Li 1.0	Be 1.5	B 2.0	C 2.5	N 3.0	O 3.5	F 4.0
Na 0.9	Mg 1.2	Al 1.5	Si 1.8	P 2.1	S 2.5	Cl 3.0
K 0.8						Br 2.8

↑ Increasing electronegativity

When two atoms form a bond, one critical consideration allows us to classify the bond: What is the difference in the electronegativity values of the two atoms? Below are some rough guidelines:

If the difference in electronegativity is less than 0.5, the electrons are considered to be equally shared between the two atoms, resulting in a covalent bond. Examples include C—C and C—H:

The C—C bond is clearly covalent, because there is no difference in electronegativity between the two atoms forming the bond. Even a C—H bond is considered to be covalent, because the difference in electronegativity between C and H is less than 0.5.

If the difference in electronegativity is between 0.5 and 1.7, the electrons are not shared equally between the atoms, resulting in a **polar covalent bond**. For example, consider a bond between carbon and oxygen (C—O). Oxygen is significantly more electronegative (3.5) than carbon (2.5), and therefore oxygen will more strongly attract the electrons of the bond. The withdrawal of electrons toward oxygen is called **induction**, which is often indicated with an arrow like this.

Induction causes the formation of partial positive and partial negative charges, symbolized by the Greek symbol delta (δ). The partial charges that result from induction will be very important in upcoming chapters.

If the difference in electronegativity is greater than 1.7, the electrons are not shared at all. For example, consider the bond between sodium and oxygen in sodium hydroxide (NaOH).

The difference in electronegativity between O and Na is so great that both electrons of the bond are possessed solely by the oxygen atom, rendering the oxygen negatively charged and the sodium positively charged. The bond between oxygen and sodium, called an **ionic bond**, is the result of the force of attraction between the two oppositely charged ions.

The cutoff numbers (0.5 and 1.7) should be thought of as rough guidelines. Rather than viewing them as absolute, we must view the various types of bonds as belonging to a spectrum without clear cutoffs (Figure 1.4).

FIGURE 1.4
The nature of various bonds commonly encountered in organic chemistry.

This spectrum has two extremes: covalent bonds on the left and ionic bonds on the right. Between these two extremes are the polar covalent bonds. Some bonds fit clearly into one category, such as C—C bonds (covalent), C—O bonds (polar covalent), or NaCl bonds (ionic). However,

there are many cases that are not so clear-cut. For example, a C—Li bond has a difference in electronegativity of 1.5, and this bond is often drawn either as polar covalent or as ionic. Both drawings are acceptable:

Another reason to avoid absolute cutoff numbers when comparing electronegativity values is that the electronegativity values shown above are obtained via one particular method developed by Linus Pauling. However, there are at least seven other methods for calculating electronegativity values, each of which provides slightly different values. Strict adherence to the Pauling scale would suggest that C—Br and C—I bonds are covalent, but these bonds will be treated as polar covalent throughout this course.

SKILLBUILDER

1.4 LOCATING PARTIAL CHARGES RESULTING FROM INDUCTION

LEARN the skill

Consider the structure of methanol. Identify all polar covalent bonds and show any partial charges that result from inductive effects:

Methanol

SOLUTION

First identify all polar covalent bonds. The C—H bonds are considered to be covalent because the electronegativity values for C and H are fairly close. It is true that carbon is more electronegative than hydrogen, and therefore, there is a small inductive effect for each C—H bond. However, we will generally consider this effect to be negligible for C—H bonds.

The C—O bond and the O—H bond are both polar covalent bonds:

STEP 1
Identify all polar covalent bonds.

Now determine the direction of the inductive effects. Oxygen is more electronegative than C or H, so the inductive effects are shown like this:

STEP 2
Determine the direction of each dipole.

These inductive effects dictate the locations of the partial charges:

STEP 3
Indicate the location of partial charges.

PRACTICE the skill

1.10 For each of the following compounds, identify any polar covalent bonds by drawing δ+ and δ− symbols in the appropriate locations:

APPLY the skill

1.11 The regions of δ+ in a compound are the regions most likely to be attacked by an anion, such as hydroxide (HO^-). In the compound shown, identify the two carbon atoms that are most likely to be attacked by a hydroxide ion.

1.12 Plastics and synthetic fibers are examples of *polymers*, which are very large molecules made by joining repeating subunits of carbon-containing molecules (explored in more detail in Chapter 27). Although most synthetic polymers are prepared from fossil fuel sources, many researchers are exploring ways to make polymers from renewable sources instead. One example is the synthesis of an epoxy resin polymer using a by-product from cashew nut processing, another compound isolated from corn cobs, and epichlorohydrin, shown here.[4] Identify any polar covalent bonds in epichlorohydrin by drawing δ+ and δ− symbols in the appropriate locations.

Epichlorohydrin

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 1.33, 1.34, 1.43, 1.54**

Electrostatic Potential Maps

Partial charges can be visualized with three-dimensional, rainbow-like images called **electrostatic potential maps**. As an example, consider the following electrostatic potential map of chloromethane:

Chloromethane | Electrostatic potential map of chloromethane | Color scale

In the image, a color scale is used to represent areas of δ− and δ+. As indicated, red represents a region that is δ−, while blue represents a region that is δ+. In reality, electrostatic potential maps are rarely used by practicing organic chemists when they communicate with each other; however, these illustrations can often be helpful to students who are learning organic chemistry. Electrostatic potential maps are generated by performing a series of calculations. Specifically, an imaginary point positive charge is positioned at various locations, and for each location, we calculate the potential energy associated with the attraction between the point positive charge and the surrounding electrons. A large attraction indicates a position of δ−, while a small attraction indicates a position of δ+. The results are then illustrated using colors, as shown above.

A comparison of any two electrostatic potential maps is only valid if both maps were prepared using the same color scale. Throughout this book, care has been taken to use the same color scale whenever two maps are directly compared to each other. However, it will not be useful to compare two maps from different pages of this book (or any other book), as the exact color scales are likely to be different.

1.6 Reading Bond-Line Structures

It is not practical to draw Lewis structures for all compounds, especially large ones. As an example, consider the structure of amoxicillin, one of the most commonly used antibiotics in the penicillin family:

Amoxicillin

Previously fatal infections have been rendered harmless by antibiotics such as the one above. Amoxicillin is not a large compound, yet drawing this compound is time consuming. To deal with this problem, organic chemists have developed an efficient drawing style that can be used to draw molecules very quickly. **Bond-line structures** not only simplify the drawing process but also are easier to read. The following is a bond-line structure of amoxicillin.

Most of the atoms are not drawn, but with practice, these drawings will become very user-friendly. Throughout the rest of this textbook, most compounds will be drawn in bond-line format, and therefore, it is absolutely critical that you are able to read these types of drawings. This section is designed to develop the skills necessary to read and interpret bond-line drawings.

BY THE WAY

You may find it worthwhile to purchase or borrow a molecular model set. There are several different kinds of molecular model sets on the market, and most of them are comprised of plastic pieces that can be connected to generate models of small molecules. Any one of these model sets will help you to visualize the relationship between molecular structures and the drawings used to represent them.

How to Read Bond-Line Structures

Bond-line structures are drawn in a zigzag format ( ), where each corner or endpoint represents a carbon atom. For example, each of the following compounds has six carbon atoms (count them!):

Double bonds are shown with two lines, and triple bonds are shown with three lines:

Notice that triple bonds are drawn in a linear fashion rather than in a zigzag format because triple bonds have linear geometry (as we will see in Section 1.10). The two carbon atoms of a triple bond and the two carbon atoms connected to them are drawn in a straight line. All other bonds are drawn in a zigzag format; for example, the following compound has eight carbon atoms:

Hydrogen atoms bonded to carbon are also not shown in bond-line structures, because it is assumed that each carbon atom will possess enough hydrogen atoms so as to achieve a total of four bonds (an octet of electrons). For example, the following highlighted carbon atom appears to have only two bonds:

Therefore, we can infer that there must be two more bonds to hydrogen atoms that have not been drawn (to give a total of four bonds). In this way, all hydrogen atoms are inferred by the drawing:

With a bit of practice, it will no longer be necessary to count bonds. Familiarity with bond-line structures will allow you to "see" all of the hydrogen atoms even though they are not drawn. This level of familiarity is absolutely essential, so let's get some practice.

SKILLBUILDER

1.5 READING BOND-LINE STRUCTURES

LEARN the skill

Consider the structure of diazepam, first marketed by the Hoffmann-La Roche Company under the trade name Valium. Diazepam is a sedative and muscle relaxant used in the treatment of anxiety, insomnia, and seizures. Identify the number of carbon atoms in diazepam, then fill in all the missing hydrogen atoms that are inferred by the drawing.

Diazepam (Valium)

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Count the carbon atoms, which are represented by corners or endpoints.

Remember that each corner and each endpoint represents a carbon atom. This compound therefore has 16 carbon atoms, highlighted here.

STEP 2
Count the hydrogen atoms. Each carbon atom will have enough hydrogen atoms to have exactly four bonds.

Each carbon atom should have four bonds. We therefore draw enough hydrogen atoms in order to give each carbon atom a total of four bonds. Any carbon atoms that already have four bonds will not have any hydrogen atoms:

PRACTICE the skill

1.13 For each of the following molecules, determine the number of carbon atoms present and then determine the number of hydrogen atoms connected to each carbon atom:

(a) (b) (c) (d) (e) (f)

APPLY the skill

1.14 Initially approved to treat psoriasis (a skin disorder) and rheumatoid arthritis, the drug tofacitinib has recently been found to also promote hair growth and restore hair loss.[5] Identify the number of carbon atoms in tofacitinib, and then fill in all of the missing hydrogen atoms that are inferred by the drawing.

Tofacitinib

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 1.46, 1.47, 1.71**

1.7 Atomic Orbitals

Quantum Mechanics

By the 1920s, vitalism had been discarded. Chemists were aware of constitutional isomerism and had developed the structural theory of matter. The electron had been discovered and identified as the source of bonding, and Lewis structures were used to keep track of shared and unshared electrons. But the understanding of electrons was about to change dramatically.

In 1924, French physicist Louis de Broglie suggested that electrons, heretofore considered as particles, also exhibited wavelike properties. Based on this assertion, a new theory of matter was born. In 1926, Erwin Schrödinger, Werner Heisenberg, and Paul Dirac independently proposed a mathematical description of the electron that incorporated its wavelike properties. This new theory, called *wave mechanics*, or **quantum mechanics**, radically changed the way we viewed the nature of matter and laid the foundation for our current understanding of electrons and bonds.

Quantum mechanics is deeply rooted in mathematics and represents an entire subject by itself. The mathematics involved is beyond the scope of our course, and we will not discuss it here. However, in order to understand the nature of electrons, it is critical to understand a few simple highlights from quantum mechanics:

- An equation is constructed to describe the total energy of a hydrogen atom (i.e., one proton plus one electron). This equation, called the **wave equation**, takes into account the wavelike behavior of an electron that is in the electric field of a proton.
- The wave equation is then solved to give a series of solutions called **wavefunctions**. The Greek symbol psi (ψ) is used to denote each wavefunction (ψ_1, ψ_2, ψ_3, etc.). Each of these wavefunctions corresponds to an allowed energy level for the electron. This result is incredibly important because it suggests that an electron, when contained in an atom, can only exist at discrete energy levels (ψ_1, ψ_2, ψ_3, etc.). In other words, the energy of the electron is *quantized*.
- Each wavefunction is a function of spatial location. It provides information that allows us to assign a numerical value for each location in three-dimensional space relative to the nucleus. The square of that value (ψ^2 for any particular location) has a special meaning. It indicates the probability of finding the electron in that location. Therefore, a three-dimensional plot of ψ^2 will generate an image of an atomic orbital (Figure 1.5).

FIGURE 1.5
Illustrations of an *s* orbital and three *p* orbitals.

Electron Density and Atomic Orbitals

An *orbital* is a region of space that can be occupied by an electron. But care must be taken when trying to visualize this. There is a statement from earlier in this section that must be clarified because it is potentially misleading: "ψ^2 *represents the probability of finding an electron in a particular location*." This statement seems to treat an electron as if it were a particle flying around within a specific region of space. But remember that an electron is not purely a particle—it has wavelike properties as well. Therefore, we must construct a mental image that captures both of these properties. That is not easy to do, but the following analogy might help. We will treat an occupied orbital as if it is a cloud—similar to a cloud in the sky. No analogy is perfect, and there are certainly features of clouds that are very different from orbitals. However, focusing on some of these differences between electron

clouds (occupied orbitals) and real clouds makes it possible to construct a better mental model of an electron in an orbital:

- Clouds in the sky can come in any shape or size. However, electron clouds have specific shapes and sizes (as defined by the orbitals).
- A cloud in the sky is comprised of billions of individual water molecules. An electron cloud is not comprised of billions of particles. We must think of an electron cloud as a single entity, even though it can be thicker in some places and thinner in other places. This concept is critical and will be used extensively throughout the course in explaining reactions.
- A cloud in the sky has edges, and it is possible to define a region of space that contains 100% of the cloud. In contrast, an electron cloud does not have defined edges. We frequently use the term **electron density**, which is associated with the probability of finding an electron in a particular region of space. The "shape" of an orbital refers to a region of space that contains 90–95% of the electron density. Beyond this region, the remaining 5–10% of the electron density tapers off but never ends. In fact, if we want to consider the region of space that contains 100% of the electron density, we must consider the entire universe.

In summary, we must think of an orbital as a region of space that can be occupied by electron density. An occupied orbital must be treated as a *cloud of electron density*. This region of space is called an **atomic orbital** (AO), because it is a region of space defined with respect to the nucleus of a single atom. Examples of atomic orbitals are the *s*, *p*, *d*, and *f* orbitals that were discussed in your general chemistry textbook.

Phases of Atomic Orbitals

Our discussion of electrons and orbitals has been based on the premise that electrons have wavelike properties. As a result, it will be necessary to explore some of the characteristics of simple waves in order to understand some of the characteristics of orbitals.

Consider a wave that moves across the surface of a lake (Figure 1.6). The wavefunction (ψ) mathematically describes the wave, and the value of the wavefunction is dependent on location. Locations above the average level of the lake have a positive value for ψ (indicated in red), and locations below the average level of the lake have a negative value for ψ (indicated in blue). Locations where the value of ψ is zero are called **nodes**.

FIGURE 1.6
Phases of a wave moving across the surface of a lake.

FIGURE 1.7
The phases of a *p* orbital.

Similarly, orbitals can have regions where the value of ψ is positive, negative, or zero. For example, consider a *p* orbital (Figure 1.7). Notice that the *p* orbital has two lobes: The top lobe is a region of space where the values of ψ are positive, while the bottom lobe is a region where the values of ψ are negative. Between the two lobes is a location where $\psi = 0$. This location represents a node.

Be careful not to confuse the sign of ψ (+ or −) with electrical charge. A positive value for ψ does not imply a positive charge. The value of ψ (+ or −) is a mathematical convention that refers to the *phase* of the wave (just like in the lake). Although ψ can have positive or negative values, nevertheless ψ^2 (which describes the electron density as a function of location) will always be a positive number. At a node, where $\psi = 0$, the electron density (ψ^2) will also be zero. This means that there is no electron density located at a node.

From this point forward, we will draw the lobes of an orbital with colors (red and blue) to indicate the phase of ψ for each region of space.

Filling Atomic Orbitals with Electrons

The energy of an electron depends on the type of orbital that it occupies. Most of the organic compounds that we will encounter will be composed of first- and second-row elements (H, C, N, and O). These elements utilize the 1*s* orbital, the 2*s* orbital, and the three 2*p* orbitals. Our discussions will therefore focus primarily on these orbitals (Figure 1.8). Electrons are lowest in energy when they occupy a 1*s* orbital, because the 1*s* orbital is closest to the nucleus and it has no nodes (the more nodes that an orbital has, the greater its energy). The 2*s* orbital has one node and is farther away from the nucleus; it is therefore higher in energy than the 1*s* orbital. After the 2*s* orbital, there are three 2*p* orbitals that are all equivalent in energy to one another. Orbitals with the same energy level are called **degenerate orbitals**.

FIGURE 1.8
Illustrations of *s* orbitals and three *p* orbitals.

As we move across the periodic table, starting with hydrogen, each element has one more electron than the element before it (Figure 1.9). The order in which the orbitals are filled by electrons is determined by just three simple principles:

1. The **Aufbau principle.** The lowest energy orbital is filled first.
2. The **Pauli exclusion principle.** Each orbital can accommodate a maximum of two electrons that have opposite spin. To understand what "spin" means, we can imagine an electron spinning in space (although this is an oversimplified explanation of the term "spin"). For reasons that are beyond the scope of this course, electrons only have two possible spin states (designated by ↓ or ↑). In order for the orbital to accommodate two electrons, the electrons must have opposite spin states.
3. **Hund's rule.** When dealing with degenerate orbitals, such as *p* orbitals, one electron is placed in each degenerate orbital first, before electrons are paired up.

FIGURE 1.9
Energy diagrams showing the electron configurations for H, He, Li, and Be.

The application of the first two principles can be seen in the electron configurations shown in Figure 1.9 (H, He, Li, and Be). The application of the third principle can be seen in the electron configurations for the remaining second-row elements (Figure 1.10).

FIGURE 1.10
Energy diagrams showing the electron configurations for B, C, N, O, F, and Ne.

SKILLBUILDER

1.6 IDENTIFYING ELECTRON CONFIGURATIONS

LEARN the skill

Identify the electron configuration of a nitrogen atom.

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Place the valence electrons in atomic orbitals using the Aufbau principle, the Pauli exclusion principle, and Hund's rule.

The electron configuration indicates which atomic orbitals are occupied by electrons. Nitrogen has a total of seven electrons. These electrons occupy atomic orbitals of increasing energy, with a maximum of two electrons in each orbital:

Nitrogen

STEP 2
Identify the number of valence electrons in each atomic orbital.

Two electrons occupy the 1*s* orbital, two electrons occupy the 2*s* orbital, and three electrons occupy the 2*p* orbitals. This is summarized using the following notation:

$$1s^2 2s^2 2p^3$$

PRACTICE the skill

1.15 Identify the electron configuration for each of the following atoms:

(a) Carbon **(b)** Oxygen **(c)** Boron **(d)** Fluorine **(e)** Sodium **(f)** Aluminum

1.16 Identify the electron configuration for each of the following ions:

(a) A carbon atom with a negative charge
(b) A carbon atom with a positive charge
(c) A nitrogen atom with a positive charge
(d) An oxygen atom with a negative charge

APPLY the skill

1.17 Silicon is the second most abundant element in the Earth's crust, and its compounds can be as ordinary as beach sand. However, silicon also plays an indispensable role in modern devices such as computers, cell phones, semiconductors, and solar panels. A recent technology incorporates silicon in nanometer-sized particles called quantum dots that act as luminescent labels for pancreatic cancer cells.[6] Identify the electron configuration of a silicon atom.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problem 1.40**

1.8 Valence Bond Theory

With the understanding that electrons occupy regions of space called orbitals, we can now turn our attention to a deeper understanding of covalent bonds. Specifically, a covalent bond is formed from the overlap of atomic orbitals. There are two commonly used theories for describing the nature of atomic orbital overlap: valence bond theory and molecular orbital (MO) theory. The valence bond approach is more simplistic in its treatment of bonds, and therefore we will begin our discussion with valence bond theory.

If we are going to treat electrons as waves, then we must quickly review what happens when two waves interact with each other. Two waves that approach each other can interfere in one of two possible ways—constructively or destructively. Similarly, when atomic orbitals overlap, they can interfere either constructively (Figure 1.11) or destructively (Figure 1.12).

FIGURE 1.11
Constructive interference resulting from the interaction of two electrons.

Constructive interference produces a wave with larger amplitude. In contrast, destructive interference results in waves canceling each other, which produces a node (Figure 1.12).

FIGURE 1.12
Destructive interference resulting from the interaction of two electrons.

According to **valence bond theory**, a bond is simply the sharing of electron density between two atoms as a result of the constructive interference of their atomic orbitals. Consider, for example, the bond that is formed between the two hydrogen atoms in molecular hydrogen (H_2). This bond is formed from the overlap of the 1*s* orbitals of each hydrogen atom (Figure 1.13).

The electron density of this bond is primarily located on the bond axis (the line that can be drawn between the two hydrogen atoms). This type of bond is called a **sigma (σ) bond** and is characterized by circular symmetry with respect to the bond axis. To visualize what this means, imagine a plane that is drawn perpendicular to the bond axis. This plane will carve out a circle (Figure 1.14). This is the defining feature of σ bonds and will be true of all purely single bonds. Therefore, *all single bonds are σ bonds*.

FIGURE 1.13
The overlap of the 1*s* atomic orbitals of two hydrogen atoms, forming molecular hydrogen (H_2).

FIGURE 1.14
An illustration of a sigma bond, showing the circular symmetry with respect to the bond axis.

1.9 Molecular Orbital Theory

In most situations, valence bond theory will be sufficient for our purposes. However, there will be cases in the upcoming chapters where valence bond theory will be inadequate to describe the observations. In such cases, we will utilize molecular orbital theory, a more sophisticated approach to viewing the nature of bonds.

Molecular orbital (MO) theory uses mathematics as a tool to explore the consequences of atomic orbital overlap. The mathematical method is called the *linear combination of atomic orbitals (LCAO)*. According to this theory, atomic orbitals are mathematically combined to produce new orbitals, called **molecular orbitals**.

It is important to understand the distinction between atomic orbitals and molecular orbitals. Both types of orbitals are used to accommodate electrons, but an atomic orbital is a region of space associated with an individual atom, while a molecular orbital is associated with an entire molecule. That is, the molecule is considered to be a single entity held together by many electron clouds, some of which can actually span the entire length of the molecule. These molecular orbitals are filled with electrons in a particular order in much the same way that atomic orbitals are filled. Specifically, electrons first occupy the lowest energy orbitals, with a maximum of two electrons per orbital. In order to visualize what it means for an orbital to be associated with an entire molecule, we will explore two molecules: molecular hydrogen (H_2) and bromomethane (CH_3Br).

Consider the bond formed between the two hydrogen atoms in molecular hydrogen. This bond is the result of the overlap of two atomic orbitals (*s* orbitals), each of which is occupied by one electron. According to MO theory, when two atomic orbitals overlap, they cease to exist. Instead, they are replaced by two molecular orbitals, each of which is associated with the entire molecule (Figure 1.15).

FIGURE 1.15
An energy diagram showing the relative energy levels of bonding and antibonding molecular orbitals.

FIGURE 1.16
A low-energy molecular orbital of CH_3Br. Red and blue regions indicate the different phases, as described in Section 1.7. Notice that this molecular orbital is associated with the entire molecule, rather than being associated with two specific atoms.

In the energy diagram shown in Figure 1.15, the individual atomic orbitals are represented on the right and left, with each atomic orbital having one electron. These atomic orbitals are combined mathematically (using the LCAO method) to produce two molecular orbitals. The lower energy molecular orbital, or **bonding MO**, is the result of constructive interference of the original two atomic orbitals. The higher energy molecular orbital, or **antibonding MO**, is the result of destructive interference. Notice that the antibonding MO has one node, which explains why it is higher in energy. Both electrons occupy the bonding MO in order to achieve a lower energy state. This lowering in energy is the essence of the bond. For an H—H bond, the lowering in energy is equivalent to 436 kJ/mol. This energy corresponds with the bond strength of an H—H bond (as shown in Figure 1.2).

Now let's consider a molecule such as CH_3Br, which contains more than just one bond. Valence bond theory continues to view each bond separately, with each bond being formed from two overlapping atomic orbitals. In contrast, MO theory treats the bonding electrons as being associated with the entire molecule. The molecule has many molecular orbitals, each of which can be occupied by two electrons. Figure 1.16 illustrates one of the many molecular orbitals of CH_3Br. This molecular orbital is capable of accommodating up to two electrons. Red and blue regions indicate the different phases, as described in Section 1.7. As we saw with molecular hydrogen, not all molecular orbitals will be occupied. The bonding electrons will occupy the lower energy molecular orbitals (such as the one shown in Figure 1.16), while the higher energy molecular orbitals remain unoccupied. For every molecule, two of its molecular orbitals will be of particular interest: (1) the highest energy orbital from among the occupied orbitals is called the **highest occupied molecular orbital**, or **HOMO**, and (2) the lowest energy orbital from among the unoccupied orbitals is called the **lowest unoccupied molecular orbital**, or **LUMO**. For example, in Chapter 7, we will explore a reaction in which CH_3Br is attacked by a hydroxide ion (HO^-). In order for this process to occur, the hydroxide ion must transfer its electron density into the lowest energy, empty molecular orbital, or LUMO, of CH_3Br (Figure 1.17). The nature of the LUMO (i.e., number of nodes, location of nodes, etc.) will be useful in explaining the preferred direction from which the hydroxide ion will attack.

FIGURE 1.17
The LUMO of CH_3Br.

We will use MO theory several times in the chapters that follow. Most notably, in Chapter 16, we will investigate the structure of compounds containing several double bonds. For those compounds, valence bond theory will be inadequate, and MO theory will provide a more meaningful understanding of the bonding structure. Throughout this textbook, we will continue to develop both valence bond theory and MO theory.

1.10 Hybridized Atomic Orbitals

Methane and sp^3 Hybridization

Let us now apply valence bond theory to the bonds in methane:

Methane

FIGURE 1.18
An energy diagram showing the electron configuration of carbon.

Recall the electron configuration of carbon (Figure 1.18). This electron configuration cannot satisfactorily describe the bonding structure of methane (CH_4), in which the carbon atom has four separate C—H bonds, because the electron configuration shows only two atomic orbitals capable of forming bonds (each of these orbitals has one unpaired electron). This would imply that the carbon atom will form only two bonds, but we know that it forms four bonds. We can solve this problem by imagining an excited state of carbon (Figure 1.19): a state in which a 2*s* electron has been promoted

FIGURE 1.19
An energy diagram showing the electronic excitation of an electron in a carbon atom.

to a higher energy 2*p* orbital. Now the carbon atom has four atomic orbitals capable of forming bonds, but there is yet another problem here. The geometry of the 2*s* and three 2*p* orbitals does not satisfactorily explain the observed three-dimensional geometry of methane (Figure 1.20). All bond angles are 109.5°, and the four bonds point away from each other in a perfect tetrahedron. This geometry cannot be explained by an excited state of carbon because the *s* orbital and the three *p* orbitals do not occupy a tetrahedral geometry. The *p* orbitals are separated from each other by only 90° (as seen in Figure 1.5) rather than 109.5°.

FIGURE 1.20
The tetrahedral geometry of methane. All bond angles are 109.5°.

This problem was solved in 1931 by Linus Pauling, who suggested that the electronic configuration of the carbon atom in methane does not necessarily have to be the same as the electronic configuration of a free carbon atom. Specifically, Pauling mathematically averaged, or *hybridized*, the 2*s* orbital and the three 2*p* orbitals, giving four degenerate hybridized atomic orbitals (Figure 1.21). The hybridization process in Figure 1.21 does not represent a real physical process that the orbitals

FIGURE 1.21
An energy diagram showing four degenerate hybridized atomic orbitals.

undergo. Rather, it is a mathematical procedure that is used to arrive at a satisfactory description of the observed bonding. This procedure gives us four orbitals that were produced by averaging one *s* orbital and three *p* orbitals, and therefore we refer to these atomic orbitals as ***sp*^{3}-hybridized orbitals**. Figure 1.22 shows an sp^3-hybridized orbital. If we use these hybridized atomic orbitals to describe the bonding of methane, we can successfully explain the observed geometry of the bonds. The four sp^3-hybridized orbitals are equivalent in energy (degenerate) and will therefore position themselves as far apart from each other as possible, achieving a tetrahedral geometry. Also notice that hybridized atomic orbitals are unsymmetrical. That is, hybridized atomic orbitals have a larger front lobe (shown

FIGURE 1.22
An illustration of an sp^3-hybridized atomic orbital.

in red in Figure 1.22) and a smaller back lobe (shown in blue). The larger front lobe enables hybridized atomic orbitals to be more efficient than *p* orbitals in their ability to form bonds.

Using valence bond theory, each of the four bonds in methane is represented by the overlap between an sp^3-hybridized atomic orbital from the carbon atom and an *s* orbital from a hydrogen atom (Figure 1.23). For purposes of clarity the back lobes (blue) have been omitted from the images in Figure 1.23.

FIGURE 1.23
A tetrahedral carbon atom using each of its four sp^3-hybridized orbitals to form a bond.

The bonding in ethane is treated in much the same way:

Ethane

All bonds in this compound are single bonds, and therefore they are all σ bonds. Using the valence bond approach, each of the bonds in ethane can be treated individually and is represented by the overlap of atomic orbitals (Figure 1.24).

FIGURE 1.24
A valence bond picture of the bonding in ethane.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

1.18 Cyclopropane is a compound in which the carbon atoms form a three-membered ring:

Cyclopropane

Each of the carbon atoms in cyclopropane is sp^3 hybridized. Cyclopropane is more reactive than other cyclic compounds (four-membered rings, five-membered rings, etc.). Analyze the bond angles in cyclopropane and explain why cyclopropane is so reactive.

Double Bonds and sp^2 Hybridization

Now let's consider the structure of a compound bearing a double bond. The simplest example is ethylene.

Ethylene

FIGURE 1.25
All six atoms of ethylene are in one plane.

Ethylene exhibits a planar geometry (Figure 1.25). A satisfactory model for explaining this geometry can be achieved by the mathematical maneuver of hybridizing the *s* and *p* orbitals of the carbon atom to obtain hybridized atomic orbitals. When we did this procedure earlier to explain the bonding in methane, we hybridized the *s* orbital and all three *p* orbitals to produce four equivalent sp^3-hybridized orbitals. However, in the case of ethylene, each carbon atom only needs to form bonds with three atoms, not four. Therefore, each carbon atom only needs three hybridized orbitals. So in this case we will mathematically average the *s* orbital with only two of the three *p* orbitals (Figure 1.26). The remaining *p* orbital will remain unaffected by our mathematical procedure.

FIGURE 1.26
An energy diagram showing three degenerate sp^2-hybridized atomic orbitals.

FIGURE 1.27
An illustration of an sp^2-hybridized carbon atom.

The result of this mathematical operation is a carbon atom with one *p* orbital and three ***sp*²-hybridized orbitals** (Figure 1.27). In Figure 1.27 the *p* orbital is shown in red and blue, and the hybridized orbitals are shown in gray (for clarity, only the front lobe of each hybridized orbital is shown). They are called sp^2-hybridized orbitals to indicate that they were obtained by averaging one *s* orbital and two *p* orbitals. As shown in Figure 1.27, each of the carbon atoms in ethylene is sp^2 hybridized, and we can use this hybridization state to explain the bonding structure of ethylene.

Each carbon atom in ethylene has three sp^2-hybridized orbitals available to form σ bonds (Figure 1.28). One σ bond forms between the two carbon atoms, and then each carbon atom also forms a σ bond with each of its neighboring hydrogen atoms.

In addition, each carbon atom has one *p* orbital (shown in Figure 1.28 with blue and red lobes).

FIGURE 1.28
An illustration of the σ bonds in ethylene.

These p orbitals actually overlap with each other as well, which is a separate bonding interaction called a **pi (π) bond** (Figure 1.29). Do not be confused by the nature of this type of bond. It is true that the π overlap occurs in two places—above the plane of the molecule (in red) and below the plane (in blue). Nevertheless, these two regions of overlap represent only one interaction called a π bond.

The image of the π bond in Figure 1.29 is based on the valence bond approach (the p orbitals are simply drawn overlapping each other). Molecular orbital theory provides a fairly similar image of a π bond. Compare Figure 1.29 with the bonding MO in Figure 1.30.

To summarize, we have seen that the carbon atoms of ethylene are connected via a σ bond and a π bond. The σ bond results from the overlap of sp^2-hybridized atomic orbitals, while the π bond results from the overlap of p orbitals. These two separate bonding interactions (σ and π) comprise the double bond of ethylene.

FIGURE 1.29
An illustration of the π bond in ethylene.

FIGURE 1.30
An energy diagram showing images of bonding and antibonding MOs in ethylene.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

1.19 Consider the structure of formaldehyde:

Formaldehyde

(a) Identify the type of bonds that form the C═O double bond.

(b) Identify the atomic orbitals that form each C—H bond.

(c) What type of atomic orbitals do the lone pairs occupy?

1.20 Sigma bonds experience free rotation at room temperature:

In contrast, π bonds do not experience free rotation. Explain. (**Hint:** Compare Figures 1.24 and 1.29, focusing on the orbitals used in forming a σ bond and the orbitals used in forming a π bond. In each case, what happens to the orbital overlap during bond rotation?)

Triple Bonds and *sp* Hybridization

Now let's consider the bonding structure of a compound bearing a triple bond, such as acetylene:

H—C≡C—H

Acetylene

A triple bond is formed by ***sp*-hybridized** carbon atoms. To achieve sp hybridization, one s orbital is mathematically averaged with only one p orbital (Figure 1.31). This leaves two p orbitals unaffected by the mathematical operation. As a result, an sp-hybridized carbon atom has two sp orbitals and two p orbitals (Figure 1.32).

FIGURE 1.31
An energy diagram showing two degenerate *sp*-hybridized atomic orbitals.

FIGURE 1.32
An illustration of an *sp*-hybridized carbon atom. The *sp*-hybridized orbitals are shown in gray.

The two *sp*-hybridized orbitals are available to form σ bonds (one on either side), and the two *p* orbitals are available to form π bonds, giving the bonding structure for acetylene shown in Figure 1.33. A triple bond between two carbon atoms is therefore the result of three separate bonding interactions: one σ bond and two π bonds. The σ bond results from the overlap of *sp* orbitals, while each of the two π bonds result from overlapping *p* orbitals. As shown in Figure 1.33, the geometry of the triple bond is linear.

FIGURE 1.33
An illustration of the σ bonds and π bonds in acetylene.

SKILLBUILDER

1.7 IDENTIFYING HYBRIDIZATION STATES

LEARN the skill

Identify the hybridization state of each carbon atom in the following compound:

SOLUTION

To determine the hybridization state of *an uncharged carbon atom*, simply count the number of σ bonds and π bonds:

A carbon atom with four single bonds (four σ bonds) will be sp^3 hybridized. A carbon atom with three σ bonds and one π bond will be sp^2 hybridized. A carbon atom with two σ bonds

and two π bonds will be *sp* hybridized. Carbon atoms bearing a positive or negative charge will be discussed in more detail in Chapter 2.

Using the simple scheme above, the hybridization state of most carbon atoms can be determined instantly:

PRACTICE the skill **1.21** Determine the hybridization state of each carbon atom in the following compounds.

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

APPLY the skill **1.22** Nemotin is a compound that was first isolated from the fungi *Poria tenuis* and *Poria corticola* in the 1940s and was shown to possess potent antibacterial activity. However, its structure was not verified until it was made in the laboratory much more recently.[7] Determine the hybridization state of each carbon atom in nemotin.

Nemotin

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 1.52, 1.53, 1.67, 1.73f, 1.73g, 1.74, 1.79a**

Bond Strength and Bond Length

The information we have seen in this section allows us to compare single bonds, double bonds, and triple bonds. A single bond has only one bonding interaction (a σ bond), a double bond has two bonding interactions (one σ bond and one π bond), and a triple bond has three bonding interactions (one σ bond and two π bonds). Therefore, it is not surprising that a triple bond is stronger than a double bond, which in turn is stronger than a single bond. Compare the strengths and lengths of the C—C bonds in ethane, ethylene, and acetylene (Table 1.2).

TABLE 1.2 **COMPARISON OF BOND LENGTHS AND BOND ENERGIES FOR ETHANE, ETHYLENE, AND ACETYLENE**

	ETHANE	ETHYLENE	ACETYLENE
Structure			
C—C bond length	1.54 Å	1.34 Å	1.20 Å
Bond energy	368 kJ/mol	632 kJ/mol	820 kJ/mol

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

1.23 Rank the indicated bonds in terms of increasing bond length:

1.11 Predicting Molecular Geometry: VSEPR Theory

The shapes of small molecules can often be predicted if we presume that all electron pairs (whether bonding or nonbonding) repel each other, and as such, they arrange themselves in three-dimensional space so as to achieve maximal distance from each other. This approach, called **valence shell electron pair repulsion (VSEPR)** theory, enables us to make quick predictions about molecular geometry. In this section, we will encounter several different molecular shapes for small molecules, all of which are predicted accurately using the VSEPR model.

Tetrahedral Geometry

We begin our analysis with methane (CH_4), in which the carbon atom has four σ bonds and no lone pairs. VSEPR theory presumes that all four electron pairs will be positioned so as to achieve maximal distance from each other, suggesting a **tetrahedral** arrangement. That is, the VSEPR model predicts that the four hydrogen atoms should be positioned at the four corners of a tetrahedron (Figure 1.34a). This prediction is consistent with sp^3 hybridization, as described by valence bond theory (Section 1.10), and it is also consistent with the observed bond angles of 109.5° (Figure 1.34b).

FIGURE 1.34
(a) The tetrahedral arrangement of electron pairs in CH_4.
(b) All bond angles in CH_4 are 109.5°.

Trigonal Pyramidal Geometry

Now let's apply the VSEPR model to ammonia (NH_3), in which the nitrogen atom has three σ bonds and one lone pair. The total number of electron pairs, also called the **steric number**, is four in this case (as it was in the previous case as well). VSEPR theory presumes that all four electron pairs will be positioned so as to achieve maximal distance from each other, suggesting once again a tetrahedral arrangement (Figure 1.35a). However, in this case, a lone pair is positioned at one corner of the tetrahedron. This predicted arrangement is observed to be accurate, and it is consistent with the valence bond approach, in which the nitrogen atom is sp^3 hybridized, and the lone pair occupies an sp^3-hybridized orbital.

FIGURE 1.35
(a) The tetrahedral arrangement of electron pairs in NH_3.
(b) All bond angles in NH_3 are approximately 107°.
(c) NH_3 has trigonal pyramidal geometry.

As illustrated in Figure 1.35b, the bond angles for ammonia are observed to be 107°, rather than 109.5°. This shorter bond angle can be justified by VSEPR theory if we presume that lone pairs repel more strongly than σ bonds (lone pairs are not bound by another nucleus, so they occupy more space than bonding electron pairs). As such, the lone pair in ammonia repels the three bonds more strongly, causing the H—N—H bond angle to be less than 109.5°.

When we describe the geometry (or shape) of a molecule, we are generally referring to the arrangement of atoms. When we focus only on the positions of the atoms (ignoring the lone pair), the shape of ammonia is **trigonal pyramidal** (Figure 1.35c). "Trigonal" indicates the nitrogen atom is connected to three other atoms, and "pyramidal" indicates the compound is shaped like a pyramid, with the nitrogen atom sitting at the top of the pyramid.

Bent Geometry

Now let's apply the VSEPR model to water (H_2O), in which the oxygen atom has two σ bonds and two lone pairs. With a total of four electron pairs to consider (steric number = 4), VSEPR theory presumes that all four electron pairs will be positioned so as to achieve maximal distance from each other, suggesting once again a tetrahedral arrangement (Figure 1.36a). Notice that the VSEPR model predicts that the lone pairs should be positioned at two corners of the tetrahedral arrangement.

FIGURE 1.36
(a) The tetrahedral arrangement of electron pairs in H_2O, as predicted by VSEPR.
(b) The bond angle in H_2O is approximately 105°.
(c) H_2O has bent geometry.

Once again, VSEPR theory can explain the observed bond angle (105°) by considering the effect of two lone pairs (Figure 1.36b). Specifically, the lone pairs repel each other more strongly than σ bonds, causing the H—O—H bond angle to be even smaller than the bond angles in ammonia. In order to describe the geometry of H_2O, we focus on the arrangement of atoms, which gives a **bent** geometry (Figure 1.36c).

This analysis demonstrates that the VSEPR model correctly predicts the bent geometry of water, and the observed bond angle is even justified. However, VSEPR theory also predicts that the two lone pairs of H_2O should be degenerate (the same energy), and this has proven to be false. Experiments conducted over 30 years ago have revealed that the lone pairs of H_2O are indeed different (one lone pair is significantly higher in energy than the other). These observations strongly suggest that at least one lone pair occupies a *p* orbital, while the other lone pair occupies a lower-energy, hybridized orbital. Since one lone pair occupies a *p* orbital, the oxygen atom cannot be sp^3 hybridized, as we might expect from a classical interpretation of valence bond theory and VSEPR theory. In this case, the VSEPR model fails to explain why the lone pairs are different in hybridization, energy, and orientation. Indeed, this is compelling evidence that the VSEPR model does not take all of the relevant factors into account when predicting geometry. The VSEPR model assumes that steric repulsion of electrons is the only factor that determines electronic and molecular structures, but there are often additional relevant factors. In the case of H_2O, the lone pairs do *not* occupy the two corners of a tetrahedron, as predicted. Although VSEPR theory has correctly predicted the bent geometry of H_2O, it appears to have done so for the wrong reasons. This example illustrates that VSEPR is just a first approximation. It is just a model, incomplete and flawed (as most simple models are), but it is nevertheless useful, because it can be used to predict the molecular geometry of most small molecules with reasonable accuracy.

Thus far, we have seen three different molecular shapes: tetrahedral, trigonal pyramidal, and bent. We will now explore other common molecular shapes that are accurately predicted with VSEPR theory.

Trigonal Planar Geometry

Consider the structure of BF_3. Boron has three valence electrons, each of which is used to form a σ bond. Therefore, the boron atom requires the use of three hybridized orbitals (rather than four, as we have seen in previous examples). Applying valence bond theory, we expect the boron atom to be sp^2 hybridized (with three equivalent sp^2-hybridized orbitals and one empty *p* orbital). As we saw in Section 1.10, sp^2 hybridization is associated with **trigonal planar** geometry, in which all bond angles are 120° (Figure 1.37). The term "trigonal" indicates that the boron atom is connected to three other atoms, and the term "planar" indicates that all atoms lie in the same plane.

FIGURE 1.37
BF_3 has trigonal planar geometry, with bond angles of 120°.

Once again, the VSEPR model correctly predicts the trigonal planar geometry of BF_3. There are three electron pairs that are repelling each other (steric number = 3), and they are expected to position themselves in space so as to achieve maximal separation. This is only accomplished in a trigonal planar arrangement, with bond angles of 120°, exactly as observed.

Linear Geometry

Consider the structure of BeH_2. Beryllium has two valence electrons, each of which is used to form a σ bond. The beryllium atom therefore requires only two hybridized orbitals, and must be *sp* hybridized. Recall (Section 1.10) that *sp* hybridization is associated with **linear geometry** (Figure 1.38):

FIGURE 1.38
BeH_2 has linear geometry, with a bond angle of 180°.

Once again, the VSEPR model correctly predicts the linear geometry of BeH_2. There are two electron pairs that are repelling each other (steric number = 2), and they are expected to position themselves in space so as to achieve maximal separation. This is only accomplished in a linear arrangement, with a bond angle of 180°.

In summary, we have encountered five different molecular shapes, all of which are listed in Table 1.3.

TABLE 1.3 COMMON MOLECULAR SHAPES THAT CAN BE PREDICTED WITH VSEPR THEORY

EXAMPLE	BONDING ELECTRON PAIRS (BONDS)	NONBONDING ELECTRON PAIRS (LONE PAIRS)	STERIC NUMBER	PREDICTED ARRANGEMENT OF ELECTRON PAIRS	PREDICTED MOLECULAR GEOMETRY
CH_4	4	0	4	Tetrahedral	Tetrahedral
NH_3	3	1	4	Tetrahedral	Trigonal Pyramidal
H_2O	2	2	4	Tetrahedral	Bent
BF_3	3	0	3	Trigonal Planar	Trigonal Planar
BeH_2	2	0	2	Linear	Linear

SKILLBUILDER

1.8 PREDICTING GEOMETRY

LEARN the skill

Using VSEPR theory, predict the geometry of a hydronium ion (H_3O^+):

SOLUTION

STEP 1 Determine the steric number.

We begin by counting the number of electron pairs (bonding and nonbonding) on the oxygen atom. There are three sigma bonds and one lone pair, giving a total of four electron pairs (steric number = 4).

STEP 2 Identify the arrangement of electron pairs.

Next, identify the arrangement of the electron pairs in 3D space. According to VSEPR theory, we presume that all electron pairs will be positioned so as to achieve maximal distance from one another. Since there are four electron pairs, VSEPR theory predicts a tetrahedral arrangement of electron pairs.

STEP 3 Identify the geometry.

In this case, a lone pair is predicted to occupy one corner of the tetrahedron, giving rise to trigonal pyramidal geometry (just like NH_3).

PRACTICE the skill

1.24 Use VSEPR theory to predict the geometry for each of the following structures:

(a) (b) (c) (d)

1.25 Compare the structures of a carbocation and a carbanion:

Carbocation Carbanion

In one of these ions, the central carbon atom is trigonal planar, while the other is trigonal pyramidal. Using VSEPR theory, assign the correct geometry to each ion.

1.26 Ammonia (NH_3) will react with a strong acid, such as hydronium (H_3O^+), to give an ammonium ion, as shown below. This type of process is an acid-base reaction, which will be the topic of Chapter 3. Using VSEPR theory, determine whether you expect a change in bond angles when ammonia is converted into an ammonium ion. Explain.

APPLY the skill

1.27 When sand is coated with a layer of trimethylhydroxysilane, $(CH_3)_3SiOH$, it repels water and can no longer get wet. Hydrophobic sand (aka, magic sand) is fun to play with, but it can also have useful applications in agriculture to reduce water consumption.[8] Predict the geometry for the silicon atom in trimethylhydroxysilane.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 1,37, 1.45, 1.52, 1.53, 1.55, 1.63, 1.68, 1.73b, 1.77c, 1.77f, 1.82b, 1.82c**

1.12 Dipole Moments and Molecular Polarity

Recall that induction is caused by the presence of an electronegative atom, as we saw earlier in the case of chloromethane. In Figure 1.39a the arrow shows the inductive effect of the chlorine atom. Figure 1.39b is a map of the electron density, revealing that the molecule is polarized. Chloromethane is said to exhibit a dipole moment, because *the center of negative charge and the center of positive charge are separated from one another by a certain distance*. The **dipole moment** (μ) is used as an indicator of polarity, where μ is defined as the amount of partial charge (δ) on either end of the dipole multiplied by the distance of separation (d):

$$\mu = \delta \times d$$

Partial charges ($\delta+$ and $\delta-$) are generally on the order of 10^{-10} esu (electrostatic units) and the distances are generally on the order of 10^{-8} cm. Therefore, for a polar compound, the dipole moment (μ) will generally have an order of magnitude of around 10^{-18} esu · cm. The dipole moment of chloromethane, for example, is 1.87×10^{-18} esu · cm. Since most compounds will have a dipole moment on this order of magnitude (10^{-18}), it is more convenient to report dipole moments with a new unit, called a **debye (D)**, where

$$1 \text{ debye} = 10^{-18} \text{ esu} \cdot \text{cm}$$

Using these units, the dipole moment of chloromethane is reported as 1.87 D. The debye unit is named after Dutch scientist Peter Debye, whose contributions to the fields of chemistry and physics earned him a Nobel Prize in 1936.

FIGURE 1.39
(a) Ball-and-stick model of chloromethane showing the dipole moment.
(b) An electrostatic potential map of chloromethane.

Measuring the dipole moment of a particular bond allows us to calculate the percent ionic character of that bond. As an example, let's analyze a C—Cl bond. This bond has a bond length of 1.772×10^{-8} cm, and an electron has a charge of 4.80×10^{-10} esu. If the bond were 100% ionic, then the dipole moment would be

$$\begin{aligned} \mu &= e \times d \\ &= (4.80 \times 10^{-10}\ \text{esu}) \times (1.772 \times 10^{-8}\ \text{cm}) \\ &= 8.51 \times 10^{-18}\ \text{esu} \cdot \text{cm} \end{aligned}$$

or 8.51 D. In reality, the bond is not 100% ionic. The experimentally observed dipole moment is measured at 1.87 D, and we can use this value to calculate the percent ionic character of a C—Cl bond:

$$\frac{1.87\ \text{D}}{8.51\ \text{D}} \times 100\% = \boxed{22\%}$$

Table 1.4 shows the percent ionic character for a few of the bonds that we will frequently encounter in this text. Take special notice of the C═O bond. It has considerable ionic character, rendering it extremely reactive. Chapters 19–21 are devoted exclusively to the reactivity of compounds containing C═O bonds.

TABLE 1.4 PERCENT IONIC CHARACTER FOR SEVERAL BONDS

BOND	BOND LENGTH ($\times 10^{-8}$ CM)	OBSERVED μ (D)	PERCENT IONIC CHARACTER
C—O	1.41	0.7 D	$\frac{(0.7 \times 10^{-18}\ \text{esu} \cdot \text{cm})}{(4.80 \times 10^{-10}\ \text{esu})(1.41 \times 10^{-8}\ \text{cm})} \times 100\% = \boxed{10\%}$
O—H	0.96	1.5 D	$\frac{(1.5 \times 10^{-18}\ \text{esu} \cdot \text{cm})}{(4.80 \times 10^{-10}\ \text{esu})(0.96 \times 10^{-8}\ \text{cm})} \times 100\% = \boxed{33\%}$
C═O	1.227	2.4 D	$\frac{(2.4 \times 10^{-18}\ \text{esu} \cdot \text{cm})}{(4.80 \times 10^{-10}\ \text{esu})(1.23 \times 10^{-8}\ \text{cm})} \times 100\% = \boxed{41\%}$

Chloromethane was a simple example, because it has only one polar bond. When dealing with a compound that has more than one polar bond, it is necessary to take the vector sum of the individual dipole moments. The vector sum is called the **molecular dipole moment**, and it takes into account both the magnitude and the direction of each individual dipole moment. For example, consider the structure of dichloromethane (Figure 1.40). The individual dipole moments partially cancel, but not completely. The vector sum produces a dipole moment of 1.14 D, which is significantly smaller than the dipole moment of chloromethane because the two dipole moments here partially cancel each other.

FIGURE 1.40
The molecular dipole moment of dichloromethane is the net sum of all dipole moments in the compound.

The presence of a lone pair has a significant effect on the molecular dipole moment. The two electrons of a lone pair are balanced by two positive charges in the nucleus, but the lone pair is separated from the nucleus by some distance. There is, therefore, a dipole moment associated with every lone pair. A common example is ammonia (Figure 1.41). In this way, the lone pair contributes

FIGURE 1.42
A ball-and-stick model of carbon tetrachloride. The individual dipole moments cancel to give a zero net dipole moment.

significantly to the magnitude of the molecular dipole moment, although its direction is not altered. That is, the direction of the molecular dipole moment would be the same with or without the contribution of the lone pair.

FIGURE 1.41
The net dipole moment of ammonia.

Table 1.5 shows experimentally observed molecular dipole moments for several common solvents. Notice that carbon tetrachloride (CCl_4) has no molecular dipole moment. In this case, the individual dipole moments cancel each other completely to give the molecule a zero net dipole moment ($\mu = 0$). This example (Figure 1.42) demonstrates that we must take geometry into account when assessing molecular dipole moments.

TABLE 1.5 DIPOLE MOMENTS FOR SOME COMMON SOLVENTS (AT 20°C)

COMPOUND	STRUCTURE	DIPOLE MOMENT	COMPOUND	STRUCTURE	DIPOLE MOMENT
Acetone		2.69 D	Ammonia	NH_3	1.47 D
Chloromethane	CH_3Cl	1.87 D	Diethyl ether		1.15 D
Water	H_2O	1.85 D	Methylene chloride	CH_2Cl_2	1.14 D
Methanol	CH_3OH	1.69 D	Pentane		0 D
Ethanol		1.66 D	Carbon tetrachloride	CCl_4	0 D

SKILLBUILDER

1.9 IDENTIFYING THE PRESENCE OF MOLECULAR DIPOLE MOMENTS

LEARN the skill

Identify whether each of the following compounds exhibits a molecular dipole moment. If so, indicate the direction of the net molecular dipole moment:

(a) $CH_3CH_2OCH_2CH_3$ **(b)** CO_2

SOLUTION

(a) In order to determine whether the individual dipole moments cancel each other completely, we must first predict the molecular geometry. Specifically, we need to know if the geometry around the oxygen atom is linear or bent:

STEP 1
Predict the molecular geometry.

Linear Bent

To make this determination, we use the method described in the previous SkillBuilder. The oxygen atom has two σ bonds and two lone pairs, so the steric number is 4. Since there are two lone pairs, VSEPR theory predicts bent geometry.

After determining the molecular geometry, now draw all dipole moments and determine whether they cancel each other. In this case, they do not fully cancel each other:

STEP 2
Identify the direction of all dipole moments.

STEP 3
Draw the net dipole moment.

This compound does in fact have a net molecular dipole moment, and the direction of the moment is shown above.

(b) Carbon dioxide (CO_2) has two C═O bonds, each of which exhibits a dipole moment. In order to determine whether the individual dipole moments cancel each other completely, we must first predict the molecular geometry. Once again, we use the method described in the previous SkillBuilder. The carbon atom has two σ bonds and no lone pairs, so the steric number is two. Accordingly, VSEPR theory predicts linear geometry. Therefore, we expect the dipole moments to fully cancel each other:

In a similar way, the dipole moments associated with the lone pairs also cancel each other, and therefore CO_2 does not have a net molecular dipole moment.

PRACTICE the skill

1.28 Identify whether each of the following compounds exhibits a molecular dipole moment. For compounds that do, indicate the direction of the net molecular dipole moment:

(a) $CHCl_3$ **(b)** CH_3OCH_3 **(c)** NH_3 **(d)** CCl_2Br_2

APPLY the skill

1.29 Volatile organic compounds (VOCs) contribute to the aroma of plants and can also be used for communication between plants. Diphenyl ether was identified as a minor VOC found in tomato plants.[9] Identify whether diphenyl ether exhibits a molecular dipole moment. If so, indicate the direction of the net molecular dipole moment.

Diphenyl ether

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 1.34, 1.36, 1.39, 1.58–1.61**

1.13 Intermolecular Forces and Physical Properties

The physical properties of a compound are determined by the attractive forces between the individual molecules, called **intermolecular forces**. It is often difficult to use the molecular structure alone to predict a precise melting point or boiling point for a compound. However, a few simple trends will allow us to compare compounds to each other in a relative way, for example, to predict which compound will boil at a higher temperature.

All intermolecular forces are *electrostatic*—that is, these forces occur as a result of the attraction between opposite charges. The electrostatic interactions for neutral molecules (with no formal charges) are often classified as (1) **dipole-dipole interactions**, (2) hydrogen bonding, and (3) fleeting dipole-dipole interactions.

Dipole-Dipole Interactions

Compounds with net dipole moments can either attract each other or repel each other, depending on how they approach each other in space. In the solid phase, the molecules align so as to attract each other (Figure 1.43).

FIGURE 1.43
In solids, molecules align themselves so that their dipole moments experience attractive forces.

In the liquid phase, the molecules are free to tumble in space, but they do tend to move in such a way so as to attract each other more often than they repel each other. The resulting net attraction between the molecules results in an elevated melting point and boiling point. To illustrate this, compare the physical properties of isobutylene and acetone:

Isobutylene	Acetone
Melting point = −140.3°C	Melting point = −94.9°C
Boiling point = −6.9°C	Boiling point = 56.3°C

Isobutylene lacks a significant dipole moment, but acetone does have a strong net dipole moment. Therefore, acetone molecules will experience greater attractive interactions than isobutylene molecules. As a result, acetone has a higher melting point and higher boiling point than isobutylene.

Hydrogen Bonding

The term **hydrogen bonding** is misleading. A hydrogen bond is not actually a "bond" but rather, it is a type of attractive interaction. When a hydrogen atom is connected to an electronegative atom (usually O or N), the hydrogen atom will bear a partial positive charge (δ+) as a result of induction. This δ+ can then interact with a lone pair from an electronegative atom of another molecule or ion. This can be illustrated with water or ammonia (Figure 1.44).

FIGURE 1.44
(a) Hydrogen bonding between molecules of water. **(b)** Hydrogen bonding between molecules of ammonia.

This attractive interaction is common among compounds that have an O—H bond or an N—H bond. For example, ethanol has an O—H bond, so it exhibits the same kind of attractive interaction (Figure 1.45).

FIGURE 1.45
Hydrogen bonding between molecules of ethanol.

This type of interaction is quite strong because hydrogen is a relatively small atom, and as a result, the partial charges can get very close to each other. In fact, the effect of hydrogen bonding on physical properties is quite dramatic. In Section 1.2, we briefly mentioned the difference in properties between the following two constitutional isomers:

Ethanol
Boiling point = 78.4°C

Methoxymethane
Boiling point = −23°C

These compounds have the same molecular formula, but they have very different boiling points. Ethanol experiences intermolecular hydrogen bonding, giving rise to a very high boiling point. Methoxymethane does not experience intermolecular hydrogen bonding, giving rise to a relatively lower boiling point. A similar trend can be seen in a comparison of the following amines:

Trimethylamine
Boiling point = 3.5°C

Ethylmethylamine
Boiling point = 37°C

Propylamine
Boiling point = 49°C

Once again, all three compounds have the same molecular formula (C_3H_9N), but they have very different properties as a result of the extent of hydrogen bonding. Trimethylamine does not exhibit any hydrogen bonding and has a relatively low boiling point. Ethylmethylamine does exhibit hydrogen bonding and therefore has a higher boiling point. Finally, propylamine, which has the highest boiling point of the three compounds, has two N—H bonds and therefore exhibits even more hydrogen-bonding interactions.

Hydrogen bonding is incredibly important in determining the shapes and interactions of biologically important compounds. Chapter 25 will focus on proteins, which are long molecules that coil up into specific shapes under the influence of hydrogen bonding (Figure 1.46a). These shapes ultimately determine their biological function. Similarly, hydrogen bonds hold together individual strands of DNA to form the familiar double-helix structure.

As mentioned earlier, hydrogen "bonds" are not really bonds. To illustrate this, compare the energy of a real bond with the energy of a hydrogen-bonding interaction. A typical single bond (C—H, N—H, O—H) has a bond strength of approximately 400 kJ/mol. In contrast, a hydrogen-bonding interaction has an average strength of approximately 20 kJ/mol. This leaves us with the obvious question: Why do we call them hydrogen *bonds* instead of just hydrogen *interactions*? To answer this question, consider the double-helix structure of DNA (Figure 1.46b). The two strands are joined by hydrogen-bonding interactions that function like rungs of a very long, twisted ladder. The net sum of these interactions contributes to the structure of the double helix, in which the hydrogen-bonding interactions appear *as if* they were actually bonds. Nevertheless, it is relatively easy to "unzip" the double helix and retrieve the individual strands.

FIGURE 1.46
(a) An alpha helix of a protein.
(b) The double helix in DNA.

LOOKING AHEAD
The structure of DNA is explored in more detail in Section 24.9.

Fleeting Dipole-Dipole Interactions

Some compounds have no permanent dipole moments, and yet analysis of boiling points indicates that they must have fairly strong intermolecular attractions. To illustrate this point, consider the following compounds:

Butane
(C_4H_{10})
Boiling point = 0°C

Pentane
(C_5H_{12})
Boiling point = 36°C

Hexane
(C_6H_{14})
Boiling point = 69°C

LOOKING AHEAD
Hydrocarbons will be discussed in more detail in Chapters 4, 16, and 17.

These three compounds are hydrocarbons, compounds that contain only carbon and hydrogen atoms. If we compare the properties of the hydrocarbons above, an important trend becomes apparent. Specifically, the boiling point appears to increase with increasing molecular weight. This trend can be justified by considering the fleeting, or transient, dipole moments that are more prevalent in larger hydrocarbons. To understand the source of these temporary dipole moments, we consider the electrons to be in constant motion, and therefore, the center of negative charge is also constantly moving around within the molecule. On average, the center of negative charge coincides with the center of positive charge, resulting in a zero dipole moment. However, at any given instant, the center of negative charge and the center of positive charge might not coincide. The resulting transient dipole moment can then induce a separate transient dipole moment in a neighboring molecule, initiating a fleeting attraction between the two molecules (Figure 1.47). These attractive forces are called **London dispersion forces,** named after German-American physicist Fritz London. Large hydrocarbons have more surface area than smaller hydrocarbons and therefore experience these attractive forces to a larger extent.

FIGURE 1.47
The fleeting attractive forces between two molecules of pentane.

London dispersion forces are stronger for higher molecular weight hydrocarbons because these compounds have larger surface areas that can accommodate more interactions. As a result, compounds of higher molecular weight will generally boil at higher temperatures. Table 1.6 illustrates this trend.

TABLE 1.6 **BOILING POINTS FOR HYDROCARBONS OF INCREASING MOLECULAR WEIGHT**

STRUCTURE	BOILING POINT (°C)	STRUCTURE	BOILING POINT (°C)
	−164		69
	−89		98
	−42		126
	0		151
	36		174

A branched hydrocarbon generally has a smaller surface area than its corresponding straight-chain isomer, and therefore, branching causes a decrease in boiling point. This trend can be seen by comparing the following constitutional isomers of C_5H_{12}:

Pentane
Boiling point = 36°C

2-Methylbutane
Boiling point = 28°C

2,2-Dimethylpropane
Boiling point = 10°C

WorldLinks Biomimicry and Gecko Feet

The term biomimicry describes the notion that scientists often draw creative inspiration from studying nature. By investigating some of nature's processes, it is possible to mimic those processes and to develop new technology. One such example is based on the way that geckos can scurry up walls and along ceilings. Until recently, scientists were baffled by the curious ability of geckos to walk upside down, even on very smooth surfaces such as polished glass.

As it turns out, geckos do not use any chemical adhesives, nor do they use suction. Instead, their abilities arise from the intermolecular forces of attraction between the molecules in their feet and the molecules in the surface on which they are walking. When you place your hand on a surface, there are certainly intermolecular forces of attraction between the molecules of your hand and the surface, but the microscopic topography of your hand is quite bumpy. As a result, your hand only makes contact with the surface at perhaps a few thousand points. In contrast, the foot of a gecko has approximately half a million microscopic flexible hairs, called *setae*, each of which has even smaller hairs.

When a gecko places its foot on a surface, the flexible hairs allow the gecko to make extraordinary contact with the surface, and the resulting London dispersion forces are collectively strong enough to support the gecko.

In the last decade, many research teams have drawn inspiration from geckos and have created materials with densely packed microscopic hairs. For example, some scientists are developing adhesive bandages that could be used in the healing of surgical wounds, while other scientists are developing special gloves and boots that would enable people to climb up walls (and perhaps walk upside down on ceilings). Imagine the possibility of one day being able to walk on walls and ceilings like Spiderman.

There are still many challenges that we must overcome before these materials will show their true potential. It is a technical challenge to design microscopic hairs that are strong enough to prevent the hairs from becoming tangled but flexible enough to allow the hairs to stick to any surface. Many researchers believe that these challenges can be overcome, and if they are right, we might have the opportunity to see the world turned literally upside down.

GlobalP/Getty Images

Sefa Kaya/Shutterstock

Eye of Science/Science Source

SKILLBUILDER

1.10 PREDICTING PHYSICAL PROPERTIES OF COMPOUNDS BASED ON THEIR MOLECULAR STRUCTURE

LEARN the skill

Determine which compound has the higher boiling point, neopentane or 3-hexanol:

Neopentane

3-Hexanol

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Identify all dipole-dipole interactions in both compounds.

When comparing boiling points of compounds, we look for the following factors:

1. Are there any dipole-dipole interactions in either compound?
2. Will either compound form hydrogen bonds?

STEP 2 Identify all H-bonding interactions in both compounds.

STEP 3 Identify the number of carbon atoms and extent of branching in both compounds.

3a. How many carbon atoms are in each compound?

3b. How much branching is in each compound?

The second compound above (3-hexanol) is the winner in all of these categories. It has a dipole moment, while neopentane does not. It will experience hydrogen bonding, while neopentane will not. It has six carbon atoms, while neopentane only has five. And, finally, it has a straight chain, while neopentane is highly branched. Each of these factors alone would suggest that 3-hexanol should have a higher boiling point. When we consider all of these factors together, we expect that the boiling point of 3-hexanol will be significantly higher than neopentane.

When comparing two compounds, it is important to consider all four factors. However, it is not always possible to make a clear prediction because in some cases there may be competing factors. For example, compare ethanol and heptane:

Ethanol will exhibit hydrogen bonding, but heptane has many more carbon atoms. Which factor dominates? It is not easy to predict. In this case, heptane has the higher boiling point, which is perhaps not what we would have guessed. In order to use the trends to make a prediction, there must be a clear winner.

PRACTICE the skill

1.30 For each of the following pairs of compounds, identify the higher boiling compound and justify your choice:

APPLY the skill

1.31 Epichlorohydrin (**1**) is an epoxide used in the production of plastic, epoxy glues, and resins (reactions of epoxides will be discussed in Chapter 13). When epichlorohydrin is treated with phenol (**2**), two products are formed (**3** and **4**).[10] These two products can be separated from each other via distillation, a process which exploits the difference in their boiling points. Which product (**3** or **4**) is expected to have the lower boiling point?

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 1.49, 1.50, 1.57, 1.62, 1.65, 1.70**

BioLinks Drug-Receptor Interactions

In most situations, the physiological response produced by a drug is attributed to the interaction between the drug and a biological receptor site. A *receptor* is a region within a biological macromolecule that can serve as a pouch in which the drug molecule can fit:

Initially, this mechanism was considered to work much like a lock and key. That is, a drug molecule would function as a key, either fitting or not fitting into a particular receptor. Extensive research on drug-receptor interactions has forced us to modify this simple lock-and-key model. It is now understood that both the drug and the receptor are flexible, constantly changing their shapes. As such, drugs can bind to receptors with various levels of efficiency, with some drugs binding more strongly and other drugs binding more weakly.

How does a drug bind to a receptor? In some cases, the drug molecule forms covalent bonds with the receptor. In such cases, the binding is indeed very strong (approximately 400 kJ/mol for each covalent bond) and therefore irreversible. We will see an example of irreversible binding when we explore a class of anticancer agents called nitrogen mustards (Chapter 7). For most drugs, however, the desired physiological response is meant to be temporary, which can only be accomplished if a drug can bind *reversibly* with its target receptor. This requires a weaker interaction between the drug and the receptor (at least weaker than a covalent bond). Examples of weak interactions include hydrogen-bonding interactions (20 kJ/mol) and London dispersion forces (approximately 4 kJ/mol for each carbon atom participating in the interaction). As an example, consider the structure of a benzene ring, which is incorporated as a structural subunit in many drugs:

Benzene

In a benzene ring, each carbon is sp^2 hybridized and therefore trigonal planar. As a result, a benzene ring represents a flat surface:

If the receptor also has a flat surface, the resulting London dispersion forces can contribute to the reversible binding of the drug to the receptor site:

This interaction is roughly equivalent to the strength of a single hydrogen-bonding interaction. The binding of a drug to a receptor is the result of the sum of the intermolecular forces of attraction between a portion of the drug molecule and the receptor site. We will have more to say about drugs and receptors in the upcoming chapters. In particular, we will see how drugs make their journey to the receptor, and we will explore how drugs flex and bend when interacting with a receptor site.

1.14 Solubility

Solubility is based on the principle that "like dissolves like." In other words, polar compounds are soluble in polar solvents, while nonpolar compounds are soluble in nonpolar solvents. Why is this so? A polar compound experiences dipole-dipole interactions with the molecules of a polar solvent, allowing the compound to dissolve in the solvent. Similarly, a nonpolar compound experiences London dispersion forces with the molecules of a nonpolar solvent. Therefore, if an article of clothing is stained with a polar compound, the stain can generally be washed away with water (like dissolves like). However, water will be insufficient for cleaning clothing stained with nonpolar compounds, such as oil or grease. In a situation like this, the clothes can be cleaned with soap or by dry cleaning.

Soap

Soaps are compounds that have a polar group on one end of the molecule and a nonpolar group on the other end (Figure 1.48).

FIGURE 1.48
The hydrophilic and hydrophobic ends of a soap molecule.

The polar group represents the **hydrophilic** region of the molecule (literally, "loves water"), while the nonpolar group represents the **hydrophobic** region of the molecule (literally, "afraid of water"). Oil molecules are surrounded by the hydrophobic tails of the soap molecules, forming a **micelle** (Figure 1.49).

FIGURE 1.49
A micelle is formed when the hydrophobic tails of soap molecules surround the nonpolar oil molecules.

The surface of the micelle is comprised of all of the polar groups, rendering the micelle water soluble. This is a clever way to dissolve the oil in water, but this technique only works for clothing that can be subjected to water and soap. Some clothes will be damaged in soapy water, and in those situations, dry cleaning is the preferred method.

Dry Cleaning

Rather than surrounding the nonpolar compound with a micelle so that it will be water soluble, it is actually conceptually simpler to use a nonpolar solvent. This is just another application of the principle of "like dissolves like." Dry cleaning utilizes a nonpolar solvent, such as tetrachloroethylene, to dissolve the nonpolar compounds. This compound is nonflammable, making it an ideal choice as a solvent. Dry cleaning allows clothes to be cleaned without coming into contact with water or soap.

Tetrachloroethylene

BioLinks Propofol: The Importance of Drug Solubility

The drug propofol received a lot of publicity in 2009 as one of the drugs implicated in the death of Michael Jackson:

Propofol

Propofol is normally used for initiating and maintaining anesthesia during surgery. It is readily soluble in the hydrophobic membranes of the brain, where it inhibits the firing (or excitation) of brain neurons. To be effective, propofol must be administered through intravenous injection, yet this poses a solubility problem. Specifically, the hydrophobic region of the drug is much larger than the hydrophilic region, and consequently, the drug does not readily dissolve in water (or in blood). Propofol does dissolve very well in soybean oil (a complex mixture of hydrophobic compounds, discussed in Section 26.3), but injecting a dose of soybean oil into the bloodstream would result in an oil globule, which could be fatal. To overcome this problem, a group of compounds called lecithins (discussed in Section 26.5) are added to the mixture. Lecithins are compounds that exhibit hydrophobic regions as well as a hydrophilic region. As such, lecithins form micelles, analogous to soap (as described in Section 1.14), which encapsulate the mixture of propofol and soybean oil. This solution of micelles can then be injected into the bloodstream. The propofol readily passes out of the micelles, crosses the hydrophobic membranes of the brain, and reaches the target neurons.

The high concentration of micelles results in a solution that looks very much like milk, and ampules of propofol are sometimes referred to as "milk of amnesia."

Julia Hiebaum/Alamy Stock Photo

REVIEW OF CONCEPTS AND VOCABULARY

SECTION 1.1

- **Organic** compounds contain carbon atoms, while **inorganic** compounds generally lack carbon atoms.

SECTION 1.2

- **Constitutional isomers** share the same molecular formula but have different connectivity of atoms and different physical properties.
- Each element will generally form a predictable number of bonds. Carbon is generally **tetravalent**, nitrogen **trivalent**, oxygen **divalent**, and hydrogen and the halogens **monovalent**.

SECTION 1.3

- A **covalent bond** results when two atoms share a pair of electrons.
- Covalent bonds are illustrated using **Lewis structures**, in which electrons are represented by dots.
- Second-row elements generally obey the **octet rule**, bonding to achieve noble gas electron configuration.
- A pair of unshared electrons is called a **lone pair**.

SECTION 1.4

- A **formal charge** occurs when atoms do not exhibit the appropriate number of valence electrons; formal charges must be drawn in Lewis structures.

SECTION 1.5

- Bonds are classified as (1) **covalent**, (2) **polar covalent**, or (3) **ionic.**
- Polar covalent bonds exhibit **induction**, causing the formation of partial positive charges ($\delta+$) and partial negative charges ($\delta-$). **Electrostatic potential maps** present a visual illustration of partial charges.

SECTION 1.6

- In **bond-line structures**, carbon atoms and most hydrogen atoms are not drawn.

SECTION 1.7

- **Quantum mechanics** describes electrons in terms of their wavelike properties.
- A **wave equation** describes the total energy of an electron when in the vicinity of a proton. Solutions to wave equations are called **wavefunctions** (ψ), where ψ^2 represents the probability of finding an electron in a particular location.
- **Atomic orbitals** are represented visually by generating three-dimensional plots of ψ^2; **nodes** indicate that the value of ψ is zero.
- An occupied orbital can be thought of as a cloud of **electron density**.
- Electrons fill orbitals following three principles: (1) the **Aufbau principle**, (2) the **Pauli exclusion principle**, and (3) **Hund's rule**. Orbitals with the same energy level are called **degenerate orbitals**.

SECTION 1.8

- **Valence bond theory** treats every bond as the sharing of electron density between two atoms as a result of the constructive interference of their atomic orbitals.
- **Sigma** (σ) **bonds** are formed when the electron density is located primarily on the bond axis.

SECTION 1.9

- **Molecular orbital theory** uses a mathematical method called the linear combination of atomic orbitals (LCAO) to form **molecular orbitals**. Each molecular orbital is associated with the entire molecule, rather than just two atoms.
- The **bonding MO** of molecular hydrogen results from constructive interference between its two atomic orbitals. The **antibonding MO** results from destructive interference.
- An **atomic orbital** is a region of space associated with an individual atom, while a molecular orbital is associated with an entire molecule.

- Two molecular orbitals are the most important to consider: (1) the **highest occupied molecular orbital**, or **HOMO**, and (2) the **lowest unoccupied molecular orbital**, or **LUMO**.

SECTION 1.10

- Methane's tetrahedral geometry can be explained using four degenerate ***sp*^{3}-hybridized orbitals** to achieve its four single bonds.
- Ethylene's planar geometry can be explained using three degenerate ***sp*^{2}-hybridized orbitals**. The remaining *p* orbitals overlap to form a separate bonding interaction, called a **pi (π) bond**. The carbon atoms of ethylene are connected via a σ bond, resulting from the overlap of *sp*^{2}-hybridized atomic orbitals, and via a π bond, resulting from the overlap of *p* orbitals, both of which comprise the double bond of ethylene.
- Acetylene's linear geometry is achieved via ***sp*-hybridized** carbon atoms in which a triple bond is created from the bonding interactions of one σ bond, resulting from overlapping *sp* orbitals, and two π bonds, resulting from overlapping *p* orbitals.
- Triple bonds are stronger and shorter than double bonds, which are stronger and shorter than single bonds.

SECTION 1.11

- The geometry of small compounds can be predicted using valence shell electron pair repulsion (**VSEPR**) theory, which focuses on the number of σ bonds and lone pairs exhibited by each atom. The total, called the **steric number**, indicates the number of electron pairs that repel each other.
- A compound's geometry depends on the number of lone pairs and can be **tetrahedral, trigonal pyramidal, bent, trigonal planar**, or **linear**.

SECTION 1.12

- **Dipole moments** (μ) occur when the center of negative charge and the center of positive charge are separated from one another by a certain distance; the dipole moment is used as an indicator of polarity (measured in **debyes**).
- The percent ionic character of a bond is determined by measuring its **dipole moment**. The vector sum of individual dipole moments in a compound determines the **molecular dipole moment**.

SECTION 1.13

- The physical properties of compounds are determined by **intermolecular forces**, the attractive forces between molecules.
- **Dipole-dipole interactions** occur between two molecules that possess permanent dipole moments. **Hydrogen bonding**, a type of attractive interaction, occurs when the lone pairs of an electronegative atom interact with an electron-poor hydrogen atom. Compounds that exhibit hydrogen bonding have higher boiling points than similar compounds that lack hydrogen bonding.
- **London dispersion forces** result from the interaction between transient dipole moments and are stronger for larger alkanes due to their larger surface area and ability to accommodate more interactions.

SECTION 1.14

- Polar compounds are soluble in polar solvents; nonpolar compounds are soluble in nonpolar solvents.
- Soaps are compounds that contain both **hydrophilic** and **hydrophobic** regions. The hydrophobic tails surround nonpolar compounds, forming a water-soluble **micelle**.

SKILLBUILDER REVIEW

1.1 DRAWING CONSTITUTIONAL ISOMERS OF SMALL MOLECULES

EXAMPLE Draw all constitutional isomers that have the molecular formula C_3H_8O.

STEP 1 Determine the valency of each atom.

STEP 2 Connect the atoms of highest valency, and place the monovalent atoms at the periphery.

STEP 3 Consider other ways to connect the atoms.

Try Problems **1.1, 1.2, 1.32, 1.42, 1.51**

1.2 DRAWING THE LEWIS STRUCTURE OF A SMALL MOLECULE

STEP 1 Draw all individual atoms.

STEP 2 Connect atoms that form more than one bond.

STEP 3 Connect hydrogen atoms.

STEP 4 Pair any unpaired electrons, so that each atom achieves an octet.

Try Problems **1.3–1.6, 1.35**

1.3 CALCULATING FORMAL CHARGE

STEP 1 Determine appropriate number of valence electrons.

STEP 2 Determine the number of valence electrons in this case.

STEP 3 Assign a formal charge.

... missing an electron.

Try Problems 1.7–1.9, 1.66, 1.81a

1.4 LOCATING PARTIAL CHARGES RESULTING FROM INDUCTION

STEP 1 Identify all polar covalent bonds.

STEP 2 Determine the direction of each dipole.

STEP 3 Indicate location of partial charges.

Try Problems 1.10–1.12, 1.33, 1.34, 1.43, 1.54

1.5 READING BOND-LINE STRUCTURES

Identify all carbon atoms and hydrogen atoms.

STEP 1 The end of every line represents a carbon atom.

STEP 2 Each carbon atom will possess enough hydrogen atoms in order to achieve four bonds.

Try Problems 1.13, 1.14, 1.46, 1.47, 1.71

1.6 IDENTIFYING ELECTRON CONFIGURATIONS

STEP 1 Fill orbitals using the Aufbau principle, the Pauli exclusion principle, and Hund's rule.

STEP 2 Summarize using the following notation:

$1s^2 2s^2 2p^3$

Try Problems 1.15–1.17, 1.40

1.7 IDENTIFYING HYBRIDIZATION STATES

Four single bonds

sp^3

A double bond

sp^2

A triple bond

sp

Try Problems 1.21, 1.22, 1.52, 1.53, 1.67, 1.73f, 1.73g, 1.74, 1.79a

1.8 PREDICTING GEOMETRY

STEP 1 Determine the steric number by adding the number of σ bonds and lone pairs.

# of σ bonds = 3

# of lone pairs = 1

***Steric number* = 4**

STEP 2 Use steric number to identify the arrangement of electron pairs.

4 → Tetrahedral

3 → Trigonal planar

2 → Linear

STEP 3 Identify the geometry.

Tetrahedral arrangement of electron pairs

No lone pairs → ***Tetrahedral***

One lone pair → ***Trigonal pyramidal***

Two lone pairs → ***Bent***

Try Problems **1.24–1.27, 1,37, 1.45, 1.52, 1.53, 1.55, 1.63, 1.68, 1.73b, 1.77c, 1.77f, 1.82b, 1.82c**

1.9 IDENTIFYING THE PRESENCE OF MOLECULAR DIPOLE MOMENTS

STEP 1 Predict geometry.

Bent

STEP 2 Identify direction of all dipole moments.

STEP 3 Draw net dipole moment.

Try Problems **1.28, 1.29, 1.34, 1.36, 1.39, 1.58–1.61**

1.10 PREDICTING PHYSICAL PROPERTIES OF COMPOUNDS BASED ON THEIR MOLECULAR STRUCTURE

STEP 1 Identify dipole-dipole interactions.

Higher boiling point

STEP 2 Identify H-bonding interactions.

Higher boiling point

STEP 3 Identify number of carbon atoms and extent of branching.

Higher boiling point

Try Problems **1.30, 1.31, 1.49, 1.50, 1.57, 1.62, 1.65, 1.70**

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

• **Included in Answers section**

1.32 • Draw structures for all constitutional isomers with the following molecular formulas:

(a) C_2H_5Cl (b) $C_2H_4Cl_2$ (c) $C_2H_3Cl_3$ (d) C_6H_{14}

1.33 For each compound below, identify any polar covalent bonds and indicate the direction of the dipole moment using the symbols δ+ and δ−:

(a) HBr (b) HCl (c) H_2O (d) CH_4O

1.34 For each pair of compounds below, identify the one that would be expected to have more ionic character. Explain your choice.

(a) NaBr or HBr (b) BrCl or FCl

1.35 Draw a Lewis dot structure for each of the following compounds:

(a) CH_3CH_2OH (b) CH_3CN

1.36 Draw a Lewis structure for a compound with the molecular formula $C_4H_{11}N$ in which three of the carbon atoms are bonded to the nitrogen atom. What is the geometry of the nitrogen atom in this compound? Does this compound exhibit a molecular dipole moment? If so, indicate the direction of the dipole moment.

1.37 • Draw a Lewis structure of the anion $AlBr_4^-$ and determine its geometry.

1.38 Draw the structure for the only constitutional isomer of cyclopropane:

Cyclopropane

1.39 Determine whether each compound below exhibits a molecular dipole moment:

(a) CH_4 (b) NH_3 (c) H_2O
(d) CO_2 (e) CCl_4 (f) CH_2Br_2

1.40 Identify the neutral element that corresponds with each of the following electron configurations:

(a) $1s^2 2s^2 2p^4$ (b) $1s^2 2s^2 2p^5$ (c) $1s^2 2s^2 2p^2$
(d) $1s^2 2s^2 2p^3$ (e) $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^5$

1.41 In the compounds below, classify each bond as covalent, polar covalent, or ionic:

(a) NaBr (b) NaOH (c) $NaOCH_3$
(d) CH_3OH (e) CH_2O

1.42 Draw structures for all constitutional isomers with the following molecular formulas:

(a) C_2H_6O (b) $C_2H_6O_2$ (c) $C_2H_4Br_2$

1.43 For each type of bond below, determine the direction of the expected dipole moment:

(a) C—O (b) C—Mg (c) C—N (d) C—Li
(e) C—Cl (f) C—Si (g) O—H (h) N—H

1.44 Predict the bond angles for all bonds in the following compounds:

(a) CH_3CH_2OH (b) CH_2O (c) C_2H_4 (d) C_2H_2
(e) CH_3OCH_3 (f) CH_3NH_2 (g) C_3H_8 (h) CH_3CN

1.45 Identify the expected hybridization state and geometry for the central atom in each of the following structures:

(a) (b) (c) (d)

1.46 Draw all carbon atoms and hydrogen atoms for the following compounds.

Acetylsalicylic acid (aspirin)

Acetaminophen (Tylenol)

Caffeine

1.47 Identify the number of carbon atoms and hydrogen atoms in the compound below:

1.48 • Count the total number of σ bonds and π bonds in the compound below:

1.49 For each pair of compounds below, predict which compound will have the higher boiling point and explain your choice:

(a) $CH_3CH_2CH_2OCH_3$ or $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2OH$
(b) $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_3$ or $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$
(c) or

1.50 Which of the following pure compounds will exhibit hydrogen bonding?

(a) CH_3CH_2OH (b) CH_2O
(c) C_2H_4 (d) C_2H_2
(e) CH_3OCH_3 (f) CH_3NH_2
(g) C_3H_8 (h) NH_3

1.51 For each case below, identify the most likely value for *x*:

(a) BH_x (b) CH_x
(c) NH_x (d) CH_2Cl_x

1.52 Identify the hybridization state and geometry of each carbon atom in the following compounds:

(a) (b)

1.53 • Zolpidem, sold under the trade name Ambien, is a sedative used in the treatment of insomnia. It was discovered in 1982 and brought to market in 1992 (it takes a long time for new drugs to undergo the extensive testing required to receive approval from the Food and Drug Administration). Identify the hybridization state and geometry of each carbon atom in the structure of this compound:

Zolpidem (Ambien)

1.54 Identify the most electronegative element in each of the following compounds:

(a) $CH_3OCH_2CH_2NH_2$ (b) CH_2ClCH_2F (c) CH_3Li

1.55 Nicotine is an addictive substance found in tobacco. Identify the hybridization state and geometry of each of the nitrogen atoms in nicotine:

Nicotine

1.56 Below is the structure of caffeine, but its lone pairs are not shown. Identify the location of all lone pairs in this compound:

Caffeine

1.57 There are two different compounds with the molecular formula C_2H_6O. One of these isomers has a much higher boiling point than the other. Explain why.

1.58 Identify which compounds below possess a molecular dipole moment and indicate the direction of that dipole moment:

1.59 Methylene chloride (CH_2Cl_2) has fewer chlorine atoms than chloroform ($CHCl_3$). Nevertheless, methylene chloride has a larger molecular dipole moment than chloroform. Explain.

1.60 Which of the following compounds has the larger dipole moment? Explain your choice:

$CHCl_3$ or $CBrCl_3$

1.61 Bonds between carbon and oxygen (C—O) are more polar than bonds between sulfur and oxygen (S—O). Nevertheless, sulfur dioxide (SO_2) exhibits a dipole moment while carbon dioxide (CO_2) does not. Explain this apparent anomaly.

1.62 • Arrange the following compounds in order of increasing boiling point:

ACS-STYLE PROBLEMS (Multiple Choice)

Problems 1.63–1.72 follow the style of the ACS organic chemistry exam. For each of these problems, there will be one correct answer and three distractors.

1.63 • Which is the correct hybridization state and geometry for the carbon atom in HCN?

(a) *sp*, linear (b) sp^2, trigonal planar
(c) sp^3, tetrahedral (d) None of the above

1.64 • Which of the following is a constitutional isomer of cyclobutane?

Cyclobutane

1.65 • Which of the following is expected to have the highest boiling point?

1.66 • The following structure has been drawn without formal charges. Which statement describes the missing formal charge(s)?

(a) This structure has one positive charge and one negative charge.
(b) This structure has one positive charge but no negative charges.
(c) This structure has one negative charge but no positive charges.
(d) This structure has no formal charges.

1.67 • The indicated σ bond results from the overlap of which orbitals?

(a) sp^2–sp^2 (b) sp–sp^3 (c) sp–sp^2 (d) sp^2–sp^3

1.68 • Of the following molecular geometries, which has the largest bond angle?

(a) Pyramidal (b) Tetrahedral

(c) Trigonal planar (d) Bent

1.69 • How many σ bonds are in the following compound?

(a) 8 (b) 9 (c) 13 (d) 14

1.70 • Which compound has the higher boiling point? Explain briefly.

X **Y**

(a) **X**, because the dipole moments are far apart.

(b) **Y**, because the dipole moments do not fully cancel.

(c) **Y**, because it is less branched.

(d) **X**, because it is more linear.

1.71 • How many hydrogen atoms are in the compound represented by the following bond-line drawing?

(a) 5 (b) 6 (c) 7 (d) 8

1.72 • The compound represented by the following bond-line drawing has how many carbon atoms and how many π bonds?

	C atoms	π bonds
(a)	10	6
(b)	10	5
(c)	9	6
(d)	9	5

INTEGRATED PROBLEMS

1.73 • Consider the three compounds shown below and then answer the questions that follow:

Compound A **Compound B** **Compound C**

(a) Which two compounds are constitutional isomers?

(b) Which compound contains a nitrogen atom with trigonal pyramidal geometry?

(c) Identify the compound with the greatest number of σ bonds.

(d) Identify the compound with the fewest number of σ bonds.

(e) Which compound contains more than one π bond?

(f) Which compound contains an sp^2-hybridized carbon atom?

(g) Which compound contains only sp^3-hybridized atoms (in addition to hydrogen atoms)?

(h) Which compound do you predict will have the highest boiling point? Explain.

1.74 Propose at least two different structures for a compound with six carbon atoms that exhibits the following features:

(a) All six carbon atoms are sp^2 hybridized.

(b) Only one carbon atom is *sp* hybridized, and the remaining five carbon atoms are all sp^3 hybridized (remember that your compound can have elements other than carbon and hydrogen).

(c) There is a ring, and all of the carbon atoms are sp^3 hybridized.

(d) All six carbon atoms are *sp* hybridized, and the compound contains no hydrogen atoms (remember that a triple bond is linear and therefore cannot be incorporated into a ring of six carbon atoms).

1.75 With current spectroscopic techniques (discussed in Chapters 14–16), chemists are generally able to determine the structure of an unknown organic compound in just one day. These techniques have only been available for the last several decades. In the first half of the twentieth century, structure determination was a very slow and painful process in which the compound under investigation would be subjected to a variety of chemical reactions. The results of those reactions would provide chemists with clues about the structure of the compound. With enough clues, it was sometimes (but not always) possible to determine the structure. As an example, try to determine the structure of an unknown compound, using the following clues:

- The molecular formula is $C_4H_{10}N_2$.
- There are no π bonds in the structure.
- The compound has no net dipole moment.
- The compound exhibits very strong hydrogen bonding.

You should find that there are at least two constitutional isomers that are consistent with the information above. (**Hint:** Consider incorporating a ring in your structure.)

1.76 A compound with the molecular formula $C_5H_{11}N$ has no π bonds. Every carbon atom is connected to exactly two hydrogen atoms. Determine the structure of the compound.

1.77 Isonitriles (**A**) are an important class of compounds because of the versatile reactivity of the functional group, enabling the preparation of numerous new compounds and natural products. Isonitriles can be

converted to isonitrile dihalides (**B**), which represents a useful procedure for temporarily hiding the reactivity of an isonitrile.[11]

A **B**

(a) Identify the hybridization state for each highlighted atom in **A**.

(b) One of the carbon atoms in **A** exhibits a lone pair. In what type of hybridized atomic orbital does this lone pair reside?

(c) Predict the C—N—C bond angle in compound **A**.

(d) Identify the hybridization state for each highlighted atom in **B**.

(e) The nitrogen atom in **B** exhibits a lone pair. In what type of hybridized atomic orbital does this lone pair reside?

(f) Predict the C—N—C bond angle in compound **B**.

1.78 Consider the following table that provides bond lengths for a variety of C—X bonds (measured in Å).

	X = F	X = Cl	X = Br	X = I
—C—X	1.40	1.79	1.97	2.16
C=C—X	1.34		1.88	2.10
≡C—X	1.27	1.63	1.79	

Two trends emerge when we compare these data. First, notice that the bond length increases as the size of the halogen increases. This should make sense, since the valence electrons in iodine are farther away from the nucleus than the valence electrons in Br, so a C—I bond is longer than a C—Br bond. For the same reason, a C—Br bond is longer than a C—Cl bond, which in turn is longer than a C—F bond. Notice also that bond length decreases as the hybridization state goes from sp^3 to sp^2 to sp. This should also make sense, because sp-hybridized atoms hold their valence electrons closer to the nucleus (as seen in Table 1.2), and therefore form shorter bonds. These two trends are in conflict with each other when we compare a C_{sp^2}—Cl bond with a C_{sp}—I bond. The former bond is expected to be shorter because of the first trend (size of halogen), while the latter bond is expected to be shorter because of the second trend (hybridization state). Use the data provided to determine which bond is actually shorter, and explain your choice.

1.79 Positron emission tomography (PET) is a medical imaging technique that produces a three-dimensional picture of functional processes in the body, such as the brain uptake of glucose. PET imaging requires the introduction of [^{18}F]-fluorine (a radioactive isotope of fluorine) into molecules and can be achieved by several routes, such as the following:[12]

(a) Identify the hybridization for all atoms except for C, H, and O in the three compounds. Note: Throughout this chapter, all lone pairs were drawn. We will soon see (Chapter 2) that lone pairs are often omitted from structural drawings, because they can be inferred by the presence or absence of formal charges. In this problem, none of the lone pairs have been drawn.

(b) Predict the bond angle of each C—N—C bond in the product.

CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

1.80 Phenalamide A_2 belongs to a class of natural products that are of interest because of their antibiotic, antifungal, and antiviral activity. In the first total synthesis of this compound, the following boronate ester was utilized:[13]

(a) Determine the hybridization state of the boron atom.

(b) Predict the O—B—O bond angle and then suggest a reason why the actual bond angle might deviate from the predicted value in this case.

(c) The lone pairs have not been drawn. Draw all of them. (**Hint:** Note that the structure has no formal charges.)

1.81 The formation of a variety of compounds called oxazolidinones is important for the synthesis of many different natural products and other compounds that have potential use as future medicines. One method[14] for preparing oxazolidinones involves the conversion of a hydroximoyl chloride, such as compound **1**, into a nitrile oxide, such as compound **2**:

1 **2**

(a) Identify any formal charges that are missing from the structures of **1** and **2**.

(b) Determine which compound is expected to be more soluble in a polar solvent, and justify your choice.

(c) Determine the amount by which the C—C—N bond angle increases as a result of the conversion from **1** to **2**.

1.82 The following compound belongs to a class of compounds, called estradiol derivatives, which show promise in the treatment of breast cancer:[15]

(a) Determine the hybridization state of C_a, C_b, and C_c.

(b) Determine the H—C_a—C_b bond angle.

(c) Determine the C_a—C_b—C_c bond angle.

(d) C_b exhibits two π bonds: one to C_a, and the other to C_c. Draw a picture of C_a, C_b, and C_c that shows the relative orientation of the two different *p* orbitals that C_b is utilizing to form its two π bonds. Also show the *p* orbitals on C_a and C_c that are being used by each of those atoms. Describe the relative orientation of the *p* orbitals on C_a and C_c.

1.83 The following structure shows promise for studying how enzymes (nature's catalysts) coil up into very discrete shapes that endow them with catalytic function:[16]

(a) This compound has two N—C—N units, with differing bond angles. Predict the difference in bond angles between these two units and explain the source of the difference.

(b) When this compound was prepared and investigated, it demonstrated a preference for adopting a three-dimensional shape in which the two highlighted regions were in close proximity. Describe the interaction that occurs and create a drawing that illustrates this interaction.

LIST OF REFERENCES

1. *Nat. Geosci.* **2014**, *7*, 266–269.
2. *Cancer Epidemiol. Biomarkers Prev.* **2013**, *22*, 765–772.
3. *Cogn. Brain Res.* **2001**, *12*, 353–370.
4. *J. Polym. Environ.* **2015**, *23*, 283–293.
5. *J. Invest.* Dermatol. **2014**, *134*, 2988–2990.
6. *ACS Nano* **2008**, *2*, 873–878.
7. *Org. Biomol. Chem.* **2010**, *8*, 811–821.
8. *Water Resour. Manag.* **2010**, *24*, 2237–2246.
9. *J. Chromatogr. A* **2009**, *1216*, 127–133.
10. *Tetrahedron* **2006**, *62*, 10968–10979.
11. *Tetrahedron Lett.* **2012**, *53*, 4536–4537.
12. *Tetrahedron Lett.* **2003**, *44*, 9165–9167.
13. *Org. Lett.* **1999**, *1*, 1713–1715.
14. *J. Org. Chem.* **2009**, *74*, 1099–1113.
15. *Tetrahedron Lett.* **2001**, *42*, 8579–8582.
16. *Org. Lett.* **2001**, *3*, 3843–3846.

2

2.1 Molecular Representations
2.2 Drawing Bond-Line Structures
2.3 Identifying Functional Groups
2.4 Carbon Atoms with Formal Charges
2.5 Identifying Lone Pairs
2.6 Three-Dimensional Bond-Line Structures
2.7 Introduction to Resonance
2.8 Curved Arrows
2.9 Formal Charges in Resonance Structures
2.10 Drawing Resonance Structures via Pattern Recognition
2.11 Assessing the Relative Importance of Resonance Structures
2.12 The Resonance Hybrid
2.13 Delocalized and Localized Lone Pairs

Molecular Representations

DID YOU EVER **WONDER...**

how new drugs are designed?

Scientists employ many techniques in the design of new drugs. One such technique, called lead modification, enables scientists to identify the portion of a compound responsible for its medicinal properties and then to design similar compounds with better properties. We will see an example of this technique, specifically, where the discovery of morphine led to the development of a whole family of potent analgesics (codeine, heroin, methadone, and many others).

Top (*Pills*) Norph/Shutterstock; *Bottom* (*Hand*) boonchuay1970/Adobe Stock; *Bottom* (*Flower*) Chris Brignell/Adobe Stock; (*Hand drawn molecule*) susoy/Getty Images

In order to compare the structures of the compounds being discussed, we will focus on the skills necessary to use and interpret the drawing method most often utilized by organic chemists and biochemists. These drawings, called bond-line structures, were first introduced in Chapter 1. Bond-line drawings are fast to draw and easy to read, and they focus our attention on the reactive centers in a compound. In the second half of this chapter, we will see that bond-line structures are inadequate in some circumstances, and we will explore the technique that chemists employ to deal with the inadequacy of bond-line structures.

DO YOU **REMEMBER?**

Before you go on, be sure you understand the following topics.
If necessary, review the suggested sections to prepare for this chapter:

- Electrons, Bonds, and Lewis Structures (Section 1.3)
- Identifying Formal Charges (Section 1.4)
- Molecular Orbital Theory (Section 1.9)

Take the DO YOU **REMEMBER?** QUIZ in the **online course** to check your understanding.

2.1 Molecular Representations

Chemists use many different methods to represent molecules. Let's consider the structure of isopropanol, also called isopropyl rubbing alcohol, which is used as a disinfectant in sterilizing pads. The structure of this compound is represented below in many different ways:

Lewis structure

Partially condensed structure

$(CH_3)_2CHOH$

Condensed structure

C_3H_8O

Molecular formula

Lewis structures were discussed in the previous chapter. The advantage of Lewis structures is that all atoms and bonds are explicitly drawn. However, Lewis structures are only practical for very small molecules. For larger molecules, it becomes extremely burdensome to draw out every bond and every atom.

In **partially condensed structures**, the C—H bonds are not all drawn explicitly. In the example above, CH_3 refers to a carbon atom with bonds to three hydrogen atoms. Once again, this drawing style is only practical for small molecules.

In **condensed structures**, single bonds are not drawn. Instead, groups of atoms are clustered together, when possible. For example, isopropanol has two CH_3 groups, both of which are connected to the central carbon atom, shown like this: $(CH_3)_2CHOH$. Once again, this type of representation is only practical for small molecules with simple structures.

The molecular formula of a compound simply shows the number of each type of atom in the compound (C_3H_8O). No structural information is provided. There are actually three constitutional isomers with the molecular formula C_3H_8O:

Isopropanol

***n*-Propanol**

Ethyl methyl ether

The different methods discussed above are useful for representing small molecules. However, each method has limitations. Molecular formulas do not provide enough information, Lewis structures take too long to draw, and partially condensed and condensed drawings are only suitable for relatively simple molecules. For most molecules, bond-line drawings are the most efficient drawing style (as we saw in Section 1.6). In this chapter, we will learn rules for drawing bond-line drawings and we will explore some of the limitations of those drawings (and how we deal with those limitations). For now, let's practice the drawing styles above, which will be used for small molecules throughout the course.

SKILLBUILDER

2.1 CONVERTING A CONDENSED STRUCTURE INTO A LEWIS STRUCTURE

LEARN the skill

Draw a Lewis structure for the following compound:

$(CH_3)_2CC(CH_3)OCH_2CH(CH_3)CHO$

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Draw all atoms and all sigma bonds.

We begin by drawing the carbon chain and any atoms attached to the carbon chain. The goal of this step is to draw all atoms and to show how they are connected to each other. In other words, we begin by drawing all sigma bonds, as shown here:

There are several atoms that are missing an octet of electrons, but before we can deal with that issue, we must correct the sigma bond framework shown, because it cannot be correct. Notice that there is a hydrogen atom on the right side of the structure that appears to have two bonds. This is not possible. Hydrogen is monovalent—it can only form one bond, so let's look more closely at the condensed structure, and see where we went wrong. The condensed structure ends with —CHO. In this grouping of atoms, notice that H is listed immediately after C, indicating that the H is connected directly to the C. Then, O is listed next, but it cannot be connected to the H (because hydrogen cannot have more than one bond), so it is understood that the O must also be connected directly to the C, like this:

STEP 2
Identify any missing octets, and complete them by drawing pi bonds and lone pairs.

Now that we have drawn a framework of sigma bonds, the next step is to inspect the structure and identify any missing octets. We will need to draw lone pairs and pi bonds to complete any missing octets, keeping in mind the typical bonding patterns for uncharged atoms (as seen in Figure 1.1). Specifically, each carbon atom should have four bonds, each oxygen atom should have two bonds, and each hydrogen atom should have one bond. In the structure that we drew above, we can identify several atoms that don't have the correct number of bonds (highlighted):

Let's begin with the two carbon atoms on the left. Each of these carbon atoms is missing an octet, because each carbon atom has only three bonds (but should have four). These unfilled octets can be resolved by placing a pi bond between the two carbon atoms, as shown here:

On the right side of the structure, the highlighted carbon atom has only three bonds (but should have four), and the highlighted oxygen atom has only one bond (but should have two). Once again, this issue can be resolved by drawing a pi bond between the carbon and oxygen atoms:

Finally, we complete the octets on each oxygen atom by drawing the lone pairs (oxygen typically has two bonds and two lone pairs), giving the following Lewis structure:

PRACTICE the skill

2.1 Draw a Lewis structure for each of the compounds below:

(a) $H_2CCHOCH_2CH(CH_3)_2$ **(b)** $(CH_3CH_2)_2CHCH_2CH_2OH$

(c) $(CH_3CH_2)_3COH$ **(d)** $(CH_3)_2CC(CH_3)OCH_3$

(e) $CH_3CH_2C(CH_3)_2CH_2CH_3$ **(f)** $CH_3CHBrCH_2CH_3$

2.2 Draw a Lewis structure for each of the compounds below:

(a) $HOCH_2CH_2CH_2CHO$ **(b)** Cl_3CCO_2H

(c) $CH_3CO_2CH_2CH_3$

APPLY the skill

2.3 Oxygenated hydrocarbons (compounds containing carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen) are common components of biofuels. The combustion of three isomers of C_3H_6O (shown below) was studied to investigate the effects of structure on combustion speed and efficiency.[1] Identify the number of sp^3-hybridized carbon atoms in each of these isomers.

$(CH_3)_2CO$ CH_3CH_2CHO

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 2.43, 2.44, 2.48, 2.49, 2.67**

WATCH OUT

Notice that the first structure includes atom labels for each carbon (C) and hydrogen (H), while the second structure does not show any atom labels for carbon and hydrogen. Both structures are valid drawings, but it is incorrect to label the carbon atoms without also labeling the hydrogen atoms (for example: C—C—C—C). Either draw every C and every H, as in the first structure, or don't draw any of those labels, as in the second structure.

2.2 Drawing Bond-Line Structures

In Chapter 1 (Section 1.6), we saw how to read bond-line drawings. We will now explore some rules for drawing them proficiently. When drawing bond-line structures, the following rules should be observed:

1. Carbon atoms in a straight chain should be drawn in a zigzag format:

2. When drawing double bonds, draw all bonds as far apart as possible:

3. When drawing single bonds, the direction in which the bonds are drawn is irrelevant:

These two drawings do not represent constitutional isomers—they are just two drawings of the same compound. Both are perfectly acceptable.

4. All *heteroatoms* (atoms other than carbon and hydrogen) must be drawn, and any hydrogen atoms attached to a heteroatom must also be drawn. For example:

5. Never draw a carbon atom with more than four bonds. Carbon only has four orbitals in its valence shell, and therefore carbon atoms can form a maximum of four bonds.

SKILLBUILDER

2.2 DRAWING BOND-LINE STRUCTURES

LEARN the skill

Draw a bond-line structure for the following compound:

SOLUTION

Drawing a bond-line structure requires just a few conceptual steps. First, delete all hydrogen atoms except for those connected to heteroatoms:

STEP 1
Delete hydrogen atoms, except for those connected to heteroatoms.

Then, place the carbon skeleton in a zigzag arrangement, making sure that any triple bonds are drawn in a linear fashion:

STEP 2
Draw in zigzag format, keeping triple bonds linear.

Finally, delete all carbon atoms:

STEP 3
Delete carbon atoms.

PRACTICE the skill **2.4** Draw a bond-line structure for each of the following compounds:

(a)

(b)

(c)

2.5 Draw a bond-line structure for each of the following compounds:

(a) $(CH_3)_3CC(CH_3)_3$ **(b)** $CH_3CH_2CH(CH_3)_2$ **(c)** $(CH_3CH_2)_3COH$
(d) $(CH_3)_2CHCH_2OH$ **(e)** $CH_3CH_2CH_2OCH_3$ **(f)** $(CH_3CH_2)_2CCH_2$
(g) $H_2CCHOCH_2CH(CH_3)_2$ **(h)** $CH_3(CH_2)_6OH$
(i) $H_2CCHCH_2OCH_2CH(CH_3)_2$ **(j)** $CH_3CH_2C(CH_3)_2CH(CH_2CH_3)_2$
(k) $CH(CH_2CH_2NH_2)_3$ **(l)** $(CH_3)_2CCHCH_2CH_3$
(m) $(CH_3)_2CH(CH_3)CH(CH_3)CO_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$
(n) $CH_3CBr(CH_2OH)CH_2CH_2OCH(CH_3)CH_2CH_3$

APPLY the skill **2.6** Certain compounds that are alternatives to fossil fuels can be produced by engineered microbes. Bisabolane, an example of a renewable biofuel, is a synthetic alternative to diesel fuel.[2] Draw a bond-line structure for bisabolane:

Bisabolane

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 2.35, 2.36, 2.42, 2.50, 2.55**

2.3 Identifying Functional Groups

Bond-line drawings are the preferred drawing style used by practicing organic chemists. In addition to being more efficient, bond-line drawings are also easier to read. As an example, consider the following reaction:

$$(CH_3)_2CHCHC(CH_3)_2 \xrightarrow[\text{Pt}]{H_2} (CH_3)_2CHCH_2CH(CH_3)_2$$

When the reaction is presented in this way, it is somewhat difficult to see what is happening. It takes time to digest the information being presented. However, when we redraw the same reaction using bond-line structures, it becomes very easy to identify the transformation taking place:

It is immediately apparent that a double bond is being converted into a single bond. With bond-line drawings, it is easier to identify the functional group and its location. A **functional group** is a characteristic group of atoms/bonds that possess a predictable chemical behavior. In each of the reactions below, the starting material has a carbon-carbon double bond, which is a functional group. Compounds with carbon-carbon double bonds typically react with molecular hydrogen (H_2) in the presence of a catalyst (such as Pt). Both of the starting materials below have a carbon-carbon double bond, and consequently, they exhibit similar chemical behavior.

The chemistry of every organic compound is determined by the functional groups present in the compound. Therefore, the classification of organic compounds is based on their functional groups. For example, an *alkene* is a compound that exhibits a carbon-carbon double bond, while an *alcohol* is a compound that exhibits an OH group. Many of the chapters in this book are organized

by functional group. Table 2.1 provides a list of common functional groups and the corresponding chapters in which they appear.

TABLE 2.1 EXAMPLES OF COMMON FUNCTIONAL GROUPS

FUNCTIONAL GROUP*	CLASSIFICATION	EXAMPLE	CHAPTER
R—X: (X=Cl, Br, or I)	Alkyl halide	*n*-Propyl chloride	7
	Alkene	1-Butene	7, 8
R—C≡C—R	Alkyne	1-Butyne	9
R—OH	Alcohol	1-Butanol	12
R—O—R	Ether	Diethyl ether	13
R—SH	Thiol	1-Butanethiol	13
R—S—R	Sulfide	Diethyl sulfide	13
	Aromatic (or arene)	Methylbenzene	17, 18

FUNCTIONAL GROUP*	CLASSIFICATION	EXAMPLE	CHAPTER
	Ketone	2-Butanone	19
	Aldehyde	Butanal	19
	Carboxylic acid	Pentanoic acid	20
	Acyl halide	Acetyl chloride	20
	Anhydride	Acetic anhydride	20
	Ester	Ethyl acetate	20
	Amide	Butanamide	20
	Amine	Diethylamine	22

* The "R" refers to the remainder of the compound, usually carbon and hydrogen atoms.

BioLinks Marine Natural Products

The field of marine natural products (MNP) continues to expand rapidly as researchers explore the ocean's rich biodiversity in search of new pharmaceuticals. It is a subdiscipline of natural product chemistry and has recently seen some success stories of new drugs. In the early days before the dawn of SCUBA, marine drug discovery efforts were aimed primarily at easily accessible marine life like red algae, sponges, and soft corals that were not far from the ocean's shoreline.

Since then, more emphasis was placed on the previously overlooked deep sea organisms as well as marine microbes associated with ocean sediments and macroorganisms. These sources have yielded both structurally diverse and bioactive compounds. Moreover, the marine microbes are thought to be the real producers of marine natural products (MNP) that were previously isolated from their macroorganism hosts like mollusks, sponges, and tunicates.

The early stage of MNP drug discovery was met with supply issues due to limited marine samples that yielded small quantities of the bioactive natural products. This demand was addressed with innovative methods such as aquaculture (farming of aquatic

organisms), total synthesis, and biosynthesis. The use of genomics (DNA sequencing of organisms) and proteomics (study of protein structure and function), for example, has provided new insights into the production and distribution of these natural products.

Of all the MNP and MNP-derived drug candidates identified to date, seven have been approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for public use, with at least 13 others at various stages of clinical trials. Examples of FDA approved drugs are: eribulin mesylate (E7389), omega-3-acid ethyl ester, and trabectedin (ET-743). See structures below.

Eribulin mesylate is a synthetic analogue of the marine natural product halichondrin B which was isolated from the black sponge *Halichondria okadai*. It is a polyether analogue that is used in the treatment of cancer which spreads from the breast to other body organs. It acts by blocking cellular growth, which results in the death of the cancer cells.

The second drug, omega-3-acid ethyl ester, contains derivatives of long-chain, unsaturated carboxylic acids (omega-3 fatty acids) that were isolated from fish oil. They consist primarily of ethyl esters of eicosapentaenoic acid (EPA) and docosahexaenoic acid (DHA). The drug is used to treat persons with high levels of fat (lipid) in their bloodstream as this condition can lead to heart disease and stroke.

The third therapeutic agent, trabectedin (ET-743), was isolated from the marine tunicate *Ecteinascidia turbinata*. It is used to treat patients with soft tissue sarcoma (STS) and those with recurring ovarian cancer. Trabectedin binds to DNA and causes cell death.

Kelsey Roberts/USGS

The future of marine natural products is indeed bright. With the increasing technological advances in high-throughput screening (HTS), compound libraries, mass spectrometry (MS), nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) spectroscopy, genomics, compound biosynthesis, and more, scientists will continue to push the envelope in the hopes of finding those important marine natural products that will serve as future drug candidates.

Halichondrin B

Eribulin mesylate

EPA ethyl ester

DHA ethyl ester

Trabectedin (ET-743)

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

2.7 Atenolol and enalapril are drugs used in the treatment of heart disease. Both of these drugs lower blood pressure (albeit in different ways) and reduce the risk of heart attack. Using Table 2.1, identify and label all functional groups in these two compounds:

Atenolol

Enalapril

2.4 Carbon Atoms with Formal Charges

We have seen that carbon generally has four bonds, which allows us to "see" all of the hydrogen atoms even though they are not explicitly shown in bond-line structures. Now we must modify that rule: *A carbon atom will generally have four bonds only when it does not have a formal charge*. When a carbon atom bears a formal charge, either positive or negative, it will have three bonds rather than four. To understand why, let's first consider C^+, and then we will consider C^-.

Recall that the appropriate number of valence electrons for a carbon atom is four. In order to have a positive formal charge, a carbon atom must be missing an electron. In other words, it must have only three valence electrons. Such a carbon atom can only form three bonds. This must be taken into account when counting hydrogen atoms:

No hydrogen atoms on this C^+

One hydrogen atom on this C^+

Two hydrogen atoms on this C^+

Now let's focus on negatively charged carbon atoms. In order to have a negative formal charge, a carbon atom must have one extra electron. In other words, it must have five valence electrons. Two of those electrons will form a lone pair, and the other three electrons will be used to form bonds.

In summary, both C^+ and C^- will have only three bonds. The difference between them is the nature of the fourth orbital. In the case of C^+, the fourth orbital is empty. In the case of C^-, the fourth orbital is occupied by a lone pair of electrons.

2.5 Identifying Lone Pairs

WATCH OUT
Formal charges must always be drawn and can never be omitted, unlike lone pairs, which may be omitted from a bond-line structure.

In bond-line drawings, formal charges must always be drawn. If a formal charge is present and not drawn, then the resulting bond-line structure is incorrect and therefore useless. In contrast, lone pairs do not have to be drawn in a bond-line drawing (and indeed, they are often omitted), because the locations of the lone pairs can be inferred from the drawing. So we need to get some practice identifying lone pairs when they are not drawn. The following example will demonstrate the thought process:

In order to determine the number of lone pairs on the oxygen atom, we simply use the same two-step process described in Section 1.4 for calculating formal charges:

1. *Determine the appropriate number of valence electrons for the atom.* Oxygen is in group 6A of the periodic table, and therefore, it should have six valence electrons.
2. *Determine if the atom actually exhibits the appropriate number of electrons.* This oxygen atom has a negative formal charge, which means it must have one extra electron. Therefore, this oxygen atom must have $6 + 1 = 7$ valence electrons. One of those electrons is being used to form the C—O bond, which leaves six electrons for lone pairs. This oxygen atom must therefore have three lone pairs:

The process above represents an important skill; however, it is even more important to become familiar enough with atoms that the process becomes unnecessary. There is just a handful of patterns

to recognize. Let's go through them methodically, starting with oxygen. Table 2.2 summarizes the important patterns that you will encounter for oxygen atoms.

- A negative charge corresponds with one bond and three lone pairs.
- The absence of charge corresponds with two bonds and two lone pairs.
- A positive charge corresponds with three bonds and one lone pair.

TABLE 2.2 **FORMAL CHARGE ON AN OXYGEN ATOM ASSOCIATED WITH A PARTICULAR NUMBER OF BONDS AND LONE PAIRS**

SKILLBUILDER

2.3 IDENTIFYING LONE PAIRS ON OXYGEN ATOMS

LEARN the skill

Draw all of the lone pairs in the following structure:

SOLUTION

The oxygen atom above has a positive formal charge and three bonds. It is preferable to recognize the pattern—that a positive charge and three bonds must mean that the oxygen atom has just one lone pair:

STEP 1 Determine the appropriate number of valence electrons.

STEP 2 Analyze the formal charge and determine the actual number of valence electrons.

Alternatively, and less preferably, it is possible to calculate the number of lone pairs using the following steps. First, determine the appropriate number of valence electrons for the atom. Oxygen is in group 6A of the periodic table, and therefore, it should have

STEP 3
Count the number of bonds and determine how many of the actual valence electrons must be lone pairs.

six valence electrons. Then, determine if the atom actually exhibits the appropriate number of electrons. This oxygen atom has a positive charge, which means it is missing an electron: 6 − 1 = 5 valence electrons. Three of these five electrons are being used to form bonds, which leaves just two electrons for a lone pair. This oxygen atom has only one lone pair.

PRACTICE the skill

2.8 Draw all lone pairs on each of the oxygen atoms in the following structures. Before doing this, review Table 2.2 and then come back to these problems. Try to identify all lone pairs without having to count. Then, count to see if you were correct.

APPLY the skill

2.9 The rich and varied flavors of toasted bread, roasted coffee, and seared meat are a result of a process known as the *Maillard reaction*. This reaction creates hundreds of new flavorful compounds, including hydroxymethylfurfural (HMF). By measuring levels of HMF in foods such as puffed cereals, production processes can be evaluated.[3] Identify all of the missing lone pairs of electrons in hydroxymethylfurfural.

Hydroxymethylfurfural

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 2.38, 2.39**

Now let's explore nitrogen atoms. Table 2.3 shows the important patterns that you will encounter with nitrogen atoms. In summary:

- A negative charge corresponds with two bonds and two lone pairs.
- The absence of charge corresponds with three bonds and one lone pair.
- A positive charge corresponds with four bonds and no lone pairs.

TABLE 2.3 **FORMAL CHARGE ON A NITROGEN ATOM ASSOCIATED WITH A PARTICULAR NUMBER OF BONDS AND LONE PAIRS**

SKILLBUILDER

2.4 IDENTIFYING LONE PAIRS ON NITROGEN ATOMS

LEARN the skill

Draw any lone pairs associated with the nitrogen atoms in the following structure:

SOLUTION

STEP 1 Determine the appropriate number of valence electrons.

STEP 2 Analyze the formal charge and determine the actual number of valence electrons.

STEP 3 Count the number of bonds and determine how many of the actual valence electrons must be lone pairs.

The top nitrogen atom has a positive formal charge and four bonds. The bottom nitrogen has three bonds and no formal charge. It is preferable to simply recognize that the top nitrogen atom must have no lone pairs and the bottom nitrogen atom must have one lone pair:

Alternatively, and less preferably, it is possible to calculate the number of lone pairs using the following steps. First, determine the appropriate number of valence electrons for the atom. Each nitrogen atom should have five valence electrons. Next, determine if each atom actually exhibits the appropriate number of electrons. The top nitrogen atom has a positive charge, which means it is missing an electron. This nitrogen atom actually has only four valence electrons. Since the nitrogen atom has four bonds, it is using each of its four electrons to form a bond. This nitrogen atom does not possess a lone pair. The bottom nitrogen atom has no formal charge, so this nitrogen atom must be using five valence electrons. It has three bonds, which means that there are two electrons left over, forming one lone pair.

PRACTICE the skill

2.10 Draw any missing lone pairs on each of the nitrogen atoms in the following structures. First, review Table 2.3 and then come back to these problems. Try to identify all lone pairs *without* having to count. Then, count to see if you were correct.

APPLY the skill

2.11 Glue adhesion usually requires a dry surface, so studying the chemistry behind the attachment of mussels to wet rocks can lead to the development of new adhesive materials. Chemists used the compound shown to model the mussel foot proteins involved in the adhesion process.[4] Some of the nitrogen atoms in this structure are believed to play a critical role in achieving the strong binding. Draw all lone pairs associated with the nitrogen atoms of this compound.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 2.34, 2.45**

2.6 Three-Dimensional Bond-Line Structures

Throughout this book, we will use many different kinds of drawings to represent the three-dimensional geometry of molecules. The most common method is a bond-line structure that includes **wedges** and **dashes** to indicate three dimensionality. These structures are used for all types

of compounds, including acyclic, cyclic, and bicyclic compounds (Figure 2.1). In the drawings in Figure 2.1, a wedge represents a group coming out of the page, and a dash represents a group going behind the page. We will use wedges and dashes extensively in Chapter 5 and thereafter.

FIGURE 2.1
Bond-line structures with wedges and dashes to indicate three dimensionality.

In certain circumstances, there are other types of drawings that can be used, all of which also indicate three-dimensional geometry (Figure 2.2).

FIGURE 2.2
Common drawing styles that show three dimensionality for acylic, cyclic, and bicyclic compounds.

Fischer projections are used for acyclic compounds while **Haworth projections** are used exclusively for cyclic compounds. Each of these drawing styles will be used several times throughout this book, particularly in Chapters 5, 7, and 24.

BioLinks The Opioids

As mentioned in the chapter opener, there are many techniques that scientists employ in the design of new drugs. One such technique is called *lead modification*, which involves modifying the structure of a compound known to exhibit desirable medicinal properties. The known compound "leads" the way to the development of other similar compounds and is therefore called the *lead compound*. The story of morphine provides a good example of this process.

Morphine and similar molecules, like heroin and codeine (structures shown), are members of a drug family called *opioids*. Molecules in the opioid family bind to opioid receptors in the nervous system and block the transmission of pain signals to the brain. As a result, they are potent analgesics (pain relievers). In addition, opioids are known to act as depressants (causing sedation and slower respiratory function), and they also relieve symptoms of anxiety and cause an overall state of euphoria.

Morphine is addictive, so it is primarily used for the short-term treatment of acute pain and for terminally ill patients suffering from extreme pain. The analgesic properties of morphine have been exploited for over a millennium. It is the major component of opium, obtained from the unripe seed pods of the poppy plant, *Papaver somniferum*. Morphine was first isolated from opium in 1803, and by the mid-1800s, it was used heavily to control pain during and after surgical procedures. By the end of the 1800s, the addictive properties of morphine became apparent, which fueled the search for nonaddictive analgesics.

In 1925, the structure of morphine was correctly determined. This structure functioned as a lead compound and was modified to produce other compounds with analgesic properties. Early modifications focused on replacing the hydroxyl (OH) groups with other functional groups. Examples include heroin and codeine:

Heroin exhibits stronger activity than morphine and is extremely addictive. Codeine shows less activity than morphine and is less addictive. Codeine is currently used as an analgesic and cough suppressant.

In 1938, the analgesic properties of meperidine, also known as Demerol, were fortuitously discovered. As the story goes, meperidine was originally prepared to function as an antispasmodic agent (to suppress muscle spasms). When administered to mice, it curiously caused the tails of the mice to become erect. It was already known that morphine and related compounds produced a similar effect in mice, so meperidine was further tested and found to exhibit analgesic properties. This discovery generated much

interest by providing new insights in the search for other analgesics. By comparing the structures of morphine, meperidine, and their derivatives, scientists were able to determine which structural features are essential for analgesic activity, shown in red:

Morphine

Meperidine

When morphine is drawn in this way, its structural similarity to meperidine becomes more apparent. Specifically, the bonds indicated in red represent the portion of each compound responsible for the analgesic activity. This part of the compound is called the *pharmacophore*. If any part of the pharmacophore is removed or changed, the resulting compound will not be capable of binding effectively to the appropriate biological receptor, and the compound will not exhibit analgesic properties. The term *auxophore* refers to the rest of the compound (the bonds shown in black). Removing any of these bonds may or may not affect the strength with which the pharmacophore binds to the receptor, thereby affecting the compound's analgesic potency. When modifying a lead compound, the auxophoric regions are the portions targeted for modification. For example, the auxophoric regions of morphine were modified to develop methadone and etorphine.

Methadone

Etorphine

Methadone, developed in Germany during World War II, is used to treat heroin addicts suffering from withdrawal symptoms. Methadone binds to the same receptor as heroin, but it has a longer retention time in the body, thereby enabling the body to cope with the decreasing levels of drug that normally cause withdrawal symptoms. Etorphine is over 3000 times more potent than morphine and is used exclusively in veterinary medicine to immobilize elephants and other large mammals.

Oxycodone and fentanyl are two additional opioids that have received a lot of media attention recently, because of the high number of deaths attributed to their misuse. Oxycodone is made by modifying the structure of morphine as shown below (the modifications are highlighted).

Morphine

Oxycodone

Oxycodone has nearly twice the potency of morphine. Like morphine, it is approved for treating severe pain that can result from surgery, trauma, or cancer. In 1996, a long-acting, 12-hour sustained release form of oxycodone, called OxyContin, was developed. This sustained release form had more oxycodone per tablet, making OxyContin a higher risk for abuse and addiction. Seeing the potential for large profits, a few unethical doctors and pharmacies became "pill mills," specializing in writing and filling prescriptions for OxyContin in huge quantities. This created a correspondingly large number of oxycodone addicts in the process, even though many obtained the drug legally. The problem has received major media attention recently, but it will be hard to achieve a satisfactory solution for the many patients addicted to OxyContin and other potent opioids.

Fentanyl is a very deadly opioid, approximately 100 times as potent as morphine.

Fentanyl

In recent years, there has been an epidemic of fentanyl abuse and overdose deaths. Like methadone, its structure does not look like morphine but it nonetheless binds tightly to the opioid receptors. Fentanyl and similar compounds are easy and inexpensive to make, and they have been imported into the US (mostly from China) in large quantities. Mixed with heroin, they give an even larger effect than heroin and correspondingly higher risk of overdose. Fentanyl, like other opioids, slows down breathing rate, and overdose deaths are usually the result of breathing stopping entirely. Its high potency means that 2 mg of fentanyl (barely enough to see) is potentially fatal. Each year, approximately 500,000 people across the globe die from drug overdose, with over 100,000 of those cases resulting from opioid overdose.

2.7 Introduction to Resonance

The Inadequacy of Bond-Line Structures

We have seen that bond-line structures are generally the most efficient and preferred way to draw the structure of an organic compound. Nevertheless, bond-line structures suffer from one major defect. Specifically, a pair of bonding electrons is always represented as a line that is drawn between two atoms, which implies that the bonding electrons are confined to a region of space directly in between two atoms. In some cases, this assertion is acceptable, as in the following structure:

In this case, the π electrons are in fact located where they are drawn, in between the two central carbon atoms. But in other cases, the electron density is spread out over a larger region of the molecule. For example, consider the following ion, called an *allyl carbocation*:

It might seem from the drawing above that there are two π electrons on the left side and a positive charge on the right side. But this is not the entire picture, and the drawing above is inadequate. Let's take a closer look and first analyze the hybridization states. Each of the three carbon atoms above is sp^2 hybridized. Why? The two carbon atoms on the left side are each sp^2 hybridized because each of those carbon atoms is utilizing a p orbital to form the π bond (Section 1.10). The third carbon atom, bearing the positive charge, is also sp^2 hybridized because it has an empty p orbital. Figure 2.3 shows the three p orbitals associated with an allyl carbocation. This image focuses our attention on the continuous system of p orbitals, which functions as a "conduit," allowing the two π electrons to be associated with all three carbon atoms. Valence bond theory is inadequate for analysis of this system because it treats the electrons as if they were confined between only two atoms. A more appropriate analysis of the allyl cation requires the use of molecular orbital (MO) theory (Section 1.9), in which electrons are associated with the molecule as a whole, rather than individual atoms. Specifically, in MO theory, the entire molecule is treated as one entity, and all of the electrons in the entire molecule occupy regions of space called molecular orbitals. Two electrons are placed in each orbital, starting with the lowest energy orbital, until all electrons occupy orbitals.

FIGURE 2.3
The overlapping p orbitals of an allyl carbocation.

According to MO theory, the three p orbitals shown in Figure 2.3 no longer exist. Instead, they have been replaced by three MOs, illustrated in Figure 2.4 in order of increasing energy. Notice that the lowest energy MO, called the *bonding molecular orbital*, has no vertical nodes. The next higher energy MO, called the *nonbonding molecular orbital*, has one vertical node. The highest energy MO, called the *antibonding molecular orbital*, has two vertical nodes. The π electrons of the allyl system will fill these MOs, starting with the lowest energy MO. How many π electrons will occupy these MOs? The allyl carbocation has only two π electrons, rather than three, because one of the carbon atoms bears a positive formal charge indicating that one electron is missing. The two π electrons of the allyl system will occupy the lowest energy MO (the bonding MO). If the missing electron were to return, it would occupy the next higher energy MO, which is the nonbonding MO. Focus your attention on the nonbonding MO (shown again in Figure 2.5).

FIGURE 2.4
The molecular orbitals associated with the π electrons of an allylic system.

There should be an electron occupying this nonbonding MO, but the electron is missing. Therefore, the colored lobes are empty and represent regions of space that are electron deficient. In conclusion, MO theory suggests that the positive charge of the allyl carbocation is associated with the two ends of the system, rather than just one end.

In a situation like this, any individual bond-line structure that we draw will be inadequate. How can we draw a positive charge that is spread out over two locations, and how can we draw two π electrons that are associated with three carbon atoms?

FIGURE 2.5
The nonbonding molecular orbital associated with the π electrons of an allylic system.

Resonance

The approach that chemists use to deal with the inadequacy of bond-line structures is called **resonance**. According to this approach, we draw more than one bond-line structure and then mentally meld them together:

These drawings are called **resonance structures**, and they show that the positive charge is spread over two locations (and the π electrons are spread over all three carbon atoms). Notice that we separate resonance structures with a straight, two-headed arrow, and we place brackets around the structures. The arrow and brackets indicate that the drawings are resonance structures *of one entity*. This one entity, called a **resonance hybrid**, is *not* flipping back and forth between the different resonance structures. To better understand this, consider the following analogy: A person who has never before seen a nectarine asks a farmer to describe a nectarine. The farmer answers:

> Picture a *peach* in your mind, and now picture a *plum* in your mind. Well, a *nectarine* has features of both fruits: the inside tastes like a peach, the outside is smooth like a plum, and the color is somewhere in between the color of a peach and the color of a plum. So take your image of a peach together with your image of a plum and *meld them together* in your mind into one image. That's a nectarine.

Here is the important feature of the analogy: The nectarine does not vibrate back and forth every second between being a peach and being a plum. A nectarine is a nectarine all of the time. The

image of a peach by itself is not adequate to describe a nectarine. Neither is the image of a plum. But by combining certain characteristics of a peach with certain characteristics of a plum, it is possible to imagine the features of a nectarine. Similarly, with resonance structures, no single drawing adequately describes the nature of the electron density spread out over the molecule. To deal with this problem, we draw several drawings and then meld them together in our minds to obtain one image, or hybrid, just as we did to obtain an image for a nectarine.

Don't be confused by this important point: The term "resonance" does not describe any real process that is actually happening. Rather, chemists draw multiple resonance structures as a bookkeeping method to overcome the inadequacy of bond-line drawings.

Resonance Stabilization

We developed the concept of resonance using the allyl cation as an example, and we saw that the two π electrons are spread out over the three carbon atoms of the allylic system. This spreading of electrons, called **delocalization**, is a stabilizing factor. That is, *molecules and ions are stabilized by the delocalization of electrons.* This stabilization is often referred to as **resonance stabilization**, and the allyl cation is said to be *resonance stabilized*. Resonance stabilization plays a major role in the outcome of many reactions, and we will invoke the concept of resonance in almost every chapter of this textbook. The study of organic chemistry therefore requires a thorough mastery of drawing resonance structures, and the following sections are designed to foster the necessary skills.

2.8 Curved Arrows

In this section, we will focus on **curved arrows**, which are the tools necessary to draw resonance structures properly. Every curved arrow has a *tail* and *head:*

Curved arrows used for drawing resonance structures do not represent the motion of electrons—they are simply tools that allow us to draw resonance structures with ease. These tools treat the electrons *as if* they were moving, even though the electrons are actually not moving at all. In Chapter 3, we will encounter curved arrows that actually do represent the flow of electrons. For now, keep in mind that all curved arrows in this chapter are just tools and do not represent a flow of electrons.

It is essential that the tail and head of every arrow be drawn in precisely the proper location. The tail shows where the electrons are coming from, and the head shows where the electrons are going (remember, the electrons aren't really going anywhere, but we treat them as if they were for the purpose of drawing the resonance structures). We will soon learn patterns for drawing proper curved arrows. But, first, we must learn where not to draw curved arrows. There are two rules that must be followed when drawing curved arrows for resonance structures:

1. *Avoid breaking a single bond.*
2. *Never exceed an octet for second-row elements.*

Let's explore each of these rules:

1. *Avoid breaking a single bond when drawing resonance structures.* By definition, resonance structures must have all the same atoms connected in the same order. Breaking a single bond would change this—hence the first rule:

Don't break a single bond

There are very few exceptions to this rule, and we will only violate it two times in this textbook (both in Chapter 8). Each time, we will explain why it is permissible in that case. In all other cases, the tail of an arrow should never be placed on a single bond.

2. *Never exceed an octet for second-row elements.* Elements in the second row (C, N, O, F) have only four orbitals in their valence shell. Each orbital can either form a bond or hold a lone pair. Therefore, for second-row elements the total of the number of bonds plus the number

of lone pairs can never be more than four. They can never have five or six bonds; the most is four. Similarly, they can never have four bonds and a lone pair, because this would also require five orbitals. For the same reason, they can never have three bonds and two lone pairs. Let's see some examples of curved arrows that violate this second rule. In each of these drawings, the central atom cannot form another bond because it does not have a fifth orbital that can be used.

Bad arrow **Bad** arrow **Bad** arrow

The violation in each of these examples is clear, but with bond-line structures, it can be more difficult to see the violation because the hydrogen atoms are not drawn (and, very often, neither are the lone pairs). Care must be taken to "see" the hydrogen atoms even when they are not drawn:

Bad arrow **Bad** arrow

At first it is difficult to see that the curved arrow on the left structure is violating the second rule. But when we count the hydrogen atoms, it becomes clear that the curved arrow above would create a carbon atom with five bonds.

From now on, we will refer to the second rule as the *octet rule*. But be careful—for purposes of drawing resonance structures, it is only considered a violation if a second-row element has *more* than an octet of electrons. However, it is not a violation if a second-row element has *less* than an octet of electrons. For example:

This carbon atom does not have an octet

This second drawing above is acceptable, even though the central carbon atom has only six electrons surrounding it. For our purposes, we will only consider the octet rule to be violated if we exceed an octet.

Our two rules (avoid breaking a single bond and never exceed an octet for a second-row element) reflect the two features of a curved arrow: the tail and the head. A poorly placed arrow tail violates the first rule, and a poorly directed arrow head violates the second rule.

SKILLBUILDER

2.5 IDENTIFYING VALID RESONANCE ARROWS

LEARN the skill

Inspect the arrow drawn on the following structure and determine whether it violates either of the two rules for drawing curved arrows:

STEP 1
Make sure that the tail of the curved arrow is not located on a single bond.

SOLUTION

In order to determine if either rule has been broken, we must look carefully at the tail and the head of the curved arrow. The tail is placed on a double bond, and therefore, this curved arrow does not break a single bond. So the first rule is not violated.

STEP 2
Make sure that the head of the curved arrow does not violate the octet rule.

Next, we look at the head of the arrow: Has the octet rule been violated? Is there a fifth bond being formed here? Remember that a carbocation (C^+) only has three bonds, not four. Two of the bonds are shown, which means that the C^+ has only one bond to a hydrogen atom:

Therefore, the curved arrow will give the carbon atom a fourth bond, which does not violate the octet rule.

The curved arrow is valid, because the two rules were not violated. Both the tail and head of the arrow are acceptable.

PRACTICE the skill

2.12 In each of the following cases, determine whether the curved arrow violates either of the two rules and describe the violation, if any. (Don't forget to count all lone pairs, as well as all hydrogen atoms that have been omitted from the bond-line drawings.)

2.13 Drawing the resonance structure of the following compound requires one curved arrow. The head of this curved arrow is placed on the oxygen atom, and the tail of the curved arrow can only be placed in one location without violating the rules for drawing curved arrows. Draw this curved arrow.

APPLY the skill

2.14 Polyglycolic acid (PGA) is a biodegradable polymer used in dissolvable sutures.[5] PGA is synthesized by linking together glycolic acid molecules. Inspect the resonance arrows drawn for glycolic acid below and determine whether each curved arrow violates either of the two rules. Describe any violations that occur.

Polyglycolic acid (PGA) Glycolic acid

Whenever more than one curved arrow is used, all curved arrows must be taken into account in order to determine if any of the rules have been violated. For example, the following arrow violates the octet rule:

However, by adding another curved arrow, we remove the violation:

The second curved arrow removes the violation of the first curved arrow. In this example, both arrows are acceptable, because taken together, they do not violate our rules.

Arrow pushing is much like bike riding. The skill of bike riding cannot be learned by watching someone else ride. Learning to ride a bike requires practice. Falling occasionally is a necessary part of the learning process. The same is true with arrow pushing. The only way to learn is with practice. The remainder of this chapter is designed to provide ample opportunity for practicing and mastering resonance structures.

2.9 Formal Charges in Resonance Structures

In Section 1.4, we learned how to calculate formal charges. Resonance structures very often contain formal charges, and it is absolutely critical to draw them properly. Consider the following example:

WATCH OUT
The electrons are not really moving. We are just treating them as if they were.

In this example, there are two curved arrows. The first arrow pushes one of the lone pairs to form a bond, and the second arrow pushes the π bond to form a lone pair on a carbon atom. When both arrows are pushed at the same time, neither of the rules is violated. So, let's focus on how to draw the resonance structure by following the instructions provided by the curved arrows. We delete one lone pair from oxygen and place a π bond between carbon and oxygen. Then we must delete the C—C π bond and place a lone pair on carbon:

However, the structure is not complete without drawing formal charges. If we apply the rules of assigning formal charges, oxygen acquires a positive charge and carbon acquires a negative charge:

Another way to assign formal charges is to think about what the arrows are indicating. In this case, the curved arrows indicate that the oxygen atom is losing a lone pair and gaining a bond. In other words, it is losing two electrons and only gaining one back. The net result is the loss of one electron, indicating that oxygen must incur a positive charge in the resonance structure. A similar analysis for the carbon atom on the bottom right shows that it must incur a negative charge. Notice that the overall net charge is the same in each resonance structure. Let's practice assigning formal charges in resonance structures.

SKILLBUILDER

2.6 ASSIGNING FORMAL CHARGES IN RESONANCE STRUCTURES

LEARN the skill

Draw the resonance structure below. Be sure to include formal charges.

SOLUTION

The arrows indicate that we must delete one lone pair on oxygen, place a double bond between carbon and oxygen, delete the carbon-carbon double bond, and place a lone pair on carbon:

STEP 1
Carefully read what the curved arrows indicate.

Finally, we must assign formal charges. In this case, oxygen started with a negative charge, and this charge has now been pushed down (as the arrows indicate) onto a carbon atom. Therefore, the carbon atom must now bear the negative charge:

STEP 2
Assign formal charges.

Earlier in this chapter, we said that it is not necessary to draw lone pairs, because they are implied by bond-line structures. In the example above, the lone pairs are shown for clarity. This raises an obvious question. Look at the first curved arrow above: The tail is drawn on a lone pair. If the lone pairs had not been drawn, how would the curved arrow be drawn? In situations like this, organic chemists will sometimes draw the curved arrow coming from the negative charge:

Nevertheless, you should avoid this practice, because it can easily lead to mistakes in certain situations. It is highly preferable to draw the lone pairs and then place the tail of the curved arrow on a lone pair, rather than placing it on a negative charge.

After drawing a resonance structure and assigning formal charges, it is always a good idea to count the total charge on the resonance structure. This total charge MUST be the same as on the original structure (conservation of charge). If the first structure had a negative charge, then the resonance structure must also have a net negative charge. If it doesn't, then the resonance structure cannot possibly be correct. The total charge must be the same for all resonance structures, and there are no exceptions to this rule.

PRACTICE the skill

2.15 For each of the structures below, draw the resonance structure that is indicated by the curved arrows. Be sure to include formal charges.

2.16 In each case below, draw the curved arrow(s) required in order to convert the first resonance structure into the second resonance structure. In each case, begin by drawing all lone pairs and then use the formal charges to guide you.

APPLY the skill

2.17 The cation **1** has been shown to lose a proton (H^+) to produce a compound represented by resonance structures **2a, 2b**, and **2c**.[6]

(a) Draw the curved arrows needed to convert resonance structure **2a** into resonance structure **2b**. Begin by drawing all lone pairs and then use the formal charges to guide you.

(b) Draw the resonance arrows needed to convert **2a** into **2c**.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problem 2.40**

2.10 Drawing Resonance Structures via Pattern Recognition

In order to become truly proficient at drawing resonance structures, you must learn to recognize the following five patterns: (1) an allylic lone pair, (2) an allylic carbocation, (3) a lone pair adjacent to C+, (4) a π bond between two atoms of differing electronegativity, and (5) conjugated π bonds in a ring.

We will now explore each of these five patterns, with examples and practice problems.

1. *An allylic lone pair.* Let's begin with some important terminology that we will use frequently throughout the remainder of the text. When a compound contains a carbon-carbon double bond, the two carbon atoms bearing the double bond are called **vinylic** positions, while the atoms connected directly to the vinylic positions are called **allylic** positions:

We are specifically looking for lone pairs in an allylic position. As an example, consider the following compound, which has two lone pairs:

We must learn to identify lone pairs in allylic positions. Here are several examples:

In the last three cases above, the lone pairs are not next to a *carbon-carbon* double bond and are technically not allylic lone pairs (an allylic position is the position next to a carbon-carbon double bond and not any other type of double bond). Nevertheless, for purposes of drawing resonance structures, we will treat these lone pairs in the same way that we treat allylic lone pairs. Specifically, all of the examples above exhibit at least one lone pair next to a π bond.

For each of the examples above, there will be a resonance structure that can be obtained by drawing exactly two curved arrows. The first curved arrow goes from the lone pair to form a π bond, while the second curved arrow goes from the π bond to form a lone pair:

Let's carefully consider the formal charges produced in each of the cases above. When the atom with the lone pair has a negative charge, then it transfers its negative charge to the atom that ultimately receives a lone pair:

When the atom with the lone pair does not have a negative charge, then it will incur a positive charge, while the atom receiving the lone pair will incur a negative charge:

Recognizing this pattern (a lone pair next to a π bond) will save time in calculating formal charges and determining if the octet rule is being violated.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

2.18 For each of the compounds below, locate the pattern we just learned (lone pair next to a π bond) and draw the appropriate resonance structure:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

(f)

(g)

Acetylcholine
(a neurotransmitter)

(h)

5-Amino-4-oxopentanoic acid
(used in therapy and diagnosis of hepatic tumors)

2. *An allylic carbocation.* Again we are focusing on allylic positions, but this time, we are looking for a positive charge located in an allylic position:

Allylic carbocation

When there is an allylic carbocation, only one curved arrow will be required; this arrow goes from the π bond to form a new π bond:

Notice what happens to the formal charge in the process. The positive charge is moved to the other end of the system.

In the previous example, the positive charge was next to one π bond. The following example contains two π bonds, which are said to be **conjugated**, because they are separated from each other by exactly one σ bond (we will explore conjugated π systems in more detail in Chapter 16).

In this situation, we push each of the double bonds over, one at a time:

It is not necessary to waste time recalculating formal charges for each resonance structure, because the arrows indicate what is happening. Think of a positive charge as a hole of electron density—a place that is missing an electron. When we push π electrons to plug up the hole, a new hole is created nearby. In this way, the hole is simply moved from one location to another. Notice that in the above structures the tails of the curved arrows are placed on the π bonds, not on the positive charge. *Never place the tail of a curved arrow on a positive charge* (that is a common mistake).

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

2.19 Draw the resonance structure(s) for each of the compounds below:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

3. *A lone pair adjacent to C+.* In the following example, the oxygen atom exhibits three lone pairs, all of which are adjacent to the positive charge. This pattern requires only one curved arrow. The tail of the curved arrow is placed on a lone pair, and the head of the arrow is placed to form a π bond between the lone pair and the positive charge:

Notice what happens with the formal charges. The atom with the lone pair has a negative charge in this case, and therefore the charges end up canceling each other. Let's consider what happens with formal charges when the atom with the lone pair does not bear a negative charge. For example, consider the following:

Once again, there is a lone pair adjacent to C+. Therefore, we draw only one curved arrow: The tail goes on the lone pair, and the head is placed to form a π bond. In this case, the oxygen atom did not start out with a negative charge. Therefore, it will incur a positive charge in the resonance structure (remember conservation of charge).

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

2.20 For each of the compounds below, locate the lone pair adjacent to C+ and draw the resonance structure:

(a)

(b)

(c)

In Problem 2.20(b), a negative charge and a positive charge are seen canceling each other to become a double bond. However, there is one situation where it is not possible to combine charges to form a double bond—this occurs with the nitro group. The structure of the nitro group looks like this:

In this case, there is a lone pair adjacent to a positive charge, yet we cannot draw a single curved arrow to cancel out the charges:

Why not? The curved arrow shown above violates the octet rule, because it would give the nitrogen atom five bonds. Remember that second-row elements can never have more than four bonds. There is only one way to draw the curved arrow above without violating the octet rule—we must draw a second curved arrow, like this:

Look carefully. These two curved arrows are simply our first pattern (a lone pair next to a π bond). Notice that the charges have not been canceled. Rather, the location of the negative charge has moved from one oxygen atom to the other. The two resonance structures above are the only two valid resonance structures for a nitro group. In other words, the nitro group must be drawn with charge separation, even though the nitro group is overall neutral. The structure of the nitro group cannot be drawn without the charges.

4. *A π bond between two atoms of differing electronegativity.* Recall that electronegativity measures the ability of an atom to attract electrons. A chart of electronegativity values can be found in Section 1.12. For purposes of recognizing this pattern, we will focus on C═O and C═N double bonds.

In these situations, we move the π bond up onto the electronegative atom to become a lone pair:

Notice what happens with the formal charges. A double bond is being separated into a positive and negative charge (this is the opposite of our third pattern, where the charges came together to form a double bond).

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

2.21 Draw a resonance structure for each of the compounds below.

2.22 Draw a resonance structure of the following compound, which was isolated from the fruits of *Ocotea corymbosa*, a native plant of the Brazilian Cerrado.

2.23 Draw a resonance structure of the compound shown below, called 2-heptanone, which is found in some kinds of cheese.

LOOKING AHEAD
In this molecule, called benzene, the electrons are delocalized. As a result, benzene exhibits significant resonance stabilization. We will explore the pronounced stability of benzene in Chapter 17.

5. *Conjugated π bonds enclosed in a ring.* Earlier in this section, we referred to π bonds as being *conjugated* when they are separated from each other by one σ bond (i.e., C═C—C═C).

When conjugated π bonds are enclosed in a ring of alternating double and single bonds, we can push all of the π bonds over by one position:

When drawing the resonance structure above, all of the π bonds can be pushed clockwise or they can all be pushed counterclockwise. Either way achieves the same result.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

2.24 Fingolimod is a novel drug that is used in the treatment of multiple sclerosis. During phase III clinical trials of fingolimod, researchers reported that 70% of patients who took the drug daily for three years were relapse-free. This was a tremendous improvement over previous drugs that only prevented relapse in 30% of patients. Draw a resonance structure of fingolimod:

Fingolimod

Figure 2.6 summarizes the five patterns for drawing resonance structures.

Allylic lone pair	Allylic carbocation	Lone pair adjacent to C+	π bond between two atoms of differing electronegativity	Conjugated π bonds enclosed in a ring
Two curved arrows	One curved arrow	One curved arrow	One curved arrow	Three curved arrows

FIGURE 2.6
A summary of the five patterns for drawing resonance structures.

Take special notice of the number of curved arrows used for each pattern. When drawing resonance structures, always begin by looking for the patterns that utilize only one curved arrow. Otherwise, it is possible to miss a resonance structure. For example, consider the resonance structures of the following compound:

Notice that each pattern used in this example involves only one curved arrow. If we had started by recognizing a lone pair next to a π bond (which utilizes two curved arrows), then we might have missed the middle resonance structure above:

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

2.25 Draw resonance structures for each of the following:

2.11 Assessing the Relative Importance of Resonance Structures

When resonance structures can be drawn for a given molecule, it is understood that the actual structure of the molecule is a hybrid, or blend, of all of the various resonance forms. However, all resonance forms do not necessarily contribute equally to the hybrid. The structure of the hybrid will most closely resemble the resonance form(s) that contributes the most to the hybrid. It is important to be able to evaluate the quality of each resonance form's Lewis structure, because a resonance form with a better Lewis structure will contribute more character to the hybrid. Recall the analogy in which we merged the image of a peach with the image of a plum to obtain an image of a nectarine (Section 2.7). Imagine we create a new type of fruit that is a hybrid between *three* fruits; a peach, a plum, and a kiwi, and suppose that the hypothetical hybrid fruit has the following character: 65% peach character, 30% plum character, and 5% kiwi character. Since the kiwi contributes such a small amount to the hybrid, the hybrid fruit is still expected to look like a nectarine, but this contribution may still be significant since it might be adding something unique to the complex flavor of the fruit. Although some resonance forms may be only minor contributors to the resonance hybrid, they can still be significant and can often help explain or even predict the reactivity of a given compound. The following rules, listed in order of importance, can be used to evaluate the relative significance of resonance contributors.

1. *The most significant resonance forms have the greatest number of filled octets.* In the following example, the first resonance form exhibits a carbon atom that lacks an octet (C+), while all of the atoms in the second resonance form have filled octets. Therefore, the second resonance form is more significant:

In this case, and in general, the resonance form with more covalent bonds is more significant. This is because a resonance form with more covalent bonds will have a greater number of filled octets.

It is fairly common to encounter a carbon atom with a positive charge, even though it lacks an octet (as seen in the first resonance form above). In contrast, oxygen is much more electronegative than carbon, so you should never draw a resonance form in which an oxygen atom lacks an octet. In the example below, the second resonance form is less significant than the first resonance form because the carbon atom lacks an octet, but the third resonance form shown is *insignificant* because the positively charged oxygen atom lacks an octet. Avoid drawing insignificant resonance forms.

2. *The structure with fewer formal charges is more significant.* Any resonance form that contains an atom bearing a +2 or −2 charge is highly unlikely. In the example below, the first resonance form is the best Lewis structure and the largest contributor to the hybrid because it has filled octets and no formal charges. The second resonance form has filled octets, but it is less significant than the first because it has formal charges. The third resonance form is the least significant because it has a carbon atom that lacks an octet:

In cases where there is an overall net charge, as seen in the example below, the creation of new charges is not favorable. For such charged compounds, the goal in drawing resonance forms is to *delocalize the charge* – relocate it to as many different positions as possible.

3. Other things being equal, *a structure with a negative charge on the more electronegative element will be more significant.* To illustrate this, let's revisit the previous example, in which there are two significant resonance forms. The first resonance form has a negative charge on oxygen, while the second resonance form has a negative charge on carbon. Since oxygen is more electronegative than carbon, the first resonance form is more significant:

Similarly, a positive charge will be more stable on the less electronegative element. In the following example, both resonance forms have filled octets, so we consider the location of the positive charge. Nitrogen is less electronegative than oxygen, so the resonance form with N+ is more significant:

4. *Resonance forms that have equally good Lewis structures are described as equivalent and contribute equally to the resonance hybrid.* As an example, consider the carbonate ion (CO_3^{2-}), shown here:

This ion has a net charge, so recall from Rule 2 that the goal is to delocalize the charges as much as possible and to avoid creating new charges. In the actual structure of the carbonate ion (the resonance hybrid), the two negative charges are shared equally among all three oxygen atoms.

SKILLBUILDER

2.7 RANKING THE SIGNIFICANCE OF RESONANCE STRUCTURES

LEARN the skill

Rank the following resonance forms, from most significant to least significant, and briefly explain the rankings.

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Identify any atoms that lack an octet.

We begin by looking for any atoms that lack an octet in any of the resonance forms. Structures **A** and **C** both have filled octets on all atoms (you can count the total number of bonded and nonbonded electrons around each atom to verify that there are always eight electrons around all atoms in **A** and **C**). In structure **B**, however, the carbon atom with a positive charge (called a carbocation) has only three bonds, for a total of six electrons, so it lacks an octet. Therefore, structure **B** is the poorest Lewis structure and the least significant resonance contributor.

Least significant resonance form

STEP 2
Identify formal charges.

Next, we look for formal charges. Since structure **C** has filled octets and no formal charges, it is the best Lewis structure and the most significant resonance contributor:

Most significant resonance form

STEP 3
Consider the location of the formal charge(s).

When comparing resonance forms, the next step is to consider the location of the formal charge(s) for those resonance forms that have charges. In this case, only structures **A** and **B** have formal charges. But we have already seen that structure **B** has an atom that lacks an octet. Structure **A** has filled octets, so it is a better Lewis structure than structure **B** (recall that octets are the most important consideration). Therefore, we don't need to compare the locations of the formal charges in this case. All other features must be equal (octets and

number of formal charges) before the locations of the charges are evaluated. Structure **A** is the second best resonance form:

Second best resonance form

STEP 4
Rank resonance forms.

After applying all of the rules, we can now rank the resonance forms. The most significant contributor (the best Lewis structure) is **C**, because it has filled octets and no formal charges. The next most significant resonance form is **A** (filled octets, but has formal charges) and the least significant resonance form is **B** (incomplete octet). *As a general rule, if one or more of the resonance forms have all filled octets, then any resonance form missing an octet will be a minor contributor.*

Most significant (#1) > (#2) > Least significant (#3)

In summary, resonance form **C** is the best representation of this molecule. However, consideration of the other contributing structures, helps us to identify positions that are electron-rich (δ−) or electron-deficient (δ+).

PRACTICE the skill

2.26 For each of the following, draw all significant resonance forms and rank them from most significant to least significant. Briefly explain the rankings.

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

(f)

APPLY the skill

2.27 In the compounds shown below, the six-membered rings are called benzene rings. Such rings are commonly found in natural products, and we will learn more about the remarkable stability of these ring systems in Chapter 17. Because of resonance involving the attached groups, one of the benzene rings shown is electron-rich and the other is electron-poor. Draw the significant resonance contributors for each to determine which is which. Use δ− and δ+ symbols to indicate any electron-rich and electron-deficient sites, respectively.

2.28 Valderramenol A, a natural product that was isolated from the leaves of a plant native to the Philippines, was found to be antitubercular (can be used to treat tuberculosis).[7] The structure of valderramenol A contains two benzene rings. Using resonance, demonstrate which ring is more electron-rich and which ring is more electron-deficient.

Valderramenol A

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 2.41, 2.47, 2.56, 2.57, 2.59, 2.64, 2.70, 2.72, 2.76, 2.77**

2.12 The Resonance Hybrid

Recall from Section 2.7 that chemists draw resonance structures to deal with the inadequacy of bond-line structures. No matter how many resonance structures are drawn, they collectively represent only one entity. This entity, often called the *resonance hybrid*, is a combination of the individual resonance structures. A resonance hybrid can be drawn by using partial bonds and partial charges to illustrate the delocalization of electrons. As an example, let's consider the resonance hybrid for an allylic carbocation. Recall that this cation has two resonance structures. These resonance structures are shown here, as well as a drawing that depicts the resonance hybrid.

Resonance structures Resonance hybrid

In the first resonance structure, the bond between the left carbon atom and the middle carbon atom is a double bond. But in the second resonance structure, that same bond is depicted as a single bond. Likewise, the bond between the right carbon atom and the middle carbon atom is a single bond in one resonance structure and a double bond in the other resonance structure. In the resonance hybrid, each of these bonds is shown with one solid line and one dashed line, to indicate that the actual structure of this cation is a combination of the individual resonance structures, with bonds that are somewhere between single bonds and double bonds. Overall, the resonance hybrid illustrates that the π bond is delocalized between all three carbon atoms in the allylic cation. This description is consistent with MO theory for the allylic cation. The π electrons occupy the bonding molecular orbital (Figure 2.4), which is spread out over all three carbon atoms.

Next, let's consider the formal charge in the hybrid. The central carbon atom has no formal charge in the resonance structures, so it must also have no formal charge in the resonance hybrid. The carbon atom on the left has no formal charge in one resonance structure and a +1 charge in the other resonance structure. Likewise, the carbon atom on the right has no formal charge in one resonance structure and a +1 charge in the other resonance structure. In the resonance hybrid, each of these carbon atoms is assigned a partial positive charge ($\delta+$) to indicate that the actual structure is a combination, or average, of the individual resonance structures. That is, each of these carbon atoms has a charge somewhere between zero and +1. Overall, the resonance hybrid illustrates that the positive charge is delocalized, or spread out, over two of the three carbon atoms in the allylic cation. Once again, this description is consistent with molecular orbital theory for the allylic cation. Positive charges are areas of electron deficiency, and, in the case of an allylic carbocation, these areas are represented by the nonbonding molecular orbital (as first described in Section 2.7). This molecular orbital (Figure 2.5) indicates that the electron deficiency is delocalized exclusively over the two carbon atoms at the periphery, not the central carbon atom:

In the allylic cation, both resonance contributors are equally significant; that is, neither one is more important than the other. Therefore, they should contribute equally to the resonance hybrid. Each of the two partial bonds is halfway between a single bond and a double bond, and each of the partial charges is halfway between 0 and +1.

Some resonance structures contribute equally to their resonance hybrid, as is the case for the allylic cation. But in other cases, the resonance structures are not equally significant, and their contributions to the resonance hybrid will not be equal. The following SkillBuilder will show one such example as well as a step-by-step method for drawing a resonance hybrid.

SKILLBUILDER

2.8 DRAWING A RESONANCE HYBRID

LEARN the skill

Draw a resonance hybrid for the following anion:

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Draw the significant resonance structures.

This anion exhibits a lone pair that is adjacent to a π bond, and therefore has the following resonance structures:

STEP 2
Determine the relative significance of each resonance structure.

Both of these resonance structures have atoms with full octets, so we consider the location of the formal charge. The more significant resonance structure has a negative formal charge on the oxygen atom, because oxygen is more electronegative than carbon.

STEP 3
Draw the average of the resonance structures to indicate partial bonds and partial charges.

The carbon-carbon bond and the carbon-oxygen bond are each somewhere between a single bond and a double bond. We indicate this in the hybrid by using one solid line and one dotted line to indicate a single bond and a partial double bond, respectively. The negative charge is delocalized over two positions, each of which bears a partial charge between 0 and −1. We indicate this in the hybrid using the symbol δ− to indicate a partial negative charge.

The nonbonding electrons are not drawn since they can be inferred from the charges. A further consideration against showing the nonbonding electrons in the hybrid is that averaging the number of nonbonding electrons in this case, as in many others, would lead to an odd number of electrons. This would imply a radical (an unpaired electron) and the evidence does not support radical character in this resonance hybrid.

STEP 4
Refine the drawing by drawing the partial charges to reflect the relative significance of the individual resonance structures, as appropriate.

In this example, one resonance structure is more significant than the other, so the resonance hybrid will be an unequal combination, or weighted average, of the individual resonance structures. The more significant resonance structure will contribute more character to the resonance hybrid. The negative charge is still shared between the oxygen and carbon atoms; however, more of the negative charge will reside on the more electronegative oxygen atom. This unequal sharing is indicated by using differently sized δ− signs, highlighted in the following revised resonance hybrid.

PRACTICE the skill

2.29 Draw a resonance hybrid for each of the following.

APPLY the skill

2.30 The dragmacidin class of natural products has been isolated from various marine sponges. They have been shown to have many interesting biological properties, including anti-viral, anti-fungal, and anti-bacterial activity. (+)-Dragmacidin D, shown below, was also made in the laboratory, which allowed the structure to be confirmed.[8] The positive charge in dragmacidin D is delocalized. Draw all resonance structures that show delocalization of this charge, and then draw a resonance hybrid.

(+)-Dragmacidin D

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 2.71, 2.78, 2.79**

2.13 Delocalized and Localized Lone Pairs

In this section, we will explore some important differences between lone pairs that participate in resonance and lone pairs that do not participate in resonance.

Delocalized Lone Pairs

Recall that one of our five patterns was a lone pair that is allylic to a π bond. Such a lone pair will participate in resonance and is said to be **delocalized**. When an atom possesses a delocalized lone pair, the geometry of that atom is affected by the presence of the lone pair. As an example, consider the structure of an amide:

An amide

The rules we learned in Section 1.11 would suggest that the nitrogen atom should be sp^3 hybridized and trigonal pyramidal, but this is not correct. Instead, the nitrogen atom is actually sp^2 hybridized and trigonal planar. Why? The lone pair is participating in resonance and is therefore delocalized:

In the second resonance structure above, the nitrogen atom does not bear a lone pair. Rather, the nitrogen atom bears a π bond. In that resonance structure, the nitrogen atom is clearly sp^2 hybridized. This creates a conflict: How can the nitrogen atom be sp^3 hybridized in one resonance structure and sp^2 hybridized in the other structure? That would imply that the geometry of the nitrogen atom is flipping back and forth between trigonal pyramidal and trigonal planar. This cannot be the case, because resonance is not a physical process. The nitrogen atom is actually sp^2 hybridized and trigonal planar in both resonance structures. How? The nitrogen atom has a delocalized lone pair, and it therefore occupies a p orbital (rather than a hybridized orbital), so that it can overlap with the p orbitals of the π bond (Figure 2.7).

FIGURE 2.7
An illustration of the overlapping atomic p orbitals of an amide.

Whenever a lone pair participates in resonance, it will occupy a p orbital rather than a hybridized orbital, and this must be taken into account when predicting geometry. This will be extremely important in Chapter 25 when we discuss the three-dimensional shape of proteins.

Localized Lone Pairs

A **localized lone pair**, by definition, is a lone pair that does not participate in resonance. In other words, the lone pair is not allylic to a π bond:

Localized Delocalized

In some cases, a lone pair might appear to be delocalized even though it is actually localized. For example, consider the structure of pyridine:

Pyridine

The lone pair in pyridine appears to be allylic to a π bond, and it is tempting to use our pattern to draw the following resonance structure:

Not a valid resonance structure

FIGURE 2.8
The overlapping *p* orbitals of pyridine.

However, this resonance structure is not valid. Why not? In this case, the lone pair on the nitrogen atom is actually not participating in resonance, even though it is next to a π bond. Recall that in order for a lone pair to participate in resonance, it must occupy a *p* orbital that can overlap with the neighboring *p* orbitals, forming a "conduit."

In the case of pyridine, the nitrogen atom is already using a *p* orbital for the π bond (Figure 2.8). The nitrogen atom can only use one *p* orbital to join in the conduit shown in Figure 2.8, and that *p* orbital is already being utilized by the π bond. As a result, the lone pair cannot join in the conduit, and therefore it cannot participate in resonance. In this case, the lone pair occupies an sp^2-hybridized orbital, which is in the plane of the ring.

Here is the bottom line: *Whenever an atom possesses both a π bond and a lone pair, they will not both participate in resonance*. In general, only the π bond will participate in resonance, and the lone pair will not.

Let's get some practice identifying localized and delocalized lone pairs and using that information to determine geometry.

SKILLBUILDER

2.9 IDENTIFYING LOCALIZED AND DELOCALIZED LONE PAIRS

LEARN the skill

Histamine is a compound that plays a key role in many biological functions. Most notably, it is involved in immune responses, where it triggers the symptoms of allergic reactions:

Histamine

Each nitrogen atom exhibits a lone pair. In each case, identify whether the lone pair is localized or delocalized and then use that information to predict the geometry for each nitrogen atom in histamine.

SOLUTION

Let's begin with the nitrogen on the right side of the compound. This lone pair is localized, and therefore we can use the method outlined in Section 1.11 to determine the geometry:

There are 3 bonds and 1 lone pair, and therefore:

1) Steric number = 3 + 1 = 4
2) 4 electron pairs = tetrahedral arrangement of electron pairs
3) Arrangement of atoms = trigonal pyramidal

This lone pair is not participating in resonance, so our method accurately predicts the geometry to be trigonal pyramidal. This geometry is consistent with sp^3 hybridization.

Now, let's consider the nitrogen atom on the left side of the compound. The lone pair on that nitrogen atom is next to a π bond, so it is delocalized by resonance:

Therefore, this lone pair is actually occupying a *p* orbital, rendering the nitrogen atom sp^2 hybridized, rather than sp^3 hybridized. As a result, the geometry is trigonal planar.

Now let's consider the remaining nitrogen atom:

This nitrogen atom already has a π bond participating in resonance. Therefore, the lone pair cannot also participate in resonance. In this case, the lone pair must be localized. The nitrogen atom is in fact sp^2 hybridized and exhibits bent geometry.

To summarize, each of the nitrogen atoms in histamine has a different geometry.

PRACTICE the skill

2.31 For each compound below, identify all lone pairs and indicate whether each lone pair is localized or delocalized. Then, use that information to predict the geometry for each atom that exhibits a lone pair.

(a)

(b)

(c)

APPLY the skill

2.32 Nicotine is a toxic substance present in tobacco leaves. There are two lone pairs in the structure of nicotine. In general, localized lone pairs are much more reactive than delocalized lone pairs. With this information in mind, do you expect both lone pairs in nicotine to be reactive? Justify your answer.

Nicotine

2.33 Isoniazid is used in the treatment of tuberculosis and multiple sclerosis. Identify each lone pair as either localized or delocalized. Justify your answer in each case.

Isoniazid

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 2.46, 2.58, 2.69**

REVIEW OF CONCEPTS AND VOCABULARY

SECTION 2.1

- Chemists use many different drawing styles to communicate structural information, including Lewis structures, **partially condensed structures**, and **condensed structures**.
- The molecular formula does not provide structural information.

SECTION 2.2

- Bond-line structures are faster to draw and easier to interpret than other drawing styles.

SECTION 2.3

- A **functional group** is a characteristic group of atoms/bonds that show a predictable chemical behavior.
- The chemistry of every organic compound is determined by the functional groups present in the compound.

SECTION 2.4

- A formal charge is associated with any atom that does not exhibit the appropriate number of valence electrons.
- When a carbon atom bears either a positive or negative charge, it will have only three, rather than four, bonds.

SECTION 2.5

- Lone pairs are often not drawn in bond-line structures. It is important to recognize that these lone pairs are present.

SECTION 2.6

- In bond-line structures, a **wedge** represents a group coming out of the page, and a **dash** represents a group behind the page.
- Other drawings used to show three dimensionality include **Fischer projections** and **Haworth projections**.

SECTION 2.7

- Bond-line structures are inadequate in some situations, and an approach called **resonance** is required.
- **Resonance structures** are separated by double-headed arrows and surrounded by brackets:

- **Resonance stabilization** refers to the **delocalization** of electrons via resonance.

SECTION 2.8

- **Curved arrows** are tools for drawing resonance structures.
- When drawing curved arrows for resonance structures, avoid breaking a single bond and never exceed an octet for second-row elements.

SECTION 2.9

- All formal charges must be shown when drawing resonance structures.

SECTION 2.10

- Resonance structures are most easily drawn by looking for the following five patterns:
  1. An **allylic** lone pair
  2. An allylic carbocation
  3. A lone pair adjacent to C+
  4. A π bond between two atoms of differing electronegativity
  5. **Conjugated π bonds** enclosed in a ring
- When drawing resonance structures, always begin by looking for the patterns that utilize only one curved arrow.

SECTION 2.11

- The following rules can be used to identify the significance of resonance structures:
  1. The most significant resonance forms have the greatest number of *filled octets*.
  2. The structure with *fewer formal charges* is more significant.
  3. Other things being equal, a structure with a negative charge on the more electronegative element will be more significant. Similarly, a positive charge will be more stable on the less electronegative element.
  4. Resonance forms that have equally good Lewis structures are described as *equivalent* and contribute equally to the resonance hybrid.

SECTION 2.12

- Resonance structures collectively represent only one entity. This entity, often called the **resonance hybrid**, is a combination of the individual resonance structures.
- A resonance hybrid can be drawn by using partial bonds and partial charges to illustrate the delocalization of electrons.

SECTION 2.13

- A **delocalized lone pair** participates in resonance and occupies a *p* orbital.
- A **localized lone pair** does not participate in resonance.
- Whenever an atom possesses both a π bond and a lone pair, they will not both participate in resonance.

SKILLBUILDER REVIEW

2.1 CONVERTING A CONDENSED STRUCTURE INTO A LEWIS STRUCTURE

EXAMPLE Draw a Lewis structure for the following compound:

$(CH_3)_2CC(CH_3)OCH_2CH(CH_3)CHO$

STEP 1 Draw all atoms and all sigma bonds. Note that H cannot have more than one bond:

STEP 2 Identify any atoms that are missing an octet of electrons, and then draw pi bonds and lone pairs as necessary to complete the octets.

Try Problems **2.1–2.3, 2.43, 2.44, 2.48, 2.49, 2.67**

2.2 DRAWING BOND-LINE STRUCTURES

Draw a bond-line drawing of this compound.

STEP 1 Delete all hydrogen atoms except for those connected to heteroatoms.

STEP 2 Draw in zigzag format, keeping triple bonds linear.

STEP 3 Delete all carbon atoms.

Try Problems **2.4–2.6, 2.35, 2.36, 2.42, 2.50, 2.55**

2.3 IDENTIFYING LONE PAIRS ON OXYGEN ATOMS

Oxygen with a negative charge...

...has three lone pairs.

A neutral oxygen atom...

...has two lone pairs.

Oxygen with a positive charge...

...has one lone pair.

Try Problems **2.8, 2.9, 2.38, 2.39**

2.4 IDENTIFYING LONE PAIRS ON NITROGEN ATOMS

Nitrogen with a negative charge...

...has two lone pairs.

A neutral nitrogen atom...

...has one lone pair.

Nitrogen with a positive charge...

...has no lone pairs.

Try Problems **2.10, 2.11, 2.34, 2.45**

2.5 IDENTIFYING VALID RESONANCE ARROWS

RULE 1: The tail of a curved arrow should not be placed on a single bond.

RULE 2: The head of a curved arrow cannot result in a bond causing a second-row element to exceed an octet.

Try Problems **2.12–2.14**

2.6 ASSIGNING FORMAL CHARGES IN RESONANCE STRUCTURES

Read the curved arrows.

Try Problems **2.15–2.17, 2.40**

2.7 RANKING THE SIGNIFICANCE OF RESONANCE STRUCTURES

STEP 1 Identify any atoms that lack an octet. The most significant resonance forms have the greatest number of filled octets.

STEP 2 Identify formal charges. The structure with fewer formal charges is more significant.

STEP 3 Consider the location of the formal charge(s). Other things being equal, a structure with a negative charge on the more electronegative element will be more significant. Similarly, a positive charge will be more stable on the less electronegative element.

STEP 4 Rank resonance forms. As a general rule, if one or more of the resonance forms has all filled octets, then any resonance form missing an octet will be a minor contributor.

Try Problems **2.26–2.28, 2.41, 2.47, 2.56, 2.57, 2.59, 2.64, 2.70, 2.72, 2.76, 2.77**

2.8 DRAWING A RESONANCE HYBRID

STEPS 1 and **2** Draw the resonance structures and identify which is more significant.

STEP 3 Indicate partial bonds and partial charges.

STEP 4 Revise the size of the partial charges to indicate distribution of electron density.

Try Problems **2.29, 2.30, 2.71, 2.78, 2.79**

2.9 IDENTIFYING LOCALIZED AND DELOCALIZED LONE PAIRS

The lone pair on this nitrogen atom is delocalized by resonance, and it therefore occupies a *p* orbital.

As a result, the nitrogen atom is sp^2 hybridized and is therefore trigonal planar.

Try Problems 2.31–2.33, 2.46, 2.58, 2.69

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

• **Included in Answers section**

2.34 Draw all lone pairs in each of the following compounds:

Acetylsalicylic acid (aspirin)

Acetaminophen (Tylenol)

Caffeine

2.35 Draw bond-line structures for all constitutional isomers of C_4H_{10}.

2.36 Draw bond-line structures for all constitutional isomers of C_5H_{12}.

2.37 Draw bond-line structures for vitamin A and vitamin C:

Vitamin A

Vitamin C

2.38 How many lone pairs are found in the structure of vitamin C?

2.39 A carbene is a highly reactive intermediate in which a carbon atom bears a lone pair and no formal charge:

How many hydrogen atoms are attached to the central carbon atom above?

2.40 Draw the missing formal charge in each case below:

2.41 • Draw significant resonance structures for the following compound:

2.42 Draw bond-line structures for all constitutional isomers of the following compound:

$$CH_3CH_2CH(CH_3)_2$$

2.43 Identify which two compounds below are constitutional isomers:

$(CH_3)_3C\ddot{\underset{..}{O}}CH_3$ $\quad$ $(CH_3)_2CH\ddot{\underset{..}{O}}CH_3$ $\quad$ $(CH_3)_2CH\ddot{\underset{..}{O}}CH_2CH_3$

2.44 Identify the number of sp^3-hybridized carbon atoms in the following compound:

$$(CH_3)_2C{=}CHC(CH_3)_3$$

2.45 Amino acids are biological compounds with the following structure, where the R group can vary. The structure and biological function of amino acids will be discussed in Chapter 25. Identify the total number of lone pairs present in an amino acid, assuming that the R group does not contain any atoms with lone pairs.

An amino acid

2.46 Each structure below exhibits one lone pair. In each case, identify the type of atomic orbital that the lone pair occupies.

(a) (b) (c)

2.47 Draw all significant resonance structures for each of the following:

(a) (b) (c)

2.48 • Write a condensed structural formula for each of the following compounds:

(a) (b)

(c)

2.49 What is the molecular formula for each compound in the previous problem?

2.50 • Draw bond-line structures for all constitutional isomers with the molecular formula C_4H_9Cl.

2.51 Draw resonance structures for each of the following:

(a)

(b)

(c)
(d)

2.52 Draw resonance structures for each of the following:

(a)

(b)
(c)

(d)

(e)

(f)

2.53 Determine the relationship between the two structures below. Are they resonance structures or are they constitutional isomers?

2.54 Consider each pair of compounds below and determine whether the pair represents the same compound, constitutional isomers, or different compounds that are not isomeric at all:

(a)
(b)

(c)
(d)

2.55 Draw a bond-line structure for each of the following compounds:

(a) $CH_2{=}CHCH_2C(CH_3)_3$ (b) $(CH_3CH_2)_2CHCH_2CH_2OH$

(c) $CH{\equiv}COCH_2CH(CH_3)_2$ (d) $CH_3CH_2OCH_2CH_2OCH_2CH_3$

(e) $(CH_3CH_2)_3CBr$ (f) $(CH_3)_2C{=}CHCH_3$

2.56 A mixture of sulfuric acid and nitric acid will produce small quantities of the nitronium ion (NO_2^+):

Does the nitronium ion have any significant resonance structures? Why or why not?

2.57 Consider the structure of ozone:

Ozone is formed in the upper atmosphere, where it absorbs short-wavelength UV radiation emitted by the sun, thereby protecting us from harmful radiation. Draw all significant resonance structures for ozone. (**Hint:** Begin by drawing all lone pairs.)

2.58 • Melatonin is an animal hormone believed to have a role in regulating the sleep cycle:

Melatonin

The structure of melatonin incorporates two nitrogen atoms. What is the hybridization state and geometry of each nitrogen atom? Explain your answer.

2.59 Draw all significant resonance structures for each of the following compounds:

(a)

Estradiol
(Female sex hormone)

(b)

Testosterone
(Male sex hormone)

2.60 Use resonance structures to help you identify all sites of low electron density (δ+) in the following compound:

2.61 Use resonance structures to help you identify all sites of high electron density (δ−) in the following compound:

2.62 • Draw and rank all significant resonance forms for the following compound. Briefly explain your rankings.

2.63 Enamines, compounds with an amino group attached to a double bond, are electron-rich alkenes that have important synthetic applications. Draw the major resonance contributors for the enamine shown and determine which site(s) on the structure are most electron-rich.

ACS-STYLE PROBLEMS (Multiple Choice)

Problems 2.64–2.72 follow the style of the ACS organic chemistry exam. For each of these problems, there will be one correct answer and three distractors.

2.64 • All of the following are significant resonance structures of the benzyl carbocation, EXCEPT:

Benzyl carbocation

(a) (b) (c) (d)

2.65 • Which of the following resonance structures is the most signficant contributor to the resonance hybrid?

(a) (b) (c) (d)

2.66 • Which of the following structures exhibits an sp^3-hybridized nitrogen atom?

(a) (b) (c) (d)

2.67 • Which is a bond-line drawing of $(CH_3)_2CHCH_2OC(CH_3)_3$?

(a) (b)

(c) (d)

2.68 • Which of the following has the correct curved arrow(s) placement to show resonance for the given allylic carbocation?

(a) (b)

(c) (d)

2.69 • Which of the following anions is resonance delocalized?

I

II

III

(a) **I** only (b) **III** only (c) **II** and **III** (d) **I** and III

2.70 • The following cation has a total of how many resonance structures?

(a) 2 (b) 3 (c) 4 (d) 5

2.71 • Which of the following best represents the resonance hybrid of the given anion?

(a) (b)

(c) (d)

2.72 • Which of the following does NOT represent a pair of resonance structures?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d) $H_2\overset{\ominus}{C}-C\equiv CH \longleftrightarrow H_2C=C=\overset{\ominus}{C}H$

INTEGRATED PROBLEMS

2.73 Cycloserine is an antibiotic isolated from the microbe *Streptomyces orchidaceous*. It is used in conjunction with other drugs for the treatment of tuberculosis.

Cycloserine

(a) What is the molecular formula of this compound?

(b) How many sp^3-hybridized carbon atoms are present in this structure?

(c) How many sp^2-hybridized carbon atoms are present in this structure?

(d) How many *sp*-hybridized carbon atoms are present in this structure?

(e) How many lone pairs are present in this structure?

(f) Identify each lone pair as localized or delocalized.

(g) Identify the geometry of each atom (except for hydrogen atoms).

(h) Draw all significant resonance structures of cycloserine.

2.74 Ramelteon is a hypnotic agent used in the treatment of insomnia:

Ramelteon

(a) What is the molecular formula of this compound?

(b) How many sp^3-hybridized carbon atoms are present in this structure?

(c) How many sp^2-hybridized carbon atoms are present in this structure?

(d) How many *sp*-hybridized carbon atoms are present in this structure?

(e) How many lone pairs are present in this structure?

(f) Identify each lone pair as localized or delocalized.

(g) Identify the geometry of each atom (except for hydrogen atoms).

2.75 In each of the following compounds, identify all carbon atoms that you expect will be deficient in electron density (δ+). If you need help, refer to Section 1.5.

(a)

(b)

(c)

2.76 In the compound below, identify all carbon atoms that are electron deficient (δ+) and all carbon atoms that are electron rich (δ−). Justify your answer with resonance structures.

2.77 Consider the following two compounds:

Compound A **Compound B**

(a) Identify which of these two compounds has greater resonance stabilization.

(b) Would you expect compound **C** (below) to have a resonance stabilization that is more similar to compound **A** or to compound **B**?

Compound C

2.78 Even though they have been isolated from different plants, the natural products **3** and **4** have similar core structures. This allowed both of them to be made in the laboratory from a common precursor **2**, which was made from compound **1**.[9] The reaction that converts compound **1** into compound **2** makes a new carbon-carbon bond that is present in both compounds **3** and **4**.

1 **2** **3** **4**

(a) How many carbon atoms are introduced into compound **1** in order to make compound **2**?

(b) Which carbon atom in compound **1** is involved in the reaction to make compound **2**?

(c) Draw a resonance hybrid of compound **1**.

(d) What does the resonance hybrid tell you about the partial charge on the reactive carbon atom in compound **1**?

2.79 Compound **2** is produced by the fungus *Exserohilum rostratum* and has been shown to fight inflammation and block/prevent tissue scarring. Compound **2** was made in the laboratory from compound **1**, as shown.[10] One of the early steps in this process involves the formation of a new carbon-carbon bond between the highlighted carbon atoms, thereby forming the 12-membered ring in compound **2**. As we will learn in upcoming chapters, the reaction occurs because one of these carbon atoms is electron rich (δ−) while the other is electron poor (δ+). Identify each highlighted carbon atom as being δ+ or δ−, and in each case,

draw a resonance hybrid that justifies your choice.

2.80 CL-20 and HMX are both powerful explosives. CL-20 produces a more powerful blast but is generally considered too shock-sensitive for practical use. HMX is significantly less sensitive and is used as a standard military explosive. When a 2:1 mixture of the two compounds is co-crystallized, the resulting explosive is expected to be more powerful than HMX alone, but with a sensitivity similar to HMX.[11]

(a) What are the molecular formulas for CL-20 and HMX?

(b) Consider the lone pair of electrons on one of the nitrogen atoms within the ring(s) for either molecule. Is the lone pair localized or delocalized?

2.81 Progesterone is a female hormone that plays a critical role in the menstrual cycle by preparing the lining of the uterus for implantation of an egg. During W. S. Johnson's biomimetic synthesis of progesterone (a synthesis that draws inspiration from and mimics naturally occurring, biosynthetic pathways), one of the final reactions in the synthesis was believed to have proceeded via the following intermediate.[12] Use resonance structures to explain why this intermediate is particularly stable.

2.82 Many compounds with desirable medicinal properties are isolated from natural sources and are thus referred to as natural products. However, a compound's medicinal properties are often known before the structure of the compound has been determined. Below are examples of compounds where the first proposed structure was incorrect.[13] In each case, the corresponding correct structure is also shown. Identify all functional groups in each pair of compounds and then compare the similarities and differences between their molecular structures.

(a)

Proposed structure of cholesterol

Correct structure of cholesterol

(b)

Proposed structure of porritoxin

Correct structure of porritoxin

2.83 Triphenylmethane dyes are among the first synthetic dyes developed for commercial use. A comparison of the structures of these compounds reveals that even small differences in structure can lead to large differences in color.[14] The structures of three such dyes are shown below.

	X	R
Basic green 4	H	CH_3
Basic red 9	NH_2	H
Basic violet 4	$N(C_2H_5)_2$	C_2H_5

(a) Draw resonance structures for basic green 4 that illustrate the delocalization of the positive charge.

(b) Determine whether basic green 4 or basic violet 4 is expected to have greater resonance stabilization. Justify your choice.

Problems 2.84 and 2.85 are intended for students who have already covered IR spectroscopy (Chapter 14).

2.84 Polymers are very large compounds, assembled from smaller units, called monomers. For example, polymer **2**, called poly(vinyl acetate), is made from vinyl acetate **(1)**. Polymer **2** can be converted to polymer **4**, called poly(vinyl alcohol), or PVA, via a process called hydrolysis (explored further in Chapter 20). Complete hydrolysis of **2** leads to **4**, while incomplete hydrolysis of **2** leads to **3** in which the polymer chain still contains some residual acetate groups. Polymer **2** is one of the main ingredients in white glue, while polymer **3** is present in aqueous PVA glues. Describe how IR spectroscopy can be used to monitor the conversion of **3** to **4**. Specifically, describe what you would look for to confirm complete hydrolysis of the acetate groups.[15]

2.85 Coumarin and its derivatives exhibit a broad array of industrial applications, including, but not limited to, cosmetics, food preservatives, and fluorescent laser dyes. Some derivatives of coumarin, such as warfarin, exhibit antithrombic activity and are currently used as blood thinners (to prevent the formation of potentially fatal blood clots). Identify how you might use IR spectroscopy to monitor the following reaction, in which compound **1** is converted into a coumarin derivative (compound **2**). Describe at least three different signals that you could analyze to confirm the transformation of **1** to **2**.[16]

CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

2.86 The following compound is an intermediate in the synthesis of a *gelator*, which is a compound capable of self-assembling to form a gel in an organic liquid.[17]

(a) Identify each functional group in the molecule.

(b) In Chapter 4, we will learn that single bonds experience free rotation at room temperature, while double bonds do not. Consider the two C—N bonds in the structure. One of these bonds exhibits free rotation, as expected for a single bond, but the other C—N bond exhibits restricted rotation. Identify the C—N bond with restricted rotation, and justify your answer by drawing resonance structures.

2.87 The following compound is an amino acid derivative (Chapter 25). In solution, molecules of this compound show a tendency to "stick" together, or *self-assemble*, via a series of intermolecular hydrogen bonds. During self-assembly, the growing aggregate can entrap molecules of liquid, thereby forming a gel.[18]

(a) Each of the six hydrogen atoms bound directly to nitrogen can form a hydrogen bond, but H atoms that are on the amides can form stronger hydrogen bonds than H atoms on the amines. Explain why this is so using resonance.

(b) Draw the intermolecular hydrogen bonds that form during self-assembly. Do this by drawing three molecules stacked directly on top of each other, each in the orientation shown. Then, draw hydrogen bonds from the central molecule to each of the other two molecules, showing eight intermolecular H bonds between amide H atoms on one molecule to amide O atoms on adjacent molecules.

2.88 In Chapter 3, we will explore the factors that render compounds acidic or basic. Tropolone **(1)** is a compound that is both fairly acidic and fairly basic.[19] It is acidic because it is capable of losing a proton (H^+) to form a relatively stable anion **(2)**, while it is basic because of its ability to receive a proton to form cation **3**:

(a) Draw all significant resonance structures of anion **2** and of cation **3** and explain why each of these ions is stabilized.

(b) In compound **1**, the bond lengths for the C—C bonds vary greatly and alternate in length (long, short, long, etc.). But in ions **2** and **3**, the lengths of the bonds are similar. Explain.

(c) The intramolecular hydrogen bonding interaction in **3** is significantly diminished in comparison to **1**. Explain.

2.89 Basic red 1 is a tetracyclic compound (it has four rings) that is used as a commerical dye,[20] much like the compounds seen in Problem 2.83. This compound has many significant resonance structures, and the positive charge is highly delocalized. While resonance structures can be drawn in which the positive charge is spread throughout all four rings, nonetheless, one of the rings likely bears very little of the charge relative to the other rings. Identify the ring that is not participating as effectively in resonance and suggest an explanation.

LIST OF REFERENCES

1. *Fuel* **2010**, *89*, 2864–2872.
2. *Structure* **2011**, *19*, 1876–1884.
3. *Food Chemistry* **2015**, *188*, 286–293.
4. *Science* **2015**, *349*, 628–632.
5. *Polymer.* **1979**, *20*, 1459–1464.
6. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **2001**, *123*, 7949–7950.
7. *J. Nat. Prod.* **2014**, *77*, 2711–2715.
8. *Org. Lett.* **2015**, *17*, 1529–1532.
9. *Tetrahedron* **2005**, *61*, 2761–2766.
10. *Org. Biomol. Chem.* **2015**, *13*, 7813–7821.
11. *Cryst. Growth Des.* **2012**, *12*, 4311–4314.
12. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1971**, *93*, 4332–4334.
13. *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed.* **2005**, *44*, 1012–1044.
14. *Chem. Rev.* **1993**, *93*, 381–433.
15. *J. Chem. Ed.* **2006**, *83*, 1534–1536.
16. *J. Chem. Ed.* **2006**, *83*, 287–289.
17. *Soft Matter* **2012**, *8*, 5486–5492.
18. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **2009**, *131*, 11478–11484.
19. *J. Org. Chem.* **1997**, *62*, 3200–3207.
20. *Chem. Rev.* **1993**, *93*, 381–433.

3

Acids and Bases

3.1 Introduction to Brønsted-Lowry Acids and Bases

3.2 Flow of Electron Density: Curved-Arrow Notation

3.3 Brønsted-Lowry Acidity: Comparing pK_a Values

3.4 Brønsted-Lowry Acidity: Factors Affecting the Stability of Anions

3.5 Bronsted-Lowry Acidity: Assessing the Relative Acidity of Cationic Acids

3.6 Position of Equilibrium and Choice of Reagents

3.7 Leveling Effect

3.8 Solvating Effects

3.9 Counterions

3.10 Lewis Acids and Bases

DID YOU EVER **WONDER...**

how dough rises to produce fluffy (leavened) rolls and bread?

Dough rises fairly quickly in the presence of a leavening agent, such as yeast, baking powder, or baking soda. All of these leavening agents work by producing bubbles of carbon dioxide gas that get trapped in the dough, causing it to rise. Then, upon heating in an oven, these gas bubbles expand, creating holes in the dough. Although leavening agents work in similar ways, they differ in how they produce the CO_2. Yeast produces CO_2 as a by-product of metabolic processes, while baking soda and baking powder produce CO_2 as a by-product of acid-base reactions. Later in this chapter, we will take a closer look at the acid-base reactions involved, and we will discuss the difference between baking soda and baking powder. An understanding of the relevant reactions will lead to a greater appreciation of food chemistry.

In this chapter, our study of acids and bases will serve as an introduction to the role of electrons in ionic reactions. An *ionic reaction* is a reaction in which ions participate as reactants, intermediates, or products. These reactions represent 95% of the reactions covered in this textbook. In order to prepare ourselves for the study of ionic reactions, it is critical to be able to identify acids and bases. We will learn how to draw acid-base reactions and to compare the acidity or basicity of compounds. These tools will enable us to predict when acid-base reactions are likely to occur and to choose the appropriate reagent to carry out any specific acid-base reaction.

Top (*Lemon*) s_white/Getty Images; *Bottom* (*Grain*) Masterfile; *Bottom* (*Measuring spoons and biscuits*) Ken Karp

DO YOU **REMEMBER?**

Before you go on, be sure you understand the following topics.
If necessary, review the suggested sections to prepare for this chapter.

- Identifying Formal Charges (Sections 1.4 and 2.4)
- Drawing and Interpreting Bond-Line Structures (Sections 1.6 and 2.2)
- Identifying Lone Pairs (Section 2.5)
- Drawing Resonance Structures (Section 2.10)

Take the DO YOU **REMEMBER?** QUIZ in the **online course** to check your understanding.

3.1 Introduction to Brønsted-Lowry Acids and Bases

This chapter will focus primarily on Brønsted-Lowry acids and bases. There is also a brief section dealing with Lewis acids and bases, a topic that will be revisited in Chapter 6 and subsequent chapters.

The definition of **Brønsted-Lowry acids and bases** is based on the transfer of a proton (H^+). An *acid* is defined as a *proton donor*, while a *base* is defined as a *proton acceptor*. As an example, consider the following acid-base reaction:

In the reaction above, HCl functions as an acid because it donates a proton to H_2O, while H_2O functions as a base because it accepts the proton from HCl. The products of a proton transfer reaction are called the **conjugate base** and the **conjugate acid**:

$$\underset{\text{Acid}}{HCl} + \underset{\text{Base}}{H_2O} \rightleftharpoons \underset{\text{Conjugate base}}{Cl^-} + \underset{\text{Conjugate acid}}{H_3O^+}$$

In this reaction, Cl^- is the conjugate base of HCl. In other words, the conjugate base is what remains of the acid after it has been deprotonated. Similarly, in the reaction above, H_3O^+ is the conjugate acid of H_2O. We will use this terminology throughout the rest of this chapter, so it is important to know these terms well.

In the example above, H_2O served as a base by accepting a proton, but in other situations, H_2O can serve as an acid by donating a proton. For example:

In this case, water functions as an acid rather than a base. Throughout this course, we will see countless examples of water functioning either as a base or as an acid, so it is important to understand that both are possible and very common. When water functions as an acid, as in the previous reaction, the conjugate base is HO^-.

3.2 Flow of Electron Density: Curved-Arrow Notation

All reactions are accomplished via a flow of electron density (the motion of electrons). Acid-base reactions are no exception. The flow of electron density is illustrated with curved arrows:

Although these curved arrows look exactly like the curved arrows used for drawing resonance structures, there is an important difference. When drawing resonance structures, curved arrows are used simply as tools and do not represent any real physical process. But in the reaction above, the curved arrows do represent an actual physical process. There is a flow of electron density that causes a proton to be transferred from one reagent to another; the curved arrows illustrate this flow. The arrows show the **reaction mechanism**; that is, they show how the reaction occurs in terms of the motion of electrons.

Notice that the mechanism of a proton transfer reaction involves electrons from a base deprotonating an acid. This is an important point, because acids do not lose protons without the participation of a base. It is necessary for a base to abstract the proton. Here is a specific example:

In this example, hydroxide (HO^-) functions as a base to abstract a proton from the acid. Notice that there are exactly two curved arrows. The mechanism of a proton transfer always involves at least two curved arrows.

In Chapter 6, reaction mechanisms will be introduced and explored in more detail. Mechanisms represent the core of organic chemistry, and by proposing and comparing mechanisms, we will discover trends and patterns that define the behavior of electrons. These trends and patterns will enable us to predict how electron density flows and to explain new reactions. For almost every reaction throughout this book, we will propose a mechanism and then analyze it in detail. Most mechanisms involve one or more proton transfer steps. Therefore, in order to become proficient in drawing mechanisms, it is essential to master proton transfers. Important skills to be mastered include drawing curved arrows properly, being able to predict when a proton transfer is likely or unlikely, and being able to determine which acid or base is appropriate for a specific situation. We will begin with some practice drawing the mechanism of a proton transfer.

SKILLBUILDER

3.1 DRAWING THE MECHANISM OF A PROTON TRANSFER

LEARN the skill

Draw a mechanism for the following acid-base reaction. Label the acid and base reactants, as well as the conjugate acid and conjugate base:

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Identify the acid and the base.

We begin by identifying the acid and base reactants. Water is losing a proton to form hydroxide. Therefore, water is functioning as a proton donor, rendering it an acid. Methoxide (CH_3O^-) is accepting the proton to form methanol (CH_3OH). Therefore, methoxide is the base.

STEP 2
Draw the first curved arrow.

STEP 3
Draw the second curved arrow.

To draw the mechanism properly, remember that there must be two curved arrows. The tail of one curved arrow is placed on a lone pair of the base, and the head is placed on the proton of the acid. This first curved arrow shows the base abstracting the proton. The next curved arrow always comes from the X—H bond being broken and goes to the atom connected to the proton:

Make sure that the head and tail of each arrow are positioned in exactly the right place or the mechanism will be incorrect.

When water loses a proton, hydroxide is generated. Therefore, hydroxide is the conjugate base of water. When methoxide receives the proton, methanol is generated. Methanol is therefore the conjugate acid of methoxide:

PRACTICE the skill

3.1 All of the following acid-base reactions are reactions that we will study in greater detail in the chapters to follow. For each one, draw a mechanism and then clearly label the acid and base reactants, as well as the conjugate acid and conjugate base:

3.2 In an *intramolecular proton transfer reaction*, the acidic site and the basic site are tethered together in the same structure, and a proton is passed from the acidic region of the structure to the basic region of the structure. An example is shown. Draw a mechanism for this process.

APPLY the skill

3.3 Dextromethorphan is a commonly used cough suppressant (antitussive) that is under investigation for other therapeutic uses, including treatment of bipolar disorder.[1] To increase its shelf-life, the drug is prepared as its hydrobromide salt by treating it with HBr. Draw a mechanism for this acid-base reaction, shown below. Label the acid and base reactants, as well as the conjugate acid and conjugate base:

Dextromethorphan Dextromethorphan-HBr

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problem 3.45**

BioLinks Antacids and Heartburn

Most of us have experienced occasional heartburn, especially after eating pizza. Heartburn is caused by the buildup of excessive amounts of stomach acid (primarily HCl). This acid is used to digest the food we eat, but it can often back up into the esophagus, causing the burning sensation referred to as heartburn. The symptoms of heartburn can be treated by using a mild base to neutralize the excess hydrochloric acid. Many different antacids are on the market and can be purchased over the counter. Here are just a few that you will probably recognize:

Bert Folsom/Alamy Stock Photo

All of these work in similar ways. They are all mild bases that can neutralize HCl in a proton transfer reaction. For example, sodium bicarbonate deprotonates HCl to form carbonic acid:

Carbonic acid then quickly degrades into carbon dioxide and water (a fact that we will discuss again later in this chapter).

If you ever find yourself in a situation where you have heartburn and no access to any of the antacids above, a substitute can be found in your kitchen. Baking soda is just sodium bicarbonate (the same compound found in Alka Seltzer). Take a teaspoon of baking soda, dissolve it in a glass of water by stirring with a spoon, and then drink it down. The solution will taste salty, but it will alleviate the burning sensation of heartburn. Once you start burping, you know it is working; you are releasing the carbon dioxide gas that is produced as a by-product of an acid-base reaction.

D. Hurst/Alamy Stock Photo

3.3 Brønsted-Lowry Acidity: Comparing pK_a Values

There are two ways to predict when a proton transfer reaction will occur: (1) comparing pK_a values or (2) comparing the structures of the acids. It is essential to master both methods. In this section, we focus on the first method, and in the upcoming sections we will focus on the second method.

Using pK_a Values to Compare Acidity

The terms K_a and pK_a were defined in your general chemistry textbook, but it is worthwhile to quickly review their definitions. Consider the following general acid-base reaction between HA (an acid) and H_2O (functioning as a base in this case):

$$HA + H_2O \rightleftharpoons A^- + H_3O^+$$

The reaction is said to have reached **equilibrium** when there is no longer an observable change in the concentrations of reactants and products. At equilibrium, the rate of the forward reaction is exactly equivalent to the rate of the reverse reaction, which is indicated with two arrows pointing in opposite directions, as shown above. The position of equilibrium is described by the term $\boldsymbol{K_{eq}}$, which is defined in the following way:

$$K_{eq} = \frac{[H_3O^+]\,[A^-]}{[HA]\,[H_2O]}$$

It is the product of the equilibrium concentrations of the products divided by the product of the equilibrium concentrations of the reactants. When an acid-base reaction is carried out in dilute aqueous solution, the concentration of water is fairly constant (55.5M) and can therefore be incorporated into a new term, called $\boldsymbol{K_a}$:

$$K_a = K_{eq}\,[H_2O] = \frac{[H_3O^+]\,[A^-]}{[HA]}$$

The value of K_a measures the strength of the acid. Very strong acids can have a K_a on the order of 10^{10} (or 10,000,000,000), while very weak acids can have a K_a on the order of 10^{-50} (or 0.00000000000000000000000000000000000000000000001). The values of K_a are often very small or very large numbers. To deal with this, chemists often express pK_a values, rather than K_a values, where pK_a is defined as

$$pK_a = -\log K_a$$

When pK_a is used as the measure of acidity, the values will generally range from −10 to 50. We will deal with pK_a values extensively throughout this chapter, and there are two things to keep in mind: (1) A strong acid will have a low pK_a value, while a weak acid will have a high pK_a value. For example, an acid with a pK_a of 10 is more acidic than an acid with a pK_a of 16. (2) Each unit represents an order of magnitude. An acid with a pK_a of 10 is six orders of magnitude (one million times) more acidic than an acid with a pK_a of 16. Table 3.1 provides pK_a values for many of the compounds commonly encountered in this course. A pK_a table with more data can be found on the front endsheet of this book.

TABLE 3.1 **pK_a VALUES OF COMMON COMPOUNDS AND THEIR CONJUGATE BASES**

	ACID	pK_a	CONJUGATE BASE	
Strongest acid		−9		Weakest base
		−7.3		
	Cl—H	−7	$Cl^{\ominus}$	
		−1.74		
		4.75		
		5.3		
		9.0		
		9.3		
		9.9		
		15.7 (see margin note)		
		16.0		
		18.0		
		19.2		
	H—C≡C—H	25	$H—C≡C^{\ominus}$	
		38		
		44		
Weakest acid		50		Strongest base

WATCH OUT

There is compelling evidence that the pK_a value for H_2O is NOT 15.7. Experimental evidence suggests that the correct value is actually 14.0 (as reported in the CRC Handbook for Chemistry and Physics). For more on the pK_a value for H_2O, see the following references:

1) *Helv. Chim. Acta* **2014**, *97*, 1–31.
2) *J. Chem. Educ.* **2017**, *94*, 690–695.

SKILLBUILDER

3.2 USING pK_a VALUES TO COMPARE ACIDS

LEARN the skill

Acetic acid is the main constituent in vinegar solutions, and acetone is a solvent often used in nail polish remover:

Acetic acid

Acetone

Using the pK_a values in Table 3.1, identify which of these two compounds is more acidic.

SOLUTION

Acetic acid has a pK_a of 4.75, while acetone has a pK_a of 19.2. The compound with the lower pK_a is more acidic, and therefore, acetic acid is more acidic. In fact, when we compare the pK_a values, we see that acetic acid is approximately 14 orders of magnitude (10^{14}) more acidic than acetone (or approximately 100,000,000,000,000 times more acidic). We will discuss the reason for this in the upcoming sections of this chapter.

PRACTICE the skill

3.4 For each pair of compounds below, use Table 3.1 to identify the more acidic compound:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

(f)

APPLY the skill

3.5 Propranolol is an antihypertensive agent (used to treat high blood pressure). Using Table 3.1, identify the most acidic proton in the compound and indicate the approximate expected pK_a.

Propranolol

3.6 L-dopa is used in the treatment of Parkinson's disease. Using Table 3.1, identify the four most acidic protons in the compound and then arrange them in order of increasing acidity (two of the protons will be very similar in acidity and difficult to distinguish at this point in time):

L-dopa

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problem 3.39**

Using pK_a Values to Compare Basicity

We have seen how to use pK_a values to compare acids, but it is also possible to use pK_a values to compare bases to one another. It is not necessary to use a separate chart of pK_b values. The following example will demonstrate how to use pK_a values to compare basicity.

SKILLBUILDER

3.3 USING pK_a VALUES TO COMPARE BASICITY

LEARN the skill

Using the pK_a values in Table 3.1, identify which of the following anions is a stronger base:

SOLUTION

Each of these bases is the conjugate base of some acid. We just need to compare the pK_a values of those acids. To do this, we imagine protonating each of the bases above, producing the following conjugate acids:

STEP 1 Draw the conjugate acid of each base.

We then look up the pK_a values of these acids and compare them:

STEP 2 Compare pK_a values.

The first compound has a lower pK_a value and is therefore a stronger acid than the second compound. Remember that the stronger acid always generates the weaker base. As a result, the conjugate base of the first compound will be a weaker base than the conjugate base of the second compound:

STEP 3 Identify the stronger base.

PRACTICE the skill

3.7 Using the pK_a values in Table 3.1, identify the stronger base in each of the following cases:

APPLY the skill

3.8 Compound **1** was isolated from a species of *Streptomyces* bacteria and has been shown to have antibacterial and anticonvulsant properties. Compound **1** has also been made in the laboratory; however, it was prepared as its conjugate acid rather than in its neutral form.[2] Using the representative pK_a values shown below, predict whether the oxygen atom or the nitrogen atom in compound **1** is more basic and use that information to draw the conjugate acid of **1**.

3.9 Nicotine is an addictive natural product found in tobacco. It has been proposed[3] that the amount of nicotine taken in by the body may depend on the relative proportions of the neutral form of **1** (called the free base), as compared to its mono- and di-protonated forms, **2** and **3**. Using the pK_a values on the inside cover of the textbook, identify the mono-protonated form of nicotine (**2**).

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problem 3.50**

Using pK_a Values to Predict the Position of Equilibrium

Using the chart of pK_a values, we can also predict the position of equilibrium for any acid-base reaction. The equilibrium will always favor formation of the weaker acid (higher pK_a value). For example, consider the following acid-base reaction:

The equilibrium for this reaction will lean to the right side, favoring formation of the weaker acid.

For some reactions, the pK_a values are so vastly different that for practical purposes the reaction is treated not as an equilibrium process but rather as one that goes to completion. For example, consider the following reaction:

The reverse process is negligible, and for such reactions, organic chemists draw an irreversible arrow, rather than the traditional equilibrium arrows. Technically, it is true that all proton transfers are equilibrium processes, but in the case above, the pK_a values are so vastly different (34 orders of magnitude) that we can essentially ignore the reverse reaction.

SKILLBUILDER

3.4 USING pK_a VALUES TO PREDICT THE POSITION OF EQUILIBRIUM

LEARN the skill

Using pK_a values from Table 3.1, determine the position of equilibrium for each of the following proton transfer reactions:

SOLUTION

(a) We begin by identifying the acid on either side of the equilibrium, and then we compare their pK_a values:

STEP 1
Identify the acid on each side of the equilibrium.

STEP 2
Compare pK_a values.

In this reaction, the C═O bond receives a proton (protonation of C═O bonds will be discussed in more detail in Chapter 19). The equilibrium always favors the weaker acid (the acid with the higher pK_a value). The pK_a values shown above are both negative numbers, so it can be confusing as to which is the higher pK_a value: −1.74 is a larger number than −7.3. Therefore, the equilibrium will favor the left side of the reaction, which is drawn like this:

The difference in pK_a values represents a difference in acidity of nearly six orders of magnitude. This means that at any given moment in time, approximately one out of every million C═O bonds will bear a proton. When we study this process later on, we will see that protonation of a C═O bond can serve as a way to catalyze a number of reactions. For catalytic purposes, it is sufficient to have only a small percentage of the C═O bonds protonated.

(b) We must first identify the acid on either side of the equilibrium and then compare their pK_a values:

STEP 1
Identify the acid on each side of the equilibrium.

STEP 2
Compare pK_a values.

This reaction shows the deprotonation of a β-diketone (a compound with two C═O bonds separated from each other by one carbon atom). Once again, this is a proton transfer that we will study in more depth later in the course. The equilibrium will favor the side of the weaker acid (the side with the higher pK_a value). Therefore, the equilibrium will favor the right side of the reaction:

The difference in pK_a values represents a difference in acidity of six orders of magnitude. In other words, when hydroxide is used to deprotonate a β-diketone, the vast majority of the diketone molecules are deprotonated (only one out of every million is not deprotonated). We can conclude from this analysis that hydroxide is a suitable base to accomplish this deprotonation.

PRACTICE the skill

3.10 Determine the position of equilibrium for each of the following proton transfer reactions:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

APPLY the skill

3.11 Polyether ether ketone (PEEK) is a biocompatible polymer material that is used to make medical implants.[4]

Polyether ether ketone (PEEK)

The conjugate base of hydroquinone is used in the synthesis of PEEK. Is hydroxide a strong enough base for deprotonating hydroquinone? Explain why or why not.

Hydroquinone

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problem 3.48**

BioLinks | Drug Distribution and pK_a

Most drugs will endure a very long journey before reaching their site of action. This journey involves several transitions between polar environments and nonpolar environments. In order for a drug to reach its intended target, it must be capable of being distributed in both types of environments along the journey. A drug's ability to transition between environments is, in most cases, a direct result of the drug's acid-base properties. In fact, most drugs today are acids or bases and, as such, are in equilibrium between charged and uncharged forms. As an example, consider the structure of aspirin and its conjugate base:

Aspirin — **Uncharged form**

Conjugate base — **Charged form**

In the equilibrium above, the left side represents the uncharged form of aspirin, while the right side represents the charged form (the conjugate base). The position of this equilibrium, or *percent ionization*, will depend on the pH of the solution. The pK_a of aspirin is approximately 3.0. At a pH of 3.0 (when pH = pK_a), aspirin and its conjugate base will be present in equal amounts. That is, 50% ionization occurs. At a pH below 3, the uncharged form will predominate. At a pH above 3, the charged form will predominate.

With this in mind, consider the journey that aspirin takes after you ingest it. This journey begins in your stomach, where the pH can be as low as 2. Under these very acidic conditions, aspirin is mostly in its uncharged form. That is, there is very little of the conjugate base present. The uncharged form of aspirin is absorbed by the nonpolar environment of the gastric mucosa in your stomach and the intestinal mucosa in the intestinal tract. After passing through these nonpolar environments, the molecules of aspirin enter the blood, which is a polar (aqueous) environment with a pH of approximately 7.4. At that pH, aspirin exists mainly in the charged form (the conjugate base), and it is distributed throughout the circulatory system in this form. Then, in order to pass the blood-brain barrier, or a cell membrane, the molecules must be converted once again into the uncharged form so that they can pass through the necessary nonpolar environments. The drug is capable of successfully reaching the target because of its ability to exist in two different forms (charged and uncharged). This ability allows it to pass through polar environments as well as nonpolar environments.

The case above (aspirin) was an example of an acid that achieves biodistribution as a result of its ability to lose a proton. In contrast, some drugs are bases, and they achieve biodistribution as a result of their ability to gain a proton. For example, codeine (discussed in Chapter 2) can function as a base and accept a proton:

Codeine — **Uncharged form**

Codeine — **Charged form**

Once again, the drug exists in two forms: charged and uncharged. But in this case a low pH favors the charged form rather than the uncharged form. Consider the journey that

codeine takes after you ingest it. The drug first encounters the acidic environment of the stomach, where it is protonated and exists mostly in its charged form:

$pK_a = 8.2$

With a pK_a of 8.2, the charged form predominates at low pH. It cannot pass through nonpolar environments and is therefore not absorbed by the gastric mucosa in the stomach. When the drug reaches the basic conditions of the intestines, it is deprotonated, and the concentration of the uncharged form increases. Only then can it transition at an appreciable rate into a nonpolar environment.

Accordingly, the efficacy of any drug is highly dependent on its acid-base properties. This must be taken into account in the design of new drugs. It is certainly important that a drug can bind with its designated receptor, but it is equally important that its acid-base properties allow it to reach the receptor efficiently.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

3.12 Amino acids, such as glycine, are the key building blocks of proteins and will be discussed in greater detail in Chapter 25. In the stomach (pH ~2), glycine exists predominantly in a protonated form in which there are two acidic protons of interest. The pK_a values for these protons are shown. Using this information, draw the form of glycine that will predominate at physiological pH of 7.4.

Glycine

3.4 Brønsted-Lowry Acidity: Factors Affecting the Stability of Anions

In Section 3.3, we learned how to assess the relative acidity of acids by comparing their pK_a values. In this section, we will now learn how to assess the relative acidity of acids by comparing their structures, without the use of pK_a values.

We will begin by comparing the structures of acids with no net charge (HA vs. HB), and in Section 3.5, we will compare the structures of acids that have a net positive charge (HA^+ vs. HB^+).

Conjugate Base Stability

When comparing acids with no net charge (HA vs. HB), we must look at the conjugate base of each acid:

Conjugate base of HA

If A^- is very stable (weak base), then HA must be a strong acid. If, on the other hand, A^- is very unstable (strong base), then HA must be a weak acid. As an illustration of this point let's consider the deprotonation of HCl:

Conjugate base

Chlorine is an electronegative atom, and it can therefore stabilize a negative charge. The chloride ion (Cl^-) is in fact very stable, and therefore, HCl is a strong acid. HCl can serve as a proton donor because the conjugate base left behind is stabilized.

Let's look at one more example. Consider the structure of butane:

Conjugate base

When butane is deprotonated, a negative charge is generated on a carbon atom. Carbon is not a very electronegative element and is generally not capable of stabilizing a negative charge. Since this C^- is very unstable, we can conclude that butane is a very weak acid.

LOOKING AHEAD
In Section 21.2, we will see an exceptional case of a stabilized negative charge on a carbon atom. Until then, most instances of C^- are considered to be very unstable.

This approach can be used to compare the acidity of two compounds, HA and HB. We simply look at their conjugate bases, A^- and B^-, and compare them to each other:

By determining the more stable conjugate base, we can identify the stronger acid. For example, if we determine that A^- is more stable than B^-, then HA must be a stronger acid than HB. This approach does not allow us to predict exact pK_a values, but it does allow us to compare the relative acidity of two compounds quickly, without the need for a chart of pK_a values.

Factors Affecting the Stability of Anionic Conjugate Bases

The following discussion will develop a methodical approach for comparing the stability of anionic conjugate bases. Specifically, we will consider four factors: (1) the atom bearing the charge, (2) resonance, (3) induction, and (4) orbitals.

1. ***Which atom bears the charge?*** The first factor involves comparing the atoms bearing the negative charge in each conjugate base. For example, consider the structures of butane and propanol:

In order to assess the relative acidity of these two compounds, we must first deprotonate each of these compounds and draw the conjugate bases:

Now we compare these conjugate bases by looking at where the negative charge is located in each case. In the first conjugate base, the negative charge is on a carbon atom. In the second conjugate base, the negative charge is on an oxygen atom. To determine which of these is more stable, we must consider whether these elements are in the same row or in the same column of the periodic table (Figure 3.1).

FIGURE 3.1
Examples of elements in the same row or in the same column of the periodic table.

FIGURE 3.2
Electronegativity trends in the periodic table.

For example, C^- and O^- appear in the same row of the periodic table. When two atoms are in the same row, electronegativity is the dominant effect. Recall that electronegativity is a measure of the ability of an atom to attract electrons, and electronegativity increases across a row (Figure 3.2). Oxygen is more electronegative than carbon, so oxygen is more capable of stabilizing the negative charge. Therefore, RCH_2O^- is more stable than RCH_2^-. That is, RCH_2O^- is the weaker conjugate base, and as such, it has the stronger parent acid. In summary, a proton on the more electronegative oxygen is more acidic than a proton on carbon:

The story is different when comparing two atoms in the same column of the periodic table. For example, let's compare the acidity of water and hydrogen sulfide:

In order to assess the relative acidity of these two compounds, we deprotonate each of them and compare their conjugate bases:

In this example, we are comparing O^- and S^-, which appear in the same column of the periodic table. In such a case, electronegativity is not the dominant effect. Instead, the dominant effect is size (Figure 3.3). Sulfur is larger than oxygen and can therefore better stabilize a negative charge by

FIGURE 3.3
Competing trends in the periodic table: size vs. electronegativity.

spreading the charge over a larger volume of space. As such, HS^- is more stable than HO^-. That is, HS^- is the weaker conjugate base, and as such, it has the stronger parent acid. Therefore, H_2S is a stronger acid than H_2O. We can verify this prediction by looking at pK_a values (the pK_a of H_2S is 7.0, while the pK_a of H_2O is 15.7).

To summarize, there are two important trends: electronegativity (for comparing atoms in the same row) and size (for comparing atoms in the same column).

SKILLBUILDER

3.5 ASSESSING RELATIVE STABILITY: FACTOR 1—ATOM

LEARN the skill

Compare the two protons that are shown in the following compound. Which one is more acidic?

SOLUTION

The first step is to deprotonate each location and draw the two possible conjugate bases:

STEP 1
Draw the conjugate bases.

STEP 2
Compare the location of the charge in each case.

We now compare these two conjugate bases and determine which one is more stable. The first conjugate base has a negative charge on nitrogen, while the second conjugate base has a negative charge on oxygen. Nitrogen and oxygen are in the same row of the periodic table, so electronegativity is the determining factor. Oxygen is more electronegative than nitrogen and can better stabilize the negative charge. That is, RO^- is the weaker conjugate base. Therefore, the proton on oxygen can be removed with greater ease than the proton on nitrogen:

STEP 3
The more stable conjugate base corresponds with the more acidic proton.

PRACTICE the skill

3.13 In each compound below, two protons are color-coded (red and blue). Determine which of the two protons is more acidic, and explain your choice:

APPLY the skill

3.14 Arsenic is an element that can cause a variety of cancers. The Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) and the World Health Organization (WHO) have thus set limits on acceptable levels of arsenic in drinking water. Monitoring these limits in developing countries, however, can be a challenge. The following compound was used in the development of a method to detect arsenic at very low levels in the field, meaning that the detection does not have to be done in a laboratory setting.[5] Without the use of a pK_a table, predict which proton shown in this compound is more acidic. Explain your choice.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 3.46b, 3.47h, 3.51b,h, 3.60, 3.65**

2. ***Resonance.*** The second factor for comparing conjugate base stability is resonance. To illustrate the role of resonance in charge stability, let's consider the structures of ethanol and acetic acid:

Ethanol Acetic acid

In order to compare the acidity of these two compounds, we must deprotonate each of them and draw the conjugate bases:

In both cases, the negative charge is on oxygen. Therefore, factor 1 does not indicate which is more stable. But there is a critical difference between these two negative charges. The first conjugate base has no resonance structures, while the second conjugate base does:

In this case, the charge is delocalized over both oxygen atoms. Such a negative charge will be more stable than a negative charge localized on one oxygen atom:

Charge is localized (less stable) Charge is delocalized (more stable)

For this reason, compounds containing a C═O bond directly next to an OH are generally mildly acidic, because their conjugate bases are resonance stabilized:

A carboxylic acid Resonance-stabilized conjugate base

These compounds are called *carboxylic acids*. The R group above simply refers to the rest of the molecule that has not been drawn. Carboxylic acids are actually not very acidic at all compared with inorganic acids such as H_2SO_4 or HCl. Carboxylic acids are only considered to be acidic when compared with other organic compounds. The "acidity" of carboxylic acids highlights the fact that *acidity is relative*.

SKILLBUILDER

3.6 ASSESSING RELATIVE STABILITY: FACTOR 2—RESONANCE

LEARN the skill

Compare the two protons shown in the following compound. Which one is more acidic?

SOLUTION

Begin by drawing the respective conjugate bases:

STEP 1
Draw the conjugate bases.

In the first conjugate base, the charge is localized on nitrogen:

STEP 2
Look for resonance stabilization.

Charge is localized
NOT resonance stabilized

In the second conjugate base, the charge is delocalized by resonance:

Charge is resonance stabilized

STEP 3
The more stable conjugate base corresponds with the more acidic proton.

The charge is distributed over two atoms, N and O. This delocalization of charge renders it more stable (it is the weaker conjugate base), and therefore, the following highlighted proton is more acidic:

PRACTICE the skill

3.15 In each compound below, two protons are color-coded (red and blue). Determine which of the two protons is more acidic, and explain your choice:

(a)

(b)

(c)

APPLY the skill

3.16 Ascorbic acid (vitamin C) plays an essential role in human health. It is a powerful antioxidant that can help fight the common cold, and it is even being explored as a tool for treating cancer[6]. Ascorbic acid does not contain a traditional carboxylic acid group, but it is, nevertheless, still fairly acidic ($pK_a = 4.2$). Identify the acidic proton and explain your choice using resonance structures, if necessary:

Ascorbic acid
(Vitamin C)

3.17 In the following compound, two protons are clearly identified. Determine which of the two is more acidic. Draw all of the resonance structures of each conjugate base, and after comparing the conjugate bases, you must consider the following question: Is it more stabilizing for a negative charge to be spread out over one oxygen atom and three carbon atoms or to be spread out over two oxygen atoms? Take a look at the pK_a values listed in Table 3.1 to answer this question.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 3.46a, 3.47b,e–g, 3.51c–f**

3. ***Induction.*** The two factors we have examined so far do not explain the difference in acidity between acetic acid and trichloroacetic acid:

Acetic acid **Trichloroacetic acid**

Which compound is more acidic? In order to answer this question without help from a chart of pK_a values, we must draw the conjugate bases of the two compounds and then compare them:

Factor 1 does not answer the question because the negative charge is on oxygen in both cases. Factor 2 also does not answer the question because there are resonance structures that delocalize the charge over two oxygen atoms in both cases. The difference between these conjugate bases is clearly the chlorine atoms. Recall that each chlorine atom withdraws electron density via induction:

The net effect of the chlorine atoms is to withdraw electron density away from the negatively charged region of the structure, thereby stabilizing the negative charge. Therefore the conjugate base of trichloroacetic acid is more stable than the conjugate base of acetic acid:

More stable

From this, we can conclude that trichloroacetic acid is more acidic:

More acidic

We can verify this prediction by looking up pK_a values. In fact, we can use pK_a values to verify the individual effect of each Cl:

pK_a = 4.75 pK_a = 2.87 pK_a = 1.25 pK_a = 0.70

Notice the trend. With each additional Cl, the compound becomes more acidic.

SKILLBUILDER

3.7 ASSESSING RELATIVE STABILITY: FACTOR 3—INDUCTION

LEARN the skill

Identify which of the protons shown below is more acidic:

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Draw the conjugate bases.

Begin by drawing the respective conjugate bases:

STEP 2
Look for inductive effects.

STEP 3
The more stable conjugate base corresponds with the more acidic proton.

In the conjugate base on the left, the charge is stabilized by the inductive effects of the nearby fluorine atoms. In contrast, the conjugate base on the right lacks this stabilization. Therefore, we predict that the conjugate base on the left is more stable (it is the weaker conjugate base). And as a result, we conclude that the proton near the fluorine atoms will be more acidic:

PRACTICE the skill

3.18 Identify the most acidic proton in each of the following compounds and explain your choice:

(a)

(b)

3.19 For each pair of compounds below, identify which compound is more acidic and explain your choice:

APPLY the skill

3.20 Water disinfection has greatly reduced the incidence of waterborne infectious diseases; however, disinfectants also lead to the unintended formation of drinking water disinfection by-products (DBPs) from the reaction of disinfectants with any organic materials in the water. The compound shown below is an example of a DBP that has been evaluated for potential toxicity.[7]

This compound has many constitutional isomers.

(a) Draw a constitutional isomer that is slightly more acidic and explain your choice.

(b) Draw a constitutional isomer that is slightly less acidic and explain your choice.

(c) Draw a constitutional isomer that is significantly (at least 10 pK_a units) less acidic and explain your choice.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 3.47c, 3.51g, 3.59**

4. ***Orbitals.*** The three factors we have examined so far will not explain the difference in acidity between the two identified protons in the following compound:

Draw the conjugate bases to compare them:

In both cases, the negative charge is on a carbon atom, so factor 1 does not help. In both cases, the charge is not stabilized by resonance, so factor 2 does not help. In both cases, there are no inductive effects to consider, so factor 3 does not help. The answer here comes from looking at the hybridization states of the orbitals that accommodate the charges. Recall from Chapter 1 that a carbon atom with a triple bond is *sp* hybridized, a carbon atom with a double bond is sp^2 hybridized, and a carbon atom with all single bonds is sp^3 hybridized. The first conjugate base (above left) has a negative charge on an sp^2-hybridized carbon atom, while the second conjugate base (above right) has a negative charge on an *sp*-hybridized carbon atom. What difference does this make? Let's quickly review the shapes of hybridized orbitals (Figure 3.4).

FIGURE 3.4
Relative shapes of hybridized orbitals.

A pair of electrons in an *sp*-hybridized orbital is held closer to the nucleus than a pair of electrons in an sp^2- or sp^3-hybridized orbital. As a result, electrons residing in an *sp* orbital are stabilized by being close to the positively charged nucleus. Therefore, a negative charge on an *sp*-hybridized carbon is more stable (a weaker conjugate base) than a negative charge on an sp^2-hybridized carbon:

More stable

We conclude that a proton on a triple bond will be more acidic than a proton on a double bond, which in turn will be more acidic than a proton on a carbon atom with all single bonds. We can verify this trend by looking at the pK_a values in Figure 3.5. These pK_a values suggest that this effect is very significant; acetylene is 19 orders of magnitude more acidic than ethylene.

FIGURE 3.5
pK_a values for ethane, ethylene, and acetylene.

SKILLBUILDER

3.8 ASSESSING RELATIVE STABILITY: FACTOR 4—ORBITALS

LEARN the skill

Determine which of the protons identified below is more acidic:

1-Pentene

SOLUTION

Begin by drawing the respective conjugate bases:

STEP 1
Draw the conjugate bases.

STEP 2
Analyze the orbital that accommodates the charge in each case.

In both cases, the negative charge is on a carbon atom, so factor 1 does not help. In both cases, the charge is not stabilized by resonance, so factor 2 does not help. In both cases, there are no inductive effects to consider, so factor 3 does not help. The answer here comes from looking at the hybridization states of the orbitals that accommodate the charges. The first conjugate base has the negative charge in an sp^3-hybridized orbital, while the second conjugate base has the negative charge in an sp^2-hybridized orbital. An sp^2-hybridized orbital is closer to the nucleus than an sp^3-hybridized orbital and therefore better stabilizes a negative charge. That is, the second conjugate base is more stable (a weaker base) than the first conjugate base. So we conclude that the vinylic proton is more acidic:

STEP 3
The more stable conjugate base corresponds with the more acidic proton.

PRACTICE the skill

3.21 Identify the most acidic proton in each of the following compounds, and explain your choice:

APPLY the skill

3.22 Methods used in organic synthesis — the process of making new organic molecules — are continuously being developed.[8] The following proton transfer reaction was used to study an improved method for synthesizing alkynes (compounds that contain a carbon-carbon triple bond). Predict the major product of this reaction:

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 3.46c, 3.61**

Ranking the Factors that Affect the Stability of Anions

We have thus far examined four factors that affect the stability of anionic conjugate bases. We must now consider their order of priority—in other words, which factor takes precedence when two or more factors are present?

Generally speaking, the order of priority is the order in which the factors were presented:

1. *Atom*. Which atom bears the charge? (How do the atoms compare in terms of electronegativity and size? Remember the difference between comparing atoms in the same row vs. atoms in the same column.)
2. *Resonance*. Are there any resonance effects that make one conjugate base more stable than the other?
3. *Induction*. Are there any inductive effects that stabilize one of the conjugate bases?
4. *Orbital*. In what orbital do we find the negative charge for each conjugate base?

A helpful way to remember the order of these four factors is to take the first letter of each factor, giving the following mnemonic device: *ARIO*.

As an example, let's compare the protons shown in the following two compounds:

Ethanol Propylene

We compare these compounds by drawing their conjugate bases:

Factor 1 suggests that the first conjugate base is more stable (O^- better than C^-). However, factor 2 suggests that the second conjugate base is more stable (resonance that delocalizes the charge). This leaves us with an important question: Is a negative charge more stable when it is localized on one oxygen atom or is a negative charge more stable when it is delocalized over two carbon atoms? The answer is: In general, factor 1 beats factor 2. A negative charge is more stable on one oxygen than on two carbon atoms. We can verify this assertion by comparing pK_a values (Figure 3.6). In fact, the pK_a values indicate that a negative charge on one oxygen atom is 27 orders of magnitude (a billion billion billion times) more stable than a negative charge on two carbon atoms.

pK_a=16 pK_a=43

FIGURE 3.6
pK_a values for ethanol and ethylene.

This prioritization scheme (ARIO) will provide a "first approximation" (an educated guess) when comparing acids, but strict adherence to the ARIO prioritization scheme can sometimes produce the wrong prediction. In other words, there are many exceptions. As an example, compare the structures of acetylene and ammonia:

Acetylene Ammonia

To determine which compound is more acidic, we draw the conjugate bases:

When comparing these two negative charges, there are two competing factors. Factor 1 suggests that the second conjugate base is more stable (N^- is more stable than C^-), but factor 4 suggests that the first conjugate base is more stable (an *sp*-hybridized orbital can stabilize a negative charge better than an sp^3-hybridized orbital). In general, factor 1 wins over the others. But this case is an exception, and factor 4 (orbitals) actually predominates here. In this case, the negative charge is more stable on the carbon atom, even though nitrogen is more electronegative than carbon.

In fact, for this reason, H_2N^- is often used as a base to deprotonate acetylene:

We see from the pK_a values that acetylene is 13 orders of magnitude more acidic than ammonia. This explains why H_2N^- is a suitable base for deprotonating acetylene.

There are, of course, many other exceptions to the ARIO prioritization scheme, so it cannot be used with confidence in all cases. The ARIO prioritization scheme gives us the ability to make an educated guess. To be certain whether or not that guess is correct, it is always best to look up pK_a values and verify your prediction.

SKILLBUILDER

3.9 ASSESSING RELATIVE STABILITY: ALL FOUR FACTORS

LEARN the skill

Predict which of the two protons identified below is more acidic and explain why:

SOLUTION

We begin by drawing the respective conjugate bases:

STEP 1 Draw the conjugate bases.

Now we consider all four factors (ARIO) in comparing the stability of these negative charges:

STEP 2 Analyze all four factors.

1. *Atom.* In both cases, the charge is on an oxygen atom, so this factor doesn't help.
2. *Resonance.* The conjugate base on the left is resonance stabilized while the conjugate base on the right is not. Based on this factor alone, we would say the conjugate base on the left is more stable.
3. *Induction.* The conjugate base on the right has an inductive effect that stabilizes the charge while the conjugate base on the left does not. Based on this factor alone, we would say the conjugate base on the right is more stable.
4. *Orbital.* This factor does not help.

Our analysis reveals a competition between two factors. In general, resonance will beat induction. Based on this, we predict that the conjugate base on the left is more stable (the weaker base). Therefore, we conclude that the following highlighted proton is more acidic:

STEP 3 The more stable conjugate base corresponds with the more acidic proton.

PRACTICE the skill

3.23 In each compound below, two protons are color-coded (red and blue). Predict which of the two protons is more acidic, and explain your choice:

3.24 For each pair of compounds below, predict which will be more acidic, and explain your choice:

(a) HCl HBr **(b)** H_2O H_2S

(c) NH_3 CH_4 **(d)** H—≡—H $H_2C{=}CH_2$

APPLY the skill

3.25 The following compound is one of the strongest known acids:

(a) Explain why it is such a strong acid.

(b) Suggest a modification to the structure that would render the compound even more acidic.

3.26 Amphotericin B is a powerful antifungal agent used for intravenous treatment of severe fungal infections.[9] Without using a pK_a table, identify the most acidic proton in this compound:

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 3.47d, 3.51a, 3.57, 3.62, 3.71–3.75**

3.5 Brønsted-Lowry Acidity: Assessing the Relative Acidity of Cationic Acids

In Section 3.4, we assessed the relative acidity of uncharged acids (HA vs. HB) by comparing the stability of their anionic conjugate bases:

In contrast, to assess the acidity of cationic acids (HA^+ vs. HB^+), it is often not necessary to compare their conjugate bases. Rather, we can compare the stability of the positive charges in the cationic acids (HA^+ and HB^+). Notice that we focus on charge stability in all scenarios. For uncharged acids (HA vs. HB), we focus on the stability of the negative charges in the conjugate bases; and for cationic acids (HA^+ vs. HB^+), we can focus on the stability of the positive charges in the acids themselves.

To compare the stability of cations (HA^+ vs. HB^+), we can use the same four factors that we used to compare the stability of anions. Recall the acronym ARIO, which can be useful for remembering all four factors (Atom, Resonance, Induction, and Orbital). In practice, there are often competing factors at play, and with cationic acids, it is often difficult to predict which factor will be dominant. Therefore, we will focus our discussion almost exclusively on the first factor (Atom), which is helpful for comparing cations that have their positive charges on different elements. For example, compare the following two cations:

The first structure has a positive charge on a nitrogen atom, and the second structure has a positive charge on an oxygen atom. We have seen that oxygen is more electronegative than nitrogen, and therefore, oxygen can better stabilize a negative charge, but the opposite is true for positive charges. When it comes to stabilizing a positive charge, nitrogen can better stabilize the charge, because nitrogen is less electronegative than oxygen. Therefore, NH_4^+ is more stable than H_3O^+, and as a result, NH_4^+ is a weaker acid than H_3O^+. We can verify this prediction by comparing the pK_a values for NH_4^+ and H_3O^+, shown below. These pK_a values confirm that NH_4^+ is a weaker acid than H_3O^+ (indeed, NH_4^+ is 11 orders of magnitude, or 100 billion times, weaker than H_3O^+):

Weaker acid ($pK_a = 9.3$) **Stronger acid** ($pK_a = -1.7$)

Recall that a weaker acid produces a stronger conjugate base, while a stronger acid produces a weaker conjugate base. This explains why ammonia (NH_3) is a stronger base than water (H_2O):

Stronger base **Weaker base**

Since NH_4^+ is a weaker acid (compared to H_3O^+), therefore, its conjugate base (NH_3) is more strongly basic (compared to H_2O). To be accurate, NH_3 is not characterized as a strong base. NH_3 is indeed a weak base, but it is more basic than H_2O (which is an even weaker base). And for a similar reason, amines (RNH_2) are generally stronger bases than alcohols (ROH):

Stronger base **Weaker base**

Once again, amines (RNH_2) and alcohols (ROH) are both classified as weak bases, but when comparing them to each other, amines are generally much better bases than alcohols.

In the previous examples, there was a clear difference between the cations we were comparing because the positive charges were on different elements (N^+ vs O^+). Now let's assess the relative acidity of two cationic acids in which the positive charges are on the same element. Consider the two structures shown here:

An alkyl ammonium ion **An aryl ammonium ion**

In both structures, the positive charge is located on a nitrogen atom, so how do we assess which structure is more acidic? In a case like this, we must look at the structures of their conjugate bases, shown here:

An alkyl amine **An aryl amine**

In each conjugate base, there is a lone pair on the nitrogen atom, and each lone pair can function as a base. But there is a big difference between the lone pair in the first structure and the lone pair in the second structure. In the first structure, the lone pair is localized (not involved in resonance), while the lone pair in the second structure is delocalized via resonance, as shown here:

Since this lone pair is delocalized, it is less available to function as a base. Therefore, the second structure below is a weaker base than the first structure:

Stronger base
(localized lone pair)

Weaker base
(delocalized lone pair)

Localized lone pairs are more strongly basic than delocalized lone pairs, because a localized lone pair is more available to function as a base. Now that we have determined which conjugate base is weaker and which is stronger, we are ready to determine which ammonium ion is the stronger acid and which is the weaker acid. Recall that a strong acid generates a weak conjugate base, while a weak acid generates a strong conjugate base. Since the first base above is the stronger base, we can conclude that the first acid below is the weaker acid.

Weaker acid
(because it has the stronger conjugate base)

Stronger acid
(because it has the weaker conjugate base)

This analysis suggests that the first ammonium ion above is a weaker acid than the second ammonium ion. Indeed, this is supported by the pK_a values, which confirm that the second ammonium ion is 6 orders of magnitude (1 million times) more strongly acidic than the first ammonium ion:

pK_a = 10.6 **pK_a = 4.6**

Table 3.2 shows pK_a values for several different ammonium ions, including some alkyl ammonium ions and some aryl ammonium ions.

TABLE 3.2 SELECTED AMMONIUM IONS, THEIR pK_a VALUES, AND THEIR CONJUGATE BASES

ACID	pK_a	CONJUGATE BASE	
An ammonium ion	9.3	*Ammonia*	
Alkyl ammonium ions	10–11	*Alkyl amines*	R_1 R_2 R_3 pK_a CH_3 H H 10.6 CH_3 CH_3 H 10.7 CH_3 CH_3 CH_3 9.8
Aryl ammonium ions	~5	*Aryl amines*	R_1 R_2 pK_a H H 4.6 CH_3 H 4.8 CH_3 CH_3 5.1

We have seen that a lone pair on a nitrogen atom will be weakly basic if it is delocalized via resonance. As another example, amides (shown below) are extremely poor bases, because the lone pair on the nitrogen atom is delocalized via resonance:

Indeed, this resonance effect is so strong that amides generally do not function as bases.

LOOKING BACK
For a review of localized and delocalized lone pairs, see SkillBuilder 2.9.

SKILLBUILDER

3.10 ASSESSING THE RELATIVE ACIDITY OF CATIONIC ACIDS

LEARN the skill

Consider the structures for the following compounds, labelled **1** and **2**:

1 **2**

(a) Draw the conjugate acid of compound **1**, draw the conjugate acid of compound **2**, and then determine which of the two conjugate acids is more acidic.

(b) Which is the stronger base, compound **1** or compound **2**? Explain.

SOLUTION

(a) When compound **1** is treated with a strong acid, such as HCl, one of the lone pairs on the oxygen atom is protonated, to give the following conjugate acid:

1 **Conjugate acid of 1**

When compound **2** is treated with a strong acid, such as HCl, the lone pair on the nitrogen atom is protonated, to give the following conjugate acid:

2 **Conjugate acid of 2**

The conjugate acid of **1** has a positive charge on an oxygen atom, while the conjugate acid of **2** has a positive charge on a nitrogen atom. We have seen that nitrogen can better stabilize a positive charge, so the conjugate acid of **2** is more stable (and therefore a weaker acid) than the conjugate acid of **1**. The conjugate acid of **1** is the stronger acid.

(b) Protonating a weak base will generate a strong conjugate acid, while protonating a strong base will generate a weak conjugate acid. We have just seen that the conjugate acid of **1** is a stronger acid than the conjugate acid of **2**, so we conclude that **1** is the weaker base (the stronger conjugate acid is generated from the weaker base). This means that compound **2** is the stronger base. Indeed, this is the general trend that we have seen—that amines (RNH_2) are stronger bases than alcohols (ROH).

PRACTICE the skill

3.27 For each pair of structures below, identify the stronger acid, and explain your choice:

3.28 For each pair of structures below, identify the stronger base, and explain your choice:

APPLY the skill

3.29 A major challenge of organ transplantation is overcoming the body's immunological response to foreign tissue, which leads to high rejection rates. Recent research into solving this problem involved the preparation of a segment of trachea for transplantation by performing a process called *decellularization*, which effectively removes the compounds responsible for triggering the body's immune system, while preserving the 3D structure of the organ.[10] The procedure involves treating the trachea with ultrasound and guanidine, a naturally occurring base found in urine. Which is the most basic nitrogen atom in guanidine? Consider the availability of the nitrogen atom lone pairs, as well as the stability of the possible conjugate acids—both approaches lead to the same conclusion.

Guanidine

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 3.52–3.54**

3.6 Position of Equilibrium and Choice of Reagents

Earlier in this chapter, we learned how to use pK_a values to determine the position of equilibrium. In this section, we will learn to predict the position of equilibrium by comparing the stability of ions (without using pK_a values). For example, consider the following type of acid-base reaction involving two anions, A^- and B^- (highlighted):

The equilibrium will favor the more stabilized anion. If A^- is more stable, then the equilibrium will favor the formation of A^-. If B^- is more stable, then the equilibrium will favor the formation of B^-. So the position of equilibrium can generally be predicted by comparing the stability of A^- and B^-.

Similarly, consider the following type of acid-base reaction involving two cationic acids, HA^+ and HB^+ (highlighted):

In this type of acid-base reaction, the equilibrium will favor the more stabilized cation. If HA^+ is more stable, then the equilibrium will favor the formation of HA^+. If HB^+ is more stable, then the equilibrium will favor the formation of HB^+. So the position of equilibrium can generally be predicted by comparing the stability of HA^+ and HB^+.

Notice that in both types of reactions above, the position of equilibrium can be predicted by comparing the stability of the ions. We compare the ions because they are often the biggest source of instability. When anions are involved, the equilibrium favors the more stable anion; and when cations are involved, the equilibrium favors the more stable cation. When comparing the stability of cations, it is not always clear which cation is more stable. In such cases, we then look at their conjugate bases to see if there is a difference (localized vs. delocalized lone pairs), as we saw in Section 3.5.

SKILLBUILDER

3.11 PREDICTING THE POSITION OF EQUILIBRIUM WITHOUT USING pK_a VALUES

LEARN the skill

Predict the position of equilibrium for each of the following acid-base reactions:

STEP 1 Identify the ion on either side of the equilibrium.

SOLUTION

(a) We look at both sides of the equilibrium and identify the ion on each side. In this case, the ions are HO^- and $CH_3CO_2^-$, highlighted below:

STEP 2 Compare the stability of these two ions.

In both ions, the negative charge is on an oxygen atom. We can determine which of these ions is more stable by considering resonance effects. The ion on the right is stabilized by resonance, while the ion on the left is not:

NOT resonance-stabilized **Resonance-stabilized**

Therefore, the ion on right ($CH_3CO_2^-$) is more stable than the ion on the left (HO^-).

STEP 3
The equilibrium will favor the more stable ion.

The equilibrium favors the more stable anion (the weaker base), so the equilibrium favors $CH_3CO_2^-$. Our prediction can be verified if we look up pK_a values for the acid on either side of the equilibrium (CH_3CO_2H and H_2O). Notice that the equilibrium favors the weaker acid (higher pK_a), which confirms our prediction.

As expected for all acid-base reactions, the equilibrium favors the weaker acid and the weaker base (H_2O is a weaker acid than CH_3CO_2H, while $CH_3CO_2^-$ is a weaker base than HO^-).

STEP 1
Identify the ion on either side of the equilibrium.

(b) We look at both sides of the equilibrium and identify the ion on each side. In this case, the ions are a hydronium ion (H_3O^+) and an ammonium ion (NH_4^+), highlighted below:

STEP 2
Compare the stability of these two ions.

In this case, we are comparing a positive charge on a nitrogen atom with a positive charge on an oxygen atom. Nitrogen is better than oxygen at stabilizing a positive charge, because nitrogen is less electronegative than oxygen. Therefore, an ammonium ion (NH_4^+) is more stable than a hydronium ion (H_3O^+).

STEP 3
The equilibrium will favor the more stable ion.

The equilibrium favors production of the more stable cation (the weaker acid), so the equilibrium favors the ammonium ion (NH_4^+). Our prediction can be verified if we look up pK_a values for H_3O^+ and NH_4^+, which confirms that NH_4^+ is a weaker acid (higher pK_a) than H_3O^+.

As expected for all acid-base reactions, the equilibrium favors the weaker acid and the weaker base (NH_4^+ is a weaker acid than H_3O^+, while H_2O is a weaker base than NH_3).

PRACTICE the skill

3.30 Without using a pK_a table, predict the position of equilibrium for each of the following reactions, and explain your choice:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

(f)

APPLY the skill

3.31 The development of chemical sensors that can detect harmful contaminants, like the toxic cyanide anion, is a prevalent line of research. Compound **1** was explored as a chemical sensor for cyanide in water.[11] When **1** comes into the presence of cyanide, it reversibly forms the fluorescent anion **3**, via anion **2**. Since **1** is not fluorescent and **3** is, this could afford a powerful way to detect cyanide in drinking water.

1 **2** **3**

(a) Draw curved arrows showing the intramolecular proton transfer that converts **2** into **3**.

(b) Predict whether the equilibrium favors **2** or **3**, and explain your choice.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 3.49, 3.56, 3.64, 3.69**

The process described in SkillBuilder 3.11 can also be used to determine whether a specific reagent is suitable for accomplishing a particular proton transfer, as shown in SkillBuilder 3.12. This is an important skill because we will soon see that the product of a reaction is sometimes an anion, which must then be protonated in order to generate the desired product. To protonate the anion, we must introduce a proton source into the reaction flask (after the reaction is complete). This process is called *workup*, and the choice of proton source during a workup can be important. In some cases, water will be a sufficient source of protons. In other cases, a stronger acid, such as H_3O^+ will be required. The following SkillBuilder is designed to help you evaluate when water is sufficient and when a stronger acid is required for working up a reaction.

SKILLBUILDER

3.12 CHOOSING THE APPROPRIATE REAGENT FOR A PROTON TRANSFER REACTION

LEARN the skill

Determine whether H_2O would be a suitable reagent for protonating the acetate ion:

SOLUTION

We begin by drawing the acid-base reaction that occurs when the ion is protonated by water:

STEP 1 Draw the equilibrium.

STEP 2 Compare the stability of the bases on either side of the equilibrium using all four factors.

Now compare the bases on either side of the equilibrium and ask which is more stable:

STEP 3 The reagent is only suitable if the equilibrium favors the desired products.

Applying the four factors (ARIO), we see that the base on the left side is more stable because of resonance. Therefore, the equilibrium will favor the left side of the reaction. This means that H_2O is not a suitable proton source in this situation. In order to protonate this base, an acid stronger than water is required. A suitable acid would be H_3O^+.

PRACTICE the skill

3.32 In each of the following cases, identify whether the reagent shown is suitable to accomplish the task described. Explain why or why not:

(a) To protonate using H_2O

(b) To protonate using

(c) To protonate using H_2O

(d) To protonate using H_2O

APPLY the skill

3.33 We will learn the following reactions in upcoming chapters. For each of these reactions, notice that the product is an anion (we can ignore the positively charged, counter ion in each case). In order to obtain an uncharged product, this anion must be treated with a proton source (workup). For each of the following reactions, identify whether water will be a suitable proton source for working up the reaction, and explain why or why not:

(a)

Chapter 20

(b)

Chapter 21

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 3.41, 3.43**

3.7 Leveling Effect

Bases stronger than hydroxide cannot be used when the solvent is water. To illustrate why, consider what happens if we mix the amide ion (H_2N^-) and water:

The amide ion is a strong enough base to deprotonate water, forming a hydroxide ion (HO^-). A hydroxide ion is significantly more stable than an amide ion, so the equilibrium will strongly favor formation of hydroxide. In other words, the amide ion is destroyed by the solvent and replaced with a hydroxide ion. In fact, this is true of any base stronger than HO^-. If a base stronger than HO^- is dissolved in water, the base reacts with water to produce hydroxide. This is called the **leveling effect**, and it dictates the strongest base that can be present in any particular solvent. Specifically, *the base cannot be stronger than the conjugate base of the solvent*. If the solvent is water, than hydroxide is the strongest base that can be used.

In order to work with bases that are stronger than hydroxide, a solvent other than water must be employed. For example, in order to work with an amide ion as a base, we use liquid ammonia (NH_3) as a solvent. If a specific situation requires a base even stronger than an amide ion, then liquid ammonia cannot be used as the solvent. Just as before, if a base stronger than H_2N^- is dissolved in liquid ammonia, the base will be destroyed and converted into H_2N^-. Once again, the leveling effect prevents us from having a base stronger than an amide ion in liquid ammonia. In order to use a base that is even stronger than H_2N^-, we must use a solvent that cannot be readily deprotonated. There are a number of solvents with high pK_a values, such as hexane and THF, that can be used to dissolve very strong bases. Throughout the course, we will see other examples of solvents suitable for working with very strong bases.

Hexane

Tetrahydrofuran (THF)

The leveling effect is also observed in acidic solutions. For example, consider the following equilibrium that is established in an aqueous solution of H_2SO_4:

Although this is indeed an equilibrium process, consider the difference in pK_a values (approximately seven pK_a units). This indicates that H_2SO_4 is 10^7 (or 10 million) times more acidic than a hydronium ion (H_3O^+). As such, there is very little H_2SO_4 that is actually present in an aqueous solution of H_2SO_4. Specifically, there will be one molecule of H_2SO_4 for every 10 million hydronium ions. That is, 99.99999% of all sulfuric acid molecules will have transferred their protons to water molecules. A similar situation occurs with aqueous HCl or any other strong acid that is dissolved in water. In other words, an aqueous solution of either H_2SO_4 or HCl can simply be viewed as an aqueous solution of H_3O^+. This is a result of the leveling effect, which prevents us from having an acid stronger than H_3O^+ when the solvent is water.

In summary, the leveling effect dictates the strongest base and the strongest acid that can be present in any particular solvent. In a basic solution, the base cannot be stronger (less stable) than the conjugate base of the solvent; and in an acidic solution, the acid cannot be stronger than the conjugate acid of the solvent. If the solvent for a reaction is water (H_2O), then the leveling effect prevents the use of bases stronger than hydroxide (HO^-) or the use of acids stronger than hydronium (H_3O^+). Similarly, if the solvent is ammonia (NH_3), then the leveling effect prevents the use of bases stronger than an amide ion (H_2N^-) or the use of acids stronger than an ammonium ion (NH_4^+).

3.8 Solvating Effects

In some cases, solvent effects are invoked to explain small differences in pK_a values. For example, compare the acidity of *tert*-butanol and ethanol.

The pK_a values indicate that *tert*-butanol is less acidic than ethanol by two orders of magnitude. In other words, the conjugate base of *tert*-butanol is less stable than the conjugate base of ethanol. This difference in stability is best explained by considering the interactions between each conjugate base and the surrounding solvent molecules (Figure 3.7). Compare the way in which each conjugate base interacts with solvent molecules. The *tert*-butoxide ion is very bulky, or **sterically hindered**, so the anionic oxygen atom is less capable of interacting with the solvent. For an ethoxide ion, the anionic oxygen atom is not as sterically hindered so it can accommodate more solvent interactions. As a result, ethoxide is better solvated and is therefore more stable than *tert*-butoxide (Figure 3.7). This type of solvent effect is generally weaker than the other effects we have encountered in this chapter (ARIO).

FIGURE 3.7
Electrostatic potential maps of *tert*-butoxide and ethoxide.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

3.34 Predict which of the following compounds is more acidic:

After making your prediction, use the pK_a values from Table 3.1 to determine whether your prediction was correct.

3.9 Counterions

LOOKING BACK
Your general chemistry textbook likely used the term *spectator ion* to refer to a counterion.

Negatively charged bases are always accompanied by positively charged species, called **cations** (pronounced CAT-EYE-ONZ). For example, HO^- must be accompanied by a counterion, such as Li^+, Na^+, or K^+. We will often see the following reagents: LiOH, or NaOH, or KOH. Don't be alarmed. All of these reagents are simply HO^- with the counterion indicated. Sometimes it is shown; sometimes not. Even when the counterion is not shown, it is still there. It is just not indicated because it is largely irrelevant. Up to this point in this chapter, counterions have not been shown, but from here on they will be. For example, consider the following reaction:

This reaction might be shown like this:

$$NaNH_2 + H_2O \longrightarrow NH_3 + NaOH$$

It is important to become accustomed to ignoring the cations when they are indicated and to focus on the real players—the bases. Although counterions generally do not play a significant role in reactions, they can, under some circumstances, influence the course of a reaction. We will only see one or two such examples throughout this course. The overwhelming majority of reactions that we encounter are not significantly affected by the choice of counterion.

WorldLinks Baking Soda versus Baking Powder

In the opening of this chapter, we mentioned that baking soda and baking powder are both leavening agents. That is, they both produce CO_2 that will make a dough or batter fluffy. We will now explore how each of these compounds accomplishes its task, beginning with baking soda. As mentioned earlier in this chapter, baking soda is the household name for sodium bicarbonate. Because sodium bicarbonate is mildly basic, it will react with an acid to produce carbonic acid, which in turn degrades into CO_2 and water:

Looking at the reaction above, it is clear that an acid must be present in order for baking soda to do its job. Many breads and pastries include ingredients that naturally contain acids. For example, buttermilk, honey, and citrus fruits (such as lemons) all contain naturally occurring organic acids:

When an acidic compound is present in the dough or batter, baking soda can be protonated, causing liberation of CO_2. However, when acidic ingredients are absent, the baking soda cannot be protonated, and CO_2 is not produced. In such a situation, we must add both the base (baking soda) and some

acid. Baking powder does exactly that. It is a powder mixture that contains both sodium bicarbonate and an acid salt, such as potassium bitartrate:

Potassium bitartrate

Ken Karp

Baking powder also contains some starch to keep the mixture dry, which prevents the acid and base from reacting with each other. When mixed with water, the acid and the base can react with each other, ultimately producing CO_2:

Sodium bicarbonate Potassium bitartrate

Carbonic acid

CO_2 + H_2O

Baking powder is often used when making pancakes, muffins, and waffles. It is an essential ingredient in the recipe if you want your pancakes to be fluffy. In any recipe, the exact ratio of acid and base is important. Excess base (sodium bicarbonate) will impart a bitter taste, while excess acid will impart a sour taste. In order to get the ratio just right, a recipe will often call for some specific amount of baking soda and some specific amount of baking powder. The recipe is taking into account the amount of acidic compounds present in the other ingredients, so that the final product will not be unnecessarily bitter or sour. Baking is truly a science!

Ken Karp

3.10 Lewis Acids and Bases

The Lewis definition of acids and bases is broader than the Brønsted-Lowry definition. According to the Lewis definition, acidity and basicity are described in terms of electrons, rather than protons. A **Lewis base** is defined as an *electron-pair donor,* while a **Lewis acid** is defined as an *electron-pair acceptor.* As an illustration, consider the following Brønsted-Lowry acid-base reaction:

Base (electron-pair donor) Acid (electron-pair acceptor)

HCl is an acid according to either definition. It is a Lewis acid because it serves as an electron-pair acceptor, and it is a Brønsted-Lowry acid because it serves as a proton donor. But the Lewis definition is an expanded definition of acids and bases, because it includes reagents that would otherwise not be classified as acids or bases. For example, consider the following reaction:

Base (electron-pair donor) Acid (electron-pair acceptor)

According to the Brønsted-Lowry definition, BF_3 is not considered an acid because it is has no protons and cannot serve as a proton donor. However, according to the Lewis definition, BF_3 can serve as an electron-pair acceptor, and it is therefore a Lewis acid. In this reaction, H_2O is a Lewis base because it serves as an electron-pair donor.

Take special notice of the curved-arrow notation. There is only one curved arrow in the reaction above, not two.

Chapter 6 will introduce the skills necessary to analyze reactions, and in Section 6.7 we will revisit the topic of Lewis acids and bases. In fact, we will see that most of the reactions in this textbook occur as the result of the reaction between a Lewis acid and a Lewis base. For now, let's get some practice identifying Lewis acids and Lewis bases.

SKILLBUILDER

3.13 IDENTIFYING LEWIS ACIDS AND LEWIS BASES

LEARN the skill

Identify the Lewis acid and the Lewis base in the reaction between BH_3 and THF.

SOLUTION

STEP 1 Identify the direction of the flow of electrons.

STEP 2 Identify the electron-pair acceptor as the Lewis acid and the electron-pair donor as the Lewis base.

We must first decide the direction of electron flow. Which reagent is serving as the electron-pair donor and which reagent is serving as the electron-pair acceptor? To answer this question, we analyze each reagent and look for a lone pair of electrons. Boron is in the third column of the periodic table and only has three valence electrons. It is using all three valence electrons to form bonds, which means that it does not have a lone pair of electrons. Rather, it has an empty *p* orbital (for a review of the structure of BH_3, see Section 1.10). Oxygen does have a lone pair. So, we conclude that oxygen attacks boron.

BH_3 is the electron-pair acceptor (Lewis acid), and THF is the electron-pair donor (Lewis base).

PRACTICE the skill

3.35 In each case below, identify the Lewis acid and the Lewis base:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

APPLY the skill

3.36 The Nazarov cyclization is a versatile method for making five-membered rings, a common feature in many natural products. This process has been used successfully in the preparation of many complex structures with a wide variety of biological activities, including antibiotic and anticancer properties.[12] The Nazarov cyclization of compound **1** (to give compound **2**) requires a Lewis acid, such as $AlCl_3$. In the first step of the mechanism, the carbonyl group (C═O) in compound **1** interacts with $AlCl_3$ to give a Lewis acid-Lewis base complex. Draw all significant resonance structures of this complex, and identify the major contributor to the resonance hybrid.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 3.40, 3.58**

REVIEW OF CONCEPTS AND VOCABULARY

SECTION 3.1

- A **Brønsted-Lowry acid** is a proton donor, while a **Brønsted-Lowry base** is a proton acceptor.
- A Brønsted-Lowry acid-base reaction produces a **conjugate acid** and a **conjugate base.**

SECTION 3.2

- A **reaction mechanism** utilizes curved arrows to show the flow of electrons that account for a chemical reaction.
- The mechanism of proton transfer always involves at least two curved arrows.

SECTION 3.3

- For an acid-base reaction occurring in water, the position of equilibrium is described using K_a rather than K_{eq}.
- Typical pK_a values range from −10 to 50.
- A strong acid has a low pK_a, while a weak acid has a high pK_a.
- **Equilibrium** always favors formation of the weaker acid (higher pK_a).

SECTION 3.4

- The relative acidity of uncharged acids can be predicted by analyzing the structures of their conjugate bases. If A^- is very stable, then HA must be a strong acid. If A^- is very unstable, then HA must be a weak acid.
- To compare the acidity of two uncharged acids, HA and HB, simply compare the stability of their anionic conjugate bases.
- There are four factors to consider when comparing the stability of anionic conjugate bases:
  1. Which atom bears the charge? For elements in the same row of the periodic table, electronegativity is the dominant effect. For elements in the same column, size is the dominant effect.
  2. Resonance—a negative charge is stabilized by resonance.
  3. Induction—electron-withdrawing groups, such as halogens, stabilize a nearby negative charge via induction.
  4. Orbital—a negative charge in an *sp*-hybridized orbital will be closer to the nucleus and more stable than a negative charge in an sp^3-hybridized orbital.
- When multiple factors compete, ARIO (atom, resonance, induction, orbital) is generally the order of priority, but there are exceptions.

SECTION 3.5

- To assess the relative acidity of cationic acids (HA^+ vs. HB^+), we can generally compare the stability of the cationic acids themselves (HA^+ and HB^+).
- When it is difficult to compare the stability of two cationic acids (for example, if the positive charge is on the same element in each acid), then we can compare their uncharged conjugate bases and assess whether there is a difference in the availability of the lone pairs (localized vs. delocalized).

SECTION 3.6

- The equilibrium of an acid-base reaction generally favors formation of the more stabilized charge.

SECTION 3.7

- The **leveling effect** dictates the strongest base and the strongest acid that can be present in any particular solvent.
- In a basic solution, the base cannot be stronger than the conjugate base of the solvent.
- In an acidic solution, the acid cannot be stronger than the conjugate acid of the solvent.

SECTION 3.8

- In some cases, solvent effects explain small differences in pK_a values. For example, bases that are bulky, or **sterically hindered**, are generally less efficient at forming stabilizing solvent interactions.

SECTION 3.9

- Negatively charged bases are always accompanied by positively charged species called **cations.**
- The choice of the counterion does not affect most reactions that we will encounter.

SECTION 3.10

- A **Lewis acid** is an electron-pair acceptor, while a **Lewis base** is an electron-pair donor.

SKILLBUILDER REVIEW

3.1 DRAWING THE MECHANISM OF A PROTON TRANSFER

STEP 1 Identify the acid and the base.

STEP 2 Draw the first curved arrow....
(a) Place tail on lone pair (of base).
(b) Place head on proton (of acid).

STEP 3 Draw the second curved arrow....
(a) Place tail on O—H bond.
(b) Place head on O.

Try Problems 3.1–3.3, 3.45

3.2 USING pK_a VALUES TO COMPARE ACIDS

The compound with the lower pK_a is more acidic.

Try Problems 3.4–3.6, 3.39

3.3 USING pK_a VALUES TO COMPARE BASICITY

EXAMPLE Compare the basicity of these two anions.

STEP 1 Draw the conjugate acid of each.

STEP 2 Compare pK_a values.

STEP 3 Identify the stronger base.

Try Problems 3.7–3.9, 3.50

3.4 USING pK_a VALUES TO PREDICT THE POSITION OF EQUILIBRIUM

STEP 1 Identify the acid on each side of the equilibrium.

STEP 2 Compare pK_a values.

The equilibrium will favor the weaker acid.

Try Problems 3.10, 3.11, 3.48

3.5 ASSESSING RELATIVE STABILITY: FACTOR 1—ATOM

STEP 1 Draw the conjugate bases...

STEP 2 Compare location of charge, taking into account two trends.

STEP 3 The more stable conjugate base...

Try Problems 3.13, 3.14, 3.46b, 3.47h, 3.51b,h, 3.60, 3.65

3.6 ASSESSING RELATIVE STABILITY: FACTOR 2—RESONANCE

STEP 1 Draw the conjugate bases...

STEP 2 Look for resonance stabilization.

STEP 3 The more stable conjugate base...

Try Problems 3.15–3.17, 3.46a, 3.47b, e–g, 3.51c–f

3.7 ASSESSING RELATIVE STABILITY: FACTOR 3—INDUCTION

STEP 1 Draw the conjugate bases...

STEP 2 Look for inductive effects.

STEP 3 The more stable conjugate base...

Try Problems 3.18–3.20, 3.47c, 3.51g, 3.59

3.8 ASSESSING RELATIVE STABILITY: FACTOR 4—ORBITALS

STEP 1 Draw the conjugate bases...

STEP 2 Analyze orbitals.

STEP 3 The more stable conjugate base...

Try Problems **3.21, 3.22, 3.46c, 3.61**

3.9 ASSESSING RELATIVE STABILITY: ALL FOUR FACTORS

STEP 1 Draw the conjugate bases...

STEP 2 Analyze all four factors in this order:

Atom

Resonance

Induction

Orbital

Identify all factors that apply.

STEP 3 Take into account exceptions to the order of priority (ARIO) and determine the more stable base...

Try Problems **3.23–3.26, 3.47d, 3.51a, 3.57, 3.62, 3.71–3.75**

3.10 ASSESSING THE RELATIVE ACIDITY OF CATIONIC ACIDS

EXAMPLE In the structure below, identify the highlighted proton that is more acidic:

To assess the relative stability of cationic acids, compare the stability of the positive charges, using the following four factors:

Atom
Resonance
Induction
Orbital

A positive charge is less stable on an oxygen atom than on a nitrogen atom. Therefore, the following proton is more acidic:

Try Problems **3.27–3.29, 3.52–3.54**

3.11 PREDICTING THE POSITION OF EQUILIBRIUM WITHOUT USING pK_a VALUES

STEP 1 Identify the ion on either side of the equilibrium:

STEP 2 Compare the stability of the ions:

Atom
Resonance
Induction
Orbital

STEP 3 The equilibrium will favor the more stable ion

Resonance-stabilized

Try Problems **3.30, 3.31, 3.49, 3.56, 3.64, 3.69**

3.12 CHOOSING THE APPROPRIATE REAGENT FOR A PROTON TRANSFER REACTION

STEP 1 Draw the equilibrium and identify the base on either side.

STEP 2 Compare the stability of these conjugate bases using all four factors, in this order:

Atom

Resonance →

Induction

Orbital

More stable

STEP 3 The equilibrium will favor the more stable base. If products are favored, the reaction is useful. If starting materials are favored, the reaction is not useful.

In this case, water is not a suitable proton source.

Try Problems **3.32, 3.33, 3.41, 3.43**

3.13 IDENTIFYING LEWIS ACIDS AND LEWIS BASES

STEP 1 Identify the direction of the flow of electrons.

STEP 2 Identify the electron-pair acceptor as the Lewis acid and the electron-pair donor as the Lewis base.

Try Problems **3.35, 3.36, 3.40, 3.58**

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

• **Included in Answers section**

3.37 • Draw the conjugate base for each of the following acids:

(a) (b) (c) NH_3 (d) H_3O^+

(e) (f) (g) NH_4^+

3.38 Draw the conjugate acid for each of the following bases:

(a) (b) (c) $NaNH_2$ (d) H_2O

(e) (f) (g) (h) NaOH

3.39 Compound A has a pK_a of 7 and compound B has a pK_a of 10. Compound A is how many times more acidic than compound B?

(a) 3 (b) 3000 (c) 1000

3.40 In each reaction, identify the Lewis acid and the Lewis base:

(a)

(b)

(c)

3.41 • What reaction will take place if H_2O is added to a mixture of $NaNH_2/NH_3$?

3.42 Would ethanol (CH_3CH_2OH) be a suitable solvent in which to perform the following proton transfer? Explain your answer:

3.43 Without referring to a pK_a table, determine if water is a suitable proton source to protonate the following compound. Explain why or why not.

3.44 Write an equation for the proton transfer reaction that occurs when each of the following acids reacts with water. In each case, draw curved arrows that show a mechanism for the proton transfer:

(a) HBr (b) (c)

3.45 • Write an equation for the proton transfer reaction that occurs when each of the following bases reacts with water. In each case, draw curved arrows that show a mechanism for the proton transfer:

(a) (b) (c) (d)

3.46 In each case, identify the more stable anion. Explain why it is more stable:

(a) vs.

(b) vs.

(c) vs.

3.47 • For each pair of compounds below, identify the more acidic compound without using a pK_a table. Explain your choice.

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

(f)

(g)

(h)

3.48 HA has a pK_a of 15, while HB has a pK_a of 5. Draw the equilibrium that would result upon mixing HB with NaA. Does the equilibrium favor formation of HA or formation of HB? Explain.

3.49 For each reaction below, draw a mechanism (curved arrows) and then predict which side of the reaction is favored under equilibrium conditions. Explain your choice.

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

3.50 Rank the following anions in terms of increasing basicity, and explain your reasoning:

3.51 For each compound below, identify the most acidic proton in the compound:

(a) (b) (c)

(d) (e) (f)

(g) (h)

3.52 • In the following structure, which of the highlighted protons is more acidic? Explain.

3.53 Consider the structures of ammonia (NH_3) and 1,5-diazabicyclo[4.3.0]non-5-ene (called DBN). Each of these compounds can function as a base to remove a proton from an acid (such as HCl), thereby generating a positively charged conjugate acid.

Ammonia

DBN

(a) Draw the conjugate acid that is produced when ammonia is protonated by HCl.

(b) DBN has two nitrogen atoms, but when treated with HCl, only one of these nitrogen atoms is protonated. Identify which nitrogen atom is protonated when DBN reacts with HCl, and draw the resonance structures of the resulting conjugate acid.

(c) Compare the structures of the conjugate acids drawn in parts (a) and (b) of this problem, and determine which is more stable. Based on the stability of the conjugate acids, determine which base, NH_3 or DBN, is the stronger base. Explain your choice.

3.54 Explain why compound **2** is a much weaker base than compound **1** (approximately 1000 times less basic).

1

2

ACS-STYLE PROBLEMS (Multiple Choice)

Problems 3.55–3.63 follow the style of the ACS organic chemistry exam. For each of these problems, there will be one correct answer and three distractors.

3.55 • What is the strongest base that is present after methyl magnesium bromide (CH_3MgBr) is treated with water?

(a) (b) (c) (d)

3.56 • Which side of the following equilibrium is favored?

(a) The right side.

(b) The left side.

(c) Depends on temperature.

(d) Cannot determine without more information.

3.57 • All of the following are more acidic than water (H_2O) EXCEPT:

(a) (b) (c) (d)

3.58 • All of the following are Lewis bases EXCEPT:

(a) (b) (c) (d)

3.59 • Arrange the following compounds in order of increasing acidity, from the weakest acid to the strongest acid.

FCH_2CO_2H	$ClCH_2CH_2CO_2H$	$ClCH_2CO_2H$
I	**II**	**III**

(a) **II** < **I** < **III**

(b) **II** < **III** < **I**

(c) **I** < **III** < **II**

(d) **III** < **II** < **I**

3.60 • Which is the stronger acid, HCl or HBr? Explain briefly.

(a) HCl is the stronger acid because Cl is more electronegative than Br.

(b) HCl is the stronger acid because Cl is smaller than Br.

(c) HBr is the stronger acid because Br is less electronegative than Cl.

(d) HBr is the stronger acid because Br is larger than Cl.

3.61 • Which of the indicated protons in the given compound is the most acidic?

(a) Proton **A**

(b) Proton **B**

(c) Proton **C**

(d) Proton **D**

3.62 • Which of the given compounds is more acidic? Briefly explain.

X **Y**

(a) **X** is the stronger acid because the acidic proton is on a more electronegative atom.

(b) **X** is the stronger acid because its conjugate base is stabilized by inductive effects.

(c) **Y** is the stronger acid because its conjugate base is stabilized by resonance.

(d) **Y** is the stronger acid because the acidic proton is stabilized by inductive effects.

3.63 • Of the following, which is the strongest base?

(a) (b) (c) $H_2N^{\ominus}$ (d)

INTEGRATED PROBLEMS

3.64 • In each case below, identify the acid and the base. Then draw the curved arrows showing a proton transfer reaction. Draw the products of that proton transfer and then predict the position of equilibrium:

(a) + LiOH (b)

(c) + NaOH

3.65 There are two constitutional isomers with the molecular formula C_2H_6S. Draw them, determine which is the stronger acid, and justify your choice.

3.66 Draw all constitutional isomers with the molecular formula C_3H_8O and rank them in terms of increasing acidity.

3.67 Consider the structure of cyclopentadiene and then answer the following questions:

Cyclopentadiene

(a) How many sp^3-hybridized carbon atoms are present in the structure of cyclopentadiene?

(b) Identify the most acidic proton in cyclopentadiene. Justify your choice.

(c) Draw all resonance structures of the conjugate base of cyclopentadiene.

(d) How many sp^3-hybridized carbon atoms are present in the conjugate base?

(e) What is the geometry of the conjugate base?

(f) How many hydrogen atoms are present in the conjugate base?

(g) How many lone pairs are present in the conjugate base?

3.68 In Section 3.4, we learned four factors (ARIO) for comparing the relative acidity of compounds. When two of these factors are in competition, the order of priority is the order in which these factors were covered ("atom" being the most important factor and "orbital" being the least important). However, we also mentioned that there are exceptions to this order of priority. One such exception was covered at the end of Section 3.4. Compare the two compounds below and determine if they constitute another exception. Justify your choice:

$pK_a = 4.75$ $pK_a = 10.6$

3.69 As we will learn in Chapter 20, treating a lactone (a cyclic ester) with sodium hydroxide will initially produce an anion:

Initially formed

This anion rapidly undergoes an intramolecular proton transfer (see Problem 3.2), in which the negatively charged oxygen atom abstracts the nearby acidic proton. Draw the product of this intramolecular acid-base process and then identify which side of the equilibrium is favored. Explain your answer.

3.70 Consider the pK_a values of the following constitutional isomers:

Salicylic acid $pK_a = 3.0$ *para*-Hydroxybenzoic acid $pK_a = 4.6$

Using the rules that we developed in this chapter (ARIO), we might have expected these two compounds to have the same pK_a. Nevertheless, they are different. Salicylic acid is nearly 40 times more acidic than its constitutional isomer. Can you offer an explanation for this difference in acidity?

3.71 Consider the following compound with the molecular formula $C_4H_8O_2$:

$C_4H_8O_2$

(a) Draw a constitutional isomer that you expect will be approximately one trillion (10^{12}) times more acidic than the compound above.

(b) Draw a constitutional isomer that you expect will be less acidic than the compound above.

(c) Draw a constitutional isomer that you expect will have approximately the same pK_a as the compound above.

3.72 There are only four constitutional isomers with the molecular formula $C_4H_9NO_2$ that contain a nitro group (—NO_2). Three of these isomers have similar pK_a values, while the fourth isomer has a much higher pK_a value. Draw all four isomers and identify which one has the higher pK_a. Explain your choice.

3.73 Predict which of the following compounds is more acidic and explain your choice:

3.74 Below is the structure of rilpivirine, an anti-HIV drug:

Rilpivirine

(a) Identify the two most acidic protons in rilpivirine.

(b) Identify which of these two protons is more acidic. Explain your choice.

3.75 Most common amines (RNH_2) exhibit pK_a values between 35 and 45. R represents the rest of the compound (generally carbon and hydrogen atoms). However, when R is a cyano group, the pK_a is found to be drastically lower:

$pK_a = 35–45$ $pK_a = 17$

(a) Explain why the presence of the cyano group so drastically impacts the pK_a.

(b) Can you suggest a different replacement for R that would lead to an even stronger acid (pK_a lower than 17)?

3.76 In one step of a recent total synthesis of (−)-seimatopolide A, a potential antidiabetic drug, the following two structures reacted with each other in a proton transfer reaction.[13]

(a) Identify the acid and the base, draw the products of the reaction, and show a mechanism for their formation.

(b) Using the pK_a values in Table 3.1 as a rough guideline, predict the position of equilibrium for this acid-base reaction.

3.77 The following compound has been designed to allow for labeling of a specific site of a protein.[14] Identify the four most acidic protons in this compound, and rank them in order of increasing acidity.

3.78 Asteltoxin, isolated from the cultures of *Aspergillus stellatus*, exhibits a potent inhibitory effect on the activity of *E. coli* BF_1-ATPase. During S. L. Schreiber's synthesis of asteltoxin[15], compound **1** was treated with a strong base to form anion **2**. Draw all significant resonance structures of anion **2**, and identify the major contributor to the resonance hybrid.

Problems 3.79 and 3.80 are intended for students who have already covered IR spectroscopy (Chapter 14).

3.79 Deuterium (D) is an isotope of hydrogen, in which the nucleus has one proton and one neutron. This nucleus, called a deuteron, behaves very much like a proton, although there are observed differences in the rates of reactions involving either protons or deuterons (an effect called the kinetic isotope effect). Deuterium can be introduced into a compound via the process below:

(a) Compound **3** is a strong base, and the C—Mg bond in compound **3** can be drawn as ionic. Redraw **3** as an ionic species, with $BrMg^+$ as the cation, and then draw a mechanism for the conversion of **3** to **4**.

(b) The IR spectrum of compound **4** exhibits[16] a group of signals between 1250 and 1500 cm^{-1}, a signal at 2180 cm^{-1}, and another group of signals between 2800 and 3000 cm^{-1}. Identify the location of the C—D signal in the spectrum and explain your reasoning.

3.80 The bengamides are a series of natural products that have shown inhibitory effects on the enzyme methionine aminopeptidase, which plays a key role in the growth of new blood vessels, a necessary process for the progression of diseases such as solid tumor cancers and rheumatoid arthritis. During the synthesis of bengamides, it is often required to use protecting groups that convert OH groups into other, less reactive functional groups. For example, the alcohol **1** is protected upon treatment with compound **2** in the presence of compound **4**.[17] First, **1** reacts with **2** to give intermediate **3**, which is then deprotonated by **4** to give **5**:

(a) Draw the structure of **5** and show a mechanism for its formation from **3**.

(b) Use pK_a values to verify that **4** is an appropriate base for this transformation.

(c) Explain how you would use IR spectroscopy to verify the conversion of **1** to **5**.

CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

3.81 During a synthesis of (+)-coronafacic acid, a key component in the plant toxin coronatine, the following reaction was performed, in which a ketone was converted into an acetal (the acetal functional group will be covered in Chapter 19). In this case, *p*-toluenesulfonic acid (*p*-TsOH) functions as an acid catalyst.[18]

(a) The accepted mechanism for this process begins with a proton transfer step in which the ketone is protonated. Draw this mechanistic step using curved arrows.

(b) For this protonation step, predict whether the equilibrium favors the protonated ketone. Justify your prediction with estimated pK_a values.

3.82 Phakellin (**3**), a natural product isolated from marine organisms, has been studied for its potential use as an antibiotic agent. During studies aimed at developing a strategy for the synthesis of phakellin and its derivatives, compound **1** was investigated as a potential precursor.[19]

(a) Identify the most acidic proton in compound **1**, draw the corresponding conjugate base, **2**, and justify your choice.

(b) Using pK_a values as well as structural comparisons, justify why lithium diisopropyl amide (LDA) is a suitable base to deprotonate **1**.

(c) Draw a mechanism for the conversion of **1** to **2**.

3.83 Crude extracts from the ginkgo tree, *Ginkgo biloba*, have been used for centuries to alleviate symptoms associated with asthma. There are four principal components of *Ginkgo* extracts, called ginkgolide A, B, D, and M. During E. J. Corey's synthesis[20] of ginkgolide B, compound **1** was converted into compound **5**.

(a) Draw the resonance-stabilized anion (**3**) that is expected when compound **1** is treated with LDA (compound **2**), which was introduced in Problem 3.82.

(b) Draw a mechanism for the conversion of **1** to **3** and explain why this step is essentially irreversible.

(c) Upon treatment with **4**, anion **3** is converted into compound **5**, and by-product **6** is formed. Describe the factors that render **6** a particularly stable anion.

3.84 The pK_a of the most acidic CH_2 group in compounds **1–4** was measured in DMSO as the solvent.[21]

Acid	pK_a
$CH_3COCH_2CO_2CH_2CH_3$, **1**	14.1
$PhCH_2CN$, **2**	21.9
$PhCH_2CO_2CH_2CH_3$, **3**	22.7
$PhCH_2CON(CH_3)_2$, **4**	26.6

Given the data above, determine which of the following two compounds (**5** or **6**) is more acidic by comparing the stability of the corresponding conjugate bases. Include all necessary resonance contributors in your discussion. Consider the given pK_a values in determining which resonance contributors are more effective in stabilizing the conjugate bases.

LIST OF REFERENCES

1. *J. Neurochemistry* **2014**, *130* (Supplement 1), 60–61.
2. *Tetrahedron Lett.* **2001**, *42*, 1209–1212.
3. *Chem. Res. Toxicol.* **2007**, *20*, 326–343.
4. *J. Biomed. Mater. Res. A* **2013**, *101A*, 465–471.
5. *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed.* **2008**, *47*, 6456–6460.
6. *Biomolecules* **2020**, *10*, 79–99.
7. *Water Res.* **1990**, *24*, 661–666.
8. *Chem. Commun.* **1997**, 1797–1798.
9. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm.* **2019**, *45*, 560–567.
10. *Mater. Sci. Eng. C* **2019**, *105*, 110142.
11. *Org. Lett.* **2008**, *10*, 49–51.
12. *Org. Lett.* **2003**, *5*, 4931–4934.
13. *Tetrahedron Lett.* **2012**, *53*, 5749–5752.
14. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **2009**, *131*, 8720–8721.
15. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1984**, *106*, 4186–4188.
16. *J. Chem. Ed.* **1981**, *58*, 79–80.
17. *Tetrahedron Lett.* **2007**, *48*, 8787–8789.
18. *J. Org. Chem.* **2009**, *74*, 2433–2437.
19. *Org. Lett.* **2002**, *4*, 2645–2648.
20. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1988**, *110*, 649–651.
21. *J. Org. Chem.* **1981**, *46*, 4327–4331.

4

4.1 Introduction to Alkanes
4.2 Nomenclature of Alkanes
4.3 Constitutional Isomers of Alkanes
4.4 Relative Stability of Isomeric Alkanes
4.5 Sources and Uses of Alkanes
4.6 Drawing Newman Projections
4.7 Conformational Analysis of Ethane and Propane
4.8 Conformational Analysis of Butane
4.9 Cycloalkanes
4.10 Conformations of Cyclohexane
4.11 Drawing Chair Conformations
4.12 Monosubstituted Cyclohexane
4.13 Disubstituted Cyclohexane
4.14 *cis-trans* Stereoisomerism
4.15 Polycyclic Systems

Top (*Ribbon*) JamesBrey/Getty Images; *Bottom Left* (*Spiral ribbon*) macida/Getty Images; *Bottom Middle* [*Left and Right*] (*Ribbon*) JamesBrey/Getty Images; *Bottom Right* (*Spiral ribbon*) macida/Getty Images

Alkanes and Cycloalkanes

DID YOU EVER **WONDER...**

why scientists have not yet developed a cure for AIDS?

As you probably know, acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) is caused by the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). Although scientists have not yet developed a way to destroy HIV in infected people, they have developed drugs that significantly slow the progress of the virus and the disease. These drugs interfere with the various processes by which the virus replicates itself. Yet, anti-HIV drugs are not 100% effective, primarily because HIV has the ability to mutate into forms that are drug resistant. In an attempt to solve this problem, some scientists are developing new HIV drugs that are designed to be flexible. The hope is that molecular flexibility will enable these drugs to evade the problem of drug resistance.

A flexible molecule is one that can adopt many different shapes, or conformations. The study of the three-dimensional shapes of molecules is called *conformational analysis*. This chapter will introduce only the most basic principles of conformational analysis, which we will use to analyze the flexibility of molecules. To simplify our discussion, we will explore compounds that lack a functional group, called *alkanes* and *cycloalkanes*. Analysis of these compounds will enable us to understand how molecules achieve flexibility. Specifically, we will explore how alkanes and cycloalkanes change their three-dimensional shape as a result of the rotation of C—C single bonds.

Our discussion of conformational analysis will involve the comparison of many different compounds and will be more efficient if we can refer to compounds by name. A system of rules for naming alkanes and cycloalkanes will be developed prior to our discussion of molecular flexibility.

DO YOU **REMEMBER?**

Before you go on, be sure you understand the following topics.
If necessary, review the suggested sections to prepare for this chapter.

- Bond-Line Structures (Sections 1.6 and 2.2)
- Molecular Orbital Theory (Section 1.9)
- Predicting Geometry (Section 1.11)
- Three-Dimensional Bond-Line Structures (Section 2.6)

Take the DO YOU **REMEMBER?** QUIZ in the **online course** to check your understanding.

4.1 Introduction to Alkanes

Recall that hydrocarbons are compounds comprised of only C and H; for example:

Ethane C_2H_6 | **Ethylene** C_2H_4 | **Acetylene** C_2H_2 | **Benzene** C_6H_6

Ethane is unlike the other examples in that it has no π bonds. Hydrocarbons that lack π bonds are called **saturated hydrocarbons**, or **alkanes**. The names of these compounds usually end with the suffix "-ane," as seen in the following examples:

Propane | **Butane** | **Pentane**

This chapter will focus on alkanes, beginning with a procedure for naming them. The system of naming chemical compounds, or **nomenclature**, will be developed and refined throughout the remaining chapters of this book.

4.2 Nomenclature of Alkanes

An Introduction to IUPAC Nomenclature

In the early nineteenth century, organic compounds were often named at the whim of their discoverers. Here are just a few examples:

Formic acid
Isolated from ants and named after the Latin word for ant, *formica*

Urea
Isolated from urine

Morphine
A painkiller named after the Greek god of dreams, Morpheus

Barbituric acid
Adolf von Baeyer named this compound in honor of a woman named Barbara

A large number of compounds were given names that became part of the common language shared by chemists. Many of these common names are still in use today.

As the number of known compounds grew, a pressing need arose for a systematic method for naming compounds. In 1892, a group of 34 European chemists met in Switzerland and developed a system of organic nomenclature called the Geneva rules. The group ultimately became known as the International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry, or **IUPAC** (pronounced "I–YOU–PACK"). The original Geneva rules have been regularly revised and updated and are now called IUPAC nomenclature.

Names produced by IUPAC rules are called **systematic names**. There are many rules, and we cannot possibly study all of them. The upcoming sections are meant to serve as an introduction to IUPAC nomenclature.

Selecting the Parent Chain

The first step in naming an alkane is to identify the longest chain, called the parent chain:

In this example, the parent chain has nine carbon atoms. When naming the parent chain of a compound, the names in Table 4.1 are used. These names will be used very often in this course. Parent chains of more than 10 carbon atoms will be less common, so it is essential to commit to memory at least the first 10 parents on the list in Table 4.1.

TABLE 4.1 PARENT NAMES FOR ALKANES

NUMBER OF CARBON ATOMS	PARENT	NAME OF ALKANE	NUMBER OF CARBON ATOMS	PARENT	NAME OF ALKANE
1	*meth*	methane	11	*undec*	undecane
2	*eth*	ethane	12	*dodec*	dodecane
3	*prop*	propane	13	*tridec*	tridecane
4	*but*	butane	14	*tetradec*	tetradecane
5	*pent*	pentane	15	*pentadec*	pentadecane
6	*hex*	hexane	20	*eicos*	eicosane
7	*hept*	heptane	30	*triacont*	triacontane
8	*oct*	octane	40	*tetracont*	tetracontane
9	*non*	nonane	50	*pentacont*	pentacontane
10	*dec*	decane	100	*hect*	hectane

If there is a competition between two chains of equal length, then choose the chain with the greater number of substituents. **Substituents** are branches connected to the parent chain:

The term "cyclo" is used to indicate the presence of a ring in the structure of an alkane. For example, these compounds are called **cycloalkanes**:

SKILLBUILDER

4.1 IDENTIFYING THE PARENT

LEARN the skill

Identify and provide a name for the parent in the following compound:

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Choose the longest chain.

Locate the longest chain. In this case, there are two choices that have 10 carbon atoms. Either way, the parent will be *decane*, but we must choose the correct parent chain. The correct parent is the one with the greater number of substituents:

STEP 2
When two chains compete, choose the chain with more substituents.

PRACTICE the skill

4.1 Identify and name the parent in each of the following compounds:

(a)
(b)
(c)
(d)

(e)
(f)
(g)
(h)
(i)

4.2 Identify the two compounds below that have the same parent:

A

B

C

D

APPLY the skill

4.3 Under strongly acidic conditions, hexane is observed to undergo an isomerization process, during which it is converted into branched alkanes having the same molecular formula as hexane (C_6H_{14}). The rate at which each constitutional isomer is produced is related to the type of acid that is used in the reaction and the degree of mixing that occurs during the reaction.[1] There are four branched isomers of hexane. Draw a bond-line structure of hexane and each of its isomers and identify the parent chain for each isomer.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problem 4.36**

TABLE 4.2 NAMES OF ALKYL GROUPS

NUMBER OF CARBON ATOMS IN SUBSTITUENT	TERMINOLOGY
1	*methyl*
2	*ethyl*
3	*propyl*
4	*butyl*
5	*pentyl*
6	*hexyl*
7	*heptyl*
8	*octyl*
9	*nonyl*
10	*decyl*

Naming Substituents

Once the parent has been identified, the next step is to list all of the substituents:

Substituents are named with the same terminology used for naming parents, only we add the letters "yl." For example, a substituent with one carbon atom (a CH_3 group) is called a methyl group. A substituent with two carbon atoms is called an ethyl group. These groups are generically called **alkyl groups**. A list of alkyl groups is given in Table 4.2. In the example above, the substituents would have the following names:

When an alkyl group is connected to a ring, the ring is generally treated as the parent:

Propylcyclohexane

However, when the ring is comprised of fewer atoms than the rest of the structure, it is common practice to name the ring as a substituent (a cycloalkyl group). For example, the following compound is called 1-cyclopropylbutane:

1-Cyclopropylbutane

SKILLBUILDER

4.2 IDENTIFYING AND NAMING SUBSTITUENTS

LEARN the skill

Identify and name all substituents in the following compound:

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Identify the parent.

First identify the parent by looking for the longest chain. In this case, the parent has 10 carbon atoms (decane). Everything connected to the chain is a substituent, and we use the names from Table 4.2 to name each substituent:

STEPS 2 and 3
Identify and name all alkyl substituents connected to the parent.

PRACTICE the skill

4.4 For each of the following compounds, identify all groups that would be considered substituents and then indicate how you would name each substituent:

APPLY the skill

4.5 The following compound is found in the urine of male mice and is believed to play a role both in attracting females and inducing aggression toward other males.[2] Identify and name all substituents in this compound.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problem 4.36**

WorldLinks Pheromones: Chemical Messengers

Many animals use chemicals, called *pheromones*, to communicate with each other. In fact, insects use pheromones as their primary means of communication. An insect secretes the pheromone, which then binds to a receptor in another insect, triggering a biological response. Some insects use compounds that warn of danger (alarm pheromones), while other insects use compounds that promote aggregation among members of the same species (aggregation pheromones). Pheromones are also used by many insects to attract members of the opposite sex for mating purposes (sex pheromones). For example, 2-methylheptadecane is a sex pheromone used by some moths, and undecane is used as an aggregation pheromone by some cockroaches.

Tanya Back/Getty Images

2-Methylheptadecane
Sex pheromone of the female tiger moth

Undecane
Aggregation pheromone of the *Blaberus cranifer* cockroach

Both of these examples above are alkanes, but many pheromones exhibit one or more functional groups. Examples of such pheromones will appear throughout this book.

Naming Complex Substituents

Naming branched alkyl substituents is more complex than naming straight-chain (linear) substituents. For example, consider the following substituent:

How do we name this substituent? It has five carbon atoms, but it cannot simply be called a pentyl group, because it is not a straight-chain alkyl group. In situations like this, the following method is employed: Begin by placing numbers on the substituent, going *away* from the parent chain:

Place the numbers on the longest straight chain present in the substituent, and in this case, there are four carbon atoms. This group is therefore considered to be a butyl group that has one methyl group attached to it at the 2 position. Accordingly, this group is called a (2-methylbutyl) group. In essence, treat the complex substituent as if it is a miniparent with its own substituents. When naming a complex substituent, place parentheses around the name of the substituent. This will avoid confusion, as we will soon place numbers on the parent chain and we don't want to confuse those numbers with the numbers on the substituent chain.

Some complex substituents have common names. These common names are so well entrenched that IUPAC allows them. It would be wise to commit the following common names to memory, as they will be used frequently throughout the course.

An alkyl group bearing three carbon atoms can only be branched in one way, and it is called an *isopropyl group*:

Alkyl groups bearing four carbon atoms can be branched in three different ways:

Alkyl groups bearing five carbon atoms can be branched in many more ways. Here are two common ways:

SKILLBUILDER

4.3 IDENTIFYING AND NAMING COMPLEX SUBSTITUENTS

LEARN the skill

In the following compound, identify all groups that would be considered substituents and then indicate the systematic name as well as the common name for each substituent:

SOLUTION

STEP 1 Identify the parent.

First, identify the parent (shown in red). Then, consider the substituents. In this example, there are two complex substituents. To name them, we place numbers on each substituent, going away from the parent in each case. Then, we consider each complex substituent to be composed of "a substituent on a substituent," and we use the numbers for that purpose.

STEP 2 Place numbers on the complex substituent.

Alternatively, IUPAC rules allow us to use the following common names:

STEP 3 Name the complex substituent.

PRACTICE the skill

4.6 For each of the following compounds, identify all groups that would be considered substituents and then indicate the systematic name as well as the common name for each substituent:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

APPLY the skill

4.7 Bile acids, such as compound **1**, are made from cholesterol in the liver through a series of reactions that are catalyzed by enzymes. Compound **2** is an important intermediate in this pathway. Compound **2** has also been made from compound **1** by chemists who used laboratory reactions (synthesis) to convert a five-carbon side chain into an eight-carbon side chain.[3] Provide a systematic name for the eight-carbon side chain in compound **2**. For now, we will ignore stereochemistry (wedges and dashes), an important consideration that will be covered in Chapter 5.

1 2

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 4.69, 4.70**

Assembling the Systematic Name of an Alkane

In order to assemble the systematic name of an alkane, the carbon atoms of the parent chain are numbered, and these numbers are used to identify the location of each substituent. As an example, consider the following two compounds:

In each case, the location of the methyl group is clearly identified with a number, called a **locant**. In order to assign the correct locant, we must number the parent chain properly, which can be done by following just a few rules:

- If one substituent is present, it should be assigned the lower possible number. In this example, we place the numbers so that the methyl group is at C2 rather than C6:

- When multiple substituents are present, assign numbers so that the first substituent receives the lower number. In the following case, we number the parent chain so that the substituents are 2,5,5 rather than 3,3,6 because we want the first locant to be as low as possible:

- If there is a tie, then the second locant should be as low as possible:

- If the previous rule does not break the tie, such as in the case below, then the lowest number should be assigned alphabetically:

- When dealing with cycloalkanes, all of the same rules apply. For example:

- When a substituent appears more than once in a compound, a prefix is used to identify how many times that substituent appears in the compound (di = 2, tri = 3, tetra = 4, penta = 5, and hexa = 6). For example, the previous compound would be called 1,1,3-trimethylcyclohexane.

Notice that a hyphen is used to separate numbers from letters, while commas are used to separate numbers from each other.

- Once all substituents have been identified and assigned the proper locants, they are placed in alphabetical order. Prefixes (di, tri, tetra, penta, and hexa) are not included as part of the alphabetization scheme. In other words, "dimethyl" is alphabetized as if it started with the letter "m" rather than "d." Similarly, *sec* and *tert* are also ignored for alphabetization purposes; however, iso is not ignored. In other words, *sec*-butyl is alphabetized as a "b" while isobutyl is alphabetized as an "i."

In summary, four discrete steps are required when assigning the name of an alkane:

1. ***Identify the parent chain***: Choose the longest chain. For two chains of equal length, the parent chain should be the chain with the greater number of substituents.
2. ***Identify and name the substituents***.
3. ***Number the parent chain and assign a locant to each substituent***: Give the first substituent the lower possible number. If there is a tie, choose the chain in which the second substituent has the lower number.
4. ***Arrange the substituents alphabetically***. Place locants in front of each substituent. For identical substituents, use di, tri, or tetra, which are ignored when alphabetizing.

SKILLBUILDER

4.4 ASSEMBLING THE SYSTEMATIC NAME OF AN ALKANE

LEARN the skill

Provide a systematic name for the following compound:

SOLUTION

Assembling a systematic name requires four discrete steps. The first two steps are to identify the parent and the substituents:

STEP 1 Identify the parent.

STEP 2 Identify and name substituents.

STEP 3 Assign locants.

Then, assign a locant to each substituent and arrange the substituents alphabetically:

STEP 4 Arrange the substituents alphabetically.

4-Ethyl-2,3-dimethyloctane

Notice that ***e***thyl is placed before di***m***ethyl in the name. Also, make sure that hyphens separate letters from numbers, while commas separate numbers from each other.

PRACTICE the skill

4.8 Provide a systematic name for each of the following compounds:

(a)
(b)
(c)
(d)

(e)
(f)
(g)

(h)
(i)
(j)
(k)

4.9 Draw a bond-line drawing for each of the following compounds:

(a) 3-Isopropyl-2,4-dimethylpentane **(b)** 4-Ethyl-2-methylhexane

(c) 1,1,2,2-Tetramethylcyclopropane

APPLY the skill

4.10 When crude oil is distilled, the fraction collected in the boiling point range of 150–275°C is known as kerosene. Kerosene has a wide range of uses, from lamp oil to jet fuel, and scientists have been developing synthetic formulations to reduce the unpleasant odor produced when kerosene burns.[4] Provide a systematic name for each of the following compounds, which are found in a kerosene composition that has been submitted for patent protection.

(a)
(b)
(c)
(d)

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 4.36a–i, 4.40a,b, 4.65**

Naming Bicyclic Compounds

We have seen that a cycloalkane is an alkane that has a single ring. It is also possible to arrange a carbon skeleton in a way that there are two rings that are connected to one another. Such a compound is described as a **bicycloalkane**. The bicycloalkane shown below has been drawn in two different ways, both representing the same compound:

is the same as

Sometimes it is difficult to see how many rings are present in a given compound, so one way to check is to determine how many bonds must be broken to convert the compound into an acyclic system. Converting an ordinary cycloalkane into an acyclic compound would require breaking just one C—C bond. In contrast, for the structure shown above, we would have to break *two* C—C bonds in order to remove the rings that are present, confirming that it is indeed a bicyclic compound.

We will now focus on naming bicyclic systems, which is very similar to naming alkanes and cycloalkanes. We follow the same four-step procedure outlined earlier in this section, but there are differences in naming and numbering the parent. Let's start with naming the parent.

For bicyclic systems, the term "bicyclo" is introduced in the name of the parent; for example, the compound above is comprised of seven carbon atoms and is therefore called bicycloheptane. The problem is that this parent is not specific enough. To illustrate this, consider the following two compounds, both of which are called bicycloheptane:

Both compounds consist of seven carbon atoms. Yet, the compounds are clearly different, which means that the name of the parent needs to contain more information. Specifically, it must indicate the way in which the rings are constructed. In order to do this, we must identify the two **bridgeheads**, which are the two carbon atoms where the rings are joined together:

There are three different paths connecting these two bridgeheads. For each path, count the number of carbon atoms, excluding the bridgeheads themselves. In the compound above, one path has two carbon atoms, another path has two carbon atoms, and the third (shortest path) has only one carbon atom. These three numbers, ordered from largest to smallest, [2.2.1], are then placed in the middle of the parent, surrounded by brackets:

Bicyclo[2.2.1]heptane

These numbers provide the necessary specificity to differentiate the compounds shown earlier:

Bicyclo[3.1.1]heptane Bicyclo[2.2.1]heptane

If a substituent is present, the parent must be numbered properly in order to assign the correct locant to the substituent. To number the parent, start at one of the bridgeheads and begin numbering along the longest path, then go to the second longest path, and finally go along the shortest path. For example, consider the following bicyclic system:

In this example, the methyl substituent did not get a low number. In fact, it got the highest number possible because of its location. Specifically, it is on the shortest path connecting the bridgeheads. Regardless of the position of substituents, the parent must be numbered beginning with the longest path first. The only choice is which bridgehead will be counted as C1; for example:

Either way, the numbers begin along the longest path. However, we must start numbering at the bridgehead that gives the substituent the lowest possible number. In the example above, the correct path places the substituent at C6 rather than at C7, so this compound is 6-methylbicyclo[3.2.1]octane.

SKILLBUILDER

4.5 ASSEMBLING THE NAME OF A BICYCLIC COMPOUND

LEARN the skill

Assign a name for the following compound:

SOLUTION

STEP 1 Identify the parent.

Once again, we use our four-step procedure. First identify the parent. In this case, we are dealing with a bicyclic system, so we count the total number of carbon atoms comprising both ring systems. There are seven carbon atoms in both rings combined, so the parent must be "bicycloheptane." The two bridgeheads are highlighted. Now count the number of carbon atoms along each of the three possible paths that connect the bridgeheads. The longest path (on the right side) has three carbon atoms in between the bridgeheads. The second longest path (on the left side) has two carbon atoms in between the bridgeheads. The shortest path has no carbon atoms in between the bridgeheads; that is, the bridgeheads are connected directly to each other. Therefore the parent is "bicyclo[3.2.0]heptane." Next, identify and name the substituents:

STEP 2 Identify and name substituents.

STEP 3 Assign locants.

STEP 4 Arrange the substituents alphabetically.

Then number the parent, and assign a locant to each substituent. Start at one of the bridgeheads and continue numbering along the longest path that connects the bridgeheads. In this case, we start at the lower bridgehead, so as to give the isopropyl group the lower number.
Finally, arrange the substituents alphabetically:

2-Isopropyl-7,7-dimethylbicyclo[3.2.0]heptane

PRACTICE the skill

4.11 Name each of the following compounds:

4.12 Draw a bond-line structure for each of the following compounds:

(a) 2,2,3,3-Tetramethylbicyclo[2.2.1]heptane **(b)** 8,8-Diethylbicyclo[3.2.1]octane

(c) 3-Isopropylbicyclo[3.2.0]heptane

APPLY the skill

4.13 Vitamin D helps the body absorb calcium, iron, magnesium, phosphate, and zinc. Several compounds with the general structure below were synthesized and tested for their ability to mimic vitamin D activity.[5] Naming this general structure requires nomenclature rules that were not covered in this chapter, although you should be able to assign a name to the hydrocarbon core (highlighted). Provide a systematic name for this hydrocarbon core.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 4.36j,k, 4.40c**

BioLinks | Naming Drugs

Pharmaceuticals often have cumbersome IUPAC names and are therefore given shorter names, called *generic names*. For example, consider the following compound:

(*S*)-5-Methoxy-2-[(4-methoxy-3,5-dimethyl pyridin-2-yl)methylsulfinyl]-3*H*-benzoimidazole

The IUPAC name for this compound is quite a mouthful, so a generic name, *esomeprazole*, has been assigned and accepted by the international community. For marketing purposes, drug companies will also select a catchy name, called a *trade name*. For example, Nexium is a trade name for esomeprazole, a proton-pump inhibitor used in the treatment of reflux disease (heartburn).

In summary, pharmaceuticals have three important names: (1) trade names, (2) generic names, and (3) systematic IUPAC names. Table 4.3 lists several common drugs whose trade names are likely to sound familiar.

TABLE 4.3 NAMES OF COMMON PHARMACEUTICALS

TRADE NAME	GENERIC NAME	STRUCTURE AND IUPAC NAME	USES
Aspirin	Acetylsalicylic acid	**2-Acetoxybenzoic acid**	Analgesic, antipyretic (reduces fever), anti-inflammatory
Advil or Motrin	Ibuprofen	**(+/–)-2-[4-(2-Methylpropyl)phenyl]propanoic acid**	Analgesic, antipyretic, anti-inflammatory
Demerol	Pethidine	**Ethyl 1-methyl-4-phenylpiperidine-4-carboxylate**	Analgesic
Dramamine	Meclizine II	**(+/–)-1-[(4-Chlorophenyl)-phenyl-methyl]-4-[(3-methylphenyl)methyl]piperazine**	Antiemetic (inhibits nausea and vomiting)
Tylenol	Acetaminophen	***N*-(4-Hydroxyphenyl)ethanamide**	Analgesic, antipyretic

4.3 Constitutional Isomers of Alkanes

For an alkane, the number of possible constitutional isomers increases with increasing molecular size. Table 4.4 illustrates this trend.

TABLE 4.4 NUMBER OF CONSTITUTIONAL ISOMERS FOR VARIOUS ALKANES

MOLECULAR FORMULA	NUMBER OF CONSTITUTIONAL ISOMERS
C_3H_8	1
C_4H_{10}	2
C_5H_{12}	3
C_6H_{14}	5
C_7H_{16}	9
C_8H_{18}	18
C_9H_{20}	35
$C_{10}H_{22}$	75
$C_{15}H_{32}$	4,347
$C_{20}H_{42}$	366,319
$C_{30}H_{62}$	4,111,846,763
$C_{40}H_{82}$	62,481,801,147,341

When drawing the constitutional isomers of an alkane, make sure to avoid drawing the same isomer twice. As an example, consider $C_6H_{14,}$ for which there are five constitutional isomers. When drawing these isomers, it might be tempting to draw more than five structures. For example:

At first glance, the two highlighted compounds seem to be different. But upon further inspection, it becomes apparent that they are actually the same compound. To avoid drawing the same compound twice, it is helpful to use IUPAC rules to name each compound. If there are duplicates, it will become apparent:

3-Methylpentane 3-Methylpentane

These two drawings generate the same name, and therefore, they must be the same compound. Even without formally naming these compounds, it is helpful to simply look at molecules from an IUPAC perspective. In other words, each of these compounds should be viewed as a parent chain of five carbon atoms, with a methyl group at C3. Viewing molecules in this way (from an IUPAC perspective) will prove to be helpful in many cases.

SKILLBUILDER

4.6 IDENTIFYING CONSTITUTIONAL ISOMERS

LEARN the skill

Identify whether the following two drawings represent constitutional isomers or whether they are simply different representations of the same compound:

SOLUTION

STEP 1 Name each compound.

Use the rules of nomenclature to name each compound. In each case, identify the parent, locate the substituents, number the parent, and assemble a name:

3,4-Diethyl-2,7-dimethylnonane

3,4-Diethyl-2,7-dimethylnonane

STEP 2 Compare the names.

These compounds have the same name, and therefore, they are not constitutional isomers. They are actually two representations of the same compound.

PRACTICE the skill

4.14 For each pair of drawings, identify whether they are constitutional isomers or two representations of the same compound:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

APPLY the skill

4.15 As we will soon see in Section 4.5, gasoline is a complex mixture of alkanes and other hydrocarbons, and the term "octane rating" is used as a standard measure of the performance of engine fuel. In the petroleum industry, one area of interest is the use of catalysts to convert unbranched alkanes into branched alkanes with higher octane ratings.[6] For example, heptane can undergo isomerization in the presence of suitable catalysts to give eight different constitutional isomers, all of which are branched alkanes with the molecular formula C_7H_{16}. Draw all eight constitutional isomers, making sure not to draw the same compound twice.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 4.37, 4.72**

4.4 Relative Stability of Isomeric Alkanes

In order to compare the stability of constitutional isomers, we look at the heat liberated when they each undergo combustion. For an alkane, combustion describes a reaction in which the alkane reacts with oxygen to produce CO_2 and water. Consider the following example:

$$+ \; 8\,O_2 \longrightarrow 5\,CO_2 + 6\,H_2O \qquad \Delta H^\circ = -3509 \text{ kJ/mol}$$

In this reaction, an alkane (pentane) is ignited in the presence of oxygen, and the resulting reaction is called combustion. The value shown above, $\Delta H°$ for this reaction, is the *change in enthalpy* associated with the complete combustion of 1 mol of pentane in the presence of oxygen. We will revisit the concept of enthalpy in more detail in Chapter 6, but for now, we will simply think of it as the heat given off during the reaction. For a combustion process, $-\Delta H°$ is called the **heat of combustion**.

Combustion can be conducted under experimental conditions using a device called a calorimeter, which can measure heats of combustion accurately. Careful measurements reveal that the heats of combustion for two isomeric alkanes are different, even though the products of the reactions are identical:

Notice that although the two reactions shown above yield the same number of moles of CO_2 and water, the heats of combustion for the two reactions are different. We can use this difference to compare the stability of isomeric alkanes (Figure 4.1). By comparing the amount of heat given off by each combustion process, we can compare the potential energy that each isomer had before combustion. This analysis leads to the conclusion that branched alkanes are lower in energy (more stable) than straight-chain alkanes.

FIGURE 4.1
An energy diagram comparing the heats of combustion for three constitutional isomers of octane.

Heats of combustion are an important way to determine the relative stability of compounds. We will use this technique several times throughout this book to compare the stability of compounds.

4.5 Sources and Uses of Alkanes

The main source of alkanes is petroleum, which comes from the Latin words *petro* ("rock") and *oleum* ("oil"). Petroleum is a complex mixture of hundreds of hydrocarbons, most of which are alkanes (ranging in size and constitution). It is believed that Earth's petroleum deposits were formed slowly, over millions of years, by the decay of prehistoric bioorganic material (such as plants and forests).

The first oil well was drilled in Pennsylvania in 1859. The petroleum obtained was separated into its various components by distillation, the process by which the components of a mixture are separated from each other based on differences in their boiling points. At the time, kerosene, one of the high-boiling fractions, was considered to be the most important product obtained from petroleum. Automobiles based on the internal combustion engine were still waiting to be invented (some 50 years later), so gasoline was not yet a coveted petroleum product. There was a large market opportunity for kerosene, as kerosene lamps produced better night light than standard candles. Over time, other uses were found for the other fractions of petroleum. Today, every precious drop of petroleum is put to use in one way or another (Table 4.5).

TABLE 4.5 INDUSTRIAL USES OF PETROLEUM FRACTIONS

BOILING RANGE OF FRACTION (°C)	NUMBER OF CARBON ATOMS IN MOLECULES	USE
Below 20	C_1–C_4	Natural gas, petrochemicals, plastics
20–100	C_5–C_7	Solvents
20–200	C_5–C_{12}	Gasoline
200–300	C_{12}–C_{18}	Kerosene, jet fuel
200–400	C_{12} and higher	Heating oil, diesel
Nonvolatile liquids	C_{20} and higher	Lubricating oil, grease
Nonvolatile solids	C_{20} and higher	Wax, asphalt, tar

The process of separating crude oil (petroleum) into commercially available products is called *refining*. A typical refinery can process 100,000 barrels of crude oil a day (1 barrel = 42 gallons). The most important product is currently the gasoline fraction (C_5–C_{12}), yet this fraction only represents approximately 19% of the crude oil. This amount does not satisfy the current demand for gasoline, and therefore, two processes are employed that increase the yield of gasoline from every barrel of crude oil.

1. *Cracking* is a process by which C—C bonds of larger alkanes are broken, producing smaller alkanes. This process effectively converts more of the crude oil into compounds suitable for use as gasoline. Cracking can be achieved at high temperature (*thermal cracking*) or with the aid of catalysts (*catalytic cracking*). Cracking generally yields straight-chain alkanes. Although suitable for gasoline, these alkanes tend to give rise to preignition, or *knocking*, in automobile engines.

2. *Reforming* is a process involving many different types of reactions (such as dehydrogenation and isomerization reactions) with the goal of converting straight-chain alkanes into branched hydrocarbons and aromatic compounds (discussed in Chapter 17):

2,2,4-Trimethylpentane
A branched alkane

Benzene
An aromatic compound

Branched hydrocarbons and aromatic hydrocarbons show less of a tendency for knocking. It is therefore desirable to convert some petroleum into branched alkanes and aromatic compounds and then blend them with straight-chain alkanes. The combination of cracking and reforming effectively increases the gasoline yield from 19 to 47% for every barrel of crude oil. Gasoline is therefore a sophisticated blend of straight-chain alkanes, branched alkanes, and aromatic hydrocarbons. The precise blend is dependent on a number of conditions. In colder climates, for example, the blend must be appropriate for temperatures below zero. Therefore gasoline used in Chicago is not the same as the gasoline used in Houston.

Petroleum is not a renewable energy source. At our current rate of consumption it is estimated that Earth's supply of petroleum will be exhausted by 2060. We may find more petroleum deposits, but that will just delay the inevitable. Petroleum is also the primary source of a wide variety of organic compounds used for making plastics, pharmaceuticals, and numerous other products. It is vital that Earth's supply of petroleum not be completely exhausted, although such a dire picture is unlikely. As the supply of petroleum dwindles and the demand increases, the price of crude oil will rise (and so will the price of gasoline at the pump). Eventually, the price of petroleum will surpass the price of alternative energy sources, at which point a major shift will occur. What do you think will replace petroleum as the next global energy source?

WorldLinks An Introduction to Polymers

Table 4.5 reveals that low-molecular-weight alkanes (such as methane or ethane) are gases at room temperature, alkanes of slightly higher molecular weight (such as hexane and octane) are liquids at room temperature, and alkanes of very high molecular weight (such as hectane, with 100 carbon atoms) are solids at room temperature. This trend is explained by the increased London dispersion forces experienced by higher molecular weight alkanes (as described in Section 1.13). With this in mind, consider an alkane composed of approximately 100,000 carbon atoms. It should not be surprising that such an alkane should be a solid at room temperature. This material, called polyethylene, is used for a variety of purposes, including garbage containers, plastic bottles, packaging material, and toys. Special proprietary formulations of polyethylene, marketed as Dyneema 61, are strong enough to be used in high strength ropes and bullet-proof vests.

As its name implies, polyethylene is produced from polymerization of ethylene:

Polyethylene is an example of a *polymer*, because it is created by the joining of small molecules called *monomers*. Over 100 billion pounds of polyethylene are produced worldwide each year.

In our everyday lives, we are surrounded by a variety of polymers. From carpet fibers to plumbing pipes, our society has clearly become dependent on polymers. Polymers are discussed in more detail in later chapters.

t3000/Getty Images

4.6 Drawing Newman Projections

We will now turn our attention to the way in which molecules change their shape with time. Rotation about C—C single bonds allows a compound to adopt a variety of possible three-dimensional shapes, called **conformations**. Some conformations are higher in energy, while others are lower in energy. In order to draw and compare conformations, we will need to use a new kind of drawing—one specially designed for showing the conformation of a molecule. This type of drawing is called a **Newman projection** (Figure 4.2). To understand what a Newman projection represents, consider the wedge and dash drawing of ethane in Figure 4.2.

FIGURE 4.2
Three drawings of ethane: (a) wedge and dash, (b) sawhorse, and (c) a Newman projection.

Begin rotating it about the vertical axis drawn in gray so that all of the red H's come out in front of the page and all of the blue H's go back behind the page. The second drawing (the sawhorse) represents a snapshot after 45° of rotation, while the Newman projection represents a snapshot after 90° of rotation. One carbon is directly in front of the other, and each carbon atom has three H's attached to it (Figure 4.3). The point at the center of the drawing in Figure 4.3 represents the front carbon atom,

FIGURE 4.3
A Newman projection of ethane, showing the front carbon and the back carbon.

while the circle represents the back carbon. We will use Newman projections extensively throughout the rest of this chapter, so it is important to master both drawing and reading them.

SKILLBUILDER

4.7 DRAWING NEWMAN PROJECTIONS

LEARN the skill

Draw a Newman projection of the following compound, as viewed from the angle indicated:

SOLUTION

Identify the front and back carbon atoms. From the angle of the observer, the front and back carbon atoms are:

Now we must ask: From the perspective of the observer, what is connected to the front carbon? The observer will see a methyl group, a bromine, and a hydrogen atom. Remember that a wedge is coming out of the page, and a dash is going back behind the page. So, from the perspective of the observer, the front carbon atom looks like this:

STEP 1
Identify the three groups connected to the front carbon atom.

Now let's focus our attention on the back carbon atom. The back carbon has one CH_3 group, one Br, and one H. From the perspective of the observer, it looks like this:

STEP 2
Identify the three groups connected to the back carbon atom.

Now we put both pieces of our drawing together:

STEP 3
Draw the Newman projection.

PRACTICE the skill **4.16** In each case below, draw a Newman projection as viewed from the angle indicated:

APPLY the skill **4.17** Various conformations of the compound shown below were evaluated using computational methods to determine its most stable three-dimensional shape.[7] We will be learning more about such conformational analysis in Section 4.7. Provide an IUPAC name for this compound, and draw its Newman projection as viewed from the angle indicated:

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 4.47, 4.53, 4.62, 4.75**

4.7 Conformational Analysis of Ethane and Propane

Consider the two hydrogen atoms shown in red in the Newman projection of ethane (Figure 4.4).

Dihedral angle=60°

FIGURE 4.4
The dihedral angle between two hydrogen atoms in a Newman projection of ethane.

These two hydrogen atoms appear to be separated by an angle of 60°. This angle is called the **dihedral angle** or **torsional angle**. This dihedral angle changes as the C—C bond rotates—for example, if the front carbon rotates clockwise while the back carbon is held stationary. Therefore, there are an infinite number of possible conformations. Nevertheless, there are two conformations that require our special attention: the lowest energy conformation and the highest energy conformation (Figure 4.5). The **staggered conformation** is the lowest in energy, while the **eclipsed conformation** is the highest in energy.

Staggered conformation
Lowest in energy

Eclipsed conformation
Highest in energy

FIGURE 4.5
Staggered and eclipsed conformations of ethane.

The difference in energy between staggered and eclipsed conformations of ethane is 12 kJ/mol, as shown in the energy diagram in Figure 4.6.

FIGURE 4.6
An energy diagram showing the conformational analysis of ethane.

Notice that all staggered conformations of ethane are **degenerate**; that is, all of the staggered conformations have the same amount of energy. Similarly, all eclipsed conformations of ethane are degenerate.

The difference in energy between staggered and eclipsed conformations of ethane is referred to as **torsional strain**, and its cause has been somewhat debated over the years. Based on recent quantum mechanical calculations, it is now believed that the staggered conformation possesses a favorable interaction between an occupied, bonding MO and an unoccupied, antibonding MO (Figure 4.7).

LOOKING BACK
For a review of bonding and antibonding molecular orbitals, see Section 1.9.

FIGURE 4.7
In the staggered conformation, favorable overlap occurs between a bonding MO and an antibonding MO.

This interaction lowers the energy of the staggered conformation. This favorable interaction is only present in the staggered conformation. When the C—C bond is rotated (going from a staggered to an eclipsed conformation), the favorable overlap above is temporarily disrupted, causing an increase in energy. In ethane, this increase amounts to 12 kJ/mol. Since there are three separate eclipsing interactions, it is reasonable to assign 4 kJ/mol to each pair of eclipsing H's (Figure 4.8).

FIGURE 4.8
The total energy cost associated with the eclipsed conformation of ethane (relative to the staggered conformation) amounts to 12 kJ/mol.

This energy difference is significant. At room temperature, a sample of ethane gas will have approximately 99% of its molecules in staggered conformations at any given instant.

The energy diagram of propane (Figure 4.9) is very similar to that of ethane, except that the torsional strain is 14 kJ/mol rather than 12 kJ/mol. Once again, notice that all staggered conformations are degenerate, as are all eclipsed conformations.

FIGURE 4.9
An energy diagram showing the conformational analysis of propane.

We already assigned 4 kJ/mol to each pair of eclipsing H's. If we know that the torsional strain of propane is 14 kJ/mol, then it is reasonable to assign 6 kJ/mol to the eclipsing of an H and a methyl group. This calculation is illustrated in Figure 4.10.

FIGURE 4.10
The energy cost associated with a methyl group eclipsing a hydrogen atom amounts to 6 kJ/mol.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

4.18 For each of the following compounds, predict the energy barrier to rotation (looking down any one of the C—C bonds). Draw a Newman projection and then compare the staggered and eclipsed conformations. Remember that we assigned 4 kJ/mol to each pair of eclipsing H's and 6 kJ/mol to an H eclipsing a methyl group:

(a) 2,2-Dimethylpropane (b) 2-Methylpropane

4.8 Conformational Analysis of Butane

Conformational analysis of butane is a bit more complex than the conformational analysis of either ethane or propane. Look carefully at the shape of the energy diagram for butane (Figure 4.11), and then we will analyze it step by step.

FIGURE 4.11
An energy diagram showing the conformational analysis of butane.

The three highest energy conformations are the eclipsed conformations, while the three lowest energy conformations are the staggered conformations. In this way, the energy diagram above is similar to the energy diagrams of ethane and propane. But in the case of butane, notice that one eclipsed conformation (where dihedral angle = 0) is higher in energy than the other two eclipsed conformations. In other words, the three eclipsed conformations are not degenerate. Similarly, one staggered conformation (where dihedral angle = 180°) is lower in energy than the other two staggered conformations. Clearly, we need to compare the staggered conformations to each other, and we need to compare the eclipsed conformations to each other.

Let's begin with the three staggered conformations. The conformation with a dihedral angle of 180° is called the ***anti* conformation**, and it represents the lowest energy conformation of butane. The other two staggered conformations are 3.8 kJ/mol higher in energy than the *anti* conformation. Why? We can more easily see the answer to this question by drawing Newman projections of all three staggered conformations (Figure 4.12).

FIGURE 4.12
Two of the three staggered conformations of butane exhibit *gauche* interactions.

In the *anti* conformation, the methyl groups achieve maximum separation from each other. In the other two conformations, the methyl groups are closer to each other. Their electron clouds are repelling each other (trying to occupy the same region of space), causing an increase in energy of 3.8 kJ/mol. This unfavorable interaction, called a ***gauche* interaction**, is a type of *steric* interaction, and it is different from the concept of torsional strain. The two conformations above that exhibit this interaction are called ***gauche* conformations**, and they are degenerate (Figure 4.13).

FIGURE 4.13
The two staggered conformations that exhibit *gauche* interactions are degenerate.

Now let's turn our attention to the three eclipsed conformations. One eclipsed conformation is higher in energy than the other two. Why? In the highest energy conformation, the methyl groups are eclipsing each other. Experiments suggest that this conformation has a total energy cost of 19 kJ/mol. Since we already assigned 4 kJ/mol to each H—H eclipsing interaction, it is reasonable to assign 11 kJ/mol to the eclipsing interaction of two methyl groups. This calculation is illustrated in Figure 4.14.

FIGURE 4.14
The energy cost associated with two methyl groups eclipsing each other amounts to 11 kJ/mol.

The conformation with the two methyl groups eclipsing each other is the highest energy conformation. The other two eclipsed conformations are degenerate (Figure 4.15).

FIGURE 4.15
Two of the eclipsed conformations of butane are degenerate.

In each case, there is one pair of eclipsing H's and two pairs of eclipsing H/CH_3. We have all the information necessary to calculate the energy of these conformations. We know that eclipsing H's are 4 kJ/mol, and each set of eclipsing H/CH_3 is 6 kJ/mol. Therefore, we calculate a total energy cost of 16 kJ/mol (Figure 4.16).

FIGURE 4.16
The total energy cost associated with the degenerate eclipsed conformations of butane amounts to 16 kJ/mol.

To summarize, we have seen just a few numbers that can be helpful in analyzing energy costs. With these numbers, it is possible to analyze an eclipsed conformation or a staggered conformation and determine the energy cost associated with each conformation. Table 4.6 summarizes these numbers.

TABLE 4.6 ENERGY COSTS FOR COMPARING THE RELATIVE ENERGY OF CONFORMATIONS

INTERACTION	TYPE OF STRAIN	ENERGY COST (KJ/MOL)
H/H Eclipsed	Torsional strain	4
CH_3/H Eclipsed	Torsional strain	6
CH_3/CH_3 Eclipsed	Torsional strain + steric interaction	11
CH_3/CH_3 *Gauche*	Steric interaction	3.8

SKILLBUILDER

4.8 IDENTIFYING RELATIVE ENERGY OF CONFORMATIONS

LEARN the skill

Consider the following compound:

(a) Rotating only the C3—C4 bond, identify the lowest energy conformation.

(b) Rotating only the C3—C4 bond, identify the highest energy conformation.

STEP 1
Draw a Newman projection.

BY THE WAY
The symbol "Et" is commonly used for an ethyl group and the symbol "Me" is used for a methyl group.

SOLUTION

(a) Begin by drawing a Newman projection, looking along the C3—C4 bond:

To determine the lowest energy conformation, compare all three staggered conformations. To draw them, we can either rotate the groups on the back carbon or rotate the groups on the front carbon. It will be easier to rotate the back carbon since the back carbon has only one group. It is easier to keep track of only one group. Notice that the difference between these three conformations is the position of the ethyl group on the back carbon:

STEP 2
Compare all three staggered conformations. Look for the fewest or least severe *gauche* interactions.

Now compare these three conformations by looking for *gauche* interactions. The first conformation has one Et/Me *gauche* interaction. The second conformation has one Et/Et *gauche* interaction. The third conformation has two *gauche* interactions: one Et/Et interaction and one Et/Me interaction. Choose the one with the fewest and least severe *gauche* interactions. The first conformation (with one Et/Me interaction) will be the lowest in energy.

(b) To determine the highest energy conformation, we will need to compare all three *eclipsed* conformations. To draw them, simply take the three staggered conformations and turn each of them into an eclipsed conformation by rotating the back carbon 60°. Notice once again that the difference between these three conformations is the position of the Et group on the back carbon:

STEP 3
Compare all three eclipsed conformations. Look for the highest energy interactions.

Now compare these three conformations by looking for eclipsing interactions. In the first conformation, none of the alkyl groups are eclipsing each other (they are all eclipsed by H's). In the second conformation, the ethyl groups are eclipsing each other. In the third conformation, a methyl group and an ethyl group are eclipsing each other. Of the three possibilities, the highest energy conformation will be the one in which the two ethyl groups are eclipsing each other (the second conformation).

PRACTICE the skill

4.19 In each case below, identify the highest and lowest energy conformations, viewing down the indicated C—C bond. In cases where two or three conformations are degenerate, draw only one as your answer.

(a) **(b)** **(c)** **(d)**

APPLY the skill

4.20 The conformations[8] of (+)-epichlorohydrin **(1)**, viewed along the C_a—C_b bond, can be analyzed in exactly the same manner as the acyclic alkanes discussed in Chapter 4.

(a) Draw all staggered conformations for **1** viewed along the C_a—C_b bond.

(b) Identify the least stable staggered conformation for **1**.

1

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 4.42, 4.56, 4.68, 4.74**

BioLinks | Drugs and Their Conformations

JamesBrey/Getty Images

Recall from Chapter 2 that a drug will bind with a biological receptor if the drug possesses a specific three-dimensional arrangement of functional groups, called a pharmacophore. For example, the pharmacophore of morphine is shown in red.

Morphine

Morphine is a very rigid molecule, because it has very few bonds that undergo free rotation. As a result, the pharmacophore is locked in place. In contrast, flexible molecules are capable of adopting a variety of conformations, and only some of those conformations can bind to the receptor. For example, methadone has many single bonds, each of which undergoes free rotation.

Methadone

Methadone is used to treat people who are addicted to heroin and suffering from withdrawal symptoms. Oral formulations are used to prevent them from injecting themselves, thus reducing the risk of contracting HIV or hepatitis from used needles. Methadone is also used for chronic pain management, which gives less of a "rush" than alternatives such as morphine. Methadone binds to the same receptor as heroin, and it is widely believed that the active conformation is the one in which the position of the functional groups matches the pharmacophore of heroin (and morphine):

Methadone

Heroin

Other, more open conformations of methadone are probably incapable of binding to the receptor.

This explains how it is possible for one drug to produce several physiological effects. In many cases, one conformation binds to one receptor, while another conformation binds to an entirely different receptor. Conformational flexibility is therefore an important consideration in the study of how drugs behave in our bodies.

As mentioned in the chapter opener, conformational flexibility has recently received much attention in the design of novel compounds to treat viral infections. To treat the symptoms of a virus, we must study the structure and behavior of that particular virus and then design drugs that interfere with the key steps in the replication process for that virus.

The vast majority of antiviral research has focused on designing drugs to treat those viral infections that are life threatening, such as HIV. Many anti-HIV drugs have been developed over the last few decades. Nevertheless, these drugs are not 100% effective, because HIV can undergo genetic mutations that effectively change the geometry of the cavity where the drugs are supposed to bind. The new strain of the virus is then drug resistant, because the drugs cannot bind with their intended receptors.

A new class of compounds, exhibiting conformational flexibility, has been developed in an attempt to evade the problem of drug resistance. One such example, called rilpivirine, exhibits five single bonds whose rotation would lead to a conformational change:

Rilpivirine

Bonds shown in red can undergo rotation without a significant energy cost, rendering the compound very flexible. The flexibility of rilpivirine enables it to bind to the desired receptor and tolerate modest changes to the geometry of the cavity resulting from virus mutation. In this way, rilpivirine was designed to make it more difficult for the virus to develop resistance to it. Riplivirine was approved by the FDA (Food and Drug Administration) in 2011 for the treatment of HIV. However, the drug has not fully lived up to its potential, because certain strains of the HIV virus have since developed resistance to rilpivirine. Indeed, this example demonstrates why it is so difficult for scientists to develop a cure for viral infections such as HIV.

macida/Getty Images

JamesBrey/Getty Images

4.9 Cycloalkanes

In the nineteenth century, chemists were aware of many compounds containing five-membered rings and six-membered rings, but no compounds with smaller rings were known. Many unfruitful attempts to synthesize smaller or larger rings fueled speculation regarding the feasibility of ever creating such compounds. Toward the end of the nineteenth century Adolph von Baeyer proposed a theory describing cycloalkanes in terms of **angle strain**, the increase in energy associated with a bond angle that has deviated from the preferred angle of 109.5°. Baeyer's theory was based on the angles

found in geometric shapes (Figure 4.17). Baeyer reasoned that five-membered rings should contain almost no angle strain, while other rings would be strained (both smaller rings and larger rings). He also reasoned that very large cycloalkanes cannot exist, because the angle strain associated with such large bond angles would be prohibitive.

FIGURE 4.17
Bond angles found in geometric shapes.

Evidence refuting Baeyer's conclusions came from thermodynamic experiments. Recall from earlier in this chapter that heats of combustion can be used to compare isomeric compounds in terms of their total energy. It is not fair to compare the heats of combustion for rings of different sizes since heats of combustion are expected to increase with each additional CH_2 group. We can more accurately compare rings of different sizes by dividing the heat of combustion by the number of CH_2 groups in the compound, giving a heat of combustion per CH_2 group. Table 4.7 shows heats of combustion per CH_2 group for various ring sizes. The conclusions from these data are more easily seen when plotted (Figure 4.18). Notice that a six-membered ring is lower in energy than a five-membered ring, in contrast with Baeyer's theory. In addition, the relative energy level does not increase with increasing ring size, as Baeyer predicted. A 12-membered ring is in fact much lower in energy than an 11-membered ring.

TABLE 4.7 HEATS OF COMBUSTION PER CH_2 GROUP FOR CYCLOALKANES

CYCLOALKANE	NUMBER OF CH_2 GROUPS	HEAT OF COMBUSTION (KJ / MOL)	HEAT OF COMBUSTION PER CH_2 GROUP (KJ / MOL)
Cyclopropane	3	2091	697
Cyclobutane	4	2721	680
Cyclopentane	5	3291	658
Cyclohexane	6	3920	653
Cycloheptane	7	4599	657
Cyclooctane	8	5267	658
Cyclononane	9	5933	659
Cyclodecane	10	6587	659
Cycloundecane	11	7273	661
Cyclododecane	12	7845	654

FIGURE 4.18
Heats of combustion per CH_2 group for cycloalkanes.

Baeyer's conclusions did not hold because they were based on the incorrect assumption that cycloalkanes are planar, like the geometric shapes shown earlier. In reality, the bonds of a larger cycloalkane can position themselves three dimensionally so as to achieve a conformation that minimizes the total energy of the compound. We will soon see that angle strain is only one factor that contributes to the energy of a cycloalkane. We will now explore the main factors contributing to the energy of various ring sizes, starting with cyclopropane.

FIGURE 4.19
The C—C bonds of cyclopropane bend outward (on the dotted red lines) to alleviate some of the angle strain.

Cyclopropane

The angle strain in cyclopropane is severe. Some of this strain can be alleviated if the orbitals making up the bonds bend outward, as in Figure 4.19. Not all of the angle strain is removed, however, because there is an increase in energy associated with inefficient overlap of the orbitals. Although some of the angle strain is reduced, cyclopropane still has significant angle strain.

In addition, cyclopropane also exhibits significant torsional strain, which can best be seen in a Newman projection.

Notice that the ring is locked in an eclipsed conformation, with no possible way of achieving a staggered conformation.

In summary, cyclopropane has two main factors contributing to its high energy: angle strain (from small bond angles) and torsional strain (from eclipsing H's). This large amount of strain makes three-membered rings highly reactive and very susceptible to ring-opening reactions. In Chapter 13, we will explore many ring-opening reactions of a special class of three-membered rings.

Cyclobutane

Cyclobutane has less angle strain than cyclopropane. However, it has more torsional strain, because there are four sets of eclipsing H's rather than just three. To alleviate some of this additional torsional strain, cyclobutane can adopt a slightly puckered conformation without gaining too much angle strain.

Cyclopentane

Cyclopentane has much less angle strain than cyclobutane or cyclopropane. It can also reduce much of its torsional strain by adopting the following conformation.

In total, cyclopentane has much less total strain than cyclopropane or cyclobutane. Nevertheless, cyclopentane does exhibit some strain. This is in contrast with cyclohexane, which can adopt a conformation that is nearly strain free. We will spend the remainder of the chapter discussing conformations of cyclohexane.

BioLinks Cyclopropane as an Inhalation Anesthetic

In the mid-1840s, surgeons began utilizing the anesthetic properties of diethyl ether and chloroform to anesthetize patients during surgery:

Diethyl ether

Chloroform

Despite the known risks and side effects associated with each of these anesthetic agents, they were commonly used for nearly 100 years, because a suitable alternative was not yet available. Diethyl ether is highly flammable, it is irritating to the respiratory tract, and it causes nausea and vomiting (which can lead to serious lung damage in an unconscious patient). In addition, the onset and recovery from anesthesia are slow. Chloroform is nonflammable, which was greatly appreciated by anesthesiologists and surgeons, but it caused a substantial incidence of heart dysrhythmias and dangerous drops in blood pressure (hypotension) in patients. Prolonged exposure to low levels of chloroform also increased risk of liver damage in anesthesiologists, surgeons, and operating room nurses.

With time, other anesthetic agents were discovered. One such example is cyclopropane, which became commercially available as an inhalation anesthetic in the mid-1930s:

It did not induce vomiting, did not cause liver damage, provided rapid onset and recovery from anesthesia, and maintained normal blood pressure. Its major shortcoming was its instability due to the ring strain associated with the three-membered ring. Even a static spark could trigger an explosion, with disastrous consequences for the patient. Anesthesiologists took meticulous measures to prevent explosions, and accidents were very rare, but the use of cyclopropane was not for the faint-hearted. It was largely replaced in the 1960s when other inhalation anesthetics were discovered. The inhalation anesthetics most commonly used today are discussed in a BioLinks application in Section 13.3.

4.10 Conformations of Cyclohexane

Cyclohexane can adopt many conformations, as we will soon see. For now, we will explore two conformations: the **chair conformation** and the **boat conformation**.

Chair Boat

In both conformations, the bond angles are fairly close to 109.5°, and therefore, both conformations possess very little angle strain. The significant difference between them can be seen when comparing torsional strain. The chair conformation has no torsional strain. This can best be seen with a Newman projection.

Notice that all H's are staggered. None are eclipsed. This is not the case in a boat conformation, which has two sources of torsional strain. Many of the H's are eclipsed, and the H's on either side of the ring experience steric interactions called **flagpole interactions**:

(a) H's are eclipsed (b) Flagpole interactions

The boat can alleviate some of this torsional strain by twisting (very much the way cyclobutane puckers to alleviate some of its torsional strain), giving a conformation called a **twist boat**.

Twist boat

In fact, cyclohexane can adopt many different conformations, but the most important is the chair conformation. There are actually two different chair conformations that rapidly interchange via a pathway that can pass through many different conformations, including a high-energy half-chair conformation, as well as twist boat and boat conformations. This is illustrated in Figure 4.20, which is an energy diagram summarizing the relative energy levels of the various conformations of cyclohexane.

FIGURE 4.20
An energy diagram showing the conformational analysis of cyclohexane.

The lowest energy conformations are the two chair conformations, and therefore, cyclohexane will spend the majority of its time in a chair conformation. Accordingly, the remainder of our treatment of cyclohexane will focus on chair conformations. Our first step is to master drawing them.

4.11 Drawing Chair Conformations

When drawing a chair conformation, it is important to draw it precisely. Make sure that you avoid drawing sloppy chairs, because it will be difficult to draw the substituents correctly if the skeleton is not precise.

Drawing the Skeleton of a Chair Conformation

Let's get some practice drawing chairs.

SKILLBUILDER

4.9 DRAWING A CHAIR CONFORMATION

LEARN the skill

Draw a chair conformation of cyclohexane:

SOLUTION

The following procedure outlines a step-by-step method for drawing the skeleton of a chair conformation precisely:

STEP 1 Draw a ***wide*** V.

STEP 2 Draw a line going down at a 60° angle, ending just before the center of the V.

STEP 3 Draw a line parallel to the left side of the V, ending just before the left side of the V.

STEP 4 Draw a line parallel to the line from Step 2, going down exactly as low as that line.

STEP 5 Connect the dots.

When you are finished drawing a chair, it should contain three sets of parallel lines. If your chair does not contain three sets of parallel lines, then it has been drawn incorrectly.

PRACTICE the skill

4.21 Practice drawing a chair several times using a blank piece of paper. Repeat the procedure until you can do it without looking at the instructions above. For each of your chairs, make sure that it contains three sets of parallel lines.

APPLY the skill

4.22 Chemists have developed micron-sized, doughnut-shaped structures that might be used someday to deliver drugs across cell membranes.[9] During a procedure to prepare such micron-sized structures, dioxane (shown below) was found to be a crucial co-solvent, ensuring a good yield of structures with the desired shape and size. Draw a chair conformation of dioxane.

Dioxane

Drawing Axial and Equatorial Substituents

Each carbon atom in a cyclohexane ring can bear two substituents (Figure 4.21). One group is said to occupy an **axial position**, which is parallel to a vertical axis passing through the center of the ring. The other group is said to occupy an **equatorial position**, which is positioned approximately along the equator of the ring (Figure 4.21). In order to draw a substituted cyclohexane, we must first practice drawing all axial and equatorial positions properly.

FIGURE 4.21
Axial and equatorial positions in a chair conformation.

SKILLBUILDER

4.10 DRAWING AXIAL AND EQUATORIAL POSITIONS

LEARN the skill

Draw all axial and all equatorial positions on a chair conformation of cyclohexane.

SOLUTION

Let's begin with the axial positions, as they are easier to draw. Begin at the right side of the V and draw a vertical line pointing up. Then, go around the ring, drawing vertical lines, alternating in direction (up, down, up, etc.):

STEP 1
Draw all axial positions as vertical lines alternating in direction.

These are the six axial positions. All six lines are vertical.

Now let's draw the six equatorial positions. The equatorial positions are more difficult to draw properly, but mistakes can be avoided in the following way. We saw earlier that a properly drawn chair skeleton is composed of three pairs of parallel lines. Now we will use these pairs of parallel lines to draw the equatorial positions. In between each pair of red lines, we draw two equatorial groups that are parallel to (but not directly touching) the red lines:

STEP 2
Draw all equatorial positions as pairs of parallel lines.

Notice that all equatorial positions are drawn going to the outside of, or away from, the ring, not going into the ring. Now let's summarize by drawing all six axial positions and all six equatorial positions.

PRACTICE the skill

4.23 Practice drawing a chair conformation that shows all six axial positions and all six equatorial positions. Practice several times on a blank piece of paper. Repeat until you can draw all twelve positions without looking at the instructions above.

APPLY the skill

4.24 (−)-Cassioside, an anti-ulcer agent isolated from the dried stem bark of Chinese cinnamon,[10] contains two six-membered rings, one of which adopts a chair conformation as shown.

(a) Identify each group attached to the chair as being in an axial or equatorial position.

(b) Draw each of the missing hydrogen atoms connected to this six-membered ring, and properly position each in an axial or equatorial position, as appropriate.

(–)-Cassioside

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 4.46, 4.59**

4.12 Monosubstituted Cyclohexane

Drawing Both Chair Conformations

Consider a ring containing only one substituent. Two possible chair conformations can be drawn: The substituent can be in an axial position or in an equatorial position. These two possibilities represent two different conformations that are in equilibrium with each other:

The term "ring flip" is used to describe the conversion of one chair conformation into the other. This process is not accomplished by simply flipping the molecule like a pancake. Rather, a **ring flip** is a conformational change that is accomplished only through a rotation of all C—C single bonds. This can be seen with a Newman projection (Figure 4.22). Let's get some practice drawing ring flips.

FIGURE 4.22
A ring flip drawn with Newman projections.

SKILLBUILDER

4.11 DRAWING BOTH CHAIR CONFORMATIONS OF A MONOSUBSTITUTED CYCLOHEXANE

LEARN the skill

Draw both chair conformations of bromocyclohexane:

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Draw a chair conformation.

Begin by drawing the first chair conformation, and place the bromine in any position:

STEP 2
Place the substituent.

In this chair conformation, the bromine occupies an axial position. In order to draw the other chair conformation (the result of a ring flip), redraw the skeleton of the chair. Only this time, we will draw the skeleton differently. The first chair was drawn by following these steps:

The second chair must now be drawn by *mirroring* these steps:

STEP 3
Draw a ring flip, and the axial group should become equatorial.

In the second chair, the bromine will occupy an equatorial position:

PRACTICE the skill **4.25** Draw both chair conformations for each of the following compounds:

APPLY the skill **4.26** The following disubstituted cyclohexane, drawn in a Newman projection, was shown to have moderate antiviral activity.[11]

(a) As depicted above, is the adenine group (highlighted) occupying an axial or an equatorial position? Is the CH_2OH group occupying an axial or an equatorial position?

(b) Convert the Newman projection into a bond-line chair form.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problem 4.51a**

Comparing the Stability of Both Chair Conformations

When two chair conformations are in equilibrium, the lower energy conformation will be favored. For example, consider the two chair conformations of methylcyclohexane:

At room temperature, 95% of the molecules will be in the chair conformation that has the methyl group in an equatorial position. This must therefore be the lower energy conformation, but why? When the substituent is in an axial position, there are steric interactions with the other axial H's on the same side of the ring (Figure 4.23).

FIGURE 4.23
Steric interactions that occur when a substituent occupies an axial position.

The substituent's electron cloud is trying to occupy the same region of space as the H's that are highlighted, causing steric interactions. These interactions are called **1,3-diaxial interactions**, where the numbers "1,3" describe the distance between the substituent and each of the H's. When the chair conformation is drawn in a Newman projection, it becomes clear that most 1,3-diaxial interactions are nothing more than *gauche* interactions. Compare the *gauche* interaction in butane with one of the 1,3-diaxial interactions in methylcyclohexane (Figure 4.24).

FIGURE 4.24
An illustration showing that 1,3-diaxial interactions are really just *gauche* interactions.

The presence of 1,3-diaxial interactions causes the chair conformation to be higher in energy when the substituent is in an axial position. In contrast, when the substituent is in an equatorial position, these 1,3-diaxial (*gauche*) interactions are absent (Figure 4.25).

FIGURE 4.25
When a substituent is in an equatorial position, it experiences no *gauche* interactions.

For this reason, the equilibrium between the two chair conformations will generally favor the conformation with the equatorial substituent. The exact equilibrium concentrations of the two chair conformations will depend on the size of the substituent. Larger groups will experience greater steric interactions, and the equilibrium will more strongly favor the equatorial substituent. For example, the equilibrium of *tert*-butylcyclohexane almost completely favors the chair conformation with an equatorial *tert*-butyl group:

Table 4.8 shows the steric interactions associated with various groups as well as the equilibrium concentrations that are achieved.

TABLE 4.8 1,3-DIAXIAL INTERACTIONS FOR SEVERAL COMMON SUBSTITUENTS

SUBSTITUENT	1,3-DIAXIAL INTERACTIONS (KJ/MOL)	EQUATORIAL-AXIAL RATIO (AT EQUILIBRIUM)
—Cl	2.0	70 : 30
—OH	4.2	83 : 17
—CH_3	7.6	95 : 5
—CH_2CH_3	8.0	96 : 4
—$CH(CH_3)_2$	9.2	97 : 3
—$C(CH_3)_3$	22.8	9999 : 1

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

4.27 The most stable conformation of 5-hydroxy-1,3-dioxane has the OH group in an axial position, rather than an equatorial position. Provide an explanation for this observation.

4.13 Disubstituted Cyclohexane

Drawing Both Chair Conformations

LOOKING AHEAD
The term "configuration" will be formally defined in Chapter 5.

When drawing chair conformations of a compound that has two or more substituents, there is an additional consideration. Specifically, we must also consider the three-dimensional orientation, or *configuration*, of each substituent. To illustrate this point, consider the following compound:

Notice that the chlorine atom is on a wedge, which means that it is coming out of the page: it is UP. The methyl group is on a dash, which means that it is below the ring, or DOWN. The two chair conformations for this compound are as follows:

Notice that the chlorine atom is above the ring (UP) in both chair conformations, and the methyl group is below the ring (DOWN) in both chair conformations. The configuration (i.e., UP or DOWN) does not change during a ring flip. It is true that the chlorine atom occupies an axial position in one conformation and an equatorial position in the other conformation, but a ring flip does not change configuration. The chlorine atom must be UP in both chair conformations. Similarly, the methyl group must be DOWN in both chair conformations. Let's get some practice using these new descriptors (UP and DOWN) when drawing chair conformations.

SKILLBUILDER

4.12 DRAWING BOTH CHAIR CONFORMATIONS OF DISUBSTITUTED CYCLOHEXANES

LEARN the skill

Draw both chair conformations of the following compound:

SOLUTION

Begin by numbering the ring and identifying the location and three-dimensional orientation of each substituent:

STEP 1
Determine the location and configuration of each substituent.

This numbering system does not need to be in accordance with IUPAC rules. It does not matter where the numbers are placed; these numbers are just tools used to compare positions in the original drawing and in the chair conformation to ensure that all substituents are placed correctly. The numbers can be placed either clockwise or counterclockwise, but they must be consistent. If the numbers are placed clockwise in the compound, then they must be placed clockwise as well when drawing the chair. Once the numbers have been assigned, place the substituents in the correct locations and with the correct configuration. The ethyl group is at C1 and must be UP, while the methyl group is at C3 and must be DOWN:

STEP 2
Place the substituents on the first chair using the information from step 1.

Notice that it is not possible to draw substituents properly without being able to draw all 12 positions on the cyclohexane ring. If you do not feel comfortable drawing all 12 positions, it would be a worthwhile investment of time to go back to SkillBuilder 4.10 and practice.

STEP 3
Place the substituents on the second chair using the information from step 1.

The previous drawing represents the first chair conformation. In order to draw the second chair conformation, begin by drawing the other skeleton and numbering it. Then, once again, place the substituents so that the ethyl group is at C1 and is UP, while the methyl group is at C3 and is DOWN:

Therefore, the two chair conformations of this compound are:

PRACTICE the skill

4.28 For each of the following compounds, draw both chair conformations:

APPLY the skill

4.29 Lindane (hexachlorocyclohexane) is an agricultural insecticide that has also been used in the treatment of head lice since the 1950's. Lindane is highly toxic and can have adverse side effects, so it is now typically used in the United States to treat lice only when other therapies fail.[12] Draw both chair conformations of lindane.

Lindane

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 4.51b–d, 4.72g**

Comparing the Stability of Chair Conformations

Let's compare the stability of chair conformations once again, this time for compounds that bear more than one substituent. Consider the following example:

The two chair conformations of this compound are:

In the first conformation, both groups are equatorial. In the second conformation, both groups are axial. In Section 3.12, we saw that chair conformations will be lower in energy when substituents occupy equatorial positions (avoiding 1,3-diaxial interactions). Therefore, the first chair will certainly be more stable.

In some cases, two groups might be in competition with each other. For example, consider the following compound:

The two chair conformations of this compound are:

In this example, neither conformation has two equatorial substituents. In the first conformation, the chlorine is equatorial, but the ethyl group is axial. In the second conformation, the ethyl group is equatorial, but the chlorine is axial. In a situation like this, we must decide which group exhibits a greater preference for being equatorial: the chlorine atom or the ethyl group. To do this, we use the numbers from Table 4.8:

Axial ethyl=8 kJ/mol **Axial chlorine=2 kJ/mol**

Both conformations will exhibit 1,3-diaxial interactions, but these interactions are less pronounced in the second conformation. The energy cost of having a chlorine atom in an axial position is lower than the energy cost of having an ethyl group in an axial position. Therefore, the second conformation is lower in energy. Let's get some practice with this.

SKILLBUILDER

4.13 DRAWING THE MORE STABLE CHAIR CONFORMATION OF POLYSUBSTITUTED CYCLOHEXANES

LEARN the skill

Draw the more stable chair conformation of the following compound:

SOLUTION

Begin by drawing both chair conformations using the method from the beginning of Section 4.13. Recall that the numbering system does not need to be in accordance with IUPAC rules. We are simply using numbers as tools to compare positions in the original drawing and in the chair conformation. So for our purposes, it is acceptable to start numbering from the top of the ring, going clockwise. Then, for each substituent, identify its location and configuration:

STEP 1
Determine the location and configuration of each substituent.

Now draw the skeleton of the first chair conformation, placing the substituents in the correct locations and with the correct configuration:

Then draw the skeleton of the second chair conformation, number it, and once again, place the substituents in the correct locations and with the correct configuration:

Therefore, the two chair conformations of this compound are:

STEP 2
Draw both chair conformations.

STEP 3
Assess the energy cost of each axial group.

Now we can compare the relative energy of these two chair conformations. In the first conformation, there is one ethyl group in an axial position. According to Table 4.8, the energy cost associated with an axial ethyl group is 8.0 kJ/mol. In the second conformation, two groups are in axial positions: a methyl group and a chlorine atom. According to Table 4.8, the total energy cost is 7.6 kJ/mol + 2.0 kJ/mol = 9.6 kJ/mol. According to this calculation, the energy cost is lower for the first conformation (with an axial ethyl group). The first conformation is therefore lower in energy (more stable).

PRACTICE the skill **4.30** Draw the lowest energy conformation for each of the following compounds:

APPLY the skill **4.31** In Problem 4.29, you drew the two chair conformations of lindane. Carefully inspect them and predict the difference in energy between them, if any.

4.32 Compound **A** exists predominantly in a chair conformation, while compound **B** exists predominantly in a twist boat conformation. Explain.

Compound A Compound B

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 4.50, 4.52, 4.54, 4.58, 4.76**

4.14 *cis-trans* Stereoisomerism

When dealing with cycloalkanes, the terms *cis* and *trans* are used to signify the relative spatial relationship of similar substituents:

cis-1,2-Dimethylcyclohexane

trans-1,2-Dimethylcyclohexane

The term *cis* is used to signify that the two groups are on the same side of the ring, while the term *trans* signifies that the two groups are on opposite sides of the ring. The drawings above are *Haworth projections* (as seen in Section 2.6) and are used to clearly identify which groups are above the ring and which groups are below the ring. These drawings are planar representations and do not represent conformations. Each compound above is better represented as an equilibrium between two chair conformations (Figure 4.26). *cis*-1,2-Dimethylcyclohexane and *trans*-1,2-dimethylcyclohexane are *stereoisomers* (as we will see in Chapter 5). They are different compounds with different physical properties, and they cannot be interconverted via a conformational change. *trans*-1,2-Dimethylcyclohexane is more stable, because it can adopt a chair conformation in which both methyl groups occupy equatorial positions.

FIGURE 4.26
Each stereoisomer of 1,2-dimethylcyclohexane has two chair conformations.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

4.33 Draw Haworth projections for *cis*-1,3-dimethylcyclohexane and *trans*-1,3-dimethylcyclohexane. Then, for each compound, draw the two chair conformations. Use these conformations to determine whether the *cis* isomer or the *trans* isomer is more stable.

4.34 Draw Haworth projections for *cis*-1,4-dimethylcyclohexane and *trans*-1,4-dimethylcyclohexane. Then, for each compound, draw the two chair conformations. Use these conformations to determine whether the *cis* isomer or the *trans* isomer is more stable.

4.35 Draw Haworth projections for *cis*-1,3-di-*tert*-butylcyclohexane and *trans*-1,3-di-*tert*-butylcyclohexane. One of these compounds exists in a chair conformation, while the other exists primarily in a twist boat conformation. Offer an explanation.

4.15 Polycyclic Systems

Decalin is a bicyclic system composed of two fused six-membered rings. The structures of *cis*-decalin and *trans*-decalin are as follows:

***cis*-Decalin**

***trans*-Decalin**

The relationship between these compounds is stereoisomeric (as in Section 4.14). These two compounds are not interconvertible by ring flipping. They are two different compounds with different physical properties. Many naturally occurring compounds, such as steroids, incorporate decalin systems into their structures. Steroids are a class of compounds comprised of four fused rings (three six-membered rings and one five-membered ring). Below are two examples of steroids:

Testosterone

Estradiol

Testosterone is an androgenic hormone (male sex hormone) produced in the testes, and estradiol is an estrogenic hormone (female sex hormone) produced from testosterone in the ovaries. Both compounds play a number of biological roles, ranging from the development of secondary sex characteristics to the promotion of tissue and muscle growth.

Another common polycyclic system is **norbornane**. Norbornane is the common name for bicyclo[2.2.1]heptane. We can think of this compound as a six-membered ring locked into a boat conformation by a CH_2 group that is connected to the two flagpole positions. There are many examples of naturally occuring, substituted norbornanes, including camphor and camphene, shown below:

Bicyclo[2.2.1]heptane (norbornane) Camphor Camphene

FIGURE 4.27
The structure of diamonds.

Camphor is a strongly scented solid that is isolated from evergreen trees in Asia. It is used as a spice as well as for medicinal purposes. Camphene is a minor constituent in many natural oils, such as pine oil and ginger oil. It is used in the preparation of fragrances.

Polycyclic systems based on six-membered rings are also found in nonbiological materials. Most notably, the structure of diamond is based on six-membered rings locked in chair conformations. The drawing in Figure 4.27 represents a portion of the diamond structure. Every carbon atom is bonded to four other carbon atoms forming a three-dimensional lattice of chair conformations. In this way, a diamond is one large molecule. Diamonds are one of the hardest known substances, because cutting a diamond requires the breaking of billions of C—C single bonds.

REVIEW OF CONCEPTS AND VOCABULARY

SECTION 4.1

- Hydrocarbons that lack π bonds are called **saturated hydrocarbons** or **alkanes**.
- The system of rules for naming compounds is called **nomenclature**.

SECTION 4.2

- Although **IUPAC** rules provide a systematic way for naming compounds, many common names are still in use. Assigning a **systematic name** involves four discrete steps:
  1. Identify the parent compound. Alkanes containing a ring are called **cycloalkanes**.
  2. Name the **substituents**, which can be either simple **alkyl groups** or branched alkyl groups, called complex substituents. Many common names for complex substituents are allowed according to IUPAC rules.
  3. Number the carbon atoms of the parent and assign a **locant** to each substituent.
  4. Assemble the substituents alphabetically, placing locants in front of each substituent. For identical substituents, use di, tri, tetra, penta, or hexa, which are ignored when alphabetizing.
- A **bicycloalkane** is an alkane that has two rings that are connected to one another.
- Bicycloalkanes are named just like alkanes and cycloalkanes, with two subtle differences:
  1. The term "bicyclo" is used, and bracketed numbers indicate how the **bridgeheads** are connected.
  2. To number the parent, travel first along the longest path connecting the bridgeheads.

SECTION 4.3

- The number of possible constitutional isomers for an alkane increases dramatically with increasing molecular size.
- When drawing constitutional isomers, use IUPAC rules to avoid drawing the same compound twice.

SECTION 4.4

- For an alkane, the **heat of combustion** is the negative of the *change in enthalpy* ($-\Delta H°$) associated with the complete combustion of 1 mol of alkane in the presence of oxygen.
- Heats of combustion can be measured experimentally and used to compare the stability of isomeric alkanes.

SECTION 4.5

- Petroleum is a complex mixture of hydrocarbons, most of which are alkanes (ranging in size and constitution).
- These compounds are separated into fractions via distillation (separation based on differences in boiling points). The refining of crude oil separates it into many commercial products.
- The yield of useful gasoline can be improved in the following ways:
  1. *Cracking* is a process by which C—C bonds of larger alkanes are broken, producing smaller alkanes suitable for gasoline.

2. *Reforming* is a process in which straight-chain alkanes are converted into branched hydrocarbons and aromatic compounds, which exhibit less *knocking* during combustion.

SECTION 4.6

- Rotation about C—C single bonds allows a compound to adopt a variety of **conformations**.
- **Newman projections** are often used to draw the various conformations of a compound.

SECTION 4.7

- In a Newman projection, the **dihedral angle**, or **torsional angle,** describes the relative positions of one group on the back carbon and one group on the front carbon.
- **Staggered conformations** are lower in energy, while **eclipsed conformations** are higher in energy.
- In the case of ethane, all staggered conformations are **degenerate** (equivalent in energy), and all eclipsed conformations are degenerate.
- The difference in energy between staggered and eclipsed conformations of ethane is referred to as **torsional strain.** The torsional strain for propane is larger than that of ethane.

SECTION 4.8

- For butane, one of the eclipsed conformations is higher in energy than the other two.
- One staggered conformation (the ***anti* conformation**) is lower in energy than the other two staggered conformations, because they possess ***gauche* interactions**.

SECTION 4.9

- **Angle strain** occurs in cycloalkanes when bond angles are less than the preferred 109.5°.
- Angle strain and torsional strain are components of the total energy of a cycloalkane, which can be assessed by measuring heats of combustion per CH_2 group.

SECTION 4.10

- The **chair conformation** of cyclohexane has no torsional strain and very little angle strain.
- The **boat conformation** of cyclohexane has significant torsional strain (from eclipsing H's as well as **flagpole interactions**). The boat can alleviate some of its torsional strain by twisting, giving a conformation called a **twist boat**.
- Cyclohexane is found in a chair conformation most of the time.

SECTION 4.11

- Each carbon atom in a cyclohexane ring can bear two substituents.
- In a chair conformation, one substituent is said to occupy an **axial position**, while the other substituent is said to occupy an **equatorial position**.

SECTION 4.12

- For a monosubstituted cyclohexane in a chair conformation, the substituent can occupy either an axial or an equatorial position. These two possibilities represent two different conformations that are in equilibrium with each other.
- The term **ring flip** is used to describe the conversion of one chair conformation into the other.
- The equilibrium will favor the chair conformation with the substituent in the equatorial position, because an axial substituent generates **1,3-diaxial interactions**.

SECTION 4.13

- To draw the two chair conformations of a disubstituted cyclohexane, each substituent must be identified as being either UP or DOWN. The three-dimensional orientation of the substituents (UP or DOWN) does not change during a ring flip.
- After drawing both chair conformations, the relative energy levels can be determined by comparing the energy cost associated with all axial groups.

SECTION 4.14

- The terms *cis* and *trans* signify the relative spatial relationship of similar substituents, as can be seen clearly in Haworth projections.

SECTION 4.15

- The relationship between *cis*-decalin and *trans*-decalin is stereoisomeric. These two compounds are not interconvertible by ring flipping.
- **Norbornane** is the common name for bicyclo[2.2.1]heptane and is a commonly encountered bicyclic system.
- Polycyclic systems based on six-membered rings are also found in the structure of diamonds.

SKILLBUILDER REVIEW

4.1 IDENTIFYING THE PARENT

STEP 1 Choose the longest chain.

STEP 2 In a case where two chains compete, choose the chain with more substituents.

Try Problems **4.1–4.3, 4.36**

4.2 IDENTIFYING AND NAMING SUBSTITUENTS

STEP 1 Identify the parent.

STEP 2 Identify all alkyl substituents connected to the parent.

STEP 3 Name each substituent using the names in Table 4.2.

Try Problems **4.4, 4.5, 4.36**

4.3 IDENTIFYING AND NAMING COMPLEX SUBSTITUENTS

STEP 1 Identify the parent.

STEP 2 Place numbers on the complex substituent, going away from the parent chain.

STEP 3 Treat the entire group as a substituent on a substituent.

Try Problems **4.6, 4.7, 4.69, 4.70**

4.4 ASSEMBLING THE SYSTEMATIC NAME OF AN ALKANE

STEP 1 Identify the parent.

STEP 2 Identify and name substituents.

STEP 3 Number the parent chain and assign a locant to each substituent.

STEP 4 Arrange the substituents alphabetically.

4-Ethyl-2,3-dimethyloctane

Try Problems **4.8–4.10, 4.36a–i, 4.40a,b, 4.65**

4.5 ASSEMBLING THE NAME OF A BICYCLIC COMPOUND

STEP 1 Identify the bicyclo parent and then indicate how the bridgeheads are connected.

Bicyclo[3.2.0]heptane

STEP 2 Identify and name substituents.

STEP 3 Number the parent chain (start with longest bridge) and assign a locant to each substituent.

STEP 4 Assemble the substituents alphabetically.

2-Isopropyl-7,7-dimethyl bicyclo[3.2.0]heptane

Try Problems **4.11–4.13, 4.36j,k, 4.40c**

4.6 IDENTIFYING CONSTITUTIONAL ISOMERS

Constitutional isomers have different names. If two compounds have the same name, then they are the same compound.

3,4-Diethyl-2,7-dimethylnonane

3,4-Diethyl-2,7-dimethylnonane

Try Problems **4.14, 4.15, 4.37, 4.72**

4.7 DRAWING NEWMAN PROJECTIONS

STEP 1 Identify the three groups connected to the front carbon atom.

STEP 2 Identify the three groups connected to the back carbon atom.

STEP 3 Assemble the Newman projection from the two pieces obtained in the previous steps.

Try Problems **4.16, 4.17, 4.47, 4.53, 4.62, 4.75**

4.8 IDENTIFYING RELATIVE ENERGY OF CONFORMATIONS

STEP 1 Draw a Newman projection.

STEP 2 Draw all three staggered conformations and determine which one has the fewest or least severe *gauche* interactions.

STEP 3 Draw all three eclipsed conformations and determine which one has the highest energy interactions.

Try Problems **4.19, 4.20, 4.42, 4.56, 4.68, 4.74**

4.9 DRAWING A CHAIR CONFORMATION

STEP 1 Draw a wide V.

STEP 2 Draw a line going down at a 60° angle, ending just before the center of the V.

STEP 3 Draw a line parallel to the left side of the V ending just before the left side of the V.

STEP 4 Draw a line parallel to the line from step 2, going down exactly as low as that line.

STEP 5 Connect the dots.

Try Problems **4.21, 4.22**

4.10 DRAWING AXIAL AND EQUATORIAL POSITIONS

STEP 1 Draw all axial positions as parallel lines, alternating in directions.

STEP 2 Draw all equatorial positions as pairs of parallel lines.

SUMMARY All substituents are drawn like this:

Try Problems **4.23, 4.24, 4.46, 4.59**

4.11 DRAWING BOTH CHAIR CONFORMATIONS OF A MONOSUBSTITUTED CYCLOHEXANE

STEP 1 Draw a chair conformation.

STEP 2 Place the substituent in an axial position.

STEP 3 Draw the ring flip and the axial group becomes equatorial.

Try Problems **4.25, 4.26, 4.51a**

4.12 DRAWING BOTH CHAIR CONFORMATIONS OF DISUBSTITUTED CYCLOHEXANES

STEP 1 Using a numbering system, determine the location and configuration of each substituent.

STEP 2 Place the substituents on the first chair using the information from step 1.

STEP 3 Draw the second chair skeleton, and place substituents using the information from step 1.

Try Problems **4.28, 4.29, 4.51b–d, 4.72g**

4.13 DRAWING THE MORE STABLE CHAIR CONFORMATION OF POLYSUBSTITUTED CYCLOHEXANES

STEP 1 Using a numbering system, determine the location and configuration of each substituent.

STEP 2 Using the information from step 1, draw both chair conformations.

STEP 3 Assess the energy cost of each axial group.

Try Problems **4.30–4.32, 4.50, 4.52, 4.54, 4.58, 4.76**

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

• **Included in Answers section**

4.36 • Provide a systematic name for each of the following compounds:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

(f)

(g)

(h)

(i)

(j)

(k)

4.37 For each of the following pairs of drawings, identify whether they are constitutional isomers or different representations of the same compound:

(a)

(b)

(c)

4.38 Use a Newman projection to draw the most stable conformation of 3-methylpentane, looking down the C2—C3 bond.

4.39 Identify which of the following compounds is expected to have the larger heat of combustion:

4.40 Draw each of the following compounds:

(a) 2,2,4-Trimethylpentane

(b) 1,2,3,4-Tetramethylcycloheptane

(c) 2,2,4,4-Tetraethylbicyclo[1.1.0]butane

4.41 Sketch an energy diagram that shows a conformational analysis of 2,2-dimethylpropane. Does the shape of this energy diagram more closely resemble the shape of the energy diagram for ethane or for butane?

4.42 What are the relative energy levels of the three staggered conformations of 2,3-dimethylbutane when looking down the C2—C3 bond?

4.43 • Perform a ring flip for each of the following compounds, and draw the resulting chair conformation in each case:

4.44 For each of the following pairs of compounds, identify the compound that would have the higher heat of combustion:

4.45 Draw an energy diagram showing a conformational analysis of 1,2-dichloroethane. Clearly label all staggered conformations and all eclipsed conformations with the corresponding Newman projections.

4.46 In the following compound, identify the number of hydrogen atoms that occupy axial positions as well as the number of hydrogen atoms that occupy equatorial positions:

4.47 • Draw a bond-line structure for each of the following compounds:

4.48 Assign IUPAC names for each of the following compounds:

4.49 The barrier to rotation of bromoethane is 15 kJ/mol. Based on this information, determine the energy cost associated with the eclipsing interaction between a bromine atom and a hydrogen atom.

4.50 • Menthol, isolated from various mint oils, is used in the treatment of minor throat irritation. Draw both chair conformations of menthol and indicate which conformation is lower in energy.

Menthol

4.51 Draw both chair conformations for each of the following compounds. In each case, identify the more stable chair conformation:

(a) Methylcyclohexane

(b) *trans*-1,2-Diisopropylcyclohexane

(c) *cis*-1,3-Diisopropylcyclohexane

(d) *trans*-1,4-Diisopropylcyclohexane

4.52 • For each of the following pairs of compounds, determine which compound is more stable (you may find it helpful to draw out the chair conformations):

4.53 Draw a Newman projection of the following compound as viewed from the angle indicated:

4.54 Glucose (a sugar) is produced by photosynthesis and is used by cells to store energy. Draw the most stable conformation of glucose:

Glucose

4.55 Sketch an energy diagram showing a conformational analysis of 2,2,3,3-tetramethylbutane. Use Table 4.6 to determine the energy difference between staggered and eclipsed conformations of this compound.

4.56 Rank the following conformations in order of increasing energy:

4.57 Consider the following two conformations of 2,3-dimethylbutane. For each of these conformations, use Table 4.6 to determine the total energy cost associated with all torsional strain and steric strain.

(a)

(b)

4.58 *myo*-Inositol is a polyol (a compound containing many OH groups) that serves as the structural basis for a number of secondary messengers in some kinds of cells. Draw the more stable chair conformation of *myo*-inositol.

***myo*-Inositol**

4.59 Below is the numbered skeleton of *trans*-decalin:

Identify whether each of the following substituents would be in an equatorial position or an axial position:

(a) A group at the C-2 position, pointing UP

(b) A group at the C-3 position, pointing DOWN

(c) A group at the C-4 position, pointing DOWN

(d) A group at the C-7 position, pointing DOWN

(e) A group at the C-8 position, pointing UP

(f) A group at the C-9 position, pointing UP

4.60 There are 18 constitutional isomers with the molecular formula C_8H_{18}. *Without drawing all 18 isomers*, determine how many of the isomers will have a parent name of heptane.

ACS-STYLE PROBLEMS (Multiple Choice)

Problems 4.61–4.69 follow the style of the ACS organic chemistry exam. For each of these problems, there will be one correct answer and three distractors.

4.61 • All of the following are representations of *cis*-1,2-dimethylcyclohexane, EXCEPT:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

4.62 • All of the following are representations of 2-methylpentane, EXCEPT:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

4.63 • Which of the following is expected to have the largest heat of combustion?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

4.64 • Which of the following is a constitutional isomer of heptane?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

4.65 • Provide a systematic name for the following compound.

(a) 4-isopropylpentane

(b) 2-isopropylpentane

(c) 5,6-dimethylhexane

(d) 2,3-dimethylhexane

4.66 • Which of the following represents the most stable conformation of *cis*-1,4-dimethylcyclohexane?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

4.67 • Which of the following conformers has one or more *gauche* interactions?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

4.68 • Which of the following represents the most stable conformation of the given compound?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

4.69 • Which of the following is the correct IUPAC name for the *tert*-butyl substituent?

(a) (1,1-dimethylethyl)

(b) (1,1,1-trimethyl)

(c) (1-methyl-2-propyl)

(d) (2-methyl-2-propyl)

INTEGRATED PROBLEMS

4.70 • Derivatives of griselimycin, a natural product isolated in the 1960s, are being investigated for the treatment of tuberculosis.[13] For each of the highlighted substituents in the griselimycin derivative shown below, indicate the systematic name as well as the common name (for those substituents that have common names).

Griselimycin derivative

4.71 *trans*-1,3-Dichlorocyclobutane has a measurable dipole moment. Explain why the individual dipole moments of the C—Cl bonds do not cancel each other to produce a zero net dipole moment.

***trans*-1,3-Dichlorocyclobutane**

4.72 For each pair of drawings below, determine whether they represent identical compounds, constitutional isomers, or stereoisomers:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

(f)

(g)

(h)

(i)

(j)

(k)

4.73 Consider the structures of *cis*-1,2-dimethylcyclopropane and *trans*-1,2-dimethylcyclopropane:

(a) Which compound would you expect to be more stable? Explain your choice.

(b) Predict the difference in energy between these two compounds.

4.74 Compare the three staggered conformations of ethylene glycol. The *anti* conformation of ethylene glycol is not the lowest energy conformation. The other two staggered conformations are actually lower in energy than the *anti* conformation. Suggest an explanation.

Ethylene glycol

4.75 Determine whether the following Newman projections represent constitutional isomers:

4.76 Consider the following tetra-substituted cyclohexane:

(a) Draw both chair conformations of this compound.

(b) Determine which conformation is more stable.

(c) At equilibrium, would you expect the compound to spend more than 95% of its time in the more stable chair conformation?

4.77 Consider the structures of *cis*-decalin and *trans*-decalin:

***cis*-Decalin** ***trans*-Decalin**

(a) Which of these compounds would you expect to be more stable?

(b) One of these two compounds is incapable of ring flipping. Identify it and explain your choice.

4.78 The structural unit below has been incorporated into a synthetic polymer designed to mimic the skeletal muscle protein *titin*.[14] In its most stable conformation (shown), it forms one intramolecular hydrogen bond and four intermolecular hydrogen bonds to an identical unit in the same conformation. Draw two equivalents of this structural unit and clearly show all of the interactions described above.

4.79 Aspernomine, a natural product isolated from the fungus *Aspergillus nomius*, was found to be an antiinsectan (it protects against predation by insects).[15]

Aspernomine

(a) Two of the six-membered rings are represented in chair conformations. Is the connection between these two rings analogous to that in *cis*- or *trans*-decalin?

(b) Is the aromatic ring in an axial or equatorial position?

(c) Consider the six-carbon acyclic substituent bound to one of the bridgehead carbons. What is its relationship (axial or equatorial) to each of the chairs?

(d) What is the approximate dihedral angle between the two methyl groups directly bound to the chairs?

CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

4.80 Draw all three staggered conformations for the following compound, viewed along the C_2—C_3 bond. Determine which conformation is the most stable, taking into account *gauche* interactions and hydrogen-bonding interactions.[16] Provide a reason for your choice by identifying all of the interactions that led to your decision.

4.81 The all-*trans*-1,2,3,4,5,6-hexaethylcyclohexane **(1)** prefers the all-equatorial conformation while the all-*trans*-1,2,3,4,5,6-hexaisopropylcyclohexane **(2)** possesses a severely destabilized all-equatorial conformation.[17]

1 **2**

(a) By examining a molecular model of cyclohexane with several all-*trans*-equatorial isopropyl groups and another model with several all-*trans*-equatorial ethyl groups, determine why adjacent equatorially oriented isopropyl groups experience severe steric interactions which are lacking in the ethyl case. Draw the all-equatorial chair conformation of **2** to illustrate these severe steric interactions. Also draw a Newman projection of the all-equatorial conformation of **2** and show how it demonstrates the severe steric strain as well.

(b) The all-axial conformation of **2** possesses a fairly stable conformation where the steric repulsion among the axial isopropyl groups can be minimized. Explain why this conformation has lower energy than the all-equatorial chair conformation.

4.82 Compounds **1** and **2** were prepared, and the difference in their heats of combustion was found to be 17.2 kJ/mol.[18]

1

2

(a) Redraw compounds **1** and **2** showing chair conformations for the six-membered rings. In each case, draw the lowest energy conformation for the compound.

(b) Identify which compound has the larger heat of combustion. Explain your reasoning.

LIST OF REFERENCES

1. *J. Chem. Soc., Perkins Trans. 2* **1999**, *12*, 2715–2718.
2. *J. Biosci.* **2002**, *27*, 679–686.
3. *Steroids* **2013**, *78*, 927–937.
4. PCT Int. Appl. (2005), WO 2005059062.
5. *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.* **2012**, *22*, 1756–1760.
6. *Journal of the Japan Petroleum Institute* **2004**, *47*, 1–10.
7. *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* **1991**, 299–302.
8. *J. Phys. Chem. A* **2000**, *104*, 6189–6196.
9. *Chem. Commun.* **2008**, *30*, 3507–3509.
10. *Tetrahedron* **1988**, *44*, 4703–4711.
11. *Tetrahedron* **2005**, *61*, 473–478.
12. *Pediatr. Dermatol.* **2012**, *29*, 141–146.
13. *Chem. Biol.* **2015**, *22*, 981–982.
14. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **2009**, *131*, 8766–8768.
15. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **2012**, *134*, 8078–8081.
16. *J. Phys. Chem. A* **2001**, *105*, 6991–6997.
17. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1990**, *112*, 893–894.
18. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1961**, *83*, 606–614.

5

Stereoisomerism

5.1 Overview of Isomerism
5.2 Introduction to Stereoisomerism
5.3 Designating Configuration Using the Cahn-Ingold-Prelog System
5.4 Optical Activity
5.5 Stereoisomeric Relationships: Enantiomers and Diastereomers
5.6 Symmetry and Chirality
5.7 Fischer Projections
5.8 Conformationally Mobile Systems
5.9 Chiral Compounds that Lack a Chiral Center
5.10 Resolution of Enantiomers
5.11 *E* and *Z* Designations for Diastereomeric Alkenes

DID YOU EVER **WONDER...**

whether pharmaceuticals are really safe?

As mentioned in the previous chapter, most drugs cause multiple physiological responses. In general, one response is desirable, while the rest are undesirable. The undesirable responses can range in severity and can even result in death. This might sound scary, but the FDA (Food and Drug Administration) has strict guidelines that must be followed before a drug is approved for sale to the public. Every potential drug must first undergo animal testing followed by three separate clinical trials involving human patients (phases I, II, and III). Phase I involves a small number of patients (20–80), phase II can involve several hundred patients, and phase III can involve several thousand patients. The FDA will only approve drugs that have passed all three phases of clinical trials. Even after receiving approval to be sold, the effects of a drug are still monitored for potential long-term adverse effects. In some cases, a drug must be pulled off the market after adverse side effects are observed in a small percentage of the population. One such example is Vioxx, an anti-inflammatory drug that was heavily used in the treatment of osteoarthritis and acute pain. Vioxx was approved by the FDA in 1999 and instantly became very popular, providing its manufacturer (Merck & Co.) with over two billion dollars in annual sales. In 2004, Merck had to remove Vioxx from the market because of concerns that long-term use increased the risk of heart attacks and strokes. This example highlights the fact that pharmaceutical safety cannot be absolutely guaranteed. Nevertheless, the development of pharmaceuticals has vastly improved our quality of life and longevity, and the positive effects significantly outweigh the rare examples of negative effects.

The effects of any particular drug are determined by a host of factors. We have already seen many of these factors, including the role of the pharmacophore, conformational flexibility, and acid-base properties. In this chapter, we will take a closer look at the three-dimensional structure of compounds, and we will see that this characteristic is arguably one of the most important

Top (*Check mark pill*) Dimitris66/Getty Images; *Bottom* (*Phase I, II, and III pills*) Dimitris66/Getty Images; *Bottom* (*Circles of people*) diez artwork/Shutterstock

continued >

factors to be considered when designing drugs and assessing their safety. In particular, we will explore compounds that differ from each other only in the three-dimensional, spatial arrangement of their atoms, but not in the connectivity of their atoms. Such compounds are called *stereoisomers*, and we will explore the connection between stereoisomerism and drug action.

This chapter will focus on the different kinds of stereoisomers. We will learn to identify stereoisomers, and we will learn several drawing styles that will allow us to compare stereoisomers. The upcoming chapters will focus on reactions that produce stereoisomers.

DO YOU **REMEMBER?**

Before you go on, be sure you understand the following topics.
If necessary, review the suggested sections to prepare for this chapter.

- Constitutional Isomerism (Section 1.2)
- Drawing and Interpreting Bond-Line Structures (Sections 1.6 and 2.2)
- Tetrahedral Geometry (Section 1.11)
- Three-Dimensional Representations (Section 2.6)

Take the DO YOU **REMEMBER?** QUIZ in the **online course** to check your understanding.

5.1 Overview of Isomerism

The term *isomers* comes from the Greek words *isos* and *meros*, meaning "made of the same parts." That is, isomers are compounds that are constructed from the same atoms (same molecular formula) but that still differ from each other. We have already seen two kinds of isomers: constitutional isomers (Section 4.3) and stereoisomers (Section 4.14), as illustrated in Figure 5.1.

FIGURE 5.1
The main categories of isomers.

Constitutional isomers differ in the connectivity of their atoms; for example:

Methoxymethane
Boiling point = –23°C

Ethanol
Boiling point = 78.4°C

The two compounds above have the same molecular formula, but they differ in their constitution. As a result, they are different compounds with different physical properties.

Stereoisomers are compounds that have the same constitution but differ in the spatial arrangement of their atoms. In Chapter 4, we discussed one example of *cis-trans* stereoisomerism among disubstituted cycloalkanes:

cis-
1,2-Dimethylcyclohexane

trans-
1,2-Dimethylcyclohexane

The *cis* stereoisomer exhibits groups on the same side of the ring, while the *trans* stereoisomer exhibits groups on opposite sides of the ring. In addition to the examples above, the terms *cis* and *trans* are also used to describe stereoisomerism among double bonds:

FIGURE 5.2
An illustration of *p* orbitals overlapping to form a π bond.

The *cis* stereoisomer exhibits groups on the same side of the double bond, while the *trans* stereoisomer exhibits groups on opposite sides of the double bond. The two drawings above represent different compounds with different physical properties, because the double bond does not experience free rotation as single bonds do. Why not? Recall that a π bond is formed from the overlap of two *p* orbitals (Figure 5.2). Rotation about the C—C double bond would effectively destroy the overlap between the *p* orbitals. Therefore, the C—C double bond does not experience free rotation at room temperature.

Chemists use *cis-trans* terminology to describe disubstituted alkenes, even when the two substituents (connected to the π bond) are different from each other, as seen in the following examples:

However, *cis-trans* terminology does not apply for disubstituted alkenes in which the two substituents are connected to the same position:

In such cases, the double bond is not stereoisomeric and should not be labeled as *cis* or *trans*.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

5.1 In the following compound, identify each C═C unit as *cis*, *trans*, or not stereoisomeric.

5.2 Identify the number of stereoisomers that are possible for a compound with the following condensed formula.

$$H_2C{=}CHCH_2CH_2CH_2CH{=}CH_2$$

5.3 Compound X and compound Y are constitutional isomers with the molecular formula C_5H_{10}. Compound X possesses a carbon-carbon double bond in the *trans* configuration, while compound Y possesses a carbon-carbon double bond that is not stereoisomeric:

(a) Identify the structure of compound X.

(b) Identify four possible structures for compound Y.

5.2 Introduction to Stereoisomerism

In Section 5.1, we reviewed *cis-trans* stereoisomerism, but there are other kinds of stereoisomers. We begin our exploration of the various kinds of stereoisomers by investigating the relationship between an object and its mirror image.

FIGURE 5.3
An object that is superimposable on its mirror image.

Chirality

Any object can be viewed in a mirror, revealing its mirror image. Take, for example, a pair of sunglasses (Figure 5.3). For many objects, like the sunglasses in Figure 5.3, the mirror image is

FIGURE 5.4
An object that is not superimposable on its mirror image.

identical to the actual object. The object and its mirror image are said to be **superimposable**. This is not the case if we remove one of the lenses (Figure 5.4). The object and its mirror image are now different. One pair is missing the right lens, while the other pair is missing the left lens. In this case, the object and its mirror image are *nonsuperimposable*. Many familiar objects, such as hands, are nonsuperimposable on their mirror images. A right hand and a left hand are mirror images of one another, but they are not identical; they are not superimposable on one another. A left hand will not fit into a right-handed glove, and a right hand will not fit into a left-handed glove.

Objects that are not superimposable on their mirror images are called **chiral** objects, from the Greek word *cheir* (meaning "hand"). All three-dimensional objects can be classified as either chiral or achiral. Molecules are three-dimensional objects and can therefore also be classified as either chiral or achiral. Chiral molecules are nonsuperimposable on their mirror images. Achiral molecules are superimposable on their mirror images. What makes a molecule chiral?

Molecular Chirality

The most common source of molecular chirality is the presence of a carbon atom bearing four different groups. There are two different ways to arrange four groups around a central carbon atom (Figure 5.5). These two arrangements are nonsuperimposable mirror images.

FIGURE 5.5
There are two ways to arrange four different groups around a carbon atom.

BY THE WAY
To see that these two compounds are nonsuperimposable, build a molecular model using any one of the commercially available molecular model kits.

Consider, for example, the structure of 2-butanol, which can be arranged in two different ways in three-dimensional space:

These two compounds are nonsuperimposable mirror images, and they represent two different compounds. They differ from each other only in the spatial arrangement of their atoms, and therefore, they are stereoisomers.

In 1996, the IUPAC recommended that a tetrahedral carbon bearing four different groups be called a **chirality center**. Despite this recommendation, organic chemists often use other more common terms, including *chiral center*, *stereocenter*, *stereogenic center*, or *asymmetric center*. For the remainder of our discussion, we will use the term *chiral center*. Below are several examples of chiral centers:

BY THE WAY
Despite the IUPAC recommendation to use the term "chirality center," the terms "stereocenter" and "stereogenic center" are more commonly used. However, these terms have a broader definition: A stereocenter, or stereogenic center, is defined as a location at which the interchange of two substituents will generate a stereoisomer. This definition includes chirality centers, but it also includes *cis* and *trans* double bonds, which are not chirality centers.

Each of the highlighted carbon atoms bears four different groups. In the last compound, the carbon atom is a chiral center because one path around the ring is different than the other path (one path encounters the double bond sooner). In contrast, the following compound does not have a chiral center. In this case, the clockwise path and the counterclockwise path are identical.

SKILLBUILDER

5.1 LOCATING CHIRAL CENTERS

LEARN the skill

Propoxyphene, sold under the trade name Darvon, is an analgesic (painkiller) and anti-tussive (cough suppressant). Identify all chiral centers in propoxyphene:

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Ignore sp^2- and sp-hybridized carbon atoms.

We are looking for a tetrahedral carbon atom that bears four different groups. Each of the sp^2-hybridized carbon atoms are connected to only three groups, rather than four. So, none of these carbon atoms can be chiral centers.

These carbon atoms cannot be chiral centers

STEP 2
Ignore CH_2 and CH_3 groups.

We can also rule out any CH_2 groups or CH_3 groups, as these carbon atoms do not bear four *different* groups.

These carbon atoms cannot be chiral centers

It is helpful to become proficient at identifying carbon atoms that cannot be chiral centers. This will make it easier to spot the chiral centers more quickly. In this example, there are only two carbon atoms worth considering:

STEP 3
Identify any carbon atoms bearing four different groups.

Each of these positions has four different groups, so each of these positions is a chiral center.

PRACTICE the skill

5.4 Identify all chiral centers in each of the following compounds:

(a) **Ascorbic acid (vitamin C)**

(b) **Vitamin D_3**

(c) **Mestranol**
An oral contraceptive

(d) **Fexofenadine**
A nonsedating antihistamine

APPLY the skill

5.5 Draw all constitutional isomers with the molecular formula C_4H_9Br and identify the isomer(s) that possess chiral centers.

5.6 Do you expect the following compound to be chiral? Explain your answer (consider whether this compound is superimposable on its mirror image).

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problem 5.33b**

Enantiomers

When a compound is chiral, it will have one nonsuperimposable mirror image, called its **enantiomer** (from the Greek word meaning "opposite"). The compound and its mirror image are said to be a pair of enantiomers. The word "enantiomer" is used in speech in the same way that the word "twin" is used in speech. When two children are *a pair of twins*, each one is said to be *the twin of the other*. Similarly, when two compounds are *a pair of enantiomers*, each compound is said to be *the enantiomer of the other.* A chiral compound will have exactly one enantiomer, never more and never less. Let's practice drawing the enantiomer of chiral compounds.

SKILLBUILDER

5.2 DRAWING AN ENANTIOMER

LEARN the skill

Amphetamine is a prescription stimulant used in the treatment of ADHD (attention-deficit hyperactivity disorder) and chronic fatigue syndrome. During World War II it was used heavily by soldiers to reduce fatigue and increase alertness. Draw the enantiomer of amphetamine.

Amphetamine

SOLUTION

This problem is asking us to draw the mirror image of the compound shown. There are three ways to do this, because there are three places where we can imagine placing a mirror: (1) behind, (2) next to, or (3) beneath the molecule:

It is easiest to place the mirror behind the molecule, because the skeleton of the molecule is drawn in exactly the same way except that *all dashes become wedges and all wedges become dashes.* Every other aspect of the molecule is drawn in exactly the same way:

The second way to draw an enantiomer is to place the mirror on the side of the molecule. When doing so, draw the mirror image of the skeleton, but all dashes remain dashes and all wedges remain wedges.

Finally, we can place the mirror under the molecule. When doing so, draw the mirror image of the skeleton; once again, all dashes remain dashes and all wedges remain wedges:

Of the three ways to draw an enantiomer, only the first method involves interchanging wedges and dashes. Even so, make sure to understand that all three of these methods produce the same answer:

All three drawings represent the same compound. They might look different, but rotation of any one drawing will generate the other drawings. Remember that a molecule can only have one enantiomer, so all three methods must produce the same answer.

In general, it is easiest to use the first method. Simply redraw the compound, replacing all dashes with wedges and all wedges with dashes. However, this method will not work in all situations. In some molecular drawings, wedges and dashes are not drawn, because the three-dimensional geometry is implied by the drawing. This is the case for bicyclic compounds. When dealing with bicyclic compounds, it will be easier to use one of the other two methods (placing the mirror either on the side of the molecule or below the molecule). In the example shown here, it is easiest to place the mirror on the side of compound A, which allows us to draw compound B (the enantiomer of compound A).

PRACTICE the skill **5.7** Draw the enantiomer of each of the following compounds:

(a) **Albuterol**
(sold under the trade name Ventolin)
A bronchodilator used in the treatment of asthma

(b) **Propranolol**
A beta blocker used in the treatment of hypertension

(c) **Oxybutynin**
Used to treat urinary and bladder disorders

(d) **Adrenaline**
A hormone that acts as a bronchodilator

(e) **Ketamine**
An anesthetic

(f) **Nicotine**
An addictive substance present in tobacco

(g)

APPLY the skill

5.8 Ixabepilone is a cytotoxic compound approved by the FDA in 2007 for the treatment of advanced breast cancer. Bristol-Myers Squibb is marketing this drug under the trade name Ixempra. Draw the enantiomer of this compound:

Ixabepilone

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 5.32, 5.33a, 5.38a–c,e, 5.61**

WorldLinks The Sense of Smell

In order for an object to have an odor, it must release organic compounds into the air. Most plastic and metal items do not release molecules into the air at room temperature and are therefore odorless. Spices, on the other hand, have very strong odors, because they release many organic compounds. These compounds enter your nose when you inhale, where they encounter receptors that detect their presence. The compounds bind to the receptors, causing the transmission of nerve signals that the brain interprets as an odor.

A specific compound can bind to a number of different receptors, creating a pattern that the brain identifies as a particular odor. Different compounds generate different patterns, enabling us to distinguish over 10,000 odors from one another. This mechanism has many fascinating features. In particular, "mirror-image" compounds (enantiomers) will often bind to different receptors, thereby creating different patterns which are interpreted as unique odors. To understand the reason for this, consider the following analogy. A right hand will fit into a brown paper bag just as easily as a left hand will, because the bag is not chiral. However, a right hand will not fit into a left-handed glove just as easily as a left hand will, because the glove itself is chiral. Similarly, if a receptor is chiral, as is usually the case, then we might expect that only one enantiomer of a pair will effectively bind to it.

As an example, carvone has one chiral center and therefore has two enantiomeric forms:

(*R*)-Carvone
(odor of spearmint)

(*S*)-Carvone
(odor of caraway seeds)

One enantiomer is responsible for the odor of spearmint, while the other is responsible for the odor of caraway seeds (the seeds found in seeded rye bread). In order for us to detect different odors, our receptors must themselves be chiral. This illustrates the chiral environment of the human body (a sea of chiral molecules interacting with each other). We will soon explore how drug action is also determined by the chiral nature of most biological receptors.

Wellmony/Getty Images

5.3 Designating Configuration Using the Cahn-Ingold-Prelog System

In Section 5.2, we used bond-line structures to illustrate the difference between a pair of enantiomers:

A pair of enantiomers

In order to communicate more effectively, we also need a system of nomenclature for identifying each enantiomer individually. This system is named after the chemists who devised it: Cahn, Ingold,

LOOKING AHEAD
A summary of the Cahn-Ingold-Prelog system appears immediately prior to SkillBuilder 5.3.

and Prelog. The first step of this system involves assigning priorities to each of the four groups attached to the chiral center, based on atomic number. The atom with the highest atomic number is assigned the highest priority (1), while the atom with the lowest atomic number is assigned the lowest priority (4). As an example, consider one of the enantiomers just shown:

Of the four atoms attached to the chiral center, chlorine has the highest atomic number so it is assigned priority 1. Oxygen has the second highest atomic number, so it is assigned priority 2. Carbon is assigned priority 3, and finally, hydrogen is priority 4 because it has the lowest atomic number.

After assigning priorities to all four groups, we then rotate the molecule so that the fourth priority is directed behind the page (on a dash):

BY THE WAY
To visualize this rotation, you may find it helpful to build a molecular model using any one of the commercially available molecular model kits.

Then, we look to see if the sequence 1-2-3 is clockwise or counterclockwise. In this enantiomer, the sequence is counterclockwise:

Counterclockwise = ***S***

A counterclockwise sequence is designated as ***S*** (from the Latin word *sinister*, meaning "left"). The enantiomer of this compound will have a clockwise sequence and is designated as ***R*** (from the Latin word *rectus*, meaning "right"):

Clockwise = ***R***

The descriptors *R* and *S* are used to describe the **configuration** of a chiral center. Assigning the configuration of a chiral center therefore requires three distinct steps. We will now deal with some subtle nuances of these steps.

1. Prioritize all four groups connected to the chiral center.
2. If necessary, rotate the molecule so that the fourth priority group is on a dash.
3. Determine whether the sequence 1-2-3 is clockwise or counterclockwise.

Assigning Priorities to All Four Groups

The previous example was fairly straightforward because all four atoms attached to the chiral center were different (Cl, O, C, and H). It is more common to encounter two or more atoms with the same atomic number. For example:

In this case, two carbon atoms are directly connected to the chiral center. Certainly, oxygen is assigned priority 1 and hydrogen is assigned priority 4. But which carbon atom is assigned

priority 2? In order to make this determination, notice that each carbon atom is connected to the chiral center *and to three other atoms*. Make a list of the three atoms on either side in decreasing order of atomic number and compare:

These lists are identical, so we move farther away from the chiral center and repeat the process:

We are specifically looking for the first point of difference. In this case, the left side will be assigned the higher priority, because C has a higher atomic number than H.

Here is another example that illustrates an important point:

In this case, the left side will be assigned the higher priority, because oxygen has a higher atomic number than carbon. We do not compare the sum total of each list. It might be true that three carbon atoms have a greater sum total of atomic numbers (6+6+6) than one oxygen atom and two hydrogen atoms (8+1+1). However, the deciding factor is the first point of difference, and in this case, oxygen beats carbon.

When assigning priorities, a double bond is considered as two separate single bonds. The following carbon atom (highlighted) is treated as if it is connected to two oxygen atoms:

The same rule is applied for any type of multiple bond, as illustrated in the following example:

Rotating the Molecule

After assigning priorities to all four groups connected to the chiral center, the next step is to rotate the molecule so that the fourth priority is on a dash. Some students have trouble rotating a molecule and redrawing it in the proper perspective. If you are having trouble, there is a helpful technique based on the following principle: Switching any two groups on a chiral center will invert the configuration:

It doesn't matter which two groups are switched. Switching any two groups will change the configuration. Then, switching any two groups a second time will switch the configuration back to the way

it was originally. Based on this idea, we can devise a simple procedure that will allow us to rotate a molecule without actually having to visualize the rotation. Consider the following example.

To assign the configuration of this chiral center, first find the fourth priority and switch it with the group that is on the dash. Then, switch the other two groups:

Two switches have been performed, so the final drawing must have the same configuration as the original drawing. But now, the molecule has been redrawn in a perspective that exhibits the fourth priority on a dash. This technique provides a method for redrawing the molecule in the appropriate perspective (as if the molecule had been rotated). In this example, the sequence 1-2-3 is clockwise, so the configuration is *R*. The following is a summary of the procedure for assigning configuration:

A REVIEW OF CAHN-INGOLD-PRELOG RULES: ASSIGNING THE CONFIGURATION OF A CHIRAL CENTER

STEP 1	STEP 2	STEP 3	STEP 4	STEP 5
Identify the four atoms directly attached to the chiral center.	Assign a priority to each atom based on its atomic number. The highest atomic number receives priority 1, and the lowest atomic number (often a hydrogen atom) receives priority 4.	If two atoms have the same atomic number, move away from the chiral center looking for the first point of difference. When constructing lists to compare, remember that a double bond is treated as two separate single bonds.	Rotate the molecule so that the fourth priority is on a dash (going behind the plane of the page).	Determine whether the sequence 1-2-3 follows a clockwise order (*R*) or a counterclockwise order (*S*).

SKILLBUILDER

5.3 ASSIGNING THE CONFIGURATION OF A CHIRAL CENTER

LEARN the skill

The following bond-line structure represents one enantiomer of 2-amino-3-(3,4-dihydroxyphenyl)propanoic acid, used in the treatment of Parkinson's disease. Assign the configuration of the chiral center in this compound.

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Identify the four atoms attached to the chiral center and prioritize by atomic number.

Begin by identifying the four atoms directly attached to the chiral center:

STEP 2
If two or more atoms are carbon, look for the first point of difference.

The four atoms are N, C, C, and H. Nitrogen has the highest atomic number, so it is assigned priority 1. Hydrogen is assigned priority 4. We must now decide which carbon atom is assigned priority 2. Make a list in each case and look for the first point of difference.

STEP 3
Redraw the chiral center showing only priorities.

Oxygen has a higher atomic number than carbon, so the left side is assigned the higher priority. The priorities are therefore arranged in the following way:

In this case, the fourth priority is not on a dash, so the molecule must be rotated into the appropriate perspective:

STEP 4
Rotate the molecule so that the fourth priority is on a dash.

STEP 5
Assign the configuration based on the order of the sequence 1-2-3.

The sequence of 1-2-3 is counterclockwise, so the configuration is *S*. If the rotation step is difficult to see, the technique described earlier will help. Switch the 4 and the 1, so that the 4 is on a dash. Then switch the 2 and the 3. After two successive switches, the configuration remains the same:

Now the 4 is on a dash, where it needs to be. The sequence of 1-2-3 is counterclockwise, so the configuration is *S*.

PRACTICE the skill

5.9 Each of the following compounds possesses carbon atoms that are chiral centers. Locate each of these chiral centers and identify the configuration of each one:

(a)

Ephedrine
A bronchodilator and decongestant obtained from the Chinese plant *Ephedra sinica*

(b)

Halomon
An antitumor agent isolated from marine organisms

(c)

Streptimidone
An antibiotic

(d)

Biotin
(vitamin B_7)

(e)

Kumepaloxane
A signal agent produced by *Haminoea cymbalum*, a snail indigenous to Guam

(f)

Chloramphenicol
An antibiotic agent isolated from the *Streptomyces venezuelae* bacterium

APPLY the skill

5.10 In Chapter 25, we will see that amino acids (like the ones shown below) can be linked together to give short chains, called peptides, or longer chains (~50–2000 amino acids linked together) called proteins. High-protein foods such as chicken egg whites are good sources of peptides and proteins that are good for your health.[1] Of the 20 naturally occurring amino acids, 19 are chiral and all but one has the same configuration at the alpha carbon (the carbon atom next to the COOH group).

(a) Assign a configuration to each of the four amino acids shown below, and determine which one is the exception.

(b) Explain why glycine is achiral.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 5.31, 5.34, 5.35, 5.39a–e,g, 5.50, 5.63**

Designating Configuration in IUPAC Nomenclature

When naming a chiral compound, the configuration of the chiral center is indicated at the beginning of the name, italicized, and surrounded by parentheses:

(*R*)-2-Butanol (*S*)-2-Butanol

When multiple chiral centers are present, each configuration must be preceded by a locant (a number) to indicate its location on the parent chain:

(2*R*,3*S*)-3-Methyl-2-pentanol

BioLinks Chiral Drugs

Thousands of drugs are marketed throughout the world. The origins of these drugs fall into three categories:

1. natural products—compounds isolated from natural sources, such as plants or bacteria,
2. natural products that have been chemically modified in the laboratory, or
3. synthetic compounds (made entirely in the laboratory).

Most drugs obtained from natural sources consist of a single enantiomer. It is important to realize that a pair of enantiomers will rarely exhibit the same potency. We have seen (in the application boxes in Sections 1.13 and 2.6) that drug action is usually the result of drug-receptor binding. If the drug binds to the receptor in at least three places (called three-point binding), then one enantiomer of the drug may be more capable of binding with the receptor:

The first compound (left) can bind with the receptor, while its enantiomer (right) cannot bind with the receptor. For this reason,

enantiomers will rarely produce the same biological response. As an example, consider the enantiomers of ibuprofen:

(*S*)-Ibuprofen

(*R*)-Ibuprofen

Ibuprofen is an analgesic (painkiller) with anti-inflammatory properties. The *S* enantiomer is the active agent, while the *R* enantiomer is inactive. Nevertheless, ibuprofen is sold as a mixture of both enantiomers (under the trade names Advil and Motrin), because the benefit of separating the enantiomers is not clear. In fact, there is evidence that the human body is capable of slowly converting the *R* enantiomer into the desired *S* enantiomer. Many synthetic drugs are sold as a mixture of enantiomers, because of the high cost and difficulty associated with separating enantiomers.

In many cases, enantiomers can trigger entirely different physiological responses. For example, consider the enantiomers of Timolol:

(*S*)-Timolol

(*R*)-Timolol

The *S* enantiomer treats angina and high blood pressure, while the *R* enantiomer is useful in treating glaucoma. In this example, both enantiomers produce desirable, albeit different, results. In other cases, one enantiomer can produce an undesirable response. For example, consider the enantiomers of penicillamine:

(*R*)-Penicillamine

(*S*)-Penicillamine

The *S* enantiomer was used to treat chronic arthritis (until other, more effective drugs were developed), while the *R* enantiomer is highly toxic. In such a case, the drug cannot be sold as a mixture of enantiomers. Penicillamine is a first-line drug for the treatment of *Wilson's disease*. Wilson's disease is a rare (1:30,000) genetic disease that causes accumulation of copper ions in the body. Penicillamine acts by chelating (binding) excess copper ions and promoting their excretion in urine.

Another example is naproxen:

(*S*)-Naproxen

(*R*)-Naproxen

The *S* enantiomer is an anti-inflammatory agent, while the *R* enantiomer is a liver toxin. In these cases where one enantiomer of the drug is known to be a toxin, the drug is sold as a single enantiomer.

Phase I and III pills, Dimitris66/Getty Images; *Circles of people*, diez artwork/Shutterstock

In the past, the majority of drugs on the market have been mixtures of enantiomers, but many old mixtures are being replaced with new drugs that are pure enantiomers. This is because the FDA has encouraged development of single enantiomers by allowing drug companies to apply for new patents that cover single enantiomers of drugs previously sold as mixtures (provided that they demonstrate the advantages of the single enantiomer over the mixture of enantiomers). Recent advances in enantioselective synthesis have opened new doorways to the production of single-enantiomer drugs. This is reflected by the fact that most new drugs entering the market are sold as a single enantiomer.

For more examples of enantiomers that produce different biological responses, see *J. Chem. Ed.*, **1996**, *73*, 481.

5.4 Optical Activity

Enantiomers exhibit identical physical properties. For example, compare the melting and boiling points for the enantiomers of carvone:

(*R*)-Carvone

Melting point = 25°C
Boiling point = 231°C

(*S*)-Carvone

Melting point = 25°C
Boiling point = 231°C

This should make sense, because physical properties are determined by intermolecular interactions, and the intermolecular interactions of one enantiomer are just the mirror image of the intermolecular interactions of the other enantiomer. Nevertheless, enantiomers do exhibit different behavior when exposed to plane-polarized light. To explore this difference, let's first quickly review the nature of light.

Plane-Polarized Light

Electromagnetic radiation (light) is comprised of oscillating electric and magnetic fields propagating through space (Figure 5.6). Notice that each oscillating field is located in a plane, and these

FIGURE 5.6
Light waves consist of perpendicular, oscillating electric and magnetic fields.

FIGURE 5.7
Unpolarized light.

planes are perpendicular to each other. The orientation of the electric field (shown in red) is called the **polarization** of the light wave. When many waves of light are traveling in the same direction, they each have a different polarization, randomly oriented with respect to one another (Figure 5.7). When light passes through a polarizing filter, only photons of a particular polarization are allowed to pass through the filter, giving rise to **plane-polarized light** (Figure 5.8). When plane-polarized light is passed through a second polarizing filter, the orientation of the filter will determine whether light passes through or is blocked (Figure 5.9).

FIGURE 5.8
Plane-polarized light.

FIGURE 5.9
Plane-polarized light passing through (a) two parallel polarizing filters or (b) two perpendicular polarizing filters.

Polarimetry

In 1815, French scientist Jean Baptiste Biot was exploring the nature of light by passing plane-polarized light through various solutions of organic compounds. In so doing, he discovered that solutions of certain organic compounds (such as sugar) rotate the plane of plane-polarized light. These compounds were therefore said to be **optically active**. He also noted that only some organic compounds possess this quality. Compounds lacking this ability were said to be **optically inactive**.

The rotation of plane-polarized light caused by optically active compounds can be measured using a device called a **polarimeter** (Figure 5.10). The light source is generally a sodium lamp, which emits light at a fixed wavelength of 589 nm, called the D line of sodium. This light then passes through a polarizing filter, and the resulting plane-polarized light continues through a tube containing a solution of an optically active compound, which causes the plane to rotate. The polarization of the emerging light can then be determined by rotating the second filter and observing the orientation that allows the light to pass.

FIGURE 5.10
The components of a polarimeter.

Source of Optical Activity

In 1847, an explanation for the source of optical activity was proposed by French scientist Louis Pasteur. Pasteur's investigation of tartrate salts (discussed later in Section 5.10) led him to the conclusion that optical activity is a direct consequence of chirality. That is, chiral compounds are optically active, while achiral compounds are not. Moreover, Pasteur noted that enantiomers (nonsuperimposable mirror images) will rotate the plane of plane-polarized light in equal amounts but in opposite directions. We will now explore this idea in more detail.

Specific Rotation

When a solution of a chiral compound is placed in a polarimeter, the **observed rotation** (symbolized by the Greek letter alpha, α) will be dependent on the number of molecules that the light encounters as it travels through the solution. If the concentration of the solution is doubled, the observed rotation will be doubled. The same is true for the distance that the light travels through the solution (the pathlength). If the pathlength is doubled, the observed rotation will be doubled. In order to compare the rotations for various compounds, scientists had to choose a set of standard conditions. By using a standard concentration (1 g/mL) and a standard pathlength (1 dm) for measuring rotations, it is possible to make meaningful comparisons between compounds. The **specific rotation** for a compound is defined as the observed rotation under these standard conditions.

It is not always practical to use a concentration of 1 g/mL when measuring the optical activity of a compound, because chemists often work with very small quantities of a compound (milligrams, rather than grams). Very often, optical activity must be measured using a very dilute solution. To account for the use of nonstandard conditions, the specific rotation can be calculated in the following way:

$$\text{Specific rotation} = [\alpha] = \frac{\alpha}{c \times l}$$

where $[\alpha]$ is the specific rotation, α is the observed rotation, c is the concentration (measured in grams per milliliter), and l is the pathlength (measured in decimeters, where 1 dm = 10 cm). In this way, the specific rotation for a compound can be calculated for nonstandard concentrations or pathlengths. The specific rotation of a compound is a physical constant, much like its melting point or boiling point.

The specific rotation of a compound is also sensitive to temperature and wavelength, but these factors cannot be incorporated into the equation, because the relationship between these factors and

the specific rotation is not a linear relationship. In other words, doubling the temperature does not necessarily double the observed rotation; in fact, it can sometimes cause a decrease in the observed rotation. The wavelength chosen can also affect the observed rotation in a nonlinear fashion. Therefore, these two factors are simply reported in the following format:

$$[\alpha]_{\lambda}^{T}$$

where T is the temperature (in degrees Celsius) and λ is the wavelength of light used. Some examples are as follows:

(*R*)-2-Bromobutane (*S*)-2-Bromobutane

$[\alpha]_{D}^{20} = -23.1$ $[\alpha]_{D}^{20} = +23.1$

where D stands for the D line of sodium (589 nm). Notice that the specific rotations for enantiomers are equal in magnitude but opposite in direction. A compound exhibiting a positive rotation (+) is said to be **dextrorotatory**, while a compound exhibiting a negative rotation (−) is said to be **levorotatory**. In the example above, the first enantiomer is levorotatory and is therefore called (−)-2-bromobutane, while the second enantiomer is dextrorotatory and is therefore called (+)-2-bromobutane. There is no direct relationship between the *R*/*S* system of nomenclature and the sign of the specific rotation (+ or −). The descriptors (*R*) and (*S*) refer to the configuration (the three-dimensional arrangement) of a chiral center, which is independent of conditions. In contrast, the descriptors (+) and (−) refer to the direction in which plane-polarized light is rotated, which is dependent on conditions. As an example, consider the structure of (*S*)-aspartic acid, which has one chiral center:

The configuration of the chiral center is *S*, regardless of temperature. But the optical activity of this compound is very sensitive to temperature: It is levorotatory at 20°C, but it is dextrorotatory at 100°C. This example illustrates that we cannot use the configuration (*R* or *S*) to predict whether a compound will be (+) or (−). The magnitude and direction of optical activity can only be determined experimentally.

SKILLBUILDER

5.4 CALCULATING SPECIFIC ROTATION

LEARN the skill

When 0.300 g of sucrose is dissolved in 10.0 mL of water and placed in a sample cell 10.0 cm in length, the observed rotation is +1.99° (using the D line of sodium at 20°C). Calculate the specific rotation of sucrose.

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Use the following equation.

The following equation can be used to calculate the specific rotation:

$$\text{Specific rotation} = [\alpha] = \frac{\alpha}{c \times l}$$

and the problem provides all of the necessary values to plug into this equation. We just need to make sure that the units are correct: *Concentration* (*c*) must be in units of grams per milliliter. The problem states that 0.300 g is dissolved in 10.0 mL. Therefore, the concentration

is 0.300 g/10.0 mL = 0.03 g/mL. *Pathlength* (l) must be reported in decimeters (where 1 dm = 10 cm). The problem states that the pathlength is 10.0 cm, which is equivalent to 1.00 dm. Now, simply plug these values into the equation:

STEP 2
Plug in the given values.

$$\text{Specific rotation} = [\alpha] = \frac{\alpha}{c \times l} = \frac{+1.99°}{0.03\ \text{g/mL} \times 1.00\ \text{dm}} = +66.3$$

The temperature (20°C) and wavelength (D line of sodium) are reported as a superscript and subscript, respectively. Notice that the specific rotation is generally reported as if it were a unitless number:

$$[\alpha]_D^{20} = +66.3$$

PRACTICE the skill

5.11 When 0.575 g of monosodium glutamate (MSG) is dissolved in 10.0 mL of water and placed in a sample cell 10.0 cm in length, the observed rotation at 20°C (using the D line of sodium) is +1.47°. Calculate the specific rotation of MSG.

5.12 When 0.095 g of cholesterol is dissolved in 1.00 mL of ether and placed in a sample cell 10.0 cm in length, the observed rotation at 20°C (using the D line of sodium) is −2.99°. Calculate the specific rotation of cholesterol.

5.13 When 1.30 g of menthol is dissolved in 5.00 mL of ether and placed in a sample cell 10.0 cm in length, the observed rotation at 20°C (using the D line of sodium) is +0.57°. Calculate the specific rotation of menthol.

APPLY the skill

5.14 Levetiracetam is used for the treatment of seizures in patients with epilepsy. For patients who have a hard time swallowing the needed pills twice daily, relief is in sight now that the FDA has granted approval for the use of rapidly dissolving, porous tablets produced with a 3D printer.[2] Levetiracetam has a specific rotation of $[\alpha]_D^{20} = -93.4$.

Levetiracetam

(a) If a 500-mg tablet of levetiracetam is dissolved in 10.0 mL of acetone and placed in a sample cell with a length of 10.0 cm, what observed rotation is expected?

(b) Levetiracetam is the (S) enantiomer of the memory-enhancing drug called etiracetam. What do you think inspired the name of levetiracetam?

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 5.41, 5.42, 5.49, 5.54c, 5.56**

BY THE WAY
In reality, a racemic mixture is unlikely to have *exactly equal* amounts of enantiomers, but any difference is too small to be measured and therefore insignificant. In a solution of 6.02×10^{23} molecules, it is statistically unlikely (in the extreme, bordering on impossible) to have the *exact* same number of molecules of each enantiomer.

Enantiomeric Excess

A solution containing a single enantiomer is said to be **optically pure**, or **enantiomerically pure**. That is, the other enantiomer is entirely absent.

A solution containing equal amounts of both enantiomers is called a **racemic mixture** and will be optically inactive. When plane-polarized light passes through such a mixture, the light encounters one molecule at a time, rotating slightly with each interaction. Since there are equal amounts of both enantiomers, the net rotation will be zero degrees. Although the individual compounds are optically active, the mixture is not optically active.

A solution containing both enantiomers in unequal amounts will be optically active. For example, imagine a solution of 2-butanol, containing 70% (R)-2-butanol and 30% (S)-2-butanol. In such a case, there is a 40% excess of the R stereoisomer (70% − 30%). The remainder of the solution is an equal mixture of both enantiomers. In this case, the **enantiomeric excess** (*ee*) is 40%.

The % *ee* of a compound is experimentally measured in the following way:

$$\%\ ee = \frac{[\alpha]\text{ of mixture}}{[\alpha]\text{ of pure enantiomer}} \times 100\%$$

Let's get some practice using this expression to calculate % *ee*.

SKILLBUILDER

5.5 CALCULATING % *ee*

LEARN the skill

The specific rotation of optically pure adrenaline in water (at 25°C) is −53. A chemist devised a synthetic route to prepare optically pure adrenaline, but it was suspected that the product was contaminated with a small amount of the undesirable enantiomer. The specific rotation of the mixture was found to be −45. Calculate the % *ee* of the product.

SOLUTION

We use the following equation to calculate the % *ee*:

STEP 1 Use the following equation.

$$\%\ ee = \frac{[\alpha]\text{ of mixture}}{[\alpha]\text{ of pure enantiomer}} \times 100\%$$

and then plug in the given values:

STEP 2 Plug in the given values.

$$\%\ ee = \frac{-45}{-53} \times 100\% = 85\%$$

An 85% *ee* indicates that 85% of the product is adrenaline, while the remaining 15% is an equal mixture of adrenaline and its enantiomer (7.5% adrenaline and 7.5% of the enantiomer). An 85% *ee* therefore indicates that the product is comprised of 92.5% adrenaline and 7.5% of the undesired enantiomer.

PRACTICE the skill

5.15 The specific rotation of optically pure L-dopa in water (at 15°C) is −39.5. A chemist prepared a mixture of L-dopa and its enantiomer, and this mixture had a specific rotation of −37. Calculate the % *ee* of this mixture.

5.16 The specific rotation of optically pure ephedrine in ethanol (at 20°C) is −6.3. A chemist prepared a mixture of ephedrine and its enantiomer, and this mixture had a specific rotation of −6.0. Calculate the % *ee* of this mixture.

5.17 The specific rotation of optically pure vitamin B_7 in water (at 22°C) is +92. A chemist prepared a mixture of vitamin B_7 and its enantiomer, and this mixture had a specific rotation of +85. Calculate the % *ee* of this mixture.

APPLY the skill

5.18 Synthetic chemists often employ enzymes to conduct asymmetric syntheses that favor the production of one enantiomer over another. Baker's yeast was used to convert the diketone shown into alcohol **1**, with an *ee* of 84%.[3] The specific rotation for the pure (*S*) enantiomer of **1** is reported to be +88.6. Calculate the expected specific rotation for the sample of **1** that was synthesized with baker's yeast.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 5.40, 5.43, 5.54a,b**

5.5 Stereoisomeric Relationships: Enantiomers and Diastereomers

In Section 5.1, we saw that stereoisomers have the same constitution (connectivity of atoms) but are nonsuperimposable (they differ in their spatial arrangement of atoms). Stereoisomers can be subdivided into two categories, as shown in Figure 5.11.

FIGURE 5.11
The main categories of stereoisomers.

Enantiomers are stereoisomers that are mirror images of one another, while **diastereomers** are stereoisomers that are not mirror images of one another. According to these definitions, we can understand why *cis-trans* isomers (discussed in Section 5.1) are said to be diastereomers, rather than enantiomers. Consider, once again, the structures of *cis*-2-butene and *trans*-2-butene:

cis-2-Butene *trans*-2-Butene

They are stereoisomers, but they are not mirror images of one another and are therefore diastereomers. An important difference between enantiomers and diastereomers is that enantiomers have the same physical properties (as seen in Section 5.4), while diastereomers have different physical properties (as seen in Section 5.1).

The difference between enantiomers and diastereomers becomes especially relevant when we consider compounds containing more than one chiral center. As an example, consider the following structure:

This structure has two chiral centers. Each one can have either the *R* configuration or the *S* configuration, giving rise to four possible stereoisomers (two pairs of enantiomers):

To describe the relationship between these four stereoisomers, we will look at one of them and describe its relationship to the other three stereoisomers. The first stereoisomer listed above has the configuration (1*R*, 2*S*). This stereoisomer has only one mirror image, or enantiomer, which has the configuration (1*S*, 2*R*). The third stereoisomer is not a mirror image of the first stereoisomer and is therefore its diastereomer. In a similar way, there is a diastereomeric relationship between the first stereoisomer and the fourth stereoisomer above because they are not mirror images of one another.

To help better visualize the relationship between these four compounds, we will use an analogy. Imagine a family with four children (two sets of twins). The first pair of twins are identical to each other in almost every way, except for the placement of one birthmark. One child has the birthmark on the right cheek, while the other child has the birthmark on the left cheek. These twins can be distinguished from each other based on the position of the birthmark. They are nonsuperimposable mirror images of each other. The second pair of twins look very different from the first pair. But the second pair of twins are once again identical to each other in every way, except the position of the birthmark on the cheek. They are nonsuperimposable mirror images of each other.

In this family of four children, each child has one twin and two other siblings. The same relationship exists for the four stereoisomers shown above. In this molecular family, each stereoisomer has exactly one enantiomer (mirror-image twin) and two diastereomers (siblings).

Now consider a case with three chiral centers:

Once again, each chiral center can have either the *R* configuration or the *S* configuration, giving rise to a family of eight possible stereoisomers:

These eight stereoisomers are arranged above as four pairs of enantiomers. To help visualize this, imagine a family with eight children (four sets of twins). Each pair of twins are identical to each other with the exception of the birthmark, allowing them to be distinguished from one another. In this family, each child will have one twin and six other siblings. Similarly, in the molecular family shown above, each stereoisomer has exactly one enantiomer (mirror-image twin) and six diastereomers (siblings).

Note that the presence of three chiral centers produces a family of four pairs of enantiomers. A compound with four chiral centers will generate a family of eight pairs of enantiomers. This begs the obvious question: What is the relationship between the number of chiral centers and the number of stereoisomers in the family? This relationship can be summarized as follows:

$$\text{Maximum number of stereoisomers} = 2^n$$

where n refers to the number of chiral centers. A compound with four chiral centers can have a maximum of 2^4 stereoisomers = 16 stereoisomers, or eight pairs of enantiomers. As another example, consider the structure of cholesterol:

Cholesterol

Cholesterol has eight chiral centers, giving rise to a family of 2^8 stereoisomers (256 stereoisomers). The specific stereoisomer shown has only one enantiomer and 254 diastereomers, although the structure shown is the only stereoisomer produced by nature.

SKILLBUILDER

5.6 DETERMINING THE STEREOISOMERIC RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN TWO COMPOUNDS

LEARN the skill

Identify whether each pair of compounds are enantiomers or diastereomers:

SOLUTION

(a) In SkillBuilder 5.1, we saw how to draw the enantiomer of a compound. In particular, we saw that the easiest method is to redraw the compound and invert all chiral centers. That is, all dashes are redrawn as wedges, and all wedges are redrawn as dashes. Remember that two compounds can only be enantiomers if all of their chiral centers have opposite configuration. Let's carefully analyze all three chiral centers in each compound. Two of the chiral centers do have opposite configurations:

STEP 1 Compare the configuration of each chiral center.

But there remains one chiral center that has the same configuration in both stereoisomers:

STEP 2 If only some of the chiral centers have opposite configuration, then the compounds are diastereomers.

Therefore, these stereoisomers are not mirror images of each other; they must be diastereomers.

(b) Once again, compare the configurations of the chiral centers in both compounds. The first chiral center is easily identified as having a different configuration in each compound:

STEP 1 Compare the configuration of each chiral center.

The second chiral center is harder to compare with a brief inspection, because the skeleton is drawn in a different conformation (remember that single bonds are always free to rotate). When in doubt, you can always just assign a configuration (*R* or *S*) to each chiral center and compare them that way:

STEP 2 If all chiral centers have opposite configuration, then the compounds are enantiomers.

When comparing these stereoisomers, both chiral centers have opposite configurations, so these compounds are enantiomers.

PRACTICE the skill

5.19 Identify whether each of the following pairs of compounds are enantiomers or diastereomers:

APPLY the skill

5.20 In the field of chemical research, one area of interest is the study of how variations in structure, including stereochemical variations, affect the biological activity of natural products. (−)-Lariciresinol, shown on the right, is a natural product that exhibits plant growth inhibition. (−)-Lariciresinol and all of its stereoisomers were made in the laboratory and evaluated for their ability to regulate plant growth.[4] Draw all stereoisomers of (−)-lariciresinol, and identify each as either an enantiomer or a diastereomer of the natural product.

(−)-Lariciresinol

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 5.19, 5.20, 5.36a–g, 5.44b, 5.53b–d, 5.70**

5.6 Symmetry and Chirality

Rotational Symmetry Versus Reflectional Symmetry

In this section we will learn how to determine whether a compound is chiral or achiral. It is true that any compound with a single chiral center must be chiral. But the same statement is not necessarily true for compounds with two chiral centers. Consider the *cis* and *trans* isomers of 1,2-dimethylcyclohexane:

trans-
1,2-Dimethylcyclohexane

cis-
1,2-Dimethylcyclohexane

Each of these compounds has two chiral centers, but the *trans* isomer is chiral, while the *cis* isomer is not chiral. To understand why, we must explore the relationship between symmetry and chirality. Let's quickly review the different types of symmetry.

Broadly speaking, there are only two types of symmetry: *rotational symmetry* and *reflectional symmetry*. The first compound above (the *trans* isomer) exhibits rotational symmetry. To visualize this, imagine that the cyclohexane ring is pierced with an imaginary stick. Then, while your eyes are closed, the stick is rotated:

Rotate 180° about this axis **This operation generated the same exact image**

If, after opening your eyes, it is impossible to determine whether or not the rotation occurred, then the molecule possesses rotational symmetry. The imaginary stick is called an **axis of symmetry**.

FIGURE 5.12
An illustration showing the plane of symmetry that is present in *cis*-1,2-dimethylcyclohexane.

Now let's consider the structure of the *cis* isomer:

This compound does not have the same axis of symmetry that the *trans* isomer exhibits. If we pierce the molecule with an imaginary stick, we would have to rotate 360° in order to regenerate the exact same image. The same is true if we pierce the molecule from any angle. Therefore, this compound does not exhibit rotational symmetry. However, the compound does exhibit reflectional symmetry. Imagine closing your eyes while the molecule is reflected about the plane shown in Figure 5.12. That is, everything on the right side is reflected to the left side, and everything on the left side is reflected to the right side. When you open your eyes, you will not be able to determine whether or not the reflection took place. This molecule possesses a **plane of symmetry**.

To summarize, a molecule with an axis of symmetry possesses rotational symmetry, and a molecule with a plane of symmetry possesses reflectional symmetry. With an understanding of these two types of symmetry, we can now explore the relationship between symmetry and chirality. In particular, *chirality is not dependent in any way on rotational symmetry*. That is, the presence or absence of an axis of symmetry is completely irrelevant when determining whether a compound is chiral or achiral. We saw that *trans*-1,2-dimethylcyclohexane possesses rotational symmetry; nevertheless, the compound is still chiral and exists as a pair of enantiomers:

Even the presence of several different axes of symmetry does not indicate whether the compound is chiral or achiral. Chirality is only dependent on the presence or absence of reflectional symmetry. *Any compound that possesses a plane of symmetry in any conformation will be achiral.* We saw that the *cis* isomer of 1,2-dimethylcyclohexane exhibits a plane of symmetry, and therefore, the compound is achiral. It is identical to its mirror image. It does not have an enantiomer.

Although the presence of a plane of symmetry renders a compound achiral, the converse is not always true—that is, the absence of a plane of symmetry does not necessarily mean that the compound is chiral. Why? Because a plane of symmetry is only one type of reflectional symmetry. There are other types of reflectional symmetry, and the presence of any kind of reflectional symmetry will render a compound achiral. As an example, consider the following compound:

This compound does not have a plane of symmetry, but it does have another kind of reflectional symmetry. Instead of reflecting about a plane, imagine reflecting about a point at the center of the compound. Reflection about a point (rather than a plane) is called *inversion*. During the inversion process, the methyl group at the top of the drawing (on a wedge) is reflected to the bottom of the drawing (on a dash). Similarly, the methyl group at the bottom of the drawing (on a dash) is reflected to the top of the drawing (on a wedge). All other groups are also reflected about the center of the compound. If your eyes are closed when the inversion takes place, you would not be able to determine whether anything had happened. The compound is said to exhibit a center of inversion, which endows it with reflectional symmetry. As a result, the compound is achiral even though it lacks a plane of symmetry.

There are also other types of reflectional symmetry, but they are beyond the scope of our discussion. For our purposes, it will be sufficient to look for a plane of symmetry. We can summarize the relationship between symmetry and chirality with the following three statements:

- The presence or absence of rotational symmetry is irrelevant to chirality.
- A compound that has a plane of symmetry will be achiral.
- A compound that lacks a plane of symmetry will most likely be chiral (although there are rare exceptions, which can mostly be ignored for our purposes).

We will now practice identifying planes of symmetry.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

5.21 For each of the following objects determine whether or not it possesses a plane of symmetry:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

(f)

Syda Productions/Shutterstock

5.22 In the previous problem, one object has three planes of symmetry. Identify that object.

5.23 Each of the following molecules has one plane of symmetry. Find the plane of symmetry in each case: (**Hint:** A plane of symmetry can slice atoms in half.)

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

(f)

Meso Compounds

We have seen that the presence of chiral centers does not necessarily render a compound chiral. Specifically, a compound that exhibits reflectional symmetry will be achiral even though it has chiral centers. Such compounds are called ***meso* compounds**. A family of stereoisomers containing a *meso* compound will have fewer than 2^n stereoisomers. As an example, consider the following structure:

This structure has two chiral centers and therefore we would expect 2^2 (=4) stereoisomers. In other words, we expect two pairs of enantiomers:

A pair of enantiomers

But these two drawings represent the same compound

The first pair of enantiomers meets our expectations. But the second pair is actually just one compound. It has reflectional symmetry and is therefore a *meso* compound:

The compound is not chiral, and it does not have an enantiomer. To help visualize this, imagine a family with three children: a pair of twins and a single child. The pair of twins are identical to each other in almost every way, except for the placement of one birthmark. One child has the birthmark on the right cheek, while the other child has the birthmark on the left cheek. They are nonsuperimposable mirror images of each other. In contrast, the single child has two birthmarks: one on each cheek. This child is superimposable on his own mirror image; he does not have a twin. This family of three children is similar to the molecular family of three stereoisomers shown above.

SKILLBUILDER

5.7 IDENTIFYING *MESO* COMPOUNDS

LEARN the skill

Draw all possible stereoisomers of 1,3-dimethylcyclopentane:

SOLUTION

This compound has two chiral centers, so we expect four possible stereoisomers (two pairs of enantiomers):

Before concluding that there are four stereoisomers here, we must look to see if either pair of enantiomers is actually just a *meso* compound. The first pair does in fact represent a pair of enantiomers.

Students often have trouble seeing that these two compounds are nonsuperimposable. It is a common mistake to believe that rotating the first compound will generate the second compound. This is not the case! Recall that a methyl group on a dash is pointing away from us (behind the page) while a methyl group on a wedge is pointing toward us (in front of the page). When the first compound above is rotated about a vertical axis, the methyl group on the left side ends up on the right side of the compound, but it does not remain as a wedge. Why? Before the rotation, it was pointing toward us, but after the rotation, it is pointing away from us (a molecular model will help you see this). As a result, that methyl group ends up as a dash on the right side of the compound. The fate of the other methyl group is similar. Before the rotation, it is on a dash on the right side of the compound, but after the rotation, it ends up as a wedge on the left side of the compound. As a result, rotating this compound will only regenerate the same drawing again:

Rotating this compound will never give its enantiomer:

These compounds are enantiomers because they lack reflectional symmetry. They only possess rotational symmetry, which is completely irrelevant.

In contrast, the second pair of compounds do not represent a pair of enantiomers; instead, they represent two drawings of the same compound (a *meso* compound):

A pair of enantiomers

These two drawings represent the same compound

This molecular family is therefore comprised of only three stereoisomers—a pair of enantiomers and one *meso* compound:

A pair of enantiomers

A *meso* compound

PRACTICE the skill

5.24 Draw all possible stereoisomers for each of the following compounds. Each possible stereoisomer should be drawn only once:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

APPLY the skill

5.25 A racemic mixture of the compound shown below was isolated from the *Maytenus apurimacensis* plant that is used in South American folk medicine. In an effort to find another source of these compounds, all of the stereoisomers have been made in the laboratory.[5] Draw all possible stereoisomers of this compound and identify whether each one is chiral or achiral. Deduce which two stereoisomers were isolated from the plant, and explain your choice.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 5.37, 5.51, 5.52, 5.55, 5.60, 5.62, 5.64a,b,d,f–h, 5.68, 5.69**

5.7 Fischer Projections

There is another drawing style that is often used when dealing with compounds bearing multiple chiral centers. These drawings, called **Fischer projections**, were devised by the German chemist Emil Fischer in 1891. Fischer was investigating sugars, which have multiple chiral centers. In order to quickly draw these compounds, he developed a faster method for drawing chiral centers:

Two chiral centers

Three chiral centers

Four chiral centers

For each chiral center in a Fischer projection, the horizontal lines are considered to be coming out of the page, and the vertical lines are considered to be going behind the page:

Fischer projections are primarily used for analyzing sugars (Chapter 24). In addition, Fischer projections are also helpful for quickly comparing the relationship between stereoisomers:

The first pair of compounds are enantiomers because all chiral centers have opposite configuration. The second pair of compounds are diastereomers. Recall that two compounds will be enantiomers only if all of their chiral centers have opposite configurations. Students often have trouble assigning configurations to chiral centers in a Fischer projection, so let's get some practice with that skill.

SKILLBUILDER

5.8 ASSIGNING CONFIGURATION FROM A FISCHER PROJECTION

LEARN the skill

Assign the configuration of the chiral center in the following compound:

SOLUTION

Remember what a Fischer projection represents. All horizontal lines are wedges and all vertical lines are dashes:

Until now, chiral centers have not been shown in this way. We are more accustomed to assigning configurations when a chiral center is shown with only one dash and one wedge:

The chiral center of a Fischer projection can easily be converted into this more familiar type of drawing. Simply choose one horizontal line in the Fischer projection and redraw it as a wedge; then choose one vertical line and draw it as a dash. The answer will be the same, regardless of which two lines are chosen:

STEP 1 Draw one horizontal line as a wedge and draw one vertical line as a dash.

STEP 2 Assign the configuration using the steps in SkillBuilder 5.3.

The configuration of this chiral center will be *R* in all of the drawings. To see why this works, build a molecular model and rotate it around to convince yourself.

When a Fischer projection has multiple chiral centers, this process is simply repeated for each chiral center.

PRACTICE the skill

5.26 Identify the configuration of the chiral center in each of the following compounds:

APPLY the skill

5.27 *Protease inhibitors* are a class of anti-viral drugs that have had success in treating HIV/AIDS. The following molecules were synthesized as potential HIV protease inhibitors.[6] Compound **1** was found to be an effective protease inhibitor, while compound **2** was found to be ineffective.

(a) Assign the configuration of each chiral center in compounds **1** and **2**.

(b) Determine the relationship between compounds **1** and **2**.

(c) Draw bond-line structures, using dashes and wedges, for compounds **1** and **2**.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 5.39f, 5.44a, 5.46c, 5.47, 5.48, 5.64c,e, 5.65–5.67**

5.8 Conformationally Mobile Systems

In the previous chapter, we learned how to draw Newman projections, and we used them to compare the various conformations of butane. Recall that butane can adopt two staggered conformations that exhibit *gauche* interactions:

These two conformations are nonsuperimposable mirror images of each other (much like the relationship between a pair of enantiomers). But unlike enantiomers, these two conformations are constantly interconverting via single bond rotation at room temperature (which occurs with a very low energy barrier). As a result, butane is an achiral compound and therefore optically inactive. The temperature would have to be extremely low to prevent interconversion between these two conformations. In contrast, a chiral center cannot invert its configuration via single-bond rotations. (*R*)-2-Butanol cannot be converted into (*S*)-2-butanol via a conformational change.

In the previous chapter, we also saw that substituted cyclohexanes adopt various conformations. Consider, for example, (*cis*)-1,2-dimethylcyclohexane. Below are both chair conformations:

The second chair has been rotated in space to illustrate the relationship between these two chair conformations. These conformations are mirror images, yet they are not superimposable on one another. To see this more clearly, compare them in the following way: Traveling *clockwise* around the ring, the first chair has an axial methyl group first, followed by an equatorial methyl group. The second chair, going *clockwise* again, has an equatorial methyl group first, followed by an axial methyl group. The order has been reversed. These two conformations are distinguishable from one another; that is, they are not superimposable. The relationship between these two chair conformations is

much like the relationship between a pair of enantiomers (nonsuperimposable mirror images). However, unlike enantiomers, these conformations are constantly interconverting via single bond rotation at room temperature. As a result, this compound is achiral and therefore optically inactive.

The following procedure will be helpful for determining whether or not a cyclic compound is optically active: (1) Either draw a Haworth projection of the compound or simply draw a ring with dashes and wedges for all substituents and then (2) look for a plane of symmetry in either one of these drawings. For example, (*cis*)-1,2-dimethylcyclohexane can be drawn in either of the following ways:

Internal plane of symmetry **Internal plane of symmetry**

In each drawing, a plane of symmetry is apparent, and the presence of that symmetry plane indicates that the compound is not optically active.

5.9 Chiral Compounds that Lack a Chiral Center

As we have seen throughout this chapter, the most common source of molecular chirality is the presence of one or more chiral centers. However, the presence of a chiral center is not a necessary condition for a compound to be chiral. Indeed, there are many examples of chiral compounds that lack a chiral center. In this section, we will explore a few such examples.

Atropisomers

Substituted biphenyls, like the one shown below, exhibit severely restricted rotation about the bond that connects the two aromatic rings. When this bond rotates, the substituents experience steric interactions that prevent the molecule from adopting a fully planar conformation (with both rings occupying the same plane). Such a conformation is too high in energy and cannot form, not even for an instant. This locks the molecule into one of two possible conformations, shown here.

Does not form
(too high in energy)

Each of these conformations is a nonsuperimposable mirror image of the other, so these conformations have an enantiomeric relationship. Since they cannot interconvert, it is possible to separate the enantiomers, each of which is observed to be optically active. They are called **atropisomers**, which are stereoisomers that result from the hindered rotation of a single bond.

There are many well-known examples of atropisomers. Another common example, called BINAP, also has two enantiomeric forms, despite the absence of a chiral center:

(*S*)-BINAP
(*S*)-2,2'-Bis(diphenyl phosphino)-1,1'-binaphthyl

Does not form
(too high in energy)

(*R*)-BINAP
(*S*)-2,2'-Bis(diphenyl phosphino)-1,1'-binaphthyl

Once again, the bond connecting the naphthalene rings exhibits severely restricted rotation. Steric interactions prevent the molecule from adopting a planar conformation, which is too high in energy

and cannot form. This locks the molecule into one of two possible conformations, which have an enantiomeric relationship. Indeed, (*R*)-BINAP and (*S*)-BINAP are each regularly used in the preparation of chiral catalysts, as we will see in Section 8.9.

Allenes

Compounds that contain two adjacent C═C bonds are called **allenes** and they are another common class of compounds that can be chiral despite the absence of a chiral center:

Notice that the central carbon atom is *sp* hybridized because it is using two different *p* orbitals. One *p* orbital (shown in grey) is used to form the C═C bond on the left, and the other *p* orbital (shown in orange) is used to form the C═C bond on the right. Since the central carbon atom is using two different *p* orbitals, and since these *p* orbitals are perpendicular to one another, the compound is endowed with an inherent twist. That is, the R groups on the left are drawn on straight lines (in the plane of the page), while the R groups on the right are drawn with a wedge and dash (coming in and out of the page). If the R groups on the left are different from each other, and if the R groups on the right are also different from each other, then the allene will be chiral. For example, the following allene has two configurations which are nonsuperimposable mirror images:

You may find it helpful to build molecular models and prove to yourself that the structures above are enantiomers (nonsuperimposable mirror images).

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

5.28 Determine whether each of the following allenes is chiral or achiral:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

5.10 Resolution of Enantiomers

As mentioned earlier, enantiomers have the same physical properties (boiling point, melting point, solubility, etc.). Since traditional separation techniques generally rely on differences in physical properties, they cannot be used to separate enantiomers from each other. The **resolution** (separation) of enantiomers can be achieved in a variety of other ways.

Resolution via Crystallization

The first resolution of enantiomers occurred in 1847, when Pasteur successfully separated enantiomeric tartrate salts from each other. Tartaric acid is a naturally occurring, optically active compound found in grapes and easily obtained during the wine-making process:

Only this stereoisomer is found in nature, yet Pasteur was able to obtain a racemic mixture of tartrate salts from the owner of a chemical plant:

The tartrate salts were then allowed to crystallize, and Pasteur noticed that the crystals had two distinct shapes that were nonsuperimposable mirror images of each other. Using only a pair of tweezers, he then physically separated the crystals into two piles. He dissolved each pile in water and placed each solution in a polarimeter to discover that their specific rotations were equal in amount but opposite in sign. Pasteur correctly concluded that the molecules themselves must be nonsuperimposable mirror images of each other. He was the first to describe molecules as having this property and is therefore credited with discovering the relationship between enantiomers.

Most racemic mixtures are not easily resolved into mirror-image crystals when allowed to crystallize, so other methods of resolution are required. Two common ways will now be discussed.

Chiral Resolving Agents

When a racemic mixture is treated with a single enantiomer of another compound, the resulting reaction produces a pair of diastereomers (rather than enantiomers):

On the left are the enantiomers of 1-phenylethylamine. When a racemic mixture of these enantiomers is treated with (*S*)-malic acid, a proton transfer reaction produces diastereomeric salts. Diastereomers have different physical properties and can therefore be separated by conventional means (such as crystallization). Once separated, the diastereomeric salts can then be converted back into the original enantiomers by treatment with a base. Thus (*S*)-malic acid is said to be a **resolving agent** in that it makes it possible to resolve the enantiomers of 1-phenylethylamine.

Chiral Column Chromatography

Resolution of enantiomers can also be accomplished with **column chromatography**. In column chromatography, compounds are separated from each other based on a difference in the way they interact with the medium (the adsorbent) through which they are passed. Some compounds interact strongly with the adsorbent and move very slowly through the column; other compounds interact weakly and travel at a faster rate through the column. When enantiomers are passed through a traditional column, they travel at the same rate because their properties are identical. However, if a chiral adsorbent is used, the enantiomers interact with the adsorbent differently, causing them to travel through the column at different rates. Enantiomers are often separated in this way.

5.11 *E* and *Z* Designations for Diastereomeric Alkenes

In the beginning of this chapter, we introduced stereoisomerism by exploring the relationship between *cis* and *trans* alkenes, such as *cis*-2-butene and *trans*-2-butene, which have a diastereomeric relationship. They are not enantiomers because they are not mirror images of each other.

The stereodescriptors *cis* and *trans* are generally reserved for alkenes that are disubstituted. For trisubstituted and tetrasubstituted alkenes, we cannot use *cis-trans* terminology because it would be ambiguous. Consider, for example, the following two compounds:

These two compounds are not the same; they are diastereomers. But which compound should be called *cis* and which should be called *trans*? In situations like this, IUPAC rules provide us with a method for assigning different, unambiguous stereodescriptors. Specifically, we look at the two groups on each vinylic position and choose which of the two groups is assigned the higher priority:

In each case, a priority is assigned by the same method used in Section 5.3. Specifically, priority is given to the element with the higher atomic number. In this case, F has priority over C, while O has priority over H. We then compare the position of the higher priority groups. If they are on the same side (as shown above), the configuration is designated with the letter ***Z*** (for the German word *zusammen*, meaning "together"); if they are on opposite sides, the configuration is designated with the letter ***E*** (for the German word *entgegen*, meaning "opposite"):

These examples are fairly straightforward, because the atoms connected directly to the vinylic positions all have different atomic numbers. Other examples may require the comparison of two carbon atoms. In those cases, we will use the same tie-breaking rules that we used when assigning the configurations of chiral centers. The following SkillBuilder will serve as a reminder of those rules.

SKILLBUILDER

5.9 ASSIGNING THE CONFIGURATION OF A DOUBLE BOND

LEARN the skill

Identify the configuration of the following alkene:

SOLUTION

This compound has two π bonds, but only one of them is stereoisomeric. The π bond shown on the bottom right is not stereoisomeric because it has two hydrogen atoms connected to the same vinylic position.

STEP 1
Identify the two groups connected to one vinylic position and then determine which group has priority.

Let's focus on the other double bond and try to assign its configuration. Consider each vinylic position separately. Let's begin with the vinylic position on the left side. Compare the two groups connected to it and identify which group should be assigned the higher priority.

In this case, we are comparing two carbon atoms (which have the same atomic number), so we construct a list for each carbon atom (just as we did in Section 5.3) and look for the first point of difference:

Remember that we do not add atomic numbers of the atoms in each list, but rather, we look for the first point of difference. O has a higher atomic number than C, so the group in the upper left corner is assigned priority over the *tert*-butyl group.

STEP 2
Identify the two groups connected to the other vinylic position and then determine which group has priority.

Now we turn our attention to the right side of the double bond. Using the same rules, we try to identify which group gets the priority. Once again, we are comparing two carbon atoms, but in this case, constructing lists does not provide us with a point of difference. Both lists are identical:

So, we move farther away from the stereoisomeric double bond and again construct lists and look for the first point of difference. Recall that a double bond is treated as two separate single bonds:

C has a higher atomic number than H, so the group in the bottom right corner is assigned priority over the propyl group.

STEP 3
Determine whether the priorities are on the same side (*Z*) or opposite sides (*E*) of the double bond.

Finally, compare the relative positions of the priority groups. These groups are on opposite sides of the double bond, so the configuration is *E*:

PRACTICE the skill

5.29 For each of the following alkenes, assign the configuration of the double bond as either *E* or *Z*:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

APPLY the skill

5.30 Bogorol A is a natural product with the potential to fight antibiotic-resistant bacteria. Shown below is an intermediate that was used in a synthesis of bogorol A.[7] Assign the configuration of the alkene unit as either *E* or *Z*.

Intermediate in synthesis of bogorol A

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problem 5.75**

BioLinks | Phototherapy Treatment for Neonatal Jaundice

When red blood cells reach the end of their lifetime (about 3 months), they release red-colored *hemoglobin*, the molecule that is responsible for transporting oxygen in the blood. The *heme* portion of hemoglobin is metabolized into a yellow-orange-colored compound called *bilirubin*:

Bilirubin

Bilirubin contains many polar functional groups, and we might therefore expect it to be highly soluble in water. But surprisingly, the solubility of bilirubin in water (and hence urine and feces) is very small. This is attributed to the ability of bilirubin to adopt a low-energy conformation in which the carboxylic acid groups and the amide groups form internal hydrogen bonds:

With all of the polar groups pointing toward the interior of the molecule, the exterior surface of the molecule is primarily hydrophobic. Therefore, bilirubin behaves much like a nonpolar compound and is only sparingly soluble in water. As a result, high concentrations of bilirubin build up in the fatty tissues and membranes in the body (which are nonpolar environments). Since bilirubin is a yellow-orange-colored compound, this produces *jaundice*, a condition characterized by yellowing of the skin.

The major route for excretion of bilirubin out of the body is in feces (stools). But since stools are mostly water, bilirubin must be converted into a more water-soluble compound in order to be excreted. This is achieved when the liver enzyme *glucuronyl*

transferase is used to covalently attach two very polar molecules of *glucuronic acid* (or *glucuronate*) onto the nonpolar bilirubin molecule to make *bilirubin glucuronide*, more commonly called *conjugated bilirubin*. (Note that this use of the term "conjugated" means that the bilirubin molecule has been covalently bonded to another molecule, in this case glucuronic acid.)

Bilirubin glucuronide (conjugated bilirubin) is much more water soluble and is excreted from the liver in bile and from there into the small intestine. In the large intestine, bacteria metabolize it in a series of steps into *stercobilin* (from the Greek word *sterco* for poop), which has a brown color. However, if liver function is inadequate, there may be insufficient levels of the glucuronyl transferase enzyme to carry out the conjugation of glucuronic acid molecules to bilirubin. And as a result, the bilirubin cannot be excreted in the stools. The accumulation of bilirubin in the body is the cause of jaundice. There are three common situations in which liver function is impaired sufficiently to produce jaundice:

1. Hepatitis
2. Cirrhosis of the liver due to alcoholism
3. Immature liver function in babies, especially common in premature babies, resulting in *neonatal jaundice*. The following picture shows a baby with yellow skin associated with neonatal jaundice.

David Jones/EMPPL PA Wire/Associated Press

Neonatal jaundice has serious long-term consequences for the baby's mental growth because high levels of bilirubin in the brain can inhibit development of the baby's brain cells and cause permanent brain damage. Consequently, if blood bilirubin levels get too high (more than about 15 mg/dL for substantial lengths of time), action must be taken to reduce blood bilirubin levels. In the past, this involved expensive blood transfusions. A major advance took place when it was noticed that babies with neonatal jaundice would demonstrate increased urinary excretion rates of bilirubin after being exposed to natural sunlight. Further studies revealed that exposure to blue light causes the increased bilirubin excretion in the urine. Neonatal jaundice is now treated with a *bili-light* that exposes the baby's skin to high-intensity blue light.

Vetta/Getty Images

How does the bili-light work? Upon exposure to blue light, one of the C═C double bonds (adjacent to the five-membered ring in bilirubin) undergoes *photoisomerization*, and the configuration changes from *Z* to *E*:

In the process, more polar groups are exposed to the environment. This renders the bilirubin considerably more water soluble, even though the composition of the molecule has not changed (only the configuration of a C═C π bond has changed). Bilirubin excretion in the urine increases substantially and neonatal jaundice decreases!

REVIEW OF CONCEPTS AND VOCABULARY

SECTION 5.1

- Constitutional isomers have the same molecular formula but differ in their connectivity of atoms.
- **Stereoisomers** have the same connectivity of atoms but differ in their spatial arrangement. The terms *cis* and *trans* are used to differentiate stereoisomeric alkenes as well as disubstituted cycloalkanes.

SECTION 5.2

- **Chiral** objects are not **superimposable** on their mirror images.
- The most common source of molecular chirality is the presence of a **chirality center *(or chiral center)***, a carbon atom bearing four different groups.
- A compound with one chiral center will have one nonsuperimposable mirror image, called its **enantiomer**.

SECTION 5.3

- The Cahn-Ingold-Prelog system is used to assign the **configuration** of a chiral center. The four groups are each assigned a priority, based on atomic number, and the molecule is then rotated into a perspective in which the fourth priority is on a dash. A clockwise sequence of 1-2-3 is designated as ***R***, while a counterclockwise sequence is designated as ***S***.

SECTION 5.4

- A **polarimeter** is a device used to measure the ability of chiral organic compounds to rotate the plane of **plane-polarized light**. Such compounds are said to be **optically active**. Compounds that do not rotate plane-polarized light are said to be **optically inactive**.
- Enantiomers rotate plane-polarized light in equal amounts but in opposite directions. The **specific rotation** of a substance is a physical property. It is determined experimentally by measuring the **observed rotation** and dividing by the concentration of the solution and the pathlength.
- Compounds exhibiting a positive rotation (+) are said to be **dextrorotatory**, while compounds exhibiting a negative rotation (−) are said to be **levorotatory**.
- A solution containing a single enantiomer is **optically pure**, while a solution containing equal amounts of both enantiomers is called a **racemic mixture**.
- A solution containing a pair of enantiomers in unequal amounts is described in terms of **enantiomeric excess**.

SECTION 5.5

- For a compound with multiple chiral centers, a family of stereoisomers exists. Each stereoisomer will have at most one enantiomer, with the remaining members of the family being **diastereomers**.
- The number of stereoisomers of a compound can be no larger than 2^n, where n = the number of chiral centers.
- Enantiomers are mirror images. Diastereomers are not mirror images.

SECTION 5.6

- There are two kinds of symmetry: *rotational symmetry* and *reflectional symmetry*.
- The presence or absence of an **axis of symmetry** (rotational symmetry) is irrelevant.
- A compound that possesses a **plane of symmetry** will be achiral.
- A compound that lacks a plane of symmetry will most likely be chiral (although there are rare exceptions, which can mostly be ignored for our purposes).
- A ***meso* compound** contains multiple chiral centers but is nevertheless achiral, because it possesses reflectional symmetry. A family of stereoisomers containing a *meso* compound will have fewer than 2^n stereoisomers.

SECTION 5.7

- **Fischer projections** are drawings that convey the configurations of chiral centers, without the use of wedges and dashes. All horizontal lines are understood to be wedges (coming out of the page) and all vertical lines are understood to be dashes (going behind the page).

SECTION 5.8

- Some compounds, such as butane, can adopt conformations that are nonsuperimposable mirror images of each other (much like the relationship between enantiomers). But unlike enantiomers, these conformations are constantly interconverting via single bond rotations at room temperature. As a result, butane is an achiral compound and therefore optically inactive.

SECTION 5.9

- The presence of a chiral center is not a necessary condition for a compound to be chiral.
- **Atropisomers** are stereoisomers that result from the hindered rotation of a single bond.
- Compounds that contain two adjacent C=C bonds are called **allenes**, and they are another common class of compounds that can be chiral despite the absence of a chiral center.

SECTION 5.10

- **Resolution** (separation) of enantiomers can be accomplished in a number of ways, including the use of chiral **resolving agents** and chiral **column chromatography**.

SECTION 5.11

- The stereodescriptors *cis* and *trans* are generally reserved for alkenes that are disubstituted. For trisubstituted and tetrasubstituted alkenes, the stereodescriptors ***E*** and ***Z*** must be used. *Z* indicates priority groups on the same side, while *E* indicates priority groups on opposite sides.

SKILLBUILDER REVIEW

5.1 LOCATING CHIRAL CENTERS

STEP 1 Ignore sp^2- and *sp*-hybridized centers.

STEP 2 Ignore CH_2 and CH_3 groups.

STEP 3 Identify any carbon atoms bearing four different groups.

Try Problems **5.4–5.6, 5.33b**

5.2 DRAWING AN ENANTIOMER

Either place the mirror behind the compound...

or place the mirror on the side of the compound...

or place the mirror below the compound.

Try Problems **5.7, 5.8, 5.32, 5.33a, 5.38a–c,e, 5.61**

5.3 ASSIGNING THE CONFIGURATION OF A CHIRAL CENTER

STEP 1 Identify the four atoms attached to the chiral center and prioritize by atomic number.

STEP 2 If two (or more) atoms are identical, make a list of substituents and look for the first point of difference.

STEP 3 Redraw the chiral center, showing only the priorities.

STEP 4 Rotate molecule so that the fourth priority is on a dash.

STEP 5 Identify direction of 1-2-3 sequence: clockwise is *R*, and counterclockwise is *S*.

Counterclockwise=*S*

Try Problems **5.9–5.10, 5.31, 5.34, 5.35, 5.39a–e,g, 5.50, 5.63**

5.4 CALCULATING SPECIFIC ROTATION

EXAMPLE Calculate the specific rotation given the following information:

- 0.300 g sucrose dissolved in 10.0 mL of water
- Sample cell = 10.0 cm
- Observed rotation = +1.99°

STEP 1 Use the following equation:

$$\text{Specific rotation} = [\alpha] = \frac{\alpha}{c \times l}$$

STEP 2 Plug in the given values:

$$= \frac{+1.99°}{0.03\ \text{g/mL} \times 1.00\ \text{dm}}$$

$$= +66.3$$

Try Problems **5.11–5.14, 5.41, 5.42, 5.49, 5.54c, 5.56**

5.5 CALCULATING % *ee*

EXAMPLE Given the following information, calculate the enantiomeric excess:

- The specific rotation of optically pure adrenaline is –53. A mixture of (*R*)- and (*S*)-adrenaline was found to have a specific rotation of –45. Calculate the % *ee* of the mixture.

STEP 1 Use the following equation:

$$\%\ ee = \frac{[\alpha]\ \text{of mixture}}{[\alpha]\ \text{of pure enantiomer}} \times 100\%$$

STEP 2 Plug in the given values:

$$= \frac{-45}{-53} \times 100\% = 85\%$$

Try Problems **5.15–5.18, 5.40, 5.43, 5.54a,b**

5.6 DETERMINING THE STEREOISOMERIC RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN TWO COMPOUNDS

STEP 1 Compare the configuration of each chiral center.

STEP 2 If all chiral centers have opposite configuration, the compounds are enantiomers. If only some of the chiral centers have opposite configuration, then the compounds are diastereomers.

Enantiomers

Try Problems **5.19, 5.20, 5.36a–g, 5.44b, 5.53b–d, 5.70**

5.7 IDENTIFYING *MESO* COMPOUNDS

Example

Draw all possible stereoisomers and then look for a plane of symmetry in any of the drawings. The presence of a plane of symmetry indicates a *meso* compound.

Enantiomers ***Meso***

Try Problems **5.24, 5.25, 5.37, 5.51, 5.52, 5.55, 5.60, 5.62, 5.64a,b,d,f–h, 5.68, 5.69**

5.8 ASSIGNING CONFIGURATION FROM A FISCHER PROJECTION

EXAMPLE Assign the configuration of this chiral center.

STEP 1 Choose one horizontal line and draw it as a wedge. Choose one vertical line and draw it as a dash.

STEP 2 Assign priorities.

STEP 3 Rotate so that the fourth priority is on a dash.

STEP 4 Assign configuration.

Try Problems **5.26, 5.27, 5.39f, 5.44a, 5.46c, 5.47, 5.48, 5.64c,e, 5.65–5.67**

5.9 ASSIGNING THE CONFIGURATION OF A DOUBLE BOND

STEP 1 Identify the two groups connected to one vinylic position and then determine which group has priority.

STEP 2 Repeat step 1 for the other vinylic position, moving away from the double bond and looking for the first point of difference.

STEP 3 Determine whether the priorities are on the same side (*Z*) or opposite sides (*E*) of the double bond.

Try Problems **5.29, 5.30, 5.75**

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

• **Included in Answers section**

5.31 • Atorvastatin is sold under the trade name Lipitor and is used for lowering cholesterol. Annual global sales of this compound exceed $13 billion. Assign a configuration to each chiral center in atorvastatin:

Atorvastatin

5.32 Atropine, extracted from the plant *Atropa belladonna*, has been used in the treatment of bradycardia (low heart rate) and cardiac arrest. Draw the enantiomer of atropine:

Atropine

5.33 Paclitaxel (marketed under the trade name Taxol) is found in the bark of the Pacific yew tree, *Taxus brevifolia*, and is used in the treatment of cancer:

Paclitaxel

(a) Draw the enantiomer of paclitaxel.

(b) How many chiral centers does this compound possess?

5.34 Assign the configuration of the chiral center in the following compound:

5.35 Carbon is not the only element that can function as a chiral center. In Problem 5.6 we saw an example in which a phosphorus atom is a chiral center. In such a case, the lone pair is always assigned the fourth priority. Using this information, assign the configuration of the chiral center in this compound:

5.36 For each of the following pairs of drawings, determine the relationship between the two drawings:

5.37 Identify the number of stereoisomers that are possible for each of the following compounds:

5.38 • Draw the enantiomer for each of the following compounds:

5.39 Identify the configuration of each chiral center in the following compounds:

5.40 You are given a solution containing a pair of enantiomers (A and B). Careful measurements show that the solution contains 98% A and 2% B. What is the *ee* of this solution?

5.41 Predict the value for the specific rotation of the following compound. Explain your answer.

5.42 The specific rotation of (*S*)-2-butanol (at 20°C) is +13.5. If 1.00 g of its enantiomer is dissolved in 10.0 mL of ethanol and placed in a sample cell with a length of 1.00 dm, what observed rotation do you expect?

5.43 The specific rotation of L-alanine in water (at 25°C) is +2.8. A chemist prepared a mixture of L-alanine and its enantiomer, and 3.50 g of the mixture was dissolved in 10.0 mL of water. This solution was then placed in a sample cell with a pathlength of 10.0 cm and the observed rotation was +0.78°. Calculate the % *ee* of the mixture.

5.44 For each of the following pairs of drawings, determine the relationship between the two drawings:

5.45 • For each of the following pairs of drawings, determine the relationship between the two drawings:

5.46 Determine whether each statement is true or false:

(a) A racemic mixture of enantiomers is optically inactive.

(b) A *meso* compound will have exactly one nonsuperimposable mirror image.

(c) Rotating the Fischer projection of a molecule with a single chiral center by 90° will generate the enantiomer of the original Fischer projection:

5.47 Determine the configuration for every chiral center in each of the following compounds:

5.48 Draw the enantiomer of each compound in the previous problem.

5.49 When 0.075 g of penicillamine is dissolved in 10.0 mL of pyridine and placed in a sample cell 10.0 cm in length, the observed rotation at 20°C (using the D line of sodium) is −0.47°. Calculate the specific rotation of penicillamine.

5.50 (*R*)-Limonene is found in many citrus fruits, including oranges and lemons:

(*R*)-Limonene

For each of the following compounds identify whether it is (*R*)-limonene or its enantiomer, (*S*)-limonene:

5.51 • Each of the following compounds possesses a plane of symmetry. Find the plane of symmetry in each compound. In some cases, you will need to rotate a single bond to place the molecule into a conformation where you can more readily see the plane of symmetry.

5.52 *cis*-1,3-Dimethylcyclobutane has two planes of symmetry. Draw the compound and identify both planes of symmetry.

5.53 For each of the following pairs of drawings, determine the relationship between the two drawings:

5.54 The specific rotation of (*S*)-carvone (at 20°C) is +61. A chemist prepared a mixture of (*R*)-carvone and its enantiomer, and this mixture had a specific rotation of −55.

(a) What is the specific rotation of (*R*)-carvone at 20°C?

(b) Calculate the % *ee* of this mixture.

(c) What percentage of the mixture is (*S*)-carvone?

5.55 • Identify whether each of the following compounds is chiral or achiral:

5.56 The specific rotation of vitamin C (using the D line of sodium, at 20°C) is +24. Predict what the observed rotation would be for a solution containing 0.100 g of vitamin C dissolved in 10.0 mL of ethanol and placed in a sample cell with a length of 1.00 dm.

ACS-STYLE PROBLEMS (Multiple Choice)

Problems 5.57–5.63 follow the style of the ACS organic chemistry exam. For each of these problems, there will be one correct answer and three distractors.

5.57 • What is the configuration of the chiral center in the following compound?

(a) *R* (b) *S* (c) *Z* (d) Depends on T

5.58 • What is the relationship between the following two compounds?

(a) Enantiomers (b) Diastereomers

(c) Constitutional isomers (d) Resonance forms

5.59 • Which of these compounds is expected to be optically active at room temperature?

5.60 • Identify the meso compound(s).

(a) I only (b) II only

(c) I and III only (d) I, II, and III

5.61 • Which of the following represents the enantiomer of **A**?

5.62 • Is the following compound chiral, and does it have an enantiomer?

(a) It is not chiral, and it does not have an enantiomer.

(b) It is not chiral, but it does have an enantiomer.

(c) It is chiral, and it has an enantiomer.

(d) It is chiral, but it does not have an enantiomer.

5.63 • Arrange the given substituents in order of increasing priority (based on Cahn-Ingold-Prelog rules), from lowest to highest priority.

(a) III < II < I (b) III < I < II

(c) II < I < III (d) I < II < III

INTEGRATED PROBLEMS

5.64 • Determine whether each of the following compounds is optically active or optically inactive:

5.65 Draw bond-line structures using wedges and dashes for the following compounds:

5.66 The following questions apply to the five compounds in the previous problem.

(a) Which compound is *meso*?

(b) Would an equal mixture of compounds b and c be optically active?

(c) Would an equal mixture of compounds d and e be optically active?

5.67 Draw a Fischer projection for each of the following compounds, placing the $—CO_2H$ group at the top:

5.68 There are only two stereoisomers of 1,4-dimethylcyclohexane. Draw them and explain why only two stereoisomers are observed.

5.69 How many stereoisomers exist for the following compound? Draw all of the stereoisomers.

5.70 For each of the following pairs of drawings, determine the relationship between the two drawings:

5.71 The following compound is known to be chiral. Draw its enantiomer and explain the source of chirality.

5.72 The following compound is optically inactive. Explain why.

5.73 The following compound, whose central ring is referred to as a 1,2,4-trioxane, is an anticancer agent that demonstrates activity against canine osteosarcoma.[8] Assign the configuration of each chiral center and then draw all possible stereoisomers of this compound, showing the specific stereochemical relationship between each of your drawings.

5.74 Coibacin B is a natural product that exhibits potent anti-inflammatory activity and potential activity in the treatment of leishmaniasis, a disease caused by certain parasites[9]:

(a) Assign the configuration of each chiral center in coibacin B.

(b) Identify the number of possible stereoisomers for this compound, assuming that the geometry of the alkenes is fixed.

5.75 There are many forms of cancer, all of which involve abnormal cell growth. The growth and production of cells, called *cell proliferation*, is known to involve an enzyme called protein farnesyltransferase (PFTase). It is thought that inhibitors of PFTase may be useful as

anticancer drugs. The following molecule showed moderate activity as a potential PFTase inhibitor.[10] Draw all stereoisomers of this compound.

5.76 Over 100 cannabinoid compounds, including the one shown below, have been isolated from the marijuana plant in order to explore the plant's medicinal properties. Identify the chiral centers in 11-acetoxy-Δ^9-tetrahydrocannabinoic acid A, and draw all its possible stereoisomers.[11]

11-Acetoxy-Δ^9-tetrahydrocannabinoic acid A

5.77 One class of anti-viral drugs, called *protease inhibitors*, has been studied for the treatment of hepatitis C. A series of related compounds, represented by structure **2** (with varying *R* groups) were prepared from compound **1**. Several of the compounds under investigation showed promise as inhibitors of a key protease of the hepatitis C virus.[12] Draw the enantiomer of compound **1**.

1 **2**

5.78 Chiral catalysts can be designed to favor the formation of a single enantiomer in reactions where a new chiral center is formed. A novel type of chiral copper catalyst was developed that is "redox reconfigurable" in that the *S* enantiomer of the product predominates when the Cu^{I} form of the catalyst is used, and the *R* enantiomer is the main product when the Cu^{II} form is used (see below). This is not a general phenomenon, and only works for a limited number of reactions.[13]

(a) Draw the major products when the Cu^{I} or the Cu^{II} catalyst is used, specifying the stereochemistry and the catalyst required to make each product.

(b) Consider the chart below, which summarizes the results of the reaction using different solvents. For each solvent, calculate the %*S* and %*R*. Which solvent produces the best results?

SOLVENT	% *ee* OF (*S*)-PRODUCT	% YIELD OF PRODUCT
Toluene	24	55
Tetrahydrofuran	48	33
CH_3CN	72	55
$CHCl_3$	30	40
CH_2Cl_2	46	44
Hexane	51	30

5.79 In 2010 the structure of the compound (+)-trigonoliimine A (isolated from the leaves of a plant in the Yunnan province of China) was reported as shown below. In 2011, a synthesis of the reported structure was accomplished, although it was observed to be levorotatory at room temperature, not dextrorotatory like the natural product. As a result, it was determined that the configuration of the chiral center had been incorrectly assigned in 2010.[14] Draw the *correct* structure of (+)-trigonoliimine A and provide its absolute stereochemical configuration.

Reported structure of (+)-trigonoliimine A

5.80 Consider the reaction below, which involves both a dehydrogenation (removal of two neighboring hydrogen atoms) and a Diels-Alder reaction (which we will learn about in Chapter 16). Utilizing a specially designed catalyst, the achiral starting materials are converted to a total of four stereoisomeric products—two major and two minor.[15] One of the major products is shown:

(a) Draw the other major product, which is the enantiomer of the product shown.

(b) The two minor products retain the *cis* connectivity at the bridgehead carbons but differ from the major products in terms of the relative stereochemistry of the third chiral center. Draw the two minor products.

(c) What is the relationship between the two minor products?

(d) What is the relationship between the major products and the minor products?

CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

5.81 When a toluene solution of the sugar-derived compound below is cooled, the molecules self-assemble into fibrous aggregates which work in concert with the surface tension of the solvent to form a stable gel.[16] Redraw the structure showing both nonaromatic rings in chair conformations with the bridgehead hydrogen atoms in axial positions. Be sure to conserve the correct absolute stereochemistry in your answer.

5.82 Consider the structure of the following ketone:[17]

(a) Does this compound exhibit rotational symmetry?

(b) Does this compound exhibit reflectional symmetry?

(c) Is the compound chiral? If so, draw its enantiomer.

5.83 The natural product meloscine can be prepared via a 19-step synthesis, featuring the following allene as a key intermediate:[18]

(a) Draw a Newman projection of the allene when viewed from the left side of the C=C=C unit. Note that in this case the "front" and "back" carbons of the Newman projection are not directly attached to each other but instead are separated by an intervening *sp*-hybridized carbon atom.

(b) Draw the enantiomer of this compound in bond-line format (using wedges/dashes to show stereochemistry where appropriate) and as a Newman projection.

(c) Draw two diastereomers of this compound in bond-line and Newman formats.

5.84 Each of 10 stereoisomeric sugar derivatives can be prepared via a multiple-step synthesis starting from either glucuronolactone **1D** or its enantiomer **1L**. Depending on the specific series of reactions used, the configuration at carbons 2, 3, and 5 can be selectively retained or inverted over the course of the synthesis. This protocol does not allow for inversion at C4, but selection of **1D** or **1L** allows access to products with either configuration at this chiral center.[19]

1D (or enantiomer) **(10 possible stereoisomers)**

(a) Draw the structure of **1L**.

(b) How many stereoisomers of **1D** are possible?

(c) Draw the structures of the eight chiral products (as pairs of enantiomers) and the two achiral products.

(d) Only four of the products (including the two achiral ones) can theoretically be prepared from either reactant, **1D** or **1L**. Identify these four compounds and explain your answer.

LIST OF REFERENCES

1. *Food Chemistry* **2015**, *188*, 467–472.
2. *Chem. Eng. News* **2015**, *93*, 7.
3. *Tetrahedron Asymmetry* **2014**, *25*, 340–347.
4. *J. Agric. Food Chem.* **2011**, *59*, 13089–13095.
5. *J. Chem. Res.* **2010**, *34*, 606–609.
6. *J. Org. Chem.* **1998**, *63*, 4898–4906.
7. *Org. Lett.* **2015**, *17*, 2170–2173.
8. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **2012**, *134*, 13554–13557.
9. *Org. Lett.* **2012**, *14*, 3878–3881.
10. *Bioorg. Med. Chem.* **2004**, *12*, 763–770.
11. *J. Nat. Prod.* **2015**, *78*, 1271–1276.
12. *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.* **2006**, *16*, 1628–1632.
13. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **2012**, *134*, 8054–8057.
14. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **2011**, *133*, 10768–10771.
15. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **2011**, *133*, 14892–14895.
16. *Langmuir* **2012**, *28*, 14039–14044.
17. *J. Org. Chem.* **2001**, *66*, 2072–2077.
18. *Org. Lett.* **2012**, *14*, 934–937.
19. *J. Org. Chem.* **2012**, *77*, 7777–7792.

6

Chemical Reactivity and Mechanisms

6.1 Enthalpy
6.2 Entropy
6.3 Gibbs Free Energy
6.4 Equilibria
6.5 Kinetics
6.6 Reading Energy Diagrams
6.7 Nucleophiles and Electrophiles
6.8 Mechanisms and Arrow Pushing
6.9 Combining the Patterns of Arrow Pushing
6.10 Drawing Curved Arrows
6.11 Carbocation Rearrangements
6.12 Reversible and Irreversible Reaction Arrows

DID YOU EVER **WONDER...**

how Alfred Nobel made the fortune that he used to fund all of the Nobel Prizes (each of which includes a cash prize of over one million dollars)?

As we will see later in this chapter, Alfred Nobel earned his vast fortune by developing and marketing dynamite. Many of the principles that inform the design of explosives are the same principles that govern all chemical reactions. In this chapter, we will explore some of the key features of chemical reactions (including explosions). We will explore the factors that cause reactions to occur as well as the factors that speed up reactions. We will practice drawing and analyzing energy

continued >

Lukiyanova Natalia/frenta/Shutterstock

O.V.D./Shutterstock

diagrams, which will be used heavily throughout this book to compare reactions. Most importantly, we will focus on the skills necessary to draw and interpret the individual steps of a reaction. This chapter will develop the core concepts and critical skills necessary for understanding chemical reactivity.

DO YOU **REMEMBER?**

Before you go on, be sure you understand the following topics.
If necessary, review the suggested sections to prepare for this chapter.

- Identifying Lone Pairs (Section 2.5)
- Curved Arrows in Drawing Resonance Structures (Section 2.8)
- Drawing Resonance Structures via Pattern Recognition (Section 2.10)
- Flow of Electron Density: Curved-Arrow Notation (Section 3.2)

Take the DO YOU **REMEMBER?** QUIZ in the **online course** to check your understanding.

6.1 Enthalpy

In Chapter 1, we discussed the nature of electrons and their ability to form bonds. In particular, we saw that electrons achieve a lower energy state when they occupy a bonding molecular orbital (Figure 6.1). It stands to reason, then, that breaking a bond requires an input of energy.

FIGURE 6.1
An energy diagram showing that bonding electrons occupy a bonding MO.

For a bond to break, the electrons in the bonding MO must receive energy from their surroundings. Specifically, the surrounding molecules must transfer some of their kinetic energy to the system (the bond being broken). The term **enthalpy** is used to measure this exchange of energy:

$$\Delta H = q \quad \text{(at constant pressure)}$$

The change in enthalpy (ΔH) for any process is defined as the exchange of kinetic energy, also called heat (q), between a system and its surroundings under conditions of constant pressure. For a bond-breaking reaction, ΔH is primarily determined by the amount of energy necessary to break the bond *homolytically*. **Homolytic bond cleavage** generates two uncharged species, called **radicals**, each of which bears an unpaired electron (Figure 6.2). Notice the use of single-headed curved arrows, often called fish-hooks. Radicals and fish-hook arrows will be discussed in more detail in Chapter 10. In contrast, **heterolytic bond cleavage** is illustrated with a two-headed curved arrow, generating charged species, called ions (Figure 6.3).

FIGURE 6.2
Homolytic bond cleavage produces two radicals.

FIGURE 6.3
Heterolytic bond cleavage produces ions.

The energy required to break a covalent bond via homolytic bond cleavage is called the **bond dissociation energy**. The term $\Delta H°$ (with the "naught" symbol, or small circle, next to the H) refers to the bond dissociation energy when measured under standard conditions (i.e., where the pressure is 1 atm and the compound is in its standard state: a gas, a pure liquid, or a solid). Table 6.1 gives $\Delta H°$ values for a variety of bonds commonly encountered in this text.

TABLE 6.1 BOND DISSOCIATION ENERGIES ($\Delta H°$) OF COMMON BONDS

	KJ/MOL	KCAL/MOL
Bonds to H		
H—H	435	104
H—CH_3	435	104
H—CH_2CH_3	410	98
H—$CH(CH_3)_2$	397	95
H—$C(CH_3)_3$	381	91
	473	113
	356	85
	464	111
	364	87
H—F	569	136
H—Cl	431	103
H—Br	368	88
H—I	297	71
H—OH	498	119
H—OCH_2CH_3	435	104
C—C bonds		
CH_3—CH_3	368	88
CH_3CH_2—CH_3	356	85
$(CH_3)_2CH$—CH_3	351	84
$H_2C{=}CH$—CH_3	385	92
$HC{\equiv}C$—CH_3	489	117
Bonds to methyl		
CH_3—H	435	104
CH_3—F	456	109
CH_3—Cl	351	84
CH_3—Br	293	70
CH_3—I	234	56
CH_3—OH	381	91
CH_3CH_2—H	410	98
CH_3CH_2—F	448	107
CH_3CH_2—Cl	339	81
CH_3CH_2—Br	285	68
CH_3CH_2—I	222	53
CH_3CH_2—OH	381	91
$(CH_3)_2CH$—H	397	95
$(CH_3)_2CH$—F	444	106
$(CH_3)_2CH$—Cl	335	80
$(CH_3)_2CH$—Br	285	68
$(CH_3)_2CH$—I	222	53
$(CH_3)_2CH$—OH	381	91
$(CH_3)_3C$—H	381	91
$(CH_3)_3C$—F	444	106
$(CH_3)_3C$—Cl	331	79
$(CH_3)_3C$—Br	272	65
$(CH_3)_3C$—I	209	50
$(CH_3)_3C$—OH	381	91
X—X bonds		
F—F	159	38
Cl—Cl	243	58
Br—Br	193	46
I—I	151	36
HO—OH	213	51

Most reactions involve the breaking and forming of several bonds. In such cases, we must take into account each bond being broken or formed. The total change in enthalpy ($\Delta H°$) for the reaction is referred to as the **heat of reaction**. The sign of $\Delta H°$ for a reaction (whether it is positive or negative) indicates the direction in which the energy is exchanged and is determined from the perspective of the system. A positive $\Delta H°$ indicates that the system increased in energy (it received energy from the surroundings), while a negative $\Delta H°$ indicates that the system decreased in energy (it gave energy to the surroundings). The direction of energy exchange is described by the terms *endothermic* and *exothermic*. In an **exothermic** process, the system gives energy to the surroundings ($\Delta H°$ is negative). In an **endothermic** process, the system receives energy from the surroundings ($\Delta H°$ is positive). This is best illustrated with energy diagrams (Figure 6.4) in which the curve represents the change in energy of the system as the reaction proceeds. In these diagrams, the progress of the reaction (the x axis of the diagram) is referred to as the *reaction coordinate*. Students are often confused by the sign of $\Delta H°$, and there is a valid reason for this confusion. In physics, the signs are the reverse of those shown here. Physicists think of $\Delta H°$ in terms of the surroundings rather than the system. They care about how devices have an

FIGURE 6.4
Energy diagrams of exothermic and endothermic processes.

impact on the environment—how much work the device can perform. Chemists, on the other hand, think in terms of the system. When chemists run a reaction, they care about the reactants and the products; they don't care about how the reaction ever so slightly changes the temperature in the laboratory. If you are currently enrolled in a physics course and find yourself confused about the sign of $\Delta H°$, just remember that chemists think of $\Delta H°$ from the perspective of the reaction (the system). For a chemist, an exothermic process involves the system losing energy to the surroundings, so $\Delta H°$ is negative.

Let's get some practice predicting the sign and value of $\Delta H°$ for a reaction.

SKILLBUILDER

6.1 PREDICTING $\Delta H°$ OF A REACTION

LEARN the skill

Predict the sign and magnitude of $\Delta H°$ for the following reaction. Give your answer in units of kilojoules per mole, and identify whether the reaction is expected to be endothermic or exothermic.

SOLUTION

Identify all bonds that are either broken or formed:

STEP 1
Identify the bond dissociation energy of each bond that is broken or formed.

Then use Table 6.1 to find the bond dissociation energies for each of these bonds:

Bond	kJ/mol
H—C$(CH_3)_3$	381
Cl—Cl	243
$(CH_3)_3$C—Cl	331
H—Cl	431

STEP 2
Determine the appropriate sign for each value from step 1.

Now we must decide what sign (+ or −) to place in front of each value. Remember that $\Delta H°$ is defined with respect to the system. For each bond broken, the system must receive energy in order for the bond to break, so $\Delta H°$ must be positive. For each bond formed, the electrons are going to a lower energy state, and the system releases energy to the surroundings, so $\Delta H°$ must be negative. Therefore, $\Delta H°$ for this reaction will be the sum total of the following numbers:

STEP 3
Add the values for all bonds broken and formed.

Bonds broken	kJ/mol	Bonds formed	kJ/mol
H—C$(CH_3)_3$	+381	$(CH_3)_3$C—Cl	−331
Cl—Cl	+243	H—Cl	−431

That is, $\Delta H° = -138$ kJ/mol. For this reaction $\Delta H°$ is negative, which means that the system is losing energy. It is giving off energy to the environment, so the reaction is exothermic.

PRACTICE the skill

6.1 Using the data in Table 6.1, predict the sign and magnitude of $\Delta H°$ for each of the following reactions. In each case, identify whether the reaction is expected to be endothermic or exothermic:

APPLY the skill

6.2 (−)-Cameroonanol has been isolated from the essential oil of *Echinops giganteus* (globe thistle) plants and it is associated with a strong woody fragrance. Its structure, including relative stereochemistry, was confirmed when it was made in the laboratory according to the sequence shown below.[1] Recall that a C═C bond is comprised of one σ bond and one π bond. These two bonds together have a combined BDE (bond dissociation energy) of 607 kJ/mol. Use this information to estimate the $\Delta H°$ for the conversion of compound **1** into compound **2**.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problem 6.20a, 6.47**

6.2 Entropy

The sign of $\Delta H°$ is not the ultimate measure of whether or not a reaction can or will occur. Although exothermic reactions are more common, there are still plenty of examples of endothermic reactions that readily occur. This raises the question: What is the ultimate measure for determining whether or not a reaction can occur? The answer to this question is *entropy*, which is the underlying principle guiding all physical, chemical, and biological processes. **Entropy** is informally defined as the measure of disorder associated with a system, although this definition is overly simplistic. Entropy is more accurately described in terms of probabilities. To understand this, consider the following analogy. Imagine four coins, lined up in a row. If we toss all four coins, the chances that exactly half of the coins will land on heads are much greater than the chances that all four coins will land on heads. Why? Compare the number of possible ways to achieve each result (Figure 6.5). There is only one state in which all four coins land on heads, yet there are six different states in which exactly two coins land on heads. The probability of exactly two coins landing on heads is six times greater than the probability of all four coins landing on heads.

Expanding the analogy to six coins, we find that the probability of exactly half of the coins landing on heads is 20 times greater than the probability of all six coins landing on heads. Expanding the analogy further to eight coins, we find that the probability of exactly half of the coins landing on heads is 70 times greater than the probability of all eight coins landing on heads. A trend is apparent: As the number of coins increases, the chances of all coins landing on heads becomes less likely. Imagine a floor covered with one billion coins. What are the chances that flipping all of them will result

FIGURE 6.5
Comparing the number of ways to achieve various outcomes in a coin-tossing experiment.

in all heads? The chances are miniscule (you have better chances of winning the lottery one hundred times in a row). It is much more likely that approximately half of the coins will land on heads because there are so many more ways of accomplishing that.

Now apply the same principle to describe the behavior of gas molecules in a two-chamber system, as shown in Figure 6.6. In the initial condition, one of the chambers is empty, and a divider prevents the gas molecules from entering that chamber. When the divider between the chambers is removed, the gas molecules undergo a free expansion. Free expansion occurs readily, but the reverse process is never observed. Once spread out into the two chambers, the gas molecules will not suddenly collect into the first chamber, leaving the second chamber empty. This scenario is very similar to the coin-tossing analogy. At any moment in time, each molecule can be in either chamber 1 or chamber 2 (just like each coin can be either heads or tails). As we increase the number of molecules, the chances become less likely that all of the molecules will be found in one chamber. When dealing with a mole (6×10^{23} molecules), the chances are practically negligible, and we do not observe the molecules suddenly collecting into one chamber (at least not in our lifetimes).

FIGURE 6.6
Free expansion of a gas.

Free expansion is a classic example of entropy. When molecules occupy both chambers, the system is said to be at a higher state of entropy, because the number of states in which the molecules are spread between both chambers is so much greater than the number of states in which the molecules are all found in one chamber. Entropy is really nothing more than an issue of likelihood and probability.

A process that involves an increase in entropy is said to be **spontaneous**. That is, the process can and will occur, given enough time. Chemical reactions are no exception, although the considerations are slightly more complex than in a simple free expansion. In the case of free expansion, we only had to consider the change in entropy of the system (of the gas particles). The surroundings were unaffected by the free expansion. However, in a chemical reaction, the surroundings are affected. We must take into account not only the change in entropy of the system but also the change in entropy of the surroundings:

$$\Delta S_{tot} = \Delta S_{sys} + \Delta S_{surr}$$

where ΔS_{tot} is the total change in entropy associated with the reaction. In order for a process to be spontaneous, the total entropy must increase. The entropy of the system (the reaction) can actually

decrease, as long as the entropy of the surroundings increases by an amount that offsets the decreased entropy of the system. As long as ΔS_{tot} is positive, the reaction will be spontaneous. Therefore, if we wish to assess whether a particular reaction will be spontaneous, we must assess the values of ΔS_{sys} and ΔS_{surr}. For now, we will focus our attention on ΔS_{sys}; we will discuss ΔS_{surr} in Section 6.3.

The value of ΔS_{sys} is affected by a number of factors. The two most dominant factors are shown in Figure 6.7. In the first example in Figure 6.7, one mole of reactant produces two moles of product. This represents an increase in entropy, because the number of possible ways to arrange the molecules increases when there are more molecules (as we saw when we expanded our coin-tossing analogy by increasing the number of coins). In the second example, a cyclic compound is being converted into an acyclic compound. Such a process also represents an increase in entropy, because acyclic compounds have more freedom of motion than cyclic compounds. An acyclic compound can adopt a larger number of conformations than a cyclic compound, and once again, the larger number of possible states corresponds with a larger entropy.

FIGURE 6.7
Two ways in which the entropy of a chemical system can increase.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

6.3 For each of the following processes predict the sign of ΔS for the reaction. In other words, will ΔS_{sys} be positive (an increase in entropy) or negative (a decrease in entropy)?

6.3 Gibbs Free Energy

In Section 6.2, we saw that entropy is the one and only criterion that determines whether or not a chemical reaction will be spontaneous. But it is not enough to consider ΔS of the system alone; we must also take into account ΔS of the surroundings:

$$\Delta S_{tot} = \Delta S_{sys} + \Delta S_{surr}$$

The total change in entropy (system plus surroundings) must be positive in order for the process to be spontaneous. It is fairly straightforward to assess ΔS_{sys} using tables of standard entropy values (a skill that you likely learned in your general chemistry course). However, the assessment of ΔS_{surr} presents more of a challenge. It is certainly not possible to observe the entire universe, so how can we possibly measure ΔS_{surr}? Fortunately, there is a clever solution to this problem.

Under conditions of constant pressure and temperature, it can be shown that:

$$\Delta S_{surr} = -\frac{\Delta H_{sys}}{T}$$

Notice that ΔS_{surr} is now defined *in terms of the system*. Both ΔH_{sys} and T (temperature in Kelvin) are easily measured, which means that ΔS_{surr} can in fact be measured. Plugging this expression for

BY THE WAY
Organic chemists generally carry out reactions under constant pressure (atmospheric pressure) and at a constant temperature. For this reason, the conditions most relevant to practicing organic chemists are conditions of constant pressure and temperature.

ΔS_{surr} into the equation for ΔS_{tot}, we arrive at a new equation for ΔS_{tot} for which all terms are measurable:

$$\Delta S_{tot} = \left(-\frac{\Delta H_{sys}}{T}\right) + \Delta S_{sys}$$

This expression is still the ultimate criterion for spontaneity (ΔS_{tot} must be positive). As a final step, we multiply the entire equation by $-T$, which gives us a new term, called **Gibbs free energy**:

$$\boxed{-T\Delta S_{tot}} = \Delta H_{sys} - T\Delta S_{sys}$$

$$\downarrow$$

$$\boxed{\Delta G}$$

In other words, ΔG is nothing more than a repackaged way of expressing total entropy:

$$\Delta G = \boxed{\Delta H} - \boxed{T\Delta S}$$

Associated with the change in entropy of the *surroundings* — **Associated with the change in entropy of the *system***

In this equation, the first term (ΔH) is associated with the change in entropy of the surroundings (a transfer of energy to the surroundings increases the entropy of the surroundings). The second term ($T\Delta S$) is associated with the change in entropy of the system. The first term (ΔH) is often much larger than the second term ($T\Delta S$), so for most processes, ΔH will determine the sign of ΔG. Remember that ΔG is just ΔS_{tot} multiplied by *negative T*. So if ΔS_{tot} must be positive in order for a process to be spontaneous, then ΔG must be negative. *In order for a process to be spontaneous, ΔG for that process must be negative*. This requirement is called the second law of thermodynamics.

In order to compare the two terms contributing to ΔG, we will sometimes present the equation in a nonstandard way, with a plus sign between the two terms:

$$\Delta G = \boxed{\Delta H} \boxed{+} \boxed{(-T\Delta S)}$$

WorldLinks | Explosives

Explosives are compounds that can be detonated, generating sudden large pressures and liberating excessive heat. Explosives have several defining characteristics:

1. In the presence of oxygen, an explosive will produce a reaction for which both expressions contribute to a very favorable ΔG:

   $$\Delta G = \boxed{\Delta H} - \boxed{T\Delta S}$$

   That is, the changes in entropy of both the surroundings and the system are extremely favorable. As a result, both terms contribute to a very large and negative value of ΔG. This makes the reaction extremely favorable.

2. Explosives must generate large quantities of gas very quickly in order to produce the sudden increase in pressure observed during an explosion. Compounds containing multiple nitro groups generally have this property. Several examples are shown.

3. When detonated, the reaction must occur very rapidly. This aspect of explosives will be discussed in Section 6.5.

ajt/Getty Images

Nitroglycerin

Trinitrotoluene (TNT)

Pentaerythritol tetranitrate (PETN)

Cyclotrimethylenetrinitramine (RDX)

In some cases, this nonstandard presentation will allow for a more efficient analysis of the competition between the two terms. As an example, consider the following reaction:

In this reaction, two molecules are converted into one molecule, so ΔS_{sys} is not favorable. However, ΔS_{surr} is favorable. Why? ΔS_{surr} is determined by ΔH of the reaction. In Section 6.1, we learned how to estimate ΔH for a reaction by looking at the bonds being formed and broken. In the reaction above, three π bonds are broken while one π bond and two σ bonds are formed. In other words, two π bonds have been transformed into two σ bonds. Sigma bonds are stronger (lower in energy) than π bonds, and therefore, ΔH for this reaction must be negative (exothermic). Energy is transferred to the surroundings, and this increases the entropy of the surroundings. To recap, ΔS_{sys} is not favorable, but ΔS_{surr} is favorable. Therefore, this process exhibits a competition between the change in entropy of the system and the change in entropy of the surroundings:

$$\Delta G = \underset{\ominus}{\Delta H} \quad + \quad \underset{\oplus}{(-T\Delta S)}$$

Remember that ΔG must be negative in order for a process to be spontaneous. The first term is negative, which is favorable, but the second term is positive, which is unfavorable. The term that is larger will determine the sign of ΔG. If the first term is larger, then ΔG will be negative, and the reaction will be spontaneous. If the second term is larger, then ΔG will be positive, and the reaction will not be spontaneous. Which term dominates? The value of the second term is dependent on T, and therefore, the outcome of this reaction will be very sensitive to temperature. Below a certain T, the process will be spontaneous. Above a certain T, the reverse process will be favored.

Any process with a negative ΔG will be spontaneous. Such processes are called **exergonic**. Any process with a positive ΔG will not be spontaneous. Such processes are called **endergonic** (Figure 6.8).

These energy diagrams are incredibly useful when analyzing reactions, and we will use these diagrams frequently throughout the course. Sections 6.4–6.6 deal with some of the more specific details of these diagrams.

FIGURE 6.8
Energy diagrams of an exergonic process and an endergonic process.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

6.4 For each of the following reactions predict the sign of ΔG. If a prediction is not possible because the sign of ΔG will be temperature dependent, describe how ΔG will be affected by raising the temperature.

(a) An endothermic reaction for which the system exhibits an increase in entropy.

(b) An exothermic reaction for which the system exhibits an increase in entropy.

(c) An endothermic reaction for which the system exhibits a decrease in entropy.

(d) An exothermic reaction for which the system exhibits a decrease in entropy.

6.5 At room temperature, molecules spend most of their time in lower energy conformations. In fact, there is a general tendency for any system to move toward lower energy. As another example, electrons form bonds because they "prefer" to achieve a lower energy state. We can now appreciate that the reason for this preference is based on entropy. When a compound assumes a lower energy conformation or when electrons assume a lower energy state, ΔS_{tot} increases. Explain.

WorldLinks Do Living Organisms Violate the Second Law of Thermodynamics?

Students often wonder whether life is a violation of the second law of thermodynamics. It is certainly a legitimate question. Our bodies are highly ordered, and we are capable of imposing order on our surroundings. We are able to take raw materials and build tall skyscrapers. How can that be? In addition, many of the reactions necessary to synthesize the macromolecules necessary for life, such as DNA and proteins, are endergonic processes (ΔG is positive). How can those reactions occur?

In Section 6.2, we saw that it is possible for a reaction to exhibit a decrease in entropy and still be spontaneous if and only if the entropy of the surroundings increases such that ΔS_{tot} for the process is positive. In other words, we have to take the whole picture into account when determining if a process will be spontaneous. Yes, it is true that many of the reactions employed by life are not spontaneous *by themselves*. But when they are coupled with other highly favorable reactions, such as the metabolism of food, the total entropy (system plus surroundings) does actually increase. As an example, consider the metabolism of glucose:

Glucose

$$+ \ 6\,O_2 \longrightarrow 6\,CO_2 + 6\,H_2O \qquad \triangle G^\circ = -2880 \text{ kJ/mol}$$

This transformation has a large and negative ΔG. Processes like this one are ultimately responsible for driving otherwise non-spontaneous reactions that are necessary for life.

Living organisms do not violate the second law of thermodynamics—quite the opposite, in fact. Living organisms are prime examples of entropy at its finest. Yes, we do impose order on our environment, but that is only permitted because we are *entropy machines*. We give off heat to our surroundings and we consume highly ordered molecules (food) and break them down into smaller, more stable compounds with much lower free energy. These features allow us to impose order on our surroundings, because our net effect is to increase the entropy of the universe.

LorenEvans/Getty Images

6.4 Equilibria

Consider the energy diagram in Figure 6.9, showing a reaction in which the reactants, A and B, are converted into products, C and D. The reaction exhibits a negative ΔG and therefore will be spontaneous. Accordingly, we might expect a mixture of A and B to be converted completely into C and D. But this is not the case. Rather, an equilibrium is established in which all four compounds are present. Why should this be the case? If C and D are truly lower in free energy than A and B, then why is there any amount of A and B present when the reaction is complete?

FIGURE 6.9
The energy diagram of an exergonic reaction in which reactants (A and B) are converted into products (C and D).

To answer this question, we must consider the effect of having a large number of molecules. The energy diagram in Figure 6.9 describes the reaction between one molecule of A and one molecule of B. However, when dealing with moles of A and B, the changing concentrations have an effect on the value of ΔG. When the reaction begins, only A and B are present. As the reaction proceeds, the concentrations of A and B decrease, and the concentrations of C and D increase. This has an effect on ΔG, which can be illustrated with the diagram in Figure 6.10. As the reaction proceeds, the free

FIGURE 6.10
An energy diagram illustrating the relationship between ΔG and concentration. A minimum in free energy is achieved at particular concentrations (equilibrium).

energy decreases until it reaches a minimum value at very particular concentrations of reactants and products. If the reaction were to proceed further in either direction, the result would be an increase in free energy, which is not spontaneous. At this point, no further change is observed, and the system is said to have reached equilibrium. The exact position of equilibrium for any reaction is described by the equilibrium constant, K_{eq},

$$K_{eq} = \frac{[\text{products}]}{[\text{reactants}]} = \frac{[C][D]}{[A][B]}$$

where K_{eq} is defined as the equilibrium concentrations of products divided by the equilibrium concentrations of reactants.

If the concentration of products is greater than the concentration of reactants, then K_{eq} will be greater than 1. On the other hand, if the concentration of products is less than the concentration of reactants, then K_{eq} will be less than 1. The term K_{eq} indicates the exact position of the equilibrium, and it is related to ΔG in the following way, where R is the gas constant (8.314 J/mol · K) and T is the temperature measured in Kelvin:

$$\Delta G = -RT \ln K_{eq}$$

For any process, whether it is a reaction or a conformational change, the relationship between K_{eq} and ΔG is defined by the equation above. Table 6.2 gives a few examples and illustrates that ΔG determines the maximum yield of products. If ΔG is negative, the products will be favored ($K_{eq} > 1$). If ΔG is positive, then the reactants will be favored ($K_{eq} < 1$). In order for a reaction to be useful (in order for products to dominate over reactants), ΔG must be negative; that is, K_{eq} must be greater than 1. The values in Table 6.2 indicate that a small difference in free energy can have a significant impact on the ratio of reactants to products.

TABLE 6.2 SAMPLE VALUES OF ΔG AND CORRESPONDING K_{eq}

$\Delta G°$ (KJ/MOL)	K_{eq}	% PRODUCTS AT EQUILIBRIUM
−17	10^3	99.9%
−11	10^2	99%
−6	10^1	90%
0	1	50%
+6	10^{-1}	10%
+11	10^{-2}	1%
+17	10^{-3}	0.1%

In this section, we have investigated the relationship between ΔG and equilibrium—a topic that falls within the realm of **thermodynamics**. Thermodynamics is the study of how energy is distributed under the influence of entropy. For chemists, the thermodynamics of a reaction specifically refers to the study of the relative energy levels of reactants and products (Figure 6.11). This difference in free energy (ΔG) ultimately determines the yield of products that can be expected for any reaction.

FIGURE 6.11
Thermodynamics of a reaction is based on the difference in energy between starting materials and products.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

6.6 In each of the following cases, use the data given to determine whether the reaction favors reactants or products:

(a) A reaction for which $\Delta G = +1.52$ kJ/mol

(b) A reaction for which $K_{eq} = 0.5$

(c) A reaction carried out at 298 K, for which $\Delta H = +33$ kJ/mol and $\Delta S = +150$ J/mol · K

(d) An exothermic reaction with a positive value for ΔS_{sys}

(e) An endothermic reaction with a negative value for ΔS_{sys}

6.5 Kinetics

In Sections 6.3 and 6.4, we saw that a reaction will be spontaneous if ΔG for the reaction is negative. The term *spontaneous* does not mean that the reaction will occur suddenly. Rather, it means that the reaction is thermodynamically favorable; that is, the reaction favors formation of products. Spontaneity has nothing to do with the speed of the reaction. For example, the conversion of diamonds into graphite is a spontaneous process at standard pressure and temperature. In other words, all diamonds are turning into graphite at this very moment. But even though this process is spontaneous, it is nevertheless very, very slow. It will take millions of years, but ultimately, all diamonds will eventually turn into graphite!

Why is it that some spontaneous processes are fast, like explosions, while others are slow, like diamonds turning into graphite? The study of reaction rates is called **kinetics**. In this section, we will explore issues related to reaction rates.

Rate Equations

The rate of any reaction is described by a **rate equation**, which has the following general form:

$$\text{Rate} = \underbrace{k}_{\text{Rate constant}}\ \underbrace{[\text{reactants}]}_{\text{Concentration of starting materials}}$$

The general equation above indicates that the rate of a reaction is dependent on the rate constant (k) and on the concentration of the reactants. The rate constant (k) is a value that is specific to each

reaction and is dependent on a number of factors. We will soon explore those factors. For now, we will focus on the effect of concentrations on the rate.

A reaction is the result of a collision between reactants, and therefore, it makes sense that increasing the concentrations of reactants should increase the frequency of collisions that lead to a reaction, thereby increasing the rate of the reaction. However, the precise effect of concentration on rate must be determined experimentally:

$$\text{Rate} = k\,[\text{A}]^{x}\,[\text{B}]^{y}$$

In this rate equation notice that the concentrations of A and B are shown with exponents (x and y). These exponents must be experimentally determined, by exploring how the rate is affected when the concentrations of A and B are each separately doubled. Here are just a few of the possibilities that we might discover for any particular reaction (Figure 6.12).

FIGURE 6.12
Rate equations for first-order, second-order, and third-order reactions.

$\text{Rate} = k\,[\text{A}]$	$\text{Rate} = k\,[\text{A}]\,[\text{B}]$	$\text{Rate} = k\,[\text{A}]^2\,[\text{B}]$
First order	**Second order**	**Third order**

LOOKING AHEAD
If you are having trouble understanding how the rate would not be affected by the concentration of a reactant, don't worry. This will be explained in Chapter 7.

The first possibility has [B] absent from the rate equation. This is a situation where doubling the concentration of A has the effect of doubling the rate of the reaction, but doubling the concentration of B has no effect at all. In such a case, the sum of the exponents is 1, and the reaction is said to be **first order**.

The second possibility above represents a situation where doubling [A] has the effect of doubling the rate, while doubling [B] also has the effect of doubling the rate. In such a case, both [A] and [B] are present in the rate equation, and the exponent of each is 1. The sum of the exponents in this case is 2, and the reaction is said to be **second order**. The third possibility above represents a situation where doubling [A] has the effect of *quadrupling* the rate, while doubling [B] has the effect of doubling the rate. In such a case, the exponent of [A] is 2 and the exponent of [B] is 1. The sum of the exponents in this case is 3, and the reaction is said to be **third order**.

Factors Affecting the Rate Constant

We have just seen that the rate of a reaction is dependent on the rate constant (k):

$$\text{Rate} = k\,[\text{A}]^{x}\,[\text{B}]^{y}$$

A relatively fast reaction is associated with a large rate constant, while a relatively slow reaction is associated with a small rate constant. The value of the rate constant is dependent on three factors: the energy of activation, temperature, and steric considerations.

1. **Energy of Activation.** The energy barrier between the reactants and the products is called the **energy of activation**, or E_a (Figure 6.13). This energy barrier represents the minimum amount of energy required for a reaction to occur between two reactants that collide. If a collision between the reactants does not involve this much energy, they will not react with each other to form products. The number of successful collisions is therefore dependent on the number of molecules that have a certain threshold kinetic energy.

FIGURE 6.13
An energy diagram showing the energy of activation (E_a) of a reaction.

At any specific temperature, the reactants will have a specific average kinetic energy, but not all molecules will possess this average energy. In fact, most molecules have either less than the average or more than the average, giving rise to a distribution as shown in Figure 6.14. Notice

FIGURE 6.14
Distribution of kinetic energy. Shown in blue is the fraction of molecules that possess enough energy to produce a reaction.

that only a certain number of the molecules will have the minimum energy necessary to produce a reaction. The number of molecules with this energy will be dependent on the value of E_a. If E_a is small, then a large percentage of the molecules will have the threshold energy necessary to produce a reaction. Therefore, a low E_a will lead to a faster reaction (Figure 6.15).

FIGURE 6.15
The rate of a reaction is dependent on the size of E_a.

2. **Temperature.** The rate of a reaction is also very sensitive to temperature (Figure 6.16). Raising the temperature of a reaction will cause the rate to increase, because the molecules will have more kinetic energy at a higher temperature. At higher temperature, a larger number of molecules will have the kinetic energy sufficient to produce a reaction. As a rule of thumb, raising the temperature by 10°C causes the rate to double.

FIGURE 6.16
Increasing the temperature increases the number of molecules with sufficient energy to produce a reaction.

3. **Steric Considerations.** The geometry of the reactants and the orientation of their collision can also have an impact on the frequency of collisions that lead to a reaction. This factor will be explored in greater detail in Section 7.3.

BioLinks Nitroglycerin: An Explosive with Medicinal Properties

Explosives can be divided into two categories: primary explosives and secondary explosives. Primary explosives are very sensitive to shock or heat, and they detonate very easily. That is, the energy of activation for the explosion is very small and easily overcome. In contrast, secondary explosives have a larger activation energy and are therefore more stable. Secondary explosives are often detonated with a very small amount of primary explosive.

The first commercial secondary explosive was produced by Alfred Nobel in the mid-1800s. At the time, there were no strong explosives safe enough to handle. Nobel focused his efforts on finding a way to stabilize nitroglycerin:

Nitroglycerin

Nitroglycerin is very shock sensitive and unsafe to handle. In an effort to find a formulation of nitroglycerin that would have a larger energy of activation, Nobel conducted many experiments. Many of those experiments caused explosions in the Nobel factory, one of which killed his younger brother, Emil, along with several co-workers. Ultimately, Nobel was successful in stabilizing nitroglycerin by mixing it with diatomaceous earth, a type of sedimentary rock (made from the shells of algae called diatoms) that easily crumbles into a fine powder. The resulting mixture, which he called dynamite, became the first commercial secondary explosive, and numerous factories across Europe were soon built in order to produce dynamite in large quantities. As mentioned in the chapter opener, Alfred Nobel became fabulously wealthy from his invention and used some of the proceeds to fund the Nobel prizes, with which we are all so familiar.

Over time, it was discovered that workers in the dynamite production factories experienced several physiological responses associated with prolonged exposure to nitroglycerin. Most importantly, workers who suffered from heart problems found that their conditions greatly improved. For many decades, the reason for this response was not clear, but a clear pattern had been established. As a result, doctors began to treat patients experiencing heart problems by giving them small quantities of nitroglycerin to ingest. Ultimately, Nobel himself suffered from heart problems, and his doctor suggested that he ingest small quantities of nitroglycerin. Nobel refused to ingest what he considered to be an explosive, and he ultimately died of heart complications.

With the passing decades, it became clear that nitroglycerin serves as a vasodilator (dilates blood vessels) and therefore reduces the chances of blockage that leads to a heart attack. However, it was not known how nitroglycerin functions as a vasodilator. The study of drug action belongs to a broader field of study called pharmacology. A scientist at UCLA by the name of Louis Ignarro was interested in this pharmacological question and heavily investigated the action of nitroglycerin in the body. He discovered that metabolism of nitroglycerin produces nitric oxide (NO) and that this small compound is ultimately responsible for a large number of physiological processes. At first, his discovery was met with skepticism by the scientific community since nitric oxide was known to be an atmospheric contaminant (present in smog), and it was difficult to believe that the very same compound could be responsible for the medicinal value of nitroglycerin. Ultimately, his ideas were verified, and he was credited with discovering the mechanism for the physiological effects of nitroglycerin. Ignarro's discovery ultimately led to the development of many new commercial drugs, including Viagra. Viagra is a vasodilator of the blood vessels of the penis, resulting in an erection. Erectile dysfunction is estimated to affect 9% of all adult males in the United States.

Perhaps if Alfred Nobel had been privy to Ignarro's research, he might have followed his doctor's instructions after all and taken nitroglycerin for its medicinal value. It is therefore quite interesting that Ignarro was awarded the 1998 Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine, a prize that was funded by Nobel with the fortune that he accrued for his discovery of stabilized nitroglycerin. It appears that history does in fact have a sense of irony.

Sheila Fitzgerald/Alamy Stock Photo

Catalysts and Enzymes

A **catalyst** is a compound that can speed up the rate of a reaction without itself being consumed by the reaction. A catalyst works by providing an alternate pathway with a smaller activation energy (Figure 6.17). Notice that a catalyst does not change the energy of reactants or products, and therefore, the position of equilibrium is not affected by the presence of a catalyst. Only the rate of reaction is affected by the catalyst. We will see many examples of catalysts throughout this text.

FIGURE 6.17
An energy diagram showing an uncatalyzed pathway and a catalyzed pathway.

Nature employs catalysis in many biological functions as well. Enzymes are naturally occurring compounds that catalyze very specific biologically important reactions. Enzymes will be discussed in greater detail in Chapter 25.

WorldLinks Beer Making

Beer making relies on the fermentation of sugars (produced from grains such as wheat or barley). The fermentation process produces ethanol and is thermodynamically favorable (ΔG is negative). The direct conversion of sugar into ethanol has a very large activation energy and therefore does not occur by itself at an appreciable rate:

When yeast is added to the mixture, the energy of activation is lowered, and the process takes place at an observable rate.

Yeast is a microorganism that utilizes many enzymes that catalyze many different reactions. Some of these enzymes enable the yeast to metabolize sugars, producing ethanol and CO_2 as waste products. The ethanol generated in the process is toxic to the yeast, so as the concentration of ethanol rises, the fermentation slows. As a result, it is difficult to achieve an alcohol concentration greater than 12% when using standard brewing yeast.

Without the catalytic action of yeast, beer might never have been discovered.

Dinamiracle/Getty Images

6.6 Reading Energy Diagrams

As we begin to study reactions in Chapter 7, we will rely heavily on the use of energy diagrams. Let's quickly review some of the features of energy diagrams.

Kinetics Versus Thermodynamics

Don't confuse kinetics and thermodynamics—they are two entirely separate concepts (Figure 6.18).

FIGURE 6.18
Energy diagrams showing the difference between kinetics and thermodynamics.

Kinetics refers to the rate of a reaction, while thermodynamics refers to the equilibrium concentrations of reactants and products. Suppose that two compounds, A and B, can react with each other in one of two possible pathways (Figure 6.19). The pathway determines the products. Notice that products C and D are thermodynamically favored over products E and F, because C and D are lower in energy. In addition, C and D are also kinetically favored over E and F because formation of C and D involves a smaller activation energy. In summary, C and D are favored by thermodynamics as well as kinetics. When reactants can react with each other in two possible ways, it is often the case that one reaction pathway is both thermodynamically and kinetically favored, although there are many cases in which thermodynamics and kinetics oppose each other. Consider the energy diagram in Figure 6.20 showing two possible reactions between A and B. In this case, products C and D are favored by thermodynamics because they are lower in energy. However, products E and F are favored by kinetics because formation of E and F involves a lower energy of activation. In such a case, temperature will play a pivotal role. At low temperature, the reaction that forms E and F will be more rapid, even though this reaction does not produce the most stable products. At high temperature,

FIGURE 6.19
An energy diagram showing two possible pathways for the reaction between A and B. In this case, C and D are the thermodynamic products, as well as the kinetic products.

FIGURE 6.20
An energy diagram showing two possible pathways for the reaction between A and B. In this case, C and D are the thermodynamic products, while E and F are the kinetic products.

equilibrium concentrations will be quickly achieved, favoring formation of C and D. We will see several examples of kinetics versus thermodynamics throughout this course.

Transition States Versus Intermediates

Reactions often involve multiple steps. In the energy diagram of a multistep process, all local minima (valleys) represent *intermediates*, while all local maxima (peaks) represent *transition states* (Figure 6.21). It is important to understand the difference between transition states and intermediates.

FIGURE 6.21
In an energy diagram, all peaks are transition states, and all valleys are intermediates.

A **transition state**, as the name implies, is a state through which the reaction passes. Transition states cannot be isolated. In this high-energy state, bonds are in the process of being broken and/or formed simultaneously, as shown in Figure 6.22.

FIGURE 6.22
In a transition state, bonds are being broken and/or formed.

As a crude analogy for the difference between a transition state and an intermediate, consider jumping in the air as high as you can while your friend takes a photograph of the highest point of your trajectory. The picture shows the height that you achieved, although it would not be fair to say that you were able to spend any considerable amount of time at that height (to hover in midair). It was a state through which you passed. In contrast, imagine jumping onto a desk and then jumping back down. A photograph of you standing on the desk will be very different from the previous picture. It is actually possible to stand on a desk for a period of time, but it is not possible to remain hovering in the air for any reasonable period of time. The picture of you standing on the desk is similar to the picture of a reaction intermediate. **Intermediates** have a certain, albeit short, lifetime.

FIGURE 6.23
An energy diagram of a reaction that exhibits an intermediate characterized by a valley in the energy diagram.

Intermediates, such as the one shown in Figure 6.23, are very common, and we will encounter them hundreds of times throughout this course.

The Hammond Postulate

Consider the two highlighted points on the energy diagram in Figure 6.24. Because these two points are close to each other on the curve, they are close in energy and are therefore structurally similar.

FIGURE 6.24
On an energy diagram, two points that are close together will represent structurally similar states.

Using this principle, we can make a generalization about the structure of a transition state in any exothermic or endothermic process (Figure 6.25). In an exothermic process the transition state is closer in energy to the reactants than to the products, and therefore, the structure of the transition

FIGURE 6.25
A transition state will be closer in energy to the starting materials in an exothermic process, but it will be closer in energy to the products in an endothermic process.

state more closely resembles the reactants. In contrast, the transition state in an endothermic process is closer in energy to the products, and therefore, the transition state more closely resembles the products. This principle is called the **Hammond postulate**. We will use this principle many times in our discussions of transition states throughout this text.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

6.7 Consider the relative energy diagrams for four different processes:

(a) Compare energy diagrams A and D. Assuming all other factors (such as concentrations and temperature) are identical for the two processes, identify which process will occur more rapidly. Explain.

(b) Compare energy diagrams A and B. Which process will more greatly favor products at equilibrium? Explain.

(c) Do any of the processes exhibit an intermediate? Do any of the processes exhibit a transition state? Explain.

(d) Compare energy diagrams A and C. In which case will the transition state resemble reactants more than products? Explain.

(e) Compare energy diagrams A and B. Assuming all other factors (such as concentrations and temperature) are identical for the two processes, identify which process will occur more rapidly. Explain.

(f) Compare energy diagrams B and D. Which process will more greatly favor products at equilibrium? Explain.

(g) Compare energy diagrams C and D. In which case will the transition state resemble products more than reactants? Explain.

6.7 Nucleophiles and Electrophiles

Ionic reactions, also called **polar reactions**, involve the participation of ions as reactants, intermediates, or products. In most cases, the ions are present as intermediates. These reactions represent most (approximately 95%) of the reactions that we will encounter in this course. The other two major categories, radical reactions and pericyclic reactions, occupy a much smaller focus in the typical undergraduate organic chemistry course but will be discussed in Chapters 10 and 16, respectively. The remainder of this chapter will focus on ionic reactions.

Ionic reactions occur when one reactant has a site of high electron density and the other reactant has a site of low electron density. For example, consider the following electrostatic potential maps of methyl chloride and methyllithium (Figure 6.26). Each compound exhibits an inductive effect, but in opposite directions.

LOOKING BACK
For a review of inductive effects, see Section 1.12.

FIGURE 6.26
Electrostatic potential maps of methyl chloride and methyllithium, clearly indicating the inductive effects.

The carbon atom in methyl chloride represents a site of low electron density, while the carbon atom in methyllithium represents a site of high electron density. Since opposite charges attract, these two compounds will react with each other. The type of reaction that occurs between methyl chloride and methyllithium will be explored in Chapter 7. For now, we will focus on the nature of each reactant.

An electron-rich center, such as the carbon atom in methyllithium, is called a **nucleophile**, which comes from Greek meaning "nucleus lover." That is, a nucleophilic center is characterized by its ability to react with a positive charge or partial positive charge. In contrast, an electron-deficient center, such as the carbon atom in methyl chloride, is called an **electrophile**, which comes from Greek meaning "electron lover." That is, an electrophilic center is characterized by its ability to react with a negative charge or partial negative charge.

Throughout this text, we will focus extensively on the behavior of nucleophiles and electrophiles. Ultimately, there are just a handful of principles that will enable us to explain, and even predict, most reactions. However, in order to learn and use these principles, it will first be necessary to become proficient in identifying the nucleophilic and electrophilic centers in any compound. This skill is arguably one of the most important in organic chemistry. We have said before that the essence of organic chemistry is to study and predict how electron density flows during a reaction. It will not be possible to make any intelligent predictions without knowing where the electron density can be found and where it is likely to go. We will now explore the nature of nucleophiles and electrophiles.

Nucleophiles

LOOKING BACK
For a review of Lewis bases, see Section 3.10.

A nucleophile is an electron-rich molecule or ion that is capable of donating a pair of electrons. Notice that this definition is very similar to the definition of a Lewis base. Indeed, *nucleophiles are Lewis bases*. In this section, we will introduce several examples of nucleophiles, and we will see many more nucleophiles throughout this text.

A structure with a localized negative charge on an oxygen atom (not stabilized by resonance) will generally be a strong nucleophile. This includes hydroxide (HO^-), as well as alkoxide ions (RO^-, where R represents an alkyl group), as seen in the following examples:

Hydroxide | **Methoxide** | **Ethoxide** | ***tert*-Butoxide**

Alkoxide ions ($RO^{\ominus}$)

These structures are anions, so they must be associated with some counter-stabilizing cation, such as Na^+, Li^+ or K^+. The following are some examples:

Lithium hydroxide (LiOH) | **Sodium methoxide** (NaOMe) | **Sodium ethoxide** (NaOEt) | **Potassium *tert*-Butoxide** (*t*-BuOK)

In each case above, a different counter-ion could have been used. For example, if hydroxide is desired as a nucleophile in a reaction, we can use lithium hydroxide (LiOH), sodium hydroxide (NaOH), or potassium hydroxide (KOH). All three reagents provide the same nucleophile (hydroxide), and the choice of counter-ion is generally not relevant for the outcome of the reaction (although there are indeed some reactions where the choice of counter-ion does impact the outcome of the reaction, and we will not explore any such reactions). For our purposes, we will generally ignore the identity of the counter-ion, so LiOH, NaOH, and KOH are all treated as essentially the same reagent (hydroxide). Throughout the rest of the text, we will generally use NaOH as the source of hydroxide.

Water is a weak nucleophile, and alcohols (ROH, where R represents an alkyl group) are also weak nucleophiles:

Water | **Methanol** | **Ethanol** | ***tert*-Butanol**

Alcohols (ROH)

These structures lack a negative charge (as compared with hydroxide and alkoxide ions), so they are not strong nucleophiles. However, each of these structures does have an oxygen atom with lone pairs, and the lone pairs can function as weak nucleophilic centers. These compounds are examples of weak nucleophiles.

There are many factors contributing to nucleophilicity, but perhaps the most important is polarizability. **Polarizability**, loosely defined, describes the ability of an atom to distribute its electron density unevenly in response to external influences. Polarizability is directly related to the size of the atom (and more specifically, the number of electrons that are distant from the nucleus). For example, sulfur is very large and has many electrons that are distant from the nucleus, and its electron density can be unevenly distributed when it comes near an electrophile. Iodine shares the same feature. As a result, I^- and HS^- are particularly strong nucleophiles (they are among the strongest known nucleophiles). For a similar reason, many of the halides (including Br^- and Cl^-) are also strong nucleophiles, as we will see throughout this text.

We will see many more types of nucleophiles throughout this text. As one more example for now, consider the structures of alkenes, which are compounds that contain a double bond between two carbon atoms, as seen in the following examples:

Each of these compounds is classified as an alkene, and each can function as a nucleophile because of its π bond. Recall that a π bond is formed from overlapping p orbitals (Figure 6.27), which are a region in space of high electron density. The π bond of an alkene represents a pair of electrons that can attack a variety of electrophiles (as we will see in Chapter 8), so alkenes are nucleophilic.

FIGURE 6.27
A π bond is a region in space of high electron density.

In summary, we have seen many different reagents that can function as nucleophiles, including hydroxide ions (HO^-), alkoxide ions (RO^-), halide ions (I^-, Br^-, or Cl^-), thiolate ions (HS^-), and alkenes ($R_2C{=}CR_2$). We also saw that water (H_2O) and alcohols (ROH) can function as weak nucleophiles.

Electrophiles

LOOKING BACK
For a review of Lewis acids, see Section 3.10.

An electrophile is an electron-deficient molecule or ion that is capable of accepting a pair of electrons. Notice that this definition is very similar to the definition for a Lewis acid. Indeed, *electrophiles are Lewis acids.* We will explore several electrophiles here, and we will see many more electrophiles throughout this text.

In Chapter 7, we will explore reactions of alkyl halides. Alkyl halides are compounds that contain a halogen (such as Cl, Br, or I) connected directly to an sp^3-hybridized carbon atom. All of the following are examples of alkyl halides:

In an alkyl halide, the halogen withdraws electron density from the carbon atom to which it is attached (because halogens are more electronegative than carbon). This inductive effect renders the carbon atom deficient in electron density (δ+). For this reason, alkyl halides are electrophilic:

Now let's explore an electrophile in which a carbon atom bears a full positive (+) charge, rather than a partial positive (δ+) charge. This type of structure is called a **carbocation**. A carbocation has an empty p orbital (Figure 6.28), which functions as a site that can accept a pair of electrons, rendering the carbon atom electrophilic. We will discuss carbocations in more depth in Section 6.11.

FIGURE 6.28
The empty p orbital of a carbocation.

Before concluding this section, we will introduce just one more electrophile that we will encounter often. A double bond between carbon and oxygen (C═O) is called a carbonyl group, and

carbonyl groups are present in a variety of compounds, including ketones, aldehydes, esters, as well as many other types of compounds:

The carbon atom of a carbonyl group is electron-deficient (δ+), and therefore electrophilic, because of both resonance and induction, as illustrated below:

As a result, carbonyl groups are excellent electrophiles. Indeed, three entire chapters of this text are devoted to reactions in which carbonyl groups function as electrophiles (chapters 19–21). It should be noted that the oxygen atom of a carbonyl group can function as a nucleophile, although we won't see any such reactions in this text. So, for our purposes, we will consider carbonyl groups to be exclusively electrophiles, even though they can also sometimes function as nucleophiles.

Throughout this text, we will encounter a large number of different electrophiles. Thus far, we have seen just a handful of electrophiles, including alkyl halides, carbocations, and carbonyl groups. Table 6.3 is a summary chart of the nucleophiles and electrophiles that we have seen in this section.

TABLE 6.3 SUMMARY OF NUCLEOPHILES AND ELECTROPHILES

NUCLEOPHILES		ELECTROPHILES	
TYPE OF NUCLEOPHILE	STRUCTURE	TYPE OF ELECTROPHILE	STRUCTURE
Hydroxide	NaOH	Alkyl halides	R—CH$_2$—X (X = Cl, Br, or I)
Alkoxide ions	NaOR	Carbocations	
Halide ions	NaX (X = Cl, Br, or I)	Carbonyl groups	
Thiolate	NaSH		
Alkene	$R_2C{=}CR_2$		
Alcohol	ROH (weak nucleophile)		
Water	H_2O (weak nucleophile)		

SKILLBUILDER

6.2 IDENTIFYING NUCLEOPHILIC AND ELECTROPHILIC CENTERS

LEARN the skill

Identify all nucleophilic and electrophilic centers in the following compound.

SOLUTION

This compound has more than one functional group, so we look at each functional group individually and determine whether it represents a nucleophilic center or an electrophilic center. Going from left to right, we first encounter an OH group. This group is the

characteristic functional group for an alcohol, which can function as a weak nucleophile, because of the lone pairs:

In the middle of the compound, there is a carbonyl group, which can function as an electrophile. And finally, the right side of the structure has a halogen (Cl) connected to an sp^3-hybridized carbon atom, so that carbon atom is also an electrophilic center. In summary, the compound has one nucleophilic center and two electrophilic centers (note that we do not consider the carbonyl group to be a nucleophile, even though carbonyl groups can sometimes function as nucleophiles, because we wont see any such reactions in this text):

PRACTICE the skill

6.8 Identify whether each of the following will function as a nucleophile or as an electrophile:

(a) **(b)** **(c)** **(d)** **(e)**

(f) **(g)** NaBr **(h)** LiOH **(i)** CH_3I **(j)** $KOC(CH_3)_3$

6.9 The following compound can react with itself because it has both a nucleophilic center and an electrophilic center. Identify the nucleophilic center and the electrophilic center in this compound:

APPLY the skill

6.10 (*R*)-(−)-Carvone is responsible for the characteristic minty odor and flavor of spearmint oil, and it can also serve as a useful chiral starting material for organic synthesis.[2] A carbon-carbon π bond is normally nucleophilic, but one of the two carbon-carbon π bonds in (*R*)-(−)-carvone is actually electrophilic! Draw resonance structures to identify all of the electrophilic centers in (*R*)-(−)-carvone.

(*R*)-(−)-Carvone

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 6.29, 6.30, 6.43, 6.54**

6.8 Mechanisms and Arrow Pushing

Recall from Chapter 3 that a mechanism shows how a reaction takes place using curved arrows to illustrate the flow of electrons. The tail of every curved arrow shows where the electrons are coming from, and the head of every curved arrow shows where the electrons are going:

LOOKING BACK
Recall that we also used a handful of patterns for arrow pushing to master resonance structures in Chapter 2.

In order to master ionic mechanisms, it will be helpful to become familiar with characteristic patterns for arrow pushing. We will now learn patterns of electron flow, and these patterns will empower us to understand reaction mechanisms and even propose new mechanisms. There are only four characteristic patterns, and all ionic mechanisms are simply combinations of these four steps. Let's go through them one by one.

Nucleophilic Attack

The first pattern is **nucleophilic attack**, characterized by a nucleophile attacking an electrophile; for example:

As we have seen, bromide is a nucleophile because it is polarizable, and the carbocation is an electrophile because of its empty *p* orbital. In this example, the attack of the nucleophile on the electrophile involves just one curved arrow. The tail of this curved arrow is placed on the nucleophilic center and the head is placed on the electrophilic center. It is also common to see a nucleophilic attack that utilizes more than one curved arrow; for example:

In this case, there are two curved arrows. The first shows the nucleophile attacking the electrophile, but what is the function of the second curved arrow? There are a couple of ways to view this second curved arrow. We can simply think of it as a resonance arrow: We can imagine first drawing the resonance structure of the electrophile and then having the nucleophile attack:

From this perspective, it seems that only one of the curved arrows is actually showing the nucleophilic attack. The other curved arrow can be thought of as a resonance curved arrow.

Alternatively, we can think of the second curved arrow as an actual flow of electron density that goes up onto the oxygen atom when the nucleophile attacks:

This perspective is perhaps more accurate, but we must keep in mind that both curved arrows are showing just one arrow-pushing pattern: *nucleophilic attack*.

As we will see in Chapters 8 and 18, it is also common for π bonds to serve as nucleophiles; for example:

Loss of a Leaving Group

The second pattern for arrow pushing is characterized by the loss of a leaving group; for example:

This step involves one curved arrow, although it is common to see more than one curved arrow being used to show the loss of a leaving group. For example:

Only one of the curved arrows above actually shows the chloride leaving (the curved arrow at the very bottom). The remaining curved arrows can be viewed in two different ways. We can view the other curved arrows as resonance arrows, drawn after the leaving group leaves:

or we can view the process as a flow of electron density that pushes out the leaving group:

Regardless of how we view the process, it is important to recognize that all of these curved arrows together show only one arrow-pushing pattern: **loss of a leaving group**.

Proton Transfers

The third pattern for arrow pushing has already been discussed in detail in Chapter 3. Recall that a **proton transfer** is characterized by two curved arrows:

In this example, a ketone is being protonated, which is shown with two curved arrows. The first is drawn from the ketone to the proton. The second curved arrow shows what happens to the electrons that were previously holding the proton.

A proton transfer step is illustrated with two curved arrows, whether the compound is protonated (as above) or deprotonated, as shown below:

Sometimes, proton transfers are shown with only one curved arrow:

In this case, the base that removes the proton has not been indicated. Chemists will sometimes use this approach for clarity of presentation, even though a proton doesn't fall off into space by itself. In order for a compound to lose a proton, a base must be involved in order to deprotonate the compound. In general, it is preferable to show the base involved and to use *two* curved arrows.

At times, *more* than two curved arrows are used for a proton transfer step. For example, the following case has three curved arrows:

Once again, this step can be viewed in one of two ways. We can view this as a simple proton transfer followed by drawing a resonance structure:

or we can argue that all of the curved arrows together show the flow of electron density that takes place during the proton transfer:

Rearrangements

The fourth, and final, pattern is characterized by a **rearrangement**. There are several kinds of rearrangements, but at this point, we will focus exclusively on *carbocation rearrangements*. In order to discuss carbocation rearrangements, we must first explore one feature of carbocations. Specifically, carbocations are stabilized by neighboring alkyl groups (Figure 6.29).

FIGURE 6.29
Neighboring alkyl groups will stabilize a carbocation through hyperconjugation.

As illustrated in Figure 6.29, the presence of a neighboring alkyl group will stabilize a carbocation because a bonding MO slightly overlaps with the empty *p* orbital, placing some of its electron density in the empty *p* orbital. This effect, called **hyperconjugation**, stabilizes the empty *p* orbital. This explains the observed trend in Figure 6.30. The terms **primary**, **secondary**, and **tertiary** refer to the number of alkyl groups attached directly to the positively charged carbon atom. Tertiary carbocations are more stable (lower in energy) than secondary carbocations, which are more stable than primary carbocations.

FIGURE 6.30
Carbocations with more alkyl groups will be more stable than carbocations with fewer alkyl groups.

WATCH OUT
Hydride is $H:^-$. It is a hydrogen atom with an extra electron (two electrons total). Don't confuse the hydride ion with a proton (H^+), which is a hydrogen atom missing its electron.

In Section 6.11, we will learn to predict when rearrangements are likely to occur. For now, we will just focus on recognizing carbocation rearrangements. Carbocations can rearrange in a variety of ways, such as a **hydride shift** or a **methyl shift**.

A hydride shift involves the migration of H^-:

In this example, a secondary carbocation is transformed into a more stable, tertiary carbocation. How does this occur? As an analogy, imagine that there is a hole in the ground. Now imagine digging another hole nearby and using the dirt to fill up the first hole. The first hole can be filled, but in its place, a new hole has been created nearby. A hydride shift is a similar concept. The carbocation is a hole (a place where electron density is missing). The neighboring hydrogen atom takes both of its electrons and migrates over to fill the empty *p* orbital. This process generates a new, more stable, empty *p* orbital nearby.

A carbocation rearrangement can also occur via a methyl shift:

Once again, a secondary carbocation is being converted into a tertiary carbocation. But this time, it is a methyl group (rather than a hydride) that migrates with its two electrons to plug up the hole. In order for a methyl shift to occur, the methyl group must be attached to the carbon atom that is adjacent to the carbocation.

The two examples above (hydride shift and methyl shift) are the most common types of carbocation rearrangements.

In summary, we have seen only four characteristic patterns for arrow pushing in ionic reactions: (1) nucleophilic attack, (2) loss of a leaving group, (3) proton transfer, and (4) rearrangement. Let's get some practice identifying them.

SKILLBUILDER

6.3 IDENTIFYING AN ARROW-PUSHING PATTERN

LEARN the skill

Consider the following step:

Identify which arrow-pushing pattern is utilized in this case.

SOLUTION

Read the curved arrows. The first three curved arrows show double bonds moving over, and the last curved arrow shows chloride being ejected from the compound:

In other words, chloride is functioning as a leaving group. The other curved arrows can be viewed as resonance arrows:

Alternatively, we can view the π bonds as "pushing out" the chloride ion:

π **Bonds pushing out the chloride ion**

Either way, there is only one arrow-pushing pattern being utilized here: *loss of a leaving group.*

PRACTICE the skill

6.11 For each of the following cases, read the curved arrows and identify which arrow-pushing pattern is utilized:

APPLY the skill

6.12 Most fabrics do a good job at protecting skin from exposure to sunlight, but addition of UV-absorbing compounds to clothing can further reduce the amount of ultraviolet light that passes through the fabric.[3] The following transformation takes place upon absorption of UV light by one such compound. Identify which arrow-pushing pattern is utilized in this reaction.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problem 6.27**

6.9 Combining the Patterns of Arrow Pushing

All ionic mechanisms, regardless of how complex, are just different combinations of the four characteristic patterns seen in Section 6.8. As an example, consider the reaction in Figure 6.31.

FIGURE 6.31
A reaction containing all four characteristic patterns for arrow pushing.

The mechanism in Figure 6.31 has four steps, each of which is one of the characteristic patterns from Section 6.8. Sometimes, a single mechanistic step will involve two simultaneous patterns; for example:

There are two curved arrows shown here. One curved arrow, coming from the hydroxide (HO^-) ion, shows a nucleophilic attack. The second curved arrow shows loss of a leaving group. In this case, we are utilizing two arrow-pushing patterns simultaneously. This is called a *concerted process*. In Chapter 7, we will explore some of the important differences between concerted and stepwise mechanisms. For now, we will simply focus on recognizing the various patterns that can arise as a result of combining the various arrow-pushing patterns. By doing so, similarities will emerge between apparently different mechanisms.

SKILLBUILDER

6.4 IDENTIFYING A SEQUENCE OF ARROW-PUSHING PATTERNS

LEARN the skill

Identify the sequence of arrow-pushing patterns in the following reaction:

SOLUTION

In the first step, hydroxide is attacking the C═O bond in a nucleophilic attack:

In the next step, an alkoxide ion (RO^-) is being ejected as a leaving group:

Finally, the last step is a proton transfer, which always involves two curved arrows:

The sequence of this reaction is therefore (1) nucleophilic attack, (2) loss of a leaving group, and (3) proton transfer. Throughout this book, and especially in Chapter 20, we will see dozens of reactions that follow this three-step sequence. By viewing all of these reactions in this format (as a sequence of characteristic patterns), it will be easier to see the similarities between apparently different reactions.

PRACTICE the skill

6.13 For each of the following multistep reactions, read the curved arrows and identify the sequence of arrow–pushing patterns:

(a)

APPLY the skill

6.14 Several natural products have been isolated from the flowering plant *Sarcostemma acidum*, which has been used in folk medicine as a cough suppressant. During efforts to make these compounds in the laboratory, it was discovered that one of the natural products is readily converted into another one of the natural products in a cyclization reaction that occurs upon treatment with a strong acid.[4] A similar cyclization is shown below. Identify the sequence of arrow-pushing patterns in the following mechanism for the conversion of compound **1** to compound **2**.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 6.31–6.36, 6.49**

There may be more than 100 mechanisms in a full organic chemistry course, but there are fewer than a dozen different sequences of arrow-pushing patterns in these mechanisms. As we proceed through the chapters, we will learn rules for determining when each pattern can and cannot be utilized. These rules will empower us to propose mechanisms for new reactions.

6.10 Drawing Curved Arrows

Curved arrows have a very precise meaning, and they must be drawn precisely. Avoid sloppy arrows. Make sure to be deliberate when drawing the tail and the head of every arrow. The tail must be placed on either a bond or a lone pair. For example, the following reaction employs two curved arrows. One of the curved arrows has its tail placed on a lone pair, and the other has its tail placed on a bond:

These are the only two possible locations where the tail of a curved arrow can be placed. The tail shows where electrons are coming from, and electrons can only be found in lone pairs or bonds. *Never place the tail of a curved arrow on a positive charge.*

The head of a curved arrow must be placed so that it shows either the formation of a bond or the formation of a lone pair:

WATCH OUT
C, N, and O are the second-row elements that require special attention. Never give one of these elements more than four orbitals.

When drawing the head of a curved arrow, make sure to avoid drawing an arrow that violates the octet rule. Specifically, never draw an arrow that gives more than four orbitals to a second-row element:

In the first example the head of the curved arrow is giving a fifth bond to the carbon atom. This violates the octet rule. The second example does not violate the octet rule, because the carbon atom is gaining one bond but losing another. In the end, the carbon atom never has more than four bonds.

Make sure that all the curved arrows you draw accomplish one of the four characteristic arrow-pushing patterns.

Avoid drawing arrows like the one below. This arrow violates the octet rule, and it does not accomplish any one of the four characteristic arrow-pushing patterns.

SKILLBUILDER

6.5 DRAWING CURVED ARROWS

LEARN the skill

Draw the curved arrows that accomplish the following transformation:

STEP 1
Identify which of the four arrow-pushing patterns to use.

SOLUTION

We begin by identifying which characteristic arrow-pushing pattern to use in this case. Look carefully, and notice that H_3O^+ is losing a proton. That proton has been transferred to a carbon atom. Therefore, this is a proton transfer step, where the π bond is functioning as the base to deprotonate H_3O^+. A proton transfer step requires two curved arrows. Make sure

STEP 2
Draw the curved arrows focusing on the proper placement of the tail and head of each curved arrow.

to properly place the head and the tail of each curved arrow. The first curved arrow must originate on the π bond and end on a proton:

Don't forget to draw the second curved arrow (students will often leave out the second arrow, producing an incomplete mechanism). The second curved arrow shows what happens to the electrons that were previously holding the proton. Specifically, the tail is placed on the O—H bond, and the head is placed on the oxygen atom:

PRACTICE the skill

6.15 Draw any missing lone pairs, and then draw the curved arrows that accomplish each of the following transformations:

APPLY the skill

6.16 Indolizomycin is a potent antibiotic agent produced by a microorganism called SK2-52. Of particular interest is the fact that SK2-52 is a mutant microorganism that was created in a laboratory from two different strains, *Streptomyces teryimanensis* and *Streptomyces grisline*, neither of which is antibiotic-producing. This raises the possibility of using mutant microorganisms as factories for producing novel compounds with a variety of medicinal properties. During S. J. Danishefsky's synthesis of racemic indolizomycin, compound **1** was treated with triphenylphosphine (PPh_3) to afford compound **2**.[5] The reaction between **2** and **3** then gave compound **4**. These processes are believed to proceed via the intermediates shown below. Complete the mechanism by adding any missing lone pairs and drawing all curved arrows, and identify the arrow-pushing pattern employed in each step.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 6.37–6.40, 6.55**

6.11 Carbocation Rearrangements

Throughout this course, we will encounter many examples of carbocation rearrangements, so we must be able to predict when these rearrangements will occur. Recall that two common types of carbocation rearrangement are hydride shifts and methyl shifts (Figure 6.32).

FIGURE 6.32
Hydride shifts and methyl shifts are the two most common types of carbocation rearrangements.

In both cases, a secondary carbocation is converted into a more stable, tertiary carbocation. Stability is the key. In order to predict when a carbocation rearrangement will occur, we must determine whether the carbocation can become more stable via a rearrangement. For example, consider the following carbocation:

In order to determine if this carbocation can undergo a rearrangement, we must identify any hydrogen atoms or methyl groups attached directly to the neighboring carbon atoms:

There are four candidates. Now imagine each one of these groups shifting over to plug the carbocation, generating a new carbocation. Would the new carbocation be more stable? In this example only one group can migrate to produce a more stable carbocation:

If this hydride migrates, it will generate a new, tertiary carbocation. Therefore, we do expect a hydride shift in this case.

Carbocation rearrangements generally do not occur when the carbocation is already tertiary unless a rearrangement will produce a resonance-stabilized carbocation; for example:

LOOKING BACK
Recall that the term *allylic* describes the positions connected directly to the π bond:

In this case, the original carbocation is tertiary. However, the newly formed carbocation is tertiary and it is stabilized by resonance. Such a carbocation is called an **allylic carbocation** because the positive charge is located at an allylic position.

SKILLBUILDER

6.6 PREDICTING CARBOCATION REARRANGEMENTS

LEARN the skill

Predict whether the following carbocation will rearrange, and if so, draw a curved arrow showing the carbocation rearrangement:

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Identify neighboring carbon atoms.

This carbocation is secondary, so it certainly has the potential to rearrange. We must look to see if a carbocation rearrangement can produce a more stable, tertiary carbocation. Begin by identifying the carbon atoms neighboring the C+:

STEP 2
Identify any H or CH_3 groups attached directly to the neighboring carbon atoms.

Look at all hydrogen atoms or methyl groups connected to these carbon atoms:

STEP 3
Determine which of these groups can migrate to generate a more stable carbocation.

Consider if migration of any of these groups will generate a more stable, tertiary carbocation. Migration of either of the neighboring hydride groups will only generate another secondary carbocation. So, we do not expect a hydride shift to occur.

However, if either of the methyl groups migrates, a tertiary carbocation is generated. Therefore, we expect a methyl shift to take place, generating a more stable tertiary carbocation:

STEP 4
Draw a curved arrow showing the carbocation rearrangement and draw the new carbocation.

PRACTICE the skill

6.17 For each of the following carbocations determine if it is likely to rearrange. If so, draw the carbocation rearrangement with a curved arrow, and draw the resulting carbocation.

APPLY the skill

6.18 George Olah was awarded the 1994 Nobel Prize in Chemistry for his research involving carbocations. An interesting series of carbocation rearrangements studied by Olah is shown below.[6] Each of these rearrangements is accomplished via the migration of a methylene (CH_2) group, rather than a methyl group. For each step, draw a curved arrow showing the migration of the methylene group:

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problem 6.41**

6.12 Reversible and Irreversible Reaction Arrows

As we explore ionic reaction mechanisms throughout this text, you might notice that some steps will be drawn with reversible reaction arrows (equilibrium arrows), while other steps will be drawn with irreversible reaction arrows; for example:

With each new mechanism that we explore, you might wonder how to determine whether it is more appropriate to use a reversible or an irreversible reaction arrow. In this section, we will explore some general rules for each of the four patterns (nucleophilic attack, loss of a leaving group, proton transfer, and carbocation rearrangement).

Nucleophilic Attack

For a step in which a nucleophile attacks an electrophile, a reversible reaction arrow is generally used if the nucleophile is capable of functioning as a good leaving group after the attack has occurred, while an irreversible reaction arrow is used if the nucleophile is a poor leaving group. To illustrate this concept, consider the following two examples:

In the first case, the nucleophile (water) can function as a good leaving group after it has attacked. Therefore, a reversible reaction arrow was used to indicate that the following reverse process occurs at an appreciable rate:

In contrast, the second example employs a nucleophile that is a poor leaving group. As such, an irreversible reaction arrow was used to indicate that the following reverse process does not occur:

In Section 7.1, we will learn to distinguish between good leaving groups and poor leaving groups. Specifically, we will see that weak bases (such as H_2O) are good leaving groups, while strong bases (such as H_3C^-) are poor leaving groups.

Loss of a Leaving Group

For a step involving the loss of a leaving group, a reversible reaction arrow is generally used if the leaving group is capable of functioning as a good nucleophile; for example:

Most leaving groups that we will encounter in this course can also function as nucleophiles, so loss of a leaving group is rarely drawn with an irreversible reaction arrow.

Proton Transfer

It should be noted that all proton transfer steps are technically reversible. However, there are many cases that can be effectively treated as irreversible. For example, consider the following example, in which water is deprotonated by a very strong base:

In this case, the difference between the pK_a values of the two acids (water and butane) is approximately 34. This indicates that there should be 10^{34} molecules of butane for every one molecule of water. In a solution containing one mole ($\sim 10^{23}$molecules), the chances are exceedingly small that even a single molecule of butane will be deprotonated by a hydroxide ion at any given moment in time. As such, the process shown above is effectively irreversible.

Now consider a proton transfer step in which the pK_a values are more similar; for example:

In such a case, a reversible reaction arrow is more appropriate, because an equilibrium is established in which both acids are present (the compound with the higher pK_a is favored, but both are present). This raises the question: What is the cutoff? That is, how large must the difference in pK_a values be in order to justify the use of an irreversible reaction arrow. Unfortunately, there is no clear answer for this question, as it often depends on the context of the discussion. Generally speaking, irreversible reaction arrows are used for reactions in which the acids differ in strength by more than 10 pK_a units, as seen in the following example:

When the difference in pK_a values is between 5 and 10 pK_a units, either reversible or irreversible reaction arrows might be used, depending on the context of the discussion.

Carbocation Rearrangement

Technically speaking, whenever a carbocation rearrangement can occur, an equilibrium will be established in which all of the possible carbocations are present, with the most stable carbocation

dominating the equilibrium. The difference in energy between the possible carbocations (for example, secondary vs. tertiary) is often significant, so carbocation rearrangements will generally be drawn as irreversible processes:

The reverse process (the transformation of a tertiary carbocation to a secondary carbocation) is effectively negligible.

In this section, we have seen many rules for determining when it is appropriate to draw a reversible reaction arrow and when it is appropriate to draw an irreversible reaction arrow. These rules are meant to serve as general guidelines, and there will certainly be exceptions. Keep in mind that there are other relevant factors that were not presented in this section, so strict adherence to the rules in this section is not advisable. For example, when a step involves the liberation of a gas, which is free to exit the reaction vessel, the reaction is expected to proceed to completion (Le Châtelier's principle). To illustrate this concept, consider the following step, which we will encounter in Chapter 19 (Mechanism 19.8):

This step proceeds to completion, despite the formation of a high-energy species, because the evolution of nitrogen gas serves as a driving force for the reaction.

Most of the steps in most of the mechanisms that we will explore in this textbook will conform to the rules described in this section. You may find it helpful to revisit this section periodically, as you continue to progress through the subsequent chapters.

REVIEW OF CONCEPTS AND VOCABULARY

SECTION 6.1

- The total change in **enthalpy** for any reaction (ΔH), also called the **heat of reaction**, is a measure of the energy exchanged between the system and its surroundings.
- Each type of bond has a unique **bond dissociation energy**, which is the amount of energy necessary to accomplish **homolytic bond cleavage**, producing **radicals**.
- **Exothermic** reactions involve a transfer of energy from the system to the surroundings, while **endothermic** reactions involve a transfer of energy from the surroundings to the system.

SECTION 6.2

- **Entropy** is loosely defined as the disorder of a system and is the ultimate criterion for spontaneity. In order for a reaction to be **spontaneous**, the total change in entropy ($\Delta S_{sys} + \Delta S_{surr}$) must be positive.
- Reactions with a positive ΔS_{sys} involve an increase in the number of molecules, or an increase in the amount of conformational freedom.

SECTION 6.3

- In order for a process to be spontaneous, the change in **Gibbs free energy** (ΔG) must be negative.
- A process with a negative ΔG is called **exergonic**, while a process with a positive ΔG is called **endergonic**.

SECTION 6.4

- Equilibrium concentrations of a reaction represent the point of lowest free energy available to the system.
- The exact position of equilibrium is described by the equilibrium constant, K_{eq}, and is a function of ΔG.
- If ΔG is negative, the reaction will favor products over reactants, and K_{eq} will be greater than 1. If ΔG is positive, the reaction will favor reactants over products, and K_{eq} will be less than 1.
- The study of relative energy levels (ΔG) and equilibrium concentrations (K_{eq}) is called **thermodynamics**.

SECTION 6.5

- The study of reaction rates is called **kinetics**. The rate of any reaction is described by a **rate equation**. A reaction can be **first order, second order**, or **third order**, depending on whether the sum of the exponents in the rate equation is 1, 2, or 3, respectively.
- A low **energy of activation, E_a**, corresponds with a fast rate.

- Increasing the temperature will increase the number of molecules that possess the minimum necessary kinetic energy for a reaction, thereby increasing the rate of reaction.
- **Catalysts** speed up the rate of a reaction by providing an alternate pathway with a lower E_a.

SECTION 6.6

- The term *kinetics* refers to the rate of a reaction and is dependent on the relative energy levels of the reactants and the transition state.
- The term *thermodynamics* refers to the equilibrium concentrations and is dependent on the relative energy levels of the reactants and products.
- On an energy diagram, each peak represents a **transition state** while each valley represents an **intermediate**. Transition states cannot be isolated; intermediates have a finite lifetime.
- The **Hammond postulate** states that a transition state will resemble the reactants for an exergonic process but will resemble the products for an endergonic process.

SECTION 6.7

- **Ionic reactions**, also called **polar reactions**, involve the participation of ions as reactants, intermediates, or products—in most cases, as intermediates.
- A **nucleophile** is an electron-rich molecule or ion that is capable of donating a pair of electrons.
- Nucleophiles are Lewis bases.
- An **electrophile** is an electron-deficient molecule or ion that is capable of accepting a pair of electrons.
- Electrophiles are Lewis acids.
- **Carbocations** are ions in which a carbon atom bears a positive charge (as a result of an empty *p* orbital) and are electrophilic.
- **Polarizability** describes the ability of an atom to distribute its electron density unevenly as a result of external influences.

SECTION 6.8

- In drawing a mechanism, the tail of a curved arrow shows where the electrons are coming from, and the head of the arrow shows where the electrons are going.
- There are four characteristic arrow-pushing patterns: (1) **nucleophilic attack**, (2) **loss of a leaving group**, (3) **proton transfer**, and (4) **rearrangement**.
- The most common type of rearrangement is a carbocation rearrangement, in which a carbocation undergoes either a **hydride shift** or a **methyl shift** to produce a more stable carbocation. As a result of **hyperconjugation**, **tertiary** carbocations are more stable than **secondary** carbocations, which are more stable than **primary** carbocations.

SECTION 6.9

- All ionic mechanisms, regardless of complexity, are different combinations of the four characteristic arrow-pushing patterns.
- When a single mechanistic step involves two simultaneous arrow-pushing patterns, it is called a concerted process.

SECTION 6.10

- The tail of a curved arrow must be placed either on a bond or a lone pair, while the head of a curved arrow must be placed so that it shows either formation of a bond or of a lone pair.
- Never draw an arrow that gives a fifth orbital to a second-row element (C, N, O, F).

SECTION 6.11

- A carbocation rearrangement will occur if it leads to a more stable carbocation.
- Tertiary carbocations generally do not rearrange, unless a rearrangement will produce a resonance-stabilized carbocation, such as a tertiary **allylic carbocation.**

SECTION 6.12

- Irreversible reaction arrows are generally used in the following circumstances: 1) for a nucleophilic attack involving a strong nucleophile that is also a poor leaving group, or 2) for a proton transfer step in which there is a vast difference in pK_a values between the acids on either side of the equilibrium, or 3) for a carbocation rearrangement.
- Reversible reaction arrows are used in most other instances.

SKILLBUILDER REVIEW

6.1 PREDICTING $\Delta H°$ OF A REACTION

EXAMPLE Calculate $\Delta H°$ for this reaction.

STEPS 1 AND 2 Identify the bond dissociation energy of each bond broken and formed, and then determine the appropriate sign for each value.

STEP 3 Take the sum of steps 1 and 2.

Try Problems 6.1, 6.2, 6.20a, 6.47

6.2 IDENTIFYING NUCLEOPHILIC AND ELECTROPHILIC CENTERS

NUCLEOPHILES

Type of nucleophile	Structure
Hydroxide	NaOH
Alkoxide ions	NaOR
Halide ions	NaX (X = Cl, Br, or I)
Thiolate	NaSH
Alkene	$R_2C{=}CR_2$
Alcohol	ROH (weak nucleophile)
Water	H_2O (weak nucleophile)

ELECTROPHILES

Type of electrophile	Structure
Alkyl halides	(X = Cl, Br, or I)
Carbocations	
Carbonyl groups	

Try Problems 6.8–6.10, 6.29, 6.30, 6.43, 6.54

6.3 IDENTIFYING AN ARROW-PUSHING PATTERN

Nucleophilic attack

Loss of a leaving group

Proton transfer

Carbocation rearrangement

Try Problems 6.11, 6.12, 6.27

6.4 IDENTIFYING A SEQUENCE OF ARROW-PUSHING PATTERNS

Identify each characteristic pattern of arrow pushing.

Try Problems 6.13, 6.14, 6.31–6.36, 6.49

6.5 DRAWING CURVED ARROWS

STEP 1 Identify which of the four arrow-pushing patterns to use.

STEP 2 Draw the curved arrows, focusing on the proper placement of the tail and head of each curved arrow.

Try Problems 6.15, 6.16, 6.37–6.40, 6.55

6.6 PREDICTING CARBOCATION REARRANGEMENTS

STEP 1 Identify neighboring carbon atoms.

STEP 2 Identify any H or CH_3 attached *directly* to the neighboring carbon atoms.

STEP 3 Find any groups that can migrate to generate a more stable C+.

STEP 4 Draw a curved arrow showing the C+ rearrangement and then draw the new carbocation.

Try Problems 6.17, 6.18, 6.41

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

• **Included in Answers section**

6.19 In each of the following cases compare the bonds identified in red, and determine which bond you would expect to have the largest bond dissociation energy:

(a)

(b)

6.20 Consider the following reaction:

(a) Use Table 6.1 to estimate ΔH for this reaction.
(b) ΔS of this reaction is positive. Explain.
(c) Determine the sign of ΔG.
(d) Is the sign of ΔG dependent on temperature?
(e) Is the magnitude of ΔG dependent on temperature?

6.21 For each of the following cases use the information given to determine whether or not the equilibrium will favor products over reactants:

(a) A reaction with $K_{eq} = 1.2$
(b) A reaction with $K_{eq} = 0.2$
(c) A reaction with a positive ΔG
(d) An exothermic reaction with a positive ΔS
(e) An endothermic reaction with a negative ΔS

6.22 Which value of ΔG corresponds with $K_{eq} = 1$?

(a) +1 kJ/mol (b) 0 kJ/mol (c) −1 kJ/mol

6.23 Which value of ΔG corresponds with $K_{eq} < 1$?

(a) +1 kJ/mol (b) 0 kJ/mol (c) −1 kJ/mol

6.24 • For each of the following reactions determine whether ΔS for the reaction (ΔS_{sys}) will be positive, negative, or approximately zero:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

6.25 • Draw an energy diagram of a reaction with the following characteristics:

(a) A one-step reaction with a negative ΔG
(b) A one-step reaction with a positive ΔG
(c) A two-step reaction with an overall negative ΔG, where the intermediate is higher in energy than the reactants and the first transition state is higher in energy than the second transition state

6.26 Consider the following four energy diagrams:

(a) Which diagrams correspond with a two-step mechanism?
(b) Which diagrams correspond with a one-step mechanism?
(c) Compare energy diagrams **A** and **C**. Which has a relatively larger E_a?
(d) Compare diagrams **A** and **C**. Which has a negative ΔG?
(e) Compare diagrams **A** and **D**. Which has a positive ΔG?
(f) Compare all four energy diagrams. Which one exhibits the largest E_a?
(g) Which processes will have a value of K_{eq} that is greater than 1?
(h) Which process will have a value of K_{eq} that is roughly equal to 1?

6.27 For each of the following reactions identify the arrow-pushing pattern that is being utilized:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

6.28 • Rank the three carbocations shown in terms of increasing stability:

(a)

(b)

6.29 In the next chapter, we will explore a reaction that can occur between CH_3I and $NaOCH_2CH_3$. In this reaction (called a *substitution reaction*), one reagent functions as a nucleophile, and the other reagent functions as an electrophile. Identify which reagent is the nucleophile and which reagent is the electrophile in this reaction, and explain your choice.

6.30 Each of the following compounds exhibits two electrophilic centers. Identify both centers in each compound. (**Hint:** You will need to draw resonance structures in each case.)

(a)

A cockroach repellant found in cucumbers

(b)

Nootkatone Found in grapefruit

6.31 For the following mechanism, identify the sequence of arrow-pushing patterns:

6.32 For the following three-step mechanism, identify the sequence of arrow-pushing patterns:

6.33 The following two reactions will be explored in different chapters, yet they are very similar. Identify and compare the sequences of arrow-pushing patterns for Reaction 1 and Reaction 2.

Reaction 1 (Chapter 19)

Reaction 2 (Chapter 17)

6.34 • For the following mechanism, identify the sequence of arrow-pushing patterns:

6.35 For the following mechanism, identify the sequence of arrow-pushing patterns:

6.36 For the following mechanism, identify the sequence of arrow-pushing patterns:

6.37 Add missing lone pairs and draw curved arrows for each step of the following mechanism:

6.38 Draw curved arrows for each step of the following mechanism:

6.39 Draw curved arrows for each step of the following mechanism:

6.40 Draw curved arrows for each step of the following mechanism:

6.41 • Predict whether each of the following carbocations will rearrange. If so, draw the expected rearrangement using a curved arrow, and draw the resulting carbocation.

ACS-STYLE PROBLEMS (Multiple Choice)

Problems 6.42–6.49 follow the style of the ACS organic chemistry exam. For each of these problems, there will be one correct answer and three distractors.

6.42 • For a reaction with $\Delta G < 0$, which of the following MUST be true?

(a) The reaction must be exothermic

(b) The reaction must be endothermic

(c) $K_{eq} > 1$

(d) None of the above

6.43 • Which of the following can serve as a nucleophile?

6.44 • In the following energy diagram showing the progress of a reaction, which location(s) represent an intermediate?

(a) I, III, and V (b) II and IV

(c) Only III (d) I, II, III, IV, and V

6.45 • Which best describes the change in entropy for the following reaction?

(a) $\Delta S > 0$ (b) $\Delta S = 0$

(c) $\Delta S < 0$ (d) $\Delta S = 1$

6.46 • Which best represents the transition state of the following reaction?

6.47 • For a reaction with $\Delta H < 0$, which of the following must be true?

(a) All bonds are broken homolytically.

(b) All bonds are broken heterolytically.

(c) The bonds broken are stronger than the bonds formed.

(d) The bonds broken are weaker than the bonds formed.

6.48 • The rate expression for a reaction was found to be:

$$\text{Rate} = k[\text{EtBr}][\text{NaSH}]$$

This reaction is best described as

(a) zero order

(b) bimolecular

(c) unimolecular

(d) rate-determining

6.49 • What type of reaction steps are represented below?

(a) loss of a leaving group, followed by loss of a leaving group

(b) proton transfer, followed by loss of a leaving group

(c) nucleophilic attack, followed by proton transfer

(d) proton transfer, followed by nucleophilic attack

INTEGRATED PROBLEMS

6.50 Consider the following reaction:

The following rate equation has been experimentally established for this process:

$$\text{Rate} = k[HO^-][CH_3CH_2Br]$$

An energy diagram for this process is shown below:

(a) Identify the two characteristic arrow-pushing patterns that are required for this mechanism.

(b) Would you expect this process to be exothermic or endothermic? Explain.

(c) Would you expect ΔS_{sys} for this process to be positive, negative, or approximately zero?

(d) Is ΔG for this process positive or negative?

(e) Draw the transition state of this process and identify its location on the energy diagram.

(f) Is the transition state closer in structure to the reactants or products? Explain.

(g) Is the reaction first order or second order?

(h) How will the rate be affected if the concentration of hydroxide is doubled?

(i) Will the rate be affected by an increase in temperature?

6.51 Identify whether each of the following factors will affect the rate of a reaction:

(a) K_{eq} (b) ΔG (c) Temperature

(d) ΔH (e) E_a (f) ΔS

6.52 In the presence of a special type of catalyst, hydrogen gas will add across a triple bond to produce a double bond:

The process is exothermic. Do you expect a high temperature to favor products or reactants? Justify your prediction.

6.53 Consider the following reaction. Predict whether an increase in temperature will favor reactants or products. Justify your prediction.

6.54 When an amine is protonated, the resulting ammonium ion is not electrophilic:

However, when an imine is protonated, the resulting iminium ion is highly electrophilic:

Explain this difference in reactivity between an ammonium ion and an iminium ion.

6.55 Add missing lone pairs and draw the curved arrows that accomplish the following transformation:

6.56 As seen in Problem 6.18, carbocation rearrangements can occur via the migration of a carbon atom other than a methyl group. For example, carbocation **1** was observed to rearrange to give carbocation **2**.[7]

1 **2**

(a) Identify the carbon atom that is migrating, and draw a curved arrow that shows the migration.

(b) Explain why **2** is more stable than **1**.

6.57 Under basic conditions (catalytic MeO^- in MeOH), compound **1** rearranges through the mechanistic sequence shown below to a propellane-type isomer **5**.[8] Note that MeO^- is catalytic; it is consumed in the first step of the mechanism and regenerated in the final step.

(a) Draw the resonance structure of **2** that is the greatest contributor to the resonance hybrid.

(b) Add missing lone pairs and provide curved arrows for each step of the mechanism. Be sure to use the most significant resonance structure of **2** when drawing the mechanism.

6.58 Compound **1** has been prepared and studied to investigate a novel type of intramolecular elimination mechanism.[9] The proposed mechanistic pathway for this transformation is presented below. Complete the mechanism by drawing curved arrows consistent with the change in bonding that occurs in each step.

6.59 The following sequence was utilized in a biosynthetically inspired synthesis of preussomerin, an antifungal agent isolated from a coprophilous (dung-loving) fungus.[10]

(a) Draw curved arrows for each step of the mechanism.

(b) Provide an explanation for the observed stereochemistry.

6.60 (+)-Aureol is a natural product that shows selective anticancer activity against certain strains of lung cancer and colon cancer. A key step in the biosynthesis of (+)-aureol (how nature makes the molecule) is believed to involve the conversion of carbocation **A** to carbocation **B**.[11] Propose a possible mechanism for this transformation and explain the observed stereochemical outcome.

6.61 Strychnine (**6**), a notorious poison isolated from the *Strychnos* genus, has been used as a pesticide in the treatment of rodent infestations. The sophisticated structure of strychnine, first elucidated in 1946, served as a tantalizing goal for synthetic organic chemists. The first synthesis of strychnine was achieved by R. B. Woodward (Harvard Univ.) in 1954.[12] In the last step of Woodward's synthesis, **1** was converted into **6** via intermediates **2**–**5**, as shown:

(a) Draw curved arrows for each step of the mechanism, and identify the sequence of arrow-pushing patterns.

(b) For the step in which **4** is transformed into **5**, identify the nucleophilic center and the electrophilic center and use resonance structures to justify why the electrophilic site is electron-poor.

(c) The conversion of **4** into **5** involves the creation of a new chiral center. Determine its configuration and explain why the other possible configuration is not observed.

CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

6.62 There are many examples of carbocation rearrangements that cannot be classified as a methyl shift or hydride shift. For example, consider the following rearrangement that was employed in the synthesis of isocomene, a tricyclic compound isolated from the perennial plant *Isocoma wrightii*.[13]

(a) Identify the carbon atom that is migrating and draw a mechanism for this carbocation rearrangement.

(b) This process generates a new chiral center, yet only one configuration is observed. The process is said to be *diastereoselective*, because only one of the two possible diastereomeric carbocations is formed. Draw the diastereomeric carbocation that is not formed, and provide a reason for its lack of formation (**Hint:** You may find it helpful to construct a molecular model.)

(c) In this case, a tertiary carbocation is rearranging to give a different tertiary carbocation. Suggest a driving force for this process (explain why this process is favorable).

6.63 Compound **1** undergoes a thermal elimination of nitrogen gas at 250 °C to form nitrile **4**.[14] One proposed (and subsequently refuted) mechanism for this transformation involves intermediates **2** and **3**:

(a) Draw curved arrows that show the conversion of **2** to **3**.

(b) To determine whether or not the proposed mechanism operates, one of the nitrogen atoms was isotopically labeled as ^{15}N, and its location in the product was determined. The absence of **4b** in the product mixture demonstrates that the proposed mechanism is not operating. Using resonance structures, explain how the proposed mechanism would produce a mixture of **4a** and **4b**.

6.64 In the presence of a Lewis acid, compound **1** rearranges, via intermediate **2**, to afford compound **3**.[15]

(a) Draw curved arrows showing how **1** is transformed into **2**. Note that the Lewis acid has been left out for simplicity.

(b) Draw curved arrows showing how **2** is transformed into **3**. (**Hint:** It may be helpful to redraw **2** in a different conformation.)

LIST OF REFERENCES

1. *Org. Lett.* **2000**, *2*, 2717–2719.
2. *J. Org. Chem.* **1985**, *50*, 3377–3380.
3. *Text. Res. J.*, **2011**, *81*, 2139–2148.
4. *Org. Biomol. Chem.* **2013**, *11*, 2498–2513.
5. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1990**, *112*, 2003–2005.
6. *J. Org. Chem.*, **1980**, *45*, 965–969.
7. *Org. Lett.* **2009**, *11*, 3834–3837.
8. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **2012**, *134*, 17877–17880.
9. *J. Org. Chem.* **2007**, *72*, 793–798.
10. *Org. Lett.* **1999**, *1*, 3–5.
11. *Org. Lett.* **2012**, *14*, 4710–4713.
12. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1954**, *76*, 4749–4751.
13. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1979**, *101*, 7130–7131.
14. *Org. Lett.* **1999**, *1*, 537–539.
15. *Org. Lett.* **2005**, *7*, 515–517.

Lightspring/Shutterstock

7

7.1 Introduction to Substitution and Elimination Reactions
7.2 Nomenclature and Uses of Alkyl Halides
7.3 S_N2 Reactions
7.4 Nucleophilic Strength in S_N2 Reactions
7.5 Introduction to E2 Reactions
7.6 Stability of Alkenes and Cycloalkenes
7.7 Regiochemical and Stereochemical Outcomes for E2 Reactions
7.8 Unimolecular Reactions (S_N1 and E1)
7.9 Predicting Products: Substitution vs. Elimination
7.10 Substitution and Elimination Reactions with Other Substrates
7.11 Synthesis Strategies
7.12 Solvent Effects in Substitution Reactions

Alkyl Halides: Nucleophilic Substitution and Elimination Reactions

DID YOU EVER **WONDER...**

what chemotherapy is?

As its name implies, chemotherapy is the use of chemical agents in the treatment of cancer. Dozens of chemotherapy drugs are currently in clinical use, and researchers around the world are currently working on the design and development of new drugs for treating cancer. The primary goal of most chemotherapeutic agents is to cause irreparable damage to cancer cells while causing only minimal damage to normal, healthy cells. Since cancer cells grow much faster than most other cells, many anticancer drugs have been designed to interrupt the growth cycle of fast-growing cells. Unfortunately, some healthy cells are also fast growing, such as hair follicles and skin cells. For this reason, chemotherapy patients often experience a host of side effects, including hair loss and rashes.

The field of chemotherapy began in the mid-1930s, when scientists realized that a chemical warfare agent (sulfur mustard) could be modified and used to attack tumors. The reaction of sulfur mustard (and its derivatives) was thoroughly investigated and was found to involve a series of reactions called substitution reactions. Throughout this chapter, we will explore many important features of substitution reactions, and we will then revisit the topic of chemotherapy by exploring the rational design of the first chemotherapeutic agents.

Lightspring/Shutterstock

DO YOU **REMEMBER?**

Before you go on, be sure you understand the following topics.
If necessary, review the suggested sections to prepare for this chapter.

- Introduction to Stereoisomerism (Section 5.2)
- The Cahn-Ingold-Prelog System (Section 5.3)
- Kinetics and Energy Diagrams (Sections 6.5, 6.6)
- Nucleophiles and Electrophiles (Section 6.7)
- Arrow Pushing and Carbocation Rearrangements (Sections 6.8–6.11)

Take the DO YOU **REMEMBER?** QUIZ in the **online course** to check your understanding.

7.1 Introduction to Substitution and Elimination Reactions

In this chapter, we will focus on reactions of alkyl halides—compounds in which a halogen (such as Cl, Br, or I) is connected to an sp^3 hybridized carbon atom. Aryl halides and vinyl halides, in which a halogen is connected to an sp^2 hybridized carbon atom, will be explored in Chapter 23.

Alkyl halides commonly undergo two general types of reactions. When treated with a nucleophile, an alkyl halide can undergo a **substitution reaction**, in which the nucleophile replaces the halogen. When treated with a base, an alkyl halide can undergo an **elimination reaction**, in which a π bond (an alkene) is formed:

Since many reagents, such as hydroxide (HO^-), can function either as a nucleophile or as a base, substitution and elimination reactions will often compete with each other, as seen in the example below. In this chapter, we will explore substitution and elimination reactions, as well as the factors that govern the competition between them:

During our coverage of substitution and elimination reactions, we will use the term **substrate** to refer to the alkyl halide. Substitution and elimination reactions occur for a variety of substrates, not just alkyl halides, as we will see in Section 7.10.

In an alkyl halide, the halogen serves two critical functions that render the alkyl halide reactive towards substitution and elimination processes:

1. The halogen withdraws electron density via induction, rendering the adjacent carbon atom electrophilic, and therefore subject to attack by a nucleophile. This can be visualized with electrostatic potential maps of various methyl halides (Figure 7.1). In each image, the blue color indicates a region of low electron density.

FIGURE 7.1
Electrostatic potential maps of methyl halides.

2. The halogen can serve as a **leaving group**, and substitution/elimination processes can only occur when a leaving group is present. *Good leaving groups are the conjugate bases of strong acids.* For example, iodide (I^-) is the conjugate base of a very strong acid (HI),

and therefore, iodide is a very weak base, which makes it an excellent leaving group. In contrast, hydroxide is a bad leaving group, because it is not a stabilized base. In fact, hydroxide is a relatively strong base, and therefore, it rarely functions as a leaving group. Table 7.1 shows a list of good leaving groups, all of which are the conjugate bases of strong acids.

TABLE 7.1 THE ACIDITY OF SEVERAL COMPOUNDS AND THE STABILITY OF THEIR CONJUGATE BASES

	Acid	pK_a		Conjugate base	
Strongest acid	I—H	−11	Most stable base	I^-	Best leaving group
	Br—H	−9		Br^-	
	Cl—H	−7		Cl^-	Good leaving groups
	H_3C—C$_6$H$_4$—S(=O)$_2$—O—H	−3		H_3C—C$_6$H$_4$—S(=O)$_2$—O^-	
	H_2O^+—H	−2		H_2O	
	F—H	3		F^-	
	H_2O	15.7		HO^-	
	CH_3CH_2OH	16		$CH_3CH_2O^-$	Bad leaving groups
	$(CH_3)_3COH$	18		$(CH_3)_3CO^-$	
Weakest acid	NH_3	38	Least stable base	NH_2^-	Worst leaving group

As a rule of thumb, a good leaving group is the conjugate base of an acid with a $pK_a < 0$. For this reason, chloride, bromide, and iodide are all good leaving groups, while fluoride is not (the pK_a of HF is 3.2). Among the halides, iodide is the best leaving group because it is the weakest base.

The most commonly used leaving groups are halides (I^-, Br^-, Cl^-) and sulfonate ions (RSO_3^-). This chapter focuses on reactions of alkyl halides, although alkyl sulfonates will be covered briefly in Section 7.10.

7.2 Nomenclature and Uses of Alkyl Halides

Structure of Alkyl Halides

In an alkyl halide, each carbon atom can be described in terms of its proximity to the halogen, using letters of the Greek alphabet. The **alpha (α) position** is the carbon atom connected directly to the halogen, while the **beta (β) positions** are the carbon atoms connected to the α position:

An alkyl halide will have only one α position, but there can be as many as three β positions. Alkyl halides are classified as **primary** (1°), **secondary** (2°), or **tertiary** (3°) based on the number of alkyl groups connected to the α position.

Naming Alkyl Halides

Recall from Section 4.2 that systematic (IUPAC) names of alkanes are assigned using four discrete steps:

1. Identify and name the parent.
2. Identify and name the substituents.
3. Number the parent chain and assign a locant to each substituent.
4. Assemble the substituents alphabetically.

The same exact four-step procedure is used to name compounds that contain halogens, and all of the rules discussed in Chapter 4 apply here as well. Halogens are simply treated as substituents and receive the following names: fluoro-, chloro-, bromo-, and iodo-. To the right are two examples.

2-Chloropropane

2-Bromo-2-methylpentane

As we saw in Chapter 4, the parent is the longest carbon chain, and it should be numbered so that the first substituent receives the lower number:

2, 5, 5 beats 3, 3, 6

When a ring contains only one substituent (as in the first example below), a locant is not used to indicate the location of the substituent. Bromocyclohexane is not called 1-bromocyclohexane for the same reason that bromoethane is not called 1-bromoethane. In the second example below, the ring has more than one substituent, so both substituents require locants to indicate their locations.

Bromocyclohexane

1,1-Dichlorocyclohexane

When a chiral center is present in the compound, the configuration must be indicated at the beginning of the name:

(*R*)-**5-Bromo-**2,3,3-trimethylheptane

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

7.1 Assign a systematic name for each of the following compounds:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

(f)

(g)

(h)

In addition to systematic names, IUPAC nomenclature also recognizes common names for many halogenated organic compounds, as seen in the following examples:

Iodomethane
(Common name = methyl iodide)

2-Chloropropane
(Common name = isopropyl chloride)

1-Bromopropane
(Common name = *n*-propyl bromide)

The systematic name treats the halogen as a substituent, calling the compound a **haloalkane**. The common name treats the compound as an alkyl substituent connected to a halide, and the compound is called an **alkyl halide**, or more generally, an **organohalide**. The latter term describes any organic compound containing a halogen (including aryl halides and vinyl halides).

Notice that the common name for 1-bromopropane is not propyl bromide, but rather *n*-propyl bromide. When assigning common names, a propyl group is called an *n*-propyl group to differentiate it from an isopropyl group. The letter "*n*" stands for "normal" and indicates that the carbon atoms of the alkyl substituent are arranged in a linear chain (not branched) with the halogen connected to the end of the chain. Similarly, the common name for 1-bromobutane is *n*-butyl bromide. Note that the terms *n*-propyl and *n*-butyl are used only in common names. In systematic names, the terms propyl and butyl are used (without the "*n*").

Uses of Organohalides

Many organohalides are toxic and have been used as insecticides:

DDT

Lindane

Chlordane

Methyl bromide

DDT (dichlorodiphenyltrichloroethane) was developed in the late 1930s and became one of the first insecticides to be used around the globe. It was found to exhibit strong toxicity for insects but rather low toxicity for mammals. DDT was used as an insecticide for many decades and has been credited with saving more than half a billion lives by killing mosquitos that carry deadly diseases. Unfortunately, it was found that DDT does not degrade quickly and persists in the environment. Rising concentrations of DDT in wildlife began to threaten the survival of many species. In response, the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) banned the use of DDT in 1972, and it was replaced with other, environmentally safer, insecticides.

Lindane has been used in shampoo formulations that treat for head lice, but it is a second choice to be used only for cases that are resistant to other treatments. Its use is severely limited due to absorption through skin and potential neurotoxicity, especially in babies and young children. Chlordane and methyl bromide have been used as fumigants to prevent and treat termite infestations, although neither are currently in use due to concerns regarding environmental toxicity. The use of chlordane was banned in the United States in 1988, while the use of methyl bromide was banned in 2016.

Organohalides are particularly stable compounds, and many of them, like DDT, persist and accumulate in the environment. PCBs (polychlorinated biphenyls) represent another well-known example. Biphenyl is a compound comprised of two benzene rings, and PCBs are compounds in which a biphenyl parent is connected to multiple chlorine atoms. One example of a PCB is shown below:

Biphenyl

Aroclor 1254

PCBs were originally produced as coolants and insulating fluids for industrial transformers and capacitors. They were also used as hydraulic fluids and as flame retardants, but their accumulation in the environment began to threaten wildlife, and their use was banned.

The above examples have contributed to the bad reputation of organohalides. As a result, organohalides are often viewed as man-made poisons. However, research over the last 30 years has indicated that organohalides are actually more common in nature than had previously been thought. For example, methyl chloride is the most abundant organohalide in the atmosphere. It is produced in large quantities by evergreen trees and marine organisms, and it is consumed by many bacteria, such as *Hyphominocrobium* and *Methylobacterium*, that convert methyl chloride into CO_2 and Cl^-.

Many organohalides are also produced by marine organisms. Over 6000 such compounds have already been identified, and several hundred new compounds are discovered each year. Organohalides serve a variety of functions in living organisms. In sponges, corals, snails, and seaweeds, organohalides are used as a defense mechanism against predators (a form of chemical warfare). Here are two such examples:

(3*E*)-Laureatin
Used by the red algae *Laurencia nipponina*

Kumepaloxane
Used by the snail *Haminoea cymbalum*

Not all halogenated compounds are toxic. In fact, many organohalides have clinical applications. For example, the following compounds are widely used and have contributed much to the improvement of physical and psychological health:

Bronopol
(2-Bromo-2-nitropropane-1,3-diol)

A powerful antimicrobial compound safe enough to use in baby wipes

Chlorpheniramine

An antihistamine, sold under the trade name Chlor-Trimeton

(*R*)-Fluoxetine

An antidepressant, sold under the trade name Prozac

Some organohalides have even been used in the food industry. Consider, for example, the structure of sucralose, which contains three chlorine atoms. It is several hundred times sweeter than sugar and is sold as an artificial, low-calorie sweetener under the trade name Splenda.

BY THE WAY
Sucralose was discovered by accident in 1976 when a British company (Tate and Lyle) was conducting research on potential uses of chlorinated sugars. A foreign graduate student participating in the research misunderstood a request to "test" one of the compounds and instead thought he was being asked to "taste" the compound. The graduate student reported an intensely sweet taste, which ultimately led to the use of sucralose as an artificial sweetener.

Sucralose
An artificial sweetener, sold under the trade name Splenda

Organohalides as Synthetic Precursors

For synthetic organic chemists, organohalides are useful because they can serve as starting materials for the synthesis of more complex molecules. With the development of modern synthetic methods, as we will see in Chapter 23, aryl and vinyl halides have become particularly useful starting

materials. In this chapter, we will explore reactions that convert alkyl halides into a wide range of different compounds:

7.3 S_N2 Reactions

During the 1930s, Sir Christopher Ingold and Edward D. Hughes (University College, London) investigated substitution reactions in an effort to elucidate their mechanisms. Based on their observations and the observations of others, they proposed two different mechanisms for nucleophilic substitution reactions, and they suggested that each mechanism operates under a specific set of conditions. These two mechanisms are shown here:

Both mechanisms involve nucleophilic attack and loss of a leaving group, but consider the timing of these events. In the first mechanism, both events occur simultaneously; that is, they occur in a *concerted* fashion. However, in the second mechanism, they occur separately, in a *stepwise* fashion. First the leaving group leaves to give an intermediate carbocation, and then a nucleophile attacks the carbocation in a separate step.

In this section, we will explore the conditions that favor the concerted process. In Section 7.8, we will explore the conditions that favor the stepwise process.

Kinetics

For many of the reactions that they investigated, Ingold and Hughes found the rate of reaction to be dependent on the concentrations of both the alkyl halide and the nucleophile. Specifically, they found that doubling the concentration of the alkyl halide caused the reaction rate to double, and similarly, doubling the concentration of the nucleophile also caused the rate to double. These observations are consistent with a second-order process that has the following rate equation:

$$\text{Rate} = k\,[\text{alkyl halide}]\,[\text{nucleophile}]$$

LOOKING BACK
For a review of rate equations and second-order processes, see Section 6.5.

Based on their observations, Ingold and Hughes concluded that the mechanism must exhibit a step in which the alkyl halide and the nucleophile collide with each other. Because that step involves

two chemical entities, it is said to be **bimolecular**. Ingold and Hughes coined the term **S_N2** to refer to bimolecular nucleophilic substitution reactions:

The experimental observations for S_N2 reactions are consistent with a concerted process, involving both the nucleophile and the alkyl halide in a single step (Mechanism 7.1).

MECHANISM 7.1 THE S_N2 MECHANISM

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

7.2 The following substitution reaction exhibits second-order kinetics, and is therefore presumed to occur via an S_N2 process:

(a) What happens to the rate if the concentration of 1-iodopropane is tripled and the concentration of sodium hydroxide remains the same?

(b) What happens to the rate if the concentration of 1-iodopropane remains the same and the concentration of sodium hydroxide is doubled?

(c) What happens to the rate if the concentration of 1-iodopropane is doubled and the concentration of sodium hydroxide is tripled?

Stereospecificity of S_N2 Reactions

There is another crucial piece of evidence that led Ingold and Hughes to propose the concerted mechanism. When the α position is a chiral center, a change in configuration is generally observed, as illustrated in the following example:

The reactant exhibits the *R* configuration, while the product exhibits the *S* configuration. That is, this reaction is said to proceed with **inversion of configuration**. This stereochemical outcome is often called a Walden inversion, named after Paul Walden, the German chemist who first observed it. The requirement for inversion of configuration means that the nucleophile can only attack from the back side (the side opposite the leaving group) and never from the front side (Figure 7.2). There are two ways to explain why the reaction proceeds through **back-side attack:**

FIGURE 7.2
The front and back sides of a substrate.

1. The lone pairs of the leaving group create regions of high electron density that effectively block the front side of the substrate, so the nucleophile can only approach from the back side.

LOOKING BACK
For a review of molecular orbital theory and the terms HOMO and LUMO, see Section 1.9.

2. Molecular orbital (MO) theory provides a more sophisticated answer. Recall that molecular orbitals are associated with the entire molecule (as opposed to *atomic* orbitals, which are associated with individual atoms). According to MO theory, the electron density flows from the HOMO of the nucleophile into the LUMO of the electrophile. As an example let's focus our attention on the LUMO of methyl bromide (Figure 7.3).

If a nucleophile attacks methyl bromide from the front side, the nucleophile will encounter a node, and as a result, no net bonding will result from the overlap between the HOMO of the nucleophile and the LUMO of the electrophile. In contrast, nucleophilic attack from the back side allows for efficient overlap between the HOMO of the nucleophile and the LUMO of the electrophile.

FIGURE 7.3
The lowest unoccupied molecular orbital (LUMO) of methyl bromide.

The observed stereochemical outcome for an S_N2 process (inversion of configuration) is consistent with a concerted mechanism. The nucleophile attacks with simultaneous loss of the leaving group. This causes the chiral center to behave like an umbrella flipping in the wind:

The transition state (drawn in brackets) will soon be discussed in more detail. This reaction is said to be **stereospecific**, because the configuration of the product is dependent on the configuration of the starting material.

SKILLBUILDER

7.1 DRAWING THE PRODUCT OF AN S_N2 PROCESS

LEARN the skill

When (*R*)-2-bromobutane is treated with sodium hydroxide (NaOH), a mixture of products is obtained. An S_N2 process is responsible for generating one of the minor products, while the major product is generated via an elimination process, as will be discussed later in this chapter. Draw the S_N2 product that is obtained when (*R*)-2-bromobutane reacts with a hydroxide ion.

SOLUTION
First draw the reagents described in the problem statement:

Now identify the nucleophile and the substrate. (*R*)-2-Bromobutane is the substrate, and hydroxide is the nucleophile. When hydroxide attacks, it will eject the bromide ion as a leaving group. The net result is that Br will be replaced with OH. In this case, the α position is a chiral center, so we expect inversion of configuration:

PRACTICE the skill

7.3 Draw the product for each of the following S_N2 reactions:

(a) (*S*)-2-Chloropentane and NaSH
(b) (*R*)-3-Iodohexane and NaCl
(c) (*R*)-2-Bromohexane and NaCN
(d) 1-Bromoheptane and NaOH

APPLY the skill

7.4 A common method for confirming the proposed structure and stereochemistry of a natural product is to synthesize the proposed structure and then compare its properties with those of the natural product. This technique was used to verify the structure of cameroonanol,[1] a compound with a woody fragrance, isolated from the essential oil of the flowering plant *Echniops giganteus*. During the synthesis, compound **1** was deprotonated with a strong base to give a short-lived carbanion intermediate, which rapidly underwent an intramolecular S_N2-type mechanism to afford compound **2**. Draw curved arrows to show the mechanism for both steps shown.

Compound 1 — A carbanion intermediate — Compound 2

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 7.53, 7.54**

The Effect of Substrate Structure on the Rate of an S_N2 Process

The rate of an S_N2 process is extremely sensitive to the nature of the starting alkyl halide. Specifically, it has been found that the presence of substituents at the α or β positions can significantly reduce the rate. These findings are supported by the data presented in Table 7.2, which compares the relative rates of reaction for a series of alkyl bromides, when each is treated with iodide at 25°C in acetone (the role of acetone, the solvent, will be discussed in Section 7.12).

TABLE 7.2 EFFECT OF SUBSTITUENTS ON THE RATES OF S_N2 REACTIONS

$$R{-}Br \xrightarrow[\text{acetone, 25°C}]{I^{\ominus}} R{-}I + Br^{\ominus}$$

Effect of α-Substituents		Effect of β-Substituents	
Structure	Relative rate*	Structure	Relative rate*
$H_3\overset{\alpha}{C}{-}Br$	145	β Br	1
α Br	1	β Br	0.8
α Br	0.008	β Br	0.04
α Br	Negligible	β Br	0.00001

*All rates are relative to the rate of reaction between ethyl bromide and iodide in acetone at 25°C.

When we compare the relative rates presented in Table 7.2, the following trends emerge:

1. The rate of an S_N2 reaction is most sensitive to the number of substituents at the α position. Methyl bromide is over one hundred times more reactive than ethyl bromide (a primary alkyl halide), which is over one hundred times more reactive than isopropyl bromide (a secondary alkyl halide). Notice that *t*-butyl bromide (a tertiary alkyl halide) is unreactive toward S_N2.

These observations indicate that S_N2 reactions are most effective for methyl halides and primary alkyl halides, and S_N2 reactions cannot be performed with tertiary alkyl halides.

2. The rate of an S_N2 reaction is also sensitive to the presence of substituents at the β position, but this effect is not as great as the effect observed at the α position. Even with two substituents at the β position, the rate is only moderately reduced. However, with three substituents at the β position, the rate of the S_N2 process is so significantly reduced that it is too slow to be of any practical use. That is, an S_N2 process will generally not occur if there are three substituents at the α position or if there are three substituents at a β position.

All of these observations are consistent with a concerted process in which the nucleophile encounters steric hindrance as it approaches the alkyl halide. To understand the nature of the steric effects that govern S_N2 reactions, we must explore the transition state for a typical S_N2 reaction, shown here in general form, where LG represents the leaving group (such as Br).

Notice that dotted lines are used to indicate the bonds that are in the process of being broken or formed, and the double-dagger symbol, just outside the brackets, indicates that the drawing represents a transition state rather than an intermediate. Recall that a transition state is represented by a maximum (a peak) in an energy diagram. Consider, for example, an energy diagram showing the reaction between a cyanide ion and methyl bromide (Figure 7.4).

FIGURE 7.4
An energy diagram of the S_N2 reaction that occurs between methyl bromide and a cyanide ion.

The highest point on the curve (highlighted) represents the transition state. The relative energy of this transition state determines the rate of the reaction. If the transition state is high in energy, then the energy of activation (E_a) will be large, and the rate will be slow. If the transition state is low in energy, then E_a will be small, and the rate will be fast. With this in mind, we can now explore the effect of steric hindrance on the reaction rates of S_N2 processes, and we can justify why tertiary alkyl halides are unreactive toward S_N2.

FIGURE 7.5
An electrostatic potential map of the transition state for the reaction between methyl bromide and cyanide. The red areas represent regions of high electron density.

Take a close look at the transition state. The nucleophile is in the process of forming a bond with the alkyl halide, and the leaving group is in the process of breaking its bond. Notice that there is a partial negative charge on either side of the transition state. This can be seen more clearly in an electrostatic potential map of the transition state (Figure. 7.5).

If the hydrogen atoms in Figure 7.5 are replaced with alkyl groups, steric interactions cause the transition state to be even higher in energy, raising E_a for the reaction. Compare the relative energy diagrams for reactions involving methyl, primary, and secondary alkyl halides (Figure 7.6).

FIGURE 7.6
Energy diagrams comparing S_N2 processes for methyl, primary, and secondary substrates.

For a methyl halide, E_a is relatively small, and the reaction is rapid. In contrast, E_a for the reaction of a secondary alkyl halide is relatively high, and the reaction is slower. With a tertiary alkyl halide, there are three substituents connected to the α position, and the S_N2 transition state is so high in energy that the reaction occurs too slowly to be observed. For similar reasons, an S_N2 process will also not occur when the starting alkyl halide has three substituents connected to a β position. As an example, we revisit the structure of neopentyl bromide (first shown in Table 7.2):

Neopentyl bromide

FIGURE 7.7
The transition state for an S_N2 process involving a neopentyl substrate.

This compound is a primary alkyl halide, but it has three methyl groups attached to the β position. These methyl groups provide steric interactions that raise the energy of the S_N2 transition state (Figure 7.7), and as a result, the rate of S_N2 is too slow to be useful. This is an interesting example, because the substrate is a primary alkyl halide that essentially does not undergo an S_N2 reaction. This example illustrates why it is best to understand concepts in organic chemistry rather than memorize rules without knowing what they mean.

SKILLBUILDER

7.2 DRAWING THE TRANSITION STATE OF AN S_N2 PROCESS

LEARN the skill

Draw the transition state of the following reaction:

SOLUTION

First identify the nucleophile and the leaving group. These are the two groups that will be on either side of the transition state:

STEP 1
Identify the nucleophile and the leaving group.

Nucleophile **Leaving group**

STEP 2
Draw a carbon atom with the Nuc and LG on either side.

The transition state will need to show a bond forming with the nucleophile and a bond breaking with the leaving group. Dotted lines are used to show the bonds that are breaking or forming:

Notice that a δ− symbol is placed on both the incoming nucleophile and the outgoing leaving group to indicate that the negative charge is spread out over both locations. Now we must draw all of the alkyl groups connected to the α position. In our example, the α position has one CH_3 group and two H's:

STEP 3
Draw the three groups attached to the carbon atom, draw brackets around the structure, and draw the double-dagger symbol indicating a transition state.

So we draw these groups in the transition state connected to the α position. One group is placed on a straight line, and the other two groups are placed on a wedge and on a dash. It does not matter whether the CH_3 group is placed on the line, wedge, or dash. But don't forget to indicate that the drawing is a transition state by surrounding it with brackets and using the double-dagger symbol that indicates a transition state.

PRACTICE the skill

7.5 Draw the transition state for each of the following S_N2 reactions:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

APPLY the skill

7.6 A total synthesis of the marine natural product aldingenin C in the laboratory[2] resulted in a significant revision of its proposed structure. The synthesis involved the conversion of compound **1** to compound **2**, which is an intramolecular S_N2-type process. This substitution reaction involves a very poor leaving group, but the reaction is nevertheless favorable, because it involves opening of the strained three-membered ring (called an epoxide). The relief of ring strain can be a powerful driving force for reactions, as seen in this example. Draw the transition state for this reaction, and identify the leaving group.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problem 7.50**

BioLinks Pharmacology and Drug Design

Pharmacology is the study of how drugs interact with biological systems, including the mechanisms that explain drug action. Pharmacology is a very important field of study because it serves as the basis for the design of new drugs. In this section, we will explore one specific example, the design and development of chlorambucil, an antitumor agent:

Chlorambucil was designed by chemists using principles that we have learned in this and previous chapters. The story of chlorambucil begins with a toxic compound called sulfur mustard.

This compound was first used as a chemical weapon in World War I. It was sprayed as an aerosol mixture with other chemicals and exhibited a characteristic odor similar to that of mustard plants, thus the name *mustard gas*. Sulfur mustard is a powerful alkylating agent. The mechanism of alkylation involves a sequence of two substitution reactions:

The first substitution reaction is an intramolecular S_N2-type process in which a lone pair on sulfur serves as a nucleophile, expelling chloride as a leaving group. The second reaction is another S_N2 process involving attack of an external nucleophile. The net result is the same as if the nucleophile had attacked directly:

The reaction occurs much more rapidly than a regular S_N2 process on a primary alkyl chloride because the sulfur atom assists in ejecting chloride as a leaving group. The effect that sulfur has on the rate of reaction is called *anchimeric assistance*, also known as *neighboring group participation*.

Each molecule of sulfur mustard has two chloride leaving groups and is, therefore, capable of alkylating DNA two times. This causes individual strands of DNA to cross-link (Figure 7.8):

FIGURE 7.8
Sulfur mustard can alkylate two different strands of DNA, causing cross-linking.

Cross-linking of DNA prevents the DNA from replicating and ultimately leads to cell death. The profound impact of sulfur mustard on cell function inspired research on the use of this compound as an antitumor agent. In 1931, sulfur mustard was injected directly into tumors with the intention of stopping tumor growth by interrupting the rapid division of the cancerous cells. Ultimately, sulfur mustard was found to be too toxic for clinical use, and the search began for a similar, less toxic, compound. The first such compound to be produced was a nitrogen analogue called mechlorethamine:

Mechlorethamine is a "nitrogen mustard" that reacts with nucleophiles in the same way as sulfur mustard, via two successive substitution reactions. The first reaction is an intramolecular S_N2-type process; the second reaction is another S_N2 process involving attack of an external nucleophile:

This nitrogen mustard is also capable of alkylating DNA, causing cell death, but is less toxic than sulfur mustard. The discovery of mechlorethamine launched the field of chemotherapy, the use of chemical agents to treat cancer.

Mechlorethamine is still in use today, in combination with other agents, for the treatment of advanced Hodgkin's lymphoma and chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL). The use of mechlorethamine is limited, though, by its high rate of reactivity with water. This limitation led to a search for other analogues. Specifically, it was found that replacing the methyl group with an aryl group had the effect of delocalizing the lone pair through resonance, rendering the lone pair less nucleophilic:

The resonance structures above all exhibit a negative charge on a carbon atom, and therefore, these resonance structures do not contribute very much to the overall resonance hybrid. Nevertheless, they are valid resonance structures, and they do contribute some character. As a result, the lone pair on

the nitrogen atom is delocalized (it is spread out over the aryl group) and less nucleophilic. This decreased nucleophilicity is manifested in a decrease of anchimeric assistance from the nitrogen atom. The compound can still function as an antitumor agent, but its rate of reactivity with water is reduced.

Introduction of the aryl group (in place of the methyl group) might have solved one problem, but it created another problem. Specifically, this new compound was not water soluble, which prevented intravenous administration. This problem was solved by introducing a carboxylic acid group, which rendered the compound water soluble:

This group renders the compound water soluble.

But, once again, solving one problem created another. Now, the lone pair on the nitrogen atom was too delocalized, because of the following resonance structure:

The lone pair was delocalized onto an oxygen atom, and a negative charge on an oxygen atom is much more stable than a negative charge on a carbon atom. The delocalization effect was so pronounced that the reagent no longer functioned as an antitumor agent. The lone pair on the nitrogen atom was not sufficiently nucleophilic to provide anchimeric assistance. Solving all these problems required a way to maintain water solubility without overly stabilizing the lone pair on the nitrogen atom. This was achieved by placing methylene groups (CH_2 groups) between the carboxylic acid group and the aryl group:

This way, the nitrogen lone pair is no longer participating in resonance with the carboxylic acid group, but the presence of the carboxylic acid group is still able to render the compound water soluble. This final change solves all of the problems. In theory, only one methylene group is needed to ensure that the nitrogen lone pair is not overly delocalized by resonance. But in practice, research with various compounds indicated that optimal reactivity was achieved when three methylene groups were placed between the carboxylic acid group and the aryl group:

Chlorambucil

The resulting compound, called chlorambucil, was marketed under the trade name Lukeran by GlaxoSmithKline. It was mainly used for treatment of CLL, until other, more powerful agents were discovered.

The design and development of chlorambucil is just one example of drug design, but it demonstrates how an understanding of pharmacology, coupled with an understanding of the first principles of organic chemistry, enables chemists to design and create new drugs. Each year, organic chemists and biochemists make enormous strides in the exciting fields of pharmacology and drug design.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

7.7 Melphalan is a chemotherapy drug used in the treatment of multiple myeloma and ovarian cancer. Melphalan is an alkylating agent belonging to the nitrogen mustard family. Draw a likely mechanism for the alkylation process that occurs when a nucleophile reacts with melphalan:

Melphalan

7.4 Nucleophilic Strength in S_N2 Reactions

The term **nucleophilicity** refers to the *rate* at which a nucleophile will attack a suitable electrophile. A strong nucleophile will give a relatively fast S_N2 reaction, while a weak nucleophile will give a relatively slow S_N2 reaction. For this reason, a strong nucleophile is generally required in order for an S_N2 reaction to be efficient and practical.

There are many factors that contribute to nucleophilicity, as first described in Section 6.7. One such factor is the presence of a charge, which can be illustrated by comparing hydroxide (HO^-) and water (H_2O). Hydroxide has a negative charge, and it is therefore a strong nucleophile. In contrast,

water lacks a charge and is a weak nucleophile. Indeed, hydroxide is over a million times more reactive than water toward an S_N2 reaction with methyl iodide:

With a weak nucleophile, S_N2 reactions are generally too slow to be of practical use.

Another factor that impacts nucleophilicity is *polarizability*, which is often even more important than charge. Recall that polarizability describes the ability of an atom to distribute its electron density unevenly as a result of external influences (Section 6.7). Polarizability is directly related to the size of the atom and, more specifically, to the number of electrons that are distant from the nucleus. A sulfur atom is very large and has many electrons that are distant from the nucleus, and it is therefore highly polarizable. As a result, hydrosulfide (HS^-) and thiolate (RS^-) ions are particularly strong nucleophiles. Many of the halogens (especially iodide) share this same feature.

The following is a list of some commonly encountered nucleophiles:

Strong nucleophiles	Weak nucleophiles
$:\ddot{\underset{..}{I}}:^-$ $:\ddot{\underset{..}{Br}}:^-$ $:\ddot{\underset{..}{Cl}}:^-$ HS^- RS^- HO^- RO^- $:N\equiv C^-$	$H_2\ddot{O}$ $R\ddot{O}H$

Notice that many of the halides are present on the list (iodide, bromide, and chloride), but fluoride is absent. Why? Fluoride can behave either as a weak nucleophile or as a strong nucleophile, depending on the identity of the solvent. Indeed, the nucleophilicity of fluoride is an excellent illustration of the profound impact that the solvent can have on the rate of an S_N2 process. Later in this chapter (Section 7.12), we will explore the role of solvents in substitution reactions.

BioLinks S_N2 Reactions in Biological Systems—Methylation

In the laboratory, the transfer of a methyl group can be accomplished via an S_N2 process using methyl iodide (CH_3I):

This process is called *alkylation*, because an alkyl group has been transferred to the nucleophile. It is an S_N2 process, which means there are limitations on the type of alkyl group that can be used. Tertiary alkyl groups cannot be transferred. Secondary alkyl groups can be transferred, but slowly. Primary alkyl groups and methyl groups are transferred most readily. The alkylation process shown above is the transfer of a methyl group and is therefore called *methylation*. Methyl iodide is ideally suited for this task, because iodide is an excellent leaving group and because methyl iodide is a liquid at room temperature. This makes it easier to handle than methyl chloride or methyl bromide, which are gases at room temperature.

Methylation reactions also occur in biological systems, but instead of CH_3I, a methylating agent called **SAM (*S*-adenosylmethionine)** is employed. Your body produces SAM via an S_N2 reaction between the amino acid methionine and ATP:

In this reaction, methionine acts as a nucleophile and attacks adenosine triphosphate (ATP), expelling a triphosphate leaving group (highlighted). The resulting product, called SAM, is able to function as a methylating agent, very much like CH_3I. Both CH_3I and SAM exhibit a methyl group (shown in red below) attached to an excellent leaving group (highlighted in green).

SAM is the biological equivalent of CH_3I. The leaving group is much larger, but SAM functions in the same way as CH_3I. When SAM is attacked by a nucleophile, an excellent leaving group is expelled:

SAM plays a role in the biosynthesis of many compounds, such as adrenaline, which is released into the bloodstream in response to danger or excitement. Adrenaline is produced via a methylation reaction that takes place between noradrenaline and SAM in the adrenal gland:

After being released into the bloodstream, adrenaline increases heart rate, elevates sugar levels to provide a boost of energy, and increases levels of oxygen reaching the brain. These physiological responses prepare the body for "fight or flight."

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

7.8 Choline is a compound involved in neurotransmission. The biosynthesis of choline involves the transfer of a methyl group from SAM. Draw a mechanism for this transformation:

7.5 Introduction to E2 Reactions

At the beginning of this chapter (Section 7.1), we noted that alkyl halides can undergo substitution as well as elimination reactions. Thus far, we have exclusively explored substitution (S_N2) reactions of alkyl halides. In this section, we will begin to explore elimination reactions. These reactions involve the use of bases, rather than nucleophiles, so we must quickly review some differences between strong bases and weak bases. For anionic bases (bearing a negative charge), a weak base is

a stabilized base, and a strong base is an unstable base. In Chapter 3, we saw several factors (ARIO) that can stabilize an anionic base. We also saw an inverse relationship between the strength of a base and the strength of its conjugate acid. For example, iodide (I^-) is a very weak base, and accordingly, its conjugate acid (HI) is a very strong acid ($pK_a = -10$). As another example, hydroxide (HO^-) is a strong base, and accordingly, its conjugate acid (H_2O) is a weak acid (see the front endsheet of this text for a list of acids, ranked according to strength). In Section 7.9, we will explore the structures of several other bases. For now, we will continue our introduction of elimination reactions.

When treated with a strong base, an alkyl halide can undergo a type of elimination process, called **beta elimination**, also known as *1,2-elimination*, in which a proton is removed from the β position, the halide is ejected as a leaving group (X^-) from the α position, and a double bond is formed between the α and β positions:

When an alkyl halide undergoes a beta elimination reaction, the process is also called a *dehydrohalogenation*, because H and X are removed from the substrate. In this chapter, we will explore two different mechanisms for beta elimination reactions, and we will see that each mechanism operates under a specific set of conditions. These two mechanisms are shown here:

Both mechanisms involve proton transfer and loss of a leaving group, but consider the timing of these events. In the first mechanism, both events occur simultaneously. That is, they occur in a *concerted* fashion. However, in the second mechanism, they occur separately, in a *stepwise* fashion. First the leaving group leaves to give an intermediate carbocation, and then a proton is transferred in a separate step.

In this section, we will explore the conditions that favor the concerted process. In Section 7.8, we will explore the conditions that favor the stepwise process.

Kinetics

When an alkyl halide is treated with a strong base, the rate of reaction is generally found to be dependent on the concentrations of both the alkyl halide and the base. Specifically, doubling the concentration of the alkyl halide causes the reaction rate to double, and similarly, doubling the concentration of the base also causes the rate to double. These observations are consistent with a second-order process that has the following rate equation:

$$\text{Rate} = k\,[\text{alkyl halide}]\,[\text{base}]$$

LOOKING BACK
For a review of rate equations and second-order processes, see Section 6.5.

Based on these observations, we conclude that the mechanism must exhibit a step in which the alkyl halide and the base collide with each other. Because that step involves two chemical entities, it is said to be **bimolecular**. Bimolecular elimination reactions are called **E2** reactions:

The experimental observations for E2 reactions are consistent with a concerted process, involving both the base and the alkyl halide in a single step (Mechanism 7.2). Such a process is expected to exhibit second-order kinetics, exactly as observed. If the observations had been otherwise, a concerted mechanism could not have been proposed. In Section 7.9, we will explore other observations that are consistent with a concerted process.

MECHANISM 7.2 THE E2 MECHANISM

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

7.9 The following reaction exhibits a second-order rate equation:

(a) What happens to the rate if the concentration of chlorocyclopentane is tripled and the concentration of sodium hydroxide remains the same?

(b) What happens to the rate if the concentration of chlorocyclopentane remains the same and the concentration of sodium hydroxide is doubled?

(c) What happens to the rate if the concentration of chlorocyclopentane is doubled and the concentration of sodium hydroxide is tripled?

The Effect of Substrate Structure on the Rate of an E2 Process

In Section 7.4, we saw that the rate of an S_N2 process with a tertiary alkyl halide is generally so slow that it can be assumed that the alkyl halide is inert under such reaction conditions. It might therefore come as a surprise that tertiary alkyl halides undergo E2 reactions quite rapidly. To explain why tertiary substrates undergo E2 but not S_N2 reactions, we must recognize that the key difference between substitution and elimination is the role played by the reagent. A substitution reaction occurs when the reagent functions as a nucleophile and attacks the α position, while an elimination reaction occurs when the reagent functions as a base and abstracts a proton from a β position. With a tertiary substrate, steric hindrance prevents the reagent from functioning as a nucleophile at an appreciable rate, but the reagent can still function as a base without encountering much steric hindrance (Figure 7.9).

FIGURE 7.9
Steric effects in S_N2 and E2 reactions.

7.6 Stability of Alkenes and Cycloalkenes

In this section, we will explore the relationship between structure and stability of alkenes.

Stability of Alkenes

In general, a *cis* alkene will be less stable than its stereoisomeric *trans* alkene. The source of this instability is attributed to steric strain exhibited by the *cis* isomer. This steric strain can be visualized by comparing space-filling models of *cis*-2-butene and *trans*-2-butene (Figure 7.10). The methyl groups are only able to avoid a steric interaction when they occupy a *trans* configuration.

FIGURE 7.10
Space-filling models of the stereoisomers of 2-butene.

The difference in energy between stereoisomeric alkenes can be quantified by comparing their heats of combustion:

LOOKING BACK
For a review of heats of combustion, see Section 4.4.

Both reactions yield the same products. Therefore, we can use heats of combustion to compare the relative energy levels of the starting materials (Figure 7.11). This analysis suggests that the *trans* isomer is 4 kJ/mol more stable than the *cis* isomer.

FIGURE 7.11
Heats of combustion of the stereoisomers of 2-butene.

When comparing the stability of alkenes, another factor must be taken into account, in addition to steric effects. We must also consider the degree of substitution. By comparing heats of combustion for isomeric alkenes (all with the same molecular formula, C_6H_{12}), the trend in Figure 7.12 emerges. Alkenes are more stable when they are highly substituted. Tetrasubstituted alkenes are more stable than trisubstituted alkenes. The reason for this trend is not a steric effect (through space), but rather an electronic effect (through bonds). In Section 6.11, we saw that alkyl groups can stabilize a carbocation by donating electron density to the neighboring sp^2-hybridized carbon atom (C^+). This

effect, called hyperconjugation, is a stabilizing effect because it enables the delocalization of electron density. In a similar way, alkyl groups can also stabilize the neighboring sp^2-hybridized carbon atoms of a π bond. Once again, the resulting delocalization of electron density is a stabilizing effect.

FIGURE 7.12
The relative stability of isomeric alkenes with varying degrees of substitution.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

7.10 Arrange each set of isomeric alkenes in order of stability:

(a)

(b)

7.11 Consider the following two isomeric alkenes. The first isomer is a monosubstituted alkene, while the second isomer is a disubstituted alkene. We might expect the second isomer to be more stable, yet heats of combustion for these two compounds indicate that the first isomer is more stable. Offer an explanation.

Stability of Cycloalkenes

Cycloalkenes comprised of fewer than seven carbon atoms cannot accommodate a *trans* π bond. These rings can only accommodate a π bond in a *cis* configuration:

Cyclopropene Cyclobutene Cyclopentene Cyclohexene

In these examples, there is no need to identify the configuration of the double bond when naming each of these compounds, because the *cis* configuration is inferred. For example, the last compound is called cyclohexene, rather than *cis*-cyclohexene. A seven-membered ring containing a *trans* double bond has been prepared, but this compound (*trans*-cycloheptene) is not stable at room temperature. An eight-membered ring is the smallest ring that can accommodate a *trans* double bond and be stable at room temperature:

trans-Cyclooctene

This rule also applies to bridged bicyclic compounds and is called **Bredt's rule**. Specifically, Bredt's rule states that it is not possible for a bridgehead carbon of a bicyclic system to possess a C═C double bond if it involves a *trans* π bond being incorporated in a small ring. For example, the following compound is too unstable to form:

This compound is not stable

This compound would require a *trans* double bond in a six-membered ring, highlighted in red. The compound is not stable because the geometry of the bridgehead prevents it from maintaining the parallel overlap of *p* orbitals necessary to keep the π bonding intact. As a result, this type of compound is extremely high in energy, and its existence is fleeting.

Bridged bicyclic compounds can only exhibit a double bond at a bridgehead position if one of the rings has at least eight carbon atoms. For example, the following compound can maintain parallel overlap of the *p* orbitals, and as a result, it is stable at room temperature:

This compound is stable

7.7 Regiochemical and Stereochemical Outcomes for E2 Reactions

Regioselectivity of E2 Reactions

In many cases, an elimination reaction can produce more than one possible product:

In this example, the β positions are not identical, so the double bond can form in two different regions of the molecule. This consideration is an example of **regiochemistry**, and the reaction is said to produce two different regiochemical outcomes. Both products are formed, but the more substituted alkene is generally observed to be the major product. For example:

The reaction is said to be **regioselective**. This trend was first observed in 1875 by Russian chemist Alexander M. Zaitsev (University of Kazan), and as a result, the more substituted alkene is called the **Zaitsev product**. However, many exceptions have been observed in which the Zaitsev product is the minor product. For example, when both the substrate and the base are sterically hindered, the less substituted alkene is often the major product. The less substituted alkene is called the **Hofmann product**. The product distribution (the relative ratio of Zaitsev and Hofmann products) is dependent on a number of factors and is often difficult to predict. The choice of base (how sterically hindered the base is) certainly plays an important role. Table 7.3 illustrates that the product distribution for the reaction above is highly dependent on the choice of base.

TABLE 7.3 PRODUCT DISTRIBUTION OF AN E2 REACTION AS A FUNCTION OF BASE

BASE	ZAITSEV	HOFMANN
$EtO^{\ominus}$	71%	29%
	28%	72%
	8%	92%

When ethoxide is used, the Zaitsev product is the major product. But when sterically hindered bases are used, the Hofmann product becomes the major product. This case illustrates a critical concept: *The regiochemical outcome of an E2 reaction can often be controlled by carefully choosing the base.* Sterically hindered bases are employed in a variety of reactions, not just elimination, so it is useful to recognize a few sterically hindered bases.

Potassium *tert*-butoxide (*t*-BuOK)

Diisopropylamine

Triethylamine

SKILLBUILDER

7.3 PREDICTING THE REGIOCHEMICAL OUTCOME OF AN E2 REACTION

LEARN the skill

Predict the major and minor products of the following E2 reaction:

SOLUTION

STEP 1 Identify all β positions bearing protons.

First identify all of the β positions that bear protons.

These are the positions that must be explored. The two positions inside the ring are identical, because removing a proton from either of these positions will result in formation of the same product:

STEP 2 Draw all possible regiochemical outcomes.

Removing a proton from the other β position (outside the ring) will produce a different alkene:

So there are two possible regiochemical outcomes. The π bond can be formed inside the ring or outside the ring.

STEP 3 Identify the Zaitsev and Hofmann products.

The first outcome gives a trisubstituted alkene, while the second outcome gives a disubstituted alkene. The more substituted alkene (trisubstituted) is the Zaitsev product, and the disubstituted alkene is the Hofmann product.

STEP 4 Analyze the base to determine which product predominates.

This example does not employ a sterically hindered base, so we expect that the Zaitsev product will be the major product:

Major **Minor**

PRACTICE the skill

7.12 Predict the major and minor products for each of the following E2 reactions:

(a)

(b)

7.13 For each of the following reactions, identify whether you would use hydroxide or *tert*-butoxide to accomplish the desired transformation, and explain your choice:

APPLY the skill

7.14 Adamantane, a tricyclic alkane consisting of fused cyclohexane rings, has an intriguing structure that was first proposed as a theoretical structure in 1924. Chemists set out to synthesize the molecule and succeeded[3] in 1941. Because its structure resembles the carbon framework found in diamond, it was named adamantane after the Greek adamas (meaning unconquerable or invincible). An alkene with the molecular formula $C_{11}H_{15}Br$ was prepared from the adamantane-derived dibromide[4] shown below. Draw the major product of this reaction and explain why only a single product is formed:

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 7.58, 7.59a,d, 7.62, 7.63b, 7.66, 7.86**

Stereoselectivity of E2 Reactions

So far in this section, we have focused on regiochemistry. We will now focus our attention on stereochemistry. For example, consider performing an E2 reaction with 3-bromopentane as the substrate, as shown below. This substrate has two identical β positions so regiochemistry is not an issue in this case. Deprotonation of either β position produces the same result. But in this case, stereochemistry is relevant, because two possible stereoisomeric alkenes can be obtained:

Both stereoisomers (*cis* and *trans*) are produced, but the *trans* product predominates. Consider an energy diagram showing formation of the *cis* and *trans* products (Figure 7.13). Using the Hammond postulate (Section 6.6), we can show that the transition state for formation of the *trans* alkene must be more stable than the transition state for formation of the *cis* alkene. This reaction is said to be stereoselective because the substrate produces two stereoisomers in unequal amounts.

FIGURE 7.13
An energy diagram showing formation of *cis* and *trans* products in an E2 reaction.

Stereospecificity of E2 Reactions

In the previous example, the β position had two different protons.

In such a case, both the *cis* and the *trans* isomers were produced, with the *trans* isomer being favored. Now let's consider a case where the β position contains only one proton. For example, consider performing an elimination reaction with the following substrate:

In this example, there are two β positions. One of these positions has no protons at all, and the other position has only one proton. In such a case, a mixture of stereoisomers is not obtained. In this case, there will only be one stereoisomeric product:

Why is the other possible stereoisomer not obtained? To understand the answer to this question, we must explore the alignment of orbitals in the transition state. In the transition state, a π bond is forming. Recall that a π bond is comprised of overlapping p orbitals. Therefore, the transition state must involve the formation of p orbitals that are positioned such that they can overlap with each other as they are forming. In order to achieve this kind of orbital overlap, the following four atoms must all lie in the same plane: the proton at the β position; the leaving group; and the two carbon atoms that will ultimately bear the π bond. These four atoms must all be **coplanar**:

These four atoms (shown in red) must all lie in the same plane

Recall that the C—C single bond is free to rotate before the reaction occurs. If we imagine rotating this bond, we see that there are two ways to achieve a coplanar arrangement:

LOOKING BACK
For practice drawing Newman projections, see Sections 4.6–4.8.

The first conformation is called ***anti*-coplanar**, while the second conformation is called ***syn*-coplanar**. In this context, the terms *anti* and *syn* refer to the relative positions of the proton and the leaving group, which can be seen more clearly with Newman projections:

***Anti*-coplanar (staggered)** ***Syn*-coplanar (eclipsed)**

When viewed in this way, we can see that the *anti*-coplanar conformation is staggered, while the *syn*-coplanar conformation is eclipsed. Elimination via the *syn*-coplanar conformation would involve a transition state of higher energy as a result of the eclipsed geometry. Therefore, elimination occurs more rapidly via the *anti*-coplanar conformation. In fact, in most cases, elimination is observed to occur exclusively via the *anti*-coplanar conformation, which leads to one specific stereoisomeric product:

***Anti*-coplanar (staggered)**

The requirement for coplanarity is not entirely absolute. That is, small deviations from coplanarity can be tolerated. If the dihedral angle between the proton and the leaving group is not exactly 180°, the reaction can still proceed as long as the dihedral angle is close to 180°. The term **periplanar** (rather than coplanar) is used to describe a situation in which the proton and leaving group are *nearly* coplanar (for example, a dihedral angle of 178° or 179°). In such a conformation, the orbital overlap is significant enough for an E2 reaction to occur. Therefore, it is not absolutely necessary for the proton and the leaving group to be *anti*-coplanar. Rather, it is sufficient for the proton and the leaving group to be ***anti*-periplanar**. From now on, we will use the term *anti*-periplanar when referring to the stereochemical requirement for an E2 process.

The requirement for an *anti*-periplanar arrangement will determine the stereoisomerism of the product. In other words, *the stereoisomeric product of an E2 process depends on the configuration of the starting alkyl halide*:

It would be absolutely wrong to say that the product will always be the *trans* isomer. The product obtained depends on the configuration of the starting alkyl halide. The only way to predict the configuration of the resulting alkene is to analyze the substrate carefully and determine which stereoisomeric product is obtained. The E2 reaction is said to be *stereospecific*, because the stereoisomerism of the product is dependent on the stereoisomerism of the substrate. The stereospecificity of an E2 reaction is only relevant when the β position has only one proton:

In such a case, the β proton must be arranged *anti*-periplanar to the leaving group in order for the reaction to occur, and that requirement will determine the stereoisomeric product obtained. If, however, the β position has two protons, then either of these two protons can be arranged so that it is *anti*-periplanar to the leaving group. As a result, both stereoisomeric products will be obtained:

In such a case, the more stable isomeric alkene will predominate. This is an example of stereoselectivity, rather than stereospecificity. The difference between these two terms is often misunderstood, so let's spend a moment on it. The key is to focus on the nature of the substrate (Figure 7.14):

FIGURE 7.14
An illustration of the difference between stereoselectivity and stereospecificity in an E2 reaction.

- In a *stereoselective* E2 reaction: The substrate itself is not necessarily stereoisomeric; nevertheless, this substrate can produce two stereoisomeric products, and it is found that one stereoisomeric product is formed in higher yield.
- In a *stereospecific* E2 reaction: The substrate is stereoisomeric, and the stereochemical outcome is dependent on which stereoisomeric substrate is used.

SKILLBUILDER

7.4 PREDICTING THE STEREOCHEMICAL OUTCOME OF AN E2 REACTION

LEARN the skill

Identify the major and minor products for the E2 reaction that occurs when each of the following substrates is treated with a strong base:

SOLUTION

STEP 1 Identify all β positions bearing protons.

(a) In this case, regiochemistry is irrelevant because there is only one β position that bears protons:

STEP 2 If the β position has two protons, expect *cis* and *trans* isomers.

In order to determine if the reaction is stereoselective or stereospecific, count the number of protons at the β position. In this case, the β position has two protons. Therefore, we expect the reaction to be stereoselective. That is, we expect both *cis* and *trans* isomers, although the *trans* isomer is expected to predominate:

STEP 1 Identify all β positions bearing protons.

(b) In this case, the regiochemistry is also irrelevant, because there is once again only one β position that has protons:

STEP 2 If the β position has only one proton, rotate the central C—C bond so that the β proton is *anti*-periplanar to the leaving group.

In order to determine if the reaction is stereoselective or stereospecific, count the number of protons at the β position. In this case, the β position has only one proton. Therefore, we expect the reaction to be stereospecific. That is, we expect only one particular stereoisomeric product, not both.

To determine which product to expect, we must rotate the central C—C bond so that the beta proton is *anti*-periplanar to the leaving group. In this case, we will do this in two stages. First, we rotate the central C—C bond in a manner that places the Cl in the plane of the page (rather than on a wedge):

Then, we rotate the central C—C bond again, in a manner that places the β proton in the plane of the page:

In this conformation, the proton and the leaving group are *anti*-periplanar.

STEP 3
Using the wedges and dashes to guide you, draw the product.

To draw the product, use the wedges and dashes as guides. In this case, the *tert*-butyl group and the ethyl group are both on wedges, so they will be *cis* to each other in the product:

In this case, the product is the *Z* isomer. The *E* isomer is not obtained, because that would require elimination from a *syn*-periplanar conformation, which is eclipsed and too high in energy.

PRACTICE the skill

7.15 Identify the major and minor products for the E2 reaction that occurs when each of the following substrates is treated with a strong base:

APPLY the skill

7.16 Retinol, one of the forms of vitamin A, is found in animal-based foods and is essential for good vision. Below are two organohalides that were used to make synthetic forms of vitamin A.[5] Upon treatment with a strong base, each of these compounds undergoes a stereospecific E2 reaction to form a new double bond between C6 and C7. Because the starting organohalides differ in their configuration at C6, each affords a different E2 product (compounds **1** and **2**, respectively). Draw the E2 product obtained in each case, and identify which is the more stable/lower-energy compound. Explain your choice:

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 7.60, 7.61, 7.73**

Stereospecificity of E2 Reactions on Substituted Cyclohexanes

In this section, we have explored the requirement that an E2 reaction proceed via an *anti*-periplanar conformation. That requirement has special significance when dealing with substituted cyclohexanes. Recall that a substituted cyclohexane ring can adopt two different chair conformations:

LOOKING BACK
For practice drawing chair conformations, see Sections 4.10–4.13.

In one chair conformation, the leaving group occupies an axial position. In the other chair conformation, the leaving group occupies an equatorial position. The requirement for an *anti*-periplanar

conformation demands that an E2 reaction can only occur from the chair conformation in which the leaving group occupies an axial position. To see this more clearly, consider Newman projections for each chair conformation:

When Cl is axial, it can be *anti*-periplanar with a neighboring hydrogen atom

When Cl is equatorial, it *cannot* be *anti*-periplanar with any of its neighboring hydrogen atoms

When the leaving group occupies an axial position, it is *anti*-periplanar with a neighboring proton. Yet, when the leaving group occupies an equatorial position, it is not *anti*-periplanar with any neighboring protons. Therefore, on a cyclohexane ring, an E2 reaction only occurs from the chair conformation in which the leaving group is axial. From this, it follows that an E2 reaction can only take place when the leaving group and the proton are on opposite sides of the ring (one on a wedge and the other on a dash):

Only the two hydrogen atoms shown in red can participate in an E2 reaction

If there are no such protons, then an E2 reaction cannot occur at an appreciable rate. As an example, consider the following compound:

This compound will not undergo an E2 reaction

This compound has two β positions, and each β position bears a proton. But, neither of these protons can be *anti*-periplanar with the leaving group. Since the leaving group is on a wedge, an E2 reaction will only occur if there is a neighboring proton on a dash.

Consider another example:

In this case, only one proton can be *anti*-periplanar with the leaving group, so in this case, only one product is obtained:

Not observed

The other product (the Zaitsev product) is not formed in this case, even though it is the more substituted alkene.

For substituted cyclohexanes, the rate of an E2 reaction is greatly affected by the amount of time that the leaving group spends in an axial position. As an example, compare the following two compounds:

Neomenthyl chloride Menthyl chloride

Neomenthyl chloride is 200 times more reactive toward an E2 process. Why? Draw both chair conformations of neomenthyl chloride:

The more stable chair conformation has the larger isopropyl group occupying an equatorial position. In this chair conformation, the chlorine atom occupies an axial position, which is set up nicely for an E2 elimination. In other words, neomenthyl chloride spends most of its time in the conformation necessary for an E2 process to occur. In contrast, menthyl chloride spends most of its time in the wrong conformation:

The large isopropyl group occupies an equatorial position in the more stable chair conformation. In this conformation, the leaving group occupies an equatorial position, which means that the leaving group spends most of its time in an equatorial position. In this case, an E2 process can only occur from the higher energy chair conformation, whose concentration is small at equilibrium. As a result, menthyl chloride will undergo an E2 reaction more slowly.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

7.17 When menthyl chloride is treated with a strong base, only one elimination product is observed. Yet, when neomenthyl chloride is treated with a strong base, two elimination products are observed. Draw the products and explain.

Neomenthyl chloride

Menthyl chloride

7.18 Predict which of the following two compounds will undergo an E2 reaction more rapidly, and explain your prediction:

Drawing the Products of an E2 Reaction

As we have seen, predicting the products of an E2 reaction is often more complex than predicting the products of an S_N2 reaction. With an E2 reaction, two major issues must be considered before drawing the products: regiochemistry and stereochemistry. Both of these issues are illustrated in the following example.

SKILLBUILDER

7.5 DRAWING THE PRODUCTS OF AN E2 REACTION

LEARN the skill

Predict the major and minor products of the following E2 reaction:

SOLUTION

We must consider both the regiochemistry and the stereochemistry of this reaction. We will start with the regiochemistry.

STEP 1 Determine the expected regiochemical outcome.

First identify all of the β positions that possess protons:

There are two β positions. The base (ethoxide) is not sterically hindered, so we expect the Zaitsev product (the more substituted alkene) as the major product. The less substituted alkene will be the minor product.

STEP 2 Determine the expected stereochemical outcome.

Next, we must identify the stereochemistry of formation of each of the products. Let's begin with the minor product (the less substituted alkene), because its double bond does not exhibit stereoisomerism:

This alkene is neither *E* nor *Z*, so we don't need to worry about stereoisomerism of the double bond in this product. But for the major product, we must predict which stereoisomer will be obtained. To do this, rotate the central C—C bond so that the beta proton is *anti*-periplanar to the leaving group. In SkillBuilder 7.4, this rotation was done in two stages. In some cases, it will be much easier to do both stages at the same time, as shown below.

The reaction occurs via this *anti*-periplanar conformation, so the wedges and dashes serve as guides to draw the correct stereoisomeric alkene, as shown:

To summarize, we expect the following products:

PRACTICE the skill **7.19** Predict the major and minor products for each of the following E2 reactions:

APPLY the skill

7.20 Compound **2** was prepared as part of an effort[6] to determine the absolute stereochemistry of compound **3**, which was isolated from the liverwort plant. The synthesis of compound **2** involved the formation of four C=C double bonds. The first double bond was formed via an E2 reaction, by treating compound **1** with potassium *tert*-butoxide. Draw the product of this E2 reaction, and draw curved arrows to show a mechanism for its formation:

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 7.57–7.59, 7.62, 7.63**

7.8 Unimolecular Reactions (S_N1 and E1)

Thus far, we have seen that alkyl halides can react with strong nucleophiles via an S_N2 process, or with strong bases via an E2 process. When a tertiary alkyl halide is dissolved in a polar solvent that is both a weak base and a weak nucleophile (such as ethanol, EtOH), we expect an S_N2 process to be disfavored, because the substrate is tertiary and because the nucleophile is weak. We also expect an E2 process to be disfavored because the base is weak. However, substitution and elimination products are both observed to form over time, as seen in the following example:

Experimental observations for this reaction (and others like it) are not consistent with S_N2 and E2 processes. For example, the rate of formation of each product is found to have the following rate expression:

$$\text{Rate} = k\,[\text{substrate}]$$

The rate equation is said to be **first order**, because the rate is linearly dependent on the concentration of only one compound (the substrate). This observation demonstrates that the products must be formed via processes other than S_N2 and E2 reactions, which would be expected to exhibit second-order rate equations. In this section, we will explore new mechanisms, called S_N1 and E1, that account for these and other observations. Both mechanisms begin with the same first step—loss of a leaving group to give a carbocation intermediate:

The tertiary alkyl halide is said to undergo *ionization*, because it dissociates into a pair of ions (a carbocation and a halide ion). The fate of the carbocation intermediate then determines the resulting product. There are two possibilities, depending on the role played by the solvent in the next step. Either the solvent can function as a nucleophile, giving a substitution reaction, or the solvent can function as a base, giving an elimination reaction. Let's first explore the substitution process, and then we will explore the elimination process.

The S_N1 Mechanism

When a tertiary alkyl halide undergoes ionization in a polar solvent, such as EtOH, the solvent can function as a nucleophile and attack the intermediate carbocation, resulting in a two-step substitution process:

Since a solvent molecule functions as the attacking nucleophile, the process is called a *solvolysis*. Notice that the result of this two-step substitution process is an oxonium ion (an intermediate with a positive charge on an oxygen atom). This oxonium ion can then lose its proton to a solvent molecule, giving the observed substitution product:

Figure 7.15 shows an energy diagram that depicts all steps in this solvolysis process.

FIGURE 7.15 An energy diagram for the solvolysis of *tert*-butyl bromide in ethanol.

The figure has been divided into two regions, according to color. The first region (blue) shows the two steps of the substitution process (loss of a leaving group to give a carbocation intermediate, followed by nucleophilic attack). The next region (purple) shows the proton transfer step that removes the proton from the oxonium ion, giving the observed product. If we focus our attention on the first two steps of this process (the substitution steps), we will find that these are exactly the same two steps of an S_N2 process, but the steps do not occur at the same time. In an S_N2 process, these two steps (loss of leaving group and nucleophilic attack) occur in a concerted fashion (simultaneously), and there is no carbocation intermediate. But in this case, unlike in an S_N2 process, the two steps occur separately and the reaction proceeds via a carbocation intermediate.

If we carefully study the energy diagram in Figure 7.15, we can rationalize the observed first order kinetics for this process. For any process with more than one step, the step with the highest-energy transition state (the highest point on the curve) is called the *rate-determining step* (RDS), because the rate of the entire process is most profoundly affected by any changes in the rate of that step. The rate-determining step is also generally the step with the highest energy of activation (for more on this, see the margin note). In Figure 7.15, which depicts an S_N1 process, the first step (loss of a leaving group) is the rate-determining step of this process because the transition state for this step is the highest point on the curve and because this step has the highest energy of activation. The rates of the other steps are less significant in determining the overall rate of the entire process—if we could somehow lower the energy of the transition state of either the second

BY THE WAY

For a multi-step process, the rate-determining step (RDS) is the step with the highest-energy transition state, provided that one transition state is higher in energy than the others. However, in some cases, there might NOT be one transition state that is higher in energy than the others. In such a case, the RDS will be the step with the largest energy of activation (E_a). This can be illustrated with the following hypothetical energy diagrams:

In energy diagram **(a)**, there are two steps, and the transition state for the second step is higher in energy than the transition state for the first step. Therefore, the second step is the rate-determining step, *even though this step does not have the larger* E_a. In contrast, in energy diagram **(b)**, the two transition states are similar in energy. In such a case, the rate-determining step is the step with the larger E_a (the first step).

The energy diagram for a typical S_N1 process is shown in Figure 7.15. Notice that the first step (loss of a leaving group) is the rate-determining step, because this step has the higher-energy transition state and also because this step has the larger E_a.

or third step, the rate of the entire process would not be greatly affected. With this in mind, take notice that the solvent only functions as a nucleophile in the second step of our process (not in the rate-determining step). The rate-determining step is said to be **unimolecular** because it involves only one chemical entity (the substrate). The term **S_N1** is used to refer to unimolecular nucleophilic substitution reactions:

As shown in Mechanism 7.3, an S_N1 mechanism is comprised of two core steps: 1) loss of a leaving group to give a carbocation intermediate; and 2) nucleophilic attack. If the nucleophile is uncharged (which is often the case for S_N1 processes), then there will be an additional step at the end of the mechanism, in which the extra proton is removed by a solvent molecule (as shown in the purple region of Figure 7.15).

MECHANISM 7.3 THE S_N1 MECHANISM

The E1 Mechanism

When a tertiary alkyl halide undergoes ionization in a polar solvent, such as EtOH, the solvent can function as a base (rather than as a nucleophile) and deprotonate the intermediate carbocation, resulting in a two-step elimination process:

These two steps are the same steps of an E2 process, but the steps are not occurring at the same time. In an E2 process, these two steps (loss of leaving group and proton transfer) occur in a concerted fashion, and there is no carbocation intermediate. But here, the two steps are occurring separately, and the reaction proceeds via a carbocation intermediate. Much as we saw for S_N1 processes, the rate-determining step is the first step (loss of the leaving group), because that step has the highest energy transition state. Notice that the solvent only functions as a base in the second step of our process (not in the rate-determining step). The rate-determining step is said to be unimolecular because it involves only one chemical entity (the substrate). The term **E1** is used to refer to unimolecular elimination reactions:

As shown in Mechanism 7.4, an E1 mechanism is comprised of two core steps: 1) loss of a leaving group, to give a carbocation intermediate; and 2) deprotonation by the solvent to give an alkene.

MECHANISM 7.4 THE E1 MECHANISM

If we compare Mechanisms 7.3 and 7.4 (S_N1 and E1), we will find that they share the same first step—ionization of the alkyl halide to give a carbocation intermediate. These mechanisms differ in the second step, where the solvent can either function as a nucleophile or as a base:

Both processes are illustrated together in Figure 7.16, where it is clear that the two processes share the same first step, and then diverge in the second step. The first step has the highest energy transition state, so the first step is the rate-determining step for both processes. That step determines the rate at which the two products appear. However, the distribution of products (which product is favored over the other) depends on the relative energy of the transition states in the second step. In this energy diagram, the substitution pathway is shown as the lower energy pathway, with the S_N1 product being favored over the E1 product. Indeed, this is often the case, although elimination is generally favored over substitution when the resulting alkene is tri- or tetrasubstituted.

FIGURE 7.16
An energy diagram of E1 and S_N1 processes. Both processes share the same first step, which is rate-determining.

It should be noted that alkyl halides are generally slow to react in unimolecular processes, and a mixture of products is unavoidable. For both of these reasons, solvolysis of tertiary alkyl halides is not a useful technique for practicing synthetic organic chemists. And while it might initially appear unnecessary to study reactions of such low utility, we will soon see that the mechanisms covered in this section will reappear in a variety of extremely useful reactions (two such reactions will be explored in Section 7.10).

SKILLBUILDER

7.6 DRAWING THE CARBOCATION INTERMEDIATE OF AN S_N1 OR E1 PROCESS

LEARN the skill

Draw the carbocation intermediate that is expected when the following alkyl chloride undergoes ionization:

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Identify the leaving group.

First identify the leaving group, in this case chloride.

STEP 2
Draw all three groups pointing away from each other.

Then remove the leaving group and draw the resulting carbocation. When drawing a carbocation, recall that the carbon atom bearing the positive charge is sp^2 hybridized with trigonal planar geometry. That is, the bond angles are expected to be approximately 120°, and they should be drawn accordingly, as shown:

Notice that this carbocation is not only tertiary, but it is also resonance-stabilized, so we expect it to be even more stable than a typical tertiary carbocation:

PRACTICE the skill

7.21 Draw the carbocation intermediate that is expected when each of the following alkyl halides undergoes ionization. In each case, if the carbocation is resonance-stabilized, make sure to draw the resonance structures.

APPLY the skill

7.22 Later in this chapter (Section 7.10), we will see that a carbocation can be formed from an alcohol substrate in the presence of an acid, and an example of such a reaction is given below. This reaction was employed in the development of new synthetic methods that can be applied to the preparation of medicinally relevant compounds.[7] Draw the carbocation intermediate that is expected in the S_N1 reaction shown. If the carbocation is resonance-stabilized, be sure to draw all significant resonance structures.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 7.87, 7.94, 7.96, 7.102**

Rearrangements in Unimolecular Processes

There is additional evidence that solvolysis processes involve carbocation intermediates. For example, consider the following solvolysis reaction, in which two substitution products are obtained:

In this case, the solvent is water, and the substitution products are both alcohols (ROH). The reaction also affords elimination products, but let's focus our attention on the substitution products. Formation of the first product could certainly be rationalized by an S_N2 process, but formation of the second product requires a rearrangement, which is inconsistent with an S_N2 process. The observed rearrangement is strong evidence that the reaction proceeds via a carbocation intermediate, which is consistent with an S_N1 process. The following S_N1 mechanism, involving a hydride shift, justifies the formation of the rearranged product:

Loss of the leaving group generates a secondary carbocation, which rearranges via a hydride shift to give a more stable, tertiary carbocation. The solvent (water) then functions as a nucleophile and attacks the carbocation. The resulting oxonium ion is then deprotonated by the solvent to give the rearranged substitution product.

Methyl shifts are also observed, as seen in the following example:

Once again, formation of the second product requires a rearrangement, which is inconsistent with an S_N2 process. The observed rearrangement is strong evidence that the reaction proceeds via a carbocation intermediate, which is consistent with the following S_N1 process involving a methyl shift:

This reaction is very similar to the previous reaction, although a methyl shift occurs instead of a hydride shift.

Curiously, neopentyl bromide undergoes solvolysis in water to give only one substitution product:

The first alcohol drawn above is not observed at all, because it cannot be formed via either pathway (S_N2 or S_N1). It cannot be formed via an S_N2 pathway because of steric factors (as we saw in

Section 7.3), and it cannot be formed via an S_N1 pathway, because that would require formation of a primary carbocation:

As we saw in Chapter 6, primary carbocations are very high in energy and should not be proposed as intermediates in reaction mechanisms. With this in mind, how can we justify the formation of the observed substitution product? Formation of that product requires a rearrangement, suggesting a carbocation intermediate (an S_N1 process). But an S_N1 process begins with ionization to give a carbocation, and we just said that a primary carbocation is too high in energy to form. Therefore, it is more likely that, in this case, ionization (loss of the leaving group) occurs in a concerted fashion together with a methyl shift. In this way, a primary carbocation is never actually formed, and ionization produces the tertiary carbocation directly:

The process is still an S_N1 process. In the first step (shown above), ionization occurs with a simultaneous methyl shift to give a tertiary carbocation. This carbocation is then attacked by a molecule of the solvent (water) to give an oxonium ion, which is then deprotonated by the solvent to give the observed substitution product.

Effect of Substrate on Ionization Rates

When we compare the relative rates of ionization of tertiary alkyl halides, we find that alkyl iodides are the most reactive, and alkyl fluorides are the least reactive:

This trend is easily rationalized if we consider the leaving group in each case. Among the halides, iodide is the best leaving group (it is the weakest base), so it is not surprising that alkyl iodides undergo ionization most readily. In contrast, fluoride is a poor leaving group, so alkyl fluorides are much less reactive toward solvolysis reactions.

S_N1 and E1 processes are observed for tertiary alkyl halides and are rarely observed for secondary or primary alkyl halides, although there are exceptions. For example, the benzylic and allylic carbocations shown below are not tertiary, but they are stabilized by resonance, so they can serve as intermediates in unimolecular processes:

As a result, allylic and benzylic halides are also observed to undergo solvolysis reactions. As an example, consider the following solvolysis reaction involving a secondary benzylic bromide. In this case, water is the solvent, and the solvolysis process gives a mixture of S_N1 and E1 products.

S_N1 and E1 processes are generally not observed at sp^2 hybridized centers. That is, vinyl halides and aryl halides do not undergo unimolecular reactions, because loss of a leaving group would result in an unstable carbocation.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

7.23 For each pair of compounds, identify which is expected to undergo solvolysis more rapidly in water, and explain your choice in each case:

7.24 Draw the expected products of the following solvolysis process:

7.25 Traditional medicines derived from the roots of nut-grass (*Cyperus rotundus*) have been used to treat a variety of ailments, including blood disorders and leprosy. Compound **2** is the active component in medicines derived from nut-grass. One laboratory procedure for making compound **2** includes an intramolecular S_N1 reaction to form a new ring.[8] Two possible starting materials (structures **1** and **3**) for such a reaction are shown below. Identify which structure represents a better candidate for a rapid S_N1 process and justify your choice.

Regiochemical and Stereochemical Outcomes for E1 Reactions

Let's now consider an example of a solvolysis process in which there is more than one elimination product.

In this example, the β positions of the alkyl halide are not equivalent, and there are two possible regiochemical outcomes (just as we saw for E2 reactions in Section 7.7). Both elimination products are formed, and the more-substituted alkene is generally observed to be the major product. That is, the trisubstituted alkene is favored over the disubstituted alkene. For E2 reactions, we saw that the regiochemical outcome can sometimes be controlled by carefully choosing the base (Section 7.7). In contrast, the E1 pathway does not offer a similar level of control over the regiochemical outcome. In an E1 process, there is no direct way to favor the less-substituted alkene.

In the following example, there are also two possible regiochemical outcomes for elimination, but one of those outcomes leads to two possible stereoisomeric alkenes:

The first two products share the same regiochemical outcome—they are both trisubstituted, so they are favored over the disubstituted alkene. The trisubstituted alkenes are stereoisomers. Both are observed in the product mixture, although the one with the fewest or weakest steric interactions is favored. The first alkene (the *E* isomer) exhibits a steric interaction between two methyl groups, while the second alkene (the *Z* isomer) exhibits a steric interaction between a methyl group and an ethyl group. The *E* isomer exhibits a weaker steric interaction, so it is expected to be lower in energy. As a result, the *E* isomer will be favored over the *Z* isomer in this case. Once again, keep in mind that a mixture of products is unavoidable.

Stereochemistry of S_N1 Reactions

Recall that S_N2 reactions proceed via an inversion of configuration (Section 7.3). In contrast, S_N1 reactions involve formation of an intermediate carbocation, which can then be attacked from either side, leading to both inversion of configuration and **retention of configuration**.

Since the carbocation can be attacked on either side with equal likelihood, we should expect S_N1 reactions to produce a racemic mixture (equal mixture of inversion and retention). In practice, though, S_N1 reactions rarely produce exactly equal amounts of inversion and retention products. There is usually a slight preference for the inversion product. The accepted explanation involves the formation of ion pairs. When the leaving group first leaves, it is initially very close to the intermediate carbocation, forming an intimate ion pair:

If the nucleophile attacks the carbocation while it is still participating in an ion pair, then the leaving group effectively blocks one face of the carbocation. The other side of the carbocation can experience unhindered attack by a nucleophile. As a result, the nucleophile will attack more often on the side opposite the leaving group, leading to a slight preference for inversion over retention.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

7.26 Draw all of the expected products for each of the following solvolysis reactions:

7.27 The following tertiary alkyl halide was heated in ethanol for several days, and the resulting mixture of products contained five different elimination products and two substitution products:

(a) Draw the substitution products and identify the relationship between them.

(b) Identify which substitution product is expected to be favored, and explain your choice.

(c) Draw all of the elimination products, and identify which products are stereoisomers.

(d) For each pair of stereoisomeric alkenes, identify which stereoisomer is expected to be favored.

7.9 Predicting Products: Substitution vs. Elimination

Substitution and elimination reactions are very often in competition with each other. In order to predict the products of a reaction, it is necessary to determine which mechanisms are likely to occur. In some cases, only one mechanism will predominate:

In other cases, two or more mechanisms will compete, giving multiple products, as seen in the following example:

Don't fall into the trap of thinking that there must always be just one product. Sometimes there is, but that is often not the case. The goal is to predict all of the products, and to predict which products are major and which are minor. To accomplish this goal, three steps are required:

1. Determine the function of the reagent.
2. Analyze the substrate and determine the expected mechanism(s).
3. Consider any relevant regiochemical and stereochemical requirements.

Each of these three steps will now be explored individually.

Step One: Determining the Function of the Reagent

We have seen in Section 7.1 that the main difference between substitution and elimination is the function of the reagent. A substitution reaction occurs when the reagent functions as a nucleophile, while an elimination reaction occurs when the reagent functions as a base. Nucleophilicity

and basicity are not the same concepts, as first described in Section 6.7. Nucleophilicity is a kinetic phenomenon and refers to the rate of reaction, while basicity is a thermodynamic phenomenon and refers to the position of equilibrium.

Nucleophilicity is determined by factors such as polarizability and the presence of high electron density (as seen in Section 7.4), while basicity is determined by the stability of a base. In Chapter 3, we saw two methods for assessing the relative stability of a base. The first requires access to pK_a values. Specifically, the strength of a base is determined by assessing the pK_a of its conjugate acid. For example, a bromide ion is an extremely weak base, because its conjugate acid (HBr) is strongly acidic ($pK_a = -9$). The other approach was described in Section 3.4 and involves the use of four factors for determining the relative stability of a base containing a negative charge. For example, a bromide ion has a negative charge on a large, electronegative atom and is therefore highly stabilized (a weak base). Notice that both approaches provide the same prediction: that bromide is a weak base. The example of bromide illustrates that nucleophilicity and basicity do not always parallel each other. Bromide is large and polarizable, and it bears a negative charge, so it is a very strong nucleophile. However, it is also a very weak base, because it is so stable.

If we classify common reagents as either strong or weak nucleophiles, and if we also classify them as either strong or weak bases, then there are four categories. Each of these four categories is shown in Figure 7.17, with specific examples of each category:

Strong base Weak nucleophile	Strong base Strong nucleophile	Weak base Strong nucleophile	Weak base Weak nucleophile
DBN DBU	HO^- MeO^- EtO^-	I^- Br^- Cl^- RS^- HS^- RSH H_2S	H_2O MeOH EtOH

FIGURE 7.17
Classification of common reagents used for substitution/elimination.

Keep in mind that some reagents may not fit perfectly into one of these four categories. For example, the cyanide ion ($N{\equiv}C^-$) is a strong nucleophile but only a moderate base (neither very strong nor very weak). Nevertheless, the simplified classification scheme in Figure 7.17 will enable us to make useful predictions regarding the outcomes of many substitution and elimination reactions.

We will now briefly discuss each of the four categories in Figure 7.17. The first category shows reagents that function almost exclusively as bases (they rarely function as nucleophiles when reacting with alkyl halides). The use of one of these reagents (DBN or DBU) indicates that an elimination reaction will occur, rather than a substitution reaction:

1,5-Diazabicyclo[4.3.0]non-5-ene (DBN)

1,8-Diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (DBU)

These two compounds are very similar in structure. When either of these compounds is protonated, the resulting positive charge is resonance-stabilized:

DBN **Resonance-stabilized**

The positive charge is spread over two nitrogen atoms, rather than one, so this cation is highly stabilized and therefore weakly acidic. As a result, both DBN and DBU are strongly basic. These examples demonstrate that it is possible for a neutral compound to be a strong base. When an alkyl halide is treated with DBN or DBU, an elimination reaction will occur (not substitution).

The second category in Figure 7.17 shows reagents that are both strong nucleophiles and strong bases. These reagents include hydroxide (HO^-) and alkoxide ions (RO^-). Such reagents are generally used for bimolecular processes (S_N2 and E2).

The third category in Figure 7.17 shows reagents that function only as nucleophiles. That is, they are strong nucleophiles because they are highly polarizable, but they are weak bases because they are highly stabilized. The use of a reagent from this category signifies that a substitution reaction is occurring (not elimination).

The fourth and final category in Figure 7.17 shows reagents that are weak nucleophiles and weak bases. These reagents include water (H_2O) and alcohols (ROH). Such reagents are generally used for unimolecular processes (S_N1 and E1), as seen in Section 7.8.

In summary, determining the function of the reagent (the category to which it belongs) is the first step in predicting the products of substitution and elimination reactions of alkyl halides. Once we have that information, we can move on to the next step.

It should be noted that you will often encounter reactions in which the reagent is shown as NaOEt together with EtOH, as seen in the following example:

NaOEt is a strong nucleophile/strong base, while EtOH is a weak nucleophile/weak base. Which one is the reagent here? In a situation like this, the strong nucleophile/strong base (NaOEt) is the reagent, while the weak nucleophile/weak base (EtOH) is simply the solvent in which the reagent is dissolved. EtOH is not considered to be the reagent in this case. Indeed, this is the case any time a strong nucleophile/strong base (such as NaOH, or NaOMe, or NaOEt, etc.) is dissolved in a solvent such as H_2O, MeOH or EtOH. In such a case, the solvent functions as the medium in which the reaction occurs, and the strong nucleophile/strong base functions as the reagent. In some cases, the identity of the solvent may not be indicated; nevertheless, it should be understood that there is always a solvent present to ensure that the reactants can mix and react efficiently.

Step Two: Determining the Expected Mechanism(s)

After determining the function of the reagent, the next step is to analyze the substrate and identify which mechanism(s) are operating. For each of the four categories of reagents, we must explore the expected outcome with a primary, secondary, or tertiary substrate. All of this information is summarized in Figure 7.18.

	Strong base Weak nucleophile	Strong base Strong nucleophile	Weak base Strong nucleophile	Weak base Weak nucleophile
1°	E2	E2 S_N2	S_N2	✗
2°	E2	E2 S_N2	S_N2	✗
3°	E2	E2	S_N1	S_N1 E1

FIGURE 7.18
The operative mechanism(s) can be determined by considering the identity of the substrate (primary, secondary, or tertiary) and the identity of the reagent (nucleophile or base).

It is extremely important to have a strong command of all the information presented in Figure 7.18, but it is best to avoid memorization. Rather, we will focus on understanding all of the trends represented in the figure, so that you can readily reconstruct the figure at a later time. Let's begin our analysis of Figure 7.18 by focusing on the left side of the figure (the left two columns). Those two columns correspond with strong bases. Notice that these two columns appear to be dominated by the E2 mechanism, as we would expect when a strong base is used. In the first column, E2 is the only mechanism observed, regardless of the type of substrate (primary, secondary, or tertiary), because the reagent is a weak nucleophile, and S_N2 reactions are not observed. In the absence of competing S_N2 reactions, the E2 pathway dominates. The second column in Figure 7.18 represents reagents that are both strong bases and strong nucleophiles

(such as hydroxide or alkoxide ions). With such a reagent, the identity of the substrate is the key to determining which mechanism competes most effectively:

For primary substrates, the S_N2 process is very rapid (even more so than E2), so the S_N2 product is the major product. However, with secondary substrates, the S_N2 pathway is hindered (slow), so the E2 product is the major product. For tertiary substrates, the S_N2 process does not occur at an observable rate—only the E2 mechanism operates. Notice that elimination dominates in all cases except for primary substrates. If we must perform an E2 reaction with a primary substrate, then a sterically hindered base can be used:

With a sterically hindered base, such as *tert*-butoxide, the S_N2 pathway is hindered, so it occurs more slowly. As a result, the E2 pathway effectively competes, and the E2 product is favored.

Let's now continue our analysis of Figure 7.18 by focusing on the right side of the figure (the right two columns). Those two columns correspond with weak bases, and the outcomes appear to be dominated by substitution reactions (because E2 processes are too slow when a weak base is used). If we focus on the first of these two columns (strong nucleophile), we find that all instances yield substitution products. Primary substrates react exclusively through the S_N2 mechanism, while tertiary substrates react exclusively through the S_N1 mechanism. Over the last several decades, there has been much debate/confusion over the fate of secondary alkyl halides, although there is very strong evidence that secondary alkyl halides react almost exclusively via an S_N2 process, and very rarely, if at all, through an S_N1 process.[9,10]

The final column in Figure 7.18 corresponds with reagents that are both weak nucleophiles and weak bases (such as water, or alcohols, ROH). In the absence of a strong base or strong nucleophile, bimolecular reactions (S_N2 and E2) do not occur. Under such conditions, unimolecular reactions (S_N1 and E1) can occur. These reactions are observed for tertiary substrates (not for primary and secondary substrates, unless they are allylic or benzylic). The product distribution (S_N1 vs. E1) is affected by the identities of the E1 products. When one or more of the possible E1 products is a tri- or tetra-substituted alkene, then E1 is generally favored over S_N1:

In this example, the first alkene is tetrasubstituted, so this E1 product is favored over the S_N1 product. However, in a case where the E1 products are not highly substituted, then S_N1 is generally favored.

As mentioned earlier, S_N1 and E1 reactions of alkyl halides are generally not useful methods for synthetic organic chemists. Nevertheless, these mechanisms are important because they serve as the foundation for other useful reactions that we will encounter throughout the upcoming chapters of this text. Therefore, a solid understanding of S_N1 and E1 processes will be crucial as we move forward.

In summary, when we consider the function of the reagent and the structure of the substrate, we can make useful predictions regarding which mechanism(s) operate, as shown in Figure 7.18. Armed with this information, we can now move on to the final step of predicting products.

Step Three: Considering Regiochemical and Stereochemical Outcomes

After determining which mechanism(s) operates, the final step is to consider the regiochemical and stereochemical outcomes for each of the expected mechanisms. Table 7.4 provides a summary of guidelines that must be followed when drawing products. All of the information in this table has already been presented in this chapter. The table is meant only as a summary of all of the relevant information, so that it is easily accessible in one location.

TABLE 7.4 GUIDELINES FOR DETERMINING THE REGIOCHEMICAL AND STEREOCHEMICAL OUTCOME OF SUBSTITUTION AND ELIMINATION REACTIONS

	REGIOCHEMICAL OUTCOME	STEREOCHEMICAL OUTCOME
S_N2	The nucleophile attacks the α position, where the leaving group is connected.	The nucleophile replaces the leaving group with inversion of configuration.
E2	The Zaitsev product is generally favored over the Hofmann product, unless a sterically hindered base is used, in which case the Hofmann product will be favored.	This process is stereoselective, because when applicable, a *trans* disubstituted alkene will be favored over a *cis* disubstituted alkene. This process is also stereospecific. Specifically, when the β position of the substrate has only one proton, the stereoisomeric alkene resulting from *anti*-periplanar elimination will be obtained (exclusively, in most cases).
S_N1	The nucleophile attacks the carbocation, which is generally where the leaving group was originally connected, unless a carbocation rearrangement took place.	The nucleophile replaces the leaving group to give a nearly racemic mixture. In practice, there is generally a slight preference for inversion over retention of configuration, as a result of the effect of ion pairs.
E1	The Zaitsev product is always favored over the Hofmann product.	The process is stereoselective. When applicable, a *trans* disubstituted alkene will be favored over a *cis* disubstituted alkene.

SKILLBUILDER

7.7 PREDICTING THE PRODUCTS OF SUBSTITUTION AND ELIMINATION REACTIONS OF ALKYL HALIDES

LEARN the skill

Predict the product(s) of the following reaction, and identify the major and minor products:

SOLUTION

In order to draw the products, the following three steps must be followed:

STEP 1 Determine the function of the reagent.

1. Determine the function of the reagent.
2. Analyze the substrate and determine the expected mechanism(s).
3. Consider any relevant regiochemical and stereochemical requirements.

In the first step, we analyze the reagent. The ethoxide ion is both a strong base and a strong nucleophile. In the presence of ethoxide, ethanol serves only as the solvent for the reaction.

STEP 2
Analyze the substrate and determine the expected mechanisms.

Next, we analyze the substrate. In this case, the substrate is secondary, so we would expect E2 and S_N2 pathways to compete with each other:

	Strong base Weak nucleophile	Strong base Strong nucleophile	Weak base Strong nucleophile	Weak base Weak nucleophile	
1°	E2	E2 / S_N2	S_N2		
2°	E2	E2 / S_N2	S_N2		
3°	E2	E2	S_N1	S_N1	E1

The E2 pathway is expected to predominate, because it is less sensitive to steric hindrance than the S_N2 pathway. Therefore, we would expect the major product(s) to be generated via an E2 process, and the minor product(s) to be generated via an S_N2 process.

STEP 3
Consider regiochemical and stereochemical requirements.

In order to draw the products, we must complete the final step. That is, we must consider the regiochemical and stereochemical outcomes for both the E2 and S_N2 processes.

Let's begin with the E2 process. For the regiochemical outcome, we expect the Zaitsev product to be the major product, because the reaction does not utilize a sterically hindered base:

Next, look at the stereochemistry. The E2 process is stereoselective, so we expect *cis* and *trans* isomers, with a predominance of the *trans* isomer:

The E2 process is also stereospecific, but in this case, the β position has more than one proton, so the stereospecificity of this reaction is not relevant.

Now consider the S_N2 product. In this case the substitution reaction occurs at a chiral center, so we expect inversion of configuration:

In summary, we expect the following products:

PRACTICE the skill

7.28 Identify the major and minor product(s) that are expected for each of the following reactions.

APPLY the skill

7.29 Compound **A** and compound **B** are constitutional isomers with the molecular formula C_3H_7Cl. When compound **A** is treated with sodium methoxide (NaOMe), a substitution reaction predominates. When compound **B** is treated with sodium methoxide, an elimination reaction predominates. Propose structures for compounds **A** and **B**.

7.30 Compound **A** and compound **B** are constitutional isomers with the molecular formula C_4H_9Cl. Treatment of compound **A** with sodium methoxide (NaOMe) gives *trans*-2-butene (shown below) as the major product, while treatment of compound **B** with sodium methoxide gives a different disubstituted alkene as the major product.

***trans*-2-butene**

(a) Draw the structure of compound **A**.

(b) Draw the structure of compound **B**.

7.31 An unknown compound with the molecular formula $C_6H_{13}Cl$ is treated with sodium ethoxide (NaOEt) to produce 2,3-dimethyl-2-butene (shown below) as the major product. Identify the structure of the unknown compound.

2,3-dimethyl-2-butene

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 7.75, 7.76**

At the beginning of this section, we mentioned that some reagents may not be easily classified using the classification scheme presented in Figure 7.17. For example, the cyanide ion ($N{\equiv}C^-$) is a strong nucleophile, but it is only a moderate base (not very strong and not very weak). As such, it does not fit cleanly into any one of the four categories presented. It is not a "strong nucleophile/strong base," nor is it a "strong nucleophile/weak base." Rather, cyanide is somewhere in between those two extremes. With this in mind, let's consider the outcomes when a primary or secondary alkyl halide is treated with cyanide:

With a primary substrate, the S_N2 product is often observed to be the exclusive product, because cyanide is not a strong base, so the E2 pathway cannot effectively compete. For secondary substrates, we saw earlier that the E2 pathway generally predominates over the S_N2 pathway. But in this case, the reagent is cyanide, which is a moderate base and a strong nucleophile. As such, the S_N2 product predominates, despite the steric effects associated with a secondary substrate. For tertiary alkyl halides, the S_N2 pathway cannot compete, so treatment with cyanide will generally lead to E2 products, although there are certainly more efficient ways of performing E2 reactions (a stronger base can be used). In summary, although the cyanide ion is not easily classified using the classification scheme in Figure 7.17, the observed outcomes (shown above) can still be rationalized with the principles described in this chapter.

7.10 Substitution and Elimination Reactions with Other Substrates

Nucleophilic substitution and beta-elimination reactions are not limited to alkyl halides, but are also observed for a wide variety of substrates, including alcohols, ethers, and amines (as we will see throughout the remaining chapters of this text). In this section, we will briefly explore the reactivity of alkyl sulfonates, and we will introduce the reactivity of alcohols (a topic further developed in Chapter 12).

Tosylates

In Section 7.1, we saw that sulfonate ions (RSO_3^-) are excellent leaving groups, much like halide ions, so it should come as no surprise that alkyl halides and alkyl sulfonates undergo similar reactions:

An alkyl halide — An alkyl sulfonate

With an alkyl sulfonate, the leaving group is a sulfonate ion, which is highly stabilized by resonance:

Sulfonate leaving groups are resonance-stabilized

Since sulfonate ions are such good leaving groups, alkyl sulfonates undergo substitution and elimination reactions, much like alkyl halides. Many sulfonates are commonly used, including mesylates, tosylates, and triflates:

An alkyl mesylate (ROMs) — An alkyl tosylate (ROTs) — An alkyl triflate (ROTf)

Tosylates are the most commonly used, although triflates have the best leaving group. Recall that the best leaving groups are the weakest bases. The triflate ion is one of the weakest known bases, because it is the conjugate base of an especially strong acid. Compare the pK_a values of the following sulfonic acids (RSO_3H):

Methanesulfonic acid (MsOH) $pK_a = -1.9$ — *p*-Toluenesulfonic acid (TsOH) $pK_a = -2.8$ — Trifluoromethanesulfonic acid (TfOH) $pK_a = -14$

Trifluoromethanesulfonic acid (TfOH) is the most acidic, by far. It is even more acidic than HI, so its conjugate base (the triflate ion) is extraordinarily stable. Since it is such a weak base, the triflate ion is an excellent leaving group. Indeed, the triflate ion is stabilized in two ways: 1) resonance; and 2) the inductive effects of the fluorine atoms (see Section 3.4). Triflates are often used in situations that require extremely good leaving groups.

Tosylates (ROTs) are more commonly used and can be prepared by treating the corresponding alcohol (ROH) with tosyl chloride (TsCl) in the presence of pyridine. Under these conditions, the alcohol serves as a nucleophile and displaces the chloride ion in TsCl, and the resulting oxonium ion is deprotonated by pyridine (a base) to give an alkyl tosylate:

The bond between R and O (in ROH) is not broken during the process, and as a result, a chiral alcohol will retain its configuration when converted to its corresponding tosylate:

The configuration (*S*) does not change during formation of the tosylate. A common abbreviation for pyridine is "py," as shown in the reaction above.

Alkyl sulfonates undergo substitution and elimination reactions, much like the corresponding alkyl halides. For example, when treated with a strong nucleophile, an alkyl sulfonate will undergo an S_N2 reaction, characterized by inversion of configuration:

S_N2 processes are limited to primary and secondary substrates, as we saw in Section 7.9. That is, tertiary substrates cannot be used in S_N2 reactions, because of steric effects. For secondary substrates, the nucleophile cannot also be a strong base, or else E2 products will predominate. When treated with a reagent that is both a strong nucleophile and a strong base, there will be a competition between S_N2 and E2 products. Much as we saw for alkyl halides, substitution is favored for primary substrates, and elimination is favored for secondary substrates:

This trend is similar to the trend that was observed for alkyl halides (Section 7.9). Similarly, tertiary sulfonates have been observed to undergo E2 reactions when treated with strong bases and to undergo unimolecular reactions (S_N1 and E1) in protic solvents.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

7.32 Predict the major and minor products for each of the following reactions.

Alcohols

Chapter 12 covers reactions of alcohols (ROH), and in Section 12.9, we will explore a number of reactions that involve substitution and elimination processes. We will now preview two such reactions: 1) the reaction between ROH and HBr; and 2) the reaction of ROH in concentrated sulfuric acid. This current discussion is meant to reinforce the importance of the mechanisms covered in this chapter.

Unlike alkyl halides and alkyl sulfonates, alcohols do not undergo S_N2 reactions directly when treated with a strong nucleophile. For example, no reaction is observed when an alcohol is treated with sodium bromide:

Alcohols are not suitable substrates for nucleophilic substitution reactions, because hydroxide (HO^-) is a poor leaving group. However, under strongly acidic conditions (such as HBr), a substitution reaction is indeed observed:

Under strongly acidic conditions, the OH group can be protonated, thereby converting a bad leaving group (HO^-) into a good leaving group (H_2O). This allows for an S_N2 reaction to occur, giving an alkyl bromide:

A similar reaction is also observed for secondary and tertiary alcohols, although tertiary alcohols presumably react via an S_N1 process (rather than S_N2), as shown here:

In the examples above, we see that strongly acidic conditions can activate an alcohol towards substitution (either S_N2 or S_N1, depending on the substrate). Similarly, strongly acidic conditions can also activate an alcohol towards elimination. Consider the following example:

Under these strongly acidic conditions, the OH group can be protonated, thereby converting it into a good leaving group. This renders the substrate susceptible to an E1 process, giving an alkene as the product:

The overall process involves formation of an alkene via the removal of water (H and OH) and is therefore called a *dehydration* reaction. As shown in the mechanism above, dehydration of an alcohol (under acidic conditions) occurs via a three-step mechanism. The first step is protonation of the alcohol, followed by the two steps of an E1 process (loss of leaving group and deprotonation). When drawing the first step of this mechanism, notice that a hydronium ion (H_3O^+) is shown as the source of the proton, rather than H_2SO_4. Recall that the leveling effect (Section 3.7) prevents the presence of acids stronger than H_3O^+ in an aqueous environment. Concentrated sulfuric acid is generally a mixture of H_2SO_4 and water, so H_3O^+ will be the strongest acid present in substantial quantities.

For some alcohols, dehydration can yield more than one possible alkene, and in such instances, the more substituted alkene is generally favored, as we would expect for an E1 process.

In the examples above, the substrates were tertiary, but dehydration is also observed to occur when secondary or even primary substrates are treated with concentrated sulfuric acid, for example:

In this case, dehydration cannot occur via an E1 process, because that would require the formation of a primary carbocation, which is too high in energy to form:

Rather, in this case, it is more likely that dehydration occurs via an E2 process, which happens after the OH group is protonated:

Under these strongly acidic conditions, the OH group is protonated, followed by an E2 process to give the alkene.

These reactions illustrate an important point. Specifically, the four mechanisms covered in this chapter (S_N2, E2, S_N1, and E1) will all reappear many times throughout the remaining chapters of this textbook. Even unimolecular reactions will play a prominent role in our discussions as we move forward.

Note: It is not possible to protonate an alcohol and then react the resulting oxonium ion (ROH_2^+) with a strong base to give an E2 reaction. Students often make this mistake and conclude that such a process should work, but it does not. An alcohol can only be protonated under strongly acidic conditions, and those conditions are incompatible with the presence of a strong base.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

7.33 Predict the major product for each of the following reactions.

7.34 Draw a plausible mechanism for each of the following transformations.

7.11 Synthesis Strategies

The goal of organic synthesis is to build complex molecules from simpler, commercially available ones. Advancements in the field of organic synthesis have given rise to the many new products and materials that improve our lives, such as medicines, plastics, and synthetic fibers, just to name a few. The field of natural product synthesis is also ever-growing, as chemists are often needed to synthesize naturally occurring compounds that cannot be isolated in large enough quantities or in a form pure enough to test for biological activity. In the search for new drug candidates that might have lower toxicity or perhaps fewer side effects, synthetic chemists can also modify the structure of natural products by designing and preparing derivatives that are not found in nature. Performing a multi-step synthesis requires careful planning before the first reaction is performed, in much the same way that a road-trip must be planned in order to arrive at a desired location. Many skills are required for such planning, and this topic will be explored in Chapter 11. In this section, we will focus on planning a one-step synthesis.

Thus far, we have learned how to use substitution and elimination reactions to convert alkyl halides into a variety of other functional groups. A wide range of nucleophiles can be used, providing a great deal of versatility in the type of products that can be formed. Figure 7.19 shows reactions involving primary substrates, and Figure 7.20 shows reactions involving tertiary substrates.

FIGURE 7.19
Substitution and elimination reactions involving primary substrates.

FIGURE 7.20
Substitution and elimination reactions involving tertiary substrates.

Notice that these reactions enable the interconversion between one type of functional group and another. Throughout the chapters of this text, we will add many more reactions to our list of "functional group interconversions," and we will also learn many reactions that involve formation of new carbon-carbon bonds. As our "toolbox" of reactions gets larger, we will be able to build molecules of increasing complexity.

In order to propose a synthesis, it is certainly important to know what reactions are available, but more importantly, you must know how and when to use those reactions. When proposing a synthesis (even a one-step synthesis), it is generally helpful to think backwards. To illustrate what this means, consider the following S_N2 reaction, in which an alkyl halide is converted into an ether:

This reaction can also be viewed backwards, like this:

This figure represents a retrosynthetic analysis, in which the product is shown first, followed by reagents that can be used to make that product. The wavy line, also called a *disconnection*, identifies the bond that can be made by the reaction. The special arrow indicates a *retrosynthesis*, which means that we are thinking about this reaction backwards. Planning a retrosynthesis requires that we identify a suitable nucleophile and electrophile that will react with each other to give the target molecule (the desired product). Considering the ether target molecule above, are there any other reasonable disconnections that can be made? By focusing on the bond(s) adjacent to the functional group, we can identify suitable nucleophiles that could be used in a substitution reaction. The bond indicated below represents another logical disconnection, because we know that oxygen atoms can be good nucleophiles.

With this disconnection, what would the starting materials look like? In order to form the indicated bond, one of the two atoms must have started out as a nucleophile, and the other must have started out as an electrophile. We expect the oxygen atom to be the nucleophile, so in order to determine the other starting material, we have to select a compound in which the carbon atom highlighted below is electrophilic. This can be achieved by drawing a leaving group (LG) on that position, such as Br, Cl, I or OTs.

Reaction of this electrophilic substrate with the appropriate alkoxide nucleophile results in formation of the desired target molecule via an S_N2 mechanism. How do you know which leaving group to choose? In the laboratory, many factors would be considered when making that decision. Iodide is an excellent leaving group, but alkyl iodides are generally more expensive than bromides or chlorides. Bromide is typically a good choice when planning a synthesis, because it represents a good balance between cost and reactivity. A notable exception is the common use of MeI as a reagent; it is the only methyl halide that is a liquid at room temperature!

After using a retrosynthetic analysis to *plan* a synthesis, the final step is to draw the proposed synthetic scheme in the forward direction:

Since there are many choices for the identity of the leaving group (Cl, Br, I, OTs) and many choices for the identity of the metal cation (Li^+, Na^+, K^+), there will be more than one way to represent a given solution to a synthesis problem. Two variations of the proposed synthesis are shown below:

In each of these variations, there is a strong nucleophile (alkoxide) displacing a leaving group on an unhindered carbon atom, so we expect the S_N2 mechanism to proceed smoothly to give the desired target molecule as the major product. When considering a synthetic transformation, it also doesn't

matter which of the starting materials is called the "substrate" and which is called the "reagent," because either way, the nucleophile and electrophile will react with each other when mixed together.

It is important to note that a suitable solvent (polar aprotic) would be selected to facilitate the S_N2 mechanism when we move from planning a synthesis to actually implementing the experimental procedure in the laboratory. In many cases, you will find that solvents are omitted from the problems found in textbooks, but your instructor may expect you to include solvents in your answers, for a more complete solution (pun intended!).

SKILLBUILDER

7.8 PERFORMING A RETROSYNTHESIS AND PROVIDING A SYNTHESIS OF A TARGET MOLECULE

LEARN the skill

Provide a synthesis for the given target molecule. Show your retrosynthetic analysis, and then provide a complete synthesis, showing all necessary reagents.

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Identify a bond that can be made via known reactions.

We focus our attention on the bonds around the ester functional group, because these are the most likely bonds to be formed in the synthesis. There are three possible disconnections to be considered, as shown here:

Disconnection **b** is between an oxygen atom and an sp^2 hybridized atom. While there are certainly ways to make such a bond (as we will see in Chapter 20), this bond cannot be made with an S_N2 reaction, because S_N2 reactions generally do not occur at sp^2 hybridized centers (the same is generally true for S_N1 reactions). Disconnection **a** is equally problematic because the sp^2 hybridized carbon atom does not lead to a suitable electrophile for an S_N2 reaction, nor does it lead to a recognizable nucleophile.

The presence of the sp^2 hybridized carbon atom rules out both disconnections **a** and **b**, leaving disconnection **c** as the only reasonable option.

Next, we must identify a suitable nucleophile and electrophile that can react with each other to form the desired bond. The electronegative oxygen atom is more likely to have served as the nucleophile, so we draw a negative charge on the oxygen atom to give a

STEP 2
Draw a suitable nucleophile and electrophile. Recall that substitution reactions require a good leaving group on a tetrahedral (sp^3 hybridized) carbon.

suitable nucleophile (a carboxylate ion). Then, drawing a leaving group on the carbon chain produces a recognizable electrophile (an alkyl halide) that can undergo a substitution reaction with the nucleophile to give the desired product:

STEP 3
Verify that the proposed route is reasonable.

To verify that the proposed synthesis is reasonable and leads to the target molecule as the major product, we consider the mechanism for this reaction:

This is an S_N2 process that employs a good nucleophile and a primary alkyl halide, so we can expect the reaction to be favorable.

STEP 4
Draw the forward process.

Finally, draw the forward process, showing all reagents. Notice that bromide was selected as the leaving group, and the carboxylate ion is shown as a sodium salt. Other variations (*e.g.*, Cl, I or OTs leaving group, or a Li counterion for the carboxylate salt) are also acceptable:

PRACTICE the skill

7.35 In each of the following cases, provide a synthesis for the given target molecule, starting with an alkyl halide of your choice. Show your retrosynthetic analysis, and then provide a complete synthesis, showing all necessary reagents.

7.36 In each of the following cases, transform the given starting material into the desired target molecule. In each case, more than one step may be required. In order to plan a reasonable synthesis, it is a good idea to begin with a retrosynthetic analysis of the target molecule.

APPLY the skill

7.37 In an effort to develop molecular surfaces with interesting electronic properties, compounds such as the one shown below were prepared.[11] Consider the possibilities for preparation of this compound, by evaluating the construction of a new bond at either of the indicated positions (**a** or **b**). Determine which would be the better disconnection to incorporate into the retrosynthesis, and then suggest a synthesis for this compound using an S_N2 reaction.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 7.55, 7.89, 7.97–7.99**

Retrosynthetic Analysis: Preparing Alkenes via Elimination

A wide variety of functional groups can be prepared by substitution, as shown in Figure 7.19, but what if our target molecule was an alkene? In that case, the target molecule can be prepared by an *elimination* reaction, as seen in the following two examples.

Synthesis of an alkene via E2 **Synthesis of an alkene via E1**

An elimination reaction forms a π bond by removing a leaving group and an adjacent hydrogen atom (a β hydrogen). Therefore, the retrosynthetic analysis of an alkene "undoes" the elimination by deleting the double bond and placing these two groups back on the carbon chain.

The synthesis of an alkene can be achieved by starting with either an alkyl halide or an alcohol starting material. An alkyl halide undergoes E2 elimination by treatment with a strong base, and depending on the base used, there may be options for Zaitsev or Hofmann product formation. An alcohol undergoes E1 elimination via dehydration with a strong, concentrated acid, and always gives the most stable alkene as the major product (may involve carbocation rearrangement). Either starting material is reasonable if the target molecule is a highly substituted, stable alkene (Zaitsev product). In the example below, both retrosynthetic analyses are reasonable, and the target molecule can be prepared from either starting material.

The highly substituted alkene target molecule can be prepared from the tertiary alkyl halide by elimination with a strong, nonsterically hindered base to give the Zaitsev product. Alternatively, it can be prepared by dehydration of the tertiary alcohol.

Zaitsev favored with nonbulky base (E2) **Zaitsev favored in dehydration of alcohol (E1)**

However, if the desired target molecule is a less-substituted alkene (Hofmann product), it must be synthesized via an E2 elimination of an alkyl halide. It cannot be prepared by dehydration of an alcohol.

Let's explore each of these options more closely. The less-substituted alkene target molecule can be prepared from the primary alkyl halide by elimination with a strong, sterically hindered base, such as *tert*-butoxide. Because S_N2 is a favorable mechanism with a primary leaving group, a smaller base would act as a nucleophile to give substitution as the major product.

E2 favored with bulky base **S_N2 favored with non-bulky base**

Another option for synthesizing the less-substituted alkene target molecule is to start with the tertiary alkyl halide, and initiating an E2 elimination with a strong, sterically hindered base to give the Hofmann product.

Hofmann product favored with bulky base (E2) **Zaitsev product favored with nonbulky base (E2)**

The less-substituted alkene target molecule cannot be prepared by dehydration of the tertiary alcohol, because the Zaitsev product is always favored with an E1 mechanism.

Zaitsev product
(NOT the desired Hofmann product)

In summary, E2 elimination is the best synthetic strategy when we have an alkene target molecule that is not highly substituted. The retrosynthetic analysis of such an alkene leads to an alkyl halide starting material.

+ *t*-BuOK **+ *t*-BuOK**

In this case, either alkyl halide would be a suitable starting material to prepare the desired target molecule. Treating either alkyl halide with a strong, sterically hindered base will afford the desired Hofmann product.

SKILLBUILDER

7.9 RETROSYNTHESIS AND SYNTHESIS OF AN ALKENE TARGET MOLECULE: ELIMINATION REACTIONS

LEARN the skill

Provide a synthesis for the given target molecule, starting with a suitable alkyl halide or alcohol. Show your retrosynthetic analysis, and then provide a complete synthesis, showing all necessary reagents.

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Identify a suitable starting material.

The π bond in the target molecule can be formed by an elimination reaction, so the potential starting material can be either an alkyl halide or an alcohol. The retrosynthetic analysis begins by analyzing the location of the π bond of the alkene. In this case, we are trying to make a monosubstituted alkene. A monosubstituted alkene is not very stable and would be impossible to synthesize via acid-catalyzed dehydration (E1), because any carbocation intermediate would certainly rearrange to the tertiary position, leading to a tetrasubstituted alkene product, as shown here:

The ideal starting material, therefore, is an alkyl halide. To draw the alkyl halide, we delete the C═C double bond, and we place an H atom on one of the carbon atoms and a Br atom on the other carbon atom. In this example, the retrosynthesis reveals two suitable alkyl halide starting materials for an E2 elimination.

The primary alkyl halide is perhaps a better choice, because it produces only one possible alkene product, so we will select that as the starting material for our synthesis:

STEP 2
Select appropriate reagents.

Next, we must determine which strong base to use for the required E2 elimination. If there is a choice of elimination products (*i.e.*, if there is more than one location to find a β hydrogen), then a bulky base yields the Hofmann product and any other strong base yields the Zaitsev product.

In this case, you might think we can use any strong base, because there is only one type of β hydrogen and only one possible elimination product. However, with a leaving group on an unhindered, primary carbon atom, a small base (such as hydroxide) would act as a nucleophile, and *substitution* would be favored, with an S_N2 mechanism. A strong, sterically hindered base (such as *tert*-butoxide) could be used to give E2 elimination as the major product.

S_N2 favored for primary substrate

E2 predomiates with sterically hindered base

STEP 3
Verify that the proposed route is reasonable.

To verify that the proposed synthesis is reasonable and leads to the target molecule as the major product, we consider the mechanism for this reaction:

Target molecule

The proposed synthesis follows an E2 process that employs a strong, sterically hindered base, so we can expect the reaction to favor elimination over substitution with the primary bromide substrate.

STEP 4
Draw the forward process.

Finally, draw the forward process, showing all reagents:

Keep in mind that any good leaving group can be used for the E2 elimination (Cl, Br, I, OTs), and such variations are certainly acceptable. Notice that the *tert*-butoxide ion is shown with a potassium counterion, as this is the most commonly encountered salt.

PRACTICE the skill

7.38 Provide a synthesis for each of the target molecules shown below, starting with an alkyl halide or alcohol of your choice. In each case, show your retrosynthetic analysis, and then provide a complete synthesis, showing all necessary reagents.

7.39 For each case below, transform the given starting material into the desired target molecule. More than one step may be required. In order to plan a reasonable synthesis, it is a good idea to begin with a retrosynthetic analysis of the target molecule.

7.40 Which is the better retrosynthesis for the given target molecule? Explain, and provide a one-step synthesis of the target molecule.

Target molecule

APPLY the skill

7.41 Caribenol A, a natural product isolated in 2007, was found to have inhibitory activity toward bacteria that causes tuberculosis. Worldwide, tuberculosis is one of the top 10 causes of death, making caribenol A an attractive synthetic target. A recent synthesis of caribenol A involved the alkene intermediate shown below.[12] Propose a reasonable starting material for this reaction (recall that DBU is a strong, non-nucleophilic base).

Caribenol A

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 7.64, 7.90**

BioLinks Radiolabeled Compounds in Diagnostic Medicine

Recall from your general chemistry course that isotopes are atoms of the same element that differ from each other only in the number of neutrons. For example, carbon has three isotopes that are found in nature: ^{12}C (called carbon 12), ^{13}C (called carbon 13), and ^{14}C (called carbon 14). Each of these isotopes has six protons and six electrons, but they differ in their number of neutrons. They have six, seven, and eight neutrons, respectively. Of these isotopes, ^{12}C is the most abundant, constituting 98.9% of all carbon atoms found on Earth. The second most abundant isotope of carbon is ^{13}C, constituting approximately 1.1% of all carbon atoms. The amount of ^{14}C found in nature is very small (0.0000000001%).

The element fluorine (F) has many isotopes, although only one is found to be stable (^{19}F). Other isotopes of fluorine can be produced, but they are unstable and will undergo radioactive decay. One such example is ^{18}F, which has a half-life ($t_{1/2}$) of approximately 110 minutes. If a compound possesses ^{18}F, then the location of that compound can be tracked by observing the decay process. For this reason, *radiolabeled compounds* (compounds containing an unstable isotope, such as ^{18}F) have found great utility in the field of medicine. One such application will now be described.

Consider the structure of glucose as well as the radiolabeled glucose derivative, called ^{18}F-2-fluorodeoxyglucose (FDG):

Glucose

^{18}F-2-Fluorodeoxyglucose (FDG)

Glucose is an important compound that represents the primary source of energy for our bodies. Our bodies are capable of metabolizing glucose molecules in a series of enzymatic steps called *glycolysis*, a process in which the high-energy C—C and C—H bonds in glucose are broken and converted into lower energy C—O and C=O bonds. The difference in energy is significant, and our bodies are capable of capturing that energy and storing it for later use:

FDG is a radiolabeled compound that is a derivative of glucose (an OH group has been replaced with ^{18}F). In our bodies, the first step of glycolysis occurs with FDG just as it does with glucose. But in the case of FDG, the second step of glycolysis does not proceed at an appreciable rate. Therefore, *areas of the body that utilize glucose will also accumulate FDG*. This accumulation can be monitored, because ^{18}F decays via a process that ultimately releases high-energy photons (gamma rays) that can be detected. The details of the decay process are beyond the scope of our discussion, but for our purposes, it can be summarized in the following way: ^{18}F decays via a process called *positron emission* (β^+ decay), in which an antiparticle called a *positron* is created, travels a short distance, and then encounters an electron and annihilates it, causing two coincident gamma (γ) rays to be emitted from the body. These γ rays are then detected using special instrumentation, resulting in an image. This imaging technique is called *positron emission tomography (PET)*.

As an example, the brain metabolizes glucose, so administering FDG to a patient will cause an accumulation of FDG in specific locations of the brain corresponding to the level of metabolic activity. Consider the following PET/ ^{18}FDG scans of a healthy volunteer and a cocaine abuser:

Red/orange indicates regions of high metabolism, while purple/blue indicates regions of low metabolism.

Notice that the cocaine abuser shows less accumulation of FDG in the orbitofrontal cortex (indicated with white arrows). This indicates a lower metabolism in that region, which is known to play a large role in cognitive function and decision making. This example demonstrates how neurologists can use radiolabeled compounds, such as FDG, to explore the brain and learn more about its function in normal and disease states. This technique has found great utility in diagnostic medicine, because cancerous tissues exhibit enhanced metabolic rates of glucose relative to surrounding normal tissues and therefore will also accumulate more FDG. As a result, cancerous tissues can be visualized and monitored with a PET/ ^{18}FDG scan.

FDG has been approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) to assist oncologists in the diagnosis and staging of cancer, in addition to monitoring the response to therapy. The increasing role of FDG in the field of medicine has fueled the demand for the daily production of FDG. ^{18}F has a very short half-life (~110 minutes). Because ^{18}F is a short-lived radionuclide, a fresh batch of FDG must be made on a daily basis. Fortunately, the rate of decay is slow enough to permit synthesis at a regional radiopharmacy followed by distribution to regional hospitals for imaging studies.

The synthesis of FDG utilizes many of the principles covered in this chapter, because one important step in the process is an S_N2 reaction:

This reaction has a few important features worthy of our attention:

- KF is the source of fluoride ions, which function as the nucleophilic agent in this reaction. Generally, fluoride ions are not good nucleophiles, but Kryptofix interacts with the K^+ ions, thereby freeing the fluoride ions to function as nucleophiles. The ability of Kryptofix to enhance the nucleophilicity of fluoride ions is consistent with the action of crown ethers (a topic that will be explored in more detail in Section 13.4).
- This reaction proceeds with inversion of configuration, as expected for an S_N2 process.
- The solvent used for this reaction, acetonitrile (CH_3CN), is a polar aprotic solvent, and it is used to speed up the rate of the process (as will be described in Section 7.12).
- Notice that the OH groups (normally found in glucose) have been converted into acetate groups (OAc). This was done in order to minimize side reactions. These acetate groups can be removed easily upon treatment with aqueous acid (we will explore this process, called hydrolysis, in more detail in Section 20.11).

The effective application of FDG in PET scans certainly requires the contribution from many different disciplines, but organic chemistry has played the most critical role: The synthesis of FDG is achieved via an S_N2 process!

7.12 Solvent Effects in Substitution Reactions

When planning a synthesis, the choice of solvent can have a profound impact on the relative rates of S_N2 and S_N1 reactions. In this section, we will explore solvent effects in S_N2 and S_N1 reactions.

Solvent Effects in S_N2 Reactions

For S_N2 reactions, the nucleophile is generally ionic, as is the leaving group, so a polar solvent is required in order to solvate these ionic species. Furthermore, the transition state also has ionic character, so a polar solvent helps stabilize the transition state as well. For these reasons, S_N2 reactions generally cannot be performed in nonpolar solvents, such as benzene, unless special techniques are employed (we will see one such technique in Chapter 13). Polar solvents are broadly classified into two categories: protic and aprotic. **Protic solvents** contain a hydrogen atom connected directly to an electronegative atom, while **polar aprotic solvents** lack such a hydrogen atom. Several examples are shown for each category:

Notice that each of the protic solvents has at least one hydrogen atom (shown in red) connected to an electronegative atom (such as O or N). Aprotic solvents also have hydrogen atoms, but none of those hydrogen atoms are connected to an electronegative atom. It is observed that S_N2 reactions are generally much faster when performed in polar aprotic solvents, rather than protic solvents. Indeed, the effect of polar aprotic solvents on the rate of S_N2 reactions can be very significant, as seen in Table 7.5.

TABLE 7.5 EFFECT OF SOLVENTS ON THE RATES OF S_N2 REACTIONS

Nucleophile	Relative rate in MeOH* (protic solvent)	Relative rate in DMF* (polar aprotic solvent)	Increase in rate (due to polar aprotic solvent)
I^-	43**	6,500**	× 150
Br^-	1	21,000	× 21,000
Cl^-	0.04	41,000	× 1,030,000
F^-	0.0006	49,000	× 82,000,000

* All rates are relative to the rate of reaction between methyl iodide and bromide at 25°C.
** Rate of reaction is measured by using an isotope of iodine and then tracking its location.

A couple of trends become apparent when we compare the data in Table 7.5:

- For each of the nucleophiles shown, the rate of reaction is significantly enhanced when the solvent is changed from protic (methanol) to polar aprotic (DMF). The extent of the rate enhancement is different for each nucleophile, although fluoride is the most affected by the change in solvent—the rate is 82 million times faster in a polar aprotic solvent. These data indicate that the use of a polar aprotic solvent will speed up the rate of an S_N2 process by many orders of magnitude.
- If we compare the relative rates of the halides in methanol (protic solvent), we find that iodide reacts most rapidly, and fluoride is the least reactive. However, if we compare the relative rates in DMF (aprotic solvent), we find the opposite trend—fluoride reacts most rapidly.

To understand these observations and trends, we must explore the interaction between the solvent and the nucleophile. When NaCl is dissolved in a protic solvent, such as water, both the Na^+ and Cl^- ions are well solvated.

The lone pairs on the oxygen atoms of H_2O stabilize the cation.

The protons in H_2O stabilize the anion via hydrogen bonding interactions.

Protic solvents have electronegative atoms with lone pairs (in this case oxygen) that can stabilize Na^+ ions, and protic solvents also have the ability to form hydrogen bonds with the Cl^- ions, thereby stabilizing them as well. In contrast, a polar aprotic solvent can only stabilize the cations, not the anions. For example, dimethylsulfoxide (DMSO) can stabilize the Na^+ ions, but it lacks the ability to stabilize the Cl^- ions via hydrogen bonds. Why? In DMSO, the electron-poor region ($\delta+$) is located at the center of the compound, surrounded by lone pairs and methyl groups (highlighted below). For steric reasons, this $\delta+$ region is relatively inaccessible to an anion dissolved in the solvent, so anions are not stabilized by the solvent.

The lone pairs on the oxygen atoms of DMSO stabilize the cation.

DMSO is not a protic solvent, and the region of $\delta+$ is sterically inaccesible, so anions are not stabilized.

FIGURE 7.21
A comparison of energy diagrams for an S_N2 process in different solvent systems (protic and polar aprotic).

The result is that nucleophiles are less stabilized (higher in energy) when placed in a polar aprotic solvent. Polar aprotic solvents enhance the rate of an S_N2 process by raising the energy of the nucleophile, giving a smaller E_a (Figure 7.21).

In protic solvents, fluoride ions can form very strong hydrogen bonds with the solvent, so the fluoride ions are very tightly bound to their solvent shell, rendering them mostly unavailable to function as nucleophiles. In such an environment, fluoride ions are weak nucleophiles because they would have to shed part of their solvent shell, which would be a large increase in energy. However, when a polar aprotic solvent is used, the fluoride ions do not form hydrogen bonds and they are not tightly bound to the solvent shell, rendering them fully available to function as nucleophiles.

The case of fluoride is a powerful illustration of the fact that nucleophilicity is strongly dependent on the identity of the solvent. Indeed, nucleophilicity can be sensitive to other factors as well, including the identity of the starting alkyl halide and the temperature.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

7.42 Which of the following reactions is expected to produce 1-propanol ($CH_3CH_2CH_2OH$) at a faster rate? Explain.

7.43 Which of the following reactions is expected to exhibit a faster rate? Explain.

$$CH_3CH_2Br \xrightarrow{NaI\,/\,EtOH} CH_3CH_2I + Br^{\ominus}$$

$$CH_3CH_2Br \xrightarrow{NaCl\,/\,EtOH} CH_3CH_2Cl + Br^{\ominus}$$

Solvent Effects in S_N1 Reactions

Now let's explore solvent effects in S_N1 reactions. We have seen that ionization is the first step of S_N1 reactions of tertiary alkyl halides:

This step is also the rate-determining step for S_N1 reactions, so this step determines the rate at which products are formed. Table 7.6 compares relative rates of ionization of *tert*-butyl chloride in several different solvents:

TABLE 7.6 EFFECT OF SOLVENTS ON THE RATE OF IONIZATION OF *TERT*-BUTYL CHLORIDE

Solvent	Structure	Dielectric constant (ε)	Type of solvent	Relative rate*
Water	H–O–H	78	*Polar protic*	40
Methanol	CH_3OH	33	*Polar protic*	5
Ethanol	OH	24	*Polar protic*	1
Acetone	O	21	*Polar aprotic*	0.005
Diethyl ether	O	4.3	*Aprotic*	0.00001

*All rates are relative to the rate of ionization of *tert*-butyl chloride in ethanol at 25°C.

The solvents listed in Table 7.6 are arranged according to their dielectric constants (ε), which can be used as a measure of solvent polarity. Among the solvents listed, water is the most polar, and the rate of ionization in water is the fastest. Indeed a trend emerges, and we see that the rate of ionization is very much dependent on the polarity of the solvent. Specifically, the data indicate that the ionization process occurs most readily in protic solvents. This should come as no surprise, because ionization produces two ions (a carbocation and a chloride ion), both of which are well solvated in protic solvents. Carbocations are stabilized by interacting with the lone pairs of the oxygen atom, and chloride ions are stabilized via hydrogen bonds. Aprotic solvents cannot stabilize both ions equally well and are therefore unsuitable for solvolysis reactions.

In this section, we have seen that S_N1 processes are favored by protic solvents, and S_N2 processes are favored by polar aprotic solvents. The reasons for these trends are different, so let's quickly review them:

- Polar aprotic solvents enhance the rate of an S_N2 process by raising the energy of the nucleophile, thereby giving a smaller E_a (Figure 7.22a).
- For S_N1 processes, protic solvents are more suitable, because they stabilize the ionic intermediates and transition states, thereby giving a smaller E_a (Figure 7.22b).

FIGURE 7.22
(a) An energy diagram illustrating the effect of the solvent on an S_N2 process. **(b)** An energy diagram illustrating the effect of the solvent on an S_N1 process.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

7.44 (a) Draw the products that are expected when *tert*-butyl bromide undergoes solvolysis in isopropanol, $(CH_3)_2CHOH$.
(b) The dielectric constant of isopropanol is 18. Would you expect the solvolysis of *tert*-butyl bromide in isopropanol to be faster or slower than solvolysis in ethanol? Explain.

SpecialTopic Kinetic Isotope Effects

Kinetic Isotope Effects in E2 Processes

In Section 7.5, we saw that an E2 reaction can occur when an alkyl halide is treated with a strong base. Strong evidence for the concerted (E2) mechanism comes from kinetic studies that involve the use of isotopes. Recall from your general chemistry course that isotopes differ from each other only in the number of neutrons. For example, hydrogen has three isotopes: ^1H (called protium), ^2H (called deuterium), and ^3H (called tritium). Each of these isotopes has one proton and one electron, but they differ in their number of neutrons. They have zero, one, and two neutrons, respectively. All of these isotopes are found in nature, but ^1H is the most abundant, constituting 99.98% of all hydrogen atoms found on Earth. Therefore, for most organic compounds, it is a reasonable assumption that all of the hydrogen atoms will be ^1H, unless they have been purposefully replaced with another isotope such as deuterium. Compounds containing deuterium are called deuterated compounds.

Useful information can be obtained if we compare the rates of elimination for alkyl halides and deuterated alkyl halides. Specifically, if the β position of the alkyl halide is deuterated, the rate of the reaction is found to be significantly reduced. As an example, compare the following two reactions:

In the first reaction, an alkyl halide is treated with a strong base, resulting in an elimination reaction in which H^+ and Br^- are removed to form an alkene. The second reaction is also an elimination process, but the starting alkyl halide is deuterated at the β position. When this deuterated alkyl halide is treated with a strong base, the result is the removal of D^+ and Br^-. That is, D^+ can function very much like H^+ and can also be removed by the base. While these two reactions are indeed very similar, their rates are different. Compare the rate equation for each process:

$$\text{Rate} = k_H\,[CH_3CH_2CH_2Br]\,[\text{Base}]$$

$$\text{Rate} = k_D\,[CH_3CD_2CH_2Br]\,[\text{Base}]$$

Both processes exhibit second-order kinetics, but the rate constants, k_H and k_D, are different. This difference in rate is referred to as a **kinetic isotope effect**, or more specifically in this case, it can be called a **deuterium isotope effect** because the isotope under investigation is deuterium. The rate constants can be measured experimentally, and their ratio (k_H/k_D) provides valuable information. For the reactions above, k_H/k_D is measured to be 6.7. Let's explore the significance of this finding.

For reasons that are beyond the scope of our discussion, C—D bonds are generally stronger than their corresponding C—H bonds by approximately 1–2 kcal/mol. Since a C—D bond is stronger than a C—H bond, any step that involves breaking a C—D bond will have a larger E_a than a similar step in which a C—H bond is broken. The larger E_a associated with breaking a C—D bond results in a slower rate (lower rate constant, k). Since k_D is smaller than k_H, the ratio k_H/k_D will be greater than 1. If a C—H bond is being broken in the rate-determining step, then k_H/k_D is generally found to be in the range of 3–8, and the effect is said to be a *primary isotope effect*. If, however, the C—H bond is broken during a step that is not rate-determining, then the ratio of k_H/k_D will generally be 1–2, and any measureable effect is said to be a *secondary isotope effect*. For the reactions above, k_H/k_D is found to be 6.7 (a primary isotope effect), which confirms that the C—H bond is broken during the rate-determining step. This is consistent with a concerted process (E2) in which there is only one mechanistic step, which must be rate-determining because it is the only step. If we had not observed a primary isotope effect in this case, we could not have proposed a concerted mechanism.

In summary, the presence or absence of a primary isotope effect can confirm whether or not a particular C—H bond is broken during the rate-determining step of a process. This is extremely useful, because a large variety of reactions involve the breaking of C—H bonds, and therefore, deuterium isotope effects are often investigated as a technique for elucidating mechanisms.

Kinetic Isotope Effects in E1 Processes

In Section 7.8, we saw that a tertiary alkyl halide can undergo E1 and S_N1 processes when dissolved in a protic solvent, such as water:

Let's focus on the rate of formation of the elimination product, and let's consider what happens to the rate if we replace H for D at the β position. We investigate what change in rate (if any) is observed when the following reaction is performed instead:

Certainly, this elimination product is also accompanied by a substitution product. But let's focus our attention on elimination, and let's compare the rate equation for each of these elimination processes:

Rate = k_H [C_4H_9Cl]

Rate = k_D [C_4D_9Cl]

In this case, the ratio of the rate constants (k_H/k_D) is measured to be 1.1. This value indicates the *absence* of a primary isotope effect. Therefore, we conclude that the C—H bond must be breaking during a step that is NOT the rate-determining step. This finding is consistent with an E1 mechanism, in which the C—H bond is broken in the second step of the mechanism, after the rate-determining step has occurred (Mechanism 7.3).

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

7.45 For each pair of compounds below, identify which one is expected to undergo elimination more rapidly when treated with a strong base, and explain your answer.

7.46 Identify whether each of the following reactions is expected to exhibit a primary isotope effect if $(CD_3)_3CBr$ is used instead of $(CH_3)_3CBr$. Explain your reasoning in each case.

REVIEW OF REACTIONS

S_N2 Reactions

E2 Reactions

S_N1 and E1 Reactions

Synthetically Useful Transformations

Primary Substrates

Tertiary Substrates

REVIEW OF CONCEPTS AND VOCABULARY

SECTION 7.1

- In an alkyl halide, the halogen can serve as a **leaving group**, for **substitution reactions** and **elimination reactions**.
- Good leaving groups are the conjugate bases of strong acids.

SECTION 7.2

- The **alpha (α) position** is the carbon atom connected directly to the halogen, while the **beta (β) positions** are the carbon atoms connected to the α position.
- **Alkyl halides** are classified as **primary** (1°), **secondary** (2°), or **tertiary** (3°) based on the number of alkyl groups connected to the α position.

SECTION 7.3

- **Bimolecular** nucleophilic substitution reactions are called **S_N2** reactions.
- S_N2 reactions proceed via **inversion of configuration**, because the nucleophile can only attack from the **back side**.
- S_N2 reactions cannot be performed with tertiary alkyl halides.
- An S_N2 process will generally not occur if there are three substituents at a β position.

SECTION 7.4

- There are many factors that contribute to nucleophilicity, including *polarizability* and the presence of a charge.
- In the laboratory, methylation is accomplished via an S_N2 process using methyl iodide. In biological systems, a methylating agent called **SAM (*S*-adenosylmethionine)** is employed.

SECTION 7.5

- A weak base is a stabilized base, and a strong base is an unstable base.
- There is an inverse relationship between the strength of a base and the strength of its conjugate acid.
- When treated with a strong base, an alkyl halide can undergo a type of elimination process, called **beta elimination**, also known as *1,2-elimination*.
- Bimolecular elimination reactions are called **E2** reactions.

SECTION 7.6

- A *cis* alkene will generally be less stable than its stereoisomeric *trans* alkene. This can be verified by comparing heats of combustion for isomeric alkenes.
- A *trans* π bond cannot be incorporated into a small ring. When applied to bicyclic systems, this rule is called **Bredt's rule**, which states that it is not possible for a bridgehead carbon of a bicyclic system to possess a C═C double bond if it involves a *trans* π bond being incorporated in a small ring.

SECTION 7.7

- E2 reactions are **regioselective** and generally favor the more substituted alkene, called the **Zaitsev product**.
- When both the substrate and the base are sterically hindered, an E2 reaction can favor the less substituted alkene, called the **Hofmann product**.
- If the β position has two different protons, the resulting E2 reaction can be stereoselective, because the *trans* isomer will be favored over the *cis* isomer (when applicable).
- If the β position has only one proton, an E2 reaction is said to be *stereospecific*, because the proton and the leaving group must be ***anti*-periplanar** to one another.

SECTION 7.8

- When a tertiary alkyl halide is dissolved in a polar solvent that is both a weak base and a weak nucleophile (such as ethanol, EtOH), substitution and elimination products are both observed.
- **Unimolecular** nucleophilic substitution reactions are called **S_N1** reactions. An S_N1 mechanism is comprised of two core steps: 1) loss of a leaving group to give a carbocation intermediate; and 2) nucleophilic attack.
- When a solvent molecule functions as the attacking nucleophile, the resulting S_N1 process is called *solvolysis*.
- Unimolecular elimination reactions are called **E1** reactions.
- S_N1 processes are favored by polar protic solvents.
- S_N1 and E1 processes are observed for tertiary alkyl halides, as well as allylic and benzylic halides.
- When the α position is a chiral center, an S_N1 reaction gives nearly a racemic mixture. In practice, there is generally a slight preference for inversion over **retention of configuration**, as a result of the effect of ion pairs.

SECTION 7.9

- Substitution and elimination reactions often compete with each other. To predict the products, three steps are required: 1) determine the function of the reagent; 2) analyze the substrate and determine the expected mechanism(s); and 3) consider any relevant regiochemical and stereochemical requirements.

SECTION 7.10

- Alkyl halides and alkyl sulfonates undergo similar reactions.
- Alcohols react with HBr to give alkyl halides, either via an S_N2 pathway (for primary and secondary substrates) or via an S_N1 pathway (for tertiary substrates).
- When treated with concentrated sulfuric acid, tertiary alcohols are converted into alkenes via an E1 process. Primary alcohols are also converted into alkenes, likely via an E2 process.

SECTION 7.11

- A *retrosynthetic analysis* shows the product first, followed by reagents that can be used to make that product. A wavy line indicates a *disconnection*, which identifies the bond that can be made by the reaction.
- Planning a retrosynthesis requires that we identify a suitable nucleophile and electrophile that will react with each other to give the *target molecule* (the desired product).

SECTION 7.12

- **Protic solvents** contain a hydrogen atom connected directly to an electronegative atom, while **polar aprotic solvents** lack such a hydrogen atom.
- A polar aprotic solvent will speed up the rate of an S_N2 process by many orders of magnitude.
- S_N1 processes are favored by polar protic solvents.

SKILLBUILDER REVIEW

7.1 DRAWING THE PRODUCT OF AN S_N2 PROCESS

Replace the LG with the Nuc, and draw inversion of configuration.

Try Problems **7.3, 7.4, 7.53, 7.54**

7.2 DRAWING THE TRANSITION STATE OF AN S_N2 PROCESS

EXAMPLE Draw the transition state of the following process.

STEP 1 Identify the nucleophile and the leaving group.

STEP 2 Draw a carbon atom with the Nuc and LG on either side. Use δ– symbols to indicate partial charges.

STEP 3 Draw the three groups attached to the carbon atom. Place brackets and the symbol indicating a transition state.

Try Problems **7.5, 7.6, 7.50**

7.3 PREDICTING THE REGIOCHEMICAL OUTCOME OF AN E2 REACTION

STEP 1 Identify all β positions bearing protons.

STEP 2 Draw all possible regiochemical outcomes.

STEP 3 Identify the Zaitsev and Hofmann products.

STEP 4 Analyze the base to determine which product predominates.

	Zaitsev	Hofmann
Not sterically hindered	**Major**	**Minor**
Sterically hindered	**Minor**	**Major**

Try Problems **7.12–7.14, 7.58, 7.59a,d, 7.62, 7.63b, 7.66, 7.86**

7.4 PREDICTING THE STEREOCHEMICAL OUTCOME OF AN E2 REACTION

STEP 1 Identify all β positions bearing protons.

STEP 2 If a β position has two protons, expect *cis* and *trans* isomers (with a preference for the *trans* isomer). If a β position has only one proton, then rotate the central C-C bond in a manner that places the leaving group in the plane of the page.

STEP 3 Using the wedges and dashes to guide you, draw the product.

Try Problems **7.15, 7.16, 7.60, 7.61, 7.73**

7.5 DRAWING THE PRODUCTS OF AN E2 REACTION

EXAMPLE

STEP 1 Using the skills from SkillBuilder 7.3, determine all possible regiochemical outcomes.

STEP 2 Using the skills from SkillBuilder 7.4, determine the stereochemical outcome.

Try Problems **7.19, 7.20, 7.57–7.59, 7.62, 7.63**

7.6 DRAWING THE CARBOCATION INTERMEDIATE OF AN S_N1 OR E1 PROCESS

STEP 1 Identify the leaving group.

STEP 2 Draw all three groups pointing away from each other.

Try Problems **7.21, 7.22, 7.87, 7.94, 7.96, 7.102**

7.7 PREDICTING THE PRODUCTS OF SUBSTITUTION AND ELIMINATION REACTIONS OF ALKYL HALIDES

STEP 1 Determine the function of the reagent.

Strong base Weak nucleophile	Strong base Strong nucleophile
DBN	NaOH
DBU	NaOMe
	NaOEt

Weak base Strong nucleophile		Weak base Weak nucleophile
NaI	NaSH	H_2O
NaBr	NaSR	MeOH
NaCl	H_2S	EtOH
	RSH	

STEP 2 Analyze the substrate and determine the expected mechanism(s).

	Strong base Weak nucleophile	Strong base Strong nucleophile	Weak base Strong nucleophile	Weak base Weak nucleophile	
1°	E2	E2 / S_N2	S_N2	✗	
2°	E2	E2 / S_N2	S_N2	✗	
3°	E2	E2	S_N1	S_N1	E1

STEP 3 Consider regiochemical and stereochemical requirements.

Try Problems **7.28–7.31, 7.75, 7.76**

7.8 PERFORMING A RETROSYNTHESIS AND PROVIDING A SYNTHESIS OF A TARGET MOLECULE

STEP 1 Identify a bond that can be made via known reactions.

STEP 2 Draw a suitable nucleophile and electrophile that will react to make the desired bond.

Nucleophile Electrophile

STEP 3 Verify that the reaction is reasonable, by considering the mechanism.

STEP 4 Draw the forward process, showing all reagents.

Try Problems **7.35–7.37, 7.55, 7.89, 7.97–7.99**

7.9 RETROSYNTHESIS AND SYNTHESIS OF AN ALKENE TARGET MOLECULE: ELIMINATION REACTIONS

STEP 1 Identify a suitable starting material:

STEP 2 Select appropriate reagents:

STEP 3 Verify that the proposed route is reasonable:

STEP 4 Draw the forward process:

Try Problems **7.38–7.41, 7.64, 7.90**

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

• **Included in Answers section**

7.47 Identify the systematic name for each of the following compounds, and provide common names as well for parts (a) through (e):

7.48 Using *E-Z* designators, identify the configuration of each C=C double bond in the following compound:

Dactylyne
A natural product
isolated from marine sources

7.49 • Draw all constitutional isomers with the molecular formula C_4H_9Br, and then arrange them in order of:

(a) increasing reactivity toward an S_N2 reaction.

(b) increasing reactivity toward an E2 reaction.

7.50 • Draw the transition state for the substitution reaction that occurs between ethyl iodide and sodium acetate (CH_3CO_2Na).

7.51 (*S*)-2-Iodopentane undergoes racemization in a solution of sodium iodide in DMSO. Explain.

7.52 In Chapter 9, we will see that an acetylide ion (formed by treatment of acetylene with a strong base) can serve as a nucleophile in an S_N2 reaction:

This reaction provides a useful method for making a variety of substituted alkynes. Determine whether this process can be used to make the following alkyne. Explain your answer.

7.53 Consider the following S_N2 reaction:

(a) Assign the configuration of the chiral center in the substrate.

(b) Assign the configuration of the chiral center in the product.

(c) Does this S_N2 process proceed with inversion of configuration? Explain.

7.54 • The following reaction gives a product with the molecular formula $C_4H_8O_2$. Draw the structure of the product.

7.55 • Each of the following compounds can be prepared with an alkyl iodide and a suitable nucleophile. In each case, identify the alkyl iodide and the nucleophile that you would use.

7.56 Below are two potential methods for preparing the same ether, but only one of them is successful. Identify the successful approach and explain your choice.

7.57 When (*R*)-3-bromo-2,3-dimethylpentane is treated with sodium hydroxide, four different alkenes are formed. Draw all four products and rank them in terms of stability. Which will be the major product?

7.58 When 3-bromo-2,4-dimethylpentane is treated with sodium hydroxide, only one alkene is formed. Draw the product and explain why this reaction has only one regiochemical outcome.

7.59 How many different alkenes will be produced when each of the following substrates is treated with a strong base?

(a) 1-Chloropentane

(b) 2-Chloropentane

(c) 3-Chloropentane

(d) 2-Chloro-2-methylpentane

(e) 3-Chloro-3-methylhexane

7.60 Draw the major product that is obtained when (*2S,3S*)-2-bromo-3-phenylbutane is treated with sodium ethoxide (NaOEt), and explain the stereochemical outcome of this reaction.

7.61 Predict the stereochemical outcome for each of the following E2 reactions. In each case, draw only the major product of the reaction.

7.62 Identify the sole product of the following reaction:

7.63 Predict the major product for each of the following reactions:

7.64 In each of the following cases, draw the structure of an alkyl halide that will undergo an E2 elimination to yield *only* the indicated alkene.

7.65 Draw the transition state for the reaction between *tert*-butyl chloride and sodium hydroxide.

7.66 Indicate whether you would use NaOEt or *t*-BuOK to achieve each of the following transformations.

7.67 1-Bromobicyclo[2.2.2]octane does not undergo an E2 reaction when treated with a strong base. Explain why not.

7.68 Explain why the following reaction yields the Hofmann product exclusively (no Zaitsev product at all) even though the base is not sterically hindered:

7.69 Draw a plausible mechanism for each of the following transformations:

7.70 When the following optically active alcohol is treated with HBr, a racemic mixture of alkyl bromides is obtained. Draw a mechanism for this process, and explain the stereochemical outcome.

7.71 Identify the reagents you would use to achieve each of the following transformations:

7.72 Predict which of the following substrates will undergo a solvolysis reaction more quickly. Explain your choice.

7.73 (*S*)-1-Bromo-1,2-diphenylethane (shown below) reacts with a strong base to produce *trans*-stilbene and *cis*-stilbene:

***trans*-Stilbene (major product)** ***cis*-Stilbene**

(a) This reaction is stereoselective, and the major product is *trans*-stilbene. Explain why the *trans* isomer is the predominant product. To do so, draw the Newman projections that lead to formation of each product and compare their stability.

(b) When (*R*)-1-bromo-1,2-diphenylethane is used as the starting substrate, the stereochemical outcome does not change. That is, *trans*-stilbene is still the major product. Explain.

7.74 There are two stereoisomers of 1-*tert*-butyl-4-chloro-cyclohexane. One of these isomers reacts with sodium ethoxide in an E2 reaction that is 500 times faster than the reaction of the other isomer. Identify the isomer that reacts faster, and explain the difference in rate for these two isomers.

7.75 • *Substitution vs. Elimination*: Identify the major and minor product(s) for each of the following reactions:

7.76 Predict the major product for each of the following reactions.

7.77 Consider the following substitution reaction:

(a) Determine whether this reaction proceeds via an S_N2 or S_N1 process, and draw a complete mechanism.

(b) What is the expected rate equation for this process?

(c) Would the process occur at a faster rate if the concentration of cyanide was doubled?

(d) Draw an energy diagram for this process.

7.78 When 2-bromo-2-methylhexane is treated with sodium ethoxide (NaOEt) in ethanol (EtOH), the major product is an alkene.

(a) Draw the major product, and show a mechanism for its formation.

(b) What is the expected rate equation for this process?

(c) What would happen to the rate if the concentration of base was doubled?

(d) Draw an energy diagram for this process.

(e) Draw the transition state for this process.

ACS-STYLE PROBLEMS (Multiple Choice)

Problems 7.79–7.90 follow the style of the ACS organic chemistry exam. For each of these problems, there will be one correct answer and three distractors.

7.79 • For the following substitution reaction, which statement is FALSE?

(a) The process is bimolecular.

(b) Increasing the concentration of hydroxide will cause an increase in the rate of reaction.

(c) The use of a polar aprotic solvent will enhance the rate.

(d) The reaction proceeds via a carbocation intermediate.

7.80 • Which is the major product of this reaction?

(a)

(b)
(c)
(d)

7.81 • Of the following, which is the most efficient synthesis of 1-butene ($CH_3CH_2CH{=}CH_2$)?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

7.82 • Which of the following is NOT favorable for an S_N2 reaction?

(a) A leaving group on a primary carbon atom

(b) A polar aprotic solvent

(c) A strong nucleophile

(d) Increased steric hindrance

7.83 • Which mechanism involves a carbocation electrophile reacting with a weak nucleophile?

(a) S_N1

(b) S_N2

(c) E1

(d) E2

7.84 • Which of the following best represents the transition state of the rate-determining step for the given reaction?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

7.85 • Sodium ethoxide (NaOEt) is a suitable reagent to promote which mechanism(s)?

I. S_N1
II. S_N2
III. E1
IV. E2

(a) I and II (b) I and III

(c) II and IV (d) III and IV

7.86 • Which is the best reagent to achieve the following transformation?

(a) *t*-BuOK (b) NaOH

(c) CH_3OH (d) Conc. H_2SO_4

7.87 • Which substrate undergoes the fastest solvolysis reaction with methanol (CH_3OH)?

(a) CH_3I

(b)

(c)

(d)

7.88 • Which is the faster reaction and why?

(a) I is faster because it has a better nucleophile.

(b) I is faster because it has less steric hindrance.

(c) II is faster because it has the better leaving group.

(d) II is faster because it has the more stable carbocation.

7.89 • Which disconnection leads to the most reasonable retrosynthesis of the given target molecule?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

7.90 • Which of the following is not a reasonable retrosynthesis?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

INTEGRATED PROBLEMS

7.91 • When the following ester is treated with lithium iodide in DMF, a carboxylate ion is obtained:

(a) Draw a plausible mechanism for this reaction.

(b) When a methyl ester is used as the substrate (instead of an ethyl ester), as shown below, the reaction occurs ten times faster. Explain the increase in rate.

7.92 When (*1R,2R*)-2-bromocyclohexanol is treated with a strong base, an epoxide (cyclic ether) is formed, as shown below. Suggest a mechanism for formation of the epoxide:

An epoxide

7.93 When *n*-butyl bromide is treated with sodium iodide (NaI) in ethanol (EtOH), the concentration of iodide quickly decreases, but then slowly returns to its original concentration. Provide an explanation for these observations, and identify the final product of the reaction.

7.94 The following compound can react rapidly via an S_N1 process. Explain why this primary substrate will undergo an S_N1 reaction so rapidly.

7.95 Consider the reaction below. The rate of this reaction is markedly increased if a small amount of sodium iodide is added to the reaction mixture. The sodium iodide is not consumed by the reaction and is therefore considered to be a catalyst. Explain how the presence of iodide can speed up the rate of the reaction.

7.96 Propose a mechanism that accounts for the formation of each of the following products:

7.97 When a new synthetic method is developed, it is applied to a series of compounds to explore its utility. 4-Fluorophenylacetonitrile was used as a substrate in a synthetic methodology research paper.[13] Provide a synthesis for 4-fluorophenylacetonitrile using an S_N2 reaction. Begin with a retrosynthesis of the target molecule:

4-Fluorophenylacetonitrile

7.98 Control of stereochemistry is always an important consideration when designing a synthesis. Several techniques exist to invert the stereochemistry of secondary alcohols, and a newly developed method was used in the example shown below.[14] Provide reagents that can be used to convert the given starting material into the desired product. Recall that when planning a synthesis, it may be helpful to begin with a retrosynthesis of the target molecule.

7.99 When you look up thermodynamic values in a table, such as bond dissociation energies or heats of combustion, did you ever wonder where all the numbers come from? You can thank the physical organic chemists whose research involves studying chemical reactions. The ether shown below was used in a study to determine activation energies.[15] Provide TWO different syntheses for this ether, using two different, logical positions for bond formation. Then, identify which synthesis is likely to be more efficient.

7.100 The following reaction sequence was part of a stereocontrolled synthesis of cyoctol,[16] a drug that was developed for its potential use in the treatment of male pattern baldness. The third step in this process employs an uncharged nucleophile, affording an ion pair as the product (anion and cation).

(a) Draw the product of the reaction sequence, and describe the factors that make the third step favorable.

(b) Suggest a reason (a function) for the second step of this process.

7.101 Upon treatment with a strong base (such as NaOH), 2-naphthol (compound **1**) is converted to its conjugate base (anion **2**), which is then further converted into compound **3** upon treatment with *n*-butyl iodide.[17]

(a) Draw the structure of **2**, including a mechanism for its formation, and justify why hydroxide is a sufficiently strong base to achieve the conversion of **1** to **2**.

(b) Draw the structure of **3**, and propose a mechanism for its formation.

7.102 Bromotriphenylmethane (compound **1**) can be converted to **2a** or **2b** or **2c** upon treatment with the appropriate nucleophile.[18]

(a) Draw a mechanism for the conversion of **1** to **2b**.

(b) In all three cases, conversion of **1** to **2** is observed to be nearly instantaneous (the reaction occurs extremely rapidly). Justify this observation with any drawings that you feel are necessary.

7.103 Pladienolide B is a macrocyclic (large ring) natural product isolated from an engineered strain of the bacterium *Streptomyces platensis*. An enantioselective, 31-step synthesis of it was reported[19] in 2012—an improvement over a previously reported 59-step approach.

Pladienolide B

(a) Identify the trisubstituted π bond and determine whether it has the *E* or *Z* configuration.

(b) How many total stereoisomers are possible for pladienolide B?

(c) Draw the enantiomer of pladienolide B.

(d) Draw the diastereomer that is identical to pladienolide B except for the configuration of each of the chiral centers directly connected to an ester oxygen.

(e) Draw the diastereomer that is identical to pladienolide B except for the configuration of the disubstituted π bond that is outside of the ring.

7.104 The following is intended for students who have already covered IR spectroscopy (Chapter 14):

(a) Consider the figure shown in Problem 7.101. Compound **3** is most easily purified via recrystallization in water. As such, the product would have to be thoroughly dried in order to utilize IR spectral analysis to verify the conversion of **1** to **3**. Explain why a wet sample would interfere with the utility of IR spectral analysis in this case, and explain how you would use IR spectral analysis to verify complete conversion of **1** to **3**, assuming the product was properly dried.

(b) Consider the figure shown in Problem 7.102. IR spectroscopy is a great tool for monitoring the conversion of **1** to **2a**, while other forms of spectroscopy will be better suited for monitoring the conversion of **1**→**2b** or **1**→**2c**. Explain.

7.105 Thienamycin is a potent antibacterial agent isolated from the fermentation broth of the soil microorganism, *Streptomyces cattleya*. The following S_N2 process (the reaction of compound **1** with compound **2**) was utilized in a synthesis of thienamycin.[20] Draw the product of this process (compound **3**).

7.106 The optically pure octyl sulfonate shown below (100% *ee*) was treated with varying mixtures of water and dioxane, and the optical purity (% *ee*) of the resulting product (2-octanol) was found to vary with the ratio of water to dioxane,[21] as shown in the following table. As indicated by the data, the optical purity of the product is highest (100%) when the reaction is performed in the absence of dioxane. With dioxane present, (*R*)-2-octanol is also formed (retention of configuration). The formation of (*R*)-2-octanol can be attributed to two successive S_N2 reactions, the first of which involves dioxane functioning as a nucleophile. Draw a complete mechanism for formation of (*R*)-2-octanol in the presence of dioxane.

(*R*)-2-Octyl sulfonate (optically pure) **(*S*)-2-Octanol**

Solvent ratio (water : dioxane)	Optical purity of (*S*)-2-octanol
25 : 75	77%
50 : 50	88%
75 : 25	95%
100 : 0	100%

7.107 Cyclopropyl chloride (**1**) cannot generally be converted into cyclopropanol (**4**) through a direct substitution reaction, because undesired, ring-opening reactions occur. The following represents an alternative method for preparing cyclopropanol.[22]

(a) Compound **2** is a powerful nucleophile, and for our purposes, we will treat $MgCl^+$ as a counterion. The transformation of **2** into **3** is accomplished via an S_N2-type process. Draw a mechanism for this process and identify the leaving group.

(b) Explain why the conversion of **2** to **3** is an irreversible process.

(c) Under aqueous acidic conditions, **3** can be converted into **4** either via an S_N1 process or via an S_N2 process. Draw a complete mechanism for each of these pathways.

(d) During conversion of **3** to **4**, another alcohol (ROH) is formed as a by-product. Draw the structure of this alcohol.

7.108 Compound **1** is observed to undergo *debromination* upon treatment with DMF to afford an alkene. The *E*-isomer (compound **2**) is obtained exclusively (none of the *Z*-isomer is observed). A concerted mechanism

(shown below) has been refuted by the observation that diastereomers of **1** also afford the *E*-isomer exclusively when treated with DMF.[23]

(a) Explain why the mechanism shown is inconsistent with this observation.

(b) Classify this reaction as stereoselective or stereospecific, and explain your choice.

7.109 The following sequence of reactions was performed during a synthesis of (+)-coronafacic acid,[24] a key component in the plant toxin coronatine. Predict the product of this reaction sequence, and justify the regiochemical outcome of the second reaction.

CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

7.110 Compound **1** was prepared during a recent synthesis of 1-deoxynojirimycin,[25] a compound with application to HIV chemotherapy. Upon formation, compound **1** rapidly undergoes ring contraction in the presence of chloride ion to form compound **2**. Propose a plausible mechanism that includes a justification for the stereochemical outcome. (**Hint:** Consider the role of anchimeric assistance, as described in the BioLinks box entitled "Pharmacology and Drug Design.")

7.111 Halogenated derivatives of toluene will undergo hydrolysis via an S_N1 process:

The rate of hydrolysis is dependent on two main factors: 1) the stability of the leaving group, and 2) the stability of the intermediate carbocation. The following are rates of hydrolysis ($\times 10^4$/min) for halogenated derivatives of toluene at 30°C in 50% aqueous acetone:[26]

	Z = H	Z = Cl	Z = Br
X = H, Y = Cl	0.22	2.21	31.1
X = Cl, Y = Cl	2.21	110.5	2122
X = Br, Y = Br	6.85	1803	1131

(a) Using Table 7.1, determine whether chloride or bromide is the better leaving group, and explain your choice. Then, determine whether the hydrolysis data support your choice. Explain.

(b) Determine whether a carbocation is stabilized by an adjacent chlorine atom (i.e., a chlorine atom attached directly to C+). Justify your choice by drawing resonance structures for the carbocation.

(c) Determine whether a carbocation is stabilized by an adjacent bromine atom (i.e., a bromine atom attached directly to C+). Justify your choice by drawing resonance structures for the carbocation.

(d) Use the given hydrolysis data to determine whether a carbocation is better stabilized by an adjacent chlorine atom or an adjacent bromine atom.

(e) For these hydrolysis reactions, determine which factor is more important in determining the rate of hydrolysis: the stability of the leaving group or the stability of the carbocation. Explain your choice.

7.112 Biotin (compound **4**) is an essential vitamin that plays a vital role in several important physiological processes. A total synthesis of biotin, developed by scientists at Hoffmann-La Roche, involved the preparation of compound **1**.[27] Conversion of **1** to **4** required removal of the OH group, which was achieved in several steps. First, the OH

group was replaced with Cl by treating **1** with $SOCl_2$ to give **3**. The conversion of **1** to **3** is believed to proceed via intermediate **2**, which has an excellent leaving group (SO_2Cl). Ejection of this leaving group causes the liberation of SO_2 gas and a chloride ion, which can occur if **2** is attacked by a chloride ion in an S_N2 reaction. As such, we expect the transformation of **2** to **3** to proceed via inversion of configuration. However, X-ray crystallographic analysis of compound **3** revealed that the transformation occurred with a net *retention* of configuration, as shown. Propose a mechanism that explains this curious result. (**Hint:** Consider the role of anchimeric assistance, as described in the BioLinks box entitled "Pharmacology and Drug Design.")

7.113 Steroids (covered in Chapter 26) and their derivatives are widely used as therapeutic agents. They are used in birth control, hormone replacement therapy, and in the treatment of inflammatory conditions and cancer. New steroid derivatives are discovered regularly by systematically modifying the structure of known steroids and testing the resulting derivatives for therapeutic properties. As part of a synthetic

strategy for preparing a class of promising steroid derivatives,[28] compound **1a** was treated with TsCl and pyridine, followed by sodium acetate (CH_3CO_2Na) to give compound **2a**.

(a) Sodium acetate functions as a base in this instance. Draw the structure of **2a**.

(b) If **1b** or **1c** were treated with TsCl and pyridine, followed by sodium acetate, **2b** or **2c** would be produced, respectively. Identify which product (**2b** or **2c**) is expected to contain deuterium, and justify your choice.

7.114 When racemic 2-iodobutane is treated with a variety of bases in DMSO at 50°C, the percentage of 1-butene ($H_2C{=}CHCH_2CH_3$) formed among total butenes is found to be dependent on the choice of base, as seen in the chart below.[29]

NAME OF BASE	STRUCTURE OF BASE	% 1-BUTENE (IN TOTAL BUTENES)
Potassium benzoate		7.2
Potassium phenoxide		11.4
Sodium 2,2,2-trifluoroethoxide	$NaOCH_2CF_3$	14.3
Sodium ethoxide	NaOEt	17.1

(a) Identify the trend observed by comparing the basicity of the bases, and then describe the correlation between reactivity (base strength) and regioselectivity.

(b) The pK_a of phenol is 9.9, and the pK_a of 4-nitrophenol is 7.1. Based on the trend in the previous part of this problem, provide an estimate for the percentage of 1-butene that is expected if 2-iodobutane is treated with the conjugate base of 4-nitrophenol in DMSO at 50°C.

LIST OF REFERENCES

1. *Org. Lett.* **2000**, *2*, 2717–2719.
2. *J. Org. Chem.* **2014**, *79*, 9373–9380.
3. *J. Org. Chem.* **1992**, *57*, 6431–6434.
4. *Ber. Dtsch. Chem. Ges.* **1941**, *748*, 1644–1648.
5. *J. Org. Chem.* **2002**, *67*, 420–425.
6. *J. Org. Chem.* **1989**, *54*, 1820–1826.
7. *Org. Lett.* **2015**, *17*, 3138–3141.
8. *J. Org. Chem.* **2015**, *80*, 8262–8267.
9. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1970**, *92*, 2538–2544.
10. *J. Chem. Ed.* **2009**, *86*, 519–524.
11. *J. Org. Chem.* **1999**, *64*, 8635–8647.
12. J. *Org. Chem.* **2013**, *78*, 5492–5504.
13. *J. Org. Chem.* **1954,** *19*, 1117–1123.
14. *J. Org. Chem.* **2000**, *65*, 8379–8380.
15. *J. Phys. Chem. A* **2005**, *109*, 10467–10473.
16. *Tetrahedron* **2004**, *60*, 9599–9614.
17. *J. Chem. Ed.* **2009**, *86*, 850–852.
18. *J. Chem. Ed.* **2009**, *86*, 853–855.
19. *Org. Lett.* **2012**, *14*, 4730–4733.
20. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1980**, *102*, 6161–6163.
21. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1965**, *87*, 287–291.
22. *Tetrahedron Lett.* **1967**, *8*, 4941–4944.
23. *J. Org. Chem.* **1991**, *56*, 2582–2584.
24. *J. Org. Chem.* **2009**, *74*, 2433–2437.
25. *Org. Lett.* **2010**, *12*, 136–139.
26. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1951**, *73*, 22–23.
27. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1982**, *104*, 6460–6462.
28. *Tetrahedron Lett.* **2010**, *51*, 6948–6950.
29. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1973**, *95*, 3405–3407.

8

8.1 Introduction to Addition Reactions
8.2 Alkenes in Nature and in Industry
8.3 Nomenclature of Alkenes
8.4 Addition vs. Elimination: A Thermodynamic Perspective
8.5 Hydrohalogenation
8.6 Acid-Catalyzed Hydration
8.7 Oxymercuration-Demercuration
8.8 Hydroboration-Oxidation
8.9 Catalytic Hydrogenation
8.10 Halogenation and Halohydrin Formation
8.11 *Anti* Dihydroxylation
8.12 *Syn* Dihydroxylation
8.13 Oxidative Cleavage
8.14 Predicting the Products of an Addition Reaction
8.15 Synthesis Strategies

Addition Reactions of Alkenes

DID YOU EVER **WONDER...**

what Styrofoam is and how it is made?

Packing peanuts, coffee cups, and coolers are made from a material that most people erroneously refer to as Styrofoam. Styrofoam, a trademark of the Dupont Company, is a blue product that is used primarily in the production of building materials for insulating walls, roofs, and foundations. No coffee cups, packing peanuts, or coolers are made from Styrofoam. Instead, they are made from a similar material called foamed polystyrene. Polystyrene is a polymer that can be prepared either in a rigid form or as a foam. The rigid form is used in the production of computer housings, Blu-ray cases, and disposable cutlery, while foamed polystyrene is used in the production of foam coffee cups and packaging materials. Polystyrene is made by polymerizing styrene via a type of reaction called an addition reaction. This chapter will explore many different types of addition reactions. In the course of our discussion, we will revisit the structure of Styrofoam and foamed polystyrene.

CrackerClips/Shutterstock

DO YOU **REMEMBER?**

Before you go on, be sure you understand the following topics.
If necessary, review the suggested sections to prepare for this chapter.

- Energy Diagrams (Sections 6.5, 6.6)
- Arrow Pushing and Carbocation Rearrangements (Sections 6.8–6.11)
- Nucleophiles and Electrophiles (Section 6.7)

Take the DO YOU **REMEMBER?** QUIZ in the **online course** to check your understanding.

8.1 Introduction to Addition Reactions

In the previous chapter, we learned how to prepare alkenes via elimination reactions. In this chapter, we will explore **addition reactions**, common reactions of alkenes, characterized by the addition of two groups across a double bond. In the process, the pi (π) bond is broken:

Some addition reactions have special names that indicate the identity of the two groups that were added. Several examples are listed in Table 8.1.

TABLE 8.1 SOME COMMON TYPES OF ADDITION REACTIONS

TYPE OF ADDITION REACTION	NAME	SECTION
	Hydrohalogenation (X = Cl, Br, or I)	8.5
	Hydration	8.8
	Hydrogenation	8.9
	Halogenation (X = Cl or Br)	8.10
	Halohydrin formation (X = Cl, Br, or I)	8.10
	Dihydroxylation	8.11, 8.12

Many different addition reactions are observed for alkenes, enabling them to serve as synthetic precursors for a wide variety of functional groups. The versatility of alkenes can be directly attributed to the reactivity of π bonds, which can function either as weak bases or as weak nucleophiles:

LOOKING BACK
For a review of the subtle differences between basicity and nucleophilicity, see Section 7.9.

The first process illustrates that π bonds can be readily protonated, while the second process illustrates that π bonds can attack electrophilic centers. Both processes will appear many times throughout this chapter.

8.2 Alkenes in Nature and in Industry

Alkenes are abundant in nature. Here are just a few examples, all acylic compounds (compounds that do not contain a ring):

Allicin
Responsible for the odor of garlic

Geraniol
Isolated from roses and used in perfumes

α-Farnesene
Found in the natural waxy coating on apple skins

Nature also produces many cyclic, bicyclic, and polycyclic alkenes:

Limonene
Responsible for the strong smell of orange peels

α-Pinene
Isolated from pine resin; a primary constituent of turpentine (paint thinner)

Cholesterol
Produced by all animals; this compound plays a pivotal role in many biological processes

Double bonds are also often found in the structures of pheromones. Recall that pheromones are chemicals used by living organisms to trigger specific behavioral responses in other members of the same species. For example, alarm pheromones are used to signal danger, while sex pheromones are used to attract the opposite sex for mating. Below are several examples of pheromones that contain double bonds:

Muscalure
Sex pheromone of the common housefly

Ectocarpene
A pheromone released by the eggs of the seaweed *Ectocarpus siliculosus* to attract sperm cells

β-Farnesene
An aphid alarm pheromone

WorldLinks Pheromones to Control Insect Populations

hansslegers/Getty Images

The greatest threat to the productivity of apple orchards is an infestation of codling moths. A bad infestation can destroy up to 95% of an apple crop. A female codling moth can lay up to 100 eggs. Once hatched, the larvae dig into the apples, where they are shielded from insecticides. The so-called "worm" in an apple is generally the larva of a codling moth. One tool for dealing with these pests involves using one of the sex pheromones of the female to disrupt mating:

(2*Z*,6*E*)-3-Ethyl-7-methyldeca-2,6-dien-1-ol
A sex pheromone of the codling moth

This compound is easily produced in a laboratory. It can then be sprayed in an apple orchard where its presence interferes with the ability of the male to find the female. The sex pheromone is also used to lure the males into traps, enabling farmers to

monitor populations and time the use of insecticides to coincide with the time period during which females are laying eggs, thereby increasing the efficacy of insecticides.
Current research focuses on new compounds that attract both males and females. One such example is ethyl (2*E*,4*Z*)-2,4-decadienoate, known as the pear ester:

Ethyl (2*E*,4*Z*)-2,4-decadienoate
Pear ester

Researchers at the USDA (U.S. Department of Agriculture) have discovered that the pear ester can be potentially more effective in controlling codling moth populations than other compounds. This compound will potentially allow farmers to target the females and their eggs with greater precision. One of the major advantages of using pheromones as insecticides is that they tend to be less toxic to humans and less harmful to the environment.

NHPA/Photoshot

Nigel Cattlin / Alamy Stock Photo

Alkenes are also important precursors in the chemical industry. The two most important industrial alkenes, ethylene and propylene, are formed from cracking petroleum (Section 4.5) and are used as starting materials for preparing a wide variety of compounds. Each year, over 200 billion pounds of ethylene and 70 billion pounds of propylene are produced globally and used to make many compounds, including those shown in Figure 8.1.

FIGURE 8.1
Industrially important compounds produced from ethylene and propylene. The squiggly lines (shown in the structures of polyethylene, polypropylene, and PVC) are used to indicate the repeating unit of a polymer. For example, PVC is comprised of repeating units, which can also be drawn in the following way: —$(CH_2CHCl)_n$— where *n* is a very large number.

8.3 Nomenclature of Alkenes

Recall that naming an alkane, or an alkyl halide, requires four discrete steps:

1. Identify the parent.
2. Identify the substituents.
3. Assign a locant to each substituent.
4. Arrange the substituents alphabetically.

Alk*enes* are named using the same four steps, with the following additional guidelines:

When naming the parent, replace the suffix "ane" with "ene" to indicate the presence of a C═C double bond:

When we learned to name alkanes, we chose the parent by identifying the longest chain. When choosing the parent of an alkene, use the longest chain that includes the π bond:

When numbering the parent chain of an alkene, the π bond should receive the lowest number possible despite the presence of alkyl substituents:

The position of the double bond is indicated using a single locant, rather than two locants. Consider the previous example where the double bond is between C2 and C3 on the parent chain. In this case, the position of the double bond is indicated with the number 2. The IUPAC rules published in 1979 dictate that this locant be placed immediately before the parent, while the IUPAC recommendations released in 1993 (and subsequently) allow for the locant to be placed before the suffix "ene." Both names are acceptable:

Notice that the double bond in this compound has the *E* configuration, which must be indicated in the beginning of the name, parenthetically: (*E*)-5,5,6-trimethyl-2-heptene.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

8.1 Provide a systematic name for each of the following compounds:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

(f)

(g)

(h)

8.2 Draw a bond-line structure for each of the following compounds:

(a) 3-Isopropyl-2,4-dimethyl-2-pentene

(b) 4-Ethyl-2-methyl-2-hexene

(c) 1,2-Dimethylcyclobutene (The name of a cycloalkene will often not include a locant to specify the position of the π bond, because, by definition, it is assumed to be between C1 and C2.)

8.3 In Section 4.2, we learned how to name bicyclic compounds. Using those rules, together with the rules discussed in this section, provide a systematic name for the following bicyclic compound. In a case like this, the lowest number is assigned to a bridgehead (not to the π bond).

IUPAC nomenclature also recognizes common names for many simple alkenes. Here are three such examples:

Ethylene Propylene Styrene

IUPAC nomenclature recognizes common names for the following groups when they appear as substituents in a compound:

Methylene Vinyl Allyl

In addition to their systematic and common names, alkenes are also classified by their *degree of substitution*. Do not confuse the word *substitution* with the type of reaction discussed in Chapter 7. The same word has two different meanings. In Section 7.3, the word "substitution" referred to a reaction involving replacement of a leaving group with a nucleophile. In the present context, the word "substitution" refers to the number of alkyl *substituents* connected to a double bond.

Monosubstituted Disubstituted Trisubstituted Tetrasubstituted

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

8.4 Classify each of the following alkenes as monosubstituted, disubstituted, trisubstituted, or tetrasubstituted:

8.4 Addition vs. Elimination: A Thermodynamic Perspective

In many cases, an addition reaction is simply the reverse of an elimination reaction:

These two reactions represent an equilibrium that is temperature dependent. Addition is favored at low temperature, while elimination is favored at high temperature. To understand the reason for this temperature dependence, recall that the sign of ΔG determines whether the equilibrium favors reactants or products (Section 6.3). ΔG must be negative for the equilibrium to favor products. The sign of ΔG depends on two terms:

$$\Delta G = \underbrace{(\Delta H)}_{\text{Enthalpy term}} + \underbrace{(-T\Delta S)}_{\text{Entropy term}}$$

Let's consider these terms individually, beginning with the enthalpy term (ΔH). Many factors contribute to the sign and magnitude of ΔH, but the dominant factor is generally bond strength. Compare the bonds broken and formed in an addition reaction:

Notice that one π bond and one σ bond are broken, while two σ bonds are formed. Recall from Section 1.10 that σ bonds are stronger than π bonds, and therefore, the bonds being formed are stronger than the bonds being broken. Consider the following example:

$$\text{Bonds broken} - \text{bonds formed} = 166 \text{ kcal/mol} - 185 \text{ kcal/mol} = -19 \text{ kcal/mol}$$

The important feature here is that ΔH has a negative value. In other words, this reaction is exothermic, which is generally the case for addition reactions.

BY THE WAY
The actual ΔH for this reaction, in the gas phase, has been measured to be –17 kcal/mol, confirming that bond strengths are, in fact, the dominant factor in determining the sign and magnitude of ΔH.

Now let's consider the entropy term $-T\,\Delta S$. This term will always be positive for an addition reaction. Why? In an addition reaction, two molecules are joining together to produce one molecule of product. As described in Section 6.2, this situation represents a decrease in entropy, and ΔS will have a negative value. The temperature component, T (measured in Kelvin), is always positive. As a result, $-T\,\Delta S$ will be positive for addition reactions.

Now let's combine the enthalpy and entropy terms. The enthalpy term is negative and the entropy term is positive, so the sign of ΔG for an addition reaction will be determined by the competition between these two terms:

$$\Delta G = \underbrace{(\Delta H)}_{\text{Enthalpy term}} + \underbrace{(-T\,\Delta S)}_{\text{Entropy term}}$$

$\ominus$ $\oplus$

In order for ΔG to be negative, the enthalpy term must be larger than the entropy term. This competition between the enthalpy term and the entropy term is temperature dependent. At low temperature, the entropy term is small, and the enthalpy term dominates. As a result, ΔG will be negative, which means that products are favored over reactants (the equilibrium constant K will be greater than 1). In other words, addition reactions are thermodynamically favorable at low temperature.

However, at high temperature, the entropy term will be large and will dominate the enthalpy term. As a result, ΔG will be positive, which means that reactants will be favored over products (the equilibrium constant K will be less than 1). In other words, the reverse process (elimination) will be thermodynamically favored at high temperature:

BY THE WAY
Not all addition reactions are reversible at high temperature, because in many cases high temperature will cause the reactants and/or products to undergo thermal degradation.

For this reason, the addition reactions discussed in this chapter are generally performed below room temperature.

8.5 Hydrohalogenation

Regioselectivity of Hydrohalogenation

The treatment of alkenes with HX (where X = Cl, Br, or I) results in an addition reaction called **hydrohalogenation**, in which H and X are added across the π bond:

In this example the alkene is symmetrical. However, in cases where the alkene is unsymmetrical, the ultimate placement of H and X must be considered. In the following example, there are two possible vinylic positions where X can be installed:

This *regiochemical* issue was investigated over a century ago.

In 1869, Vladimir Markovnikov, a Russian chemist, investigated the addition of HBr across many different alkenes, and he noticed that the *H is generally installed at the vinylic position already bearing the larger number of hydrogen atoms*. For example:

Markovnikov described this regiochemical preference in terms of where the hydrogen atom is ultimately positioned. However, Markovnikov's observation can alternatively be described in terms of where the halogen (X) is ultimately positioned. Specifically, the *halogen is generally installed at the more substituted position*:

The vinylic position bearing more alkyl groups is more substituted, and that is where the Br is ultimately installed. This regiochemical preference, called **Markovnikov addition**, is also observed for addition reactions involving HCl and HI. Reactions that proceed with a regiochemical preference are said to be *regioselective*.

Interestingly, attempts to repeat Markovnikov's observations occasionally met with failure. In many cases involving the addition of HBr, the observed regioselectivity was, in fact, the opposite of what was expected—that is, the bromine atom would be installed at the less substituted carbon, which came to be known as ***anti*-Markovnikov addition**. These curious observations fueled much speculation over the underlying cause, with some researchers even suggesting that the phases of the moon had an impact on the course of the reaction. Over time, it was realized that purity of reagents was the critical feature. Specifically, Markovnikov addition was observed whenever purified reagents were used, while the use of impure reagents sometimes led to *anti*-Markovnikov addition. Further investigation revealed the identity of the impurity that most greatly affected the regioselectivity of the reaction. It was found that alkyl

peroxides (ROOR), even in trace amounts, would cause HBr to add across an alkene in an *anti*-Markovnikov fashion:

In this section we will explore Markovnikov addition in more detail and propose a mechanism that involves ionic intermediates. In contrast, *anti*-Markovnikov addition of HBr is known to proceed via an entirely different mechanism, one involving radical intermediates. This radical pathway (*anti*-Markovnikov addition) is efficient for the addition of HBr but not HCl or HI, and the details of that process will be discussed in Section 10.10. For now, we will simply note that the regiochemical outcome of HBr addition can be controlled by choosing whether or not to use peroxides:

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

8.5 Draw the expected major product for each of the following reactions:

8.6 Identify the reagents that you would use to achieve each of the following transformations:

A Mechanism for Hydrohalogenation

Mechanism 8.1 accounts for the Markovnikov addition of HX to alkenes.

MECHANISM 8.1 HYDROHALOGENATION

In the first step, the π bond of the alkene is protonated, generating a carbocation intermediate. In the second step, this intermediate is attacked by a bromide ion. Figure 8.2 shows an energy diagram for this two-step process. The observed regioselectivity for this process can be attributed to the first step of the mechanism (proton transfer), which is the rate-determining step because it exhibits a higher transition state energy than the second step of the mechanism.

FIGURE 8.2
An energy diagram for the two steps involved in the addition of HBr across an alkene.

In theory, protonation can occur with either of two regiochemical possibilities. It can either occur to form the less substituted, secondary carbocation,

Secondary carbocation

or occur to form the more substituted, tertiary carbocation:

Tertiary carbocation

Recall that tertiary carbocations are more stable than secondary carbocations, due to hyperconjugation (Section 6.11). Figure 8.3 shows an energy diagram comparing the two possible pathways for

FIGURE 8.3
An energy diagram illustrating the two possible pathways for the first step of hydrohalogenation. One pathway generates a secondary carbocation, while the other pathway generates a tertiary carbocation.

the first step of HX addition. The blue curve represents HX addition proceeding via a secondary carbocation, while the red curve represents HX addition proceeding via a tertiary carbocation. Look closely at the transition states through which the carbocation intermediates are formed. Recall that the Hammond postulate (Section 6.6) suggests that each of these transition states has significant carbocationic character (large $\delta+$). Therefore, the transition state for formation of the tertiary carbocation will be significantly lower in energy than the transition state for formation of the secondary carbocation. The energy barrier for formation of the tertiary carbocation will be smaller than the energy barrier for formation of the secondary carbocation, and as a result, the reaction will proceed more rapidly via the more stable carbocation intermediate. The proposed mechanism therefore provides a theoretical explanation (based on first principles) for the regioselectivity that Markovnikov observed. Specifically, the *regioselectivity of an ionic addition reaction is determined by the preference for the reaction to proceed through the more stable intermediate*.

SKILLBUILDER

8.1 DRAWING A MECHANISM FOR HYDROHALOGENATION

LEARN the skill

Draw a mechanism for the following transformation:

SOLUTION

In this reaction, a hydrogen atom and a halogen are added across an alkene. The halogen (Cl) is ultimately positioned at the more substituted carbon, which suggests that this reaction takes place via an ionic mechanism (Markovnikov addition). The ionic mechanism for hydrohalogenation has two steps: (1) *protonation* of the alkene to form the more stable carbocation and (2) *nucleophilic attack*. Each step must be drawn precisely.

STEP 1
Using two curved arrows, protonate the alkene to form the more stable carbocation.

When drawing the first step of the mechanism (protonation), make sure to use two curved arrows:

One curved arrow is drawn with its tail on the π bond and its head on the proton. The second curved arrow is drawn with its tail on the H—Cl bond and its head on the Cl.

STEP 2
Using one curved arrow, draw the halide ion attacking the carbocation.

When drawing the second step of the mechanism (nucleophilic attack), only one curved arrow is needed. The chloride ion, formed in the previous step, functions as a nucleophile and attacks the carbocation:

PRACTICE the skill

8.7 Draw a mechanism for each of the following transformations:

(a)

(b)

(c)

APPLY the skill

8.8 The bicyclo[3.1.0]hexane ring system, highlighted in compound **3**, is found in several natural products, including sabinene, a compound partially responsible for the flavor of ground black pepper. One method for preparing this ring system involves the conversion of compound **1** to compound **2**, as shown below.[1] Draw the structure of compound **2** and provide a reasonable mechanism for its formation.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 8.51c, 8.68, 8.71**

Stereochemistry of Hydrohalogenation

In many cases, hydrohalogenation involves the formation of a chiral center; for example:

In this reaction, one new chiral center is formed. Therefore, two possible products are expected, representing a pair of enantiomers:

The two enantiomers are produced in equal amounts (a racemic mixture). This stereochemical outcome can also be explained by the proposed mechanism, which identifies the key intermediate as a carbocation. Recall that a carbocation is trigonal planar, with an empty *p* orbital orthogonal to the plane. This empty *p* orbital is subject to attack by a nucleophile from either side (the lobe above the plane or the lobe below the plane), as seen in Figure 8.4. Both faces of the plane can be attacked with equal likelihood, and therefore, both enantiomers are produced in equal amounts.

FIGURE 8.4
In the second step of hydrohalogenation, the carbocation intermediate is planar and can be attacked from either face, leading to a pair of mirror-image products (enantiomers).

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

8.9 Predict the products for each of the following reactions. **Note**: in some cases, the reaction produces a new chiral center, while in other cases, no new chiral center is formed.

Hydrohalogenation with Carbocation Rearrangements

In Section 6.11, we discussed the stability of carbocations and their ability to rearrange via either a methyl shift or a hydride shift. The problems in that section focused on predicting when and how carbocations rearrange. That skill will be essential now, because the mechanism for HX addition involves formation of an intermediate carbocation. Therefore, HX additions are subject to carbocation rearrangements. Consider the following example, in which the π bond is protonated to generate the more stable, secondary carbocation, rather than the less stable, primary carbocation:

As we might expect, this carbocation can be captured by a chloride ion. However, it is also possible for this secondary carbocation to rearrange before encountering a chloride ion. Specifically, a hydride shift will produce a more stable, tertiary carbocation, which can then be captured by a chloride ion:

In cases where rearrangements are possible, HX additions produce a mixture of products, including those resulting from a carbocation rearrangement as well as those formed without rearrangement:

The product ratio shown above (40 : 60) can be moderately affected by altering the concentration of HCl, but a mixture of products is unavoidable. The bottom line is: *When carbocation rearrangements can occur, they do occur*. As a result, HX addition is only synthetically useful in situations where carbocation rearrangements are not possible.

SKILLBUILDER

8.2 DRAWING A MECHANISM FOR A HYDROHALOGENATION PROCESS WITH A CARBOCATION REARRANGEMENT

LEARN the skill

Draw a mechanism for the following transformation:

SOLUTION

The reaction is a hydrohalogenation. However, this product is not the expected product from a simple addition. Rather, the carbon skeleton of the product is different from the carbon skeleton of the reactant, and therefore, a carbocation rearrangement is likely.

In the first step, the alkene is protonated to form the more stable carbocation (secondary rather than primary):

STEP 1 Using two curved arrows, protonate the alkene to form the more stable carbocation.

STEP 2 Using one curved arrow, draw the carbocation rearrangement.

Now look to see if a carbocation rearrangement is possible. In this case, a methyl shift can produce a more stable, tertiary carbocation:

STEP 3 Using one curved arrow, draw the halide ion attacking the carbocation.

Finally, the chloride ion attacks the tertiary carbocation to give the product:

PRACTICE the skill

8.10 Draw a mechanism for each of the following transformations:

APPLY the skill

8.11 Carbocation rearrangements during hydrohalogenation reactions can involve shifts of carbon atoms other than a methyl group. For example, the addition of HBr to compound **1** leads to carbocation **2**, which rearranges to carbocation **3**, before being converted into compound **4** in 95% yield.[2]

(a) Provide curved arrows to complete the mechanism shown.

(b) Notice that this process involves the rearrangement of a tertiary carbocation to give a secondary carbocation; nevertheless, the reaction occurs in high yield. Suggest a reason why the rearrangement is favorable.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 8.51d, 8.79, 8.87, 8.92**

WorldLinks Cationic Polymerization and Polystyrene

Polymers were first introduced in Chapter 4, and discussions of polymers appear throughout the book. We saw that polymers are large molecules formed by the joining of monomers. More than 200 billion pounds of synthetic organic polymers are produced in the United States every year. They are used in a variety of applications, including automobile tires, carpet fibers, clothing, plumbing pipes, plastic squeeze bottles, cups, plates, cutlery, computers, pens, televisions, radios, Blu-rays, paint, and toys. Our society has clearly become dependent on polymers.

Synthetic organic polymers are commonly formed via one of three possible mechanistic pathways: *radical polymerization, anionic polymerization*, or *cationic polymerization*. Radical polymerization will be discussed in Chapter 10 and anionic polymerization will be discussed in Chapter 27. In this section, we will briefly introduce cationic polymerization.

The first step of cationic polymerization is similar to the first step of hydrohalogenation. Specifically, an alkene is protonated in the presence of an acid to produce a carbocation intermediate. A commonly used acid catalyst for cationic polymerization can be formed by treating BF_3 with water:

Acid catalyst

In the absence of halide ions, hydrohalogenation cannot occur. Instead, the carbocation intermediate must react with a nucleophile other than a halide ion. Under these conditions, the only nucleophile present in abundance is the starting alkene, which can attack the carbocation to form a new carbocation. This process repeats itself, adding one monomer at a time; for example:

Polymer

For monomers that undergo cationic polymerization, the process is terminated when the carbocation intermediate is deprotonated by a base or attacked by a nucleophile other than an alkene (such as water).

Many alkenes polymerize readily via cationic polymerization, making possible the production of a wide range of polymers with varying properties and applications. For example, polystyrene (mentioned in the chapter opener) can be prepared via cationic polymerization:

Styrene

Polystyrene

The resulting polymer is a rigid plastic that can be heated, molded into a desired shape, and then cooled again. This feature makes polystyrene ideal in the production of a variety of plastic items, including plastic cutlery, toy pieces, Blu-ray cases, computer housings, radios, and televisions. In the early 1940s, an accidental discovery led to the development of Styrofoam, which is also made from polystyrene. Ray McIntire, working for the Dow Chemical Company (now Dupont), was searching for a polymeric material that could serve as a flexible electrical insulator. His research efforts led to the discovery of a type of foamed polystyrene, which is comprised of approximately 95% air and is therefore much lighter (per unit volume) than regular polystyrene. This new material was found to have many useful physical properties. In particular, foamed polystyrene was found to be moisture resistant, unsinkable, and a poor conductor of heat (and therefore an excellent insulator). Dow called its material Styrofoam and has continuously improved the method of its production over the last half of a century. Coffee cups, coolers, and packing materials are also made from foamed polystyrene, but the method of preparation is not the same as the process used by Dow, and as a result, the properties are not exactly the same as the properties of Styrofoam.

Foamed polystyrene is generally prepared by heating polystyrene and then using hot gases, called blowing agents, to expand the polystyrene into a foam. In the past, CFCs (chlorofluorocarbons) were primarily used as blowing agents, but they are no longer in use because of their role in destroying the ozone layer. Although the alternative blowing agents currently in use are less damaging to the ozone layer, they are believed to contribute to global warming and leave room for improvement.

CrackerClips/Shutterstock

8.6 Acid-Catalyzed Hydration

The next few sections discuss three methods for adding water (H and OH) across a double bond, a process called **hydration**. The first two methods provide Markovnikov additions, while the third method provides an *anti*-Markovnikov addition. In this section, we will explore the first of these three reactions.

Experimental Observations

Addition of water across a double bond in the presence of an acid is called **acid-catalyzed hydration**. For most simple alkenes, this reaction proceeds via a Markovnikov addition, as shown. The net result is an addition of H and OH across the π bond, with the OH group positioned at the more substituted carbon:

(90%)

The reagent, H_3O^+, represents the presence of both water (H_2O) and an acid source, such as sulfuric acid. These conditions can be shown in the following way:

where the brackets indicate that the proton source is not consumed in the reaction. It is a catalyst, and, therefore, this reaction is said to be an *acid-catalyzed hydration.*

The rate of acid-catalyzed hydration is very much dependent on the structure of the starting alkene. Compare the relative rates of the following three reactions and analyze the effects of an alkyl substituent on the relative rate of each reaction:

With each additional alkyl group, the reaction rate increases by many orders of magnitude. Also notice that the OH group is installed at the more substituted position. These observations can be justified with a mechanism that involves a carbocation intermediate (Mechanism 8.2), as we will now explore:

MECHANISM 8.2 ACID-CATALYZED HYDRATION

Mechanism and Source of Regioselectivity

LOOKING AHEAD
A proposed mechanism must always be consistent with the stated conditions, as we see here with the use of H_2O in acidic conditions rather than hydroxide for the last step of the mechanism. This principle will appear many more times throughout this text.

Mechanism 8.2 is consistent with the observed regiochemical preference for Markovnikov addition as well as the effect of alkene structure on the rate of the reaction.

The first two steps of this mechanism are virtually identical to the mechanism we proposed for hydrohalogenation. Specifically, the alkene is first protonated to generate a carbocation intermediate, which is then attacked by a nucleophile. However, in this case, the attacking nucleophile is neutral (H_2O) rather than an anion (X^-), and therefore, a charged intermediate is generated as a result of nucleophilic attack. This intermediate is called an **oxonium ion**, because it exhibits an oxygen atom with a positive charge. In order to remove this charge and form an electrically neutral product, the mechanism must conclude with a proton transfer. Notice that the base shown deprotonating the oxonium ion is H_2O rather than a hydroxide ion (HO^-). Why? In acidic conditions, the concentration of hydroxide ions is negligible, but the concentration of H_2O is quite large.

The proposed mechanism is consistent with the experimental observations discussed earlier in this section. The reaction proceeds via a Markovnikov addition, just as we saw for hydrohalogenation, because there is a strong preference for the reaction to proceed via the more stable carbocation intermediate. Similarly, reaction rates for substituted alkenes can be justified by comparing the carbocation intermediates in each case. Reactions that proceed via tertiary carbocations will generally occur more rapidly than reactions that proceed via secondary carbocations.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

8.12 In each of the following cases, identify the alkene that is expected to be more reactive toward acid-catalyzed hydration.

(a)

(b) 2-Methyl-2-butene or 3-methyl-1-butene

Controlling the Position of Equilibrium

LOOKING BACK
Acid-catalyzed dehydration was first discussed in Section 7.10.

Carefully examine the proposed mechanism for acid-catalyzed hydration. Notice the equilibrium arrows ($\rightleftharpoons$ rather than $\longrightarrow$). These arrows indicate that the reaction actually goes in both directions. Consider the reverse path (starting from the alcohol and ending with the alkene). That process is an elimination reaction in which an alcohol is converted into an alkene. More specifically, it is an E1 process called acid-catalyzed dehydration. The truth is that most reactions represent equilibrium processes; however, organic chemists generally draw equilibrium arrows only in situations where the equilibrium can be easily manipulated (allowing for control over the product distribution). Acid-catalyzed dehydration is an excellent example of such a reaction.

Earlier in this chapter, thermodynamic arguments were presented to explain why low temperature favors addition, while high temperature favors elimination. For acid-catalyzed dehydration, there is yet another way to control the equilibrium. The equilibrium is sensitive not only to temperature but also to the concentration of water that is present. By controlling the amount of water present (using either concentrated acid or dilute acid), one side of the equilibrium can be favored over the other:

Control over this equilibrium derives from an understanding of Le Châtelier's principle, which states that a system at equilibrium will adjust in order to minimize any stress placed on the system. To understand how this principle applies, consider the above process after equilibrium has been established. Notice that water is on the left side of the reaction. How would

the introduction of more water affect the system? The concentrations would no longer be at equilibrium, and the system would have to adjust to reestablish new equilibrium concentrations. The introduction of more water will cause the position of equilibrium to move in such a way that more of the alcohol is produced. Therefore, dilute acid (which is mostly water) is used to convert an alkene into an alcohol. On the flip side, removing water from the system would cause the equilibrium to favor the alkene. Therefore, concentrated acid (very little water) is used to favor formation of the alkene. Alternatively, water can also be removed from the system via a distillation or chemical process, which would also favor the alkene.

In summary, the outcome of a reaction can be greatly affected by carefully choosing the reaction conditions and concentrations of reagents.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

8.13 Identify whether you would use dilute sulfuric acid or concentrated sulfuric acid to achieve each of the following transformations. In each case, explain your choice.

Stereochemistry of Acid-Catalyzed Hydration

The stereochemical outcome of acid-catalyzed hydration is similar to the stereochemical outcome of hydrohalogenation. Once again, the intermediate carbocation can be attacked from either side with equal likelihood (Figure 8.5).

FIGURE 8.5
In the second step of acid-catalyzed hydration, the carbocation intermediate is planar and can be attacked from either face, leading to a pair of mirror-image products (enantiomers).

Therefore, when a new chiral center is generated, a racemic mixture of enantiomers is expected:

SKILLBUILDER

8.3 DRAWING A MECHANISM FOR AN ACID-CATALYZED HYDRATION

LEARN the skill

Draw a mechanism for the following transformation:

SOLUTION

In this reaction, water is added across an alkene in a Markovnikov fashion under acid-catalyzed conditions. As a result, the OH group is installed at the more substituted position. To draw a mechanism for this process, recall that the accepted mechanism for acid-catalyzed hydration has three steps: (1) protonation to give a carbocation, (2) nucleophilic attack of water to give an oxonium ion, and (3) deprotonation to generate a neutral product. When drawing the first step of the mechanism (protonation), make sure to use two curved arrows and make sure to form the more stable carbocation:

STEP 1
Using two curved arrows, protonate the alkene to form the more stable carbocation.

WATCH OUT
Make sure to draw both curved arrows and be very precise when placing the head and tail of each curved arrow.

One curved arrow is drawn with its tail on the π bond and its head on the proton, while the second curved arrow is drawn with its tail on an O—H bond and its head on the oxygen atom of water. When drawing the second step of the mechanism (nucleophilic attack), only one curved arrow is required. The tail should be placed on a lone pair of water, and the head should be placed on the carbocation:

STEP 2
Using one curved arrow, draw a water molecule attacking the carbocation.

In the final step of the mechanism, water (not hydroxide) functions as a base and abstracts a proton from the oxonium ion. Like all proton transfer steps, this process requires two curved arrows. One curved arrow is drawn with its tail on a lone pair of water and its head on the proton, while the second curved arrow is drawn with its tail on the O—H bond and its head on the oxygen atom:

STEP 3
With two curved arrows, deprotonate the oxonium ion using water as a base.

PRACTICE the skill

8.14 Draw a mechanism for each of the following transformations:

APPLY the skill

8.15 If an alkene is protonated and the solvent is an alcohol rather than water, a reaction takes place that is very similar to acid-catalyzed hydration, but in the second step of the mechanism the alcohol functions as a nucleophile instead of water. Draw a mechanism for each of the following reactions.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 8.51a,b, 8.63, 8.83**

8.7 Oxymercuration-Demercuration

The previous section explored how acid-catalyzed hydration can be used to achieve a Markovnikov addition of water across an alkene. The utility of that process is somewhat diminished by the fact that carbocation rearrangements can produce a mixture of products:

In cases where protonation of the alkene ultimately leads to carbocation rearrangements, acid-catalyzed hydration is an inefficient method for adding water across the alkene. Many other methods can achieve a Markovnikov addition of water across an alkene without carbocation rearrangements. One of the oldest known methods is called **oxymercuration-demercuration**:

To understand this process, we must explore the reagents employed. The process begins when mercuric acetate, $Hg(OAc)_2$, dissociates to form a mercuric cation:

This mercuric cation is a powerful electrophile and is subject to attack by a nucleophile, such as the π bond of an alkene. When a π bond attacks a mercuric cation, the nature of the resulting intermediate is quite different from the nature of the intermediate formed when a π bond is simply protonated. Let's compare:

BY THE WAY
As mentioned in Chapter 2, we generally avoid breaking single bonds when drawing resonance structures. However, this is one of the rare exceptions. We will see one other such exception in the next section of this chapter.

When a π bond is protonated, the intermediate formed is simply a carbocation, as we have seen many times in this chapter. In contrast, when a π bond attacks a mercuric cation, the resulting intermediate cannot be considered as a carbocation, because the mercury atom has electrons that can interact with the nearby positive charge to form a bridge. This intermediate, called a **mercurinium ion**, is more adequately described as a hybrid of two resonance structures. A mercurinium ion has some of the character of a carbocation, but it also has some of the character of a bridged, three-membered ring. This dual character can be illustrated with the following drawing:

Mercurinium ion

The more substituted carbon atom bears a partial positive charge (δ+), rather than a full positive charge. As a result, this intermediate will not readily undergo carbocation rearrangements, but it is still subject to attack by a nucleophile:

LOOKING AHEAD
Radical processes are discussed in more detail in Chapter 10.

Notice that the attack takes place at the more substituted position, ultimately leading to Markovnikov addition. After attack of the nucleophile, the mercury can be removed through a process called *demercuration*, which can be accomplished with sodium borohydride. There is much evidence that demercuration occurs via a radical process. The net result is the addition of H and a nucleophile across an alkene:

Many nucleophiles can be used, including water:

This reaction sequence provides for a two-step process that enables the hydration of an alkene without carbocation rearrangements:

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

8.16 Predict the product for each reaction, and predict the products if an acid-catalyzed hydration had been performed rather than an oxymercuration-demercuration:

(a)

(b)

(c)

8.17 In the first step of oxymercuration-demercuration, nucleophiles other than water may be used. Predict the product for each of the following cases, in which a nucleophile other than water is used.

(a)

(b)

8.8 Hydroboration-Oxidation

An Introduction to Hydroboration-Oxidation

The previous sections covered two different methods for achieving a Markovnikov addition of water across a π bond: (1) acid-catalyzed hydration and (2) oxymercuration-demercuration. In this section, we will explore a method for achieving an *anti*-Markovnikov addition of water.

This process, called **hydroboration-oxidation**, installs the OH group at the less substituted position:

The stereochemical outcome of this reaction is also of particular interest. Specifically, when two new chiral centers are formed, the addition of water (H and OH) is observed to occur in a way that places the H and OH on the same face of the π bond:

This mode of addition is called a ***syn* addition**. The reaction is said to be stereospecific because only two of the four possible stereoisomers are formed. That is, the reaction does not produce the two stereoisomers that would result from adding H and OH to opposite faces of the alkene:

Any mechanism that we propose for hydroboration-oxidation must explain both the regioselectivity (*anti*-Markovnikov addition) as well as the stereospecificity (*syn* addition). We will soon propose a mechanism that explains both observations. But first, we must explore the nature of the reagents used for hydroboration-oxidation.

Reagents for Hydroboration-Oxidation

The structure of borane (BH_3) is similar to that of a carbocation, but without the charge:

The boron atom lacks an octet of electrons and is therefore very reactive. In fact, one borane molecule will even react with another borane molecule to form a dimeric structure called **diborane**. This dimer is believed to possess a special type of bonding that is unlike anything we have seen in previous chapters. It can be more easily understood by drawing the following resonance structures:

As with the mercurinium ion (Section 8.7), this is another of those rare cases where we break a single bond when drawing the resonance structures. Careful examination of these resonance structures

shows that each of the hydrogen atoms, colored in red and blue above, is partially bonded to two boron atoms using a total of two electrons:

Such bonds are called **three-center, two-electron bonds**. In the world of organic chemistry, there are many other examples of three-center, two-electron bonds; however, we will not encounter any other examples in this text.

Borane and diborane coexist in the following equilibrium:

This equilibrium lies very much to the side of diborane (B_2H_6), leaving very little borane (BH_3) present at equilibrium. It is possible to stabilize BH_3, thereby increasing its concentration at equilibrium, by using a solvent such as THF (tetrahydrofuran), which can donate electron density into the empty *p* orbital of boron:

Although the boron atom does receive some electron density from the solvent, it is nevertheless still very electrophilic and subject to attack by the π bond of an alkene. A mechanism for hydroboration-oxidation follows.

A Mechanism for Hydroboration-Oxidation

We will begin by focusing on the first step of hydroboration, in which borane is attacked by a π bond, triggering a simultaneous hydride shift (see Mechanism 8.3). In other words, formation of the C—BH_2 bond and formation of the C—H bond occur together in a concerted process. This step of the proposed mechanism explains both the regioselectivity (*anti*-Markovnikov addition) as well as the stereospecificity (*syn* addition) for this process. Each of these features will now be discussed in more detail.

Regioselectivity of Hydroboration-Oxidation

As seen in Mechanism 8.3, a BH_2 group is installed at the less substituted position and is ultimately replaced with an OH group, leading to the observed regioselectivity. The preference for BH_2 to be installed at the less substituted position can be explained in terms of electronic considerations or steric considerations. Both explanations are presented below:

1. ***Electronic considerations***: In the first step of the proposed mechanism, attack of the π bond triggers a simultaneous hydride shift. However, this process does not have to be perfectly simultaneous. As the π bond attacks the empty *p* orbital of boron, one of the vinylic positions can begin to develop a partial positive charge ($\delta+$). This developing $\delta+$ then triggers a hydride shift:

MECHANISM 8.3 HYDROBORATION-OXIDATION

Hydroboration

Oxidation

FIGURE 8.6
A comparison of the transition states for hydroboration via Markovnikov addition or *anti*-Markovnikov addition. The latter will be lower in energy because of decreased steric crowding.

In this way, one of the vinylic carbon atoms develops a partial positive charge when the alkene begins to interact with borane. There will be a preference (as we have seen previously in this chapter) for any positive character to develop at the more substituted carbon. In order to accomplish this, the BH_2 group must be positioned at the less substituted carbon atom.

2. ***Steric considerations***: In the first step of the proposed mechanism, both H and BH_2 are adding across the double bond simultaneously. Since BH_2 is bigger than H, the transition state will be less crowded and lower in energy if the BH_2 group is positioned at the less sterically hindered position (Figure 8.6).

It is likely that both electronic and steric factors contribute to the observed regioselectivity for hydroboration-oxidation.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

8.18 Below are several examples of hydroboration-oxidation. In each case, consider the expected regioselectivity and then draw the product:

(a)

(b)

(c)

8.19 Compound **A** has the molecular formula C_5H_{10}. Hydroboration-oxidation of compound **A** produces 2-methylbutan-1-ol. Draw the structure of compound **A**:

2-Methylbutan-1-ol

Stereospecificity of Hydroboration-Oxidation

The observed stereospecificity for hydroboration-oxidation is consistent with the first step of the proposed mechanism, in which H and BH_2 are simultaneously added across the π bond of the alkene. The concerted nature of this step requires that both groups add across the same face of the alkene, giving a *syn* addition. In this way, the proposed mechanism explains not only the regiochemistry but also the stereochemistry.

When drawing the products of hydroboration-oxidation, it is essential to consider the number of chiral centers that are created during the process. If no chiral centers are formed, then the stereospecificity of the reaction is not relevant:

No chiral centers

In this case, only one product is formed, rather than a pair of enantiomers, and the *syn* requirement is irrelevant.

Now consider the stereochemical outcome in a case where one chiral center is formed:

One chiral center

In this case, both enantiomers are obtained, because *syn* addition can take place from either face of the alkene with equal likelihood:

Now consider a case in which two chiral centers are formed:

Two chiral centers

In such a case, the requirement for *syn* addition determines which pair of enantiomers is obtained:

The other two possible stereoisomers are not obtained.

Under special circumstances, it is possible to achieve *enantioselective addition reactions*, that is, reactions where one enantiomer predominates over the other (and there is an observed % *ee*, or enantiomeric excess). However, we have not yet seen any methods for accomplishing this. We will see one such example later in this chapter, but as of yet, none of the reactions in this chapter have been enantioselective. As a result, all of the reactions presented so far in this chapter will produce a product mixture that is optically inactive.

SKILLBUILDER

8.4 PREDICTING THE PRODUCTS OF HYDROBORATION-OXIDATION

LEARN the skill

Predict the product(s) for the following process:

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Determine the regiochemical outcome based on the requirement for *anti*-Markovnikov addition.

This process is a hydroboration-oxidation, which will add water across the double bond. The first step is to determine the regiochemical outcome. That is, we must determine where the OH group is installed. Recall that hydroboration-oxidation produces an *anti*-Markovnikov addition, which means that the OH group is installed at the less substituted position:

STEP 2
Determine the stereochemical outcome based on the requirement for *syn* addition.

Now we know where to place the OH group, but the drawing is still not complete, because the stereochemical outcome must be indicated. Specifically, we must ask if two new chiral centers are formed in this reaction. In this example, there are, in fact, two new chiral centers being formed. So, the stereospecificity of this process (*syn* addition) is relevant and must be taken into account when drawing the products. The reaction will produce only the pair of enantiomers that results from a *syn* addition:

PRACTICE the skill

8.20 Predict the product(s) for each of the following transformations:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

(f)

APPLY the skill

8.21 α-Pinene can be isolated from pine resin and is a primary constituent of turpentine (paint thinner). Both enantiomers of α-pinene are naturally occurring. To determine the enantiomeric excess (% *ee*) of α-pinene in various spruce trees, the isolated α-pinene was modified by hydroboration-oxidation as shown below for the (−)-enantiomer.[3] In the first step, diborane (B_2H_6) was used as an alternative to BH_3·THF to achieve hydroboration of the alkene. Since hydroboration can take place from either face of the alkene, there are two possible diastereomeric products, but the major product results from attack on the less hindered face. Draw both products and predict which is the major diastereomer formed.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 8.65, 8.73**

8.9 Catalytic Hydrogenation

LOOKING BACK
The hydrogen atoms installed during this process are not explicitly drawn in the product, because the presence of hydrogen atoms can be inferred from bond-line drawings. For more practice "seeing" the hydrogen atoms that are not explicitly drawn, review the exercises in Section 2.2.

Catalytic hydrogenation involves the addition of molecular hydrogen (H_2) across a double bond in the presence of a metal catalyst; for example:

(100%)

The net result of this process is to reduce an alkene to an alkane. Paul Sabatier was the first to demonstrate that catalytic hydrogenation could serve as a general procedure for reducing alkenes, and for his pioneering work, he was a corecipient of the 1912 Nobel Prize in Chemistry.

Stereospecificity of Catalytic Hydrogenation

In the previous reaction, there are no chiral centers in the product, so the stereospecificity of the process is irrelevant. In order to explore whether a reaction displays stereospecificity, we must examine a case where two new chiral centers are being formed. For example, consider the following case:

With two chiral centers, there are four possible stereoisomeric products (two pairs of enantiomers):

However, the reaction does not produce all four products. Only one pair of enantiomers is observed, the pair that results from a *syn* addition. To understand the reason for the observed stereospecificity, we must take a close look at the reagents and their proposed interactions.

The Role of the Catalyst in Catalytic Hydrogenation

Catalytic hydrogenation is accomplished by treating an alkene with H_2 gas and a metal catalyst, often under conditions of high pressure. The role of the catalyst is illustrated by the energy diagram in Figure 8.7. The pathway without the metal catalyst (blue) has a very large energy of activation (E_a), rendering the reaction too slow to be of practical use. The presence of a catalyst provides a pathway (red) with a lower energy of activation, thereby allowing the reaction to occur more rapidly.

FIGURE 8.7
An energy diagram showing hydrogenation with a catalyst (red) and without a catalyst (black). The latter has a lower energy of activation and therefore occurs more rapidly.

A variety of metal catalysts can be used, such as Pt, Pd, or Ni. The process is believed to begin when molecular hydrogen (H_2) interacts with the surface of the metal catalyst, effectively breaking the H—H bonds and forming individual hydrogen atoms adsorbed to the surface of the metal. The alkene coordinates with the metal surface, and surface chemistry allows for the reaction between the π bond and two hydrogen atoms, effectively adding H and H across the alkene (Figure 8.8). In this process, both hydrogen atoms add to the same face of the alkene, explaining the observed stereospecificity (*syn* addition).

FIGURE 8.8
The addition process takes place on the surface of a metal catalyst.

In any given case, *the stereochemical outcome is dependent on the number of chiral centers formed in the process*, as summarized in Table 8.2.

TABLE 8.2 SUMMARY OF RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN NUMBER OF CHIRAL CENTERS FORMED AND STEREOCHEMICAL OUTCOME OF CATALYTIC HYDROGENATION

Zero chiral centers	*Syn* requirement is not relevant. Only one product formed.
One chiral center	Both possible enantiomers are formed.
Two chiral centers	The requirement for *syn* addition determines which pair of enantiomers is obtained.

Care must be taken when applying the simple paradigm in Table 8.2, because symmetrical alkenes will produce a *meso* compound rather than a pair of enantiomers. Consider the following case:

In this example, two new chiral centers are formed, and therefore, we might expect that *syn* addition will produce a pair of enantiomers. However, in this case, there is only one product from *syn* addition, not a pair of enantiomers:

A *meso* compound, by definition, does not have an enantiomer. A *syn* addition on one face of the alkene generates exactly the same compound as a *syn* addition on the other face of the alkene. And, therefore, care must be taken not to write "+ Enantiomer" or "+ En" for short:

SKILLBUILDER

8.5 PREDICTING THE PRODUCTS OF CATALYTIC HYDROGENATION

LEARN the skill

Predict the products of each of the following reactions:

SOLUTION

(a) This reaction is a catalytic hydrogenation process, in which H and H are added across the alkene. Since both groups are identical (H and H), it is not necessary to consider regiochemical issues. However, stereochemistry is a factor that must be considered. In order to properly draw the products, it is first necessary to determine how many chiral centers are formed as a result of this reaction:

STEP 1 Determine the number of chiral centers formed.

Two chiral centers

STEP 2 Determine the stereochemical outcome based on the requirement for *syn* addition.

In this case, two chiral centers are formed. Therefore, we expect only the pair of enantiomers that would result from a *syn* addition:

STEP 3 Verify that the products do not represent a single *meso* compound.

As a final check, just make sure that the products do not represent a single *meso* compound. The compounds above lack an internal plane of symmetry and do not represent a single *meso* compound.

(b) Like the previous example, this reaction is a catalytic hydrogenation process, in which H and H are added across the alkene. In order to properly draw the products, it is first necessary to determine how many chiral centers are formed as a result of this reaction:

One chiral center

In this case, only one chiral center is formed. Therefore, we expect both possible enantiomers, because *syn* addition can occur from either face of the π bond with equal likelihood:

It is impossible for a compound containing exactly one chiral center to be a *meso* compound, so the compounds above are a pair of enantiomers.

LOOKING BACK
For practice identifying *meso* compounds, review the exercises in Section 5.6.

PRACTICE the skill **8.22** Predict the product(s) for each of the following reactions:

APPLY the skill **8.23** Compound **1** has been shown to be a useful precursor in the synthesis of natural products.[4] In principle, four stereoisomers are possible when this compound is subjected to catalytic hydrogenation. Draw these stereoisomers and describe their relationships:

1

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 8.55, 8.74, 8.80a, 8.91**

Homogeneous Catalysts

The catalysts described so far (Pt, Pd, Ni) are all called **heterogeneous catalysts** because they do not dissolve in the reaction medium. In contrast, **homogeneous catalysts** are soluble in the reaction medium. The most common homogeneous catalyst for hydrogenation is called Wilkinson's catalyst:

Wilkinson's catalyst

With homogeneous catalysts, a *syn* addition is also observed:

Asymmetric Catalytic Hydrogenation

As seen earlier in this section, when hydrogenation involves the creation of either one or two chiral centers, a pair of enantiomers is expected:

Creating one chiral center:

Creating two chiral centers:

In both reactions a racemic mixture is formed. This raises the obvious question: Is it possible to create only one enantiomer rather than a pair of enantiomers? In other words, is it possible to perform an **asymmetric hydrogenation**?

Before the 1960s, asymmetric catalytic hydrogenation had not been achieved. However, a major breakthrough came in 1968 when William S. Knowles, working for the Monsanto Company, developed a method for asymmetric catalytic hydrogenation. Knowles realized that asymmetric induction might be

possible through the use of a chiral catalyst. He reasoned that a chiral catalyst should be capable of lowering the energy of activation for formation of one enantiomer more dramatically than the other enantiomer (Figure 8.9). In this way, a chiral catalyst could theoretically favor the production of one enantiomer over another, leading to an observed enantiomeric excess (*ee*).

FIGURE 8.9
An energy diagram showing the ability of a chiral catalyst to favor formation of one enantiomer (red pathway) over the other enantiomer (blue pathway).

Knowles succeeded in developing a chiral catalyst by preparing a cleverly modified version of Wilkinson's catalyst. Recall that Wilkinson's catalyst has three triphenylphosphine ligands:

Knowles' idea was to use chiral phosphine ligands, rather than symmetrical phosphine ligands:

Using chiral phosphine ligands, Knowles prepared a chiral version of Wilkinson's catalyst. He used his chiral catalyst in a hydrogenation reaction and demonstrated a modest enantiomeric excess. He didn't get exclusively one enantiomer, but he got enough of an enantiomeric excess to prove the point—that asymmetric catalytic hydrogenation was in fact possible.

Knowles developed other catalysts capable of much higher enantiomeric excess, and he then set out to use asymmetric catalytic hydrogenation to develop an industrial synthesis of the amino acid L-dopa:

(*S*)-3,4-Dihydroxyphenylalanine (L-dopa)

L-Dopa had been shown to be effective in treating dopamine deficiencies associated with Parkinson's disease (a discovery that earned Arvid Carlsson the 2000 Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine). Dopamine is an important neurotransmitter in the brain. A dopamine deficiency cannot be treated by administering dopamine to the patient, because dopamine cannot cross the blood-brain barrier. However, L-dopa can cross this barrier, and it is subsequently converted into dopamine in the central nervous system. This provides a way to increase the levels of dopamine in the brains of patients with Parkinson's disease, thereby providing temporary relief from some of the symptoms associated with the disease. The enantiomer of L-dopa is believed to be toxic, and therefore, an enantioselective synthesis of L-dopa is required.

Dopamine

LOOKING AHEAD
The L designation describes the configuration of the chiral center present in the compound. This notation will be described in greater detail in Section 25.2.

WorldLinks Partially Hydrogenated Fats and Oils

Earlier in this chapter, we focused on the role of hydrogenation in the pharmaceutical industry. Hydrogenation has also been used heavily in the food industry to prepare partially hydrogenated fats and oils, as will be explained below.

Naturally occurring fats and oils, such as vegetable oil, are generally mixtures of compounds called *triglycerides*, which contain three long hydrocarbon chains:

A triglyceride

These important compounds are discussed in more detail in Section 26.3. For now, we focus our attention on the π bonds present in the hydrocarbon chains. Hydrogenation of some of these π bonds alters the physical properties of the oil. For example, cottonseed oil is a liquid at room temperature; however, *partially hydrogenated* cottonseed oil (Crisco) is a solid at room temperature. This is advantageous because it gives the oil a longer shelf-life. Margarine is prepared in a similar way from a variety of animal and vegetable oils.

Partially hydrogenated oils do have issues, though. There is much evidence that the catalysts present during the hydrogenation process can often isomerize some of the double bonds, producing *trans* double bonds:

These products are called *trans fats*, because they are fats that contain *trans* double bonds. There was not much concern about trans fats until the 1990's, when an increasing number of research papers suggested *trans* fats can increase blood LDL levels (the bad cholesterol) and the risk of atherosclerosis. With increased bad publicity and threats of regulatory action, food manufacturers began reformulating their products to avoid the use of partially hydrogenated vegetable oils. Foods are now required to indicate how many grams of "*trans* fats per serving" are in a given food. That number is now 0 (< 0.5g) for most foods, because recent FDA regulations (as of 2018) require that no *trans* fats be added to processed foods (some foods contain small amounts of naturally occurring *trans* fats, primarily in dairy products and beef).

ASSOCIATED PRESS

LOOKING AHEAD

For a discussion of the connection between cholesterol and cardiovascular disease, see the Medically Speaking box in Section 26.5.

BY THE WAY

The other half of the 2001 Nobel Prize in Chemistry was awarded to K. Barry Sharpless, for his work on enantioselective synthesis, described in Section 13.9.

Asymmetric catalytic hydrogenation turned out to be an efficient way to prepare L-dopa with high optical purity. For his work, Knowles shared half of the 2001 Nobel Prize in Chemistry, together with Ryoji Noyori (Nagoya University, Japan), who was independently investigating a wide variety of chiral catalysts that could produce an asymmetric catalytic hydrogenation.

Noyori varied both the metal and the ligands attached to the metal, and he was able to create chiral catalysts that achieved enantioselectivity close to 100% *ee*. One example, commonly used in synthesis these days, is based on the chiral ligand called BINAP:

(*S*)-(–)-BINAP
(*S*)-2,2′-Bis(diphenylphosphino)-1,1′-binaphthyl

As described in Section 5.9, BINAP does not have a chiral center, but nevertheless, it is a chiral compound because the single bond joining the two ring systems does not experience free rotation (as a result of steric hindrance). BINAP can be used as a chiral ligand to form a complex with ruthenium, producing a chiral catalyst capable of achieving very pronounced enantioselectivity:

Ru(BINAP)Cl_2

8.10 Halogenation and Halohydrin Formation

Experimental Observations

Halogenation involves the addition of X_2 (either Br_2 or Cl_2) across an alkene. As an example, consider the chlorination of ethylene to produce dichloroethane:

(97%)

This reaction is a key step in the industrial preparation of polyvinylchloride (PVC):

Halogenation of alkenes is only practical for the addition of chlorine or bromine. The reaction with fluorine is too violent, and the reaction with iodine often produces very low yields.

The stereospecificity of halogenation reactions can be explored in a case where two new chiral centers are formed. For example, consider the products that are formed when cyclopentene is treated with molecular bromine (Br_2):

WATCH OUT
The products of this reaction are a pair of enantiomers. They are not the same compound. Students are often confused with this particular example. For a review of enantiomers, see Section 5.5.

Notice that addition occurs in a way that places the two halogen atoms on opposite sides of the π bond. This mode of addition is called an ***anti* addition**. *For most simple alkenes, halogenation appears to proceed primarily via an anti addition*. Any proposed mechanism must be consistent with this observation.

A Mechanism for Halogenation

Molecular bromine is a nonpolar compound, because the Br—Br bond is covalent. Nevertheless, the molecule is polarizable, and the proximity of a nucleophile can cause a temporary, induced dipole moment (Figure 8.10).

FIGURE 8.10
An electrostatic potential map showing the temporary induced dipole moment of molecular bromine when it is in the vicinity of a nucleophile.

This effect places a partial positive charge on one of the bromine atoms, rendering that position electrophilic. Many nucleophiles are known to react with molecular bromine:

We have seen that π bonds are nucleophilic, and therefore, it is reasonable to expect an alkene to attack molecular bromine as well:

Although this step seems plausible, there is a fatal flaw in this proposal. Specifically, the production of a free carbocation is inconsistent with the observed *anti* stereospecificity of halogenation. If a free carbocation were produced in the process, then both *syn* and *anti* addition would be expected to occur, because the carbocation could be attacked from either side:

This mechanism does not account for the observed *anti* stereospecificity of halogenation. The modified mechanism shown in Mechanism 8.4 is consistent with an *anti* addition:

MECHANISM 8.4 HALOGENATION

In this mechanism, an additional curved arrow has been introduced in the first step, forming a bridged intermediate rather than a free carbocation. This bridged intermediate, called a **bromonium ion**, is similar in structure and reactivity to the mercurinium ion discussed in Section 8.6. Compare their structures:

In the second step of the proposed mechanism, the bromonium ion is attacked by the bromide ion that was produced in the first step. This step is an S_N2 process and must therefore proceed via a

back-side attack (as seen in Section 7.4). The requirement for back-side attack explains the observed stereochemical requirement for *anti* addition.

The stereochemical outcome for halogenation reactions is dependent on the configuration of the starting alkene. For example, *cis*-2-butene will yield different products than *trans*-2-butene:

Anti addition across *cis*-2-butene leads to a pair of enantiomers, while *anti* addition across *trans*-2-butene leads to a *meso* compound. These examples illustrate that *the configuration of the starting alkene determines the configuration of the product for halogenation reactions.*

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

8.24 Predict the major product(s) for each of the following reactions:

Halohydrin Formation

When bromination occurs in a non-nucleophilic solvent, such as $CHCl_3$, the result is the addition of Br_2 across the π bond (as seen in the previous sections). However, when the reaction is performed in the presence of water, the bromonium ion that is initially formed can be captured by a water molecule, rather than bromide:

The intermediate bromonium ion is a high-energy intermediate and will react with any nucleophile that it encounters. When water is the solvent, it is more likely that the bromonium ion will be captured by a water molecule before having a chance to react with a bromide ion (although some dibromide product is likely to be formed as well). The resulting oxonium ion is then deprotonated to give the product (Mechanism 8.5).

MECHANISM 8.5 HALOHYDRIN FORMATION

The net result is the addition of Br and OH across the alkene. The product is called a **bromohydrin**. When chlorine is used in the presence of water, the product is called a **chlorohydrin**:

A chlorohydrin

These reactions are generally referred to as **halohydrin formation**.

Regiochemistry of Halohydrin Formation

In most cases, halohydrin formation is observed to be a regioselective process. Specifically, an OH group is generally installed at the more substituted position:

The proposed mechanism for halohydrin formation can justify the observed regioselectivity. Recall that in the second step of the mechanism, the bromonium ion is captured by a water molecule:

Focus carefully on the position of the positive charge throughout the reaction. Think of the positive charge as a hole (or more accurately, a site of electron deficiency) that is passed from one place to another. It begins on the bromine atom and is transferred to the oxygen atom. In order to do so, the positive charge must pass through a carbon atom in the transition state:

In other words, the transition state for this step will bear partial carbocationic character. This explains why the water molecule is observed to attack the more substituted carbon. The more substituted carbon is more capable of stabilizing the partial positive charge in the transition state. As a result, the transition state will be lower in energy when nucleophilic attack occurs at the more substituted carbon atom. The proposed mechanism is therefore consistent with the observed regioselectivity of halohydrin formation.

SKILLBUILDER

8.6 PREDICTING THE PRODUCTS OF HALOHYDRIN FORMATION

LEARN the skill

Predict the major product(s) for the following reaction:

STEP 1
Determine the regiochemical outcome. The OH group should be placed at the more substituted carbon.

SOLUTION

The presence of water indicates halohydrin formation (addition of Br and OH). The first step is to identify the regiochemical outcome. Recall that the OH group is expected to be positioned at the more substituted carbon:

STEP 2
Determine the stereochemical outcome based on the requirement for *anti* addition.

The next step is to identify the stereochemical outcome. In this case, two new chiral centers are formed, so we expect only the pair of enantiomers that would result from *anti* addition. That is, OH and Br will be installed on opposite sides of the π bond:

When drawing the products of halohydrin formation, make sure to consider both the regiochemical outcome and the stereochemical outcome. It is not possible to draw the products correctly without considering both of these issues.

PRACTICE the skill

8.25 Predict the major product(s) that are expected when each of the following alkenes is treated with Br_2/H_2O:

APPLY the skill

8.26 Bromonium ions can be captured by nucleophiles other than water. Predict the products of each of the following reactions:

8.27 When *trans*-1-phenylpropene is treated with bromine, some *syn* addition is observed. Explain why the presence of a phenyl group causes a loss of stereospecificity.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 8.72, 8.85**

8.11 *Anti* Dihydroxylation

As mentioned in the introductory section of this chapter, **dihydroxylation** reactions are characterized by the addition of OH and OH across an alkene. As an example, consider the dihydroxylation of ethylene to produce ethylene glycol:

There are a number of reagents well suited to carry out this transformation. Some reagents provide for an *anti* dihydroxylation, while others provide for a *syn* dihydroxylation. In this section, we will explore a two-step procedure for achieving *anti* dihydroxylation:

The first step of the process involves conversion of the alkene into an epoxide, and the second step involves opening the epoxide to form a *trans* diol (Mechanism 8.6). An **epoxide** is a three-membered, cyclic ether.

MECHANISM 8.6 *ANTI* DIHYDROXYLATION

Formation of an epoxide

Acid-catalyzed opening of an epoxide

In the first part of the process, a peroxy acid (RCO_3H) reacts with the alkene to form an epoxide. Peroxy acids resemble carboxylic acids in structure, possessing just one additional oxygen atom. Two common peroxy acids are shown below:

Peroxy acids are strong oxidizing agents and are capable of delivering an oxygen atom to an alkene in a single step. The product is an epoxide.

Once the epoxide has been formed, it can then be opened with water under either acid-catalyzed or base-catalyzed conditions. Both sets of conditions are explored and compared in more detail in Section 13.10. For now, we will explore only the acid-catalyzed opening of epoxides, as seen in Mechanism 8.6. Under these conditions, the epoxide is first protonated to produce an intermediate

that is very similar to a bromonium or mercurinium ion. All three cases involve a three-membered ring bearing a positive charge:

A protonated epoxide A bromonium ion A mercurinium ion

LOOKING AHEAD
You might be wondering why a weak nucleophile can participate in an S_N2 process at a secondary substrate. In fact, this reaction can occur even if the center being attacked is tertiary. This will be explained in Section 13.10.

We have seen that bromonium and mercurinium ions can be attacked by water from the back side. In much the same way, a protonated epoxide can also be attacked by water from the back side, as seen in Mechanism 8.6. The necessity for back-side attack (S_N2) explains the observed stereochemical preference for *anti* addition.

In the final step of the mechanism, the oxonium ion is deprotonated to yield a *trans* diol. Once again, notice that water is shown as the base (rather than hydroxide) in order to stay consistent with the conditions. In acidic conditions, hydroxide ions are not present in sufficient quantity to participate in the reaction, and therefore, they cannot be involved when drawing the mechanism.

SKILLBUILDER

8.7 DRAWING THE PRODUCTS OF *ANTI* DIHYDROXYLATION

LEARN the skill

Predict the major product(s) for each of the following reactions:

SOLUTION

(a) These reagents achieve dihydroxylation, which means that OH and OH will add across the alkene. Since the two groups are identical (OH and OH), we don't need to consider the regiochemistry of this process. However, the stereochemistry must be considered. Begin by determining the number of chiral centers formed. In this case, two new chiral centers are formed, so we expect only the pair of enantiomers that result from an *anti* addition. That is, the OH groups will be added to opposite sides of the π bond:

STEP 1
Determine the number of chiral centers formed.

STEP 2
Determine the stereochemical outcome based on the requirement for *anti* addition.

(b) In this example, only one new chiral center is formed. It is true that the reaction proceeds through an *anti* addition of OH and OH. However, with only one chiral center in the product, the requirement for *anti* addition becomes irrelevant. Both possible enantiomers are formed:

PRACTICE the skill

8.28 Predict the products that are expected when each of the following alkenes is treated with a peroxy acid (RCO_3H) followed by aqueous acid:

APPLY the skill

8.29 Under acid-catalyzed conditions, epoxides can be opened by a variety of nucleophiles other than water, such as alcohols. In such a case, the nucleophile will generally attack at the more substituted position. Using this information, predict the products for each of the following reactions:

8.30 Compound **A** and compound **B** both have the molecular formula C_6H_{12}. Both compounds produce epoxides when treated with a peroxy acid (RCO_3H).

(a) The epoxide resulting from compound **A** was treated with aqueous acid (H_3O^+) and the resulting diol had no chiral centers. Propose two possible structures for compound **A**.

(b) The epoxide resulting from compound **B** was treated with H_3O^+ and the resulting diol was a *meso* compound. Draw the structure of compound **B**.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problem 8.64d**

8.12 *Syn* Dihydroxylation

The previous section described a method for *anti* dihydroxylation of alkenes. In this section, we will explore two different sets of reagents that can accomplish *syn* dihydroxylation of alkenes. When an alkene is treated with osmium tetroxide (OsO_4), a cyclic osmate ester is produced:

A cyclic osmate ester

Osmium tetroxide adds across the alkene in a concerted process. In other words, both oxygen atoms attach to the alkene simultaneously. This effectively adds two groups across the same face of the alkene; hence, the *syn* addition. The resulting cyclic osmate ester can be isolated and then treated with either aqueous sodium sulfite (Na_2SO_3) or sodium bisulfite ($NaHSO_3$) to produce a diol:

This method can be used to convert alkenes into diols with fairly high yields, but there are several disadvantages. In particular, OsO_4 is expensive and toxic. To deal with these issues, several methods have been developed that use a co-oxidant that serves to regenerate OsO_4 as it is consumed during the reaction. In this way, OsO_4 functions as a catalyst so that even small quantities can produce large quantities of the diol. Typical co-oxidants include *N*-methylmorpholine *N*-oxide (NMO) and *tert*-butyl hydroperoxide:

A different, although mechanistically similar, method for achieving *syn* dihydroxylation involves treatment of alkenes with cold potassium permanganate under basic conditions:

Once again, a concerted process adds both oxygen atoms simultaneously across the double bond. Notice the similarity between the mechanisms of these two methods (OsO_4 vs. $KMnO_4$).

Potassium permanganate is fairly inexpensive; however, it is a very strong oxidizing agent, and it often causes further oxidation of the diol. Therefore, synthetic organic chemists often choose to use OsO_4 together with a co-oxidant to achieve *syn* dihydroxylation.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

8.31 Predict the product(s) for each of the following reactions. In each case, make sure to consider the number of chiral centers being formed.

8.13 Oxidative Cleavage

There are many reagents that will add across an alkene and completely cleave the C—C bond. In this section, we will explore one such reaction, called **ozonolysis**. Consider the following example:

Notice that the C═C bond is completely split apart to form two C═O bonds. Therefore, issues of stereochemistry and regiochemistry become irrelevant. In order to understand how this reaction occurs, we must first explore the structure of ozone.

Ozone is a compound with the following resonance structures:

LOOKING AHEAD
The role of ozone in atmospheric chemistry is discussed in Section 10.8.

Ozone is formed primarily in the upper atmosphere where oxygen gas (O_2) is bombarded with ultraviolet light. The ozone layer in our atmosphere serves to protect us from harmful UV radiation from the sun. Ozone can also be prepared in the laboratory, where it can serve a useful purpose. Ozone will react with an alkene to produce an initial, primary ozonide (or molozonide), which undergoes rearrangement to produce a more stable ozonide:

When treated with a mild reducing agent, the ozonide is converted into products:

Ozonide

Common examples of reducing agents include dimethyl sulfide (DMS) or Zn/H_2O:

The following SkillBuilder illustrates a simple method for drawing the products of ozonolysis.

SKILLBUILDER

8.8 PREDICTING THE PRODUCTS OF OZONOLYSIS

LEARN the skill

Predict the products of the following reaction:

SOLUTION

There are two C═C bonds in this compound. Begin by redrawing the compound with the C═C bonds longer than normal:

STEP 1
Redraw the C═C bonds longer than normal.

STEP 2
Erase the center of each C═C bond and place two oxygen atoms in the space.

Then, erase the center of each C═C bond and place two oxygen atoms in the space:

This simple procedure can be used for quickly drawing the products of any ozonolysis reaction.

PRACTICE the skill

8.32 Predict the products that are expected when each of the following compounds is treated with ozone followed by DMS:

(a)
(b)
(c)
(d)
(e)
(f)

8.33 Identify the structure of the starting alkene in each of the following cases:

(a) C_8H_{14} $\xrightarrow[\text{2) DMS}]{\text{1) } O_3}$

(b) $C_{10}H_{16}$ $\xrightarrow[\text{2) DMS}]{\text{1) } O_3}$

(c) $C_{10}H_{16}$ $\xrightarrow[\text{2) DMS}]{\text{1) } O_3}$

APPLY the skill

8.34 Synthetic chemists utilize a large variety of strategies for the synthesis of natural products. Indeed, new strategies are constantly being developed, many of which are inspired by (and mimic) the synthetic pathways employed by nature. As part of the development of one such strategy,[5] compound **1** was subjected to an ozonolysis process to afford compound **2**. During the process, four small molecules were also produced. Draw the structure of compound **2**, assuming that the aromatic ring in compound **1** is unreactive toward ozonolysis (as we will see in subsequent chapters). Also draw the structures of the four small molecules.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 8.67, 8.81, 8.93**

8.14 Predicting the Products of an Addition Reaction

Many addition reactions have been covered in this chapter, and in each case, there are several factors to take into account when predicting the products of a reaction. Let's now summarize the factors that are common to all addition reactions: In order to predict products properly, the following three questions must be considered:

1. What are the identities of the groups being added across the double bond?
2. What is the expected regioselectivity (Markovnikov or *anti*-Markovnikov addition)?
3. What is the expected stereospecificity (*syn* or *anti* addition)?

Answering all three questions requires a careful analysis of both the starting alkene and the reagents employed. It is absolutely essential to recognize reagents, and while that might sound like it involves a lot of memorization, it actually does not. By understanding the accepted mechanism for each reaction, you will intuitively understand all three pieces of information for each reaction. Remember that a proposed mechanism must explain the experimental observations. Therefore, the mechanism for each reaction can serve as the key to remembering the three pieces of information listed above.

SKILLBUILDER

8.9 PREDICTING THE PRODUCTS OF AN ADDITION REACTION

LEARN the skill

Predict the products of the following reaction:

SOLUTION

In order to predict the products, the following three questions must be answered:

STEP 1
Identify the two groups being added across the π bond.

1. ***Which two groups are being added across the double bond?*** To answer this question, it is necessary to recognize that these reagents achieve hydroboration-oxidation, which adds H and OH across a π bond. It would be impossible to solve this problem without being able to recognize the reagents. But even with that recognition, there are still two more questions that must be answered in order to draw the products.

STEP 2
Identify the expected regioselectivity.

2. *What is the expected regioselectivity (Markovnikov or anti-Markovnikov)?* We have seen that hydroboration-oxidation is an *anti*-Markovnikov process. Think about the accepted mechanism of this process and recall that there were two different explanations for the observed regioselectivity, one based on a steric argument and the other based on an electronic argument. An *anti*-Markovnikov addition means that the OH group is placed at the less substituted position:

STEP 3
Identify the expected stereospecificity.

3. *What is the expected stereospecificity (syn or anti)?* We have seen that hydroboration-oxidation produces a *syn* addition. Think about the mechanism of this process and recall the reason that was given for *syn* addition. In the first step, BH_2 and H are added to the same face of the alkene in a concerted process. To determine if this *syn* requirement is even relevant in this case, we must analyze how many chiral centers are being formed in the process:

Two new chiral centers are formed, and therefore, the requirement for *syn* addition is relevant. The reaction is expected to produce only the pair of enantiomers that would result from a *syn* addition:

PRACTICE the skill

8.35 Predict the products of each of the following reactions:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

(f)

(g)

(h)

(i)

APPLY the skill

8.36 *Syn* dihydroxylation of the compound below yields two products. Draw both products and describe their stereoisomeric relationship (i.e., are they enantiomers or diastereomers?):

8.37 Determine whether *syn* dihydroxylation of *trans*-2-butene will yield the same products as *anti* dihydroxylation of *cis*-2-butene. Draw the products in each case and compare them.

8.38 Compound **A** has the molecular formula C_5H_{10}. Hydroboration-oxidation of compound **A** produces a pair of enantiomers, compounds **B** and **C**. When treated with HBr, compound **A** is converted into compound **D**, which is a tertiary alkyl bromide. When treated with O_3 followed by DMS, compound **A** is converted into compounds **E** and **F**. Compound **E** has three carbon atoms, while compound **F** has only two carbon atoms. Identify the structures of compounds **A**, **B**, **C**, **D**, **E**, and **F**.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 8.49, 8.50, 8.64, 8.72**

8.15 Synthesis Strategies

In order to begin practicing synthesis problems, it is essential to master all of the individual reactions covered thus far. We will begin with one-step synthesis problems and then progress to cover multistep problems.

One-Step Syntheses

Until now, we have covered substitution reactions (S_N1 and S_N2), elimination reactions (E1 and E2), and addition reactions of alkenes. Let's quickly review what these reactions can accomplish. *Substitution reactions* convert one group into another (for review, see SkillBuilder 7.8):

Elimination reactions can be used to convert alkyl halides into alkenes (for review, see SkillBuilder 7.9):

Addition reactions are characterized by two groups adding across a double bond:

It is essential to familiarize yourself with the reagents employed for each type of addition reaction covered in this chapter.

SKILLBUILDER

8.10 PROPOSING A ONE-STEP SYNTHESIS

LEARN the skill

Identify the reagents that you would use to accomplish the following transformation:

STEP 1
For an addition reaction, identify the two groups being added across the π bond.

STEPS 2 and 3
Identify the regioselectivity and stereospecificity.

SOLUTION

First, determine what type of transformation has taken place: substitution, elimination, or addition. Strategies for solving substitution and elimination transformations were developed in SkillBuilders 7.8 and 7.9, respectively. For an addition reaction, we approach this problem using the same three questions developed in the previous section:

1. Which two groups are being added across the double bond?—H and OH.
2. What is the regioselectivity?—Markovnikov addition.
3. What is the stereospecificity?—Not relevant (no chiral centers formed).

STEP 4
Identify reagents that will achieve the details described in the first three steps.

This transformation requires reagents that will give a Markovnikov addition of H and OH. This can be accomplished in either of two ways: acid-catalyzed hydration or oxymercuration-demercuration. Acid-catalyzed hydration might be more simple in this case, because there is no concern of a carbocation rearrangement:

If rearrangement were possible, then oxymercuration-demercuration would have been the preferred route.

PRACTICE the skill

8.39 Identify the reagents that you would use to accomplish each of the following transformations:

APPLY the skill

8.40 Consider the retrosynthesis of each of the following target molecules. In each case, provide at least two possible starting materials that could be used to prepare the target molecule.

8.41 AZT was the first HIV treatment to be approved by the Food and Drug Administration. HIV may become AZT-resistant over time, so new drugs are always being sought. As part of this effort, compound **2** was made from compound **1** and was shown to have modest activity against HIV.[6] For reasons that will be discussed in later chapters, the C═C bond inside the six-membered ring is less reactive than the C═C bond outside the five-membered ring, allowing for selective addition at the more reactive C═C bond.

(a) What set of reagents will accomplish the conversion from **1** to **2**?

(b) This transformation is an example of a *diastereoselective* reaction. That is, there is a preference for the reaction to occur on one face of the π bond, giving compound **2**. Explain the source of this preference.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 8.59, 8.61, 8.69, 8.70, 8.75**

Changing the Position of a Halogen or OH Group

Now let's get some practice combining the reactions covered thus far. As an example, consider the following transformation:

The net result is the change in position of the Br atom. How can this type of transformation be achieved? This chapter did not present a one-step method for moving the location of a bromine atom. However, this transformation can be accomplished in two steps: an elimination reaction followed by an addition reaction:

This same strategy could be revealed by performing a retrosynthetic analysis of the target molecule. There is more than one potential starting material to synthesize the tertiary alkyl bromide, but only the trisubstituted alkene is an intermediate compound that can also be readily prepared from the given starting material.

An alkene is an ideal intermediate to change the position of a bromine atom, because elimination of an alkyl bromide generates a π bond, and addition of HBr to the π bond generates an alkyl bromide.

When performing this two-step sequence, there are a few important issues to keep in mind. In the first step (elimination), the product can be the more substituted alkene (Zaitsev product) or the less substituted alkene (Hofmann product):

Note that a careful choice of reagents makes it possible to control the regiochemical outcome, as we first saw in Section 7.7. With a strong base, such as sodium methoxide (NaOMe) or sodium ethoxide (NaOEt), the major product is the more substituted alkene. With a strong, sterically hindered base, such as potassium *tert*-butoxide (*t*-BuOK), the major product is the less substituted alkene. After forming the double bond, the regiochemical outcome of the next step (addition of HBr) can also be controlled by the reagents used. HBr produces a Markovnikov addition while HBr/ROOR produces an *anti*-Markovnikov addition.

The same general strategy (elimination followed by addition) can be used to change the position of an OH group, but we must remember that hydroxide is a very poor leaving group. Let's see what to do when dealing with an OH group. As an example, consider how the following transformation might be achieved:

Our strategy would suggest the following steps:

However, this sequence presents a serious obstacle in that the first step is an elimination reaction in which OH would be the leaving group. It is possible to protonate an OH group using concentrated acid, which converts a bad leaving group into an excellent leaving group (see Section 7.10). However, the acid-catalyzed dehydration of an alcohol cannot be used here because it is an E1 process, which always yields the Zaitsev product, not the Hofmann product. The regiochemical outcome of an E1 process cannot be controlled. The regiochemical outcome of an E2 process can be controlled, but an E2 process cannot be used in this example, because OH is a bad leaving group. It is not possible to protonate the OH group with a strong acid and then use a strong base to achieve an E2 reaction, because when mixed together, a strong base and a strong acid will simply neutralize each other. The question remains: How can an E2 process be performed when the desired leaving group is an OH group?

In Chapter 7, we explored a method that would allow an E2 process in this example, which maintains control over the regiochemical outcome. The OH group can first be converted into a tosylate, which is a much better leaving group than OH (for a review of tosylates, see Section 7.10). After the OH group is converted into a tosylate, the strategy outlined above can be followed. Specifically, a strong, sterically hindered base is used for the elimination reaction, followed by *anti*-Markovnikov addition of H and OH:

SKILLBUILDER

8.11 CHANGING THE POSITION OF A HALOGEN OR AN OH GROUP

LEARN the skill

Identify the reagents you would use to accomplish the following transformation:

STEP 1
Control the regiochemical outcome of elimination by choosing the appropriate reagents.

SOLUTION

This problem shows Br changing its position. This can be accomplished with a two-step process: (1) elimination to form a double bond followed by (2) addition across that double bond:

STEP 2
Control the regiochemical outcome of addition by choosing the appropriate reagents.

Care must be taken to control the regiochemical outcome in each of these steps. In the elimination step, the product with the less substituted double bond (i.e., the Hofmann product) is desired, and therefore, a sterically hindered base must be used. In the addition step, Br must be installed at the less substituted position (*anti*-Markovnikov addition), and therefore, we must use HBr with peroxides. This gives the following overall synthesis:

PRACTICE the skill

8.42 Identify the reagents you would use to accomplish each of the following transformations:

APPLY the skill

8.43 The strategy of using an alkene intermediate in a two-step process to convert one functional group into another (called a *functional group interconversion*) can apply to a wide variety of transformations. Identify the reagents you would use to accomplish each of the following functional group interconversions:

8.44 Bioethanol, ethanol produced by fermentation of sugars, is a desirable starting material for chemical synthesis since it comes from renewable resources.[7] Identify the reagents you would use to accomplish the following industrial transformation that converts ethanol to ethylene glycol:

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 8.57, 8.76**

Changing the Position of a π Bond

In the previous section, we combined two reactions in one synthetic strategy—*eliminate and then add*—which enabled us to change the location of a halogen or hydroxyl group. Now, let's focus on another type of strategy—*add and then eliminate*:

Once again, a retrosynthetic analysis of the alkene target molecule reveals this synthetic strategy:

The target molecule (a monosubstituted alkene) can be prepared by an elimination reaction, so we delete the π bond and place H and Br atoms on those two carbon atoms to draw a suitable alkyl halide starting material. The Br atom is placed on the more-substituted carbon atom, because that allows us to continue the retrosynthesis back to the given starting material (which has a π bond at that position).

This two-step sequence (addition followed by elimination) makes it possible to change the position of a π bond. When using this strategy, the regioselectivity of each step can be carefully controlled. In the first step (addition), Markovnikov addition is achieved by using HBr, while *anti*-Markovnikov addition is achieved by using HBr with peroxides. In the second step (elimination), the Zaitsev product can be obtained by using a strong base, while the Hofmann product can be obtained by using a strong, sterically hindered base.

SKILLBUILDER

8.12 CHANGING THE POSITION OF A π BOND

LEARN the skill

Identify the reagents you would use to accomplish the following transformation:

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Control the regiochemical outcome of addition by choosing the appropriate reagents.

STEP 2
Control the regiochemical outcome of elimination by choosing the appropriate base.

This example involves moving the position of a π bond. We have not seen a way to accomplish this transformation in one step. However, it can be accomplished in two steps—addition followed by elimination:

In the first step, a Markovnikov addition is required (Br must be placed at the more substituted carbon), which can be accomplished by using HBr. The second step requires an elimination to give the Hofmann product, which can be accomplished with a sterically hindered base, such as *tert*-butoxide. Therefore, the overall synthesis is:

PRACTICE the skill

8.45 Identify the reagents you would use to accomplish each of the following transformations:

APPLY the skill

8.46 Compound **3** below, called mycoepoxydiene, has been isolated from a marine fungus and has been shown to possess anti-cancer and anti-inflammatory properties. It contains an unusual oxygen-bridged cyclooctadiene skeleton. Both enantiomers of this compound were made in the laboratory.[8] Show the reagents you would use to convert compound **1** into compound **2**.

1 **2** **3**

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 8.53, 8.77, 8.84**

REVIEW OF REACTIONS

1. Hydrohalogenation (Markovnikov)
2. Hydrohalogenation (*anti*-Markovnikov)
3. Acid-catalyzed hydration and oxymercuration-demercuration
4. Hydroboration-oxidation
5. Hydrogenation
6. Bromination
7. Halohydrin formation
8. *Anti* dihydroxylation
9. *Syn* dihydroxylation
10. Ozonolysis

REVIEW OF CONCEPTS AND VOCABULARY

Section 8.1

- **Addition reactions** are characterized by the addition of two groups across a double bond.

Section 8.2

- Alkenes are abundant in nature.
- Ethylene and propylene, both formed from cracking petroleum, are used as starting materials for a wide variety of compounds.

Section 8.3

- In addition to their systematic and common names, alkenes are also classified by their *degree of substitution*, which refers to the number of alkyl groups connected to a double bond.

Section 8.4

- Addition reactions are thermodynamically favorable at low temperature and disfavored at high temperature.

Section 8.5

- **Hydrohalogenation** reactions are characterized by the addition of H and X across a π bond, where X is a halogen.
- For unsymmetrical alkenes, the placement of the halogen represents an issue of regiochemistry. Hydrohalogenation reactions are *regioselective*, because the halogen is generally installed at the more substituted position, called **Markovnikov addition**.
- In the presence of peroxides, addition of HBr proceeds via an ***anti*-Markovnikov addition**.
- The regioselectivity of an ionic addition reaction is determined by the preference for the reaction to proceed through the more stable carbocation intermediate.
- When one new chiral center is formed, a racemic mixture of enantiomers is obtained.
- Hydrohalogenation reactions are only efficient when carbocation rearrangements are not a concern.

Section 8.6

- Addition of water (H and OH) across a double bond is called **hydration**.
- Addition of water in the presence of an acid is called **acid-catalyzed hydration**, which generally proceeds via a Markovnikov addition.
- Acid-catalyzed hydration proceeds via a carbocation intermediate, which is attacked by water to produce an **oxonium ion**, followed by deprotonation.

- Acid-catalyzed hydration is inefficient when carbocation rearrangements are a concern.
- Dilute acid favors formation of the alcohol, while concentrated acid favors the alkene.
- When generating a new chiral center, a racemic mixture of enantiomers is expected.

Section 8.7

- **Oxymercuration-demercuration** achieves hydration of an alkene without carbocation rearrangements.
- The reaction is believed to proceed via a bridged intermediate called a **mercurinium ion**.

Section 8.8

- **Hydroboration-oxidation** can be used to achieve an *anti*-Markovnikov addition of water across an alkene. The reaction is stereospecific and proceeds via a ***syn* addition**.
- Borane (BH_3) exists in equilibrium with its dimer, **diborane**, which exhibits **three-center, two-electron bonds**.
- Hydroboration proceeds via a concerted process, in which borane is attacked by a π bond, triggering a *simultaneous* hydride shift.

Section 8.9

- **Catalytic hydrogenation** involves the addition of H_2 across an alkene in the presence of a metal catalyst.
- The reaction proceeds via a *syn* addition.
- **Heterogeneous catalysts** are not soluble in the reaction medium, while **homogeneous catalysts** are.
- **Asymmetric hydrogenation** can be achieved with a chiral catalyst.

Section 8.10

- **Halogenation** involves the addition of X_2 (either Br_2 or Cl_2) across an alkene.
- Bromination proceeds via a bridged intermediate, called a **bromonium ion**, which is opened by an S_N2 process that produces an ***anti* addition**.
- In the presence of water, the product is a **bromohydrin** or a **chlorohydrin**, and the reaction is called **halohydrin formation**.

Section 8.11

- **Dihydroxylation** reactions are characterized by the addition of OH and OH across an alkene.
- A two-step procedure for *anti* dihydroxylation involves conversion of an alkene to an **epoxide**, followed by acid-catalyzed ring opening.

Section 8.12

- *Syn* dihydroxylation can be achieved with osmium tetroxide or potassium permanganate.

Section 8.13

- **Ozonolysis** can be used to cleave a double bond and produce two carbonyl groups.

Section 8.14

- In order to predict the products of an addition reaction, the following three questions must be considered:
  - What is the identity of the groups being added across the double bond?
  - What is the expected regioselectivity (Markovnikov or *anti*-Markovnikov addition)?
  - What is the expected stereospecificity (*syn* or *anti* addition)?

Section 8.15

- The position of a halogen or OH group can be changed via elimination followed by addition.
- The position of a π bond can be changed via addition followed by elimination.

SKILLBUILDER REVIEW

8.1 DRAWING A MECHANISM FOR HYDROHALOGENATION

STEP 1 Using two curved arrows, protonate the alkene to form the more stable carbocation.

STEP 2 Using one curved arrow, draw the halide ion attacking the carbocation.

Try Problems **8.7, 8.8, 8.51c, 8.68, 8.71**

8.2 DRAWING A MECHANISM FOR A HYDROHALOGENATION PROCESS WITH A CARBOCATION REARRANGEMENT

STEP 1 Using two curved arrows, protonate the alkene to form the more stable carbocation.

STEP 2 Using one curved arrow, draw a carbocation rearrangement that forms a more stable carbocation, via either a hydride shift or a methyl shift.

STEP 3 Using one curved arrow, draw the halide ion attacking the carbocation.

Try Problems **8.10, 8.11, 8.51d, 8.79, 8.87, 8.92**

8.3 DRAWING A MECHANISM FOR AN ACID-CATALYZED HYDRATION

STEP 1 Using two curved arrows, protonate the alkene to form the more stable carbocation.

STEP 2 Using one curved arrow, draw water attacking the carbocation.

STEP 3 Using two curved arrows, deprotonate the oxonium ion using water as a base.

Try Problems **8.14, 8.15, 8.51a,b, 8.63, 8.83**

8.4 PREDICTING THE PRODUCTS OF HYDROBORATION-OXIDATION

STEP 1 Determine the regiochemical outcome based on the requirement for *anti*-Markovnikov addition.

STEP 2 Determine the stereochemical outcome based on the requirement for *syn* addition.

Try Problems **8.20, 8.21, 8.65, 8.73**

8.5 PREDICTING THE PRODUCTS OF CATALYTIC HYDROGENATION

STEP 1 Determine the number of chiral centers formed in the process.

STEP 2 Determine the stereochemical outcome based on the requirement for *syn* addition.

STEP 3 Verify that the products do not represent a single *meso* compound.

Try Problems **8.22, 8.23, 8.55, 8.74, 8.80a, 8.91**

8.6 PREDICTING THE PRODUCTS OF HALOHYDRIN FORMATION

STEP 1 Determine the regiochemical outcome. The OH group should be placed at the more substituted position.

STEP 2 Determine the stereochemical outcome based on the requirement for *anti* addition.

Try Problems **8.25–8.27, 8.72, 8.85**

8.7 DRAWING THE PRODUCTS OF *ANTI* DIHYDROXYLATION

STEP 1 Determine the number of chiral centers formed in the process.

STEP 2 Determine the stereochemical outcome based on the requirement for *anti* addition.

Try Problems **8.28–8.30, 8.64d**

8.8 PREDICTING THE PRODUCTS OF OZONOLYSIS

STEP 1 Redraw the compound with the C═C double bonds longer than normal.

STEP 2 Erase the center of each C═C double bond and place two oxygen atoms in the space.

Try Problems **8.32–8.34, 8.67, 8.81, 8.93**

8.9 PREDICTING THE PRODUCTS OF AN ADDITION REACTION

STEP 1 Identify the two groups being added across the π bond.

Adds H and OH

STEP 2 Identify the expected regioselectivity.

OH is installed here at the less substituted position

STEP 3 Identify the expected stereospecificity.

Try Problems **8.35–8.38, 8.49, 8.50, 8.64, 8.72**

8.10 PROPOSING A ONE-STEP SYNTHESIS

STEP 1 Identify which two groups were added across the π bond.

STEP 2 Identify the regioselectivity.

Markovnikov addition

STEP 3 Identify the stereospecificity.

No chiral centers Not relevant

STEP 4 Identify reagents that will achieve the details specified in the first three steps.

Try Problems **8.39–8.41, 8.59, 8.61, 8.69, 8.70, 8.75**

8.11 CHANGING THE POSITION OF A HALOGEN OR AN OH GROUP

STEP 1 Control the regiochemical outcome of the first step by choosing the appropriate reagents.

STEP 2 Control the regiochemical outcome of the second step by choosing the reagents to achieve either Markovnikov or *anti*-Markovnikov addition.

Try Problems **8.42–8.44, 8.57, 8.76**

8.12 CHANGING THE POSITION OF A π BOND

STEP 1 Control the regiochemical outcome of the first step by choosing the reagents to achieve either Markovnikov or *anti*-Markovnikov addition.

STEP 2 Control the regiochemical outcome of the second step by choosing the appropriate base.

Try Problems **8.45, 8.46, 8.53, 8.77, 8.84**

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

• **Included in Answers section**

8.47 • Assign a systematic (IUPAC) name for each of the following compounds:

8.48 At high temperatures, alkanes can undergo *dehydrogenation* to produce alkenes. For example:

This reaction is used industrially to prepare ethylene while simultaneously serving as a source of hydrogen gas. Explain why dehydrogenation only works at high temperatures.

8.49 Predict the major product(s) for each of the following reactions:

8.50 Predict the major product(s) for each of the following reactions:

8.51 • Propose a mechanism for each of the following reactions:

8.52 Compound **A** reacts with one equivalent of H_2 in the presence of a catalyst to give methylcyclohexane. Compound **A** can be formed upon treatment of 1-bromo-1-methylcyclohexane with sodium methoxide. What is the structure of compound **A**?

8.53 Suggest an efficient synthesis for each of the following transformations:

8.54 • Suggest an efficient synthesis for the following transformation:

8.55 How many different alkenes (with the molecular formula C_7H_{14}) will produce 2,4-dimethylpentane upon hydrogenation? Draw them.

8.56 Compound **A** is an alkene that was treated with ozone (followed by DMS) to yield only $(CH_3CH_2CH_2)_2C{=}O$. Identify the major product that is expected when compound **A** is treated with a peroxy acid (RCO_3H) followed by aqueous acid (H_3O^+).

8.57 Suggest an efficient synthesis for each of the following transformations:

8.58 Compound **A** has the molecular formula $C_7H_{15}Br$. Treatment of compound **A** with sodium ethoxide yields only one elimination product (compound **B**) and no substitution products. When compound **B** is treated with dilute sulfuric acid, compound **C** is obtained, which has the molecular formula $C_7H_{16}O$. Draw the structures of compounds **A**, **B**, and **C**.

8.59 Suggest suitable reagents to perform each of the following transformations:

8.60 (*R*)-Limonene is found in many citrus fruits, including oranges and lemons:

Draw the structures and identify the relationship of the two products obtained when (*R*)-limonene is treated with excess hydrogen in the presence of a catalyst.

8.61 Suggest suitable reagents to perform the following transformation:

8.62 Propose a mechanism for the following transformation:

8.63 Propose a mechanism for the following transformation:

8.64 Predict the major product(s) for each of the following reactions:

8.65 Explain why each of the following alcohols cannot be prepared via hydroboration-oxidation:

8.66 Compound **X** is treated with Br_2 to yield *meso*-2,3-dibromobutane. What is the structure of compound **X**?

8.67 Identify the alkene that would yield the following products via ozonolysis:

8.68 The following reaction is observed to be regioselective. Draw a mechanism for the reaction and explain the source of regioselectivity in this case:

8.69 Identify the reagents you would use to accomplish each of the following transformations:

8.70 Identify the reagents you would use to accomplish each of the following transformations:

8.71 Identify which of the following two reactions you would expect to occur more rapidly: (1) addition of HBr to 2-methyl-2-pentene or (2) addition of HBr to 4-methyl-1-pentene. Explain your choice.

8.72 • Predict the major product(s) of the following reaction:

8.73 Compound **A** has the molecular formula C_5H_{10}. Hydroboration-oxidation of compound **A** produces one alcohol with no chiral centers. Draw two possible structures for compound **A**.

8.74 In much the same way that they react with H_2, alkenes also react with D_2 (deuterium is an isotope of hydrogen). Use this information to predict the product(s) of the following reaction:

8.75 Identify what reagents you would use to achieve each transformation:

(a) Conversion of 2-methyl-2-butene into a secondary alkyl halide

(b) Conversion of 2-methyl-2-butene into a tertiary alkyl halide

(c) Conversion of *cis*-2-butene into a *meso* diol

(d) Conversion of *cis*-2-butene into enantiomeric diols

8.76 Identify the reagents you would use to achieve each of the following transformations:

(a) Convert *tert*-butyl bromide into a primary alkyl halide

(b) Convert 2-bromopropane into 1-bromopropane

8.77 Identify the reagents you would use to accomplish each of the following transformations:

(a) Convert 2-methyl-2-butene into a monosubstituted alkene

(b) Convert 2,3-dimethyl-1-hexene into a tetrasubstituted alkene

8.78 When 1-methoxy-2-methylpropene is treated with HCl, the major product is 1-chloro-1-methoxy-2-methylpropane. Although this reaction proceeds via an ionic mechanism, the Cl is ultimately positioned at the less substituted carbon. Draw a mechanism that is consistent with this outcome and then explain why the less substituted carbocation intermediate is more stable in this case.

1-Methoxy-2-methylpropene **1-Chloro-1-methoxy-2-methylpropane**

8.79 The accepted mechanism for the following transformation involves a carbocation rearrangement. Rather than occurring via a methyl shift or a hydride shift, a carbon atom of the ring migrates, thereby converting a secondary carbocation into a more stable, tertiary carbocation. Using this information, draw a mechanism for the following transformation:

8.80 Compound **X** has the molecular formula C_5H_{10}. In the presence of a metal catalyst, compound **X** reacts with one equivalent of molecular hydrogen to yield 2-methylbutane.

(a) Suggest three possible structures for compound **X**.

(b) Hydroboration-oxidation of compound **X** yields a product with no chiral centers. Identify the structure of compound **X**.

ACS-STYLE PROBLEMS (Multiple Choice)

Problems 8.81–8.89 follow the style of the ACS organic chemistry exam. For each of these problems, there will be one correct answer and three distractors.

8.81 • Which of the following compounds is NOT a product of this ozonolysis reaction?

(a)
(b)
(c)
(d)

8.82 • Which of the following represents an efficient method for preparing the alcohol shown?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

8.83 • Consider the following acid-catalyzed hydration reaction:

Which of the following ions are intermediates in the accepted mechanism for this process?

I II III IV

(a) I, II, and III
(b) I and II
(c) None of the above. The process is concerted.
(d) Only IV

8.84 • Provide suitable reagents for the following transformation.

	Step 1	Step 2
(a)	HBr	NaOMe
(b)	HBr, ROOR	NaOMe
(c)	HBr	*t*-BuOK
(d)	HBr, ROOR	*t*-BuOK

8.85 • Predict the major product of the following reaction.

(a)

(racemic)

(b)

(racemic)

(c)

(racemic)

(d)

(racemic)

8.86 • Predict the major product of the following reaction.

(a)

(racemic)

(b)

(racemic)

(c)

(racemic)

(d)

(racemic)

8.87 • Which of the following represents a likely step in the mechanism of the given reaction?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

8.88 • Of the following, which is the most stable alkene?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

8.89 • What is the IUPAC name of the given compound?

(a) (*E*)-3-butyl-4-methyl-2-pentene
(b) (*Z*)-3-butyl-4-methyl-2-pentene
(c) (*E*)-3-(1-methylethyl)-2-heptene
(d) (*Z*)-3-(2-propyl)-2-heptene

INTEGRATED PROBLEMS

8.90 • Suggest an efficient synthesis for the following transformation:

8.91 Compound **X** has the molecular formula C_7H_{14}. Hydrogenation of compound **X** produces 2,4-dimethylpentane. Hydroboration-oxidation of compound **X** produces a racemic mixture of 2,4-dimethyl-1-pentanol (shown below). Predict the major product(s) obtained when compound **X** is treated with aqueous acid (H_3O^+).

2,4-Dimethyl-1-pentanol

8.92 When (*R*)-2-chloro-3-methylbutane is treated with potassium *tert*-butoxide, a monosubstituted alkene is obtained. When this alkene is treated with HBr, a mixture of products is obtained. Draw all of the expected products.

8.93 Compound **Y** has the molecular formula C_7H_{12}. Hydrogenation of compound **Y** produces methylcyclohexane. Treatment of compound **Y** with HBr in the presence of peroxides produces the following compound:

Predict the products when compound **Y** undergoes ozonolysis.

8.94 Muscalure is the sex pheromone of the common housefly and has the molecular formula $C_{23}H_{46}$. When treated with O_3 followed by DMS, the following two compounds are produced. Draw two possible structures for muscalure.

8.95 Propose a plausible mechanism for each of the following reactions:

(a)

(b)

8.96 Suggest an efficient synthesis for the following transformation:

8.97 Propose a plausible mechanism for the following reaction:

8.98 Propose a plausible mechanism for the following process, called iodolactonization:

8.99 When 3-bromocyclopentene is treated with HBr, the observed product is a racemic mixture of *trans*-1,2-dibromocyclopentane. None of the corresponding *cis*-dibromide is observed. Propose a mechanism that accounts for the observed stereochemical outcome:

8.100 Progesterone is a hormone that helps prepare a woman's body for pregnancy and regulates menstrual cycles. In a synthesis of progesterone,[9] an alkene with the molecular formula $C_{21}H_{32}O$ (compound **A**) was subjected to an ozonolysis process to afford a single product, compound **B**, a tri-ketone that was directly converted into progesterone.

Compound **A** could theoretically be one of three different alkenes; however, only one of the three options is a reasonable molecule. Consider the three options, determine which two are unreasonable, and propose the structure of compound **A**.

8.101 Taxol (compound **3**) can be isolated from the bark of the Pacific yew tree, *Taxus brevifolia*, and is currently used in the treatment of

several kinds of cancer, including breast cancer. Each yew tree contains a very small quantity of the precious compound (approximately 300 mg), enough for just one dose for one person. This fueled great interest in a synthetic route to taxol, and indeed, several total syntheses have been reported. During K. C. Nicolaou's synthesis of taxol, compound **1** was treated with BH_3 in THF, followed by oxidative workup, to afford alcohol **2**. The formation of **2** is observed to occur regioselectively as well as stereoselectively.[10]

(a) Identify the functional group in **1** that will react with BH_3 and justify your choice.

(b) In compound **1**, the benzyl group ($C_6H_5CH_2-$) is extremely large and provides significant steric hindrance during the hydroboration process. With this in mind, predict the regiochemical and stereochemical outcome of the process and draw the structure of compound **2**.

8.102 When adamantylideneadamantane, shown below, is treated with bromine, the corresponding bromonium ion forms in high yield. This intermediate is stable and does not undergo further nucleophilic attack by bromide ion to give the dibromide.[11] Draw the structure of the bromonium ion and explain why it is so inert toward further nucleophilic attack. Draw a reaction coordinate diagram that is consistent with your explanation and compare and contrast it to a reaction coordinate diagram for a more typical dibromination, such as that of propylene.

8.103 Diisopinocampheylborane (Ipc_2BH) is a chiral organoborane, readily employed for the production of many asymmetric products used in total synthesis. It is a crystalline material that can be prepared as a single enantiomer via the hydroboration of two equivalents of α-pinene with borane.[12] Explain why only one enantiomer of Ipc_2BH is formed.

8.104 Zaragozic acids are a group of structurally related, natural products that were first isolated from fungal cultures in 1992. These compounds have been shown to reduce cholesterol levels in primates, an observation that has fueled interest in the synthesis of zaragozic acids and their derivatives. During a synthesis of zaragozic acid A, compound **1** was treated with NMO and catalytic OsO_4 to afford intermediate **2**, which quickly rearranged to give compound **3**.[13] The conversion of **1** to **2** was observed to proceed in a diastereoselective fashion. That is, *syn* addition only occurs on the top face of the π bond, not on the bottom face. Provide a justification for this facial selectivity. You might find it helpful to build a molecular model.

8.105 Monensin is a potent antibiotic compound isolated from *Streptomyces cinnamonensis*. The following reaction was employed during W. C. Still's synthesis of monensin.[14] Sodium bicarbonate ($NaHCO_3$) functions as a mild base to deprotonate the carboxylic acid group. The transformation is said to be diastereoselective, because only one diastereomeric product (5*S*,6*S*) is obtained. The other expected diastereomer (5*R*,6*R*) is not observed.

(a) This type of process, called iodolactonization, was already encountered in Problem 8.98. Draw a mechanism for this transformation.

(b) The stereochemical outcome can be rationalized with a conformational analysis of compound **1**. Draw a Newman projection looking down the C4–C5 bond and identify the lowest energy conformation. Use your findings to rationalize the observed diastereoselectivity.

CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

8.106 The following table provides relative rates of oxymercuration for a variety of alkenes with mercuric acetate.[15] Provide structural explanations for the trend observed in the relative rates of reactivity.

Alkenes	Relative Reactivity
$CH_2{=}C(CH_3)(CH_2CH_2CH_3)$, **1**	1000
$CH_2{=}CHCH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$, **2**	100
$CH_2{=}CHCH_2OMe$, **3**	31.8
$CH(CH_3){=}C(CH_3)_2$, **4**	25.8
$CH_2{=}CHCH_2Cl$, **5**	2.4

8.107 9-Borabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane (9-BBN) is a reagent commonly used in the hydroboration of alkynes (Section 9.7), but it can also be employed in reactions with alkenes. The following table provides the relative rates of hydroboration (using 9-BBN) for a variety of alkenes:[15]

Alkenes	Relative Reactivity
$CH_2{=}CHOBu$, **1**	1615
$CH_2{=}CHBu$, **2**	100
$CH_2{=}CHCH_2OMe$, **3**	32.5
$CH_2{=}CHOAc$, **4**	22.8
$CH_2{=}CHCH_2OAc$, **5**	21.9
$CH_2{=}CHCH_2CN$, **6**	5.9
$CH_2{=}CHCH_2Cl$, **7**	4.0
cis-2-Butene, **8**	0.95
trans-$CH_3CH_2CH{=}CHCl$, **9**	0.003

(a) Provide a structural explanation for the relative rates of reactivity for compounds **1–5**. Be sure to explore resonance effects as well as inductive effects.

(b) Provide a structural explanation for the relative rates of reactivity for compounds **5, 6**, and **7**.

(c) Provide a structural explanation for the relative rates of reactivity for compounds **2, 8**, and **9**.

8.108 Propose a plausible mechanism for the following transformation, which was used as the key step in the formation of the natural product heliol.[16]

8.109 Reserpine can be isolated from the extracts of the Indian snakeroot *Rauwolfia serpentina* and has been used in the effective treatment of mental disorders. R. B. Woodward employed the following reaction sequence in his classic 1958 synthesis of reserpine.[17] After compound **1** was prepared, it was treated with molecular bromine, followed by sodium methoxide, to afford compound **2**, which rapidly undergoes a *Michael reaction* to give compound **3** (Michael reactions will be covered in Chapter 21). Propose a plausible mechanism for the conversion of **1** to the short-lived intermediate **2**.

LIST OF REFERENCES

1. *Aust. J. Chem.* **1987**, *40*, 1321–1325.
2. *Acta Chem. Scand.* **1997**, *51*, 1134–1137.
3. *J. Chem. Ecol.* **1989**, *15*, 541–548.
4. *Org. Lett.* **2004**, *6*, 4439–4442.
5. *J. Org. Chem.* **2014**, *79*, **11661**–11673.
6. *Bioorg. Med. Chem.* **1995**, *3*, 1223–1229.
7. *Materials* **2013**, *6*, 101–115.
8. *Org. Lett.* **2002**, *4*, 2941–2943.
9. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1971**, *93*, 4332–4334.
10. *Nature* **1994**, *367*, 630–634.
11. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1985**, *107*, 4504–4508.
12. *J. Org. Chem.* **1984**, *49*, 945–947.
13. *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed.* **1994**, *33*, 2187–2190.
14. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1980**, *102*, 2118–2120.
15. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1989**, *111*, 1414–1418.
16. *Org. Lett.* **2012**, *14*, 2929–2931.
17. *Tetrahedron* **1958**, *2*, 1–57.

9

Alkynes

pokki77/Shutterstock

9.1 Introduction to Alkynes
9.2 Nomenclature of Alkynes
9.3 Acidity of Acetylene and Terminal Alkynes
9.4 Preparation of Alkynes
9.5 Reduction of Alkynes
9.6 Hydrohalogenation of Alkynes
9.7 Hydration of Alkynes
9.8 Halogenation of Alkynes
9.9 Ozonolysis of Alkynes
9.10 Alkylation of Terminal Alkynes
9.11 Synthesis Strategies

DID YOU EVER **WONDER...**

what causes Parkinson's disease and how it is treated?

Parkinson's disease is a motor system disorder that affects an estimated 3% of the U.S population over the age of 60. The main symptoms of Parkinson's disease include trembling and stiffness of the limbs, slowness of movement, and impaired balance. Parkinson's disease is a neurodegenerative disease, because the symptoms are caused by the degeneration of neurons (brain cells). The neurons most affected by the disease are located in a region of the brain called the *substantia nigra*. When these neurons die, they cease to produce dopamine, a neurotransmitter used by the brain to regulate voluntary movement. The symptoms described above begin to appear when 50–80% of dopamine-producing neurons have died. There is no known cure for the disease, which is progressive. However, the symptoms can be treated through a variety of methods. One such method utilizes a drug called selegiline, whose molecular structure contains a C≡C bond. We will see that the presence of the triple bond plays an important role in the action of this drug. This chapter explores the properties and reactivity of compounds with C≡C bonds called *alkynes*.

SciePro/Shutterstock

pokki77/Shutterstock

DO YOU **REMEMBER?**

Before you go on, be sure you understand the following topics.
If necessary, review the suggested sections to prepare for this chapter.

- Brønsted-Lowry Acidity (Section 3.4)
- Nucleophiles and Electrophiles (Section 6.7)
- Energy Diagrams (Sections 6.5, 6.6)
- Arrow Pushing (Sections 6.8–6.10)

Take the DO YOU **REMEMBER?** QUIZ in the **online course** to check your understanding.

9.1 Introduction to Alkynes

Structure and Geometry of Alkynes

The previous chapter explored the reactivity of alkenes. In this chapter, we expand that discussion to include the reactivity of **alkynes**, compounds containing a C≡C bond. Recall from Section 1.10 that a triple bond is comprised of three separate bonds: a σ bond and two π bonds. The σ bond results from the overlap of *sp*-hybridized orbitals, while each of the π bonds results from overlapping *p* orbitals (Figure 9.1). These π bonds occupy large regions of space (larger than the *p* orbitals depicted in Figure 9.1), giving rise to a cylindrical region of high electron density encircling the triple bond. This can be visualized with an electrostatic potential map of acetylene (H—C≡C—H), shown in Figure 9.2. The region shown in red (high electron density) explains why alkynes are reactive. Indeed, alkynes are similar to alkenes in their ability to function as bases or as nucleophiles. We will see examples of both behaviors in this chapter.

FIGURE 9.1
The atomic orbitals used to form a triple bond. The σ bond is formed from the overlap of two hybridized orbitals, while each of the two π bonds is formed from overlapping *p* orbitals.

FIGURE 9.2
An electrostatic potential map of acetylene, indicating a cylindrical region of high electron density (red).

The bond angles of acetylene are observed to be 180° (linear geometry), consistent with *sp* hybridization (Section 1.10). This linear geometry makes it difficult to incorporate a triple bond into a small ring, because ring strain would force the bond angles to deviate from the ideal 180°. Even cyclononyne (in which a triple bond is incorporated in a nine-membered ring) decomposes at room temperature as a result of ring strain:

Cyclononyne

Some important trends emerge if we compare properties of ethane, ethylene, and acetylene.

Ethane **Ethylene** **Acetylene**

As seen in Table 9.1, the C—C bond length differs for each of these compounds, as does the C—H bond length. Specifically, ethane has the longest C—C and C—H bond lengths, while acetylene has the shortest C—C and C—H bond lengths. These differences can be rationalized if

we consider the hybridization states in each case. In ethane, the carbon atoms utilize sp^3-hybridized orbitals, each of which was constructed from one *s* orbital and three *p* orbitals. As such, each of these hybridized orbitals has 25% *s*-character. In contrast, the carbon atoms in ethylene utilize sp^2-hybridized orbitals. These orbitals were constructed from one *s* orbital and two *p* orbitals, so each of these hybridized orbitals has 33% *s*-character. A similar analysis of acetylene gives hybridized orbitals with 50% *s*-character. Recall that *s* orbitals are closer than *p* orbitals to the positively charged nucleus. Since *sp*-hybridized orbitals have the most *s*-character (50%), these hybridized orbitals are held closest to the nucleus, giving shorter bond lengths. This explains why the C—H bonds are shortest in acetylene. The carbon atoms in acetylene utilize *sp*-hybridized orbitals to form bonds with the hydrogen atoms, and a high degree of *s*-character gives rise to shorter C—H bonds. In contrast, the carbon atoms in ethane utilize sp^3-hybridized orbitals, and a low degree of *s*-character gives rise to longer bonds.

A similar argument can be used to justify why the C—C bond length is shortest for acetylene. Once again, the carbon atoms are *sp* hybridized, and with 50% *s*-character, these orbitals are held more closely to the nucleus, giving rise to short bond lengths. In addition, there is another factor contributing to the short bond lengths in acetylene, as compared with ethylene and ethane. Specifically, acetylene has the attractive overlap of three pairs of bonding electrons in between the carbon atoms (C≡C), as compared with ethylene (C=C) and ethane (C—C).

TABLE 9.1 A COMPARISON OF PROPERTIES FOR ETHANE, ETHYLENE, AND ACETYLENE

	ETHANE ($H_3C—CH_3$)	ETHYLENE ($H_2C=CH_2$)	ACETYLENE (HC≡CH)
Hybridization state of each carbon atom	sp^3	sp^2	*sp*
s-character	25%	33%	50%
Geometry of each carbon atom	tetrahedral	trigonal planar	linear
C—C bond length (Angstroms)	1.53	1.34	1.20
C—H bond length (Angstroms)	1.11	1.10	1.06

Fertnig/Getty Images

Alkynes in Industry and Nature

The simplest alkyne, acetylene (H—C≡C—H), is a colorless gas that undergoes combustion to produce a high-temperature flame (2800°C) and is used as a fuel for welding torches. Acetylene is also used as a precursor for the preparation of higher alkynes, as we will see in Section 9.10.

Alkynes are less common in nature than alkenes, although more than 1000 different alkynes have been isolated from natural sources. One such example is histrionicotoxin, which is one of the many toxins secreted by the South American frog, *Dendrobates histrionicus*, as a defense against predators. For many centuries, indigenous people in some South American countries have extracted the mixture of toxins from the frog's skin and placed it on the tips of arrows to produce poison arrows.

Histrionicotoxin

In addition to the alkynes found in nature, many synthetic alkynes (prepared in the laboratory) are of particular interest. One such example is ethynylestradiol, found in many birth control formulations. This synthetic oral contraceptive elevates hormone levels in women and prevents ovulation. The presence of the triple bond renders this compound a more potent contraceptive

than its natural analogue, which lacks a triple bond. The effect of the triple bond is attributed to the additional structural rigidity that it imparts to the compound (as described in the application box below).

Ethynylestradiol

BioLinks The Role of Molecular Rigidity

As mentioned in the chapter opening, Parkinson's disease is a neurodegenerative disorder marked by a decreased production of dopamine in the brain. Since dopamine regulates motor function, the decrease in dopamine leads to impaired motor control. Although there is no cure for Parkinson's disease, the symptoms can be treated by a variety of methods. The most effective course of treatment is to administer a drug called L-dopa, which is converted into dopamine in the brain:

(*S*)-3,4-Dihydroxyphenylalanine (L-dopa) **Dopamine**

This method was described previously in Section 8.9 and is effective because it replenishes the supply of dopamine in the brain. Another method for increasing dopamine levels is to slow the rate at which dopamine is removed from the brain. Dopamine is primarily metabolized under the influence of an enzyme (a biological catalyst), called monoamine oxidase B (MAO B). Any drug that inactivates this enzyme will effectively slow the rate at which dopamine is metabolized, thereby slowing the rate at which dopamine levels decrease in the brain. Unfortunately, a closely related enzyme, called MAO A, is used for the metabolism of other compounds, and any drug that inactivates MAO A leads to significant cardiovascular side effects. Therefore, the selective inactivation of MAO B (but not MAO A) is required. The first selective MAO B inactivator, called selegiline, was approved by the FDA in 1989 for the treatment of Parkinson's disease:

Selegiline

Selegiline, sold under the trade name Eldepryl, is often prescribed in combination with L-dopa. The combination of these two drugs offers a more effective method for combating the diminishing supply of dopamine in the brain.

Notice that the structure of selegiline exhibits a C≡C bond, which serves an important function. Specifically, its linear geometry imparts structural rigidity to the compound. The aromatic ring on the other side of the compound also imparts structural rigidity, and both of these structural subunits enable the compound to selectively bind to MAO B, thereby causing its inactivation. Triple bonds appear in several other FDA-approved drugs, where they often serve a similar function. In order for a drug to bind to its target receptor effectively, it must have the appropriate balance of structural rigidity and flexibility. In the design of new drugs, triple bonds are sometimes used to achieve that balance.

pokki77/Shutterstock

SciePro/Shutterstock

WorldLinks Conducting Organic Polymers

Polyacetylene, which can be prepared via the polymerization of gaseous acetylene, was the first known example of an organic polymer capable of conducting electricity.

In practice, polyacetylene only poorly conducts electricity. However, when the polymer is prepared as a cation or anion (a process called *doping*), it can conduct electricity almost as well as a copper wire. Both the cationic polymer and the anionic polymer are resonance stabilized, and they each conduct electricity very efficiently. This discovery effectively opened the doorway to the exciting field of conducting organic polymers, and the 2000 Nobel Prize in Chemistry was awarded to its discoverers: Alan Heeger, Alan MacDiarmid, and Hideki Shirakawa.

Polyacetylene itself has limited application because of its sensitivity to air and moisture, but many other conducting polymers have been developed. Consider the structure of poly (*p*-phenylene vinylene), or PPV, which is a conducting polymer:

Poly(*p*-phenylene vinylene)

Conducting polymers such as PPV are sometimes used in LED (light emitting diode) displays. When subjected to an electric field, LEDs emit light, a phenomenon called electroluminescence. A number of useful organic LED systems, or OLEDs, have been developed over the past several decades. They are used in cell phone displays and digital cameras. LEDs are used in a wide range of applications, including traffic lights, flat-panel TV displays, and alarm clock displays.

Steven Puetzer/Photodisc/Getty Images

9.2 Nomenclature of Alkynes

Recall from Sections 4.2 and 7.6 that naming alkanes and alkenes requires four discrete steps:

1. Identify and name the parent.
2. Identify and name the substituents.
3. Number the parent chain and assign a locant to each substituent.
4. Assemble the substituents alphabetically.

Alkynes are named using the same four steps, with the following additional rules:
When naming the parent, the suffix "yne" is used to indicate the presence of a C≡C bond:

Pentane 1-Pentene 1-Pentyne

The parent of an alkyne is the longest chain *that includes the C≡C bond:*

Parent = octane Parent = heptyne

When numbering the parent chain of an alkyne, the triple bond should receive the lowest number possible, despite the presence of alkyl substituents:

The position of the triple bond is indicated using a single locant, not two. In the previous example, the triple bond is between C2 and C3 on the parent chain. In this case, the position of the triple bond is indicated with the number 2. The IUPAC rules published in 1979 dictate that this locant be placed immediately before the parent, while the IUPAC recommendations released in 1993 and 2004 allow for the locant to be placed before the suffix "yne." Both names are acceptable IUPAC names:

In addition to IUPAC nomenclature, chemists use common names for many alkynes. Ethyne (H—C≡C—H) is called acetylene, while larger alkynes have common names that identify the alkyl groups attached to the parent acetylene:

Notice that the first example is monosubstituted; it possesses only one alkyl group. Monosubstituted acetylenes are called **terminal alkynes**, while disubstituted acetylenes are called **internal alkynes**. This distinction will be important in the upcoming sections of this chapter.

SKILLBUILDER

9.1 ASSEMBLING THE SYSTEMATIC NAME OF AN ALKYNE

LEARN the skill

Provide a systematic name for the following compound:

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Identify the parent.

STEP 2
Identify and name the substituents.

Assembling a systematic name requires four discrete steps: Begin by identifying the parent. Choose the longest chain that includes the triple bond. In this case, the parent is heptyne (shown in red below). Then, identify and name the substituents:

STEP 3
Number the parent chain and assign a locant to each substituent.

Next, number the parent chain and assign a locant to each substituent:

STEP 4
Assemble the substituents alphabetically.

Finally, assemble the substituents alphabetically, making sure to include a locant that identifies the position of the triple bond:

4-Ethyl-5-methyl-3-propyl-1-heptyne

Make sure that hyphens separate letters from numbers, while commas separate numbers from each other.

PRACTICE the skill

9.1 Provide a systematic name for each of the following compounds:

9.2 Draw a bond-line structure for each of the following compounds:

(a) 4,4-Dimethyl-2-pentyne **(b)** 5-Ethyl-2,5-dimethyl-3-heptyne

9.3 When naming cycloalkynes, the triple bond does not require a locant because it is assumed to be between C1 and C2. Draw the structure of (*R*)-3-methylcyclononyne.

APPLY the skill

9.4 (+)-Citronellal is the main compound responsible for the lemon scent of citronella oil. In addition to its well-known insect repellant properties, it also has some antifungal properties. (+)-Citronellal also has been used as a starting material to make compound **1**.[1] Provide an IUPAC name for compound **1**. Note that the name must include a stereodescriptor (*R* or *S*) to identify the configuration of the chiral center.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 9.32, 9.33, 9.55**

9.3 Acidity of Acetylene and Terminal Alkynes

Compare the pK_a values for ethane, ethylene, and acetylene:

Recall that a lower pK_a corresponds to a greater acidity. Therefore, acetylene (pK_a = 25) is significantly more acidic than ethane or ethylene. To be precise, acetylene is 19 orders of magnitude (10,000,000,000,000,000,000 times) more acidic than ethylene. The relative acidity of acetylene can be explained by exploring the stability of its conjugate base, called an **acetylide ion** (the suffix "ide" indicates the presence of a negative charge):

LOOKING BACK
This effect was first discussed in Section 3.4.

The stability of an acetylide ion can be rationalized using hybridization theory, in which the negative charge is considered to be associated with a lone pair that occupies an *sp*-hybridized orbital. Compare the conjugate bases for ethane, ethylene, and acetylene (Figure 9.3).

FIGURE 9.3
The conjugate base of ethane exhibits a lone pair in an sp^3-hybridized orbital. The conjugate base of ethylene has the lone pair in an sp^2-hybridized orbital, and the conjugate base of acetylene has the lone pair in an *sp*-hybridized orbital.

Recall from Section 9.1 that an *sp*-hybridized orbital has more *s*-character than sp^2- or sp^3-hybridized orbitals. As such, the electron density will be closer to the positively charged nucleus, and therefore more stable, when occupying an *sp*-hybridized orbital.

Now let's consider the equilibrium that is established when a strong base is used to deprotonate acetylene. Recall that the equilibrium of an acid-base reaction will always favor formation of the weaker acid and weaker base. For example, consider the equilibrium established when an amide ion (H_2N^-) is used as a base to deprotonate acetylene:

In this case, the equilibrium strongly favors formation of the acetylide ion, because the acetylide ion is significantly more stable (a much weaker base) than the amide ion. In contrast, consider what happens when a hydroxide ion is used as the base:

In this case, the equilibrium does not favor formation of the acetylide ion, because the acetylide ion is less stable (a stronger base) than the hydroxide ion. Therefore, hydroxide is not sufficiently basic to produce a significant amount of the acetylide ion. That is, hydroxide cannot be used to deprotonate acetylene.

Much like acetylene, terminal alkynes are also acidic and can be deprotonated with a suitable base:

The conjugate base of a terminal alkyne, called an **alkynide ion**, can only be formed with a sufficiently strong base. Sodium hydroxide (NaOH) is not a suitable base for this purpose, but sodium amide ($NaNH_2$) can be used. There are several bases that can be used to deprotonate acetylene or terminal alkynes, as seen in Table 9.2. The three bases shown on the top left of the chart are all strong enough to deprotonate a terminal alkyne, and all three are commonly used to do so. Notice the position of the negative charge in each of these cases (N^-, H^-, or C^-). In contrast, the three bases on the bottom left of the chart all have the negative charge on an oxygen atom, which is not strong enough to deprotonate a terminal alkyne.

TABLE 9.2 SELECTED BASES AND THEIR CONJUGATE ACIDS

SKILLBUILDER

9.2 SELECTING A BASE FOR DEPROTONATING A TERMINAL ALKYNE

LEARN the skill

Using the information in Table 3.1, determine whether sodium acetate (CH_3CO_2Na) is a strong enough base to deprotonate the following terminal alkyne.

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Identify the acid and base on each side of the equilibrium.

Begin by drawing the products of the proton transfer reaction and identifying the acid and base on each side of the equilibrium:

BY THE WAY
Na^+ is simply the counterion for each base and can be ignored in most cases.

STEP 2
Determine which acid is weaker.

Next, compare the pK_a values of the two acids in order to determine which one is the weaker acid. The relevant pK_a values can be found in Table 3.1:

STEP 3
Identify the position of equilibrium.

Recall from Section 3.3 that a higher pK_a indicates a weaker acid, so the alkyne is the weaker acid. The equilibrium will favor formation of the weaker acid and weaker base:

As a result, the base in this case (an acetate ion) is not sufficiently strong to deprotonate a terminal alkyne. The same conclusion can be drawn more quickly by simply recognizing that the acetate ion exhibits a negative charge on an oxygen atom (actually, it is stabilized by resonance and spread over two oxygen atoms), and therefore, it cannot possibly be a strong enough base to deprotonate a terminal alkyne.

PRACTICE the skill

9.5 In each of the following cases, determine if the base that is shown is sufficiently strong to deprotonate the terminal alkyne:

APPLY the skill

9.6 Treatment of acetylene with a suitable base affords lithium acetylide, which was used as a reagent in a partial synthesis of the antitumor natural product (+)-acutiphycin.[2]

(a) Draw the structure of lithium acetylide, and show a mechanism for its formation.

(b) Consider each of the three possible bases shown: LiOH, BuLi, and LDA. Determine whether or not each base is sufficiently strong for the preparation of lithium acetylide from acetylene.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 9.35, 9.38**

9.4 Preparation of Alkynes

Just as alkenes can be prepared from alkyl halides, alkynes can be prepared from alkyl dihalides:

An alkyl dihalide has two leaving groups, and the transformation is accomplished via two successive elimination (E2) reactions:

In this example, the dihalide used is a **geminal** dihalide, which means that both halogens are connected to the same carbon atom. Alternatively, alkynes can also be prepared from **vicinal** dihalides, in which the two halogens are connected to adjacent carbon atoms:

Whether the starting dihalide is geminal or vicinal, the alkyne is obtained as the result of two successive elimination reactions. The first elimination can be readily accomplished using many different bases, but the second elimination requires a very strong base. Sodium amide ($NaNH_2$), dissolved in liquid ammonia (NH_3), is a suitable base for achieving two successive elimination reactions in a single reaction vessel. This method is used most frequently for the preparation of terminal alkynes, because the strongly basic conditions favor production of an alkynide ion, which serves as a driving force for the overall process:

In total, three equivalents of the amide ion are required: two equivalents for the two E2 reactions and one equivalent to deprotonate the terminal alkyne and form the alkynide ion. After the alkynide ion has formed and the reaction is complete, a proton source can be introduced into the reaction vessel, thereby protonating the alkynide ion to regenerate the terminal alkyne:

Comparison of the pK_a values indicates that water is a sufficient proton source.

In summary, a terminal alkyne can be prepared by treating a dihalide with excess (xs) sodium amide followed by water:

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

9.7 For each of the following transformations, predict the major product and draw a mechanism for its formation:

9.8 When 3,3-dichloropentane is treated with excess sodium amide in liquid ammonia, the initial product is 2-pentyne:

However, under these conditions, this internal alkyne quickly isomerizes to form a terminal alkyne that is subsequently deprotonated to form an alkynide ion:

The isomerization process is believed to occur via a mechanism comprised of four successive proton transfer steps. With this in mind, propose a mechanism for isomerization using resonance structures whenever possible. Explain why the equilibrium favors formation of the terminal alkyne.

9.5 Reduction of Alkynes

Catalytic Hydrogenation

Alkynes undergo many of the same addition reactions as alkenes. For example, alkynes will undergo catalytic hydrogenation just as alkenes do:

In the process, the alkyne consumes two equivalents of molecular hydrogen:

Under these conditions, the *cis* alkene is difficult to isolate because it is even more reactive toward further hydrogenation than the starting alkyne. The obvious question then is whether it is possible to add just one equivalent of hydrogen to form the alkene. With the catalysts we have seen thus far (Pt, Pd, or Ni), this is difficult to achieve. However, with a partially deactivated catalyst, called a *poisoned catalyst*, it is possible to convert an alkyne into a *cis* alkene (without further reduction):

There are many poisoned catalysts. One common example is *Lindlar's catalyst*, which is a Pd catalyst prepared with $CaCO_3$ and traces of PbO_2.

Another common example is a nickel-boron complex (Ni_2B), which is often called the P-2 catalyst. A poisoned catalyst will catalyze the conversion of an alkyne into a *cis* alkene, but it will not catalyze the subsequent reduction to form the alkane (Figure 9.4). Therefore, a poisoned catalyst can be used to convert an alkyne into a *cis* alkene.

FIGURE 9.4
An energy diagram showing the effect of a poisoned catalyst. Hydrogenation of the alkyne is catalyzed, but subsequent hydrogenation of the alkene is not catalyzed.

This process does not produce any *trans* alkene. The stereochemical outcome of alkyne hydrogenation can be rationalized in the same way that we rationalized the outcome of alkene hydrogenation (Section 8.9). Both hydrogen atoms are added to the same face of the alkyne (*syn* addition) to give the *cis* alkene as the major product.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

9.9 Draw the major product expected from each of the following reactions:

WATCH OUT

These reagents (Na, NH_3) should not be confused with sodium amide ($NaNH_2$), which we saw earlier in this chapter.
$NaNH_2$ is a source of NH_2^-, a very strong base. In contrast, the reagents employed here (Na, NH_3) represent a source of electrons.

Dissolving Metal Reduction

So far, in this section, we have explored the conditions that enable the reduction of an alkyne to a *cis* alkene. Alkynes can also be reduced to *trans* alkenes via an entirely different reaction called **dissolving metal reduction**:

The reagents employed are sodium metal (Na) in liquid ammonia (NH_3). Ammonia has a very low boiling point (−33°C), so use of these reagents requires low temperature. When dissolved in liquid ammonia, sodium atoms serve as a source of electrons:

$$Na^{\cdot} \longrightarrow Na^{+} + e^{\ominus}$$

Under these conditions, reduction of alkynes is believed to proceed via Mechanism 9.1.

MECHANISM 9.1 DISSOLVING METAL REDUCTIONS

In the first step of the mechanism, a single electron is transferred to the alkyne, generating an intermediate that is called a **radical anion**. It is an anion because of the charge associated with the lone pair, and it is a radical because of the unpaired electron:

FIGURE 9.5
Arrows used in ionic mechanisms (double barbed) and radical mechanisms (single barbed).

Radicals and their chemistry are discussed in more detail in Chapter 10. For now, we will just point out that mechanistic steps involving radicals utilize single-barbed curved arrows, often called **fishhook arrows**, rather than double-barbed curved arrows (Figure 9.5). Single-barbed curved arrows indicate the movement of one electron, while double-barbed arrows indicate the movement of two electrons. Notice the use of single-barbed curved arrows in the first step of the mechanism to form the intermediate radical anion. The nature of this intermediate explains the stereochemical preference for formation of a *trans* alkene. Specifically, the intermediate achieves a lower energy state when the paired and unpaired electrons are positioned as far apart as possible, minimizing their repulsion:

The reaction proceeds more rapidly through the lower energy intermediate, which is then protonated by ammonia under these conditions. In the remaining two steps of the mechanism, another electron is transferred, followed by one more proton transfer. The mechanism therefore is comprised of the following four steps: (1) electron transfer, (2) proton transfer, (3) electron transfer, and (4) proton transfer. That is, the net addition of molecular hydrogen (H_2) is achieved via the installation of two electrons and two protons in the following order: e^-, H^+, e^-, H^+. The net result is an *anti* addition of two hydrogen atoms across the alkyne:

This process effectively converts an internal alkyne into a *trans* alkene. However, this process cannot be used to reduce a terminal alkyne because a terminal alkyne would be deprotonated under these conditions to give an alkynide ion:

In order to reduce a terminal alkyne to give an alkene, an alternate method must be used, such as catalytic hydrogenation in the presence of a poisoned catalyst:

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

9.10 Draw the major product expected when each of the following alkynes is treated with sodium metal in liquid ammonia:

Catalytic Hydrogenation vs. Dissolving Metal Reduction

Figure 9.6 summarizes the various methods we have seen for reducing an alkyne. This diagram illustrates how the outcome of alkyne reduction can be controlled by a careful choice of reagents:

- To produce an *alkane*, an alkyne can be treated with H_2 in the presence of a metal catalyst, such as Pt, Pd, or Ni.

- To produce a *cis alkene*, an alkyne can be treated with H_2 in the presence of a poisoned catalyst, such as Lindlar's catalyst or Ni_2B.
- To produce a *trans alkene*, an alkyne can be treated with sodium metal in liquid ammonia.

FIGURE 9.6
A summary of the various reagents that can be used to reduce an alkyne.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

9.11 Identify reagents that you could use to achieve each of the following transformations:

(a) (b)

9.12 An alkyne with the molecular formula C_5H_8 was treated with sodium metal in liquid ammonia to give a disubstituted alkene. Draw the structure of the alkene.

9.6 Hydrohalogenation of Alkynes

Experimental Observations

In the previous chapter, we saw that alkenes will react with HX via a Markovnikov addition, thereby installing a halogen at the more substituted position:

A similar Markovnikov addition is observed when alkynes are treated with HX:

(60–80%)

Once again, the halogen is installed at the more substituted position.

When the starting alkyne is treated with excess HX, two successive addition reactions occur, producing a geminal dihalide:

A Mechanism for Hydrohalogenation

In Section 8.5, we proposed the following two-step mechanism for HX addition to alkenes: (1) protonation of the alkene to form the more stable carbocation intermediate followed by (2) nucleophilic attack:

A similar mechanism can be proposed for addition of HX to a triple bond: (1) protonation to form a carbocation followed by (2) nucleophilic attack:

This proposed mechanism invokes an intermediate **vinylic carbocation** (*vinyl* = a carbon atom bearing a double bond) and can successfully explain the observed regioselectivity. Specifically, the reaction is expected to proceed via the more stable, secondary vinylic carbocation, rather than via the less stable, primary vinylic carbocation:

Unfortunately, this proposed mechanism is not consistent with all of the experimental observations. Most notably, studies in the gas phase indicate that vinylic carbocations are not particularly stable. Secondary vinylic carbocations are believed to be similar in energy to regular primary carbocations. Accordingly, we would expect HX addition of alkynes to be significantly slower than HX addition of alkenes. A difference in rate is, in fact, observed, but this difference is not as large as expected—HX addition to alkynes is only slightly slower than HX addition to alkenes. Accordingly, other mechanisms have been proposed that avoid formation of a vinylic carbocation. For example, it is possible that the alkyne interacts with two molecules of HX simultaneously. This process is said to be **termolecular** (involving three molecules) and proceeds through the following transition state:

This one-step mechanism avoids the formation of a vinylic carbocation but still invokes a transition state that exhibits some partial carbocationic character (notice the $\delta+$ shown in the transition state). The development of a partial positive charge can effectively explain the observed regioselectivity, because the transition state will be lower in energy when this partial positive charge forms at the more substituted position. This more complex mechanism is supported in many cases by kinetic studies in which the rate expression is found to be overall third order:

LOOKING BACK
Recall from Section 6.5 that "third order" means that the sum of the exponents is three for the rate expression.

$$\text{Rate} = k\,[\text{alkyne}]\,[\text{HX}]^2$$

This rate expression is consistent with the termolecular process proposed above.

It is believed that in most cases the addition of HX to alkynes probably occurs through a variety of mechanistic pathways, all occurring at the same time and competing with each other. The vinylic carbocation probably does play some limited role, but it cannot, by itself, explain all of the observations. In several of the mechanisms throughout this chapter, we may invoke a vinylic carbocation as an intermediate, although it should be understood that other, more complex mechanisms are likely operating simultaneously.

Radical Addition of HBr

Recall that in the presence of peroxides, HBr undergoes an *anti*-Markovnikov addition across an alkene:

The Br is installed at the less substituted position, and the reaction is believed to proceed via a radical mechanism (explored in more detail in Section 10.10). A similar reaction is observed for alkynes. When a terminal alkyne is treated with HBr in the presence of peroxides, an *anti*-Markovnikov addition is observed. The Br is installed at the terminal position, producing a mixture of *E* and *Z* isomers:

Radical addition only occurs with HBr (not with HCl or HI), as will be explained in Section 10.10.

Interconversion of Dihalides and Alkynes

The reactions discussed thus far enable the interconversion between dihalides and terminal alkynes:

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

9.13 Predict the major product(s) expected for each of the following reactions:

9.14 Suggest reagents that would achieve the following transformation:

9.15 An alkyne with the molecular formula C_5H_8 is treated with excess HBr, and two different products are obtained, each of which has the molecular formula $C_5H_{10}Br_2$.

(a) Identify the starting alkyne. **(b)** Identify the two products.

9.7 Hydration of Alkynes

Acid-Catalyzed Hydration of Alkynes

In the previous chapter, we saw that alkenes will undergo acid-catalyzed hydration when treated with aqueous acid (H_3O^+). The reaction proceeds via a Markovnikov addition, thereby installing a hydroxyl group at the more substituted position:

Alkynes are also observed to undergo acid-catalyzed hydration (via a Markovnikov addition), but the reaction is slower than the corresponding reaction with alkenes. As noted earlier in this chapter, the difference in rate can be attributed to the high-energy, vinylic carbocation intermediate that is formed

when an alkyne is protonated. The rate of alkyne hydration is markedly enhanced in the presence of mercuric sulfate ($HgSO_4$), which catalyzes the reaction. Under these conditions, a mercuric ion (Hg^{2+}) activates the alkyne toward nucleophilic attack, via the initial formation of a mercurinium ion.

Notice that this mercurinium ion resembles the intermediate that we encountered during oxymercuration of alkenes (Section 8.7). The mercurinium ion is then attacked by water, followed by deprotonation:

Under the acidic reaction conditions, a proton (H^+) then replaces Hg^{2+}, as shown:

The resulting compound is called an **enol** because it has a double bond (***en***) and an OH group (***ol***). The enol cannot be isolated under these acidic conditions, because it rapidly converts into a ketone:

The conversion of an enol into a ketone will appear again in many subsequent chapters and therefore warrants further discussion. Acid-catalyzed conversion of an enol to a ketone occurs via two steps (Mechanism 9.2).

MECHANISM 9.2 ACID-CATALYZED TAUTOMERIZATION

The π bond of the enol is first protonated, generating a resonance-stabilized intermediate, which is then deprotonated to give the ketone. Notice that both steps of this mechanism are proton transfers. The result of this process is the migration of a proton from one location to another, accompanied by a change in location of the π bond:

The enol and ketone are said to be **tautomers**, which are constitutional isomers that rapidly interconvert via the migration of a proton. The interconversion between an enol and a ketone is called **keto-enol tautomerization**. Tautomerization is an equilibrium process, which means that the equilibrium will establish specific concentrations for both the enol and the ketone. Generally, the ketone is highly favored, and the concentration of enol will be quite small. Be very careful not to confuse tautomers with resonance structures. Tautomers are constitutional isomers that exist in equilibrium with one another. Once the equilibrium has been reached, the concentrations of ketone and enol can be measured. In contrast, resonance structures are not different compounds and they are not in equilibrium with one another. Resonance structures simply represent different drawings of one compound.

Keto-enol tautomerization is an equilibrium process that is catalyzed by even trace amounts of acid (or base). Glassware that is scrupulously cleaned will still have trace amounts of acid or base adsorbed to its surface. As a result, it is extremely difficult to prevent a keto-enol tautomerization from reaching equilibrium, which generally occurs very rapidly.

LOOKING BACK
For a review of resonance structures, go to Section 2.7.

SKILLBUILDER

9.3 DRAWING A MECHANISM FOR ACID-CATALYZED KETO-ENOL TAUTOMERIZATION

LEARN the skill

Under normal conditions, 1-cyclohexenol cannot be isolated or stored in a bottle, because it undergoes rapid tautomerization to yield cyclohexanone. Draw a mechanism for this tautomerization:

SOLUTION

The mechanism of acid-catalyzed keto-enol tautomerization has two steps: (1) protonate and then (2) deprotonate. To draw this mechanism, it is essential to remember where to protonate in the first step. There are two places where protonation could possibly occur: the OH group or the double bond. *Make sure to protonate the π bond rather than the OH group:*

STEP 1
Protonate the π bond of the enol.

If the OH group had been protonated, the resulting oxonium ion (ROH_2^+) would not be resonance stabilized, and would therefore be higher in energy. In contrast, when the π bond is protonated, the resulting carbocation is stabilized by resonance, as shown here:

STEP 2
Draw the resonance structures of the intermediate.

To complete the mechanism, remove a proton to form the ketone. Once again, two curved arrows are required:

STEP 3
Remove a proton to form the ketone.

PRACTICE the skill

9.16 The following enols cannot be isolated. They rapidly tautomerize to produce ketones. In each case, draw the expected ketone and show a mechanism for its formation under acid-catalyzed conditions (H_3O^+).

APPLY the skill

9.17 Warfarin is a blood-thinning drug (anticoagulant) that is used to prevent heart attacks and strokes. Including stereoisomers, there are at least 40 distinct tautomer forms of warfarin.[3] Shown below are two enol forms of warfarin. Draw a tautomer form of warfarin that has three carbonyl (C═O) groups, and show a mechanism for its formation under acid-catalyzed conditions (H_3O^+), starting from either of the enols shown.

Warfarin

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 9.44b, 9.71, 9.72, 9.75**

We have seen that even trace amounts of acid will catalyze a keto-enol tautomerization. Therefore, the enol initially produced by alkyne hydration will immediately tautomerize to form a ketone. When asked to predict the product of alkyne hydration, do not make the mistake of drawing an enol. Simply draw the ketone.

Acid-catalyzed hydration of unsymmetrical internal alkynes yields a mixture of ketones:

The lack of regiochemical control renders this process significantly less useful. It is most often used for the hydration of a terminal alkyne, which generates a methyl ketone as the product:

Notice that hydration of a terminal alkyne occurs with Markovnikov regiochemistry. Addition of one equivalent of water, followed by tautomerization of the enol intermediate, affords the methyl ketone product.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

9.18 Draw the major product(s) expected when each of the following alkynes is treated with aqueous acid in the presence of mercuric sulfate ($HgSO_4$):

9.19 Identify the alkyne you would use to prepare each of the following ketones via acid-catalyzed hydration. If there is more than one possible starting alkyne, then explain your choice.

Hydroboration-Oxidation of Alkynes

In Chapter 8, we saw that alkenes will undergo hydroboration-oxidation (Section 8.8). The reaction proceeds via an *anti*-Markovnikov addition, thereby installing a hydroxyl group at the less substituted position:

Alkynes are also observed to undergo a similar process:

The initial product of this reaction is an enol that cannot be isolated because it is rapidly converted into an aldehyde via tautomerization. As we saw earlier in this section, tautomerization cannot be prevented, and it is catalyzed by either acid or base. In this case, basic conditions are employed, so the tautomerization process occurs via a base-catalyzed mechanism (Mechanism 9.3).

MECHANISM 9.3 BASE-CATALYZED TAUTOMERIZATION

LOOKING AHEAD
Enolates are very useful intermediates, and we will explore their chemistry in Chapter 21.

Notice that the order of events under base-catalyzed conditions is the reverse of the order under acid-catalyzed conditions. That is, the enol is first deprotonated (in contrast, under acid-catalyzed conditions, the first step is to protonate the enol). Deprotonation of the enol leads to a resonance-stabilized anion called an *enolate ion*, which is then protonated to generate the aldehyde.

Hydroboration-oxidation of alkynes is believed to proceed via a mechanism that is similar to the mechanism invoked for hydroboration-oxidation of alkenes (Mechanism 8.3). Specifically, borane adds to the alkyne in a concerted process that gives an *anti*-Markovnikov addition. There is, however, one critical difference. Unlike an alkene, which only possesses one π bond, an alkyne possesses two π bonds. As a result, two molecules of BH_3 can add across the alkyne. To prevent the second addition, a dialkyl borane (R_2BH) is employed instead of BH_3. The two alkyl groups provide steric hindrance that prevents the second addition. Two commonly used dialkyl boranes are disiamylborane and 9-BBN:

Disiamylborane

9-BBN
(9-Borabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane)

With these modified borane reagents, hydroboration-oxidation is an efficient method for converting a terminal alkyne into an aldehyde:

Notice that the ultimate product of this reaction sequence is an aldehyde rather than a ketone. Hydroboration-oxidation of a terminal alkyne occurs with anti-Markovnikov regiochemistry. Addition of one equivalent of water, followed by tautomerization of the enol intermediate, affords the aldehyde product.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

9.20 Draw the major product for each of the following reactions:

(a)

(b)

(c)

9.21 Identify the alkyne you would use to prepare each of the following compounds via hydroboration-oxidation. If there is more than one possible starting alkyne, then explain your choice.

(a)

(b)

(c)

Controlling the Regiochemistry of Alkyne Hydration

So far, in this section, we have explored two methods for the hydration of a terminal alkyne:

Acid-catalyzed hydration of a terminal alkyne produces a methyl ketone, while hydroboration-oxidation produces an aldehyde. In other words, the regiochemical outcome of alkyne hydration is governed by the choice of reagents. Let's get some practice determining which reagents to use.

SKILLBUILDER

9.4 CHOOSING THE APPROPRIATE REAGENTS FOR THE HYDRATION OF AN ALKYNE

LEARN the skill

Identify reagents that you could use to achieve the following transformation:

SOLUTION

The starting material is a terminal alkyne and the product has a C═O bond. This reaction can therefore be accomplished via hydration of the starting alkyne. To determine what reagents to use, carefully inspect the regiochemical outcome of the process. Specifically, the oxygen atom must be installed at the more substituted position to produce a methyl ketone:

STEP 1
Identify the regiochemical outcome.

STEP 2
Identify the reagents that achieve the desired regiochemical outcome.

This transformation requires a Markovnikov addition, which can be accomplished via an acid-catalyzed hydration:

PRACTICE the skill **9.22** Identify reagents that you could use to achieve each of the following transformations:

APPLY the skill **9.23** Proteases are enzymes that can break covalent bonds in proteins. Proteases play major roles in the regulation of biological processes, so compounds that inhibit their function, called protease inhibitors, have potential as therapeutic agents. While preparing several potential protease inhibitors, compound **1** was converted into compound **3** via alkyne **2**, as shown.[4] Draw the structure of alkyne **2**, and propose reagents for converting **1** into **3**.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 9.52b, 9.59, 9.68**

9.8 Halogenation of Alkynes

In Chapter 8, we saw that alkenes will react with Br_2 or Cl_2 to produce a dihalide. In much the same way, alkynes are also observed to undergo halogenation. The one major difference is that alkynes have two π bonds rather than one and can, therefore, add two equivalents of the halogen to form a tetrahalide:

In some cases, it is possible to add just one equivalent of halogen to produce a dihalide. Such a reaction generally proceeds via an *anti* addition (just as we saw with alkenes), producing the *E* isomer as the major product:

The mechanism of alkyne halogenation is not entirely understood.

9.9 Ozonolysis of Alkynes

When treated with ozone followed by water, alkynes undergo oxidative cleavage to produce carboxylic acids:

When a terminal alkyne undergoes oxidative cleavage, the terminal carbon atom is converted into carbon dioxide:

Decades ago, chemists used oxidative cleavage to help with structural determinations. An unknown alkyne would be treated with ozone followed by water, and the resulting carboxylic acids would be identified. This technique allowed chemists to identify the location of a triple bond in an unknown alkyne. However, the advent of spectroscopic methods (Chapters 14 and 15) has rendered this process obsolete as a tool for structural determination.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

9.24 Draw the major product(s) expected when each of the following alkynes is treated with O_3 followed by H_2O:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

9.25 An alkyne with the molecular formula C_6H_{10} was treated with ozone followed by water, and a single carboxylic acid was isolated as the only product. Draw the structure of the starting alkyne and the product of ozonolysis.

9.26 An alkyne with the molecular formula C_4H_6 was treated with ozone followed by water to produce a carboxylic acid and carbon dioxide. Draw the expected product when the alkyne is treated with aqueous acid in the presence of mercuric sulfate.

9.10 Alkylation of Terminal Alkynes

In Section 9.3, we saw that a terminal alkyne can be deprotonated in the presence of a sufficiently strong base, such as sodium amide ($NaNH_2$):

An alkynide ion

This reaction has powerful synthetic utility, because the resulting alkynide ion can function as a nucleophile when treated with an alkyl halide:

This transformation proceeds via an S_N2 pathway and provides a method to install an alkyl group on a terminal alkyne. This process is called **alkylation**, and it is achieved in just two steps; for example:

This process is only efficient with methyl or primary alkyl halides. When secondary or tertiary alkyl halides are used, the alkynide ion functions primarily as a base, and elimination products are obtained. This observation is consistent with the pattern we saw in Section 7.9 (substitution vs. elimination).

Acetylene possesses two terminal protons (one on either side) and can therefore undergo alkylation twice:

Notice that two separate alkylations are required. One side of acetylene is first alkylated, and then, in a separate process, the other side is alkylated. This repetition is required because $NaNH_2$ and RX cannot be placed into the reaction flask at the same time. Doing so would produce unwanted substitution and elimination products resulting from the reactions between $NaNH_2$ and RX.

It might seem burdensome to require two separate alkylation processes, but this requirement does provide additional synthetic utility. Specifically, it enables the installation of two different alkyl groups; for example:

SKILLBUILDER

9.5 ALKYLATING TERMINAL ALKYNES

LEARN the skill

Identify reagents that can be used to convert acetylene into 7-methyl-3-octyne.

SOLUTION

Whenever confronted with a problem that is written only in words, with no corresponding structures, the first step will always be to draw the structures described in the problem. In this case, the task is to identify the reagents necessary to accomplish the following transformation:

STEP 1
Draw the structures described in the problem.

STEP 2
Identify appropriate alkyl groups (methyl or primary alkyl halides).

When drawn out, we see that the acetylene carbon chain has been extended at both ends, so two alkylations are required in this case. We can use a retrosynthetic analysis to determine which alkyl groups are needed to synthesize the target molecule. In this case, two alkylations are required, and the order of events (which alkyl group is installed first) is not important. Just as we will be installing each alkyl group separately, we will be making the disconnections one at time in our retrosynthesis. The first disconnection takes place at the C—C bond on either side of the alkyne. The *sp* hybridized carbon atom served as the nucleophile, so we draw a negative charge on the carbon atom to give a recognizable nucleophile (alkynide ion). The other carbon atom (at the disconnected bond) must have started out as an electrophile, so we draw a leaving group (such as Cl, Br, or I) at that position:

Before continuing with the retrosynthesis, we should confirm that the reaction mechanism is favorable. The alkynide anion is a strong nucleophile and a strong base, so we must consider both S_N2 and E2 pathways. In this case, we have a primary substrate and a small nucleophile, so there is very little steric hindrance and we expect an S_N2 process to give the desired target molecule as the major product.

The instructions indicate that the synthesis must begin with acetylene, so a second disconnection is needed:

The overall retrosynthesis reveals the stepwise approach to be taken in the synthesis:

STEP 3
Draw the forward process (if installing two alkyl groups, each alkyl group must be installed separately).

Now let's draw the forward process. Each alkylation process requires two steps: deprotonation of the alkyne with $NaNH_2$ (to generate the required nucleophile), followed by treatment with the desired electrophile (S_N2 process forms a new C—C bond). The overall synthesis therefore has four steps:

Both alkyl halides are primary, so the process is expected to be efficient.

PRACTICE the skill

9.27 Starting with acetylene, show reagents that you would use to prepare each of the following compounds:

(a) 1-Hexyne **(b)** 2-Hexyne **(c)** 2,7-dimethyl-4-octyne

(d) 5-ethyl-1-heptyne **(e)**

APPLY the skill

9.28 (−)-Lepadiformine A, isolated from the marine organism *Clavelina lepadiformis*, is observed to be toxic to several tumor cell lines. During a recent synthesis of (−)-lepadiformine A, compound **3** was made from compounds **1** and **2**.[5] Identify reagents that can be used to prepare **3** from **1** and **2**.

3 **1** **2**

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 9.36f, 9.41, 9.45, 9.54, 9.56, 9.63, 9.65, 9.69**

9.11 Synthesis Strategies

In Section 9.5, we saw how to control the reduction of an alkyne. In particular, a triple bond can be converted into a double bond (either *cis* or *trans*) or into a single bond:

Now let's consider how to go in the other direction, that is, to convert a single bond or double bond into a triple bond:

Thus far, we have not learned reactions that will convert an alkane into an alkene, although we will explore a method in Chapter 10. We did, however, learn how to convert an alkene into an alkyne. Specifically, an alkene can be converted into an alkyne via bromination followed by elimination:

This now provides us with the flexibility to interconvert single, double, and triple bonds (Figure 9.7).

FIGURE 9.7
A summary of the reagents that can be used to interconvert alkanes, alkenes, and alkynes.

SKILLBUILDER

9.6 USING ALKYNES IN SYNTHESIS

LEARN the skill

Propose an efficient synthesis for the following transformation:

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Identify changes to the carbon skeleton and/or functional groups.

The first step in solving a multistep transformation problem is to identify the differences between the starting material and the target molecule, by considering the following questions:

- Are there any changes to the carbon skeleton?
- Are there any changes in the identity or position of the functional group(s)?

In this case, we observe several differences: the triple bond must be removed, the carbon chain in the product must be extended by two carbon atoms, and two Br atoms must be installed (with a specific stereochemical relationship). A successful synthesis must accomplish all of these changes.

STEP 2
Develop a retrosynthesis of the target molecule.

When we have multiple transformations to accomplish, we begin by determining what process was done *last*. In other words, we do a retrosynthetic analysis of the target molecule by asking, "What starting material do I need to make a dibromide with the required stereochemistry?" The target dibromide can be produced from a *cis* alkene, specifically *cis*-3-hexene, as shown here:

If we can figure out a way to prepare *cis*-3-hexene, then we would be able to make our ultimate target molecule. Therefore, *cis*-3-hexene becomes our new goal, and our retrosynthesis continues with the question, "What starting material do I need to make a *cis* alkene?" The *cis* alkene can be prepared by partial reduction of the corresponding alkyne:

We continue with the retrosynthetic analysis until we reach the given starting material. The alkyne intermediate derived from the previous retrosynthetic step is suitable for making the required C—C bond disconnection:

It is important to note that the C—C bond disconnection in this case must take place adjacent to a C≡C triple bond, because an *sp* hybridized carbon atom bearing a negative charge (*e.g.*, an alkynide or cyanide anion) is the only stable carbanion we have encountered at this point:

We cannot make a C—C bond disconnection adjacent to a C═C double bond. Such a synthesis would fail because the proton attached to an sp^2 hybridized is not acidic.

STEP 3
Confirm the sequence of transformations and select suitable reagents.

As we put our plan into action and draw the forward process, we must confirm that each proposed step is reasonable and that the desired compound is expected as the major product. The first part of the synthesis (alkylation of the alkyne) can be accomplished via treatment with $NaNH_2$ followed by ethyl iodide. Next, reduction of the alkyne to a *cis* alkene can be achieved by performing a hydrogenation reaction in the presence of a poisoned catalyst, such as Lindlar's catalyst. Finally, bromination of the alkene (which proceeds via an *anti* addition) produces a racemic mixture of the target molecule:

PRACTICE the skill **9.29** Propose an efficient synthesis for each of the following transformations:

9.30 Using ethylene ($H_2C{=}CH_2$) as your only source of carbon atoms, outline a synthesis for 3-hexanone ($CH_3CH_2COCH_2CH_2CH_3$).

APPLY the skill **9.31** Metabolism refers to all of the chemical reactions that occur in living organisms. During studies to understand metabolic pathways in yeast cells, various compounds were made and fed to the cells. In one example, compound **2** was made from compound **1**.[6] [Deuterium (^2H) is an isotope of hydrogen in which there is one proton and one neutron in the nucleus; it is chemically similar to the more common protium (^1H) isotope, but it can be used as a "tag" to distinguish one hydrogen atom from another.] Propose two possible syntheses for this transformation by making and then using a different alkene in each synthesis.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 9.52, 9.64, 9.66**

REVIEW OF REACTIONS

1. Elimination
2. Hydrohalogenation (two equivalents)
3. Hydrohalogenation (one equivalent)
4. Acid-catalyzed hydration
5. Hydroboration-oxidation
6. Halogenation (one equivalent)
7. Halogenation (two equivalents)
8. Ozonolysis
9. Alkylation
10. Dissolving metal reduction
11. Hydrogenation
12. Hydrogenation with a poisoned catalyst

REVIEW OF CONCEPTS AND VOCABULARY

SECTION 9.1

- A triple bond is comprised of three separate bonds: one σ bond and two π bonds.
- Alkynes exhibit linear geometry and can function as bases or as nucleophiles.

SECTION 9.2

- **Alkynes** are named much like alkanes, with the following additional rules:
- The suffix "ane" is replaced with "yne."
- The parent is the longest chain that includes the C≡C bond.
- The triple bond should receive the lowest number possible.
- The position of the triple bond is indicated with a single locant placed either before the parent or the suffix.
- Monosubstituted acetylenes are **terminal alkynes**, while disubstituted acetylenes are **internal alkynes**.

SECTION 9.3

- The conjugate base of acetylene, called an **acetylide ion**, is relatively stabilized because the lone pair occupies an *sp*-hybridized orbital.
- The conjugate base of a terminal alkyne is called an **alkynide ion**, which can only be formed with a sufficiently strong base, such as $NaNH_2$.

SECTION 9.4

- Alkynes can be prepared from either **geminal** or **vicinal** dihalides via two successive E2 reactions.

SECTION 9.5

- Catalytic hydrogenation of an alkyne yields an alkane.
- Catalytic hydrogenation in the presence of a poisoned catalyst (Lindlar's catalyst or Ni_2B) yields a *cis* alkene.
- A **dissolving metal reduction** will convert an internal alkyne into a *trans* alkene. The reaction involves an intermediate **radical anion** and employs **fishhook arrows**, which indicate the movement of only one electron.

SECTION 9.6

- Alkynes react with HX via a Markovnikov addition.
- One possible mechanism for the hydrohalogenation of alkynes involves a **vinylic carbocation**, while another possible mechanism is **termolecular**.
- Addition of HX to alkynes probably occurs through a variety of mechanistic pathways all of which are occurring at the same time and competing with each other.
- Treatment of a terminal alkyne with HBr and peroxides gives an *anti*-Markovnikov addition of HBr.

SECTION 9.7

- Acid-catalyzed hydration of alkynes is catalyzed by mercuric sulfate ($HgSO_4$) to produce an **enol** that cannot be isolated because it is rapidly converted into a ketone.
- Enols and ketones are **tautomers**, which are constitutional isomers that rapidly interconvert via the migration of a proton.
- The interconversion between an enol and a ketone is called **keto-enol tautomerization** and is catalyzed by trace amounts of acid or base.
- Hydroboration-oxidation of a terminal alkyne proceeds via an *anti*-Markovnikov addition to produce an enol that is rapidly converted into an aldehyde via tautomerization.
- In basic conditions, tautomerization proceeds via a resonance-stabilized anion called an *enolate ion*.

SECTION 9.8

- Alkynes can undergo halogenation to form a tetrahalide.

SECTION 9.9

- When treated with ozone followed by water, internal alkynes undergo oxidative cleavage to produce carboxylic acids.
- When a terminal alkyne undergoes oxidative cleavage, the terminal side is converted into carbon dioxide.

SECTION 9.10

- Alkynide ions undergo **alkylation** when treated with an alkyl halide (methyl or primary).
- Acetylene possesses two terminal protons and can undergo two separate alkylations.

SECTION 9.11

- An alkene can be converted into an alkyne via bromination followed by elimination with excess $NaNH_2$.

SKILLBUILDER REVIEW

9.1 ASSEMBLING THE SYSTEMATIC NAME OF AN ALKYNE

STEP 1 Identify the parent: choose the longest chain that includes the triple bond.

STEP 2 Identify and name substituents.

STEP 3 Number the parent chain and assign a locant to each substituent.

STEP 4 Assemble the substituents alphabetically.

4-Ethyl-5-methyl-3-propyl-1-heptyne

Try Problems **9.1–9.4, 9.32, 9.33, 9.55**

9.2 SELECTING A BASE FOR DEPROTONATING A TERMINAL ALKYNE

STEP 1 Draw the products of the proton transfer reaction and identify the acid and base on each side of the equilibrium.

STEP 2 Compare the two acids and determine which is the weaker acid (higher pK_a).

R—C≡C—H ($pK_a \sim 25$)

H_2O ($pK_a = 15.7$)

STEP 3 The equilibrium favors the weaker acid and the weaker base. In this case, the equilibrium favors the left side. Therefore, hydroxide is not a suitable base to deprotonate a terminal alkyne.

Try Problems **9.5, 9.6, 9.35, 9.38**

9.3 DRAWING A MECHANISM FOR ACID-CATALYZED KETO-ENOL TAUTOMERIZATION

STEP 1 Protonate the π bond of the enol (do not protonate the hydroxyl group).

STEP 2 Draw the resonance structure of the intermediate.

STEP 3 Remove a proton to form the ketone.

Try Problems **9.16, 9.17, 9.44b, 9.71, 9.72, 9.75**

9.4 CHOOSING THE APPROPRIATE REAGENTS FOR THE HYDRATION OF AN ALKYNE

STEP 1 Identify the regiochemical outcome.

STEP 2 Choose the reagents that achieve that outcome.

Try Problems **9.22, 9.23, 9.52b, 9.59, 9.68**

9.5 ALKYLATING TERMINAL ALKYNES

STEP 1 Draw the structures described in the problem statement:

STEP 2 Identify appropriate alkyl groups:

STEP 3 Draw the forward process (if installing two alkyl groups, each alkyl group must be installed separately):

Try Problems **9.27, 9.28, 9.36f, 9.41, 9.45, 9.54, 9.56, 9.63, 9.65, 9.69**

9.6 USING ALKYNES IN SYNTHESIS

STEP 1 Identify changes to the carbon skeleton and/or functional groups:

STEP 2 Develop a retrosynthesis of the target molecule:

STEP 3 Confirm the sequence of transformations and select suitable reagents:

Try Problems **9.29–9.31, 9.52, 9.64, 9.66**

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

• **Included in Answers section**

9.32 • Provide a systematic name for each of the following compounds:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

(f)

9.33 Draw a bond-line structure for each of the following compounds:

(a) 2-Heptyne (b) 2,2-Dimethyl-4-octyne

(c) 3,3-Diethylcyclodecyne

9.34 • Predict the product for each of the following reactions:

9.35 • Draw the products of each of the following acid-base reactions and then predict the position of equilibrium in each case:

(a)

(b)

9.36 • Predict the products obtained when 1-pentyne reacts with each of the following reagents:

(a) H_2SO_4, H_2O, $HgSO_4$ (b) R_2BH followed by H_2O_2, NaOH

(c) Excess HBr (d) One equivalent of HCl

(e) Excess Br_2 in CCl_4 (f) $NaNH_2$ in NH_3 followed by MeI

(g) H_2, Pt

9.37 Identify the reagents you would use to achieve each of the following transformations:

9.38 Determine which of the following bases are suitable for the deprotonation of a terminal alkyne, and explain your choices:

(a) $NaOCH_3$ (b) NaH (c) BuLi (d) NaOH (e) $NaNH_2$

9.39 Determine whether or not the following compounds represent a pair of keto-enol tautomers:

(a)

(b)

9.40 Oleic acid and elaidic acid are isomeric alkenes:

Oleic acid

Elaidic acid

Oleic acid, a major component of butter fat, is a colorless liquid at room temperature. Elaidic acid, a major component of partially hydrogenated vegetable oils, is a white solid at room temperature. Oleic acid and elaidic acid can both be prepared in the laboratory by reduction of an alkyne called stearolic acid. Draw the structure of stearolic acid and identify the reagents you would use to convert stearolic acid into oleic acid or elaidic acid.

9.41 • Predict the final product for each sequence of reactions:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

9.42 When (*R*)-4-bromohept-2-yne is treated with H_2 in the presence of Pt, the product is optically inactive. Yet, when (*R*)-4-bromohex-2-yne is treated with the same conditions, the product is optically active. Explain.

9.43 Draw the structure of an alkyne that can be converted into 3-ethylpentane upon hydrogenation. Provide a systematic name for the alkyne.

9.44 Propose a mechanism for each of the following transformations:

(a)

(b)

9.45 Draw the expected product of each of the following reactions, showing stereochemistry where appropriate:

9.46 Compound **A** is an alkyne that reacts with two equivalents of H_2 in the presence of Pd to give 2,4,6-trimethyloctane.

(a) Draw the structure of compound **A**.

(b) How many chiral centers are present in compound **A?**

(c) Identify the locants for the methyl groups in compound **A**. Explain why the locants are not 2, 4, and 6 as seen in the product of hydrogenation.

9.47 Compound **A** has the molecular formula C_7H_{12}. Hydrogenation of compound **A** produces 2-methylhexane. Hydroboration-oxidation of compound **A** produces an aldehyde. Draw the structure of compound **A** and draw the structure of the aldehyde produced upon hydroboration-oxidation of compound **A**.

9.48 • Propose a plausible synthesis for each of the following transformations:

9.49 1,2-Dichloropentane reacts with excess sodium amide in liquid ammonia (followed by water workup) to produce compound **X**. Compound **X** undergoes acid-catalyzed hydration to produce a ketone. Draw the structure of the ketone produced upon hydration of compound **X**.

9.50 An unknown alkyne is treated with ozone (followed by hydrolysis) to yield acetic acid (CH_3CO_2H) and carbon dioxide. What is the structure of the alkyne?

9.51 Compound **A** is an alkyne with the molecular formula C_5H_8. When treated with aqueous sulfuric acid and mercuric sulfate, two different products with the molecular formula $C_5H_{10}O$ are obtained in equal amounts. Draw the structure of compound **A**, and draw the two products obtained.

9.52 Propose an efficient synthesis for each of the following transformations:

9.53 Draw the structure of each possible dichloride that can be used to prepare the following alkyne via elimination:

9.54 Draw the structures of compounds **A** to **D**:

9.55 Draw and name four terminal alkynes with the molecular formula C_6H_{10}.

9.56 Preparation of 2,2-dimethyl-3-octyne cannot be achieved via alkylation of acetylene. Explain.

9.57 Each of the following synthetic transformations has a fatal flaw and the desired target molecule would not be produced. Identify the error in each synthesis and explain why the synthesis fails.

ACS-STYLE PROBLEMS (Multiple Choice)

Problems 9.58–9.65 follow the style of the ACS organic chemistry exam. For each of these problems, there will be one correct answer and three distractors.

9.58 • Which of the following compounds is converted into carbon dioxide and acetic acid (CH_3CO_2H) upon ozonolysis?

9.59 • All of the following methods can be used to prepare 2-butanone ($CH_3COCH_2CH_3$) EXCEPT:

9.60 • Which reagents will achieve the following transformation?

(a) H_2, Pt
(b) $NaNH_2/NH_3$
(c) Na, NH_3
(d) H_2, Lindlar's catalyst

9.61 • Which reagent (or reagents) will achieve the following transformation?

(a) Br_2
(b) Br_2, H_2O
(c) xs HBr, ROOR
(d) xs HBr

9.62 • Which reagents will achieve the following transformation?

(a) 1) H_2, Lindlar's cat.; 2) RCO_3H; 3) H_3O^+
(b) 1) H_2, Lindlar's cat.; 2) $KMnO_4$
(c) 1) Na, NH_3; 2) $KMnO_4$
(d) 1) $KMnO_4$; 2) H_2, Pd

9.63 • Which is the best retrosynthesis of the given target molecule?

9.64 • Which disconnection leads to the most reasonable retrosynthesis of the given target molecule?

9.65 • Predict the major product of the following reaction sequence:

INTEGRATED PROBLEMS

9.66 • Identify the reagents necessary to achieve each transformation below. In each case, you will need to use at least one reaction from this chapter and at least one reaction from the previous chapter. The essence of each problem is to choose reagents that will achieve the desired stereochemical outcome:

9.67 Identify reagents that you would use to achieve the following transformation:

9.68 In the upcoming chapters, we will learn a two-step method for achieving the following transformation. In the meantime, we have already learned reactions that can be used to accomplish this transformation, although more than two steps are required. Identify reagents that you could use to achieve this transformation:

9.69 A terminal alkyne was treated with $NaNH_2$ followed by 1-iodopropane. The resulting internal alkyne was treated with ozone followed by water, giving only one type of carboxylic acid. Provide a systematic, IUPAC name for the internal alkyne.

9.70 The following reaction does not produce the desired product but does produce a product that is a constitutional isomer of the desired product. Draw the product that is obtained and propose a mechanism for its formation:

9.71 Propose a plausible mechanism for the following transformation:

9.72 Propose a plausible mechanism for the following tautomerization process:

9.73 Using acetylene and methyl iodide as your only sources of carbon atoms, propose a synthesis for each of the following compounds:

9.74 Propose a plausible mechanism for the following transformation:

9.75 Propose a plausible mechanism for the following transformation:

9.76 A small class of natural products, called α,α-disubstituted α-amino acids (Chapter 25), have been the targets of several synthetic techniques, because these compounds are structurally complex (representing a challenge for synthetic organic chemists), and they exhibit notable effects on biological activity. The following transformation was part of one such synthetic technique:[7]

(a) Identify reagents that can be used to achieve the transformation above, and

(b) assign the configuration of the chiral center in the starting material and in the final product.

9.77 Treatment of one mole of dimethyl sulfate ($CH_3OSO_3CH_3$) with two moles of sodium acetylide results in the formation of two moles of propyne as the major product:[8]

(a) Draw the inorganic, ionic species that is generated as a by-product of this reaction and show a mechanism for its formation.

(b) 2-Butyne is observed as a minor product of this reaction. Draw a mechanism accounting for the formation of this minor product and explain how your proposed mechanism is consistent with the observation that acetylene is also formed as a minor product.

(c) Predict the major and minor products that are expected if diethyl sulfate is used in place of dimethyl sulfate.

9.78 Salvinorin A, isolated from the Mexican plant *Salvia divinorum*, is known to bind with opioid receptors, thereby generating a powerful hallucinogenic effect. It has been suggested that salvinorin A may be useful in the treatment of drug addiction. Terminal alkyne **2**, shown below, was used in a total synthesis of salvinorin A.[9] Propose a plausible mechanism for the formation of **2** from alkyne **1**. (**Hint:** refer to Problem 9.8.)

9.79 Halogenation of alkynes with Cl_2 or Br_2 can generally be achieved with high yields, while halogenation of alkynes with I_2 typically gives low yields. However, the following reaction is successfully completed with I_2 in high yields (94%) to afford a potentially useful functionalized and conformationally constrained diiododiene synthetic intermediate.[10]

(a) The first step of the process likely involves one of the triple bonds attacking I_2 to give a bridged iodonium ion. Draw this intermediate.

(b) In the second step of the mechanism, it is unlikely that the other triple bond attacks the iodonoium ion in an intramolecular nucleophilic attack, because the resulting carbocation would be too high in energy. Draw this carbocation, and explain why it is too high in energy to form.

(c) In the second step of the mechanism, it is more likely that an iodide ion attacks the triple bond, which simultaneously attacks the iodonium ion (in a concerted fashion). Therefore, the entire mechanism has just two steps. Draw both steps of this mechanism, as described.

9.80 The following compounds exhibit tautomerism, with a particularly high enol concentration. Compound **1** exhibits an enol concentration of 9.1%, as compared with the enol concentration of 0.014% for $(CH_3)_2CHCHO$. Compound **2** exhibits an enol concentration of 95%:[11]

1 **2**

(a) In compound **1**, determine the hybridization state of the carbon atom adjacent to both rings, as well as the expected bond angles associated with that hybridization state.

(b) Draw the enol of compound **1**, and once again, determine the hybridization state and expected bond angles of the carbon atom adjacent to both rings.

(c) Determine whether the bond angles increase or decrease when compound **1** is converted into its enol form, and explain why steric effects favor a relatively large enol concentration in this case.

(d) Explain why the enol of **2** is even more favored than the enol of **1**.

9.81 Upon treatment with aqueous acid, compound **1** is converted into compound **2**.[12]

1 **2**

(a) In the first step of the accepted mechanism, one of the triple bonds is protonated to give a vinyl carbocation. Generally, vinyl carbocations are too unstable to form, but this case represents an exception. Using resonance structures, explain why a vinyl carbocation can be formed in this case.

(b) In the second step of the accepted mechanism, the vinyl carbocation is attacked by the nearby triple bond in an intramolecular fashion, resulting in another vinyl carbocation, which is then captured by water (H_2O). Draw a complete mechanism showing the conversion of **1** to **2**.

CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

9.82 Roquefortine C belongs to a class of natural products, called roquefortines, first isolated from cultures of the fungus *Penicillium roqueforti*. Roquefortine C, which is also present in blue cheese, exhibits bacteriostatic activity (it prevents bacteria from reproducing), and it is known to undergo isomerization to its tautomer, isoroquefortine C, as shown here:[13]

Roquefortine C **Isoroquefortine C**

(a) Draw a base-catalyzed mechanism for the tautomerization of roquefortine C into isoroquefortine C.

(b) Draw an acid-catalyzed mechanism for the tautomerization of roquefortine C into isoroquefortine C.

9.83 Natural products that contain the *N*-1,1-dimethyl-2-propenyl group (called an *N*-reverse prenyl group) often exhibit antitumor or antifungal activity. The synthesis of a particular *N*-reverse prenylated indole antifungal compound begins with the two steps shown below:[14]

1 **2** **3**

(a) Draw the structure of compound **2** and show a reasonable mechanism for its formation. Note that *i*-Pr_2NEt is a base, and CuCl is used as a catalyst. The catalyst can be ignored for our purposes.

(b) Identify the reagents necessary for the conversion of **2** to **3**.

9.84 The two lowest energy conformations of pentane are the *anti-anti* and the *anti-gauche* forms, where these terms describe the conformations while viewing down the C2—C3 bond and while viewing down the C3—C4 bond. A recent study analyzed the conformations

of 3-heptyne as an "elongated" analogue of pentane, where a carbon-carbon triple bond is "inserted" between C2 and C3 of pentane.[15] Interestingly, the researchers found that in each of the two most stable conformations of 3-heptyne, C1 and C6 are nearly eclipsed (looking down the alkyne group). In one of these conformations, C4 and C7 are *anti* to each other (looking down the C5—C6 bond); and in the other conformation, C4 and C7 experience a *gauche* interaction. Draw the following:

(a) A wedge-and-dash structure for each of the two lowest energy conformations of pentane.

(b) A wedge-and-dash structure of the conformer of 3-heptyne that is analogous to *anti-anti* pentane.

(c) A Newman projection that illustrates the eclipsed nature of the low-energy conformations of 3-heptyne.

(d) Newman projections that illustrate the difference between the two lowest energy conformations of 3-heptyne.

9.85 A variety of phenyl-substituted acetylenes (**1a–d**) were treated with HCl to give a mixture of *E* and *Z* isomers, as shown below:[16]

	E:*Z* Ratio
1a (R = Me)	70:30
1b (R = Et)	80:20
1c (R = *i*-Pr)	95:5
1d (R = *t*-Bu)	100:0

(a) As we saw in Problem 9.81, vinyl carbocations can form if they are stabilized by resonance. Draw the vinyl carbocation that is predominantly formed when phenyl-substituted acetylenes are protonated by HCl and explain the regioselectivity observed in these reactions.

(b) By comparing transition state stabilities for the step in which the vinyl carbocation is captured by a chloride ion, provide an explanation for the stereoselectivity (the *E*:*Z* ratio) observed in the reactions of **1a–d**.

LIST OF REFERENCES

1. *Tetrahedron Lett.* **1998**, *39*, 4555–4558.
2. *Org. Lett.* **2014**, *16*, 1168–1171.
3. *J. Org. Chem.* **2015**, *80*, 9900–9909.
4. *J. Org. Chem.* **1989**, *54*, 3963–3972.
5. *Org. Lett.* **2015**, *17*, 5772–5775.
6. *Helv. Chim. Acta.* **2008**, *91*, 993–1007.
7. *Org. Lett.* **2003**, *5*, 4017–4020.
8. *J. Org. Chem.* **1959**, *24*, 840–842.
9. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **2007**, *129*, 8968–8969.
10. *Tetrahedron Lett.* **1996**, *37*, 1571–1574.
11. *Acc. Chem. Res.* **1988**, *21*, 442–449.
12. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1966**, *88*, 4525–4526.
13. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **2008**, *130*, 6281–6287.
14. *Tetrahedron Lett.* **2001**, *42*, 7277–7280.
15. *J. Phys. Chem. A.* **2007**, *111*, 3513–3518.
16. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1976**, *98*, 3295–3300.

10

Radical Reactions

10.1 Radicals
10.2 Common Patterns in Radical Mechanisms
10.3 Chlorination of Methane
10.4 Thermodynamic Considerations for Halogenation Reactions
10.5 Selectivity of Halogenation
10.6 Stereochemistry of Halogenation
10.7 Allylic Bromination
10.8 Atmospheric Chemistry and the Ozone Layer
10.9 Autooxidation and Antioxidants
10.10 Radical Addition of HBr: *Anti*-Markovnikov Addition
10.11 Radical Polymerization
10.12 Radical Processes in the Petrochemical Industry
10.13 Halogenation as a Synthetic Technique

DID YOU EVER **WONDER...**

how certain chemicals are able to extinguish fires more successfully than water?

Fire is a chemical reaction called combustion, in which organic compounds are converted into CO_2 and water together with the liberation of heat and light. The combustion process is a chain (self-perpetuating) process that occurs via free radical intermediates. Understanding the nature of these free radicals is the key to understanding how fires can be extinguished most effectively.

This chapter will focus on radicals. We will learn about their structure and reactivity, and we will explore some of the important roles that radicals play in the food and chemical industries and in our overall health. We will also return to the topic of fire to explain how specially designed chemicals are able to destroy the radical intermediates in a fire, thereby stopping the combustion process and extinguishing the fire.

Top (*Burn hole in white paper*) Robyn Mackenzie/Shutterstock

Sabine Scheckel/Getty Images

Valeev/Shutterstock

DO YOU **REMEMBER?**

Before you go on, be sure you understand the following topics.
If necessary, review the suggested sections to prepare for this chapter.

- Enthalpy (Section 6.1)
- Gibbs Free Energy (Section 6.3)
- Entropy (Section 6.2)
- Reading Energy Diagrams (Section 6.6)

Take the DO YOU **REMEMBER?** QUIZ in the **online course** to check your understanding.

10.1 Radicals

Introduction to Radicals

In Section 6.1, we mentioned that a bond can be broken in two different ways: heterolytic bond cleavage forms ions, while homolytic bond cleavage forms radicals (Figure 10.1).

FIGURE 10.1
An illustration of the difference between homolytic and heterolytic bond cleavage.

Until now, we have focused mostly on ionic reactions—that is, we have been exploring mechanisms that involve ions. This chapter will focus exclusively on radicals. Look carefully at the curved arrows used in the two processes in Figure 10.1. Specifically, an ionic process employs double-barbed curved arrows, while a radical process employs single-barbed arrows (Figure 10.2). A double-barbed curved

FIGURE 10.2
Arrows used in ionic mechanisms are double-barbed, while arrows used in radical mechanisms are single-barbed.

arrow represents the motion of two electrons, while a single-barbed arrow represents the motion of only one electron. Single-barbed arrows are called *fishhook arrows* because of their appearance. This chapter will use fishhook arrows exclusively.

Structure and Geometry of Radicals

In order to understand the structure and geometry of a radical, we must quickly review the structures of carbocations and carbanions (Figure 10.3).

FIGURE 10.3
A comparison of the geometries of a carbocation and a carbanion.

A carbocation is sp^2-hybridized and trigonal planar, while a carbanion is sp^3-hybridized and trigonal pyramidal. The difference in geometry results from the difference in the number of nonbonding electrons. A carbocation has zero nonbonding electrons, while a carbanion has two nonbonding

electrons. A carbon radical is between these two cases, because it has one nonbonding electron. It therefore might seem reasonable to expect that the geometry of a carbon radical would be somewhere in between trigonal planar and trigonal pyramidal. Experiments suggest that carbon radicals either are trigonal planar or exhibit a very shallow pyramid (nearly planar) with a very low barrier to inversion (Figure 10.4).

FIGURE 10.4
The geometry of a carbon radical.

Either way, carbon radicals can be treated as trigonal planar entities. This geometry will have significance later in Section 10.6 when we deal with the stereochemical outcomes of radical reactions.

The order of stability for radicals follows the same trend exhibited by carbocations in which tertiary radicals are more stable than secondary radicals, which in turn are more stable than primary radicals (Figure 10.5).

FIGURE 10.5
The order of stability for carbon radicals.

LOOKING BACK
For a review of carbocation stability and hyperconjugation, see Section 6.8.

The explanation for this trend is similar to the explanation for carbocation stability. Specifically, alkyl groups are capable of stabilizing the unpaired electron via a delocalization effect, called hyperconjugation. This trend in stability is supported by a comparison of bond dissociation energies (BDEs). Notice that the bond dissociation energy is lowest for a C—H bond involving a tertiary carbon (Figure 10.6), indicating that it is easiest to cleave this C—H bond homolytically. These observed BDE values suggest that a tertiary radical is about 16 kJ/mol more stable than a secondary radical.

FIGURE 10.6
Bond dissociation energies for various C—H bonds.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

10.1 Rank the following radicals in order of increasing stability:

Resonance Structures of Radicals

In Chapter 2, we saw five patterns for drawing resonance structures. There are also several patterns for drawing resonance structures of radicals. However, the vast majority of situations require only one pattern, which is characterized by an unpaired electron next to a π bond, in an allylic position:

Allylic position

In such a case, the unpaired electron is resonance stabilized, and three fishhook arrows are used to draw the resonance structure:

Benzylic positions also exhibit the same pattern, with several resonance structures contributing to the overall resonance hybrid:

Resonance-stabilized radicals are even more stable than tertiary radicals, as can be seen by comparing the BDE values in Figure 10.7.

FIGURE 10.7
Bond dissociation energies for various C—H bonds.

A C—H bond at a benzylic or allylic position is more easily cleaved than a C—H bond at a tertiary position. These observed BDE values suggest that resonance-stabilized radicals are about 20 kJ/mol more stable than radicals, as compared with the 16 kJ difference between secondary and tertiary radicals.

SKILLBUILDER

10.1 DRAWING RESONANCE STRUCTURES OF RADICALS

LEARN the skill

Draw all resonance structures of the following radical and make sure to show the necessary fishhook arrows:

STEP 1
Look for an unpaired electron next to a π bond.

STEP 2
Draw three fishhook arrows and then draw the corresponding resonance structure.

SOLUTION

When drawing resonance structures of a radical, look for an unpaired electron next to a π bond. In this case, the unpaired electron is in fact located at an allylic position, so we draw the following three fishhook arrows:

The new resonance structure exhibits an unpaired electron that is allylic to another π bond, so again we draw three fishhook arrows to arrive at another resonance structure:

In total, there are three resonance structures:

PRACTICE the skill

10.2 Using fishhook arrows, draw resonance structures for each of the following radicals:

(a) (b) (c) (d)

10.3 5-Methylcyclopentadiene undergoes homolytic bond cleavage of a C—H bond to form a radical that exhibits five resonance structures. Determine which hydrogen atom is abstracted and draw all five resonance structures of the resulting radical.

5-Methylcyclopentadiene

APPLY the skill

10.4 Stable radicals have been used as biosensors to monitor cellular oxygen levels. One of the first stable radicals to be reported was the triphenylmethyl radical, shown at right. More recently, similar radicals have been prepared in which the hydrogen atoms of the phenyl rings have been replaced with other atoms or groups to make sensors that are more water-soluble.[1] Draw all resonance structures of the triphenylmethyl radical, and explain why it is unusually stable.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 10.24, 10.27**

In this section, we have seen that allylic and benzylic radicals are stabilized by resonance. When analyzing the stability of a radical, make sure not to confuse allylic and vinylic positions:

Allylic positions Vinylic positions

A vinylic radical is not resonance stabilized and does not have a resonance structure:

In fact, a vinylic radical is even less stable than a primary radical. This can be seen by comparing BDE values (Figure 10.8).

FIGURE 10.8
Bond dissociation energies for various C—H bonds.

A C—H bond at a vinylic position requires even more energy to cleave than a C—H bond at a primary position. These observed BDE values suggest that a vinylic radical is more than 50 kJ/mol higher in energy than a primary radical (a very large difference).

SKILLBUILDER

10.2 IDENTIFYING THE WEAKEST C—H BOND IN A COMPOUND

LEARN the skill

Identify the weakest C—H bond in the following compound:

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Consider all possible radicals that would result from homolytic cleavage of a C—H bond.

Imagine homolytically breaking each different type of C—H bond in the compound. This would produce the following radicals:

STEP 2
Identify the most stable radical.

STEP 3
Determine which bond is the weakest.

Of all the possibilities, the allylic radical will be the most stable radical. The weakest C—H bond is the one that leads to the most stable radical. Therefore, a C—H bond at the allylic position will be the weakest C—H bond. It is the easiest bond to break homolytically:

PRACTICE the skill

10.5 Identify the weakest C—H bond in each of the following compounds:

10.6 The C—H bonds shown in red exhibit very similar BDE values, because homolytic cleavage of either bond results in a resonance-stabilized radical. Nevertheless, one of these C—H bonds is weaker than the other. Identify the weaker bond and explain your choice:

APPLY the skill

10.7 The naturally occurring compound (*S*)-limonene (compound **1**) can be synthetically transformed with radical chemistry into compound **2**, which has potent antimalarial activity.[2] Identify the weakest C—H bond in (*S*)-limonene and explain your choice.

1 **2**

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 10.25, 10.45**

10.2 Common Patterns in Radical Mechanisms

In Chapter 6, we saw that ionic mechanisms are comprised of only four different kinds of arrow-pushing patterns (nucleophilic attack, loss of a leaving group, proton transfer, and rearrangement). Similarly, radical mechanisms are also comprised of only a small number of arrow-pushing patterns, although these patterns are very different from the patterns in ionic mechanisms. For example, carbocations can undergo rearrangement (as seen in Section 6.11), but radicals are not observed to undergo rearrangement:

This carbocation **will rearrange** to produce a more stable tertiary carbocation

This radical **will *not* rearrange** to produce a more stable tertiary radical

There are six different kinds of arrow-pushing patterns that comprise radical reactions. We will now explore these patterns one by one:

1. **Homolytic cleavage**: Homolytic cleavage requires a large input of energy. This energy can be supplied in the form of heat (Δ) or light (*hν*).

2. **Addition to a π bond**: A radical adds to a π bond, thereby destroying the π bond and generating a new radical.

3. **Hydrogen abstraction**: A radical can abstract a hydrogen atom from a compound, generating a new radical. Don't confuse this step with a proton transfer, which is an ionic step. In a proton transfer, only the nucleus of the hydrogen atom (a proton, H^+) is being transferred. Here, the entire hydrogen atom (proton and electron, $H^\bullet$) is being transferred from one location to another.

4. **Halogen abstraction**: A radical can abstract a halogen atom, generating a new radical. This step is similar to hydrogen abstraction, only a halogen atom is being abstracted instead of a hydrogen atom.

5. **Elimination**: The position bearing the unpaired electron is called the alpha position. In an elimination step, a double bond forms between the alpha (α) and beta (β) positions. As a result, a single bond at the β position is cleaved, causing the compound to fragment into two pieces.

6. **Coupling**: Two radicals join together and form a bond.

Figure 10.9 summarizes the six common steps in radical mechanisms.

FIGURE 10.9 Six steps common in radical mechanisms.

This might seem like a lot to remember. It is therefore helpful to group them. For example, notice that the first step (homolytic cleavage) and the sixth step (coupling) are just the reverse of each other. Homolytic cleavage creates radicals, while coupling destroys them:

The second and fifth steps shown in Figure 10.9 are also the reverse of each other. Addition to a π bond is just the reverse of elimination:

That leaves only two more steps, both of which are called abstractions (hydrogen abstraction and halogen abstraction). These two steps are not the reverse of each other. The reverse of a hydrogen abstraction is simply a hydrogen abstraction:

The same is true for halogen abstraction. That is, the reverse of a halogen abstraction is simply a halogen abstraction.

When drawing a radical mechanism, remember that every step will generally have either two or three fishhook arrows. Take another close look at the six steps shown in Figure 10.9. The first and last step (homolytic cleavage and coupling) each requires exactly two fishhook arrows, because two electrons are moving in each case. In contrast, all other steps have three electrons moving and therefore require three fishhook arrows. In any step, the number of fishhook arrows must correspond to the number of electrons moving. Let's get some practice drawing fishhook arrows.

SKILLBUILDER

10.3 DRAWING FISHHOOK ARROWS FOR A RADICAL PROCESS

LEARN the skill

Draw the appropriate fishhook arrows for the following radical process:

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Identify the process.

The following procedure can be used for all six types of radical steps (not just the one in this problem). First identify the type of process taking place. A radical is reacting with Br_2, and the result is the transfer of a bromine atom:

Therefore, this step is a *halogen abstraction*.

STEP 2
Determine the number of fishhook arrows required.

Determine the number of fishhook arrows that must be used (either two or three). Recall that there are six different kinds of steps. Cleavage and coupling require two fishhooks, while all other steps require three fishhook arrows. This process (halogenation) must have *three* fishhook arrows, which means that three electrons are moving. Each of the fishhooks will have its tail placed on one of the electrons that is moving.

Next, identify any bonds being broken or formed:

STEP 3
Identify any bonds being broken or formed.

If a bond is being formed, draw the two fishhook arrows that show bond formation:

STEP 4
For a bond being formed, draw two fishhook arrows.

Finally, if a bond is being broken, make sure to have two fishhook arrows, one for each electron of the bond broken. In this case, one fishhook arrow is already there, so we only need to draw the remaining fishhook arrow:

STEP 5
For a bond being broken, make sure that two fishhook arrows are shown.

PRACTICE the skill

10.8 Draw the appropriate fishhook arrows for each of the following radical processes.

APPLY the skill

10.9 The genus *Aspergillus* includes several hundred species of mold, which collectively produce a large number of natural products. Many of these natural products have been found to possess interesting biological properties. Two of these natural products were both synthesized from a common tricyclic precursor (compound **4** below) that has an intricate shape.[3] Tricyclic compound **4** was made from bicyclic compound **1** using AIBN (which is

further explored in Problem 10.31) and Bu_3SnH to start a radical cyclization reaction. Draw fishhook arrows to provide a mechanism for the cyclization step in which bicyclic intermediate **2** is converted into tricyclic intermediate **3**.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problem 10.57**

Each of the six patterns shown in Figure 10.9 can be placed in one of three categories based on the fate of the radicals (Figure 10.10). **Initiation** is when radicals are created, while **termination** is when two radicals annihilate each other by forming a bond. The other four steps are generally **propagation** steps, in which the location of the unpaired electron is moved from place to place. Later in this chapter, we will encounter situations that will require us to refine our definitions for initiation, propagation, and termination, but for now, these simplistic (and incomplete) definitions will be helpful to us as we begin exploring radical mechanisms in the upcoming sections.

FIGURE 10.10
The six common steps divided into categories.

10.3 Chlorination of Methane

A Radical Mechanism for Chlorination of Methane

We will now use the skills developed in Section 10.2 to explore mechanisms for radical reactions. As a first example, consider the reaction between methane and chlorine to form methyl chloride:

$$\underset{\text{Methane}}{CH_4} \xrightarrow[h\nu]{Cl_2} \underset{\text{Methyl chloride}}{CH_3Cl} + HCl$$

Evidence suggests that this reaction proceeds via a radical mechanism (Mechanism 10.1).

MECHANISM 10.1 RADICAL CHLORINATION

The reaction mechanism for radical chlorination is divided into three distinct stages. The initiation stage involves creation of radicals, while the termination stage involves destruction of radicals. The propagation stage is the most important, because the propagation steps are responsible for the observed reaction. The first propagation step is a hydrogen abstraction, and the second propagation step is a halogen abstraction. Notice that the sum of these propagation steps gives the net reaction:

Hydrogen abstraction $CH_4 + \cancel{Cl} \longrightarrow \cancel{CH_3} + HCl$

Halogen abstraction $\cancel{CH_3} + Cl_2 \longrightarrow CH_3Cl + \cancel{Cl}$

Net reaction $\boxed{CH_4 + Cl_2 \longrightarrow CH_3Cl + HCl}$

This now provides us with a new, refined definition for propagation steps. Specifically, the sum of the propagation steps gives the net chemical reaction. All other steps must be either initiation or termination, not propagation. We will revisit this refined definition later in Section 10.9.

There is one more critical aspect of the propagation steps shown above. Notice that the first propagation step *consumes* a chlorine radical, while the second propagation step *regenerates* a chlorine radical. In this way, one chlorine radical can ultimately cause thousands of molecules of methane to be converted into chloromethane (assuming enough Cl_2 is present). Therefore, the reaction is called a **chain reaction**.

When excess Cl_2 is present, polychlorination is observed:

The initial product, methyl chloride (CH_3Cl), is even more reactive toward radical halogenation than methane. As methyl chloride is formed, it reacts with chlorine to produce methylene chloride. The process continues until carbon tetrachloride is produced. In order to produce methyl chloride as the major product (monohalogenation), it is necessary to use an excess of methane and a small amount of Cl_2. Unless otherwise indicated, the conditions of a halogenation reaction are generally controlled so as to produce monohalogenation.

SKILLBUILDER

10.4 DRAWING A MECHANISM FOR RADICAL HALOGENATION

LEARN the skill

Draw a mechanism for the radical chlorination of methyl chloride to produce methylene chloride:

SOLUTION

The mechanism will have three distinct stages. The first stage is initiation, which creates chlorine radicals. This initiation step involves homolytic bond cleavage and should employ only two fishhook arrows:

STEP 1
Draw the initiation step(s).

The next stage involves the propagation steps. There are two propagation steps: hydrogen abstraction to remove the hydrogen atom, followed by halogen abstraction to attach the chlorine atom. Each of these steps should have three fishhook arrows:

STEP 2
Draw the propagation steps.

These two abstractions together represent the core of the reaction. They show how the product is formed.

Termination ends the process. There are a number of possible termination steps. When drawing a mechanism for a radical reaction, it is generally not necessary to draw all possible termination steps unless specifically asked to do so. It is sufficient to draw the one termination step that also produces the desired product:

STEP 3
Draw at least one termination step.

PRACTICE the skill

10.10 Draw a mechanism for each of the following reactions:

(a) Chlorination of methylene chloride (CH_2Cl_2) to produce chloroform ($CHCl_3$)

(b) Chlorination of chloroform ($CHCl_3$) to produce carbon tetrachloride (CCl_4)

(c) Chlorination of ethane to produce ethyl chloride

(d) Chlorination of 1,1,1-trichloroethane to produce 1,1,1,2-tetrachloroethane

(e) Chlorination of 2,2-dichloropropane to produce 1,2,2-trichloropropane

APPLY the skill

10.11 Methyl bromide is widely used as a fumigant to prevent the spread of diseases and pests in agricultural products, and it can be prepared from methane via radical bromination. A new method for preparing methyl bromide was developed, involving genetically engineered microorganisms that are capable of producing large quantities of the compound.[4]

(a) Draw a mechanism for the radical bromination of methane to yield bromomethane.

(b) In practice, radical bromination of methane produces many by-products. For example, ethane is obtained in small quantities. Suggest a mechanism for the formation of ethane.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problem 10.48**

Radical Initiators

Energy is required to initiate a radical chain reaction. For example:

The change in enthalpy for homolytic bond cleavage of Cl_2 is 243 kJ/mol. In order to break the Cl—Cl bond homolytically, this energy must be supplied in the form of either heat (Δ) or light (*hν*). Photochemical initiation requires the use of UV light, while thermal initiation requires a very high temperature (several hundred degrees Celsius) in order to produce the energy necessary to cause homolytic bond cleavage of a Cl—Cl bond. Achieving thermal initiation at more moderate temperatures requires the use of a **radical initiator,** a compound with a weak bond that undergoes homolytic bond cleavage with greater ease. For example, consider the homolytic bond cleavage of **alkyl peroxides**, which are compounds containing an O—O bond:

An alkyl peroxide

Notice that this process requires less energy, because the O—O bond is weaker than the Cl—Cl bond. This process can be achieved at 80°C, and the radicals produced (RO•) can start the chain process.

Acyl peroxides are often used as radical initiators, because the O—O bond is especially weak:

An acyl peroxide

The energy required to homolytically cleave this bond is only 121 kJ/mol. This bond has a particularly small BDE because the radical produced is resonance stabilized:

Radical Inhibitors

While some compounds, like peroxides, help initiate radical reactions, compounds called radical inhibitors have the opposite effect. A **radical inhibitor** is a compound that prevents a chain process from either getting started or continuing. Radical inhibitors effectively destroy radicals and are therefore also called radical scavengers. For example, molecular oxygen (O_2) is a diradical:

Molecular oxygen is able to couple with other radicals, thereby destroying them. Each molecule of oxygen is capable of destroying two radicals. As a result, radical chain reactions generally won't occur rapidly until all of the available oxygen has been consumed.

Another example of a radical inhibitor is hydroquinone. When hydroquinone encounters a radical, a hydrogen abstraction can take place, generating a resonance-stabilized radical that is less reactive than the original radical:

Hydroquinone Resonance stabilized

This resonance-stabilized radical can then destroy another radical via another hydrogen abstraction to form benzoquinone:

Benzoquinone

In Section 10.9, we will discuss the role of radical inhibitors in biological processes.

10.4 Thermodynamic Considerations for Halogenation Reactions

In Section 10.3, we explored the accepted mechanism for the chlorination of methane. We will now explore whether this reaction can be accomplished with other halogens as well. Is it possible to achieve a radical fluorination, bromination, or iodination? To answer this question, we must explore some thermodynamic aspects of halogenation.

In Section 6.3, we saw that ΔG (the change in Gibbs free energy) determines whether or not a reaction is thermodynamically favorable. In order for a reaction to favor products over starting materials, the reaction must exhibit a negative ΔG. If ΔG is positive, starting materials will be favored, and the reaction will not produce the desired products. We will now use this information to determine whether halogenation can be accomplished with halogens other than chlorine.

Recall that ΔG is comprised of two components—enthalpy and entropy:

$$\Delta G = \underbrace{(\Delta H)}_{\text{Enthalpy term}} + \underbrace{(-T\Delta S)}_{\text{Entropy term}}$$

For halogenation of an alkane, the entropy component is negligible because two molecules of starting material are converted into two molecules of products:

$$\underbrace{CH_4 + X_2}_{\text{Two molecules}} \xrightarrow{h\nu} \underbrace{CH_3X + HX}_{\text{Two molecules}}$$

Since the change in entropy of a halogenation reaction is negligible, we can assess the value of ΔG by analyzing the enthalpy term alone:

$$\Delta G \approx \Delta H$$

The enthalpy term is determined by a number of factors, but the most important factor is bond strength. We can estimate ΔH by comparing the energy of the bonds broken and the energy of bonds formed:

$$\underbrace{H_3C{-}H + X{-}X}_{\text{Bonds broken}} \xrightarrow{h\nu} \underbrace{H_3C{-}X + H{-}X}_{\text{Bonds formed}}$$

To make the comparison, we look at bond dissociation energies. The relevant values are shown in Table 10.1. Using these values, we can estimate the sign of ΔH (positive or negative) associated with each halogenation reaction. Remember that:

- Bonds broken (shown in blue) require an input of energy in order to be broken, contributing to a positive value of ΔH (the system increases in energy).
- Bonds formed (shown in red) release energy when they are formed, contributing to a negative value of ΔH (the system decreases in energy).

TABLE 10.1 BOND DISSOCIATION ENERGIES OF RELEVANT BONDS (kJ/mol)

	$H_3C{-}H$	X—X	$H_3C{-}X$	H—X
F	435	159	456	569
Cl	435	243	351	431
Br	435	193	293	368
I	435	151	234	297

The data in Table 10.1 can be used to make the following predictions:

$$CH_4 + \boxed{F_2} \xrightarrow{h\nu} CH_3F + HF \qquad \Delta H° = \boxed{-431}\ \text{kJ/mol}$$

$$CH_4 + \boxed{Cl_2} \xrightarrow{h\nu} CH_3Cl + HCl \qquad \Delta H° = \boxed{-104}\ \text{kJ/mol}$$

$$CH_4 + \boxed{Br_2} \xrightarrow{h\nu} CH_3Br + HBr \qquad \Delta H° = \boxed{-33}\ \text{kJ/mol}$$

$$CH_4 + \boxed{I_2} \xrightarrow{h\nu} CH_3I + HI \qquad \Delta H° = \boxed{+55}\ \text{kJ/mol}$$

All of the processes above have a negative value for ΔH and are exothermic except for iodination. Iodination of methane has a positive ΔH, which means that ΔG will also be positive for that reaction. As a result, iodination is not thermodynamically favorable, and the reaction simply does not occur. The other halogenation reactions are all thermodynamically favorable, but fluorination is so exothermic that the reaction is too violent to be of practical use. Therefore, only chlorination and bromination are practical in the laboratory.

When this type of thermodynamic analysis is applied to alkanes other than methane, similar results are obtained. For example, ethane will undergo both radical chlorination and radical bromination:

Radical fluorination of ethane is too violent to be practical, and radical iodination of ethane does not occur.

A comparison of chlorination and bromination reveals that bromination is generally a much slower process than chlorination. To understand why, we must take a closer look at the individual propagation steps. We will compare ΔH of each propagation step for the chlorination and bromination of ethane:

In each case, the net reaction is exothermic. The estimated values for ΔH for chlorination and bromination are -117 and -50 kJ/mol, respectively. Therefore, both of these reactions are thermodynamically favorable. But notice that the first step of bromination is an endothermic process (ΔH has a positive value). This endothermic step does not prevent bromination from occurring, because the net reaction is still exothermic. However, the endothermic first step does greatly affect the rate of the reaction. Compare the energy diagrams for the chlorination and bromination of ethane (Figure 10.11). Each energy diagram displays both propagation steps. In each case, the first propagation step (hydrogen abstraction) is the rate-determining step. For chlorination, the rate-determining step is exothermic, and the energy of activation (E_a) is relatively small. In contrast, the rate-determining step of the bromination process is endothermic, and the energy of activation (E_a) is relatively large. As a result, bromination occurs more slowly than chlorination.

According to this analysis, it might seem to be a disadvantage that the first step of bromination is endothermic. We will see in Section 10.5 that this endothermic step actually makes bromination more useful (albeit slower) than chlorination.

FIGURE 10.11
Energy diagrams for the two propagation steps of radical chlorination and radical bromination of ethane.

10.5 Selectivity of Halogenation

When propane undergoes radical halogenation, there are two possible products, and both are formed:

Statistically, we should be able to predict what the product distribution should be (how much of each product to expect), based on the number of each type of hydrogen atom:

Based on this analysis, we should expect halogenation to occur at the primary position three times as often as it does at the secondary position. However, these expectations are not supported by observations:

These results show that halogenation occurs at the secondary position more readily than statistics alone would suggest. Why? Recall that the rate-determining step is the first propagation step—hydrogen abstraction. We therefore focus our attention on that step. Specifically, compare the transition state for abstraction at the primary position with the transition state for abstraction at the secondary position (Figure 10.12). Compare the energy levels of the transition states highlighted in Figure 10.12.

FIGURE 10.12
An energy diagram showing hydrogen abstraction producing either a primary or a secondary radical.

In each transition state, an unpaired electron (radical) is developing on a carbon atom. The developing radical is more stable at the secondary position than at the primary position. As a result, E_a is lower for hydrogen abstraction at the secondary position, and the reaction occurs more rapidly at that site. This explains the observation that chlorination at the secondary position occurs more readily than is predicted by statistics alone.

When propane undergoes radical bromination (rather than chlorination), the following product distribution is observed:

These results indicate that the tendency for bromination at the secondary position is much more pronounced, with 97% of the product occurring from reaction at the secondary position. Bromination is said to be more *selective* than chlorination. To understand the reason for this selectivity, recall that the rate-determining step of chlorination is exothermic, while the rate-determining step of bromination is endothermic. In Section 10.4, we used that fact to explain why bromination is slower than chlorination. Now, we will use that fact to explain why bromination is more selective than chlorination.

Recall the Hammond postulate (Section 6.6), which describes the nature of the transition state in each case. For the chlorination process, the rate-determining step is exothermic, and therefore, the energy and structure of the transition state more closely resemble reactants than products (Figure 10.13).

FIGURE 10.13
Use of the Hammond postulate to compare the transition states in the first propagation step of radical chlorination and radical bromination.

That means that the C—H bond has only begun to break, and the carbon atom has very little radical character. In the case of bromination, the rate-determining step is endothermic, and therefore, the energy and structure of the transition state more closely resemble intermediates than reactants (Figure 10.13). As a result, the C—H bond is almost completely broken in the transition state, and the carbon atom has significant radical character (Figure 10.14).

FIGURE 10.14
A comparison of the transition states during the first propagation step of radical chlorination and radical bromination.

In both cases, the carbon atom has partial radical character (δ•), but during chlorination, the amount of radical character is small. During bromination, the amount of radical character is much larger. As a result, the transition state will be more sensitive to the nature of the substrate during bromination. In the energy diagram for the chlorination process, there is only a small difference in energy between the transition states leading to primary, secondary, or tertiary radicals (Figure 10.15, left). In contrast, the energy diagram for the bromination process shows a large difference in energy between the transition states leading to primary, secondary, or tertiary radicals (Figure 10.15, right). As a result, bromination shows greater selectivity than chlorination.

FIGURE 10.15
Energy diagrams for the first propagation step of chlorination and bromination, comparing the difference in transition states leading to primary, secondary, or tertiary radicals.

Here is another example that illustrates the difference in selectivity between chlorination and bromination:

In this case, the selectivity of bromination is extremely pronounced because there are only two possible outcomes: halogenation at a primary position or halogenation at a tertiary position. For the bromination process, the difference in energy of the transition states will be very significant.

Table 10.2 summarizes the relative selectivity of fluorination, chlorination, and bromination. Fluorine only shows a very small selectivity for tertiary over primary halogenation. In contrast, bromine shows a very large selectivity for halogenation at the tertiary position (1600 times greater than at the primary position).

TABLE 10.2 THE RELATIVE SELECTIVITY OF FLUORINATION, CHLORINATION, AND BROMINATION

	PRIMARY	SECONDARY	TERTIARY
F	1	1.2	1.4
Cl	1	4.5	5.1
Br	1	82	1600

SKILLBUILDER

10.5 PREDICTING THE SELECTIVITY OF RADICAL BROMINATION

LEARN the skill

Predict the major product obtained upon radical bromination of 2,2,4-trimethylpentane:

SOLUTION

Analyze all possible positions and identify each as primary, secondary, or tertiary:

STEPS 1 AND 2
Identify all possible positions and determine the most stable location for a radical.

STEP 3
Draw the product of bromination at the location of the most stable radical.

Make sure to avoid selecting a quaternary position, as quaternary positions do not possess a C—H bond. Bromination cannot occur at a quaternary site. The major product is expected to result from bromination at the tertiary position:

PRACTICE the skill

10.12 Predict the major monobromination product obtained upon radical bromination of each of the following compounds:

APPLY the skill

10.13 A synthesis of the antibiotic natural product γ-indomycinone involved the halogenation reaction shown below.[5] The major product of the reaction is a monobrominated compound, and a significant amount of a minor, dibrominated compound is also formed. Draw both products, and explain why the dibrominated product is readily formed.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 10.26, 10.29, 10.34a–c,f, 10.38, 10.40**

10.6 Stereochemistry of Halogenation

We now focus our attention on the stereochemical outcome of radical halogenation. We will investigate two different situations: (1) halogenation that creates a new chiral center and (2) halogenation that occurs at an existing chiral center.

Halogenation That Creates a New Chiral Center

When butane undergoes radical chlorination, two constitutional isomers are obtained:

The products are 2-chlorobutane and 1-chlorobutane. The former has a new chiral center that was created by the reaction. In this case, a racemic mixture of 2-chlorobutane is obtained. Why? Consider the structure of the radical intermediate:

Trigonal planar

At the beginning of this chapter, we saw that a carbon radical either is trigonal planar or is a shallow pyramid that is rapidly inverting. Either way, it can be treated as trigonal planar. We therefore expect that halogen abstraction can occur on either face of the plane with equal likelihood, leading to a racemic mixture of 2-chlorobutane:

Halogenation at an Existing Chiral Center

In some case, halogenation will occur at an existing chiral center. Consider the following example:

We expect bromination to occur at the tertiary position, and this position is already a chiral center before the reaction takes place. In such a case, what happens to the chiral center? Once again, we expect a racemic product, regardless of the configuration of the starting material. The first propagation step is removal of a hydrogen atom from the chiral center to form a radical intermediate that can be treated as planar:

Trigonal planar

At this point, the configuration of the starting alkane has been lost. The second propagation step can now occur on either face of the plane with equal likelihood, leading to a racemic mixture:

Formation of Diastereomers

When radical halogenation generates a new chiral center, and it is the only chiral center in the molecule, we have seen that a 1:1 mixture of enantiomers (a racemic mixture) is formed. Now let's consider the outcome if there is an existing chiral center that is not involved in the radical halogenation process. In such a case, the products are diastereomers, rather than enantiomers, as shown:

In this example, bromination occurs at the secondary position, while the existing chiral center remains unaffected (that chiral center does not bear any hydrogen atoms). Unlike enantiomers, which are formed in equal amounts, diastereomers are generally not formed in equal amounts. The existence of a nearby chiral center will differentiate the two faces of the trigonal planar radical intermediate, so halogen abstraction is not equally likely on either face, and the products are not expected to be formed in equal amounts.

SKILLBUILDER

10.6 PREDICTING THE STEREOCHEMICAL OUTCOME OF RADICAL BROMINATION

LEARN the skill

Predict the stereochemical outcome of radical bromination of the following alkane:

SOLUTION

First identify the regiochemical outcome—that is, identify the position that will undergo bromination. In this example, there is only one tertiary position:

STEP 1
Identify the location where bromination will occur.

STEP 2
If the location of bromination is a chiral center or will become a chiral center, draw both possible stereoisomers.

This position is an existing chiral center, so we expect loss of configuration to produce both possible stereoisomers:

Notice that the other chiral center was unaffected by the reaction. The products of this reaction are not enantiomers and cannot be called a racemic mixture. In this case, the products are diastereomers.

PRACTICE the skill

10.14 Predict the stereochemical outcome of radical bromination of the following alkanes:

APPLY the skill

10.15 Carbohydrates such as the glucose derivative shown below can serve as useful chiral starting materials for biopolymers and natural product synthesis.[6] Radical bromination of this compound occurs at C1 to give two products. Draw both products, and predict whether or not they will be formed in equal amounts.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 10.30, 10.35, 10.41, 10.55**

10.7 Allylic Bromination

Until now, we have focused on reactions of alkanes. Now let's consider the radical halogenation of alkenes. For example, consider what outcome you might expect when cyclohexene undergoes radical bromination. Begin by comparing all C—H bonds to identify the bond that is most easily broken. Specifically, compare the BDE values for each type of C—H bond in cyclohexene:

Of the three different types of C—H bonds in cyclohexene, the C—H bond at an allylic site has the lowest BDE, because hydrogen abstraction at that site generates a resonance-stabilized allylic radical:

Therefore, we expect bromination of cyclohexene to produce the allylic bromide:

This reaction is called an **allylic bromination**, and it suffers from one serious flaw. When the reaction is performed with Br_2 as the reagent, a competition occurs between allylic bromination and ionic addition of bromine across the π bond (as we saw in Section 8.10):

To avoid this competing reaction, the concentration of bromine (Br_2) must be kept as low as possible throughout the reaction. This can be accomplished by using ***N*-bromosuccinimide** (NBS) as a reagent instead of Br_2. NBS is an alternate source of the bromine radical:

The N—Br bond is weak and is easily cleaved to produce a bromine radical, which achieves the first propagation step:

The HBr produced in this step then reacts with NBS in an ionic reaction that produces Br_2. This Br_2 is then consumed in the second propagation step to form the product:

Throughout the process, concentrations of HBr and Br_2 are kept at a minimum. Under these conditions, ionic addition of Br_2 does not successfully compete with radical bromination.

In some cases, such as the one below, a mixture of products is obtained, because the allylic radical initially formed is resonance stabilized and can undergo halogen abstraction at either site:

SKILLBUILDER

10.7 PREDICTING THE PRODUCTS OF ALLYLIC BROMINATION

LEARN the skill

Predict the products that are obtained when methylenecyclohexane is treated with NBS and irradiated with UV light:

SOLUTION

First identify any allylic positions:

STEP 1
Identify the allylic position.

In this case, there is only one unique allylic position, because the allylic position on the other side of the compound is identical (it will lead to the same products).

Next, remove a hydrogen atom from the allylic position and draw the resonance structures of the resulting allylic radical:

STEP 2
Remove a hydrogen atom and draw resonance structures.

Finally, use these resonance structures to determine the products of the second propagation step (halogen abstraction). Simply place a bromine atom at the position of the unpaired electron in each resonance structure, giving the following products:

STEP 3
Place a bromine atom at each location that bears an unpaired electron.

(Racemic mixture)

The first product is expected to be obtained as a racemic mixture of enantiomers, as described in Section 10.6.

PRACTICE the skill

10.16 Predict the monobromination product(s) expected when each of the following compounds is treated with NBS and irradiated with UV light:

(a)
(b)
(c)
(d)

10.17 When 2-methyl-2-butene is treated with NBS and irradiated with UV light, five isomeric monobromination products are obtained, one of which is a racemic mixture of enantiomers. Draw all five monobromination products and identify the product that is obtained as a racemic mixture.

APPLY the skill

10.18 Gamma(γ)-amino butyric acid (GABA) is a neurotransmitter (a chemical that is used to send signals from one neuron to another) of the mammalian central nervous system. In order to understand how GABA works, conformationally restricted analogues, such as

compound **1**, have been made. During a synthesis of compound **1**, compound **2** was subjected to allylic bromination using NBS and a radical initiator (AIBN) instead of light.[7] Draw all eight possible allylic bromides that can be formed when compound **2** undergoes allylic bromination, considering all possible regiochemical and stereochemical outcomes.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 10.34e, 10.36, 10.39, 10.44**

10.8 Atmospheric Chemistry and the Ozone Layer

Ozone (O_3) is constantly produced and destroyed in the stratosphere, and its presence plays a vital role in shielding us from harmful UV radiation emitted by the sun. It is believed that life could not have flourished on land without this protective ozone layer, and instead, life would have been restricted to the depths of the ocean. The ability of ozone to protect us from harmful radiation is believed to result from the following mechanism:

$$O_3 \xrightarrow{h\nu} O_2 + \cdot\ddot{\underset{\cdot\cdot}{O}}\cdot$$

$$O_2 + \cdot\ddot{\underset{\cdot\cdot}{O}}\cdot \longrightarrow O_3 + \text{heat}$$

In the first step above, ozone absorbs UV light and splits into two pieces. In the second step, these two pieces recombine to release energy. There is no net chemical change, but there is one important consequence of this process: Harmful UV light is converted into another form of energy (Figure 10.16).

FIGURE 10.16
An illustration of the ability of stratospheric ozone to convert light into heat.

FIGURE 10.17
A map of O_3 concentrations in the ozone layer around the globe. The area colored in dark blue represents a region (over Antarctica) where there is a relatively low concentration of O_3.

This process exemplifies the role of entropy in nature. Light and heat are both forms of energy, but heat is a more disordered form of energy. The driving force for the conversion of light into heat is an increase in entropy. Ozone is simply the vehicle by which ordered energy (light) is converted into disordered energy (heat).

Measurements over the last several decades have indicated a rapid decrease of stratospheric ozone. This decrease has been most drastic over Antarctica (Figure 10.17), where the ozone has dropped as low as 33% of its 1975 value. Our increased exposure to harmful UV radiation has been linked with skin cancer and other health issues. While many factors contribute to ozone depletion, it is believed that the main culprits are compounds called **chlorofluorocarbons** (**CFCs**). CFCs are compounds containing only carbon, chlorine, and fluorine. In the past they were heavily used for a wide variety of commercial applications, including as refrigerants, as propellants, in the production

of foam insulation, as fire-fighting materials, and for many other useful applications. They were sold under the trade name "**Freons**":

CFC-11 (Freon 11) CFC-12 (Freon 12) CFC-113 (Freon 113)

The harmful effects of CFCs on the ozone layer were elucidated in the early 1970s by Mario Molina, Frank Rowland, and Paul Crutzen, who shared the 1995 Nobel Prize in Chemistry for their work. CFCs are stable compounds that do not undergo chemical change until they reach the stratosphere. In the stratosphere, they interact with high-energy UV light and undergo homolytic cleavage, forming chlorine radicals. These radicals are then believed to destroy ozone by the following mechanism:

The second propagation step regenerates a chlorine radical, which continues the chain reaction. In this way, each CFC molecule can destroy thousands of ozone molecules. A global treaty, called the Montreal Protocol, was agreed upon in the late 1980s and was followed by eight successive revisions to speed up the reduction of chlorofluorocarbon production. As a result, the concentration of CFCs in the atmosphere has been slowly decreasing since 1996, and the size and intensity of the "ozone hole" in Antarctica has leveled off and is showing signs of recovery. This will be a very slow process, as the chlorine radicals produced by CFCs have a very long life in the upper atmosphere. At the current rate of recovery, it is estimated that it will take five decades for the ozone levels in Antarctica to return to their 1980 levels.

CFCs have largely been replaced with **hydrofluoroalkanes (HFAs)**, also sometimes called **hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs)**. Two examples are shown:

HFA-134a (1,1,1,2-Tetrafluoroethane) HFA-227 (1,1,1,2,3,3,3-Heptafluoropropane)

As illustrated by these examples, HFAs have C—F bonds and C—H bonds, but they lack C—Cl bonds. HFAs are less damaging to the ozone layer than CFCs, because C—F bonds are much less susceptible to cleavage by UV radiation than C—Cl bonds. The substitution of HFAs for CFCs was more complicated than one might think and required extensive research over the last three decades. Compressors in refrigerators and air conditioners had to be redesigned in order to use HFAs. Medical inhalers, based on HFA propellants, required extensive large-scale testing, as required by the FDA (Food and Drug Administration). Despite all of these efforts, HFAs still do not represent the perfect solution. For example, HFAs are powerful greenhouse gases that can contribute to global warming (a mole of HFAs is thousands of times more potent than a mole of CO_2 in terms of greenhouse effects), and their use has been increasing by 15% per year. In addition, the cost of HFA inhalers is substantially more expensive than the old inhalers using CFCs. For these and many other reasons, efforts are underway to find commercially viable substitutes to replace HFAs in refrigerators, air conditioners, and inhalers.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

10.19 Most supersonic planes produce exhaust of hot gases containing many compounds, including nitric oxide (NO). Nitric oxide is a radical that is believed to play a role in ozone depletion. Propose propagation steps that show how nitric oxide can destroy ozone in a chain process.

WorldLinks Fighting Fires with Chemicals

As mentioned in the chapter-opening paragraphs, the combustion process is believed to involve free radicals. When subjected to excessive heat, the single bonds in organic compounds undergo homolytic bond cleavage to produce radicals, which then react with molecular oxygen in a coupling reaction. A series of radical chain reactions continue until most of the C—C and C—H bonds have been broken to produce CO_2 and H_2O. In order for this chain process to continue, a fire needs three essential ingredients: fuel (such as wood, which is comprised of organic compounds), oxygen, and heat. In order to extinguish a fire, we must deprive the fire of at least one of these three ingredients. Alternatively, we can find a way to stop the radical chain reaction by destroying the radical intermediates.

Many reagents can be used to extinguish a fire. Common examples found in many small fire extinguishers are CO_2, water, and argon. A sudden discharge of CO_2 or argon gas will deprive a fire of oxygen, while water deprives a fire of heat (by absorbing the heat in order to evaporate or boil).

The most powerful reagents for extinguishing fires are called halons, because they are organic compounds containing halogen atoms. These compounds are generally either CFCs or BFCs (bromofluorocarbons). Here are just two examples of halons that have been extensively used as fire suppression agents:

Halon 1211 (Freon 12B1)

Halon 1301 (Freon 13B1)

Halons are extremely effective, because they fight fire in three different ways:

1. Halons are gases, so a sudden discharge of a halon gas will deprive the fire of oxygen.
2. Halons absorb heat to undergo homolytic bond cleavage:

By absorbing heat, they deprive the fire of one of its essential ingredients.

3. Homolytic bond cleavage results in the formation of free radicals, which can then couple with the radicals participating in the chain reaction, thereby terminating the process:

Halons are therefore able to speed up the rate of termination steps so that they compete with propagation steps.

For all of these reasons, halons are extremely effective as firefighting agents and were heavily used over the last three decades. Halons also have the added benefit of not leaving behind any residue after being used, rendering them particularly useful for fighting fires involving sensitive electronic equipment or documents. Unfortunately, halons have been shown to contribute to ozone depletion, and their production is now banned by the Montreal Protocol. The ban only applies to production, and it is still permitted to use existing stockpiles of halon gases. These stockpiles have been designated for use in special situations involving sensitive equipment, such as on planes or in control rooms. For all other situations, halon gases have been replaced with alternative gases that do not contribute to ozone depletion but are less effective as firefighting agents. One such example is HFA-227:

HFA-227

Valeev/Shutterstock

Sabine Scheckel/Getty Images

10.9 Autooxidation and Antioxidants

Autooxidation

In the presence of atmospheric oxygen, organic compounds are known to undergo a slow oxidation process called **autooxidation**. For example, consider the reaction of cumene with oxygen to form a **hydroperoxide** (ROOH):

Cumene Cumene hydroperoxide

Autooxidation is believed to proceed via Mechanism 10.2.

MECHANISM 10.2 AUTOOXIDATION

The initiation step might seem abnormal at first glance, because it is not a homolytic bond cleavage. The initiation step in this case is a hydrogen abstraction, which is a step that we normally associate with propagation. Moreover, look closely at the first propagation step. That step is a coupling reaction, which is a step that we have associated with termination until now. These peculiarities force us to refine our definitions of initiation, propagation, and termination. Propagation steps are defined as the steps that produce the net chemical reaction. In other words, the net reaction must be the sum of the propagation steps. In this case, the net reaction is the sum of the following two steps:

These two steps are therefore the propagation steps, and any other steps must be classified as either initiation or termination steps.

Many organic compounds, such as ethers, are particularly susceptible to autooxidation. For example, consider the reaction between diethyl ether and oxygen to form a hydroperoxide:

Diethyl ether A hydroperoxide

This reaction is slow, but old bottles of ether will invariably contain a small concentration of hydroperoxides, rendering the solvent very dangerous to use. Hydroperoxides are unstable and decompose violently when heated. Many laboratory explosions have been caused by distillation of ether that was contaminated with hydroperoxides. For this reason, ethers used in the laboratory must be dated and used in a timely fashion.

Most organic compounds are subject to autooxidation, which is a process initiated by light. In the absence of light, autooxidation occurs at a much slower rate. For this reason, organic chemicals are typically packaged in dark bottles. Vitamins are often sold in brown bottles for the same reason.

Compounds with benzylic or allylic hydrogen atoms are particularly sensitive to autooxidation, because the initiation step produces a resonance-stabilized radical:

Resonance stabilized

Resonance stabilized

Antioxidants as Food Additives

Naturally occurring fats and oils, such as vegetable oil, are generally mixtures of compounds called triglycerides, which contain three long hydrocarbon chains:

A triglyceride

The hydrocarbon chains often contain double bonds, which render them susceptible to autooxidation, specifically at the allylic positions where hydrogen abstraction can occur more readily:

The resulting hydroperoxides contribute to the rancid smell that develops over time in foods containing unsaturated oils. Moreover, hydroperoxides are also toxic. Food products with unsaturated oils therefore have a short shelf life unless radical inhibitors are used to slow the autooxidation process. Many radical inhibitors are used as food preservatives, including BHT and BHA:

Butylated hydroxytoluene (BHT) Butylated hydroxyanisole (BHA)

BHA is a mixture of constitutional isomers. These compounds function as radical inhibitors, because they react with radicals to generate resonance-stabilized radicals:

Resonance stabilized

The *tert*-butyl groups provide steric hindrance, which further reduces the reactivity of the stabilized radical. BHT and BHA effectively scavenge and destroy radicals. They are called **antioxidants** because one molecule of a radical scavenger can prevent the autooxidation of thousands of oil molecules by not allowing the chain process to begin.

BioLinks | Why Is an Overdose of Acetaminophen Fatal?

Tylenol (acetaminophen) can be very helpful in alleviating pain, but it is well known that an overdose of Tylenol can be fatal. The source of this toxicity (in high doses) involves radical chemistry. Our bodies utilize many radical reactions for a wide variety of functions, but these reactions are controlled and localized. If uncontrolled, free radicals are very dangerous and are capable of damaging DNA and enzymes, ultimately leading to cell death. Free radicals are regularly produced as by-products of metabolism, and our bodies utilize a variety of compounds to destroy these radicals. One such example is glutathione, which bears a sulfhydryl group (SH), highlighted in red:

Glutathione (GSH)

Glutathione, often abbreviated GSH, is produced in the liver and plays many key roles, including its ability to function as a radical scavenger. The SH bond is particularly susceptible to hydrogen abstraction, which produces a stabilized radical on a sulfur atom:

The original radical is destroyed and replaced by a glutathione radical. Two glutathione radicals, formed in this way, can then couple with each other to produce a compound called glutathione disulfide, abbreviated GSSG, which is then ultimately converted back into glutathione:

The important function of glutathione as a radical scavenger is compromised by an overdose of acetaminophen (Tylenol). Acetaminophen is metabolized in the liver via a process that consumes glutathione, thereby causing a temporary reduction in glutathione levels. For people with healthy livers, the body is able to replenish the supply of glutathione quickly by biosynthesizing more of this important compound. In this way, the concentration of glutathione never reaches dangerously low levels. However, an overdose of acetaminophen can cause a temporary depletion of glutathione. During that time, free radicals are uncontrolled and cause a host of problems that lead to irreversible liver damage. If untreated, an overdose of acetaminophen can lead to liver failure and death within a few days. Early intervention can prevent irreversible liver damage and consists of treatment with *N*-acetylcysteine (NAC). NAC acts as an antidote for an acetaminophen overdose by delivering to the liver a high concentration of cysteine:

N-acetylcysteine (NAC) Cysteine

Glutathione is biosynthesized in the liver from cysteine, glycine, and glutamic acid:

Glycine and glutamic acid are abundant, while cysteine is the limiting reagent. By supplying the liver with excess cysteine, the body is able to produce glutathione rapidly and bring the glutathione levels back up to healthy concentrations.

LOOKING AHEAD
The structure of cell membranes is discussed in more detail in Section 26.5.

Naturally Occurring Antioxidants

Nature employs many of its own natural antioxidants to prevent the oxidation of cell membranes and protect a variety of biologically important compounds. Examples of natural antioxidants include vitamin E and vitamin C:

Vitamin E

Vitamin C

pavlinec/Getty Images

Vitamin E has a long alkyl chain and is therefore hydrophobic, making it capable of reaching the hydrophobic regions of cell membranes. Vitamin C is a small molecule with multiple OH groups, rendering it water soluble. It functions as an antioxidant in hydrophilic regions, such as in blood.

Each of these compounds can destroy a reactive radical by undergoing hydrogen abstraction, transferring a hydrogen atom to the radical, thereby generating a more stable, less reactive radical. A connection has been suggested between the aging process and the natural oxidation processes that occur in the body. This suggestion has led to the widespread use of antioxidant products that include compounds such as vitamin E, despite the lack of evidence for a measurable connection between these products and the rate of aging.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

10.20 Compare the structure of vitamin E with the structures of BHT and BHA, and then determine which hydrogen atom is most easily abstracted from vitamin E.

10.10 Radical Addition of HBr: *Anti*-Markovnikov Addition

Regiochemical Observations

In Chapter 8, we saw that an alkene will react with HBr via an ionic addition that installs a bromine atom at the more substituted position (Markovnikov addition):

Recall that purity of reagents was found to be a critical feature of HBr additions. With impure reagents the reaction proceeds via *anti-Markovnikov addition*, where the halogen appears in the product at the less substituted position:

Further investigation revealed that even trace amounts of alkyl peroxides (ROOR) can cause this regiochemical preference for *anti*-Markovnikov addition:

A Mechanism for *Anti*-Markovnikov Addition of HX

Anti-Markovnikov addition of HBr in the presence of alkyl peroxides can be explained by invoking a radical mechanism (Mechanism 10.3).

MECHANISM 10.3 RADICAL ADDITION OF HBr TO AN ALKENE

The two initiation steps generate a bromine radical. The two propagation steps are responsible for formation of the observed product, so we must focus on these two steps in order to understand the regiochemical preference for *anti*-Markovnikov addition. Notice that the intermediate formed in the first propagation step is a tertiary carbon radical, rather than a secondary radical:

In Chapter 8, we saw that the regiochemistry of ionic addition of HBr is determined by the tendency to proceed via the more stable carbocation intermediate. Similarly, the regiochemistry of radical addition of HBr is also determined by the tendency to proceed via the more stable intermediate. But here, the intermediate is a radical, rather than a carbocation. To see this more clearly, compare the intermediate involved in an ionic mechanism with the intermediate involved in a radical mechanism:

Each reaction proceeds via the lowest energy pathway available—via either a tertiary carbocation or a tertiary radical. But take special notice of the fundamental difference. In the ionic mechanism,

the alkene reacts with the proton first, while in the radical mechanism, the alkene first reacts with a bromine atom. Therefore:

- An ionic mechanism results in a Markovnikov addition.
- A radical mechanism results in an *anti*-Markovnikov addition.

In each case, the regioselectivity is based on the tendency of the reaction to proceed via the most stable possible intermediate.

Thermodynamic Considerations

Markovnikov addition can be accomplished with HCl, HBr, or HI. In contrast, *anti*-Markovnikov addition can only be accomplished with HBr. The radical pathway is not thermodynamically favorable for addition of either HCl or HI. To understand the reason for this, we must explore thermodynamic considerations for each step of the radical mechanism.

In Section 6.3 (and then again in Section 10.4), we saw that the sign of ΔG must be negative in order for a reaction to be spontaneous. Recall that the two components of ΔG are enthalpy and entropy:

$$\Delta G = \underbrace{(\Delta H)}_{\text{Enthalpy term}} + \underbrace{(-T\Delta S)}_{\text{Entropy term}}$$

In order to assess the sign of ΔG for any process, we must evaluate the signs of both the enthalpy and entropy terms. In Section 10.4, we posed this type of thermodynamic argument to explore the halogenation of alkanes. In this section, we will explore each propagation step of the radical addition mechanism separately.

Let's begin with the first propagation step. In the following chart, the enthalpy and entropy terms are evaluated individually for the cases of HCl, HBr, and HI:

First propagation step of radical addition

$\Delta G =$	(ΔH) Enthalpy term	$(-T\Delta S)$ Entropy term
HCl	⊖	⊕
HBr	⊖	⊕
HI	⊕	⊕

For the cases of HCl and HBr, the sign of ΔG is determined by a competition between the enthalpy and entropy terms. At high temperature, the entropy term will dominate, and ΔG will be positive. At low temperature, the enthalpy term will dominate, and ΔG will be negative. Therefore, the process will be thermodynamically favorable at low temperatures.

The case of HI is fundamentally different. Look at the previous chart and notice that the enthalpy term is positive in the case of HI (the step is endothermic). The enthalpy and entropy terms are not in competition here. Regardless of temperature ΔG will be positive. Therefore, radical addition of HI (*anti*-Markovnikov addition) is not observed at all.

Now let's perform the same type of analysis for the second propagation step in the radical mechanism:

Second propagation step of radical addition

$\Delta G =$	(ΔH) Enthalpy term	$(-T\Delta S)$ Entropy term
HCl	⊕	~0
HBr	⊖	~0
HI	⊖	~0

In each of the cases above, the second term $(-T\Delta S)$ is insignificant. Why? In each case, *two* chemical entities are reacting with each other to produce *two* new chemical entities. Based on this, we might expect $\Delta S = 0$. However, there is still some small value of ΔS in each case, due to changes in vibrational degrees of freedom. This effect will be very small though, and as a result, ΔS will be close to zero. Therefore, the sign of ΔH will be the dominant factor in determining the sign of ΔG in each case. In the case of HCl, ΔH has a positive value. Therefore, it will be difficult to find a temperature

at which the second term ($-T\Delta S$) can overcome the ΔH term. As a result, radical addition of HCl is not an effective process.

To summarize our analysis for radical addition of HX across a π bond: The first propagation step cannot occur in the case of HI, and the second propagation step is unlikely to occur in the case of HCl. Only in the case of HBr are both propagation steps thermodynamically favorable.

Stereochemistry for Radical Addition of HBr

For some alkenes, radical addition of HBr results in the formation of one new chiral center:

In cases like this, there is no reason to expect one enantiomer to prevail over the other, as the first propagation step can occur from either face of the alkene. Therefore, the reaction will produce a racemic mixture of enantiomers:

SKILLBUILDER

10.8 PREDICTING THE PRODUCTS FOR RADICAL ADDITION OF HBr

LEARN the skill

Predict the products for the following reaction:

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Identify the two groups being added across the double bond.

In Section 8.14, we saw that predicting the products of an addition reaction requires the following three questions:

1. Which two groups are being added across the double bond? HBr indicates an addition of H and Br across the double bond.

STEP 2
Identify the expected regioselectivity.

2. What is the expected regioselectivity (Markovnikov or *anti*-Markovnikov)? The presence of peroxides indicates that the reaction proceeds via an *anti*-Markovnikov addition. That is, the Br is expected to be placed at the less substituted position:

STEP 3
Identify the expected stereospecificity.

3. What is the expected stereospecificity? In this case, one new chiral center is created, which results in a racemic mixture of the two possible enantiomers:

PRACTICE the skill

10.21 Predict the major product(s) for each reaction. In each case, be sure to consider whether a chiral center is being generated, and then draw all expected stereoisomers.

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

(f)

APPLY the skill

10.22 There are 20 common, naturally occurring amino acids from which all proteins are derived (as will be discussed in Chapter 25), although many other less common amino acids have been isolated from natural sources. Valine is one of the 20 common amino acids, and it was used as a starting material in the laboratory synthesis of an uncommon amino acid.[8] During one of the steps in the synthesis, compound **1** was treated with HBr under conditions that favor radical addition, giving stereoisomers **2** and **3**. Draw the structures of **2** and **3**, and describe their stereoisomeric relationship.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problem 10.47**

10.11 Radical Polymerization

Radical Polymerization of Ethylene

In Chapter 8 we explored polymerization that occurs via an ionic mechanism. In this section, we will see that polymerization can also occur via a radical process. Consider, for example, the radical polymerization of ethylene to form polyethylene:

This polymerization can occur via a radical mechanism (Mechanism 10.4). When ethylene is heated in the presence of peroxides, two initiation steps produce a carbon radical. This carbon radical then attacks another molecule of ethylene, generating a new carbon radical. These propagation steps continue, adding one monomer at a time, until a termination step occurs. If the conditions are carefully controlled to favor propagation over termination, the process can generate very large molecules of polyethylene with over 10,000 repeating units.

During the polymerization process, *chain branching* inevitably occurs**.** The following scheme shows a mechanism for the formation of chain branches, which begins with a hydrogen abstraction that occurs on an existing chain:

The extent of chain branching determines the physical properties of the resulting polymer. For example, a flexible plastic squeeze bottle and its relatively inflexible cap are both made from polyethylene, but the former has extensive branching while the latter has relatively little. These processes will be discussed in more detail in Chapter 27, and we will see that the extent of branching can be controlled with specialized catalysts, although a small amount of chain branching is generally unavoidable.

MECHANISM 10.4 RADICAL POLYMERIZATION

Radical Polymerization of a Substituted Ethylene

A substituted ethylene (ethylene that bears a substituent) will generally undergo radical polymerization to produce a polymer with the following structure:

For example, vinyl chloride is polymerized to form **polyvinyl chloride (PVC)**, which is a very hard polymer used to make plumbing pipes. PVC can be softened if polymerization takes place in the presence of compounds called plasticizers, as we will explore in more detail in Chapter 27. PVC

made with plasticizers is a bit more flexible (although durable and strong) and is used for a wide variety of purposes, such as garden hoses, plastic raincoats, and shower curtains. Table 10.3 shows a number of common polymers produced from substituted ethylenes.

TABLE 10.3 COMMON POLYMERS FORMED FROM ETHYLENE AND SUBSTITUTED ETHYLENE

MONOMER	POLYMER	APPLICATION	MONOMER	POLYMER	APPLICATION
Ethylene	Polyethylene	Plastic bottles and packaging material, insulation, Tupperware	Vinyl chloride	Poly(vinyl chloride)	PVC piping for plumbing, Blu-ray discs, garden hoses, raincoats, shower curtains
Propylene	Polypropylene	Carpet fibers, appliances, yogurt containers	Tetrafluoroethylene	Teflon	Nonstick coating for frying pans
Styrene	Polystyrene	Televisions, radios, Styrofoam			

10.12 Radical Processes in the Petrochemical Industry

Radical processes are used heavily in chemical industries, particularly in the petrochemical industry. One such example is the process called *cracking*. In Chapter 4, we mentioned that cracking of petroleum converts large alkanes into smaller alkanes that are more suitable for use as gasoline. Cracking is a radical process:

When cracking is performed in the presence of hydrogen gas, alkanes are produced and the process is called **hydrocracking**:

Reforming, also mentioned in Chapter 4, is a process that causes straight-chain alkanes to become more highly branched, and this process also involves radical intermediates:

10.13 Halogenation as a Synthetic Technique

In this chapter, we have seen that radical chlorination and radical bromination are both thermodynamically favorable processes. Bromination is slower but is more selective than chlorination. Both reactions are used in synthesis. When the starting compound has only one kind of hydrogen (all hydrogen atoms are equivalent), chlorination can be accomplished because selectivity is not necessary:

When different types of hydrogen atoms are present in the compound, it is best to use bromination because it is more selective and it avoids a mixture of products:

In truth, even radical bromination has very limited utility in synthesis. Its greatest utility is to serve as a method for introducing a functional group into an alkane. When the starting material is an alkane, there is very little that can be done other than radical halogenation. By introducing a functional group into the compound, the door is opened for a wide variety of reactions:

Chapter 11 is devoted entirely to synthesis techniques, and we will revisit the role of radical halogenation in designing syntheses.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

10.23 Propose an efficient synthesis for each of the following transformations.

REVIEW OF REACTIONS

SYNTHETICALLY USEFUL RADICAL REACTIONS

Bromination of Alkanes

***Anti*-Markovnikov Addition of HBr to Alkenes**

Allylic Bromination

REVIEW OF CONCEPTS AND VOCABULARY

SECTION 10.1

- Radical mechanisms utilize *fishhook arrows*, each of which represents the flow of only one electron.
- The order of stability for radicals follows the same trend exhibited by carbocations.
- Allylic and benzylic radicals are resonance stabilized. Vinylic radicals are not.

SECTION 10.2

- Radical mechanisms are characterized by six different kinds of steps: (1) **homolytic cleavage**, (2) **addition to a π bond**, (3) **hydrogen abstraction**, (4) **halogen abstraction**, (5) **elimination**, and (6) **coupling**.
- Every step in a radical mechanism can be classified as **initiation**, **propagation**, or **termination**.

SECTION 10.3

- Methane reacts with chlorine via a radical mechanism.
- The sum of the two propagation steps gives the net chemical reaction. These steps together represent a **chain reaction**.
- A **radical initiator** is a compound with a weak bond that readily undergoes homolytic bond cleavage. Examples include alkyl peroxides and acyl peroxides.
- A **radical inhibitor**, also called a radical scavenger, is a compound that prevents a chain process from either getting started or continuing. Examples include molecular oxygen and hydroquinone.

SECTION 10.4

- Only radical chlorination and radical bromination have practical use in the laboratory.
- Bromination is generally a much slower process than chlorination.

SECTION 10.5

- Halogenation occurs more readily at substituted positions. Bromination is more selective than chlorination.

SECTION 10.6

- When a new chiral center is created during a radical halogenation process, both possible stereoisomers are obtained.
- When a halogenation reaction takes place at a chiral center, a racemic mixture is obtained regardless of the configuration of the starting material.

SECTION 10.7

- Alkenes can undergo **allylic bromination**, in which bromination occurs at the allylic position.
- To avoid a competing ionic addition reaction, ***N*-bromosuccinimide** (NBS) can be used instead of Br_2.

SECTION 10.8

- Ozone is produced and destroyed by a radical process that shields the earth's surface from harmful UV radiation.
- A rapid decrease of stratospheric ozone is attributed to the use of **CFCs**, or **chlorofluorocarbons**, sold under the trade name **Freons**.
- A ban on CFCs prompted a search for viable substitutes, such as **hydrofluoroalkanes (HFAs)**, also called **hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs).**

SECTION 10.9

- Organic compounds undergo oxidation in the presence of atmospheric oxygen to produce **hydroperoxides**. This process, called **autooxidation**, is believed to proceed via a radical mechanism.
- **Antioxidants**, such as BHT and BHA, are used as food preservatives to prevent autooxidation of unsaturated oils.
- Natural antioxidants prevent the oxidation of cell membranes and protect a variety of biologically important compounds. Vitamins E and C are natural antioxidants.

SECTION 10.10

- Alkenes will react with HBr in the presence of peroxides to produce a radical addition reaction.

SECTION 10.11

- Polymerization of ethylene via a radical process generally involves chain branching.
- When vinyl chloride is polymerized, **polyvinyl chloride (PVC)** is obtained.

SECTION 10.12

- Radical processes are used heavily in the chemical industry, particularly in the petrochemical industry. Examples include cracking and reforming. When cracking is performed in the presence of hydrogen, it is called **hydrocracking**.

SECTION 10.13

- Radical halogenation provides a method for introducing functionality into an alkane.
- When the starting compound has only one kind of hydrogen atom, chlorination can be used.
- When different types of hydrogen atoms are present in the compound, it is best to use bromination in order to control the regiochemical outcome and avoid a mixture of products.

SKILLBUILDER REVIEW

10.1 DRAWING RESONANCE STRUCTURES OF RADICALS

STEP 1 Look for an unpaired electron next to a π bond.

STEP 2 Draw three fishhook arrows, and then draw the corresponding resonance structure.

Try Problems **10.2–10.4, 10.24, 10.27**

10.2 IDENTIFYING THE WEAKEST C—H BOND IN A COMPOUND

STEP 1 Consider all possible radicals that would result from homolytic cleavage of a C—H bond.

STEP 2 Identify the most stable radical.

STEP 3 The most stable radical indicates which bond is the weakest.

Try Problems 10.5–10.7, 10.25, 10.45

10.3 DRAWING FISHHOOK ARROWS FOR A RADICAL PROCESS

There are six characteristic patterns to recognize.

STEPS 1–3 1. Identify the type of process—halogen abstraction.
2. Determine the number of fishhook arrows required—three.
3. Identify any bonds being broken or formed.

STEP 4 For a bond formed, draw two fishhook arrows.

STEP 5 For a bond broken, make sure to have both fishhook arrows.

Try Problems 10.8, 10.9, 10.57

10.4 DRAWING A MECHANISM FOR RADICAL HALOGENATION

Initiation Homolytic bond cleavage creates radicals, thereby initiating a radical process.

Propagation
- Hydrogen abstraction forms a radical on a carbon atom.
- Halogen abstraction forms the product and regenerates a halogen radical.

Termination Coupling can give the product, but this step destroys radicals.

Try Problems 10.10, 10.11, 10.48

10.5 PREDICTING THE SELECTIVITY OF RADICAL BROMINATION

STEP 1 Identify all possible positions.

Primary Tertiary Secondary Primary

STEP 2 Identify the most stable location for a radical.

Tertiary

STEP 3 Bromination occurs at the location of the most stable radical.

Major product

Try Problems 10.12, 10.13, 10.26, 10.29, 10.34a–c,f, 10.38, 10.40

10.6 PREDICTING THE STEREOCHEMICAL OUTCOME OF RADICAL BROMINATION

STEP 1 First identify the location where bromination will occur.

STEP 2 If this position is a chiral center, or if it will become a chiral center, expect a loss of configuration to yield both possible stereoisomers.

Try Problems 10.14, 10.15, 10.30, 10.35, 10.41, 10.55

10.7 PREDICTING THE PRODUCTS OF ALLYLIC BROMINATION

STEP 1 Identify the allylic position.

STEP 2 Remove a hydrogen atom and draw resonance structures.

STEP 3 Place a bromine at each location that bears an unpaired electron.

Racemic

Try Problems 10.16–10.18, 10.34e, 10.36, 10.39, 10.44

10.8 PREDICTING THE PRODUCTS FOR RADICAL ADDITION OF HBr

STEP 1 Identify the two groups being added across the double bond.

Adds H and Br

STEP 2 Identify the expected regioselectivity.

Br is installed here at the less substituted position

STEP 3 Identify the expected stereospecificity.

Try Problems 10.21, 10.22, 10.47

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

• Included in Answers section

10.24 • Draw all resonance structures for each of the following radicals:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

10.25 Consider all of the different types of C—H bonds in cyclopentene and rank them in order of increasing bond strength:

10.26 • Compound **A** has the molecular formula C_5H_{12} and undergoes monochlorination to produce a mixture of four constitutional isomers.

(a) Draw the structure of compound **A**.

(b) Draw all four monochlorination products.

(c) If compound **A** undergoes monobromination (instead of monochlorination), one product predominates. Draw that product.

10.27 Draw all resonance structures of the radical produced when a hydrogen atom is abstracted from the OH group in BHT:

Butylated hydroxytoluene (BHT)

10.28 When isopropylbenzene (cumene) is treated with NBS and irradiated with UV light, only one product is obtained. Propose a mechanism and explain why only one product is formed.

10.29 • There are three constitutional isomers with the molecular formula C_5H_{12}. Monochlorination of one of these isomers yields only one product. Identify the isomer and draw the monochlorinated product.

10.30 • When ethylbenzene is treated with one equivalent of NBS and irradiated with UV light, two stereoisomeric compounds are obtained in equal amounts. Draw the products and explain why they are obtained in equal amounts.

10.31 AIBN is an azo compound (a compound with a N═N double bond) that is often used as a radical initiator. Upon heating, AIBN liberates nitrogen gas to produce two identical radicals:

AIBN

(a) Give two reasons why these radicals are so stable.

(b) Explain why the following azo compound is not useful as a radical initiator:

10.32 • Triphenylmethane readily undergoes autooxidation to produce a hydroperoxide:

Triphenylmethane

(a) Draw the expected hydroperoxide.

(b) Explain why triphenylmethane is so susceptible to autooxidation.

(c) In the presence of phenol (C_6H_5OH), triphenylmethane undergoes autooxidation at a much slower rate. Explain this observation.

10.33 For each of the products shown in the following reaction, propose a mechanism that explains its formation:

10.34 • Identify the major product(s) for each of the following reactions. If any of the reactions do not yield a product, indicate "no reaction."

10.35 Predict the major product(s) obtained upon bromination of (*S*)-3-methylhexane.

10.36 Identify all product(s) expected for each of the following reactions. Take stereochemistry into account and draw expected stereoisomers, if any:

10.37 Draw the propagation steps that achieve the autooxidation of diethyl ether to form a hydroperoxide:

Diethyl ether **A hydroperoxide**

10.38 Compound **A** has the molecular formula C_5H_{12}, and monobromination of compound **A** produces only compound **B**. When compound **B** is treated with a strong base, a mixture is obtained containing compound **C** and compound **D**. Using this information, answer the following questions:

(a) Draw the structures of compounds **A**, **B**, **C**, and **D**.

(b) When compound **B** is treated with potassium *tert*-butoxide, which product predominates: **C** or **D**? Explain your choice.

(c) When compound **B** is treated with sodium ethoxide, which product predominates: **C** or **D**? Explain your choice.

10.39 Draw the products obtained when 3,3,6-trimethylcyclohexene is treated with NBS and irradiated with UV light.

10.40 When 2-methylpropane is treated with bromine in the presence of UV light, one product predominates.

(a) Identify the structure of the product.

(b) Draw a mechanism for formation of the product.

(c) Using the mechanism that you just drew, explain why we don't expect a minor product.

10.41 Consider the structure of the following compound:

(a) When this compound is treated with bromine under conditions that favor monobromination, two stereoisomeric products are obtained. Draw them and identify whether they are enantiomers or diastereomers.

(b) When this compound is treated with bromine under conditions that favor dibromination, three stereoisomeric products are obtained. Draw them and explain why there are only three products and not four.

ACS-STYLE PROBLEMS (Multiple Choice)

Problems 10.42–10.48 follow the style of the ACS organic chemistry exam. For each of these problems, there will be one correct answer and three distractors.

10.42 • What is the major product of the following reaction?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

10.43 • Determine which of the following reactions is expected to be thermodynamically favorable:

(a) I, II, III, and IV
(b) Only I, II, and III
(c) Only III
(d) Only II and III

10.44 • Which of the following is an intermediate when 1-butene undergoes radical bromination?

(a)
(b)
(c)
(d)

10.45 • Of the following, which is the most stable radical?

(a)
(b)
(c)
(d)

10.46 • Which of the following cycloalkanes gives a total of four monochlorination products (disregarding stereoisomers)?

(a)
(b)
(c)
(d)

10.47 • Which of the following is a likely intermediate when 1-pentene undergoes addition of HBr, in the presence of peroxides?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

10.48 • Identify the most likely initiation step in the bromination of 2-methylpropane.

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

INTEGRATED PROBLEMS

10.49 • The rate at which two methyl radicals couple to form ethane is significantly faster than the rate at which two *tert*-butyl radicals couple. Offer two explanations for this observation.

10.50 How many constitutional isomers are obtained when each of the following compounds undergoes monochlorination?

(a)
(b)
(c)
(d)
(e)
(f)
(g)
(h)
(i)
(j)

10.51 Using acetylene and 2-methylpropane as your only sources of carbon atoms, propose a plausible synthesis for $CH_3COCH_2CH(CH_3)_2$. You will need to utilize many reactions from previous chapters.

10.52 Propose an efficient synthesis for each of the following transformations. You might find it useful to review Section 10.13 before attempting to solve these problems.

(a)

(b)

10.53 Consider the following two compounds. Monochlorination of one of these compounds produces twice as many stereoisomeric products as the other. Draw the products in each case and identify which compound yields more products upon chlorination.

10.54 The initiation step for radical addition of HBr is highly endothermic:

(a) Explain how this step can be thermodynamically favorable at high temperature even though it is endothermic.

(b) Explain why this step is not thermodynamically favorable at low temperature.

10.55 Compound **A** has the molecular formula $C_5H_{11}Br$. When compound **A** is treated with bromine in the presence of UV light, the major product is 2,2-dibromopentane. Treatment of compound **A** with NaSH (a strong nucleophile) produces a compound with one chiral center having the *R* configuration. What is the structure of compound **A**?

10.56 When butane reacts with Br_2 in the presence of Cl_2, both brominated and chlorinated products are obtained. Under such conditions, the usual selectivity of bromination is not observed. In other words, the ratio of 2-bromobutane to 1-bromobutane is very similar to the ratio of 2-chlorobutane to 1-chlorobutane. Can you offer an explanation as to why we do not observe the normal selectivity expected for bromination?

10.57 When an acyl peroxide undergoes homolytic bond cleavage, the radicals produced can liberate carbon dioxide to form alkyl radicals:

An acyl peroxide

Using this information, provide a mechanism of formation for each of the following products:

10.58 Consider the following radical process, called a thiol-ene coupling reaction, in which an alkene is treated with a thiol (RSH) in the presence of a radical initiator:

(a) Draw a plausible mechanism for this process, showing the initiation and propagation steps.

(b) Biochemists have become increasingly interested in using organic reactions to modify proteins (Chapter 25) and study their behavior. The thiol-ene coupling reaction has recently been used to couple proteins together in an effort to elucidate the function of specific enzymes.[9] Predict the product that is expected when the following proteins undergo a thiol-ene coupling reaction:

10.59 The alkyl halide 1-bromopropane is one of a number of compounds being considered as a replacement for chlorofluorocarbons as an industrial cleaning solvent. In a computational study of the atmospheric oxidation of 1-bromopropane, bromoacetone (structure below) was determined to be the major product.[10]

Bromoacetone

The proposed mechanism involves four steps: (1) hydrogen abstraction by an OH radical, (2) formation of a peroxy radical by coupling with O_2, (3) abstraction of an oxygen atom by NO, thus forming NO_2 and an alkoxy radical, and (4) abstraction of a hydrogen atom by O_2. Draw the mechanism that is consistent with this description.

10.60 Resveratrol is a naturally occurring antioxidant found in a broad range of plants including grapes, mulberries, and peanuts. It demonstrates useful activity against heart disease and cancer. In the presence of an alkoxy radical (RO•), a hydrogen atom is abstracted from resveratrol.[11] Predict which hydrogen atom is preferentially abstracted and justify your choice.

Resveratrol

10.61 In Chapter 2, we saw several patterns for drawing resonance structures of ions or uncharged compounds. There are also several patterns for drawing resonance structures of radicals, although we have only encountered one such pattern (allylic or benzylic radicals). One other pattern is characterized by an unpaired electron on an atom that is adjacent to an atom with a lone pair, as seen in the following example. The unpaired electron is delocalized by resonance, with radical character being spread over the nitrogen and phosphorus atoms. Note that phosphorus is a third-row element, so it can have more than eight electrons. We will make use of a related pair of resonance structures in this problem.

The rearrangement shown below (Ar = aromatic ring) is initiated by heat. The transformation is believed to occur via a two-step process in which the C—O bond undergoes homolytic cleavage followed by a recombination of the resulting radicals to form the product:[12]

(a) Draw a mechanism of this rearrangement, consistent with the description provided.

(b) Provide a reasonable rationalization for the fact that the C—O bond is cleaved preferentially over the O—S bond in the first step of the mechanism.

10.62 Compound **2** was used as a key intermediate in a synthesis of oseltamivir, an anti-influenza agent.[13] Propose a plausible mechanism for the conversion of **1** to **2**, as shown, and explain the stereochemical outcome:

CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

10.63 One strategy for the synthesis of polycyclic ring systems involves radical-mediated cyclization processes. For example, when the following radical is generated, it undergoes a spontaneous cyclization to produce two new radicals.[14] Propose a plausible mechanism to account for the formation of each tricyclic ring system.

10.64 Compounds with the structure ArN═NCON═NAr (where Ar represents an aromatic ring) are used in liquid crystal formulations for LCDs (liquid crystal displays) as well as for optical switches and image storage devices. Upon irradiation with light at 350 nm, bisphenyl carbodiazone (shown below) undergoes homolytic decomposition to give radicals that can be trapped with a tetramethylpiperidinoxyl (TEMPO) radical.[15] Propose a mechanism that explains the formation of all three products from this process, shown below.

10.65 Consider the transformation of compound **1** to compound **3**. As seen in this chapter, hydrocarbons typically do not undergo radical iodination in the presence of I_2. Furthermore, radical halogenation (even chlorination) of strained hydrocarbons, such as cubane (**1**), is problematic if the reaction produces a halogen radical (X•). An alternative halogenation method circumvents both of these issues by replacing the elemental halogen, X_2, with a tetrahalomethane, CX_4.[16] The reaction is initiated by formation of a trihalomethyl radical, $\bullet CX_3$.

(a) Propose a propagation cycle for the production of iodocubane (**3**) from cubane (**1**) and tetraiodomethane (**2b**).

(b) Provide three possible termination steps.

(c) The bond dissociation energy (BDE) for I—CI_3 is 192 kJ/mol, and the BDE for H—CI_3 is 423 kJ/mol. From Table 10.1, we find that the BDE for I—I is 151 kJ/mol, and the BDE for H—I is 297 kJ/mol. Using this information, provide a thermodynamic argument that explains why **2b** is an effective iodination reagent while **2a** is not.

10.66 The Kharasch reaction is a radical process in which carbon tetrachloride is added across an alkene:

(a) Draw a mechanism showing initiation and propagation steps for this reaction and explain the observed regiochemical outcome.

(b) A variation of the Kharasch reaction was employed during a synthesis of a key piece of paclitaxel, an anticancer agent used in the treatment of breast cancer.[17] Propose a plausible mechanism (initiation and propagation steps) for this ring-closing variation of the Kharasch reaction:

LIST OF REFERENCES

1. *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.* **2007**, *17*, 6801–6805.
2. *J. Org. Chem.* **2003**, *68*, 7361–7367.
3. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **2012**, *134*, 8078–8081.
4. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **2009**, *131*, 6508–6515.
5. *Eur. J. Org. Chem.* **2007**, 1905–1911.
6. *Tetrahedron: Asymmetry* **2005**, *16*, 127–141.
7. *Aust. J. Chem.* **1981**, *34*, 2231–2236.
8. *Tetrahedron* **1997**, *53*, 1151–1156.
9. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **2012**, *134*, 6916–6919.
10. *J. Phys. Chem. A* **2008**, *112*, 7930–7938.
11. *J. Org. Chem.* **2009**, *74*, 5025–5031.
12. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **2000**, *122*, 3367–3374.
13. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **2006**, *128*, 6310–6311.
14. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1986**, *108*, 1708–1709.
15. *Tetrahedron Lett.* **2006**, *47*, 2115–2118.
16. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **2001**, *123*, 1842–1847.
17. *Tetrahedron Lett.* **2002**, *43*, 8587–8590.

11

Synthesis

11.1 One-Step Syntheses
11.2 Functional Group Transformations
11.3 Reactions That Change the Carbon Skeleton
11.4 How to Approach a Synthesis Problem
11.5 Multi-Step Synthesis and Retrosynthetic Analysis
11.6 Green Chemistry
11.7 Practical Tips for Increasing Proficiency

DID YOU EVER **WONDER...**
what vitamins are and why we need them?

Vitamins are essential nutrients that our bodies require in order to function properly, and a deficiency of particular vitamins can lead to diseases, many of which can be fatal. Later in this chapter, we will learn more about the discovery of vitamins, and we will see that the laboratory synthesis of one particular vitamin represented a landmark event in the history of synthetic organic chemistry. This chapter serves as a brief introduction to organic synthesis.

Until this point in the text, we have only seen a limited number of reactions (a few dozen, at most). In this chapter, our modest repertoire of reactions will allow us to develop a methodical, step-by-step process for proposing syntheses. We will begin with one-step synthesis problems and then progress toward more challenging multistep problems. The goal of this chapter is to develop the fundamental skills required for proposing a multistep synthesis.

It should be noted that a carefully designed synthesis will not always work as planned. In fact, it is very common for a planned synthesis to fail, requiring the investigator to devise a strategy to circumvent the failed step. When designing a synthesis, many factors must be taken into account, including (but not limited to) the cost of reagents and the ease of purification of products. A high-yield synthesis can often be ruined by the formation of intractable side products. For our purposes in this chapter, we will adopt the inaccurate assumption that all reactions covered in previous chapters can be utilized reliably.

DO YOU **REMEMBER?**

Before you go on, be sure you understand the following topics.
If necessary, review the suggested sections to prepare for this chapter.

- Substitution vs. Elimination (Section 7.9)
- Synthesis Strategies for Alkenes and Alkynes (Sections 8.15, 9.11)
- Synthesis Strategies for Substitution and Elimination Reactions (Section 7.11)
- Halogenation as a Synthetic Technique (Section 10.13)

Take the DO YOU **REMEMBER?** QUIZ in the **online course** to check your understanding.

11.1 One-Step Syntheses

The most straightforward synthesis problems are the ones that can be solved in just one step. For example, consider the following:

This transformation can be accomplished by treating the alkene with Br_2 in an inert solvent, such as CCl_4. Other synthesis problems might require more than a single step, and those problems will be more challenging. Before approaching multistep synthesis problems, it is absolutely essential to become comfortable with one-step syntheses. In other words, it is critical to achieve mastery over all reagents described in the previous chapters. If you can't identify the reagents necessary for a one-step synthesis problem, then certainly you will be unable to solve more complex problems. The following exercises represent a broad review of the reactions in previous chapters. These exercises are designed to help you identify which reagents are still not at the forefront of your consciousness.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

11.1 Identify reagents that can be used to accomplish each of the transformations shown below. If you are having trouble, the reagents for these transformations appear in the review of reactions at the end of Chapter 8, but you should first try to identify the reagents yourself without help:

11.2 Identify reagents that can be used to accomplish each of the following transformations. If you are having trouble, the reagents for these transformations appear in the review of reactions at the end of Chapter 9, but you should first try to identify the reagents yourself without help:

11.2 Functional Group Transformations

In the previous few chapters, we developed several two-step synthesis strategies that enable us to move the location of a functional group and/or change its identity. Let's briefly review these techniques before we move on to multistep synthesis problems.

In Chapter 8, we developed a two-step strategy for changing the position of a halogen substituent by performing an elimination reaction followed by an addition reaction. For example:

In this two-step process, the halogen is removed and then reinstalled at a different location. The regiochemical outcome of each step must be carefully controlled. The choice of base in the elimination step determines whether the more substituted or the less substituted alkene is formed. In the addition step, the decision whether or not to use peroxides will determine whether a Markovnikov addition or an *anti*-Markovnikov addition occurs.

This two-step strategy must be slightly modified when the functional group is a hydroxyl group (OH). In such a case, the choice of reagents will depend on the desired regiochemical outcome of the elimination reaction. If the Hofmann product (the less-substituted alkene) is desired, as shown in the case below, then an E2 process is required. Therefore, the hydroxyl group must first be converted into a better leaving group, such as a tosylate, and only then can the technique be employed (elimination followed by addition):

In a case like this, the OH group must first be converted into a tosylate so that an E2 process can be performed (by treating the tosylate with *tert*-butoxide). The alcohol cannot simply be treated with concentrated sulfuric acid to give an E1 process because that would yield the Zaitsev product (the more-substituted alkene). However, if the Zaitsev product is desired, as shown in the following example, then dehydration of the alcohol can be performed directly by treating the alcohol with concentrated sulfuric acid.

The following is a summary of reagents for changing the location of an OH group:

In Chapter 8, we also developed a two-step strategy for moving the position of a double bond. For example:

Once again, the regiochemical outcome of each step can be controlled by choice of reagents, as summarized below:

BY THE WAY
If your starting material is an alkane, the only useful reaction you should consider is a radical halogenation.

The following is an example of yet another two-step synthesis strategy, based on reactions we have covered thus far. This strategy enables the conversion of an alkane into an alkene:

This procedure, together with the other reactions covered in the previous chapters, enables the interconversion between single, double, and triple bonds:

SKILLBUILDER

11.1 CHANGING THE IDENTITY AND/OR POSITION OF A FUNCTIONAL GROUP

LEARN the skill

Propose an efficient synthesis for the following transformation:

SOLUTION

We begin by analyzing the identity and location of the functional groups in the given starting material and in the target molecule. The identity of the functional group has certainly changed (an alkene has been converted into an alkyl halide), and the position of the functional group has also changed. This can be seen more easily by numbering the parent chain:

Functional group is between C-2 and C-3 | Functional group is at C-1

The first step in planning our synthesis is to perform a retrosynthetic analysis, which begins with the following question: "What compound can be converted directly into the target alkyl bromide?" We have seen that radical bromination can be used to convert an alkane directly into an alkyl bromide, but that is not a suitable method to make a primary alkyl bromide (bromination would occur at the more-substituted, tertiary position). Another option is to prepare the desired alkyl bromide from an alkene via the addition of HBr. Using an alkene to make the target molecule (as the last step of the synthesis) is a good idea because we must change the position of the functional group in this case and we have already learned methods for moving a π bond. So we begin by drawing a retrosynthetic step which shows that the target molecule can be made directly from an alkene:

The retrosynthetic analysis continues by focusing on how this alkene might have been made. The π bond in the alkene might have been formed by an elimination reaction, so we consider making this alkene either from an alkyl halide or from an alcohol. In this case, the alkene is monosubstituted (it is not a stable, highly substituted alkene), so it cannot be synthesized in high yield by dehydration of an alcohol. We therefore determine that the alkene is best prepared from an alkyl halide, as shown here:

Finally, when we consider how to make this required alkyl bromide intermediate, the retrosynthesis leads us to the given alkene starting material:

The goal of the retrosynthesis is to work backwards, one step at a time, using known transformations, until you reach the required starting material. Below is a summary of our complete retrosynthesis:

After planning a retrosynthesis, we must next select appropriate reagents for every step and we draw all steps in the forward direction. Once the forward process has been drawn, we must then consider the reaction mechanism for each step to confirm that the desired compound is expected to be the major product, and that the reaction proceeds with the correct regiochemical and/or stereochemical outcome. In this case, the synthesis begins with a two-step sequence to move the π bond (*anti*-Markovnikov addition of HBr, followed by Hofmann elimination). Finally, an *anti*-Markovnikov addition of HBr affords the desired target molecule:

For the first step of this process, we have learned two reactions that proceed via *anti*-Markovnikov addition: either (a) addition of HBr with peroxides or (b) hydroboration-oxidation:

Both reactions will produce an *anti*-Markovnikov addition. However, when hydroboration-oxidation is used, the resulting hydroxyl group must then be converted to a tosylate prior to the elimination process:

Both routes will work, although the first route might be more efficient, because it requires fewer steps.

In summary, there are at least two plausible routes to achieve the desired synthetic transformation:

It is common to find multiple routes for a desired transformation, so don't be surprised if you find more than one pathway that is feasible.

PRACTICE the skill **11.3** Propose an efficient synthesis for each of the following transformations:

APPLY the skill **11.4** The isocoumarins are a class of natural products that are structurally related to isocoumarin, shown below. They have been isolated from many sources, including bacteria, fungi, and plants. Artemidin is an isocoumarin isolated from the tarragon plant (*Artemisia dracunculus*), and has been prepared in the laboratory from compound **1**.[1] Identify reagents that can be used to convert compound **1** into artemidin.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 11.15–11.17, 11.29**

11.3 Reactions That Change the Carbon Skeleton

In all of the problems in Section 11.2, the functional group changed its identity or location, but the carbon skeleton always remained the same. In this section, we will focus on examples in which the carbon skeleton changes. In some cases, the number of carbon atoms in the skeleton increases, and in other cases, the number of carbon atoms decreases.

If the size of the carbon skeleton increases, then our synthesis must include a step in which we form a C—C bond. In order to form a C—C bond, we will need a reaction in which a nucleophilic carbon atom attacks an electrophilic carbon atom. Thus far, we have only seen two examples of nucleophilic carbon atoms: cyanide ($N{\equiv}C^-$) and alkynide ions ($R{-}C{\equiv}C^-$). Treating an alkyl halide with either of these nucleophiles, as shown below, will result in the formation of a new C—C bond:

The first reaction (with cyanide) lengthens the carbon chain by one carbon atom and generates a nitrile product (a compound containing a C≡N group). In later chapters, we will learn methods to convert nitriles into a variety of other functional groups, including amines, carboxylic acids, and amides. For now, we will simply note that the reaction between cyanide and an alkyl halide results in the installation of one carbon atom on the carbon chain.

If we want to lengthen the carbon chain by more than one carbon atom, then we can use an alkynide anion. Alkylation of a terminal alkyne (Section 9.10) will increase the size of a carbon skeleton:

Over time, we will see many other C—C bond-forming reactions, but for now, we have only seen two such reactions. This should greatly simplify the problems in this section, enabling a smooth transition into the world of synthetic organic chemistry.

If the size of the carbon skeleton decreases, then a C—C bond-breaking reaction, called **bond cleavage**, is required. We have only seen one such reaction. Ozonolysis of an alkene (or alkyne) achieves bond cleavage at the location of the π bond:

Over time, we will see other reactions that involve C—C bond cleavage.

SKILLBUILDER

11.2 CHANGING THE CARBON SKELETON

LEARN the skill

Identify reagents that can be used to achieve the following transformation:

SOLUTION

Count the carbon atoms in the starting material and in the desired product. There are seven carbon atoms in the starting material, and there are nine carbon atoms in the product. Therefore two carbon atoms must be installed. We have only learned one reaction capable of installing two or more carbon atoms on an existing carbon skeleton. This process requires the use of an alkynide ion and a primary alkyl halide (secondary alkyl halides generally cannot be used because they undergo elimination more readily than substitution):

To identify the required starting materials for the C—C bond-forming reaction, we make a retrosynthetic disconnection at the C—C bond adjacent to the alkyne triple bond. The *sp* hybridized carbon atom served as the nucleophile, so we draw a negative charge on the carbon atom to give a recognizable nucleophile (acetylide ion). The other carbon atom (at the disconnected bond) must have started out as an electrophile, so we draw a leaving group (such as Cl, Br, or I) at that position:

It's generally a good idea to select Br as the leaving group because we have a variety of methods for making alkyl bromides. In this case, the bromide can be prepared from the given starting material:

The retrosynthesis reveals that the transformation can be achieved in two steps: *anti*-Markovnikov addition of HBr, followed by reaction with an acetylide anion. The second step forms a new C—C bond and extends the carbon chain by two carbon atoms:

PRACTICE the skill

11.5 Identify reagents that can be used to achieve each of the following transformations:

APPLY the skill

11.6 As we will see in Chapter 26, steroids are a class of organic compounds containing a specific tetracyclic skeleton (four rings), as seen in the compounds shown below. During efforts[2] to synthesize a steroid that was isolated from the Atlantic starfish, the side chain of compound **1** was converted into the side chain of compound **2**, as highlighted below. Propose a synthesis for this transformation.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 11.13, 11.14, 11.18, 11.21, 11.30**

BioLinks | Vitamins

Vitamins are compounds that our bodies require for normal functioning and must be obtained from food. An inadequate intake of certain vitamins causes specific diseases. This phenomenon had been observed long before the exact role of vitamins was understood. For example, sailors who remained at sea for extended periods would suffer from a disease called scurvy, characterized by the loss of teeth, swollen limbs, and bruising. If left untreated, the disease would be fatal. In 1747, a British naval physician named James Lind demonstrated that the effects of scurvy could be reversed by eating oranges and lemons. It was recognized that oranges and lemons must contain some "factor" that our bodies require, and lime juice became a normal part of a sailor's diet. For this reason, British sailors were called "Limeys."

Other studies revealed that a variety of foods contained mysterious "growth factors." For example, Gowland Hopkins (University of Cambridge) conducted a series of experiments in which he controlled the dietary intake of rats. He fed them carbohydrates, proteins, and fats (covered in Chapters 24, 25, and 26, respectively). This mixture was insufficient to sustain the rats, and it was necessary to add a few drops of milk to their dietary intake to achieve sustainable growth. These experiments demonstrated that milk contained some unknown ingredient, or factor, necessary for promoting proper growth.

Similar observations were made by a Dutch physician, Christiaan Eijkman, in the Dutch colonies in Indonesia. While investigating the cause for a massive outbreak of beriberi, a disease characterized by paralysis, he noted that the hens in the laboratory began to exhibit a form of paralysis as well. He discovered that they were being fed rice from which the fibrous husk had been removed (called polished rice). When he fed the hens raw whole rice, their condition improved drastically. It was therefore realized that the fibrous husk of rice contained some vital growth factor. In 1912, Polish biochemist Casimir Funk isolated the active compound from rice husks. Careful studies revealed that the structure contained an amino group and therefore belongs to a class of compounds called amines (Chapter 22):

Thiamine (vitamin B_1)

It was originally believed that all vital growth factors were amines, so they were called vitamins (a combination of *vital* and *amine*). Further research demonstrated that most vitamins lack an amino group, yet the term "vitamins" persisted. For their discovery of the role vitamins play in nutrition, Eijkman and Hopkins were awarded the 1929 Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine.

Vitamins are grouped into families based on their behavior (rather than their structure); each family is designated with a letter. For example, vitamin B is a family of many compounds, each designated with a letter and a number (B_1, B_2, B_3, etc.). Shown at right are representative vitamins from several families.

Early studies revealed the structure of vitamin C, which enabled chemists to devise a synthetic strategy for preparing vitamin C in the laboratory. Success led to the preparation of vitamin C on an industrial scale. Such early successes encouraged the notion that chemists would soon elucidate the structures of all vitamins and devise methods for their preparation in the laboratory. The synthesis of vitamin B_{12}, however, would prove to be more complex, as we will see in the next BioLinks box.

Retinol (vitamin A)

Sources: Milk, eggs, fruit, vegetables, and fish
Deficiency disease: Night-blindness (see Section 16.13)

Thiamine (vitamin B_1)

Sources: Liver, potatoes, whole grains, and legumes
Deficiency disease: Beriberi

Ascorbic acid (vitamin C)

Sources: Citrus fruits, bell peppers, tomatoes, and broccoli
Deficiency disease: Scurvy

Ergocalciferol (vitamin D_2)

Sources: Fish, produced by the body when exposed to sunlight
Deficiency disease: Rickets (see Section 16.10)

Phylloquinone (vitamin K_1)

Sources: Soybean oil, green vegetables, and lettuce
Deficiency disease: Hemorrhaging (internal bleeding)

11.4 How to Approach a Synthesis Problem

In Sections 11.2 and 11.3, we covered two critical skills: (1) functional group transformations and (2) changing the carbon skeleton. In this section, we will explore synthesis problems that require both skills. From this point forward, every synthesis problem should be approached by asking the following two questions:

1. ***Is there a change in the carbon skeleton?*** Compare the starting material with the product to determine if the carbon skeleton is gaining or losing carbon atoms.
2. ***Is there a change in the identity and/or location of the functional group?*** Is one functional group converted into another, and does the position of functionality change?

After making this initial assessment, we begin our retrosynthetic analysis by considering the functional group in the desired product (the target molecule). What reactions have we seen that produce that functional group? What starting material would be required for that reaction? To answer these questions, we need to be extremely familiar with all the reactions that we have seen thus far. These reactions will serve as our *synthetic toolbox*, which will expand as we cover more reactions in upcoming chapters. Table 11.1 is a list (synthetic toolbox) of reactions that we have covered thus far, organized according to the functional group in the target molecule. For example, if we want to make an alkene, the table indicates that there are three options for our synthesis: via E2 elimination of an alkyl halide, via E1 dehydration of an alcohol, or via reduction of an alkyne. Having these options in mind enables us to develop a logical retrosynthesis and an efficient synthesis.

TABLE 11.1 SYNTHETIC TOOLBOX REVIEW

FUNCTIONAL GROUP IN TARGET MOLECULE		POSSIBLE STARTING MATERIAL TO MAKE TARGET MOLECULE	EXAMPLE
Alkane	⟹	Alkene	
		Alkyne	
Alkyl halide	⟹	Alkane	
		Alcohol	
		Alkene	
Alcohol	⟹	Alkene	
		Alkyl halide	
R-Nuc	⟹	Alkyl halide	
Nuc = Nucleophile (CN, OR, SH, SR, etc.)		Tosylate (alcohol)	
1,2-Disubstituted	⟹	Alkene	

(continued)

FUNCTIONAL GROUP IN TARGET MOLECULE		POSSIBLE STARTING MATERIAL TO MAKE TARGET MOLECULE	EXAMPLE
Alkene	⟹	Alkyl halide (E2)	
		Alcohol (E1)	
		Alkyne	
Alkyne	⟹	Alkyl dihalide (E2)	
		Terminal alkyne	
Ketone or Aldehyde	⟹	Alkene	
		Alkyne	
Carboxylic acid	⟹	Alkyne	

SKILLBUILDER

11.3 APPROACHING A SYNTHESIS PROBLEM

LEARN the skill

Propose an efficient synthesis for the following transformation:

SOLUTION

Every synthesis problem should always be analyzed through the lens of the following two questions:

1. *Is there a change in the carbon skeleton?* The starting compound has five carbon atoms, and the product has seven carbon atoms. This transformation therefore requires the installation of two carbon atoms:

When numbering the carbon atoms, as shown above, it is not necessary to follow IUPAC rules for assigning locants. If we were naming the starting alkyne, we would be compelled to use proper locants (the triple bond would be between C-1 and C-2, rather than between C-4 and C-5). But the numbers here are only tools and can be used in whatever way is easiest for you to count.

2. *Is there a change in the identity or location of the functional group?* Certainly, the identity of the functional group has changed (a triple bond has been converted into a double bond), but consider the location of the functional group:

Once again, these numbers are not IUPAC numbers; rather, they are tools that help us identify that the double bond in the product occupies the same position as the triple bond in the starting material. In this case, strict adherence to the IUPAC numbering system would have been confusing and misleading.

By asking both questions, the following two tasks have been identified: (1) two carbon atoms must be installed and (2) the triple bond must be converted into a double bond in its current location. To propose a reasonable synthesis, we must determine what reagents to use, and in what order, to make the required changes. A retrosynthetic analysis is usually a good place to start, so we can consider the target molecule and ask, "What starting material do I need to make a *trans* alkene?" As shown in Table 11.1, a *trans* alkene can be prepared from an alkyne via a dissolving metal reduction:

It's also possible to synthesize an alkene from an alkyl halide or alcohol starting material, but the alkyne functional group is a better choice because the initial starting material for the transformation is also an alkyne and because the alkyne intermediate enables us to do our next retrosynthetic step (disconnection of a C—C bond).

We know that the transformation involves the formation of a new C—C bond and the one tool that we have to accomplish that task is alkylation of an alkyne. For alkylation of an alkyne, the disconnection should always be drawn at a C—C bond adjacent to the triple bond:

Overall, the solution to this problem requires two steps: (1) alkylation of the alkyne followed by (2) conversion of the triple bond into a double bond:

Notice the order of events. If the triple bond had first been converted into a double bond, the alkylation process would not work. Only a terminal triple bond can be alkylated, not a terminal double bond.

PRACTICE the skill

11.7 Identify reagents that can be used to achieve each of the following transformations:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

(f)

APPLY the skill

11.8 Latrunculin B is a marine natural product that was first isolated from the Red Sea sponge *Latrunculia magnifica*. Latrunculins are toxic to eukaryotic cells (cells that have a well-defined nucleus) by disrupting normal cellular structure. In a reported synthesis of latrunculin B, compound **1** was converted into compound **2**.[3] Propose an efficient synthesis for this transformation.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 11.13–11.16, 11.18–11.21, 11.25**

BioLinks The Total Synthesis of Vitamin B_{12}

The story of vitamin B_{12} began when physicians recognized that anemia, a fatal disease caused by a low concentration of red blood cells, could often be treated effectively by feeding the patient liver. This finding sparked a race to extract the compounds in liver and isolate the vitamin capable of treating some forms of anemia. In 1947, vitamin B_{12} was first isolated and purified as deep red crystals by Ed Rickes (a scientist working at the Merck Chemical Company). Efforts then focused on determining the structure. Some structural features were initially elucidated, but the complete structure was successfully determined by Dorothy Crowfoot Hodgkin (Oxford University) using X-ray crystallography. She found that the structure of vitamin B_{12} is built upon a corrin ring system, which is similar to the porphyrin ring system present in chlorophyll, the green pigment that plants use for photosynthesis (see above).

Much like the porphyrin ring system in chlorophyll, the corrin ring system of vitamin B_{12} is also comprised of four heterocycles (rings containing a heteroatom, such as nitrogen) joined together in a macrocycle. However, the corrin ring system of vitamin B_{12} is constructed around a central cobalt atom instead of the magnesium of chlorophyll, and vitamin B_{12} contains many more chiral centers than chlorophyll. The determination of this complex structure pushed the boundaries of X-ray crystallography, which until then had never been used to elucidate such a complex structure. Hodgkin was a pioneer in the field of X-ray crystallography and identified the structures of many important biochemical compounds. For her efforts, she was awarded the 1964 Nobel Prize in Chemistry.

With the structure of vitamin B_{12} elucidated, the stage was set for its total synthesis. At the time, the complexity of vitamin B_{12} represented the greatest challenge to synthetic organic chemists, and a couple of talented synthetic organic chemists viewed the challenge as irresistible. Robert B. Woodward (Harvard University) had already established himself as a leading player in the field of organic chemistry with his successful total synthesis of many important natural products, including quinine (used in the treatment of malaria), cholesterol and cortisone (steroids that will be discussed in Section 26.6), strychnine (a poison), reserpine (a tranquilizer), and chlorophyll. With these impressive accomplishments under his belt, Woodward eagerly embraced the challenge of vitamin B_{12}. He began working on methods for constructing the corrin ring system as well as the stereochemically demanding side chain. Meanwhile, Albert Eschenmoser (at the ETH in Zurich, Switzerland) was also working on a synthesis of the vitamin. However, the two men were developing different strategies for constructing the corrin

ring system. Woodward's A → B route involved forming the macrocycle between rings A and B, while Eschenmoser's A → D route involved forming the macrocycle between rings A and D:

During the development of each pathway, unexpected obstacles emerged that required the development of new strategies and techniques. For example, Eschenmoser had successfully demonstrated a method for coupling the heterocycles, enabling construction of a simple corrin system (without the large, bulky side groups found in vitamin B_{12}); however, this approach failed to couple the heterocycles that needed to be joined to form the corrin ring system of vitamin B_{12}. This failure was attributed to the steric bulk of the substituents on each heterocycle. To circumvent the problem, Eschenmoser developed an ingenious method by which he tethered two rings together with a temporary sulfur bridge. By doing so, the coupling process became an *intra*molecular process rather than an *inter*molecular process.

The sulfur bridge was readily expelled during the coupling process, and the overall process became known as "sulfide contraction." This is just one example of the creative solutions that synthetic chemists must develop when a planned synthetic route fails. A number of obstacles still faced both Woodward and Eschenmoser, and a partnership was forged in 1965 to tackle the problem together. In fact, that was the same year that Woodward was awarded the Nobel Prize in Chemistry for his contributions to the field of synthetic organic chemistry.

Woodward and Eschenmoser continued to work together for another seven years, often spending an entire year optimizing the conditions for an individual step. The intense effort, which involved nearly 100 graduate students working for a decade, would ultimately be rewarded. Woodward's team completed the assembly of the stereochemically demanding side chain, and the two groups combined some of the best methods and practices developed during studies aimed at construction of the corrin system. The pieces were finally joined together, and the synthesis was completed to produce vitamin B_{12} in 1972. This landmark event represents one of the greatest achievements in the history of synthetic organic chemistry, and it demonstrated that organic chemists could prepare any compound, regardless of complexity, given enough time.

During his journey toward the total synthesis of vitamin B_{12}, Woodward encountered a class of reactions that were known to proceed with unexplained stereochemical outcomes. Together with his colleague Roald Hoffmann, he developed a theory and a set of rules that would successfully explain the stereochemical outcomes of an entire area of organic chemistry called pericyclic reactions. This class of reactions will be covered in Chapter 16 together with the so-called Woodward-Hoffmann rules used to describe and predict the stereochemical outcomes for these reactions. The development of these rules led to another Nobel Prize in 1981, for which Woodward would have been a co-recipient had he not died two years earlier.

The story of vitamin B_{12} is a wonderful example of how organic chemistry progresses. During the total synthesis of a structurally complex compound, there is inevitably a point at which the planned route fails, requiring a creative method for circumventing the obstacle. In this way, new ideas and techniques are constantly developed. In the decades since the total synthesis of vitamin B_{12}, thousands of synthetic targets, most of them pharmaceuticals, have been constructed. New techniques, reagents, and principles constantly emerge from these endeavors. With time, synthetic targets are getting more and more complex, and the leaders in the field of organic chemistry are constantly pushing the boundaries of synthetic organic chemistry, which continues to evolve on a daily basis.

11.5 Multi-Step Synthesis and Retrosynthetic Analysis

When solving a synthesis problem, the key in many cases is to identify the structure of an intermediate compound that will provide a clear pathway for the required transformation. This compound can serve as a stepping stone in the transformation of the given starting material to the desired product (the target molecule):

If a transformation requires only 2-3 synthetic steps, it might be possible to visualize a logical intermediate structure and solve the problem quickly:

However, as we progress through the course and expand our repertoire of reactions (our synthetic toolbox), synthesis problems will become increasingly more challenging. To meet this challenge, we will approach any synthesis problem by first considering the last step of the synthesis, rather than the first step of the synthesis. This approach was first introduced in Section 7.11, and then reinforced throughout this chapter. Chemists have intuitively used this approach for many years, but E. J. Corey (Harvard University) was the first to develop a systematic set of principles for application of this approach, which he called *retrosynthetic analysis.*

As another example, let's consider how the following alcohol can be converted into the following alkyne:

Rather than focusing on what can be done with an alcohol that will ultimately lead to an alkyne, we instead focus on reactions that can generate an alkyne:

In this way, we work backward until arriving at the starting material. Let's use a retrosynthetic analysis to solve the problem above.

We must always begin by determining whether there is a change in the carbon skeleton or in the identity or location of the functional group. In this case, both the starting material and the product contain six carbon atoms, and the carbon skeleton is not changing. However, there is a change in the functional group. Specifically, an alcohol is converted into an alkyne, and the position of functionality is unchanged. We have not learned a way to achieve this in just one step. In fact, using reactions covered so far, this transformation cannot be accomplished even in two steps. So we approach this problem *backward* and ask: "What starting material do I need to make an alkyne?" Table 11.1 shows that an alkyne can be prepared by alkylation, or via two successive elimination reactions. In this case, there is no change in the carbon structure so there is only one way to make the triple bond. Specifically, a dihalide will undergo two successive E2

eliminations in the presence of excess $NaNH_2$ (Section 9.4). Any one of the following three dihalides could be used to form the desired alkyne:

The geminal dibromides can be ruled out, because we only saw one way to make a geminal dihalide—and that was starting from an alkyne. We certainly do not want to start with an alkyne in order to produce the very same alkyne. Therefore, the last step of our synthesis must be formation of the alkyne from a *vicinal* dihalide:

Recall from Section 7.11 (and as seen earlier in this chapter) that a special retrosynthetic arrow is used by chemists to indicate this type of "backward" thinking:

The retrosynthetic arrow indicates a thought process, working backward from the target molecule (alkyne). In other words, the previous figure should be read as: "In the last step of our synthesis, the alkyne *can be made from* a vicinal dibromide."

Now let's try to go backward one more step. In Table 11.1, the vicinal dibromide can be found in the target molecule category of "1,2-disubstituted." We have learned one way to make a vicinal dihalide, starting with an alkene:

Notice again the retrosynthetic arrow. The figure indicates that the vicinal dibromide can be made from an alkene. In other words, the alkene can be used as a starting material to prepare the desired dibromide.

So far, our retrosynthetic analysis looks like this:

This scheme indicates that the target molecule (alkyne) can be prepared from the alkene.

In order to complete the synthesis, this alkene must be made from the given starting material (an alcohol). At this point, we can think forward, in an attempt to converge with the pathway revealed by the retrosynthetic analysis:

This step can be accomplished with an E2 elimination. Just remember that the hydroxyl group must first be converted into a tosylate (a better leaving group). Then, an E2 elimination will create an alkene, which bridges the gap between the starting material and the product:

The synthesis seems complete. However, before recording the answer, it is always helpful to review all of the proposed steps and make sure that the regiochemistry and stereochemistry of each step will lead to the desired product *as a major product*. It would be inefficient to involve any steps that would rely on the formation of a minor product. We should only use steps that produce the desired product as the major product. After reviewing every step of the proposed synthesis, the answer can be recorded like this:

SKILLBUILDER

11.4 MULTI-STEP RETROSYNTHETIC ANALYSIS

LEARN the skill

Propose an efficient synthesis for each of the following transformations:

SOLUTION

(a) First determine whether there is a change in the carbon skeleton. The starting compound has four carbon atoms while the product has six. This transformation therefore requires the installation of two carbon atoms:

As we have seen many times in this chapter, we have so far learned only one method for installing two carbon atoms (alkylation of a terminal alkyne). Our synthesis must therefore involve an alkylation step. This should be taken into account when performing a retrosynthetic analysis.

Second, we need to determine whether there is a change in the identity or location of the functional group. In this case, the functional group has changed both its identity and its location. The product is an aldehyde. To begin a retrosynthetic analysis, we consider the target molecule and ask, "What starting material could be used to produce an aldehyde?" As shown in Table 11.1, an aldehyde can be made via hydroboration-oxidation of an alkyne:

Continuing with a retrosynthetic analysis, we must consider the step that might be used to produce the alkyne. Recall that our synthesis must contain a step involving the alkylation of an alkyne. We therefore propose the following retrosynthetic step, showing a C—C bond disconnection adjacent to the triple bond:

This step accomplishes the necessary installation of two carbon atoms.

To complete the synthesis, we just need to bridge the gap between the starting material and the alkyl halide:

Working forward now, it is apparent that the necessary transformation can be achieved with an *anti*-Markovnikov addition, which can be accomplished with HBr in the presence of peroxides. In summary, we propose the following synthesis.

(b) Always begin by determining whether there is a change in the carbon skeleton. The starting compound has a two-carbon chain connected to the ring, while the product has a three-carbon chain connected to the ring:

This transformation therefore requires the installation of one carbon atom.

Next determine whether there is a change in the identity or location of the functional group. In this case the identity of the functional group does not change, but its location does change.

To initiate a retrosynthetic analysis, we begin with the target molecule and ask, "What starting material could be used to make a *trans* alkene?" As shown in Table 11.1, a *trans* alkene can be made from an alkyne:

The target molecule can be made from this alkyne via a dissolving metal reduction. The alkyne is a suitable intermediate compound because we have to introduce a carbon atom via alkylation. The last two steps of our synthesis can therefore be written in the following way, using retrosynthetic arrows:

We have already planned the end of the synthesis, so now we must bridge the gap at the beginning of the synthesis:

To bridge the gap, a double bond must be converted into a triple bond and its position must be moved. We could continue with a retrosynthetic analysis of the alkyne, or we might try to make progress in the forward direction because we know how to move a π bond. While it's great to have a systematic approach that can be applied to every synthesis problem, in reality no two chemists will approach every problem in the exact same way. So let's see what the solution might look like if, at this point, we started working on the initial steps of the synthesis. The location of the double bond can be moved using the technique discussed earlier in the chapter—addition followed by elimination:

Take special note of the regiochemistry in each case. In the first step, an *anti*-Markovnikov addition of HBr is needed, so peroxides are required. Then, in the second step, the Hofmann product (the less substituted alkene) is needed, so a sterically hindered base is required:

Let's summarize what we have so far, working forward:

You may find that the approach we've taken here is a fairly useful approach when solving a complex synthesis problem: work backward as far as you can, and also work forward a little bit, and then see what gap remains in the multi-step synthesis. To bridge the gap in this case, a double bond must be converted into a triple bond. Once again, this is one of the techniques reviewed earlier in this chapter. It is accomplished through bromination of the alkene followed by two successive elimination reactions to produce an alkyne:

In summary, the desired transformation can be achieved with the following reagents:

You may notice that step 4 produces an alkynide ion, which is protonated in step 5 and then regenerated in step 6. Accordingly, it is acceptable to omit steps 5 and 6 from the synthesis. In practice, there is an advantage to performing these steps, because they allow for the isolation and purification of the alkyne before the alkylation process is attempted.

PRACTICE the skill **11.9.** Propose an efficient synthesis for each of the following transformations:

(g)

(h)

(i)

(j)

APPLY the skill

11.10 A study of compounds contained in the gas phase above a range of bacterial strains revealed the presence of 254 unique volatile organic compounds representing a broad range of structural classes. The two isomers below were among the compounds identified.[4] Propose a synthesis of each of these compounds using alkenes with fewer than six carbon atoms as your only source of carbon.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 11.13–11.16, 11.18–11.24, 11.32**

WorldLinks Retrosynthetic Analysis

Thus far, we have only explored a limited number of reactions, and the complexity of synthesis problems is therefore limited. At this stage, it might be difficult to see why retrosynthetic analysis is so critical. However, as we expand our repertoire of reactions, we will begin to explore the synthesis of more sophisticated structures, and the need for retrosynthetic analysis will become more apparent.

E. J. Corey first developed his retrosynthetic methodology as a faculty member at the University of Illinois. During his sabbatical year, which he spent at Harvard University, he shared his ideas with Robert Woodward (the very same Woodward who developed a total synthesis of vitamin B_{12}, described in the previous BioLinks box). Corey demonstrated his ideas by presenting a retrosynthetic analysis of longifolene, a natural compound that represented a challenging target because of its unique tricyclic structure. Corey identified the following strategic bond of longifolene for disconnection:

Longifolene

The functional groups in the precursor serve as handles enabling formation of the strategic bond (utilizing a reaction that we will explore in Chapter 21). Longifolene represented an excellent example of the power of Corey's retrosynthetic disconnection approach. For most of the bonds in longifolene, disconnection would produce a complex tricyclic precursor. That is, there are not many strategic bonds that can be disconnected to provide a simpler precursor. Woodward was impressed by Corey's insights and immediately recognized that Corey would soon be another leader in the field. This likely played a large role in the offer that Corey subsequently received to join the chemistry department at Harvard as a professor.

Corey developed his ideas further and established a set of rules and principles for proposing retrosynthetic analysis. He also spent much time creating computer programs to assist chemists in performing retrosynthetic analysis. It is clear that computers cannot replace the chemist altogether, as the chemist must provide the insight and creativity in determining which strategic bonds to disconnect. In addition, the chemist must exhibit creativity when a planned route fails. As discussed in the previous box, this is how new ideas, reagents, and techniques are developed. Corey used his approach for the total synthesis of dozens of compounds. In the process, he developed many new reagents, strategies, and reactions that now bear his name. Corey was an instrumental player in developing the field of synthetic organic chemistry. Retrosynthetic analysis is now taught to all students of organic chemistry. Similarly, nearly all reports of total synthesis in the chemical literature begin with a retrosynthetic analysis. For his contributions to the development of synthetic organic chemistry, Corey was awarded the Nobel Prize in Chemistry in 1990.

11.6 Green Chemistry

When planning a multistep synthesis, there are many considerations that a chemist must take into account. One important consideration is the impact on the environment. The term *green chemistry* has been coined to refer to reactions that are more environmentally friendly. The green chemistry movement has many goals and guiding principles, several of which are listed here:

- *Prevent waste*. Rather than using reactions that generate waste products, it is better to use reactions that produce little or no waste, thereby reducing or even eliminating the need for waste disposal.

- *Use less hazardous reagents*. Many known reactions involve either the use or the production of hazardous substances. Such reactions should be replaced with alternative reactions that do not involve the use or production of harmful substances.
- *Use safer solvents*. It is best to use environmentally benign solvents, such as water. The use of halogenated solvents, such as methylene chloride (CH_2Cl_2) or chloroform ($CHCl_3$), should be avoided if possible, since these solvents can be harmful to the environment.
- *Maximize atom economy*. It is best to use reactions in which all or most of the atoms (from the reagents used) are incorporated into the product(s). For example, compare the following two methods for hydration of an alkene (seen in Chapter 8).

The first process is called oxymercuration-demercuration (Section 8.7), and it employs several reagents (step 1 uses mercuric acetate and H_2O, while step 2 uses sodium borohydride). If we focus on the fate of the atoms in these reagents, we find that most of the atoms (shown in red) are not incorporated into the product. This reaction is therefore said to exhibit poor atom economy and will generate waste (in this case, hazardous waste). In contrast, acid-catalyzed hydration employs fewer reagents (H_2O and catalytic acid). All of the atoms in H_2O are incorporated into the product, and the acid serves as a catalyst, so stoichiometric amounts are not necessary (a small amount of acid is sufficient). Therefore, this reaction has excellent atom economy.

- *Use catalysts, rather than stoichiometric reagents*. As seen in the examples above, oxymercuration-demercuration requires stoichiometric amounts of mercuric acetate and sodium borohydride (1 mol of reagent is required for every mole of alkene), while acid-catalyzed hydration employs a catalyst. The latter produces less waste and is more efficient/economical.
- *Energy efficiency*. It is better to use reactions that can be performed at room temperature, rather than reactions that require intensive heating. Room temperature reactions are more energy efficient.
- *Renewable feedstocks*. Whenever possible, it is best to use starting materials obtained from renewable sources, such as grains, rather than using starting materials obtained from non-renewable sources, such as petroleum.

Most reactions will not perfectly satisfy all of these criteria. Nevertheless, the guiding principles above represent worthy goals. Indeed, the chemical industry has embraced these guiding principles, as many of these principles are also well aligned with economic goals. "Going green" can significantly reduce the costs associated with performing reactions and with disposing of waste.

11.7 Practical Tips for Increasing Proficiency

Organizing a Synthetic "Toolbox" of Reactions

All of the reactions in this course will collectively represent your synthetic "toolbox" for proposing syntheses. It will be very helpful to prepare a separate list for each of the two questions that must be considered in every synthesis problem (*change in the carbon skeleton* and *change in the functional group*). The first list should contain C—C bond-forming reactions and C—C bond-breaking reactions. At this point, this list is very small. We have only seen two ways to make a C—C bond (an S_N2 reaction between an alkyl halide and either a cyanide ion or an alkynide ion), and we have seen only one way to break a C—C bond (ozonolysis). As the text progresses, more reactions will be added to the list, which will remain relatively small but very powerful. The second list should contain functional group transformations, and it will be longer.

As we move through the text, both lists will grow. For solving synthesis problems, it will be helpful to have the reactions categorized in this way in your mind.

Creating Your Own Synthesis Problems

A helpful method for practicing synthesis strategies is to construct your own problems. The process of designing problems often uncovers patterns and new ways of thinking about the reactions. Begin by choosing a starting compound. To illustrate this, let's begin by choosing a simple starting compound, such as acetylene. Then choose a reaction expected for a triple bond, perhaps an alkylation:

Next, choose another reaction, perhaps another alkylation:

Then, treat the alkyne with another reagent. Look at the list of reactions of alkynes and choose one, perhaps hydrogenation with a poisoned catalyst:

Finally, simply erase everything except for the starting compound and the final product. The result is a synthesis problem:

Once you have created your own synthesis problem, it might be a really good problem, but it won't be helpful for you to solve it. You already know the answer! Nevertheless, the process of creating your own synthesis problems will be very helpful to you in sharpening your synthesis skills.

Once you have created several of your own problems, try to find a study partner who is also willing to create several problems. Each of you can swap problems, try to solve each other's problems, and then get back together to discuss the answers. You are likely to find that exercise to be very rewarding.

Multiple Correct Answers

Remember that there may be more than one correct answer to a given synthesis problem. As an example, *anti*-Markovnikov hydration of an alkene can be achieved through either of the following two possible routes:

The first pathway involves hydroboration-oxidation of the alkene to achieve *anti*-Markovnikov addition of water. The second pathway involves a radical (*anti*-Markovnikov) addition of HBr followed by an S_N2 reaction to replace the halogen with a hydroxyl group. Each of these pathways represents a valid synthesis. As we learn more reactions, it will become more common to encounter synthesis problems with several perfectly correct answers. The goal should always be efficiency. A 3-step synthesis will generally be more efficient than a 6-step synthesis.

BioLinks | Total Synthesis of Taxol

Taxol is a powerful anticancer agent that was first isolated from the bark of the Pacific yew tree (*Taxus brevifolia*) in 1967. The structure of Taxol, also known as paclitaxel, wasn't elucidated until 1971, and it wasn't until the late 1970s that the full anticancer potential was realized. Taxol prevents tumor growth by inhibiting the division of cells, or *mitosis*, in some types of cancer cells; and in other types of cancer cells, it induces cell death, or *apoptosis*. Taxol is now commonly prescribed as a treatment for breast and ovarian cancers.

One of the major challenges associated with the use of Taxol as an anticancer drug is the small quantity that is produced by the rare Pacific yew tree. The average tree produces just over 0.5 g of Taxol, and at least 2 g is required to treat just one patient. In addition, it may take up to 100 years for the Pacific yew to mature and it is only found in small climate regions, such as the Pacific Northwest of the United States. For these reasons, the Pacific yew tree cannot serve as a practical source of Taxol for clinical use.

Dennis Flaherty/Science Source

To deal with the lack of supply of Taxol, several efforts were undertaken to identify an alternate natural source of Taxol or a method of preparing it. The complicated structure of Taxol made it an especially challenging target for chemists who specialize in the synthesis of complex natural products. In early 1994, two research groups, one led by Robert Holton at Florida State University and the other led by Kyriacos Nicolaou at the Scripps Research Institute in California, reported (within days of each other) the synthesis of Taxol starting from simple precursors. Although both of these synthetic routes produced Taxol, each method involved several complicated steps that would be lengthy and expensive to use in the production of the large amounts of Taxol needed for anticancer treatment. For example, the Holton synthesis gave Taxol in a total yield of approximately 5%. However, these two syntheses served an essential purpose as they helped confirm that the structure proposed for the natural Taxol was indeed correct.

Despite the success of the synthetic routes to Taxol, chemists continued to look for other methods to produce enough of the drug for clinical applications. A search of other natural sources of Taxol (or related compounds) resulted in the identification of 10-deacetylbacatin III in the needles of the European yew *Taxus baccata*, an evergreen common to large parts of Europe:

10-Deacetylbacatin III

This compound is similar in structure to Taxol, and it can be readily converted into Taxol via a chemical transformation that was employed by the Holton group in the final steps of their Taxol synthesis. Since 10-deacetylbacatin III can be isolated from the needles, the plant survives the harvesting process and can continue to produce more needles, rendering it a sustainable source of 10-deacetylbacatin III. More importantly, the discovery of a source of 10-deacetylbacatin III facilitated the development of analogues of Taxol with different biological activity. One such example is Taxotere, also known as docetaxel, which can be easily prepared from 10-deacetylbacatin III. Taxotere is very effective in the treatment of certain types of breast cancer and lung cancer that Taxol is less effective in treating.

Taxotere (docetaxel)

The story of Taxol serves as a powerful example of how new drugs can be developed through a combination of natural product discovery and synthetic organic chemistry.

REVIEW OF CONCEPTS AND VOCABULARY

SECTION 11.1

- It is essential to achieve mastery over all reagents described in the previous chapters.

SECTION 11.2

- The position of a halogen can be moved by performing elimination followed by addition.
- The position of a π bond can be moved by performing addition followed by elimination.
- An alkane can be functionalized via radical bromination, followed by elimination to give an alkene.

SECTION 11.3

- If the size of the carbon skeleton increases, then a C—C bond-forming reaction is required.
- If the size of the carbon skeleton decreases, then a C—C bond-breaking reaction, called **bond cleavage**, is required.

SECTION 11.4

- Every synthesis problem should be approached by asking the following two questions:
  - Is there any change in the carbon skeleton?
  - Is there any change in the identity and/or location of the functional group?

SECTION 11.5

- In a *retrosynthetic analysis*, the last step of the synthetic route is first established, and the remaining steps are determined, working backward from the product.

SECTION 11.6

- The term *green chemistry* refers to reactions that have been designed to minimize negative impacts on the environment.

SECTION 11.7

- Most synthesis problems will have numerous correct answers, although efficiency should always be a top priority (fewer steps are preferable).

SKILLBUILDER REVIEW

11.1 CHANGING THE IDENTITY AND/OR POSITION OF A FUNCTIONAL GROUP

Changing the position of a halogen.

Changing the position of a π bond.

Interconverting between single, double, and triple bonds.

Try Problems 11.3, 11.4, 11.15–11.17, 11.29

11.2 CHANGING THE CARBON SKELETON

C—C bond formation.

Four carbon atoms **Three** carbon atoms **Seven** carbon atoms

C—C bond cleavage.

Five carbon atoms **Four** carbon atoms **One** carbon atom

Try Problems 11.5, 11.6, 11.13, 11.14, 11.18, 11.21, 11.30

11.3 APPROACHING A SYNTHESIS PROBLEM

1. Is there any change in the carbon skeleton?

Compare the starting material with the product to detemine if the carbon skeleton is gaining or losing any carbon atoms.

2. Is there any change in the identity and/or location of the functional group?

In other words, is one functional group converted into another, and does the position of functionality change?

Try Problems 11.7, 11.8, 11.13–11.16, 11.18–11.21,11.25

11.4 MULTI-STEP RETROSYNTHETIC ANALYSIS

Try Problems 11.9, 11.10, 11.13–11.16, 11.18–11.24, 11.32

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

• Included in Answers section

11.11 Identify reagents that can be used to achieve each of the following transformations:

11.12 Identify reagents that can be used to achieve each of the following transformations:

11.13 • Using acetylene as your only source of carbon atoms, identify a synthetic route for the production of 2-bromobutane.

11.14 Using acetylene as your only source of carbon atoms, identify a synthetic route for the production of 1-bromobutane.

11.15 Propose an efficient synthesis for each of the following transformations:

11.16 Using any reagents you like, show a way to convert 1-methylcyclopentene into 3-methylcyclopentene.

11.17 • Identify reagents that you could use to convert 2-bromo-2-methylbutane into 3-methyl-1-butyne.

11.18 • Propose an efficient synthesis for each of the following transformations:

11.19 Using any compounds that contain two carbon atoms or fewer, show a way to prepare a racemic mixture of (2*R*,3*R*)-2,3-dihydroxypentane and (2*S*,3*S*)-2,3-dihydroxypentane.

11.20 Using any compounds that contain two carbon atoms or fewer, show a way to prepare a racemic mixture of (2*R*,3*S*)- and (2*S*,3*R*)-2,3-dihydroxypentane.

11.21 • Propose an efficient synthesis for each of the following transformations:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

11.22 Using acetylene as your only source of carbon atoms, design a synthesis of *trans*-5-decene:

11.23 Using acetylene as your only source of carbon atoms, design a synthesis of *cis*-3-decene:

11.24 Using acetylene as your only source of carbon atoms, design a synthesis of pentanal, shown below (**Note**: pentanal has an odd number of carbon atoms, while acetylene has an even number of carbon atoms):

11.25 • Propose an efficient synthesis for the following transformation (many steps are required):

ACS-STYLE PROBLEMS (Multiple Choice)

Problems 11.26–11.32 follow the style of the ACS organic chemistry exam. For each of these problems, there will be one correct answer and three distractors.

11.26 • What are the best reagents to accomplish this transformation?

(a) *t*-BuOK

(b) NaC≡CH, followed by H_2 and Pt

(c) NaC≡CH, followed by H_2 and Lindlar's catalyst

(d) NaOH, followed by *t*-BuOK

11.27 • Which of the following represents an efficient synthesis of 1-methylcyclohexene?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

11.28 • Which reaction sequence best accomplishes this transformation?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

11.29 • Which of the following describes an efficient strategy for moving the location of a π bond?

(a) Substitution, followed by addition

(b) Addition, followed by substitution

(c) Elimination, followed by addition

(d) Addition, followed by elimination

11.30 • Which of the following reactions can be utilized to shorten the length of a carbon chain?

(a) Reduction (b) Elimination

(c) Ozonolysis (d) Epoxidation

11.31 • Which reaction sequence best accomplishes the given transformation?

(a) $\xrightarrow{t\text{-BuOK}}$ $\xrightarrow[2)\ NaBH_4]{1)\ Hg(OAc)_2,\ H_2O}$

(b) $\xrightarrow{t\text{-BuOK}}$ $\xrightarrow[2)\ H_2O_2,\ NaOH]{1)\ BH_3\cdot THF}$

(c) $\xrightarrow{NaOEt}$ $\xrightarrow[2)\ NaBH_4]{1)\ Hg(OAc)_2,\ H_2O}$

(d) $\xrightarrow{NaOEt}$ $\xrightarrow[2)\ H_2O_2,\ NaOH]{1)\ BH_3\cdot THF}$

11.32 • Which of the following represents a logical retrosynthesis of the given diol target molecule?

INTEGRATED PROBLEMS

11.33 • In this chapter, we have seen that an acetylide ion can function as a nucleophile and attack an alkyl halide in an S_N2 process. More generally speaking, the acetylide ion can attack other electrophiles as well. For example, we will see in Chapter 13 that epoxides function as electrophiles and are subject to attack by a nucleophile. Consider the following reaction between an acetylide ion (the nucleophile) and an epoxide (the electrophile):

The acetylide ion attacks the epoxide, opening up the strained, three-membered ring and creating an alkoxide ion. After the reaction is complete, a proton source is used to protonate the alkoxide ion. In a synthesis, these two steps must be shown separately, because the acetylide ion will not survive in the presence of H_2O. Using this information, propose an efficient synthesis for the following compound using acetylene as your only source of carbon atoms:

11.34 In the previous problem, we saw that an acetylide ion can attack a variety of electrophiles. In Chapter 19, we will see that a C═O bond can also function as an electrophile. Consider the following reaction between an acetylide ion (the nucleophile) and a ketone (the electrophile):

The acetylide ion attacks the ketone, generating an alkoxide ion. After the reaction is complete, a proton source is used to protonate the alkoxide ion. In a synthesis, these two steps must be shown separately, because the acetylide ion will not survive in the presence of H_2O. Using this information, propose a plausible synthesis for allyl alcohol (shown below), using acetylene as your only source of carbon atoms:

11.35 Identify reagents that you could use to achieve the following transformation:

11.36 Starting with acetylene as your only source of carbon atoms, identify how you would prepare each member of the following homologous series of aldehydes:

(a) CH_3CHO

(b) CH_3CH_2CHO

(c) $CH_3CH_2CH_2CHO$

(d) $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CHO$

11.37 Starting with acetylene as your only source of carbon atoms, propose a plausible synthesis for 1,4-dioxane (shown below). When planning this synthesis, take into account that a very strong base, such as NaH, will deprotonate an alcohol (ROH) to give an alkoxide anion (RO^-). Similarly, a diol (a compound with two OH groups) will react with excess NaH to give a dianion.

1,4-Dioxane

11.38 In a study of volatile compounds extracted from cinnamon trees native to Sri Lanka, 27 compounds were identified, including 3-phenylpropyl acetate.[5] Propose a synthesis of this compound using toluene and any two-carbon reactants as your only sources of carbon.

3-Phenylpropyl acetate Toluene

11.39 Kakkon is the root of an Asian plant that has traditionally been used in Chinese medicine. It smells fruity, winey, and medicinal. A study of the volatile components of kakkon (those responsible for the scent) resulted in the identification of 33 compounds, including 2,5-hexanedione.[6] Propose a synthesis of this diketone starting from 3,4-dimethylcyclobutene.

2,5-Hexanedione

11.40 Odor is one of the principal criteria used by consumers when purchasing food products such as fish. Researchers thus compared relative amounts of various volatile substances present in samples of European freshwater catfish raised in an indoor concrete pool to those raised in an outdoor pond. The compound 1-penten-3-ol was amongst the 59 volatile molecules detected.[7] Propose a synthesis of this compound using acetylene as your only source of carbon atoms. Note that you will have to use a reaction similar to the one described in the introduction to Problem 11.34.

1-Penten-3-ol

CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

11.41 The aroma, taste, and general quality of wine are tied closely to the stage of development of the grapes from which it is made. In order to develop a molecular-level understanding of this phenomenon, the volatile components of cabernet sauvignon grapes were tested throughout their growth period. Among the many molecules detected, the concentration of (*E*)-2-hexenal was found to increase slowly for eight weeks from the flowering of the vine, then to spike for four weeks before decreasing again.[8] Using the reaction described in Problem 11.34, propose a synthesis of (*E*)-2-hexenal starting from 1,1-dibromopentane.

(E)-2-Hexenal

11.42 In a study measuring the volatile components of fried chicken, a total of 130 distinct compounds were identified, including the linear alkane tetradecane.[9] Propose a synthesis of this compound using acetylene as your only source of carbon atoms.

11.43 The compound (*Z*)-3-hexenyl acetate is one of several volatile organic signaling compounds released from *Arabidopsis* leaves when they are damaged.[10] Propose a synthesis of this compound using ethylene ($H_2C{=}CH_2$) and acetic acid (CH_3CO_2H) as your only sources of carbon atoms. Use the reaction described in Problem 11.33 as one of the steps of the synthesis. (**Hint:** See SkillBuilder 7.8.)

(*Z*)-3-Hexenyl acetate

11.44 When a consumer purchases a tomato, smell is one of the factors affecting selection. Researchers in Japan have thus analyzed the volatile components of tomatoes using a novel method.[11] Among the complex mixture of 367 compounds detected were 3-methylbutanal and hexanal. Propose a single synthesis that produces an equimolar mixture of these two compounds (equal amounts of both products) starting with one 1° alcohol, one 2° alcohol, and one 3° alcohol, each with fewer than six carbons. (Note that the designations 1°, 2°, and 3° for alcohols are analogous to those of alkyl halides.)

3-Methylbutanal Hexanal

11.45 Methyl 4-methylpentanoate is one of 120 volatile compounds identified in a study of metabolites from *Streptomyces* bacteria.[12] Propose a synthesis of this ester starting from 2-methylbutane:

Methyl 4-methylpentanoate

11.46 The following sequence of reactions was employed during a synthesis of the sex pheromone of the dermestid beetle.[13] The conversion of compound **5** to compound **6** involves the removal of the THP group (ROTHP → ROH), which is accomplished in acidic conditions (using tosic acid, TsOH). Provide the structures of compounds **2**, **4**, **5**, **6**, and **7**:

LIST OF REFERENCES

1. *J. Org. Chem.* **1980**, *45*, 1532–1534.
2. *Tetrahedron* **2003**, *59*, 8623–8628.
3. *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed.* **2003**, *42*, 5358–5360.
4. *J. Nat. Prod.* **2012**, *75*, 1765–1776.
5. *J. Agric. Food Chem.* **2003**, *51*, 4344–4348.
6. *Agric. Biol. Chem.* **1988**, *52*, 1053–1055.
7. *J. Agric. Food Chem.* **2005**, *53*, 7204–7211.
8. *J. Agric. Food Chem.* **2009,** *57, 3818–3830.*
9. *J. Agric. Food Chem.* **1983**, *31*, 1287–1292.
10. *Nat. Prod. Rep.* **2012**, *29*, 1288–1303.
11. *J. Agric. Food Chem.* **2002**, *50*, 3401–3404.
12. *Actinomycetologica* **2009**, *23*, 27–33.
13. *Tetrahedron* **1977**, *33*, 2447–2450.

12

Alcohols and Phenols

12.1 Structure and Properties of Alcohols
12.2 Acidity of Alcohols and Phenols
12.3 Preparation of Alcohols via Substitution or Addition
12.4 Preparation of Alcohols via Reduction
12.5 Preparation of Diols
12.6 Preparation of Alcohols via Grignard Reagents
12.7 Protection of Alcohols
12.8 Preparation of Phenols
12.9 Reactions of Alcohols: Substitution and Elimination
12.10 Reactions of Alcohols: Oxidation
12.11 Biological Redox Reactions
12.12 Oxidation of Phenol
12.13 Synthesis Strategies

DID YOU EVER **WONDER...**

what causes the hangover associated with drinking alcohol and whether anything can be done to prevent a hangover?

Veisalgia, the medical term for a hangover, refers to the unpleasant physiological effects that result from drinking too much alcohol. These effects include headache, nausea, vomiting, fatigue, and a heightened sensitivity to light and noise. Hangovers are caused by a multitude of factors. These factors include (but are not limited to) dehydration caused by the stimulation of urine production, the loss of vitamin B, and the production of acetaldehyde in the body. Acetaldehyde is a product of the oxidation of ethanol. Oxidation is just one of the many reactions that alcohols undergo. In this chapter, we will learn about alcohols and their reactions. Then, we will revisit the topic of acetaldehyde production in the body, and we will see if anything can be done to prevent a hangover.

mg7/Getty Images

magnetcreative/Getty Images

richcano/Getty Images

DO YOU **REMEMBER?**

Before you go on, be sure you understand the following topics.
If necessary, review the suggested sections to prepare for this chapter.

- Brønsted–Lowry Acidity (Sections 3.3–3.4)
- Designating the Configuration of a Chiral Center (Section 5.3)
- Mechanisms and Curved Arrows (Sections 6.8–6.11)
- Substitution and Elimination Reactions of Alcohols (Section 7.10)

Take the DO YOU **REMEMBER?** QUIZ in the **online course** to check your understanding.

12.1 Structure and Properties of Alcohols

Alcohols are compounds that possess a **hydroxyl group** (OH) connected to an sp^3-hybridized carbon atom, and are characterized by names ending in "ol":

Ethanol **Cyclopentanol**

A vast number of naturally occurring compounds contain the hydroxyl group. Here are a couple of examples:

Cholesterol
Plays a vital role in the biosynthesis of many steroids

Cholecalciferol (vitamin D_3)
Regulates calcium levels and helps to form and maintain strong bones

Phenol is a compound that exhibits an OH group connected directly to a phenyl ring. Substituted phenols are extremely common in nature and exhibit a wide variety of properties and functions. The following are just two examples:

Phenol

Capsaicin
The compound responsible for the spicy hot flavor of chili peppers

Tetrahydrocannabinol (THC)
The psychoactive drug found in marijuana (cannabis)

Nomenclature

Recall that four discrete steps are required to name alkanes, alkenes, and alkynes:

1. Identify and name the parent.
2. Identify and name the substituents.
3. Assign a locant to each substituent.
4. Assemble the substituents alphabetically.

Alcohols are named using the same four steps and applying the following rules:

- When naming the parent, replace the suffix "e" with "ol" to indicate the presence of a hydroxyl group:

Pentane **Pentanol**

- When choosing the parent of an alcohol, identify the longest chain that includes the carbon atom connected to the hydroxyl group.

- The position of the hydroxyl group is indicated using a locant. The IUPAC rules published in 1979 dictate that this locant be placed immediately before the parent, while the IUPAC recommendations released in 1993 and 2004 allow for the locant to be placed before the suffix "ol." Both names are acceptable IUPAC names.

- When numbering the parent chain of an alcohol, the hydroxyl group should receive the lowest number possible, despite the presence of alkyl substituents or π bonds.

- When a chiral center is present, the configuration must be indicated at the beginning of the name; for example:

(*R*)-2-Chloro-3-phenyl-1-propanol

- Cyclic alcohols are numbered starting at the position bearing the hydroxyl group, so there is no need to indicate the position of the hydroxyl group; it is understood to be at C–1.

Cyclopentanol (*R*)-3,3-Dimethylcyclopentanol

In addition to systematic names, IUPAC nomenclature also recognizes common names for many alcohols, as seen in the following examples:

n-propyl alcohol or *n*-propanol	isopropyl alcohol or isopropanol	*tert*-butyl alcohol or *tert*-butanol
(systematic name = 1-propanol)	(systematic name = 2-propanol)	(systematic name = 2-methyl-2-propanol)

Notice that the common name for 1-propanol is not propyl alcohol, but rather *n*-propyl alcohol. When assigning common names, a propyl group is called an *n*-propyl group to differentiate it from an isopropyl group. The letter "*n*" stands for "normal" and indicates that the carbon atoms of the alkyl group are arranged in a linear chain (not branched) with the hydroxyl group connected to the end of the chain. Similarly, the common name for 1-butanol is *n*-butyl alcohol. Note that the terms *n*-propyl and *n*-butyl are used only in common names. In systematic names, the terms propyl and butyl are used (without the "*n*").

Alcohols are designated as primary, secondary, or tertiary, depending on the number of alkyl groups attached directly to the alpha (α) position (the carbon atom bearing the hydroxyl group).

Primary Secondary Tertiary

The word "phenol" is used to describe a specific compound (hydroxybenzene) but is also used as the parent name when substituents are attached.

Phenol

4-Chloro-2-nitrophenol

SKILLBUILDER

12.1 NAMING AN ALCOHOL

LEARN the skill

Assign an IUPAC name for the following alcohol:

SOLUTION

Begin by identifying and naming the parent. Choose the longest chain that includes the carbon atom connected to the hydroxyl group and then number the chain to give the hydroxyl group the lowest number possible.

STEP 1
Identify and name the parent.

3-Nonanol

Then identify the substituents and assign locants.

STEPS 2 AND 3
Identify the substituents and assign locants.

STEP 4
Assemble the substituents alphabetically.

Next, assemble the substituents alphabetically: 4,4-dichloro-6-ethyl-3-nonanol.

Before concluding, we must always check to see if there are any chiral centers. This compound has two chiral centers. Using the skills from Section 5.3, we can assign the *R* configuration to each chiral center.

STEP 5
Assign the configuration of any chiral centers.

Therefore, the complete name is (3*R*,6*R*)-4,4-dichloro-6-ethyl-3-nonanol.

PRACTICE the skill

12.1 Provide an IUPAC name for each of the following alcohols:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

APPLY the skill

12.2 Safer alternatives to existing insecticides and mosquito repellants might be found in the essential oils of plants. Phytol is one such isolated compound that has promising pest-fighting potential.[1] Provide the IUPAC name for phytol, which is both an alcohol and an

alkene. A 16-carbon alkane is called hexadecane (6 + 10 = 16), and you might find it useful to consult the textbook's Appendix "Nomenclature of Polyfunctional Compounds" for more help!

Phytol

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 12.29, 12.30a–d,f, 12.31**

Commercially Important Alcohols

Methanol (CH_3OH) is the simplest alcohol. It is toxic, and ingestion can cause blindness and death, even in small quantities. Methanol can be obtained from heating wood in the absence of air and has therefore been called "wood alcohol." Industrially, methanol is prepared by the reaction between carbon dioxide (CO_2) and hydrogen gas (H_2) in the presence of suitable catalysts. Each year, the United States produces approximately 2 billion gallons of methanol, which is used as a solvent and as a precursor in the production of other commercially important compounds.

Methanol can also be used as a fuel to power combustion engines. In the second lap of the 1964 Indianapolis 500, a bad accident involving seven cars resulted in a large fire that claimed the lives of two drivers. That accident prompted the decision that all race cars switch from gasoline-powered engines to methanol-powered engines, because methanol fires produce no smoke and are more easily extinguished. In 2006, the Indianapolis 500 switched the choice of fuels for the race cars again, replacing methanol with a mixture of 10% methanol and 90% ethanol.

Ethanol (CH_3CH_2OH), also called grain alcohol, is obtained from the fermentation of grains or fruits, a process that has been widely used for thousands of years. Industrially, ethanol is prepared via the acid-catalyzed hydration of ethylene. Each year, the United States produces more than 10 billion gallons of ethanol, used as a solvent and as a precursor for the production of other commercially important compounds. Ethanol that is suitable for drinking is highly taxed by most governments. To avoid these taxes, industrial-grade ethanol is contaminated with small quantities of toxic compounds (such as methanol) that render the mixture unfit for human consumption. The resulting solution is called "denatured alcohol."

Isopropanol, also called rubbing alcohol, is prepared industrially via the acid-catalyzed hydration of propylene. Isopropanol has antibacterial properties and is used as a local antiseptic. Sterilizing pads typically contain a solution of isopropanol in water. Isopropanol is also used as an industrial solvent and as a gasoline additive.

Physical Properties of Alcohols

The physical properties of alcohols are quite different from the physical properties of alkanes or alkyl halides. For example, compare the boiling points for ethane, chloroethane, and ethanol.

Ethane bp = –89°C | **Chloroethane** bp = 12°C | **Ethanol** bp = 78°C

The boiling point of ethanol is much higher than the other two compounds as a result of the hydrogen-bonding interactions that occur between molecules of ethanol.

These interactions are fairly strong intermolecular forces, and they are also critical in understanding how alcohols interact with water. For example, methanol is **miscible** with water, which means that methanol can be mixed with water in any proportion (they will never separate into two layers like a mixture of water and oil). However, not all alcohols are miscible with water. To

understand why, we must realize that every alcohol has two regions. The *hydrophobic* region does *not* interact well with water, while the *hydrophilic* region *does* interact with water via hydrogen bonding. Figure 12.1 shows the hydrophobic and hydrophilic regions of methanol and *n*-octanol.

FIGURE 12.1
The hydrophobic and hydrophilic regions of methanol and octanol.

In the case of methanol, the hydrophobic end of the molecule is fairly small. This is true even of ethanol and *n*-propanol, but it is not true of *n*-butanol. The hydrophobic end of *n*-butanol is large enough to prevent miscibility. Water can still be mixed with *n*-butanol, but not in all proportions. In other words, *n*-butanol is considered to be soluble in water, rather than miscible. The term **soluble** means that only a specific amount of *n*-butanol can dissolve in a specified volume of water at room temperature.

As the size of the hydrophobic region increases, solubility in water decreases. For example, *n*-octanol exhibits extremely low solubility in water at room temperature. Alcohols with more than eight carbon atoms, such as *n*-nonanol and *n*-decanol, are considered to be insoluble in water.

BioLinks Chain Length as a Factor in Drug Design

Primary alcohols (methanol, ethanol, *n*-propanol, *n*-butanol, etc.) exhibit antibacterial properties. Research indicates that the antibacterial potency of primary alcohols increases with increasing molecular weight, and this trend continues up to an alkyl chain length of eight carbon atoms (*n*-octanol). Beyond eight carbon atoms, the potency decreases. That is, *n*-nonanol is less potent than *n*-octanol, and *n*-dodecanol (12 carbon atoms) has very little potency.

Two trends explain the observations:

- An alcohol with a larger alkyl chain (hydrophobic region) exhibits a greater ability to penetrate microbial membranes, which are composed of molecules with hydrophobic regions. According to this trend, potency should continue to increase with increased alkyl chain length, even beyond eight carbon atoms.
- A compound with a larger alkyl chain exhibits lower solubility in water, decreasing its ability to be transported through aqueous media. This trend explains why the potency of alcohols decreases steeply as the alkyl chain becomes larger than eight carbon atoms. A larger alcohol simply cannot reach its destination and therefore has low potency.

The balance between these two trends is achieved for *n*-octanol, which has the highest antibacterial potency of the primary alcohols.

Studies also show that chain branching decreases the ability of an alcohol to penetrate cell membranes. Accordingly, isopropanol is actually less potent as an antibacterial agent than *n*-propanol. Nevertheless, isopropanol (rubbing alcohol) is used because it is less expensive to produce than *n*-propanol, and the difference in antibacterial potency does not justify the added expense of production.

Many other antibacterial agents are specifically designed with alkyl chains that enable them to penetrate cell membranes. The design of these agents is optimized by carefully striking the right balance between the two trends previously discussed. Various chain lengths are tested to determine optimal potency. In most cases, the optimal chain length is found to be between five and nine carbon atoms. Consider, for example, the structure of resorcinol.

Resorcinol Hexylresorcinol

Resorcinol is a weak antiseptic (antimicrobial agent) used in the treatment of skin conditions such as eczema and psoriasis. Placing an alkyl chain on the ring increases its potency as an antiseptic. Studies indicate that the optimal potency is achieved with a six-carbon chain length. Hexylresorcinol exhibits bactericidal and fungicidal properties and is used in many throat lozenges.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

12.3 Mandelate esters exhibit spasmolytic activity (they act as muscle relaxants). The nature of the alkyl group (R) greatly affects potency. Research indicates that the optimal potency is achieved when R is a nine-carbon chain (a nonyl group). Explain why nonyl mandelate is more potent than both octyl mandelate and decyl mandelate.

Mandelate esters
(R = alkyl chain)

12.2 Acidity of Alcohols and Phenols

Acidity of the Hydroxyl Functional Group

LOOKING BACK
The factors affecting the stability of a negative charge were first discussed in Section 3.4.

As we learned in Chapter 3, the acidity of a compound can be qualitatively evaluated by analyzing the stability of its conjugate base:

LOOKING BACK
Recall that a strong acid will have a low pK_a value. To review the relationship between pK_a and acidity, see SkillBuilder 3.2.

The conjugate base of an alcohol is called an **alkoxide** ion, and it exhibits a negative charge on an oxygen atom. A negative charge on an oxygen atom is more stable than a negative charge on a carbon or nitrogen atom but less stable than a negative charge on a halogen, X (Figure 12.2).

FIGURE 12.2
The relative stability of various anions.

Therefore, alcohols are more acidic than amines and alkanes but less acidic than hydrogen halides (Figure 12.3). The pK_a for most alcohols falls in the range of 15–18.

FIGURE 12.3
The relative acidity of alkanes, amines, alcohols, and hydrogen halides.

Reagents for Deprotonating an Alcohol

There are two common ways to deprotonate an alcohol, forming an alkoxide ion.

1. A strong base can be used to deprotonate the alcohol. A commonly used base is sodium hydride (NaH), because hydride (H^-) deprotonates the alcohol to generate hydrogen gas, which bubbles out of solution:

2. Alternatively, an alcohol can be deprotonated upon treatment with Li, Na, or K. These metals react with the alcohol to liberate hydrogen gas, producing the alkoxide ion.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

12.4 Draw the alkoxide ion that is formed in each of the following reactions:

Reagents for Protonating an Alkoxide Ion

In this chapter and throughout the rest of this text, we will explore many reactions that generate alkoxide ions as products. Whenever the product of a reaction is an alkoxide ion, it can be readily converted into its corresponding alcohol upon treatment with an acid, such as H_3O^+:

H_3O^+ can be prepared by diluting a strong acid, such as HCl or H_2SO_4, in water, although there are other ways to prepare even milder aqueous acidic conditions, as we will see in upcoming chapters. It should be noted that most alkoxide ions can be protonated even with weak acids, such as water (H_2O), although it is generally more efficient to use H_3O^+. Throughout the remainder of this text, we will use H_3O^+ as the proton source for protonating an alkoxide ion.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

12.5 Draw the alcohol that is formed when each of the following alkoxide ions is treated with H_3O^+, and in each case, show a mechanism for formation of the alcohol.

(a)

(b)

(c)

Factors Affecting the Acidity of Alcohols and Phenols

How can we predict which, of a number of alcohols, is more acidic? In this section, we will explore three factors for comparing the acidity of alcohols.

1. *Resonance*. One of the most significant factors affecting the acidity of alcohols and phenols is resonance. As a striking example, compare the pK_a values of cyclohexanol and phenol:

When phenol is deprotonated, the conjugate base is stabilized by resonance.

This resonance-stabilized anion is called a **phenolate**, or **phenoxide**, ion. Resonance stabilization of the phenoxide ion explains why phenol is eight orders of magnitude (100,000,000 times) more acidic than cyclohexanol. As a result, phenol does not need to be deprotonated with a very strong base like sodium hydride. Instead, it can be deprotonated by hydroxide.

The acidity of phenols is one of the ways in which phenols differ from alcohols. Later in this chapter and again in Chapter 18, we will see other reasons why phenols belong to a class of their own.

2. *Induction*. Another factor in comparing the acidity of alcohols is induction. As an example, compare the pK_a values of ethanol and trichloroethanol.

Ethanol (pK_a = 16.0) **Trichloroethanol** (pK_a = 12.2)

LOOKING BACK
For a review of inductive effects, see Section 3.4.

Trichloroethanol is four orders of magnitude (10,000 times) more acidic than ethanol, because the conjugate base of trichloroethanol is stabilized by the electron-withdrawing effects of the nearby chlorine atoms.

3. *Solvation effects*. To explore the effect of alkyl branching, compare the acidity of ethanol and *tert*-butanol.

Ethanol (pK_a = 16.0) ***tert*-Butanol** (pK_a = 18.0)

The pK_a values indicate that *tert*-butanol is less acidic than ethanol, by two orders of magnitude. This difference in acidity is best explained by a steric effect. The ethoxide ion is not sterically hindered and is therefore more solvated (stabilized) by the solvent, while *tert*-butoxide is sterically hindered and is less solvated (Figure 12.4). The conjugate base of *tert*-butanol is less stabilized than the conjugate base of ethanol, rendering *tert*-butanol less acidic.

FIGURE 12.4
An ethoxide ion is stabilized by the solvent to a greater extent than *tert*-butoxide is stabilized by the solvent.

SKILLBUILDER

12.2 COMPARING THE ACIDITY OF ALCOHOLS

LEARN the skill

Identify which of the following compounds is expected to be more acidic:

Compound A **Compound B**

SOLUTION

Begin by drawing the conjugate base of each and then compare the stability of those conjugate bases.

Conjugate base of compound A Conjugate base of compound B

The conjugate base of compound **B** is not resonance stabilized, but the conjugate base of compound **A** is resonance stabilized.

Conjugate base of compound A

As a result, the conjugate base of compound **A** will be more stable than the conjugate base of compound **B**. Therefore, compound **A** will be more acidic.

We expect compound **B** to have a pK_a somewhere in the range of 15–18 (the range expected for alcohols). The pK_a of compound **A** will be more difficult to predict. However, we expect that it will be lower (more acidic) than a regular alcohol. In other words, the pK_a value will be lower than 15.

PRACTICE the skill

12.6 For each of the following pairs of alcohols, identify the one that is more acidic and explain your choice:

APPLY the skill

12.7 Flavonoids are a class of naturally occurring compounds with promising medicinal uses due to their anti-inflammatory, anti-cancer and anti-HIV properties. Much of this biological activity is due to the radical scavenging ability of flavonoids, which can be affected by the acidity of their hydroxyl groups.[2] Naringenin, the major flavonoid found in grapefruit, has three acidic hydroxyl groups. pK_a values are shown for two of these hydroxyl groups (highlighted). Provide an explanation for the substantial difference in acidity between these two hydroxyl groups.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 12.32, 12.63**

12.3 Preparation of Alcohols via Substitution or Addition

Substitution Reactions

As we saw in Chapter 7, alcohols can be prepared by substitution reactions in which a leaving group is replaced by a hydroxyl group.

A primary substrate will require S_N2 conditions (a strong nucleophile), while a tertiary substrate will require S_N1 conditions (a weak nucleophile).

LOOKING BACK
For a review of the factors that affect substitution vs. elimination, see Section 7.9.

With a secondary substrate, neither S_N2 nor S_N1 is particularly effective for preparing a secondary alcohol. Under S_N1 conditions, the reaction is generally too slow, while S_N2 conditions (use of hydroxide as the nucleophile) will generally favor elimination over substitution.

Addition Reactions

In Chapter 8, we learned several addition reactions that produce alcohols.

Acid-catalyzed hydration proceeds with Markovnikov addition (Section 8.6). That is, the hydroxyl group is installed at the more substituted position. It is a useful method if the substrate is not susceptible to carbocation rearrangements (Section 6.11). In a case where the substrate can possibly rearrange, oxymercuration-demercuration can be employed. This approach also proceeds via Markovnikov addition, but it does not involve carbocation rearrangements. Hydroboration-oxidation is used to achieve an *anti*-Markovnikov addition of water.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

12.8 Identify the reagents that you would use to accomplish each of the following transformations:

12.9 Identify reagents that can be used to achieve each of the following transformations:

(a) To convert 1-hexene into a primary alcohol

(b) To convert 3,3-dimethyl-1-hexene into a secondary alcohol

(c) To convert 2-methyl-1-hexene into a tertiary alcohol

12.4 Preparation of Alcohols via Reduction

In this section, we will explore a new method for preparing alcohols. This method involves a change in **oxidation state**, so let's spend a few moments to understand oxidation states and their relationship with formal charges.

Oxidation States

An oxidation state refers to a method of electron bookkeeping. Chapter 1 developed a different method for electron bookkeeping called formal charge. To calculate the formal charge on an atom, we treat all bonds to that atom as if they were purely *covalent*, and we break them *homolytically*. For calculating oxidation states, we will take another extreme approach. We treat all bonds as if they were purely *ionic*, and we break them *heterolytically*, giving each pair of electrons to the more electronegative atom in each case. Formal charges and oxidation states therefore represent two extreme methods of electron bookkeeping. In Figure 12.5, the formal charge of the carbon atom is zero, because we count four electrons on the central carbon atom, which is equivalent to the number of valence electrons a carbon atom is supposed to have. In contrast, the same carbon atom has an oxidation state of −2, because we count six electrons on the carbon atom, which is two more electrons than it is supposed to have.

FIGURE 12.5
Two different electron bookkeeping methods: formal charge vs. oxidation state.

A carbon atom with four bonds will always have no formal charge, but its oxidation state can range anywhere from −4 to +4.

A reaction involving an increase in the oxidation state of a carbon atom is called an **oxidation**. For example, when methanol is converted into formaldehyde, we say that methanol was *oxidized*. In contrast, a reaction involving a decrease in the oxidation state of a carbon atom is called a **reduction**. For example, when formaldehyde is converted into methanol, we say that formaldehyde was *reduced*. Let's get some practice identifying oxidations and reductions.

SKILLBUILDER

12.3 IDENTIFYING OXIDATION AND REDUCTION REACTIONS

LEARN the skill

In the following transformation, identify whether the compound has been oxidized, reduced, or neither:

SOLUTION

Focus on the carbon atom where a change has occurred and determine whether the oxidation state has changed as a result of the transformation. Let's begin with the starting material:

STEP 1
Determine the oxidation state of the starting material.

Each C—O bond is broken heterolytically, giving all four electrons of the C═O double bond to the oxygen atom. Each C—C bond cannot be broken heterolytically, because C and C have the same electronegativity. For each C—C bond, just divide the electrons between the two carbon atoms, breaking the bond homolytically. This leaves a total of two electrons on the central carbon atom. Compare this number with the number of valence electrons that a carbon atom is supposed to have (four). The carbon atom in this example is missing two electrons. Therefore, it has an oxidation state of +2.

STEP 2
Determine the oxidation state of the product.

STEP 3
Determine if there has been a change in oxidation state.

Now analyze the carbon atom in the product. The same result is obtained: an oxidation state of +2. This should make sense, because the reaction has simply exchanged one C═O double bond for two C—O single bonds. The oxidation state of the carbon atom has not changed during the reaction, and therefore the starting material has been neither oxidized nor reduced.

PRACTICE the skill

12.10 In each of the following transformations, identify whether the starting material has been oxidized, reduced, or neither. Try to determine the answer without calculating oxidation states and then use the calculations to see if your intuition was correct.

APPLY the skill

12.11 Compound **1** was converted into compound **2** and both compounds were evaluated for their cytotoxicity (ability to kill cells). It was observed that compound **2** was four to ten times less cytotoxic than compound **1**.[3] Determine whether the ring has been oxidized or reduced in this reaction (or you may find that it has been neither oxidized nor reduced). Try to determine the answer first by intuition and then use calculations to see if your intuition was correct.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 12.49, 12.50, 12.74**

Reducing Agents

The conversion of a ketone (or aldehyde) to an alcohol is a reduction.

The reaction requires a **reducing agent**, which is itself oxidized as a result of the reaction. In this section, we will explore three reducing agents that can be used to convert a ketone or aldehyde to an alcohol:

1. In Chapter 8, we learned that an alkene can undergo hydrogenation in the presence of a metal catalyst such as platinum, palladium, or nickel. A similar reaction can occur for ketones or aldehydes, although more forcing conditions are generally required (higher temperature and pressure), so this method is rarely used by synthetic chemists.

2. Sodium borohydride ($NaBH_4$) is a common reducing agent that can be used to reduce ketones or aldehydes.

Sodium borohydride functions as a source of hydride ($H:^-$) and the solvent functions as the source of a proton (H^+). The solvent can be ethanol, methanol, or water. The precise mechanism of action has been heavily investigated and is somewhat complex. Nevertheless, Mechanism 12.1 presents a simplified version that will be sufficient for our purposes. The first step involves the transfer of hydride to the **carbonyl group** (the C═O bond), and the second step is a proton transfer.

MECHANISM 12.1 REDUCTION OF A KETONE OR ALDEHYDE WITH $NaBH_4$

Hydride ($H:^-$), by itself, is not a good nucleophile because it is not polarizable. As a result, the reaction above cannot be achieved by using NaH (sodium hydride). NaH only functions as a base, not as a nucleophile. But $NaBH_4$ does function as a nucleophile. Specifically, $NaBH_4$ functions as a *delivery agent* of nucleophilic H^-.

When nucleophilic H^- attacks a carbonyl group, an important change in geometry occurs. Prior to the attack, the carbon atom of the carbonyl group is sp^2-hybridized and has trigonal planar geometry. But as a result of the attack, this carbon atom becomes sp^3-hybridized, with tetrahedral geometry. This change is especially relevant when an *unsymmetrical ketone* (a ketone with two different R groups) is reduced with sodium borohydride. In such a case, a new chiral center is created, and a pair of stereoisomers is obtained. Consider the following example:

In this case, reduction of the ketone gives a racemic mixture of enantiomers, because the hydride nucleophile can attack either face of the planar carbonyl group with equal likelihood:

3. Lithium aluminum hydride ($LiAlH_4$) is another common reducing agent, and its structure is very similar to $NaBH_4$.

Sodium borohydride ($NaBH_4$) **Lithium aluminum hydride ($LiAlH_4$)**

Lithium aluminum hydride, commonly abbreviated as LAH, is also a delivery agent of H^-, but it is a much stronger reagent. It reacts violently with protic solvents (such as water), and therefore, a protic solvent cannot be present together with $LiAlH_4$ in the reaction flask. First the ketone or aldehyde is treated with $LiAlH_4$, and then, in a separate step (called *workup*), the proton source is added to the reaction flask. For the workup step, H_3O^+ can be used as the proton source, although H_2O can also be used as a proton source:

86%

Notice that $LiAlH_4$ and the workup step are listed as two separate steps. When $LiAlH_4$ is used to reduce a ketone or aldehyde, the workup step must be shown as a separate step, because $LiAlH_4$ cannot be in the reaction flask together with H_3O^+ (or H_2O). The mechanism of action has been heavily investigated and is somewhat complex. A simplified version is presented here (Mechanism 12.2). Note the similarity between Mechanism 12.1 and Mechanism 12.2.

MECHANISM 12.2 REDUCTION OF A KETONE OR ALDEHYDE WITH $LiAlH_4$

This simplified mechanism does not take into account many important observations, such as the role of the lithium cation (Li^+). However, a full treatment of the mechanism of hydride reducing agents is beyond the scope of this text, and this simplified version will suffice.

When an unsymmetrical ketone is reduced with $LiAlH_4$, a pair of stereoisomers is obtained (just as we saw for reduction with $NaBH_4$), because the hydride nucleophile can attack either face of the planar carbonyl group:

Both $NaBH_4$ and $LiAlH_4$ will reduce ketones or aldehydes. These hydride delivery agents offer one significant advantage over catalytic hydrogenation in that they can selectively reduce a carbonyl group in the presence of a C═C bond. Consider the following example:

When treated with a hydride reducing agent, only the carbonyl group is reduced. In contrast, catalytic hydrogenation will also reduce the C═C bond under the conditions required to reduce the carbonyl group (high temperature and pressure). For this reason, hydride reducing agents such as $NaBH_4$ and $LiAlH_4$ are generally preferred over catalytic hydrogenation. Many other hydride reducing reagents are commercially available. Some are even more reactive than $LiAlH_4$ and others are even milder than $NaBH_4$. Many of these reagents are derivatives of $NaBH_4$ and $LiAlH_4$.

Each R group can be an alkyl group, a cyano group, an alkoxy group, or any one of a number of groups. By carefully choosing the three R groups to be either electron donating or electron withdrawing, it is possible to modify the reactivity of the hydride reagent. Hundreds of different hydride reducing agents are available, and each has its own selectivity and advantages. For now, we will simply focus our attention on the differences between $LiAlH_4$ and $NaBH_4$.

We mentioned that $LiAlH_4$ is much more reactive than $NaBH_4$. For example, $LiAlH_4$ will reduce a carboxylic acid or an ester to produce an alcohol, but $NaBH_4$ will not.

BY THE WAY
Although $NaBH_4$ does not reduce esters under mild conditions, it is observed that $NaBH_4$ will sometimes reduce esters when more forcing conditions are employed, such as high temperature.

Reduction of the ester involves the transfer of hydride two times, as seen in Mechanism 12.3.

MECHANISM 12.3 REDUCTION OF AN ESTER WITH $LiAlH_4$

$LiAlH_4$ delivers hydride to the carbonyl group, but then loss of a leaving group causes the carbonyl group to re-form. In the presence of $LiAlH_4$, the newly formed carbonyl group can be attacked again by hydride. The leaving group in the second step of the mechanism is a methoxide ion, which is generally not a good leaving group. For example, methoxide does not function as a leaving group in E2 or S_N2 reactions. The reason that it can function as a leaving group in this case stems from the nature of the intermediate after the first attack of hydride. That intermediate is high in energy and already exhibits a negatively charged oxygen atom. The intermediate is therefore capable of ejecting methoxide, because such a step is not uphill in energy.

High-energy intermediate

In Chapter 20, we will discuss this reaction in greater detail as well as a mechanism for the reaction of a carboxylic acid with $LiAlH_4$.

SKILLBUILDER

12.4 DRAWING A MECHANISM AND PREDICTING THE PRODUCTS OF HYDRIDE REDUCTIONS

LEARN the skill

Draw a mechanism and predict the product for the following reaction:

SOLUTION

$LiAlH_4$ is a hydride reducing agent, and the starting material is a ketone. When a hydride reducing agent reacts with a ketone or aldehyde, we can draw a mechanism that consists of two steps: nucleophilic attack, followed by proton transfer. In the first step, draw the structure of $LiAlH_4$ and show a hydride being delivered to the carbonyl group. Do not simply draw $H:^-$ as the reagent, because $H:^-$ is not nucleophilic by itself. It must be delivered by the delivery agent ($LiAlH_4$). Draw the complete structure of $LiAlH_4$ (showing all bonds) and then draw a curved arrow that shows the electrons coming from one Al—H bond and attacking the carbonyl group.

STEPS 1 AND 2
Draw the two curved arrows that show the delivery of a hydride and then draw the resulting alkoxide ion.

Notice that a chiral center is created during this reduction process, so we expect the alkoxide ion to be produced as a racemic mixture of enantiomers. Then, after the reaction is complete, acid is introduced into the reaction flask as a workup step. During this step, the alkoxide ion is protonated to give an alcohol.

STEPS 3
Draw the two curved arrows showing the alkoxide ion being protonated by the proton source.

The product is a racemic mixture of a secondary alcohol, which is what we expect from reduction of a ketone. The enantiomeric products can also be drawn like this:

PRACTICE the skill **12.12** Draw a mechanism and predict the major product(s) for each reaction:

APPLY the skill **12.13** Ambuic acid has been isolated from fungi that grow on economically important plants found in the rain forest. Ambuic acid is active against several other fungi that are harmful to these plants, indicating that it may provide chemical protection. During a synthesis of ambuic acid, compound **1** was reduced to compound **2** using $NaBH_4$.[4]

(a) Draw a mechanism for the conversion of **1** to **2**.

(b) Since compound **1** is chiral, reduction of the carbonyl group leads to diastereomeric products (rather than enantiomers), and it is observed that one diastereomer (compound **2**) is favored. Based on the configuration of the newly formed alcohol, determine whether the preference is for hydride to be delivered to the top face or to the bottom face of compound **1**.
(**Note:** The source of this preference is beyond the scope of our current discussion.)

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 12.44, 12.45c, 12.46e,f, 12.51, 12.55, 12.72**

12.5 Preparation of Diols

Diols are compounds with two hydroxyl groups, and the following additional rules are used to name them:

1. The positions of both hydroxyl groups are identified with numbers placed before the parent.
2. The suffix "diol" is added to the end of the name:

1,3-Propanediol **1,5-Hexanediol**

Notice that an "e" appears in between the parent and the suffix. In a regular alcohol, the "e" is dropped (i.e., propanol or hexanol). A few simple diols have common names that are accepted by IUPAC nomenclature.

Ethylene glycol **Propylene glycol**

The term glycol indicates the presence of two hydroxyl groups.

Diols can be prepared from diketones via reduction using any of the reducing agents that we have seen.

Alternatively, diols can be made via dihydroxylation of an alkene. In Chapter 8, we explored reagents for achieving either *syn* or *anti* dihydroxylation.

WorldLinks Antifreeze

Automobiles are powered by internal combustion engines, and various parts of the engines can become very hot. To prevent damage caused by overheating, a liquid coolant is used to transfer some of the heat away from the sensitive engine parts. In most climates, pure water is unsuitable as a coolant because it can freeze if outdoor temperatures drop below 0°C. To prevent freezing, a coolant called antifreeze is used. Antifreeze is a solution of water and other compounds that significantly lower the freezing point of the mixture. Ethylene glycol and propylene glycol are commonly used for this purpose.

Ethylene glycol **Propylene glycol**

Figure8Photos/Getty Images

12.6 Preparation of Alcohols via Grignard Reagents

In this section, we will discuss formation of alcohols using Grignard reagents. A **Grignard reagent** is formed by the reaction between an alkyl halide and magnesium.

Grignard reagent

These reagents are named after the French chemist Victor Grignard, who demonstrated their utility in preparing alcohols. For his achievements, he was awarded the 1912 Nobel Prize in Chemistry. Below are a couple of specific examples of Grignard reagents.

A Grignard reagent is characterized by the presence of a C—Mg bond. Carbon is more electronegative than magnesium, so the carbon atom withdraws electron density from magnesium via induction. This gives rise to a partial negative charge (δ−) on the carbon atom. In fact, the difference in electronegativity between C and Mg is so large that the bond can be treated as ionic.

Grignard reagents are carbon nucleophiles capable of attacking a wide range of electrophiles, including the carbonyl group of ketones or aldehydes (Mechanism 12.4).

MECHANISM 12.4 THE REACTION BETWEEN A GRIGNARD REAGENT AND A KETONE OR ALDEHYDE

The product is an alcohol, and the mechanism presented here is similar to the mechanism that was presented for reduction via hydride reagents ($LiAlH_4$ or $NaBH_4$). In fact, the reaction here is also a reduction, but it involves introduction of an R group.

Notice that the proton source (H_3O^+ or H_2O) is added to the reaction mixture in a separate step (similar to reduction with $LiAlH_4$). Even a weak acid, such as H_2O, cannot be present together with the Grignard reagent, because the Grignard reagent is also a strong base and will deprotonate water.

The difference in pK_a values is so vast that the reaction is essentially irreversible. Every water molecule present in the reaction flask will destroy one molecule of Grignard reagent. Grignard reagents will even react with the moisture in the air, so care must be taken to use conditions that scrupulously avoid the presence of water. After the Grignard reagent has attacked the ketone, an acid can be introduced into the reaction flask to protonate the alkoxide. This protonation step (also called *workup*) can be accomplished by introducing even a weak acid, such as H_2O, into the reaction flask. Throughout the remainder of this text, we will always show H_3O^+ as the source of protons for the workup of a Grignard reaction.

A Grignard reagent will react with a ketone or an aldehyde to produce an alcohol.

Notice that the second example involves formation of a chiral center, and a racemic mixture of enantiomers is obtained. As we explained earlier (Section 12.4), the nucleophile can attack either face of the carbonyl group with equal likelihood, giving rise to a racemic mixture.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

12.14 Predict the major product(s) for each of the following reactions:

Grignard reagents also react with esters to produce alcohols, with introduction of two R groups.

The mechanism presented for this process (Mechanism 12.5) is similar to the mechanism presented for reduction of an ester with $LiAlH_4$ (Mechanism 12.3).

MECHANISM 12.5 THE REACTION BETWEEN A GRIGNARD REAGENT AND AN ESTER

We will explore this reaction and others like it in much more detail in Chapter 20. A Grignard reagent will not attack the carbonyl group of a carboxylic acid. Instead, the Grignard reagent will simply function as a base to deprotonate the carboxylic acid.

In other words, a Grignard reagent is incompatible with a carboxylic acid. For similar reasons, it is not possible to form a Grignard reagent in the presence of even mildly acidic protons, such as the proton of a hydroxyl group.

This Grignard reagent cannot be formed, as it will simply attack itself to produce an alkoxide. In Section 12.7, we will learn how to circumvent this problem. But first, let's get some practice preparing alcohols via Grignard reactions.

SKILLBUILDER

12.5 PREPARING AN ALCOHOL VIA A GRIGNARD REACTION

LEARN the skill

Show how you would use a Grignard reaction to prepare the following compound:

SOLUTION

First identify the carbon atom attached directly to the hydroxyl group (the α position):

STEP 1
Identify the three groups connected to the α position.

Next, identify all groups connected to this position. In this case, the α position is connected to a phenyl group, a methyl group, and an ethyl group:

STEP 2
Disconnect one of the groups connected to the α position.

We can make a disconnection at a bond between the α position and any one of these three groups, which gives us three possible disconnections to consider. As usual, for each possible disconnection, we must work backward to a suitable nucleophile and electrophile. Below, we consider a disconnection between the α carbon and one of the three groups (the ethyl group):

The α carbon in the target molecule has an attached OH group, providing a clue that it used to be a carbonyl carbon. The carbonyl group was the electrophilic component in the desired C—C bond-forming reaction, and a Grignard reagent served as the nucleophilic carbon atom. The same logic can be applied for the other two possible disconnections, shown in the following retrosyntheses:

Our retrosynthetic analysis has revealed three possible retrosyntheses, and we can now draw the forward process for each of these three possible ways of preparing the target molecule. In each case, we would need to start with a ketone in which two of the groups are already present and we introduce the third group as a Grignard reagent. Here are all three possibilities:

STEP 3
Show how each group could have been installed via a Grignard reaction.

Notice that there are three perfectly correct answers in this case. Indeed, synthesis problems often have more than one correct answer.

PRACTICE the skill

12.15 Show how a Grignard reaction can be used to make each of the following compounds, starting with an aldehyde or ketone starting material:

12.16 Two of the compounds from Problem 12.15 can be prepared from the reaction between a Grignard reagent and an ester. Identify those two compounds and explain why the other four compounds cannot be prepared from an ester.

APPLY the skill

12.17 Extracts from the flowering plants of *Asteraceae* have been used to produce medicine, rubber, and pesticides. (+)-Carissone, a compound isolated from such extracts, has been found to have antibacterial properties. During a synthesis of (+)-carissone, a Grignard reaction was used to convert compound **1** into compound **2**, as shown below.[5]

(a) What Grignard reagent is needed for the transformation shown?

(b) Typically, two equivalents of a Grignard reagent are required when reacting with an ester, but in this case a minimum of *three* equivalents are required. Explain why a third equivalent is required in this case. (**Hint:** What reaction happens first when a Grignard reagent is added to the given starting material? Consider all of the functional groups that are present.)

(c) Draw a mechanism that uses all three equivalents of the Grignard reagent and generates the diol product, compound **2** (after neutralization with an aqueous workup).

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 12.37, 12.39b, 12.52, 12.54, 12.56, 12.58, 12.65b,h,n,o,q, 12.70**

12.7 Protection of Alcohols

Consider the following hypothetical Grignard reaction:

To achieve this transformation, the required Grignard reagent would have to bear an OH group. But we saw in Section 12.6 that it is not possible to form this Grignard reagent, because the strongly basic Grignard reagent is incompatible with the weakly acidic hydroxyl group. To circumvent this problem, we employ a three-step process.

1. Protect the hydroxyl group by replacing its proton with a **protecting group**, which is a group that lacks acidic protons and will not react with a Grignard reagent (we will soon see an example of a protecting group).
2. Form the Grignard reagent and perform the desired Grignard reaction.
3. Remove the protecting group. This step regenerates the original OH group:

The protecting group enables us to perform the desired Grignard reaction. There are many protecting groups commonly used by chemists. The following is an example of a protecting group, called a *trimethylsilyl group*, abbreviated TMS (and highlighted below):

Unlike a hydroxyl group, this protecting group is compatible with a Grignard reagent because it has no acidic protons. In other words, the OH group is "protected" from undergoing a proton transfer reaction after being converted to an OTMS group.

The OH group of an alcohol is converted into an OTMS group upon treatment with trimethylsilyl chloride, abbreviated TMSCl.

This reaction is believed to proceed via an S_N2-like process (called S_N2-Si), in which the hydroxyl group functions as a nucleophile to attack the silicon atom and a chloride ion is expelled as a leaving group. A base, such as triethylamine, is then used to remove the proton connected to the oxygen atom. Notice that the first step involves an S_N2-like process occurring at a tertiary substrate. This should seem surprising because in Chapter 7 we learned that a nucleophile cannot effectively attack a sterically hindered substrate. This case is different because the electrophilic center is a silicon atom rather than a carbon atom. Bonds to silicon atoms are typically much longer than bonds to carbon atoms, and this longer bond length opens up the back side for attack. To visualize this, compare space-filling models of *tert*-butyl chloride and trimethylsilyl chloride (Figure 12.6).

FIGURE 12.6
Space-filling models of *tert*-butyl chloride and trimethylsilyl chloride. The latter is less sterically hindered and is susceptible to attack by a nucleophile.

After the desired Grignard reaction has been performed, the trimethylsilyl group can be removed easily with either H_3O^+ or fluoride ion.

A commonly used source of fluoride ion is tetrabutylammonium fluoride (TBAF).

Tetrabutylammonium fluoride (TBAF)

The overall process is shown below.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

12.18 Each of the following transformations involves a Grignard reaction, and requires the use of a protecting group. Identify reagents that can be used to achieve each transformation:

12.8 Preparation of Phenols

Phenol is prepared industrially via a multistep process involving the formation and oxidation of cumene.

A by-product of this process is acetone, which is also a commercially important compound. Over two million tons of phenol are produced each year in the United States. Phenol is used as a precursor in the synthesis of a wide variety of pharmaceuticals and other commercially useful compounds, including synthetic polymers (discussed in Chapter 27), adhesives for plywood, and antioxidant food additives (BHT and BHA, discussed in Chapter 10).

Butylated hydroxytoluene (BHT) **Butylated hydroxyanisole (BHA)**

12.9 Reactions of Alcohols: Substitution and Elimination

S_N1 Reactions with Alcohols

As seen in Section 7.10, tertiary alcohols will undergo a substitution reaction when treated with a hydrogen halide.

This reaction proceeds via an S_N1 mechanism.

Recall that an S_N1 mechanism has two core steps (loss of leaving group and nucleophilic attack). When the starting material is an alcohol, the mechanism must begin with an additional step, in which the hydroxyl group is protonated. This reaction proceeds via a carbocation intermediate and is therefore most appropriate for tertiary alcohols. When dealing with a primary or secondary alcohol, an S_N2 pathway is required in order to convert an alcohol into an alkyl halide.

S_N2 Reactions with Alcohols

Primary and secondary alcohols will undergo substitution reactions with a variety of reagents, all of which proceed via an S_N2 process. In this section, we will explore three such reactions that all employ an S_N2 process.

1. Primary alcohols will react with HBr via an S_N2 process.

The hydroxyl group is first protonated, converting it into an excellent leaving group, followed by an S_N2 process. This reaction works well for HBr but does not work well for HCl. To replace the hydroxyl group with chloride, $ZnCl_2$ can be used as a catalyst.

Because of its ionic nature, the use of $ZnCl_2$ is limited to alcohols that are water-soluble. For such alcohols (Section 12.1), $ZnCl_2$ converts the hydroxyl group into a better leaving group, thereby enabling the subsequent S_N2 process.

2. As seen in Section 7.12, an alcohol can be converted into a tosylate, followed by nucleophilic attack.

Using tosyl chloride and pyridine, the hydroxyl group is converted into a tosylate group (an excellent leaving group), which is susceptible to an S_N2 process. Notice the stereochemical outcome of the previous reaction. The configuration of the chiral center is not inverted during formation of the tosylate, but it is inverted during the S_N2 process. The net result is inversion of configuration.

3. Primary and secondary alcohols can react with $SOCl_2$ or PBr_3 via an S_N2 process.

These two reactions are believed to proceed via similar mechanisms. In the reaction with $SOCl_2$, the first few steps convert a bad leaving group into a good leaving group, then the halide attacks in an S_N2 process (as shown in Mechanism 12.6, although the exact mechanism with $SOCl_2$ depends on the experimental conditions).

MECHANISM 12.6 THE REACTION BETWEEN $SOCl_2$ AND AN ALCOHOL

The reaction mechanism presented for PBr_3 (Mechanism 12.7) has similar characteristics, including conversion of the hydroxyl group into a better leaving group followed by nucleophilic attack.

MECHANISM 12.7 THE REACTION BETWEEN PBr_3 AND AN ALCOHOL

Notice the similarity among all of the S_N2 processes that we have seen in this section. All involve the conversion of the hydroxyl group into a better leaving group followed by nucleophilic attack. If any of these reactions occurs at a chiral center, inversion of configuration is to be expected.

SKILLBUILDER

12.6 PROPOSING REAGENTS FOR THE CONVERSION OF AN ALCOHOL INTO AN ALKYL HALIDE

LEARN the skill

Identify the reagents you would use to accomplish the following transformation:

STEP 1
Analyze the substrate.

STEP 2
Analyze the stereochemical outcome and determine whether S_N2 is required.

STEP 3
Identify reagents that achieve the process determined in step 2.

SOLUTION

This transformation is a substitution process, so we must decide whether to use S_N1 conditions or S_N2 conditions. The key factor is the substrate. The substrate here is secondary, indicating that an S_N2 process is necessary. Furthermore, the transformation requires inversion of configuration, which can only be accomplished via S_N2 (an S_N1 process would give racemization, as we saw in Section 7.8). In addition, the substrate would likely undergo a carbocation rearrangement if subjected to S_N1 conditions. For all of these reasons, an S_N2 process is required.

The OH group is a very poor leaving group, so treating the alcohol with chloride will not achieve the desired S_N2 reaction. However, if the OH group is first converted into a tosylate (a good leaving group), then the desired S_N2 process can be accomplished by treating the tosylate with chloride. Alternatively, the alcohol can be treated with thionyl chloride ($SOCl_2$) and pyridine.

In this case, HCl and $ZnCl_2$ cannot be used, because the alcohol is not expected to be water soluble (it has eight carbon atoms).

PRACTICE the skill

12.19 Identify reagents that you could use to accomplish each of the following transformations:

APPLY the skill

12.20 *Tunicates* are marine animals that are called "sea squirts" because when they are taken out of water, they tend to contract and expel seawater. Lepadiformine is a cytotoxic agent (toxic to cells) isolated from a marine tunicate. During a recent synthesis of lepadiformine, the investigators observed the formation of an interesting by-product (**3**) while treating diol **1** with a reagent similar in function to PBr_3.[6]

(a) Draw a structure for the desired product (**2**).

(b) Propose a plausible mechanism for formation of by-product **3** using PBr_3 as the reagent. Explain how your mechanism provides a justification for the stereochemical outcome.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 12.34a–c, 12.62f, 12.65p**

BioLinks Drug Metabolism

Drug metabolism refers to the set of reactions by an organism, where drugs are converted into other compounds that are either used by the body or excreted. Our bodies dispose of the medications we ingest by a variety of metabolic pathways.

One common metabolic pathway is called glucuronic acid conjugation, or simply glucuronidation. This process is very similar to all of the S_N2 processes that we investigated in Section 12.9. Specifically, a bad leaving group (hydroxyl) is first converted into a good leaving group, followed by nucleophilic attack. Glucuronidation exhibits the same two key steps.

1. Formation of UDPGA (uridine-5′-diphospho-α-D-glucuronic acid) from glucose involves conversion of a bad leaving group into a good leaving group.

UDPGA is a compound with a very good leaving group. This large leaving group is called UDP (highlighted above). In this transformation, one of the hydroxyl groups in glucose has been converted into a good leaving group.

2. Next, an S_N2 process occurs in which the drug being metabolized (such as an alcohol) attacks UDPGA, expelling the good leaving group.

This S_N2 process requires an enzyme (a biological catalyst) called UDP-glucuronyl transferase. The reaction proceeds via inversion of configuration (as expected of an S_N2 process) to produce a β-glucuronide, which is highly water soluble and is readily excreted in the urine.

Many functional groups undergo glucuronidation, but alcohols and phenols are the most common classes of compounds that undergo this metabolic pathway. For example, morphine, acetaminophen, and chloramphenicol are all metabolized via glucuronidation:

Morphine
An opiate analgesic used to treat severe pain

Acetaminophen
An analgesic (pain-relieving) and antipyretic (fever-reducing) agent, sold under the trade name Tylenol

Chloramphenicol
An antibiotic used in eye drops to treat bacterial conjuctivitis

In each of these three compounds, the highlighted hydroxyl group attacks UDPGA. Glucuronidation is the main metabolic pathway by which these drugs are eliminated from the body.

E1 and E2 Reactions with Alcohols

Recall from Section 7.10 that alcohols undergo elimination reactions in acidic conditions.

For tertiary alcohols, this transformation follows an E1 mechanism:

Recall that the two core steps of an E1 mechanism are loss of a leaving group followed by a proton transfer. However, when the starting material is an alcohol, the mechanism must begin with an additional step, in which the hydroxyl group is protonated.

Recall that elimination generally favors the more substituted alkene.

This transformation can also be accomplished via an E2 pathway if the hydroxyl group is first converted into a better leaving group, such as a tosylate. A strong base can then be employed to accomplish an E2 reaction.

As seen in Section 7.10, when more than one alkene product is possible, an E2 process will generally favor formation of the more substituted alkene (unless a sterically hindered base is used), and no carbocation rearrangements are observed in E2 processes.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

12.21 Predict the major and minor products for each of the following transformations:

(a)

(b)

12.10 Reactions of Alcohols: Oxidation

In Section 12.4, we saw that alcohols can be formed via a reduction process. In this section, we will explore the reverse process, called *oxidation*, which involves an increase in oxidation state.

The outcome of an oxidation process depends on whether the starting alcohol is primary, secondary, or tertiary. Let's first consider the oxidation of a primary alcohol.

Notice that a primary alcohol has two protons at the α position (the carbon atom bearing the hydroxyl group). As a result, primary alcohols can be oxidized twice. The first oxidation produces an aldehyde, and then oxidation of the aldehyde produces a carboxylic acid.

Secondary alcohols only have one proton at the α position so they can only be oxidized once, forming a ketone.

Generally speaking, the ketone is not further oxidized.

Tertiary alcohols do not have any protons at the α position, and as a result, they generally do not undergo oxidation:

A large number of reagents are available for oxidizing primary and secondary alcohols. A common oxidizing reagent is chromic acid (H_2CrO_4), which can be formed either from chromium trioxide (CrO_3) or from sodium dichromate ($Na_2Cr_2O_7$) in aqueous acidic solution.

LOOKING AHEAD
For an exception to this general rule, see Section 19.11, where we will learn about a special oxidizing reagent that can oxidize a ketone to form an ester.

Chromic acid oxidations are believed to proceed via a mechanism comprised of two stages (Mechanism 12.8). The first stage involves formation of a chromate ester, and the second stage is an E2 process to form a carbon-oxygen π bond (rather than a carbon-carbon π bond).

MECHANISM 12.8 OXIDATION OF AN ALCOHOL WITH CHROMIC ACID

STAGE 1

STAGE 2

When a primary alcohol is oxidized with chromic acid, a carboxylic acid is obtained. It is generally difficult to control the reaction to produce the aldehyde.

In order to produce the aldehyde without further oxidation, it is necessary to use a more selective oxidizing reagent—one that will react with the alcohol but will not react with the aldehyde. One such reagent is pyridinium chlorochromate (PCC), typically dissolved in methylene chloride (CH_2Cl_2):

Under these conditions, the alcohol is oxidized to give an aldehyde which is not further oxidized to a carboxylic acid. When a secondary alcohol is treated with a chromium oxidizing agent (whether chromic acid or PCC), the alcohol is oxidized to give a ketone:

Chromium-based oxidations have largely been replaced with alternative oxidation techniques that are more green (less harmful to the environment). Chromium-based oxidations produce by-products including chromium salts that are hazardous and require special disposal. Two alternative oxidation methods, called the *Swern* oxidation and the *Dess–Martin* oxidation, will now be discussed briefly.

The Swern oxidation uses dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO) and oxalyl chloride $(COCl)_2$, as shown:

The alcohol is added to a mixture of DMSO and oxalyl chloride at low temperature (often −78°C), followed by treatment with a base, such as triethylamine, Et_3N. The reaction is believed to proceed via Mechanism 12.9, which can be broken down into two stages. In the first stage, DMSO reacts with oxalyl chloride and is thereby converted into a chlorodimethylsulfonium ion (highlighted). This ion is believed to function as the active oxidizing agent, as seen in stage 2 of the mechanism. Notice that the last step of the process is an intramolecular elimination reaction. This is the step in which the carbon atom undergoes oxidation to give a ketone.

MECHANISM 12.9 SWERN OXIDATION

The Swern oxidation can also be used to convert primary alcohols into aldehydes:

Under these conditions, the aldehyde is not further oxidized to a carboxylic acid. The by-products of the Swern oxidation are volatile (low-boiling), so they can be easily separated from the reaction mixture.

Another alternative to chromium-based oxidations is called the Dess–Martin periodinane (DMP) oxidation. Much like the Swern oxidation, DMP-based oxidations will also convert primary alcohols into aldehydes, and secondary alcohols are converted into ketones:

DMP-based oxidations employ nonacidic conditions (neutral pH) and can also be achieved at room temperature. These features offer advantages over chromium-based oxidations, which require acidic conditions and high temperature. In many cases, acidic conditions must be avoided in order to prevent undesired side reactions.

DMP-based oxidations are believed to proceed via the following type of periodinane intermediate:

Both the Swern and DMP-based oxidations are "greener" alternatives to chromium-based oxidations, yet both processes have very poor atom efficiency. Also, the Swern oxidation produces a very foul-odored by-product (dimethyl sulfide, DMS), and DMP must be handled with care, because it is shock sensitive (explosive).

SKILLBUILDER

12.7 PREDICTING THE PRODUCTS OF AN OXIDATION REACTION

LEARN the skill

Predict the major organic product of the following reaction:

SOLUTION

In order to predict the product, identify whether the alcohol is primary or secondary. In this case, the alcohol is primary, and therefore, we must decide whether the process will produce an aldehyde or a carboxylic acid:

STEP 1
Identify whether the alcohol is primary or secondary.

STEP 2
If the alcohol is primary, consider whether an aldehyde or a carboxylic acid is obtained.

The product is determined by the choice of reagent. Chromium trioxide in acidic conditions forms chromic acid, which will oxidize the alcohol to give the carboxylic acid.

In order to stop at the aldehyde, we could use PCC, or a Swern oxidation, or a DMP-based oxidation.

STEP 3
Draw the product.

PRACTICE the skill **12.22** Predict the major organic product for each of the following reactions:

APPLY the skill **12.23** Galantamine, a natural product produced by the amaryllis family of flowering plants, has been used in the early treatment of Alzheimer's disease. In a synthesis of galantamine and related compounds,[7] compound **1** was converted into compound **2**. Propose an efficient synthesis for the conversion of **1** to **2**.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 12.34e–f, 12.36, 12.46, 12.53**

12.11 Biological Redox Reactions

In this chapter, we have seen several reducing agents and several oxidizing reagents used by chemists in the laboratory. Nature employs its own reducing and oxidizing agents, although they are generally much more complex in structure and much more selective in their reactivity. Indeed, biological reactions generally occur enantioselectively, affording a single enantiomer, rather than a racemic mixture. One important biological reducing agent is NADH, which is a molecule comprised of many parts, shown in Figure 12.7.

BY THE WAY
NADH is much less reactive than $NaBH_4$ or $LiAlH_4$ and requires a catalyst to do its job. Nature's catalysts are called enzymes (Section 25.8).

FIGURE 12.7
The structure of NADH, a biological reducing agent.

The reactive center in NADH (highlighted in orange) functions as a hydride delivery agent (very much like $NaBH_4$ or $LiAlH_4$) and can reduce ketones or aldehydes to form alcohols. NADH acts as a reducing agent, and in the process, it is oxidized. The oxidized form is called NAD^+.

The reverse process can also occur. That is, NAD^+ can act as an oxidizing agent by accepting a hydride from an alcohol, and in the process, NAD^+ is reduced to give NADH.

BY THE WAY
To remember which is the reducing agent and which is the oxidizing agent, simply remember that NADH has an H at the end of its name, because it can function as a delivery agent of hydride. So NADH is a reducing agent.

NAD^+ and NADH are present in all living cells and function in a wide variety of redox reactions. NADH is a reducing agent, and NAD^+ is an oxidizing agent. Two important biological processes demonstrate the critical role of NADH and NAD^+ in biological systems (Figure 12.8). The *citric acid cycle* is part of the process by which food is metabolized. This process involves the conversion of NAD^+ to NADH. Another important biological process is the conversion of ADP (adenosine diphosphate) to ATP (adenosine triphosphate), called *ATP synthesis*, which involves the conversion of NADH to NAD^+. ATP is a molecule that is higher in energy than ADP, and the conversion of ADP to ATP is the way that our bodies store the energy that is obtained from metabolism of the food we eat. The energy stored in ATP can be released by conversion back into ADP, and that stored energy is used to power all of our life functions.

FIGURE 12.8
NADH and NAD^+ play an important role in the citric acid cycle as well as in ATP synthesis.

The citric acid cycle and ATP synthesis are linked into one story. That story can be summarized like this: Energy from the sun is absorbed by vegetation and is used to convert CO_2 molecules into larger organic compounds (a process called *carbon dioxide fixing*). These organic compounds have bonds (such as C—C and C—H) that are higher in energy than the C=O bonds in CO_2. Therefore, energy will be released if the organic compounds are converted back into CO_2 (this is precisely why the combustion of gasoline releases energy). Humans eat the vegetation (or we eat the animals that ate the vegetation), and our bodies utilize a series of chemical reactions that break down those large molecules into CO_2, thereby releasing energy. That energy is once again captured and stored in the form of high-energy ATP molecules, which are then used to provide energy for our biological processes. In this way, our bodies are ultimately powered by energy from the sun.

BioLinks Biological Oxidation of Methanol and Ethanol

Methanol is oxidized in our bodies by NAD^+.

The enzyme that catalyzes this oxidation process is called alcohol dehydrogenase. Methanol is oxidized twice. The first oxidation produces formaldehyde (a toxic compound), while the second oxidation produces formic acid. Formic acid is highly toxic, even in small quantities. A buildup of formic acid in the eyes leads to blindness, and a buildup of formic acid in other organs leads to organ failure and death.

A methanol overdose is typically treated by administering ethanol to the patient as soon after methanol ingestion as possible. Ethanol binds to the alcohol-metabolizing enzymes more tightly than methanol, resulting in a decreased rate of methanol oxidation and allowing most of the methanol to be excreted unmetabolized. On the downside, the dose of ethanol required to prevent methanol metabolism can cause major intoxication and acidosis. A newer drug, fomepizole, can inhibit methanol metabolism without the adverse effects of ethanol, but is under patent and very expensive. It is not commonly stocked by most hospital pharmacies.

The oxidation of ethanol produces acetic acid instead of formic acid, and acetic acid is not toxic.

Ethanol is a primary alcohol and is oxidized twice. The first oxidation produces acetaldehyde, while the second oxidation produces acetic acid. Acetic acid can be used by the body for a variety of functions, but acetaldehyde is less useful. When a person drinks large quantities of ethanol (binge drinking), the concentration of acetaldehyde temporarily builds up. A high concentration of acetaldehyde causes nausea, vomiting, and other nasty symptoms.

We mentioned in the chapter opener that the effects of a hangover are caused by a variety of factors. The impact of some of those factors, such as dehydration, can be reduced by drinking a glass of water in between drinks. But other factors, such as the buildup of acetaldehyde, are the unavoidable consequences of binge drinking. The only way to avoid high concentrations of acetaldehyde is to drink small quantities of alcohol over a long period of time. Binge drinking will always produce the unpleasant effects of a hangover. There are many products on the market that claim to prevent hangovers, but there is little scientific evidence that any of these products are effective. The only way to prevent a hangover is to drink responsibly. That is, drink small quantities of alcohol over a long period of time, together with plenty of water.

In addition to the unpleasant effects of a hangover, binge drinking can also potentially cause a host of more serious health issues, such as an irregular heart rhythm or acute pancreatitis (inflammation of the pancreas), both of which can be life threatening.

mg7/Getty Images

richcano/Getty Images

12.12 Oxidation of Phenol

In Sections 12.10 and 12.11, we discussed reactions that achieve the oxidation of primary and secondary alcohols. In this section, we consider the oxidation of phenol. Based on our discussion thus far, we might expect that phenol would not readily undergo oxidation because it lacks a proton at the α position, much like a tertiary alcohol.

Nevertheless, phenol is observed to undergo oxidation even more readily than primary and secondary alcohols. The product is benzoquinone.

Benzoquinone is important because it is readily reduced to give hydroquinone:

The reversibility of this process is critical for **cellular respiration**, a process by which molecular oxygen is used to convert food into CO_2 and water, with the release of energy. Key players in this process are a group of compounds called quinones:

These compounds are often called ubiquinones because they are ubiquitous in nature—that is, they are found in all cells. The redox properties of quinones are utilized to convert molecular oxygen into water. The initial step of this process is the reduction of a quinone to a hydroquinone, as shown here:

The hydroquinone is then oxidized back to quinone, which involves the transfer of protons across a biological membrane. This flow of protons creates an electric potential, which can be viewed as the biological analog of charging a battery. The charged biological battery is used to drive the synthesis of ATP from ADP and phosphate, via a process catalyzed by the enzyme ATP synthase. During this process, protons are ultimately combined with oxygen to make water. The conversion of molecular oxygen into water is a critical step in the breakdown of food molecules to release the energy stored in their chemical bonds.

The idea that ATP synthesis could be driven by a battery-like force was first proposed by British biochemist Peter Mitchell in 1961 and was initially very controversial. But more and more experimental data supported his hypothesis, and it is now the accepted explanation for how most (but not all) ATP is synthesized in aerobic (air-breathing) organisms. Mitchell received the Nobel prize in Chemistry in 1978 for elucidating this mechanism.

12.13 Synthesis Strategies

Recall from Chapter 11 that there are two issues to consider when proposing a synthesis:

1. A change in the carbon skeleton.
2. A change in the functional group.

In this chapter, we have learned valuable skills for dealing with both of these issues. Let's focus on them one at a time.

Functional Group Interconversion

In Chapter 11, we saw how to interconvert triple bonds, double bonds, and single bonds (Figure 12.9).

FIGURE 12.9
A map showing the reactions that enable the interconversion between alkanes, alkenes, and alkynes.

In this chapter, we learned how to interconvert between ketones and secondary alcohols. This level of control will be very important later, as we will see many reactions involving compounds containing carbonyl groups.

Primary alcohols and aldehydes can also be interconverted. Oxidation with PCC (or DMP, or Swern conditions) will convert an alcohol into an aldehyde.

Let's now combine some important reactions we have seen in the previous few chapters into one map that will help us organize reactions that interconvert functional groups. We will focus on the six functional groups highlighted in Figure 12.10. These six functional groups have been separated into categories based on oxidation state. Conversion of a functional group from one category to another category is either a reduction or an oxidation. For example, converting an alkane into an alkyl halide is an oxidation reaction. In contrast, interconverting functional groups within a category is neither oxidation nor reduction. For example, conversion of an alcohol into an alkyl halide does not involve a change in oxidation state.

FIGURE 12.10
A diagram showing six different functional groups and their relative oxidation states. The interconversion between alkenes, alcohols, and alkyl halides does not constitute oxidation or reduction.

We have seen many reagents that allow us to interconvert functional groups, both within a category and across categories (oxidation/reduction). Those reagents are shown in Figure 12.11. It is worth your time to study Figure 12.11 carefully, as it summarizes many of the key reactions that we have seen until now. Note that each functional group can be converted into any one of the other functional groups. Some conversions can be done in one step, such as the conversion of an alcohol into a ketone. Other conversions require multiple steps, such as the conversion of an alkane into a ketone. Having a clear mental picture of this chart will be extremely helpful when solving synthesis problems.

FIGURE 12.11
A map of reactions for interconversion between alkanes, alkenes, alkynes, alkyl halides, alcohols, and ketones/aldehydes.

In Chapter 11, we summarized the transformations we had learned to that point as a "Synthetic Toolbox Review" in Table 11.1. In each new chapter, we will continue to add new tools to our synthetic toolbox. In this chapter, we've learned new methods for preparing alcohols (by the reduction of ketones or aldehydes) and for preparing ketones, aldehydes, and carboxylic acids (by the oxidation of alcohols). Table 12.1 illustrates how these new methods fit into our existing synthetic toolbox.

TABLE 12.1 **AN UPDATE TO OUR EXISTING SYNTHETIC TOOLBOX (TABLE 11.1) THAT INCORPORATES REDUCTION AND OXIDATION METHODS**

FUNCTIONAL GROUP IN TARGET MOLECULE		POSSIBLE STARTING MATERIAL TO MAKE TARGET MOLECULE BY FUNCTIONAL GROUP INTERCONVERSION	EXAMPLE
Alcohol	⟹	Alkene	
		Alkyl Halide	
		Ketone/Aldehyde	
Ketone or Aldehyde	⟹	Alkene	
		Alkyne	
		Alcohol	
Carboxylic acid	⟹	Alkyne	
		Alcohol	

SKILLBUILDER

12.8 CONVERTING FUNCTIONAL GROUPS

LEARN the skill

Propose an efficient synthesis for the following transformation:

SOLUTION

In this example, the reactant and product have the same carbon skeleton and differ only in the identity of the functional group. The reactant has a carbon-carbon double bond, while the product has a carbon-oxygen double bond (a carbonyl group). It is always preferable to achieve a transformation in the fewest number of steps possible, so we first consider whether there is a single step that will achieve this transformation. As seen in Figure 12.11, we have not yet discussed a one-step method for achieving the desired transformation. Therefore, to plan the multistep synthesis, we can try to identify the structure of an intermediate compound that will provide a reasonable pathway for the required transformation. This compound can serve as a stepping stone in the transformation of the given starting material to the desired product (the target molecule):

The retrosynthetic analysis of the target molecule asks, "What reaction have we seen that produces a ketone product?" This analysis reveals two potential starting materials for the last step of the synthesis. We have seen that a ketone can be made from an alcohol or from an alkyne:

Both strategies are reasonable, because both the alcohol and the alkyne shown above can be prepared from the given alkene starting material:

Therefore, there are (at least) two perfectly acceptable answers to this problem.

PRACTICE the skill **12.24** Propose an efficient synthesis for each of the following transformations:

APPLY the skill **12.25** Lithium borohydride ($LiBH_4$) is a useful reducing agent, as it is more selective than $LiAlH_4$ but less selective than $NaBH_4$. Specifically, $LiBH_4$ will reduce esters, but it will not reduce amides. This selectivity is frequently employed by synthetic organic chemists. For

example, during a synthesis of (−)-croalbinecine, a natural product with cytotoxic properties, compound **1** was converted to compound **3**, as shown below.[8] Draw the structures of **2** and **3**.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 12.38, 12.46, 12.61, 12.64, 12.66, 12.67**

C—C Bond Formation

In this chapter, we learned a new way to form C—C bonds using the reaction between a Grignard reagent and a ketone or aldehyde.

We also saw that an ester will react with two equivalents of a Grignard reagent to form an alcohol. In this reaction, two new C—C bonds have been formed.

The ability to form a new C—C bond represents an extremely important synthetic tool. By modifying carbon skeletons, chemists can build complex molecules, such as biologically active, natural products. Thus far, we have seen a variety of methods for extending carbon chains. These methods are summarized in Table 12.2.

TABLE 12.2 SUMMARY OF CARBON-CARBON BOND-FORMING REACTIONS

FUNCTIONAL GROUP IN TARGET MOLECULE		POSSIBLE STARTING MATERIAL TO MAKE TARGET MOLECULE VIA CARBON-CARBON BOND FORMATION	EXAMPLE (NEW C—C BOND HIGHLIGHTED IN RED)
Alkyne	⟹	Acetylene or Terminal Alkyne	
Alcohol	⟹	Ketone/Aldehyde	
		Ester	

A Grignard reaction accomplishes more than just C—C bond formation; it also reduces the carbonyl group to an alcohol in the process. Now consider the following two steps: Suppose we perform a Grignard reaction with an aldehyde and then oxidize the resulting alcohol to give a ketone.

The net result of these two steps is to convert an aldehyde into a ketone. This is very helpful, because we have not yet seen a direct way to convert aldehydes into ketones.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

12.26 Identify reagents that you could use to accomplish each of the following transformations:

(a)

(b)

Functional Group Transformations and C—C Bond Formation

We will now combine the two skills covered in this section and work on synthesis problems that involve both functional group interconversion and C—C bond formation. Recall from Chapter 11 that it is very helpful to approach a synthesis problem working forward as well as working backward (retrosynthetic analysis). We will use all of these skills in the following SkillBuilder.

SKILLBUILDER

12.9 PROPOSING A SYNTHESIS

LEARN the skill

Propose an efficient synthesis for the following transformation:

SOLUTION

Always approach a synthesis problem by initially asking two questions.

1. Is there a change in the carbon skeleton? Yes, the carbon skeleton is increasing in size by two carbon atoms.
2. Is there a change in the functional groups? Yes, the starting material is an alcohol, and the product is an alkyl bromide.

To begin a retrosynthetic analysis, we examine the target molecule and ask, "What starting material could be used to produce an alkyl bromide?" We have seen that an alkyl bromide can be made either from an alkene or from an alcohol:

Let's first consider the route involving the alkene intermediate. It is always critical to analyze any proposed strategy and make sure that the regiochemistry and stereochemistry of each step are correct. This particular strategy does not have any issues of stereochemistry (there are no chiral centers or stereoisomeric alkenes). However, the regiochemistry is problematic. There is a serious flaw with the addition of HBr to the alkene. Specifically, it is not possible to control the regiochemical outcome of that reaction. That step will likely produce a mixture of two possible alkyl bromides (2-bromopentane and 3-bromopentane). This represents a critical flaw. We cannot propose a synthesis in which we have no control over the regiochemistry of one of the steps. All of our steps should lead to the desired product as the major product.

The alkene is not a viable option for preparing the desired target molecule, so let's turn our attention to the other possibility—making the alkyl bromide from an alcohol starting material. This transformation is a reasonable one, and the alcohol intermediate is suitable for the required C—C bond disconnection as we continue our retrosynthetic analysis. After identifying the α carbon, a disconnection is made to give a suitable electrophile (a three-carbon aldehyde) and nucleophile (a two-carbon Grignard reagent):

To complete the synthesis, we just need to bridge the gap between the given starting material and the required aldehyde:

Conversion of an alcohol to an aldehyde is an oxidation reaction that can be accomplished with PCC, or with DMP, or with Swern conditions. Our answer can be summarized in the following way:

PRACTICE the skill

12.27 Propose an efficient synthesis for each of the following transformations:

APPLY the skill

12.28 In a study of the chemical components of salted and pickled prunes, hexyl butanoate was identified as one of 181 detected compounds.[9] Propose a synthesis of this compound using acetylene as your only source of carbon atoms. (**Hint:** See SkillBuilder 7.8.)

Hexyl butanoate

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 12.36, 12.37, 12.39, 12.43, 12.65, 12.68, 12.71**

REVIEW OF REACTIONS

Preparation of Alkoxides

Preparation of Alcohols via Reduction

Preparation of Alcohols via Grignard Reagents

Protection and Deprotection of Alcohols

S_N1 Reactions with Alcohols

S_N2 Reactions with Alcohols

E1 and E2 Reactions with Alcohols

Oxidation of Alcohols and Phenols

REVIEW OF CONCEPTS AND VOCABULARY

SECTION 12.1

- **Alcohols** are compounds that contain a **hydroxyl group** (OH) connected to an sp^3-hybridized carbon atom.
- When naming an alcohol, the parent is the longest chain containing the hydroxyl group.
- All alcohols possess a *hydrophilic* region and *a hydrophobic* region. Small alcohols (methanol, ethanol, *n*-propanol) are **miscible** with water. A substance is said to be **soluble** in water when only a certain amount of the substance will dissolve in a specified volume of water at room temperature. *n*-Butanol is soluble in water.

SECTION 12.2

- The conjugate base of an alcohol is called an **alkoxide** ion.
- The pK_a for most alcohols falls in the range of 15–18.
- Alcohols are commonly deprotonated with either sodium hydride (NaH) or an alkali metal (Na, Li, or K).
- Several factors determine the relative acidity of alcohols, including resonance, induction, and solvating effects.
- The conjugate base of phenol is called a **phenolate**, or **phenoxide** ion.

SECTION 12.3

- When preparing an alcohol via a substitution reaction, primary substrates require S_N2 conditions, while tertiary substrates require S_N1 conditions.
- Addition reactions that will produce alcohols include acid-catalyzed hydration, oxymercuration-demercuration, and hydroboration-oxidation.

SECTION 12.4

- Alcohols can be formed by treating a **carbonyl group** (C═O bond) with a **reducing agent**. The resulting reaction involves a decrease in **oxidation state** and is called **reduction**.
- $LiAlH_4$ is more reactive than $NaBH_4$. For example, $LiAlH_4$ will reduce carboxylic acids and esters, while $NaBH_4$ will not.

SECTION 12.5

- **Diols** are compounds with two hydroxyl groups.
- Diols can be prepared from diketones via reduction using a reducing agent.
- Diols can also be made via *syn* dihydroxylation or *anti* dihydroxylation of an alkene.
- A reaction involving an increase in the oxidation state of a carbon atom is called an **oxidation**.

SECTION 12.6

- **Grignard reagents** are carbon nucleophiles that are capable of attacking a wide range of electrophiles, including the carbonyl group of ketones or aldehydes, to produce an alcohol.
- Grignard reagents also react with esters to produce alcohols with introduction of two R groups.

SECTION 12.7

- **Protecting groups**, such as the trimethylsilyl group, can be used to circumvent the problem of Grignard incompatibility and can be easily removed after the desired Grignard reaction has been performed.

SECTION 12.8

- Phenol, also called hydroxybenzene, is used as a precursor in the synthesis of a wide variety of pharmaceuticals and other commercially useful compounds.

SECTION 12.9

- Tertiary alcohols will undergo an S_N1 reaction when treated with a hydrogen halide.
- Primary and secondary alcohols can undergo an S_N2 process when treated with HX, $SOCl_2$, or PBr_3 or when the hydroxyl group is converted into a tosylate group followed by nucleophilic attack.
- Tertiary alcohols undergo E1 elimination when treated with sulfuric acid.
- For an E2 process, the hydroxyl group must first be converted into a tosylate or an alkyl halide.

SECTION 12.10

- Primary alcohols can undergo *oxidation* twice to give a carboxylic acid.
- Secondary alcohols are oxidized only once to give a ketone.
- Tertiary alcohols do not undergo oxidation.
- A common oxidizing reagent is chromic acid (H_2CrO_4), which can be formed either from chromium trioxide (CrO_3) or from sodium dichromate ($Na_2Cr_2O_7$) in aqueous acidic solution.
- PCC can be used to convert a primary alcohol into an aldehyde. Alternatively, primary alcohols can be converted into aldehydes with a Swern oxidation or a DMP-based oxidation.

SECTION 12.11

- NADH is a biological reducing agent that functions as a hydride delivery agent (very much like $NaBH_4$ or $LiAlH_4$), while NAD^+ is an oxidizing agent.
- NADH and NAD^+ play critical roles in biological systems. Examples include the *citric acid cycle* and *ATP* synthesis.

SECTION 12.12

- Phenols undergo oxidation to quinones. Quinones are biologically important because their redox properties play a significant role in **cellular respiration**.

SECTION 12.13

- There are two key issues to consider when proposing a synthesis:
  1. A change in the carbon skeleton.
  2. A change in the functional group.

SKILLBUILDER REVIEW

12.1 NAMING AN ALCOHOL

STEP 1 Choose the longest chain containing the OH group and number the chain starting from the end closest to the OH group.

3-Nonanol

STEPS 2 AND 3 Identify the substituents and assign locants.

STEP 4 Assemble the substituents alphabetically.

4,4-Dichloro-6-ethyl-3-nonanol

STEP 5 Assign the configuration of any chiral center.

(3*R*,6*R*)-4,4-dichloro-6-ethyl-3-nonanol

Try Problems 12.1, 12.2, 12.29, 12.30a–d,f, 12.31

12.2 COMPARING THE ACIDITY OF ALCOHOLS

Look for **resonance effects**; for example:

More acidic

Look for **inductive effects**; for example:

More acidic

Look for **solvating effects**; for example:

More acidic

Try Problems 12.6, 12.7, 12.32, 12.63

12.3 IDENTIFYING OXIDATION AND REDUCTION REACTIONS

EXAMPLE Determine whether the starting material has been oxidized, reduced, or neither.

STEP 1 Determine the oxidation state of the starting material. Break all bonds heterolytically, except for C—C bonds.

Two electrons, but carbon should have four. This carbon is missing two electrons

Oxidation state = +2

STEP 2 Determine the oxidation state of the product. Break all bonds heterolytically, except for C—C bonds.

Two electrons, but carbon should have four. This carbon is missing two electrons

Oxidation state = +2

STEP 3 Determine if there has been a change in oxidation state.

Increase = oxidation
Decrease = reduction
No change = neither

This example is neither an oxidation nor a reduction

Try Problems 12.10, 12.11, 12.49, 12.50, 12.74

12.4 DRAWING A MECHANISM AND PREDICTING THE PRODUCTS OF HYDRIDE REDUCTIONS

STEP 1 Draw the complete structure of $LiAlH_4$, and draw two curved arrows that show the delivery of hydride to the carbonyl group.

STEP 2 Draw the alkoxide intermediate.

STEP 3 Draw two curved arrows showing the alkoxide intermediate being protonated by the proton source.

Try Problems 12.12, 12.13, 12.44, 12.45c, 12.46e,f, 12.51, 12.55, 12.72

12.5 PREPARING AN ALCOHOL VIA A GRIGNARD REACTION

STEP 1 Identify the α position.

STEP 2 Identify the three groups connected to the α position.

STEP 3 Show how each group could have been installed via a Grignard reaction.

Try Problems **12.15–12.17, 12.37, 12.39b, 12.52, 12.54, 12.56, 12.58, 12.65b,h,n,o,q, 12.70**

12.6 PROPOSING REAGENTS FOR THE CONVERSION OF AN ALCOHOL INTO AN ALKYL HALIDE

EXAMPLE Identify the necessary reagents.

STEP 1 Analyze the substrate:

Primary = S_N2
Secondary = S_N2
Tertiary = S_N1

Substrate is secondary

STEP 2 Analyze the stereochemistry: inversion = S_N2.

STEP 3 Reaction must occur via S_N2 so use reagents that favor S_N2.

Try Problems **12.19, 12.20, 12.34a–c, 12.62f, 12.65p**

12.7 PREDICTING THE PRODUCTS OF AN OXIDATION REACTION

EXAMPLE

STEP 1 Identify whether the alcohol is primary or secondary.

Primary

STEP 2 A primary alcohol can be oxidized either to an aldehyde or to a carboxylic acid, depending on the reagents.

An aldehyde

A carboxylic acid

STEP 3 Analyze the reagents. Chromic acid is used to form the carboxylic acid. PCC is used to form the aldehyde. Alternatively, the aldehyde can be obtained with a Swern or DMP-based oxidation.

Try Problems **12.22, 12.23, 12.34e–f, 12.36, 12.46, 12.53**

12.8 CONVERTING FUNCTIONAL GROUPS

Try Problems 12.24, 12.25, 12.38, 12.46, 12.61, 12.64, 12.66, 12.67

12.9 PROPOSING A SYNTHESIS

STEP 1 Is there a change in the carbon skeleton?

Keep track of all the C—C bond-forming reactions that you have learned until now.

STEP 2 Is there a change in the functional groups?

The chart from the previous SkillBuilder summarizes many of the important functional group interconversions that we have seen.

STEP 3 After proposing a synthesis, analyze your answer with the following two questions:

- **Is the regiochemical outcome of each step correct?**
- **Is the stereochemical outcome of each step correct?**

MORE TIPS Remember that the desired product should be the major product of your proposed synthesis.

Always think backwards (retrosynthetic analysis) as well as forwards and then try to bridge the gap.

Most synthesis problems will have multiple correct answers. Do not feel that you have to find the "one" correct answer.

Try Problems 12.27, 12.28, 12.36, 12.37, 12.39, 12.43, 12.65, 12.68, 12.71

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

• **Included in Answers section**

12.29 Assign an IUPAC name for each of the following compounds:

12.30 Draw the structure of each compound:

(a) *cis*-1,2-Cyclohexanediol
(b) Isobutyl alcohol
(c) 2,4,6-Trinitrophenol
(d) (*R*)-2,2-Dimethyl-3-heptanol
(e) Ethylene glycol
(f) (*S*)-2-Methyl-1-butanol

12.31 • Draw and name all constitutionally isomeric alcohols with the molecular formula $C_4H_{10}O$.

12.32 Rank each set of alcohols below in order of increasing acidity, and explain your reasoning.

12.33 Draw resonance structures for each of the following anions:

12.34 Predict the major product of the reaction between 1-butanol and:

(a) PBr_3
(b) $SOCl_2$, py
(c) HCl, $ZnCl_2$
(d) DMP, CH_2Cl_2
(e) $Na_2Cr_2O_7$, H_2SO_4, H_2O
(f) Li
(g) NaH
(h) TMSCl, Et_3N
(i) TsCl, pyridine
(j) Na
(k) Potassium *tert*-butoxide

12.35 Acid-catalyzed hydration of 3,3-dimethyl-1-butene produces 2,3-dimethyl-2-butanol. Show a mechanism for this reaction.

12.36 • Starting with 1-butanol, show the reagents you would use to prepare each of the following compounds:

12.37 • Using a Grignard reaction, show how you could prepare each of the following alcohols:

12.38 Each of the following alcohols can be prepared via reduction of a ketone or aldehyde. In each case, identify the aldehyde or ketone that would be required.

12.39 • What reagents would you use to accomplish each of the following transformations?

12.40 Propose a mechanism for the following reaction:

12.41 Acid-catalyzed hydration of 1-methylcyclohexene yields a mixture of two alcohols. The major product does not react with chromic acid, while the minor product will undergo chromic acid oxidation. Identify the major and minor products, and explain their reactivity toward chromic acid.

12.42 Consider the following sequence of reactions and identify the structures of compounds **A**, **B**, and **C**:

12.43 Using 2-propanol as your only source of carbon, show how you would prepare 2-methyl-2-pentanol.

12.44 Predict the product and draw a mechanism for each of the following reactions:

12.45 Draw a mechanism for each of the following reactions:

12.46 Identify the reagents you would use to accomplish each of the following transformations:

12.47 • Predict the major products for each of the following synthetic sequences:

(c)

(d)

(e)

12.48 Provide a mechanism for each of the following transformations:

(a)

(b)

12.49 In Chapter 8, we learned about addition of water across a π bond. Identify whether the alkene has been oxidized or reduced (or if it has been neither oxidized nor reduced). **(Hint:** Evaluate each carbon atom separately and then look at the net change for the alkene as a whole.)

12.50 In the following reaction, determine whether or not the alkyne has been oxidized or reduced. Using the answer from the previous problem, try to determine the answer without calculating oxidation states and then use the calculations to see if your intuition was correct.

12.51 Draw a mechanism and predict the major product of the following reaction:

12.52 Draw a mechanism and predict the product for the following reaction. In this case, H_3O^+ must be used as a proton source instead of water. Explain why.

ACS-STYLE PROBLEMS (Multiple Choice)

Problems 12.53–12.61 follow the style of the ACS organic chemistry exam. For each of these problems, there will be one correct answer and three distractors.

12.53 • Of the following, which are the best reagents to perform the given transformation?

(a) $Na_2Cr_2O_7$, H_2SO_4, H_2O
(b) CrO_3, H_3O^+, acetone
(c) PCC, CH_2Cl_2
(d) $KMnO_4$, NaOH, cold

12.54 • Which of the following is NOT an efficient synthesis of 2-methyl-2-pentanol?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

12.55 • What is the major product of the given reaction?

(a)
(b)
(c)
(d)

12.56 • A logical retrosynthesis of the given target molecule leads to which Grignard reagent?

(a)
(b)
(c)
(d) PhMgBr

12.57 • Predict the major product of the following sequence of reactions.

(a)

(b)

(c)
(d)

12.58 • What is the missing reagent in the following synthesis?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

12.59 • Predict the major product of the following sequence of reactions.

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

12.60 • Predict the major product of the following reaction.

(a)

(b)
(c)
(d)

12.61 • Which reagent (or reagents) will efficiently achieve the following transformation?

(a) TsCl, py → *t*-BuOK →

(b) PBr_3 → NaOEt →

(c) $SOCl_2$, py → NaOMe →

(d) conc. H_2SO_4, heat →

INTEGRATED PROBLEMS

12.62 Consider the following sequence of transformations and identify suitable reagents for **a–h**:

12.63 Consider the structures of 2-nitrophenol and 3-nitrophenol. These compounds have very different pK_a values. Predict which one has the lower pK_a and explain why. (**Hint:** In order to solve this problem, you must draw the structure of each nitro group.)

2-Nitrophenol **3-Nitrophenol**

12.64 Identify reagents that can be used to accomplish each of the transformations shown here:

12.65 Propose an efficient synthesis for each of the following transformations:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

(f)

(g)

(h)

(i)

(j)

(k)

(l)

(m)

(n)

(o)

(p)

(q)

12.66 Show at least two different methods for preparing 1-methylcyclohexene from 1-methylcyclohexanol.

12.67 Using any reagents of your choosing, show how you would convert *tert*-butyl alcohol into 2-methyl-1-propanol.

12.68 Using starting materials and reagents that have no more than *two* carbon atoms, identify a method for preparing each of the following target molecules:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

12.69 Propose a mechanism for the following transformation:

12.70 Propose a mechanism for the following transformation:

12.71 Show reagents that can be used to achieve the following transformation:

12.72 Propose a mechanism for the following transformation:

12.73 A carbocation is resonance-stabilized when it is adjacent to an oxygen atom:

Such a carbocation is even more stable than a tertiary carbocation. Using this information, propose a mechanism for the following transformation exhibited by a diol. This reaction is called a pinacol rearrangement:

12.74 Determine whether the pinacol rearrangement, shown in the previous problem, is a reduction, an oxidation, or neither a reduction nor an oxidation.

12.75 (*S*)-Gizzerosine is an amino acid that is believed to be responsible for a serious disease called "black vomit" in chickens. However, the same compound can potentially be used as a drug for the treatment of osteoporosis and acid buildup in the stomach. Provide a two-step synthesis for achieving the following transformation, which was employed during a synthesis of (*S*)-gizzerosine:[10]

12.76 Briarellin E (compound **3**) is produced by coral in the Caribbean and Mediterranean seas and belongs to a larger family of marine natural products being investigated as potential anticancer agents. During a synthesis of **3**, compound **1** was treated with excess TBAF to give compound **2**.[11] Draw the structure of compound **2**.

12.77 The compound duryne was one of several structurally related compounds isolated from a marine sponge.[12] Propose an efficient synthesis of duryne starting with any compounds containing eleven or fewer carbon atoms.

Duryne

12.78 Estragole is an insect repellant that has been isolated from the leaves of the *Clausena anisata* tree.[13] Propose a synthesis of estragole starting from 4-methylphenol.

Estragole

Problems 12.79–12.82 are intended for students who have already covered spectroscopy (Chapters 14 and 15).

12.79 Propose a structure for a compound with the molecular formula $C_{10}H_{14}O$ that exhibits the following ^1H NMR spectrum:

12.80 Propose a structure for a compound with the molecular formula C_3H_8O that exhibits the following ^1H NMR and ^{13}C NMR spectra:

12.81 Propose two possible structures for a compound with the molecular formula $C_5H_{12}O$ that exhibits the following ^{13}C NMR and IR spectra:

12.82 Propose a structure for a compound with the molecular formula $C_8H_{10}O$ that exhibits the following ^1H NMR spectrum:

CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

12.83 The following two isomeric ketones were among the 68 compounds isolated from the steam-distilled essential oil of fresh and air-dried marijuana buds.[14] Propose a separate synthesis for each of these two compounds using only disubstituted alkenes containing four carbon atoms as starting materials.

12.84 As part of a study of the male sex pheromone of a Brazilian bug that feeds on the leaves and fruit of tomato plants, the compound 5,9,12,16-tetramethyleicosane was synthesized.[15] The synthesis of this alkane was reported, and it used compounds **A**–**C**.

A key step in the synthesis is shown below, in which a mixture of *E* and *Z* isomers is obtained:

(a) Draw a plausible mechanism for this process.

(b) Propose an efficient synthesis of 5,9,12,16-tetramethyleicosane using **A**, **B**, and **C** as your only sources of carbon.

12.85 Brevetoxin B (compound **2**) is produced by *Ptychodiscus brevis*, a marine organism responsible for red tides. Brevetoxin B is a potent neurotoxin, as a result of its ability to bind to sodium channels and force them to remain open. Its biological action, together with its complex architecture, has made it an attractive synthetic target. During K. C. Nicolaou's synthesis of brevetoxin B, the K ring was assembled via the construction of compound **1**. The *cis* relationship of the hydroxyl group and the silicon-based protected group in **1** was established via the successful conversion of a small amount of **1** into **5**, as shown.[16] Note that the conversion of **3** to **4** involves the selective tosylation of the primary hydroxyl group:

(a) Draw the structures of **3** and **4**.

(b) Draw a mechanism for the conversion of **4** to **5** upon treatment with NaOMe.

(c) Explain why the successful conversion of **1** to **5** verifies the *cis* relationship between the hydroxyl group and the silyl-protected oxygen group in **1**.

LIST OF REFERENCES

1. *Pharm. Biol.* **2011**, *49*, 456–463.
2. *J. Chem. Eng. Data* **2015**, *60*, 932–940.
3. *Eur. J. Med. Chem.* **2003**, *38*, 899–911.
4. *Tetrahedron Letters* **2005**, *46*, 3045–3048.
5. *Org. Lett.* **2009**, *11*, 289–292.
6. *J. Org. Chem.* **2012**, *77*, 3390–3400.
7. *J. Org. Chem.* **2015**, *80*, 1952–1956.
8. *J. Org. Chem.* **2000**, *65*, 9249–9251.
9. *J. Agric. Food Chem.* **1986**, *34*, 140–144.
10. *Tetrahedron Lett.* **2007**, *48*, 8479–8481.
11. *J. Org. Chem.* **2009**, *74*, 5458–5470.
12. *J. Nat. Prod.* **2011**, *74*, 1262–1267.
13. *J. Nat. Prod.* **1987**, *50*, 990–991.
14. *J. Nat. Prod.* **1996**, *59*, 49–51.
15. *J. Chem. Ecol.* **2012**, *38*, 814–824.
16. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1989**, *111*, 6682–6690.

13

Ethers and Epoxides; Thiols and Sulfides

13.1 Introduction to Ethers
13.2 Nomenclature of Ethers
13.3 Structure and Properties of Ethers
13.4 Crown Ethers
13.5 Preparation of Ethers
13.6 Reactions of Ethers
13.7 Nomenclature of Epoxides
13.8 Preparation of Epoxides
13.9 Enantioselective Epoxidation
13.10 Ring-Opening Reactions of Epoxides
13.11 Thiols and Sulfides
13.12 Synthesis Strategies Involving Epoxides

DID YOU EVER **WONDER...**
how cigarettes cause cancer?

Cigarette smoke contains many compounds that have been shown to cause cancer. In this chapter, we will explore one of those compounds and a sequence of chemical reactions that ultimately leads to the formation of cancer cells. These reactions involve the formation and reaction of high-energy compounds called epoxides.

Epoxides are a special category of ethers, and these compounds comprise the main topic of this chapter. We will learn about the properties and reactions of ethers, epoxides, and other related compounds. Then, we will return to the subject of this chapter opener to learn how the reactions presented in this chapter play a role in the development of cancer.

Top (*Cigarette butt*) Peter vd Rol/Shutterstock;
Bottom Left and Right (*Smoke*) stavklem/Shutterstock;
Bottom (*Cigarette*) Oliver Hoffmann/Shutterstock

DO YOU **REMEMBER?**

Before you go on, be sure you understand the following topics.
If necessary, review the suggested sections to prepare for this chapter.

- Reading Energy Diagrams (Section 6.6)
- Mechanisms and Curved Arrows (Sections 6.8–6.11)
- S_N2 Reactions (Sections 7.3, 7.4)
- Oxymercuration-Demercuration (Section 8.7)
- Halohydrin Formation (Section 8.10)

Take the DO YOU **REMEMBER?** QUIZ in **online course** to check your understanding.

13.1 Introduction to Ethers

Ethers are compounds that exhibit an oxygen atom bonded to two R groups, where each R group can be an alkyl, aryl, or vinyl group:

An ether

The ether group is a common structural feature of many natural compounds; for example:

Melatonin
A hormone that is believed to regulate the sleep cycle

Morphine
An opiate analgesic used to treat severe pain

Vitamin E
An antioxidant

Many pharmaceuticals also exhibit an ether group; for example:

(*R*)-Fluoxetine
A powerful antidepressant sold under the trade name Prozac

Tamoxifen
Inhibits the growth of some breast tumors

Propanolol
Used in the treatment of high blood pressure

13.2 Nomenclature of Ethers

IUPAC rules allow two different methods for naming ethers.

1. A common name is constructed by identifying each R group, arranging them in alphabetical order, and then adding the word "ether"; for example:

Ethyl methyl ether **tert-Butyl methyl ether**

In these examples, the oxygen atom is connected to two different alkyl groups. Such compounds are called **unsymmetrical ethers**. When the two alkyl groups are identical, the compound is called a **symmetrical ether** and is named as a *di*alkyl ether. For example, $(CH_3CH_2)_2O$ is called diethyl ether.

2. A systematic name is constructed by choosing the larger group to be the parent alkane and naming the smaller group as an **alkoxy substituent**.

Systematic names must be used for complex ethers that exhibit multiple substituents and/or chiral centers. Let's see some examples.

SKILLBUILDER

13.1 NAMING AN ETHER

LEARN the skill

Name the following compounds:

SOLUTION

(a) To assign a common name, identify each group on either side of the oxygen atom, arrange them in alphabetical order, and then add the word "ether."

To assign a systematic name, choose the more complex (larger) group as the parent and name the smaller group as an alkoxy substituent.

This compound therefore can be called methyl phenyl ether or methoxybenzene. Both names are accepted by IUPAC rules.

(b) The second compound is more complex. It has a chiral center and several substituents. Therefore, it will not have a common name. To assign a systematic name, begin by choosing the more complex group as the parent. The cyclopentane ring becomes the parent, highlighted below, and the ethoxy group is listed as one of the three substituents on the cyclopentane ring. Locants are then assigned so as to give the lowest possible numbers to all three substituents (1,1,3 rather than 1,3,3):

The configuration of the chiral center is identified at the beginning of the name:

(*R*)-1,1-Dichloro-3-ethoxycyclopentane

PRACTICE the skill **13.1** Provide an IUPAC name for each of the following compounds:

13.2 Draw a structure for each of the following compounds:

(a) (*R*)-2-Ethoxy-1,1-dimethylcyclobutane

(b) Cyclopropyl isopropyl ether

APPLY the skill **13.3** Diethyl ether was commonly used as an anesthetic before its negative effects on the human nervous system were recognized. As part of a study to develop a method for predicting toxicity based on structure, the observed toxicity of a variety of dialkyl ethers was correlated to their computationally predicted toxicity.[1] All six ethers with the molecular formula $C_5H_{12}O$ were studied; provide both a common name and a systematic name for each one.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 13.26, 13.28**

13.3 Structure and Properties of Ethers

The geometry of an oxygen atom is similar for water, alcohols, and ethers. The exact bond angle depends on the groups attached to the oxygen atom, with ethers having the largest bond angles:

Water **Methanol** **Dimethyl ether**

In Chapter 12, we saw that alcohols have relatively high boiling points due to the effects of intermolecular hydrogen bonding.

An ether can act as a hydrogen bond acceptor by interacting with the proton of an alcohol, as shown:

An ether (H bond acceptor) **An alcohol** (H bond donor)

However, ethers cannot function as hydrogen bond donors, and therefore, ethers cannot form hydrogen bonds with each other. As a result, the boiling points of ethers are significantly lower than their isomeric alcohols.

In fact, the boiling point of dimethyl ether is almost as low as the boiling point of propane. Both dimethyl ether and propane lack the ability to form hydrogen bonds. The slightly higher boiling point of dimethyl ether can be explained by considering the net dipole moment.

As seen in SkillBuilder 1.9, the oxygen atom has bent geometry, so the individual dipole moments do not fully cancel each other. Together, they produce a molecular dipole moment. As a result, dimethyl ether exhibits dipole-dipole interactions, which slightly elevate the boiling point relative to propane. Ethers with larger alkyl groups have even higher boiling points due to London dispersion forces between the alkyl groups on different molecules. This trend is significant, as seen in the following examples.

Ethers are often used as solvents for organic reactions, because they are fairly unreactive, they dissolve a wide variety of organic compounds, and their low boiling points allow them to be readily evaporated after a reaction is complete. Below are three common solvents.

BioLinks Ethers as Inhalation Anesthetics

Diethyl ether was once used as an inhalation anesthetic, but the side effects were unpleasant, and the recovery was often accompanied by nausea and vomiting. Vomiting would not normally be dangerous, but if the concentrated HCl in vomit comes up the esophagus and goes down the trachea of an unconscious patient, it can cause potentially fatal damage to lung tissue. Diethyl ether was eventually replaced by halogenated ethers, such as the ones shown below.

Enflurane was introduced in the mid-1970s and was eventually replaced by isoflurane. The use of isoflurane is now also declining as the newer generation ethers (sevoflurane and desflurane) are being more heavily used.

Inhalation anesthetics are introduced into the body via the lungs and distributed by the circulatory system. They specifically target the nerve endings in the brain. Nerve endings, which are separated by a synaptic gap, transmit signals across the gap by means of small organic compounds called neurotransmitters (shown as blue spheres in the figure).

A change in ionic conductance (electrical signal) causes the presynaptic cell to release neurotransmitters, which travel across the synaptic gap until they reach the receptors at the postsynaptic cell. When the neurotransmitters bind to the receptors, a change in conductance is triggered once again. In this way, a signal either can be relayed across the synaptic gap or can be stopped, depending on whether the neurotransmitters are allowed to do their job. Several factors are involved that either can inhibit or increase the function of

the neurotransmitters. By controlling whether signals are sent or stopped at each synaptic gap, the nervous system is able to control the various systems in the body (similar to the way a computer uses zeros and ones to perform all of its functions).

Inhalation anesthetics disrupt the normal synaptic transmission process. Many mechanisms of action for anesthetics have been suggested, including the following:

1. Interfering with the release of neurotransmitters from the presynaptic nerve cell.
2. Interfering with the binding of the neurotransmitters at the postsynaptic receptors.
3. Affecting the ionic conductance (the electrical signal that causes neurotransmission).
4. Affecting reuptake of neurotransmitters into the presynaptic cell.

The main mechanism of action is likely to be a combination of many of these factors.

13.4 Crown Ethers

BY THE WAY
Much like ethers, alcohols (ROH) also have an oxygen atom with lone pairs. Nevertheless, alcohols cannot be used to stabilize Grignard reagents, because alcohols possess acidic protons. As we saw in Section 12.6, Grignard reagents cannot be prepared in the presence of acidic protons.

Ethers can interact with metals that have either a full positive charge or a partial positive charge. For example, Grignard reagents are formed in the presence of an ether, such as diethyl ether. The lone pairs on the oxygen atom serve to stabilize the charge on the magnesium atom. The interaction is weak, but it is necessary in order to form a Grignard reagent.

Charles J. Pedersen, working for DuPont, discovered that the interaction between ethers and metal ions is significantly stronger for compounds with multiple ether groups. Such compounds are called **polyethers**. Pedersen prepared and investigated the properties of many cyclic polyethers, such as the following examples. Pedersen called them **crown ethers** because their molecular models resemble crowns.

12-Crown-4 15-Crown-5 18-Crown-6

FIGURE 13.1
An electrostatic potential map of 18-crown-6 shows the oxygen atoms facing the inside of the internal cavity.

These compounds contain multiple oxygen atoms and are therefore capable of binding more tightly to metal ions. Systematic nomenclature for these compounds can be complex, so Pedersen developed a simple method for naming them. He used the formula X-crown-Y, where X indicates the total number of atoms in the ring and Y represents the number of oxygen atoms. For example, 18-crown-6 is an 18-membered ring in which 6 of the 18 atoms are oxygen atoms.

The unique properties of these compounds derive from the size of their internal cavities. For example, the internal cavity of 18-crown-6 comfortably hosts a potassium cation (K^+). In the electrostatic potential map in Figure 13.1, it is clear that the oxygen atoms all face toward the inside of the

FIGURE 13.2
A space-filling model of 18-crown-6 shows that a potassium cation can fit nicely inside the internal cavity.

cavity, where they can bind to the metal cation. The space-filling model in Figure 13.2 shows how a potassium cation fits perfectly into the internal cavity. Once inside the cavity, the entire complex has an outer surface that resembles a hydrocarbon, rendering the complex soluble in organic solvents. In this way, 18-crown-6 is capable of solvating potassium ions in organic solvents. Normally, the metal cation by itself would not be soluble in a nonpolar solvent. The ability of crown ethers to solvate metal cations has enormous implications, in both the field of synthetic organic chemistry and the field of medicinal chemistry. As an example, consider what happens when KF and 18-crown-6 are mixed together in benzene (a common organic solvent).

Without the crown ether, KF would simply not dissolve in benzene. The presence of 18-crown-6 generates a complex that dissolves in benzene. The result is a solution containing fluoride ions, which enables us to perform substitution reactions with F^- as a nucleophile. Generally, it is too difficult to use F^- as a nucleophile, because it will usually interact too strongly with the polar solvents in which it dissolves. The strong interaction between fluoride ions and polar solvents makes it difficult for F^- to become "free" to serve as a nucleophile. However, the use of 18-crown-6 allows the creation of free fluoride ions in a nonpolar solvent, making substitution reactions possible. For example:

Another example is the ability of 18-crown-6 to dissolve potassium permanganate ($KMnO_4$) in benzene. Such a solution is very useful for performing a wide variety of oxidation reactions.

Other metal cations can be solvated by other crown ethers. For example, a lithium ion is solvated by 12-crown-4, and a sodium ion is solvated by 15-crown-5.

The discovery of these compounds led to a whole new field of chemistry, called *host-guest chemistry*. For his contribution, Pedersen shared the 1987 Nobel Prize in Chemistry together with Donald Cram and Jean-Marie Lehn, who were also pioneers in the field of host-guest chemistry.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

13.4 Identify the missing reagent needed to facilitate each of the following transformations:

WorldLinks Chelating Agents in the Food Industry and in Medicine

We have seen that crown ethers can bind with specific cations, thereby trapping them. In each of the examples that we explored so far, the goal was to trap the cation for the purpose of enhancing the reactivity of whatever anion was present (a trapped cation is less available to interact with the anion, rendering the anion more reactive). But sometimes, we are not interested in the reactivity of the anion. Rather, there are certain situations in which the primary goal is to trap the metal cation in order to suppress its reactivity (the metal cation is otherwise too reactive). Certain metal cations, such as Ca^{2+} and Fe^{2+}, catalyze a variety of reactions. The ability to capture such ions (thereby preventing undesired reactions from occurring) has wide-reaching applications, such as protecting both our food supply and our supply of donated blood, as we will soon see.

Ethers are not the only types of compounds that can bind with metal cations effectively. For example, let's consider compounds containing more than one carboxylic acid group, such as oxalic acid (shown below). This compound can be deprotonated to give an oxalate ion, which is a dianion because it has two carboxylate groups:

Oxalic acid **Sodium oxalate**

Oxalate ions, as well as other structures containing more than one carboxylate group, are strongly attracted to metal cations that have a charge of +2 or +3, and as a result, a very tightly bound complex is formed between the organic anion and the metal cation. Consider, for example, the attraction between an oxalate ion and a Ca^{2+} cation, which is much stronger than the attraction between a single carboxylate group and a monocation, such as Na^{+}.

Calcium oxalate

The carboxylate groups of the oxalate anion bind strongly with the metal cation (Ca^{2+}), thereby preventing the metal cation from reacting with other molecules in the solution. Structures containing two or more carboxylate groups are examples of *chelating* (pronounced KEY-lay-ting) *agents*, because of their ability to *chelate*, or bind strongly with, metal cations. Calcium oxalate is insoluble in water and is the primary compound found in most kidney stones. Calcium oxalate is also the toxic product formed from consumption of large amounts of raw rhubarb or spinach leaves.

Citrate

An even stronger attraction can exist between Ca^{2+} ions and citrate ions. At physiological pH (7.4), citrate ions have three carboxylate groups that bind very strongly with Ca^{2+} ions.

Calcium citrate

In addition to the attractions between the negatively charged carboxylate ions and the Ca^{2+} ions (shown above), there are also weaker attractions between the alcohol OH and the Ca^{2+} ions (also shown above). These additional attractions result from the partial negative charge that is present on the O and its nonbonding pair of electrons. The result of all of these attractions is the formation of a very tight complex between the citrate ions and the Ca^{2+} ions. Citrate molecules effectively surround the calcium ions so that they are unavailable for reactions with other compounds. In this way, citrate is a chelating agent, because of its ability to chelate Ca^{2+} ions.

There are several practical situations where the chelating ability of citrate is important. When blood samples are taken or when blood is donated to a blood bank, the presence of even trace quantities of free Ca^{2+} ions can cause blood coagulation. In order to prevent blood coagulation, a small amount of sodium citrate is routinely added. The citrate ions chelate any Ca^{2+} ions present and prevent them from catalyzing the coagulation process.

Citrate ions can also chelate other metal ions such as Fe^{2+} and Sn^{2+}. These metal ions are often present in trace quantities in foods (especially canned and processed foods). Unfortunately, these metal ions can act as catalysts for oxidation of unsaturated oils and fats in the food product, resulting in a rancid smell and taste. However, if the metal ions are chelated, catalysis is greatly slowed down. This decreases the rate at which food becomes rancid and extends the shelf life of food products. Sodium citrate (or citric acid) is added to salad dressings, roasted nuts, fried food, margarine, butter and various sauces in order to chelate dications and trications, particularly Fe^{2+}.

In vitamin/mineral supplements, the addition of chelating agents also protects the vitamins from being oxidized, by preventing the mineral ions (particularly iron) from catalyzing the oxidation reaction. Gluconate ion is commonly used to chelate these ions.

Gluconate

Ferrous gluconate, shown below, is a common chelated form of iron found in mineral supplements.

Ferrous gluconate

Calcium gluconate, shown below, is a common form of calcium found in mineral supplements. Calcium gluconate is also used in IV solutions for treating acute hypocalcemia (low levels of calcium in the blood).

Calcium gluconate

EDTA (Ethylenediaminetetraacetate)

Another commonly used chelating agent is ethylene-diaminetetraacetate (EDTA).

Ethylenediaminetetraacetate (EDTA)

EDTA has four carboxylate groups, each of which can interact with dications or trications, as shown below:

EDTA chelating a metal cation

In addition, the nonbonding pair of electrons on each nitrogen atom is also attracted to the positively charged metal ion, surrounding the metal ion in an octahedral complex. EDTA is found in a variety of foods for the same purpose as citrate: to chelate metal ions and prevent them from catalyzing the oxidation of oils and fats in foods ("to protect freshness").

Other Medical Uses of EDTA

Administration of intravenous EDTA or other chelating agents may be used for treatment of lead and mercury poisoning. The EDTA binds Pb^{2+} or Hg^{2+} and prevents the ion from reacting with cellular components and increases its elimination in the urine. Chelating agents have been recommended by some alternative medicine practitioners to treat atherosclerosis, autism, and to "cleanse" the body of toxic heavy metals. Unfortunately, chelation treatment can also bind up essential calcium ions unless the chelation procedure supplies replacement calcium ions (as in calcium EDTA). Removal of calcium ions can cause the heart to stop beating. There have been several deaths during chelation therapy. Most traditional medical practitioners are skeptical that chelation therapy actually works for conditions other than heavy metal toxicity. The National Center for Complementary and Integrative Medicine (NCCIM) is carrying out trials to compare chelation therapy with placebo on patients who have had a heart attack to see if it reduces the incidence of second heart attacks.

13.5 Preparation of Ethers

Industrial Preparation of Diethyl Ether

Diethyl ether is prepared industrially via the acid-catalyzed dehydration of ethanol. The mechanism of this process is believed to involve an S_N2 process.

A molecule of ethanol is protonated and then attacked by another molecule of ethanol in an S_N2 process. As a final step, deprotonation generates the product. Notice that a proton is used in the first

step of the mechanism, and then another proton is liberated in the last step of the mechanism. The acid is therefore a catalyst (not consumed by the reaction) that enables the S_N2 process to proceed.

This process has many limitations. For example, it only works well for primary alcohols (since it proceeds via an S_N2 pathway), and it produces symmetrical ethers. As a result, this process for preparing ethers is too limited to be of any practical value for synthetic organic chemists.

Williamson Ether Synthesis

Ethers can be readily prepared via a two-step process called a **Williamson ether synthesis**.

We learned both of these steps in Chapter 12. In the first step, the alcohol is deprotonated to form an alkoxide ion. In the second step, the alkoxide ion functions as a nucleophile in an S_N2 reaction (Mechanism 13.1).

MECHANISM 13.1 THE WILLIAMSON ETHER SYNTHESIS

BY THE WAY
The *tert*-butyl group is alphabetized by the letter "b" rather than "t," and therefore, the *tert*-butyl group precedes the methyl group in the name. This compound is commonly called MTBE, which is an acronym of the incorrect name.

***tert*-Butyl methyl ether (MTBE)**

This process is named after Alexander Williamson, a British scientist who first demonstrated this method in 1850 as a way of preparing diethyl ether. Since the second step is an S_N2 process, steric effects must be considered. Specifically, the process works best when methyl or primary alkyl halides are used. Secondary alkyl halides are less efficient because elimination is favored over substitution, and tertiary alkyl halides cannot be used. This limitation must be taken into account when choosing which C—O bond to form. For example, consider the structure of *tert*-butyl methyl ether, also called MTBE. This compound was used heavily as a gasoline additive until concerns emerged that it might contribute to groundwater contamination. As a result, its use has declined in recent years. There are two possible routes to consider in the preparation of MTBE, but only one is efficient.

The first route is efficient because it employs a methyl halide, which is a suitable substrate for an S_N2 process. The second route does not work because it employs a tertiary alkyl halide, which will undergo elimination rather than substitution.

SKILLBUILDER

13.2 PREPARING AN ETHER VIA A WILLIAMSON ETHER SYNTHESIS

LEARN the skill

Show reagents that you could use to prepare the following ether via a Williamson ether synthesis:

SOLUTION

In order to prepare this ether via a Williamson ether synthesis, we must identify a starting alcohol and a starting alkyl halide. To make the proper choice, we analyze the positions on either side of the oxygen atom:

STEP 1
Classify the groups on either side of the oxygen atom.

STEP 2
Determine which side is more capable of serving as a substrate in an S_N2 reaction.

The phenyl position is sp^2 hybridized, and S_N2 processes do not occur at sp^2-hybridized centers. The other position is a primary position, and S_N2 processes can occur readily at primary substrates. Therefore, we must start with phenol and an ethyl halide.

LOOKING BACK
For a review of leaving groups, see Section 7.1.

The X can be any good leaving group, such as I, Br, Cl, or OTs. In general, iodide and tosylate are the best leaving groups. The alcohol in this case is phenol, which can be deprotonated with sodium hydroxide (as we saw in Section 12.2). We therefore propose the following synthesis:

STEP 3
Use a suitable base to deprotonate the alcohol and then introduce the alkyl halide.

PRACTICE the skill

13.5 Show reagents that you could use to prepare each of the following ethers via a Williamson ether synthesis and explain your reasoning:

APPLY the skill

13.6 Compound **2** was made as a potential anti-HIV agent, based on its structural similarity to other reported anti-HIV compounds.[2] One of the early steps in the synthesis involved the creation of an ether group (highlighted) in compound **1**. Identify reagents that you could use to prepare compound **1** via a Williamson ether synthesis.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 13.29a,c, 13.35, 13.37d, 13.38b, 13.46**

Alkoxymercuration-Demercuration

Recall from Section 8.7 that alcohols can be prepared from alkenes via a process called oxymercuration-demercuration.

The net result is a Markovnikov addition of water (H and OH) across an alkene. That is, the hydroxyl group is ultimately placed at the more substituted position. A mechanism for this process was discussed in Section 8.5.

If an alcohol (ROH) is used in place of water, then the result is a Markovnikov addition of the alcohol (RO and H) across the alkene. This process is called **alkoxymercuration-demercuration**, and it can be used as a method for preparing ethers.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

13.7 Identify reagents that you could use to prepare each of the following ethers via an alkoxymercuration-demercuration:

(a)

(b)

13.8 How would you use an alkoxymercuration-demercuration to prepare dicyclopentyl ether using cyclopentene as your only source of carbon?

13.9 Show how you would use an alkoxymercuration-demercuration to prepare isopropyl propyl ether using propene as your only source of carbon and any other reagents of your choosing.

13.6 Reactions of Ethers

Ethers are generally unreactive under basic or mildly acidic conditions. As a result, they are an ideal choice as solvents for many reactions. Nevertheless, ethers are not completely unreactive, and two reactions of ethers will be explored in this section.

Acidic Cleavage

When heated with a concentrated solution of a strong acid (HX), an ether will undergo **acidic cleavage**, in which the ether is converted into two alkyl halides:

$$R{-}O{-}R \xrightarrow[\text{Heat}]{\text{Excess HX}} R{-}X + R{-}X + H_2O$$

This process involves two substitution reactions (Mechanism 13.2).

MECHANISM 13.2 ACIDIC CLEAVAGE OF AN ETHER

FORMATION OF FIRST ALKYL HALIDE

FORMATION OF SECOND ALKYL HALIDE

The formation of the first alkyl halide begins with protonation of the ether to form a good leaving group, followed by an S_N2 process in which a halide ion functions as a nucleophile and attacks the protonated ether. The second alkyl halide is then formed with the same two steps—protonation followed by an S_N2 attack. *If either R group is tertiary, then substitution is more likely to proceed via an S_N1 process rather than S_N2.*

When a phenyl ether is cleaved under acidic conditions, the products are phenol and an alkyl halide.

LOOKING BACK
For a review of the relative nucleophilicity of the halide ions, see Section 7.4.

The phenol is not further converted into a halide, because neither S_N2 nor S_N1 processes are efficient at sp^2-hybridized centers.

Both HI and HBr can be used to cleave ethers. HCl is less efficient, and HF does not cause acidic cleavage of ethers. This reactivity is a result of the relative nucleophilicity of the halide ions.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

13.10 Predict the major product(s) for each of the following reactions:

Autooxidation

Recall from Section 10.9 that ethers undergo autooxidation in the presence of atmospheric oxygen to form hydroperoxides:

This process occurs via a radical mechanism, which is initiated by a hydrogen abstraction (Mechanism 13.3).

MECHANISM 13.3 AUTOOXIDATION OF ETHERS

As with all radical mechanisms, the net reaction is the sum of the propagation steps:

The reaction is slow, but old bottles of ether will invariably contain a small concentration of hydroperoxides, rendering the solvent very dangerous to use. Hydroperoxides are unstable and decompose

violently when heated. Many laboratory explosions have been caused by distillation of ethers that were contaminated with hydroperoxides. Ethers used in the laboratory must be frequently tested for the presence of hydroperoxides and purified prior to use.

13.7 Nomenclature of Epoxides

Cyclic ethers are compounds that contain an oxygen atom incorporated in a ring. Special parent names are used to indicate the ring size:

Oxirane ring system **Oxetane ring system** **Oxolane ring system** **Oxane ring system**

For our current discussion, we will focus on **oxiranes**, cyclic ethers containing a three-membered ring system. This ring system is more reactive than other ethers because it has significant ring strain. Substituted oxiranes, which are also called *epoxides* (introduced in Section 8.11), can have up to four R groups. The simplest epoxide (no R groups) is often called by its common name, ethylene oxide:

BY THE WAY
The common name "ethylene oxide" denotes the fact that it is produced from ethylene.

A substituted oxirane (an epoxide) **Ethylene oxide** (the simplest epoxide)

Epoxides, although strained, are commonly found in nature. The following are two examples:

Disparlure Sex pheromone of the female gypsy moth **Periplanone B** Sex pheromone of the female American cockroach

There are two methods for naming epoxides. In the first method, the oxygen atom is considered to be a substituent on a parent alkane chain, and the exact location of the epoxide group is identified with two numbers followed by the term "epoxy." When constructing the name, the epoxy substituent is alphabetized among the other substituents, as seen in the following example:

2,3-Epoxy-3-ethyl-2-methylpentane

In the second method, the parent is considered to be the oxirane ring, and any groups connected to the oxirane ring are listed as substituents.

2,2-Diethyl-3,3-dimethyloxirane

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

13.11 Assign a name for each of the following compounds:

(a)
(b)
(c)

13.12 Assign a name for each of the following compounds. Be sure to assign the configuration of each chiral center and indicate the configuration(s) at the beginning of the name.

(a)
(b)
(c)

BioLinks Epothilones as Novel Anticancer Agents

Epothilones are a class of novel compounds first isolated from the bacterium *Sorangium cellulosum* in Southern Africa.

The discovery of the antitumor behavior of these naturally occurring epoxides led to a search for related compounds that might exhibit enhanced potency and selectivity. In October 2007, the FDA approved one such derivative, called ixabepilone, for treatment of advanced breast cancer. Ixabepilone is an analog of epothilone B, in which the ester linkage is replaced with an amide linkage, highlighted in red.

Ixabepilone

Ixabepilone is currently being marketed by Bristol-Myers Squibb under the trade name Ixempra. Several other analogs of the epothilones are currently undergoing clinical trials for treatment of many different forms of cancer. Over time, several epothilone analogs are likely to emerge as new anticancer agents.

13.8 Preparation of Epoxides

Preparation with Peroxy Acids

Recall from Section 8.11 that alkenes can be converted into epoxides upon treatment with peroxy acids (see Mechanism 8.6).

Commonly used peroxy acids include MCPBA and peroxyacetic acid:

***meta*-Chloroperoxybenzoic acid (MCPBA)**

Peroxyacetic acid

The process is stereospecific. Specifically, substituents that are *cis* to each other in the starting alkene remain *cis* to each other in the epoxide, and substituents that are *trans* to each other in the starting alkene remain *trans* to each other in the epoxide:

Preparation from Halohydrins

Recall from Section 8.10 that alkenes can be converted into halohydrins when treated with a halogen in the presence of water (see Mechanism 8.5).

Halohydrins can be converted into epoxides upon treatment with a strong base:

The process is achieved via an intramolecular Williamson ether synthesis. An alkoxide ion is formed, which then functions as a nucleophile in an intramolecular S_N2-like process (Mechanism 13.4).

MECHANISM 13.4 EPOXIDE FORMATION FROM HALOHYDRINS

This provides us with another way of forming an epoxide from an alkene:

The overall stereochemical outcome is the same as direct epoxidation with a peroxy acid, such as MCPBA. That is, substituents that are *cis* to each other in the starting alkene remain *cis* to each other in the epoxide, and substituents that are *trans* to each other in the starting alkene remain *trans* to each other in the epoxide:

SKILLBUILDER

13.3 PREPARING EPOXIDES

LEARN the skill

Identify a starting material and reagents that can be used to prepare the following epoxide:

SOLUTION

Begin by analyzing all four groups connected to the epoxide ring.

STEP 1
Identify the four groups attached to the epoxide ring.

STEP 2
Identify the relative configuration of the four groups in the starting alkene.

The starting alkene must contain these four groups. Look carefully at the relative configuration of these groups. The methyl groups are *trans* to each other in the epoxide, which means that they must have been *trans* to each other in the starting alkene. To convert this alkene into the epoxide, we can use either of the following acceptable methods:

PRACTICE the skill

13.13 Identify a starting material and reagents that can be used to form a racemic mixture of each of the following epoxides:

APPLY the skill

13.14 Pheromones are chemicals that are used by members of the same species to communicate. During a study that involved preparing stereoisomers of the sex pheromone of the moth *Lymantria bantaizana*, alkyne **1** was converted into alkene **2**, which was then subsequently converted into epoxide **3**.[3] Draw the structure of **2**, and propose reagents for converting **1** into **3**.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 13.34, 13.59t, 13.67**

BioLinks | Active Metabolites and Drug Interactions

Carbamazepine (Tegretol) is an anticonvulsant and mood-stabilizing drug used in the treatment of epilepsy and bipolar disorder. It is metabolized in the liver to produce an epoxide.

Carbamazepine Carbamazepine-10,11-epoxide

This epoxide is further metabolized by the enzyme epoxide hydroxylase to form a *trans* diol, which undergoes glucuronidation to produce a water-soluble adduct that can be excreted in the urine.

Carbamazepine-10,11-epoxide *trans*-10,11-Dihydroxy-carbamazepine

The epoxide metabolite is believed to exhibit activity similar to that of the parent compound and therefore contributes substantially to the overall therapeutic effects of carbamazepine. This fact must be taken into consideration when a patient is taking other medications. For instance, the antibiotic clarithromycin has been found to inhibit the action of the enzyme epoxide hydroxylase. This causes the concentration of the epoxide to be higher than normal, increasing the potency of carbamazepine. Before a physician prescribes carbamazepine for a patient, potential drug interactions must be taken into account. This is an example of one important factor that practicing physicians must consider—specifically, the effect that one drug can have on the potency of another drug.

13.9 Enantioselective Epoxidation

When forming an epoxide that is chiral, each of the previous methods will provide a racemic mixture:

That is, the two enantiomers are formed in equal amounts, because the epoxide can be formed on either face of the alkene with equal likelihood.

FIGURE 13.3
An energy diagram that depicts the effect of a chiral catalyst. The formation of one enantiomer is more effectively catalyzed than the other.

If only one enantiomer is desired, then the methods we have learned for preparing epoxides will be inefficient, as half of the product is unusable and must be separated from the desired product. To favor formation of just one enantiomer, we must somehow favor epoxidation at one face of the alkene. K. Barry Sharpless, at the Scripps Research Institute, recognized that this could be accomplished with a chiral catalyst. He reasoned that a chiral catalyst could, in theory, create a chiral environment that would favor epoxidation at one face of the alkene. Specifically, a chiral catalyst can lower the energy of activation for formation of one enantiomer more dramatically than the other enantiomer (Figure 13.3). In this way, a chiral catalyst favors the production of one enantiomer over the other, leading to an observed enantiomeric excess (*ee*). Sharpless succeeded in developing such a catalyst for the *enantioselective epoxidation* of allylic alcohols. An allylic alcohol is an alkene in which a hydroxyl group is attached to an allylic position. Recall that the allylic position is the position next to a C═C bond.

Sharpless' catalyst is comprised of titanium tetraisopropoxide and one enantiomer of diethyl tartrate (DET):

Titanium tetraisopropoxide forms a chiral complex with either (+)-DET or (−)-DET, and this complex serves as the chiral catalyst. In the presence of such a catalyst, an oxidizing agent such as *tert*-butyl hydroperoxide (ROOH, where R = *tert*-butyl) can be employed to convert the alkene into an epoxide. The stereochemical outcome of the reaction depends on whether the chiral catalyst was formed with (+)-DET or (−)-DET. Both enantiomers of DET are readily available, and either one can be used. By choosing between (+)-DET or (−)-DET, it is possible to control which enantiomer is obtained:

This process is highly enantioselective and is extremely successful for a wide range of allylic alcohols. The double bond in the starting material can be mono-, di-, tri-, or tetrasubstituted. This process is extremely useful for practicing synthetic organic chemists because it allows the introduction of a chiral center with enantioselectivity. Since Sharpless pioneered the field of enantioselective epoxidation, many more reagents have been developed for the asymmetric epoxidation of other alkenes that do not require the presence of an allylic hydroxyl group. Sharpless was instrumental in opening an important door and was a corecipient of the 2001 Nobel Prize in Chemistry (the other corecipients were Knowles and Noyori, who used similar reasoning to develop chiral catalysts for asymmetric hydrogenation reactions, as was discussed in Section 8.9).

To predict the product of a **Sharpless asymmetric epoxidation**, orient the molecule so that the allylic hydroxyl group appears in the upper right corner (Figure 13.4). When positioned in this way, (+)-DET gives epoxide formation above the plane, and (–)-DET gives epoxide formation below the plane.

FIGURE 13.4
A method for predicting the product of a Sharpless epoxidation.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

13.15 Predict the major product for each of the following reactions:

13.10 Ring-Opening Reactions of Epoxides

Epoxides have significant ring strain, and as a result, they exhibit unique reactivity. Specifically, epoxides undergo reactions in which the ring is opened, which alleviates the strain. In this section, we will see that epoxides can be opened under conditions involving a strong nucleophile or under acid-catalyzed conditions.

Reactions of Epoxides with Strong Nucleophiles

When an epoxide is subjected to attack by a strong nucleophile, a *ring-opening reaction* occurs. For example, consider the opening of ethylene oxide by a hydroxide ion.

The transformation involves two mechanistic steps (Mechanism 13.5).

MECHANISM 13.5 EPOXIDE RING OPENING WITH A STRONG NUCLEOPHILE

FIGURE 13.5
An energy diagram showing the effect of using a high-energy substrate in an S_N2 reaction.

The first step of the mechanism is an S_N2 process, involving an alkoxide ion functioning as a leaving group. Although we learned in Chapter 7 that alkoxide ions do not function as leaving groups in S_N2 reactions, the exception here can be explained by focusing on the substrate. In this case, the substrate is an epoxide that exhibits significant ring strain and is therefore higher in energy than the substrates we encountered when we first learned about S_N2 reactions. The effects of a high-energy substrate are illustrated in the energy diagram in Figure 13.5. The blue curve represents a hypothetical S_N2 process in which the substrate is an ether and the leaving group is an alkoxide ion. The energy of activation for such a process is quite large, and more importantly, the products are higher in energy than the starting materials, so the equilibrium does not favor products. In contrast, when the starting substrate is an epoxide (red curve), the increased energy of the substrate has two pronounced effects: (1) the energy of activation is reduced, allowing the reaction to occur more rapidly, and (2) the products are now lower in energy than the starting materials, so the reaction is thermodynamically favorable. That is, the equilibrium will favor products over starting materials. For these reasons, an alkoxide ion can function as a leaving group in the ring-opening reactions of epoxides.

Many strong nucleophiles can be used to open an epoxide.

All of these nucleophiles are reagents that we have previously encountered, and they can all open epoxides. These reactions exhibit two important features that must be considered, regiochemistry and stereochemistry:

1. *Regiochemistry*. When the starting epoxide is unsymmetrical, the nucleophile attacks at the less substituted (less hindered) position.

This steric effect is what we would expect from an S_N2 process.

2. *Stereochemistry*. When the attack takes place at a chiral center, inversion of configuration is observed.

This result is also expected for an S_N2 process as a consequence of the requirement for back-side attack of the nucleophile. Notice that the configuration of the other chiral center is not affected by the process. Only the center being attacked undergoes an inversion of configuration.

SKILLBUILDER

13.4 DRAWING A MECHANISM AND PREDICTING THE PRODUCT OF THE REACTION BETWEEN A STRONG NUCLEOPHILE AND AN EPOXIDE

LEARN the skill

Predict the major product of the following reaction and draw a mechanism for its formation:

SOLUTION

Cyanide is a strong nucleophile, so we expect a ring-opening reaction. In order to draw the product, we must consider the regiochemistry and stereochemistry of the reaction:

STEP 1 Identify the regiochemistry by selecting the less hindered position as the site of nucleophilic attack.

1. To predict the regiochemistry, identify the less substituted (less hindered) position:

Recall that the reaction proceeds via an S_N2 process and is therefore highly sensitive to steric hindrance. As a result, we expect the nucleophile to attack the less hindered, secondary position, rather than the more hindered, tertiary position.

STEP 2 Identify the stereochemistry by determining whether the nucleophile attacks a chiral center. If so, expect inversion of configuration.

2. Next identify the stereochemical outcome. Look at the center being attacked and determine if it is a chiral center. In this case, it is a chiral center. An S_N2 process is expected to proceed via back-side attack to give inversion of configuration at that center.

Now that we have predicted the regiochemical and stereochemical outcomes, we are ready to draw a mechanism. There are two separate steps: attack of the nucleophile to open the ring, followed by workup (protonation) of the alkoxide ion.

STEP 3 Draw both steps of the mechanism.

PRACTICE the skill

13.16 For each of the following reactions, predict the major product and draw a mechanism for its formation:

APPLY the skill

13.17 Spirocyclic compounds, such as compound **3**, are made and used by insects for the purposes of communication. The first step of a synthesis of compound **3** involves treatment of (*S*)-1,2-epoxypropane (compound **1**) with lithium acetylide, followed by acid workup, to give compound **2**, as shown below.[4] Identify the structure of compound **2** and provide a mechanism for its formation. (**Hint:** The carbon-lithium bond reacts in a way that is similar to the carbon-magnesium bond of a Grignard reagent.)

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 13.37a,c,e,f, 13.38a,c, 13.50, 13.54, 13.55**

WorldLinks Ethylene Oxide as a Sterilizing Agent for Sensitive Medical Equipment

Ethylene oxide is a colorless, flammable gas that is often used to sterilize medical equipment made of plastics that cannot withstand autoclave temperatures (120°C), but are too expensive to dispose of after each individual use (such as the duodenoscope shown below). The gas easily diffuses through porous materials and effectively kills all forms of microorganisms, even at room temperature. The mechanism of action likely involves a functional group in DNA attacking the ring and causing a ring opening of the epoxide, effectively alkylating that site.

Stasis Photo/Shutterstock

This alkylation process interferes with the normal function of DNA, thereby killing the microorganisms. The use of pure ethylene oxide presents a hazard, because it mixes with atmospheric oxygen and becomes susceptible to explosion. This problem is circumvented by using a mixture of ethylene oxide and carbon dioxide, which is no longer explosive. Such mixtures are sold commercially for the sterilization of medical equipment and agricultural grains. One such mixture is called Carboxide and is comprised of 10% ethylene oxide and 90% CO_2. Carboxide can be exposed to air without the danger of explosion.

Ethylene oxide is an effective sterilizing agent, but it is also toxic, explosive at high concentrations, and requires great care to use effectively. As a result, other methods of sterilization have been explored, with occasional lapses. In February 2015, it was discovered that several duodenoscopes at the UCLA medical school had not been adequately sterilized between patients and that several patients came down with a "carbapenem resistant" enterobacteria, i.e. an intestinal bacteria resistant to virtually all antibiotics. Two patients died. In response, UCLA tightened up their nonautoclave sterilization procedure, returning to the use of ethylene oxide.

Acid-Catalyzed Ring Opening

In this section, we saw the reactions of epoxides with strong nucleophiles. The driving force for such reactions was the removal of ring strain associated with the three-membered ring of an epoxide. Ring-opening reactions can also occur under acidic conditions. As an example, consider the reaction between ethylene oxide and HX.

This transformation involves two mechanistic steps (Mechanism 13.6).

MECHANISM 13.6 ACID-CATALYZED RING OPENING OF AN EPOXIDE

The first step is a proton transfer, and the second step is nucleophilic attack (S_N2) by a halide ion. This reaction can be accomplished with HCl, HBr, or HI. Other nucleophiles such as water or an alcohol can also open an epoxide ring under acidic conditions. A small amount of acid (often sulfuric acid) is used to catalyze the reaction.

The brackets around the H^+ indicate that the acid functions as a catalyst. In each of the reactions above, the mechanism involves a proton transfer as the final step of the mechanism.

The first two steps are analogous to the two steps in Mechanism 13.6. The additional proton transfer step (at the end of the mechanism) removes the charge formed after the attack of a neutral nucleophile. The process above is used for the mass production of ethylene glycol.

Each year, over three million tons of ethylene glycol are produced in the United States via the acid-catalyzed ring opening of ethylene oxide. Most of the ethylene glycol is used as antifreeze.

We have seen that there are two important features of ring-opening reactions: the regiochemical outcome and the stereochemical outcome. We'll begin with regiochemistry. When the starting epoxide is unsymmetrical, the regiochemical outcome depends on the nature of the epoxide. If one side is

primary and the other side is secondary, then attack takes place at the less hindered primary position, just as we would expect for an S_N2 process.

However, when one side of the epoxide is a tertiary position, the reaction is observed to occur at the more substituted, tertiary site.

Why should this be the case? It is true that the primary site is less hindered, but there is a factor that is even more dominant than steric effects. That factor is an *electronic* effect. A protonated epoxide is positively charged, and the positively charged oxygen atom withdraws electron density from the two carbon atoms of the epoxide.

Each of the carbon atoms bears a partial positive charge (δ+). That is, they both have partial carbocationic character. Nevertheless, these two carbon atoms are not equivalent in their ability to support a partial positive charge. The tertiary position is significantly better at supporting a partial positive charge, so the tertiary position has significantly more partial carbocationic character than the primary position. The protonated epoxide is therefore more accurately drawn in the following way:

There are two important consequences of this analysis: (1) the more substituted carbon is a stronger electrophile and is therefore more susceptible to nucleophilic attack; and (2) the more substituted carbon has significant carbocationic character, which means that its geometry is described as somewhere between tetrahedral and trigonal planar, allowing nucleophilic attack to occur at that position even though it is tertiary.

To summarize, the regiochemical outcome of acid-catalyzed ring opening depends on the nature of the epoxide.

There are two factors competing to control the regiochemistry: electronic effects vs. steric effects. The former favors attack at the more substituted position, while the latter favors attack at the less substituted position. To determine which factor is dominant, we must analyze the epoxide. When the epoxide possesses a tertiary position, the electronic effect will be dominant. When the epoxide possesses only primary and secondary positions, the steric effect will be dominant. The regiochemistry of acid-catalyzed ring opening is just one example where steric effects and electronic effects compete. As we progress through the course, we will see other examples of electronic vs. steric effects.

Earlier in this section (ring opening with strong nucleophiles), the regiochemistry was more straightforward, because electronic effects were not a factor at all. The epoxide was attacked by a nucleophile before being protonated, so the epoxide did not bear a positive charge when it was attacked. In such a case, steric hindrance was the only consideration.

Now let's turn our attention to the stereochemistry of ring-opening reactions under acid-catalyzed conditions. When the attack takes place at a chiral center, inversion of configuration is observed. This result is consistent with an S_N2-like process involving back-side attack of the nucleophile.

SKILLBUILDER

13.5 DRAWING A MECHANISM AND PREDICTING THE PRODUCT OF ACID-CATALYZED RING OPENING

LEARN the skill

Predict the major product of the reaction below and draw a likely mechanism for its formation:

SOLUTION

The presence of sulfuric acid indicates that the epoxide is opened under acid-catalyzed conditions. In order to draw the product, we must consider the regiochemistry and stereochemistry of the reaction.

STEP 1 Identify the regiochemistry by determining whether steric or electronic effects will dominate.

1. To predict the regiochemical outcome, analyze the epoxide.

One side is tertiary, so we expect that electronic effects will control the regiochemistry, and we predict that nucleophilic attack will occur at the more substituted, tertiary position.

STEP 2 Identify the stereochemistry by determining if the nucleophile attacks a chiral center. If so, expect inversion.

2. Next identify the stereochemical outcome. Look at the center being attacked and determine if it is a chiral center. In this case, it is a chiral center, so we expect back-side attack of the nucleophile to invert the configuration of that center:

Now that we have predicted the regiochemical and stereochemical outcomes, we are ready to draw a mechanism. The epoxide is first protonated and then attacked by a nucleophile (EtOH):

STEP 3 Draw all three steps of the mechanism.

Since the attacking nucleophile was neutral (EtOH), the mechanism must include an additional proton transfer step to remove the charge and generate the final product.

PRACTICE the skill **13.18** For each reaction, predict the major product and draw a mechanism for its formation:

APPLY the skill **13.19** The sequence below shows an enantioselective synthesis of a diol that is achieved via two sequential reactions: 1) asymmetric biooxidation (in the presence of enzymes, nature's catalysts) to give a chiral epoxide, followed by 2) a ring-opening reaction. To study the mechanism of this process, isotopically labeled molecular oxygen, $^{18}O_2$, was used for the oxidation reaction, forming the labeled epoxide shown.[5] Draw the expected product of the epoxide ring-opening reaction, and show a mechanism for its formation, clearly indicating where the ^{18}O atom be found in the diol product.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 13.38d, 13.44, 13.47, 13.53**

BioLinks Cigarette Smoke and Carcinogenic Epoxides

As we have seen many times in previous chapters, the combustion of organic materials should produce CO_2 and water. But combustion rarely produces only these two products. Usually, incomplete combustion produces organic compounds that account for the smoke that is observed to emanate from a fire. One of those compounds is called benzo[*a*]pyrene. This highly carcinogenic compound is produced from the burning of organic materials, such as gasoline, wood, and cigarettes. In recent years, extensive research has elucidated the likely mechanistic pathway for the carcinogenicity of this compound, and it has been shown that benzo[*a*]pyrene itself is not the compound that causes cancer. Rather, it is one of the metabolites (one of the compounds produced during the metabolism of benzo[*a*]pyrene) that is a highly reactive intermediate capable of alkylating DNA and thereby interfering with the normal function of DNA.

When benzo[*a*]pyrene is metabolized, an initial epoxide is formed (called an arene oxide), which is then opened by water to give a diol.

The first step is epoxide formation, and the second step is a ring-opening reaction in the presence of a catalyst to form a diol. This diol can then undergo epoxidation another time to give the following diol epoxide:

A diol epoxide

This diol epoxide is carcinogenic because it is capable of alkylating DNA. Studies show that the amino group of deoxyguanosine (in DNA) attacks the epoxide. This reaction changes the structure of DNA and causes genetic code alterations that ultimately lead to the formation of cancer cells.

Benzo[*a*]pyrene is not the only carcinogenic compound in cigarette smoke. Throughout this book, we will see several other carcinogenic compounds that are also present in cigarette smoke.

(*Smoke*) stavklem/Shutterstock; (*Cigarette*) Oliver Hoffmann/Shutterstock

13.11 Thiols and Sulfides

Thiols

Sulfur is directly below oxygen in the periodic table (in the same column), and therefore, many oxygen-containing compounds have sulfur analogs. Sulfur analogs of alcohols contain an SH group in place of an OH group and are called **thiols**. The nomenclature of thiols is similar to that of alcohols, but the suffix of the name is "thiol" instead of "ol":

3-Methyl-1-butanol 3-Methyl-1-butanethiol

Notice that the "e" is kept before the suffix "thiol." When another functional group is present in the compound, the SH group is named as a substituent and is called a **mercapto group**:

3-Mercapto-3-methyl-1-butanol

The name "mercapto" is derived from the fact that thiols were once called mercaptans. This terminology was abandoned by IUPAC several decades ago, but old habits die hard, and many chemists still refer to thiols as mercaptans. The term is derived from the Latin *mercurium captans* (capturing mercury) and describes the ability of thiols to form complexes with mercury as well as other metals. This ability is put to good use by the drug called dimercaprol, which is used to treat mercury and lead poisoning.

Dimercaprol
(2,3-dimercapto-1-propanol)

Thiols are most notorious for their pungent, unpleasant odors. Skunks use thiols as a defense mechanism to ward off predators by spraying a mixture that delivers a mighty stench. Methanethiol

is added to natural gas so that gas leaks can be easily detected. If you have ever smelled a gas leak, you were smelling the methanethiol (CH_3SH) in the natural gas, as natural gas is odorless. Surprisingly, scientists who have worked with thiols report that the nasty odor actually becomes pleasant after prolonged exposure. The author of this textbook can attest to this fact.

Thiols can be prepared via an S_N2 reaction between sodium hydrosulfide (NaSH) and a suitable alkyl halide; for example:

This reaction can occur even at secondary substrates without competing E2 reactions, because the hydrosulfide ion (HS^-) is an excellent nucleophile and a poor base. When this nucleophile attacks a chiral center, inversion of configuration is observed.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

13.20 Identify a suitable starting material and reagents that can be used to prepare each of the following thiols.

(a)

(b)

(c)

Thiols easily undergo oxidation to produce **disulfides**.

The conversion of thiols into disulfides requires an oxidizing reagent, such as bromine in aqueous hydroxide. The process begins with deprotonation of the thiol to generate a **thiolate** ion (Mechanism 13.7). Hydroxide is a strong enough base that the equilibrium favors formation of the thiolate ion. This thiolate ion is an excellent nucleophile and can attack molecular bromine in an S_N2 process. A second S_N2 process then produces the disulfide.

MECHANISM 13.7 OXIDATION OF THIOLS

DEPROTONATION OF THE THIOL

FORMATION OF THE DISULFIDE

There are many oxidizing agents that can be used to convert thiols into disulfides. In fact, the reaction is accomplished with so much ease that atmospheric oxygen can function as an oxidizing agent to produce disulfides. Catalysts can be used to speed up the process. Disulfides are also easily reduced back to thiols when treated with a reducing agent, such as HCl in the presence of zinc.

The ease of interconversion between thiols and disulfides is attributed to the nature of the S—S bond. It has a bond strength of approximately 220 kJ/mol, which is about half the strength of many other covalent bonds. The interconversion between thiols and disulfides is extremely important in determining the shape of many biologically active compounds, as we will explore in Section 25.4.

Sulfides

The sulfur analogs of ethers are called **sulfides**, or thioethers.

An ether — A sulfide (A thioether)

Nomenclature of sulfides is similar to that of ethers. Common names are assigned using the suffix "sulfide" instead of "ether."

Diethyl ether — Diethyl sulfide

More complex sulfides are named systematically, much the way ethers are named, with the alkoxy group being replaced by an **alkylthio group**.

1,1-Dichloro-4-methoxycyclohexane — 1,1-Dichloro-4-(methylthio)cyclohexane

Sulfides can be prepared from thiols in the following way:

This process is essentially the sulfur analog of the Williamson ether synthesis (Mechanism 13.8).

MECHANISM 13.8 PREPARATION OF SULFIDES FROM THIOLS

In the first step, hydroxide is used to deprotonate the thiol and produce a thiolate ion. The thiolate ion then functions as a nucleophile and attacks an alkyl halide, producing the sulfide. The process follows an S_N2 pathway, so the regular restrictions apply. The reaction works well with methyl and primary alkyl halides, can often be accomplished with secondary alkyl halides, and does not work for tertiary alkyl halides.

Since sulfides are structurally similar to ethers, we might expect sulfides to be as unreactive as ethers, but this is not the case. Sulfides undergo several important reactions.

1. Sulfides will attack alkyl halides in an S_N2 process.

The product of this step is a powerful alkylating agent, because it is capable of transferring a methyl group to a nucleophile.

In Section 7.4, we saw an example of a similar, biological alkylating agent, called SAM.

2. Sulfides also undergo oxidation to give **sulfoxides** and then **sulfones**.

Sulfide Sulfoxide Sulfone

The initial product is a sulfoxide. If the oxidizing agent is strong enough and present in excess, then the sulfoxide is oxidized further to give the sulfone. For good yields of the sulfoxide without further oxidation to the sulfone, it is necessary to use an oxidizing reagent that will not oxidize the sulfoxide. Many such reagents are available, including sodium *meta*-periodate, $NaIO_4$.

Methyl phenyl sulfide Methyl phenyl sulfoxide

If the sulfone is the desired product, then two equivalents of hydrogen peroxide can be used.

Methyl phenyl sulfide Methyl phenyl sulfone

The S═O bonds in sulfoxides and sulfones actually have little double-bond character. The 3*p* orbital of a sulfur atom is much larger than the 2*p* orbital of an oxygen atom, and therefore, the orbital overlap of the π bond between these two atoms is not effective. Consequently, sulfoxides and sulfones are often drawn with each S—O bond as a single bond.

Sulfoxides can be drawn as either one of these resonance structures

Sulfones can be drawn as either one of these resonance structures

The ease with which sulfides are oxidized renders them ideal reducing agents in a wide variety of applications. For example, recall that DMS (dimethyl sulfide) is used as a reducing agent in ozonolysis (Section 8.13). The by-product is dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO).

(DMS) (DMSO)

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

13.21 Predict the products for each of the following reactions:

13.12 Synthesis Strategies Involving Epoxides

Recall from Chapter 11 that the two issues to consider when proposing a synthesis are whether there are changes in the carbon skeleton or in the functional group. In this chapter, we have learned valuable skills in both categories. Let's focus on them one at a time.

Installing Two Adjacent Functional Groups

In this chapter, we have seen how to make ethers using the Williamson ether synthesis, and we have also learned many useful synthetic techniques involving epoxides. Note that opening an epoxide provides two functional groups on adjacent carbon atoms.

In Chapter 11, one of the target molecules in the Synthetic Toolbox Review (Table 11.1) also involved adjacent functional groups. We can now update our synthetic toolbox by adding a new method for preparing 1,2-disubstituted target molecules: by an epoxide ring-opening reaction, as shown in Table 13.1.

TABLE 13.1 UPDATE TO SYNTHETIC TOOLBOX: 1,2-DISUBSTITUTED TARGET MOLECULES

FUNCTIONAL GROUP IN TARGET MOLECULE	POSSIBLE STARTING MATERIAL TO MAKE TARGET MOLECULE	EXAMPLES
HO OH, Br Br, Br OH, O	Alkene	Br_2 → Br, Br + En; 1) OsO_4 2) $NaHSO_3/H_2O$ → OH, OH
1,2-Disubstituted ⇒		
HO Nu	Epoxide	O; 1) NaSH 2) H_3O^+ → OH, SH

Whenever you see two adjacent functional groups, an epoxide starting material should be considered. Let's see an example.

SKILLBUILDER

13.6 INSTALLING TWO ADJACENT FUNCTIONAL GROUPS

LEARN the skill

Propose a synthesis for the following transformation:

SOLUTION

Always approach a synthesis problem by initially asking two questions.

1. Is there a change in the carbon skeleton? No, the carbon skeleton is not changing.
2. Is there a change in the functional groups? Yes, the starting material has no functional groups, and the product has two adjacent functional groups.

The answers to these questions dictate what must be done. Specifically, we must install two adjacent functional groups. This suggests that we consider using a ring-opening reaction of an epoxide. Using a retrosynthetic analysis, we draw the epoxide that would be necessary.

The regiochemistry of this step requires that the methoxy group must be installed at the more substituted position. This dictates that the epoxide must be opened under acidic conditions to ensure that the nucleophile (MeOH) attacks at the more substituted position.

Our next step is to determine how to make the epoxide. We have seen a couple of ways to make epoxides, both of which start with an alkene.

At this point, we can start working forward, focusing on converting the starting material into the desired alkene. The starting material has no functional groups, and we have seen only one method for introducing a functional group into an alkane. Specifically, we must employ a radical bromination.

At this point, we just need to bridge the gap.

A strong base, such as ethoxide, will produce an elimination reaction that will form the desired alkene. In summary, our proposed synthesis is shown here:

PRACTICE the skill **13.22** Propose an efficient synthesis for each of the following transformations:

APPLY the skill

13.23 Bongkrekic acid is an extremely potent toxin produced by the microorganism *Pseudomonas cocovenenans*. Synthetic routes for preparing this compound have been sought in order to confirm its chemical structure and elucidate its biological mechanism. During a laboratory synthesis of bongkrekic acid, compound **1** was converted to compound **2**.[6] Propose an efficient synthesis for the conversion of **1** to **2**.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problem 13.59**

Grignard Reagents: Controlling the Location of the Resulting Functional Group

In Chapter 12, we saw how to prepare an alcohol from the reaction between a Grignard reagent and a ketone or aldehyde. In this chapter, we have expanded our repertoire of electrophiles that can react with Grignard reagents, and we have seen how to prepare an alcohol from the reaction between a Grignard reagent and an epoxide. Let's compare these processes, with special focus on the proximity of the newly formed C—C bond (shown in red) and the hydroxyl group (shown in blue):

BY THE WAY
The first four letters of the Greek alphabet are: alpha (α), beta (β), gamma (γ), and delta (δ).

In the product of the first reaction, the new C—C bond is adjacent to the hydroxyl group. In the product of the second reaction, the new C—C bond is not immediately adjacent to the hydroxyl group. The difference can be seen more clearly if we redraw the products above, using Greek letters (α, β, etc.) to identify the proximity of each carbon atom to the hydroxyl group:

Notice that in the first product (generated from a Grignard reaction with an aldehyde), the newly formed C—C bond is between α and β positions. In the second product (generated from a Grignard reaction with an epoxide), the newly formed C—C bond is between β and γ positions. This

difference becomes extremely relevant when planning a retrosynthesis for an alcohol using a Grignard reaction. As an example, we will now perform a retrosynthesis for the following alcohol:

This compound has many C—C bonds, and we have learned how to make almost all of them using Grignard reactions. The bonds between the α and β positions can be made from the reaction between a Grignard reagent and an aldehyde, as shown in the following two retrosyntheses:

In each retrosynthesis above, the disconnection is at the α position and leads to an *aldehyde* starting material.

In contrast, the C—C bonds between the β and γ positions can be made using the reaction between a Grignard reagent and an *epoxide,* as shown in the following retrosyntheses:

In each retrosynthesis above, the disconnection is *not* at the α position. Rather, the disconnection is one bond farther way from the hydroxyl group, so the analysis leads to an *epoxide* starting material.

Notice that the bond between the γ and δ positions is too distant from the hydroxyl group, putting it just out of reach for a logical retrosynthesis.

In summary, our retrosynthetic analysis has revealed four reasonable approaches to prepare the given target alcohol using a Grignard reaction:

When planning a Grignard reaction to prepare an alcohol, we must analyze the target alcohol and pay close attention to the location of the hydroxyl group with respect to any possible C—C bond disconnections. The proximity of the disconnection and the hydroxyl group will determine which type of electrophile should be used (aldehyde/ketone or epoxide). Let's get some practice with this skill.

SKILLBUILDER

13.7 CHOOSING THE APPROPRIATE GRIGNARD REACTION

LEARN the skill

Propose a synthesis for each of the following transformations:

SOLUTION

(a) Always approach a synthesis problem by initially asking whether there are changes in the carbon skeleton or any changes in the identity or location of the functional group(s). In this case, there are changes both in the carbon skeleton and in the functional group. A three-carbon chain is introduced, and both the identity and location of the functional group have changed.

Based on this information, we know that we must introduce three carbon atoms and a functional group (C═O). It would be inefficient to think of these two tasks as separate. If we first attach a three-carbon chain and only then think about how to introduce the C═O bond in exactly the correct position, we will find it very difficult to install the carbonyl group. It is more efficient to introduce the three carbon atoms in such a way that a functional group is already in the correct location.

With this in mind, let's begin our retrosynthetic analysis of the target molecule by asking, "What reaction have we seen that produces a ketone product?" The ketone can be prepared by oxidation of the corresponding alcohol, and the alcohol is suitable for making the required C—C bond disconnection.

Continuing with our retrosynthesis, we consider the following disconnection in order to make the desired C—C bond:

Notice that the required disconnection is not at the α position. Rather, the disconnection is one bond farther way from the hydroxyl group. This disconnection leads to a Grignard reagent nucleophile and an *epoxide* electrophile.

This planned Grignard reaction introduces the three-carbon chain and simultaneously installs a functional group in the proper location (on the second carbon).

Granted, the functional group is a hydroxyl group, rather than a carbonyl group. But once the hydroxyl group is in the correct location, it is easy enough to perform an oxidation and form the carbonyl group.

Always remember that functional groups can be easily interconverted. The important consideration is how to place a functional group in the desired location. In summary, our proposed synthesis is shown here:

(b) In this case, there are changes both in the carbon skeleton and in the functional group. A three-carbon chain is introduced and both the identity and location of the functional group have changed. With this in mind, let's begin our retrosynthetic analysis of the target molecule by asking, "What reaction have we seen that produces a ketone product?" The ketone can be prepared by oxidation of the corresponding alcohol and the alcohol is suitable for making the required C—C bond disconnection.

Continuing with our retrosynthesis, we consider the following disconnection in order to make the desired C—C bond:

Notice that the required disconnection is at the α position. This disconnection leads to a Grignard reagent nucleophile and an *aldehyde* electrophile.

In this case, the Grignard reagent must attack an aldehyde rather than an epoxide so that the functional group will be positioned at C1 rather than C2.

This sequence places the functional group in the desired location. It is then easy enough to oxidize the alcohol to form the desired ketone, as in the previous example (part a). In summary, our proposed synthesis is shown here:

Notice the difference between the two syntheses above. Both involve introduction of carbon atoms via a Grignard reagent, but the precise location of the functional group dictates whether the Grignard reagent should attack an epoxide or an aldehyde.

PRACTICE the skill **13.24** Propose an efficient synthesis for each of the following transformations:

APPLY the skill **13.25** Decytospolides A and B are fungal natural products that are toxic to some cancer cells. In a synthesis of these natural products, compound **3** was prepared via the reaction between an epoxide (compound **2**) and a Grignard reagent.[7] Draw the structure of **2**, and provide a complete mechanism for the conversion of **1** to **3**.

Decytospolide A (R = H)
Decytospolide B (R = $COCH_3$)

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 13.49, 13.58, 13.59**

REVIEW OF REACTIONS

Preparation of Ethers

Williamson Ether Synthesis

Alkoxymercuration-Demercuration

Reactions of Ethers

Acidic Cleavage

Autooxidation

A hydroperoxide

Preparation of Epoxides

Enantioselective Epoxidation

Ring-Opening Reactions of Epoxides

Thiols and Sulfides

Thiols

Sulfides

REVIEW OF CONCEPTS AND VOCABULARY

SECTION 13.1

- **Ethers** are compounds that have an oxygen atom bonded to two groups, which can be alkyl, aryl, or vinyl groups.
- The ether group is a common structural feature of many natural compounds and pharmaceuticals.

SECTION 13.2

- **Unsymmetrical ethers** have two different alkyl groups, while **symmetrical ethers** have two identical groups.
- The common name of an ether is constructed by assigning a name to each R group, arranging them in alphabetical order, and then adding the word "ether."
- The systematic name of an ether is constructed by choosing the larger group to be the parent alkane and naming the smaller group as an **alkoxy substituent**.

SECTION 13.3

- Ethers of low molecular weight have low boiling points, while ethers with larger alkyl groups have higher boiling points due to London dispersion forces between the alkyl groups.
- Ethers are often used as solvents for organic reactions.

SECTION 13.4

- The interaction between ethers and metal ions is very strong for **polyethers**, compounds with multiple ether groups.
- Cyclic polyethers, or **crown ethers**, are capable of solvating metal ions in organic (nonpolar) solvents.

SECTION 13.5

- Ethers can be readily prepared from the reaction between an alkoxide ion and an alkyl halide, a process called a **Williamson ether synthesis**. This process works best for methyl or primary alkyl halides. Secondary alkyl halides are significantly less efficient, and tertiary alkyl halides cannot be used.
- Ethers can be prepared from alkenes via **alkoxymercuration-demercuration**, which results in a Markovnikov addition of RO and H across an alkene.

SECTION 13.6

- When treated with a strong acid (HX), an ether will undergo **acidic cleavage** in which it is converted into two alkyl halides.
- When a phenyl ether is cleaved upon treatment with HX, the products are phenol and an alkyl halide.
- Ethers undergo autooxidation in the presence of atmospheric oxygen to form hydroperoxides.

SECTION 13.7

- A three-membered cyclic ether is called **oxirane**. It possesses significant ring strain and is therefore more reactive than other ethers.
- Substituted oxiranes are also called *epoxides*, which are named in either of two ways:
  - The oxygen atom is considered to be a substituent on the parent chain, and the exact location of the epoxide group is identified with two numbers followed by the term "epoxy."
  - The parent is considered to be the epoxide (parent = oxirane), and any groups connected to the epoxide are listed as substituents.

SECTION 13.8

- Alkenes can be converted into epoxides by treatment with peroxy acids or via halohydrin formation and subsequent epoxidation. Both procedures are stereospecific.
- Substituents that are *cis* to each other in the starting alkene remain *cis* to each other in the epoxide, and substituents that are *trans* to each other in the starting alkene remain *trans* to each other in the epoxide.

SECTION 13.9

- Chiral catalysts can be used to achieve the enantioselective epoxidation of allylic alcohols.
- In a **Sharpless asymmetric epoxidation**, the catalyst favors the production of one enantiomer over the other, leading to an observed enantiomeric excess.

SECTION 13.10

- Epoxides will undergo *ring-opening reactions* either (1) in conditions involving a strong nucleophile or (2) under acid-catalyzed conditions.
- When a strong nucleophile is used, the nucleophile attacks at the less substituted (less hindered) position.
- Under acid-catalyzed conditions, the regiochemical outcome is dependent on the nature of the epoxide and is explained in terms of a competition between *electronic* effects and *steric effects*.
- The stereochemical outcome for ring-opening reactions of epoxides involves inversion of configuration at the position being attacked, if that position is a chiral center.

SECTION 13.11

- Sulfur analogs of alcohols contain an SH group rather than an OH group and are called **thiols**.
- When another functional group is present in the compound, the SH group is named as a substituent and is called a **mercapto group**.
- Thiols can be prepared via an S_N2 reaction between sodium hydrosulfide (NaSH) and a suitable alkyl halide.
- Thiols easily undergo oxidation to produce **disulfides**, and disulfides are also easily reduced back to thiols when treated with a reducing agent.
- The sulfur analogs of ethers (thioethers) are called **sulfides**. The nomenclature of sulfides is similar to that of ethers. Common names are assigned using the suffix "sulfide" instead of "ether." More complex sulfides are named systematically, much the way ethers are named, with the alkoxy group being replaced by an **alkylthio group**.

- Sulfides can be prepared from thiols in a process that is essentially the sulfur analog of the Williamson ether synthesis, involving a **thiolate** ion, rather than an alkoxide ion.
- Sulfides will attack alkyl halides to produce alkylating agents.
- Sulfides undergo oxidation to give **sulfoxides** and then **sulfones**.

SECTION 13.12

- Ring opening of an epoxide produces a compound with two functional groups on adjacent carbon atoms. Whenever you see two adjacent functional groups, you should think of epoxides.
- When a Grignard reagent reacts with an epoxide, a C—C bond is formed. This reaction can be used to introduce a chain of carbon atoms that possess a built-in functional group at the second carbon atom.
- In contrast, when a Grignard reagent attacks a ketone or aldehyde, the functional group appears on the first carbon atom that was introduced.

SKILLBUILDER REVIEW

13.1 NAMING AN ETHER

COMMON NAME
Treat both sides as substituents and list them alphabetically.

SYSTEMATIC NAME
1) Choose the parent (the more complex side).
2) Identify all substituents (including alkoxy group).
3) Assign locants.
4) Assemble substituents alphabetically with locants.
5) Assign the configuration of any chiral centers.

(*R*)-1,1-Dichloro-3-ethoxycyclopentane

Try Problems 13.1–13.3, 13.26, 13.28

13.2 PREPARING AN ETHER VIA A WILLIAMSON ETHER SYNTHESIS

STEP 1 Identify the two groups on either side of the oxygen atom.

STEP 2 Determine which side is more capable of serving as a substrate in an S_N2 reaction.

STEP 3 Use a suitable base to deprotonate the alcohol and then identify the alkyl halide.

Try Problems 13.5, 13.6, 13.29a,c, 13.35, 13.37d, 13.38b, 13.46

13.3 PREPARING EPOXIDES

STEP 1 Identify the four groups attached to the epoxide ring.

STEP 2 Identify the relative configuration of the four groups and draw the starting alkene.

Try Problems 13.13, 13.14, 13.34, 13.59t, 13.67

13.4 DRAWING A MECHANISM AND PREDICTING THE PRODUCT OF THE REACTION BETWEEN A STRONG NUCLEOPHILE AND AN EPOXIDE

EXAMPLE Predict the product and propose a mechanism for its formation.

STEP 1 Identify the regiochemistry by selecting the less-hindered position as the site of nucleophilic attack.

STEP 2 Identify the stereochemistry by determining whether the nucleophile attacks a chiral center. If so, expect inversion of configuration.

STEP 3 Draw both steps of the mechanism:

Try Problems 13.16, 13.17, 13.37a,c,e,f, 13.38a,c, 13.50, 13.54, 13.55

13.5 DRAWING A MECHANISM AND PREDICTING THE PRODUCT OF ACID-CATALYZED RING OPENING

EXAMPLE Predict the product and propose a mechanism for its formation.

STEP 1 Identify the regiochemistry: determine whether steric or electronic effects will dominate.

STEP 2 Identify the stereochemistry: if nucleophile attacks a chiral center, expect inversion of configuration.

STEP 3 Draw all three steps of the mechanism: (1) proton transfer, (2) nucleophilic attack, and (3) proton transfer.

Try Problems 13.18, 13.19, 13.38d, 13.44, 13.47, 13.53

13.6 INSTALLING TWO ADJACENT FUNCTIONAL GROUPS

Convert an alkene into an epoxide. | Open the epoxide with regiochemical control.

Try Problems 13.22, 13.23, 13.59

13.7 CHOOSING THE APPROPRIATE GRIGNARD REACTION

Grignard reagent attacking an epoxide:

Grignard reagent attacking an aldehyde or ketone:

Try Problems **13.24, 13.25, 13.49, 13.58, 13.59**

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

• **Included in Answers section**

13.26 • Assign an IUPAC name for each of the following compounds:

13.27 • Predict the major product(s) that are expected when each of the following compounds is heated with concentrated HBr:

13.28 Draw all constitutionally isomeric ethers with the molecular formula $C_4H_{10}O$. Provide a common name and a systematic name for each isomer.

13.29 • Starting with cyclohexene and using any other reagents of your choice, show how you would prepare each of the following compounds:

13.30 When 1,4-dioxane is heated in the presence of HI, compound **A** is obtained:

(a) Draw the structure of compound **A**.

(b) If one mole of dioxane is used, how many moles of compound **A** are formed?

(c) Show a plausible mechanism for the conversion of dioxane into compound **A**.

13.31 Tetrahydrofuran (THF) can be formed by treating 1,4-butanediol with sulfuric acid. Propose a mechanism for this transformation:

1,4-Butanediol **Tetrahydrofuran (THF)**

13.32 When ethylene glycol is treated with sulfuric acid, 1,4-dioxane is obtained. Propose a mechanism for this transformation:

Ethylene glycol **1,4-Dioxane**

13.33 Methylmagnesium bromide reacts rapidly with ethylene oxide, it reacts slowly with oxetane, and it does not react at all with tetrahydrofuran (THF).

Ethylene oxide **Oxetane** **Tetrahydrofuran (THF)**

Explain this difference in reactivity.

13.34 Identify the reagents necessary to accomplish each of the following transformations:

13.35 • When 5-bromo-2,2-dimethyl-1-pentanol is treated with sodium hydride, a compound with the molecular formula $C_7H_{14}O$ is obtained. Identify the structure of this compound.

13.36 Problem 13.34 outlines a general method for the preparation of *cis*- or *trans*-disubstituted epoxides. Using that method, identify reagents

that you could use to prepare a racemic mixture of each of the following epoxides from acetylene:

13.37 • Predict the major product(s) for each of the following:

13.38 Propose a plausible mechanism for each of the following transformations:

13.39 What product do you expect when tetrahydrofuran (THF, shown in Problem 13.33) is heated in the presence of excess HBr?

13.40 Compound **B** has the molecular formula $C_6H_{10}O$ and does not possess any π bonds. When treated with concentrated HBr, *cis*-1,4-dibromocyclohexane is produced. Identify the structure of compound **B**.

13.41 Propose a mechanism for the following transformation:

13.42 Predict the major product for each of the following reaction sequences:

13.43 • Using acetylene and ethylene oxide as your only sources of carbon atoms, propose a synthesis for each of the following compounds:

13.44 Fill in the missing reagents below.

13.45 Fill in the missing products below.

ACS-STYLE PROBLEMS (Multiple Choice)

Problems 13.46–13.53 follow the style of the ACS organic chemistry exam. For each of these problems, there will be one correct answer and three distractors.

13.46 • Which of the following methods would successfully prepare the given target molecule?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

13.47 • Which of the following is a likely intermediate in the mechanism for the given reaction?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

13.48 • Which of the following is one of the products formed in the given reaction?

(a)

(b)

(c) H_2O

(d)

13.49 • In the retrosynthetic analysis of the given target molecule, which disconnection leads to an epoxide starting material?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

13.50 • Predict the major product of the following reaction.

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

13.51 • Which reagents will achieve the following transformation?

(a) conc. H_2SO_4, heat → RCO_3H → 1) MeMgBr, 2) H_3O^+

(b) conc. H_2SO_4, heat → RCO_3H → 1) EtMgBr, 2) H_3O^+

(c) PCC → 1) EtMgBr, 2) H_3O^+

(d) PCC → 1) PrMgBr, 2) H_3O^+

13.52 • Which is the best retrosynthesis of the given target molecule?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

13.53 • Predict the major product of the following reaction.

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

INTEGRATED PROBLEMS

13.54 When the following chiral epoxide is treated with aqueous sodium hydroxide, only one diol product is obtained, and that product is achiral. Draw the product and explain why only one diol product is formed.

13.55 When *meso*-2,3-epoxybutane is treated with aqueous sodium hydroxide, two diol products are obtained. Draw both products and describe their relationship.

13.56 Propose an efficient synthesis for 1,4-dioxane using acetylene as your only source of carbon atoms.

1,4-Dioxane

13.57 Dimethoxyethane (DME) is a polar aprotic solvent often used for S_N2 reactions. Propose an efficient synthesis for DME using acetylene and methyl iodide as your only sources of carbon atoms.

Dimethoxyethane

13.58 Using compounds that possess no more than two carbon atoms, propose an efficient synthesis for the following compound:

13.59 Propose an efficient synthesis for each transformation.

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

(f)

(g)

(h)

(i)

(j)

(k)

(l)

(m)

Problems 13.60–13.63 are intended for students who have already covered spectroscopy (Chapters 14 and 15).

13.60 Propose a structure for an ether with the molecular formula C_7H_8O that exhibits the following ^{13}C NMR spectrum:

13.61 Propose a structure for a compound with the molecular formula $C_8H_{18}O$ that exhibits the following ^1H NMR and ^{13}C NMR spectra:

13.62 Propose a structure for a compound with the molecular formula C_4H_8O that exhibits the following ^{13}C NMR and FTIR spectra:

13.63 Propose a structure for a compound with the molecular formula $C_4H_{10}O$ that exhibits the following ^1H NMR spectrum:

13.64 Predict the major product of the following reaction:

13.65 Epoxides can be formed by treating α-haloketones with sodium borohydride. Propose a mechanism for formation of the following epoxide:

13.66 When methyloxirane is treated with HBr, the bromide ion attacks the less-substituted position. However, when phenyloxirane is treated with HBr, the bromide ion attacks the more-substituted position.

Explain the difference in regiochemistry in terms of a competition between steric effects and electronic effects. (**Hint:** It may help to draw out the structure of the phenyl group.)

13.67 Consider the following two compounds. When treated with NaOH, one of these compounds forms an epoxide quite rapidly, while the other forms an epoxide very slowly. Identify which compound reacts more rapidly and explain the difference in rate between the two reactions. (**Hint:** You may find it helpful to review the chair conformations of substituted cyclohexanes in Section 4.13.)

Compound A **Compound B**

13.68 Propose an efficient synthesis for the following transformation:

13.69 Using bromobenzene and ethylene oxide as your only sources of carbon, show how you could prepare *trans*-2,3-diphenyloxirane (as a racemic mixture).

13.70 The S_N2 reaction between a Grignard reagent and an epoxide works reasonably well when the epoxide is ethylene oxide. However, when the epoxide is substituted with groups that provide steric hindrance, a competing reaction can dominate, in which an allylic alcohol is produced. Propose a mechanism for this transformation and use the principles discussed in Section 7.9 (substitution vs. elimination) to justify why the allylic alcohol would be the major product in this case below.

Major product **Minor product**

13.71 The following sequence of reactions was employed during synthetic studies on reidispongiolide A, a cytotoxic marine natural product.[8] Draw the structures of compounds **A**, **B**, **C**, and **D**.

13.72 Sphingolipids are a class of compounds that play an important role in cell recognition and signaling. Fumonisin B_1 is a potent sphingolipid biosynthesis inhibitor.

Fumonisin B_1

A recent synthesis of fumonisin B_1 employed the transformation, shown below. The carbon atoms numbered 7-9 are incorporated into the carbon skeleton via the formation of alkyne **2** from epoxide **1**.[9] Starting with 3-bromo-1-propyne, show a synthesis of alkyne **2** from epoxide **1**.

13.73 Guggul is an herbal extract from the resin of the mukul myrrh tree, and it shows potential for treating high cholesterol. In a recent synthesis of (+)-myrrhanol A (a compound present in guggul), compound **1** was treated with MCPBA, followed by $LiAlH_4$ to afford compound **2** as the only diastereomer detected.[10] Draw a mechanism for the transformation of **1** to **2** and explain the stereochemical outcome with respect to the newly formed chiral center.

13.74 During a total synthesis of 2-methyl-D-erythritol (a sugar of importance to isoprenoid biosynthesis), epoxide **2** was utilized.[11]

(a) Identify the reagents you would use to achieve a stereoselective synthesis of epoxide **2** from allylic alcohol **1**.

(b) Propose a plausible mechanism for the formation of orthoester **4** from epoxide **3**, upon treatment with a catalytic amount of aqueous acid. (**Hint:** The O in the C=O bond of the ester group can function as a nucleophilic center.)

13.75 Reboxetine mesylate is used in the treatment of depression and is currently marketed as a racemic mixture. The (*S*,*S*)-enantiomer of reboxetine is being evaluated for the treatment of neuropathic pain. The following synthetic scheme was part of the synthesis of (*S*,*S*)-reboxetine completed by a research group at Pfizer:[12]

(a) In the conversion of **1** to **2**, (−)-DIPT serves the same function as (−)-DET. Provide the structure of **2**.

(b) Propose a plausible mechanism for the transformation of **2** to **3** and draw the expected configuration at each of the chiral centers in **3**.

(c) TMSCl is used to selectively protect the less hindered, primary OH group in **3**. MsCl functions very much like TsCl by converting an OH group into a good leaving group, called a mesylate (OMs) group (see Section 7.12). Aqueous acid then removes the protecting group to give **4**. Draw the structure of **4**.

(d) Draw a plausible mechanism for the transformation of **4** to **5**.

CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

13.76 The following procedure is part of a synthetic strategy for the enantioselective preparation of carbohydrates (Chapter 24):[13]

(a) Under these strongly basic conditions (NaOH), the alcohol group is deprotonated to give an alkoxide ion, which can then function as a strong nucleophile and participate in an intramolecular ring-opening reaction. This opens the epoxide ring, and then generates a new epoxide ring. Using this information, draw a complete mechanism for the conversion above, and justify the stereochemical outcome.

(b) Predict the major product of the following process:

13.77 Laureatin is a natural product isolated from the marine algae *Laurencia nipponica* that exhibits potent insecticidal activity against mosquitos. During an investigation toward the synthesis of laureatin, an interesting skeletal rearrangement was observed. When compound **1** was treated with a source of electrophilic bromine (e.g., Br_2), the product isolated was epoxide **2**.[14] Propose a plausible mechanism.

13.78 Oxymercuration-demercuration of compound **1** affords the expected hydration product **2** in 96% yield. In contrast, oxymercuration-demercuration of compound **3** results in only a minor amount of the normal hydration product. Instead, compounds **7** and **8** are formed.[15] It is believed that the initial product of oxymercuration (compound **4**) undergoes an intramolecular epoxide-opening step, giving two possible cyclic compounds, **5** and **6**. This step is likely catalyzed by the interaction between the epoxide group and $Hg(OAc)_2$, which functions as a Lewis acid.

(a) Draw the structure of **2**.

(b) Draw the structures of **4, 5,** and **6** and show a mechanism for the conversion of **4** → **5** as well as **4** → **6**.

(c) Explain why the product distribution is so different for epoxyalkenes **1** and **3**.

13.79 The following electrophile-induced, ether transfer reaction was utilized in the synthesis of several structurally related natural products.[16] Provide a plausible mechanism for this transformation.

13.80 Artemisinin (also known as Qinghaosu) is a peroxide-containing compound that has been used in traditional Chinese medicine as a treatment for malaria. Today, synthetic derivatives of artemisinin are standard treatments to fight against *Plasmodium falciparum* infections, the parasite which causes the most dangerous form of malaria. Epoxide **1** is a synthetic derivative of artemisinin. When treated with hexafluoro-2-propanol and catalytic acid, epoxide **1** undergoes a ring-opening reaction for which the regiochemical outcome and stereochemical outcome are both contrary to what you might have expected.[17] Provide a plausible mechanism to explain these observations.

LIST OF REFERENCES

1. *Molecular Diversity* **2006**, *10*, 95–99.
2. *Synthesis* **2014**, *46*, 879–886.
3. *J. Chem. Ecol.* **2005**, *31*, 879–890.
4. *J. Org. Chem.* **2005**, *70*, 3054–3065.
5. *J. Org. Chem.* **1991**, *56*, 3814–3817.
6. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1984**, *106*, 462–463.
7. *Tetrahedron: Asymmetry* **2015**, *26*, 296–303.
8. *Tetrahedron Lett.* **2009**, *50*, 5012–5014.
9. *Tetrahedron Lett.* **2012**, *53*, 3233–3236.
10. *J. Org. Chem.* **2009**, *74*, 6151–6156.
11. *J. Org. Chem.* **2002**, *67*, 4856–4859.
12. *Org. Proc. Res. & Devel.* **2007**, *11*, 354–358.
13. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1982**, *104*, 3515–3516.
14. *J. Org. Chem.* **2012**, *77*, 7883–7890.
15. *J. Org. Chem.* **1981**, *46*, 930–939.
16. *J. Org. Chem.* **2008**, *73*, 5592–5594.
17. *J. Org. Chem.* **2002**, *67*, 1253–1260.

14

14.1 Introduction to Spectroscopy
14.2 IR Spectroscopy
14.3 Signal Characteristics: Wavenumber
14.4 Signal Characteristics: Intensity
14.5 Signal Characteristics: Shape
14.6 Analyzing an IR Spectrum
14.7 Using IR Spectroscopy to Distinguish between Two Compounds
14.8 Introduction to Mass Spectrometry
14.9 Analyzing the $(M)^{+\bullet}$ Peak
14.10 Analyzing the $(M+1)^{+\bullet}$ Peak
14.11 Analyzing the $(M+2)^{+\bullet}$ Peak
14.12 Analyzing the Fragments
14.13 High-Resolution Mass Spectrometry
14.14 Gas Chromatography–Mass Spectrometry
14.15 Mass Spectrometry of Large Biomolecules
14.16 Hydrogen Deficiency Index: Degrees of Unsaturation

Infrared Spectroscopy and Mass Spectrometry

DID YOU EVER **WONDER...**

how night vision goggles work?

There are many different varieties of night vision goggles. One of these varieties depends on the principle that warm objects emit infrared radiation, which can be detected and then displayed as an image, called a thermogram (an example is shown below). We will soon see that a similar technology has been developed for the early screening of breast cancer. These technologies rely on the interactions between light and matter, the study of which is called spectroscopy. This chapter will serve as an introduction to spectroscopy and its relevance to the field of organic chemistry. After briefly reviewing how light and matter interact with each other, we will spend most of the chapter learning two very important spectroscopic techniques that are frequently used by organic chemists to verify the structures of compounds.

Less than one hundred years ago, structural determination was a difficult and time-consuming task. It was not uncommon for a chemist to spend years determining the structure of an unknown compound. The advent of modern spectroscopic techniques has completely transformed the field of chemistry, and structures can now be determined in several minutes. In this chapter, we will begin to appreciate how spectroscopy can be used to determine the structures of unknown compounds.

slobo/Getty Images

Tony McConnell/Science Source

DO YOU **REMEMBER?**

Before you go on, be sure you understand the following topics.
If necessary, review the suggested sections to prepare for this chapter.

- Quantum Mechanics (Section 1.7)
- Hydrogen Bonding (Section 1.13)
- Drawing Resonance Structures (Sections 2.7–2.10)
- Carbocation Stability (Section 6.11)

Take the DO YOU **REMEMBER?** QUIZ in the **online course** to check your understanding.

14.1 Introduction to Spectroscopy

In order to understand how **spectroscopy** is used for structure determination, we must first review some of the basic features of light and matter.

The Nature of Light

Electromagnetic radiation (light) exhibits both wave-like properties and particle-like properties. Consequently, electromagnetic radiation can be viewed as a wave or as a particle. When viewed as a wave, electromagnetic radiation consists of perpendicular oscillating, electric and magnetic fields (Figure 14.1).

FIGURE 14.1
The perpendicular, oscillating, electric and magnetic fields associated with electromagnetic radiation.

The **wavelength** describes the distance between adjacent peaks of an oscillating field, while the **frequency** describes the number of wavelengths that pass a particular point in space per unit time. Accordingly, a long wavelength corresponds with a small frequency, and a short wavelength corresponds with a large frequency. This inverse relationship is summarized in the following equation where frequency (ν) and wavelength (λ) are inversely proportional. The constant of proportionality is the speed of light (c):

$$\nu = \frac{c}{\lambda}$$

When viewed as a particle, electromagnetic radiation consists of packets of energy, called **photons**. The energy of each photon is directly proportional to its frequency,

$$E = h\nu$$

where h is Planck's constant ($h = 6.626 \times 10^{-34}$ J·s). The range of all possible frequencies is known as the **electromagnetic spectrum**, which is arbitrarily divided into several regions (Figure 14.2). Different regions of the electromagnetic spectrum are used to probe different aspects of molecular structure (Table 14.1). In this chapter, we will learn about the information obtained when IR (infrared) radiation interacts with a compound. NMR and UV-Vis spectroscopy will be discussed in subsequent chapters.

FIGURE 14.2
The electromagnetic spectrum.

TABLE 14.1 SOME COMMON FORMS OF SPECTROSCOPY AND THEIR USES

TYPE OF SPECTROSCOPY	REGION OF ELECTROMAGNETIC SPECTRUM	INFORMATION OBTAINED
Nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) spectroscopy	Radio waves	The specific arrangement of all carbon and hydrogen atoms in the compound
IR spectroscopy	Infrared	The functional groups present in the compound
UV-VIS spectroscopy	Visible and ultraviolet	Any conjugated π system present in the compound

The Nature of Matter

Matter, like electromagnetic radiation, also exhibits both wave-like properties and particle-like properties. In Section 1.7 we saw that quantum mechanics describes the wave-like properties of matter. According to the principles of quantum mechanics, the energy of a molecule is "quantized." To understand what this means, we will compare the rotation of a molecule with the rotation of an automobile tire connected directly to a motor. When the motor is turned on, the tire begins to rotate and a measuring device is used to determine the rate of rotation. Our ability to control the rate of rotation appears to be limited only by the precision of the motor and the sensitivity of the measuring device. It would be inconceivable to suggest that a measurable rotation rate would be unattainable by the laws of physics. If we want to spin the tire at exactly 60.06251 revolutions per second, there is nothing preventing us from doing so. In contrast, molecules behave differently. The rotation of a molecule appears to be restricted to specific energy levels. That is, a molecule can only rotate at specific rates, which are defined by the nature of the molecule. Other rotation rates are simply not allowed by the laws of physics. The rotational energy of a molecule is said to be quantized.

FIGURE 14.3
An energy diagram showing the energy gap between allowed vibrational states.

Molecules can store energy in a variety of ways. They rotate in space, their bonds vibrate like springs, their electrons can occupy a number of possible molecular orbitals, and so on. Each of these forms of energy is quantized. For example, a bond in a molecule can only vibrate at specific energy levels (Figure 14.3). The horizontal lines in the diagram represent allowed vibrational energy levels for a particular bond. The bond is restricted to these energy levels and cannot vibrate with an energy that is in between the allowed levels. The difference in energy (ΔE) between allowed energy levels is determined by the nature of the bond.

The Interaction between Light and Matter

In Figure 14.3, we saw that the vibrational energy levels for a particular bond are separated from each other by an energy gap (ΔE). If a photon of light possesses exactly this amount of energy, the bond can absorb the photon to promote a **vibrational excitation**. The energy of the photon is temporarily stored as vibrational energy until it is released back into the environment, usually in the form of

heat. Each form of spectroscopy uses a different region of the electromagnetic spectrum and involves a different kind of excitation. In this chapter, we will focus mainly on the interaction between molecules and IR radiation, which promotes vibrational excitations of the bonds in a molecule.

WorldLinks Microwave Ovens

Microwave ovens are a direct application of quantum mechanics and spectroscopy. We saw that molecules can only rotate at specific energy levels. The exact gap in energy between these levels (ΔE) is dependent on the nature of the molecule but is generally equivalent to a photon in the microwave region of the electromagnetic spectrum. In other words, molecules will absorb microwave radiation to promote rotational excitations. For reasons that we will discuss later in this chapter, the ability of a molecule to absorb electromagnetic radiation depends very much on the presence of a permanent dipole moment. Water molecules, in particular, possess a strong dipole moment and are therefore extremely efficient at absorbing microwave radiation.

When frozen food is bombarded with microwave radiation, the water molecules in the food absorb the energy and begin to rotate more rapidly. As neighboring molecules collide with each other, the rotational energy is converted into translational energy (or heat), and the temperature of the food rises quickly. This process only works when water molecules are present. Plastic items (such as tupperware) generally do not get hot, because they are composed of long polymers that cannot freely rotate.

(*Microwave oven*) 2happy/Shutterstock; (*Kernel popping*) groveb/Getty Images; (*Popcorn in bag*) Joao Virissimo/Shutterstock; (*Unpopped kernel*) Charles B. Ming Onn/Shutterstock

In addition to causing rotational excitation, microwave radiation can also cause electronic excitation in metals. That is, electrons can be promoted to higher energy orbitals. This type of electronic excitation accounts for the sparks that can be observed when metal objects are placed in a microwave oven.

14.2 IR Spectroscopy

Vibrational Excitation

In Section 14.1, we saw that IR radiation causes vibrational excitation of the bonds in a molecule. There are many different kinds of vibrational excitation, because bonds store vibrational energy a number of ways. Bonds can *stretch*, very much the way a spring stretches, and bonds can *bend* in a number of ways.

A stretching vibration

An in-plane bending vibration (scissoring)

An out-of-plane bending vibration (twisting)

There are many other types of **bending** vibrations, but we will focus most of our attention in this chapter on **stretching** vibrations. Bending will only be mentioned briefly in this chapter.

BioLinks | IR Thermal Imaging for Cancer Detection

We have seen that vibrating bonds will absorb IR radiation to achieve a higher vibrational state, but it is worthwhile to note that the reverse process also occurs in nature. That is, vibrating bonds can be demoted to a *lower* vibrational state by *emitting* IR radiation. In this way, warm objects are able to release some of their energy in the form of IR radiation. This idea has found application in a wide variety of products. For example, some varieties of night vision goggles are able to produce an image in the total absence of visible light by detecting the IR radiation emitted by warm objects. Warmer areas emit more IR radiation, providing the contrast necessary to construct an image.

Ted Kinsman/Science Source

More recently, thermal imaging has been promoted by alternative medicine practitioners as a method for detection of breast cancer. This is based on the fact that cancer cells have inefficient metabolism and give off more heat than do normal noncancerous cells and that cancer cells promote increased blood flow to support the increased number of cancer cells and their inefficient metabolism. Data giving direct comparisons with mammography are very limited, but the data available suggest that thermal imaging is not as effective as mammograms for diagnosing breast cancer, and thermal imaging has a higher frequency of false positives (apparent cancer spots that are not in fact cancerous). The American Cancer Society and the FDA have taken the position that there is insufficient data to recommend thermal imaging in the detection of breast cancer.

SPL/Science Source

Identification of Functional Groups with IR Spectroscopy

For each and every bond in a molecule, the energy gap between vibrational states is very much dependent on the nature of the bond. For example, the energy gap for a C—H bond is much larger than the energy gap for a C—O bond (Figure 14.4).

FIGURE 14.4
The energy gap between vibrational energy levels is dependent on the nature of the bond.

Both bonds will absorb IR radiation but the C—H bond will absorb a higher energy photon. In fact, each type of bond will absorb a characteristic frequency, allowing us to determine which types of bonds are present in a compound. We simply irradiate the compound with all frequencies of IR radiation and then detect which frequencies were absorbed. For example, a compound containing an O—H bond will absorb a frequency of IR radiation characteristic of an O—H bond. In this way, IR spectroscopy can be used to identify the presence of functional groups in a compound.

Martyn F. Chillmaid / Science Source

A salt plate used for IR spectroscopy. These plates are moisture sensitive and must be stored in a moisture-free environment.

IR Spectrometer

In an IR spectrometer, a sample is irradiated with frequencies of IR radiation, and the frequencies that pass through (that are not absorbed by the sample) are detected. A plot is then constructed showing which frequencies were absorbed by the sample. The most commonly used type of spectrometer, called a *Fourier transform (FT-IR) spectrometer*, irradiates the sample with all frequencies simultaneously and then utilizes a mathematical operation called a Fourier transform to determine which frequencies passed through the sample.

Several techniques are used for preparing a sample for IR spectroscopy. One common method involves the use of salt plates. These expensive plates are made from sodium chloride and are used because they are transparent to IR radiation. If the compound under investigation is a liquid at room temperature, a drop of the sample is sandwiched in between two salt plates and is called a *neat* sample. If the compound is a solid at room temperature, it can be dissolved in a suitable solvent and placed in between two salt plates. Alternatively, insoluble compounds can be mixed with powdered KBr and then pressed into a thin, transparent film, called a KBr pellet. All of these sampling techniques are commonly used for IR spectroscopy.

The General Shape of an IR Absorbance Spectrum

An IR spectrometer measures the percent transmittance as a function of frequency. This plot is called an **absorption spectrum** (Figure 14.5). All the signals, called absorption bands, point down on an IR

FIGURE 14.5
An example of an IR absorbance spectrum.

spectrum. The location of each signal on the spectrum can be specified either by the corresponding *wavelength* or by the corresponding *frequency* of radiation that was absorbed. Several decades ago, signals were reported by their wavelengths (measured in micrometers, or microns). Currently, the location of each signal is more often reported in terms of a frequency-related unit, called **wavenumber** ($\tilde{\nu}$). The wavenumber is simply the frequency of light divided by a constant (the speed of light, c):

$$\tilde{\nu} = \frac{\nu}{c}$$

The units of wavenumber are inverse centimeters (cm^{-1}), and the values range from 400 to 4000 cm^{-1}. All of the spectra in this chapter will be reported in units of wavenumber rather than wavelength, to be consistent with common practice. Don't confuse the terms wavenumber and wavelength. Wavenumber is proportional to frequency, and therefore, a larger wavenumber represents higher energy. Signals that appear on the left side of the spectrum correspond with higher energy radiation, while signals on the right side of the spectrum correspond with lower energy radiation.

Every signal in an IR spectrum has three characteristics: wavenumber, intensity, and shape. We will now explore each of these three characteristics, starting with wavenumber.

14.3 Signal Characteristics: Wavenumber

Hooke's Law

For every bond, the wavenumber of absorption associated with bond stretching is dependent on two factors: (1) bond strength and (2) masses of the atoms sharing the bond. The impact of these

two factors can be rationalized when we treat a bond as if it were a vibrating spring connecting two weights.

Using this analogy, we can construct the following equation, derived from Hooke's law, which enables us to approximate the frequency of vibration for a bond between two atoms of mass m_1 and m_2:

$$\tilde{\nu} = \left(\frac{1}{2\pi c}\right)\left(\frac{f}{m_{red}}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}$$

force constant (bond strength)

reduced mass $= \left(\frac{m_1 m_2}{m_1 + m_2}\right)$

In this equation, f is the force constant of the spring, which represents the bond strength of the bond, and m_{red} is the *reduced mass* of the system. Use of the reduced mass in this equation allows us to treat the two atoms as one system. Notice that m_{red} appears in the denominator. This means that smaller atoms give bonds that vibrate at higher frequencies, thereby corresponding to a higher wavenumber of absorption. For example, compare the following bonds. The C—H bond involves the smallest atom (H) and therefore appears at the highest wavenumber.

C—H	C—D	C—O	C—Cl
~3000 cm^{-1}	~2200 cm^{-1}	~1100 cm^{-1}	~700 cm^{-1}

While m_{red} appears in the denominator of the equation, the force constant (f) appears in the numerator. This means that stronger bonds will vibrate at higher frequencies, thereby corresponding to a higher wavenumber of absorption. For example, compare the following bonds. The C≡N bond is the strongest of the three bonds and therefore appears at the highest wavenumber.

C≡N	C=N	C—N
~2200 cm^{-1}	~1600 cm^{-1}	~1100 cm^{-1}

Using the two trends shown, we can understand why different types of bonds will appear in different regions of an IR spectrum (Figure 14.6). Single bonds (except for Z—H bonds) appear on the right side of the spectrum (below 1500 cm^{-1}) because single bonds are generally the weakest bonds. Double bonds appear at higher wavenumber (1600–1850 cm^{-1}) because they are stronger than single bonds, while triple bonds appear at even higher wavenumber (2100–2300 cm^{-1}) because they are even stronger than double bonds. And finally, the left side of the spectrum contains signals produced by Z—H bonds (such as C—H, O—H, or N—H), all of which stretch at a high wavenumber because hydrogen has the smallest mass.

FIGURE 14.6
An IR absorbance spectrum divided into regions based on bond strength and atomic mass.

IR spectra can be divided into two main regions (Figure 14.7). The **diagnostic region** (>1500cm^{-1}) generally has fewer peaks and provides the clearest information. This region contains all signals that arise from double bonds, triple bonds, and Z—H bonds. The **fingerprint region** (<1500cm^{-1}) contains signals resulting from the vibrational excitation of most single bonds (stretching and bending). This region generally contains many signals and is more difficult to analyze. What appears like a C—C stretch might in fact be another bond that is bending. This region is

FIGURE 14.7
The diagnostic and fingerprint regions of an IR spectrum.

called the fingerprint region because each compound has a unique pattern of signals in this region, much the way each person has a unique fingerprint. To illustrate this point, compare the spectra for 2-butanol and 2-propanol (Figure 14.8). The diagnostic regions of these compounds are virtually indistinguishable (they both contain characteristic C—H and O—H signals), but the fingerprint regions of these compounds are very different.

FIGURE 14.8
IR spectra for 2-butanol and 2-propanol.

Effect of Hybridization States on Wavenumber of Absorption

In this section, we saw that bonds to hydrogen (such as C—H bonds) appear on the left side of an IR spectrum (high wavenumber). We will now compare various kinds of C—H bonds.

The wavenumber of absorption for a C—H bond is very much dependent on the hybridization state of the carbon atom. Compare the following three C—H bonds:

Of the three bonds shown, the C_{sp}—H bond produces the highest energy signal (~3300 cm^{-1}), while a C_{sp^3}—H bond produces the lowest energy signal (~2900 cm^{-1}). To understand this trend, we must revisit the shapes of the hybridized atomic orbitals (Figure 14.9). As illustrated, *sp* orbitals have more

FIGURE 14.9
The shapes of atomic orbitals.

s character than the other hybridized atomic orbitals, and therefore *sp* orbitals more closely resemble *s* orbitals. Compare the shapes of the hybridized atomic orbitals and note that the electron density of an *sp* orbital is closest to the nucleus (much like an *s* orbital). As a result, a C_{sp}—H bond will be shorter than other C—H bonds. Compare the bond lengths of the following three C—H bonds:

The C_{sp}—H bond has the shortest bond length and is therefore the strongest bond. The C_{sp^3}—H bond has the longest bond length and is therefore the weakest bond. Compare the spectra of an alkane, an alkene, and an alkyne (Figure 14.10). In each case, we draw a line at 3000 cm^{-1}.

FIGURE 14.10
The relevant portions of the IR spectra for an alkane, an alkene, and an alkyne.

All three spectra have signals to the right of the line, resulting from C_{sp^3}—H bonds. The key is to look for any signals to the left of the line. An alkane does not have a signal to the left of 3000 cm^{-1}. An alkene has a signal at 3100 cm^{-1}, and an alkyne has a signal at 3300 cm^{-1}. But be careful—the absence of a signal to the left of 3000 cm^{-1} does *not* necessarily indicate the absence of a double bond or triple bond in the compound. Tetrasubstituted double bonds do not possess any C_{sp^2}—H bonds, and internal triple bonds also do not possess any C_{sp}—H bonds.

Effect of Resonance on Wavenumber of Absorption

We will now consider the effects of resonance on the wavenumber of absorption. As an illustration, compare the carbonyl groups (C═O bonds) in the following two compounds:

The second compound is called an unsaturated, conjugated ketone. It is *unsaturated* because of the presence of a C═C bond (we will see more on this terminology later in this chapter), and it is **conjugated** because the π bonds are separated from each other by exactly one σ bond. We will explore

conjugated π systems in more detail in Chapter 16. For now, we will just analyze the effect of conjugation on the IR absorption of the carbonyl group. As shown, the carbonyl group of an unsaturated, conjugated ketone produces a signal at lower wavenumber (1680 cm^{-1}) than the carbonyl group of a saturated ketone (1720 cm^{-1}). In order to understand why, we must draw resonance structures for each compound. Let's begin with the ketone.

Ketones have two significant resonance structures. The carbonyl group is drawn as a double bond in the first resonance structure, and it is drawn as a single bond in the second resonance structure. This means that the carbonyl group has some double-bond character and some single-bond character. In order to determine the nature of this bond, we must consider the contribution from each resonance structure. In other words, does the carbonyl group have more double-bond character or more single-bond character? The second resonance structure exhibits charge separation as well as a carbon atom (C+) that lacks an octet of electrons. For both of these reasons, the second resonance structure contributes only a small amount of character to the overall resonance hybrid. Therefore, the carbonyl group of a ketone has mostly double-bond character.

Now consider the resonance structures for a conjugated, unsaturated ketone.

Conjugated, unsaturated ketones have three resonance structures rather than two. In the third resonance structure, the carbonyl group is drawn as a single bond. Once again, this resonance structure exhibits charge separation as well as a carbon atom (C+) that lacks an octet of electrons. As a result, this resonance structure also contributes only a small amount of character to the overall resonance hybrid. Nevertheless, this third resonance structure does contribute some character to the overall resonance hybrid, giving this carbonyl group slightly more single-bond character than the carbonyl group of a saturated ketone. With more single-bond character, it is a slightly weaker bond and therefore produces a signal at a lower wavenumber (1680 cm^{-1} rather than 1720 cm^{-1}).

Esters exhibit a similar trend. An ester typically produces a signal at around 1735 cm^{-1}, but conjugated, unsaturated esters produce lower-energy signals, usually around 1710 cm^{-1}. Once again, the carbonyl group of a conjugated, unsaturated ester is a weaker bond, due to resonance.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

14.1 For each of the following compounds, rank the highlighted bonds in terms of increasing wavenumber:

(a)

(b)

14.2 For each of the following compounds, determine whether or not you would expect its IR spectrum to exhibit a signal to the left of 3000 cm^{-1}:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

(f)

14.3 Each of the following compounds contains two carbonyl groups. Identify which carbonyl group will exhibit a signal at lower wavenumber.

14.4 Compare the wavenumber of absorption for the following two C═C bonds. Use resonance structures to explain why the C═C bond in the conjugated compound produces a signal at lower wavenumber.

14.4 Signal Characteristics: Intensity

In an IR spectrum, some signals will be very strong in comparison with other signals on the same spectrum (Figure 14.11). That is, some bonds absorb IR radiation very efficiently, while other bonds are less efficient at absorbing IR radiation. To understand the reason for this, we must consider how

FIGURE 14.11
A comparison of a strong signal and weak signal in an IR spectrum.

the strength of a dipole moment changes when a bond vibrates. Recall that the dipole moment (μ) of a bond is defined by the following equation:

$$\mu = e \times d$$

where e is the strength of the partial charges ($\delta+$ and $\delta-$) and d is the distance separating them. Now consider what happens to the strength of a dipole moment as a bond stretches.

As a bond vibrates, the distance between the partial charges is constantly changing, which means that the strength of the dipole moment also changes with time. A plot of the dipole moment as a function of time shows an oscillating dipole moment (Figure 14.12).

FIGURE 14.12
For a vibrating bond, the strength of the dipole moment oscillates as a function of time.

The dipole moment is an electric field surrounding the bond. So as the dipole moment oscillates, the bond is essentially surrounded by an oscillating electric field, which serves as an antenna (so to speak) for absorbing IR radiation. Since electromagnetic radiation itself is comprised of an oscillating electric field, the bond can absorb a photon because the bond's oscillating electric field interacts with the oscillating electric field of the IR radiation.

The efficiency of a bond at absorbing IR radiation therefore depends on the strength of the dipole moment. For example, compare the following two highlighted bonds:

Each of these bonds has a measurable dipole moment, but they differ significantly in strength. Let's first analyze the carbonyl group (C═O bond). Due to resonance and induction, the carbon atom bears a large partial positive charge, and the oxygen atom bears a large partial negative charge. The carbonyl group therefore has a large dipole moment. Now let's analyze the C═C bond. One carbon atom is connected to alkyl groups, while the other carbon atom is connected to hydrogen atoms. As such, the two carbon atoms of this C═C bond are not electronically identical, so there will be a small dipole moment.

The oscillating electric field associated with the carbonyl group is much stronger than the oscillating electric field associated with the C═C bond (Figure 14.13). Therefore, the carbonyl group

FIGURE 14.13
A comparison of the oscillating electric fields for a C═O bond and a C═C bond.

functions as a better antenna for absorbing IR radiation. That is, the carbonyl group is more efficient at absorbing IR radiation, producing a stronger signal (Figure 14.14). Carbonyl groups often produce the strongest signals in an IR spectrum, while C═C bonds often produce fairly weak signals. In fact, some alkenes do not even produce any C═C signal at all. For example, consider the IR spectrum of 2,3-dimethyl-2-butene (Figure 14.15). This alkene is symmetrical. That is, the two carbon atoms of this C═C bond are electronically identical, and the bond has no dipole moment at all. As the C═C bond vibrates, there is no change in dipole moment, which means that the bond

FIGURE 14.14
A comparison of the intensities of the signals arising from a C═O bond and a C═C bond.

FIGURE 14.15
An IR spectrum of 2,3-dimethyl-2-butene.

LOOKING AHEAD
You might be wondering why there is more than one signal for these C—H bonds. This question will be answered in Section 14.5.

cannot function as an antenna for absorbing IR radiation. In other words, symmetrical C═C bonds are completely inefficient at absorbing IR radiation, and no signal is observed. The same is true for symmetrical C≡C bonds.

There is one other factor that can contribute significantly to the intensity of signals in an IR spectrum. Consider the group of signals appearing just below 3000 cm^{-1} in Figure 14.15. These signals are associated with the stretching of the C—H bonds in the compound. The intensity of these signals derives from the number of C—H bonds giving rise to the signals. In fact, the signals just below 3000 cm^{-1} are typically among the strongest signals in an IR spectrum, due to the abundance of C—H bonds in many molecules.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

14.5 For each pair of compounds, determine which C═C bond will produce a stronger signal.

14.6 The C═C bond in 2-cyclohexenone (shown below) produces an unusually strong signal. Explain using resonance structures.

14.7 *trans*-2-Butene does not exhibit a signal in the double-bond region of the spectrum (1600–1850 cm^{-1}); however, IR spectroscopy is still helpful in identifying the presence of the double bond. Identify the other signal that would indicate the presence of a C═C bond.

WorldLinks IR Spectroscopy for Testing Blood Alcohol Levels

In this section, we saw that the intensity of a signal in an IR spectrum is dependent on how efficiently a bond absorbs IR radiation. The intensity of the signal is also dependent on other factors, such as the concentration of the sample being analyzed. This fact is used by law enforcement officials to measure blood alcohol levels accurately. One device for measuring blood alcohol levels is called the Intoxilyzer. It is essentially an IR spectrometer that is specifically tuned to measure the intensity of the signals for the C—H bonds in ethanol. For example, the Intoxilyzer 9000 measures the intensity of absorption at the five frequencies illustrated.

A breath sample is analyzed, and the device is able to calculate the concentration of ethanol in the sample based on the intensities of these signals.

14.5 Signal Characteristics: Shape

In this section, we will explore some of the factors that affect the shape of a signal. The shape of the signals in an IR spectrum varies—some are very broad while other signals are very narrow (Figure 14.16).

FIGURE 14.16
A comparison of a broad signal and narrow signal in an IR spectrum.

Effects of Hydrogen Bonding

Alcohols exhibit hydrogen bonding, as discussed in Section 12.1. One effect of H bonding is to weaken the existing O—H bond.

Concentrated alcohols give rise to broad signals because of this weakening effect. At any given moment in time, the O—H bond in each molecule is weakened to a different extent. As a result, the O—H bonds do not have a consistent bond strength, but rather, there is a *distribution* of bond strengths. That is, some molecules are barely participating in H bonding, while others are participating in H bonding to varying degrees. The result is a broad signal.

The shape of an OH signal is different when the alcohol is diluted in a solvent that cannot form hydrogen bonds with the alcohol. In such an environment, it is likely that the O—H bonds will not participate in an H-bonding interaction. The result is a narrow signal. When the solution is neither very concentrated nor very dilute, two signals are observed. The molecules that are not participating in H bonding will give rise to a narrow signal, while the molecules participating in H bonding will give rise to a broad signal. As an example, consider the spectrum of 2-butanol in which both signals can be observed (Figure 14.17). When O—H bonds do not participate in H bonding, they generally produce a signal at approximately 3600 cm^{-1}. That signal can be seen in the spectrum. When O—H bonds participate in H bonding, they generally produce a broad signal between 3200 and 3600 cm^{-1}. That signal can also be seen in the spectrum. Depending on the conditions, an alcohol will give a broad signal, or a narrow signal, or both.

FIGURE 14.17
An IR spectrum of 2-butanol.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

14.8 As explained previously, the concentration of an alcohol can be selected such that both a broad signal and a narrow signal appear simultaneously. In such cases, the broad signal is always to the *right* of the narrow signal, never to the left. Explain.

Carboxylic acids exhibit similar behavior, only more pronounced. For example, consider the spectrum of butyric acid (Figure 14.18). Notice the very broad signal on the left side of the spectrum,

FIGURE 14.18
An IR spectrum of butyric acid.

extending from 2200 to 3600 cm^{-1}. This signal is so broad that it extends over the usual C—H signals that appear around 2900 cm^{-1}. This very broad signal, characteristic of carboxylic acids, is a result of H bonding. The effect is more pronounced than alcohols, because molecules of the carboxylic acid can form two hydrogen-bonding interactions, resulting in a dimer.

The IR spectrum of a carboxylic acid is easy to recognize, because of the characteristic broad signal that covers nearly one-third of the spectrum. This broad signal is also accompanied by a broad C═O signal just above 1700 cm^{-1}.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

14.9 For each of the following IR spectra, identify whether it is consistent with the structure of an alcohol, a carboxylic acid, or neither. Explain.

Amines: Symmetrical vs. Asymmetrical Stretching

There is one other important factor in addition to H bonding that affects the shape of a signal. Consider the difference in shape of the N—H signals for primary and secondary amines (Figure 14.19).

FIGURE 14.19
The difference in shape of the signals for a primary amine and a secondary amine.

The primary amine exhibits two signals: one at 3350 cm^{-1} and the other at 3450 cm^{-1}. In contrast, the secondary amine exhibits only one signal. It might be tempting to explain this by arguing that each N—H bond gives rise to a signal, and therefore a primary amine gives two signals because it has two N—H bonds. Unfortunately, the explanation is not quite that simple. In fact, both N—H bonds of a single molecule will together produce only one signal. The reason for the appearance of two signals is more accurately explained by considering the two possible ways in which the entire NH_2 group can vibrate. The N—H bonds can be stretching in phase with each other, called **symmetric stretching**, or they can be stretching out of phase with each other, called **asymmetric stretching**.

Symmetric stretching Asymmetric stretching

At any given moment in time, approximately half of the molecules will be vibrating symmetrically, while the other half will be vibrating asymmetrically. The molecules vibrating symmetrically will absorb a particular frequency of IR radiation to promote a vibrational excitation, while the molecules vibrating asymmetrically will absorb a different frequency. In other words, one of the signals is produced by half of the molecules, and the other signal is produced by the other half of the molecules.

For a similar reason, the C—H bonds of a CH_3 group (appearing just below 3000 cm^{-1} in an IR spectrum) generally give rise to a series of signals, rather than just one signal. These signals arise from the various ways in which a CH_3 group can be excited.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

14.10 For each of the following IR spectra, determine whether it is consistent with the structure of a ketone, an alcohol, a carboxylic acid, a primary amine, or a secondary amine. Explain your reasoning.

14.11 Carefully consider the structure of 2,3-dimethyl-2-butene. There are twelve C_{sp^3}—H bonds, and they are all identical. Nevertheless, there is more than one signal just to the right of 3000 cm^{-1} in the IR spectrum of this compound. Can you offer an explanation?

14.6 Analyzing an IR Spectrum

Table 14.2 is a summary of useful signals in the diagnostic region of an IR spectrum as well as some useful signals in the fingerprint region.

When analyzing an IR spectrum, the first step is to draw a line at 1500 cm^{-1}. Focus on any signals to the left of this line (the diagnostic region). In doing so, it will be extremely helpful if you can identify the following regions:

- Double bonds: 1600–1850 cm^{-1}
- Triple bonds: 2100–2300 cm^{-1}
- Z—H bonds: 2700–4000 cm^{-1}

TABLE 14.2 IMPORTANT SIGNALS IN IR SPECTROSCOPY

USEFUL SIGNALS IN THE DIAGNOSTIC REGION

STRUCTURAL UNIT	FREQUENCY (cm^{-1})
Single Bonds (Z—H)	
	3200–3600 (broad)
	2200–3600 (very broad)
	3350–3500
	~3300
	3000–3100
	2850–3000
	2750 and 2850 (two weak signals)
Double Bonds	
	~1650–1820 (strong) — See below
	1600–1700
	1450–1600 1650–2000 — Discussed in Chapter 17
Triple Bonds	
	2100–2200
	2200–2300

C=O Double Bonds (values shown here will be lower if the C=O bond is conjugated)

Anhydride	Acid chloride	Ester	Aldehyde	Ketone	Carboxylic acid	Amide
~1820 and ~1760	~1790	~1735	~1730	~1720	~1715	~1650

USEFUL SIGNALS IN THE FINGERPRINT REGION

STRUCTURAL UNIT	FREQUENCY (cm^{-1})
	1250–1350
	1000–1100
	1000–1200
	600–800
	500–600

The carbonyl (C═O) absorption should never be overlooked, because it is typically the strongest (most intense) signal in the IR spectrum. Most carbonyl groups absorb just above 1700 cm^{-1}, with the exact frequency depending on the functional group to which the carbonyl belongs. Anhydrides and acid chlorides absorb at a higher wavenumber (~1800 cm^{-1}), and amides have the lowest frequency absorption (~1650 cm^{-1}). Therefore, 1700 cm^{-1} is a good, general number to keep in mind when checking for the presence of a C═O signal. The C═O signals given in Table 14.2 are approximate frequencies, and there is much overlap in the various ranges observed for each functional group. Recall that the given C═O frequencies would all be lowered by conjugation, so any carbonyl attached to a benzene ring or an alkene will be found approximately 20–40 cm^{-1} lower than usual.

When analyzing an IR spectrum, also remember that each signal appearing in the diagnostic region will have three characteristics (wavenumber, intensity, and shape). Make sure to analyze all three characteristics.

When looking for Z—H bonds, draw a line at 3000 cm^{-1} and look for signals that appear to the left of the line (Figure 14.20).

FIGURE 14.20
The location of signals arising from several different Z—H bonds.

Signals slightly below 3000 cm^{-1} (just to the right of the line we drew) indicate the presence of sp^3 C—H bonds. Slightly above 3000 cm^{-1} (just to the left of the line we drew) is where we will find absorptions due to sp^2 C—H bonds, such as those found in alkenes or aromatic rings.

SKILLBUILDER

14.1 ANALYZING AN IR SPECTRUM

LEARN the skill

A compound with the molecular formula $C_6H_{10}O$ gives the following IR spectrum:

Identify the structure below that is most consistent with the spectrum:

SOLUTION

Draw a line at 1500 cm^{-1} and focus on the diagnostic region (to the left of the line). Start by looking at the double-bond region and the triple-bond region.

STEPS 1 AND 2
Look for double bonds (1600–1850 cm^{-1}) and triple bonds (2100–2300 cm^{-1}).

There are no signals in the triple-bond region, but there are two signals in the double-bond region. The signal at 1650 cm^{-1} is narrow and weak, consistent with a C═C bond. The signal at 1720 cm^{-1} is broad and strong, consistent with a C═O bond.

STEP 3
Look for Z—H bonds. Draw a line at 3000 cm^{-1}.

Next, look for Z—H bonds. Draw a line at 3000 cm^{-1} and identify if there are any signals to the left of this line.

This spectrum exhibits one signal just above 3000 cm^{-1}, indicating a vinylic C—H bond.

The identification of a vinylic C—H bond is consistent with the observed C═C signal present in the double-bond region (1650 cm^{-1}). There are no other signals above 3000 cm^{-1}, so the compound does not possess any OH or NH bonds.

The little bump between 3400 and 3500 cm^{-1} is not strong enough to be considered a signal. These bumps are often observed in the spectra of compounds containing a C═O bond. The bump occurs at exactly twice the wavenumber of the C═O signal and is called an *overtone* of the C═O signal.

The diagnostic region provides the information necessary to solve this problem. Specifically, the compound must have the following bonds: C═C, C═O, and vinylic C—H. Among the possible choices, there are only two compounds that have these features.

To distinguish between these two possibilities, notice that the second compound is conjugated, while the first compound is *not* conjugated (the π bonds are separated by more than one σ bond). Recall that ketones produce signals at approximately 1720 cm^{-1}, while conjugated ketones produce signals at approximately 1680 cm^{-1}.

In the spectrum provided, the C═O signal appears at 1720 cm^{-1}, indicating that it is not conjugated. The spectrum is therefore consistent with the following compound:

PRACTICE the skill **14.12** Match each compound with the appropriate IR spectrum, and identify the significant signals in each IR spectrum that you used to make your decision.

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

(f)

APPLY the skill

14.13 Chrysanthemic acid can be isolated from chrysanthemum flowers, and it has been used as a chiral agent to help identify the stereochemical configuration of an ant alarm pheromone.[1] The IR spectrum of chrysanthemic acid exhibits five signals above 1500 cm^{-1}. Identify the structural features that correspond to each of these signals.

(+)-*trans*-Chrysanthemic acid

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 14.37, 14.57, 14.59**

14.7 Using IR Spectroscopy to Distinguish between Two Compounds

IR spectroscopy can be used to differentiate between two compounds. This technique is often extremely helpful when performing a reaction in which a functional group is transformed into a different functional group. For example, consider the following reaction:

After running the reaction, it is possible to verify formation of the product by looking for the absence of an O—H signal and the presence of a C═O signal. In order to distinguish two compounds using IR spectroscopy, you must know what to look for in the spectrum of the product.

SKILLBUILDER

14.2 DISTINGUISHING BETWEEN TWO COMPOUNDS USING IR SPECTROSCOPY

LEARN the skill

Identify how IR spectroscopy might be used to monitor the progress of the following reaction.

SOLUTION

STEP 1
For each compound, consider the signals that are expected in its IR spectrum.

Carefully inspect both compounds (reactant and product) and think about what signals each compound would produce in its IR spectrum. It might be helpful to work your way through the various regions of the spectrum and determine if there would be a difference in each region.

Let's begin with the double-bond region (1600–1850 cm^{-1}). Each compound has a C═C bond, but consider the intensity of the expected signals. The reactant has an unsymmetrical C═C bond, while the product has a symmetrical C═C bond.

STEP 2
Determine if any signals will be present in the spectrum of one compound, but will be absent in the spectrum of the other compound.

STEP 3
For each expected signal, compare for any possible differences in wavenumber, intensity, or shape.

The double bond in the reactant has a weak dipole moment because each highlighted carbon atom is in a slightly different electronic environment. A weak signal is therefore expected at 1650 cm^{-1}. In contrast, each highlighted position in the product is connected to two methyl groups, so there is no dipole moment associated with this double bond. It is completely inefficient at absorbing IR radiation, and therefore, it will not produce a signal at 1650 cm^{-1}.

This difference can be used to monitor the progress of the reaction. A drop of the reaction mixture can be removed from the reaction flask at periodic intervals and analyzed in an IR spectrometer. As the product forms, the signal at 1650 cm^{-1} should vanish.

Now let's consider the region containing signals from Z—H bonds (2700–4000 cm^{-1}). Neither of the compounds has an O—H or N—H bond. Both compounds have C_{sp^3}—H bonds, but only the reactant has C_{sp^2}—H bonds.

The product does not have this type of C—H bond. We therefore expect that the reactant will produce a signal at 3100 cm^{-1} while the product will not. Once again, this difference can be used to monitor the progress of the reaction. As the product forms, the signal at 3100 cm^{-1} should vanish.

Our analysis has produced two different ways to distinguish between these compounds. Below are the actual IR spectra of these two compounds with the relevant regions highlighted:

PRACTICE the skill

14.14 Describe how IR spectroscopy might be used to monitor the progress of each of the following reactions:

APPLY the skill

14.15 In Chapter 20, we will explore how nitriles can be converted into carboxylic acids. How would you use IR spectroscopy to monitor the progress of this reaction?

14.16 A ketone was treated with lithium aluminum hydride followed by H_3O^+. Explain what you would look for in the IR spectrum of the product to verify that the expected reaction had occurred. Identify which signal(s) should be present and which signal(s) should be absent.

14.17 When 1-chlorobutane is treated with sodium hydroxide, two products can be formed. Identify the two products and explain how these products could be distinguished using IR spectroscopy.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 14.33–14.36, 14.42d, 14.51, 14.62, 14.63**

14.8 Introduction to Mass Spectrometry

In the beginning of this chapter, we defined spectroscopy as the study of the interaction between matter and electromagnetic radiation. In contrast, **mass spectrometry** is the study of the interaction between matter and an energy source other than electromagnetic radiation. Mass spectrometry is used primarily to determine the molecular weight and molecular formula of a compound.

In a **mass spectrometer**, a compound is first vaporized and converted into ions, which are then separated and detected. The most common ionization technique involves bombarding the compound with high-energy electrons. These electrons carry an extraordinary amount of energy, usually around 1600 kcal/mol, or 70 electron volts (eV). When a high-energy electron strikes the molecule, it causes one of the electrons in the molecule to be ejected. This technique, called **electron impact ionization** (**EI**), generates a high-energy intermediate that is both a radical and a cation.

It is a radical because it has an unpaired electron, and it is a cation because it bears a positive charge as a result of losing an electron. The mass of the ejected electron is negligible compared to the mass of the molecule, so the mass of the radical cation is essentially equivalent to the mass of the original molecule. This radical cation, symbolized by $(M)^{+\bullet}$, is called the **molecular ion**, or the **parent ion**. The molecular ion is often very unstable and is susceptible to **fragmentation**, which generates two distinct fragments. Most commonly, one fragment carries the unpaired electron, while the other fragment carries the charge.

In this way, the ionization process generates many different cations—the molecular ion as well as many different carbocation fragments. All of these ions are accelerated and then sent through a magnetic field, where they are deflected in curved paths (Figure 14.21).

FIGURE 14.21
A schematic of a mass spectrometer.

The uncharged radical fragments are not deflected by the magnetic field and are therefore not detected by the mass spectrometer. Only the molecular ion and the cationic fragments are deflected. Smaller ions are deflected more than larger ions, and ions with multiple charges are deflected more than ions with a charge of +1. In this way, the cations are separated by their **mass-to-charge ratio** (*m/z*). The charge (*z*) on most ions is +1, and therefore, *m/z* is effectively a measure of the mass (*m*) of each cation. A plot is then generated, called a **mass spectrum**, which shows the relative abundance of each cation that was detected. Figure 14.22 shows a mass spectrum of methane (a), as well

(a)

(b)

MASS SPECTRUM DATA

m/z	RELATIVE HEIGHT (%)
12	1.0
13	3.9
14	9.2
15	85.0
16	100 (base peak)
17	1.1

FIGURE 14.22
A mass spectrum of methane.

as the corresponding mass spectral data (b). The tallest peak in the spectrum is assigned a relative value of 100% and is called the **base peak**. The height of every other peak is then described relative to the height of the base peak. In the case of methane, the molecular ion peak is the base peak, but this is not always the case for other compounds. In the mass spectra of larger compounds, it is very common for one of the fragments to produce the tallest peak. In such a case, the molecular ion peak is not the base peak. We will see examples of this in the upcoming sections.

In the spectrum of methane, the peaks below 16 are formed by fragmentation of the molecular ion. Methane is a small molecule, and there are very few ways for the molecular ion to fragment. There are only C—H bonds, so fragmentation of methane simply involves the loss of hydrogen atoms.

The loss of a hydrogen atom produces a carbocation fragment with $m/z = 15$. The mass spectrum of methane (Figure 14.22) indicates that this fragment is almost as abundant as the molecular ion itself. This carbocation can then lose another hydrogen atom, resulting in a new fragment with $m/z = 14$, although this new fragment is not very abundant, as can be seen on the spectrum. This process can continue until all four hydrogen atoms have been lost, giving rise to a series of peaks with m/z values ranging from 12 to 15.

We have explained all but one of the peaks in the mass spectrum of methane. Notice that there is a peak $m/z = 17$. This peak, called the $(M+1)^{+\bullet}$ peak, will be discussed in more detail in Section 14.10.

WorldLinks Mass Spectrometry for Detecting Explosives

Mass spectrometry is an incredibly important tool that has found a broad array of applications. The following is a summary of some major applications of mass spectrometry, categorized by the industry in which they are applied:

- *Pharmaceutical*: drug discovery, drug metabolism, reaction monitoring
- *Biotechnology*: amino acid sequencing, analysis of macromolecules
- *Clinical*: neonatal screening, hemoglobin analysis
- *Environmental*: drug testing, water quality testing, contamination level measurements in food
- *Geological*: evaluation of oil compositions
- *Forensic*: explosive detection

Significant advances have taken place in developing the field of mass spectrometry for use in detecting explosive materials at airports. In a post-9/11 world, there is a great demand for devices that can accurately and reliably detect the presence of explosive materials that might be present in a traveler's luggage or carry-on bags. Specialized mass spectrometers, called *ion mobility spectrometers*, are now being utilized at hundreds of major airports in U.S. cities. These devices collect chemicals from the surface of a traveler's luggage, subject these chemicals to a process that converts them into ions, and then measures the speed of these ions as they pass through an electric field. These spectrometers are designed to detect the presence of any ions that move at a speed consistent with known explosive materials. Several recent advances have

made this possible, and new techniques are constantly being developed as this is an area of significant ongoing research. One such technique, developed by researchers at Purdue University, enables the acquisition of chemicals from the surface of luggage in just a few seconds. This method utilizes a technique called *desorption electrospray ionization (DESI)*, in which the surface of the suitcase is sprayed with a gaseous mixture that dislodges any residual explosive compounds that may be present on the surface of the suitcase as a result of someone loading the suitcase with explosives. The gaseous mixture is then sucked into a mass spectrometer where it can be analyzed in seconds. Many other advances in this field are emerging each year, and the role of mass spectrometry in explosive detection is likely to undergo further improvement in the years to come.

Monalyn Gracia/Corbis/VCG/Getty Images

14.9 Analyzing the $(M)^{+\bullet}$ Peak

For some compounds, the $(M)^{+\bullet}$ peak is the base peak. Consider, for example, the mass spectrum of benzene (Figure 14.23). Clearly, the molecular ion ($m/z = 78$) is not very susceptible to fragmentation, as it is the most abundant ion to pass through the spectrometer. This is generally not the case. Most compounds will easily fragment, and the $(M)^{+\bullet}$ peak will not be the most abundant ion. For example, consider the mass spectrum of pentane (Figure 14.24). In the mass spectrum of pentane, the $(M)^{+\bullet}$ peak (at $m/z = 72$) is very small indeed. In this case, the fragment at $m/z = 43$ is the most abundant ion, and that peak is therefore called the base peak and assigned a value of 100%. In some cases, it is possible for the $(M)^{+\bullet}$ peak to be entirely absent, if it is particularly susceptible to fragmentation. In such cases, there are more gentle methods of ionization (other than EI) that allow the parent ion to survive long enough to pass through the spectrometer. We will briefly explore one of those methods later in this chapter.

FIGURE 14.23
A mass spectrum of benzene.

FIGURE 14.24
A mass spectrum of pentane.

When analyzing a mass spectrum, the first step is to look for the $(M)^{+\bullet}$ peak, because it indicates the molecular weight of the molecule. This technique can be used to distinguish compounds. For example, compare the molecular weights of pentane and of 1-pentene.

Pentane has 5 carbon atoms ($5 \times 12 = 60$) and 12 hydrogen atoms ($12 \times 1 = 12$) and therefore a molecular weight of 72. In contrast, 1-pentene only has 10 hydrogen atoms and therefore has a molecular

weight of 70. As a result, we expect the mass spectrum of pentane to exhibit a molecular ion peak at $m/z = 72$, while the mass spectrum of 1-pentene should exhibit a molecular ion peak at $m/z = 70$.

Useful information can also be obtained by analyzing whether the molecular weight of the parent ion is odd or even. An odd molecular weight generally indicates an odd number of nitrogen atoms in the compound, while an even molecular weight indicates either the absence of nitrogen or an even number of nitrogen atoms. This is called the **nitrogen rule**, and it is illustrated in the following examples:

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

14.18 Explain how you would distinguish between each pair of compounds using mass spectrometry.

14.19 For each of the following compounds, use the nitrogen rule to determine whether the molecular weight should be even or odd. Then calculate the expected m/z value for the molecular ion.

14.10 Analyzing the $(M+1)^{+\bullet}$ Peak

Recall from your general chemistry course that isotopes differ from each other only in the number of neutrons. For example, carbon has three isotopes: ^{12}C (called carbon 12), ^{13}C (called carbon 13), and ^{14}C (called carbon 14). Each of these isotopes has six protons and six electrons, but they differ in their number of neutrons. They have six, seven, and eight neutrons, respectively. All of these isotopes are found in nature, but ^{12}C is the most abundant, constituting 98.9% of all carbon atoms found on Earth. The second most abundant isotope of carbon is ^{13}C, constituting approximately 1.1% of all carbon atoms. The amount of ^{14}C found in nature is very small (0.0000000001%).

In a mass spectrometer, each individual molecule is ionized and then passed through the magnetic field. When methane is analyzed, 98.9% of the molecular ions will contain a ^{12}C atom, while only 1.1% will contain a ^{13}C atom. The latter group of molecular ions is responsible for the observed peak at $(M+1)^{+\bullet}$. The relative height of this peak is approximately 1.1% as tall as the $(M)^{+\bullet}$ peak, just as expected. Larger compounds, containing more carbon atoms, will have a larger $(M+1)^{+\bullet}$ peak. For example, decane has 10 carbon atoms in its structure, so the chances that a molecule of decane will possess one ^{13}C atom are 10 times greater than the chances that a molecule of methane will possess a ^{13}C atom. Consequently, the $(M+1)^{+\bullet}$ peak in the mass spectrum of decane is 11% as tall as the molecular ion peak ($10 \times 1.1\%$). Similarly, the $(M+1)^{+\bullet}$ peak in the mass spectrum of icosane ($C_{20}H_{42}$) is 22% as tall as the molecular ion peak ($20 \times 1.1\%$) (Figure 14.25). Isotopes of other elements also contribute to the $(M+1)^{+\bullet}$ peak, but ^{13}C is the greatest contributor, and therefore, it is generally possible to determine the number of carbon atoms in an unknown compound by comparing the relative heights of the $(M)^{+\bullet}$ peak and the $(M+1)^{+\bullet}$ peak. This piece of information can be very helpful in determining the molecular formula. The following SkillBuilder illustrates this technique.

FIGURE 14.25
The relative heights of the $(M)^{+\bullet}$ and $(M+1)^{+\bullet}$ peaks for decane and icosane.

SKILLBUILDER

14.3 USING THE RELATIVE ABUNDANCE OF THE $(M+1)^{+\bullet}$ PEAK TO PROPOSE A MOLECULAR FORMULA

LEARN the skill

Below is the mass spectrum as well as the tabulated mass spectrum data for an unknown compound. Propose a molecular formula for this compound.

MASS SPECTRUM DATA

m/z	RELATIVE HEIGHT (%)	*m/z*	RELATIVE HEIGHT (%)
15	4.8	42	4.0
26	1.3	43	100 (base peak)
27	10.5	44	2.3
28	1.3	58	10.3
29	1.9	71	11.0
38	1.2	86	20.9 ($M^{+\bullet}$)
39	6.3	87	1.2
41	11.9		

SOLUTION

To solve this problem, it is not necessary to visually inspect the spectrum. The data alone are sufficient. It is important to become accustomed to interpreting data even when the spectrum itself is not provided, much the way pilots learn to fly planes at night using instrument readings.

Let's begin with the molecular ion peak, which appears at $m/z = 86$. Now compare the relative abundance of this peak and the $(M+1)^{+\bullet}$ peak (which appears at $m/z = 87$). The relative height of the $(M+1)^{+\bullet}$ peak is 1.2%, but be careful here. In this case, the molecular ion is not the tallest peak. The tallest peak (base peak) appears at $m/z = 43$. The data indicate that the $(M+1)^{+\bullet}$ peak is 1.2% as tall as the base peak. But we need to know how the $(M+1)^{+\bullet}$ peak compares *to the molecular ion peak*. To do this, we take the relative height of the $(M+1)^{+\bullet}$ peak, divide by the relative height of the $(M)^{+\bullet}$ peak, and then multiply by 100%.

$$\frac{1.2\%}{20.9\%} \times 100\% = 5.7\%$$

STEP 1
Determine the number of carbon atoms in the compound by analyzing the relative abundance of the M+1 peak.

In other words, the $(M+1)^{+\bullet}$ peak is 5.7% as tall as the $(M)^{+\bullet}$ peak.

Recall that each carbon atom in the compound contributes 1.1% to the height of the $(M+1)^{+\bullet}$ peak, so we divide by 1.1% to determine the number of carbon atoms in the compound.

$$\text{Number of C} = \frac{5.7\%}{1.1\%} = 5.2$$

STEP 2
Analyze the mass of the molecular ion to determine if any heteroatoms are present.

Obviously the compound cannot have a fractional number of carbon atoms, so the value must be rounded to the nearest whole number, or 5. This analysis suggests that the unknown compound has five carbon atoms. This information can be useful in determining the molecular formula. The molecular weight is known to be 86, because the molecular ion peak appears at $m/z = 86$. Five carbon atoms equals $5 \times 12 = 60$, so the other elements in the compound must therefore give a total of $86 - 60 = 26$. The molecular formula cannot be C_5H_{26}, because a compound with five carbon atoms cannot have that many hydrogen atoms.

Therefore, we conclude that there must be another element present. The two most common elements in organic chemistry (other than C and H) are nitrogen and oxygen. It cannot be a nitrogen atom, because that would give an odd molecular weight (remember the nitrogen rule). So, we try oxygen. This gives the following possible molecular formula:

$$C_5H_{10}O$$

PRACTICE the skill

14.20 For each of the following, propose a molecular formula for a compound that exhibits the given peaks in its mass spectrum:

(a) $(M)^{+\bullet}$ at $m/z = 72$, relative height = 38.3% of base peak
$(M+1)^{+\bullet}$ at $m/z = 73$, relative height = 1.7% of base peak

(b) $(M)^{+\bullet}$ at $m/z = 68$, relative height = 100% (base peak)
$(M+1)^{+\bullet}$ at $m/z = 69$, relative height = 4.3%

(c) $(M)^{+\bullet}$ at $m/z = 54$, relative height = 100% (base peak)
$(M+1)^{+\bullet}$ at $m/z = 55$, relative height = 4.6%

(d) $(M)^{+\bullet}$ at $m/z = 96$, relative height = 19.0% of base peak
$(M+1)^{+\bullet}$ at $m/z = 97$, relative height = 1.5% of base peak

APPLY the skill

14.21 Every time you stop to smell the roses, you are enjoying the odor of *cis*-rose oxide, a compound that also adds to the rich bouquet of wines.[2] In a mass spectrum of *cis*-rose oxide, the abundance of the $(M)^{+\bullet}$ peak at $m/z = 154$ was 17.8%, and the abundance of the $(M+1)^{+\bullet}$ peak was 2.0% (relative to the base peak). Based on this information, determine which of the structures below is *cis*-rose oxide, and explain your choice.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 14.39, 14.41, 14.53, 14.61**

14.11 Analyzing the $(M+2)^{+\bullet}$ Peak

Most elements have only one dominant isotope. For example, the dominant isotope of hydrogen is ^{1}H (protium), while ^{2}H (deuterium) and ^{3}H (tritium) represent only a small fraction of all hydrogen atoms. Similarly, the dominant isotope of carbon is ^{12}C, while ^{13}C and ^{14}C represent only a small fraction of all carbon atoms. In contrast, chlorine has two major isotopes. One isotope of chlorine, ^{35}Cl, represents 75.8% of all chlorine atoms; the other isotope of chlorine, ^{37}Cl, represents 24.2% of all chlorine atoms. As a result, compounds that contain a chlorine atom will give a characteristically strong $(M+2)^{+\bullet}$ peak. For example, consider the mass spectrum of chlorobenzene (Figure 14.26). The molecular ion appears at $m/z = 112$. The peak at (M+2) ($m/z = 114$) is approximately one-third the height of the parent peak. This pattern is characteristic of compounds containing a chlorine atom.

Compounds containing bromine also give a characteristic pattern. Bromine has two isotopes, ^{79}Br and ^{81}Br, that are almost equally abundant in nature (50.7% and 49.3%, respectively). Compounds containing bromine will therefore have a characteristic peak at (M+2) that is approximately the same height as the molecular ion peak. For example, consider the mass spectrum of bromobenzene (Figure 14.27).

FIGURE 14.26
A mass spectrum of chlorobenzene.

FIGURE 14.27
A mass spectrum of bromobenzene.

The presence of chlorine or bromine in a compound is readily identified by analyzing the height of the $(M+2)^{+\bullet}$ peak and comparing it with the height of the $(M)^{+\bullet}$ peak.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

14.22 In the mass spectrum of bromobenzene (Figure 14.27), the base peak appears at $m/z = 77$.

(a) Does this fragment contain Br? Explain your reasoning.

(b) Draw the cationic fragment that accounts for the base peak.

14.23 Below are mass spectra for four different compounds. Explain whether each of these compounds contains a bromine atom, a chlorine atom, or neither.

14.12 Analyzing the Fragments

The majority of the peaks in a mass spectrum are produced from fragmentation of the molecular ion. In this section, we will explore the characteristic fragmentation patterns for a number of compounds. These patterns are often helpful in identifying certain structural features of a compound, but it is generally not possible to use the fragmentation patterns to determine the entire structure of the compound.

Fragmentation of Alkanes

Consider the different ways in which the molecular ion of pentane can fragment. Pentane has five carbon atoms connected by a series of four C—C bonds. Each of these bonds is susceptible to fragmentation, giving rise to four possible cations (Figure 14.28). Remember that a mass spectrometer

FIGURE 14.28
The various carbocations that can result from the fragmentation of pentane.

does not detect the radical fragments; it only detects the ions. The first cation shown is formed from loss of a methyl radical. The methyl radical has a mass of 15, and when the parent molecular ion (M) loses a methyl radical, the resulting cation appears as a peak at M−15. The second cation is formed from the loss of an ethyl radical (mass 29), so the resulting peak appears at M−29. In a similar way, the other two possible cations appear at M−43 and M−57, corresponding with the loss of a propyl radical and butyl radical, respectively. All four of these cations can be observed in the spectrum of pentane (Figure 14.29). Notice that each one of these four peaks appears in a group of smaller peaks. These smaller peaks are the result of further fragmentation of the carbocations via loss of hydrogen atoms, just as we saw in the spectrum of methane (Figure 14.22). This is the general trend in the mass spectra of most compounds. That is, there are many different possible fragments, each of which gives rise to a group of peaks. This can be very clearly seen in the mass spectrum of icosane, $C_{20}H_{42}$ (Figure 14.30).

FIGURE 14.29
A mass spectrum of pentane.

FIGURE 14.30
A mass spectrum of icosane.

Icosane is a straight-chain hydrocarbon consisting of 20 carbon atoms connected by 19 C—C bonds. Each of these bonds is susceptible to fragmentation to produce a cation that is detected by the mass spectrometer. Each one of these 19 possible carbocations appears in the spectrum as a group of peaks (except for the M−15 peak, which happens to have a very small relative abundance).

When analyzing a fragment peak, the key is to look at its proximity to the molecular ion peak. For example, a signal at M−15 indicates the loss of a methyl group, and a signal at M−29 indicates the loss of an ethyl group. The likelihood of fragmentation increases with the stability of the carbocation formed as well as the stability of the radical that is ejected.

LOOKING BACK
For a review of carbocation stability, see Section 6.11.

For example, look again at the various possible carbocations formed by fragmentation of pentane (Figure 14.28). The carbocation corresponding to M−57 is a methyl carbocation, which is less stable than the other possible carbocations (all of which are primary). That explains why the peak at M−57 is a fairly small peak in the spectrum. In general, fragmentation will occur in all possible locations but will typically favor the formation of the most stable carbocation.

As another example, consider the most likely fragmentation of the following molecular ion:

The most abundant peak in the spectrum of this compound is expected to be at M−43, corresponding with formation of a tertiary carbocation, via loss of a propyl radical. A tertiary carbocation can also be produced via loss of a methyl radical (from the left side of the molecular ion above); however, a methyl radical is less stable than a primary radical. Certainly, all possible fragmentations are observed under the high-energy conditions employed, but the most abundant peak will generally result from formation of the most stable carbocation via expulsion of the most stable possible radical. Therefore, it is generally possible to predict the location of the most abundant peak that is expected in the mass spectrum of a simple alkane or branched alkane.

Fragmentation of Alcohols

The mass spectrum of an alcohol will typically not exhibit a molecular ion peak, because alcohols readily undergo fragmentation in a mass spectrometer. Two fragmentation patterns are commonly observed for alcohols: alpha cleavage and dehydration. During alpha cleavage, a bond to the alpha position of the alcohol is cleaved to form a resonance-stabilized cation and a radical.

Alternatively, alcohols can undergo dehydration via loss of a water molecule.

This fragmentation results from an intramolecular elimination process, which can occur because of the high energy of the parent ion. This fragmentation does not eject a radical, but instead, it ejects a neutral molecule (water). Loss of a neutral molecule produces a new radical cation, which generates a peak at M−18 (because the molecular weight of water is 18). The water molecule itself does not appear on the spectrum, because the spectrometer only detects ions. A signal at M−18 is therefore characteristic of alcohols.

Fragmentation of Amines

Much like alcohols, amines are also observed to undergo alpha cleavage to generate a resonance-stabilized cation and a radical.

Fragmentation of Ketones and Aldehydes

Aldehydes and ketones containing a hydrogen atom at the gamma position generally undergo a characteristic fragmentation called the *McLafferty rearrangement*, which results in the loss of a neutral alkene fragment.

The alkene fragment has an even mass. In contrast, most radical fragments encountered thus far have an odd mass (M−15 for loss of a methyl group, M−29 for loss of an ethyl group, M−43 for loss of a propyl group, etc.). Therefore, the mass spectrum of a ketone or aldehyde often contains a peak at M−*x*, where *x* is an even number.

Some of the most common fragments are listed in Table 14.3.

TABLE 14.3 COMMON FRAGMENTS IN MASS SPECTROMETRY

M−15	Loss of a methyl radical
M−29	Loss of an ethyl radical
M−43	Loss of a propyl radical
M−57	Loss of a butyl radical
M−18	Loss of water (from an alcohol)
M−*x* (where *x* = even number)	McLafferty rearrangement (ketone or aldehyde)

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

14.24 Although 2,2-dimethylhexane has a molecular weight of 114, no peak is observed at $m/z = 114$. The base peak in the mass spectrum occurs at M−57.

(a) Draw the fragmentation responsible for formation of the M−57 ion, and draw the ion.

(b) Explain why this cation is the most abundant ion to pass through the spectrometer.

(c) Explain why no molecular ions survive long enough to be detected.

(d) Can you offer an explanation as to why the M−15 peak is not the base peak?

14.25 Identify two peaks that are expected to appear in the mass spectrum of 3-pentanol. For each peak, identify the fragment associated with the peak.

14.26 Identify the expected base peak in the mass spectrum of 2,2,3-trimethylbutane. Draw the fragment associated with this peak and explain why it corresponds to the base peak.

14.27 The following are mass spectra for the constitutional isomers ethylcyclohexane and 1,1-dimethylcyclohexane. Based on likely fragmentation patterns, match each compound with its spectrum.

14.13 High-Resolution Mass Spectrometry

High-resolution mass spectrometry involves the use of a detector that can measure *m/z* values to at least four decimal places. This technique allows for the determination of the molecular formula of an unknown compound. In order to analyze the data obtained from high-resolution mass spectrometry, we must first review some background information. Specifically, we must discuss why atomic masses are not whole numbers (despite the fact that we have treated them as such until now).

The mass of an atom is approximately equal to the mass of its protons plus the mass of its neutrons, because the mass of the electrons is negligible compared to the mass of the protons and neutrons. Originally, the mass of a proton was considered to be the same as the mass of a neutron, resulting in the *relative* atomic weights given in Table 14.4. With this simple model, the atomic

TABLE 14.4 RELATIVE ATOMIC WEIGHTS OF SEVERAL ELEMENTS

ELEMENT	NUMBER OF PROTONS	NUMBER OF NEUTRONS	RELATIVE ATOMIC WEIGHT
H	1	0	1
He	2	2	4
C	6	6	12
N	7	7	14
O	8	8	16

weights appear as whole numbers. These are the numbers we have used in this chapter so far, and they are a good approximation. But they are not accurate for two reasons:

1. Protons do not have exactly the same mass as neutrons:

$$\text{one proton} = 1.6726 \times 10^{-24}\ \text{g}$$
$$\text{one neutron} = 1.6749 \times 10^{-24}\ \text{g}$$

As a result, a helium atom (which has two protons and two neutrons) is not exactly four times the weight of a hydrogen atom (which has one proton).

2. Protons repel each other but will nevertheless bind together in the nuclei of atoms under the influence of the strong nuclear force. These protons possess an enormous amount of potential energy, which is achieved at the expense of some mass. According to Einstein's famous equation ($E = mc^2$), matter and energy are interconvertible. When protons bind together to form the nucleus of an atom, some of their mass is converted into potential energy. As a result, two bound protons will have less mass than two individual protons. This explains why carbon, which has six protons and six neutrons, is less than six times the mass of a deuterium atom, which has one proton and one neutron.

For the two reasons given, atomic masses are not whole numbers. For reporting atomic mass, chemists use the **atomic mass unit** (**amu**), which is equivalent to 1 g divided by Avogadro's number:

$$1 \text{ amu} = \frac{1 \text{ g}}{6.02214 \times 10^{23}} = 1.6605 \times 10^{-24} \text{g}$$

Avogadro's number (which is also called a *mole*) was previously defined as the number of atoms in exactly 12 g of ^{12}C, but in 2018, Avogadro's number was redefined as exactly $6.02214076 \times 10^{23}$. Since the value of 1 amu is determined by Avogradro's number, which was originally defined with respect to ^{12}C, the result is that ^{12}C is the only element with an atomic mass that is a whole number. One atom of ^{12}C has an atomic mass of exactly 12 amu, by definition.

Based on this definition, other isotopes of carbon can be precisely measured using high-resolution mass spectrometry, in which the detector can measure *m/z* values to four decimal places. For example, when carbon atoms are passed through a high-resolution mass spectrometer, three peaks are observed: one peak representing the ^{12}C atoms, one smaller peak representing the ^{13}C atoms, and one very small peak representing the ^{14}C atoms. By defining the ^{12}C peak as exactly 12.0000 amu, the other two peaks are measured at $m/z = 13.0034$ amu and $m/z = 14.0032$ amu. In this way, the isotopes of each element can be accurately "weighed," giving the values in Table 14.5.

TABLE 14.5 RELATIVE ATOMIC MASS AND ABUNDANCE OF SEVERAL ELEMENTS

ISOTOPE	RELATIVE ATOMIC MASS (amu)	ABUNDANCE IN NATURE	ISOTOPE	RELATIVE ATOMIC MASS (amu)	ABUNDANCE IN NATURE
^{1}H	1.0078	99.99%	^{16}O	15.9949	99.76%
^{2}H	2.0141	0.01%	^{17}O	16.9991	0.04%
^{3}H	3.0161	<0.01%	^{18}O	17.9992	0.20%
^{12}C	12.0000	98.93%	^{35}Cl	34.9689	75.78%
^{13}C	13.0034	1.07%	^{37}Cl	36.9659	24.22%
^{14}C	14.0032	<0.01%	^{79}Br	78.9183	50.69%
^{14}N	14.0031	99.63%	^{81}Br	80.9163	49.31%
^{15}N	15.0001	0.37%			

Note: Data obtained from the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST).

The values that typically appear on a periodic table are the weighted averages for each element, or **standard atomic weight**, which takes into account isotopic abundance. For example, the standard atomic weight of carbon is 12.011 g/mol (rather than 12.0000 g/mol), which is a weighted average of the various isotopes based on their abundance in nature. With high-resolution mass spectrometry, the values on the periodic table are irrelevant, because each molecular ion (or cationic fragment) passes through the spectrometer individually and strikes the detector in a particular location that is dependent on which isotopes are present in that specific molecule. The majority of the ions that strike the detector will be comprised of the most abundant isotopes (^{1}H, ^{12}C, ^{14}N, and ^{16}O). Therefore, for purposes of interpreting the data from high-resolution mass spectrometry, the values in Table 14.5 must be used, rather than the values on the periodic table.

Now we are ready to see how high-resolution mass spectrometry can reveal the molecular formula of an unknown compound. As an example, compare the following two compounds:

C_5H_8O (MW=**84**) C_6H_{12} (MW=**84**)

Both of these compounds have the same molecular weight when rounded to the nearest whole number. The low-resolution mass spectrum of each compound is therefore expected to give a molecular ion peak at $m/z = 84$. However, with high-resolution mass spectrometry, the molecular ion peaks of these compounds can be differentiated. The calculations for each compound are as follows:

$$C_5H_8O = (5 \times 12.0000) + (8 \times 1.0078) + (1 \times 15.9949) = \mathbf{84.0573}\ \text{amu}$$
$$C_6H_{12} = (6 \times 12.0000) + (12 \times 1.0078) = \mathbf{84.0936}\ \text{amu}$$

When measured to four decimal places, these compounds do not have the same mass, and the difference is detectable. In a high-resolution mass spectrometer, the molecular ion for the first compound will appear near $m/z = 84.0573$, while the molecular ion of the second compound will appear near $m/z = 84.0936$. In this way, the molecular formula of an unknown compound can be determined via high-resolution mass spectrometry. The mass of the molecular ion is measured accurately, and a simple computer program can then calculate the correct molecular formula. The computer program is not entirely necessary, because published data tables can be cross-referenced to find the matching molecular formula.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

14.28 Explain how you would distinguish between each pair of compounds using high-resolution mass spectrometry.

(a)

(b)

14.29 Explain how you would distinguish between each pair of compounds in Problem 14.28 using IR spectroscopy.

14.14 Gas Chromatography–Mass Spectrometry

Mass spectrometry is ideally suited for analyzing pure compounds. However, when dealing with a mixture that contains several compounds, the compounds must first be separated from each other and then individually injected into the mass spectrometer to yield different spectra. This process has been greatly simplified by the advent of the **gas chromatograph–mass spectrometer** (GC-MS), often called "GC mass spec." This powerful diagnostic tool combines a gas chromatograph with a mass spectrometer (Figure 14.31). First, the mixture of compounds is separated in the gas

FIGURE 14.31
A schematic of a gas chromatograph–mass spectrometer.

chromatograph and then each compound is analyzed sequentially by the mass spectrometer. The gas chromatograph is comprised of a long, narrow tube containing a viscous, high-boiling liquid on a solid support, called the *stationary phase*. The tube is contained in an oven, allowing the temperature to be controlled. A syringe is used to inject the sample into the gas chromatograph where it is vaporized, mixed with an inert gas, and then carried through the tube. The various compounds in

FIGURE 14.32
An example of a chromatogram, showing five different compounds, each with a unique retention time.

the mixture travel through the stationary phase at different rates based on their boiling points and their affinity for the stationary phase. Each compound in the mixture generally exhibits a unique **retention time**, which is the amount of time required for it to exit from the gas chromatograph. In this way, the compounds are separated from each other based on their different retention times. A plot, called a **chromatogram**, identifies the retention time of each compound in the mixture. The chromatogram in Figure 14.32 shows five different compounds exiting the gas chromatograph at different times. Each of these compounds is then passed through the mass spectrometer where its molecular weight can be measured.

GC–MS analysis is often used for drug screening, which can be performed on a urine sample. The organic compounds present in the urine are first extracted and then injected into the gas chromatograph. Each specific drug has a unique retention time, and its identity can be verified via mass spectrometry. This technique is used to test for marijuana, illegal steroids, and many other illegal drugs.

14.15 Mass Spectrometry of Large Biomolecules

Until about 30 years ago, mass spectrometry was limited to compounds with molecular weights under 1000 amu. Compounds with higher molecular weights could not be vaporized without undergoing decomposition. Over the last 30 years, a number of new techniques have emerged, expanding the scope of mass spectrometry. One such technique, called **electrospray ionization (ESI)**, is used most often for large molecules such as proteins and nucleic acids. In this technique, the compound is first dissolved in a polar solvent and then sprayed via a high-voltage needle into a vacuum chamber. The tiny droplets of solution become charged by the needle, and subsequent evaporation forms gas-phase molecular ions that typically carry multiple charges. The resulting ions are then passed through a mass spectrometer and the *m/z* value for each ion is recorded. This technique has proven to be extremely effective for acquiring mass spectra of large biologically important compounds, particularly because the molecular ions formed generally do not undergo fragmentation. For the development of the ESI technique, Dr. John Fenn (Yale University) shared the 2002 Nobel Prize in Chemistry.

BioLinks | Medical Applications of Mass Spectrometry

Mass spectrometry is currently being used in a variety of medical applications, several of which are described below.

Metabolic Abnormalities in Newborns

A single drop of a newborn baby's blood can be analyzed via mass spectrometry to reveal approximately 30 genetic abnormalities of metabolism. Mass spectrometry is an effective tool in these cases, because it can be used to detect abnormal blood levels of amino acids (Chapter 25), fatty acids (Chapter 26), and sugars (Chapter 24), all in one analysis of a very small blood sample. For example, phenylketonuria (PKU) is a disease that occurs in approximately 1 in every 14,000 births in the United States. For a baby with this disease, a diet of typical amounts of protein will result in high blood levels of the amino acid phenylalanine and its metabolic products. Untreated, this disease causes severe intellectual disabilities. If, however, the baby is maintained on a diet low in the amino acid phenylalanine promptly after birth, the child can develop with typical intelligence. Virtually all babies in the U.S. are now tested for high blood levels of phenylalanine shortly after birth. This was originally done with the Guthrie test, a laborious and time-consuming test, developed in 1963, utilizing bacterial growth to detect high levels of phenylalanine. The Guthrie test has largely been replaced with mass spectrometry for measuring blood levels of phenylalanine, as it provides rapid and reliable results.

Drug Analysis

Mass spectrometry can be used to assess drug purity and to characterize designer drugs whose structure is not known in advance. Mass spectrometry can also be used for measuring blood or urine levels of both legal and illegal drugs and their metabolites. For example, mass spectrometry can effectively measure blood levels of cotinine, the primary nicotine metabolite that results from tobacco use in saliva, and this application may see increased use as insurance companies base premiums on risk factors such as smoking.

Identification of Pathogenic Bacteria

For patients with bacterial infections, it is often critical to rapidly determine the identity of the bacterium. This is important because knowledge of the identity of a particular bacterial infection enables the administration of the most effective drugs against that particular bacterial strain. If the identity of the bacterial strain cannot be assessed in a timely fashion, the patient might be treated with less effective drugs, allowing the infection to progress in a life-threatening manner. Traditional identification techniques involve the use of cultures, which often require several days and do not always provide a definitive answer.

To overcome this problem, polymerase chain reaction (PCR) techniques have been developed to identify bacterial strains within a few hours of obtaining a sample. Mass spectrometry

may provide an alternative technique for the rapid clinical identification of pathogenic bacterial strains, by using special techniques to identify bacterial proteins specific to various strains of pathogenic bacteria. Like PCR, mass spectrometry can often provide the identity of a bacterial strain within a few hours, instead of days. PCR techniques have reached the market first, but mass spectrometry has the potential for being a serious competitor.

Other Applications

At a medical research level, mass spectrometry is also being used to detect specific protein biomarkers for several types of cancer and can often detect those biomarkers earlier than any other techniques. Mass spectrometry has also been successfully used to separate variants of the lipoproteins involved in cholesterol transport (Chapter 26) that carry different risk of cardiovascular disease.

Although a mass spectrometer is an expensive piece of equipment, it requires only very small samples of blood and gives rapid results (often available in an hour or two, as opposed to days). A mass spectrometer dedicated to running clinical samples in a "high-throughput" fashion can provide definitive information cost effectively and much more rapidly than older techniques.

14.16 Hydrogen Deficiency Index: Degrees of Unsaturation

This chapter explained how mass spectrometry can be used to ascertain the molecular formula of an unknown compound. For example, it is possible to determine that the molecular formula of a compound is $C_6H_{12}O$, but that is still not enough information to draw the structure of the compound. There are many constitutional isomers that share the molecular formula $C_6H_{12}O$. IR spectroscopy can tell us whether or not a double bond is present and whether or not an O—H bond is present. But, once again, that is not enough information to draw the structure of the compound. In Chapter 15, we will learn about NMR spectroscopy, which provides even more information. But before we move on to NMR spectroscopy, there is still one piece of information that can be gleaned from the molecular formula. A careful analysis of the molecular formula can often provide us with a list of possible molecular structures. This skill will be important in the next chapter, because the molecular formula alone offers helpful clues about the structure of the compound. To see how this works, let's begin by analyzing the molecular formula of several alkanes.

Compare the structures of the following alkanes, paying special attention to the number of hydrogen atoms attached to each carbon atom:

In each case there are two hydrogen atoms on the ends of the structures (circled), and there are two hydrogen atoms on every carbon atom. This can be summarized like this:

$$H—(CH_2)_n—H$$

where n is the number of carbon atoms in the compound. Accordingly, the number of hydrogen atoms will be $2n + 2$. In other words, all of the compounds shown have a molecular formula of C_nH_{2n+2}. This is true even for compounds that are branched rather than having a straight chain.

These compounds are said to be **saturated** because they possess the maximum number of hydrogen atoms possible, relative to the number of carbon atoms present.

A compound with a π bond (a double or triple bond) will have fewer than the maximum number of hydrogen atoms. Such compounds are said to be **unsaturated**.

A compound containing a ring will also have fewer than the maximum number of hydrogen atoms, just like a compound with a double bond. For example, compare the structures of 1-hexene and cyclohexane.

1-Hexene (C_6H_{12}) Cyclohexane (C_6H_{12})

Both compounds have the molecular formula C_6H_{12} because both are "missing" two hydrogen atoms [6 carbon atoms require $(2 \times 6) + 2 = 14$ hydrogen atoms]. Each of these compounds is said to have one **degree of unsaturation**. The **hydrogen deficiency index** (**HDI**) is a measure of the number of degrees of unsaturation. A compound is said to have one degree of unsaturation for every two hydrogen atoms that are missing. For example, a compound with the molecular formula C_4H_6 is missing four hydrogen atoms (if saturated, it would be C_4H_{10}), so it has two degrees of unsaturation (HDI = 2).

There are several ways for a compound to possess two degrees of unsaturation: two double bonds, two rings, one double bond and one ring, or one triple bond. Let's explore all of these possibilities for C_4H_6 (Figure 14.33).

FIGURE 14.33
All possible constitutional isomers of C_4H_6.

With this in mind, let's explore how to calculate the HDI when other elements are present in the molecular formula.

1. ***Halogens:*** Compare the following two compounds. Notice that chlorine takes the place of a hydrogen atom. Therefore, for purposes of calculating the HDI, treat a halogen as if it were a hydrogen atom. In other words, C_2H_5Cl should have the same HDI as C_2H_6.

Chloroethane Ethane

2. ***Oxygen:*** Compare the following two compounds. Notice that the presence of the oxygen atom does not affect the expected number of hydrogen atoms. Therefore, whenever an oxygen atom appears in the molecular formula, it should be ignored for purposes of calculating the HDI. In other words, C_2H_6O should have the same HDI as C_2H_6.

Ethanol Ethane

3. ***Nitrogen:*** Compare the following two compounds. Notice that the presence of a nitrogen atom changes the number of expected hydrogen atoms. Therefore, whenever a nitrogen atom appears in the molecular formula, one hydrogen atom must be subtracted from the molecular formula. In other words, C_2H_7N should have the same HDI as C_2H_6.

Ethyl amine Ethane

In summary:

- Halogens: ***Add*** one H for each halogen.
- Oxygen: ***Ignore.***
- Nitrogen: ***Subtract*** one H for each N.

These rules will enable you to determine the HDI for most simple compounds. Alternatively, the following formula can be used:

$$\text{HDI} = \frac{1}{2}(2C + 2 + N - H - X)$$

where C is the number of carbon atoms, N is the number of nitrogen atoms, H is the number of hydrogen atoms, and X is the number of halogens. This formula will work for all compounds containing C, H, N, O, and X.

Calculating the HDI is particularly helpful, because it provides clues about the structural features of the compound. For example, an HDI of zero indicates that the compound cannot have any rings or π bonds. That is extremely useful information when trying to determine the structure of a compound, and it is information that is easily obtained by simply analyzing the molecular formula. Similarly, an HDI of 1 indicates that the compound must have either one double bond ***or*** one ring (but not both). If the HDI is 2, then there are a few possibilities: two rings, two double bonds, one ring and one double bond, or one triple bond. Analysis of the HDI for an unknown compound can often be a useful tool, but only when the molecular formula is known with certainty.

In Chapter 15, we will use this technique often. The following exercises are designed to develop the skill of calculating and interpreting the HDI of an unknown compound whose molecular formula is known.

SKILLBUILDER

14.4 CALCULATING HDI

LEARN the skill

Calculate the HDI for a compound with the molecular formula $C_4H_8ClNO_2$ and identify the structural information provided by the HDI.

SOLUTION

STEP 1 Identify the molecular formula of a hydrocarbon (a compound with only C and H) that will have the same HDI.

The calculation is:

Number of H's:	8
Add 1 for each Cl:	+1
Ignore each O:	0
Subtract 1 for each N:	−1
Total:	8

This compound will have the same HDI as a compound with the molecular formula C_4H_8. To be fully saturated, four carbon atoms would require $(2 \times 4) + 2 = 10$ H's. According to our calculation, two hydrogen atoms are missing, and therefore, this compound has one degree of unsaturation: HDI = 1.

STEP 2 Determine how many hydrogen atoms are missing and assign an HDI.

Alternatively, the following formula can be used:

$$\text{HDI} = \frac{1}{2}(2C + 2 + N - H - X) = \frac{1}{2}(8 + 2 + 1 - 8 - 1) = \frac{2}{2} = 1$$

With one degree of unsaturation, the compound must contain either one ring or one double bond, but not both. The compound cannot have a triple bond, as this would require two degrees of unsaturation.

PRACTICE the skill

14.30 Calculate the degree of unsaturation for each of the following molecular formulas:

(a) C_6H_{10} **(b)** $C_5H_{10}O_2$ **(c)** C_5H_9N **(d)** C_3H_5ClO **(e)** $C_{10}H_{20}$
(f) $C_4H_6Br_2$ **(g)** C_6H_6 **(h)** C_2Cl_6 **(i)** $C_2H_4O_2$ **(j)** $C_{100}H_{200}Cl_2O_{16}$

14.31 Identify the two formulas below that have the same degree of unsaturation.

C_3H_8O $C_3H_5ClO_2$ $C_3H_5NO_2$ C_3H_6

APPLY the skill

14.32 Strigol is an important plant hormone that is released by crops such as rice and sugarcane. Unfortunately for these plants, strigol also activates the germination of any nearby witchweed seeds, resulting in the destruction of the crops by the parasitic weed.[3] Strigol has nineteen carbon atoms. Without counting the hydrogen atoms, determine the HDI of strigol, as well as its molecular formula.

Strigol

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 14.42b, 14.48, 14.49, 14.54–14.56**

REVIEW OF CONCEPTS AND VOCABULARY

SECTION 14.1

- **Spectroscopy** is the study of the interaction between light and matter.
- The **wavelength** of light describes the distance between adjacent peaks of an oscillating field, while the **frequency** describes the number of wavelengths that pass a particular point in space per unit time.
- The energy of each **photon** is determined by its frequency. The range of all possible frequencies is known as the **electromagnetic spectrum**.
- Molecules can store energy in a variety of ways. Each of these forms of energy is quantized.
- The difference in energy (ΔE) between vibrational energy levels is determined by the nature of the bond. If a photon of light possesses exactly this amount of energy, the bond can absorb the photon to promote a **vibrational excitation**.

SECTION 14.2

- There are many different kinds of vibrational excitation, including **stretching** and **bending**.
- IR spectroscopy can be used to identify which functional groups are present in a compound.
- An **absorption spectrum** is a plot that measures the percent transmittance as a function of frequency.
- The location of each signal in an IR spectrum is reported in terms of a frequency-related unit called **wavenumber**.

SECTION 14.3

- The wavenumber of each signal is determined primarily by bond strength and the masses of the atoms sharing the bond.
- The **diagnostic region** contains all signals that arise from double bonds, triple bonds, and Z—H bonds.
- The **fingerprint region** contains signals resulting from the vibrational excitation of most single bonds (stretching and bending).
- A **conjugated** C═O bond will produce a lower energy signal than an unconjugated C═O bond.

SECTION 14.4

- The intensity of a signal is dependent on the dipole moment of the bond giving rise to the signal.
- C═O bonds produce strong signals in an IR spectrum, while C═C bonds often produce fairly weak signals.
- Symmetrical C═C bonds do not produce signals. The same is true for symmetrical triple bonds.

SECTION 14.5

- Concentrated alcohols give rise to broad signals, while dilute alcohols give rise to narrow signals.
- Primary amines exhibit two signals resulting from **symmetric stretching** and **asymmetric stretching**.

SECTIONS 14.6 AND 14.7

- When analyzing an IR spectrum, look for double bonds, triple bonds, and Z—H bonds.
- Every signal has three characteristics—wavenumber, intensity, and shape. Analyze all three.
- When looking for Z—H bonds, identify whether any signals appear to the left of a line drawn at 3000 cm^{-1}.

SECTION 14.8

- **Mass spectrometry** is used to determine the molecular weight and molecular formula of a compound.
- In a **mass spectrometer**, a compound is converted into ions, which are then separated by a magnetic field.
- **Electron impact ionization** (**EI**) involves bombarding the compound with high-energy electrons, generating a radical cation that is symbolized by $(M)^{+\bullet}$ and is called the **molecular ion**, or the **parent ion**.
- The molecular ion is often very unstable and susceptible to **fragmentation**.
- Only the molecular ion and the cationic fragments are deflected, and they are then separated by their **mass-to-charge ratio** (*m/z*).

- A **mass spectrum** shows the relative abundance of each cation detected.
- The tallest peak in a mass spectrum is assigned a relative value of 100% and is called the **base peak**.

SECTION 14.9

- The $(M)^{+\bullet}$ peak may be weak or entirely absent if it is particularly susceptible to fragmentation.
- The $(M)^{+\bullet}$ peak indicates the molecular weight of the molecule.
- According to the **nitrogen rule**, an odd molecular weight indicates an odd number of nitrogen atoms, while an even molecular weight indicates either the absence of nitrogen or an even number of nitrogen atoms.

SECTION 14.10

- The relative heights of the $(M)^{+\bullet}$ peak and the $(M+1)^{+\bullet}$ peak indicate the number of carbon atoms.

SECTION 14.11

- Useful information can be obtained by comparing the relative heights of the $(M)^{+\bullet}$ peak and the $(M+2)^{+\bullet}$ peak. The structure likely contains a chlorine atom if the latter peak is approximately one-third as tall as the former peak. The presence of a bromine atom is indicated when these two peaks are similar in height.

SECTION 14.12

- A signal at M−15 indicates the loss of a methyl group; a signal at M−29 indicates the loss of an ethyl group.
- The likelihood of fragmentation increases with the stability of the carbocation formed.

SECTION 14.13

- The molecular formula of a compound can be determined with **high-resolution mass spectrometry**.
- The **atomic mass unit** (**amu**) is equivalent to 1 g divided by Avogadro's number.
- The **standard atomic weight** is a weighted average that takes into account relative isotopic abundance.

SECTION 14.14

- In a **gas chromatograph–mass spectrometer**, a mixture of compounds is first separated based on their boiling points and affinity for the *stationary phase*. Each compound is then analyzed individually.
- Each compound in the mixture generally exhibits a unique **retention time**, which is plotted on a **chromatogram**.

SECTION 14.15

- **Electrospray ionization** (**ESI**) is used most often for large molecules such as proteins and nucleic acids.

SECTION 14.16

- **Saturated** alkanes have a molecular formula of the form C_nH_{2n+2}.
- A compound possessing a π bond is **unsaturated**.
- Each double bond and each ring represents one **degree of unsaturation**.
- The **hydrogen deficiency index** (**HDI**) is a measure of the number of degrees of unsaturation.

SKILLBUILDER REVIEW

14.1 ANALYZING AN IR SPECTRUM

STEP 1 Look for double bonds between 1600 and 1850 cm^{-1}.	**STEP 2** Look for triple bonds between 2100 and 2300 cm^{-1}.	**STEP 3** Look for Z—H bonds between 2750 and 4000 cm^{-1}.
Guidelines: • C=O bonds produce strong signals. • C=C bonds generally produce weak signals. Symmetrical C=C bonds do not appear at all. • The exact position of a signal indicates subtle factors that affect bond stiffness, such as resonance.	Guidelines: • Symmetrical triple bonds do not produce signals.	Guidelines: • Draw a line at 3000 and look for vinylic or acetylenic C—H bonds to the left of the line. • The shape of an O—H signal is affected by concentration (due to H bonding). • Primary amines exhibit two N—H signals (symmetric and asymmetric stretching).

Try Problems **14.12, 14.13, 14.37, 14.57, 14.59**

14.2 DISTINGUISHING BETWEEN TWO COMPOUNDS USING IR SPECTROSCOPY

STEP 1 For each compound, consider the signals that are expected in its IR spectrum.	**STEP 2** Determine if any signals will be present in the spectrum of one compound, but will be absent in the spectrum of the other compound.	**STEP 3** For each expected signal, compare for any possible differences in wavenumber, intensity, or shape.

Try Problems **14.14–14.17, 14.33–14.36, 14.42d, 14.51, 14.62, 14.63**

14.3 USING THE RELATIVE ABUNDANCE OF THE $(M + 1)^{+\bullet}$ PEAK TO PROPOSE A MOLECULAR FORMULA

STEP 1 Determine the number of carbon atoms in the compound by analyzing the relative abundance of the $(M + 1)^{+\bullet}$ peak:

$$\frac{\left(\dfrac{\text{Abundance of } (M+1)^{+\bullet}\text{ peak}}{\text{Abundance of } (M)^{+\bullet}\text{ peak}}\right) \times 100\%}{1.1\ \%}$$

STEP 2 Analyze the mass of the molecular ion to determine if any heteroatoms (such as oxygen or nitrogen) are present.

Try Problems 14.20, 14.21, 14.39, 14.41, 14.53, 14.61

14.4 CALCULATING HDI

STEP 1 Rewrite the molecular formula "as if" the compound had no elements other than C and H, using the following rules:

- Add one H for each halogen.
- Ignore all oxygen atoms.
- Subtract one H for each nitrogen.

STEP 2 Determine whether any H's are missing. Every two H's represent one degree of unsaturation:

$C_4H_9Cl \longrightarrow C_4H_{10} \longrightarrow$ HDI = 0

$C_4H_8O \longrightarrow C_4H_8 \longrightarrow$ HDI = 1

$C_4H_9N \longrightarrow C_4H_8 \longrightarrow$ HDI = 1

Try Problems 14.30–14.32, 14.42b, 14.48, 14.49, 14.54–14.56

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

• **Included in Answers section**

14.33 • All of the following compounds absorb IR radiation in the range between 1600 and 1850 cm^{-1}. In each case, identify the specific bond(s) responsible for the absorption(s) and predict the approximate wavenumber of absorption for each of those bonds.

14.34 Rank each of the identified bonds in order of increasing wavenumber.

14.35 • Identify the signals you would expect in the diagnostic region of the IR spectrum for each of the following compounds:

14.36 • Identify how IR spectroscopy might be used to monitor the progress of each of the following reactions:

14.37 Identify the characteristic signals that you would expect in the diagnostic region of an IR spectrum of each of the following compounds:

14.38 • Propose a molecular formula for a compound that has one degree of unsaturation and a mass spectrum that displays a molecular ion signal at $m/z = 86$.

14.39 The mass spectrum of an unknown hydrocarbon exhibits an $(M+1)^{+\bullet}$ peak that is 10% as tall as the molecular ion peak. Identify the number of carbon atoms in the unknown compound.

14.40 Match each compound with the appropriate spectrum, and identify features in the spectrum that correlate to the chosen compound.

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

14.41 The sex attractant of the codling moth gives an IR spectrum with a broad signal between 3200 and 3600 cm^{-1} and two signals between 1600 and 1700 cm^{-1}. In the mass spectrum of this compound, the molecular ion peak appears at $m/z = 196$, and the relative abundances of the molecular ion and the $(M+1)^{+\bullet}$ peak are 27.2% and 3.9%, respectively.

(a) What functional groups are present in this compound?

(b) How many carbon atoms are present in the compound?

(c) Based on the information given, propose a molecular formula for the compound.

14.42 Compare the structures of cyclohexane and 2-methyl-2-pentene.

(a) What is the molecular formula of each compound?

(b) What is the HDI of each compound?

(c) Can high-resolution mass spectrometry be used to distinguish between these compounds? Explain.

(d) How would you differentiate between these two compounds using IR spectroscopy?

14.43 The mass spectrum of 1-ethyl-1-methylcyclohexane (MW = 126) shows many fragments, with two in very large abundance. One appears at $m/z = 111$ and the other appears at $m/z = 97$. Identify the structure of each of these fragments.

14.44 Consider the mass spectrum of 2-bromopentane, which exhibits a molecular ion peak at $m/z = 150$.

(a) A fragment appears at M−15. Would you expect a signal at M−13 that is equal in height to the M−15 peak? Explain.

(b) One fragment appears at M−29. Would you expect a signal at M−27 that is equal in height to the M−29 peak? Explain.

(c) One fragment appears at M−79. Would you expect a signal at M−77 that is equal in height to the M−79 peak? Explain.

14.45 When treated with a strong base, 2-bromo-2,3-dimethylbutane will undergo an elimination reaction to produce two products. The choice of base (ethoxide vs. *tert*-butoxide) will determine which of the two products predominates. Draw both products and determine how you could distinguish between them using IR spectroscopy.

14.46 For each of the following, propose a molecular formula that fits the given data:

(a) A hydrocarbon (C_xH_y) with a molecular ion peak at $m/z = 66$.

(b) A compound that absorbs IR radiation at 1720 cm^{-1} and exhibits a molecular ion peak at $m/z = 70$.

14.47 The following is a mass spectrum of octane.

(a) Which peak represents the molecular ion?

(b) Which peak is the base peak?

(c) Draw the structure of the fragment that produces the base peak.

14.48 Calculate the HDI for each molecular formula.

(a) C_4H_6 (b) C_5H_8 (c) $C_{40}H_{78}$ (d) $C_{72}H_{74}$
(e) $C_6H_6O_2$ (f) $C_7H_9NO_2$ (g) $C_8H_{10}N_2O$ (h) $C_5H_7Cl_3$
(i) C_6H_5Br (j) $C_6H_{12}O_6$

14.49 • Propose two possible structures for a compound with the molecular formula C_5H_8 that produces an IR signal at 3300 cm^{-1}.

14.50 Limonene is a hydrocarbon found in the peels of lemons and contributes significantly to the smell of lemons. Limonene has a molecular ion peak at $m/z = 136$ in its mass spectrum, and it has two double bonds and one ring in its structure. What is the molecular formula of limonene?

14.51 Explain how you would use IR spectroscopy to distinguish between 1-bromo-3-methyl-2-butene and 2-bromo-3-methyl-2-butene.

14.52 A dilute solution of 1,3-pentanediol does not produce the characteristic broad O—H IR signal for a dilute alcohol. Rather, it produces a sharp O—H signal that is characteristic of a concentrated alcohol. Explain.

14.53 While ^{13}C is the main contributor to the $(M+1)^{+\bullet}$ peak, there are many other elements that can also contribute to the $(M+1)^{+\bullet}$ peak. For example, there are two naturally occurring isotopes of nitrogen. The most abundant isotope, ^{14}N, represents 99.63% of all nitrogen atoms on Earth. The other isotope, ^{15}N, represents 0.37% of all nitrogen atoms. In a compound with the molecular formula $C_8H_{11}N_3$, if the molecular ion peak has a relative abundance of 24.5%, then what percent abundance do you expect for the $(M+1)^{+\bullet}$ peak?

14.54 Propose all possible structures for a compound with the molecular formula C_4H_8O that exhibits a signal near 1725 cm^{-1} in its IR spectrum.

14.55 Propose all possible structures for a compound with the molecular formula C_4H_8O that exhibits a broad signal between 3200 and 3600 cm^{-1} in its IR spectrum and does not contain any signals between 1600 and 1850 cm^{-1}.

14.56 • Draw the structure of a compound with the molecular formula C_4H_6 that exhibits a signal at 2200 cm^{-1} in its IR spectrum.

ACS-STYLE PROBLEMS (Multiple Choice)

Problems 14.57–14.63 follow the style of the ACS organic chemistry exam. For each of these problems, there will be one correct answer and three distractors.

14.57 • An unknown alcohol was treated with chromic acid to give a product with the following IR spectrum. Which of the following statements must be true?

(a) The unknown compound must be a primary alcohol.
(b) The unknown compound must be a secondary alcohol.
(c) The unknown compound must be a tertiary alcohol.
(d) The unknown compound must be acyclic.

14.58 • Which of the following compounds is most likely to show a prominent peak at M – 29 in its mass spectrum?

(a)
(b)
(c)
(d)

14.59 • Of the following compounds, which best matches the given IR spectrum?

(a)
(b)
(c)
(d)

14.60 • Of the following, which best describes the mass spectrum of bromopropane?

(a) The M+1 peak is approximately equal to the abundance of the molecular ion peak.
(b) The M+1 peak is approximately one-third the abundance of the molecular ion peak.
(c) The M+2 peak is approximately equal to the abundance of the molecular ion peak.
(d) The M+2 peak is approximately one-third the abundance of the molecular ion peak.

14.61 • A compound containing 17 carbon atoms is expected to have an M+1 signal that is what approximate percentage of the molecular ion abundance?

(a) 1.7% (b) 1.9%

(c) 17% (d) 19%

14.62 • How could you use IR spectroscopy to determine if the following reaction was successful?

(a) Look for the appearance of a signal at 3300–3600 cm^{-1} and the disappearance of a signal at 3050 cm^{-1}.

(b) Look for the appearance of a signal at 3050 cm^{-1} and the disappearance of a signal at 1720 cm^{-1}.

(c) Look for the appearance of a signal at 3200–3600 cm^{-1} and the disappearance of a signal at 1720 cm^{-1}.

(d) Look for the appearance of a signal at 1720 cm^{-1} and the disappearance of a signal at 3200–3600 cm^{-1}.

14.63 • Which of the following characteristics of an IR spectrum could be used to distinguish between a ketone and an ester?

(a) The sp^3 C—H stretch will be at a higher wavenumber in the IR spectrum of the ketone.

(b) The O—H stretch will be broader in the IR spectrum of the ester.

(c) A C—O stretch is found only in the IR spectrum of the ester.

(d) A C═O stretch is found only in the IR spectrum of the ketone.

14.64 • Which of the following compounds gives this mass spectrum?

(a) (C_6H_6) (b) (C_6H_8) (c) (C_6H_{12}) (d) (C_6H_4)

INTEGRATED PROBLEMS

14.65 • The following are IR and mass spectra of an unknown compound. Propose at least two possible structures for the unknown compound.

14.66 The following are IR and mass spectra of an unknown compound. Propose at least two possible structures for the unknown compound.

14.67 Consider the following sequence of reactions:

(a) Explain how you could use IR spectroscopy to differentiate between compounds **F** and **G**.

(b) Explain how you could use IR spectroscopy to differentiate between compounds **D** and **E**.

(c) If you wanted to distinguish between compounds **B** and **F**, would it be more suitable to use IR spectroscopy or mass spectrometry? Explain.

(d) Would mass spectrometry be helpful for distinguishing between compounds **A** and **D**? Explain.

14.68 There are five constitutional isomers with the molecular formula C_4H_8. One of the isomers exhibits a particularly abundant signal at M−15 in its mass spectrum. Identify this isomer and explain why the signal at M−15 is so abundant.

14.69 There are four isomers with the molecular formula C_4H_9Cl. Only one of these isomers (compound **A**) has a chiral center. When compound **A** is treated with sodium ethoxide, three products are formed: compounds **B**, **C**, and **D**. Compounds **B** and **C** are diastereomers, with compound **B** being the less stable diastereomer. Provide structures for compounds **A**, **B**, **C**, and **D**. Do you expect compound **D** to exhibit a signal at approximately 1650 cm^{-1} in its IR spectrum? Explain.

14.70 Chloramphenicol is an antibiotic agent isolated from the *Streptomyces venezuelae* bacterium.[4] Predict the expected isotope pattern in the mass spectrum of this compound (the relative heights of the molecular ion peak and surrounding peaks).

Chloramphenicol

14.71 Ephedrine is a bronchodilator and decongestant obtained from the Chinese plant *Ephedra sinica*.[5] A concentrated solution of ephedrine gives an IR spectrum with a broad signal between 3200 and 3600 cm^{-1}. An IR spectrum of a dilute solution of ephedrine is very similar to the IR spectrum of the concentrated solution. That is, the broad signal between 3200 and 3600 cm^{-1} is not transformed into a narrow signal, as we might expect for a compound containing an OH group. Explain.

Ephedrine

14.72 Predict the expected isotope pattern in the mass spectrum of a compound with the molecular formula $C_{90}H_{180}Br_2$. In other words, predict the relative heights of the peaks at M, M + 2, and M + 4.

14.73 Esters contain two C—O bonds and therefore will produce two separate stretching signals in the fingerprint region of an IR spectrum. One of these signals typically appears at approximately 1000 cm^{-1}, while the other appears at approximately 1300 cm^{-1}. Predict which of the two C—O bonds produces the higher energy signal. Using principles that we learned in this chapter (factors that affect the wavenumber of absorption), offer two separate explanations for your choice.

14.74 Treating 1,2-cyclohexanediol with concentrated sulfuric acid yields a product with the molecular formula $C_6H_{10}O$. An IR spectrum of the product exhibits a strong signal at 1720 cm^{-1}. Identify the structure of the product and show a mechanism for its formation.

14.75 Draw the expected isotope pattern that would be observed in the mass spectrum of CH_2BrCl. In other words, predict the relative heights of the peaks at M, M + 2, and M + 4.

14.76 The following ion ($C_{21}H_{15}N_2O_6S^-$) is the proposed structure of a blue fabric dye, based on high-resolution mass spectrometry data.[6] The reported method employed a pulsed laser to desorb dye molecules directly from a sample of dyed fabric. These molecules then entered a high-resolution mass spectrometer in negative ion mode (where anions are detected instead of cations). The resulting spectrum included the following peaks and relative intensities: m/z = 423.0647 (100%), 424.0681 (22.5%), and 425.0605 (4.21%).

(a) Explain the origins and relative abundance of each of these peaks. Note that the two most abundant isotopes of sulfur are ^{32}S (31.9721 amu, 95.02%) and ^{34}S (33.9679 amu, 4.21%).

(b) The mass spectrum also includes a signal at m/z = 425.0715. Explain the origin of this signal.

14.77 Compound **A** exists in equilibrium with its tautomer, compound **B**. An IR spectrum[7] of a mixture of **A** and **B** exhibits four signals in the region 1600–1850 cm^{-1}. These signals appear at 1620, 1660, 1720, and 1740 cm^{-1}.

(a) Identify the source for each of these four signals and provide a justification for the location of the signal at 1660 cm^{-1}.

(b) For most simple ketones, the concentration of the enol tautomer is almost negligible at equilibrium. However, in this case, the concentration of **B** is significant. Provide a justification for this observation.

14.78 The following two isomers were each subjected to mass spectrometric analysis. Some of the significant peaks from each of the two spectra are presented below.[8] Match each isomer (**A**, **B**) to its

corresponding mass spectrometry data (**X**, **Y**) and provide structural assignments for every peak.

Sample **X**, *m/z* = 202, 200, 187, 185, 159, 157, 121
Sample **Y**, *m/z* = 202, 200, 171, 169, 121

A **B**

14.79 Myosmine can be isolated from tobacco, along with several other structurally similar compounds, including nicotine. The originally accepted structure for myosmine was disproven with IR spectroscopy:[9]

Originally accepted structure of myosmine

(a) Explain why the IR spectrum is not consistent with the originally proposed structure.

(b) The discord between the proposed structure and its IR spectrum was resolved by recognizing that myosmine exists primarily as a tautomer of the proposed structure. Draw this tautomer and explain why its structure is more consistent with the observed IR spectrum.

(c) Identify a likely source for the fairly intense signal at 1621 cm^{-1}.

14.80 Compound **1** contains a tetrazole ring (a ring containing four nitrogen atoms), while its constitutional isomer, compound **2**, exhibits an azido group (—N_3). Compounds **1** and **2** rapidly interconvert, and IR spectroscopy provides evidence that the equilibrium greatly favors the tetrazole in this case.[10] Specifically, the IR spectrum of compound **1** lacks a signal in the region 2120–2160 cm^{-1}. Explain why the absence of a signal in this region provides evidence that **1** is favored over **2**.

1 **2**

CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

14.81 The base peak of a low-resolution mass spectrum of cyclohexanone is at *m/z* = 55. A high-resolution mass spectrum reveals that this peak actually consists of two peaks at 55.0183 and 55.0546 with relative intensities of 86.7 and 13.3, respectively.[11] For each of these two peaks, propose a formula for the ion responsible for the peak.

Cyclohexanone

14.82 As part of a study on cyclopropyl derivatives of fatty acids, the following amide was subjected to mass spectrometric analysis.[12] The most abundant peak in the spectrum was found at *m/z* = 113, as a result of a McLafferty rearrangement. Suggest a reasonable structure and mechanism of formation for the ion consistent with the peak at *m/z* = 113.

14.83 Pinolenic acid ($C_{17}H_{29}CO_2H$) has a molecular weight of 278 and is an unbranched carboxylic acid with three *cis* alkene groups. It is found in pine nuts and is sometimes used in weight loss regimens as a hunger suppressant. Not every mass spectrometry technique requires ionization through ejection of single electrons; some instruments rely instead on milder ionization methods such as protonation or deprotonation to form charged species. Mass spectra of pinolenic acid were collected in positive ion mode (using conditions facilitating protonation) and in negative ion mode (using conditions facilitating deprotonation). A small amount of ozone was present in both experiments. Significant peaks in positive ion mode included *m/z* = 279, 211, 171, and 117. In the absence of ozone, however, only the peak at 279 is observed.[13]

(a) Draw the structure of pinolenic acid as well as the ionic structures consistent with each of the peaks listed.

(b) Predict *m/z* values for the corresponding significant peaks expected to be observed in negative ion mode, and specify the ion responsible for each peak.

14.84 The IR spectrum of a dilute solution of compound **1** (in CS_2) exhibits a signal at 3617 cm^{-1}, while the IR spectrum of a dilute solution of compound **2** exhibits a signal at 3594 cm^{-1}.[14]

(a) Explain why the signal for compound **2** appears at a lower wavenumber of absorption.

(b) Identify the signal that you expect to be broader. Explain your choice.

14.85 Phospholipids are a class of compounds largely responsible for the bilayer structure of cell membranes of plants and animals (discussed in Chapter 26). The phospholipid shown here has two unbranched hydrocarbon chains, and one of these chains contains an alkene group with a *cis* configuration. A mass spectrum of this phospholipid in negative ion mode (where anions are detected instead of cations)[15] shows a peak for the molecular ion at $m/z = 673$. When ozone is present, a new peak appears at $m/z = 563$. Draw the full structure of the phospholipid (indicating the position of the alkene group) consistent with these data.

LIST OF REFERENCES

1. *J. Chem. Ecol.* **1985**, *11*, 177–180.
2. *J. Chromatogr. A* **2006**, *1112*, 369–374.
3. *Crop Prot.* **2015**, *70*, 92–98.
4. *J. Agric. Food Chem.* **2013**, *61*, 4004–4010.
5. *Drug Test. Anal.* **2018**, *10*, 350–356.
6. *Anal. Chem.* **2013**, *85*, 831–836.
7. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1952**, *74*, 4070–4073.
8. *J. Chem. Ed.* **2008**, *85*, 832–833.
9. *Anal. Chem.* **1954**, *26*, 1428–1431.
10. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1959**, *81*, 4671–4673.
11. *Appl. Spectrosc.* **1960**, *14*, 95–97.
12. *J. Org. Chem.* **1977**, *42*, 126–129.
13. *Anal. Chem.* **2011**, *83*, 4738–4744.
14. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1957**, *79*, 243–247.
15. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **2006**, *128*, 58–59.

15

Nuclear Magnetic Resonance Spectroscopy

15.1 Introduction to NMR Spectroscopy
15.2 Acquiring a ^{1}H NMR Spectrum
15.3 Characteristics of a ^{1}H NMR Spectrum
15.4 Number of Signals
15.5 Chemical Shift
15.6 Integration
15.7 Multiplicity
15.8 Drawing the Expected ^{1}H NMR Spectrum of a Compound
15.9 Using ^{1}H NMR Spectroscopy to Distinguish between Compounds
15.10 Analyzing a ^{1}H NMR Spectrum
15.11 Acquiring a ^{13}C NMR Spectrum
15.12 Chemical Shifts in ^{13}C NMR Spectroscopy
15.13 DEPT ^{13}C NMR Spectroscopy

Top (*Abstract smooth light circle*) VikaSuh/Shutterstock; *Bottom* (*Yoga lotus pose*) Viktorija Reuta/Shutterstock; *Bottom* (*Light painting*) Level1studio/Getty Images

DID YOU EVER **WONDER...**

whether it is scientifically possible for a human being to levitate?

When any object (even plastic) is placed in a strong magnetic field, the electrons in the object begin to move in a way that produces a small magnetic field that opposes the external magnetic field. As a result, the object repels, and is repelled by, the external magnetic field. This weak effect, called diamagnetism, will cause objects to levitate in a strong magnetic field. Larger objects require a larger external magnetic field to induce levitation, but in theory, any object will levitate if it is placed in a strong enough magnetic field.

The strongest magnetic fields currently available are capable of causing small objects to levitate. In 1997, researchers at Radboud University (in the Netherlands) demonstrated that hazelnuts, strawberries, and even frogs will levitate in a magnetic field of 16 tesla. Unfortunately, our strongest magnets do not yet allow a human being to levitate. But in theory, stronger magnets would enable people to enjoy weightlessness without having to travel to space.

In this chapter, we will see the role that diamagnetism plays in nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) spectroscopy, which provides more structural information than any other form of spectroscopy. We will also learn how NMR spectroscopy is used as a powerful tool for structure determination.

DO YOU **REMEMBER?**

Before you go on, be sure you understand the following topics.
If necessary, review the suggested sections to prepare for this chapter:

- Quantum Mechanics (Section 1.7)
- Stereoisomeric Relationships: Enantiomers and Diastereomers (Section 5.5)
- Symmetry and Chirality (Section 5.6)
- Introduction to Spectroscopy (Section 14.1)
- Hydrogen Deficiency Index (Section 14.16)

Take the DO YOU **REMEMBER?** QUIZ in the **online course** to check your understanding.

15.1 Introduction to NMR Spectroscopy

Nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) spectroscopy is arguably the most powerful and broadly applicable technique for structure determination available to organic chemists. Indeed, the structure of a compound can often be determined using NMR spectroscopy alone, although in practice, structural determination is generally accomplished through a combination of techniques that includes NMR and IR spectroscopy and mass spectrometry.

NMR spectroscopy involves the study of the interaction between electromagnetic radiation and the nuclei of atoms. A wide variety of nuclei can be studied using NMR spectroscopy, including ^{1}H, ^{13}C, ^{15}N, ^{19}F, and ^{31}P. In practice, ^{1}H NMR spectroscopy and ^{13}C NMR spectroscopy are used most often by organic chemists, because hydrogen and carbon are the primary constituents of organic compounds. Analysis of an NMR spectrum provides information about how the individual carbon and hydrogen atoms are connected to each other in a molecule. This information enables us to determine the carbon-hydrogen framework of a compound, much the way puzzle pieces can be assembled to form a picture.

A nucleus with an odd number of protons and/or an odd number of neutrons possesses a quantum mechanical property called *nuclear spin,* and it can be probed by an NMR spectrometer. Consider the nucleus of a hydrogen atom, which consists of just one proton and therefore has a nuclear spin. Note that this property of spin does not refer to the actual rotation of the proton. Nevertheless, it is a useful analogy to consider. A spinning proton can be viewed as a rotating sphere of charge, which generates a magnetic field, called a **magnetic moment**. The magnetic moment of a spinning proton is similar to the magnetic field produced by a bar magnet (Figure 15.1).

FIGURE 15.1
(a) The magnetic moment of a spinning proton.
(b) The magnetic field of a bar magnet.

The nucleus of a ^{12}C atom has an even number of protons and an even number of neutrons and therefore does not possess this property. In contrast, the nucleus of ^{13}C has an odd number of neutrons and therefore exhibits spin. Our study of NMR spectroscopy will begin with ^{1}H NMR spectroscopy and will conclude with ^{13}C NMR spectroscopy.

When the nucleus of a hydrogen atom (a proton) is subjected to an external magnetic field, the interaction between the magnetic moment and the magnetic field is quantized, and the magnetic moment must align either with the field or against the field (Figure 15.2). A proton aligned with the field is said to occupy the alpha (α) spin state, while a proton aligned against the field is said to occupy the beta (β) spin state. The two spin states are not equivalent in energy, and there is a quantifiable difference in energy (ΔE) between them (Figure 15.3).

FIGURE 15.2
The orientation of the magnetic moments of protons in (a) the absence of an external magnetic field or (b) the presence of an external magnetic field.

FIGURE 15.3
The energy gap between alpha and beta spin states as the result of an applied, external magnetic field.

WATCH OUT
Don't confuse the term "resonance" used here with resonance structures of compounds. These are two different concepts.

When a nucleus occupying the α spin state is subjected to electromagnetic radiation, an absorption can take place if the energy of the photon is equivalent to the energy gap between the spin states. The absorption causes the nucleus to *flip* to the β spin state, and the nucleus is said to be in *resonance*, thus the term *nuclear magnetic resonance*. When a strong magnetic field is employed, the frequency of radiation typically required for nuclear resonance falls in the radio wave region of the electromagnetic spectrum [called radio frequency (rf) radiation].

At a particular magnetic field strength, we might expect all nuclei to absorb the same frequency of rf radiation. Luckily, this is not the case, as nuclei are surrounded by electrons. In the presence of an external magnetic field, the electron density circulates, which produces a local (induced) magnetic field that opposes the external magnetic field (Figure 15.4).

FIGURE 15.4
The induced magnetic field that is generated as a result of the motion of electron density surrounding the proton.

This effect, called **diamagnetism**, was discussed in the chapter opener. All materials possess diamagnetic properties, because all materials contain electrons. This effect is extremely important for NMR spectroscopy. Without this effect, all protons would absorb the same frequency of rf radiation, and NMR spectroscopy would not provide us with any useful information.

When electron density circulates around a proton, the induced magnetic field has a small but important effect on the proton. The proton is now subjected to two magnetic fields—the strong, external magnetic field and the weak induced magnetic field established by the circulating electron density. The proton therefore experiences a net magnetic field strength that is slightly smaller than the external magnetic field. The proton is said to be **shielded** by the electrons.

Not all protons occupy identical electronic environments. Some protons are surrounded by more electron density and are more shielded, while other protons are surrounded by less electron density and are less shielded, or **deshielded**. As a result, protons in different electronic environments

will exhibit a different energy gap between the α and β spin states and will therefore absorb different frequencies of rf radiation. This allows us to probe the electronic environment of each hydrogen atom in a molecule.

15.2 Acquiring a ^{1}H NMR Spectrum

Magnetic Field Strength

We have seen that NMR spectroscopy requires a strong magnetic field as well as a source of rf radiation. The magnetic field establishes an energy gap (ΔE) between spin states, which enables the nuclei to absorb rf radiation. The magnitude of this energy gap depends on the strength of the imposed external magnetic field (Figure 15.5). The energy gap increases with increasing magnetic field strength.

FIGURE 15.5
The relationship between the strength of the magnetic field and the energy gap between the alpha and beta spin states.

BY THE WAY
Magnetic field strengths are often measured in gauss; 10,000 gauss = 1 tesla.

With a magnetic field strength of 1.41 tesla, all of the protons in organic compounds will resonate over a narrow range of frequencies near 60 MHz (60,000,000 Hz). If, however, a magnetic field strength of 7.04 tesla is employed, all of the protons in organic compounds will resonate over a range of frequencies near 300 MHz (300,000,000 Hz). In other words, the strength of the magnetic field determines the range of frequencies that must be used. An NMR spectrometer that utilizes a magnetic field strength of 7.04 tesla is said to have an *operating frequency* of 300 MHz. In Section 15.7, we will see the advantage of using an NMR spectrometer with a higher operating frequency.

The strong magnetic fields employed in NMR spectroscopy are produced by passing a current of electrons through a loop composed of superconducting materials. These materials offer virtually zero resistance to the electric current, allowing for large magnetic fields to be produced. The superconducting materials only maintain their properties at extremely low temperatures (just a few degrees above absolute zero) and must therefore be kept in a very low temperature container. Most spectrometers employ three chambers to achieve this low temperature. The innermost chamber contains liquid helium, which has a boiling point of 4.3 K. Surrounding the liquid helium is a chamber containing liquid nitrogen (boiling point 77 K). The third and outermost chamber is a vacuum that minimizes heat transfer from the environment. Any heat developed in the system is transferred from the liquid helium to the liquid nitrogen. In this way, the innermost chamber can be maintained at 4 degrees above absolute zero. This extremely cold environment enables the use of superconductors that generate the large magnetic fields required in NMR spectroscopy.

NMR Spectrometers

In principle, an NMR spectrum could be obtained by holding the magnetic field constant and slowly sweeping through a range of rf frequencies, monitoring which frequencies were absorbed. The first generation of NMR spectrometers, called **continuous-wave** (**CW**) **spectrometers**, produced the same result by holding the frequency of rf radiation constant and slowly increasing the magnetic field strength, while monitoring which field strengths produced a signal. CW spectrometers are rarely used anymore, as they have been replaced by pulsed **Fourier-transform NMR** (**FT-NMR**).

FIGURE 15.6
An FT-NMR spectrometer.

In an FT-NMR spectrometer (Figure 15.6), the magnetic field is held constant and the sample is irradiated with a short pulse that covers the entire range of relevant rf frequencies. All protons are excited simultaneously and then begin to return (or relax) to their original spin states. As each type of proton relaxes, it releases energy in a particular way, generating an electrical impulse in a receiver coil. The receiver coil records a complex signal, called a **free induction decay** (**FID**), which is a combination of all of the electrical impulses generated by each type of proton. The FID is then converted into a spectrum via a mathematical technique called a Fourier transform. Since each FID is acquired in 1–2 seconds, it is possible to acquire hundreds of FIDs in just a few minutes, and the FIDs can be averaged. In Section 15.11, we will see that signal averaging is the only practical way to produce a ^{13}C NMR spectrum.

Preparing the Sample

In order to acquire a ^{1}H NMR spectrum (called a "proton NMR spectrum") of a compound, the compound is usually dissolved in a solvent and placed in a narrow glass tube, which is then inserted into the NMR spectrometer. If the solvent itself has protons, the spectrum will be overwhelmed with signals from the solvent, rendering it unreadable. As a result, solvents without protons must be used. Although there are several solvents that lack protons, such as CCl_4, these solvents do not dissolve all compounds. In practice, deuterated solvents are generally used.

The nuclei of deuterium also exhibit nuclear spin, and therefore also resonate, but they absorb rf radiation over a very different range of frequencies than do protons. In an NMR spectrometer, a very narrow range of frequencies is used, covering just the frequencies absorbed by protons. For example, a 300-MHz spectrometer will use a pulse that consists only of frequencies between 300,000,000 and 300,005,000 Hz. The frequencies required for deuterium resonance do not fall in this range, so the deuterium atoms are invisible to the NMR spectrometer. All of the solvents shown above are routinely used, and many other deuterated solvents are also available commercially, although quite expensive.

15.3 Characteristics of a ^{1}H NMR Spectrum

The spectrum produced by ^{1}H NMR spectroscopy is generally rich with information that can be interpreted to determine a molecular structure. Consider the following ^{1}H NMR spectrum:

The first valuable piece of information is the number of signals. This spectrum appears to have three different signals. In Section 15.4, we will learn how to interpret this piece of information. In addition, each signal has three important characteristics:

1. The *location* of each signal indicates the electronic environment of the protons giving rise to the signal.
2. The *area* under each signal indicates the number of protons giving rise to the signal.
3. The *shape* of the signal indicates the number of neighboring protons.

We will discuss these characteristics in Sections 15.5–15.7.

15.4 Number of Signals

Chemical Equivalence

LOOKING BACK
For a review of symmetry operations, see Section 5.6.

The number of signals in a ^{1}H NMR spectrum indicates the number of different kinds of protons (protons in different electronic environments). Protons that occupy identical electronic environments are called **chemically equivalent**, and they will produce only one signal. Two protons are chemically equivalent if they can be interchanged via a symmetry operation—either rotation or reflection. The following examples will illustrate the relationship between symmetry and chemical equivalence. Let's begin by considering the two protons on the middle carbon of propane. Imagine that this molecule is rotated 180° about the following axis while your eyes are closed:

When you open your eyes, you cannot determine whether the molecule was rotated or not. From your point of view, the molecule appears exactly as it did before rotation, and it therefore has an axis of symmetry. The two protons on the middle carbon of propane are interchangeable by rotational symmetry and are therefore said to be **homotopic**. Homotopic protons are chemically equivalent. Below are other examples of homotopic protons.

In each of these examples, the two identified protons are homotopic, because they can be interchanged by rotational symmetry. (Can you identify the axis of rotation in each compound above?) If you are having trouble seeing axes of symmetry, there is a simple method, called the **replacement test**, that will allow you to verify whether or not two protons are homotopic. Draw the compound two times, each time replacing one of the protons with deuterium; for example:

Then, determine the relationship between the two drawings. If they represent the same compound, then the protons are homotopic.

Now consider the two protons on the alpha carbon of ethanol and imagine that this molecule is rotated 180° while your eyes are closed.

When you open your eyes, you *will* be able to determine that the molecule has been rotated. Specifically, the OH group is now on the left side. That is, the two protons on the alpha carbon of ethanol are not interchangeable by rotational symmetry. These protons are therefore not homotopic. Nevertheless, they can be interchanged by reflectional symmetry. Imagine that the molecule is reflected about the plane of the page while your eyes are closed.

When you open your eyes, you cannot determine whether the molecule was reflected or not. The molecule appears exactly as it did before reflection. In this case, there is a plane of symmetry, and the protons are said to be **enantiotopic**. In the achiral environment of an NMR experiment, enantiotopic protons are chemically equivalent, because they are interchangeable by reflectional symmetry. Here are two other examples of enantiotopic protons:

BY THE WAY
Enantiotopic protons are only chemically equivalent when the solvent is achiral, which is typically the case during routine NMR analysis. However, if a chiral solvent is used, then enantiotopic protons are no longer chemically equivalent and will indeed give different signals.

In each of these examples the two highlighted protons are enantiotopic, because they are interchangeable by reflectional symmetry. (Can you see the plane of symmetry in each compound?) If you are having trouble seeing planes of symmetry, you can resort once again to the replacement test. Simply draw the compound twice, each time replacing one of the protons with deuterium. Then determine the relationship between the two drawings. If they are enantiomers, then the protons are enantiotopic.

When determining the relationship between two protons, always look for rotational symmetry first. Figure 15.7 indicates how to determine the relationship between two protons. First determine if there is an axis of symmetry that interchanges the protons. If there is, then the protons are homotopic, whether or not there is a plane of symmetry. If the protons cannot be interchanged by rotation, then look for reflectional symmetry. If there is a plane of symmetry, then the protons are enantiotopic.

FIGURE 15.7
A flow chart showing the process for determining whether two protons are chemically equivalent.

If two protons are neither homotopic nor enantiotopic, then they are not chemically equivalent. As an example, consider the protons on C3 of (*R*)-2-butanol.

These protons *cannot* be interchanged by either rotational symmetry or reflectional symmetry. Therefore, these two protons are not chemically equivalent. In this case, the replacement test produces diastereomers.

These protons are therefore said to be **diastereotopic**. They are not chemically equivalent, because they cannot be interchanged by symmetry.

SKILLBUILDER

15.1 DETERMINING THE RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN TWO PROTONS IN A COMPOUND

LEARN the skill

Determine whether the two protons shown in red are homotopic, enantiotopic, diastereotopic, or simply not related at all.

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Determine if the protons are interchangeable by rotational symmetry.

Begin by looking for an axis of symmetry. Do not look for any and all axes of symmetry, but rather the one that specifically interchanges the two protons of interest.

If your eyes were closed during the operation, the position of the methyl group would indicate that the rotation had occurred. Since the molecule is not drawn exactly as it was before rotation, the protons are not interchangeable by rotation. They are not homotopic.

STEP 2
If the protons are not interchangeable by rotational symmetry, determine if they are interchangeable by reflectional symmetry.

Next, look for a plane of symmetry. Once again, do not look for any and all planes of symmetry, but rather the one that specifically interchanges the two protons of interest.

If your eyes were closed during the operation, the position of the methyl group would indicate that a reflection had occurred. Since the molecule is not drawn exactly as it was before reflection, the protons are not interchangeable by reflection, and therefore, they are *not* enantiotopic. In this case, the protons are neither homotopic nor enantiotopic. Therefore, these protons are not chemically equivalent. They will each produce a different signal in an NMR spectrum. The two protons must either be diastereotopic or simply not related to each other at all. To determine if they are diastereotopic, do the replacement test:

STEP 3
If the protons cannot be interchanged via a symmetry operation, then they are not chemically equivalent.

The two compounds are diastereomers, and therefore, the protons are diastereotopic.

PRACTICE the skill

15.1 For each of the following compounds, determine whether the two protons shown in red are homotopic, enantiotopic, or diastereotopic:

15.2 Butane (C_4H_{10}) exhibits only two different kinds of protons, shown here in red and blue.

(a) Explain why all four protons shown in red are chemically equivalent.

(b) Explain why all six protons shown in blue are chemically equivalent.

(c) How many different kinds of protons are present in pentane?

(d) How many different kinds of protons are present in hexane?

(e) How many different kinds of protons are present in 1-chlorohexane?

15.3 Identify the structure of a compound with the molecular formula C_5H_{12} that exhibits only one kind of proton. That is, all 12 protons are chemically equivalent.

APPLY the skill

15.4 In an effort to circumvent existing drug laws, novel psychoactive substances are continuously being developed. The stimulant benzylpiperazine (BZP) is one such "designer" recreational drug. The synthesis of these compounds is not carefully controlled, so the drugs often contain reaction by-products, and dibenzylpiperazine (DBZP) has been found as a contaminant in samples of BZP.[1] For each of the following compounds, consider the four CH_2 groups in the nitrogen-containing ring (called a piperazine ring), and identify any chemically equivalent protons.

Benzylpiperazine (BZP)

Dibenzylpiperazine (DBZP)

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problem 15.41**

In order to predict the number of expected signals in the ^{1}H NMR spectrum of a compound, it is not necessary to compare all of the protons and drive yourself crazy looking for axes and planes of symmetry. In general, it is possible to determine the number of expected signals for a compound using a few simple rules:

- The three protons of a CH_3 group are always chemically equivalent. Example:

- The two protons of a CH_2 group will generally be chemically equivalent if the compound has no chiral centers. If the compound has a chiral center, then the protons of a CH_2 group will generally not be chemically equivalent. Examples:

- Two CH_2 groups will be equivalent to each other (giving four equivalent protons) if the CH_2 groups can be interchanged by either rotation or reflection. Example:

SKILLBUILDER

15.2 IDENTIFYING THE NUMBER OF EXPECTED SIGNALS IN A ^{1}H NMR SPECTRUM

LEARN the skill

Identify the number of signals expected in the ^{1}H NMR spectrum of the following compound:

SOLUTION

When looking for symmetry, don't be confused by the position of the double bonds in the aromatic ring. Recall that we can draw the following two resonance structures:

Neither resonance structure is more correct than the other. For purposes of looking for symmetry, it will be less confusing to draw the compound like this:

Begin with the methoxy group (OCH_3). These three protons are all connected to one carbon atom and are therefore equivalent. They will produce one signal.

Now look at the other remaining CH_3 groups in the compound. These two CH_3 groups are interchangeable by symmetry, which means that all six protons give rise to one signal.

Now look at each of the CH_2 groups. For each CH_2 group, the two protons are equivalent because the compound does not have any chiral centers. In addition, the two CH_2 groups are interchangeable by symmetry, so all four protons give rise to one signal.

Now look at the protons on the aromatic ring. Two of them are interchangeable by symmetry, giving rise to one signal.

The remaining aromatic proton gives one more signal, giving a total of five signals.

PRACTICE the skill

15.5 Identify the number of signals expected in the ^1H NMR spectrum of each of the following compounds:

15.6 We saw a general rule that the two protons of a CH_2 group will be chemically equivalent if there are no chiral centers in the compound. An example of an exception is 3-bromopentane. This compound does not possess a chiral center. Nevertheless, the two highlighted protons are not chemically equivalent. Explain.

APPLY the skill

15.7 Carvone, a natural product isolated from plants, is used widely in the flavor and fragrance industry; the (*S*) enantiomer smells and tastes like caraway seeds, while the (*R*) enantiomer smells and tastes like spearmint. Carvone-producing plants have been used to help break down hazardous waste, in a process called *bioremediation*. To investigate whether or not contaminated soil affects the levels of natural products found in plants, the amounts of carvone were measured in plants that were grown in soil mixed with tannery sludge (the hazardous waste generated from leather processing).[2] Identify the number of signals expected in the ^{1}H NMR spectrum of (*S*)-carvone.

(*S*)-Carvone

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 15.35, 15.43a, 15.45, 15.46, 15.50**

Variable-Temperature NMR

In Chapter 4, we learned that the most stable conformation of cyclohexane is a chair conformation in which six of the protons occupy axial positions and six occupy equatorial positions.

Axial protons (shown in red) occupy a different electronic environment than equatorial protons (shown in blue). That is, axial and equatorial protons are not chemically equivalent, because they cannot be interchanged by a symmetry operation. Consequently, we might expect two signals in the ^{1}H NMR spectrum: one for the six axial protons and one for the six equatorial protons. Yet, the ^{1}H NMR spectrum of cyclohexane only exhibits one signal. Why?

The observation can be explained by considering the rapid rate at which ring flipping occurs at room temperature.

The NMR spectrometer is analogous to a camera with a slow shutter speed that produces a blurred picture when a fast-moving object is photographed. The NMR spectrometer is too slow to acquire a spectrum of a single chair conformation. While the spectrometer is acquiring the spectrum, the ring is flipping rapidly between the two chair conformations, producing a blurry picture. The spectrometer only "sees" the average electronic environment of the protons, and only one signal is observed. However, if the sample of cyclohexane is cooled inside the spectrometer, the ring-flipping process occurs at a slower rate. If the sample is cooled to −100°C, ring flipping occurs at a very slow rate, and separate signals are in fact observed for the axial and equatorial protons. By varying the temperature, it is possible to measure the rates and activation energies of many rapid processes.

15.5 Chemical Shift

Chemical Shift Values

We will now begin exploring the three characteristics of every signal in an NMR spectrum. The first characteristic is the location of the signal, called its **chemical shift (δ)**, which is defined relative to the frequency of absorption of a reference compound, tetramethylsilane (TMS).

TMS

In practice, deuterated solvents used for NMR spectroscopy typically contain a small amount of TMS, which produces a signal at a lower frequency than the signals produced by most organic compounds. The frequency of each signal is then described as the difference (in hertz) between the resonance frequency of the proton being observed and that of TMS divided by the operating frequency of the spectrometer:

$$\delta = \frac{\text{observed shift from TMS in hertz}}{\text{operating frequency of the instrument in hertz}}$$

For example, when benzene is analyzed using an NMR spectrometer operating at 300 MHz, the protons of benzene absorb a frequency of rf radiation that is 2181 Hz larger than the frequency of absorption of TMS. The chemical shift of these protons is then calculated in the following way:

$$\delta = \frac{2181 \text{ Hz}}{300 \times 10^6 \text{ Hz}} = 7.27 \times 10^{-6}$$

If a 60-MHz spectrometer is used instead, the protons of benzene absorb a frequency of rf radiation that is 436 Hz larger than the frequency of absorption of TMS. The chemical shift of these protons is then calculated in the following way:

$$\delta = \frac{436 \text{ Hz}}{60 \times 10^6 \text{ Hz}} = 7.27 \times 10^{-6}$$

Notice that the chemical shift of the protons is a constant, regardless of the operating frequency of the spectrometer. That is precisely why chemical shifts have been defined in relative terms, rather than absolute terms (hertz). If signals were reported in hertz (the precise frequency of rf radiation absorbed), then the frequency of absorption would be dependent on the strength of the magnetic field and would not be a constant.

In the previous two calculations, notice that the value obtained does not possess any dimensions (hertz divided by hertz gives a dimensionless number). The chemical shift for the protons of benzene is reported as 7.27 ppm (parts per million), which are dimensionless units indicating that signals are reported as a fraction of the operating frequency of the spectrometer. For most organic compounds, the signals produced will fall in a range between 0 and 12 ppm. In rare cases, it is possible to observe a signal occurring at a chemical shift below 0 ppm, which results from a proton that absorbs a lower frequency than TMS. Most protons in organic compounds absorb a higher frequency than TMS, so most chemical shifts that we encounter will be positive numbers.

The left side of an NMR spectrum is described as **downfield**, and the right side of the spectrum is described as **upfield**.

These terms are historical artifacts that reflect the way spectra were once acquired. As mentioned in Section 15.2, continuous-wave spectrometers would hold the frequency of rf radiation constant and slowly increase the magnetic field strength while monitoring which field strengths produced a signal. Signals on the left side of the spectrum were produced at lower field strength (downfield), while signals on the right side of the spectrum were produced at higher field strength (upfield). With the advent of FT-NMR spectrometers, spectra are no longer acquired in this fashion. In modern spectrometers, the

magnetic field strength is held constant while the sample is irradiated with a short pulse that covers the entire range of relevant rf frequencies. Accordingly, signals on the left side of the spectrum (downfield) are "high-frequency signals" because they result from deshielded protons that absorb higher frequencies of rf radiation. In contrast, signals on the right side of the spectrum (upfield) are "low-frequency signals" because they result from shielded protons that absorb lower frequencies of rf radiation. Despite the advent of modern spectrometers, the older terms "downfield" and "upfield" are still commonly used to describe the relative position of a signal in an NMR spectrum. For example, if a ^{1}H NMR spectrum exhibits two signals, we would say that the signal on the left is *downfield* of the signal on the right, even if both signals are on the right side of the spectrum. Similarly, when a signal is shifted to the right (relative to what we might expect), we would say that the signal has been pushed *upfield*.

Protons of alkanes generally produce signals between 1 and 2 ppm. We will now explore some of the effects that can push a signal downfield.

Inductive Effects

Recall from Section 1.12 that electronegative atoms, such as halogens, withdraw electron density from neighboring atoms (Figure 15.8).

FIGURE 15.8
The inductive effect of an electronegative atom causes nearby protons to be deshielded.

This inductive effect causes the protons of the methyl group to be deshielded (surrounded by less electron density), and as a result, the signal produced by these protons is shifted downfield—that is, the signal appears at a higher chemical shift than the protons of an alkane. The strength of this effect depends on the electronegativity of the halogen. Compare the chemical shifts of the protons in the following compounds:

Fluorine is the most electronegative element and therefore produces the strongest effect. When multiple halogens are present, the effect is additive, as can be seen when comparing the following compounds:

Each chlorine atom adds approximately 2 ppm to the chemical shift of the signal. The inductive effect tapers off drastically with distance, as can be seen by comparing the chemical shifts of the protons in 1-chloropropane.

The effect is most significant for the protons at the alpha position. The protons at the beta position are only slightly affected, and the protons at the gamma position are virtually unaffected by the presence of the chlorine atom.

By committing a few numbers to memory, it is possible to predict the chemical shifts for the protons in a wide variety of compounds, including alcohols, ethers, ketones, esters, and carboxylic acids. The following numbers are used as benchmark values:

These are the expected chemical shifts for protons that lack neighboring electronegative atoms. In the absence of inductive effects, a methyl group (CH_3) will produce a signal near 0.9 ppm, a **methylene group** (CH_2) will produce a signal near 1.2 ppm, and a **methine group** (CH) will produce a signal near 1.7 ppm. These benchmark values are then modified by the presence of neighboring functional groups. Table 15.1 shows the effect of a few functional groups on the chemical shifts of alpha protons.

TABLE 15.1 THE EFFECT OF NEIGHBORING FUNCTIONAL GROUPS ON CHEMICAL SHIFT

FUNCTIONAL GROUP	EFFECT ON ALPHA PROTONS	EXAMPLE
Oxygen of an alcohol or ether	+2.5	Methylene group (CH_2) = 1.2 ppm Next to oxygen = +2.5 ppm 3.7 ppm Actual chemical shift = 3.7 ppm
Oxygen of an ester	+3	Methylene group (CH_2) = 1.2 ppm Next to oxygen = +3.0 ppm 4.2 ppm Actual chemical shift = 4.1 ppm
Carbonyl group (C═O) All carbonyl groups, including ketones, aldehydes, esters, etc.	+1	Methylene group (CH_2) = 1.2 ppm Next to carbonyl group = +1.0 ppm 2.2 ppm Actual chemical shift = 2.4 ppm

The effect on beta protons is generally about one-fifth of the effect on the alpha protons. For example, in an alcohol, the presence of an oxygen atom adds +2.5 ppm to the chemical shift of the alpha protons but adds only +0.5 ppm to the beta protons. Similarly, a carbonyl group adds +1 ppm to the chemical shift of the alpha protons but only +0.2 to the beta protons.

The three benchmark values, together with the three values shown in Table 15.1, enable us to predict the chemical shifts for the protons in a wide variety of compounds, as illustrated in the following SkillBuilder.

SKILLBUILDER

15.3 PREDICTING CHEMICAL SHIFTS

LEARN the skill

Predict the chemical shifts for the signals in the ^{1}H NMR spectrum of the following compound:

SOLUTION

First determine the total number of expected signals. In this compound, there are five different kinds of protons, giving rise to five distinct signals. For each type of signal, identify whether it represents methyl (0.9 ppm), methylene (1.2 ppm), or methine (1.7 ppm) groups.

Finally, modify each of these numbers based on proximity to oxygen and the carbonyl group.

These values are only estimates, and the actual chemical shifts might differ slightly from the predicted values. The actual values are also shown, and they are indeed very close to the estimated values.

PRACTICE the skill

15.8 Predict the chemical shifts for the signals in the ^{1}H NMR spectrum of each of the following compounds:

APPLY the skill

15.9 Ethyl 3-ethoxypropanoate is a solvent used in the preparation of polymers, and it has been detected in the gaseous emissions at some industrial sites. One study showed that it can be decomposed by several species of fungi, providing a potential method for "biofiltering" this undesirable industrial by-product.[3] Predict the chemical shift for each signal in the ^{1}H NMR spectrum of this compound.

Ethyl 3-ethoxypropanoate

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problem 15.43b**

Anisotropic Effects

The chemical shift of a proton is also sensitive to diamagnetic effects that result from the motion of nearby π electrons. As an example, consider what happens when benzene is placed in a strong magnetic field. The magnetic field causes the π electrons to circulate, and this flow of electrons creates an induced, local magnetic field (Figure 15.9). The result is **diamagnetic anisotropy**,

FIGURE 15.9
The induced magnetic field that is generated as a result of the motion of the π electrons of an aromatic ring.

which means that different regions of space are characterized by different magnetic field strengths. Locations inside the ring are characterized by a local magnetic field that opposes the external field, while locations outside the ring are characterized by a local magnetic field that adds to the external field. The protons connected to the ring are permanently positioned outside of the ring, and as a result, they experience a stronger magnetic field. These protons experience the external magnetic field plus the local magnetic field. The effect is similar to a deshielding effect, and therefore, the protons are shifted downfield. Aromatic protons produce a signal in the neighborhood of 7 ppm (sometimes just above 7, sometimes just below 7) in an NMR spectrum. For example, consider the spectrum of ethylbenzene.

Ethylbenzene has three different kinds of aromatic protons (can you identify them in the structure?), producing a complex signal comprised of three overlapping signals just above 7 ppm. A complex signal around 7 ppm is characteristic of compounds with aromatic protons.

The methylene group (CH_2) in ethylbenzene produces a signal at 2.6 ppm, rather than the expected benchmark value of 1.2 ppm. These protons have been shifted downfield because of their position in the local magnetic field. They are not shifted as much as the aromatic protons themselves, because the methylene protons are farther away from the ring, where the induced, local magnetic field is weaker.

A similar effect is observed for [14] annulene.

[14] Annulene

The protons outside of the ring produce signals at approximately 8 ppm, but in this case, there are four protons positioned inside the ring, where the local magnetic field opposes the external magnetic field. These protons experience the external magnetic field minus the local magnetic field. The effect is similar to a shielding effect, because the protons experience a weaker magnetic field, and therefore, the protons are shifted upfield. This effect is quite strong, producing a signal at −1 ppm (even further upfield than TMS).

All π bonds exhibit a similar anisotropic effect. That is, π electrons circulate under the influence of an external magnetic field, generating a local magnetic field. For each type of π bond, the precise location of the nearby protons determines their chemical shift. For example, aldehydic protons produce characteristic signals at approximately 10 ppm. Table 15.2 summarizes important chemical shifts. It would be wise to become familiar with these numbers, as they will be required in order to interpret ^{1}H NMR spectra.

TABLE 15.2 CHEMICAL SHIFTS FOR PROTONS IN DIFFERENT ELECTRONIC ENVIRONMENTS

TYPE OF PROTON		CHEMICAL SHIFT (δ)	TYPE OF PROTON		CHEMICAL SHIFT (δ)
Methyl	R—CH$_3$	~0.9	Alkyl halide	R—C(H)(R)—X	2–4
Methylene	>CH$_2$	~1.2	Alcohol	R—O—H	2–5
Methine	—CH	~1.7	Vinylic	H	4.5–6.5
Allylic	H	~2	Aryl	H	6.5–8
Alkynyl	R—≡—H	~2.5	Aldehyde	R—C(=O)—H	~10
Aromatic methyl	—CH$_3$	~2.5	Carboxylic acid	R—C(=O)—O—H	~12

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

15.10 Use Tables 15.1 and 15.2 to determine the expected chemical shift for each type of proton in each of the following compounds:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

15.6 Integration

In Section 15.5, we learned about the first characteristic of every signal, chemical shift. In this section, we will explore the second characteristic, **integration**, or the area under each signal. This value indicates the number of protons giving rise to the signal. After acquiring a spectrum, the computer calculates the area under each signal and then displays this area as a numerical value placed either above or below the signal.

These numbers only have meaning when compared to each other. In order to convert these numbers into useful information, choose the smallest number (27.0 in this case) and then divide all integration values by this number:

$$\frac{27.0}{27.0} = 1 \qquad \frac{40.2}{27.0} = 1.49 \qquad \frac{28.4}{27.0} = 1.05 \qquad \frac{42.2}{27.0} = 1.56$$

These numbers provide the *relative number*, or ratio, of protons giving rise to each signal. This means that a signal with an integration of 1.5 involves one and a half times as many protons as a signal with an integration of 1. In order to arrive at whole numbers (there is no such thing as half a proton), multiply all the numbers by 2, giving the same ratio now expressed in whole numbers, 2:3:2:3. In other words, the signal at 2.4 ppm represents two equivalent protons, and the signal at 2.1 ppm represents three equivalent protons.

Integration is often represented by *step curves*:

The height of each step curve represents the area under the signal. In this case, a comparison of the heights of the four step curves reveals a ratio of 2:3:2:3.

When interpreting integration values, don't forget that the numbers are only relative. To illustrate this point, consider the structure of *tert*-butyl methyl ether (MTBE).

MTBE

MTBE has two kinds of protons (the methyl group and the *tert*-butyl group) and will produce two signals in its ^{1}H NMR spectrum. The computer analyzes the area under each signal and gives

numbers that allow us to calculate a ratio of 1 : 3. This ratio only indicates the relative number of protons giving rise to each signal, not the exact number of protons. In this case, the exact numbers are 3 (for the methyl group) and 9 (for the *tert*-butyl group). When analyzing the NMR spectrum of an unknown compound, the molecular formula provides extremely useful information because it enables us to determine the exact number of protons giving rise to each signal. If we were analyzing the spectrum of MTBE, the molecular formula ($C_5H_{12}O$) would indicate that the compound has a total of 12 protons. This information then allows us to determine that the ratio of 1 : 3 must correspond with 3 protons and 9 protons, in order to give a total of 12 protons.

When analyzing an NMR spectrum of an unknown compound, we must also consider the impact of symmetry on integration values. For example, consider the structure of 3-pentanone.

3-Pentanone

This compound has only two kinds of protons, because the methylene groups are equivalent to each other, and the methyl groups are equivalent to each other. The ^{1}H NMR spectrum is therefore expected to exhibit only two signals.

Compare the relative integration values: 32.5 and 48.0. These values give a ratio of 2 : 3, but again the values 2 and 3 are just relative numbers. They actually represent 4 protons and 6 protons. This can be determined by inspecting the molecular formula ($C_5H_{10}O$), which indicates a total of 10 protons in the compound. Since the ratio of protons is 2 : 3, this ratio must represent 4 and 6 protons, respectively, in order for the total number of protons to be 10. This analysis indicates that the molecule possesses symmetry.

SKILLBUILDER

15.4 DETERMINING THE NUMBER OF PROTONS GIVING RISE TO A SIGNAL

LEARN the skill

A compound with the molecular formula $C_5H_{10}O_2$ has the following ^{1}H NMR spectrum. Determine the number of protons giving rise to each signal.

STEP 1
Compare the relative integration values and choose the lowest number.

STEP 2
Divide all the integration values by the number from step 1, which gives the ratio of protons.

STEP 3
Identify the number of protons in the compound (from the molecular formula) and then adjust the relative integration values so that the sum total equals the number of protons in the compound.

SOLUTION

The spectrum exhibits three signals.

Begin by comparing the relative integration values: 6.33, 19.4, and 37.9. Divide each of these three numbers by the smallest number (6.33):

$$\frac{6.33}{6.33} = 1 \qquad \frac{19.4}{6.33} = 3.06 \qquad \frac{37.9}{6.33} = 5.99$$

This gives a ratio of 1 : 3 : 6, but these are just relative numbers. To determine the exact number of protons giving rise to each signal, look at the molecular formula, which indicates a total of 10 protons in the compound.

Therefore, the numbers 1 : 3 : 6 are not only relative values, but they are also the exact values. Exact integration values can be illustrated in the following way:

PRACTICE the skill

15.11 A compound with the molecular formula $C_5H_{10}O_2$ has the following ^{1}H NMR spectrum. Determine the number of protons giving rise to each signal.

15.12 A compound with the molecular formula $C_{10}H_{10}O$ has the following ^{1}H NMR spectrum. Determine the number of protons giving rise to each signal.

15.13 A compound with the molecular formula $C_4H_6O_2$ has the following ^{1}H NMR spectrum. Determine the number of protons giving rise to each signal.

APPLY the skill

15.14 In the human body, the amino acid phenylalanine is normally processed by an enzyme that converts it to cinnamic acid. For infants with phenylketonuria (PKU), the enzyme is defective, resulting in a buildup of phenylalanine that can damage a developing brain. People with PKU must minimize phenylalanine in their diet by avoiding protein-rich foods and the artificial sweetener aspartame. Recent research explores a treatment for PKU that uses tiny lipid-bilayer packages called liposomes to deliver an alternate enzyme that can convert phenylalanine to cinnamic acid.[4] Predict the number of signals and the number of protons giving rise to each signal in the ^{1}H NMR spectra of both phenylalanine and cinnamic acid.

Phenylalanine Cinnamic acid

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problem 15.56**

15.7 Multiplicity

Coupling

The third, and final, characteristic of each signal is its **multiplicity**, which is defined by the number of peaks in the signal. A **singlet** has one peak, a **doublet** has two peaks, a **triplet** has three peaks, a **quartet** has four peaks, a **quintet** has five peaks, and so on.

Singlet Doublet Triplet Quartet Quintet Sextet Septet

A signal's multiplicity is the result of the magnetic effects of neighboring protons and therefore indicates the number of neighboring protons. To illustrate this concept, consider the following example:

If H_a and H_b are not equivalent to each other, they will produce different signals. Let's focus on the signal produced by H_a. We have already seen a variety of factors that will affect the chemical shift of H_a, including inductive effects and diamagnetic anisotropy effects. All of these effects modify the magnetic field felt by H_a, thereby affecting the resonance frequency of H_a. The chemical shift of H_a is also impacted by the presence of H_b, because H_b has a magnetic moment that can either be aligned with or against the external magnetic field. H_b is like a tiny magnet, and the chemical shift of H_a is dependent on the alignment of this tiny magnet. In some molecules, H_b will be aligned with the field, while in other molecules, H_b will be aligned against the field. As a result, the chemical shift of H_a in some molecules will be slightly different than the chemical shift of H_a in other molecules, resulting in the appearance of two peaks. In other words, the presence of H_b splits the signal for H_a into a doublet (Figure 15.10).

FIGURE 15.10
The source of a doublet.

H_a has the same effect on the signal of H_b, splitting the signal for H_b into a doublet. This phenomenon is called **spin-spin splitting**, or **coupling.**

Now consider a scenario in which H_a has two neighboring protons.

The chemical shift of H_a is impacted by the presence of both H_b protons, each of which can be aligned either with or against the external field. Once again, each H_b is like a tiny magnet and has an impact on the chemical shift of H_a. In each molecule, H_a can find itself in one of three possible electronic environments, resulting in a triplet (Figure 15.11). If each peak of the triplet is separately integrated, a ratio of 1 : 2 : 1 is observed, consistent with statistical expectations.

FIGURE 15.11
The source of a triplet.

Now consider a scenario in which H_a has three neighbors.

The chemical shift of H_a is impacted by the presence of all three H_b protons, each of which can be aligned either with the field or against the field. Once again, each H_b is like a tiny magnet and has an impact on the chemical shift of H_a. In each molecule, H_a can find itself in one of four possible electronic environments, resulting in a quartet (Figure 15.12). If each peak of the quartet is integrated separately, a ratio of 1 : 3 : 3 : 1 is observed, consistent with statistical expectations.

FIGURE 15.12
The source of a quartet.

Table 15.3 summarizes the splitting patterns and peak intensities for signals that result from coupling with neighboring protons. When analyzing this information, a pattern emerges. Specifically, if n is the number of neighboring protons, then the multiplicity will be $n + 1$. Extending this rule, a proton with six neighbors ($n = 6$) will be split into a septet (7 peaks, or $n + 1$). This observation, called the ***n* + 1 rule**, only applies when all of the neighboring protons are chemically equivalent to each other. If, however, there are two or more different kinds of neighboring protons, then the observed splitting will be more complex, as we will see at the end of this section.

TABLE 15.3 MULTIPLICITY INDICATES THE NUMBER OF NEIGHBORING PROTONS

NUMBER OF NEIGHBORS	MULTIPLICITY	RELATIVE INTENSITIES OF INDIVIDUAL PEAKS
0	Singlet	1
1	Doublet	1:1
2	Triplet	1:2:1
3	Quartet	1:3:3:1
4	Quintet	1:4:6:4:1
5	Sextet	1:5:10:10:5:1
6	Septet	1:6:15:20:15:6:1

There are two major factors that determine whether or not splitting occurs:

Four equivalent protons
No splitting

1. Equivalent protons do not split each other. Consider the two methylene groups in 1,2-dichloroethane (shown at right). All four protons are chemically equivalent, and therefore, they do not split each other. In order for splitting to occur, the neighboring protons must be different than the protons producing the signal.
2. Splitting is most commonly observed when protons are separated by either two or three σ bonds, that is, when the protons are either diastereotopic protons on the same carbon atom (geminal) or connected to adjacent carbon atoms (vicinal).

Splitting is observed

Splitting is generally not observed

When two protons are separated by more than three σ bonds, splitting is generally not observed. Such long-range splitting is only observed in rigid molecules, such as bicyclic compounds, or in molecules that contain rigid structural groups, such as allylic systems. For purposes of this introductory treatment of NMR spectroscopy, we will avoid examples that exhibit long-range coupling.

SKILLBUILDER

15.5 PREDICTING THE MULTIPLICITY OF A SIGNAL

LEARN the skill

Determine the multiplicity of each signal in the expected ^{1}H NMR spectrum of the following compound:

SOLUTION

Begin by identifying the different kinds of protons. That is, determine the number of expected signals.

STEP 1
Identify all of the different kinds of protons.

STEP 2
For each kind of proton, identify the number of neighbors (n). The multiplicity will follow the $n + 1$ rule.

This compound is expected to produce five signals in its ^{1}H NMR spectrum. Now let's analyze each signal using the $n + 1$ rule.

Notice that the *tert*-butyl group (on the right side of the molecule) appears as a singlet, because the following carbon atom has no protons:

This quaternary carbon atom is vicinal to each of the three methyl groups connected to it, and as a result, each of the three methyl groups has no neighboring protons. This is characteristic of *tert*-butyl groups.

PRACTICE the skill

15.15 For each of the following compounds, determine the multiplicity of each signal in the expected ^{1}H NMR spectrum:

(a) (b) (c) (d)

APPLY the skill

15.16 The volatile organic compounds (VOCs) produced by decomposing tissue and organs were studied in an effort to identify possible human-specific markers.[5] Of 452 VOCs isolated, six were found to be unique to humans, so this may prove to be a useful tool for forensic chemists trying to determine the source of unidentified remains. There are two doublets in the expected ^{1}H NMR spectrum of the human-specific VOC shown here. Identify the protons giving rise to each doublet.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 15.38, 15.67**

Coupling Constant

When signal splitting occurs, the distance between the individual peaks of a signal is called the **coupling constant**, or ***J* value**, and is measured in hertz. Neighboring protons always split each other with equivalent J values. For example, consider the two kinds of protons in an ethyl group (Figure 15.13). The H_a signal is split into a quartet under the influence of its three neighbors, while the H_b

FIGURE 15.13
The coupling constant (J_{ab}) is the same for both signals because these signals are splitting each other.

signal is split into a triplet under the influence of its two neighbors. H_a and H_b are said to be coupled to each other. The coupling constant J_{ab} is the same in both signals. J values can range anywhere from 0 to 20 Hz, depending on the type of protons involved, and are independent of the operating frequency of the spectrometer. For example, if J_{ab} is measured to be 7.3 Hz on one spectrometer, the value does not change when the spectrum is acquired on a different spectrometer that uses a stronger magnetic field. As a result, NMR spectrometers with higher operating frequencies produce spectra in which different signals are less likely to overlap. As an example, compare the two spectra of ethyl chloroacetate in Figure 15.14.

FIGURE 15.14
A 60-MHz ^{1}H NMR spectrum (top) of ethyl chloroacetate and the 300-MHz ^{1}H NMR spectrum (bottom) of ethyl chloroacetate. A 300-MHz spectrum avoids overlapping signals.

The first spectrum was acquired on a 60-MHz NMR spectrometer, and the second spectrum was acquired on a 300-MHz NMR spectrometer. In each spectrum, the coupling constant (J_{ab}) is approximately 7 Hz. The coupling constant only appears to be larger in the 60-MHz ^{1}H NMR spectrum, because each ppm corresponds with 60 Hz. The distance between each peak (7 Hz) is more than 10% of a ppm. In contrast, the coupling constant appears much smaller in the 300-MHz ^{1}H NMR spectrum, because each ppm corresponds with 300 Hz, and as a result, the distance between each peak (7 Hz) is only 2% of a ppm. This example illustrates why spectrometers with higher operating frequencies avoid overlapping signals. For this reason, 60-MHz NMR spectrometers are rarely used for routine research. They have been widely replaced with 300- and 500-MHz instruments.

FIGURE 15.15
The characteristic splitting pattern for an isolated ethyl group.

Pattern Recognition

Specific splitting patterns are commonly seen in ^{1}H NMR spectra, and recognizing these patterns allows for a more efficient analysis. Figure 15.15 shows the characteristic splitting pattern of an isolated ethyl group (*isolated* means that the CH_2 protons are only being split by the CH_3 protons). A compound containing an isolated ethyl group will display a triplet with an integration of 3, upfield from a quartet with an integration of 2 in its ^{1}H NMR spectrum. The presence of these signals in a spectrum is strongly suggestive of the presence of an ethyl group in the structure of the compound. Since the two kinds of protons of an ethyl group are splitting each other, the J values for the triplet and quartet must be equivalent.

FIGURE 15.16
The characteristic splitting pattern for an isolated isopropyl group.

Another commonly observed splitting pattern is produced by isopropyl groups (Figure 15.16). A compound containing an isolated isopropyl group will display a doublet with an integration of 6, upfield from a septet (seven peaks) with an integration of 1. The presence of these signals in a ^{1}H NMR spectrum is strongly suggestive of the presence of an isopropyl group in the structure of the compound. A septet is usually hard to see, since it is so small (integration of 1), so an enlarged reproduction (inset) of the signal is often displayed above the original signal (as shown in Figure 15.16).

Another commonly observed pattern is produced by *tert*-butyl groups (Figure 15.17). A compound containing a *tert*-butyl group will display a singlet with a relative integration of 9. The presence of this signal in a ^{1}H NMR spectrum is strongly suggestive of the presence of a *tert*-butyl group in the structure of the compound.

Pattern recognition is an important tool when analyzing NMR spectra, so let's quickly review the patterns we have seen (Figure 15.18).

FIGURE 15.17
The characteristic splitting pattern for a *tert*-butyl group.

FIGURE 15.18
The characteristic splitting patterns for ethyl, isopropyl, and *tert*-butyl groups.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

15.17 Below are NMR spectra of several compounds. Identify whether these compounds are likely to contain ethyl, isopropyl, and/or *tert*-butyl groups:

Complex Splitting

Complex splitting occurs when a proton has two different kinds of neighboring protons. For example, consider the splitting pattern that you might expect for the highlighted proton (H_b) in the following compound:

In this case, H_b has two different kinds of neighbors: there is one H_a proton to the left, and there are two H_c protons to the right. As a result, the signal for H_b is being split into a doublet because of the nearby H_a proton, and it is also being split into a triplet because of the nearby H_c protons. The signal is therefore expected to have six peaks (2×3). The shape (multiplicity) of this signal depends greatly on the J values. In this case, J_{ab} is much greater than J_{bc}, so the signal will appear as a doublet of triplets, as illustrated with the splitting tree shown in Figure 15.19:

FIGURE 15.19
A splitting tree showing how a doublet of triplets is formed.

This splitting tree shows the signal for H_b being split into a doublet by one neighboring proton (H_a), and then each peak of this doublet is further split into a triplet by the neighboring H_c protons. The result is two triplets (spaced very closely next to each other in the spectrum), and this pattern is called a doublet of triplets, as shown above. This splitting pattern is a result of the fact that the spatial arrangement between H_b and H_a is very different than the spatial arrangement between H_b and H_c, so J_{ab} is much greater than J_{bc}. Let's now consider a case in which the J values are more similar. As an example, consider the two H_b protons (highlighted) in the following compound:

This structure lacks the rigid double bond that was in the previous example, and in such a case (where the compound has only single bonds that are all experiencing free rotation), all of the J values will generally be very similar (~7 Hz). The H_b protons have two different types of neighbors: there is one neighbor to the left (H_a), which should split the signal into a doublet; and there are three neighbors (H_c) to the right, which should split the signal into a quartet. Therefore, we might have expected either a doublet of quartets, or a quartet of doublets, if there had been a large difference between the J values, J_{ab} and J_{bc}. However, in this case, as we have pointed out, the J values are extremely similar ($J_{ab} \approx J_{bc} \approx 7$ Hz), and in such a case, we do not observe complex splitting. Rather, the H_b protons are considered to have four neighbors, and according to the $n + 1$ rule, the signal for the H_b protons will be a quintet ($n + 1 = 4 + 1 = 5 =$ quintet). This outcome can be justified with the splitting tree shown in Figure 15.20:

FIGURE 15.20
A splitting tree showing how a quintet is formed.

This splitting tree shows the signal for the H_b protons first being split into a quartet by the neighboring H_c protons, and then each peak of this quartet is further split into a doublet by the neighboring H_a proton. Since $J_{ab} \approx J_{bc}$, the peaks of the signal end up overlapping perfectly to produce a signal with exactly five peaks (a quintet). Note that we get the same result (a quintet) if we draw a splitting tree where we first split the signal into a doublet, and then split each of the two peaks of the doublet into a quartet. The signal is a quintet because $J_{ab} \approx J_{bc}$.

As another example, consider the ^{1}H NMR spectrum of 1-nitropropane (Figure 15.21).

FIGURE 15.21
The ^{1}H NMR spectrum of 1-nitropropane, showing an "apparent" sextet for H_b.

Look carefully at the splitting pattern of the H_b protons (at approximately 2 ppm). The H_b protons have two different types of neighbors: there are three neighbors to the left (H_a), which should split the signal into a quartet; and there are two neighbors (H_c) to the right, which should split the signal into a triplet. However, we do not observe a quartet of triplets, nor do we observe a triplet of quartets, because there is not a large difference between the J values, J_{ab} and J_{bc}. Once again, all of the bonds are single bonds (all of the bonds experience free rotation), so the J values are extremely similar ($J_{ab} \approx J_{bc} \approx 7$ Hz). In such a case, we do not observe complex splitting. Rather, the H_b protons are considered to have five neighbors, and according to the $n + 1$ rule, the signal for the H_b protons will be a sextet ($n + 1 = 5 + 1 = 6 =$ sextet). This signal appears as a sextet, because $J_{ab} \approx J_{bc}$.

In each of the previous examples, we have seen how the multiplicity of a signal (its shape) depends greatly on the J values. We saw a case where the J values were very different from each other, giving rise to complex splitting; and we also saw cases where the J values were extremely similar, so complex splitting was not observed. Finally, let's consider the splitting pattern for cases in which the difference in J values is neither large nor small. In such cases, the peaks will not overlap nicely, and the result can be a signal that is difficult to analyze. This type of signal is called a **multiplet**.

A multiplet

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

15.18 Each of the three vinylic protons of styrene is split by the other two, and the J values are found to be $J_{ab} = 11$ Hz, $J_{ac} = 17$ Hz, and $J_{bc} = 1$ Hz. Using this information, draw the expected splitting pattern for each of the three signals (H_a, H_b, and H_c).

Styrene

Protons That Lack Observable Coupling Constants

We have seen that some protons can produce signals that exhibit complex splitting. In contrast, we will now explore cases in which a proton can produce a signal for which splitting is not observed despite the presence of neighboring protons. Consider the following ^{1}H NMR spectrum of ethanol:

As expected, the spectrum exhibits the characteristic signals of an ethyl group. In addition, another signal is observed at 2.2 ppm, representing the hydroxyl proton (OH). Hydroxyl protons typically produce a signal between 2 and 5 ppm, and it is often difficult to predict exactly where that signal will appear. In this NMR spectrum, notice that the hydroxyl proton is not split into a triplet from the neighboring methylene group. Generally, no splitting is observed across the oxygen atom of an alcohol, because proton exchange is a very rapid process that is catalyzed by trace amounts of acid or base.

Hydroxyl protons are said to be **labile**, because of the rapid rate at which they are exchanged. This proton transfer process occurs at a faster rate than the timescale of an NMR spectrometer, producing a blurring effect that averages out any possible splitting effect. It is possible to slow down the rate of proton transfer by scrupulously removing the trace amounts of acid and base dissolved in ethanol. Such purified ethanol does in fact exhibit splitting across the oxygen atom, and the signal at 2.2 ppm is observed to be a triplet.

There is one other common example of neighboring protons that often do not produce observable splitting. Aldehydic protons, which generally produce signals near 10 ppm, will often couple only weakly with their neighbors (i.e., a very small *J* value).

Depending on the size of the *J* value, splitting may or may not be noticeable. If the *J* value is too small (which is often the case), then the signal near 10 ppm will appear to be a singlet, despite the presence of neighboring protons.

15.8 Drawing the Expected ^{1}H NMR Spectrum of a Compound

In Sections 15.5–15.7, we explored the three characteristics of every signal (chemical shift, multiplicity, and integration). In this section, we will apply the concepts and skills developed in the previous sections, and we will practice drawing the expected ^{1}H NMR spectrum of a compound. The following SkillBuilder illustrates the procedure.

SKILLBUILDER

15.6 DRAWING THE EXPECTED ^{1}H NMR SPECTRUM OF A COMPOUND

LEARN the skill

Draw the expected ^{1}H NMR spectrum of isopropyl acetate.

SOLUTION

Begin by determining the number of signals:

STEP 1
Determine the number of signals.

STEPS 2–4
Predict the chemical shift, integration, and multiplicity of each signal.

This compound is expected to produce three signals in its ^{1}H NMR spectrum. For each signal, analyze all three characteristics methodically. Let's begin with the methyl group on the left side of the molecule. A methyl group is expected to produce a signal at 0.9 ppm, and the neighboring carbonyl group adds +1, so we expect the signal to appear at approximately 1.9 ppm. The integration should be 3, because there are three protons (I = 3H). The multiplicity should be a singlet, because there are no neighbors.

Now consider the signal of the methine proton on the right. The benchmark value for a methine proton is 1.7 ppm, and the neighboring oxygen atom adds +3, so we expect the signal to appear at 4.7 ppm. The integration should be 1, because there is one proton (I = 1H). The multiplicity should be a septet, because there are six neighbors.

STEP 5
Draw each signal.

The last signal is from the two methyl groups on the right. Methyl groups have a benchmark value of 0.9 ppm, and the distant oxygen atom adds +0.6, so we expect a signal at approximately 1.5 ppm. The integration should be 6 because there are six protons (I = 6H), and the multiplicity should be a doublet because there is only one neighbor. This information enables us to draw the expected ^{1}H NMR spectrum. On a separate piece of paper, try to draw the spectrum. Then compare your drawn spectrum to the actual spectrum below.

Note that our predicted chemical shifts are only estimates and should be treated as such. The actual chemical shifts will usually be fairly close to the predicted value.

PRACTICE the skill

15.19 Draw the expected ^{1}H NMR spectrum for each of the following compounds:

(a)

(b)

APPLY the skill

15.20 Gamma-hydroxybutyric acid (GHB) is used in the treatment of excessive daytime sleepiness (narcolepsy), but when mixed with alcohol, it can cause loss of consciousness, which explains why it is sometimes referred to as a "date rape drug." As a result, college students should always keep an eye on their drinks, and emergency room doctors should always keep up-to-date on the latest treatment protocols for GHB intoxication.[6] Draw the expected ^{1}H NMR spectrum of GHB.

γ-Hydroxybutyric acid (GHB)

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problem 15.42**

15.9 Using ^{1}H NMR Spectroscopy to Distinguish between Compounds

NMR spectroscopy is a powerful tool for distinguishing compounds from each other. For example, consider the following three constitutional isomers, which produce different numbers of signals in their ^{1}H NMR spectra:

Three signals Four signals Two signals

These examples illustrate how similar compounds can have vastly different NMR spectra. Even compounds that produce the same number of signals can often be easily distinguished with NMR spectroscopy. You just need to identify one signal that would be different in the two spectra. The following SkillBuilder illustrates this point.

SKILLBUILDER

15.7 USING ^{1}H NMR SPECTROSCOPY TO DISTINGUISH BETWEEN COMPOUNDS

LEARN the skill

How would you use ^{1}H NMR spectroscopy to distinguish between the following compounds?

SOLUTION

First look to see if the two compounds will produce a different number of signals. For each of the structures, we expect four signals.

STEP 1
Identify the number of signals that each compound will produce.

Nevertheless, there are many other ways to distinguish these two compounds. In order to see all of the possible ways, let's methodically analyze all three characteristics for each signal:

STEP 2
Determine the expected chemical shift, integration, and multiplicity of each signal in both compounds.

STEP 3
Look for differences in the chemical shifts, multiplicities, or integration values of the signals.

Now we can compare the predicted values above and look for differences. If we look at the chemical shifts for all four signals, we find that both compounds produce signals in similar locations. However, the nature of these signals is different. For example, both compounds will produce signals at 4.2 ppm, but the first compound produces a singlet at that location, while the second compound produces a triplet. Furthermore, if we look at 2.2 ppm, we find that the first compound should have a triplet at that location, while the second compound should have a singlet.

Here is the bottom line: If you are able to predict all three characteristics of every signal, then you should be able to find several differences, even for compounds that are very similar in structure. At first, it might be helpful to actually write out all three characteristics of every signal and then compare the predicted values, as we did above. But after working several problems, you should find that you can identify differences without having to write out all of the values.

PRACTICE the skill

15.21 How would you use ^{1}H NMR spectroscopy to distinguish between the following compounds?

APPLY the skill

15.22 The familiar odor produced when rain falls on dry soil is called *petrichor*. One principal component of petrichor is a compound called geosmin (derived from the Greek words for "earth" and "smell"), shown here:

Geosmin

Geosmin is produced by bacteria, and because humans can detect its odor and taste at extremely low concentrations, it can be an undesirable contaminant of drinking water. Various treatment options can degrade geosmin, including a process called

photocatalytic degradation, in which water is irradiated with UV light in the presence of TiO_2.[7] Shown below are some of the compounds produced upon the photocatalytic degradation of geosmin. How would you use ^{1}H NMR spectroscopy to distinguish between each given pair of compounds?

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 15.39, 15.49, 15.65, 15.66, 15.69**

BioLinks Detection of Impurities in Heparin Sodium Using ^{1}H NMR Spectroscopy

Heparin sodium is an anticoagulant that is derived from pig intestines. It has been used since the 1930s for the prevention of life-threatening blood clots. Because heparin is an animal-derived product, a number of steps are used in the manufacturing process to ensure that infectious agents and impurities are removed. In January 2008, the FDA announced a recall for certain lots of heparin sodium due to an increased number of reported adverse reactions (>350) in association with heparin administration. Some of the adverse events reported were serious in nature, including allergic or hypersensitivity-type reactions, with symptoms of oral swelling, shortness of breath, and severe hypotension (low blood pressure).

During the course of the FDA investigation, contaminants similar in structure to heparin were found in some of the recalled products. The contaminants were found in significant quantities (accounting for 5–20% of the total mass of each sample). In order to ensure a safe supply of this life-saving medication, the FDA released information on two analytical methods for detection of the contaminants.

One of these methods utilizes ^{1}H NMR spectroscopy to differentiate products with and without the contaminants. In pure heparin sodium (no contaminants), a singlet peak appears upfield of 2 ppm without any additional features between 2.0 and 3.0 ppm. In heparin sodium products containing the contaminants, two additional peaks appear near 2 ppm. For future production of heparin, the FDA has recommended that manufacturers use ^{1}H NMR spectroscopy in conjunction with other conventional methods to screen for impurities prior to the release of the final products into the market.

15.10 Analyzing a ^{1}H NMR Spectrum

In this section, we will practice analyzing and interpreting NMR spectra, a process that involves five discrete steps:

LOOKING BACK
For a review of how to calculate and interpret the HDI of a compound, see Section 14.16.

1. Always begin by inspecting the molecular formula (if it is given), as it provides useful information. Specifically, calculating the hydrogen deficiency index (HDI) can provide important clues about the structure of the compound. An HDI of zero indicates that the compound does not possess any rings or π bonds. An HDI of 1 indicates that the compound has either one ring or one π bond. The larger the HDI, the less useful it is. However, an HDI of 4 or more should indicate the possible presence of an aromatic ring.

Four degrees of unsaturation (HDI=4)

2. Consider the number of signals and integration of each signal (gives clues about the symmetry of the compound).
3. Analyze each signal (chemical shift, integration, and multiplicity) and then draw fragments consistent with each signal. These fragments become our puzzle pieces that must be assembled to produce a molecular structure.
4. Assemble the fragments into a molecular structure.
5. Verify that the proposed structure is consistent with all of the spectral data.

The following SkillBuilder illustrates how this is done.

SKILLBUILDER

15.8 ANALYZING A ^{1}H NMR SPECTRUM AND PROPOSING THE STRUCTURE OF A COMPOUND

LEARN the skill

Identify the structure of a compound with the molecular formula $C_9H_{10}O$ that exhibits the following ^{1}H NMR spectrum:

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Using the molecular formula, calculate and interpret the HDI.

Begin by calculating the HDI. The molecular formula indicates 9 carbon atoms, which would require 20 hydrogen atoms in order to be fully saturated. There are only 10 hydrogen atoms, which means that 10 hydrogen atoms are missing, and therefore, the HDI is 5. This is a large number, and it would not be efficient to think about all the possible ways to have five degrees of unsaturation. However, anytime we encounter an HDI of 4 or more, we should be on the lookout for an aromatic ring. We must keep this in mind when analyzing the spectrum. In this case, we should expect to see an aromatic ring (HDI = 4) plus one other degree of unsaturation (either a ring or a double bond).

STEP 2
Consider the number of signals and integration values of each signal.

Next, consider the number of signals and the integration value for each signal. Be on the lookout for integration values that would suggest the presence of symmetry elements. For example, a signal with an integration of 4 would suggest two equivalent CH_2 groups.

In this spectrum, we see four signals. In order to analyze the integration of each signal, we must first divide by the lowest number (10.2):

$$\frac{10.2}{10.2} = 1 \qquad \frac{54.1}{10.2} = 5.30 \qquad \frac{21.1}{10.2} = 2.07 \qquad \frac{22.3}{10.2} = 2.19$$

The ratio is approximately 1 : 5 : 2 : 2. Now look at the molecular formula. There are 10 protons in the compound, so the relative integration values represent the actual number of protons giving rise to each signal.

STEP 3
Analyze the chemical shift, multiplicity, and integration of each signal and then draw a fragment consistent with each signal.

Now analyze each signal. Starting upfield, there are two triplets, each with an integration of 2. This suggests that there are two adjacent methylene groups.

These signals do not appear at 1.2, where methylene groups are expected, so one or more factors are shifting each of these signals downfield. Our proposed structure must take this into account.

Moving downfield through the spectrum, the next signal appears just above 7 ppm, characteristic of aromatic protons (just as we suspected after analyzing the HDI). The multiplicity of aromatic protons only rarely gives useful information. More often, a multiplet of overlapping signals is observed. But the integration value gives valuable information. Specifically, an integration of 5H indicates that there are five aromatic protons, which means that the aromatic ring is monosubstituted.

Five aromatic protons

LOOKING BACK
Recall from Section 15.7 that aldehydic protons often appear as singlets despite the presence of neighboring protons.

Next, move on to the last signal, which is a singlet at 10 ppm with an integration of 1. This is suggestive of an aldehydic proton. Our analysis has produced the following fragments:

STEP 4
Assemble the fragments.

Now assemble these fragments. Fortunately, there is only one way to assemble these three puzzle pieces.

STEP 5
Verify that the proposed structure is consistent with all of the spectral data.

As a final check, let's make sure that our proposed structure is consistent with all spectral data. The structure has a monosubstituted aromatic ring (it has five aromatic protons), consistent with a multiplet that has an integration of 5H appearing between 7 and 8 ppm. The aldehyde proton is consistent with a singlet at 10 ppm with an integration of 1H. Finally, there are two different methylene groups that are coupled to each other, so each is split into a triplet. Each of these triplets is shifted downfield (relative to the benchmark value of 1.2 ppm for a methylene group) as a result of one or more factors. In particular, one methylene group is shifted significantly by the carbonyl group and slightly by the aromatic ring. The other methylene group is being shifted significantly by the aromatic ring and slightly by the carbonyl group. Therefore, our proposed structure is consistent with all of the spectral data.

PRACTICE the skill

15.23 Propose a structure that is consistent with each of the following ^{1}H NMR spectra. In each case, the molecular formula is provided.

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

(f)

15.24 A compound with the molecular formula $C_{10}H_{10}O_4$ produces a ^{1}H NMR spectrum that exhibits only two signals, both singlets. One signal appears at 3.9 ppm with a relative integration value of 79. The other signal appears at 8.1 ppm with a relative integration value of 52. Identify the structure of this compound.

APPLY the skill

15.25 Neurotransmitters are small molecules that are produced by the body to send messages from one neuron to another. Noradrenaline (also called norepinephrine) and serotonin are neurotransmitters that act in the central nervous system. A synthetic compound called PMPEA has effects that are similar to both noradrenaline and serotonin in the spinal cord.[8] Deduce the structure of PMPEA, given its molecular formula ($C_9H_{13}NO$) and the following ^{1}H NMR spectral data:

1.1 ppm (2H, broad singlet)	3.8 ppm (3H, singlet)
2.7 ppm (2H, triplet)	6.8 ppm (2H, doublet)
2.9 ppm (2H, triplet)	7.1 ppm (2H, doublet)

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 15.56, 15.58, 15.63, 15.64**

15.11 Acquiring a ^{13}C NMR Spectrum

LOOKING BACK
Recall from Section 15.1 that ^{12}C does not have a nuclear spin and therefore cannot be probed with NMR spectroscopy.

Many of the principles that apply to ^{1}H NMR spectroscopy also apply to ^{13}C NMR spectroscopy, but there are a few major differences, and we will focus on those. For example, ^{1}H is the most abundant isotope of hydrogen, but ^{13}C is only a minor isotope of carbon, representing about 1.1% of all carbon atoms found in nature. As a result, only one in every hundred carbon atoms will resonate, which demands the use of a sensitive receiver coil for ^{13}C NMR spectroscopy.

In ^{1}H NMR spectroscopy, we saw that each signal has three characteristics (chemical shift, integration, and multiplicity). In ^{13}C NMR spectroscopy, only the chemical shift is generally reported. The integration and multiplicity of ^{13}C signals are not reported, which greatly simplifies the interpretation of ^{13}C NMR spectra. Integration values are not routinely calculated in ^{13}C NMR spectroscopy because the pulse technique employed by FT-NMR spectrometers has the undesired effect of distorting the integration values. Multiplicity is also not a common characteristic of ^{13}C NMR spectra.

Notice that all of the signals are recorded as singlets. There are several good reasons for this. First, no splitting is observed between neighboring carbon atoms because of the low abundance of ^{13}C. The likelihood of a compound having two neighboring ^{13}C atoms is quite small, so $^{13}C - ^{13}C$ splitting is not observed. In contrast, $^{13}C - ^{1}H$ splitting does occur, and it creates significant problems. The signal of each ^{13}C atom nucleus is split not only by the protons directly connected to it (separated by only one sigma bond) but also by the protons that are two or three sigma bonds removed. This leads to very complex splitting patterns, and signals overlap to produce an unreadable spectrum. To solve the problem, all $^{13}C - ^{1}H$ splitting is suppressed with a technique called **broadband decoupling**, which uses two rf transmitters. The first transmitter provides brief pulses in the range of frequencies that cause ^{13}C nuclei to resonate, while the second transmitter continuously irradiates the sample with the range of frequencies that cause all ^{1}H nuclei to resonate. This second rf source effectively decouples the ^{1}H nuclei from the ^{13}C nuclei, causing all of the ^{13}C signals to collapse to singlets.

The advantage of broadband decoupling comes at the expense of useful information that would otherwise be obtained from spin-spin coupling. A technique called **off-resonance decoupling** allows us to retrieve some of this information. With this technique, only the one-bond couplings are observed, so CH_3 groups appear as quartets, CH_2 groups appear as triplets, CH groups appear as doublets, and quaternary carbon atoms appear as singlets. Nonetheless, off-resonance decoupling is rarely used because it often produces overlapping peaks that are difficult to interpret. The desired information can be obtained using newer techniques, one of which is described in Section 15.13.

15.12 Chemical Shifts in ^{13}C NMR Spectroscopy

The range of rf frequencies in ^{13}C spectroscopy is different from that used in ^{1}H NMR spectroscopy, because ^{13}C atoms resonate over a different frequency range. Just as in ^{1}H NMR spectroscopy, the position of each signal is defined relative to the frequency of absorption of a reference compound, TMS. With this definition, the chemical shift of each ^{13}C atom is constant, regardless of the operating frequency of the spectrometer. In ^{13}C NMR spectroscopy, chemical shift values typically range from 0 to 220 ppm.

The number of signals in a ^{13}C NMR spectrum represents the number of carbon atoms in different electronic environments (not interchangeable by symmetry). Carbon atoms that are interchangeable by a symmetry operation (either rotation or reflection) will only produce one signal. To

illustrate this point, consider the following compounds. Each compound has eight carbon atoms but does not produce eight signals. The unique carbon atoms in each compound are highlighted. Each carbon atom that is not highlighted is equivalent to one of the highlighted carbon atoms.

The location of each signal is dependent on shielding and deshielding effects, just as we saw in ^{1}H NMR spectroscopy. Figure 15.22 shows the chemical shifts of several important types of carbon atoms. Notice that sp^3 and sp hybridized carbon atoms produce signals below 100 ppm, while sp^2 hybridized carbon atoms produce signals above 100 ppm. When sp^2 hybridized carbon atoms are part of an aromatic ring, they produce signals between 110 and 170 ppm, while sp^2 hybridized carbon atoms of carbonyl (C═O) groups produce weak signals (sometimes very weak and hard to see) above 160 ppm. The information illustrated in Figure 15.22 is also presented in tabular format (Table 15.4).

FIGURE 15.22
The general location of signals produced by different types of carbon atoms in ^{13}C NMR spectroscopy.

TABLE 15.4 TYPICAL CHEMICAL SHIFT VALUES IN ^{13}C NMR SPECTROSCOPY

TYPE OF CARBON ATOM	CHEMICAL SHIFT (ppm)	DESCRIPTION OF CARBON ATOM
	10–30	Methyl (connected to one R group)
	15–55	Methylene (connected to two R groups)
	20–60	Connected to three or four R groups
	0–40	Connected to iodine
	25–65	Connected to bromine

(*continued*)

TYPE OF CARBON ATOM	CHEMICAL SHIFT (ppm)	DESCRIPTION OF CARBON ATOM
	40–60	Connected to nitrogen
	35–80	Connected to chlorine
	40–80	Connected to oxygen
	65–90	Alkynyl
	100–150	Alkenyl
	110–170	Aromatic
	165–185	Carbonyl group of a carboxylic acid, ester, or amide
	185–220	Carbonyl group of an aldehyde or ketone

Let's now use this information to analyze a ^{13}C NMR spectrum.

SKILLBUILDER

15.9 PREDICTING THE NUMBER OF SIGNALS AND APPROXIMATE LOCATION OF EACH SIGNAL IN A ^{13}C NMR SPECTRUM

LEARN the skill

Consider the following compound:

Predict the number of signals and the location of each signal in a ^{13}C NMR spectrum of this compound.

STEP 1
Look to see if any of the carbon atoms are interchangeable by either rotational or reflectional symmetry, and determine the number of expected signals.

SOLUTION

Begin by determining the number of expected signals. The compound has nine carbon atoms, but we must look to see if any of these carbon atoms are interchangeable by a symmetry operation. In this case, there is both a plane and an axis of symmetry. As a result, we expect only five signals in the ^{13}C NMR spectrum.

STEP 2
Predict the expected region in which each signal will appear, based on hybridization states and deshielding effects.

In general, when two methyl groups are attached to the same carbon atom, they will be equivalent. This is not the case in this example, because one methyl group is *cis* to the carbonyl (C═O) group, while the other methyl group is *trans* to the carbonyl group.

The expected chemical shifts are shown below, categorized according to the region of the spectrum in which each signal is expected to appear:

PRACTICE the skill

15.26 For each of the following compounds, predict the number of signals and the approximate chemical shift of each signal in a ^{13}C NMR spectrum:

APPLY the skill

15.27 The hydronaphthacene ring system consists of five fused six-membered rings, as shown below in compounds **3** and **4**. One method for construction of this ring system involves treatment of compound **1** with an organometallic reagent such as **2**, called a Fischer carbene.[9] Two diastereomeric products are obtained, **3** and **4**, differing only in the configuration at one chiral center. Explain how you could distinguish these two products using only ^{13}C NMR.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 15.36, 15.39, 15.48, 15.68, 15.70, 15.71, 15.81, 15.82**

15.13 DEPT ^{13}C NMR Spectroscopy

As mentioned in Section 15.11, a broadband-decoupled ^{13}C spectrum does not provide information regarding the number of protons attached to each carbon atom in a compound. This information can be obtained through a variety of recently developed techniques, one of which is called distortionless enhancement by polarization transfer (DEPT). **DEPT ^{13}C NMR** spectroscopy utilizes two rf transmitters and relies on the fact that the intensity of each particular signal will respond to different pulse sequences in a predictable fashion, depending on the number of protons attached. This technique involves the acquisition of several spectra. First, a regular broadband-decoupled ^{13}C spectrum is acquired, indicating the chemical shifts associated with all carbon atoms in the compound. Then a special pulse sequence is utilized to produce a spectrum called a DEPT-90, in which only signals from CH groups appear. This spectrum does not show any signals resulting from CH_3 groups, CH_2 groups, or quaternary carbon atoms (C with no protons). Then, a different pulse sequence is employed to generate a spectrum, called a DEPT-135, in which CH_3 groups and CH groups appear as positive signals, CH_2 groups appear as negative signals (pointing down), and quaternary carbon atoms do not appear.

By comparing all of the spectra, it is possible to identify each signal in the broadband-decoupled spectrum as arising from either a CH_3 group, a CH_2 group, a CH group, or a quaternary carbon

atom. This information is summarized in Table 15.5. Notice that each type of group exhibits a different absorption pattern when all three spectra are compared. For example, only CH groups give positive signals in all three spectra, while CH_2 groups are the only groups that give negative signals in the DEPT-135 spectrum. This technique therefore produces a series of spectra that collectively contain all of the information in an off-resonance decoupled spectrum, but without the disadvantage of overlapping signals. The following SkillBuilder illustrates how DEPT spectra can be interpreted.

TABLE 15.5 SIGNAL PATTERNS FOR DEPT ^{13}C SPECTROSCOPY

	CH_3	CH_2	CH	C
BROADBAND DECOUPLED	⅄	⅄	⅄	⅄
DEPT-90	—	—	⅄	—
DEPT-135	⅄	ϒ	⅄	—

SKILLBUILDER

15.10 DETERMINING MOLECULAR STRUCTURE USING DEPT ^{13}C NMR SPECTROSCOPY

LEARN the skill

Determine the structure of an alcohol with the molecular formula $C_4H_{10}O$ that exhibits the following ^{13}C NMR spectra:

SOLUTION

Whenever the molecular formula is known, the first step is always to calculate the HDI and determine the information that it provides. In this case, there are zero degrees of unsaturation, which means that the compound does not have any rings or π bonds. Next, we focus on the number of signals in the broadband-decoupled spectrum. There are only three signals, but the molecular formula indicates that the compound has four carbon atoms. Therefore, we conclude that one of the signals must represent two chemically equivalent carbon atoms. Now we are ready to analyze each individual signal in the spectra. Using the information in Table 15.5, we can determine the following information:

- The signal at approximately 69 ppm is a CH_2 group (signal is negative in DEPT-135).
- The signal at approximately 30 ppm is a CH group (signal is positive in all spectra).

- The signal at approximately 19 ppm is a CH_3 group (signal is positive in the broadband-decoupled spectrum, absent in DEPT-90, and positive in DEPT-135).

We can now record this information on the broadband-decoupled spectrum to aid in our analysis.

In order to determine which signal represents two carbon atoms, we notice that the molecular formula indicates that the structure must have 10 protons. So far, we have only accounted for 7 of the protons ($CH_2 + CH + CH_3 + OH = 7$ protons). We need to account for 3 more protons. Therefore, we can conclude that the CH_3 signal must represent 2 equivalent carbon atoms.

We can now analyze the chemical shifts of each signal. The CH_2 signal is more downfield than the others (at 70 ppm), so this signal must represent the carbon atom attached directly to the oxygen atom. The signal at 30 ppm is also shifted slightly downfield (relative to the signal at 19 ppm), and therefore we expect this signal to represent the carbon atom that is beta to the OH group. Finally, the signal at 19 ppm represents two equivalent methyl groups, giving the following structure:

PRACTICE the skill

15.28 Determine the structure of a compound with the molecular formula $C_5H_{10}O$ that exhibits the following broadband-decoupled and DEPT-135 ^{13}C NMR spectra. The DEPT-90 spectrum has no signals.

15.29 Determine the structure of an alcohol with the molecular formula $C_5H_{12}O$ that exhibits the following signals in its ^{13}C NMR spectra:

Broadband-decoupled: 73.8 ppm, 29.1 ppm, and 9.5 ppm

DEPT-90: 73.8 ppm

DEPT-135: positive signals at 73.8 ppm and 9.5 ppm; negative signal at 29.1 ppm

15.30 A compound with the molecular formula $C_7H_{14}O$ exhibits the following ^{13}C NMR spectra:

Several structures are consistent with these spectra. To determine which structure is correct, a ^1H NMR spectrum was acquired which exhibits five signals. One of those signals is a singlet at 1.9 ppm with an integration of 3, and another of the signals is a doublet at 0.9 ppm with an integration of 6. Using this information, identify the correct structure of the compound.

APPLY the skill

15.31 Small organic molecules known as plasticizers are added to polymers to make them soft and flexible. Many phthalates commonly used as plasticizers have been banned from use in children's toys due to their potential for adverse health effects, including disruption of reproductive systems. Gas chromatography–mass spectrometry (GC–MS) has been used to measure amounts of diisobutyl phthalate (DIBP) and other phthalates in food samples.[10] Draw the expected DEPT ^{13}C NMR spectra for DIBP, including the broadband-decoupled, DEPT-90, and DEPT-135 spectra, and match the carbon atoms in the structure to the peaks in the spectra.

Diisobutyl phthalate (DIBP)

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 15.61, 15.62**

BioLinks | Magnetic Resonance Imaging (MRI)

Magnetic resonance imaging has developed into an invaluable medical diagnostic tool for its ability to take pictures of internal organs. MRI devices are essentially NMR spectrometers that are large enough to accommodate a human being. In the presence of a strong magnetic field, the subject is irradiated with rf waves that cover the range of resonance frequencies for ^1H nuclei (protons). Protons are abundant in the human body where there is water or fat. When these protons are excited, the signals produced are monitored and recorded. Unlike NMR spectrometers, MRI devices use sophisticated techniques that analyze the three-dimensional location of each signal as well as its intensity. The intensity of each signal is dependent on the density of hydrogen atoms and the nature of their magnetic environment in that particular location. This allows the identification of different types of tissues and can even be used to monitor motion, such as a beating heart. Many different videos of a beating heart taken by an MRI device are readily available online (try a Google search for "beating heart MRI").

MRI devices are able to produce pictures that cannot be obtained with other techniques. The following MRI image shows a ruptured disc pressing on a patient's spinal cord.

Chris Bjornberg/Science Source

One of the most important features of MRI devices is the low risk to the patient. The magnetic field does not cause any known health concerns, and rf radiation is relatively harmless.

REVIEW OF CONCEPTS AND VOCABULARY

SECTION 15.1

- **Nuclear magnetic resonance** (**NMR**) spectroscopy provides information about how the individual carbon and hydrogen atoms in a molecule are connected to each other.
- A spinning proton generates a **magnetic moment**, which must align either with or against an imposed external magnetic field.
- When irradiated with rf radiation, the nucleus flips to a higher energy spin state and is said to be in *resonance*.
- All protons do not absorb the same frequency because of **diamagnetism**, a weak magnetic effect due to the motion of surrounding electrons that either **shield** or **deshield** the proton.

SECTION 15.2

- The range of rf frequencies required to achieve resonance is dependent on the strength of the magnetic field, which determines the *operating frequency* of the spectrometer.
- **Continuous-wave spectrometers** have been replaced by **FT-NMR** spectrometers in which the sample is irradiated with a short pulse that covers the entire range of relevant rf frequencies, and a **free induction decay** (FID) is recorded and then converted into a spectrum.
- Deuterated solvents containing a small amount of TMS are generally used for acquiring NMR spectra.

SECTION 15.3

- In a ^{1}H NMR spectrum, each signal has three important characteristics: location, area, and shape.

SECTION 15.4

- **Chemically equivalent** protons occupy identical electronic environments and produce only one signal.
- When two protons are interchangeable by rotational symmetry, the protons are said to be **homotopic**.
- When two protons are interchangeable by reflectional symmetry, the protons are said to be **enantiotopic**.
- If two protons are neither homotopic nor enantiotopic, then they are not chemically equivalent.
- The **replacement test** is a simple technique for verifying the relationship between protons. If the replacement test produces diastereomers, then the protons are **diastereotopic**.

SECTION 15.5

- **Chemical shift (δ)** is defined as the difference (in hertz) between the resonance frequency of the proton being observed and that of TMS, divided by the operating frequency of the spectrometer.
- The left side of an NMR spectrum is described as **downfield**, and the right side is described as **upfield**.
- In the absence of inductive effects, a methyl group (CH_3) will produce a signal near 0.9 ppm, a **methylene group** (CH_2) will produce a signal near 1.2 ppm, and a **methine group** (CH) will produce a signal near 1.7 ppm. The presence of nearby groups increases these values somewhat predictably.
- **Diamagnetic anisotropy** causes the aromatic protons of benzene to be strongly deshielded.

SECTION 15.6

- The **integration**, or area under each signal, indicates the number of protons giving rise to the signal. These numbers provide the relative number, or ratio, of protons giving rise to each signal.
- Integration is often represented by *step curves*, where the height of each step curve represents the area under the signal.

SECTION 15.7

- **Multiplicity** represents the number of peaks in a signal. A **singlet** has one peak, a **doublet** has two, a **triplet** has three, a **quartet** has four, and a **quintet** has five.
- Multiplicity is the result of **spin-spin splitting**, also called **coupling**, which follows the ***n* + 1 rule**.
- Equivalent protons do not split each other.
- In order for protons to split each other, they must be separated by no more than three sigma bonds.
- When signal splitting occurs, the distance between the individual peaks of a signal is called the **coupling constant**, or ***J* value**, and is measured in hertz.
- Generally, no splitting is observed across the oxygen atom of an alcohol, because hydroxyl protons are **labile**.
- Complex splitting occurs when a proton has two different kinds of neighbors, often producing a **multiplet**.

SECTION 15.10

- Analyzing a ^{1}H NMR spectrum involves five discrete steps:
  1) Calculate the HDI (if the molecular formula is provided).
  2) Consider the number of signals and the integration of each signal.
  3) Analyze each signal (δ, m, I), and then draw fragments consistent with each signal.
  4) Assemble the fragments.
  5) Verify that the proposed structure is consistent with all of the spectral data.

SECTION 15.11

- ^{13}C is an isotope of carbon, representing 1.1% of all carbon atoms.
- In ^{13}C NMR spectroscopy, only the chemical shift is generally reported.
- All ^{13}C–^{1}H splitting is suppressed with a technique called **broadband decoupling**, causing all of the ^{13}C signals to collapse to singlets.
- **Off-resonance decoupling** allows the retrieval of some of the coupling information that was lost, but this technique is rarely used because it often produces overlapping peaks that are difficult to interpret.

SECTION 15.12

- The position of each signal in a ^{13}C NMR spectrum is defined relative to the frequency of absorption of a reference compound, tetramethylsilane (TMS).
- In ^{13}C NMR spectroscopy, chemical shift values typically range from 0 to 220 ppm.

- The number of signals in a ^{13}C NMR spectrum represents the number of carbon atoms in different electronic environments (carbons that are not interchangeable by symmetry). Carbon atoms that are interchangeable by a symmetry operation (either rotation or reflection) will only produce one signal.
- The location of a signal is dependent on a number of factors, including hybridization state and shielding effects.

SECTION 15.13

- **DEPT ^{13}C NMR** involves the acquisition of several spectra and allows the determination of the number of protons attached to each carbon atom.

SKILLBUILDER REVIEW

15.1 DETERMINING THE RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN TWO PROTONS IN A COMPOUND

METHOD 1: LOOKING FOR SYMMETRY

STEP 1 Determine if the protons are interchangeable by rotational symmetry.

Homotopic
Chemically equivalent

STEP 2 If there is no rotational symmetry, look for a plane of symmetry:

Enantiotopic
Chemically equivalent

STEP 3 If the protons cannot be interchanged via a symmetry operation:

Diastereotopic
Not chemically equivalent

METHOD 2: REPLACEMENT TEST

Replace each proton with a deuterium and compare the resulting structures.

Enantiomers
Therefore, protons are enantiotopic.
Chemically equivalent

Try Problems **15.1–15.4, 15.41**

15.2 IDENTIFYING THE NUMBER OF EXPECTED SIGNALS IN A ^{1}H NMR SPECTRUM

Count the number of different protons, using the following rules of thumb:

The three protons of a methyl group are always equivalent.

Chemically equivalent

The two protons of a methylene group (CH_2) are generally equivalent if the compound has no chiral centers.

Chemically equivalent

The two protons of a methylene group (CH_2) are generally not equivalent if the compound has a chiral center.

Not chemically equivalent

Two methylene groups will be equivalent if they can be interchanged by either rotation or reflection.

Chemically equivalent

Try Problems **15.5–15.7, 15.35, 15.43a, 15.45, 15.46, 15.50**

15.3 PREDICTING CHEMICAL SHIFTS

Benchmark values

Methyl	Methylene	Methine
~ 0.9 ppm	~ 1.2 ppm	~ 1.7 ppm

Deviations from benchmark values
Effect on alpha proton

+ 2.5 An oxygen of an alcohol or ether

Example:

1.2
+ 2.5
= 3.7 ppm

+ 3.0 An oxygen of an ester

Example:

1.2
+ 3.0
= 4.2 ppm

+ 1.0 A carbonyl group

Example:

1.2
+ 1.0
= 2.2 ppm

Try Problems **15.8, 15.9, 15.43b**

15.4 DETERMINING THE NUMBER OF PROTONS GIVING RISE TO A SIGNAL

STEP 1 Compare the relative integration values and choose the lowest number.

STEP 2 Divide all integration values by the number from step 1, which gives the ratio of protons.

STEP 3 Identify the number of protons in the compound (from the molecular formula) and then adjust the relative integration values so that the sum of the integrals equals the number of protons in the compound.

Try Problems **15.11–15.14, 15.56**

15.5 PREDICTING THE MULTIPLICITY OF A SIGNAL

STEP 1 Identify all of the different kinds of protons.

Five kinds of protons

STEP 2 For each kind of proton, identify the number of neighbors (n). The multiplicity will be $n + 1$.

Try Problems **15.15, 15.16, 15.38, 15.67**

15.6 DRAWING THE EXPECTED ^{1}H NMR SPECTRUM OF A COMPOUND

STEP 1 Identify the number of signals.	**STEP 2** Predict the chemical shift of each signal.	**STEP 3** Determine the integration of each signal by counting the number of protons giving rise to each signal.	**STEP 4** Predict the multiplicity of each signal.	**STEP 5** Draw each signal.

Try Problems **15.19, 15.20, 15.42**

15.7 USING ^{1}H NMR SPECTROSCOPY TO DISTINGUISH BETWEEN COMPOUNDS

STEP 1 Identify the number of signals that each compound will produce. The simplest way to distinguish compounds is if they are expected to produce a different number of signals.	**STEP 2** If each compound is expected to produce the same number of signals, then determine the chemical shift, multiplicity, and integration of each signal in both compounds.	**STEP 3** Look for differences in the chemical shifts, multiplicities, or integration values of the expected signals.

Try Problems **15.21, 15.22, 15.39, 15.49, 15.65, 15.66, 15.69**

15.8 ANALYZING A ^{1}H NMR SPECTRUM AND PROPOSING THE STRUCTURE OF A COMPOUND

STEP 1 Use the molecular formula to determine the HDI. An HDI of 4 or more indicates the possibility of an aromatic ring.	**STEP 2** Consider the number of signals and integration of each signal (gives clues about the symmetry of the compound).	**STEP 3** Analyze each signal (δ, m, I) and then draw fragments consistent with each signal. These fragments become our puzzle pieces that must be assembled to produce a molecular structure.	**STEP 4** Assemble the fragments.	**STEP 5** Verify that the proposed structure is consistent with all of the spectral data.

Try Problems **15.23–15.25, 15.56, 15.58, 15.63, 15.64**

15.9 PREDICTING THE NUMBER OF SIGNALS AND APPROXIMATE LOCATION OF EACH SIGNAL IN A ^{13}C NMR SPECTRUM

STEP 1 Determine the number of expected signals. Look to see if any of the carbon atoms are interchangeable by either rotational or reflectional symmetry.	**STEP 2** Predict the expected region in which each signal will appear, based on hybridization states and deshielding effects. sp^3 and sp hybridized carbon atoms produce signals below 100 ppm, while sp^2 hybridized carbon atoms produce signals above 100 ppm. When sp^2 hybridized carbon atoms are part of an aromatic ring, they produce signals between 110 and 170 ppm, while sp^2 hybridized carbon atoms of carbonyl (C=O) groups produce weak signals above 160 ppm (see Table 15.4 for more values).

Try Problems **15.26, 15.27, 15.36, 15.39, 15.48, 15.68, 15.70, 15.71, 15.81, 15.82**

15.10 DETERMINING MOLECULAR STRUCTURE USING DEPT ^{13}C NMR SPECTROSCOPY

	CH_3	CH_2	CH	C
BROADBAND DECOUPLED	⅄	⅄	⅄	⅄
DEPT-90	—	—	⅄	—
DEPT-135	⅄	⅂	⅄	—

Try Problems **15.28–15.31, 15.61, 15.62**

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

• **Included in Answers section**

15.32 • For each of the molecular formulas shown below, there is a compound that exhibits a ^{1}H NMR spectrum with only one signal. Deduce the structure in each case.

(a) C_5H_{10} (b) $C_5H_8Cl_4$ (c) $C_{12}H_{18}$

15.33 • A compound with the molecular formula $C_{12}H_{24}$ exhibits a ^{1}H NMR spectrum with only one signal and a ^{13}C NMR spectrum with two signals. Deduce the structure of this compound.

15.34 A compound with the molecular formula $C_{17}H_{36}$ exhibits a ^{1}H NMR spectrum with only one signal. How many signals would you expect in the ^{13}C NMR spectrum of this compound?

15.35 • How many signals would you expect in the ^{1}H NMR spectrum of each of the following compounds:

15.36 How many signals would you expect in the ^{13}C NMR spectrum of each of the compounds in Problem 15.35?

15.37 How would you distinguish between the following compounds using ^{13}C NMR spectroscopy?

15.38 Predict the multiplicity of each signal in the ^{1}H NMR spectrum of the following compound:

15.39 For each pair of compounds, identify how you would distinguish them using either ^{1}H NMR spectroscopy or ^{13}C NMR spectroscopy:

15.40 A compound with the molecular formula C_8H_{18} exhibits a ^{1}H NMR spectrum with only one signal. How many signals would you expect in the ^{13}C NMR spectrum of this compound?

15.41 • For each of the following compounds, compare the two indicated protons and determine whether they are enantiotopic, homotopic, or diastereotopic:

15.42 Draw the expected ^{1}H NMR spectrum of the following compound:

15.43 Consider the following compound:

(a) How many signals do you expect in the ^{1}H NMR spectrum of this compound?

(b) Rank the protons in terms of increasing chemical shift.

(c) How many signals do you expect in the ^{13}C NMR spectrum?

(d) Rank the carbon atoms in terms of increasing chemical shift.

15.44 A compound with the molecular formula C_9H_{18} exhibits a ^{1}H NMR spectrum with only one signal and a ^{13}C NMR spectrum with two signals. Deduce the structure of this compound.

15.45 How many signals do you expect in the ^{1}H NMR spectrum of each of the following compounds?

(a) **Geraniol**
Isolated from roses
and used in perfumes

(b) **Isoprene**
A precursor for natural rubber

15.46 Identify the structure of a compound with the molecular formula C_9H_{20} that exhibits four CH_2 groups, all of which are chemically equivalent. How many total signals would you expect in the ^{1}H NMR spectrum of this compound?

15.47 Consider the ^{1}H NMR spectrum of the following compound, and rank the signals in terms of increasing chemical shift. Identify the proton(s) giving rise to each signal:

15.48 Predict the expected number of signals in the ^{13}C NMR spectrum of each of the following compounds. For each signal, determine its approximate chemical shift.

(a)

(b)

(c)

15.49 When 1-methylcyclohexene is treated with HCl, a Markovnikov addition is observed. How would you use ^{1}H NMR spectroscopy to determine that the major product is indeed the Markovnikov product?

15.50 How many signals are expected in the ^{1}H NMR spectrum of each of the following compounds?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

(f)

(g)

(h)

15.51 Compare the structures of ethylene, acetylene, and benzene. Each of these compounds produces only one signal in its ^{1}H NMR spectrum. Arrange these signals in order of increasing chemical shift.

15.52 Assuming a 300-MHz instrument is used, calculate the difference between the frequency of absorption (in hertz) of TMS and the frequency of absorption of a proton with a δ value of 1.2 ppm.

15.53 A compound with the molecular formula $C_{13}H_{28}$ exhibits a ^{1}H NMR spectrum with two signals: a septet with an integration of 1 and a doublet with an integration of 6. Deduce the structure of this compound.

15.54 A compound with the molecular formula C_8H_{10} produces three signals in its ^{13}C NMR spectrum and only two signals in its ^{1}H NMR spectrum. Deduce the structure of the compound.

15.55 A compound with the molecular formula C_3H_8O produces a broad signal between 3200 and 3600 cm^{-1} in its IR spectrum and produces two signals in its ^{13}C NMR spectrum. Deduce the structure of the compound.

15.56 A compound with the molecular formula $C_4H_6O_4$ produces a broad signal between 2500 and 3600 cm^{-1} in its IR spectrum and produces two signals in its ^{1}H NMR spectrum (a broad singlet at 12.1 ppm with a relative integration of 1 and a singlet at 2.4 ppm with a relative integration of 2). Deduce the structure of the compound.

15.57 Propose the structure of a compound that exhibits the following ^{1}H NMR data:

(a) $C_5H_{10}O$
1.09 ppm (6H, doublet)
2.12 ppm (3H, singlet)
2.58 ppm (1H, septet)

(b) $C_5H_{12}O$
0.91 ppm (3H, triplet)
1.19 ppm (6H, singlet)
1.50 ppm (2H, quartet)
2.24 ppm (1H, singlet)

(c) $C_4H_{10}O$
0.90 ppm (6H, doublet)
1.76 ppm (1H, multiplet)
3.38 ppm (2H, doublet)
3.92 ppm (1H, singlet)

15.58 Deduce the structure of a compound with the molecular formula C_9H_{12} that produces the following ^{1}H NMR spectrum:

15.59 • Deduce the structure of a compound with the molecular formula $C_9H_{10}O_2$ that produces the following ^{1}H NMR spectrum and ^{13}C NMR spectrum:

15.60 Propose the structure of a compound consistent with the following data:

(a) $C_5H_{10}O$, broadband-decoupled ^{13}C NMR: 7.1 ppm, 34.6 ppm, 210.5 ppm

(b) $C_6H_{10}O$, broadband-decoupled ^{13}C NMR: 70.8 ppm, 115.2 ppm, 134.8 ppm

15.61 Determine the structure of an alcohol with the molecular formula $C_4H_{10}O$ that exhibits the following signals in its ^{13}C NMR spectra:

Broadband-decoupled: 69.3 ppm, 32.1 ppm, 22.8 ppm, 10.0 ppm

DEPT-90: 69.3 ppm

DEPT-135: positive signals at 69.3 ppm, 22.8 ppm, and 10.0 ppm; negative signal at 32.1 ppm

15.62 Determine the structure of an alcohol with the molecular formula $C_6H_{14}O$ that exhibits the following ^{13}C DEPT-135 NMR spectrum:

ACS-STYLE PROBLEMS (Multiple Choice)

Problems 15.63–15.71 follow the style of the ACS organic chemistry exam. For each of these problems, there will be one correct answer and three distractors.

15.63 • Which compound gives the following ^1H NMR spectrum?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

15.64 • A compound with the molecular formula $C_4H_8O_2$ gives a ^1H NMR spectrum with the following three signals. What is the structure of the compound?

1.21 ppm (6H, doublet)
2.59 ppm (1H, septet)
11.38 ppm (1H, singlet)

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

15.65 • Which of the following compounds has a triplet at approximately 4 ppm in its ^1H NMR spectrum?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

15.66 • Which of the following best describes the difference between the methyl and methoxy signals in the ^1H NMR spectrum of the following compound?

(a) The methoxy group is further upfield because it is shielded by the oxygen atom.

(b) The methoxy group is further downfield because it is shielded by the oxygen atom.

(c) The methoxy group is further upfield because it is deshielded by the oxygen atom.

(d) The methoxy group is further downfield because it is deshielded by the oxygen atom.

15.67 • Which of the following describes the pattern observed for an ethyl group in a ^1H NMR spectrum?

(a) The spectrum contains a 2H quartet and a 3H triplet.

(b) The spectrum contains a 2H doublet and a 3H triplet.

(c) The spectrum contains a 2H triplet and a 3H doublet.

(d) The spectrum contains a 2H triplet and a 3H quartet.

15.68 • For the given compound, a total of how many signals are expected in its ^{13}C and ^1H NMR spectra?

	^{13}C NMR	^1H NMR
(a)	7	5
(b)	6	6
(c)	7	6
(d)	6	5

15.69 • Which compound gives the following ^{1}H NMR spectrum?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

15.70 • The given ^{13}C NMR spectrum is consistent with which of the following compounds?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

15.71 • Which of the following compounds has a total of four signals in its ^{13}C NMR spectrum?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

INTEGRATED PROBLEMS

15.72 • Deduce the structure of a compound with the molecular formula $C_6H_{14}O_2$ that exhibits the following IR, ^{1}H NMR, and ^{13}C NMR spectra:

15.73 Deduce the structure of a compound with the molecular formula $C_8H_{10}O$ that exhibits the following IR, ^{1}H NMR, and ^{13}C NMR spectra:

15.74 Deduce the structure of a compound with the molecular formula $C_5H_{10}O$ that exhibits the following IR, ^{1}H NMR, and ^{13}C NMR spectra. Data from the mass spectrum are also provided.

Mass Spec. Data

m/z	relative abund.
15	23
26	20
27	61
29	92
30	20
31	45
39	47
41	100
45	10
57	82
58	86
86	12

15.75 Deduce the structure of a compound with the molecular formula $C_8H_{14}O_3$ that exhibits the following IR, ^{1}H NMR, and ^{13}C NMR spectra:

15.76 Deduce the structure of a compound with the molecular formula $C_6H_{10}O_4$ that exhibits the following IR, ^{1}H NMR, and ^{13}C NMR spectra:[11]

15.77 Deduce the structure of a compound with the molecular formula $C_8H_{14}O_4$ that exhibits the following IR, ^{1}H NMR, and ^{13}C NMR spectra:

15.78 Deduce the structure of a compound with the molecular formula $C_{12}H_8Br_2$ that exhibits the following ^{1}H NMR and ^{13}C NMR spectra:

15.79 An unknown compound exhibits the following IR, ^{1}H NMR, and ^{13}C NMR spectra. In a mass spectrum of this compound, the $(M)^{+\bullet}$ peak appears at m/z = 104, and the $(M+1)^{+\bullet}$ peak is 4.4% the height of the molecular ion. Elemental analysis reveals that the compound consists only of carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen atoms.

(a) Determine the molecular formula of the compound.

(b) Deduce the structure of the compound.

15.80 Consider the structure of *N*,*N*-dimethylformamide (DMF):

We might expect the two methyl groups to be equivalent; however, both the proton and carbon NMR spectra of DMF show two separate signals for the methyl groups. Propose an explanation for the nonequivalence of the methyl groups. Would you expect the signals to collapse into one signal at high temperature?

(**Hint:** You may want to turn to Section 2.13 and consider the hybridization state of the nitrogen atom.)

15.81 Compare the following two constitutional isomers. The ^{13}C NMR spectrum of the first compound exhibits five signals, while the second compound exhibits six signals. Explain.

15.82 Draw the structure of a compound with the molecular formula C_8H_{10} that exhibits five signals in its ^{13}C NMR spectrum, four of which appear between 100 and 150 ppm.

15.83 Consider the two methyl groups shown in the following compound. Propose an explanation for why the methyl group on the right appears farther upfield than the methyl group on the left.

CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

15.84 Brevianamide S, a potent anti-tubercular natural product, was isolated from marine sediment collected off the coast of China.[12] Predict the chemical shift and determine the multiplicity of each signal in the ^1H NMR spectrum for brevianamide S (chemical shifts have been provided in situations where the relevant benchmark values were not covered in this chapter).

15.85 Treatment of 1,3,6-cyclononatriene (compound **1**), or its dimethyl derivative (compound **2**), with potassium amide (KNH_2) in liquid ammonia results in the formation of anion **1a** or **2a**, respectively:[13]

(a) Draw all four resonance structures of **1a**.

(b) How many signals do you expect in the ^1H NMR spectrum of **1a**?

(c) The ^1H NMR spectrum of **1a** exhibits signals at 3.74 and 3.39 ppm, representing the protons at positions C1 and C3, respectively, while the protons at positions C2 and C4 produce signals at 5.63 and 5.52 ppm, respectively. Explain why the protons are grouped this way, and why there is such a large difference in chemical shifts between the two groups of protons.

(d) How many signals do you expect in the ^1H NMR spectrum of **2a**? How many signals do you expect to appear in the range 3–4 ppm, and how many signals in the range 5–6 ppm?

15.86 Compound **1** can serve as a precursor in the synthesis of flutamide (**2**), a drug used in the treatment of prostate cancer:[14]

(a) Compound **1** has three distinct aromatic protons, labeled H_a, H_b, and H_c. Identify which aromatic proton gives rise to the most downfield signal. Justify your choice with an analysis of resonance effects and inductive effects.

(b) Consider the same three aromatic protons in compound **2**. Do you expect these three signals to be shifted upfield or downfield relative to the same three signals for compound **1**? Explain your reasoning and predict which of the protons are most affected by the transformation of **1** to **2**.

15.87 Coumarin (**1**) and its derivatives exhibit a broad array of industrial applications, including, but not limited to, cosmetics, food preservatives, and fluorescent laser dyes. In the ^1H NMR spectrum of compound **2** (a coumarin derivative), the two signals farthest downfield are at 7.38 and 8.42 ppm:[15]

(a) Identify the two protons that most likely give rise to these signals and justify your decision using resonance structures.

(b) Do you expect the IR signal corresponding to the C3—C4 π bond to be a stronger signal in compound **1** or in compound **2**? Explain your reasoning.

LIST OF REFERENCES

1. *J. Chromatogr. A* **2015**, *1397*, 32–42.
2. *Chemosphere* **2016**, *147*, 67–73.
3. *Appl. Microbiol. Biotechnol.* **2002**, *58(5)*, 684–689.
4. *Adv. Funct. Mater.* **2015**, *25*, 3860–3869.
5. *PLoS ONE* **2015** 10(9): e0137341.
6. *Acad. Emerg. Med.* **2002**, *9*, 730–739.
7. *Water SA [online]* **2012**, *38*, No. 5.
8. *British Journal of Pharmacology* **1976**, *57*, 191–199.
9. *Tetrahedron Lett.* **2011**, *52*, 4182–4185.
10. *Food Chem.* **2016**, *196*, 211–219.
11. *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed.* **2011**, *50*, 8387–8390.
12. *Org. Lett.* **2012**, *14*, 4770–4773.
13. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1973**, *95*, 3437–3438.
14. *J. Chem. Ed.* **2003**, *80*, 1439–1443.
15. *J. Chem. Ed.* **2006**, *83*, 287–289.

16

16.1 Classes of Dienes
16.2 Conjugated Dienes
16.3 Molecular Orbital Theory
16.4 Electrophilic Addition
16.5 Thermodynamic Control vs. Kinetic Control
16.6 An Introduction to Pericyclic Reactions
16.7 Diels–Alder Reactions
16.8 MO Description of Cycloadditions
16.9 Electrocyclic Reactions
16.10 Sigmatropic Rearrangements
16.11 UV-Vis Spectroscopy
16.12 Color
16.13 Chemistry of Vision

Top (*Pouring coffee*) ifong/Shutterstock

Conjugated Pi Systems and Pericyclic Reactions

DID YOU EVER **WONDER...**

how bleach removes stains that are not easily removed with regular detergents?

Most bleaching agents do not actually remove stains, but instead, they react with the colored compounds in the stain to produce colorless compounds. The stain is still there, but it has been rendered "invisible." When illuminated with ultraviolet light, the invisible stain can be seen once again. In this chapter, we will learn about the structural features that cause organic compounds to absorb visible light. Specifically, we will see that color is a consequence of special conjugated π systems. In this chapter, we will learn about the structure, properties, and reactions of conjugated π systems.

vichly4thai/Adobe Stock

DO YOU **REMEMBER?**

Before you go on, be sure you understand the following topics.
If necessary, review the suggested sections to prepare for this chapter.

- MO Theory and Pi Bonds (Sections 1.9, 1.10)
- Conformations (Sections 4.7, 4.8)
- Enthalpy, Entropy, and Gibbs Free Energy (Sections 6.1–6.3)
- Equilibria, Kinetics, and Energy Diagrams (Sections 6.4–6.6)

Take the DO YOU **REMEMBER?** QUIZ in the **online course** to check your understanding.

FIGURE 16.1
The relative spatial arrangement of the *p* orbitals in cumulated, conjugated, and isolated dienes.

16.1 Classes of Dienes

Dienes are compounds that possess two C═C bonds. Depending on the proximity of the π bonds, they are classified as cumulated, conjugated, or isolated.

- In **cumulated dienes**, also called *allenes*, the π bonds are adjacent.
- In **conjugated dienes**, the π bonds are separated by exactly one σ bond.
- In **isolated dienes**, the π bonds are separated by two or more σ bonds.

The proximity of the π bonds is critical to understanding the structure and reactivity of a diene. In particular, consider the spatial arrangement of *p* orbitals in each of the dienes in Figure 16.1. Conjugated dienes represent a special category, because they contain one continuous system of overlapping *p* orbitals—that is, the two π bonds together comprise one functional group composed of four overlapping *p* orbitals. As such, conjugated dienes exhibit special properties and reactivity.

A C═C π bond can also be conjugated with other types of π bonds, such as carbonyl groups.

A conjugated enone

This chapter will focus on the properties and reactivity of conjugated π systems.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

16.1 For each of the following compounds, identify whether each C═C π bond is cumulated, conjugated, or isolated:

(a)

***cis*-Aconitic acid**
Plays a role in the citric acid cycle

(b)

Ocimene
Present in the essential oils of many plants

(c)

***cis*-Jasmone**
A constituent of many perfumes

(d)

(*R*)-Carvone
Responsible for the flavor of spearmint

16.2 Conjugated Dienes

Preparation

Conjugated dienes can be prepared from allylic halides via an elimination process.

A sterically hindered base, such as potassium *tert*-butoxide, is used to prevent the competing S_N2 reaction from occurring. Conjugated dienes can also be formed from dihalides via two successive elimination reactions.

Bond Lengths

Compare the bond lengths of the following single bonds:

The single bond in a conjugated diene is shorter than a typical C—C single bond. There are a couple of ways to explain this difference. The simpler approach derives from an analysis of the hybridization states involved:

The C—C bond of a conjugated diene is formed from the overlap of two sp^2-hybridized orbitals, while the C—C bond in ethane is formed from the overlap of two sp^3-hybridized orbitals. Orbitals that are sp^2-hybridized have more *s* character than sp^3-hybridized orbitals (Figure 16.2).

FIGURE 16.2
The relative amount of "s character" for atomic orbitals.

Thus, the electron density of an sp^2-hybridized orbital will be closer to the nucleus than the electron density of an sp^3-hybridized orbital, and as a result, a bond between two sp^2-hybridized orbitals will be shorter than a bond between two sp^3-hybridized orbitals.

Stability

We can compare the relative stability of conjugated and isolated dienes by comparing their heats of hydrogenation. For example, compare the heats of hydrogenation of 1-butene and 1,3-butadiene (Figure 16.3). We might expect that the heat of hydrogenation for 2 mol of 1-butene would be the same as the heat of hydrogenation for 1 mol of 1,3-butadiene. After all, both reactions produce butane as the sole product. Experiments reveal, however, that the heat

FIGURE 16.3
A comparison of the heats of hydrogenation of isolated and conjugated π bonds.

of hydrogenation for the conjugated diene is less than expected. These results suggest that conjugated double bonds are more stable than isolated double bonds, and we can determine that the *stabilization energy* associated with a conjugated diene is approximately 15 kJ/mol. The source of this stabilization energy will be discussed in Section 16.3.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

16.2 Identify reagents necessary to convert cyclohexane into 1,3-cyclohexadiene. Notice that the starting material has no leaving groups and cannot simply be treated with a strong base. You must first introduce functionality into the starting material (for help with introducing a functional group into an alkane, see Section 10.13).

16.3 Rank the three C—C bonds of 1-butene in terms of bond length (from shortest to longest).

16.4 Compare the following three isomeric dienes:

(a) Which compound will liberate the least heat upon hydrogenation with 2 mol of hydrogen gas? Why?

(b) Which compound will liberate the most heat upon hydrogenation with 2 mol of hydrogen gas? Why?

Conformations of 1,3-Butadiene

At room temperature, 1,3-butadiene experiences free rotation about the C2—C3 bond, giving rise to two important conformers.

In the ***s-cis*** conformer, the disposition of the two π bonds with regard to the connecting single bond is *cis-like* (a dihedral angle of 0°). In the ***s-trans*** conformer, the disposition of the two π bonds with regard to the connecting single bond is *trans-like* (a dihedral angle of 180°). In each of these conformers, the *p* orbitals effectively overlap to give a continuous, conjugated π system (Figure 16.4).

FIGURE 16.4
The *p* orbitals of 1,3-butadiene effectively overlap in both the *s-cis* and *s-trans* conformers.

At room temperature, these two conformers rapidly interconvert, establishing an equilibrium (Figure 16.5). The activation energy for conversion from the *s-cis* to the *s-trans* conformer is

FIGURE 16.5
An energy diagram that illustrates the equilibrium between the *s-cis* and *s-trans* conformations.

approximately 15 kJ/mol, which is equivalent to the stabilization energy associated with conjugated double bonds. In other words, the stabilizing effect of conjugation is completely destroyed when the C2—C3 bond is rotated by 90°. In such a high-energy conformation, the two π bonds do not effectively overlap, so they are essentially equivalent to isolated double bonds (Figure 16.6).

FIGURE 16.6
The *p* orbitals of 1,3-butadiene do not effectively overlap when the C2—C3 bond is rotated by 90°.

Due to steric factors, the *s-trans* conformer is significantly lower in energy than the *s-cis* conformer, and as a result, the equilibrium favors the *s-trans* conformer. At any given time, approximately 98% of the molecules assume an *s-trans* conformation, while only 2% of the molecules assume an *s-cis* conformation.

16.3 Molecular Orbital Theory

Throughout this chapter, we will invoke molecular orbital (MO) theory to explain the reactivity and properties of conjugated π systems. This section is designed to review and introduce some of the most basic features of MO theory.

Recall that a π bond is constructed from overlapping *p* orbitals (Figure 1.29). According to MO theory, these two atomic *p* orbitals are mathematically combined to produce two new orbitals, called *molecular orbitals*. There is a profound difference between an atomic orbital and a molecular orbital. Specifically, electrons that occupy atomic orbitals are associated with an individual atom, while electrons that occupy a molecular orbital are associated with the entire molecule. In Section 1.10, we discussed the molecular orbitals associated with the π bond of ethylene, shown again below in Figure 16.7. According to MO theory, the two atomic *p* orbitals are replaced by two molecular orbitals—a bonding MO and an antibonding MO. The antibonding MO exhibits a node that is absent in the bonding MO (shown in Figure 16.7). Accordingly, the antibonding MO is higher in energy than the bonding MO. The π bond results from the ability of the π electrons to achieve a lower energy state by occupying the bonding MO.

FIGURE 16.7
An energy diagram showing images of the bonding and antibonding MOs associated with the π bond in ethylene.

Molecular Orbitals of Butadiene

A conjugated diene, such as 1,3-butadiene, is comprised of four overlapping *p* orbitals. According to MO theory, these four atomic *p* orbitals are mathematically combined to produce four molecular orbitals (Figure 16.8). The lowest energy MO (ψ_1) has no vertical nodes. The next MO (ψ_2) has one vertical node, and each higher energy MO has one additional vertical node. These four MOs are often represented with the shorthand drawings in Figure 16.9. Although these drawings resemble *p* orbitals, they are actually used to represent *molecular* orbitals, rather than *atomic* orbitals. These drawings are just a quick, shorthand method for drawing the phases and nodes of the MOs from Figure 16.8. We will use this method several times in this chapter, so it is important to understand that these drawings are merely simplified representations of molecular orbitals.

FIGURE 16.8
The MOs of 1,3-butadiene.

FIGURE 16.9
A shorthand method for representing the MOs of 1,3-butadiene.

MO theory provides an explanation for the stability associated with conjugated dienes, as discussed in Section 16.2. As seen in Figure 16.9, the four π electrons of a conjugated diene occupy the two lowest energy MOs (the bonding MOs). So let's focus our attention on those two MOs. The lowest energy MO (ψ_1) exhibits double-bond character at C2—C3, while the second MO (ψ_2) does not (Figure 16.10). All four π electrons occupy these two MOs (ψ_1 and ψ_2).

FIGURE 16.10
The occupied MOs of 1,3-butadiene.

Therefore, the C2—C3 bond has some double-bond character and some single-bond character. MO theory therefore provides us with an alternate way of explaining the short bond distance of the C2—C3 bond. In addition, MO theory also explains the stabilization energy associated with a conjugated diene. Specifically, the two electrons that occupy ψ_1 are delocalized over four carbon atoms. This delocalization accounts for the observed stabilization energy discussed in Section 16.2 (Figure 16.3).

Molecular Orbitals of Hexatriene

A conjugated triene, such as 1,3,5-hexatriene, is comprised of six overlapping *p* orbitals. According to MO theory, these six atomic *p* orbitals are mathematically combined to produce six molecular orbitals (Figure 16.11). In this case, the six π electrons occupy the three MOs that are lowest in energy (the bonding MOs). Of these three MOs, the highest in energy is called the

FIGURE 16.11
The MOs of 1,3,5-hexatriene.

*H*ighest *O*ccupied *M*olecular *O*rbital, or HOMO for short. Of the three unoccupied MOs (the antibonding MOs), the lowest in energy is called the *L*owest *U*noccupied *M*olecular *O*rbital, or LUMO for short.

For any conjugated polyene, the HOMO and the LUMO are the most important MOs to consider and are called the **frontier orbitals**. The HOMO contains the highest energy π electrons, which are most readily available to participate in a reaction, and the LUMO is the lowest energy MO that is capable of accepting electron density. Throughout this chapter, we will explore the reactivity of conjugated polyenes by focusing on their frontier orbitals, the HOMO and LUMO. This approach, called **frontier orbital theory**, was first advanced in1954 by Kenichi Fukui (Kyoto University, Japan), a co-recipient of the Nobel Prize in Chemistry in 1981.

Conjugated π systems are capable of interacting with light, a phenomenon that will be discussed in greater detail at the end of this chapter. Under the right conditions, a π electron in the HOMO can absorb a photon of light bearing the appropriate energy necessary to promote the electron to the LUMO. For example, consider the photochemical excitation of hexatriene (Figure 16.12). In the ground state of hexatriene (prior to excitation), the HOMO is ψ_3, but in the **excited state**, the HOMO is ψ_4. Excitation causes a change in the identities of the frontier orbitals. The ability of light to affect the frontier orbitals will be important in Section 16.9, when we will discuss reactions induced by light, called **photochemical reactions**.

FIGURE 16.12
An energy diagram showing the electron configuration of the ground state and excited state of 1,3,5-hexatriene.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

16.5 Draw an energy diagram showing the relative energy levels of the MOs for 1,3,5,7-octatetraene and identify the HOMO and LUMO for both the ground state and the excited state.

16.4 Electrophilic Addition

Addition of HX Across 1,3-Butadiene

In Section 8.4, we learned about the addition of HX across an alkene.

We saw that the reaction proceeds via Markovnikov addition; that is, the bromine atom is installed at the more substituted position. This regiochemical outcome was explained with the following proposed mechanism, comprised of two steps:

The first step of the mechanism controls the regiochemical outcome. Specifically, protonation gives the more stable, tertiary carbocation, rather than the less stable, primary carbocation.

When butadiene is treated with one equivalent of HBr, a similar process takes place, but two major products are observed.

The formation of these two products can be explained with a similar two-step mechanism: protonation to form a carbocation followed by nucleophilic attack. In the first step, protonation creates the more stable, resonance-stabilized, allylic carbocation, rather than an unstabilized primary carbocation.

The allylic carbocation intermediate is then subject to nucleophilic attack in either of two positions, leading to two different products.

These compounds are said to be the products of **1,2-addition** and **1,4-addition**, respectively. This terminology derives from the fact that the starting diene contains a π system spread over four atoms, and the positions of H and Br are either at C1 and C2 or at C1 and C4. The products are called the **1,2-adduct** and the **1,4-adduct**, respectively.

The exact product distribution (the ratio of products) is temperature dependent. This temperature dependence will be explored in detail in Section 16.5. For now, let's practice drawing the products and showing a mechanism of their formation.

SKILLBUILDER

16.1 PROPOSING A MECHANISM AND PREDICTING THE PRODUCTS OF ELECTROPHILIC ADDITION TO CONJUGATED DIENES

LEARN the skill

Predict the products of the following reaction and propose a mechanism that explains the formation of each product:

SOLUTION

This problem involves the addition of one equivalent of HBr across a conjugated π system. We therefore expect the reaction to occur via a mechanism that has two steps: (1) proton transfer and (2) nucleophilic attack. In order to predict the products properly, we must carefully consider the regiochemistry of the protonation step. In this case, there are four distinct locations where the proton can be placed.

STEP 1
Identify the possible locations where protonation can occur.

Protonation at either C2 or C3 will not produce an allylic carbocation.

In either case, protonation gives a secondary carbocation that is not resonance stabilized. Only protonation at C1 or C4 will produce an allylic carbocation:

STEP 2
Determine the locations where protonation will produce an allylic carbocation.

In this example, there are two different allylic carbocation intermediates that could be formed, each of which is resonance stabilized. In order to draw all possible products, consider the consequence of nucleophilic attack at each possible electrophilic position in each of the allylic carbocations:

STEP 3
Draw a nucleophilic attack occurring at each possible electrophilic position.

The last two drawings represent the same compound, giving a total of three expected products.

PRACTICE the skill

16.6 Predict the products for each of the following reactions and propose a mechanism that explains the formation of each product:

16.7 Consider the following two dienes. When treated with one equivalent of HBr, one of these dienes yields four products (not including stereoisomers), while the other diene yields only two products. Explain.

APPLY the skill

16.8 β-Damascenone belongs to a family of fragrant natural products called rose ketones that have been used in the perfume industry. In one synthesis of β-damascenone, the reaction of compound **1** with one equivalent of MCPBA afforded two constitutionally isomeric epoxides (compounds **2** and **3**), which were then converted into diol **4** upon treatment with aqueous acid.[1] Identify the structures of epoxides **2** and **3**, and propose a mechanism that converts each of them into compound **4** in the presence of H_3O^+. (**Note:** It is reasonable to presume that a protonated epoxide can open by itself, without the involvement of a nucleophile, if doing so will give a resonance-stabilized allylic carbocation intermediate.)

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 16.34, 16.37, 16.67**

Addition of Br_2 Across 1,3-Butadiene

Many other electrophiles will also add across conjugated π systems to produce mixtures of 1,2- and 1,4-adducts. For example, one equivalent of bromine will add across 1,3-butadiene to produce the following mixture of products:

16.5 Thermodynamic Control vs. Kinetic Control

In Section 16.4, we saw that conjugated π systems will undergo 1,2-addition as well as 1,4-addition. The exact ratio of products is highly dependent on the temperature at which the reaction is performed.

	1,2-Adduct	1,4-Adduct
At 0°C	71%	29%
At 40°C	15%	85%

When butadiene is treated with one equivalent of HBr at low temperature (0°C), the 1,2-adduct is favored. However, when the same reaction is performed at elevated temperature (40°C), the 1,4-adduct is favored. To understand the role temperature plays in this competition, we must look carefully at an energy diagram showing the formation of both products (Figure 16.13).

FIGURE 16.13
An energy diagram illustrating the competing pathways for 1,2-addition and 1,4-addition.

The first step of the mechanism is identical for both 1,2-addition and 1,4-addition, namely, the conjugated diene is protonated to give a resonance-stabilized, allylic carbocation and a bromide ion. However, the second step of the mechanism can occur via either of two competing pathways (shown in blue and red). Comparing these pathways, we see that 1,4-addition leads to a more stable product (lower in energy), while 1,2-addition occurs more rapidly (lower energy of activation). The 1,4-adduct is lower in energy because it exhibits a more substituted double bond.

LOOKING BACK
For a review of alkene stability, see Section 7.6.

The 1,2-adduct is believed to form more rapidly as a result of a *proximity effect*. Specifically, the carbocation and the bromide ion are initially very close to each other immediately after their formation in the first step of the mechanism. The bromide ion is simply closer in proximity to C2 than to C4, so attack at C2 occurs more rapidly.

The 1,2-adduct is favored as a result of the proximity effect, and at low temperatures, there is insufficient energy for it to be converted back into the allylic carbocation. Such a process would require loss of a leaving group (bromide), which is simply too slow at low temperatures. Under these conditions, the competing reaction pathways (1,2-addition and 1,4-addition) are both practically irreversible. The 1,2-addition pathway occurs more rapidly and therefore generates the 1,2-adduct as the major product. The reaction is said to be under **kinetic control**, which means that the product distribution is determined by the *relative rates* at which the products are formed.

At elevated temperatures, the two competing pathways are no longer irreversible. The products have sufficient energy to lose a leaving group, re-forming the allylic carbocation intermediate. Under such conditions, an equilibrium is established, and the product distribution will depend only on the relative energy levels of the two products. The product that is lower in energy (the 1,4-adduct) will predominate. The reaction is said to be under **thermodynamic control,** which means that the ratio of products is determined solely by the distribution of energy among the products. If such a reaction is monitored, it is found that the 1,2-adduct is initially formed at a faster rate (as a result of the proximity effect). However, equilibrium concentrations are quickly established, and the 1,4-adduct ultimately predominates.

SKILLBUILDER

16.2 PREDICTING THE MAJOR PRODUCT OF AN ELECTROPHILIC ADDITION TO CONJUGATED DIENES

LEARN the skill

Predict the products of the following reaction and determine which product will predominate:

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Identify the possible locations where protonation can occur.

First let's predict all of the products. This problem involves the addition of one equivalent of HBr across a conjugated π system. We therefore expect the reaction to occur via a mechanism with two steps: (1) proton transfer and (2) nucleophilic attack. In order to predict the products properly, we must explore the mechanism and identify the carbocation that is formed. Begin by carefully considering the regiochemistry of the protonation step. In this case, it might seem that there are four possibilities (highlighted).

But this compound is symmetrical, with C1 being equivalent to C4, and C2 being equivalent to C3. Therefore, there are only two distinct possibilities for the protonation step: at C1 or at C2. The resonance-stabilized, allylic carbocation is only formed via protonation at C1:

STEP 2
Draw the structure of the allylic carbocation that is expected to form.

This allylic carbocation can then be attacked at either of two positions, leading to 1,2- or 1,4-addition.

STEP 3
Attack each electrophilic position with a bromide ion and draw the possible products.

STEP 4
Identify the kinetic and thermodynamic products and then choose which product predominates based on the temperature of the reaction.

To predict which product predominates, we must determine which adduct is the kinetic product and which is the thermodynamic product. The 1,2-adduct is expected to be the kinetic product due to the proximity effect, while the 1,4-adduct exhibits a more highly substituted (tetrasubstituted) π bond and is therefore the thermodynamic product.

Finally, look carefully at the temperature indicated. In this case, a low temperature is used, so the reaction is under kinetic control. Therefore, in this case, the 1,2-adduct is expected to be favored.

PRACTICE the skill

16.9 Predict the products for each of the following reactions, and in each case, determine which product will predominate:

16.10 When 1,4-dimethylcyclohepta-1,3-diene is treated with one equivalent of HBr at elevated temperature, the 1,2-adduct predominates, rather than the 1,4-adduct (as shown). Explain this result.

APPLY the skill

16.11 Electrophilic addition of one equivalent of HI proceeds with the same mechanism as HCl and HBr. New methods for the hydroiodination of dienes were studied and the reactions consistently produced the thermodynamic addition product.[2] Predict the products of the given reaction and determine which product will predominate under thermodynamic control:

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 16.35, 16.36, 16.38, 16.65**

WorldLinks Natural and Synthetic Rubbers

Natural rubber is produced from the polymerization of isoprene:

Isoprene is used by plants in the biosynthesis of a wide variety of compounds. The importance of isoprene as a chemical precursor will be discussed in Section 26.8. During the polymerization of isoprene to form rubber, the monomers are joined by the head-to-tail linkage of C1 and C4 positions. The polymerization of isoprene is therefore a special case of 1,4-addition.

Rubber can also be made in the laboratory from polymerizing isoprene in the presence of suitable catalysts that favor formation of the *cis* polymer. Rubber produced in this way is virtually indistinguishable from natural rubber. Other substituted dienes can also be polymerized in the laboratory to produce a wide variety of rubberlike, synthetic polymers. In the early 1930s, chemists at the DuPont chemical company produced a commercially important polymer via the free-radical polymerization of chloroprene. The resulting polymer is sold under the trade name Neoprene.

Neoprene is used in many applications, including insulation for electrical wiring, fan belts for automobiles, and scuba diving wetsuits.

When natural or synthetic rubber is stretched, neighboring polymer chains slide past one another and ultimately snap back into their original positions when the external force is removed. The ability of a polymer to return to its original shape after being stretched is called *elasticity*, and polymers that exhibit this quality are called *elastomers*. The elasticity of natural rubber is restricted to a specific temperature range, which limits its potential applications. In 1839, Charles Goodyear discovered that polymerization of isoprene in the presence of sulfur, a process called *vulcanization*, vastly improves the elasticity of the resulting polymer. Vulcanization is the result of the formation of disulfide linkages between neighboring polymeric chains:

The sulfide linkages greatly improved the temperature range of rubber's elasticity. Vulcanized rubber maintains its elasticity even at high temperatures, because the disulfide linkages help snap the chains back into their original shape after the external force is removed. The vulcanized elastomer produced in greatest quantity is styrene-butadiene rubber (SBR). SBR is commercially prepared from styrene and butadiene via a free-radical polymerization process. It is called a copolymer, because it is made from two different monomers:

In the United States, approximately one billion pounds of vulcanized SBR is produced annually for the production of automobile tires.

Sam Cornwell/Shutterstock

Sam Cornwell/Shutterstock

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

16.12 What monomer should be used to make each of the following polymers?

Sam Cornwell/Shutterstock

16.6 An Introduction to Pericyclic Reactions

Most organic reactions, both in the laboratory and in living organisms, proceed via either ionic intermediates or radical intermediates. There is, however, a third category of organic reactions, called **pericyclic reactions**, which do not involve either ionic or radical intermediates. These reactions can be classified into three major groups: **cycloaddition reactions**, **electrocyclic reactions**, and **sigmatropic rearrangements** (Figure 16.14).

FIGURE 16.14
Examples of the three major classes of pericyclic reactions.

Each of these reactions has the following features, characteristic of pericyclic reactions:

- The reaction proceeds via a concerted process, which means that all changes in bonding occur in a single step. As a result, the reaction mechanism has no intermediates.
- The reaction involves a ring of electrons moving around in a closed loop.
- The reaction occurs through a cyclic transition state.
- The polarity of the solvent generally does not have a large impact on the rate or yield of the reaction, suggesting that the transition state bears very little (if any) partial charge.

The three major types of pericyclic reactions differ in terms of the number and type of bonds that are broken and formed (Table 16.1). In a cycloaddition reaction, two π bonds are converted into two σ bonds, resulting in the addition of two reactants to form a ring. In an electrocyclic reaction, one π bond is converted into a σ bond, which effectively joins the ends of one reactant to form a ring. In a sigmatropic rearrangement, one σ bond is formed at the expense of another, and the π bonds change location. The following sections will explore each of the three categories of pericyclic reactions, beginning with cycloadditions.

TABLE 16.1 A COMPARISON OF THE NUMBER OF BONDS BROKEN AND FORMED IN EACH OF THE THREE MAJOR TYPES OF PERICYCLIC REACTIONS

	CHANGE IN THE NUMBER OF σ BONDS	CHANGE IN THE NUMBER OF π BONDS
Cycloaddition	+2	−2
Electrocyclic	+1	−1
Sigmatropic	0	0

16.7 Diels–Alder Reactions

BY THE WAY
Diels and Alder were awarded the 1950 Nobel Prize in Chemistry for their discovery of this reaction.

The Mechanism of a Diels–Alder Reaction

The Diels–Alder reaction is an incredibly useful pericyclic reaction named after its discoverers, Otto Diels and Kurt Alder. In a Diels–Alder reaction, two C—C σ bonds are formed simultaneously:

In the process, a ring is also formed, and the process is therefore a cycloaddition. Specifically, the Diels–Alder reaction is called a **[4+2] cycloaddition** because the reaction takes place between two different π systems, one of which is associated with four atoms, while the other is associated with two atoms. The product of a Diels–Alder reaction is a substituted cyclohexene. As is the case for all pericyclic reactions, the Diels–Alder reaction is a concerted process:

The arrows can generally be drawn in either a clockwise or a counterclockwise fashion. Since the reaction takes place in just one step, the energy diagram has just one peak, representing the transition state (Figure 16.15). The transition state is a six-membered ring in which three bonds are breaking and three bonds are forming simultaneously.

FIGURE 16.15
An energy diagram of a Diels–Alder reaction.

Thermodynamic Considerations

Moderate temperatures favor the formation of products in a Diels–Alder reaction, but very high temperatures (over 200°C) tend to disfavor product formation. In fact, in many cases, high temperatures can be used to achieve the reverse of a Diels–Alder reaction, called a **retro Diels–Alder reaction**.

To understand why high temperatures favor ring opening rather than ring formation, recall from Section 6.3 that the sign of ΔG determines whether the equilibrium favors reactants or products.

The sign of ΔG must be negative for the equilibrium to favor products. To determine the sign of ΔG, there are two terms that must be considered:

$$\Delta G = \underbrace{(\Delta H)}_{\text{Enthalpy term}} + \underbrace{(-T\,\Delta S)}_{\text{Entropy term}}$$

Let's consider each term individually, beginning with the enthalpy term. There are many factors that contribute to the sign and magnitude of ΔH, but the dominant factor is generally bond strength. We compare the bond strengths of the bonds broken and the bonds formed in a Diels–Alder reaction:

Three π bonds are broken and replaced by one π bond and two σ bonds. We saw in Chapter 1 that σ bonds are stronger than π bonds, and as a result, ΔH for this process has a *negative* value so the reaction is exothermic.

Now let's consider the second term, the entropy term $-T\,\Delta S$. This term will always be positive for a Diels–Alder reaction. Why? There are two main reasons: (1) two molecules are joining together to produce one molecule of product and (2) a ring is being formed. As described in Section 6.3, each of these factors represents a decrease in entropy, contributing to a negative value for ΔS. Temperature (measured in kelvin) is always positive, and therefore, $-T\,\Delta S$ will be positive.

Now let's combine both terms (enthalpy and entropy). The sign of ΔG for a Diels–Alder reaction will be determined by the competition between these two terms:

$$\Delta G = \underbrace{(\Delta H)}_{\text{Enthalpy term}} + \underbrace{(-T\,\Delta S)}_{\text{Entropy term}}$$

$\ominus$ $\oplus$

In order for ΔG of a Diels–Alder reaction to be negative, the enthalpy term must be larger than the entropy term, which is temperature dependent. At moderate temperatures, the entropy term is small, and the enthalpy term dominates. As a result, ΔG will be negative, which means that products will be favored over reactants (the equilibrium constant K will be greater than 1). In other words, Diels–Alder reactions are thermodynamically favorable at moderate temperatures.

However, at high temperatures, the entropy term will be large and will dominate the enthalpy term. As a result, ΔG will be positive, which means that reactants will be favored over products (the equilibrium constant K will be less than 1). In other words, the reverse reaction (a retro Diels–Alder) will be thermodynamically favored at high temperature.

In summary, Diels–Alder reactions are generally performed at moderate temperatures, usually between room temperature and 200°C, depending on the specific case.

The Dienophile

The starting materials for a Diels–Alder reaction are a diene and a compound that reacts with the diene, called the **dienophile**:

We will begin our discussion with the dienophile. When the dienophile does not contain any substituents, the reaction exhibits a large activation energy and proceeds slowly. If the temperature is raised to overcome the energy barrier, the starting materials are favored over the products, and the resulting yield is low.

A Diels–Alder reaction will proceed more rapidly and with a much higher yield when the dienophile has an electron-withdrawing substituent such as a carbonyl group.

The carbonyl group is electron withdrawing because of resonance. Can you draw the resonance structures? Other examples of dienophiles that possess electron-withdrawing substituents are shown here.

When the dienophile is a 1,2-disubstituted alkene, the reaction proceeds with stereospecificity. Specifically, a *cis* alkene produces a *cis* disubstituted ring, and a *trans* alkene produces a *trans* disubstituted ring:

A triple bond can also function as a dienophile, in which case the product is a ring with two double bonds (a 1,4-cyclohexadiene).

SKILLBUILDER

16.3 PREDICTING THE PRODUCT OF A DIELS–ALDER REACTION

LEARN the skill

Predict the product of the following reaction:

STEP 1
Redraw and line up the ends of the diene with the dienophile.

BY THE WAY
It is not necessary to draw the dotted lines between the diene and the dienophile, but you might find it helpful.

SOLUTION

First redraw the diene and the dienophile so that the ends of the diene are close to the dienophile.

STEP 2
Draw three curved arrows, starting at the dienophile and going either clockwise or counterclockwise.

Next, draw three curved arrows that move around in a circle. Place the tail of the first curved arrow on the dienophile and then continue to draw all three arrows in a circle, either clockwise or counterclockwise.

STEP 3
Draw the product with the correct stereochemical outcome.

Finally, draw the product with the correct stereochemical outcome. In this case, the starting dienophile is a *trans*-disubstituted alkene, so we expect the cyano groups to be *trans* to each other in the product.

PRACTICE the skill **16.13** Predict the major product(s) for each of the following Diels-Alder reactions:

APPLY the skill **16.14** Identify the reactants you would use to prepare each of the following compounds via a Diels–Alder reaction:

16.15 A hetero Diels–Alder reaction is a variation of the Diels–Alder reaction in which one or more of the carbon atoms of the diene and/or the dienophile are replaced by other atoms such as oxygen or nitrogen. With this in mind, propose a mechanism for the following transformation in which an acyclic reactant produces a macrocyclic (containing a large ring) product:[3]

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 16.42–16.44, 16.57, 16.58, 16.61–16.63, 16.66**

The Diene

Recall that 1,3-butadiene exists as an equilibrium between the *s-cis* conformation and the *s-trans* conformation:

The Diels–Alder reaction only occurs when the diene adopts an *s-cis* conformation. When the compound adopts an *s-trans* conformation, the ends of the diene are too far apart to react with the dienophile. Some dienes are incapable of adopting an *s-cis* conformation and are therefore unreactive toward a Diels–Alder reaction (an example is shown at right).

Other dienes, such as cyclopentadiene, are permanently locked in an *s-cis* conformation. Such dienes react extremely rapidly in Diels–Alder reactions:

In fact, cyclopentadiene is so reactive toward Diels–Alder reactions that it even reacts with itself to form a dimer called dicyclopentadiene.

Dicyclopentadiene

When cyclopentadiene is allowed to stand at room temperature, it is completely converted into the dimer in just a few hours. For this reason, cyclopentadiene cannot be stored at room temperature for long periods of time. When cyclopentadiene is to be used as a starting material in a Diels–Alder reaction, it must first be formed from dicyclopentadiene via a retro Diels–Alder reaction and then used immediately or stored at very low temperature.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

16.16 In each of the following cases, rank the compounds in terms of increasing reactivity as dienes in a Diels-Alder reaction and explain your ranking.

(a)

(2*E*,4*E*)-Hexadiene (2*Z*,4*Z*)-Hexadiene

(b)

Endo Preference

When cyclopentadiene is used as the starting diene, a bridged bicyclic compound is obtained as the product. In such a case, we might expect to obtain the following two products:

Endo *Exo*

In one cycloadduct, the electron-withdrawing substituents occupy *endo* positions, and in the other cycloadduct, the substituents occupy *exo* positions. The ***endo*** positions are *cis* to the larger bridge, and the ***exo*** positions are *trans* to the larger bridge.

In general, the *endo* cycloadduct is highly favored over the *exo* cycloadduct. In many cases, the *endo* product is the exclusive product. The explanation for this preference is based on an analysis of the

transition states leading to the *endo* and *exo* products. During formation of the *endo* product, a favorable interaction exists between the electron-withdrawing substituents and the developing π bond:

The transition state leading to the *exo* product does not exhibit this favorable interaction:

The transition state leading to formation of the *endo* product is lower in energy than the transition state leading to formation of the *exo* product (Figure 16.16). As a result, the *endo* product is formed more rapidly.

FIGURE 16.16
An energy diagram illustrating the formation of *endo* products (blue) and *exo* products (red) in a Diels–Alder reaction.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

16.17 Predict the major product(s) for each of the following Diels-Alder reactions:

Regioselectivity of Diels–Alder Reactions

For a Diels–Alder reaction, there is only one possible regiochemical outcome if either the diene or the dienophile is symmetrical, as seen in the following examples:

However, if both the diene and the dienophile are unsymmetrical, then there are two possible regiochemical outcomes, as seen in the following case:

There are two products, and they are constitutional isomers. One of these isomers is favored over the other, so the reaction is said to be regioselective. The major product can generally be predicted by considering the charge distribution in both the diene and the dienophile. For example, the regiochemical outcome of the reaction above can be rationalized if we draw resonance structures for the diene and for the dienophile, and carefully consider the location of the charges (highlighted):

Notice that the diene is electron-rich, because of the electron-donating effect of the methoxy group, while the dienophile is electron-poor, because of the electron-withdrawing effect of the aldehyde group. The major product results when the regions of $\delta+$ and $\delta-$, highlighted below, are aligned:

This orientation allows for electrostatic attractive forces that stabilize the transition state. The other orientation (leading to the minor product) does not allow for a similar stabilizing effect, so formation of that product occurs more slowly.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

16.18 Predict the regiochemical outcome (major product) for each of the following Diels–Alder reactions:

16.8 MO Description of Cycloadditions

We now turn our attention to the MOs involved in a Diels–Alder reaction. By studying the interactions between the relevant MOs we will gain insight into the reaction, and we will be able to explore the feasibility of reactions similar to Diels–Alder reactions.

Figure 16.17 illustrates the MOs for a conjugated diene (1,3-butadiene) and a simple dienophile (ethylene). The HOMO and LUMO are clearly labeled for both. According to frontier orbital theory,

FIGURE 16.17
The MOs of (a) butadiene and (b) ethylene.

a Diels–Alder reaction is accomplished when the HOMO of one compound interacts with the LUMO of the other. That is, the electron density flows from a filled orbital of one compound (the HOMO) into an empty orbital of another compound (the LUMO). Since the dienophile in a Diels–Alder reaction generally has an electron-withdrawing substituent, we will treat the dienophile as the electron-poor species (the empty orbital) that accepts electron density. In other words, we will look at the LUMO of the dienophile and the HOMO of the diene. The reaction is therefore initiated when electron density is transferred from the HOMO of the diene to the LUMO of the dienophile (Figure 16.18).

FIGURE 16.18
In a Diels–Alder reaction, the electron density flows from the HOMO of the diene to the LUMO of the dienophile.

When we align these frontier orbitals, we find that the phases of the MOs overlap nicely (Figure 16.19). In the process, four of the carbon atoms rehybridize to give sp^3-hybridized orbitals

FIGURE 16.19
The phases of the frontier orbitals align properly in a Diels–Alder reaction.

that form σ bonds. In order for this to occur, the phases of the MOs must overlap; that is, the phases must be symmetric. This requirement, called **conservation of orbital symmetry**, was first described by R. B. Woodward and Roald Hoffmann (both at Harvard University) in 1965. In the Diels–Alder

reaction, orbital symmetry is indeed conserved, and the reaction is therefore called a **symmetry-allowed** process.

Now let's use the same approach (analyzing the frontier orbitals) to determine whether the following reaction is possible:

Like the Diels–Alder reaction, this reaction is also a cycloaddition. Specifically, it is called a [2+2] cycloaddition, because it involves two different π systems, each of which is associated with two atoms. To determine if this reaction is feasible, we once again look at the frontier orbitals—the HOMO of one compound and the LUMO of the other (Figure 16.20).

FIGURE 16.20
In a [2+2] cycloaddition, the electron density must flow from the HOMO of one compound to the LUMO of the other compound.

When we try to align these frontier orbitals, we find that the phases of the MOs do not overlap (Figure 16.21). This reaction is therefore said to be **symmetry forbidden**, and the reaction does not

FIGURE 16.21
The phases of the frontier orbitals do not align properly in a [2+2] cycloaddition.

occur. A [2+2] cycloaddition can only be performed with photochemical excitation. When one of the compounds is subjected to UV light, it can absorb the light to promote a π electron to the next higher energy level (Figure 16.22). In this excited state, the HOMO is now considered to be ψ_2

FIGURE 16.22
The ground state of ethylene absorbs a photon of light to achieve the excited state, in which the HOMO is ψ_2.

rather than ψ_1. The HOMO of the excited state can now interact with the LUMO of a ground-state molecule, and the reaction is symmetry allowed (Figure 16.23).

FIGURE 16.23
The phases of the frontier orbitals align properly in a photochemical [2+2] cycloaddition.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

16.19 Consider the following [4+4] cycloaddition process. Would you expect this process to occur through a thermal or photochemical pathway? Use frontier MO theory to justify your prediction.

16.9 Electrocyclic Reactions

An Introduction to Electrocyclic Reactions

An electrocyclic reaction is a pericyclic process in which a conjugated polyene undergoes cyclization. In the process, one π bond is converted into a σ bond, while the remaining π bonds all change their location. The newly formed σ bond joins the ends of the original π system, thereby creating a ring. Two examples are shown.

Both reactions are reversible, but the position of equilibrium is different. The first example favors the cyclic product, while the second example disfavors formation of the cyclic product as a result of the ring strain associated with a four-membered ring.

When substituents are present at the termini of the π system, the following stereochemical outcomes are observed:

Note that the configuration of the product is dependent not only on the configuration of the reactant but also on the conditions of ring closure. That is, a different outcome is observed when the

reaction is performed under thermal conditions (using heat) or under photochemical conditions (using UV light).

The choice of whether to use thermal or photochemical conditions also has an impact on the stereochemical outcome of electrocyclic reactions with four π electrons:

These stereochemical observations puzzled chemists for many years, until Woodward and Hoffmann developed their theory describing conservation of orbital symmetry. This single theory is capable of explaining all of the observations. We will first apply this theory to explain the stereochemical outcome of electrocyclic reactions taking place under thermal conditions, and then we will explore electrocyclic reactions taking place under photochemical conditions.

The Stereochemistry of Thermal Electrocyclic Reactions

Despite their name, thermal electrocyclic reactions do not necessarily require the use of elevated temperature. They can, in fact, take place at or even below room temperature. In many cases, the heat available at room temperature is sufficient for a thermal electrocyclic process to occur.

Under thermal conditions, the configuration of the reactant determines the configuration of the product.

To explain these stereochemical outcomes, we focus on the symmetry of the HOMO for a π system with three conjugated π bonds. As seen in Section 16.3, the HOMO of a conjugated triene has two vertical nodes and can be drawn using our shorthand method (Figure 16.24).

FIGURE 16.24
A shorthand method for depicting the HOMO of a conjugated triene.

Focus, in particular, on the signs (illustrated with red and blue) of the outermost lobes, because these are the lobes that will participate in formation of the new σ bond. In order to form a bond, the lobes

that interact with each other must exhibit the same sign. This requirement demands that the lobes must rotate in the manner illustrated in Figure 16.25.

FIGURE 16.25
An illustration of disrotatory ring closure.

This type of rotation is called **disrotatory**, because one set of lobes rotates clockwise, while the other set rotates counterclockwise. The requirement for disrotatory ring closure determines the stereochemical outcome of the reaction. Specifically, in this example, the two methyl groups have a *cis* relationship in the product.

Now let's apply this approach to thermal electrocyclic reactions of π systems containing only four π electrons, rather than six π electrons. Once again, the configuration of the product is dependent on the configuration of the reactant.

To account for these results, we once again look at the outermost lobes of the HOMO. As seen in Section 16.3, the HOMO of a π system containing four π electrons has one node and can be drawn using our shorthand method (Figure 16.26).

FIGURE 16.26
A shorthand method for depicting the HOMO of a conjugated diene.

In order to form a bond, recall that the lobes that interact must exhibit the same sign. In a case with only four π electrons, this requirement demands that the lobes must rotate in the manner illustrated in Figure 16.27. This type of rotation is called **conrotatory**, because both sets of lobes must rotate in the same way. The requirement for conrotatory ring closure determines the stereochemical outcome of the reaction. Specifically, in this example, the two methyl groups assume a *trans* relationship in the product.

FIGURE 16.27
A conrotatory ring closure.

For butadiene, we mentioned that the equilibrium favors the open chain, so the conrotatory nature of this process can be observed by monitoring the stereochemical outcome for the ring-opening reaction of a 3,4-disubstituted cyclobutene (Figure 16.28). In summary, conjugated systems with six π electrons undergo thermal electrocyclic reactions in a disrotatory fashion, while conjugated systems with four π electrons undergo thermal electrocyclic reactions in a conrotatory fashion.

FIGURE 16.28
A conrotatory ring opening.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

16.20 Predict the major product(s) for each of the following thermal electrocyclic reactions:

Stereochemistry of Photochemical Electrocyclic Reactions

We have seen that the stereochemical outcome of an electrocyclic reaction depends on whether the reaction is performed under thermal conditions or under photochemical conditions.

In this example, the configuration of the product depends on the conditions under which the reaction is performed. Once again, we can explain these observations with the theory of conservation of orbital symmetry. Specifically, we must focus on the symmetry of the HOMO involved in the reaction. Recall from Section 16.3 that excitation of an electron redefines the identity of the HOMO (Figure 16.29).

FIGURE 16.29
A shorthand method for depicting the HOMO of the excited state of a conjugated triene.

Focusing on the outer lobes, we find that photochemical ring closure of a system with six π electrons must occur in a conrotatory fashion (Figure 16.30), as opposed to the disrotatory ring closure observed under thermal conditions. The requirement for conrotatory ring closure correctly explains the observed stereochemical outcome for this reaction.

FIGURE 16.30
A system with six π electrons will undergo conrotatory ring closure under photochemical conditions.

A similar type of explanation can be applied to photochemical electrocyclic reactions of systems with four π electrons.

Once again, it is observed that the configuration of the product depends on the conditions under which the reaction is performed, and these observations can be explained based on conservation of orbital symmetry. Specifically, we must focus on the symmetry of the HOMO involved in the reaction. Recall from Section 16.3 that excitation of an electron redefines the identity of the HOMO (Figure 16.31). Focusing on the outer lobes, we find that photochemical ring closure of a system with four π electrons must occur in a disrotatory fashion, as opposed to the conrotatory ring closure observed under thermal conditions. For butadiene, the equilibrium favors the open chain, so the disrotatory nature of this process can be observed by monitoring the stereochemical outcome for the ring-opening reaction of a 3,4-disubstituted cyclobutene under photochemical conditions (Figure 16.32). Table 16.2 summarizes the Woodward–Hoffmann rules for common electrocyclic reactions.

FIGURE 16.31
A shorthand method for depicting the HOMO of the excited state of a conjugated diene.

FIGURE 16.32
A disrotatory ring opening.

TABLE 16.2 WOODWARD–HOFFMANN RULES FOR THERMAL AND PHOTOCHEMICAL ELECTROCYCLIC REACTIONS

	THERMAL	PHOTOCHEMICAL
Four π electrons	Conrotatory	Disrotatory
Six π electrons	Disrotatory	Conrotatory

SKILLBUILDER

16.4 PREDICTING THE PRODUCT OF AN ELECTROCYCLIC REACTION

LEARN the skill

Predict the product(s) of the following electrocyclic reaction:

STEP 1
Count the number of π electrons.

STEP 2
Determine whether the reaction is conrotatory or disrotatory.

STEP 3
Determine whether the substituents are *cis* or *trans* to each other in the product.

SOLUTION

We begin by counting the number of π electrons. In this case, there are six π electrons (the π electrons of the phenyl groups are not participating in the reaction).

6 π electrons

Next, we must analyze the reaction conditions and determine whether the reaction occurs in a conrotatory or disrotatory fashion. As shown in Table 16.2, for a system with six π electrons, photochemical conditions cause a conrotatory ring closure. This information is used to determine whether the substituents are *cis* or *trans* to each other in the product. In this case, the substituents are *trans* to each other in the product. A racemic mixture is expected because the conrotatory ring closure can occur either in a clockwise fashion (producing one enantiomer) or in a counterclockwise fashion (producing the other enantiomer).

PRACTICE the skill **16.21** Predict the product(s) for each of the following reactions:

APPLY the skill **16.22** Inthomycin C, a natural product produced by *Streptomyces* bacteria, is known to inhibit the production of cellulose, an important component of the cell wall of plants. A synthesis of inthomycin C involved a thermal electrocyclic ring-opening reaction, as outlined below.[4] There are two products that are possible under thermal conditions, but only one of these products was observed. Identify the product that is formed, and explain why the other product was not observed.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 16.52, 16.53**

16.10 Sigmatropic Rearrangements

An Introduction to Sigmatropic Rearrangements

A sigmatropic rearrangement is a pericyclic reaction in which one σ bond is formed at the expense of another. In the process, the π bonds change their location. The term *sigmatropic* comes from the Greek word *tropos*, which means "change." A sigmatropic rearrangement is therefore a reaction in which a σ bond has undergone a change (in its location).

There are many different types of sigmatropic rearrangements. The previous example is called a [3,3] sigmatropic rearrangement. This notation is different than any other notation used thus far in this book. The two numbers in the brackets indicate the number of atoms separating the bond that

FIGURE 16.33
The transition state for a [3,3] sigmatropic rearrangement.

is forming and the bond that is breaking in the transition state (Figure 16.33). Notice that the transition state is cyclic, which is a characteristic feature of all pericyclic reactions. In the transition state, the bond that is breaking and the bond that is forming are separated by two different pathways, each of which is comprised of three atoms (one path is labeled in red and the other in blue). Therefore, it is called a [3,3] sigmatropic rearrangement.

The following is an example of a [1,5] sigmatropic rearrangement, also sometimes referred to as a [1,5] hydrogen shift. In the transition state, the bond that is breaking and the bond that is forming are separated by two different pathways: one is comprised of five atoms (labeled in red), and the other is comprised of only one atom (labeled in blue).

The Cope Rearrangement

A [3,3] sigmatropic rearrangement is called a **Cope rearrangement** when all six atoms of the cyclic transition state are carbon atoms.

The equilibrium for a Cope rearrangement generally favors formation of the more substituted alkene. In the example above, both π bonds of the reactant are monosubstituted, but in the product, one of the π bonds is disubstituted. For this reason, the equilibrium for the reaction favors the product.

The Claisen Rearrangement

The oxygen analogue of a Cope rearrangement is called a **Claisen rearrangement**.

The Claisen rearrangement is a [3,3] sigmatropic rearrangement and is commonly observed for allylic vinylic ethers.

The equilibrium greatly favors the product because of formation of a C═O bond, which is thermodynamically more stable (lower in energy) than a C═C bond. The Claisen rearrangement is also observed for allylic aryl ethers.

Aryl groups possess an aromatic ring (a six-membered ring drawn with alternating double and single bonds), which is particularly stable, as we will see in Chapter 17. In the case of allylic aryl ethers, the Claisen rearrangement initially destroys the aromatic ring but is rapidly followed by a spontaneous tautomerization process that regenerates the aromatic ring. In this tautomerization process, the conversion of a ketone into an enol is a testament to the stability of the aromatic ring system. Aromatic compounds, as well as their stability and reactivity, will be discussed in detail in Chapters 17 and 18.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

16.23 For each of the following reactions, use brackets and two numbers to describe the type of sigmatropic rearrangement taking place:

(a)

(b)

16.24 Consider the structure of *cis*-1,2-divinylcyclopropane:

This compound is stable at low temperatures but rearranges at room temperature to produce 1,4-cycloheptadiene.

(a) Draw a mechanism for this transformation.

(b) Using brackets and numbers, describe the type of sigmatropic rearrangement taking place in this case.

(c) This reaction proceeds to completion, which means that the concentration of the reactant is negligible once the equilibrium has been established. Propose an explanation for why this reaction proceeds to completion.

16.25 Predict the product for each of the following reactions:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

16.26 Propose a plausible mechanism for the following transformation:

BioLinks The Photoinduced Biosynthesis of Vitamin D

Vitamin D is the general name for two related compounds called cholecalciferol (vitamin D_3) and ergocalciferol (vitamin D_2). These two compounds differ in the identity of the side chain, R:

Vitamin D serves an important function in that it increases the body's ability to absorb the calcium present in the foods we eat. Calcium is essential because it is used in the formation of bones and teeth. A deficiency of vitamin D can cause the childhood disease called *rickets*, which is characterized by deficient bone growth.

Although most food does not contain substantial amounts of vitamin D, some food sources do contain the precursors that the body needs in order to synthesize vitamin D. Ergosterol is present in fungi (including yeast) and protozoa, and 7-dehydrocholesterol is present in fish and dairy products.

When human or animal skin is exposed to the sun, the UV light that is present in sunlight causes the conversion of 7-dehydrocholesterol (near the surface of the skin) into cholecalciferol

(vitamin D_3). Similarly, exposure of fungi, yeast, and protozoa to UV light results in the conversion of ergosterol into ergocalciferol (vitamin D_2). For this reason, vitamin D is commonly called the "sunshine vitamin."

The precursors are converted into vitamin D via two successive pericyclic reactions.

The first step is an electrocyclic ring-opening reaction, and the second step is a [1,7] sigmatropic rearrangement. This sequence of steps not only occurs in our bodies but also is utilized commercially to enrich milk with vitamin D_3. All milk sold in the United States is irradiated with UV light, which converts the 7-dehydrocholesterol present in the milk into vitamin D_3. Soy milk and other milk substitutes usually contain ergocalciferol to avoid the addition of animal products (an important selling point for their vegetarian and vegan consumers).

16.11 UV-Vis Spectroscopy

The Information in a UV-Vis Spectrum

As seen in Chapters 14 and 15, spectroscopy allows us to probe molecular structure by studying the interaction between matter and electromagnetic radiation. Recall that the frequency of light determines the energy of a photon, and the range of all possible frequencies is known as the *electromagnetic spectrum* (Figure 14.2). In this chapter, we will focus on the interaction between matter and the UV-Vis region of the electromagnetic spectrum. Specifically, organic compounds with conjugated π systems absorb UV or visible light to promote an electronic excitation. That is, a π electron absorbs the photon and is promoted to a higher energy level. As an example, consider what happens when butadiene is irradiated with UV light (Figure 16.34).

FIGURE 16.34
The ground state of butadiene can absorb a photon of UV light to produce the excited state, in which an electron has been promoted to a higher energy MO.

The energy of the photon ($h\nu$) is absorbed by a π electron in the HOMO (ψ_2) and is consequently promoted to a higher energy MO (ψ_3). In order for this excitation to occur, the photon must possess the right amount of energy—the energy of the photon must be equivalent to the energy gap between the two MOs (ψ_2 and ψ_3). For most organic compounds containing conjugated π systems, the relevant energy gap corresponds with UV or visible light. This excitation is called a $\pi \rightarrow \pi^*$ transition (pronounced "pi to pi star"). The excited electron then returns to its original MO, releasing the energy in the form of heat or light. In this way, compounds with conjugated π systems will absorb UV or visible light.

A standard UV-Vis spectrophotometer irradiates a sample with wavelengths of light ranging from 200 to 800 nm. The light is first split into two beams. One beam passes through a cuvette (a small transparent container, typically made of quartz) containing an organic compound dissolved in some solvent, while the other beam (the reference beam) is passed through a cuvette containing only the solvent. The spectrophotometer then compares the intensities of the beams at each particular wavelength, and the results are plotted on a chart that shows **absorbance** as a function of wavelength. Absorbance is defined as

$$A = \log \frac{I_0}{I}$$

where I_0 is the intensity of the reference beam and I is the intensity of the sample beam. The plot that is generated is called a UV-Vis absorption spectrum. As an example, consider the absorption spectrum of butadiene (Figure 16.35). For our purposes, the most important feature of the

FIGURE 16.35
An absorbance spectrum of butadiene.

absorption spectrum is the $\boldsymbol{\lambda_{max}}$ (pronounced **lambda max**), which indicates the wavelength of maximum absorption. For butadiene, λ_{max} is 217 nm. The amount of UV light absorbed at the λ_{max} for any compound is described by the **molar absorptivity** (ε) and is expressed by the following equation, called the **Beer-Lambert law:**

$$\varepsilon = \frac{A}{C \times l}$$

where A is the absorbance, C is the concentration of the solution (mol/L), and l is the sample path length (the width of the cuvette) measured in centimeters. The molar absorptivity (ε) is a physical characteristic of the particular compound being investigated and is typically in the range of 0–15,000.

The value of λ_{max} for a particular compound is highly dependent on the extent of conjugation. To illustrate this point, compare the MOs of butadiene, hexatriene, and octatetraene (Figure 16.36).

FIGURE 16.36
An energy diagram showing the relative energy levels for MOs for various conjugated π systems.

Compounds that are more highly conjugated will have more MOs and will exhibit smaller gaps between MOs. Compare the energy gaps (ΔE) for each of the three compounds and notice the trend. Compounds with more highly conjugated systems require less energy to promote an electronic excitation. Recall that the energy of a photon is directly proportional to the frequency of the

light but inversely proportional to the wavelength. As a result, a longer wavelength corresponds with less energy. We therefore find that compounds with a greater extent of conjugation will have a longer λ_{max} (Table 16.3). The λ_{max} of a compound therefore indicates the extent of conjugation present in the compound. Each additional conjugated double bond adds between 30 and 40 nm.

TABLE 16.3 THE WAVELENGTH OF MAXIMUM ABSORPTION FOR A SIMPLE DIENE, TRIENE, AND TETRAENE

COMPOUND	λ_{MAX}
	217 nm
	258 nm
	290 nm

Woodward–Fieser Rules

Earlier in this section, we noted that a compound containing a conjugated π system will absorb UV-Vis light. The region of the molecule responsible for the absorption (the conjugated π system) is called the **chromophore**, while the groups attached to the chromophore are called **auxochromes**.

Auxochromes can also have a substantial effect on the value of λ_{max}. **Woodward–Fieser rules** can be used to make simple predictions (Table 16.4). The full list of Woodward–Fieser rules is quite long, but the few rules in Table 16.4 allow us to make simple predictions. Note that Woodward–Fieser rules provide us with an estimate for λ_{max}. In some cases, the estimate will be very close to the observed value, and in other cases, there will be a discrepancy. The rules are only meant as a rough guide for making meaningful predictions, and they do not work well for compounds that contain more than six double bonds in conjugation.

TABLE 16.4 WOODWARD–FIESER RULES FOR PREDICTING λ_{MAX} FOR CONJUGATED π SYSTEMS

FEATURE TO LOOK FOR:	λ_{MAX}	EXAMPLE	CALCULATION
Conjugated diene	Base value = 217		217 nm
Each additional double bond	+30	Two additional double bonds	Base: 217 + 2 × 30 277 nm (observed = 290 nm)
Each auxochromic alkyl group	+5	Three alkyl groups connected to chromophore	Base: 217 + 3 × 5 232 nm (observed = 232 nm)
Each exocyclic double bond (a double bond where one vinylic position is part of a ring and the other vinylic position is outside the ring)	+5	Exocyclic	Base: 217 + 2 × 5 alkyl groups + 5 exocyclic double bonds 232 nm (observed = 230 nm)
Homoannular diene—both double bonds are contained in one ring, so the diene is locked in an *s-cis* conformation	+39		Base: 217 + 4 × 5 alkyl groups + 39 homoannular diene 276 nm (observed = 269 nm)

SKILLBUILDER

16.5 USING WOODWARD–FIESER RULES TO ESTIMATE λ_{MAX}

LEARN the skill

Use Woodward–Fieser rules to estimate the expected λ_{max} for the following compound:

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Count the number of conjugated double bonds.

First count the number of conjugated double bonds. This compound has four double bonds in conjugation (highlighted in red). Two of them count toward the base value of 217 nm, and the other two double bonds will each add +30.

STEP 2
Count the number of auxochromic alkyl groups.

Next, look for any auxochromic alkyl groups. These are the carbon atoms connected directly to the chromophore. This compound has six auxochromic alkyl groups, each of which adds +5, giving another +30.

STEP 3
Count the number of exocyclic double bonds.

Next look for exocyclic double bonds. In this case, the double bond highlighted in green is exocyclic to the ring highlighted in red. This adds another +5.

STEP 4
Look for homoannular dienes.

Finally, look for a homoannular diene. The first ring (on the left) exhibits two double bonds in the same ring, which adds +39. The second ring also exhibits two double bonds in the same ring, which adds another +39.

STEP 5
Add up all factors.

We predict this compound will have a λ_{max} near 390 nm:

Base	= 217
Additional double bonds (2)	= + 60
Auxochromic alkyl groups (6)	= + 30
Exocyclic double bond (1)	= + 5
Homoannular dienes (2)	= + 78
Total	= 390 nm

PRACTICE the skill

16.27 Use Woodward–Fieser rules to estimate the expected λ_{max} for each of the following compounds:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

APPLY the skill

16.28 As seen at the end of Section 16.10, a deficiency in vitamin D can cause a bone-softening disease called rickets, so many foods, including milk and cereals, are fortified with vitamin D. Our bodies synthesize vitamin D when our skin is exposed to sunlight, but the lack of outdoor exercise by today's children, in conjunction with regular use of sunscreen, may be contributing to a rise in the disease. The amount of vitamin D_3 in fortified foods and fish can be measured by UV-Vis spectrometry.[5] Using Woodward–Fieser rules, estimate the expected λ_{max} for vitamin D_3:

Vitamin D_3

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 16.47–16.49, 16.68c**

WorldLinks Sunscreens

In the United States, societal attitudes toward suntans have changed many times over the last two centuries. Before the industrial revolution, a suntan was considered a sign of lower class. Wealthy people stayed in the shade, while manual laborers worked in the sun. After the industrial revolution, manual laborers began to work indoors, and this distinction disappeared. In fact, societal attitudes took a 180° turn in the 1920s when sunlight was considered to be a cure-all for everything from acne to tuberculosis. By the 1940s, suntan lotions first appeared on the market, although the function of these products was not to block out the sun but to aid in the tanning process. In the 1960s, sun lamps were invented, so that people could tan in the winter.

In the last several decades, societal attitudes have shifted once again, with the discovery of the link between sunlight and skin cancer. Harmful UV radiation from the sun is mostly screened out by the ozone layer, although some harmful UV rays do make it to the earth's surface. There are two types of damaging UV light, called UV-A (315–400 nm) and UV-B (280–315 nm). UV-B is higher energy and more damaging, but UV-A is also dangerous, as it can penetrate the skin more deeply. It has been estimated that 1 in every 10 Americans will develop skin cancer. That means that there is a 10% chance that you will develop skin cancer at some point in your life unless you take precautions.

The mechanism by which UV light damages DNA has been extensively studied, and many pathways are responsible. One such pathway involves a thymine base of DNA absorbing UV light to give an excited state that is capable of undergoing a [2+2] cycloaddition with a neighboring thymine base.

In Section 16.8, we saw that [2+2] cycloadditions become symmetry allowed in the presence of UV light, and this is just a real-world example of that process. This reaction changes the structure of DNA and causes genetic code alterations that ultimately lead to the development of cancer cells.

Sunscreens are used to prevent UV light from causing damage to the structure of DNA. There are two basic types of sunscreens: inorganic and organic. Inorganic sunscreens (such as titanium dioxide or zinc oxide) reflect and scatter UV light. Organic sunscreens are conjugated π systems that absorb UV light and release the absorbed energy in the form of heat. The following compounds are examples of common organic sunscreens:

Octyl methoxycinnamate

Oxybenzone

4-Methylbenzylidene camphor

Avobenzone

Homosalate

Both organic and inorganic sunscreens provide protection from UV-B radiation. Some sunscreens, although not all, also provide additional protection from UV-A radiation. Many commercially available sunscreens contain mixtures of both organic and inorganic compounds, thereby achieving high SPF (sun protection factor). However, the SPF rating only indicates the strength of protection from UV-B, not UV-A. For products sold in the United States, there is no clear way to compare the abilities of sunscreens to filter UV-A radiation other than reading the list of ingredients. Among the organic sunscreens approved in the United States, it is believed that avobenzone offers the best protection against UV-A radiation.

Despite the established link between sunlight and skin cancer, many people continue to view suntans as desirable. This dangerous attitude will likely become less popular as the public becomes more aware of the dangers involved. As evidence of rising public awareness, annual sales of sunscreens rise each year in the United States and currently exceed $8 billion.

16.12 Color

The visible region of the electromagnetic spectrum has wavelengths of 400–700 nm. When a compound possesses a highly conjugated π system, it is possible for the λ_{max} to be above 400 nm. Such a compound will absorb visible light, rather than UV light, and will therefore be colored. Consider the following two examples:

Lycopene

β-Carotene

Lycopene is responsible for the red color of tomatos; β-carotene is responsible for the orange color of carrots. Both compounds are colored because they possess highly conjugated π systems.

White light is composed of all visible wavelengths (400–700 nm) and can be divided into groups of complementary colors, which appear opposite from each other in the color wheel in Figure 16.37. Each pair of complementary colors (such as red and green) can be thought of as canceling each other (in a way) to produce white light. A compound will be colored if it absorbs a specific color more strongly than its complementary color. For example, β-carotene absorbs light of 455 nm (blue light) but reflects orange light. The compound therefore appears to be orange.

BY THE WAY
What happened to indigo? You probably have learned at some point that the rainbow is composed of the colors ROYGBIV (red, orange, etc.). The "I" stands for indigo, but you might notice that indigo is absent from our color wheel. The truth is that indigo is not worth mentioning (it is intermediate between blue and violet). Indigo is mentioned as one of the colors of the rainbow, because Sir Isaac Newton, who described them, was a student of metaphysics and felt that the number 7 was more spiritually meaningful than 6. Thus, the "seven" colors of the rainbow.

FIGURE 16.37
The color wheel, showing pairs of complementary colors.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

16.29 For each of the following tasks, use the color wheel in Figure 16.37.

(a) Identify the color of a compound that absorbs orange light.

(b) Identify the color of a compound that absorbs blue-green light.

(c) Identify the color of a compound that absorbs orange-yellow light.

WorldLinks Bleach

Now that we understand the origin of color in organic compounds, we are finally able to explore how bleaches function. Most bleaching agents react with conjugated π systems, disrupting the extended conjugation:

In this way, a conjugated π system that previously absorbed visible light is converted into smaller π systems that absorb UV light instead.

Notice the value of λ_{max} in each case. Before bleaching, the compound absorbs visible light and is colored. After bleaching, the compound absorbs only UV light and is therefore colorless.

There are many different agents that will function as bleaches. Some act by oxidizing the double bonds, while others act by reducing the double bonds. Common household bleach (such as Clorox) is an aqueous solution of sodium hypochlorite (NaOCl) and is an oxidizing agent. When a stain is bleached, it has not been washed away. Rather, it has just been chemically altered so that it can no longer be seen. When placed under a UV lamp, the compound will glow, and its presence can be detected.

vichly4thai/Adobe Stock

16.13 Chemistry of Vision

The chemical reactions responsible for vision have been the subject of much investigation over the last 60 years.

Two types of light-sensitive cells function as photoreceptors: *rods* and *cones*. Rods do not detect color, and they function as the dominant light receptors in dim light. Cones contain the pigments necessary for color vision, but they only function as the dominant receptor cells in bright light. Humans possess both rods and cones, but some species possess only one of the two cell types. Pigeons, for example, have only cones. As a result, they see quite well in bright light, but they are blind at night. Owls, on the other hand, have only rods. Owls see well at night but are colorblind. In this section, we will focus solely on the chemistry of rods.

The light-sensitive compound in rods is called *rhodopsin*. In 1952, Nobel Laureate George Wald (Harvard University) and his co-workers showed that the chromophore in rhodopsin is the conjugated polyunsaturated system of 11-*cis*-retinal. Rhodopsin is produced by a chemical reaction between 11-*cis*-retinal and a protein called opsin.

11-*cis*-Retinal Rhodopsin

The conjugated π system fits precisely into an internal cavity of opsin and absorbs light over a broad region of the visible spectrum (400–600 nm). Sources of 11-*cis*-retinal include vitamin A and

β-carotene. A deficiency of vitamin A causes night blindness, while a diet rich in β-carotene can improve vision.

Wald demonstrated that rhodopsin made from 11-*cis*-retinal gave the same photoproduct as rhodopsin made from 9-*cis*-retinal. He concluded that the primary photochemical reaction must be a *cis-trans* isomerization.

Further evidence supporting this photoisomerization step came from Koji Nakanishi's work at Columbia University. Nakanishi's group synthesized an analogue of 11-*cis*-retinal, in which the *cis* double bond was incorporated in a seven-membered ring, thereby preventing it from isomerizing to the *trans* configuration.

Recall from Section 7.6 that rings of fewer than eight carbon atoms cannot accommodate a *trans* π bond at room temperature. When Nakanishi's analogue binds with opsin, the product is similar to rhodopsin but is unable to isomerize under the influence of light. When Nakanishi's analogue was administered to rats, their vision was severely impaired. Based on these and other convincing pieces of evidence, it is widely accepted that the first step in the chemistry of vision is a photoisomerization reaction.

When rhodopsin is excited to the high-energy all-*trans* isomer, the resulting change in rhodopsin's shape initiates a cascade of enzymatic reactions that causes the release of calcium ions. These ions block channels that normally allow the passage of billions of sodium ions per second. This regular flow of sodium ions is called the *dark current,* and it is reduced when calcium ions block the channels. This reduction in current culminates in a nerve impulse being sent to the brain. Human vision is extremely sensitive, because the absorption of a single photon can prevent the flow of millions of sodium ions. Our eyes are capable of sensing very dim light—even a few photons will trigger a nerve impulse. We can also adjust our eyes to a very bright environment within a minute. We have yet to create a photographic system that parallels the sensitivity and adaptability of the human eye.

REVIEW OF REACTIONS

Preparation of Dienes

From Allylic Halides

From Dihalides

Electrophilic Addition

With HBr

	1,2-Adduct	1,4-Adduct
At 0°C	71%	29%
At 40°C	15%	85%

With Br_2

Diels–Alder Reaction

Electrocyclic Reactions

Sigmatropic Rearrangements

Cope Rearrangement

(15%) (85%)

Claisen Rearrangement

(10%) (90%)

REVIEW OF CONCEPTS AND VOCABULARY

SECTION 16.1

- **Dienes** possess two C═C bonds and are classified as **cumulated**, **conjugated**, or **isolated**.
- Conjugated dienes contain one continuous system of overlapping *p* orbitals and therefore exhibit special properties and reactivity.

SECTION 16.2

- Conjugated dienes can be prepared from allylic halides or from dihalides.
- Conjugated double bonds are more stable than isolated double bonds, with a *stabilization energy* of approximately 15 kJ/mol.
- Conjugated dienes experience free rotation about the C2—C3 bond, giving rise to two important conformations: ***s-cis*** and ***s-trans***. The *s-trans* conformation is lower in energy.

SECTION 16.3

- Electrons that occupy atomic orbitals are associated with an individual atom, while electrons that occupy a molecular orbital (MO) are associated with the entire molecule.
- The *H*ighest *O*ccupied *M*olecular *O*rbital, or HOMO, contains the π electrons most readily available to participate in a reaction.
- The *L*owest *U*noccupied *M*olecular *O*rbital, or LUMO, is the lowest energy MO that is capable of accepting electron density.

- The HOMO and LUMO are referred to as **frontier orbitals**, and the reactivity of conjugated polyenes can be explained with **frontier orbital theory**.
- An **excited state** is produced when a π electron in the HOMO absorbs a photon of light bearing the appropriate energy necessary to promote the electron to a higher energy orbital.
- Reactions induced by light are called **photochemical reactions**.

SECTION 16.4

- When butadiene is treated with one equivalent of HBr, two major products are observed, resulting from **1,2-addition** and **1,4-addition**. These products are called the **1,2-adduct** and the **1,4-adduct**.
- Other electrophiles, such as Br_2, will also add across conjugated π systems to produce 1,2- and 1,4-adducts.

SECTION 16.5

- Conjugated dienes that undergo addition at low temperature are said to be under **kinetic control**.
- Conjugated dienes that undergo addition at elevated temperature are said to be under **thermodynamic control**.

SECTION 16.6

- **Pericyclic reactions** proceed via a concerted process with a cyclic transition state, and they are classified as **cycloaddition reactions**, **electrocyclic reactions**, and **sigmatropic rearrangements**.

SECTION 16.7

- The Diels–Alder reaction is a **[4+2] cycloaddition** in which two C—C bonds are formed simultaneously.
- The product of a Diels–Alder reaction is a substituted cyclohexene.
- Moderate temperatures favor the formation of products in a Diels–Alder reaction, but very high temperatures (over 200°C) tend to disfavor product formation. High temperatures can often be used to achieve the reverse of a Diels–Alder reaction, called a **retro Diels–Alder**.
- The starting materials for a Diels–Alder reaction are a diene and a **dienophile**.
- Diels–Alder reactions proceed rapidly and with a high yield when the dienophile has an electron-withdrawing substituent.
- When the dienophile is a 1,2-disubstituted alkene, the reaction proceeds with stereospecificity.
- A triple bond can also function as a dienophile.
- The Diels–Alder reaction only occurs when the diene adopts an *s-cis* conformation.
- When cyclopentadiene is used as the starting diene, a bridged bicyclic compound is obtained, and the ***endo*** cycloadduct is favored over the ***exo*** cycloadduct.

SECTION 16.8

- In a Diels–Alder reaction, the electron density is transferred from the HOMO of the diene to the LUMO of the dienophile.
- **Conservation of orbital symmetry** requires that MOs have the same phases in order to effectively overlap during a reaction.
- Diels–Alder reactions are **symmetry allowed**.
- Thermal [2+2] cycloadditions are **symmetry forbidden**, because the phases of the frontier orbitals do not overlap.
- [2+2] Cycloadditions can only be performed with photochemical excitation in which the HOMO of an excited state interacts with the LUMO of a ground-state molecule.

SECTION 16.9

- An electrocyclic reaction is a pericyclic process in which a conjugated polyene undergoes cyclization. In the process, one π bond is converted into a σ bond, while the remaining π bonds all change their locations.
- The use of thermal conditions vs. photochemical conditions has a profound impact on the stereochemical outcome of the reaction.
- Conservation of orbital symmetry determines whether an electrocyclic reaction occurs in a **disrotatory** fashion or a **conrotatory** fashion.

SECTION 16.10

- A sigmatropic rearrangement is a pericyclic reaction in which one σ bond is formed at the expense of another.
- A [3,3] sigmatropic rearrangement is called a **Cope rearrangement** when all six atoms of the cyclic transition state are carbon atoms.
- The oxygen analogue of a Cope rearrangement is called a **Claisen rearrangement**.

SECTION 16.11

- Compounds that possess a conjugated π system will absorb UV or visible light to promote an electronic excitation called a $\pi \rightarrow \pi^*$ transition.
- A standard UV-Vis spectrophotometer will irradiate a sample with UV and visible light and will generate an absorption spectrum, which plots **absorbance** as a function of wavelength.
- The most important feature of the absorption spectrum is the $\boldsymbol{\lambda_{max}}$ (pronounced **lambda max**), which indicates the wavelength of maximum absorption.
- The amount of UV light absorbed at the λ_{max} for any compound is described by the **molar absorptivity** (ε) and is related to absorbance by an equation called the **Beer-Lambert law**.
- Compounds with a greater extent of conjugation will have a longer λ_{max}.
- The region of the molecule responsible for the absorption (the conjugated π system) is called the **chromophore**, while the groups attached to the chromophore are called **auxochromes**.
- The λ_{max} for a simple compound can be predicted with **Woodward–Fieser rules**.

SECTION 16.12

- When a compound exhibits a λ_{max} between 400 and 700 nm, the compound will absorb visible light, rather than UV light. Compounds that absorb light in this range will be colored.

SECTION 16.13

- Rhodopsin is a light-sensitive compound responsible for night vision.
- When rhodopsin absorbs light, a *cis-trans* isomerization occurs to give the all-*trans* isomer. The resulting change in rhodopsin's shape initiates a cascade of enzymatic reactions that culminates with a nerve impulse being sent to the brain.

SKILLBUILDER REVIEW

16.1 PROPOSING A MECHANISM AND PREDICTING THE PRODUCTS OF ELECTROPHILIC ADDITION TO CONJUGATED DIENES

EXAMPLE Predict the products and propose a mechanism.

STEP 1 Identify the possible locations where protonation can occur.

STEP 2 Determine the location where protonation will produce an allylic carbocation.

STEP 3 Draw both resonance structures of each possible allylic carbocation and then draw a nucleophilic attack occurring at each possible electrophilic position.

Try Problems 16.6–16.8, 16.34, 16.37, 16.67

16.2 PREDICTING THE MAJOR PRODUCT OF AN ELECTROPHILIC ADDITION TO CONJUGATED DIENES

EXAMPLE

STEP 1 Identify the possible locations for protonation.

Only two unique positions

STEP 2 Draw the resonance structures of the allylic carbocation that is expected to form.

Allylic carbocation

STEP 3 Attack each position with bromide and draw both possible products.

1,2-Adduct 1,4-Adduct

STEP 4 Identify the kinetic and thermodynamic products and then choose which product predominates based on the temperature of the reaction.

The 1,2-adduct is the kinetic product and is favored at low temperature

Try Problems 16.9–16.11, 16.35, 16.36, 16.38, 16.65

16.3 PREDICTING THE PRODUCT OF A DIELS–ALDER REACTION

EXAMPLE Predict the product:

STEP 1 Redraw and line up the ends of the diene with the dienophile.

STEP 2 Draw three curved arrows, starting at the dienophile and moving either clockwise or counterclockwise.

STEP 3 Draw the product with the correct stereochemical outcome.

Try Problems 16.13–16.15, 16.42–16.44, 16.57, 16.58, 16.61–16.63, 16.66

16.4 PREDICTING THE PRODUCT OF AN ELECTROCYCLIC REACTION

STEP 1 Count the number of π electrons.

6 π Electrons

STEP 2 Determine whether the reaction is conrotatory or disrotatory.

	Heat	$h\nu$
4π	Con	Dis
6π	Dis	Con

6π, $h\nu$ = Conrotatory

STEP 3 Determine whether the substituents are *cis* or *trans* to each other in the product.

Conrotatory

Try Problems **16.21, 16.22, 16.52, 16.53**

16.5 USING WOODWARD–FIESER RULES TO ESTIMATE λ_{MAX}

STEP 1 Count the number of double bonds.

4 Double bonds = 217 + 30 + 30

STEP 2 Count the number of auxochromic alkyl groups.

6 Alkyl groups = + (6 × 5) = +30

STEP 3 Count the number of exocyclic double bonds.

1 Exocyclic double bond = +5

STEP 4 Look for homoannular dienes.

2 Homoannular dienes = (2 × 39) = +78

STEP 5 Add up all factors:

Base value	= 217
Additional double bonds	= +60
Auxochromic alkyl groups	= +30
Exocyclic double bonds	= +5
Homoannular dienes	= +78
Total	**= 390 nm**

Try Problems **16.27, 16.28, 16.47–16.49, 16.68c**

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

• **Included in Answers section**

16.30 Draw the structure of each of the following compounds:

(a) 1,4-Cyclohexadiene (b) 1,3-Cyclohexadiene

(c) (*Z*)-1,3-Pentadiene (d) (2*Z*,4*E*)-Hepta-2,4-diene

(e) 2,3-Dimethyl-1,3-butadiene

16.31 Circle each compound that has a conjugated π system:

16.32 • Treatment of 1,2-dibromocycloheptane with excess potassium *tert*-butoxide yields a product that absorbs UV light. Identify the product.

16.33 In each of the following pairs of compounds identify the compound that liberates the most heat upon hydrogenation:

(a)

(b)

16.34 • Identify the structure of the conjugated diene that will react with one equivalent of HBr to yield a racemic mixture of 3-bromocyclohexene.

16.35 • Draw the major product expected when 1,3-butadiene is treated with one equivalent of HBr at 0°C, and show a mechanism for its formation.

16.36 Draw the major product expected when 1,3-butadiene is treated with one equivalent of HBr at 40°C, and show a mechanism for its formation.

16.37 Draw all products that are expected when 2-ethyl-3-methyl-1,3-cyclohexadiene is treated with one equivalent of HBr at room temperature, and show mechanisms for their formation.

16.38 After performing the reaction from Problem 16.37, the reaction flask is heated to 40°C and two of the products become the major products. When the flask is then cooled to 0°C, no change occurs in the product distribution. Explain why an increase in temperature causes a change in the product distribution and explain why a subsequent reduction in temperature has no effect.

16.39 Each of the following compounds does not participate as a diene in a Diels–Alder reaction. Explain why in each case.

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

16.40 Rank the following dienophiles (from least reactive to most reactive) in terms of reactivity in a Diels–Alder reaction:

16.41 The absorbance spectrum of 1,3-butadiene displays an absorption in the UV region ($\lambda_{max} = 217$ nm), while the absorption spectrum of 1,2-butadiene does not display a similar absorption. Explain.

16.42 • Predict the major product(s) for each of the following Diels–Alder reactions:

16.43 Identify the reactants you would use to prepare each of the following compounds via a Diels–Alder reaction:

16.44 • The following triene reacts with excess maleic anhydride to produce a compound with the molecular formula $C_{14}H_{12}O_6$. Draw the structure of this product (ignoring stereochemistry).

16.45 Chlordane is a powerful insecticide that was used in the United States during the second half of the twentieth century. Its use was discontinued in 1988 in recognition of its persistence and accumulation in the environment. Identify the reagents you would use to prepare chlordane via a Diels–Alder reaction.

Chlordane

16.46 Cyclopentadiene reacts very rapidly in Diels–Alder reactions. In contrast, 1,3-cyclohexadiene reacts more slowly and 1,3-cycloheptadiene is essentially unreactive towards Diels-Alder reactions. Can you offer an explanation for this trend?

16.47 Rank the following compounds in order of increasing λ_{max}, and explain your ranking.

16.48 Which of the following compounds do you expect to have a longer λ_{max}?

16.49 Predict the expected λ_{max} of the following compound:

16.50 As shown below, when 5-deutero-5-methyl-1,3-cyclopentadiene is warmed to room temperature, it rapidly rearranges, giving an equilibrium mixture containing the original compound as well as two others. Propose a plausible mechanism for the formation of these other two compounds.

16.51 Propose a plausible mechanism for the following transformation:

16.52 Predict the major product(s) for each of the following electrocyclic reactions:

16.53 Identify whether each of the following reactions results in a *meso* compound or a pair of enantiomers:

(a) Irradiation of (2*E*,4*Z*,6*Z*)-4,5-dimethyl-2,4,6-octatriene with UV light.

(b) Subjecting (2*E*,4*Z*,6*Z*)-4,5-dimethyl-2,4,6-octatriene to elevated temperature.

(c) Irradiation of (2*E*,4*Z*,6*E*)-4,5-dimethyl-2,4,6-octatriene with UV light.

16.54 Predict which side of the following equilibrium is favored and explain your choice.

16.55 When *trans*-3,4-dimethylcyclobutene is heated, conrotatory ring opening can produce two different products, yet only one is formed. Draw both products, identify which product is formed, and then explain why the other product is not formed.

16.56 Predict the major product for each of the following reactions:

(a)

(b)

(c)

16.57 Predict the product(s) obtained when benzoquinone is treated with excess butadiene, and the mixture is heated:

16.58 Propose a mechanism for the following transformation:

16.59 Cholesta-4,6,8(14)-triene, shown below, was isolated from the thigh-gland secretion of the male Great Basin collared lizard *Crotaphytus bicinctores* and is believed to be used for communication.[6] Using Woodward–Fieser rules, estimate the expected λ_{max} in the UV-Vis spectrum of cholesta-4,6,8(14)-triene.

Cholesta-4,6,8(14)-triene

ACS-STYLE PROBLEMS (Multiple Choice)

Problems 16.60–16.67 follow the style of the ACS organic chemistry exam. For each of these problems, there will be one correct answer and three distractors. Note: The ACS exam generally does NOT cover electrocyclic reactions and sigmatropic rearrangements, although Diels–Alder reactions often appear on the exam.

16.60 • In the following compound, how many of the π bonds are conjugated?

(a) 0 (b) 1 (c) 2 (d) 3

16.61 • Which set of starting materials could be used to prepare the following compound in one step?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

16.62 • What is the major product of the following reaction?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

16.63 • Predict the major product for the following reaction.

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

16.64 • Of the following dienes, which is the most stable?

(a) (b) (c) (d)

16.65 • For a reaction that generates both kinetic and thermodynamic products, which of the following is associated with the *thermodynamic* product?

(a) It is formed faster.

(b) It is the more stable product.

(c) It involves the lower energy transition state.

(d) It is favored with cold reaction conditions.

16.66 • Which of the following is NOT associated with the Diels-Alder reaction?

(a) ring formation

(b) *s-cis* diene conformation

(c) carbocation intermediate

(d) [4+2] cycloaddition

16.67 • Which of the following represents the products formed when 1,3-butadiene is treated with one equivalent of HBr?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

INTEGRATED PROBLEMS

16.68 • α-Terpinene is a pleasant-smelling compound present in the essential oil of marjoram, a perennial herb. Upon hydrogenation with a metal catalyst, α-terpinene reacts with two equivalents of hydrogen gas to produce 1-isopropyl-4-methylcyclohexane. Ozonolysis of α-terpinene yields the following two compounds:

(a) How many double bonds are present in α-terpinene?

(b) Identify the structure of α-terpinene.

(c) Predict the wavelength of maximum absorption (λ_{max}) in the absorption spectrum of α-terpinene.

16.69 Compound **A** (C_7H_{10}) exhibits a λ_{max} of 230 nm in its UV absorption spectrum. Upon hydrogenation with a metal catalyst, compound **A** will react with two equivalents of hydrogen gas. Ozonolysis of compound **A** yields the following two compounds. Identify two possible structures for compound **A**.

16.70 Draw all possible conjugated dienes with the molecular formula C_6H_{10}, taking special care not to draw the same compound twice.

16.71 Starting with 1,3-butadiene as your only source of carbon atoms and using any other reagents of your choice, design a synthesis of the following compound:

16.72 Would you expect nitroethylene to be more or less reactive than ethylene in a Diels–Alder reaction? (**Hint:** Draw the resonance structures of nitroethylene.)

Ethylene **Nitroethylene**

16.73 Propose a plausible mechanism for the following transformation. (**Hint:** Only two sequential pericyclic reactions are required.)

16.74 Predict the major product of the following Diels–Alder reaction, making sure to consider the regiochemical outcome as well as the stereochemical outcome.

16.75 Propose a mechanism for the following retro Diels-Alder reaction:

16.76 Based on your answer to Problem 16.75, propose a mechanism for the following transformation:

16.77 Compare the structures of 1,4-pentadiene and divinylamine:

1,4-Pentadiene **Divinylamine**

The first compound does not absorb UV light in the region between 200 and 400 nm. The second compound does absorb light above 200 nm. Using this information, identify the hybridization state of the nitrogen atom in divinylamine and justify your answer.

16.78 During the first total synthesis of chelidonine, a cytotoxic natural product isolated from the root of *Chelidonium majus*, the investigators used only heat to achieve the following transformation.[7] This transformation is believed to occur via two successive pericyclic processes (an electrocyclic ring-opening reaction, followed by a Diels–Alder cycloaddition). Draw the mechanism as described.

16.79 During studies directed toward the synthesis of atropurpuran, a diterpene with interesting molecular architecture, the investigators used high temperature to convert an acyclic tetraene into a tricyclic compound, shown below.[8] This transformation is believed to occur via two successive pericyclic processes (an electrocyclic ring-closing reaction, followed by a Diels–Alder cycloaddition). Draw the mechanism as described.

16.80 The poison gelsemoxonine can be isolated from the leaves of a plant native to southeastern Asia (*Gelsemium elegans*). A key step in a synthesis of this natural product involves a thermally initiated (70°C) sigmatropic rearrangement of the compound shown below (R = protecting group).[9] Predict the product of this reaction and propose a mechanism for its formation.

16.81 Upon irradiation, some organic compounds undergo a reversible change in molecular structure, such as *cis–trans* isomerization or cyclization of conjugated chromophores. This property, called *photochromism*, has shown strong potential application in the development of optical data storage materials. For example, upon treatment with UV light, compound **1** undergoes electrocyclic ring closure to give compound **2**. Further treatment of **2** with visible light causes a ring-opening reaction, regenerating **1**.[10] Draw the structure of **2**, determine whether it is chiral, and provide a mechanism for its formation.

1 **2**

CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

16.82 During a recent investigation into the chemistry of oligofurans (polymers of the furan heterocycle, which show potential to be used in materials), the investigators observed an interesting reaction with dienophiles. When trifuran is treated with maleimide, only a terminal furan ring participates in a [4+2] cycloaddition (as shown below).[11] Provide a reasonable explanation for this observation.

Exclusive product

Not observed

16.83 When alkyne **A** reacts with benzyl azide ($C_6H_5CH_2N_3$), a [3+2] cycloaddition occurs between the triple bond and the azide (called a *click reaction*) to install a new five-membered heterocycle:[12]

A **B** + **C**

(a) Propose a plausible mechanism for the formation of **B**.

(b) Compounds **B** and **C** are constitutional isomers that are formed in roughly equal amounts. Draw the structure of compound **C**.

(c) Replacing alkyne **A** with any of the following alkynes results in a significantly slower reaction. Propose one or more reasons for this decrease in rate for each alkyne **D–F**.

D Unreactive | **E** 375 × Slower than **A** | **F** 1000 × Slower than **A**

16.84 Endiandric acids are a class of natural products isolated from the Australian plant *Endiandra introrsa*. Natural products containing chiral centers are generally found in nature as a single enantiomeric form (optically active), but the endiandric acids are an exception, as they are isolated as racemates. It has been suggested that they are formed via a series of pericyclic reactions from achiral starting materials, such as **1**.[13]

(a) The first step in the conversion of compound **1** to endiandric acids is believed to be a thermal electrocyclic reaction to form compound **2**, which possesses an eight-membered ring. Draw the structure of compound **2**, and explain why it is formed as a racemic mixture.

(b) Compound **2** can undergo another electrocyclic reaction, thereby forming the skeletal structure of endiandric acid G. Draw a mechanism for this process.

(c) Endiandric acid C is formed from endiandric acid G via an intramolecular Diels–Alder reaction. Draw the structure of endiandric acid C, and show a mechanism for its formation.

16.85 Roquefortine C belongs to a family of natural products first isolated from cultures of the fungus *Penicillium roqueforti* in the mid-1970s. Since then, roquefortine C has also been found in other natural sources, including blue cheese. Curiously, isoroquefortine C (a diastereomer of roquefortine C) is not found in nature, despite studies revealing that it is more stable than roquefortine C.[14] Provide a rational explanation for the difference in energy between these two compounds.

Roquefortine C

Isoroquefortine C

16.86 Compound **1** can be transformed to compound **2**, which undergoes a thio-Claisen rearrangement (similar to a Claisen rearrangement, but with sulfur instead of oxygen) to give compound **3**:[15]

(a) Identify the structure of compound **2**, which contains a carbon-carbon π bond in the *Z* configuration. (**Hint:** Work backward from compound **3**.)

(b) Propose a plausible mechanism for the transformation of **1** to **2**.

(c) Offer an explanation for the stereochemical outcome that is observed with respect to the newly formed chiral center. (**Hint:** You might find it helpful to use a molecular model set.)

LIST OF REFERENCES

1. *Synthetic Communications* **2007**, *37*, 1077–1090.
2. *Org. Lett.* **2015**, *17*, 1846–1849.
3. *Org. Lett.* **2001**, *3*, 723–726.
4. *Org. Lett.* **2013**, *15*, 3242–3245.
5. *J. Agric. Food Chem.* **2009**, *57*, 2135–2146.
6. *Biochemical Systematics and Ecology* **2013**, *47*, 5.
7. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1971**, *93*, 3836–3837.
8. *Org. Lett.* **2010**, *12*, 1152–1155.
9. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **2011**, *133*, 17634–17637.
10. *J. Photochem. Photobiols. A.* **2006**, *184*, 177–183.
11. *Org. Lett.* **2012**, *14*, 502–505.
12. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **2012**, *134*, 9199–9208.
13. *Aust. J. Chem.* **1982**, *35*, 2247–2256.
14. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **2008**, *130*, 6281–6287.
15. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **2000**, *122*, 190–191.

17

17.1 Introduction to Aromatic Compounds
17.2 Nomenclature of Benzene Derivatives
17.3 Structure of Benzene
17.4 Stability of Benzene
17.5 Aromatic Compounds Other Than Benzene
17.6 Reactions at the Benzylic Position
17.7 Reduction of Benzene and Its Derivatives
17.8 Spectroscopy of Aromatic Compounds

Aromatic Compounds

DID YOU EVER **WONDER...**

what the difference is between antihistamines that cause drowsiness and those that don't?

In this chapter, we expand our discussion of conjugated π systems and explore compounds that exhibit conjugated π bonds enclosed in a ring. For example, benzene and its derivatives belong to a class of compounds called *arenes* (aromatic hydrocarbons).

Benzene Toluene *ortho*-Xylene

As noted in earlier chapters, these compounds are said to be aromatic. This chapter will explore the unusual stability of aromatic rings as well as their properties and reactions. We will learn the criteria for aromaticity and then apply those criteria to identify other ring systems that are also aromatic. With this knowledge, we will be ready to explore the important role that aromatic rings play in the function of antihistamines.

DO YOU **REMEMBER?**

Before you go on, be sure you understand the following topics.
If necessary, review the suggested sections to prepare for this chapter:

- Molecular Orbital Theory (Section 1.9)
- Delocalized and Localized Lone Pairs (Section 2.12)
- Dissolving Metal Reduction (Section 9.5)
- MO Description of Conjugated Dienes (Section 16.3)

Take the DO YOU **REMEMBER?** QUIZ in the **online course** to check your understanding.

17.1 Introduction to Aromatic Compounds

Many derivatives of benzene were originally isolated from the fragrant balsams obtained from trees and plants, and these compounds were therefore described as being **aromatic** in reference to their pleasant odors. Over time, chemists discovered that many derivatives of benzene are, in fact, odorless. Nevertheless, the term "aromatic" is still used to describe all derivatives of benzene, regardless of whether they are fragrant or odorless. Benzene rings are a particularly common structural feature in drugs. All of the following top-selling drugs contain the benzene-like aromatic ring (highlighted in red).

Lipitor
(atorvastatin)
Lowers cholesterol levels and reduces risk of heart attack and stroke

Zyprexa
(olanzapine)
An antipsychotic used in the treatment of schizophrenia and bipolar disorder

Norvasc
(amlodipine)
Used in the treatment of angina and high blood pressure

Prilosec
(omeprazole)
A proton-pump inhibitor used in the treatment of ulcers and acid reflux

Prevacid
(lansoprazole)
A proton-pump inhibitor used in the treatment of ulcers and acid reflux

Plavix
(clopidogrel)
An antiplatelet agent (prevents formation of blood clots) used in the treatment of coronary artery disease

Serevent
(salmeterol)
Used in the treatment of asthma

Zoloft
(sertraline)
Used in the treatment of depression

In this chapter, we will see that aromatic rings are particularly stable and significantly less reactive than originally expected.

WorldLinks What Is Coal?

It is estimated that 25% of the world's recoverable coal (coal that can be readily mined) is located in the United States. As such, it is believed that the United States has enough natural resources to meet all of its energy needs for at least 200 years. To provide some additional perspective, consider the fact that these natural resources contain more than double the energy contained in all of the combined oil reserves in the Middle East.

It is believed that the earth's coal deposits were formed as organic matter from prehistoric plant life was subjected to high pressures and temperatures over long periods of time. The molecular structure of coal involves haphazard arrangements of aromatic rings (highlighted in orange boxes), connected to each other by nonaromatic links (shown in green boxes):

Dmitriy Kuzmichev/Shutterstock.com

When heated in the presence of oxygen, a combustion process takes place, producing carbon dioxide, water, and many other products. During the combustion process, the C—C and C—H bonds are broken and replaced by lower energy C═O bonds, thereby releasing energy that can be used to generate electricity. In fact, approximately one-quarter of the electricity consumed in the United States is produced from the combustion of coal.

When coal is heated to about 1000°C in the absence of oxygen, a mixture of compounds, called *coal tar*, is released. Distillation of coal tar yields many aromatic compounds. Although aromatic compounds can be obtained from coal, the primary source of aromatic compounds is from petroleum, using a process called *reforming* (Section 4.5).

17.2 Nomenclature of Benzene Derivatives

Monosubstituted Derivatives of Benzene

Monosubstituted derivatives of benzene are named systematically using benzene as the parent and listing the substituent as a prefix. Below are several examples.

Chlorobenzene **Nitro**benzene **Ethyl**benzene

The following are some monosubstituted aromatic compounds that have common names accepted by IUPAC. You must commit these names to memory, as they will be used extensively throughout the remaining chapters.

Toluene Phenol Anisole Aniline Benzoic acid Benzaldehyde Acetophenone Styrene

If the substituent is larger than the benzene ring (i.e., if the substituent has more than six carbon atoms), then the benzene ring can be treated as a substituent and is called a **phenyl group**.

1-Phenylheptane

The presence of a phenyl group is often indicated with the abbreviation Ph, for example:

Tetraphenylcyclopentadienone

Phenyl groups bearing substituents are sometimes shown with the abbreviation Ar, indicating the presence of an aromatic ring.

Disubstituted Derivatives of Benzene

Dimethyl derivatives of benzene are called xylene, and there are three constitutionally isomeric xylenes.

***ortho*-Xylene (1,2-dimethylbenzene)** | ***meta*-Xylene (1,3-dimethylbenzene)** | ***para*-Xylene (1,4-dimethylbenzene)**

These isomers differ from each other in the relative positions of the methyl groups and can be named in two ways: (1) using the descriptors ***ortho***, ***meta***, and ***para*** or (2) using locants. Both methods can be used when the parent is a common name:

***ortho*-Nitroanisole (2-Nitroanisole)** | ***meta*-Bromotoluene (3-Bromotoluene)** | ***para*-Chlorobenzaldehyde (4-Chlorobenzaldehyde)**

There is also a common practice to use one-letter prefixes (*o*-, *m*-, and *p*-) to represent the terms *ortho*, *meta*, and *para*. For example, the three previous compounds can be called *o*-nitroanisole, *m*-bromotoluene, and *p*-chlorobenzaldehyde, respectively.

Polysubstituted Derivatives of Benzene

The descriptors *ortho*, *meta*, and *para* cannot be used when naming an aromatic ring bearing three or more substituents. In such a case, locants are required. That is, each substituent is designated with a number to indicate its location on the ring.

When naming a polysubstituted benzene ring, we will follow the same four-step process used for naming alkanes, alkenes, alkynes, and alcohols.

1. Identify and name the parent.
2. Identify and name the substituents.
3. Assign a locant to each substituent.
4. Arrange the substituents alphabetically.

When identifying the parent, it is acceptable (and common practice) to choose a common name. Consider the following example:

3,5-Dibromophenol

This compound could certainly be named as a trisubstituted benzene ring. However, it is much more efficient to name the parent as phenol rather than benzene and to list the two bromine atoms as substituents. When assigning locants, the carbon atom connected to the OH group receives the lowest locant (number 1). When a choice exists, place numbers so that the second substituent receives the lower possible number, for example:

When assembling the name, make sure to alphabetize the substituents. In the example above, *b*romo is listed before *c*hloro, and the name of the compound is 5-bromo-2-chlorophenol.

SKILLBUILDER

17.1 NAMING A POLYSUBSTITUTED BENZENE

LEARN the skill

Provide a systematic name for TNT, a well-known explosive with the following molecular structure:

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Identify and name the parent.

First, identify and name the parent. In this case, we choose toluene as the parent (shown in red).

STEPS 2 AND 3
Identify the substituents and assign locants.

Next, identify the substituents and assign locants. We are naming this compound as a trisubstituted toluene (rather than a tetrasubstituted benzene), so we assign the lowest locant (number 1) to the carbon atom bearing the methyl group. In this case, the remaining locants can be assigned either clockwise or counterclockwise because the result is the same.

STEP 4
Arrange the substituents alphabetically.

Finally, arrange the substituents alphabetically. In this case, there are three nitro groups. Make sure to indicate all three numbers in the name.

2,4,6-Trinitrotoluene

PRACTICE the skill **17.1** Provide a systematic name for each of the following compounds:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

17.2 Aromatic compounds often have multiple names that are accepted by IUPAC. Provide three different systematic names for the following compound.

17.3 For each of the following compounds, draw its structure:

(a) 2,6-Dibromo-4-chloroanisole **(b)** *meta*-Nitrophenol

17.4 Provide at least five different acceptable names for the following compound.

APPLY the skill

17.5 Aromatic compounds are commonly found in plant oils. For example, an extract of rosemary, which shows anti-oxidant activity, was found to contain the compounds eugenol, thymol, and carvacrol.[1] These names are common names; however, each of these compounds also has more than one possible systematic name.

Eugenol

Thymol

Carvacrol

(a) Provide three systematic names for eugenol and three systematic names for thymol. (**Note:** The hydrocarbon substituent in eugenol ($—CH_2—CH{=}CH_2$) is called an allyl goup.)

(b) Provide at least one reason why 1-hydroxy-2-methyl-5-isopropylbenzene is an incorrect systematic name for carvacrol.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 17.24, 17.25, 17.29**

17.3 Structure of Benzene

In 1825, Michael Faraday isolated benzene from the oily residue left by illuminating gas in London street lamps. Further investigation showed that the molecular formula of this compound was C_6H_6: a hydrocarbon comprised of six carbon atoms and six hydrogen atoms.

In 1866, August Kekulé used his recently published structural theory of matter to propose a structure for benzene. Specifically, he proposed a ring comprised of alternating double and single bonds.

Kekulé described the exchange of double and single bonds to be an equilibrium process. Over time, this view was refined by the advent of resonance theory and molecular orbital concepts of delocalization. The two drawings above are now viewed as resonance structures, not as an equilibrium process.

Recall that resonance does not describe the motion of electrons, but rather, resonance is the way that chemists deal with the inadequacy of bond-line drawings. Specifically, each drawing alone is inadequate to describe the structure of benzene. The problem is that each C—C bond is neither a single bond nor a double bond, nor is it vibrating back and forth between these two states. Instead, each C—C bond has a bond order of 1.5, exactly midway between a single bond and a double bond. To avoid drawing resonance structures, benzene is often drawn like this:

This type of drawing appears often in the literature and will likely appear on the chalkboard of your organic chemistry lecture hall. Nevertheless, these drawings should be avoided when proposing reaction mechanisms, which require scrupulous bookkeeping of electrons. Throughout the remainder of this textbook, we will draw benzene rings as alternating single and double bonds (Kekulé structures).

17.4 Stability of Benzene

Evidence for Unusual Stability

There is much evidence that aromatic rings are particularly stable, much more so than expected. Below, we will explore two pieces of evidence for this stability.

Recall from Chapter 8 that alkenes readily undergo addition reactions, such as the addition of bromine to form a dibromide.

We might therefore expect benzene to undergo a similar reaction, perhaps even three times. But in fact, no reaction is observed.

The aromatic ring apparently exhibits a special stability that would be lost if an addition reaction were to occur. The stability of aromatic rings is also observed when comparing heats of hydrogenation for several similar compounds. Recall that hydrogenation of a π bond proceeds in the presence of a metal catalyst.

The heat of hydrogenation (ΔH) for this reaction is -120 kJ/mol. Benzene is generally stable to hydrogenation under standard conditions, but under forcing conditions (high pressure and high temperature), benzene also undergoes hydrogenation and reacts with three equivalents of molecular hydrogen to form cyclohexane. Therefore, we might expect $\Delta H = -360$ kJ/mol. But, in fact, the heat of hydrogenation for hydrogenation of benzene is only -208 kJ/mol.

In other words, benzene is much more stable than expected. This information is graphically represented on the energy diagram in Figure 17.1. This energy diagram shows the relative heats of

FIGURE 17.1
An energy diagram comparing the heats of hydrogenation for cyclohexene, cyclohexadiene, and benzene.

hydrogenation for cyclohexene, 1,3-cyclohexadiene, and benzene. Notice that the heat of hydrogenation of 1,3-cyclohexadiene is not quite twice the value of the heat of hydrogenation of cyclohexene. This is attributed to conjugation. Extending this logic to an imaginary cyclohexatriene molecule, we would expect that the heat of hydrogenation would be just below −360 kJ/mol, but it is actually significantly less than expected. The difference between the expected value (−360) and the observed value (−208) is 152 kJ/mol, which is called the *stabilization energy* of benzene. This value represents the amount of stabilization associated with aromaticity.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

17.6 Compound **A** is an aromatic compound with the molecular formula C_8H_8. When treated with excess Br_2, compound **A** is converted into compound **B**, with the molecular formula $C_8H_8Br_2$. Identify the structures of compounds **A** and **B**.

Compound A (C_8H_8) ⟶ **Compound B** ($C_8H_8Br_2$)

17.7 In some circumstances, dehydrogenation is observed. Dehydrogenation involves the loss of two hydrogen atoms (the reverse of hydrogenation). Analyze each of the following dehydrogenation reactions and then use the information in Figure 17.1 to predict whether each transformation will be downhill in energy (negative value for ΔH) or uphill in energy (positive value for ΔH).

Source of Stability

In order to explain the stability of benzene, we will need to invoke MO theory. Recall that a π bond results when two atomic p orbitals overlap to form two new orbitals, called molecular orbitals (Figure 17.2). The lower energy MO is the bonding MO, while the higher energy MO is the antibonding MO. Both π electrons occupy the bonding MO and thereby achieve a lower energy state.

FIGURE 17.2
The molecular orbitals of a π bond.

Now let's explore how MO theory describes the nature of benzene, which is comprised of six overlapping *p* orbitals (Figure 17.3). According to MO theory, these six atomic *p* orbitals are

FIGURE 17.3
The *p* orbitals of benzene overlap continuously around the ring.

replaced with six molecular orbitals (Figure 17.4). The precise shape and energy level of each MO are determined by sophisticated mathematics that is beyond the scope of our current discussion. For now, let's focus on the important concepts that are illustrated by the energy diagram in Figure 17.4.

FIGURE 17.4
The molecular orbitals of benzene.

- There are six molecular orbitals, each of which is associated with the entire molecule (rather than being associated with any specific bond).
- Three of the six MOs (those below the dashed line) are bonding MOs, while the other three MOs (those above the dashed line) are antibonding MOs.
- Since each MO can contain two electrons, the three bonding MOs can collectively accommodate up to six π electrons.
- By occupying the bonding MOs, all six electrons achieve a lower energy state and are delocalized. Since the bonding MOs are filled with paired electrons while the antibonding MOs are empty, benzene is said to have a closed-shell electron configuration, and this is the source of the stabilization energy associated with benzene.

Hückel's Rule

We might expect the following two compounds to exhibit aromatic stabilization like benzene:

Cyclobutadiene (C_4H_4) Cyclooctatetraene (C_8H_8)

BY THE WAY
Willstätter was awarded the 1915 Nobel Prize in Chemistry for his research on elucidating the structure of chlorophyll.

After all, they are similar to benzene in that each compound is comprised of a ring of alternating single and double bonds. Cyclooctatetraene (C_8H_8) was first isolated by Richard Willstätter in 1911. The reactivity of this compound suggests that cyclooctatetraene does not exhibit the same stability exhibited by benzene. For example, the compound readily undergoes addition reactions, such as bromination.

Cyclobutadiene (C_4H_4) also does not exhibit aromatic stability. In fact, quite the opposite. It is extremely unstable and resisted all attempts to prepare it until the second half of the twentieth century (see the WorldLinks box that follows). Cyclobutadiene is so unstable that it reacts with itself at −78°C in a Diels–Alder reaction.

The Diels–Alder reaction generates an initial tricyclic product that is also unstable and rapidly rearranges to form cyclooctatetraene.

These observations indicate that the presence of a fully conjugated ring of π electrons is not the sole requirement for aromaticity; the number of π electrons in the ring is also important. Specifically, we have seen that an odd number of electron pairs is required for aromaticity.

2 pairs of π electrons 3 pairs of π electrons 4 pairs of π electrons

Benzene has a total of six π electrons, or *three* electron pairs. With an odd number of electron pairs, benzene is aromatic. In contrast, cyclobutadiene and cyclooctatetraene each have an even number of electron pairs (two pairs and four pairs, respectively) and do not exhibit aromatic stabilization.

The requirement for an odd number of electron pairs is the basis for **Hückel's rule**, which states that a compound can only be aromatic if the number of π electrons in the ring is 2, 6, 10, 14, 18, and so on. This series of numbers can be expressed mathematically as $4n + 2$, where n is a whole number. We will soon use MO theory to explain why aromatic stabilization requires an odd number of electron pairs ($4n + 2$ π electrons).

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

17.8 Predict whether or not each of the following compounds is aromatic, and explain your reasoning:

(a)

(b)

(c)

WorldLinks | Molecular Cages

Early attempts at preparing cyclobutadiene were met with failure again and again. In the second half of the twentieth century, several methods were developed. One such method is especially fascinating and will now be described.

The research of Donald Cram (UCLA) involved the investigation of cagelike molecules. Specifically, Cram prepared molecules shaped like hemispheres and then linked them together to form a cage:

Cram then used these cages to trap α-pyrone inside:

α-Pyrone

When irradiated with UV light, α-pyrone was known to liberate CO_2 to form cyclobutadiene:

The CO_2 molecules generated by this process were then able to escape through the spaces between the linkers holding the hemispheres together. However, cyclobutadiene is too large to escape through the holes in the cage. As a result, a single cyclobutadiene molecule would be trapped and unable to react with other molecules of cyclobutadiene. This extremely clever method for imprisoning cyclobutadiene worked beautifully and enabled its spectroscopic analysis. The many studies that followed provided strong evidence that cyclobutadiene rapidly equilibrates between two rectangular forms:

Cram's work with cagelike molecules, called *carcerands*, opened the doorway to a new field of chemistry. For his contributions, he shared a portion of the 1987 Nobel Prize in Chemistry.

MO Theory and Frost Circles

In this section, we will use MO theory to explain the source of Hückel's rule for planar, conjugated ring systems. We already analyzed the MOs of benzene (Figure 17.4) to explain its stability. Let's now turn our attention to the MOs of cyclobutadiene (C_4H_4) and cyclooctatetraene (C_8H_8) to see how MO theory can explain the observed instability of these compounds. We will start with square cyclobutadiene, which is a system constructed from the overlap of four atomic *p* orbitals (Figure 17.5).

FIGURE 17.5
The *p* orbitals that are used in cyclobutadiene.

According to MO theory, these four atomic orbitals are replaced with four molecular orbitals, with the relative energy levels shown in Figure 17.6.

FIGURE 17.6
The relative energy levels of the molecular orbitals of cyclobutadiene.

Of the four MOs, only one MO is a bonding MO, and it can accommodate no more than two π electrons. The remaining two π electrons must go into the degenerate nonbonding MOs. Each of these electrons occupies a different MO (according to Hund's rule), so each electron is unpaired (resembling a diradical). Notice the difference between this electronic configuration and that for benzene (Figure 17.4). In the case of benzene, all of the π electrons are paired in bonding MOs, giving a closed-shell electron configuration. In contrast, square cyclobutadiene (Figure 17.6) lacks a closed-shell electron configuration, and this is the source of its instability. Due to its unusual instability, this compound is said to be **antiaromatic**. Cyclobutadiene can alleviate some of its instability by adopting a rectangular shape (as described in the previous WorldLinks box), in which the compound functions as two isolated π bonds, rather than a diradical. There is strong evidence that cyclobutadiene rapidly equilibrates between two rectangular forms:

This equilibrium is achieved via a square cyclobutadiene transition state. The rectangular forms avoid much of the instability associated with an open-shell electron configuration, although they are still very high in energy. As such, cyclobutadiene is extremely unstable and highly reactive.

Now consider how MO theory treats planar cyclooctatetraene, which is a system constructed from the overlap of eight atomic p orbitals (Figure 17.7). According to MO theory, these eight

FIGURE 17.7
In a planar conformation, the p orbitals of cyclooctatetraene overlap continuously around the ring.

atomic orbitals are replaced with eight molecular orbitals, with the relative energy levels shown in Figure 17.8. When we fill these MOs with eight π electrons, we encounter a situation similar to that

FIGURE 17.8
The relative energy levels of the molecular orbitals of cyclooctatetraene.

which we encountered with square cyclobutadiene—specifically, two of the electrons are unpaired and occupy nonbonding orbitals. Once again, this open-shell electron configuration is expected to be unstable, and the compound should be antiaromatic. But the compound can avoid this unnecessary instability by assuming a tub shape (Figure 17.9).

FIGURE 17.9
The tub-shaped structure of cyclooctatetraene.

In this conformation, the eight p orbitals no longer overlap as one continuous system, and the energy diagram in Figure 17.8 (of the eight MOs) simply does not apply. Rather, there are four isolated π bonds, each of which contains two electrons in a bonding MO (as shown in Figure 17.2).

The explanation above is predicated on our ability to draw the relative energy levels of the MOs, and as we already mentioned, that ability requires sophisticated mathematics that is beyond the scope of our course. Without getting heavily into the mathematics of MO theory, there is a simple method that will enable us to predict and draw the relative energy levels for any ring of overlapping *p* orbitals. This method is illustrated with Figure 17.10, in which we analyze a seven-membered ring comprised of continuous, overlapping *p* orbitals.

FIGURE 17.10
A method for determining the relative energy levels of the molecular orbitals for a ring system comprised of continuous, overlapping *p* orbitals.

Begin by drawing a circle and inscribing a seven-membered polygon inside the circle, with one of the connecting points of the polygon at the bottom of the circle. Each location where the polygon touches the circle represents an energy level. All energy levels in the bottom half of the circle are the bonding MOs, and all energy levels in the top half of the circle are antibonding MOs. This method is extremely helpful, because the relative distances between the energy levels do in fact represent the relative difference in energy between the MOs. This method was first developed by Arthur Frost (Northwestern University), and it is referred to as a **Frost circle**.

If we accept that Frost circles accurately predict the relative energy levels of the MOs in a conjugated ring system, then we can use Frost circles to gain a better understanding of the $4n + 2$ rule. Consider the Frost circles for ring systems containing anywhere from 4 to 10 carbon atoms (Figure 17.11). Look at the bonding MOs (highlighted in green boxes). Notice that the number of bonding MOs is always odd (1, 3, or 5). Recall that aromaticity is achieved when all of the π electrons are paired in bonding MOs. Depending on the size of the ring, the bonding MOs will accommodate 2, 6, or 10 π electrons. This explains the source of the $4n + 2$ rule.

FIGURE 17.11
Frost circles for different-size ring systems.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

17.9 The cyclopropenyl cation has a three-membered ring that contains a continuous system of overlapping *p* orbitals. This system contains a total of two π electrons. Using a Frost circle, draw an energy diagram showing the relative energy levels of all three MOs and then predict whether this cation is expected to exhibit aromatic stabilization.

17.5 Aromatic Compounds Other Than Benzene

The Criteria for Aromaticity

Benzene is not the only compound that exhibits aromatic stabilization. A compound will be aromatic if it satisfies the following two criteria:

1. The compound must contain a ring comprised of continuously overlapping *p* orbitals.
2. The number of π electrons in the ring must be a Hückel number.

Compounds that fail the first criterion are called **nonaromatic**. Below are three examples, each of which fails the first criterion for a different reason.

Not a ring | Not a continuous system of *p* orbitals | Molecule is not planar, so the *p* orbitals are not overlapping

The first compound (1,3,5-hexatriene) is not aromatic, because it does not possess a ring. The second compound is not aromatic because the ring is not a continuous system of *p* orbitals (there is an intervening sp^3-hybridized carbon atom). The third compound is not planar, and the *p* orbitals do not effectively overlap.

Compounds that satisfy the first criterion but have $4n$ π electrons (rather than $4n + 2$) are antiaromatic. In practice, there are very few examples of antiaromatic compounds, because most compounds can change their geometry to avoid being antiaromatic, just as we saw in the case of cyclooctatetraene.

During the rest of this section, we will explore several examples of compounds that meet both criteria and are therefore aromatic.

Annulenes

Annulenes are compounds consisting of a single ring containing a fully conjugated π system.

[6]Annulene | [10]Annulene | [14]Annulene

[6]Annulene is benzene, which is aromatic. We might also expect [10]annulene to be aromatic since it is a ring with a continuous system of *p* orbitals and it has a Hückel number of π electrons. However, the hydrogen atoms positioned inside the ring (shown in red) experience a steric interaction that forces the compound out of planarity:

Since the molecule cannot adopt a planar conformation, the *p* orbitals cannot continuously overlap with each other to form one system, and as a result, [10]annulene does not meet the first criterion for aromaticity. It is nonaromatic. In a similar way, [14]annulene is also destabilized by a steric interaction between the hydrogen atoms positioned inside the ring, but to a lesser extent. Although [14]annulene is nonplanar, it does indeed exhibit aromatic stabilization, because the deviation from planarity is not too great. [18]Annulene has been found to be nearly planar, and is therefore aromatic, as we would expect.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

17.10 Predict whether the following compound will be aromatic, nonaromatic, or antiaromatic. Explain your reasoning.

Aromatic Ions

Previously, we used MO theory and Frost circles to explain the requirement for a Hückel number of π electrons. Let's now take a closer look at the Frost circle of a five-membered ring (Figure 17.12).

FIGURE 17.12 The Frost circle for a five-membered ring system.

A five-membered ring will be aromatic if it contains six π electrons (a Hückel number). In order to have six π electrons, one of the carbon atoms must possess two electrons (a carbanion). The resulting anion, called the cyclopentadienyl anion, has five resonance structures.

The cyclopentadienyl anion is resonance stabilized, but that alone does not explain the observed stability. This anion is especially stable because it is aromatic. The lone pair occupies a *p* orbital (Section 2.12), and as a result, the cyclopentadienyl anion has a continuous system of overlapping *p* orbitals. With six π electrons, this anion fulfills both criteria for aromaticity. The stabilization energy of the cyclopentadienyl anion explains the remarkable acidity of cyclopentadiene.

Notice that the pK_a of cyclopentadiene is very similar to the pK_a of water (around 16), which is very unusual for a hydrocarbon (the pK_a of cyclopentane is >50). The acidity of cyclopentadiene can be attributed to the stability of its conjugate base, which is aromatic.

Now let's explore the Frost circle of a seven-membered ring (Figure 17.13). Once again, exactly six π electrons are necessary to achieve aromaticity.

FIGURE 17.13 The Frost circle for a seven-membered ring system.

In order to have six π electrons in a seven-membered ring, one of the carbon atoms must possess an empty *p* orbital (a carbocation). The resulting ion is called the tropylium cation, and it has seven resonance structures.

This cation is resonance stabilized, but that alone does not explain its observed stability. It is especially stable because it is aromatic—it exhibits a continuous system of overlapping *p* orbitals and has six π electrons, so both criteria for aromaticity are satisfied.

SKILLBUILDER

17.2 DETERMINING WHETHER A STRUCTURE IS AROMATIC, NONAROMATIC, OR ANTIAROMATIC

LEARN the skill

Determine whether the following anion is aromatic, nonaromatic, or antiaromatic:

SOLUTION

To determine if this anion is aromatic, we must ask two questions:

1. Does the compound contain a ring comprised of continuously overlapping *p* orbitals?
2. Is there a Hückel number of π electrons in the ring?

The answer to the first question appears to be yes; that is, the lone pair can occupy a *p* orbital, providing for continuous overlap of *p* orbitals around the ring. However, when we try to answer the second question, we discover that this anion has eight π electrons, which renders the anion antiaromatic. As such, we expect the geometry of this anion to change and become nonplanar, in order to avoid some of the instability associated with antiaromaticity.

PRACTICE the skill

17.11 Determine whether each of the following ions is aromatic, nonaromatic, or antiaromatic:

APPLY the skill

17.12 In a pioneering study on the limits of aromaticity, the following resonance-stabilized dianion was prepared and examined.[2] Predict whether this dianion is aromatic, nonaromatic, or antiaromatic.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 17.32e, 17.39, 17.47, 17.48, 17.52**

Aromatic Heterocycles

Cyclic compounds containing heteroatoms (such as S, N, or O) are called **heterocycles**. Below are two examples of nitrogen-containing heterocycles.

Pyridine Pyrrole

Both of these compounds are aromatic, but for very different reasons. We will discuss them first separately and then compare them to each other.

Pyridine exhibits a continuous system of overlapping *p* orbitals (Figure 17.14) and therefore satisfies the first criterion for aromaticity.

FIGURE 17.14
The atomic *p* orbitals of pyridine that overlap to give an aromatic system. The lone pair on nitrogen occupies an sp^2-hybridized orbital.

The nitrogen atom in pyridine is sp^2 hybridized, and the lone pair on the nitrogen atom occupies an sp^2-hybridized orbital, which is pointing away from the ring. This lone pair is not part of the conjugated system and therefore is not included when we count the number of π electrons. In this case, there are six π electrons, so the compound is aromatic. Since the lone pair of pyridine does not participate in resonance or aromaticity, it is free to function as a base:

Pyridine can function as a base because protonation of the nitrogen atom does not destroy aromaticity.

Now let's analyze the structure of pyrrole. Once again, the nitrogen atom is sp^2 hybridized, but in this case, the lone pair occupies a p orbital (Figure 17.15).

FIGURE 17.15
The atomic p orbitals of pyrrole that overlap to give an aromatic system. The lone pair on nitrogen occupies one of the p orbitals.

LOOKING BACK
Recall from Section 2.12 that a lone pair occupies a p orbital if it participates in resonance.

In order for the pyrrole ring to achieve a continuous system of overlapping p orbitals, the lone pair of the nitrogen atom must occupy a p orbital. With six π electrons (four from the π bonds and two from the lone pair), this compound is aromatic. In this case, the lone pair is crucial in establishing aromaticity. The delocalized nature of the lone pair explains why pyrrole does not readily function as a base. Protonation of the lone pair on nitrogen would effectively destroy the p orbital overlap, thereby destroying aromaticity.

The difference between pyridine and pyrrole can be seen by comparing electrostatic potential maps (Figure 17.16).

FIGURE 17.16
Electrostatic potential maps of pyridine and pyrrole.

In general, it is not safe to compare electrostatic potential maps throughout this book, because the color scale on the maps might differ. However, in this case, the same color scale was used to generate both electrostatic potential maps, which allows us to compare the location of electron density in the two compounds. The map of pyridine shows a high concentration of electron density on the nitrogen atom, which represents the localized lone pair. That lone pair is not part of the aromatic system and is therefore free to function as a base. In contrast, the map of pyrrole indicates that the lone pair has been delocalized into the ring, and the nitrogen atom does not represent a site of high electron density.

SKILLBUILDER

17.3 DETERMINING WHETHER A LONE PAIR PARTICIPATES IN AROMATICITY

LEARN the skill

Histamine is responsible for many physiological responses and is known to mediate the onset of allergic reactions.

Histamine

Histamine has three lone pairs. Determine which lone pair(s) participate in aromaticity.

SOLUTION

The lone pair on the side chain is certainly not participating in aromaticity, because it is not situated in a ring. Let's focus on the two nitrogen atoms in the ring, beginning with the nitrogen in the upper left corner.

This lone pair must occupy a *p* orbital in order to have a continuous system of overlapping *p* orbitals. If this nitrogen atom was sp^3 hybridized, then the compound could not be aromatic. This lone pair is part of the aromatic system. Now look at the rest of the ring and count the π electrons:

There are six π electrons, without including the lone pair on the other nitrogen atom.

This lone pair cannot be included in the count, because each atom in the ring can only have one *p* orbital overlapping with the *p* orbitals of the ring. In this case, the nitrogen atom already has a *p* orbital from the double bond, and therefore, the lone pair cannot also occupy a *p* orbital (this lone pair does not participate in aromaticity).

PRACTICE the skill

17.13 For each of the following compounds determine which (if any) lone pairs are participating in aromaticity:

APPLY the skill

17.14 Go to the beginning of Section 17.1 where the structures of several best-selling drugs were shown. Review the structures of those compounds and identify all of the aromatic rings that are not already highlighted in red.

17.15 Identify which compound is expected to have a lower pK_a value. Justify your choice.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 17.32c,d, 17.34, 17.37, 17.40, 17.53, 17.64, 17.66**

Polycyclic Aromatic Compounds

Hückel's rule $(4n + 2)$ is meant to be applied for a single ring of overlapping *p* orbitals. Nevertheless, many **polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs)** are known to be stable and have been thoroughly studied:

Naphthalene **Anthracene** **Phenanthrene**

These compounds are comprised of fused benzene-like rings, and they exhibit significant aromatic stabilization. For each compound, the stabilization energy can be measured by comparing heats of hydrogenation, just as we did with benzene. These values are summarized in Table 17.1. For polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons, the stabilization energy *per ring* is dependent on the structure of the compound and is generally less than the stabilization energy of benzene, as seen in the last column of Table 17.1. In addition, the individual rings of a polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon will often exhibit different levels of stabilization. For example, the middle ring of anthracene is known to be more reactive than either of the outer rings.

TABLE 17.1 STABILIZATION ENERGY FOR A FEW POLYCYCLIC AROMATIC HYDROCARBONS

COMPOUND	STABILIZATION ENERGY (KJ/MOL)	AVERAGE STABILIZATION ENERGY PER RING (KJ/MOL)
Benzene	152	152
Naphthalene	255	128
Anthracene	347	116
Phenanthrene	381	127

BioLinks The Development of Nonsedating Antihistamines

Histamine (as seen in SkillBuilder 17.3) is an aromatic compound that plays many roles in the biological processes of mammals. It is involved in the mediation of allergic reactions and the regulation of gastric acid secretion in the stomach. Extensive pharmacological studies reveal the existence of at least three different types of histamine receptors, called H_1, H_2, and H_3 receptors. The binding of histamine to H_1 receptors is responsible for triggering allergic reactions. Compounds that compete with histamine to bind with H_1 receptors (without triggering the allergic reaction) are called H_1 antagonists and belong to a class of compounds called antihistamines.

Examples of H_1 antagonists include Benadryl and Chlortrimeton.

Benadryl (diphenhydramine) **Chlortrimeton (chlorpheniramine)**

Notice the structural similarities between these compounds. Both compounds exhibit two aromatic rings, highlighted in red, as well as a tertiary amine (a nitrogen atom connected to three alkyl groups), highlighted in blue. Extensive research indicates that these structural features are necessary in order for a drug to exhibit H_1 antagonism. Studies also show that the two aromatic rings must be in close proximity (separated by either one or two carbon atoms). To understand this requirement, consider the structure of a simple compound that bears two phenyl groups separated by one carbon atom.

Diphenylmethane

The single bonds experience free rotation at room temperature, which enables the molecule to adopt different conformations. When the two rings are coplanar (when they lie in the same plane), there is a significant steric interaction between two of the aromatic hydrogen atoms.

Rings are coplanar

As a result, this conformation is very high in energy. The molecule can alleviate most of this strain by adopting a conformation in which the two rings are not coplanar. This noncoplanar conformation resembles a twisted waffle maker, and is much lower in energy than the coplanar conformation. As a result, a molecule that contains two closely situated aromatic rings will spend most of its time in a noncoplanar conformation.

Rings are not coplanar

Resembles a waffle maker

Antihistamines possess this "waffle maker" structural feature. For example, the structure of Benadryl exhibits two aromatic rings, and these rings adopt a noncoplanar conformation. This feature is important, because it enables the molecule to experience significant binding with the H_1 receptor.

In a noncoplanar conformation, the two aromatic rings achieve a combined binding force of approximately 40 kJ/mol (equivalent in strength to two hydrogen bonds). The nitrogen atom (shown in blue) also binds to the receptor. That interaction will be discussed in more detail in Chapter 22.

The table shows a sampling of antihistamines. Notice that each structure contains two aromatic rings in close proximity (red) as well as the tertiary amine (blue).

Pyrilamine	Tripelennamine	Methapyrilene	Triprolidine
Phenindamine	Dimethindene	Promethazine	Methdilazine

In addition to their ability to bind with the H_1 receptors, these antihistamines also bind with receptors in the central nervous system, causing undesired side effects such as sedation (drowsiness). All of these compounds, called *first-generation antihistamines*, cause these undesired side effects. The sedative effect of first-generation antihistamines has been attributed to their ability to cross the blood-brain barrier, allowing them to interact with receptors in the central nervous system.

One of the goals of antihistamine research over the last three decades was the development of antihistamines that could bind with H_1 receptors but could not readily cross the blood-brain barrier and therefore could not reach the receptors that trigger sedation. Extensive research has led to the development of several new drugs, called *second-generation antihistamines*, which are nonsedating. As we might expect, these drugs contain the pharmacophore necessary for H_1 antagonism (two aromatic rings in close proximity and a tertiary amine). However, second-generation antihistamines also have polar functional groups that prevent the compound from crossing the nonpolar environment of the blood-brain barrier. An example of a nonsedating antihistamine is fexofenadine, sold under the trade name Allegra.

Fexofenadine

This compound contains several polar groups (highlighted in green boxes). In addition, the COOH group is deprotonated under physiological pH to produce a carboxylate anion (COO^-). This ionic group, together with the polar hydroxyl groups, prevents the compound from crossing the blood-brain barrier and from reaching receptors in the central nervous system. As a result, fexofenadine does not produce the sedative effects that are typical of first-generation antihistamines. Many other nonsedating antihistamines have also been developed, such as cetirizine, sold under the trade name Zyrtec. The polar groups in this compound prevent it from crossing the blood-brain barrier.

Zyrtec
(cetirizine)

Roman Sigaev/Shutterstock

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

17.16 Meclizine, shown below, is an antiemetic (prevents nausea and vomiting).

(a) Would you expect meclizine to be an antihistamine as well? Justify your answer.

(b) This drug is known to cause sedation. Describe the source of the sedative properties of meclizine.

(c) Suggest a structural modification that could possibly modify the sedative properties of meclizine.

Meclizine

17.6 Reactions at the Benzylic Position

Any carbon atom attached directly to a benzene ring is called a **benzylic position**:

Benzylic positions

In this section, we will explore reactions that can occur at the benzylic position.

Oxidation

Recall from Section 12.10 that chromic acid (H_2CrO_4) is a strong oxidizing agent that can be used to oxidize primary or secondary alcohols. Chromic acid does not readily react with benzene or with alkanes:

Interestingly, however, alkylbenzenes are readily oxidized by chromic acid. The oxidation takes place selectively at the benzylic position:

Although the aromatic ring itself is stable in the presence of chromic acid, the benzylic position is particularly susceptible to oxidation. Notice that the alkyl group is entirely excised, leaving only the benzylic carbon atom behind. The product is benzoic acid, irrespective of the identity of the alkyl group. However, if the benzylic position is quaternary (if it is connected to four carbon atoms), then oxidation does not occur.

Oxidation of a benzylic position can also be accomplished with other reagents, including potassium permanganate ($KMnO_4$).

When an alkylbenzene is treated with potassium permanganate, a carboxylate salt is obtained, which must then be treated with a proton source in order to obtain benzoic acid.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

17.17 Draw the expected product when each of the following compounds is oxidized with chromic acid:

(a)

(b)

(c)

Free-Radical Bromination

In Section 10.7 we explored the free-radical bromination of allylic positions. Similarly, free-radical bromination also occurs readily at benzylic positions.

The reaction is highly regioselective (bromination occurs primarily at the benzylic position) due to resonance stabilization of the intermediate benzylic radical.

This reaction enables us to introduce a functional group at the benzylic position. Once introduced, that functional group can then be exchanged for a different group, as we will now see.

Substitution Reactions of Benzylic Halides

As seen in Section 7.8, benzylic halides undergo S_N1 reactions rapidly.

The relative ease of the reaction is attributed to the stability of the carbocation intermediate. Specifically, a benzylic carbocation is resonance stabilized.

Benzylic halides also undergo S_N2 reactions very rapidly, provided that they are not sterically hindered.

Elimination Reactions of Benzylic Halides

Benzylic halides undergo elimination reactions rapidly. For example, the following E1 reaction occurs readily:

The relative ease of the reaction is attributed to the stability of the carbocation intermediate (a benzylic carbocation), just as we saw with S_N1 reactions.

Benzylic halides also undergo E2 reactions very rapidly.

The relative ease of the reaction is attributed to the low energy of the transition state as a result of conjugation between the forming double bond and the aromatic ring.

Summary of Reactions at the Benzylic Position

Figure 17.17 is a summary of reactions that occur at the benzylic position. Note that there are two ways to introduce functionality at a benzylic position: (1) oxidation and (2) radical bromination. The first method produces benzoic acid, while the second produces a benzylic halide that can undergo substitution or elimination.

FIGURE 17.17
Reactions that occur at the benzylic position.

SKILLBUILDER

17.4 MANIPULATING THE SIDE CHAIN OF AN AROMATIC COMPOUND

LEARN the skill

Propose an efficient synthesis for the following transformation:

SOLUTION

Recall from Chapter 11 that there are two questions to ask when approaching a synthesis problem:

1. Is there a change in the carbon skeleton?
2. Is there a change in the position or identity of the functional groups?

First consider the carbon skeleton. In this case, there is no change:

Now focus on the change in functional groups. In this example, the reactant does not have a functional group at the benzylic position, while the product does. Therefore, we must first introduce functionality at the benzylic position, and there are two ways to do that.

The first method will be less helpful, because we do not yet know how to manipulate a carboxylic acid group (COOH). That topic will be covered extensively in Chapter 20. In the meantime, we will have to use radical bromination to introduce functionality. The resulting benzylic halide can then be manipulated. But can a Br be converted into an aldehyde? To accomplish this, the halogen must first be replaced with an OH group, which requires a substitution reaction. Since the substrate is primary and benzylic, it is reasonable to choose an S_N2 process.

Now an oxygen atom is attached, but the oxidation state is not correct. We must oxidize the alcohol to an aldehyde. This transformation can be accomplished with PCC (or with DMP, or with a Swern oxidation).

In summary, our synthesis has just a few steps:

PRACTICE the skill

17.18 Propose an efficient synthesis for each of the following transformations:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

(f)

APPLY the skill

17.19 Hamigeran B and several related natural products were isolated from a sponge found off the coast of New Zealand. Hamigeran B has demonstrated strong activity against the viruses that cause polio and herpes. During efforts to synthesize this natural product, compound **1** was converted into compound **2**.[3] While there are three benzylic positions in compound **1**, the secondary benzylic carbon (highlighted) was found to be preferentially functionalized due to effects that we have not yet discussed. Given this information, propose an efficient synthesis for the conversion of **1** to **2**.

1 **2** **Hamigeran B**

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 17.42, 17.49–17.51**

17.7 Reduction of Benzene and Its Derivatives

Hydrogenation

Recall from Section 17.4 that under forcing conditions benzene will react with three equivalents of molecular hydrogen to produce cyclohexane:

With some catalysts and under certain conditions, it is possible to hydrogenate a vinyl group selectively in the presence of an aromatic ring:

The vinyl group is reduced, but the aromatic ring is not. Notice that ΔH for this reaction is slightly lower than what we expect for a double bond (−120 kJ/mol), which can be attributed to the fact that the double bond is conjugated in this case.

Birch Reduction

Recall from Section 9.5 that alkynes can be reduced via the dissolving metal reduction. Benzene can also be reduced under similar conditions to give 1,4-cyclohexadiene:

This reaction is called the **Birch reduction**, named after the Australian chemist Arthur Birch, who systematically explored the details of this reaction. The mechanism, which is believed to be very similar to the mechanism of alkyne reduction via a dissolving metal reduction, is comprised of four steps (Mechanism 17.1).

MECHANISM 17.1 THE BIRCH REDUCTION

In step 1, a single electron is transferred to the aromatic ring, giving a radical anion, which is then protonated in step 2. Steps 3 and 4 are similar to steps 1 and 2, with the transfer of an electron followed by protonation. In order to remember the mechanism of this reaction, it might be helpful to summarize the steps as: (1) electron, (2) proton, (3) electron, and (4) proton.

In a Birch reduction, the ring is not completely reduced, since two double bonds remain. Specifically, only two of the carbon atoms in the ring are actually reduced. The other four carbon

atoms remain sp^2 hybridized. Also notice that the two reduced carbon atoms are opposite each other:

The product is a nonconjugated diene, rather than a conjugated diene.

When an alkylbenzene is treated with Birch conditions, the carbon atom connected to the alkyl group is not reduced:

Why not? Recall that alkyl groups are electron donating. This effect destabilizes the radical anion intermediate that is necessary to generate the product that is not observed.

When electron-withdrawing groups are used, a different regiochemical outcome is observed. For example, consider the structure of acetophenone, which has a carbonyl group (C═O bond) next to the aromatic ring:

The carbonyl group is electron withdrawing via resonance. (Can you draw the resonance structures of acetophenone and explain why the carbonyl group is electron withdrawing?) This electron-withdrawing effect stabilizes the intermediate that is necessary to generate the observed product.

SKILLBUILDER

17.5 PREDICTING THE PRODUCT OF A BIRCH REDUCTION

LEARN the skill

Predict the major product obtained when the following compound is treated with Birch conditions:

SOLUTION

Determine whether the groups attached to the aromatic ring are electron donating or electron withdrawing.

In this case, there are two groups. The carbonyl group is electron withdrawing, while the alkyl group is electron donating.

STEP 1
Determine whether each substituent is electron donating or electron withdrawing.

STEP 2
Identify which carbon atoms are reduced.

We therefore predict that the carbon atom next to the carbonyl group will be reduced, while the carbon atom next to the alkyl group will not be reduced.

STEP 3
Draw the product, making sure that the two positions not reduced are 1,4 to each other.

Remember that only two positions are reduced in a Birch reaction, and these two positions must be on opposite sides of the ring (1,4 to each other). This requirement, together with the information above, dictates the following outcome:

PRACTICE the skill

17.20 Predict the major product obtained when each of the following compounds is treated with Birch reduction conditions:

APPLY the skill

17.21 Rippertenol is a compound made by termites and used by the insects to defend themselves from predators. Due to its complexity, the first synthesis of rippertenol was not reported until more than 30 years following its original isolation and characterization.[4] The synthesis begins with a Birch reduction of 3-methylanisole (compound **1**) to afford compound **2**. (**Note:** Li serves as a source of electrons, just like Na)

(a) In Chapter 18, we will discuss whether a methoxy group is electron-donating or electron-withdrawing. We will see that there is a competition between two factors. The methoxy group might be considered electron-withdrawing because of induction, or it might be considered electron-donating because of resonance. Draw resonance structures for compound **1**.

(b) Based on the regiochemical outcome of the Birch reduction above, deduce which factor is more dominant for the methoxy substituent: the inductive effect or the resonance effect?

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 17.44, 17.45**

17.8 Spectroscopy of Aromatic Compounds

IR Spectroscopy

Benzene derivatives generally produce signals in five characteristic regions of an IR spectrum. These five regions and the vibrations associated with them are listed in Table 17.2 and can be seen in an IR spectrum of ethylbenzene (Figure 17.18). Notice that the signals just above 3000 cm^{-1},

TABLE 17.2 CHARACTERISTIC SIGNALS IN THE IR SPECTRA OF AROMATIC COMPOUNDS

ABSORPTION	FEATURE	COMMENTS
3000–3100 cm^{-1}	C_{sp^2}—H stretching	One or more signals just above 3000 cm^{-1}. Intensity is generally weak or medium
1700–2000 cm^{-1}	Combination bands and overtones	A group of very weak signals
1450–1650 cm^{-1}	Stretching of carbon-carbon bonds as well as ring vibrations	Generally three signals (medium intensity) at around 1450, 1500, and 1600 cm^{-1}
1000–1275 cm^{-1}	C—H bending (in plane)	Several signals of strong intensity
690–900 cm^{-1}	C—H bending (out of plane)	One or two strong signals

FIGURE 17.18
An IR spectrum of ethylbenzene indicating the five regions of absorption, characteristic of aromatic compounds.

corresponding with C_{sp^2}—H stretching, appear on the shoulder of the signals for all other C—H stretching (just below 3000 cm^{-1}). This is often the case, and these signal(s) can be identified by drawing a line at 3000 cm^{-1} and looking for any signals to the left of that line (Section 14.3). Aromatic compounds also produce a series of signals between 1450 and 1600 cm^{-1}, resulting from stretching of the carbon-carbon bonds of the aromatic ring as well as ring vibrations. The specific pattern of these signals can often be interpreted to identify the specific substitution pattern of the aromatic ring (i.e., monosubstituted, *ortho* disubstituted, *meta* disubstituted, etc.), although this level of analysis will not be discussed in our current treatment of IR spectroscopy.

LOOKING BACK
To see a picture of the shielding and deshielding regions established by an aromatic ring, see Figure 15.9.

^{1}H NMR Spectroscopy

In Section 15.5, we first discussed the anisotropic effects of an aromatic ring. Specifically, the motion of the π electrons generates a local magnetic field that effectively deshields the protons connected directly to the ring.

The signals from these protons typically appear between 6.5 and 8 ppm. For example, consider the ^{1}H NMR spectrum of ethylbenzene (Figure 17.19). The presence of a multiplet near 7 ppm is

FIGURE 17.19
A ^{1}H NMR spectrum of ethylbenzene showing that the deshielding effects of the aromatic ring are strongly dependent on proximity to the ring.

one of the best ways to verify the presence of an aromatic ring. Notice that the deshielding effects of the aromatic ring are felt most strongly for protons connected directly to the ring. Protons in benzylic positions are farther removed from the ring and are deshielded to a lesser extent. These protons generally produce signals between 2 and 3 ppm. Protons that are even farther removed from the aromatic ring exhibit almost no deshielding effects.

The integration value of the multiplet near 7 ppm is very useful information because it indicates the extent of substitution of the aromatic ring (monosubstituted, disubstituted, trisubstituted,

etc.). An integration of 5 is indicative of a monosubstituted ring, an integration of 4 is indicative of a disubstituted ring, and so forth. The splitting pattern of this multiplet is generally too complex to analyze, because the rigid planar structure of benzene causes long-range coupling between all of the different aromatic protons (even non-neighbors). Therefore, the substitution pattern is usually complex, except in the following two *para*-disubstituted cases, both of which produce very distinctive and simple patterns:

^{13}C NMR Spectroscopy

As first mentioned in Section 15.12, the carbon atoms of aromatic rings typically produce signals in the range of 100–150 ppm in a ^{13}C NMR spectrum. The number of signals is very helpful in determining the specific substitution pattern for substituted aromatic rings. Several common substitution patterns are shown below.

The number of signals in the region of 110–170 ppm can therefore provide valuable information.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

17.22 A compound with the molecular formula C_8H_8O produces an IR spectrum with signals at 3063, 1686, and 1646 cm^{-1}. The ^{1}H NMR spectrum of this compound exhibits a singlet at 2.6 ppm (I = 3H) and a multiplet at 7.5 (I = 5H).

(a) Draw the structure of this compound.

(b) What is the common name of this compound?

(c) When this compound is treated with Na, CH_3OH, and NH_3, a reduction takes place, giving a new compound with the molecular formula $C_8H_{10}O$. Draw the product of this reaction.

17.23 A compound with the molecular formula C_8H_{10} produces an IR spectrum with many signals, including 3108, 3066, 3050, 3018, and 1608 cm^{-1}. The ^{1}H NMR spectrum of this compound exhibits a singlet at 2.2 ppm (I = 6H) and a multiplet at 7.1 ppm (I = 4H). The ^{13}C NMR spectrum of this compound exhibits signals at 19.7, 125.9, 129.6, and 136.4 ppm.

(a) Draw the structure of this compound.

(b) What is the common name of this compound?

(c) Treating this compound with chromic acid yields a product with the molecular formula $C_8H_6O_4$. Draw the product of this reaction.

WorldLinks Buckyballs and Nanotubes

Until the mid-1980s, only two forms of elemental carbon were known—diamond and graphite:

Diamond is a three-dimensional lattice of interlocking chair conformations. Graphite is comprised of flat sheets of interlocking benzene rings. These sheets adhere to one another due to van der Waals interaction, but they can readily slide past each other, which makes graphite an excellent lubricant.

For many years, scientists were interested in isolating a *single* sheet of graphite and measuring its properties, but preparing a single layer of graphite turned out to be more challenging than expected. After many futile attempts, often using very sophisticated techniques, small amounts of isolated single sheets were produced successfully in 2004 by physicists Andre Geim and Konstantin Novoselov. The single sheet, which they called *graphene*, had properties that were indeed different from the properties of stacked sheets. Interestingly, their successful technique for producing graphene was to stick a piece of Scotch tape on a piece of graphite and then pull it off, then stick a new piece of tape to the graphite-coated tape and pull it off. Successive repetitions of this process eventually produced a sheet that was only one atom thick, creating a scientific legend about the Scotch tape that helped win a Nobel prize in 2010 (since then, more efficient ways of making graphene have been developed). Currently, graphene is the object of intense research for potential use in next-generation energy storage devices, with claims that graphene-enhanced lithium batteries could charge several times faster than current lithium batteries. Research is also ongoing for using graphene in electronic touch panels, solar photovoltaic panels, light emitting diodes (LEDs), and much more.

In 1985, a new form of elemental carbon was discovered, very much by accident. Harold Kroto (University of Sussex) was investigating how certain organic compounds are formed in space. While visiting with Robert Curl and Richard Smalley (Rice University), they discussed a way to re-create the type of chemical transformations that might occur in stars that are carbon rich. Smalley had developed a method for laser-induced evaporation of metals, and the group of scientists agreed to apply this method to graphite in the hopes of creating polyacetylenic compounds:

The compounds generated by this procedure were then analyzed by mass spectrometry, and to everyone's surprise, certain conditions would reliably produce a compound with the molecular formula C_{60}. They theorized that the structure of C_{60} is based on alternating five- and six-membered rings. To illustrate this, imagine a five-membered ring completely surrounded by fused benzene rings:

This group of atoms provides for a natural curvature. Extending this bonding pattern provides the possibility of a spherical molecule. Based on this reasoning, Kroto, Curl, and Smalley theorized that C_{60} is comprised of fused rings (20 hexagons and 12 pentagons), resembling the pattern of the seams on a soccer ball.

They called this unusual compound buckminsterfullerene (or just fullerene, for short), named after American architect R. Buckminster Fuller, who was famous for building geodesic domes. This compound is also commonly referred to as a *buckyball*.

Shortly after the discovery of C_{60}, methods were developed for preparing C_{60} in larger quantities, enabling its spectroscopic analysis as well as the exploration of its chemistry. A ^{13}C NMR spectrum of C_{60} shows a single peak at 143 ppm, because all 60 carbon atoms are sp^2 hybridized and chemically equivalent.

Since buckyballs are comprised of interlocking aromatic rings, we might expect C_{60} to function as if it were one large aromatic compound. However, this is not the case, because the curvature of the sphere prevents all of the *p* orbitals from overlapping with each other, so the first criterion for aromaticity is not met. This explains why C_{60} does not exhibit the same stability as benzene. Specifically, C_{60} readily undergoes addition reactions, much like alkenes.

Since 1990, chemists have been preparing and exploring larger fullerenes and their interesting chemistry. For example, C_{60} can be prepared under conditions in which ions can be trapped inside the center of the sphere. Such compounds are superconductors at low temperature and offer the potential of

many exciting applications. These compounds are also being explored as novel drug delivery systems. Tubular fullerenes have also been prepared:

These compounds, which are called *nanotubes*, can be thought of as a rolled-up sheet of graphite capped on either end by half of a buckyball. Nanotubes have many potential applications. They can be spun into fibers that are stronger and lighter than steel, and they can also be made to carry electrical currents more efficiently than metals. The next several decades are likely to see many exciting applications of buckyballs and nanotubes. For their discovery of fullerenes, Kroto, Curl, and Smalley were awarded the 1996 Nobel Prize in Chemistry.

maggio07/Getty Images

REVIEW OF REACTIONS

Reactions at the Benzylic Position

Oxidation

Substitution Reactions

Free-Radical Bromination

Elimination Reactions

Reduction

Catalytic Hydrogenation

Birch Reduction

REVIEW OF CONCEPTS AND VOCABULARY

SECTION 17.1

- Derivatives of benzene are called **aromatic** compounds, regardless of whether they are fragrant or odorless.

SECTION 17.2

- Monosubstituted derivatives of benzene are named systematically using benzene as the parent and listing the substituent as a prefix.
- IUPAC also accepts many common names for monosubstituted benzenes.
- When a benzene ring is a substituent, it is called a **phenyl group**.
- Disubstituted derivatives of benzene can be differentiated by the use of the descriptors ***ortho***, ***meta***, and ***para***, or by the use of locants.
- Polysubstituted derivatives of benzene are named using locants. Common names can be used as parents.

SECTION 17.3

- Benzene is comprised of a ring of six identical C—C bonds, each of which has a bond order of 1.5.
- No single Lewis structure adequately describes the structure of benzene. Resonance structures are required.

SECTION 17.4

- Benzene exhibits unusual stability. It does not react with bromine in an addition reaction.
- The *stabilization energy* of benzene can be measured by comparing heats of hydrogenation.
- The stability of benzene can be explained with MO theory. The six π electrons all occupy bonding MOs.
- The presence of a fully conjugated ring of π electrons is not the sole requirement for aromaticity. The requirement for an odd number of electron pairs is called **Hückel's rule**.
- Cyclobutadiene is **antiaromatic**; cyclooctatetraene adopts a tub-shaped conformation and is nonaromatic.
- **Frost circles** accurately predict the relative energy levels of the MOs in a conjugated ring system.

SECTION 17.5

- A compound is aromatic if it contains a ring comprised of continuously overlapping *p* orbitals and if it has a Hückel number of π electrons in the ring.
- Compounds that fail the first criterion are called **nonaromatic**.
- Compounds that satisfy the first criterion but have $4n$ π electrons (rather than $4n + 2$) are antiaromatic.
- **Annulenes** are compounds consisting of a single ring containing a fully conjugated π system. Due to a steric interaction, [10]annulene does not meet the first criterion and is nonaromatic.
- The cyclopentadienyl anion exhibits aromatic stabilization, as does the tropylium cation.
- Cyclic compounds containing heteroatoms, such as S, N, and O, are called **heterocycles**.
- The lone pair in pyridine is localized and does not participate in resonance, while the lone pair in pyrrole is delocalized and participates in aromaticity.
- Many **polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs)** are known to be stable.

SECTION 17.6

- Any carbon atom attached directly to a benzene ring is called a **benzylic position**.
- Alkylbenzenes are oxidized at the benzylic position by chromic acid or potassium permanganate, provided that the benzylic position is not quaternary.
- Free-radical bromination occurs readily at benzylic positions.
- Benzylic halides readily undergo S_N1, S_N2, E1, and E2 reactions.

SECTION 17.7

- Under certain conditions, a vinyl group can be selectively hydrogenated in the presence of an aromatic ring.
- In a **Birch reduction**, the aromatic ring is reduced to give a nonconjugated diene. The carbon atom connected to an alkyl group is not reduced, while the carbon atom connected to an electron-withdrawing group is reduced.

SECTION 17.8

- Aromatic compounds generally produce IR signals in five distinctive regions of the IR spectrum.
- Benzylic protons produce ^{1}H NMR signals between 2 and 3 ppm, while aromatic protons produce a characteristic signal (usually a multiplet) around 7 ppm.
- The sp^2-hybridized carbon atoms of an aromatic ring produce ^{13}C NMR signals between 110 and 170 ppm.

SKILLBUILDER REVIEW

17.1 NAMING A POLYSUBSTITUTED BENZENE

STEP 1 Identify and name the parent.

Phenol

STEP 2 Identify the substituents.

Bromo

STEP 3 Assign locants.

STEP 4 Assemble the substituents alphabetically, with locants.

5-Bromo-2-chlorophenol

Try Problems 17.1–17.5, 17.24, 17.25, 17.29

17.2 DETERMINING WHETHER A STRUCTURE IS AROMATIC, NONAROMATIC, OR ANTIAROMATIC

STEP 1 Does the compound contain a ring comprised of continuously overlapping *p* orbitals?

Examples that fail:

STEP 2 Is there a Hückel number of π electrons in the ring?

Examples that pass:

STEP 3 Decision tree:

Try Problems 17.11, 17.12, 17.32e, 17.39, 17.47, 17.48, 17.52

17.3 DETERMINING WHETHER A LONE PAIR PARTICIPATES IN AROMATICITY

A lone pair can occupy the following atomic orbitals:

Try Problems 17.13–17.15, 17.32c,d, 17.34, 17.37, 17.40, 17.53, 17.64, 17.66

17.4 MANIPULATING THE SIDE CHAIN OF AN AROMATIC COMPOUND

Try Problems 17.18, 17.19, 17.42, 17.49–17.51

17.5 PREDICTING THE PRODUCT OF A BIRCH REDUCTION

STEP 1 Identify whether each substituent is electron donating or electron withdrawing.

STEP 2 Identify which carbon atoms are reduced.

STEP 3 Draw the product. Remember that the two positions not reduced must be 1,4 to each other.

Try Problems 17.20, 17.21, 17.44, 17.45

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

• **Included in Answers section**

17.24 • Provide a systematic name for each of the following compounds:

(a)
(b)
(c)
(d)
(e)

17.25 Draw a structure for each of the following compounds:

(a) *ortho*-Dichlorobenzene (b) Anisole
(c) *meta*-Nitrotoluene (d) Aniline
(e) 2,4,6-Tribromophenol (f) *para*-Xylene

17.26 Draw structures for the eight constitutional isomers with the molecular formula C_9H_{12} that contain a benzene ring.

17.27 Draw structures for all constitutional isomers with the molecular formula C_8H_{10} that contain an aromatic ring.

17.28 Draw all aromatic compounds that have the molecular formula C_8H_9Cl.

17.29 The systematic name of TNT, a well-known explosive, is 2,4,6-trinitrotoluene (as seen in SkillBuilder 17.1). There are only five constitutional isomers of TNT that contain an aromatic ring, a methyl group, and three nitro groups. Draw all five of these compounds and provide a systematic name for each.

17.30 • Identify the number of π electrons in each of the following compounds:

(a)
(b)
(c)
(d)
(e)

17.31 Consider the differences between cyclohexane and benzene:

Cyclohexane

Benzene

These compounds have different properties, different geometry, and different reactivity. Each of these compounds also has a unique set of terminology. For each of the following terms, identify whether it is used in reference to benzene or to cyclohexane:

(a) *meta* (b) Frost circle (c) sp^2
(d) Chair (e) *ortho* (f) sp^3
(g) Resonance (h) π Electrons (i) *para*
(j) Ring flip (k) Boat

17.32 • Identify which of the following are aromatic:

(a)
(b)
(c)
(d)
(e)

17.33 Firefly luciferin is the compound that enables fireflies to glow.

Firefly luciferin

(a) The structure exhibits three rings. Identify which of the rings are aromatic.

(b) Identify which lone pairs are involved in establishing aromaticity.

17.34 • Identify each of the following as aromatic, nonaromatic, or antiaromatic. Explain your choice in each case.

(a)
(b)
(c)
(d)
(e)
(f)
(g)
(h)

17.35 Consider the structures of the following alkyl chlorides:

(a) Which compound would you expect to undergo an S_N1 process most readily? Justify your choice.

(b) Which compound would you expect to undergo an S_N1 process least readily? Justify your choice.

17.36 Which of the following compounds would you expect to be most acidic? Justify your choice.

17.37 Identify which of the following compounds is expected to be a stronger base. Justify your choice.

17.38 Draw a Frost circle for the following cation and explain the source of instability of this cation:

17.39 Explain the vast difference in pK_a values for the following two apparently similar compounds:

$pK_a = 16$

$pK_a = 36$

17.40 Would you expect the following compound to be aromatic? Justify your answer.

17.41 The following two drawings are resonance structures of one compound:

But the following two drawings are not resonance structures:

These two drawings represent two different compounds. Explain.

17.42 • Predict the major product for each of the following reactions.

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

17.43 How many signals do you expect in the ^{13}C NMR spectrum of each of the following compounds?

(a)
(b)

(c)
(d)

17.44 Predict the product of the following reaction and propose a mechanism for its formation:

17.45 One of the constitutional isomers of xylene was treated with sodium, methanol, and ammonia to yield a product that exhibited five signals in its ^{13}C NMR spectrum. Identify which constitutional isomer of xylene was used as the starting material.

17.46 Consider the following two compounds:

How would you distinguish between them using:

(a) IR spectroscopy?

(b) ^1H NMR spectroscopy?

(c) ^{13}C NMR spectroscopy?

17.47 Explain how the following two compounds can have the same conjugate base. Is this conjugate base aromatic?

ACS-STYLE PROBLEMS (Multiple Choice)

Problems 17.48–17.54 follow the style of the ACS organic chemistry exam. For each of these problems, there will be one correct answer and three distractors.

17.48 • Which of the following structures is not aromatic?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

17.49 • Which of the following is least likely to undergo an S_N1 reaction with EtOH?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

17.50 • What is the major product of the following reaction sequence?

(a)

(b)
(c)

(d)

17.51 • Predict the major product for the following reaction.

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

17.52 • Why is the following compound NOT aromatic?

(a) An electron-count of 10 does not follow Hückel's rule.

(b) It does not have contiguous *p* orbitals.

(c) An aromatic compound cannot be larger than an 8-membered ring.

(d) The ring cannot achieve a planar conformation.

17.53 • Which is the more basic N atom? Explain briefly.

(a) Nitrogen atom **1** is more basic because its conjugate acid maintains aromaticity.

(b) Nitrogen atom **1** is more basic because its lone pair is delocalized.

(c) Nitrogen atom **2** is more basic because its lone pair is delocalized.

(d) Nitrogen atom **2** is more basic because the N–H proton is weakly acidic.

17.54 • Which of the following represents the MO diagram for the cycloheptatrienyl cation?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

INTEGRATED PROBLEMS

17.55 Compare the following electrostatic potential maps for cycloheptatrienone and cyclopentadienone.

Cycloheptatrienone

Cyclopentadienone

Both of these maps were created using the same color scale so they can be compared. Notice the difference between the oxygen atoms in these two compounds. There is more partial negative character on the oxygen in the first compound (cycloheptatrienone). Can you offer an explanation for this difference?

17.56 Azulene exhibits an appreciable dipole moment, and an electrostatic potential map indicates that the five-membered ring is electron-rich (at the expense of the seven-membered ring).

Azulene

(a) In general, a resonance structure will be insignificant if it has carbon atoms with opposite charges (C− and C+). Azulene represents an exception, because some resonance structures (with C− and C+) exhibit aromatic stabilization. With this in mind, draw resonance structures of azulene and use them to explain the observed dipole moment.

(b) Based on your explanation, determine which compound is expected to exhibit a larger dipole moment.

17.57 Propose an efficient synthesis for the following transformation:

17.58 Propose a plausible mechanism for the following transformation:

17.59 Identify the structure of a compound with the molecular formula $C_9H_{10}O_2$ that exhibits the following spectral data:

IR: 3005 cm^{-1}, 1676 cm^{-1}, 1603 cm^{-1}.

^1H NMR: 2.6 ppm (singlet, I = 3H), 3.9 ppm (singlet, I = 3H), 6.9 ppm (doublet, I = 2H), 7.9 ppm (doublet, I = 2H).

^{13}C NMR: 26.2, 55.4, 113.7, 130.3, 130.5, 163.5, 196.6 ppm.

17.60 Propose an efficient synthesis for each of the following transformations:

(a)

(b)

(c)

17.61 A compound with the molecular formula $C_{11}H_{14}O_2$ exhibits the following spectra (^1H NMR, ^{13}C NMR, and IR). Identify the structure of this compound.

17.62 A compound with the molecular formula $C_9H_{10}O$ exhibits the following spectra (^1H NMR, ^{13}C NMR, and IR). Identify the structure of this compound.

17.63 Below are two hypothetical compounds.

(a) Which compound would you expect to hold greater promise as a potential antihistamine? Explain your choice.

(b) Do you expect the compound you chose [in part (a)] to exhibit sedative properties? Explain your reasoning.

17.64 Would you expect the following compound to be aromatic? Explain your answer.

17.65 Compounds **A**, **B**, **C**, and **D** are constitutionally isomeric, aromatic compounds with the molecular formula C_8H_{10}. Deduce the structure of compound **D** using the following clues:

- The ^1H NMR spectrum of compound **A** exhibits two upfield signals as well as a multiplet near 7 ppm (with I = 5).

- The ^{13}C NMR spectrum of compound **B** exhibits four signals.
- The ^{13}C NMR spectrum of compound **C** exhibits only three signals.

17.66 Each of the following compounds contains two heteroatoms (one nitrogen atom and one oxygen atom):

Compound A Compound B

In compound **A**, the lone pair on the nitrogen atom is more likely to function as a base. However, in compound **B**, a lone pair on the oxygen atom is more likely to function as a base. Explain this difference.

17.67 Propose an efficient synthesis for the following transformation:

17.68 Using toluene and acetylene as your only sources of carbon atoms, show how you would prepare the following compound:

17.69 Due to their potential application in organic electronic devices, such as television screens, a large number of compounds containing conjugated pi systems (such as compound **A**) have been prepared.[5] Reduction of **A** gives **B**, as shown:

(a) Determine whether the 14-membered ring in **B** is aromatic.

(b) Draw resonance structures showing how the negative charges in **B** are delocalized.

(c) Draw at least three resonance structures that demonstrate the delocalized nature of the unpaired electrons in **B**.

17.70 Compound **1** contains a tetrazole ring (a five-membered ring containing four nitrogen atoms), while its constitutional isomer, compound **2**, exhibits an azido group (—N_3). There is evidence that compounds **1** and **2** rapidly interconvert, existing in equilibrium with one another.[6] There is only one nitrogen atom incorporated in a ring in compound **2**. Determine whether this nitrogen atom undergoes a change in hybridization state as a result of the isomerization process. Explain.

1 **2**

17.71 Studies modeling chemical reactions in the atmosphere of Saturn's moon Titan suggest that the compound 1,2,5,6-tetracyanocyclooctatetraene can form through one of a series of gas-phase reactions mediated by monocationic magnesium ($Mg^{+\bullet}$).[7] This organic compound forms a complex in which the lone pairs on all four nitrogen atoms interact with a single $Mg^{+\bullet}$ ion.

(a) Sketch the structure of this complex as described (the cyano group is —CN). Use dotted lines to show the interactions between the lone pairs and the magnesium ion.

(b) Explain why 1,2,4,5-tetracyanobenzene would not be able to form a comparable complex.

17.72 Consider the structures for naphthalene and phenanthrene.

Naphthalene Phenanthrene

(a) Draw all three resonance structures of naphthalene and then explain why the C2—C3 bond has a longer bond length (1.42 Å) than the C1—C2 bond (1.36 Å).

(b) The difference in bond lengths, called bond fixation, is very pronounced in phenanthrene. Draw all five resonance structures of phenanthrene and then use those resonance structures to predict which bond is expected to exhibit the shortest bond length.

(c) Treatment of phenanthrene with Br_2 affords a compound with the molecular formula $C_{14}H_{10}Br_2$.[8] Draw the structure of this product.

17.73 Cyclobutadiene is not stable at room temperature. Upon formation, it rapidly dimerizes via a Diels–Alder reaction. However, several derivatives of cyclobutadiene are known to be stable at room temperature[9]:

(a) One stable derivative is tri-*tert*-butylcyclobutadiene (R_1=R_2=R_3=*t*-Bu; R_4=H). Suggest an explanation for why this compound is stable.

(b) Another stable derivative of cyclobutadiene has been prepared in which R_1=R_3=NEt_2 and R_2=R_4=CO_2Et. Suggest an explanation for why this compound is stable.

(c) In part (b), we saw that cyclobutadiene is stabilized by the presence of neighboring NEt_2 and CO_2Et groups. In contrast, the presence of these two groups has a destabilizing effect on systems with $4n+2$ π electrons. Explain this observation.

CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

17.74 When the following cyclopentadiene-fused [14]annulene is treated with KH, a green solution of a stable cyclopentadiene anion results. This transformation causes a dramatic change in part of the ^{1}H NMR spectrum: the methyl groups shift from −3.9 ppm to −1.8 ppm.[10] Provide an explanation for this observation.

17.75 The following compound, isolated from a New Zealand sea squirt, demonstrates activity against a strain of malaria that is resistant to other treatments.[11] Consider the relative basicity of each nitrogen atom in this structure and draw the product expected when this compound is treated with two equivalents of a strong acid (*e.g.*, HCl).

17.76 In a mass spectrometric study of nitrogenous aromatic compounds, a peak at m/z = 39 was found for 17 of the 20 compounds investigated, including the 4 compounds in the first row below, with a relative intensity ranging from 5 to 84% of the base peak.[12] This peak was absent in the mass spectrum of each of the three compounds in the bottom row. Propose a structure for the cationic fragment with m/z = 39 and an explanation consistent with the information provided.

17.77 Fluorenyldiene (compound **1** below) is a highly conjugated, planar molecule[13] that is readily oxidized to dication **2**.

Draw at least four other resonance structures of dication **2** and identify why the resonance structure shown here is the greatest contributor to the overall resonance hybrid, despite the presence of adjacent positive charges (which is generally a destabilizing factor).

17.78 Numerous herbicides and fungicides are known to contain an acetylenic group. For example, compound **A** is a pyrimidinone herbicide that functions by inhibiting the accumulation of both chlorophyll and β-carotene. During a synthesis of **A**, shown below, an inactive product was also formed (compound **B**). The ratio of **A:B** was 1:4.[14] Compound **B**, a constitutional isomer of **A**, also contains an acetylenic group.

(a) Draw a plausible mechanism for the formation of compound **A**.

(b) Draw the likely structure of compound **B** and provide a mechanism for its formation.

(c) Explain why **B** is favored over **A** in this process.

LIST OF REFERENCES

1. *J. Agric. Food Chem.* **2014**, *62*, 6632–6639.
2. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1960**, *82*, 3784–3785.
3. *J. Org. Chem.* **2004**, *69*, 2773–2784.
4. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **2011**, *133*, 8850–8853.
5. *Tetrahedron Lett.* **2012**, *53*, 5385–5388.
6. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1959**, *81*, 4671–4673.
7. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **2005**, *127*, 13070–13078.
8. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1985**, *107*, 6678–6683.
9. *Angew Chem. Int. Ed.* **1988**, *27*, 1437–1455.
10. *J. Org. Chem.* **2004**, *69*, 549–554.
11. *J. Nat. Prod.* **2011**, *74*, 1972–1979.
12. *J. Org. Chem.* **1964**, *29*, 2065–2066.
13. *J. Org. Chem.* **2002**, *67*, 7029–7036.
14. *Bioorg. Med. Chem.* **2009**, *17*, 4047–4063.

18

Aromatic Substitution Reactions

18.1 Introduction to Electrophilic Aromatic Substitution
18.2 Halogenation
18.3 Sulfonation
18.4 Nitration
18.5 Friedel–Crafts Alkylation
18.6 Friedel–Crafts Acylation
18.7 Activating Groups
18.8 Deactivating Groups
18.9 Halogens: The Exception
18.10 Determining the Directing Effects of a Substituent
18.11 Multiple Substituents
18.12 Synthesis Strategies
18.13 Nucleophilic Aromatic Substitution
18.14 Elimination-Addition
18.15 Identifying the Mechanism of an Aromatic Substitution Reaction

Top (*Blue spurt*) April30/Getty Images

DID YOU EVER **WONDER...**

what food coloring is? Look at the ingredients of Fruity Pebbles and you will find compounds such as Red #40 and Yellow #6. What are these substances that can be found in so many of the foods that we regularly eat?

In this chapter, we will learn about the most common reactions of aromatic rings, with the main focus on electrophilic aromatic substitution reactions. During the course of our discussion, we will see that many common food colorings are aromatic compounds that are synthesized using this reaction type, and we will also see how extensive research of aromatic compounds in the early twentieth century made significant contributions to the field of medicine.

This chapter will paint Fruity Pebbles in a whole new light.

Courtesy of Andy Washnik

DO YOU **REMEMBER?**

Before you go on, be sure you understand the following topics.
If necessary, review the suggested sections to prepare for this chapter.

- Resonance Structures (Sections 2.7–2.11)
- Delocalized Lone Pairs (Section 2.12)
- Lewis Acids (Section 3.10)
- Reading Energy Diagrams (Section 6.6)
- Retrosynthetic Analysis (Section 11.5)
- Aromaticity and Nomenclature of Aromatic Compounds (Sections 17.1–17.4)

Take the DO YOU **REMEMBER?** QUIZ in the **online course** to check your understanding.

18.1 Introduction to Electrophilic Aromatic Substitution

In Chapter 17, we explored the remarkable stability of benzene. Specifically, we saw that while alkenes undergo an addition reaction when treated with bromine, benzene is inert under the same conditions.

Curiously, though, when Fe (iron) is introduced into the mixture, a reaction does in fact take place, although the product is not what we might have expected.

Rather than an addition reaction taking place, the observed reaction is an **electrophilic aromatic substitution** reaction in which one of the aromatic protons is replaced by an electrophile, and the aromatic ring is preserved. In this chapter, we will see many other groups that can also be installed on an aromatic ring via an electrophilic aromatic substitution reaction.

18.2 Halogenation

Recall from Section 8.10 that during bromination of an alkene, Br_2 functions as an electrophile.

As it approaches the π electron cloud of the alkene, Br_2 becomes temporarily polarized, rendering one of the bromine atoms electrophilic (δ+). This bromine atom becomes sufficiently electrophilic

to react with the alkene but is not sufficiently electrophilic to react with benzene. The presence of iron (Fe) in the reaction mixture enhances the electrophilicity of this bromine atom. To understand how iron accomplishes this task, we must recognize that iron itself is not the real catalyst. Rather, it first reacts with Br_2 to generate iron tribromide ($FeBr_3$).

$$2\ Fe + 3\ Br_2 \rightarrow 2\ FeBr_3$$

Iron tribromide, a Lewis acid, is the real catalyst in the reaction between benzene and bromine. Specifically, $FeBr_3$ interacts with Br_2 to form a complex, which reacts as if it were Br^+.

This complex serves as an electrophilic agent that achieves bromination of the aromatic ring via a two-step process (Mechanism 18.1).

MECHANISM 18.1 BROMINATION OF BENZENE

In the first step, the aromatic ring functions as a nucleophile and attacks the electrophilic agent, generating a positively charged intermediate called a **sigma complex**, or **arenium ion**, which is resonance stabilized. This step requires an input of energy because it involves the temporary loss of aromatic stabilization. The loss of stabilization occurs because the sigma complex is not aromatic—it does not possess a continuous system of overlapping *p* orbitals.

In the second step of the mechanism, the sigma complex is then deprotonated, thereby restoring aromaticity and regenerating the Lewis acid ($FeBr_3$). Notice that the Lewis acid is ultimately not consumed by the reaction and is, therefore, a catalyst. Aluminum tribromide ($AlBr_3$) is another common Lewis acid that can serve as a suitable alternative to $FeBr_3$.

The observed substitution reaction is not accompanied by the formation of any addition products. Addition is not observed because it would involve a permanent loss of aromaticity, which is thermodynamically unfavorable (Figure 18.1). Notice that, overall, substitution is an exergonic process (downhill in energy), while addition is an endergonic process (uphill in energy). For this reason, only substitution is observed.

FIGURE 18.1
An energy diagram comparing substitution and addition pathways for benzene.

A similar reaction occurs when chlorine is used rather than bromine. Chlorination of benzene is accomplished with a suitable Lewis acid, such as aluminum trichloride.

(85%)

Chlorine reacts with $AlCl_3$ to form a complex, which reacts as if it were Cl^+.

This complex is the electrophilic agent that achieves chlorination of the aromatic ring, as illustrated in Mechanism 18.2. This mechanism is directly analogous to the mechanism shown for bromination of benzene (Mechanism 18.1) and involves the same two steps. In the first step, the aromatic ring functions as a nucleophile and attacks the electrophilic agent, generating a sigma complex. Then, in the second step, the sigma complex is deprotonated, thereby restoring aromaticity and regenerating the Lewis acid ($AlCl_3$).

MECHANISM 18.2 CHLORINATION OF BENZENE

Bromination and chlorination of aromatic rings are easily achieved, but fluorination and iodination are less common. Fluorination is a violent process and is difficult to control, while iodination is often slow, with poor yields in many cases. In Chapter 22, we will see more efficient methods for installing F or I on a benzene ring.

A variety of electrophiles (E^+) will react with a benzene ring, and we will explore many of them in the upcoming sections of this chapter. It will be helpful to realize that all of these reactions operate via the same general mechanism that has only two steps: (1) the aromatic ring functions as a nucleophile and attacks an electrophile to form a sigma complex, followed by (2) deprotonation of the sigma complex to restore aromaticity (Mechanism 18.3).

MECHANISM 18.3 A GENERAL MECHANISM FOR ELECTROPHILIC AROMATIC SUBSTITUTION

BioLinks Halogenation in Drug Design

Aromatic halogenation is a common technique used in drug design, as chemists attempt to modify the structure of a known drug to produce new drugs with enhanced properties. For example, consider the following three compounds:

Pheniramine is an antihistamine (for a discussion on antihistamines, see Section 17.5). When a chlorine atom is installed in the *para* position of one of the rings, a new compound called chlorpheniramine is obtained. Chlorpheniramine is 10 times more potent than pheniramine and is marketed under the trade name Chlortrimeton. When a bromine atom is installed instead of chlorine, brompheniramine is obtained, which is marketed under the trade name Dimetane. This compound is one of the active ingredients in Dimetapp. It is similar in potency to Chlortrimeton, but its effects last almost twice as long.

Halogenation is a critical process in the design of many other types of drugs as well. For example, consider the antifungal agents chlotrimazole and econazole:

Both of these compounds are examples of azole antifungal agents (azoles are a broad class of five-membered rings that contain a nitrogen atom and at least one other heteroatom, such as nitrogen, oxygen, or sulfur). Azole antifungal agents typically contain two or three additional aromatic rings, at least one of which is substituted with a halogen. Structure-activity studies have revealed that the presence of a halogen is critical for drug activity. Chlotrimazole is marketed under the trade name Lotrimin, and econazole is marketed under the trade name Spectazole. Notice that in both of these compounds the halogens are positioned in the *ortho* and *para* positions. In the later sections of this chapter, we will see why the *ortho* and *para* positions are more easily halogenated.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

18.1 When benzene is treated with I_2 in the presence of $CuCl_2$, iodination of the ring is achieved with modest yields. It is believed that $CuCl_2$ interacts with I_2 to generate I^+, which is an excellent electrophile. The aromatic ring then reacts with I^+ in an electrophilic aromatic substitution reaction. Draw a mechanism for the reaction between benzene and I^+. Make sure to draw all of the resonance structures of the intermediate sigma complex.

18.3 Sulfonation

When benzene is treated with fuming sulfuric acid, a **sulfonation** reaction occurs and benzenesulfonic acid is obtained.

(95%)

FIGURE 18.2
An electrostatic potential map of sulfur trioxide.

Inefficient overlap

FIGURE 18.3
The *p* orbitals involved in an S═O bond.

Fuming sulfuric acid is a mixture of H_2SO_4 and sulfur trioxide (SO_3). It is called "fuming," because of the acrid fumes that it presents when exposed to moisture in the air (SO_3 reacts with moisture to produce the fumes, which are essentially an aerosol of concentrated sulfuric acid). Sulfur trioxide (SO_3) is a very powerful electrophile, as can be seen in the electrostatic potential map in Figure 18.2. This image illustrates that the sulfur atom is a site of low electron density (an electrophilic center). To understand the reason for this, we must explore the nature of S═O double bonds. Recall that a C═C double bond is formed from the overlap of *p* orbitals. The S═O double bond is also formed from the overlap of *p* orbitals, but the overlap is less efficient because the *p* orbitals are different sizes (Figure 18.3). The sulfur atom uses a 3*p* orbital (sulfur is in the third row of the periodic table), while the oxygen atom uses a 2*p* orbital (oxygen is in the second row of the periodic table). The inefficient overlap of these orbitals suggests that we should consider the bond to be a single bond that exhibits charge separation (S^+ and O^-), rather than a double bond. Each of the S—O bonds in sulfur trioxide is highly polarized in this way, rendering the sulfur atom extremely electron poor and sufficiently electrophilic to react with benzene. The reaction involves the two steps that are characteristic of all electrophilic aromatic substitution reactions—a nucleophilic attack and a proton transfer (Mechanism 18.4). The product of these two steps exhibits a negative charge, which is then protonated under these acidic conditions.

MECHANISM 18.4 SULFONATION OF BENZENE

The reaction between benzene and SO_3 is highly sensitive to the concentrations of the reagents and is, therefore, reversible. The reversibility of this process will be re-examined later in Section 18.11 and will also be utilized heavily in the synthesis of polysubstituted aromatic compounds.

WorldLinks What Are Those Colors in Fruity Pebbles?

In the mid-nineteenth century, it was discovered that two aromatic rings could be joined by an azo group (—N═N—) in a process called *azo coupling*:

Courtesy of Andy Washnik

This process, which will be explored in more detail in Chapter 22, is believed to occur via an electrophilic aromatic substitution reaction:

The resulting compound exhibits extended conjugation and is therefore colored (for more on the source of color, see Section 16.12).

By structurally modifying the starting materials (by placing substituents on the aromatic rings prior to azo coupling), a variety of products can be made, each exhibiting a unique color. Due to the variety of colors that can be prepared, a significant amount of research was aimed at designing compounds that could serve as fabric dyes. These compounds, called *azo dyes*, were produced in large quantities, and by the late nineteenth century, there was a very large market for them. While other types of dyes have been discovered since then, azo dyes still represent more than 50% of the synthetic dye market.

Among many other applications, azo dyes are currently used in paints, cosmetics, and food. Food colorings are regulated by the FDA (Food and Drug Administration) and include compounds such as Red #40 and Yellow #6, both of which are used in Fruity Pebbles:

Red #40

Yellow #6

Notice the presence of sulfonic acid groups (—SO_3H) in both of these compounds. These groups are necessary because they are easily deprotonated to give anions, rendering them water soluble. The sulfonic acid groups are introduced via the sulfonation process that we learned in this section.

Many azo dyes also contain nitro groups, such as Orange #1:

Orange #1

In Section 18.4, we will learn how to install a nitro group on an aromatic ring.

Courtesy of Andy Washnik

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

18.2 Draw a mechanism for the following reaction. **Hint:** This reaction is the reverse of sulfonation, so you should read the sulfonation mechanism backward. Your mechanism should involve a sigma complex (positively charged).

18.3 When benzene is treated with D_2SO_4, a deuterium atom replaces one of the hydrogen atoms. Propose a mechanism for this reaction. **Hint:** Make sure that your mechanism involves a sigma complex.

18.4 Nitration

When benzene is treated with a mixture of nitric acid and sulfuric acid, a **nitration** reaction occurs in which nitrobenzene is formed.

(95%)

This reaction proceeds via an electrophilic aromatic substitution in which a **nitronium ion** (NO_2^+) is believed to be the electrophile. This strong electrophile is formed from the acid-base reaction that takes place between HNO_3 and H_2SO_4. Nitric acid functions as a base to accept a proton from sulfuric acid, followed by loss of water to produce a nitronium ion (Mechanism 18.5). It might seem strange that nitric acid functions as a base rather than an acid, but remember that acidity is relative. Sulfuric acid is a much stronger acid than nitric acid, and it will protonate nitric acid when mixed together. The resulting nitronium ion then serves as an electrophile in an electrophilic aromatic substitution reaction.

MECHANISM 18.5 NITRATION OF BENZENE

This method can be used to install a nitro group on an aromatic ring. Once on the ring, the nitro group can be reduced to give an amino group (NH_2).

Upon treatment with a metal (Fe or Zn) and HCl, the nitro group is reduced. But under these acidic conditions, the resulting amino group is protonated to give an ammonium ion (RNH_3^+). Therefore, the reaction must be followed up with a base, such as sodium hydroxide (NaOH), to remove the extra proton and regenerate the amino group.

This process provides us with a general method for installing an amino group on a benzene ring. First, a nitro group is installed on the ring (nitration), and then the nitro group is reduced to an amino group:

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

18.4 Draw a mechanism for the following reaction and make sure to draw all three resonance structures of the sigma complex:

BioLinks The Discovery of Prodrugs

We have seen that azo dyes are used in a variety of applications. One such application led to a discovery that had a profound impact on the field of medicine. Specifically, it was observed that certain bacteria absorbed azo dyes, making them more readily visible under a microscope. In an effort to find an azo dye that might be toxic to bacteria, Fritz Mietzsch and Joseph Klarer (at the German dye company, I.G. Farbenindustrie) began cataloguing azo dyes for possible antibacterial properties. A physician named Gerhard Domagk evaluated the dyes for potential activity, which led to the discovery of the potent antibacterial properties of prontosil.

Prontosil

Domagk was able to demonstrate that prontosil cured streptococcal infections in mice. In 1933, physicians began using prontosil in human patients suffering from life-threatening bacterial infections. The success of this drug was extraordinary, and prontosil staked its claim as the first drug that was systematically used for the treatment of bacterial infections. The development of prontosil has been credited with saving thousands of lives. For his pioneering work that led to this discovery, Domagk was awarded the 1939 Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine.

Prontosil exhibited one very curious property that intrigued scientists. Specifically, it was found to be totally inactive against bacteria *in vitro* (literally "in glass," in bacterial cultures grown in glass dishes). Its antibacterial properties were only observed *in vivo* (literally "in life," when administered to living creatures, such as mice and humans). These observations inspired much research on the activity of prontosil, and in 1935, it was found that prontosil is metabolized in the body to produce a compound called sulfanilamide.

Sulfanilamide was determined to be the active drug, as it interferes with bacterial cell growth. In a glass dish, prontosil is not converted into sulfanilamide, explaining why the antibacterial properties were only observed *in vivo*. This discovery ushered in the era of prodrugs. *Prodrugs* are pharmacologically inactive compounds that are converted by the body (usually the liver) into active compounds. This discovery led scientists to direct their research in new directions. They began designing new potential drugs based on structural modifications to sulfanilamide rather than prontosil. Extensive research was directed at making sulfanilamide analogues, called sulfonamides. By 1948, over 5000 sulfonamides were created, of which more than 20 were ultimately used in clinical practice.

The emergence of bacterial strains resistant to sulfanilamide, together with the advent of penicillins (discussed in Chapter 22), rendered most sulfonamides obsolete. Some sulfonamides are still used today to treat specific bacterial infection in patients with AIDS, as well as a few other applications. Despite their small role in current practice, sulfonamides occupy a unique role in history, because their development was based on the discovery of the first known prodrug.

There are currently a large number of prodrugs on the market. Prodrugs are often designed intentionally for a specific purpose. One such drug is used in the treatment of Parkinson's disease. The symptoms of Parkinson's disease are attributed to low levels of dopamine in a specific part of the brain. These symptoms can be treated by administering L-dopa to the patient. This prodrug is capable of reaching the desired destination (more effectively than dopamine), where it undergoes decarboxylation to produce the needed dopamine.

There are many different varieties and classes of prodrugs, and a thorough treatment is beyond the scope of our discussion. The discovery of prodrugs was an extremely important achievement in the development of medicinal chemistry, and it all started with a careful analysis of azo dyes, just like the ones found in Fruity Pebbles.

18.5 Friedel–Crafts Alkylation

In the previous sections, we have seen that a variety of electrophiles (Br^+, Cl^+, SO_3, and NO_2^+) will react with benzene in an electrophilic aromatic substitution reaction. In this section and in Section 18.6, we will explore electrophiles in which the electrophilic center is a carbon atom.

The **Friedel–Crafts alkylation**, discovered by Charles Friedel and James Crafts in 1877, makes possible the installation of an alkyl group on an aromatic ring.

(66%)

Although an alkyl halide such as 2-chlorobutane is, by itself, electrophilic, it is not sufficiently electrophilic to react with benzene. However, in the presence of a Lewis acid, such as aluminum trichloride, the alkyl halide is converted into a carbocation.

The catalyst functions exactly as expected (compare the role of $AlCl_3$ here to the role that it plays in Section 18.2). The result here is the formation of a carbocation, which is an excellent electrophile and is capable of reacting with benzene in an electrophilic aromatic substitution reaction (Mechanism 18.6).

MECHANISM 18.6 FRIEDEL–CRAFTS ALKYLATION

After formation of the carbocation, two steps are involved in this electrophilic aromatic substitution. In the first step, the aromatic ring functions as a nucleophile and attacks the carbocation, forming a sigma complex. The sigma complex is then deprotonated to restore aromaticity.

Many different alkyl halides can be used in a Friedel–Crafts alkylation. Secondary and tertiary halides are readily converted into carbocations in the presence of $AlCl_3$. Primary alkyl halides are not converted into carbocations, since primary carbocations are extremely high in energy. Nevertheless, a Friedel–Crafts alkylation is indeed observed when benzene is treated with ethyl chloride in the presence of $AlCl_3$.

In this case, the electrophilic agent is presumed to be a complex between ethyl chloride and $AlCl_3$.

LOOKING BACK
For a review of carbocation rearrangements, see Section 6.11.

This complex can be attacked by an aromatic ring, much like we saw during chlorination (Mechanism 18.2). Although a Friedel–Crafts alkylation is effective when ethyl chloride is used, most other primary alkyl halides cannot be used effectively, because their complexes with $AlCl_3$ readily undergo rearrangement to form secondary or tertiary carbocations. For example, when 1-chlorobutane is treated with aluminum trichloride, a secondary carbocation is formed via a hydride shift.

In such a case, a mixture of products is obtained.

The ratio of products depends on the conditions chosen (concentrations, temperature, etc.), but a mixture of products is unavoidable. Therefore, in practice, a Friedel–Crafts alkylation is only efficient when the substrate cannot undergo rearrangement.

There are several other limitations that must be noted.

1. When choosing an alkyl halide, the carbon atom connected to the halogen must be sp^3 hybridized. Vinyl carbocations and aryl carbocations are not sufficiently stable to be formed under Friedel–Crafts conditions.

2. Installation of an alkyl group activates the ring toward further alkylation (for reasons that we will explore in the upcoming sections of this chapter). Therefore, polyalkylations often occur.

This problem can generally be avoided by choosing reaction conditions that favor monoalkylation. For the remainder of this chapter, assume that all Friedel–Crafts alkylations are performed under conditions that favor monoalkylation, unless otherwise specified.

3. There are certain groups, such as a nitro group, that are incompatible with a Friedel–Crafts reaction. In the upcoming sections of this chapter, we will explore the reason for this incompatibility.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

18.5 Predict the expected product(s) when benzene is treated with each of the following alkyl halides in the presence of $AlCl_3$. In each case, assume conditions have been controlled to favor monoalkylation.

18.6 Draw a mechanism for the following reaction, which involves two consecutive Friedel–Crafts alkylations.

18.7 A Friedel–Crafts alkylation is an electrophilic aromatic substitution in which the electrophile (E^+) is a carbocation. In previous chapters, we have seen other methods of forming carbocations, such as protonation of an alkene using a strong acid. A carbocation formed in this way can also be attacked by a benzene ring, resulting in alkylation of the aromatic ring. With this in mind, draw a mechanism for the following transformation:

18.6 Friedel–Crafts Acylation

In Section 18.5, we learned how to install an alkyl group on an aromatic ring. A similar method can be used to install an **acyl group**. The difference between an alkyl group and an acyl group is shown below.

A reaction that installs an acyl group is called an *acylation*.

This process, called a **Friedel–Crafts acylation**, is believed to proceed via a mechanism that is very similar to the mechanism presented for alkylation, in Section 18.5. An acyl chloride is treated with a Lewis acid to form a cationic species, called an **acylium ion**.

Acylium ions are resonance stabilized, as shown here:

The second resonance structure is more significant, because all atoms exhibit a full octet. As such, this resonance structure contributes more character (and stability) to the overall resonance hybrid. The stabilization associated with full octets would be lost if an acylium ion were to undergo a carbocation rearrangement. Therefore, acylium ions do not rearrange.

Acylium ions are excellent electrophiles and can be attacked by benzene in an electrophilic aromatic substitution reaction (Mechanism 18.7). The acylium ion is attacked by the benzene ring to produce an intermediate sigma complex, which is then deprotonated to restore aromaticity.

MECHANISM 18.7 FRIEDEL–CRAFTS ACYLATION

The product of a Friedel–Crafts acylation is an aryl ketone, which can be reduced using a **Clemmensen reduction**.

In the presence of HCl and amalgamated zinc (zinc that has been treated so that its surface is an alloy, or mixture, of zinc and mercury), the carbonyl group is completely reduced and replaced with two hydrogen atoms. When a Friedel–Crafts acylation is followed by a Clemmensen reduction, the net result is the installation of an alkyl group.

This two-step process is a useful synthetic method for installing alkyl groups that cannot be efficiently installed with a direct alkylation process. If the product is made with a direct alkylation process, carbocation rearrangements would give a mixture of products. The advantage of the acylation process is that carbocation rearrangements are avoided because of the stability of the acylium ion.

Polyacylation is not observed, because introduction of an acyl group deactivates the ring toward further acylation. This will be explained in more detail in the upcoming sections.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

18.8 Identify whether each of the following compounds can be made using a direct Friedel–Crafts alkylation or whether it is necessary to perform an acylation followed by a Clemmensen reduction to avoid carbocation rearrangements:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

18.9 The following compound cannot be made with either a Friedel–Crafts alkylation or acylation. Explain.

18.10 A Friedel–Crafts acylation is an electrophilic aromatic substitution in which the electrophile (E^+) is an acylium ion. There are other methods of forming acylium ions, such as treatment of an anhydride (shown below) with a Lewis acid. The resulting acylium ion can also be attacked by a benzene ring, resulting in acylation of the aromatic ring. With this in mind, draw a mechanism for the following transformation:

18.7 Activating Groups

Nitration of Toluene

Thus far, we have dealt only with reactions of benzene. We now expand our discussion to include reactions of aromatic compounds that already possess substituents. For example, consider the nitration of toluene:

In this nitration reaction, the presence of the methyl group raises two issues: (1) the effect of the methyl group on the rate of reaction and (2) the effect of the methyl group on the regiochemical outcome of the reaction. Let's begin with the rate of reaction.

Toluene undergoes nitration approximately 25 times faster than benzene. In other words, the methyl group is said to **activate** the aromatic ring. Why? Recall that alkyl groups are generally electron donating via hyperconjugation (see Section 6.8). As a result, a methyl group donates electron density to the ring, thereby stabilizing the positively charged sigma complex and lowering the energy of activation for its formation.

Now let's focus on the regiochemical outcome. The nitro group could be installed *ortho, meta*, or *para* to the methyl group, but the three possible products are not obtained in equal amounts. As seen in Figure 18.4, the *ortho* and *para* products predominate, while very little *meta* product is

FIGURE 18.4
The product distribution for nitration of toluene.

obtained. To explain this observation, we must compare the stability of the sigma complex formed for *ortho* attack, *meta* attack, and *para* attack (Figure 18.5).

FIGURE 18.5
A comparison of the sigma complexes formed for each of the possible regiochemical outcomes for the nitration of toluene.

Notice that the sigma complex obtained from *ortho* attack has additional stability because one of the resonance structures (highlighted) exhibits the positive charge directly adjacent to the electron-donating alkyl group. Similarly, the sigma complex obtained from *para* attack also exhibits this additional stability. In contrast, the sigma complex obtained from *meta* attack does not exhibit this stability and is, therefore, higher in energy. The relative energy of each sigma complex is best visualized by comparing energy diagrams for *ortho* attack, *meta* attack, and *para* attack (Figure 18.6, as seen on the next page). Notice that the intermediate sigma complex formed from *meta* attack is the highest in energy and therefore requires the largest energy of activation (E_a). This explains why the *meta* product is only obtained in very small amounts. The products of the reaction are generated from *ortho* attack and *para* attack, both of which involve a lower E_a. If we compare E_a for *ortho* attack and *para* attack, we see that *ortho* attack involves a slightly higher E_a than *para* attack, because the methyl group and the nitro group are in close proximity and exhibit a small steric interaction. As a result, we might have expected the *para* product to be the major product. In fact, the *ortho* product predominates in this case for statistical reasons—there are two *ortho* positions and only one *para* position.

BY THE WAY
The exact ratio of *ortho* and *para* products is often sensitive to the conditions employed, such as the choice of solvent. In some cases, nitration of toluene has been observed to favor the *para* product over the *ortho* product.

Comparison of the energy diagrams in Figure 18.6 provides an explanation for the observation that the methyl group is an ***ortho-para* director**. In other words, the presence of the methyl group directs the incoming nitro group into the *ortho* and *para* positions.

FIGURE 18.6
Energy diagrams comparing the relative energy levels of the possible sigma complexes that could be formed during nitration of toluene. The differences in energy between these three pathways have been slightly exaggerated for clarity of presentation.

Nitration of Anisole

In this section, we have seen that the presence of a methyl group activates the ring toward electrophilic aromatic substitution. There are many different groups that activate a ring, with some more activating than others. For example, a methoxy group is a more powerful activator than a methyl group, and methoxybenzene (anisole) undergoes nitration 400 times faster than toluene. To understand why a methoxy group is more activating than a methyl group, we must explore the electronic effects of a methoxy group connected to an aromatic ring.

A methoxy group is inductively electron withdrawing, because oxygen is more electronegative than carbon.

From this point of view, the methoxy group withdraws electron density from the aromatic ring. However, we see a different picture when we draw resonance structures of anisole.

Three of the resonance structures exhibit a negative charge in the ring. This suggests that the methoxy group *donates* electron density to the ring. Clearly, there is a competition here between induction and resonance. Induction suggests that the methoxy group is electron withdrawing, while resonance suggests that the methoxy group is electron donating. Whenever resonance and induction compete with each other, resonance is generally the dominant factor and vastly overshadows any inductive effects. Therefore, the net effect of the methoxy group is to donate electron density to the

ring. This effect stabilizes the positively charged sigma complex and lowers the energy of activation for its formation. In fact, the ring is so activated that treatment with excess bromine *without* a Lewis acid gives a trisubstituted product.

All three positions undergo bromination. Notice the preference, once again, for the reaction to occur at the *ortho* and *para* positions. This *ortho-para* directing effect is also observed when anisole undergoes nitration (Figure 18.7). Once again, explaining this observation requires that we compare

FIGURE 18.7
The product distribution for nitration of anisole.

the stability of the sigma complexes formed for *ortho*, *meta*, and *para* attack (Figure 18.8). Notice that the sigma complex obtained from *ortho* attack has one additional resonance structure (highlighted), which stabilizes the sigma complex. Similarly, the sigma complex obtained from *para* attack

FIGURE 18.8
A comparison of the sigma complexes formed for the possible regiochemical outcomes for the nitration of anisole.

also exhibits this additional stability. The sigma complex obtained from *meta* attack does not exhibit this extra stability and is, therefore, higher in energy. Figure 18.9 shows a comparison of the energy

FIGURE 18.9
Energy diagrams comparing the relative energy levels of the sigma complexes that could be formed during nitration of anisole. The differences in energy between these three pathways have been slightly exaggerated for clarity of presentation.

diagrams for *ortho*, *meta*, and *para* attack. Notice that the intermediate sigma complex formed from *meta* attack is the highest in energy and therefore requires the largest energy of activation (E_a). This explains why the *meta* product is only obtained in very small amounts. The products of the reaction are generated from *ortho* attack and *para* attack, both of which involve a lower E_a.

In the nitration of anisole, the *para* product is favored over the *ortho* product despite the fact that there are two *ortho* positions. Several factors contribute to this observation. One factor is most certainly a steric consideration. That is, the sigma complex resulting from *ortho* attack exhibits a greater steric interaction and is higher in energy than the sigma complex resulting from *para* attack.

In summary, we have seen that both a methyl group and a methoxy group activate the ring and are *ortho-para* directors. This is in fact a general rule that will be used extensively throughout the rest of this chapter: *All activators are ortho-para directors*.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

18.11 Draw the two major products obtained when toluene undergoes monobromination.

18.12 When ethoxybenzene is treated with a mixture of nitric acid and sulfuric acid, two products are obtained, each of which has the molecular formula $C_8H_9NO_3$.

(a) Draw the structure of each product.

(b) Propose a mechanism of formation for the major product.

18.8 Deactivating Groups

In Section 18.7, we saw that certain groups will activate the ring toward electrophilic aromatic substitution. In this section, we explore the effects of a nitro group, which is said to **deactivate** the ring toward electrophilic aromatic substitution. To understand why the nitro group deactivates the ring, we must explore the electronic effects of a nitro group connected to an aromatic ring.

A nitro group is inductively electron withdrawing, because a positively charged nitrogen atom is extremely electronegative.

Now let's consider resonance. Many of the resonance structures exhibit a positive charge in the ring.

The positive charge indicates that the nitro group *withdraws* electron density from the ring. In this case, there is no competition between resonance and induction. Both factors suggest that the nitro group is a powerful electron-withdrawing group. By removing electron density from the ring, the nitro group destabilizes the positively charged sigma complex and raises the energy of activation for its formation. This effect is quite significant and can be observed by comparing rates of nitration. Specifically, nitrobenzene is 100,000 times less reactive than benzene toward nitration, and the reaction can only be accomplished at an elevated temperature. When the reaction is forced to proceed, the regiochemical outcome (Figure 18.10) is different than what we have seen thus far. Notice that

FIGURE 18.10
The product distribution for nitration of nitrobenzene.

the *meta* product predominates, in stark contrast with the previous examples in which *ortho* and *para* products predominated. To explain this observation, we must compare the stability of the sigma complexes formed for *ortho*, *meta*, and *para* attack (Figure 18.11). Notice that the sigma complex

FIGURE 18.11
A comparison of the sigma complexes formed for each of the possible regiochemical outcomes for the nitration of nitrobenzene.

obtained from *ortho* attack exhibits instability because one of the resonance structures (highlighted) has a positive charge directly adjacent to an electronegative, positively charged nitrogen atom. Similarly, the sigma complex obtained from *para* attack also exhibits this instability. The sigma complex

obtained from *meta* attack does not exhibit this instability and is therefore lower in energy. Compare the energy diagrams for *ortho*, *meta*, and *para* attack (Figure 18.12).

FIGURE 18.12
Energy diagrams comparing the relative energy levels of the sigma complexes that could be formed during nitration of nitrobenzene. The differences in energy between these three pathways have been slightly exaggerated for clarity of presentation.

In summary, we have seen that a nitro group deactivates the ring and is a ***meta* director**. This is in fact a general rule that will be used extensively throughout the rest of this chapter: *Most deactivators are meta directors.*

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

18.13 When 1,3-dinitrobenzene is treated with nitric acid and sulfuric acid at elevated temperature, the product is 1,3,5-trinitrobenzene. Explain the regiochemical outcome of this reaction. In other words, explain why nitration takes place at the C5 position. Make sure to draw the sigma complex for each possible pathway and to compare the relative stability of each sigma complex.

18.9 Halogens: The Exception

In Section 18.8, we saw that activators are *ortho-para* directors and deactivators are *meta* directors.

We will now explore one important exception to these general rules. Many of the halogens (including Cl, Br, and I) are *ortho-para* directors despite the fact that they are deactivators. To rationalize this curious exception, we must explore the electronic effects of a halogen connected to an aromatic ring. As we have seen several times, it is necessary to consider both inductive effects and resonance. Let's begin by exploring the inductive effects.

Halogens are fairly electronegative (more so than carbon) and are therefore inductively electron *withdrawing*. When we draw the resonance structures, a different picture emerges.

Three of the resonance structures exhibit a negative charge in the ring. This suggests that a halogen *donates* electron density to the ring. The competition between resonance and induction is very similar to the competition we saw when analyzing methoxybenzene. Induction suggests that a halogen is electron withdrawing, while resonance suggests that a halogen is electron donating. Although resonance is generally the dominant factor (as we saw for methoxybenzene), this case represents an exception. Induction is actually the dominant factor for halogens. As a result, halogens withdraw electron density from the ring, thereby destabilizing the positively charged sigma complex and raising the energy of activation for its formation.

To explain the fact that halogens are *ortho-para* directors even though they are deactivators, we must compare the stability of the sigma complexes formed for *ortho*, *meta*, and *para* attack (Figure 18.13). Notice that the sigma complex obtained from *ortho* attack has one additional resonance structure (highlighted), which stabilizes the sigma complex. Similarly, the sigma complex obtained

FIGURE 18.13
A comparison of the sigma complexes formed for each of the possible regiochemical outcomes for the nitration of chlorobenzene.

from *para* attack also exhibits this additional stability, but the sigma complex from *meta* attack does not exhibit this extra stability, and therefore it is higher in energy. For this reason, halogens are *ortho-para* directors, despite the fact that they are deactivators.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

18.14 Does chlorination of chlorobenzene require the use of a Lewis acid? Explain why or why not.

18.15 Predict and explain the regiochemical outcome for chlorination of bromobenzene.

18.10 Determining the Directing Effects of a Substituent

Section 18.9 focused on the directing effects of a few specific groups (methyl, methoxy, nitro, and halogens). In this section, we will learn how to predict the directing effects for other substituents. That skill will prove to be essential in subsequent sections that deal with synthesis.

Both activators and deactivators can be classified as strong, moderate, and weak. Each of these categories is described below, followed by a summary chart of all six categories. As discussed in Sections 18.7–18.9, the activators are *ortho-para* directors, while the deactivators, except for the halogens, are *meta* directors.

Activators

Strong activators are characterized by the presence of a lone pair immediately adjacent to the aromatic ring.

All of these groups exhibit a lone pair that is delocalized into the ring, as can be seen in their resonance structures. For example, phenol has the following resonance structures:

Many of these resonance structures have a negative charge in the ring, indicating that the OH group is donating electron density into the ring. This electron-donating effect strongly activates the ring.

Moderate activators exhibit a lone pair that is already delocalized outside of the ring.

In the first three compounds, there is a lone pair next to the ring, but that lone pair is participating in resonance outside of the ring.

This effect diminishes the capability of the lone pair to donate electron density into the ring. These groups are activating, but they are moderate activators. The lone pair of an alkoxy group (OR) is not participating in resonance outside of the ring, and we might therefore expect that it would be a strong activator. Nevertheless, alkoxy groups belong to the class of moderate activators. Alkoxy groups are generally more activating than other moderate activators but less activating than strong activators (such as amino groups).

Alkyl groups are **weak activators**, because they donate electron density by the relatively weak effect of hyperconjugation (as described in Section 6.11).

We will now turn our attention to deactivators, starting with weak deactivators and progressing to strong deactivators.

Deactivators

As we have already seen, many of the halogens (Cl, Br, or I) are observed to deactivate a benzene ring:

We have seen that the electronic effects of halogens are determined by the delicate competition between resonance and induction, with induction emerging as the dominant effect. As a result, halogens are **weak deactivators**.

Moderate deactivators are groups that exhibit a π bond to an electronegative atom, where the π bond is conjugated with the aromatic ring. Below are several examples.

Each of these groups withdraws electron density from the ring via resonance. For example:

Three of the resonance structures have a positive charge in the ring, indicating that the group is withdrawing electron density from the ring. This electron-withdrawing effect moderately deactivates the ring.

There are a few common substituents that are **strong deactivators**.

The nitro group is a strong deactivator because of resonance and induction. The other two groups are strong deactivators because of powerful inductive effects. A positively charged nitrogen atom is extremely electronegative, and CX_3 has three electron-withdrawing halogens. Do not confuse a CX_3 group with a halogen (X).

Table 18.1 summarizes the six categories of activators and deactivators. Notice the unique position of the halogens. In general, activators are *ortho-para* directors, while deactivators are *meta* directors, but halogens are the exception.

TABLE 18.1 A LIST OF ACTIVATORS AND DEACTIVATORS BY CATEGORY

Activators		
Strong		*ortho-para* directors
Moderate		*ortho-para* directors
Weak		*ortho-para* directors
Deactivators		
Weak	(X = Cl, Br, or I)	*ortho-para* directors
Moderate		*meta* directors
Strong	(X=Halogen)	*meta* directors

SKILLBUILDER

18.1 IDENTIFYING THE EFFECTS OF A SUBSTITUENT

LEARN the skill

Consider the following monosubstitued aromatic ring. Predict whether this aromatic ring is activated or deactivated, and predict the strength of activation/deactivation (i.e., is it strong, moderate, or weak). Finally, predict the directing effects of the group.

SOLUTION

First look for a lone pair immediately adjacent to the ring.

In this case, there is a lone pair that is delocalized into the ring, so the group is an activator. In order to determine the strength of activation, identify whether the lone pair is delocalized outside of the ring. In this case, the lone pair is participating in resonance outside of the ring.

Therefore, we predict that this group will be a moderate activator. All moderate activators are *ortho-para* directors.

PRACTICE the skill

18.16 For each of the following compounds, predict whether the ring is activated or deactivated toward electrophilic aromatic substitution, then predict the strength of activation/deactivation, and finally predict the expected directing effects.

APPLY the skill

18.17 Diazepam is a prescription medication first marketed under the trade name Valium, and used to treat anxiety disorders.[1] Predict whether the monosubstituted aromatic ring in diazepam is activated or deactivated toward electrophilic aromatic substitution, and predict the strength of the activation/deactivation (strong, moderate, or weak). Finally, predict the directing effects of the substituent on that ring.

Diazepam

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 18.39–18.41, 18.42a–c,f,h, 18.44, 18.45a–d, 18.46a,b,d–g, 18.55a,b, 18.61, 18.73, 18.76**

18.11 Multiple Substituents

Directing Effects

We will now explore directing effects when multiple substituents are present on a ring. In some cases, the directing effects of all substituents reinforce each other; for example:

In this case, the methyl group directs to the *ortho* positions (the *para* position is already occupied), and the nitro group directs to the positions that are *meta* to the nitro group. In this case, both the methyl group and the nitro group direct to the same two locations. Since the two locations are identical (because of symmetry), only one product is obtained.

In other cases, the directing effects of the various substituents may compete with each other. In such cases, the more powerful activating group dominates the directing effects.

In this case, there are two substituents on the ring: an OH group (strong activator) and a methyl group (weak activator). The strong activator dominates, so the incoming nitro group is installed at a position that is *ortho* to the strong activator (the *para* position is already occupied).

SKILLBUILDER

18.2 IDENTIFYING DIRECTING EFFECTS FOR DISUBSTITUTED AND POLYSUBSTITUTED BENZENE RINGS

LEARN the skill

In the following compound, identify the position that is most likely to undergo an electrophilic aromatic substitution reaction.

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Identify the nature of each group.

Begin by identifying the effect of each group on the aromatic ring.

STEP 2
Select the most powerful activator and identify the positions that are *ortho* or *para* to that group.

The most powerful activator will dominate the directing effects. In this case, the OH group is the strongest activator. Now consider the positions that are *ortho* and *para* to the OH group.

STEP 3
Identify the unoccupied positions.

Two of these positions are already occupied. Only one position remains. We therefore predict that this position is most likely to undergo an electrophilic aromatic substitution reaction.

PRACTICE the skill

18.18 For each compound below, identify which position(s) is/are most likely to undergo an electrophilic aromatic substitution reaction.

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

(f)

(g)

(h)

(i)

APPLY the skill

18.19 4-Fluoro-3-nitroaniline is a patented synthetic precursor used in the production of commercial hair dyes.[2] Identify the position(s) on this compound most likely to undergo electrophilic aromatic substitution.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 18.42e, 18.46k, 18.52a,b, 18.55, 18.64, 18.65, 18.74, 18.77**

Steric Effects

In many cases, steric effects can play an important role in determining product distribution. Let's begin with a simple case in which only one substituent is on the ring.

When an *ortho-para* director is present on the ring, it is difficult to predict the exact ratio of *ortho* and *para* products. Nevertheless, the following guidelines are helpful in most cases:

1. For most monosubstituted aromatic rings, the *para* product generally dominates over the *ortho* product as a result of steric considerations.

Steric hindrance raises the energy of activation (E_a) for attack at the *ortho* position, and as a result, the *para* product is the major product. A notable exception is toluene (methylbenzene), for which the ratio of *ortho* and *para* products is sensitive to the conditions employed, such as the choice of solvent. In some cases, the *para* product is favored; in others, the *ortho* product is favored. Therefore, it is generally not wise to utilize the directing effects of a methyl group to favor a reaction at the *para* position over the *ortho* position.

2. For 1,4-disubstituted aromatic rings, steric effects again play a significant role. Consider the following case:

The regiochemical outcome of this reaction is controlled by steric effects. Nitration is more likely to occur at the site that is less sterically hindered (*ortho* to the methyl group).

3. For 1,3-disubstituted aromatic rings, it is extremely unlikely that substitution will occur at the position between the two substituents. That position is the most sterically hindered position on the ring, and a reaction generally does not take place at that position.

Using the previous three guidelines, let's get some practice predicting the product distribution in cases where steric effects control the outcome.

SKILLBUILDER

18.3 IDENTIFYING STERIC EFFECTS FOR DISUBSTITUTED AND POLYSUBSTITUTED BENZENE RINGS

LEARN the skill

In the following compound, determine the position that is most likely to be the site of an electrophilic aromatic substitution reaction.

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Identify the nature of each group.

Begin by identifying the effect of each group on the aromatic ring.

STEP 2
Select the most powerful activator and identify the positions that are *ortho* or *para* to that group.

In this case, a weak activator is competing with a strong deactivator for directing effects. Recall that the more powerful *activator* controls the directing effects, so the isopropyl group determines the outcome in this case. The isopropyl group is *ortho-para* directing, so we must consider the positions that are *ortho* and *para* to the isopropyl group.

STEP 3
Identify the unoccupied positions that are the least sterically hindered.

One of these locations is already occupied, leaving two choices. The *ortho* position is sterically hindered, while the *para* position is sterically unencumbered. In this case, we expect substitution to take place primarily at the *para* position and to a lesser extent at the *ortho* position.

PRACTICE the skill

18.20 For each of the following compounds, determine the position that is most likely to be the site of an electrophilic aromatic substitution reaction:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

APPLY the skill

18.21 Sildenafil citrate, better known as Viagra, was the first approved drug for treating male erectile dysfunction. The following reaction is part of a synthesis of sildenafil.[3] Here, an electrophilic aromatic substitution reaction is used to incorporate an $-SO_2Cl$ group onto the disubstituted benzene ring. Determine the position on this ring most likely to undergo substitution and draw the major product, accounting for directing effects and steric effects.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 18.55, 18.59, 18.64, 18.69, 18.70**

Blocking Groups

Consider how the following transformation might be achieved:

Direct bromination of *tert*-butylbenzene produces the *para* product as the major product, while the desired *ortho* product is the minor product. In such a situation, a **blocking group** can be used to direct the bromination toward the *ortho* position. In this case, the blocking group is first installed at the *para* position.

Once the *para* position is occupied, the desired reaction is forced to occur at the *ortho* position. Finally the blocking group is removed. In order for a group to function as a blocking group, it must be easily removable after the desired reaction has been achieved. There are many different blocking groups that can be used. Sulfonation is commonly used for this purpose, because the sulfonation process is reversible.

Sulfonation provides a valuable blocking technique that enables us to achieve the desired transformation.

SKILLBUILDER

18.4 USING BLOCKING GROUPS TO CONTROL THE REGIOCHEMICAL OUTCOME OF AN ELECTROPHILIC AROMATIC SUBSTITUTION REACTION

LEARN the skill

Identify whether a blocking group is necessary to accomplish the following transformation:

SOLUTION

Analyze the starting material. The two substituents are a methoxy group, which is a moderate activator, and an acyl group, which is a moderate deactivator.

In this case, the methoxy group controls the directing effects, and therefore, the reactive centers are the unoccupied *ortho* and *para* positions.

The *ortho* position is more sterically hindered, while the *para* position is not hindered. We therefore expect a substitution reaction to take place at the position that is *para* to the methoxy group. If we want to install a group in the *ortho* position, a blocking group would be required.

PRACTICE the skill

18.22 Determine whether a blocking group is necessary to accomplish each of the following transformations:

APPLY the skill

18.23 The flavor of beer can be tainted by even trace amounts of a contaminant called *ortho*-bromophenol. To reduce the incidents of contamination, beer manufacturers have used certified beer flavor standards to train professional beer tasters to recognize the flavor of *ortho*-bromophenol. Preparing these certified standards requires pure samples of *ortho*-bromophenol.[4] Propose a synthesis of *ortho*-bromophenol starting from phenol.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 18.54d, 18.63c, 18.71**

18.12 Synthesis Strategies

Monosubstituted Benzene Rings

When proposing a synthesis for a monosubstituted benzene ring, directing effects are not relevant. You simply need to know what reagents can be used to install the desired group. Figure 18.14 is a list of the reagents that we have seen thus far. This list should be committed to memory before moving on to more sophisticated synthesis problems. In total, we have seen 10 different groups that can be installed on an aromatic ring. Take special notice of the four groups shown in blue. Installation of these groups requires two steps.

FIGURE 18.14
A list of functional groups that can be installed via electrophilic aromatic substitution reactions.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

18.24 Identify reagents that can be used to convert benzene into each of the following compounds:

(a) Chlorobenzene
(b) Nitrobenzene
(c) Bromobenzene
(d) Ethylbenzene
(e) Propylbenzene
(f) Isopropylbenzene
(g) Aniline (aminobenzene)
(h) Benzoic acid
(i) Toluene

18.25 Identify the product obtained when benzene is treated with each of the following reagents:

(a) Fuming sulfuric acid
(b) HNO_3/H_2SO_4
(c) Cl_2, $AlCl_3$
(d) Ethyl chloride, $AlCl_3$
(e) Br_2, $FeBr_3$
(f) HNO_3/H_2SO_4 followed by Zn, HCl, followed by NaOH

Disubstituted Benzene Rings

Proposing a synthesis for a disubstituted benzene ring requires a careful analysis of directing effects to determine which group should be installed first. As an example, consider the following compound:

To make this compound from benzene requires two separate steps—bromination and nitration. Bromination followed by nitration will not produce the desired product, because a bromine substituent is *ortho-para* directing. In order to achieve the *meta* relationship between the two groups, nitration must be performed first. The nitro group is a *meta* director, which then directs the incoming bromine to the desired location.

The preceding example is fairly straightforward, because each group is installed with only one step. An extra consideration is necessary when installation of one of the groups requires two steps and involves a change in directing effects. These changes are summarized in Table 18.2.

TABLE 18.2 FUNCTIONAL GROUP CONVERSIONS THAT CHANGE DIRECTING EFFECTS

As an example, consider the installation of an amino group, which can be accomplished via (1) nitration followed by (2) reduction. The reduction converts a *meta*-directing nitro group into an *ortho-para*-directing amino group. This change in directing effects must be considered when planning a synthesis that requires installation of an amino group. To illustrate this point, consider the following example:

This compound has two groups that are *meta* to each other, and we must decide which group to install first. The problem is that both groups are *ortho-para* directing, so neither group will direct the other group into the correct location. This problem can be solved if we recognize that installation of the amino group involves a change in directing effects.

The nitro group is *meta* directing, while the amino group is *ortho-para* directing. The two steps above do not have to be consecutive, and we can exploit the *meta*-directing properties of the nitro group to install the chlorine substituent in the correct position. Specifically, the correct regiochemical outcome is achieved with the following order of events: (1) nitration, (2) chlorination, and (3) reduction.

In addition to considering the order of events, the following limitations must also be considered when planning a synthesis.

1. A Friedel–Crafts reaction (either alkylation or acylation) cannot be accomplished on rings that are either moderately or strongly deactivated overall. The ring must be either activated or weakly deactivated in order for a Friedel–Crafts reaction to occur.

2. Nitration cannot be performed on a ring that contains an amino group.

The reagents for nitration (a mixture of HNO_3 and H_2SO_4) can oxidize the amino group, often leading to a mixture of undesirable products. In addition, the strongly acidic reaction conditions would certainly cause the basic amino group to become protonated. While the uncharged amino ($-NH_2$) group is activating and *ortho-para* directing, the protonated $-NH_3^+$ group is deactivating and *meta* directing, so even if the nitration reaction does occur, a mixture of regioisomers is produced. Recall from Section 12.7 that, when a reaction is desired between two incompatible reagents, it can be useful to use a protecting group. Such a strategy can be employed in this case as well (shown below). If we first protect the amino group, for example by conversion to an amide, then we no longer have a basic functional group, and the nitration proceeds smoothly to give the *para* product as the major product.

With a protecting group in place for the nitration reaction, there is no amino group to be oxidized or protonated (amides are much weaker bases than amines, as we will see in Chapter 22) and, therefore, there are no undesirable side products observed. Finally, deprotection (by hydrolysis of the amide) affords the desired 4-nitroaniline product (**Note:** the reagents for the protecting and deprotecting steps will be covered in Chapter 20).

SKILLBUILDER

18.5 PROPOSING A SYNTHESIS FOR A DISUBSTITUTED BENZENE RING

LEARN the skill

Starting with benzene and using any other necessary reagents of your choice, design a synthesis of the following compound:

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Identify reagents that can be used to install each substituent.

Installation of the amino group requires a two-step process—nitration followed by reduction. Installation of the propyl group also requires a two-step process—acylation followed by reduction (in order to avoid carbocation rearrangements that would occur during direct alkylation).

STEP 2
Determine the order of events that achieves the desired regiochemical outcome.

Now let's consider the order of events. These two groups must be installed in an order that places them *meta* to each other. The amino group is *ortho-para* directing, so it cannot be installed first. However, the propyl group is also *ortho-para* directing, so it too cannot be installed first. In this case, we are forced to exploit the *meta*-directing effects of either the nitro group or the acyl group.

By taking advantage of the *meta*-directing effects of either the nitro group or the acyl group, we have two possible routes to consider:

Route 1

Route 2

When considering the viability of each route, we must remember that Friedel–Crafts reactions cannot be performed on a moderately or strongly deactivated ring. The first route involves a Friedel–Crafts acylation with a strongly deactivated ring (nitrobenzene). This will not work. Therefore, only the second route is viable. In the final step of this route, both groups are reduced under Clemmensen conditions. The reduction of both groups results in the formation of an amino group, which would be protonated under the acidic Clemmensen conditions. So the reaction must be followed up with a base (NaOH) to remove the extra proton and regenerate the amino group.

PRACTICE the skill

18.26 Starting with benzene and using any other necessary reagents of your choice, design a synthesis for each of the following compounds. **Note**: some of these problems have more than one plausible answer.

APPLY the skill

18.27 2-Nitroaniline has been used as a precursor in the synthesis of the benzimidazole ring system (shown below), a structural feature that is present in many pharmaceuticals. A reliable method for synthesizing 2-nitroaniline relies on a reaction we will learn in Chapter 20, and continued improvements on this general method have been reported in the literature.[5] Explain why 2-nitroaniline cannot be made from benzene using the reactions in this chapter exclusively.

2-Nitroaniline Benzimidazole

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 18.53, 18.54, 18.75, 18.82**

Polysubstituted Benzene Rings

When designing a synthesis for a polysubstituted benzene ring, it is often most efficient to utilize a retrosynthetic analysis, as discussed in Section 11.5. The following example illustrates the process.

SKILLBUILDER

18.6 PROPOSING A SYNTHESIS FOR A POLYSUBSTITUTED BENZENE RING

LEARN the skill

Starting with benzene and using any other necessary reagents of your choice, design a synthesis for the following compound:

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Determine the last step of the synthesis.

Approaching this problem from a retrosynthetic point of view, we begin by determining the last step of the synthesis. There are three possibilities: (1) the Br group is installed last, (2) the NO_2 group is installed last, or (3) the acyl group is installed last.

Let's begin by supposing that the Br group is installed last.

Recall that this arrow is a retrosynthetic arrow, and it means that the first compound might be made from the second compound. Our last step would therefore be a bromination reaction.

To consider the plausibility of this as our last step, we must first examine whether the desired regiochemical outcome will be achieved. In this case, we are trying to achieve the bromination of a disubstituted ring in which both groups (the nitro group and the acyl group) are *meta* directors. In such a case, the incoming Br group would be installed *meta* to both groups, which is not the desired location. Therefore, this step cannot be the last step of our synthesis.

Instead, let's consider installation of the acyl group as the last step. Once again, we must consider whether the desired regiochemical outcome would be achieved.

In this case, both the Br group and the NO_2 group direct to the desired location. However, this transformation is a Friedel–Crafts acylation, and the ring is strongly deactivated by the presence of a nitro group, so the desired reaction simply cannot be achieved.

There is only one possibility left for the last step of our synthesis, which must be installation of the nitro group.

Both the Br group and the acyl group will direct the incoming nitro group to the desired location, and this reaction is plausible. This must be the last step.

STEP 2
Determine the penultimate (second-to-last) step of the synthesis.

Continuing to work backward, we must now consider the order in which the other two groups should be installed:

STEP 3
Consider any limitations for a proposed step.

STEP 4
Redraw the synthesis from start to finish.

Once again, we must choose a sequence of events that achieves the desired regiochemical outcome. The Br and acyl groups are *para* to each other, so we must consider which group is a *para* director. Indeed, bromine is an *ortho-para* director (with a preference for *para*), while the acyl group is a *meta* director. Therefore, we conclude that bromination be carried out first followed by acylation. Whenever performing an acylation step, it is necessary to consider the limitations of acylation. This case requires the acylation of bromobenzene. The Br group is only *weakly* deactivating, which does not interfere with the acylation process (acylation is only unattainable with moderately deactivated or strongly deactivated rings). In summary, our proposed synthesis has the following sequence of events:

PRACTICE the skill

18.28 Starting with benzene and using any other necessary reagents of your choice, design a synthesis for each of the following compounds. In some cases, there may be more than one plausible solution.

APPLY the skill

18.29 We will see in Chapter 20 that derivatives of aniline will react with acyl chlorides (RCOCl) in the presence of pyridine (a base) to yield aromatic amides, as shown below for the parent aniline:

The drug flutamide, sold under the trade name Eulexin, is used to treat prostate cancer by decreasing the action of male hormones.[6] Starting with (trifluoromethyl)benzene, propose a synthesis of flutamide. **Note**: You will need to use the amide-forming reaction above.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 18.63, 18.68**

18.13 Nucleophilic Aromatic Substitution

Thus far, we have only explored reactions in which the aromatic ring attacks an electrophile (E^+). Such reactions are called *electrophilic* aromatic substitution reactions. In this section, we consider reactions in which the ring is attacked by a nucleophile. Such reactions are called **nucleophilic aromatic substitution** reactions. In the following example, an aromatic compound is treated with a strong nucleophile (hydroxide), which displaces a leaving group (bromide):

In order for a reaction like this to occur, three criteria must be satisfied:

1. The ring must contain a powerful electron-withdrawing group (typically a nitro group).
2. The ring must contain a leaving group (usually a halide).
3. The leaving group must be either *ortho* or *para* to the electron-withdrawing group. If the leaving group is *meta* to the nitro group, the reaction is not observed.

In this example, the first two criteria are met, but the last criterion is not met.

Any mechanism that we propose for nucleophilic aromatic substitution must successfully explain the three criteria. Mechanism 18.8 accomplishes this task and is called the S_NAr mechanism.

MECHANISM 18.8 NUCLEOPHILIC AROMATIC SUBSTITUTION (S_NAr)

Much like the reactions we have seen thus far, this mechanism also involves two steps, but take special notice of the resonance-stabilized intermediate, called a **Meisenheimer complex**. This intermediate exhibits a negative charge that is resonance stabilized throughout the ring. This intermediate is very different from a sigma complex, which exhibits a positive charge that is resonance stabilized throughout the ring. The difference between these intermediates should make sense in that electrophilic aromatic substitution involves the ring attacking E^+, so the resulting intermediate will be positively charged; nucleophilic aromatic substitution involves the ring being attacked by a negatively charged nucleophile, so the resulting intermediate will be negatively charged. The second step of the S_NAr mechanism involves loss of a leaving group to restore aromaticity.

In order to understand the role of the nitro group in this reaction, consider the last resonance structure of the Meisenheimer complex in Mechanism 18.8. In that resonance structure, the negative charge is removed from the ring and resides on an oxygen atom. This resonance structure stabilizes the Meisenheimer complex, and we can think of the nitro group as a temporary reservoir for electron density. That is, the nucleophile attacks the ring, dumping its electron density into the ring, where it is temporarily stored on the nitro group. Then, the nitro group releases the electron density to expel a leaving group. With this in mind, we can understand the requirement for the nitro group as well as the requirement for the leaving group. In addition, the S_NAr mechanism also explains the requirement for the nitro group to be *ortho* or *para* to the leaving group. If the nitro group is *meta* to the leaving group, it cannot function as a reservoir. To convince yourself that this is the case, draw the structure of *meta*-chloronitrobenzene and then attack that structure with hydroxide at the position containing the chlorine atom. Try to draw the resonance structures of the intermediate that is generated and you will see that the negative charge cannot be placed on the nitro group.

When hydroxide is used as the attacking nucleophile, the resulting product is a substituted phenol, which will be deprotonated by hydroxide to give a phenolate ion. Therefore, acid is required in a separate step to protonate the phenolate ion and obtain a neutral product.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

18.30 Predict the product of the following reaction:

18.31 Starting with benzene and using any other necessary reagents of your choice, design a synthesis for the following compound:

18.32 The presence of multiple nitro groups can have an impact on the temperature at which a nucleophilic aromatic substitution will readily occur. Consider the following example:

When both R groups are hydrogen atoms, the reaction readily occurs at 130°C. When one of the R groups is a nitro group, the reaction readily occurs at 100°C. When both R groups are nitro groups, the reaction readily occurs at 35°C.

(a) Provide an explanation that justifies the lower temperature requirement with additional nitro groups.

(b) If a fourth nitro group is placed on the ring, would you expect the temperature requirement to be significantly lowered further? Explain your answer.

18.14 Elimination-Addition

In Section 18.13, we explained why a nitro group is required in order for a nucleophilic aromatic substitution reaction to proceed. In the absence of a powerful electron-withdrawing substituent, the reaction simply does not occur.

However, if the temperature and pressure are raised significantly, a reaction is in fact observed.

This reaction was first discovered in 1928 by scientists at the Dow Chemical Company. The reaction can also be performed at lower temperatures using the amide ion (H_2N^-) as a nucleophile.

When other substituents are present on the ring, the regiochemical outcome is not what we might have expected.

In this case, two products are obtained. This regiochemical outcome initially baffled chemists, as it cannot be explained with a simple S_NAr mechanism. Rather, a different mechanism is required to explain these results.

A clue to this puzzle comes from an isotopic labeling experiment. Chlorobenzene can be prepared such that the carbon bearing the chlorine atom is ^{14}C, a radioactive isotope of carbon. The position of the isotopic label (indicated with an asterisk) can then be tracked before and after the reaction.

Notice the position of the isotopic label in the products. The proposed mechanism most consistent with these observations involves formation of a rather strange intermediate called **benzyne**.

Elimination of H and Cl produces a very high energy intermediate called benzyne. This intermediate does not survive long because it is quickly attacked by the nucleophile, producing an addition reaction. Nucleophilic attack can take place at (a) the position of the isotopic label or (b) the other end of the triple bond.

The attack can take place at either end of the triple bond with equal likelihood, explaining the observed results. This proposed mechanism is called **elimination-addition** (Mechanism 18.9).

MECHANISM 18.9 ELIMINATION-ADDITION

Evidence for this mechanism comes from a trapping experiment. When furan is added to the reaction mixture, a small amount of Diels-Alder cycloadduct is obtained.

The presence of this cycloadduct can only be explained by invoking a benzyne intermediate, which is *trapped* by furan. The evidence requires that we explain how benzyne can exist, even for a brief moment. After all, a triple bond cannot be incorporated into a six-membered ring. This strange "triple bond" is best explained as resulting from the overlap of sp^2 orbitals rather than overlapping p orbitals.

The overlap is very poor, and the intermediate more closely resembles a diradical than a triple bond. This explains why it is very unstable and so short-lived.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

18.33 Draw both products that are obtained when 4-chloro-2-methyltoluene is treated with $NaNH_2$ followed by treatment with H_3O^+.

18.34 Starting with benzene and using any other necessary reagents of your choice, design a synthesis for anisole (methoxybenzene).

18.15 Identifying the Mechanism of an Aromatic Substitution Reaction

We have seen three different mechanisms for aromatic substitution reactions (Figure 18.15).

FIGURE 18.15
Three possible mechanisms for aromatic substitution.

All three mechanisms accomplish aromatic substitution, but there are a few key differences that warrant our attention:

1. *The intermediate:* Electrophilic aromatic substitution proceeds via a sigma complex, nucleophilic aromatic substitution proceeds via a Meisenheimer complex, and elimination-addition proceeds via a benzyne intermediate.
2. *The leaving group:* In electrophilic aromatic substitution, the incoming substituent replaces a proton. In the other two mechanisms, a negatively charged leaving group (such as a halide ion) is expelled.
3. *Substituent effects:* In electrophilic aromatic substitution, electron-withdrawing groups deactivate the ring toward attack, while in nucleophilic aromatic substitution, an electron-withdrawing group is required in order for the reaction to proceed.

Because of these fundamental differences, it is important to be able to determine which mechanism operates in any given situation. Figure 18.16 illustrates a decision tree for proposing a mechanism for an aromatic substitution.

FIGURE 18.16
A decision tree for determining a mechanism for an aromatic substitution reaction.

SKILLBUILDER

18.7 DETERMINING THE MECHANISM OF AN AROMATIC SUBSTITUTION REACTION

LEARN the skill

Draw the most likely mechanism for the following transformation:

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Determine whether the reagents are electrophilic or nucleophilic.

First look at the reagents. NaOH is a common source of hydroxide ions (Na^+ is the counterion). Hydroxide is a nucleophile, not an electrophile, so we can rule out electrophilic aromatic substitution.

Next, look at the substrate to determine if all three criteria are present for a nucleophilic aromatic substitution: (1) there is a leaving group (chloride), (2) there is a nitro group, and (3) the nitro group is *ortho* to the leaving group. All three criteria are met, so the mechanism is likely to be S_NAr, which proceeds through a Meisenheimer complex.

STEP 2
If the reagent is nucleophilic, then determine if all three criteria are satisfied for a nucleophilic aromatic substitution.

PRACTICE the skill

18.35 Draw the most likely mechanism for each of the following transformations:

18.36 When 2-ethyl-5-chlorotoluene was treated with sodium hydroxide at high temperature, followed by treatment with H_3O^+, three constitutional isomers with the molecular formula $C_9H_{12}O$ were obtained. Draw all three products.

APPLY the skill

18.37 The welwitindolinones are a class of natural products that exhibit a host of biological activities including insecticidal, fungicidal, and anti-cancer properties. The following reaction was performed using $SnCl_4$, a Lewis acid, in a model study en route to the core skeleton of the welwitindolinones.[7]

***N*-methylwelwitindolinone C isothiocyanate**

(a) Each of the aromatic substitution reactions that we have encountered involves a key intermediate (sigma complex, Meisenheimer complex, or benzyne intermediate). Determine which type of aromatic substitution pathway is occurring in the first reaction shown above, and draw the key intermediate for the process.

(b) Show a mechanism of the formation for the intermediate drawn in (a).

(c) Typically this type of reaction cannot be performed in the presence of secondary amines (R_2NH), which are basic and will react with the Lewis acid. Explain why the aromatic substitution works in this case.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 18.49–18.51, 18.56, 18.72, 18.78**

REVIEW OF REACTIONS

Electrophilic Aromatic Substitution

1. Bromination
2. Chlorination
3. Nitration
4. Sulfonation/desulfonation
5. Friedel–Crafts alkylation
6. Friedel–Crafts acylation
7. Reduction
8. Benzylic bromination
9. Oxidation
10. Clemmensen reduction

Other Aromatic Substitution Reactions

Nucleophilic Aromatic Substitution

Elimination-Addition

REVIEW OF CONCEPTS AND VOCABULARY

SECTION 18.1

- Alkenes undergo addition when treated with bromine, while benzene is inert under the same conditions.
- In the presence of iron, an **electrophilic aromatic substitution** reaction is observed between benzene and bromine.

SECTION 18.2

- Iron tribromide is a Lewis acid that interacts with Br_2 and generates Br^+, which is sufficiently electrophilic to be attacked by benzene.
- Electrophilic aromatic substitution involves two steps:
  - Formation of the **sigma complex**, or **arenium ion**. This step is endergonic.
  - Deprotonation, which restores aromaticity.
- Aluminum tribromide ($AlBr_3$) is another common Lewis acid that can serve as a suitable alternative to $FeBr_3$.
- Chlorination of benzene is accomplished with a suitable Lewis acid, such as aluminum trichloride.

SECTION 18.3

- Sulfur trioxide (SO_3) is a very powerful electrophile that is present in fuming sulfuric acid. Benzene reacts with SO_3 in a reversible process called **sulfonation**.

SECTION 18.4

- A mixture of sulfuric acid and nitric acid produces a small amount of **nitronium ion** (NO_2^+). Benzene reacts with the nitronium ion in a process called **nitration**.
- A nitro group can be reduced to an amino group, providing a two-step method for installing an amino group.

SECTION 18.5

- **Friedel–Crafts alkylation** enables the installation of an alkyl group on an aromatic ring.
- In the presence of a Lewis acid, an alkyl halide is converted into a carbocation, which can be attacked by benzene in an electrophilic aromatic substitution.
- A Friedel–Crafts alkylation is only efficient in cases where carbocation rearrangements cannot occur.
- When choosing an alkyl halide, the carbon atom connected to the halogen must be sp^3 hybridized.
- Polyalkylations are common and can generally be avoided by controlling the reaction conditions.

SECTION 18.6

- **Friedel–Crafts acylation** enables the installation of an **acyl group** on an aromatic ring.
- When treated with a Lewis acid, an acyl chloride will generate an **acylium ion**, which is resonance stabilized and not susceptible to carbocation rearrangements.
- When a Friedel–Crafts acylation is followed by a **Clemmensen reduction**, the net result is the installation of an alkyl group. This two-step process is a useful synthetic method for installing alkyl groups that cannot be installed efficiently with a direct alkylation process.
- Polyacylation is not observed, because introduction of an acyl group deactivates the ring toward further acylation.

SECTION 18.7

- A methyl group is said to **activate** an aromatic ring and is an ***ortho-para* director**.
- An aromatic ring is even more highly activated by a methoxy group, which is also an *ortho-para* director.
- All activators are *ortho-para* directors.

SECTION 18.8

- A nitro group is said to **deactivate** an aromatic ring and is a ***meta* director**. Most deactivators are *meta* directors.

SECTION 18.9

- Halogens (such as Cl, Br, or I) are an exception in that they are deactivators but are *ortho-para* directors.

SECTION 18.10

- **Strong activators** are characterized by the presence of a lone pair immediately adjacent to the aromatic ring.
- **Moderate activators** exhibit a lone pair that is already delocalized outside of the ring. Alkoxy groups are an exception and are moderate activators.
- Alkyl groups are **weak activators**.
- Halogens (such as Cl, Br, or I) are **weak deactivators**.
- **Moderate deactivators** are groups that exhibit a π bond to an electronegative atom, where the π bond is conjugated with the aromatic ring.
- **Strong deactivators** are powerfully electron withdrawing, either by resonance or induction.

SECTION 18.11

- When multiple substituents are present, the more powerful activating group dominates the directing effects.
- Steric effects often play an important role in determining product distribution.
- A **blocking group** can be used to control the regiochemical outcome of an electrophilic aromatic substitution.

SECTION 18.12

- Proposing a synthesis for a disubstituted benzene ring requires a careful analysis of directing effects to determine which group should be installed first.
- When designing a synthesis for a polysubstituted benzene ring, it is often most efficient to utilize a retrosynthetic analysis.

SECTION 18.13

- In a **nucleophilic aromatic substitution** reaction, the aromatic ring is attacked by a nucleophile. This reaction has three requirements:
  - The ring must contain a powerful electron-withdrawing group (typically a nitro group).
  - The ring must contain a leaving group.
  - The leaving group must be either *ortho* or *para* to the electron-withdrawing group.
- Nucleophilic aromatic substitution involves two steps:
  - Formation of a **Meisenheimer complex**.
  - Loss of a leaving group to restore aromaticity.

SECTION 18.14

- An **elimination-addition** reaction occurs via a **benzyne** intermediate. Evidence for this mechanism comes from isotopic labeling experiments as well as a trapping experiment.

SECTION 18.15

- The three mechanisms for aromatic substitution differ in (1) the intermediate, (2) the leaving group, and (3) substituent effects.

SKILLBUILDER REVIEW

18.1 IDENTIFYING THE EFFECTS OF A SUBSTITUENT

ACTIVATORS			DEACTIVATORS		
STRONG	**MODERATE**	**WEAK**	**WEAK**	**MODERATE**	**STRONG**
A lone pair immediately adjacent to the ring. **Examples:** $-\ddot{N}H_2$ $-\ddot{O}H$ **Exception:** $-\ddot{O}R$ (Moderate activator)	A lone pair that is already participating in resonance outside of the ring. **Example:** 	Alkyl groups: —R	Halogens: —Cl —Br —I	A π bond to a heteroatom, where the π bond is conjugated to the ring. **Examples:** —C≡N	The following three groups: $-NO_2$ $-\overset{\oplus}{N}R_3$ $-CX_3$
← ***ORTHO-PARA* DIRECTORS** →				← ***META* DIRECTORS** →	

Try Problems **18.16, 18.17, 18.39–18.41, 18.42a–c,f,h, 18.44, 18.45a–d, 18.46a,b,d–g, 18.55a,b, 18.61, 18.73, 18.76**

18.2 IDENTIFYING DIRECTING EFFECTS FOR DISUBSTITUTED AND POLYSUBSTITUTED BENZENE RINGS

STEP 1 Identify the nature of each group.

STEP 2 Select the most powerful activator and then identify the positons that are *ortho* and *para* to that group.

STEP 3 Identify the unoccupied positions.

Try Problems **18.18, 18.19, 18.42e, 18.46k, 18.52a,b, 18.55, 18.64, 18.65, 18.74, 18.77**

18.3 IDENTIFYING STERIC EFFECTS FOR DISUBSTITUTED AND POLYSUBSTITUTED BENZENE RINGS

STEP 1 Identify the nature of each group.

STEP 2 Select the most powerful activator (shown in red below) and then identify the positions that are *ortho* and *para* to that group.

STEP 3 Identify the unoccupied positions that are the least sterically hindered.

Try Problems **18.20, 18.21, 18.55, 18.59, 18.64, 18.69, 18.70**

18.4 USING BLOCKING GROUPS TO CONTROL THE REGIOCHEMICAL OUTCOME OF AN ELECTROPHILIC AROMATIC SUBSTITUTION REACTION

STEP 1 Determine whether or not a blocking group is necessary.

STEP 2 Install the blocking group.

STEP 3 Perform the desired reaction.

STEP 4 Remove the blocking group.

Try Problems **18.22, 18.23, 18.54d, 18.63c, 18.71**

18.5 PROPOSING A SYNTHESIS FOR A DISUBSTITUTED BENZENE RING

EXAMPLE

Starting with benzene, propose a synthesis for the following compound:

STEP 1 Identify reagents that can be used to install each group.

STEP 2 Determine the order of events that achieves the desired regiochemical outcome.

LIMITATIONS

Do not perform a nitration on a ring that possesses an amino group.

Do not perform a Friedel–Crafts reaction on a moderately or strongly deactivated ring.

Try Problems **18.26, 18.27, 18.53, 18.54, 18.75, 18.82**

18.6 PROPOSING A SYNTHESIS FOR A POLYSUBSTITUTED BENZENE RING

RETROSYNTHETIC ANALYSIS

Example:

FACTORS TO CONSIDER

1. Electronic directing effects
2. Steric directing effects
3. Order of events

Try Problems **18.28, 18.29, 18.63, 18.68**

18.7 DETERMINING THE MECHANISM OF AN AROMATIC SUBSTITUTION REACTION

DECISION TREE

Try Problems **18.35–18.37, 18.49–18.51, 18.56, 18.72, 18.78**

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

• **Included in Answers section**

18.38 Identify reagents that can be used to accomplish each of the following transformations:

18.39 Rank the following compounds in order of increasing reactivity toward electrophilic aromatic substitution:

18.40 • Identify which of the following compounds is most activated toward electrophilic aromatic substitution. Which compound is least activated?

18.41 • Predict the product(s) obtained when each of the following compounds is treated with a mixture of nitric acid and sulfuric acid:

18.42 Predict the major product obtained when each of the following compounds is treated with fuming sulfuric acid:

(a) Chlorobenzene
(b) Phenol
(c) Benzaldehyde
(d) *ortho*-Nitrophenol
(e) *para*-Bromotoluene
(f) Benzoic acid
(g) *para*-Ethyltoluene

18.43 For each of the following groups, identify whether it is an activator or a deactivator, and determine its directing effects:

18.44 The following compound has four aromatic rings. Rank them in terms of increasing reactivity toward electrophilic aromatic substitution.

18.45 • Predict the product(s) obtained when each of the following compounds is treated with chloromethane and aluminum trichloride. Some of the compounds might be unreactive. For those that are reactive, assume that conditions are controlled to favor monoalkylation.

18.46 Predict the major product obtained when each of the following compounds is treated with bromine in the presence of iron tribromide:

(a) Bromobenzene
(b) Nitrobenzene
(c) *ortho*-Xylene
(d) *tert*-Butylbenzene
(e) Benzenesulfonic acid
(f) Benzoic acid
(g) Benzaldehyde
(h) *ortho*-Dibromobenzene
(i) *meta*-Nitrotoluene
(j) *meta*-Dibromobenzene
(k) *para*-Dibromobenzene

18.47 When the following compound is treated with a mixture of nitric acid and sulfuric acid at 50°C, nitration occurs to afford a compound with two nitro groups. Draw the structure of this product:

18.48 When benzene is treated with 2-methylpropene and sulfuric acid, the product obtained is *tert*-butylbenzene. Propose a mechanism for this transformation.

18.49 Draw a mechanism for each of the following transformations:

18.50 Propose a plausible mechanism for each of the following transformations:

18.51 Propose a plausible mechanism for the following transformation:

18.52 Predict the product(s) of the following reactions:

18.53 • Starting with benzene and using any other reagents of your choice, design a synthesis for each of the following compounds:

18.54 Each of the following syntheses will not produce the desired product. In each case, identify the flaw in the synthesis.

18.55 In each case, identify the most likely position at which monobromination would occur (upon treatment with Br_2 and $FeBr_3$).

18.56 When *para*-bromotoluene is treated with sodium amide ($NaNH_2$), two products are obtained. Draw both products and propose a plausible mechanism for their formation.

18.57 Picric acid is a military explosive formed via the nitration of phenol under conditions that install three nitro groups. Draw the structure and provide an IUPAC name for picric acid.

18.58 Propose a plausible mechanism for the following transformation:

18.59 Benzene was treated with isopropyl chloride in the presence of aluminum trichloride under conditions that favor dialkylation. Draw the major product expected from this reaction.

18.60 Draw all resonance structures of the sigma complex formed when toluene undergoes chlorination at the *para* position.

18.61 For each of the following groups of compounds, identify which compound will react most rapidly with ethyl chloride in the presence of aluminum trichloride. Explain your choice in each case and then predict the expected products of that reaction.

18.62 Compound **A** and compound **B** are both aromatic esters with the molecular formula $C_8H_8O_2$. When treated with bromine in the presence of iron tribromide, compound **A** is converted into only one product, while compound **B** is converted into two different monobromination products. Identify the structure of compound **A** and compound **B**.

18.63 • Propose an efficient synthesis for each of the following transformations:

18.64 Predict the product(s) for each of the following reactions:

18.65 When 2,4-dibromo-3-methyltoluene is treated with bromine in the presence of iron (Fe), a compound with the molecular formula $C_8H_7Br_3$ is obtained. Identify the structure of this product.

18.66 Each of the following compounds can be made with a Friedel–Crafts acylation. Identify the acyl chloride and the aromatic compound you would use to produce each compound.

(a)

(b)

18.67 Starting with benzene and using any other reagents of your choice, design a synthesis for each of the following compounds. In some cases, there may be more than one plausible solution.

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

(f)

(g)

(h)

18.68 When benzene is treated with methyl chloride and aluminum trichloride under conditions that favor trialkylation, one major product is obtained. Draw this product and provide an IUPAC name.

18.69 The following compound is highly activated but nevertheless undergoes bromination very slowly. Explain.

18.70 When the following compound is treated with Br_2 in the presence of a Lewis acid, one product predominates. Determine the structure of that product.

18.71 Predict the major product of the following reaction:

18.72 When *ortho*-bromonitrobenzene is treated with NaOH at elevated temperature, only one product is formed.

(a) Draw the product.

(b) Identify the intermediate involved in the mechanism.

(c) Would the reaction occur if the starting compound were *meta*-bromonitrobenzene?

(d) Would the reaction occur if the starting compound were *para*-bromonitrobenzene?

ACS-STYLE PROBLEMS (Multiple Choice)

Problems 18.73–18.79 follow the style of the ACS organic chemistry exam. For each of these problems, there will be one correct answer and three distractors.

18.73 • Which of the following is the least reactive toward Friedel–Crafts conditions?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

18.74 • What is the major product of this reaction?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

18.75 • Which reaction sequence best accomplishes this transformation?

(a) $\xrightarrow[AlBr_3]{Br_2}$ $\xrightarrow[AlCl_3]{EtCl}$

(b) $\xrightarrow[AlCl_3]{EtCl}$ $\xrightarrow[AlBr_3]{Br_2}$

(c) $\xrightarrow[AlCl_3]{EtCl}$ $\xrightarrow[H_2SO_4]{Fuming}$ $\xrightarrow[AlBr_3]{Br_2}$ $\xrightarrow[H_2SO_4]{Dilute}$

(d)

18.76 • Which of the following best describes the effect of a hydroxyl group substituent on electrophilic aromatic substitution reactions?

(a) The OH group is an electron-donating group and a *meta* director.

(b) The OH group is an electron-donating group and an *ortho-para* director.

(c) The OH group is an electron-withdrawing group and a *meta* director.

(d) The OH group is an electron-withdrawing group and an *ortho-para* director.

18.77 • Predict the major product for the following reaction sequence.

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

18.78 • Predict the major product for the following reaction.

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

18.79 • Which of the following does NOT represent a likely intermediate in the mechanism of the given reaction?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

INTEGRATED PROBLEMS

18.80 The nitroso group is known as a strong deactivator, yet an *ortho/para*-director, in electrophilic aromatic substitution reactions. For example, nitration of nitrosobenzene affords mostly the *para*-substituted product.[8]

Nitrosobenzene

(a) Rationalize the strong deactivating effect of the nitroso substituent.

(b) Rationalize the directing effects by considering resonance structures of the *para*-substituted sigma complex.

(c) Sometimes, current research uncovers new information about very old reactions. A relatively recent study revealed that nitrosobenzene is so deactivated that it is unreactive toward bromination.[9] Instead, it forms a dimer that can be brominated, then dissociate back into the monomer. Explain which of the two rings, A or B, in the dimer below, would be more likely to be halogenated in an electrophilic aromatic substitution, and explain why the substitution would be at the *para* position.

18.81 Compound **A** has the molecular formula C_8H_8O. An IR spectrum of compound **A** exhibits a signal at 1680 cm^{-1}. The ^1H NMR spectrum of compound **A** exhibits a group of signals between 7.5 and 8 ppm (with a combined integration of 5) and one upfield signal with an integration of 3. Compound **A** is converted into compound **B** under the following conditions:

Compound A $\xrightarrow{\text{Zn(Hg), HCl, heat}}$ **Compound B**

When compound **B** is treated with Br_2 and $AlBr_3$, two different monobromination products are obtained. Identify both of these products and predict which one will be the major product. Explain your reasoning.

18.82 Starting with benzene and using any other reagents of your choice, design a synthesis for each of the following compounds. Each compound has a Br and one other substituent that we did not learn how to install. In each case, you will need to choose a substituent that we did learn how to install in this chapter and then modify that substituent using reactions from previous chapters. Be careful to consider the order of events in each case.

(a)

(b)

18.83 Benzene was treated with (*R*)-2-chlorobutane in the presence of aluminum trichloride, and the resulting product mixture was found to be optically inactive.

(a) What products are expected, assuming that conditions are chosen to favor monoalkylation?

(b) Explain why the product mixture is optically inactive.

18.84 The ^1H NMR spectrum of phenol exhibits three signals in the aromatic region of the spectrum. These signals appear at 6.7, 6.8, and 7.2 ppm. Use your understanding of shielding and deshielding effects (Chapter 15) to determine which signal corresponds with the *meta* protons. Explain your reasoning.

18.85 When toluene is treated with a mixture of excess sulfuric acid and nitric acid at high temperature, a compound is obtained that exhibits only two signals in its ^1H NMR spectrum. One signal appears upfield and has an integration of 3. The other signal appears downfield and has an integration of 2. Identify the structure of this compound and assign an IUPAC name.

18.86 Each of the following compounds is an aromatic compound bearing a substituent that we did not discuss in this chapter. Using the principles that we discussed in this chapter, predict the major product for each of the following reactions:

(a)

(b)

18.87 Predict the major product of the following reaction:

18.88 Bakelite is one of the first known synthetic polymers and was used to make radio and telephone casings as well as automobile parts in the early twentieth century. Bakelite is formed by treating phenol with formaldehyde under acidic conditions. Draw a plausible mechanism for the formation of Bakelite.

18.89 Propose a plausible mechanism for the following transformation:

18.90 When *N,N*-dimethylaniline is treated with bromine, *ortho* and *para* products are observed. Yet, when *N,N*-dimethylaniline is treated with a mixture of nitric acid and sulfuric acid, only the *meta* product is observed. Explain these curious results.

18.91 Aromatic heterocycles are also capable of undergoing electrophilic aromatic substitution. For example, when furan is treated with an electrophile, an electrophilic aromatic substitution reaction occurs in which the electrophile is installed exclusively at the C2 position. Explain why this reaction occurs at the C2 position, rather than the C3 position.

18.92 The rate constants for the bromination of several disubstituted stilbenes are given in the table below.[10] Given that the double bond of stilbene acts as the nucleophile, provide a reasonable explanation for the trend observed among the rate constants.

X	Y	k ($\times 10^3$ l/mol·min)
—OMe	—OMe	220
—OMe	—Me	114
—OMe	—Cl	45
—OMe	—NO_2	5.2

18.93 Compound **1** and compound **2** both contain tritium (T), which is an isotope of hydrogen (tritium = ^{3}H). Both compounds are stable upon treatment with aqueous base. However, upon prolonged treatment with aqueous acid, compounds **1** and **2** both lose tritium, to give 1,3-dimethoxybenzene and 1,3,5-trimethoxybenzene, respectively[11]:

(a) Propose a mechanism showing how tritium is removed from compounds **1** and **2**.

(b) Use your mechanism to predict which compound (**1** or **2**) is expected to lose tritium at a faster rate. Justify your answer.

18.94 Consider the following reaction, in which the product results from substitution of fluorine and not from substitution of chlorine.[12]

(a) Draw a mechanism for this reaction.

(b) Based on the observed regiochemical outcome, identify the step of the mechanism that is rate determining. Explain your answer.

CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

18.95 Compare the indicated bonds (***a*** and ***b***) in the following compound. Bond ***a*** has a bond length of 145 pm, while bond ***b*** has a bond length of 135 pm.[13] Suggest a reason for this difference in bond length for seemingly similar bonds.

18.96 During a synthesis of a potential anticancer agent, 7-hydroxynitidine, the investigators treated bromide **1** with two equivalents of a strong base to form compound **2.**[14] Propose a plausible mechanism to account for the following ring-forming transformation:

18.97 In the following reaction, iodine monochloride (ICl) effectively serves as a source of an electrophilic iodonium species, I^+.[15]

(a) Propose a mechanism for the formation of each of the two products, **A** and **B**.

(b) The ratio of **A:B** in the product mixture is found to be roughly 3:1. Propose an explanation to justify why formation of **A** is favored over formation of **B**.

18.98 Treatment of compound **1** with benzene in triflic acid (CF_3SO_3H) affords ammonium ion **3.**[16] Triflic acid is an extremely strong acid ($pK_a = -14$), even more acidic than sulfuric acid; under these conditions, the transformation is believed to proceed via intermediate **2**, a highly electrophilic dication. Draw a complete mechanism for the conversion of **1** to **3**.

18.99 The following synthesis of compound **3** was developed in an effort to prepare an analogue of a polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon in which one of the C═C bonds was replaced with a B—N unit.[17] Such derivatives are expected to display unique optical and electrical properties and thus may be useful in the preparation of novel organic electronic materials.

(a) Propose a mechanism for the conversion of compound **1** to compound **3**.

(b) In compound **3**, do you expect each of the six rings to be aromatic, giving one extended aromatic system for the compound? Explain your answer.

(c) Analysis of the 3-D structure of **3** (as well as its hydrocarbon analogue) reveals that the central two rings are slightly twisted (*i.e.*, nonplanar). Provide a rationale for this finding.

LIST OF REFERENCES

1. *J. Org. Chem.* **1980**, *45*, 1675–1681.
2. Patent # US3944612.
3. *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.* **1996**, *6*, 1819–1824.
4. *Org. Synth.* **1934**, *14*, 14.
5. *Tetrahedron* **2013**, *69*, 9422–9427.
6. *J. Med. Chem.* **1967**, *10*, 93–95.
7. *Org. Lett.* **2005**, *7*, 3421–3424.
8. *J. Chem. Soc. Trans.* **1925**, *127*, 513–518.
9. *J. Phys. Chem. A* **2013**, *117*, 13079–13088.
10. *J. Org. Chem.* **1973**, *38*, 493–499.
11. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1967**, *89*, 4418–4424.
12. *Org. Lett.* **2007**, *9*, 2741–2743.
13. *Prog. Stereochem.* **1958**, *2*, 125.
14. *Org. Lett.* **1999**, *1*, 985–988.
15. *J. Org. Chem.* **2005**, *70*, 3511–3517.
16. *J. Org. Chem.* **1999**, *64*, 6702–6705.
17. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **2011**, *133*, 18614–18617.

19

Aldehydes and Ketones

19.1 Introduction to Aldehydes and Ketones
19.2 Nomenclature
19.3 Preparing Aldehydes and Ketones: A Review
19.4 Introduction to Nucleophilic Addition Reactions
19.5 Oxygen Nucleophiles
19.6 Nitrogen Nucleophiles
19.7 Hydrolysis of Acetals, Imines, and Enamines
19.8 Sulfur Nucleophiles
19.9 Hydrogen Nucleophiles
19.10 Carbon Nucleophiles
19.11 Baeyer–Villiger Oxidation of Aldehydes and Ketones
19.12 Synthesis Strategies
19.13 Spectroscopic Analysis of Aldehydes and Ketones

DID YOU EVER **WONDER...**

why beta-carotene, which makes carrots orange, is reportedly good for your eyes?

This chapter will explore the reactivity of aldehydes and ketones. Specifically, we will see that a wide variety of nucleophiles will react with aldehydes and ketones. Many of these reactions are common in biological pathways, including the role that beta-carotene plays in promoting healthy vision. As we will see several times in this chapter, the reactions of aldehydes and ketones are also cleverly exploited in the design of drugs. The reactions and principles outlined in this chapter are central to the study of organic chemistry and will be used as guiding principles throughout the remaining chapters of this textbook.

Top (*Carrot*) Ints Vikmanis/Shutterstock; *Bottom* (*Caring for eye sight by healthy eating*) JerryB7/Getty Images

DO YOU **REMEMBER?**

Before you go on, be sure you understand the following topics.
If necessary, review the suggested sections to prepare for this chapter.

- Retrosynthetic Analysis (Section 11.5)
- Grignard Reagents (Section 12.6)
- Oxidation of Alcohols (Section 12.10)

Take the DO YOU **REMEMBER?** QUIZ in the **online course** to check your understanding.

19.1 Introduction to Aldehydes and Ketones

Aldehydes (RCHO) and ketones (R_2CO) are similar in structure in that both classes of compounds possess a C═O bond, called a *carbonyl group*:

The carbonyl group of an aldehyde is flanked by a hydrogen atom, while the carbonyl group of a ketone is flanked by two carbon atoms.

Aldehydes and ketones are responsible for many flavors and odors that you will readily recognize:

Many important biological compounds also exhibit the carbonyl group, including progesterone and testosterone, the female and male sex hormones.

Simple aldehydes and ketones are industrially important; for example:

Formaldehyde is used as a preservative in some vaccine formulations, while acetone is used as a solvent and is commonly found in nail polish remover. Aldehydes and ketones are also used as building blocks in the syntheses of commercially important compounds, including pharmaceuticals and polymers. Compounds containing a carbonyl group react with a large variety of nucleophiles, affording a wide range of possible products. Due to the versatile reactivity of the carbonyl group, aldehydes and ketones occupy a central role in organic chemistry.

19.2 Nomenclature

Nomenclature of Aldehydes

Recall that four discrete steps are required to name most classes of organic compounds (as we saw with alkanes, alkenes, alkynes, and alcohols):

1. Identify and name the parent.
2. Identify and name the substituents.
3. Assign a locant to each substituent.
4. Assemble the substituents alphabetically.

Aldehydes are also named using the same four-step procedure. When applying this procedure for naming aldehydes, the following guidelines should be followed:

When naming the parent, the suffix "-al" indicates the presence of an aldehyde group:

Butane **Butanal**

When choosing the parent of an aldehyde, identify the longest chain *that includes the carbon atom of the aldehydic group*:

Parent=Octane **Parent=Hexanal**

When numbering the parent chain of an aldehyde, the aldehydic carbon is assigned number 1, despite the presence of alkyl substituents, π bonds, or hydroxyl groups:

It is not necessary to include this locant in the name, because it is understood that the aldehydic carbon is the number 1 position.

As with all compounds, when a chiral center is present, the configuration is indicated at the beginning of the name; for example:

(*R*)-2-Chloro-3-phenylpropanal

A cyclic compound containing an aldehyde group immediately adjacent to the ring is named as a carbaldehyde:

Cyclohexanecarbaldehyde

The International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry (IUPAC) nomenclature also recognizes the common names of many simple aldehydes, including the following examples:

Formaldehyde **Acetaldehyde** **Benzaldehyde**

Nomenclature of Ketones

Ketones, like aldehydes, are named using the same four-step procedure. When naming the parent, the suffix "-one" indicates the presence of a ketone group:

Butane Butanone

The position of the ketone group is indicated using a locant. The IUPAC rules published in 1979 dictate that this locant be placed immediately before the parent, while the IUPAC recommendations released in 1993 and 2004 allow for the locant to be placed immediately before the suffix "-one":

3-Heptanone
or
Heptan-3-one

Both names above are acceptable IUPAC names. IUPAC nomenclature recognizes the common names of many simple ketones, including the following examples:

Acetone Acetophenone Benzophenone

Although rarely used, IUPAC rules also allow simple ketones to be named as *alkyl alkyl ketones*. For example, 3-hexanone can also be called ethyl propyl ketone:

Ethyl propyl ketone

SKILLBUILDER

19.1 NAMING ALDEHYDES AND KETONES

LEARN the skill

Provide a systematic (IUPAC) name for the following compound:

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Identify and name the parent.

The first step is to identify and name the parent. Choose the longest chain that includes the carbonyl group and then number the chain to give the carbonyl group the lowest number possible:

3-Nonanone

STEP 2
Identify and name the substituents.

Next, identify the substituents and assign locants:

STEP 3
Assign a locant to each substituent.

STEP 4
Assemble the substituents alphabetically.

STEP 5
Assign the configuration of any chiral centers.

Finally, assemble the substituents alphabetically: 6-ethyl-4,4-dimethyl-3-nonanone. Before concluding, we must always check to see if there are any chiral centers. This compound does exhibit one chiral center. Using the skills from Section 5.3, the *R* configuration is assigned to this chiral center:

Therefore, the complete name is (*R*)-6-ethyl-4,4-dimethyl-3-nonanone.

PRACTICE the skill

19.1 Assign a systematic (IUPAC) name to each of the following compounds:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

19.2 Draw the structure of each of the following compounds:

(a) (*S*)-3,3-Dibromo-4-ethylcyclohexanone **(b)** 2,4-Dimethyl-3-pentanone

(c) (*R*)-3-Bromobutanal

APPLY the skill

19.3 Compounds with two ketone groups are named as alkane diones; for example:

2,3-Butanedione

The compound above is an artificial flavor added to microwave popcorn and movie-theater popcorn to simulate the butter flavor. Interestingly, this very same compound is also known to contribute to body odor. Name the following compounds:

(a)

(b)

(c)

19.4 Regular sunscreen use is an important part of keeping your skin healthy by protecting it from ultraviolet radiation, but some chemical agents in sunscreens may be harmful if absorbed into the skin. Research is ongoing to find less harmful alternatives and to understand the factors involved in skin absorption.[1] The IUPAC names are given below for two common chemical sunscreens. Provide a structure for each:

(a) (2-Hydroxy-4-methoxyphenyl)-phenylmethanone (also known as oxybenzone).

(b) 1-(4-Methoxyphenyl)-3-[4-(1,1-dimethylethyl)phenyl]propane-1,3-dione (also known as avobenzone).

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 19.43–19.48, 19.77**

19.3 Preparing Aldehydes and Ketones: A Review

In previous chapters, we have studied a variety of methods for preparing aldehydes and ketones, which are summarized in Tables 19.1 and 19.2, respectively.

TABLE 19.1 A SUMMARY OF ALDEHYDE PREPARATION METHODS COVERED IN PREVIOUS CHAPTERS

REACTION	SECTION
Oxidation of Primary Alcohols	12.10

When treated with a strong oxidizing agent, primary alcohols are oxidized to carboxylic acids. Formation of an aldehyde requires a mild oxidizing agent, such as the oxidizing agents shown above, that will not further oxidize the resulting aldehyde.

Ozonolysis of Alkenes 8.13

Ozonolysis will cleave a C═C double bond. If either carbon atom bears a hydrogen atom, an aldehyde will be formed.

Hydroboration-Oxidation of Terminal Alkynes 9.7

Hydroboration-oxidation results in an *anti*-Markovnikov addition of water across a π bond, followed by tautomerization of the resulting enol to form an aldehyde.

TABLE 19.2 A SUMMARY OF KETONE PREPARATION METHODS COVERED IN PREVIOUS CHAPTERS

REACTION	SECTION
Oxidation of Secondary Alcohols	12.10

A variety of strong or mild oxidizing agents can be used to oxidize secondary alcohols. The resulting ketone does not undergo further oxidation.

Ozonolysis of Alkenes 8.13

Tetrasubstituted alkenes are cleaved to form ketones.

Acid-Catalyzed Hydration of Terminal Alkynes 9.7

This procedure results in a Markovnikov addition of water across the π bond, followed by tautomerization to form a methyl ketone.

Friedel–Crafts Acylation 18.6

Aromatic rings that are not too strongly deactivated will react with an acyl halide in the presence of a Lewis acid to produce an aryl ketone.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

19.5 Identify reagents that can be used to achieve each of the following transformations:

19.4 Introduction to Nucleophilic Addition Reactions

The electrophilicity of a carbonyl group derives from resonance effects as well as inductive effects:

One of the resonance structures exhibits a positive charge on the carbon atom, indicating that the carbon atom is deficient in electron density (δ+). Inductive effects also render the carbon atom deficient in electron density. Therefore, this carbon atom is particularly electrophilic and is susceptible

to attack by a nucleophile. If a nucleophile attacks this position, the hybridization state of the carbon atom changes as a result of the process (Figure 19.1).

FIGURE 19.1
When a carbonyl group is attacked by a nucleophile, the carbon atom undergoes a change in hybridization and geometry.

The carbon atom is originally sp^2 hybridized with a trigonal planar geometry. After the attack, the carbon atom is sp^3 hybridized with a tetrahedral geometry.

In general, aldehydes are more reactive than ketones toward nucleophilic attack. This observation can be explained in terms of both steric and electronic effects:

1. *Steric effects*. A ketone has two alkyl groups (one on either side of the carbonyl) that contribute to steric interactions in the transition state of a nucleophilic attack. In contrast, an aldehyde has only one alkyl group, so the transition state is less crowded and lower in energy.
2. *Electronic effects*. Recall that alkyl groups are electron donating. A ketone has two electron-donating alkyl groups that can stabilize the δ+ on the carbon atom of the carbonyl group. In contrast, aldehydes have only one electron-donating group:

A ketone
has two electron-donating alkyl groups
that stabilize the partial positive charge

An aldehyde
has only one electron-donating alkyl group
that stabilizes the partial positive charge

The δ+ charge of an aldehyde is less stabilized than a ketone. As a result, aldehydes are more electrophilic than ketones and therefore more reactive.

Aldehydes and ketones react with a wide variety of nucleophiles. As we will see in the coming sections of this chapter, some nucleophiles require basic conditions, while others require acidic conditions. For example, recall from Chapter 12 that Grignard reagents are very strong nucleophiles that will attack aldehydes and ketones to produce alcohols:

The Grignard reagent itself provides for strongly basic conditions, because Grignard reagents are both strong nucleophiles and strong bases. This reaction cannot be achieved under acidic conditions, because, as explained in Section 12.6, Grignard reagents are destroyed in the presence of an acid. Mechanism 19.1, shown below, is a general mechanism for the reaction between a nucleophile and a carbonyl group under basic conditions. This general mechanism has two steps: (1) nucleophilic attack followed by (2) workup with aqueous acid (proton transfer).

MECHANISM 19.1 NUCLEOPHILIC ADDITION UNDER BASIC CONDITIONS

Aldehydes and ketones also react with a wide variety of other nucleophiles under acidic conditions. In acidic conditions, the same two mechanistic steps are observed, but in reverse order—that is, the carbonyl group is first protonated and then undergoes a nucleophilic attack (Mechanism 19.2).

MECHANISM 19.2 NUCLEOPHILIC ADDITION UNDER ACIDIC CONDITIONS

In acidic conditions, the first step plays an important role. Specifically, protonation of the carbonyl group generates a very powerful electrophile:

It is true that the carbonyl group is already a fairly strong electrophile; however, a protonated carbonyl group bears a full positive charge, rendering the carbon atom even more electrophilic. This is especially important when weak nucleophiles, such as H_2O or ROH, are employed, as we will see in the upcoming sections.

When a nucleophile attacks a carbonyl group under either acidic or basic conditions, the position of equilibrium is highly dependent on the ability of the nucleophile to function as a leaving group. A Grignard reagent is a very strong nucleophile, but it does not function as a leaving group (a carbanion is too unstable to leave). As a result, the equilibrium so greatly favors products that the reaction effectively occurs in only one direction. With a sufficient amount of nucleophile present, the ketone is not observed in the product mixture. In contrast, halides are good nucleophiles, but they are also good leaving groups. Therefore, when a halide functions as the nucleophile, an equilibrium is established, with the starting ketone generally being favored:

Once equilibrium has been achieved, the mixture consists primarily of the ketone, and only small quantities of the addition product.

In this chapter, we will explore a wide variety of nucleophiles, which will be classified according to the nature of the attacking atom. Specifically, we will see nucleophiles based on oxygen, sulfur, nitrogen, hydrogen, and carbon (Figure 19.2).

FIGURE 19.2
Various nucleophiles that can attack a carbonyl group.

The remainder of the chapter will be a methodical survey of the reactions that occur between the reagents in Figure 19.2 and ketones and aldehydes. We will begin our survey with oxygen nucleophiles.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

19.6 Draw a mechanism for each of the following reactions:

19.5 Oxygen Nucleophiles

Hydrate Formation

When an aldehyde or ketone is treated with water, the carbonyl group can be converted into a **hydrate**:

The position of equilibrium generally favors the carbonyl group rather than the hydrate, except in the case of very simple aldehydes, such as formaldehyde:

The rate of reaction is relatively slow under neutral conditions but is readily enhanced in the presence of either acid or base. That is, the reaction can be either acid-catalyzed or base-catalyzed, allowing the equilibrium to be achieved much more rapidly. Consider the base-catalyzed hydration of formaldehyde (Mechanism 19.3).

MECHANISM 19.3 BASE-CATALYZED HYDRATION

In the first step, a hydroxide ion (rather than water) functions as a nucleophile. Then, in the second step, the intermediate is protonated with water, regenerating a hydroxide ion. In this way, hydroxide serves as a catalyst for the addition of water across the carbonyl group.

Now consider the acid-catalyzed hydration of formaldehyde (Mechanism 19.4).

MECHANISM 19.4 ACID-CATALYZED HYDRATION

Under acid-catalyzed conditions, the carbonyl group is first protonated, generating a positively charged intermediate that is extremely electrophilic (it bears a full positive charge). This intermediate is then attacked by water to form an oxonium ion (a cation in which the positive charge resides on an oxygen atom), which is deprotonated to give the product.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

19.7 For most ketones, hydrate formation is unfavorable, because the equilibrium favors the ketone rather than the hydrate. However, the equilibrium for hydration of hexafluoroacetone favors formation of the hydrate: Provide a plausible explanation for this observation.

An Important Rule for Drawing Mechanisms

If we compare the mechanisms presented for base-catalyzed hydration (Mechanism 19.3) and acid-catalyzed hydration (Mechanism 19.4), an extremely important feature emerges. Under basic conditions, the mechanism employs a strong base (hydroxide) and a weak acid (water). Notice that a strong acid is not drawn (either as a reagent or as an intermediate) because it is unlikely to be present. In contrast, in acidic conditions, the mechanism employs a strong acid (H_3O^+) and a weak base (water). Notice that a strong base is not drawn (either as a reagent or as an intermediate) because it is unlikely to be present. This is an extremely important principle. When drawing mechanisms, it is important to consider the conditions being employed and to stay consistent with those conditions. That is, avoid drawing chemical entities that are unlikely to be present. This rule can be summarized as follows:

- *Under acidic conditions, a mechanism will only be reasonable if it avoids the use or formation of strong bases (only weak bases may be present).*
- *Under basic conditions, a mechanism will only be reasonable if it avoids the use or formation of strong acids (only weak acids may be present).*

It would be wise to internalize this rule, as we will see its application several times throughout this chapter and the upcoming chapters as well.

Acetal Formation

In this section, we have seen a reaction that can occur when water attacks an aldehyde or ketone. This section will explore a similar reaction, in which an alcohol attacks an aldehyde or ketone:

BY THE WAY
When the starting compound is a ketone, the product can also be called a "ketal." *Acetal* is a more general term, and it will be used exclusively for the remainder of this discussion.

In acidic conditions, an aldehyde or ketone will react with two molecules of alcohol to form an **acetal**. The brackets surrounding the H^+ indicate that the acid is a catalyst (brackets are not the standard convention for representing acid catalysis; nevertheless, we will use brackets to indicate acid catalysis throughout the remainder of this textbook). Common acids used for this purpose include *para*-toluenesulfonic acid (TsOH) and sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4):

***p*-Toluenesulfonic acid** (TsOH) **Sulfuric acid**

As mentioned earlier, the acid catalyst serves an important role in this reaction. Specifically, in the presence of an acid, the carbonyl group is protonated, rendering the carbon atom even more electrophilic. This is necessary because the nucleophile (an alcohol) is weak; it reacts with the carbonyl group more rapidly if the carbonyl group is first protonated. A mechanism for acetal formation is shown in Mechanism 19.5. This mechanism has many steps, and it is best to divide it conceptually into two parts: (1) The first three steps produce an intermediate called a **hemiacetal** and (2) the last four steps convert the hemiacetal into an acetal:

MECHANISM 19.5 ACETAL FORMATION

Let's begin our analysis of this mechanism by focusing on the first part: formation of the hemiacetal, which involves the three steps in Figure 19.3.

FIGURE 19.3
The sequence of steps involved in formation of a hemiacetal.

Proton transfer Nucleophilic attack Proton transfer

Notice that the sequence of steps begins and ends with a proton transfer. Let's focus on the details of these three steps:

1. The carbonyl group is protonated in the presence of an acid. The identity of the acid, HA^+, is most likely a protonated alcohol, which received its extra proton from the acid catalyst.

2. The protonated carbonyl group is a very powerful electrophile and is attacked by a molecule of alcohol (ROH) to form an oxonium ion.
3. The oxonium ion is deprotonated by a weak base (A), which is likely to be a molecule of alcohol present in solution.

Notice that the acid is not consumed in this process. A proton is used in step 1 and then returned in step 3, consistent with the catalytic nature of the proton in the reaction.

Now let's focus on the second part of the mechanism, conversion of the hemiacetal into an acetal, which is accomplished with the four steps in Figure 19.4.

FIGURE 19.4
The sequence of steps that convert a hemiacetal into an acetal.

Notice, once again, that the sequence of steps begins and ends with a proton transfer. A proton is consumed in the first step and then returned in the last step, but this time there are two middle steps rather than just one. When drawing a mechanism for acetal formation, make sure to draw these two steps separately. Combining these two steps is incorrect and represents one of the most common student errors when drawing this mechanism:

These two steps cannot occur simultaneously, because that would represent an S_N2 process occurring at a sterically hindered substrate. Such a process is disfavored and does not occur at an appreciable rate. Instead, the leaving group leaves first to form a resonance-stabilized intermediate, which is then attacked by the nucleophile in a separate step.

The equilibrium arrows in Mechanism 19.5 (acetal formation) indicate that the process is governed by an equilibrium. For many simple aldehydes, the equilibrium favors formation of the acetal, so aldehydes are readily converted into acetals by treatment with two equivalents of alcohol in acidic conditions:

However, for most ketones, the equilibrium favors reactants rather than products:

In such cases, formation of the acetal can be accomplished by removing one of the products (water) via a special distillation technique. By removing water as it is formed, the reaction can be forced to completion.

BY THE WAY
This technique exploits Le Châtelier's principle, which was covered in your general chemistry course. According to Le Châtelier's principle, if a system at equilibrium is upset by some disturbance, the system will change in a way that restores equilibrium.

Notice that acetal formation requires two equivalents of the alcohol. That is, two molecules of ROH are required for every molecule of ketone. Alternatively, a compound containing two OH groups can be used, forming a cyclic acetal. This reaction proceeds via the regular seven-step mechanism for acetal formation: three steps for formation of the hemiacetal followed by four steps for formation of the cyclic acetal:

The seven-step mechanism for acetal formation is very similar to other mechanisms that we will explore. It is therefore critical to master these seven steps. To help you draw the mechanism properly, remember to divide the entire mechanism into two parts, where each part begins and ends with a proton transfer step. Let's get some practice.

SKILLBUILDER

19.2 DRAWING THE MECHANISM OF ACETAL FORMATION

LEARN the skill

Draw a plausible mechanism for the following transformation.

SOLUTION

The reaction above is an example of acid-catalyzed acetal formation, in which the product is favored by the removal of water. The mechanism can be divided into two parts: (1) formation of the hemiacetal and (2) formation of the acetal. Formation of the hemiacetal involves three mechanistic steps:

Proton transfer **Nucleophilic attack** **Proton transfer**

When drawing these three steps, make sure to focus on proper arrow placement (as described in Chapter 6) and make sure to place all positive charges in their appropriate locations. Notice that every step requires two curved arrows.

STEP 1
Draw the three steps necessary for hemiacetal formation.

Now let's focus on the last four steps of the mechanism, in which the hemiacetal is converted into an acetal:

Proton transfer **Loss of a leaving group** **Nucleophilic attack** **Proton transfer**

Once again, this sequence of steps begins with a proton transfer and ends with a proton transfer. When drawing these four steps, make sure to draw the middle two steps separately,

STEP 2
Draw the four steps necessary to convert the hemiacetal into an acetal.

as discussed earlier. In addition, make sure to focus on proper arrow placement and make sure to place all positive charges in their appropriate locations:

PRACTICE the skill

19.8 Draw a plausible mechanism for each of the following transformations:

APPLY the skill

19.9 The natural product frontalin is a pheromone isolated from the pine beetle *Dendroctonus frontalis*, a species that accounts for much of the diseased timber found in the northern hemisphere. The following reaction was a step in a synthesis of frontalin:[2]

(a) What reagents and conditions are required for the transformation above?

(b) Draw a plausible mechanism for the reaction.

(c) Frontalin itself contains an acetal functional group. One way to make frontalin would be to form a cyclic acetal from the keto-diol precursor shown below. Based on this information, draw the structure of frontalin.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 19.55, 19.58, 19.65, 19.75, 19.76**

Acetals as Protecting Groups

Acetal formation is a reversible process that can be controlled by carefully choosing reagents and conditions.

As mentioned earlier in this section, acetal formation is favored by removal of water. To convert an acetal back into the corresponding aldehyde or ketone, it is simply treated with water in the presence

of an acid catalyst. In this way, acetals can be used to protect ketones or aldehydes. For example, consider how the following transformation might be accomplished:

This transformation involves reduction of an ester to form an alcohol. Recall that lithium aluminum hydride ($LiAlH_4$) can be used to accomplish this type of reaction. However, under these conditions, the ketone group will also be reduced. The problem above requires reduction of the ester group without also reducing the ketone group. To accomplish this, a protecting group can be used. The first step is to convert the ketone into an acetal:

Notice that the ketone group is converted into an acetal, but the ester group is not. The resulting acetal group is stable under strongly basic conditions and will not react with $LiAlH_4$. This makes it possible to reduce only the ester, after which the acetal can be removed to regenerate the ketone. The three steps are summarized below:

BioLinks Acetals as Prodrugs

Naparat/Shutterstock

In Chapter 18, we explored the concept of prodrugs—pharmacologically inactive compounds that are converted by the body into active compounds. Many strategies are used in the design of prodrugs. One such strategy involves an acetal group.

As an example, fluocinonide is a prodrug that contains an acetal group and is sold in a cream used for the topical treatment of eczema and other skin conditions.

Skin has several important functions, including preventing the absorption of foreign substances into the general circulation. This feature protects us from harmful substances, but it also prevents beneficial drugs from penetrating deep into the skin. This effect is most pronounced for drugs containing OH groups. Such drugs typically exhibit low dermal permeability (they are not readily absorbed by the skin). To circumvent this problem, two OH groups can be temporarily converted into an acetal. The acetal prodrug is capable of penetrating the skin more deeply, because it lacks the OH groups. Once the prodrug reaches its target, the acetal group is slowly hydrolyzed, thereby releasing the active drug:

Treatment with fluocinonide is significantly more effective than direct treatment with the active drug, because the latter cannot reach all of the affected areas.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

19.10 Propose an efficient synthesis for each of the following transformations:

(a)

(b)

(c)

19.11 Predict the product(s) for each reaction below:

(a)

(b)

Stable Hemiacetals

In this section, we have seen how to convert an aldehyde or ketone into an acetal. In most cases, it is very difficult to isolate the intermediate hemiacetal:

For ketones we saw that the equilibrium generally favors the reactants unless water is removed, which enables formation of the acetal. The hemiacetal is not favored under either set of conditions (with or without removal of water). However, when a compound contains both a carbonyl group and a hydroxyl group, the resulting cyclic hemiacetal can often be isolated; for example:

This will be important when we learn about carbohydrate chemistry in Chapter 24. Glucose, the major source of energy for the body, exists primarily as a cyclic hemiacetal:

Glucose (Open-chain) **Glucose** (Cyclic hemiacetal)

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

19.12 Draw a plausible mechanism for the following transformation:

19.13 Compound **A** has the molecular formula $C_8H_{14}O_2$. Upon treatment with catalytic acid, compound **A** is converted into the cyclic hemiacetal shown below. Identify the structure of compound **A**.

19.6 Nitrogen Nucleophiles

Primary Amines

In mildly acidic conditions, an aldehyde or ketone will react with a primary amine to form an **imine**:

Imines are compounds that possess a C═N double bond and are common in biological pathways. Imines are also called Schiff bases, named after Hugo Schiff, a German chemist who first described their formation. A six-step mechanism for imine formation is shown in Mechanism 19.6. It is best to divide the mechanism conceptually into two parts (just as we did to conceptualize the mechanism of acetal formation): (1) The first three steps produce an intermediate called a **carbinolamine** and (2) the last three steps convert the carbinolamine into an imine:

MECHANISM 19.6 IMINE FORMATION

Let's begin our analysis of this mechanism by focusing on the first part: formation of the carbinolamine, which involves the three steps in Figure 19.5. Notice that these steps are similar to the first

FIGURE 19.5
The sequence of steps involved in formation of a carbinolamine.

three steps of acetal formation (Mechanism 19.5), but the order of the steps has changed. Specifically, imine formation begins with a nucleophilic attack, while acetal formation begins with a proton transfer. To understand the difference, we must recognize that in the presence of an amine, any strong acid catalyst will transfer its proton to the amine, giving an ammonium ion:

This process is effectively irreversible as a result of the vast difference in pK_a values. That is, the number of molecules of HCl present in solution is negligible, and instead, the acidic species will be ammonium ions. Under these conditions, it is very unlikely that a ketone will be protonated, because protonated ketones are highly acidic species (p$K_a \approx -7$). The concentration of protonated ketone is therefore negligible, so it is unlikely to serve as an intermediate in our mechanism.

The first step in Mechanism 19.6 is a nucleophilic attack in which a molecule of amine (that has not been protonated) functions as a nucleophile and attacks the carbonyl group. The resulting intermediate can then undergo two successive proton transfer steps, generating a carbinolamine. As explained a moment ago, the identity of the acid HA^+ is most likely an ammonium ion:

Once the carbinolamine has been formed, formation of the imine is accomplished with three steps (Figure 19.6).

FIGURE 19.6
The sequence of steps that convert a carbinolamine into an imine.

The pH of the solution is an important consideration during imine formation, with the rate of reaction being greatest when the pH is around 4.5 (Figure 19.7). If the pH is too high (i.e., if no acid catalyst is used), the carbinolamine is not protonated (step 4 of the mechanism), so the reaction occurs more slowly. If the pH is too low (too much acid is used), most of the amine molecules will be protonated to give ammonium ions, which are not nucleophilic. Under these conditions, step 2 of the mechanism occurs too slowly. As a result, care must be taken to ensure optimal pH of the solution during imine formation.

FIGURE 19.7
The rate of imine formation as a function of pH.

SKILLBUILDER

19.3 DRAWING THE MECHANISM OF IMINE FORMATION

LEARN the skill

Draw a plausible mechanism for the following transformation:

SOLUTION

The reaction above is an example of imine formation. The mechanism can be divided into two parts: (1) formation of the carbinolamine and (2) formation of the imine.

Formation of the carbinolamine involves three mechanistic steps:

Nucleophilic attack **Proton transfer** **Proton transfer**

When drawing these three steps, make sure to place the head and tail of every curved arrow in its precise location and make sure to place all positive charges in their appropriate locations. Notice that every step requires two curved arrows.

STEP 1
Draw the three steps necessary to form a carbinolamine.

Now let's focus on the second part of the mechanism, in which the carbinolamine is converted into an imine. This requires three steps:

Proton transfer **Loss of a leaving group** **Proton transfer**

Make sure to place the head and tail of every curved arrow in its precise location and make sure to place all positive charges in their appropriate locations:

STEP 2
Draw the three steps necessary to convert the carbinolamine into an imine.

PRACTICE the skill

19.14 Draw a plausible mechanism for each of the following transformations:

19.15 Predict the major product for each of the following reactions:

APPLY the skill

19.16 Pinnatoxin A is a marine natural product isolated from the shellfish *Pinna muricata* and has demonstrated dangerous toxic effects in humans. Pinnatoxin A has a remarkably intricate structure that includes an iminium group (a protonated imine group).[3]

Pinnatoxin A

(a) As drawn above, pinnatoxin A is represented as a zwitterion, an overall neutral compound that exhibits charge separation. Draw pinnatoxin A as a neutral molecule containing an imine group (without charge separation).

(b) Pinnatoxin A was proposed to be formed biosynthetically from an intramolecular reaction in which a ketone and an amino group (tethered together in the same molecule) react with each other to form a cyclic imine. Draw the amino ketone precursor that would afford pinnatoxin A via intramolecular imine formation.

(c) Draw a mechanism for the formation of pinnatoxin A from the amino ketone precursor in the presence of an acid catalyst. For simplicity, it is acceptable to draw only the part of the structure where the reaction occurs, replacing the rest of the structure with R groups.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 19.59, 19.70**

Many different compounds of the form RNH_2 will react with aldehydes and ketones, including compounds in which R is not an alkyl group. In the following examples, the R group of the amine has been replaced with a group that has been highlighted in red:

An oxime

A hydrazone

LOOKING AHEAD
Hydrazones are synthetically useful, as we will see in the discussion of the Wolff–Kishner reduction in Section 19.6.

When hydroxylamine (NH_2OH) is used as a nucleophile, an **oxime** is formed. When hydrazine (NH_2NH_2) is used as a nucleophile, a **hydrazone** is formed. The mechanism for each of these reactions is directly analogous to the mechanism of imine formation.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

19.17 Predict the product of each of the following reactions:

(a)

(b)

19.18 Identify the reactants that you would use to make each of the following compounds:

(a)

(b)

WorldLinks Beta-Carotene and Vision

Beta-carotene is a naturally occurring compound found in many orange-colored fruits and vegetables, including carrots, sweet potatoes, pumpkins, mangoes, cantaloupes, and apricots. As mentioned in the chapter opener, beta-carotene is known to be good for your eyes. To understand why, we must explore what happens to beta-carotene in your body. Imine formation plays an important role in the process.

Collage_Best/iStock.com

Ints Vikmanis/Shutterstock

Beta-carotene is metabolized in the liver to produce vitamin A (also called retinol):

Vitamin A is then oxidized, and one of the double bonds undergoes isomerization to produce 11-*cis*-retinal:

The resulting aldehyde then reacts with an amino group of a protein (called opsin) to produce rhodopsin, which possesses an imine group:

As described in Section 16.13, rhodopsin can absorb a photon of light, initiating a photoisomerization of the *cis* double bond to form a *trans* double bond. The resulting change in geometry triggers a signal that is ultimately detected by the brain and interpreted as vision.

A deficiency of vitamin A can lead to "night blindness," a condition that prevents the eyes from adjusting to dimly lit environments.

Lane V. Erickson/Shutterstock

Secondary Amines

In acidic conditions, an aldehyde or ketone will react with a secondary amine to form an **enamine**:

Enamines are compounds in which the nitrogen lone pair is delocalized by the presence of an adjacent C═C double bond. A mechanism for enamine formation is shown in Mechanism 19.7.

MECHANISM 19.7 ENAMINE FORMATION

This mechanism of enamine formation is identical to the mechanism that was shown for imine formation except for the last step:

The difference in the iminium ions explains the different outcomes for the two reactions. During imine formation, the nitrogen atom of the iminium ion possesses a proton that can be removed as the final step of the mechanism. In contrast, during enamine formation, the nitrogen atom of the iminium ion does not possess a proton. As a result, elimination from the adjacent carbon is necessary in order to yield a neutral species.

SKILLBUILDER

19.4 DRAWING THE MECHANISM OF ENAMINE FORMATION

LEARN the skill

Draw a plausible mechanism for the following reaction.

SOLUTION

The reaction above is an example of enamine formation. The mechanism can be divided into two parts: (1) formation of the carbinolamine and (2) formation of the enamine.

Formation of the carbinolamine involves three mechanistic steps:

Nucleophilic attack **Proton transfer** **Proton transfer**

STEP 1
Draw the three steps necessary to form a carbinolamine.

When drawing these three steps, make sure to place the head and tail of every curved arrow in its precise location and make sure to place all positive charges in their appropriate locations. Notice that every step requires two curved arrows.

In the second part of the mechanism, the carbinolamine is converted into an enamine via a three-step process:

Proton transfer **Loss of a leaving group** **Proton transfer**

STEP 2
Draw the three steps necessary to convert the carbinolamine into an enamine.

PRACTICE the skill

19.19 Draw a plausible mechanism for each of the following reactions:

(a)

(b)

19.20 Predict the major product for each of the following reactions:

APPLY the skill

19.21 Chiral amines are used to catalyze a host of different enantioselective transformations. For instance, proline (explored further in Chapter 25) is a naturally occurring, chiral amino acid that can be used as a catalyst to transform many simple starting materials into complex organic building blocks.[4] An example of a proline-catalyzed reaction is the following enantioselective formation of the Wieland–Miescher ketone, a ketone used commonly in the synthesis of steroids and other natural products. In the first step of this process, compound **1** is treated with proline to give intermediate **2**, which rapidly undergoes an intramolecular process (as we will see in Chapter 21) to give compound **3**:

(a) Determine the structure of proline.

(b) Draw a mechanism for the reaction between **1** and proline to give **2**.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 19.60, 19.73g, 19.74**

Wolff–Kishner Reduction

In this section, we noted that ketones can be converted into hydrazones. This transformation has practical utility, because hydrazones are readily reduced under strongly basic conditions:

This transformation is called the **Wolff–Kishner reduction**, named after the German chemist Ludwig Wolff and the Russian chemist N. M. Kishner. This provides a two-step procedure for reducing a ketone to an alkane:

The second part of the Wolff–Kishner reduction is believed to proceed via Mechanism 19.8.

MECHANISM 19.8 THE WOLFF–KISHNER REDUCTION

Notice that four of the five steps in the mechanism are proton transfers, the exception being the loss of N_2 gas to generate a carbanion. The evolution of nitrogen gas renders this step irreversible and forces the reaction to completion. As a result, the yields for this process are generally very good.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

19.22 Predict the product of the following two-step procedure and draw a mechanism for its formation:

19.7 Hydrolysis of Acetals, Imines, and Enamines

In our discussion of acetals as protecting groups (Section 19.5), we saw that treatment of an acetal with aqueous acid affords the corresponding aldehyde or ketone:

This process is called a **hydrolysis** reaction, because bonds are cleaved (shown with red wavy lines) by treatment with water. Acetal hydrolysis generally requires acid catalysis. That is, acetals do not undergo hydrolysis under aqueous basic conditions:

Acetal hydrolysis is believed to proceed via Mechanism 19.9. Since acidic conditions are employed, the mechanism does not involve any reagents or intermediates that are strong bases. For example, in the third step of the mechanism, water is used as a nucleophile, rather than hydroxide, because the latter is not present in substantial quantities. Similarly, H_3O^+ is used in all protonation steps (such as the first step), because the use of water as a proton source would generate a hydroxide ion, which

is unlikely to form in acidic conditions. Always remember that a mechanism must be consistent with the conditions employed. In acidic conditions, strong bases should not be invoked as reagents or intermediates.

MECHANISM 19.9 HYDROLYSIS OF ACETALS

Notice that acetal hydrolysis proceeds via a hemiacetal intermediate, just as we saw with acetal formation. In fact, all of the intermediates involved in acetal hydrolysis are identical to the intermediates involved in acetal formation, but in reverse order. This is illustrated in the following scheme:

Conversion of a ketone (compound **1**) to an acetal (compound **8**) is achieved via intermediates **2**–**7**. The reverse process (conversion of **8** to **1**) is achieved via the same intermediates (**2**–**7**), but in reverse order (first **7**, then **6**, etc.).

Imines and enamines also undergo hydrolysis when treated with aqueous acid, and the red wavy lines (below) indicate the bonds that undergo cleavage:

Once again, the intermediates involved in imine hydrolysis are the same as the intermediates involved in imine formation, but in reverse order. Similarly, the intermediates involved in enamine hydrolysis are the same as the intermediates involved in enamine formation, but in reverse order.

Let's get some practice identifying the products of some hydrolysis reactions.

SKILLBUILDER

19.5 DRAWING THE PRODUCTS OF A HYDROLYSIS REACTION

LEARN the skill

Draw the products that are expected from the following reaction:

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Identify which bond(s) undergo bond cleavage.

The starting compound is an enamine, and it is being treated with aqueous acid, so a hydrolysis reaction is expected. Begin by identifying the bond(s) that will undergo cleavage. When an enamine undergoes hydrolysis, cleavage occurs for the bond between the nitrogen atom and the sp^2-hybridized carbon atom to which it is attached:

In our case, this corresponds with the following bond:

STEP 2
Identify the carbon atom that is converted into a carbonyl group.

Next, identify the carbon atom that will ultimately become a carbonyl group in the product. For enamine hydrolysis, it is the sp^2-hybridized carbon atom connected to the nitrogen atom, highlighted below:

STEP 3
Draw the other fragment(s).

Finally, determine the identity of the other fragment(s). As a result of the C—N bond cleavage, the carbon atom becomes a carbonyl group, and the nitrogen atom will accept a proton to generate a secondary amine, as shown below:

PRACTICE the skill

19.23 Draw the products that are expected for each of the following reactions:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

(f)

APPLY the skill

19.24 The mechanism for acetal hydrolysis has been heavily investigated. In one study, which explored rates as well as stereochemical aspects, compound **1** was treated with aqueous acid to afford compound **2**.[5] Draw the structure of **2**, clearly showing the configuration of any chiral center(s).

1

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 19.61, 19.62, 19.68, 19.78**

The BioLinks box below provides an example of a hydrolysis process that is exploited in drug design.

BioLinks Prodrugs

Methenamine as a Prodrug of Formaldehyde

Formaldehyde has antiseptic properties and has been employed in the treatment of urinary tract infections due to its ability to react with nucleophiles present in urine. However, formaldehyde can be toxic when exposed to other regions of the body. Therefore, the use of formaldehyde as an antiseptic agent requires a method for selective delivery to the urinary tract. This has been accomplished by using a prodrug called methenamine:

Methenamine

This compound is a nitrogen analogue of an acetal. That is, each carbon atom is connected to two nitrogen atoms, very much like an acetal in which a carbon atom is connected to two oxygen atoms. A carbon atom that is connected to two heteroatoms (O or N) can undergo acid-catalyzed hydrolysis:

Z = O or N

Each of the carbon atoms in methenamine can be hydrolyzed, releasing formaldehyde:

Formaldehyde

Methenamine is placed in special tablets that do not dissolve as they travel through the acidic environment of the stomach but do dissolve once they reach the basic environment of the intestinal tract. Methenamine is thereby released in the intestinal tract, where it is stable under basic conditions. Once it reaches the acidic environment of the urinary tract, methenamine is hydrolyzed, releasing formaldehyde, as shown above. In this way, methenamine can be used as a prodrug that enables delivery of formaldehyde specifically to the urinary tract. This method prevents the systemic release of formaldehyde in other organs of the body where it would be toxic.

Methenamine has largely been replaced by antibiotics as the primary treatment for urinary tract infections, although it is still used in cases involving bacteria that are resistant to available antibiotics.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

19.25 As described above, methenamine is hydrolyzed in aqueous acid to produce formaldehyde and ammonia. Draw a mechanism showing formation of one molecule of formaldehyde (the remaining five molecules of formaldehyde are each released via a similar sequence of steps). The release of each molecule of formaldehyde is directly analogous to the hydrolysis of an acetal. To get you started, the first two steps are provided below:

19.8 Sulfur Nucleophiles

In acidic conditions, an aldehyde or ketone will react with two equivalents of a thiol to form a **thioacetal**:

Thioacetal

This transformation proceeds via a mechanism that is directly analogous to acetal formation, with sulfur atoms taking the place of oxygen atoms. If a compound with two SH groups is used, a cyclic thioacetal is formed:

Cyclic thioacetal

When treated with Raney nickel, thioacetals undergo **desulfurization**, yielding an alkane:

Raney Ni is a porous, Ni-Al alloy, in which the surface has adsorbed hydrogen atoms. It is these hydrogen atoms that ultimately replace the sulfur atoms, although a mechanistic discussion for desulfurization is beyond the scope of this text.

The reactions above provide us with another two-step method for the reduction of a ketone:

This method involves formation of the thioacetal followed by desulfurization with Raney nickel. It is the third method we have encountered for achieving this type of transformation. The other two methods are the Clemmensen reduction (Section 18.6) and the Wolff–Kishner reduction (Section 19.6).

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

19.26 Predict the major product for each of the following:

(a)

(b)

19.27 Draw the structure of the cyclic compound that is produced when acetone is treated with 1,3-propanedithiol in the presence of an acid catalyst.

19.9 Hydrogen Nucleophiles

When treated with a hydride reducing agent, such as lithium aluminum hydride ($LiAlH_4$) or sodium borohydride ($NaBH_4$), aldehydes and ketones are reduced to alcohols:

These reactions were discussed in Section 12.4, and we saw that $LiAlH_4$ and $NaBH_4$ both function as delivery agents of hydride (H^-). The mechanism of action for these reagents has been heavily investigated and is somewhat complex. Nevertheless, the simplified version shown in Mechanism 19.10 (which illustrates the reaction between $LiAlH_4$ and a ketone) will be sufficient for our purposes.

MECHANISM 19.10 THE REDUCTION OF KETONES OR ALDEHYDES WITH HYDRIDE AGENTS

In the first step of the mechanism, the reducing agent delivers a hydride ion, which attacks the carbonyl group, producing an alkoxide intermediate. This intermediate is then treated with aqueous acid to yield the product. This simplified mechanism does not take into account many important observations, such as the role of the lithium cation (Li^+). For example, when 12-crown-4 is added to the reaction mixture, the lithium ions are solvated (as described in Section 13.4), and reduction does not occur. Clearly, the lithium cation plays a pivotal role in the mechanism. However, a full treatment of the mechanism of hydride reducing agents is beyond the scope of this text, and the simplified version (Mechanism 19.10) will suffice.

LOOKING BACK
Hydride cannot function as a leaving group because it is too strongly basic. (See Section 7.7.)

The reduction of a carbonyl group with $LiAlH_4$ or $NaBH_4$ is not a reversible process, because hydride does not function as a leaving group. Notice that the first step of Mechanism 19.10 employs an irreversible reaction arrow (rather than equilibrium arrows) to signify that the rate of the reverse process is insignificant.

As first described in Section 12.4, when an unsymmetrical ketone is reduced with a hydride reducing agent, such as $LiAlH_4$ or $NaBH_4$, a new chiral center is generated, and a pair of stereoisomers is obtained. For example, reduction of the following ketone gives a racemic mixture of enantiomers, because the hydride nucleophile can attack either face of the planar carbonyl group with equal likelihood.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

19.28 Predict the major product(s) for each of the following reactions:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

19.29 When 2 moles of benzaldehyde are treated with sodium hydroxide, a reaction occurs in which 1 mole of benzaldehyde is oxidized (giving benzoic acid) while the other mole of benzaldehyde is reduced (giving benzyl alcohol):

This reaction, called the *Cannizzaro reaction*, is believed to occur via the following mechanism: A hydroxide ion serves as a nucleophile to attack the carbonyl group of benzaldehyde. The resulting intermediate then functions as a hydride reducing agent by delivering a hydride ion to another molecule of benzaldehyde. In this way, one molecule is reduced while the other is oxidized.

(a) Draw a mechanism for the Cannizzaro reaction, consistent with the description above.

(b) What is the function of H_3O^+ in the second step?

(c) Water alone is not sufficient to accomplish the function of the second step. Explain.

19.10 Carbon Nucleophiles

Grignard Reagents

When treated with a Grignard reagent, aldehydes and ketones are converted into alcohols, accompanied by the formation of a new C—C bond:

Notice that the second example involves formation of a chiral center, and a racemic mixture of enantiomers is obtained, because the Grignard reagent can attack either face of the carbonyl group with equal likelihood. Grignard reactions were discussed in more detail in Section 12.6. The mechanism of action for these reagents has been heavily investigated and is fairly complex. The simplified version shown in Mechanism 19.11 will be sufficient for our purposes.

MECHANISM 19.11 THE REACTION BETWEEN A GRIGNARD REAGENT AND A KETONE OR ALDEHYDE

LOOKING BACK
Carbanions rarely function as leaving groups because they are generally strongly basic.

Grignard reactions are not reversible because carbanions generally do not function as leaving groups. Notice that the first step of the mechanism (nucleophilic attack) is shown with an irreversible reaction arrow to signify that the reverse process is insignificant.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

19.30 Predict the major product(s) for each of the following:

19.31 Identify reagents that can be used to accomplish each of the transformations below:

Cyanohydrin Formation

When treated with hydrogen cyanide (HCN), aldehydes and ketones are converted into **cyanohydrins**, which are characterized by the presence of a cyano group and a hydroxyl group connected to the same carbon atom:

A cyanohydrin

This reaction was studied extensively by Arthur Lapworth (University of Manchester) and was found to occur more rapidly in mildly basic conditions. In the presence of a catalytic amount of

base, a small amount of hydrogen cyanide is deprotonated to give cyanide ions, which catalyze the reaction (Mechanism 19.12).

MECHANISM 19.12 CYANOHYDRIN FORMATION

In the first step, a cyanide ion attacks the carbonyl group. The resulting intermediate then abstracts a proton from HCN, regenerating a cyanide ion. In this way, cyanide functions as a catalyst for the addition of HCN to the carbonyl group.

Rather than using a catalytic amount of base to form cyanide ions, the reaction can simply be performed in a mixture of HCN and cyanide ions (from KCN). The process is reversible, and the yield of products is therefore determined by equilibrium concentrations. For most aldehydes and unhindered ketones, the equilibrium favors formation of the cyanohydrin:

Notice that the second example involves formation of a new chiral center, and a racemic mixture of enantiomers is obtained. A new chiral center will be formed whenever an aldehyde or an unsymmetrical ketone is converted into a cyanohydrin.

HCN is a liquid at room temperature and is extremely hazardous to handle because it is highly toxic and volatile (b.p. = 26°C). To avoid the dangers associated with handling HCN, cyanohydrins can also be prepared by treating a ketone or aldehyde with potassium cyanide and an alternate source of protons, such as HCl:

Cyanohydrins are useful in syntheses, because the cyano group can be further treated to yield a range of products. Two examples are shown below:

In the first example, the cyano group is reduced to an amino group. In the second example, the cyano group is hydrolyzed to give a carboxylic acid. Both of these reactions and their mechanisms will be explored in more detail in Chapter 20.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

19.32 Predict the major product for each of the following reaction sequences:

(a)

(b)

19.33 Identify the reagents necessary to accomplish each of the transformations below:

(a)

(b)

WorldLinks Organic Cyanide Compounds in Nature

Well over 1500 species of plants are known to make compounds containing a cyanide group covalently bonded to a sugar (usually glucose). The plants make these compounds as a deterrent to herbivores. In general, the cyanide functional group is non toxic as long as it is covalently bonded to an organic molecule. However, the cyanide ion is released when an animal eats the plant and metabolizes (digests) the cyanide-containing compounds, thereby rendering the plant poisonous.

Linamarin

The cassava plant produces a thick root, called a tuber, that is one of the most widely grown crops in tropical Africa and South America. The purified starch from cassava roots is marketed as tapioca. However, cassava roots contain the cyanide compound linamarin. When the root is damaged, the cyanide group is hydrolyzed from the rest of the molecule, rendering the root poisonous. HCl in the consumer's stomach and hydrolytic enzymes in the lower intestinal tract will further catalyze the hydrolysis of linamarin, as shown.

This last step should look familiar! It is the reverse of cyanohydrin formation, and HCN gas is produced by this process. In order to eat cassava tubers safely, humans have developed methods to process the tubers by cooking, soaking, fermenting, or drying them in order to release HCN gas prior to consumption. Lima beans (butter beans) originally contained substantial amounts of linamarin, and had to be soaked and cooked thoroughly to remove the cyanide compounds. However, current commercial varieties of Lima beans have been bred to contain only trace amounts of linamarin.

Amygdalin

Amygdalin, shown below, is a cyanide compound (similar to linamarin) that can be found in apple seeds, as well as in the pits of apricots, black cherries, bitter almonds, and peaches. When consumed, amygdalin undergoes a reaction similar to the one shown for linamarin, thereby releasing toxic HCN. Commercial almond trees (sweet almonds) have been bred to contain only trace amounts of amygdalin in the almond "pit," although they still contain benzaldehyde, which contributes to the characteristic flavor of almonds.

A derivative of amygdalin isolated from apricot pits was marketed under the trade name *Laetrile* in the 1970s and was widely promoted as a treatment for cancer. Some Laetrile proponents claimed (without clinical data) that it was only toxic to cancer cells, while remaining nontoxic to noncancerous cells. Although it is illegal to promote amygdalin as a cure for cancer in the U.S., apricot pits are still being promoted by some alternative health practitioners, and Laetrile is legally available in Mexico.

Taxiphyllin

Bamboo shoots are a common staple in East Asian diets, but are often high in the cyanide compound taxiphyllin. When consumed, taxiphyllin can also undergo a reaction releasing

HCN gas. Like cassava tubers, bamboo shoots (shown at right) must be boiled to hydrolyze and evaporate off the HCN gas before consumption. Giant pandas obviously don't do this and presumably have an enzyme that detoxifies the cyanide ion.

Taxiphyllin

Keren Su/Getty Images

Wittig Reactions

Georg Wittig, a German chemist, was awarded the 1979 Nobel Prize in Chemistry for his work with phosphorus compounds and his discovery of a reaction with enormous synthetic utility. This reaction is called the **Wittig reaction** (pronounced Vittig):

The reaction converts a ketone or aldehyde into an alkene by forming a new C═C bond at the location of the carbonyl group. Because it forms an alkene product, this reaction is also known as the Wittig olefination reaction (the term "olefin" was once commonly used for unsaturated compounds such as alkenes). The phosphorus-containing reagent that accomplishes this transformation is called a phosphorus ylide. An **ylide** is a neutral molecule that contains a negatively charged atom (C^- in this case) directly attached to a positively charged heteroatom (P^+ in this case). The phosphorus ylide shown above, also called a **Wittig reagent**, is a carbanion that is stabilized by resonance:

Wittig reagent

Even though the second resonance structure (with a C═P double bond and no formal charges) appears to be more stable, it does not contribute much character to the overall resonance hybrid, because the 2*p* orbital on C and the 3*p* orbital on P are significantly different in size and do not effectively overlap. A similar argument was used to describe S═O bonds in the previous chapter (Section 18.3). Despite this fact, Wittig reagents may be drawn using either resonance form. Although the ylide is often represented with a C═P double bond, it is the other resonance structure that reflects the true reactivity of a Wittig reagent: it is a nucleophilic carbanion.

A mechanism for the Wittig reaction is shown below (Mechanism 19.13). There is strong evidence that the first step involves a [2+2] cycloaddition process (Section 16.8), with the nucleophilic carbon of the Wittig reagent attacking the electrophilic carbon of the carbonyl group, with concurrent formation of an O—P bond. The resulting four-membered ring intermediate, called an oxaphosphetane, then undergoes fragmentation to give the alkene product.

MECHANISM 19.13 THE WITTIG REACTION

A Wittig reagent can be prepared in two steps from an alkyl halide. First, the alkyl halide is treated with triphenylphosphine (PPh_3) to give an S_N2 reaction, and the resulting salt is then treated with a strong base, such as *n*-butyllithium (*n*-BuLi), to produce the Wittig reagent:

Since the first step is an S_N2 process, the regular restrictions of S_N2 processes apply. Specifically, primary alkyl halides will react more readily than secondary alkyl halides, and tertiary alkyl halides cannot be used. A variety of strong bases can be used to deprotonate the phosphonium salt intermediate, including NaH, $NaNH_2$, and PhLi. The Wittig reaction is useful for preparing mono-, di-, or trisubstituted alkenes. Tetrasubstituted alkenes are more difficult to prepare due to steric hindrance in the transition states.

The Wittig reaction is an important synthetic tool because it installs a C═C double bond at a precise location (by exactly replacing the carbonyl C═O double bond), and it also provides reasonably good stereoselectivity. For a Wittig reagent generated from a simple alkyl halide, the (*Z*)-alkene is generally the major product:

But the outcome is different if the Wittig reagent contains an electron-withdrawing group (such as a carbonyl group), or some other group (such as an aromatic ring) that can stabilize the carbanion, as seen in the following two Wittig reagents:

In each case, the Wittig reagent is stabilized by resonance and is therefore said to be a *stabilized Wittig reagent*. When such reagents are used, the (*E*)-alkene generally predominates, as seen in the following examples:

Many variations of the Wittig reaction are also commonly used. For example, in the Horner–Wadsworth–Emmons reaction (or HWE reaction), a phosphonate ester carbanion reagent (HWE reagent) is used instead of a stabilized Wittig reagent, although these reagents are very similar in structure:

A stabilized Wittig reagent
(resonance-stabilized by ester group)

HWE reagent
(a resonance-stabilized phosphonate ester carbanion)

Since the HWE reagent is also highly stabilized by resonance (much like a stabilized Wittig reagent), it will react with an aldehyde or ketone to give the (*E*)-alkene as the major product.

Major

There are many factors that contribute to the stereochemical outcome of Wittig and HWE reactions, including the solvent used and the presence of Li^+ salts or Lewis acids. Reaction conditions that provide relatively good control of stereochemistry often result in the formation of mixtures of stereoisomers, but these can typically be separated and purified to give a single major product.

SKILLBUILDER

19.6 PREDICTING THE MAJOR PRODUCT OF A WITTIG OR HWE REACTION

LEARN the skill

Predict the major product of the following reaction:

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Identify the nucleophile and electrophile.

The starting material is a ketone (an electrophile) and it is being treated with a Wittig reagent (a carbanion nucleophile):

STEP 2
Determine whether the Wittig reagent is stabilized.

We therefore expect that the product will be an alkene. If this alkene is capable of stereoisomerism, then the type of Wittig reagent will determine the stereochemical outcome. A nonstabilized Wittig reagent gives mainly a (*Z*)-alkene as the major product, while a stabilized Wittig reagent (or HWE reagent) gives mainly an (*E*)-alkene as the major product. In this case, the Wittig reagent has no additional resonance forms so it is described as "nonstabilized:"

STEP 3
Draw the alkene product with the appropriate stereochemistry.

Therefore, we expect the major product to be the (*Z*)-alkene. To draw this alkene, we simply swap the two highlighted groups, making sure to draw the (*Z*)-isomer as the major product.

PRACTICE the skill

19.34 Predict the major product for each of the following reactions.

19.35 In the following reaction, a Wittig reagent is generated *in situ* by mixing the phosphonium salt with a strong base, in the presence of an aldehyde (note that ester groups are generally not reactive toward Wittig reagents). Predict the product of this reaction. Note that NaHMDS is a strong base with a negative charge on nitrogen, like $NaNH_2$.

APPLY the skill

19.36 The following reaction is from a synthesis of the natural product salinipyrone A.[6] After being synthesized, salinipyrone A was then screened for antitumor activity. Predict the major product of this reaction. Note that the TBS-protected alcohol is stable to the Wittig reaction conditions.

19.37 While developing the synthesis of a natural product, model systems are commonly used to study new reactions. In the reaction shown below, the product was used to prepare such a model compound in the synthesis of the anti-HIV compound didemniserinolipid B.[7] Predict the major product for this Wittig reaction. Note that the acetal groups are stable to the Wittig reaction conditions:

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 19.50, 19.51, 19.79, 19.96**

When an alkene is made via a Wittig or HWE reaction, a retrosynthetic analysis will always reveal two possibilities to consider, as illustrated in the following case:

The target molecule is an alkene, and it can be made via either route, although one is much more efficient than the other. To identify the more efficient synthetic route, we must compare the Wittig reagents and consider how easily each can be made. The first Wittig reagent ($Ph_3P{=}CH_2$) can be made from a methyl halide (CH_3X), while the second Wittig reagent must be made from a secondary alkyl halide:

In each case, the first step in preparation of the Wittig reagent is an S_N2 reaction with PPh_3, and we expect that a methyl halide will be more reactive towards S_N2 than a secondary alkyl halide. Therefore, we choose the route that begins with a methyl halide:

Note that CH_3I is the preferred version of CH_3X since it is a liquid at room temperature, while the others (CH_3Cl and CH_3Br) are gases.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

19.38 Identify reactants that you would use to prepare each of the following compounds via a Wittig reaction:

(a)

(b)

(c)

19.11 Baeyer–Villiger Oxidation of Aldehydes and Ketones

When treated with a peroxy acid, ketones can be converted into esters via the insertion of an oxygen atom.

This reaction, discovered by Adolf von Baeyer and Victor Villiger in 1899, is called the **Baeyer–Villiger oxidation**. This process is believed to proceed via Mechanism 19.14.

MECHANISM 19.14 THE BAEYER–VILLIGER OXIDATION

The first three steps of the mechanism convert the starting ketone into an uncharged, tetrahedral intermediate (note that these three steps are analagous to the first three steps of acetal formation). The intermediate can then reform the carbonyl group via migration of an R group, and a subsequent proton transfer step completes the reaction. The overall process converts a ketone into an ester.

In much the same way, treatment of a cyclic ketone with a peroxy acid yields a cyclic ester, or **lactone**.

A lactone

When an unsymmetrical ketone is treated with a peroxy acid, formation of the ester is regioselective; for example:

In this case, the oxygen atom is inserted on the left side of the carbonyl group, rather than the right side. This occurs because the isopropyl group migrates more rapidly than the methyl group during the rearrangement step of the mechanism. The migration rates of different groups, or **migratory aptitude**, can be summarized as follows:

$$H > 3^\circ > 2^\circ, Ph > 1^\circ > \text{methyl}$$

A hydrogen atom will migrate more rapidly than a tertiary alkyl group, which will migrate more rapidly than a secondary alkyl group or phenyl group. Below is one more example that illustrates this concept:

In this example, the oxygen atom is inserted on the right side of the carbonyl, because the hydrogen atom exhibits a greater migratory aptitude than the phenyl group.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

19.39 Predict the major product of each reaction below:

(a)

(b)

(c)

19.12 Synthesis Strategies

Recall from Chapter 11 that there are two main questions to ask when approaching a synthesis problem:

1. *Is there any change in the carbon skeleton?*
2. *Is there any change in the functional group?*

Let's focus on these issues separately, beginning with functional groups.

Functional Group Interconversion

In previous chapters, we learned how to interconvert many different functional groups (Figure 19.8). The reactions in this chapter expand the playing field by opening up the frontier of aldehydes and ketones. You should be able to fill in the reagents for each transformation in Figure 19.8. If you are having trouble, refer to Figure 12.11 for help. Then, you should be able to make a list of the various products that can be made from aldehydes and ketones and identify the required reagents in each case.

FIGURE 19.8
Functional groups that can be interconverted using reactions that we have learned thus far.

Reactions Involving a Change in Carbon Skeleton

In this chapter, we have seen three C—C bond-forming reactions: (1) a Grignard reaction, (2) cyanohydrin formation, and (3) a Wittig reaction:

We have only seen one C—C bond-breaking reaction in this chapter: the Baeyer–Villiger oxidation:

Of the new reactions we've learned in this chapter to change the carbon skeleton, the Wittig reaction is especially significant because it represents a new method for synthesizing alkene target molecules. In Table 11.1 (Chapter 11), we summarized the transformations we had learned to that point as a "Synthetic Toolbox Review." Table 19.3 illustrates how the Wittig reaction adds to our existing options for the synthesis of alkenes.

TABLE 19.3 AN UPDATE TO OUR EXISTING SYNTHETIC TOOLBOX (TABLE 11.1) TO SUMMARIZE THE SYNTHESIS OF ALKENES

TARGET MOLECULE		POSSIBLE STARTING MATERIAL TO MAKE ALKENE PRODUCT		EXAMPLE
Alkene (by FGI)	⟹	Alkyl halide (E2)		NaOMe (or Hofmann *t*-BuOK) →
		Alcohol (E1)		conc. H_2SO_4, heat →
		Alkyne		H_2, Lindlar's cat. (or *trans* Na/NH_3) →
Alkene (new C—C bond)	⟹	**Ketone/Aldehyde**		$Ph_3P{=}CH_2$ (Wittig) →

SKILLBUILDER

19.7 PROPOSING A SYNTHESIS

LEARN the skill

Propose an efficient synthesis for the following transformation:

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Inspect whether there is a change in the carbon skeleton and/or a change in the identity or location of the functional groups.

Always begin a synthesis problem by asking the following two questions:

1. *Is there any change in the carbon skeleton?* Yes. The product has two additional carbon atoms.
2. *Is there any change in the functional groups?* No. Both the starting material and the product have a double bond in the exact same location. If we destroy the double bond in the process of installing the two carbon atoms, we will need to make sure that we do so in such a way that we can restore the double bond.

STEP 2
Perform a retrosynthetic analysis, considering all of the C—C bond-forming reactions and all of the C—C bond-breaking reactions that you have learned so far.

The target molecule has two additional carbon atoms, so the synthesis requires a C—C bond-forming reaction. The retrosynthetic analysis of the target molecule begins with the following question: "What reaction have we seen that produces an alkene product?" One way the alkene can be prepared is by elimination of the corresponding alcohol, and the alcohol is suitable for making the required C—C bond disconnection (at the α position):

The required aldehyde can be prepared from the given alkene starting material via hydroboration-oxidation, followed by oxidation with PCC, as shown here:

C—C Bond-forming reaction

This provides us with a four-step procedure, and this answer is certainly reasonable.

Let's now explore the possibility of proposing a synthesis with a Wittig reaction. Recall that a Wittig reaction can be used to form a C=C bond, so we focus on formation of this bond:

This bond can be formed if we start with a ketone and use the following Wittig reagent:

To use this reaction, we must first form the necessary ketone from the starting alkene:

This can be accomplished with ozonolysis. This gives a two-step procedure for accomplishing the desired transformation: ozonolysis followed by a Wittig reaction. This approach is

different than our first answer. In this approach, we are not installing a two-carbon chain, but rather, we are first expelling a carbon atom and then installing a three-carbon chain.

In summary, we have discovered two plausible methods. Both methods are acceptable, but the method employing the Wittig reaction is likely to be more efficient, because it requires fewer steps.

PRACTICE the skill

19.40 Propose an efficient synthesis for each of the following transformations:

APPLY the skill

19.41 The anti-tumor compound maytansine was originally isolated from the Ethiopian shrub *Maytenus serrata*. Development of a multistep synthesis of maytansine involved compound **1** as a key precursor.[8] Propose an efficient synthesis of **1** starting with acetylene, acetone, and formaldehyde as the only sources of carbon atoms.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 19.53, 19.65–19.67, 19.69, 19.73, 19.96, 19.97**

19.13 Spectroscopic Analysis of Aldehydes and Ketones

Aldehydes and ketones exhibit several characteristic signals in their infrared (IR) and nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) spectra. We will now summarize these characteristic signals.

IR Signals

The carbonyl group produces a strong signal in an IR spectrum, generally around 1715 or 1720 cm^{-1}. However, a conjugated carbonyl group will produce a signal at a lower wavenumber as a result of electron delocalization via resonance effects:

LOOKING BACK
For an explanation of this effect, see Section 14.3.

Ring strain has the opposite effect on a carbonyl group. That is, increasing ring strain tends to increase the wavenumber of absorption:

Aldehydes exhibit two signals (C—H stretching) at approximately 2700 and 2850 cm^{-1} (Figure 19.9) in addition to the C═O stretch.

FIGURE 19.9
An IR spectrum of an aldehyde.

^{1}H NMR Signals

In a ^{1}H NMR spectrum, the carbonyl group itself does not produce a signal. However, it has a pronounced effect on the chemical shift of neighboring protons. We saw in Section 15.5 that a carbonyl group typically adds approximately +1 ppm to the chemical shift of its neighbors:

Aldehydic protons generally produce signals around 10 ppm. These signals can usually be identified with relative ease, because very few signals appear that far downfield in a ^{1}H NMR spectrum (Figure 19.10).

FIGURE 19.10
A ^{1}H NMR spectrum of an aldehyde.

^{13}C NMR Signals

In a ^{13}C NMR spectrum, a carbonyl group of a ketone or aldehyde will generally produce a weak signal near 200 ppm. This signal can often be identified with relative ease, because very few signals appear that far downfield in a ^{13}C NMR spectrum (Figure 19.11).

FIGURE 19.11
A ^{13}C NMR spectrum of a ketone.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

19.42 Compound **A** has the molecular formula $C_{10}H_{10}O$ and exhibits a strong signal at 1720 cm^{-1} in its IR spectrum. Treatment with 1,2-ethanedithiol followed by Raney nickel affords the product shown. Identify the structure of compound **A**.

REVIEW OF REACTIONS

SYNTHETICALLY USEFUL REACTIONS

1. Hydrate Formation
2. Acetal Formation
3. Cyclic Acetal Formation
4. Cyclic Thioacetal Formation
5. Desulfurization
6. Imine Formation
7. Enamine Formation
8. Oxime Formation
9. Hydrazone Formation
10. Wolff–Kishner Reduction
11. Reduction of a Ketone
12. Grignard Reaction
13. Cyanohydrin Formation
14. Wittig Reaction
15. Baeyer–Villiger Oxidation

REVIEW OF CONCEPTS AND VOCABULARY

SECTION 19.1

- Both aldehydes and ketones contain a *carbonyl group*, and both occupy a central role in organic chemistry.

SECTION 19.2

- The suffix "-al" indicates an aldehydic group, and the suffix "-one" is used for ketones.
- In naming aldehydes and ketones, locants should be assigned so as to give the carbonyl group the lowest number possible.

SECTION 19.3

- Aldehydes can be prepared via oxidation of primary alcohols, ozonolysis of alkenes, or hydroboration-oxidation of terminal alkynes.
- Ketones can be prepared via oxidation of secondary alcohols, ozonolysis of alkenes, acid-catalyzed hydration of terminal alkynes, or Friedel–Crafts acylation.

SECTION 19.4

- The electrophilicity of a carbonyl group derives from resonance effects as well as inductive effects.
- Aldehydes are more reactive than ketones as a result of steric effects and electronic effects.
- A general mechanism for nucleophilic addition under basic conditions involves two steps:
  1. Nucleophilic attack.
  2. Proton transfer.
- The position of equilibrium is dependent on the ability of the nucleophile to function as a leaving group.

SECTION 19.5

- When an aldehyde or ketone is treated with water, the carbonyl group can be converted into a **hydrate**. The equilibrium generally favors the carbonyl group, except in the case of very simple aldehydes, or ketones with strong electron-withdrawing substituents.
- Under acidic conditions, a mechanism will only be reasonable if it avoids the use or formation of strong bases (only weak bases may be present).
- Under basic conditions, a mechanism will only be reasonable if it avoids the use or formation of strong acids (only weak acids may be present).
- In acidic conditions, an aldehyde or ketone will react with two molecules of alcohol to form an **acetal**.
- In the presence of an acid, the carbonyl group is protonated to form a very powerful electrophile.
- The mechanism for acetal formation can be divided into two parts:
  1. The first three steps produce a **hemiacetal**.
  2. The last four steps convert the hemiacetal to an acetal.
- For many simple aldehydes, the equilibrium favors formation of the acetal; however, for most ketones, the equilibrium favors reactants rather than products.
- An aldehyde or ketone will react with one molecule of a diol to form a cyclic acetal.
- The reversibility of acetal formation enables acetals to function as protecting groups for ketones or aldehydes. Acetals are stable under strongly basic conditions.
- Hemiacetals are generally difficult to isolate unless they are cyclic.

SECTION 19.6

- In acidic conditions, an aldehyde or ketone will react with a primary amine to form an **imine**.
- The first three steps in imine formation produce a **carbinolamine**, and the last three steps convert the carbinolamine into an imine.
- Many different compounds of the form RNH_2 will react with aldehydes and ketones; for example:
  1. When hydrazine is used as a nucleophile (NH_2NH_2), a **hydrazone** is formed.
  2. When hydroxylamine is used as a nucleophile (NH_2OH), an **oxime** is formed.
- In acidic conditions, an aldehyde or ketone will react with a secondary amine to form an **enamine**. The mechanism of enamine formation is identical to the mechanism of imine formation except for the last step.
- In the **Wolff–Kishner reduction**, a hydrazone is reduced to an alkane under strongly basic conditions.

SECTION 19.7

- **Hydrolysis** of acetals, imines, and enamines under acidic conditions produces ketones or aldehydes.

SECTION 19.8

- In acidic conditions, an aldehyde or ketone will react with two equivalents of a thiol to form a **thioacetal**. If a compound with two SH groups is used, a cyclic thioacetal is formed.
- When treated with Raney nickel, thioacetals undergo **desulfurization** to yield a methylene group.

SECTION 19.9

- When treated with a hydride reducing agent, such as lithium aluminum hydride ($LiAlH_4$) or sodium borohydride ($NaBH_4$), aldehydes and ketones are reduced to alcohols.
- The reduction of a carbonyl group with $LiAlH_4$ or $NaBH_4$ is not a reversible process, because hydride does not function as a leaving group.

SECTION 19.10

- When treated with a Grignard reagent, aldehydes and ketones are converted into alcohols, accompanied by the formation of a new C—C bond.
- Grignard reactions are not reversible, because carbanions do not function as leaving groups.
- When treated with hydrogen cyanide (HCN), aldehydes and ketones are converted into **cyanohydrins**. For most aldehydes and unhindered ketones, the equilibrium favors formation of the cyanohydrin.
- The **Wittig reaction** can be used to convert a ketone to an alkene. The **Wittig reagent** that accomplishes this transformation is called a phosphorus **ylide**.
- Preparation of Wittig reagents involves an S_N2 reaction, and the regular restrictions of S_N2 processes apply.

- For a Wittig reagent generated from a simple alkyl halide, the (*Z*)-alkene is generally the major product. For a stabilized Wittig reagent, the (*E*)-alkene is generally the major product.

SECTION 19.11

- A **Baeyer–Villiger oxidation** converts a ketone to an ester by inserting an oxygen atom next to the carbonyl group. Cyclic ketones produce cyclic esters, called **lactones**.
- When an unsymmetrical ketone is treated with a peroxy acid, formation of the ester is regioselective, and the product is determined by the **migratory aptitude** of each group next to the carbonyl.

SECTION 19.12

- This chapter explored three C—C bond-forming reactions: (1) a Grignard reaction, (2) cyanohydrin formation, and (3) a Wittig reaction.
- This chapter explored only one C—C bond-breaking reaction: the Baeyer–Villiger oxidation.

SECTION 19.13

- Carbonyl groups produce a strong IR signal around 1715 cm^{-1}. A conjugated carbonyl group produces a signal at a lower wavenumber, while ring strain increases the wavenumber of absorption.
- Aldehydic C—O bonds exhibit two signals at approximately 2700 and 2850 cm^{-1}.
- In a ^{1}H NMR spectrum, a carbonyl group adds approximately +1 ppm to the chemical shift of its neighbors, and an aldehydic proton produces a signal around 10 ppm.
- In a ^{13}C NMR spectrum, a carbonyl group produces a weak signal near 200 ppm.

SKILLBUILDER REVIEW

19.1 NAMING ALDEHYDES AND KETONES

STEP 1 Choose the longest chain containing the carbonyl group and number the chain starting from the end closest to the carbonyl group.

STEPS 2 AND 3 Identify the substituents and assign locants.

STEP 4 Assemble the substituents alphabetically.

STEP 5 Assign the configuration of any chiral center.

3-Nonanone

6-ethyl

6-ethyl-4,4-dimethyl

(*R*)-6-Ethyl-4,4-dimethyl-3-nonanone

Try Problems **19.1–19.4, 19.43–19.48, 19.77**

19.2 DRAWING THE MECHANISM OF ACETAL FORMATION

STEP 1 Draw the three steps necessary for hemiacetal formation.

COMMENTS

- Every step has two curved arrows. Draw them precisely.
- Do not forget the charges.
- Draw each step separately.

STEP 2 Draw the four steps that convert the hemiacetal into an acetal.

Try Problems **19.8, 19.9, 19.55, 19.58, 19.65, 19.75, 19.76**

19.3 DRAWING THE MECHANISM OF IMINE FORMATION

STEP 1 Draw the three steps necessary for carbinolamine formation.

STEP 2 Draw the three steps that convert the carbinolamine into an imine.

COMMENTS

- Every step has two curved arrows. Make sure to draw them precisely.
- Do not forget the positive charges.
- Draw each step separately, following the precise order of steps.

Try Problems 19.14–19.16, 19.59, 19.70

19.4 DRAWING THE MECHANISM OF ENAMINE FORMATION

STEP 1 Draw the three steps necessary for carbinolamine formation.

STEP 2 Draw the three steps that convert the carbinolamine into an enamine.

COMMENTS

- Every step has two curved arrows. Make sure to draw them precisely.
- Do not forget the positive charges.
- Draw each step separately following the precise order of steps.

Try Problems 19.19–19.21, 19.60, 19.73g, 19.74

19.5 DRAWING THE PRODUCTS OF A HYDROLYSIS REACTION

EXAMPLE Draw the products expected when the following compound is treated with aqueous acid:

STEP 1 Identify the bond(s) expected to undergo cleavage.

STEP 2 Identify the carbon atom that will become a carbonyl group.

STEP 3 Determine the identity of the other fragment(s).

Try Problems 19.23, 19.24, 19.61, 19.62, 19.68, 19.78

19.6 PREDICTING THE MAJOR PRODUCT OF A WITTIG OR HWE REACTION

EXAMPLE

STEP 1 Identify the nucleophile and electrophile

STEP 2 Determine whether the Wittig reagent is stabilized

STEP 3 Draw the alkene product with the appropriate stereochemistry

Try Problems 19.34–19.37, 19.50, 19.51, 19.79, 19.96

19.7 PROPOSING A SYNTHESIS

STEP 1 Begin by asking the following two questions:

1. Is there a change in the carbon skeleton?
2. Is there a change in the functional groups?

STEP 2 Perform a retrosynthetic analysis, considering all of the C—C bond-forming reactions and all of the C—C bond-breaking reactions that you have learned so far:

C—C bond-forming reactions in this chapter:

- Grignard reaction
- Cyanohydrin formation
- Wittig reaction

C—C bond-breaking reactions in this chapter:

- Baeyer–Villiger oxidation

CONSIDERATIONS

Remember that the desired product should be the major product of your proposed synthesis.

Make sure that the regiochemical outcome of each step is correct.

Always think backward (retrosynthetic analysis) as well as forward, and then try to bridge the gap.

Most synthesis problems have multiple correct answers. Do not feel that you have to find the "one" correct answer.

Try Problems 19.40, 19.41, 19.53, 19.65–19.67, 19.69, 19.73, 19.96, 19.97

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

• **Included in Answers section**

19.43 Provide a systematic (IUPAC) name for each of the following compounds:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

19.44 Draw the structure for each compound below:

(a) Propanedial
(b) 4-Phenylbutanal
(c) (*S*)-3-Phenylbutanal
(d) 3,3,5,5-Tetramethyl-4-heptanone
(e) (*R*)-3-Hydroxypentanal
(f) *meta*-Hydroxyacetophenone
(g) 2,4,6-Trinitrobenzaldehyde
(h) Tribromoacetaldehyde
(i) (3*R*,4*R*)-3,4-Dihydroxy-2-pentanone

19.45 Provide a systematic (IUPAC) name for the compound below. Be careful: This compound has two chiral centers (can you find them?).

19.46 Draw all constitutionally isomeric aldehydes with the molecular formula C_4H_8O and provide a systematic (IUPAC) name for each isomer.

19.47 Draw all constitutionally isomeric aldehydes with the molecular formula $C_5H_{10}O$ and provide a systematic (IUPAC) name for each isomer. Which of these isomers possesses a chiral center?

19.48 Draw all constitutionally isomeric ketones with the molecular formula $C_6H_{12}O$ and provide a systematic (IUPAC) name for each isomer.

19.49 For each of the following pairs of compounds, identify which compound would be expected to react more rapidly with a nucleophile:

(a)

(b)

19.50 • Draw the major product of each Wittig reaction below:

(a)

(b)

19.51 Draw the structure of the alkyl halide needed to prepare each of the following Wittig reagents and then determine which Wittig reagent will be the more difficult to prepare. Explain your choice.

19.52 • Choose a Grignard reagent and a ketone that can be used to produce each of the following compounds:

(a) 3-Methyl-3-pentanol (b) 1-Ethylcyclohexanol
(c) Triphenylmethanol (d) 5-Phenyl-5-nonanol

19.53 You are working in a laboratory, and you are given the task of converting cyclopentene into 1,5-pentanediol. Your first thought is simply to perform an ozonolysis followed by reduction with $LiAlH_4$, but your lab is not equipped for an ozonolysis reaction. Suggest an alternative method for converting cyclopentene into 1,5-pentanediol.

19.54 Predict the major product(s) from the treatment of acetone with the following:

(a) $[H^+]$, NH_3, $(-H_2O)$ (b) $[H^+]$, CH_3NH_2, $(-H_2O)$
(c) $[H^+]$, excess EtOH, $(-H_2O)$ (d) $[H^+]$, $(CH_3)_2NH$, $(-H_2O)$
(e) $[H^+]$, NH_2NH_2, $(-H_2O)$ (f) $[H^+]$, NH_2OH, $(-H_2O)$
(g) $NaBH_4$, MeOH (h) RCO_3H
(i) HCN, KCN (j) EtMgBr followed by H_3O^+
(k) $(C_6H_5)_3P{=}CHCH_2CH_3$ (l) $LiAlH_4$ followed by H_3O^+

19.55 Propose a plausible mechanism for the following transformation:

19.56 • Treatment of catechol with formaldehyde in the presence of an acid catalyst produces a compound with the molecular formula $C_7H_6O_2$. Draw the structure of this product.

Catechol

19.57 • Starting with cyclopentanone and using any other reagents of your choosing, identify how you would prepare each of the following compounds:

19.58 Glutaraldehyde is a germicidal agent that is sometimes used to sterilize medical equipment too sensitive to be heated in an autoclave. In mildly acidic conditions, glutaraldehyde is in equilibrium with its cyclic form, as shown below. Draw a plausible mechanism for this transformation:

Glutaraldehyde

19.59 Identify the reactants that you would use to make each of the following imines:

19.60 Identify the reactants that you would use to make each of the following enamines:

19.61 Predict the major product(s) obtained when each of the following compounds undergoes hydrolysis in the presence of H_3O^+:

19.62 Identify all of the expected products when the compound below is treated with aqueous acid:

19.63 Draw a plausible mechanism for each of the following transformations:

19.64 Predict the major product for each of the following reactions:

19.65 Identify the starting materials needed to make each of the following acetals:

(a)
(b)
(c)

19.66 • Using ethanol as your only source of carbon atoms, design a synthesis for the following compound:

19.67 • Propose an efficient synthesis for each of the following transformations:

(a)

(b)

19.68 The compound below is believed to be a wasp pheromone. Draw the major product formed when this compound is hydrolyzed in aqueous acid:

19.69 Propose an efficient synthesis for each of the following transformations:

(a)

(b)

(c)

19.70 Draw a plausible mechanism for the following transformation:

19.71 When cyclohexanone is treated with H_2O, an equilibrium is established between cyclohexanone and its hydrate. This equilibrium greatly favors the ketone, and only trace amounts of the hydrate can be detected. In contrast, when cyclopropanone is treated with H_2O, the resulting hydrate predominates at equilibrium. Suggest an explanation for this curious observation.

19.72 Consider the three constitutional isomers of dioxane ($C_4H_8O_2$):

1,2-Dioxane

1,3-Dioxane

1,4-Dioxane

One of these constitutional isomers is stable under basic conditions as well as mildly acidic conditions and is therefore used as a common solvent. Another isomer is only stable under basic conditions but undergoes hydrolysis under mildly acidic conditions. The remaining isomer is extremely unstable and potentially explosive. Identify each isomer and explain the properties of each compound.

19.73 Propose an efficient synthesis for each of the following transformations:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

(f)

(g)

(h)

ACS-STYLE PROBLEMS (Multiple Choice)

Problems 19.74–19.81 follow the style of the ACS organic chemistry exam. For each of these problems, there will be one correct answer and three distractors.

19.74 • What is the major product of this reaction?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

19.75 • Which structure is NOT an intermediate in the following reaction?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

19.76 • Which of the reactions shown can be used to make the given compound?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

19.77 • Provide a systematic name for the following compound.

(a) 5-keto-2-hexanol

(b) 2-oxy-5-hexanal

(c) 5-methyl-5-ol-2-pentanone

(d) 5-hydroxy-2-hexanone

19.78 • Identify the hydrolysis products expected when the following compound is treated with H_3O^+.

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

19.79 • Predict the major product of the following reaction.

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

19.80 • Predict the major product of the following reaction.

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

19.81 • Of the following reagents, which is best to achieve the following transformation?

(a) H_2, Pd

(b) H_2, Lindlar's catalyst

(c) 1) $LiAlH_4$, 2) H_3O^+

(d) NaH, MeOH

INTEGRATED PROBLEMS

19.82 Compound **A** has the molecular formula $C_7H_{14}O$ and reacts with sodium borohydride in methanol to form an alcohol. The ^{1}H NMR spectrum of compound **A** exhibits only two signals: a doublet (l = 12) and a septet (l = 2). Treating compound **A** with 1,2-ethanedithiol ($HSCH_2CH_2SH$) under acidic conditions, followed by Raney nickel gives compound **B**.

(a) How many signals will appear in the ^{1}H NMR spectrum of compound **B**?

(b) How many signals will appear in the ^{13}C NMR spectrum of compound **B**?

(c) Describe how you could use IR spectroscopy to verify the conversion of compound **A** to compound **B**.

19.83 Using the information provided below, deduce the structures of compounds **A**, **B**, **C**, and **D**:

19.84 Identify the structures of compounds **A** to **D** below and then identify reagents that can be used to convert cyclohexene into compound **D** in just one step.

19.85 Identify the structures of compounds **A** to **E** below:

19.86 An aldehyde with the molecular formula C_4H_6O exhibits an IR signal at 1715 cm^{-1}.

(a) Propose two possible structures that are consistent with this information.

(b) Describe how you could use ^{13}C NMR spectroscopy to determine which of the two possible structures is correct.

19.87 A compound with the molecular formula $C_9H_{10}O$ exhibits a strong signal at 1687 cm^{-1} in its IR spectrum. The ^{1}H and ^{13}C NMR spectra for this compound are shown. Identify the structure of this compound.

19.88 A compound with the molecular formula $C_{13}H_{10}O$ produces a strong signal at 1660 cm^{-1} in its IR spectrum. The ^{13}C NMR spectrum for this compound is shown below. Identify the structure of this compound.

19.89 A ketone with the molecular formula $C_9H_{18}O$ exhibits only one signal in its ^{1}H NMR spectrum. Provide a systematic (IUPAC) name for this compound.

19.90 Using any compounds of your choosing, identify a method for preparing each of the following compounds. *Your only limitation is that the compounds you use can have no more than two carbon atoms.* For purposes of counting carbon atoms, you may ignore the phenyl groups of a Wittig reagent. That is, you are permitted to use Wittig reagents.

19.91 Draw a plausible mechanism for each of the following transformations:

19.92 Under acid-catalyzed conditions, formaldehyde polymerizes to produce a number of compounds, including metaformaldehyde. Draw a plausible mechanism for this transformation:

Metaformaldehyde

19.93 The following transformation was employed in studies toward the total synthesis of cyclodidemniserinol trisulfate, found to inhibit HIV-1 integrase.[9] Propose a four-step synthesis to accomplish this transformation.

19.94 Consider the following synthetic sequence:[10]

(a) Identify reagents that can be used to achieve each of the reactions shown. **Note**: Reagents have been shown for the conversion of **3** to **4**, which involves selective tosylation of a primary alcohol in the presence of a secondary alcohol.

(b) The ^{1}H NMR spectrum of compound **5** has many more signals than the ^{1}H NMR spectrum of compound **1**. Explain.

19.95 The plant *Thapsia villosa* is so poisonous that it is known as the deadly carrot! Despite the toxicity of this herb, its historical use in traditional medicine makes its extracted compounds attractive synthetic targets. A variety of compounds, called thapsanes, have been isolated from *T. villosa*, and the reaction below was used in a synthetic study toward these structures.[11] Draw the structure of compound **A**, and show a mechanism for its formation:

An example of a thapsane

19.96 Scorzocreticin (S)-1 was isolated from a plant that is used for cooking traditional meat dishes on the Greek island of Crete. In a synthesis of scorzocreticin (S)-1, compound **1** was converted into compound **2**.[12] Identify a synthetic route for converting **1** into **2**, knowing that it involves a Wittig reaction.

Scorzocreticin (S)-1

19.97 (–)-Spongidepsin is a marine natural product that is toxic to some cancer cells. During a synthesis of (–)-spongidepsin, compound **1** was converted into compound **2**.[13] Propose a synthesis for the conversion of **1** into **2**.

19.98 Which of the following is the correct sequence of reactions needed to transform ketone **1** into aldehyde **2**, or will all three routes produce the desired product?[14] Explain your choice(s).

CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

19.99 A convenient method for achieving the transformation below involves treatment of the ketone with Wittig reagent **1** followed by acid-catalyzed hydrolysis:[15]

(a) Predict the product of the Wittig reaction.

(b) Propose a plausible mechanism for the acid-catalyzed hydrolysis to form the aldehyde.

19.100 During a recent synthesis of hispidospermidin, a fungal isolate and an inhibitor of phospholipase C, the investigators employed a novel Friedel–Crafts acylation on a nonaromatic system.[16] The following acid chloride was treated with a Lewis acid, affording a mixture of two products, **1** and **2**. Propose a plausible mechanism for the formation of compounds **1** and **2**.

19.101 Treatment of the following ketone with $LiAlH_4$ (followed by aqueous workup) affords two products, **A** and **B**. Compound **B** has the molecular formula $C_8H_{14}O$ and exhibits strong signals at 3305 cm^{-1} (broad) and 2117 cm^{-1} in its IR spectrum:[17]

(a) Using the following ^1H NMR data, deduce the structure of compound **B**: 0.89 ppm (6H, singlet), 1.49 ppm (1H, broad singlet), 1.56 ppm (2H, triplet), 1.95 ppm (1H, singlet), 2.19 ppm (2H, triplet), 3.35 ppm (2H, singlet).

(b) Provide a plausible mechanism to account for the formation of compound **B**. (**Hint:** Tf = triflate, Section 7.10.)

LIST OF REFERENCES

1. *Int. J. Pharm.* **2014**, *471*, 135–145.
2. *J. Chem. Soc. Perkin 1* **1983**, 2963.
3. *J. Org. Chem.* **2012**, *77*, 10435–10440.
4. *Tetrahedron* **2002**, *58*, 5572–5590.
5. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1982**, *104*, 4706–4707.
6. *Tetrahedron* **2012**, *68*, 9289–9292.
7. *Tetrahedron* **2013**, *69*, 1881–1896.
8. *Tet. Lett.* **1975**, *31*, 2643–2646.
9. *Tetrahedron Lett.* **2009**, *50*, 4587–4591.
10. *J. Org. Chem.* **2001**, *66*, 2072–2077.
11. *Tet. Lett.* **2002**, *43*, 2765–2768.
12. *Tetrahedron* **2014**, *43*, 8161–8167.
13. *Org. Lett.* **2010**, *12*, 4392–4395.
14. *J. Org. Chem.* **2003**, *68*, 6455–6458.
15. *Chem. Ber.* **1962**, *95*, 2514–2525.
16. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1998**, *120*, 4039–4040.
17. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **2006**, *128*, 6499–6507.

20

20.1 Introduction to Carboxylic Acids
20.2 Nomenclature of Carboxylic Acids
20.3 Structure and Properties of Carboxylic Acids
20.4 Preparation of Carboxylic Acids
20.5 Reactions of Carboxylic Acids
20.6 Introduction to Carboxylic Acid Derivatives
20.7 Reactivity of Carboxylic Acid Derivatives
20.8 Preparation and Reactions of Acid Chlorides
20.9 Preparation and Reactions of Acid Anhydrides
20.10 Preparation of Esters
20.11 Reactions of Esters
20.12 Preparation and Reactions of Amides
20.13 Preparation and Reactions of Nitriles
20.14 Synthesis Strategies
20.15 Spectroscopy of Carboxylic Acids and Their Derivatives

Top (*Aspirin*) Bruce Roiff/Shutterstock

Carboxylic Acids and Their Derivatives

DID YOU EVER **WONDER...**

how aspirin is able to reduce a fever?

This chapter will explore the reactivity of carboxylic acids and their derivatives.

One reaction in particular will allow us to understand how aspirin works. We will study many similar reactions, which will also enable us to understand the life-saving properties of penicillin antibiotics.

This chapter is peppered with dozens of reactions, but don't be discouraged. By learning a few mechanistic principles, we will see that nearly all of these reactions are examples of a type of reaction called *nucleophilic acyl substitution*. By studying the mechanistic principles that guide this process, we will be able to unify the reactions presented in this chapter and greatly reduce the need for memorization.

EduardHarkonen/Getty Images

DO YOU **REMEMBER?**

Before you go on, be sure you understand the following topics.
If necessary, review the suggested sections to prepare for this chapter.

- Mechanisms and Arrow Pushing (Section 6.8)
- Loss of a Leaving Group (Section 6.8)
- Nucleophilic Attack (Section 6.8)
- Proton Transfers (Section 6.8)
- Drawing Curved Arrows (Section 6.10)

Take the DO YOU **REMEMBER?** QUIZ in the **online course** to check your understanding.

20.1 Introduction to Carboxylic Acids

Carboxylic acids, which were introduced in Section 3.4, are compounds with a —COOH group. These compounds are abundant in nature, where they are responsible for some familiar odors.

Acetic acid (Responsible for the pungent smell of vinegar) | **Butanoic acid** (Responsible for the rancid odor of sour butter) | **Hexanoic acid** (Responsible for the odor of dirty socks) | **Lactic acid** (Responsible for the taste of sour milk)

Carboxylic acids are also found in a wide range of pharmaceuticals that are used to treat a variety of conditions.

Acetylsalicylic acid (Aspirin, a widely used analgesic) | **4-Aminosalicylic acid** (Used in the treatment of tuberculosis) | **Isotretinoin** (Used in the treatment of acne)

Each year the United States produces over 2.5 million tons of acetic acid from methanol and carbon monoxide. The primary use of acetic acid is in the synthesis of vinyl acetate, which is used in paints and adhesives.

Acetic acid **Vinyl acetate**

Vinyl acetate is a derivative of acetic acid and is therefore said to be a *carboxylic acid derivative*. Carboxylic acids and their derivatives occupy a central role in organic chemistry, as we will see throughout this chapter.

20.2 Nomenclature of Carboxylic Acids

Monocarboxylic Acids

Monocarboxylic acids, compounds containing one carboxylic acid group, are named with the suffix "oic acid":

Butanoic acid **5-Hydroxy-4,4-dimethyl pentanoic acid**

The parent is the longest chain that includes the carbon atom of the carboxylic acid group. That carbon atom is always assigned number 1 when numbering the parent.

When a carboxylic acid group is connected to a ring, the compound is named as an alkane carboxylic acid; for example:

Cyclohexanecarboxylic acid

Many simple carboxylic acids have common names accepted by IUPAC. The examples shown here should be committed to memory, as they will appear frequently throughout the chapter.

Formic acid

Acetic acid

Propionic acid

Butyric acid

Benzoic acid

Diacids

Diacids, compounds containing two carboxylic acid groups, are named with the suffix "dioic acid"; for example:

Pentanedioic acid

Many diacids have common names accepted by IUPAC.

Oxalic acid

Malonic acid

Succinic acid

Glutaric acid

These compounds differ from each other only in the number of methylene (CH_2) groups separating the carboxylic acid groups. These names are used very often in the study of biochemical reactions and should therefore be committed to memory.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

20.1 Provide both an IUPAC name and a common name for each of the following compounds:

(a) $HO_2C(CH_2)_3CO_2H$ (b) $CH_3(CH_2)_2CO_2H$

(c) $C_6H_5CO_2H$ (d) $HO_2C(CH_2)_2CO_2H$

(e) CH_3COOH (f) HCO_2H

20.2 Draw the structure of each of the following compounds:

(a) Cyclobutanecarboxylic acid (b) 3,3-Dichlorobutyric acid

(c) 3,3-Dimethylglutaric acid

20.3 Provide an IUPAC name for each of the following compounds:

(a)

(b)

20.3 Structure and Properties of Carboxylic Acids

FIGURE 20.1
The carbonyl group, as well as the two atoms attached to the carbonyl carbon, all reside in a plane.

Structure

The carbon atom of a carboxylic acid group is sp^2 hybridized and therefore exhibits trigonal planar geometry with bond angles that are nearly 120° (Figure 20.1). Carboxylic acids can form two hydrogen-bonding interactions, allowing molecules to associate with each other in pairs.

These hydrogen-bonding interactions explain the relatively high boiling points of carboxylic acids. For example, compare the boiling points of acetic acid and ethanol. Acetic acid has a higher boiling point as a result of stronger intermolecular forces.

Acetic acid b.p.=118°C **Ethanol** b.p.=78°C

Acidity of Carboxylic Acids

LOOKING BACK
Carboxylate ions play an important role in how drugs are distributed throughout the body, as we saw in the BioLinks box at the end of Section 3.3 entitled "Drug Distribution and pK_a."

As their name implies, carboxylic acids exhibit mildly acidic protons. Treatment of a carboxylic acid with a strong base, such as sodium hydroxide, yields a carboxylate salt.

A carboxylate salt

Carboxylate salts are ionic and are therefore more water-soluble than their corresponding carboxylic acids. Carboxylate ions are named by replacing the suffix "ic acid" with "ate"; for example:

Benzoic acid **Sodium benzoate**

You may recognize the name sodium benzoate, as it is commonly found in food products and beverages. It inhibits the growth of fungi and serves as a food preservative.

When dissolved in water, an equilibrium is established in which the carboxylic acid and the carboxylate ion are both present.

In most cases, the equilibrium significantly favors the carboxylic acid with a K_a usually around 10^{-4} or 10^{-5}. In other words, the pK_a of most carboxylic acids is between 4 and 5.

pK_a=4.19 pK_a=4.76 pK_a=4.87

When compared to inorganic acids, such as HCl or H_2SO_4, carboxylic acids are extremely weak acids. But when compared to most classes of organic compounds, such as alcohols, they are relatively acidic. For example, compare the pK_a values of acetic acid and ethanol.

pK_a=4.76 pK_a=16

Acetic acid is 11 orders of magnitude more acidic than ethanol (over a hundred billion times more acidic). As explained in Section 3.4, the acidity of carboxylic acids is primarily due to the stability of the conjugate base, which is resonance stabilized.

In the conjugate base of acetic acid, the negative charge is delocalized over two oxygen atoms, and it is therefore more stable than the conjugate base of ethanol. The delocalized nature of the charge can be seen in an electrostatic potential map of the acetate ion (Figure 20.2).

FIGURE 20.2
An electrostatic potential map of the acetate ion showing how the electron density is distributed over both oxygen atoms.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

20.4 The following two compounds are constitutional isomers. Identify which of these is expected to be more acidic and explain your choice.

20.5 Recall that phenols are acidic; most phenols have a pK_a ~10. Consider the structure of *para*-hydroxyacetophenone, which has a pK_a value in the same range as a carboxylic acid, despite the fact that it lacks a COOH group. Offer an explanation for the increased acidity of *para*-hydroxyacetophenone.

***para*-Hydroxyacetophenone**
pK_a=4.2

20.6 Based on your answer to the previous question, would you expect *meta*-hydroxyacetophenone to be more or less acidic than *para*-hydroxyacetophenone? Explain your answer.

***meta*-Hydroxyacetophenone**

***para*-Hydroxyacetophenone**

20.7 When formic acid is treated with potassium hydroxide (KOH), an acid-base reaction occurs, forming a carboxylate ion. Draw a mechanism for this reaction and identify the name of the carboxylate salt.

Carboxylic Acids at Physiological pH

Our blood is buffered to a pH of approximately 7.3, a value referred to as **physiological pH**. When dealing with buffered solutions, you may recall the **Henderson–Hasselbalch equation** from your general chemistry course.

$$\text{pH} = \text{p}K_a + \log\frac{[\text{conjugate base}]}{[\text{acid}]}$$

This equation is often employed to calculate the pH of buffered solutions, although for our purposes we will rearrange the equation in the following way:

$$\frac{[\text{conjugate base}]}{[\text{acid}]} = 10^{(\text{pH}-\text{p}K_a)}$$

This rearranged form of the Henderson–Hasselbalch equation provides a method for determining the extent to which an acid will dissociate to form its conjugate base in a buffered solution. When the pK_a value of an acid is equivalent to the pH of a buffered solution into which it is dissolved, then

$$\frac{[\text{conjugate base}]}{[\text{acid}]} = 10^{(\text{pH}-\text{p}K_a)} = 10^{(0)} = 1$$

The ratio of the concentrations of conjugate base and acid will be 1. In other words, a carboxylic acid and its conjugate base will be present in approximately equal amounts when dissolved in a solution that is buffered such that pH = pK_a of the acid.

Now let's apply this equation to carboxylic acids at physiological pH (7.3), so that we can determine which form predominates (the carboxylic acid or the carboxylate ion). Recall that carboxylic acids generally have a pK_a value between 4 and 5. Therefore, at physiological pH:

$$\frac{[\text{conjugate base}]}{[\text{acid}]} = 10^{(\text{pH}-\text{p}K_a)} = 10^{(7.3-\text{p}K_a)} \approx 10^3$$

The ratio of the concentrations of the carboxylate ion and the carboxylic acid will be approximately 1000 : 1. That is, carboxylic acids will exist primarily as carboxylate salts at physiological pH. For example, pyruvic acid exists primarily as pyruvate ion at physiological pH.

Pyruvic acid Pyruvate

Carboxylate ions play vital roles in many biological processes, as we will see in Chapter 25.

Substituent Effects on Acidity

The presence of electron-withdrawing substituents can have a profound impact on the acidity of a carboxylic acid.

pK_a = 4.8 pK_a = 2.9 pK_a = 1.3 pK_a = 0.9

Notice that the pK_a decreases with each additional chlorine substituent. This trend is explained in terms of the inductive effects of the chlorine atoms, which can stabilize the conjugate base (as explained in Section 3.4). The effect of an electron-withdrawing group depends on its proximity to the carboxylic acid group.

pK_a = 2.9 pK_a = 4.1 pK_a = 4.5

The effect is most pronounced when the electron-withdrawing group is located at the α position. As the distance between the chlorine atom and the carboxylic acid group increases, the effect of the chlorine atom is diminished.

The effects of electron-withdrawing substituents are also observed for substituted benzoic acids (Figure 20.3). In Sections 18.7–18.10, we discussed the electronic effects of each of the

Z	—NO_2	—CHO	—Cl	—H	—CH_3	—OH
pK_a	3.4	3.8	4.0	4.2	4.3	4.5

FIGURE 20.3 The pK_a values of various *para*-substituted benzoic acids.

substituents in Figure 20.3, and we saw that a nitro group is a powerful electron-withdrawing group. Consequently, the presence of the nitro group on the ring will stabilize the conjugate base, giving a low pK_a value (relative to benzoic acid). In contrast, a hydroxy group is a powerful electron-donating group (Section 18.10), and therefore, the presence of the hydroxy group will destabilize the conjugate base, giving a high pK_a value (relative to benzoic acid).

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

20.8 Acetic acid was dissolved in an aqueous solution buffered to a pH of 5.76. Determine the ratio of the concentrations of acetate ion and acetic acid in this solution. Which species predominates under these conditions?

20.9 Rank each set of compounds in order of increasing acidity:

(a) 2,4-Dichlorobutyric acid
2,3-Dichlorobutyric acid
3,3-Dimethylbutyric acid

(b) 3-Bromopropionic acid
2,2-Dibromopropionic acid
3,3-Dibromopropionic acid

20.4 Preparation of Carboxylic Acids

In previous chapters, we studied a variety of methods for preparing carboxylic acids (Table 20.1). In addition to the methods we have already seen, there are many other ways of preparing carboxylic acids. We will examine two of them.

TABLE 20.1 A REVIEW OF METHODS FOR PREPARING CARBOXYLIC ACIDS

REACTION	SECTION NUMBER	COMMENTS
Oxidative Cleavage of Alkynes	9.9	Oxidative cleavage will break a C≡C triple bond forming two carboxylic acids.
Oxidation of Primary Alcohols	12.10	A variety of strong oxidizing agents can be used to oxidize primary alcohols and produce carboxylic acids.
Oxidation of Alkylbenzenes	17.6	Any alkyl group on an aromatic ring will be completely oxidized to give benzoic acid, provided that the benzylic position is not quaternary (is not connected to four carbon atoms).

Hydrolysis of Nitriles

When treated with aqueous acid, a *nitrile* (a compound with a cyano group) can be converted into a carboxylic acid.

This process is called *hydrolysis*, and a mechanism for nitrile hydrolysis will be discussed later in Section 20.13. This reaction provides us with a two-step process for converting an alkyl halide to a carboxylic acid.

The first step is an S_N2 reaction in which cyanide acts as a nucleophile. The resulting nitrile is then hydrolyzed to yield a carboxylic acid that has one more carbon atom (shown in red) than the original alkyl halide. Since the first step is an S_N2 process, the reaction cannot occur with tertiary alkyl halides.

Carboxylation of Grignard Reagents

Carboxylic acids can also be prepared by treating a Grignard reagent with carbon dioxide:

A mechanism for this process is shown below:

In the first step, the Grignard reagent attacks the electrophilic center of carbon dioxide, generating a carboxylate ion. Treating the carboxylate ion with a proton source affords the carboxylic acid. These two steps occur separately, as the proton source is not compatible with the Grignard reagent and can only be introduced after the Grignard reaction is complete. This reaction provides us with another two-step process for converting an alkyl (or vinyl or aryl) halide to a carboxylic acid.

We have now seen two new methods for preparing carboxylic acids, both of which involve the introduction of one carbon atom.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

20.10 Identify the reagents you would use to achieve the following transformations:

(a) Ethanol → Acetic acid
(b) Toluene → Benzoic acid
(c) Benzene → Benzoic acid
(d) 1-Bromobutane → Pentanoic acid
(e) Ethylbenzene → Benzoic acid
(f) Bromocyclohexane → Cyclohexanecarboxylic acid

20.5 Reactions of Carboxylic Acids

Carboxylic acids are reduced to alcohols upon treatment with lithium aluminum hydride.

The first step of the process is likely a proton transfer, because $LiAlH_4$ is not only a powerful nucleophile, but it can also function as a strong base, forming a carboxylate ion.

There are several possibilities for the rest of the mechanism. One possibility involves a reaction of the carboxylate ion with AlH_3 followed by elimination to form an aldehyde:

Under these conditions, the aldehyde cannot be isolated. Instead, it is further attacked by $LiAlH_4$ to form an alkoxide, which is then protonated when H_3O^+ is introduced into the reaction flask.

An alternative method for reducing carboxylic acids involves the use of borane (BH_3).

Reduction with borane is often preferred over reduction with $LiAlH_4$, because borane reacts selectively with a carboxylic acid group in the presence of another carbonyl group. As an example, if the following reaction were performed with $LiAlH_4$ instead of borane, both carbonyl groups would be reduced:

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

20.11 Identify the reagents you would use to achieve each of the following transformations:

(a)

(b)

20.6 Introduction to Carboxylic Acid Derivatives

Classes of Carboxylic Acid Derivatives

In Section 20.5, we learned about the reaction between a carboxylic acid and $LiAlH_4$. This reaction is a reduction, because the carbon atom of the carboxylic acid group is reduced in the process:

Carboxylic acids also undergo many other reactions that do not involve a change in oxidation state:

LOOKING BACK
For a review of oxidation states, see Section 12.4.

Replacement of the OH group with a different group (Z) does not involve a change in oxidation state if Z is a heteroatom (Cl, O, N, etc.). Compounds of this type are called **carboxylic acid derivatives**,

and they will be the focus of the remainder of this chapter. Four common types of carboxylic acid derivatives are shown below.

Notice that in each case there is a carbon atom (highlighted) with three bonds to heteroatoms. As a result, each of these carbon atoms has the same oxidation state as the carbon atom of a carboxylic acid. Although all of these derivatives exhibit a carbonyl group, the presence of a carbonyl group is not a necessary requirement to qualify as a carboxylic acid derivative. Any compound with a carbon atom that has three bonds to heteroatoms will be classified as a carboxylic acid derivative. For example, consider the structure of nitriles.

A nitrile

Nitriles exhibit a carbon atom with three bonds to a heteroatom (nitrogen). As a result, the conversion of a nitrile into a carboxylic acid (or vice versa) is neither a reduction nor an oxidation. Nitriles are therefore considered to be carboxylic acid derivatives, and they will be discussed in Section 20.13.

Carboxylic Acid Derivatives in Nature

As we will soon see, acid halides and acid anhydrides are highly reactive and are therefore not very common in nature. In contrast, esters are more stable and are abundant in nature. Naturally occurring esters, such as the following three examples, often have pleasant odors and contribute to the aromas of fruits and flowers:

Methyl butanoate (pineapple) | Isopentyl acetate (banana) | Butyl acetate (pear)

Amides are abundant in living organisms. For example, proteins are comprised of repeating amide linkages.

The structure of proteins

Chapter 25 will focus on the structure of proteins as well as the central role that proteins play in catalyzing most biochemical reactions.

Naming Acid Halides

Acid halides are named as derivatives of carboxylic acids by replacing the suffix "ic acid" with "yl halide":

When an acid halide group is connected to a ring, the suffix "carboxylic acid" is replaced with "carbonyl halide"; for example:

BioLinks Sedatives

Sedatives are compounds that reduce anxiety and induce sleep. Our bodies utilize many natural sedatives, including melatonin.

Melatonin

There is much evidence suggesting that melatonin plays an important role in regulating the body's natural sleep-wake cycle. For example, it has been observed that levels of melatonin for most people increase at night and then decrease in the morning. For this reason, many people take melatonin supplements to treat insomnia.

Notice the amide group in the structure of melatonin (shown in red). This group is a common feature in many drugs that are marketed as sedatives; for example:

Zolpidem (Ambien)

Zaleplon (Sonata)

These drugs, which are similar in structure to melatonin, are used to treat insomnia. Other sedatives are used primarily in the treatment of excessive anxiety:

Diazepam (Valium)

Lorazepam (Ativan)

Temazepam (Restoril)

Drugs used in the treatment of anxiety are called anxiolytic agents. The three examples shown are all similar in structure and belong to a class of compounds called benzodiazepines. Extensive research has been undertaken to elucidate the relationship between the structure and activity of benzodiazepines. It was found that the amide group is not absolutely necessary, but its presence does increase the potency of these agents.

Naming Acid Anhydrides

Acid anhydrides are named as derivatives of carboxylic acids by replacing the suffix "acid" with "anhydride."

Acetic acid → **Acetic anhydride**

Succinic acid → **Succinic anhydride**

Unsymmetrical anhydrides are prepared from two different carboxylic acids and are named by indicating both acids alphabetically followed by the suffix "anhydride":

Acetic benzoic anhydride

Naming Esters

Esters are named by first indicating the alkyl group attached to the oxygen atom followed by the carboxylic acid, for which the suffix "ic acid" is replaced with "ate."

The same methodology is applied when the ester group is connected to a ring; for example:

Naming Amides

Amides are named as derivatives of carboxylic acids by replacing the suffix "ic acid" or "oic acid" with "amide."

When an amide group is connected to a ring, the suffix "carboxylic acid" is replaced with "carboxamide."

If the nitrogen atom bears alkyl groups, these groups are indicated at the beginning of the name, and the letter "*N*" is used as a locant to indicate that they are attached to the nitrogen atom.

Naming Nitriles

Nitriles are named as derivatives of carboxylic acids by replacing the suffix "ic acid" or "oic acid" with "onitrile."

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

20.12 Provide a name for each of the following compounds:

20.13 Draw a structure for each of the following compounds:

(a) Dimethyl oxalate (b) Phenyl cyclopentanecarboxylate (c) *N*-Methylpropionamide (d) Propionyl chloride

FIGURE 20.4
The relative order of reactivity of carboxylic acid derivatives.

20.7 Reactivity of Carboxylic Acid Derivatives

Electrophilicity of Carboxylic Acid Derivatives

In Chapter 19, we saw that the carbon atom of a carbonyl group is electrophilic as a result of both inductive and resonance effects. The same is true of carboxylic acid derivatives, although there is a wide range of reactivity among the carboxylic acid derivatives, illustrated in Figure 20.4. Acid halides are the most reactive. To rationalize this, we must consider both inductive effects and resonance effects. Let's begin with induction. Chlorine is an electronegative atom and therefore withdraws electron density from the carbonyl group via induction.

This effect renders the carbonyl group even more electrophilic when compared with the carbonyl group of a ketone.

Now let's consider resonance effects. An acid halide has three resonance structures.

The third resonance structure does not contribute much character to the overall resonance hybrid because the *p*-orbital overlap required for a C═Cl bond is not effective. This argument is similar to the argument provided in reference to the ineffective overlap of S═O bonds in Section 18.3. As a result, the chlorine atom does not donate much electron density to the carbonyl group via resonance. The net effect of the chlorine atom is to withdraw electron density, rendering the carbonyl group extremely electrophilic.

Amides are the least reactive of the carboxylic acid derivatives. To rationalize this observation, we must once again explore inductive effects and resonance effects. Let's begin with induction. Nitrogen is less electronegative than chlorine or oxygen and is not an effective electron-withdrawing group. The nitrogen atom does not withdraw much electron density from the carbonyl group, and inductive effects are not significant. However, resonance effects are substantial. Consider the three resonance structures of an amide.

FIGURE 20.5
An illustration of the planar geometry of amides.

Unlike an acid halide, the third resonance structure of an amide contributes significant character to the overall resonance hybrid. The *p* orbital on the carbon atom effectively overlaps with a *p* orbital on the nitrogen atom, and the nitrogen atom can easily accommodate the positive charge. The nitrogen atom is sp^2 hybridized, and the geometry of the nitrogen atom is trigonal planar. As a result, the entire amide group lies in a plane (Figure 20.5). The C—N bond of an amide has significant double-bond character, which can be verified by observing the relatively high barrier to rotation for the C—N bond.

The restricted rotation of the C—N bond and the planar geometry of amide groups will be important when we discuss protein structure in Chapter 25.

Nucleophilic Acyl Substitution

The reactivity of carboxylic acid derivatives is similar to the reactivity of aldehydes and ketones in a number of ways. In both cases, the carbonyl group is electrophilic and subject to attack by a nucleophile. In both cases, the same rules and principles govern the proton transfers that accompany the reactions, as we will soon see. Nevertheless, there is one critical difference between carboxylic acid derivatives and aldehydes/ketones. Specifically, carboxylic acid derivatives possess a heteroatom that can function as a leaving group, while aldehydes and ketones do not.

When a nucleophile attacks a carboxylic acid derivative, a reaction can occur in which the nucleophile replaces the leaving group:

This type of reaction is called a **nucleophilic acyl substitution**, and the rest of this chapter will be dominated by various examples of this type of reaction. The general mechanism has two core steps (Mechanism 20.1).

MECHANISM 20.1 NUCLEOPHILIC ACYL SUBSTITUTION

During the first step, in which a nucleophile attacks the carbonyl group, the hybridization state of the carbon atom changes. In both the starting material and product, the carbon atom is sp^2 hybridized with trigonal planar geometry, but the same atom in the intermediate is sp^3 hybridized with tetrahedral geometry. In recognition of this geometric change, the intermediate is often called a **tetrahedral intermediate**. In the second step, the carbonyl group is re-formed via loss of a leaving group. Re-formation of the C═O double bond is a powerful driving force, and even poor leaving groups (such as RO^-) can be expelled under certain conditions. Hydride ions (H^-) and carbanions (C^-) cannot function as leaving groups, so this type of reaction is not observed for ketones or aldehydes. There are only a few rare exceptions when H^- or C^- do function as leaving groups, and we will specifically explain why those cases are exceptions when we discuss them in Chapter 21. For our purposes, the following rule will guide our discussion for the remainder of this chapter: *When a nucleophile attacks a carbonyl group to form a tetrahedral intermediate, the carbonyl group will be re-formed, if possible, but H^- and C^- are generally not expelled as leaving groups*. There will be no exceptions to this rule in this chapter.

Let's explore a specific example of a nucleophilic acyl substitution, so that we can see how the rule applies. Consider the following transformation:

In this reaction, an acid chloride is converted into an ester. When drawing a mechanism for this process, there should be two steps. In the first step, methoxide functions as a nucleophile and attacks the carbonyl group, forming a tetrahedral intermediate:

Now apply the rule: Re-form the carbonyl if possible, but avoid expelling H^- or C^-. In order to re-form the carbonyl group in this case, one of the three highlighted groups must be expelled as a leaving group bearing a negative charge. The aromatic ring cannot leave, because that would involve expelling C^-. The remaining two choices (chloride or methoxide) are both viable options. Chloride is more stable than methoxide and is therefore a better leaving group, so the carbonyl will likely re-form to expel the chloride ion.

In summary, nucleophilic acyl substitution reactions occur via a mechanism that involves two core steps—nucleophilic attack and loss of a leaving group. Notice that these are the same two steps involved in an S_N2 process. However, there is one important difference. In an S_N2 process, the two steps occur in a concerted fashion (simultaneously), but in a nucleophilic acyl substitution reaction, the two steps occur separately. It is a common mistake to draw these two steps as occurring together.

The reaction mechanism cannot be drawn like this because S_N2 reactions do not occur readily at sp^2-hybridized centers. When drawing a nucleophilic acyl substitution, make sure to draw the first step, which forms the tetrahedral intermediate, followed by the second step, which shows how the carbonyl group is re-formed.

The vast majority of the reactions in this chapter are nucleophilic acyl substitution reactions. All of these reactions will exhibit the two core steps of nucleophilic attack and loss of a leaving group to re-form the carbonyl group. But many of the reaction mechanisms will also exhibit proton transfers. In order to draw each mechanism properly, it is necessary to know why the proton transfers occur. The following rule will guide us in deciding whether or not to employ proton transfers when drawing a mechanism: *In acidic conditions, avoid formation of a strong base. In basic conditions, such as hydroxide or methoxide, avoid formation of a strong acid.*

This rule dictates that all participants in a reaction (reactants, intermediates, and leaving groups) should be consistent with the conditions employed. As an example, consider the following reaction:

In this reaction, an ester is converted into a carboxylic acid under acid-catalyzed conditions. The nucleophile in this case is water (H_2O); however, the first step of the mechanism cannot simply be a nucleophilic attack (Figure 20.6). What is wrong with this step? The tetrahedral intermediate

FIGURE 20.6
An energy diagram showing the large energy of activation associated with water directly attacking an ester.

exhibits an oxygen atom with a localized negative charge, which is strongly basic and therefore inconsistent with acidic conditions. The energy diagram in Figure 20.6 illustrates a large energy of activation (E_a) for this step. To avoid formation of this intermediate, the acid catalyst is first employed to protonate the carbonyl group (just as we saw in Chapter 19 with ketones and aldehydes).

A protonated carbonyl group is significantly more electrophilic, and now when water attacks, no negative charge is formed. This step is now consistent with acidic conditions. As seen in the energy diagram in Figure 20.7, the energy of activation (E_a) is now much smaller, because the reactants are already high in energy and no strong base is being formed.

FIGURE 20.7
An energy diagram showing the small energy of activation associated with water attacking a protonated ester.

Formation of a strong base must only be avoided in acidic conditions. The story is different under basic conditions. For example, consider what happens when an ester is treated with hydroxide. In that case, the carbonyl group is not protonated before the nucleophilic attack. In fact,

protonation of the carbonyl group would involve formation of a strong acid, which is not consistent with basic conditions. Under basic conditions, hydroxide attacks the carbonyl group directly to give a tetrahedral intermediate. The energy diagram in Figure 20.8 shows that the energy of activation

FIGURE 20.8
An energy diagram showing the small energy of activation associated with hydroxide attacking an ester.

(E_a) is not very large, because a negative charge is present in both the reactants and the intermediate. In other words, a negative charge is not being formed but is merely being transferred from one location to another.

When using an amine as the nucleophile, it is acceptable to attack the carbonyl group directly (without first protonating the carbonyl group).

This generates an intermediate with both a positive charge and a negative charge, which is fine in this case because amines are sufficiently nucleophilic to attack a carbonyl group directly. Just avoid drawing an intermediate with two of the same kind of charge (two positive charges or two negative charges).

To illustrate the rule further, consider what happens when a tetrahedral intermediate re-forms. In basic conditions, it is acceptable to eject a methoxide ion.

This is not problematic, because the intermediate already exhibits a negative charge. In other words, a negative charge is not being formed but is merely being transferred from one location to another. However, in acidic conditions, the methoxy group must first be protonated in order to function as a leaving group (to avoid formation of a strong base).

In summary, proton transfers are utilized in mechanisms in order to remain consistent with the conditions employed.

When drawing a mechanism for a nucleophilic acyl substitution reaction, there are three points where you must decide whether or not to consider a proton transfer.

Proton transfer ---- **Nucleophilic attack** ---- **Proton transfers** ---- **Loss of a leaving group** ---- **Proton transfer**

A proton transfer can occur (1) before the nucleophilic attack, (2) before loss of the leaving group, or (3) at the end of the mechanism. Some mechanisms will have proton transfers at all three points, while other mechanisms might only exhibit one proton transfer step at the end of the mechanism. As an example, consider the following reaction, which involves the conversion of an acid chloride into a carboxylic acid:

In the following mechanism for this reaction, there is no proton transfer step before the nucleophilic attack (i.e., the carbonyl group is not first protonated), because the reagents are not acidic.

Similarly, there is no proton transfer step before loss of the leaving group, because the leaving group does not need to be protonated before it can leave. However, there is a proton transfer step at the end of the mechanism, in order to remove a proton and form the final product. The mechanism is comprised of the two core steps followed by a proton transfer. This pattern is typical for reactions of acid halides. We will see nearly a dozen reactions of acid halides, and all of their mechanisms will follow this pattern.

In contrast, reactions performed under acid-catalyzed conditions commonly have proton transfer steps at all three possible points. The following SkillBuilder illustrates such a case.

SKILLBUILDER

20.1 DRAWING A MECHANISM FOR A NUCLEOPHILIC ACYL SUBSTITUTION REACTION

LEARN the skill

Propose a plausible mechanism for the following transformation:

SOLUTION

In this reaction, a methoxy group is replaced by an ethoxy group:

As with all nucleophilic acyl substitution reactions, a plausible mechanism must have the following two core steps:

When drawing a mechanism, be sure to draw these steps separately. But we must also determine if any proton transfers are required. There are three points at which proton transfers might occur.

Proton transfer ---- **Nucleophilic attack** ---- **Proton transfers** ---- **Loss of a leaving group** ---- **Proton transfer**

Acidic conditions are employed in this case, so we must avoid formation of a strong base. This requirement dictates that we must draw proton transfer steps at all three possible points. The mechanism must begin with a proton transfer in order to protonate the carbonyl group, rendering it a better electrophile:

Notice the proton source that we show to protonate the carbonyl group. We cannot show EtOH as the proton source, because transfer of a proton from ethanol would involve creation of an ethoxide ion, which should be avoided in acidic conditions.

The next step is a nucleophilic attack, in which ethanol functions as a nucleophile and attacks the protonated carbonyl group, forming a tetrahedral intermediate that does not bear a negative charge.

The tetrahedral intermediate formed in this step cannot immediately expel methoxide to re-form the carbonyl, because methoxide is a strong base, which should be avoided in acidic conditions. So, we must first protonate the methoxy group. However, protonating the methoxy group would involve the formation of two positive charges, which should also be avoided. As a result, two separate proton transfers are required.

First, a proton is removed to form a new tetrahedral intermediate without a charge, followed by protonation of the methoxy group. Be careful not to show ethoxide as a base in the first step (remember—no strong bases in acidic conditions).

The next step is loss of the leaving group to re-form the carbonyl:

Finally, a proton transfer is drawn to remove the positive charge and form the product.

In summary, the complete mechanism is shown here:

PRACTICE the skill

20.14 Propose a plausible mechanism for each of the following transformations. These reactions will all appear later in this chapter, so practicing their mechanisms now will serve as preparation for the rest of this chapter:

APPLY the skill

20.15 Chlorocatechelin A was isolated from a bacterial culture, but it had to be synthesized in the laboratory in order to obtain enough pure material for the study of its antimicrobial activity.[1] Shown below is the first step of a 15-step synthesis of chlorocatechelin A, starting with *ortho*-vanillin. Propose a plausible mechanism for this reaction (pyridine is a base that can deprotonate the acidic phenol proton in *ortho*-vanillin to some extent).

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 20.57, 20.68**

20.8 Preparation and Reactions of Acid Chlorides

Preparation of Acid Chlorides

Acid chlorides can be formed by treating carboxylic acids with thionyl chloride ($SOCl_2$):

The accepted mechanism for this transformation can be divided into two parts (Mechanism 20.2).

MECHANISM 20.2 PREPARATION OF ACID CHLORIDES VIA THIONYL CHLORIDE

The first part of the mechanism converts the OH group into a better leaving group, which is accomplished in three steps. Each of these three steps should seem familiar if we focus on the chemistry of the S═O bond. In the three steps, the S═O bond behaves very much like a C═O bond of a carboxylic acid derivative (as described in Section 20.7). First, the S═O bond is attacked by a nucleophile, then it is re-formed to expel a leaving group, and finally a proton transfer occurs to remove the charge. Part 2 of the mechanism is a typical nucleophilic acyl substitution, which is accomplished in two steps: nucleophilic attack followed by loss of a leaving group. In this case, the leaving group further degrades to form gaseous SO_2. Formation of a gas (which leaves the reaction mixture) forces the reaction to completion.

Hydrolysis of Acid Chlorides

When treated with water, acid chlorides are hydrolyzed to give carboxylic acids.

This transformation can be rationalized with a mechanism that has three steps (Mechanism 20.3).

MECHANISM 20.3 HYDROLYSIS OF AN ACID CHLORIDE

These are the same three steps used in part 1 of the previous mechanism. This reaction produces HCl as a by-product. The HCl can often produce undesired reactions with other functional groups that might be present in the compound, so pyridine can be used to remove the HCl as it is produced.

Pyridine is a base that reacts with HCl to form pyridinium chloride. This process effectively traps the HCl so that it is unavailable for any other side reactions.

Alcoholysis of Acid Chlorides

When treated with an alcohol, acid chlorides are converted into esters.

The accepted mechanism for this transformation is directly analogous to the mechanism that we presented for hydrolysis of an acid chloride (three mechanistic steps), and pyridine is used as a base to neutralize the HCl as it is produced. This reaction is viewed from the perspective of the acid chloride, but the same reaction can be written from the perspective of the alcohol.

When shown like this, the OH group is said to undergo acylation, because an acyl group has been transferred to the OH group to produce an ester. This process is sensitive to steric effects, which can be exploited to selectively acylate a primary alcohol in the presence of a secondary (more hindered) alcohol.

Aminolysis of Acid Chlorides

When treated with ammonia, acid chlorides are converted into amides.

Pyridine is not used in this reaction, because ammonia itself is a sufficiently strong base to neutralize the HCl as it is produced. For this reaction, two equivalents of ammonia are necessary: one for the nucleophilic attack and the other to neutralize the HCl. This reaction also occurs with primary and secondary amines to produce *N*-substituted amides.

The accepted mechanism for each of these reactions is directly analogous to the mechanism that we presented for hydrolysis of an acid chloride. There are three steps: (1) nucleophilic attack, (2) loss of a leaving group to re-form the carbonyl, and (3) proton transfer to remove the positive charge. Can you draw the mechanism?

Reduction of Acid Chlorides

When treated with lithium aluminum hydride, acid chlorides are reduced to give alcohols:

Notice that two separate steps are required. First the acid chloride is treated with $LiAlH_4$, and then the proton source is introduced into the reaction flask to work up the reaction (Mechanism 20.4).

MECHANISM 20.4 REDUCTION OF AN ACID CHLORIDE WITH $LiAlH_4$

The first two steps of this mechanism are exactly what we might have expected: (1) nucleophilic attack followed by (2) loss of a leaving group to re-form the carbonyl. These two steps produce an aldehyde, which can be attacked again to give an alkoxide ion. Remember that the carbonyl group should always be re-formed, if possible, without expelling H^- and C^-. The alkoxide ion produced after the second attack does not have any groups that can leave, and therefore, nothing else can occur until a proton source is provided to protonate the alkoxide ion. This reaction has little practical value, because acid chlorides are generally prepared from carboxylic acids, which can simply be treated directly with $LiAlH_4$ to produce the alcohol.

The reaction between an acid chloride and $LiAlH_4$ cannot be used to produce an aldehyde. Using one equivalent of $LiAlH_4$ simply leads to a mess of products. Producing the aldehyde requires the use of a more selective hydride-reducing agent that will react with acid chlorides more rapidly than aldehydes. There are many such reagents, including lithium tri(*t*-butoxy) aluminum hydride.

Lithium tri(*t*-butoxy) aluminum hydride

Three of the four hydrogen atoms (of $LiAlH_4$) have been replaced with *tert*-butoxy groups, which modify the reactivity of the last remaining hydride group. This reducing agent will react with the acid chloride rapidly but will react with the aldehyde more slowly, allowing the aldehyde to be isolated. These conditions can be used to convert an acid chloride into an aldehyde.

Reactions between Acid Chlorides and Organometallic Reagents

When treated with a Grignard reagent, acid chlorides are converted into alcohols, with the introduction of two alkyl groups.

Just as with $LiAlH_4$, two separate steps are required. First the acid chloride is treated with the Grignard reagent, and then the proton source is added to the reaction flask to work up the reaction (Mechanism 20.5).

MECHANISM 20.5 THE REACTION BETWEEN AN ACID CHLORIDE AND A GRIGNARD REAGENT

The first two steps of this mechanism are exactly what we would expect: (1) nucleophilic attack followed by (2) loss of a leaving group to re-form the carbonyl. These two steps produce a ketone, which can be attacked again by another Grignard reagent to give an alkoxide ion. Remember that the carbonyl should always be re-formed, if possible, but H^- and C^- should not be expelled. The alkoxide ion produced after the second attack does not have any groups that can leave, so nothing else can occur until a proton source is provided to protonate the alkoxide ion.

The reaction between an acid chloride and a Grignard reagent cannot be used to produce a ketone. Using one equivalent of the Grignard reagent simply leads to a mess of products. Producing the ketone requires the use of a more selective carbon nucleophile that will react with acid chlorides but not with ketones. There are many such reagents. The most commonly used reagent for this purpose is a **lithium dialkyl cuprate**, also called a **Gilman reagent**.

Lithium dialkyl cuprate

The alkyl groups in this reagent are attached to copper rather than magnesium, and their carbanionic character is less pronounced (a C—Cu bond is less polarized than a C—Mg bond). This reagent can be used to convert acid chlorides into ketones with excellent yields. The resulting ketone is not further attacked under these conditions.

Summary of Reactions of Acid Chlorides

Figure 20.9 summarizes the reactions of acid chlorides discussed in this section.

FIGURE 20.9
Reactions of acid chlorides.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

20.16 Predict the major product for each of the following reactions:

20.17 Identify reagents that can be used to achieve the following transformation:

20.18 Propose a mechanism for the following transformation:

20.9 Preparation and Reactions of Acid Anhydrides

Preparation of Acid Anhydrides

Carboxylic acids can be converted into acid anhydrides with excessive heating.

This method is only practical for acetic acid, as most other acids cannot survive the excessive heat. An alternative method for preparing acid anhydrides involves treating an acid chloride with a carboxylate ion, which functions as a nucleophile.

As we might expect, the process occurs via a mechanism with two steps, as shown:

This method can be used to prepare symmetrical or unsymmetrical anhydrides.

Reactions of Acid Anhydrides

The reactions of anhydrides are directly analogous to the reactions of acid chlorides. The only difference is in the identity of the leaving group.

With an acid chloride, the leaving group is a chloride ion, which is the conjugate base of a strong acid (HCl). With an acid anhydride, the leaving group is a carboxylate ion, which is the conjugate base of a weak acid (carboxylic acids are weak acids). As a result, it is not necessary to use pyridine in reactions with acid anhydrides, because HCl is not produced. Figure 20.10 summarizes the reactions of anhydrides.

FIGURE 20.10
Reactions of acid anhydrides.

Each of these reactions involves the expulsion of a carboxylate ion leaving group, which means that some carbon atoms in the starting anhydride do not remain in the product. From a synthetic point of view, the use of anhydrides (rather than acid chlorides) involves the loss of half of the starting material, which represents poor atom economy (as described in Section 11.6). For this reason, acid chlorides are more efficient as starting materials than acid anhydrides.

Acetylation with Acetic Anhydride

Acetic anhydride is often used to acetylate an alcohol or an amine.

These reactions are utilized in the commercial preparation of aspirin and Tylenol.

BioLinks How Does Aspirin Work?

Aspirin is prepared from salicylic acid, a compound found in the bark of the willow tree that has been used for its medicinal properties for thousands of years. Aspirin's mechanism of action remained unknown until the early 1970s, when John Vane, Bengt Samuelsson, and Sune Bergström elucidated its role in blocking the synthesis of prostaglandins, for which they were awarded the 1982 Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine. Prostaglandins, which are compounds containing five-membered rings, will be discussed in greater detail in Chapter 26. Prostaglandins have many important biological functions, including stimulating inflammation and inducing fever. They are produced in the body from arachidonic acid via a process that is catalyzed by an enzyme called cyclooxygenase:

An OH group of cyclooxygenase reacts with aspirin, resulting in the transfer of an acetyl group from aspirin to cyclooxygenase:

In this way, aspirin functions as an acetylating agent, much the way acetic anhydride functions as an acetylating agent in the preparation of aspirin. The same acetyl group that came from acetic anhydride (in the synthesis of aspirin) is ultimately transferred to cyclooxygenase. This process deactivates cyclooxygenase, thereby interfering with the synthesis of prostaglandins. With a decreased concentration of prostaglandins, the onset of inflammation is slowed and fevers are reduced.

EduardHarkonen/Getty Images

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

20.19 Predict the major organic products for each of the following reactions:

20.10 Preparation of Esters

Preparation of Esters via S_N2 Reactions

When treated with a strong base followed by an alkyl halide, carboxylic acids are converted into esters:

The carboxylic acid is first deprotonated to yield a carboxylate ion, which then functions as a nucleophile and attacks the alkyl halide in an S_N2 process. The expected limitations of S_N2 processes therefore apply. Specifically, tertiary alkyl halides cannot be used.

Preparation of Esters via Fischer Esterification

Carboxylic acids are converted into esters when treated with an alcohol in the presence of an acid catalyst. This process is called the **Fischer esterification** (Mechanism 20.6).

MECHANISM 20.6 THE FISCHER ESTERIFICATION PROCESS

The accepted mechanism is exactly what we would expect for a nucleophilic acyl substitution that takes place under acidic conditions. Evidence for this mechanism comes from isotopic labeling experiments in which the oxygen atom of the alcohol is replaced with a heavier isotope of oxygen (^{18}O), and the location of this isotope is tracked throughout the reaction. The location of the isotope in the product (shown in red) supports Mechanism 20.6.

LOOKING BACK
Le Châtelier's principle states that a system at equilibrium will adjust in order to minimize any stress placed on the system.

The Fischer esterification process is reversible and can be controlled by exploiting Le Châtelier's principle. That is, formation of the ester can be favored either by using an excess of the alcohol (i.e., using the alcohol as the solvent) or by removing water from the reaction mixture as it is formed.

The reverse process, which is conversion of the ester into a carboxylic acid, can be achieved by using an excess of water, as we will see in Section 20.11.

Preparation of Esters via Acid Chlorides

Esters can also be prepared by treating an acid chloride with an alcohol. We already explored this reaction in Section 20.8.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

20.20 In this section, we have seen three ways to achieve the following transformation. Identify the reagents necessary for all three methods.

20.21 Identify reagents that can be used to accomplish each of the following transformations:

20.11 Reactions of Esters

Saponification

Esters can be converted into carboxylic acids by treatment with sodium hydroxide followed by an acid. This process is called **saponification** (Mechanism 20.7):

MECHANISM 20.7 BASE-PROMOTED HYDROLYSIS OF ESTERS (SAPONIFICATION)

The first two steps of this mechanism are exactly what we would expect of a nucleophilic acyl substitution reaction occurring under basic conditions: (1) nucleophilic attack followed by (2) loss of a leaving group. In basic conditions, an alkoxide ion can function as a leaving group and is not protonated prior to its departure. Although alkoxide ions are not suitable leaving groups in S_N2 reactions, they can function as leaving groups in these circumstancess because the tetrahedral intermediate is sufficiently high in energy. The tetrahedral intermediate itself is an alkoxide ion, so expulsion of an alkoxide ion is not uphill in energy.

Under such strongly basic conditions, the carboxylic acid does not survive; it is deprotonated to produce a carboxylate salt. In fact, the formation of a stabilized carboxylate ion is a driving force that pushes the equilibrium to favor formation of products. After the reaction is complete, an acid is required to protonate the carboxylate ion to give the carboxylic acid.

WorldLinks How Soap Is Made

Recall from Chapter 1 that soaps are compounds that contain a polar group on one end of the molecule and a nonpolar group on the other end:

Polar group (hydrophilic) — Nonpolar group (hydrophobic)

Pannonia/Getty Images

The hydrophobic tails of soap molecules surround oil molecules, forming a micelle, as described in Section 1.14.

Most soaps are produced from fats and oils, which contain three ester groups. Upon treatment with a strong base, such as sodium hydroxide, the ester groups are hydrolyzed, giving glycerol and three soap molecules:

The identity of the alkyl chains can vary depending on the source of the fat or oil, but the concept is the same for all soaps. Specifically, the three ester groups are hydrolyzed under basic conditions to produce soap molecules. This process is called *saponification*, from the Latin word *sapo* (meaning soap).

Evidence for this mechanism comes from isotopic labeling experiments in which the oxygen atom of the alcohol is replaced with an oxygen isotope (^{18}O) that is tracked throughout the reaction. The location of the isotope in the alcohol by-product supports Mechanism 20.7.

Acid-Catalyzed Hydrolysis of Esters

Esters can also be hydrolyzed under acidic conditions.

This process (Mechanism 20.8) is the reverse of a Fischer esterification.

MECHANISM 20.8 ACID-CATALYZED HYDROLYSIS OF ESTERS

BioLinks Esters as Prodrugs

Sometimes, a drug is given to a patient where the actual compound administered is not active, but is metabolized into a compound that is active. The original inactive molecule is called a prodrug. There are several reasons why giving a prodrug is advantageous. In some cases, the prodrug crosses membranes more effectively than the actual drug. In other cases, the conversion of the prodrug into the active drug (in the body) is slow and results in the active drug being released slowly, over a longer period of time. As a result, the patient does not need to take the drug as frequently. We will now explore examples of each situation.

Among its many biological functions, epinephrine can reduce the formation of aqueous humor (the fluid inside the eyeball) thereby reducing the fluid pressure inside the eyes. Prolonged high fluid pressure inside the eye is called glaucoma and can cause blindness. Epinephrine can reduce this fluid pressure and the risk of blindness. Unfortunately, when applied as eye drops, epinephrine does not cross the nonpolar membranes to the interior of the eye, because epinephrine is quite polar:

Epinephrine hydrochloride

To circumvent this problem, a prodrug form of epinephrine was developed in which the aromatic hydroxyl groups

were converted into ester groups. This prodrug is called dipivefrin:

In dipivefrin, the ester groups (highlighted) greatly increase the nonpolar character of the molecule, relative to epinephrine, so dipivefrin is absorbed more effectively across the membrane of the eye. It is hydrolyzed inside the eye to the active drug, epinephrine. Unfortunately, dipivefrin causes stinging and redness of the eye and has been largely replaced with other more patient-friendly drugs. Nevertheless, it is still a great example of the importance of molecular polarity in pharmacology and drug design.

Now let's consider another valuable way in which ester prodrugs have been used in medicine. If an active drug contains one or more OH groups, it can be converted into an ester prodrug with a large hydrophobic (nonpolar) tail:

This hydrophobic tail imparts nonpolar character to the prodrug, and as a result, it accumulates in fat cells, thereby allowing for a delayed release of the drug into the bloodstream. Hydrolysis occurs slowly, but once the ester group has been hydrolyzed, the resulting active drug is more water-soluble and can enter the bloodstream.

As an example, haloperidol (trade name = Haldol) is an older drug that has been used in the treatment of schizophrenia. Haloperidol must be taken daily and the drug has many adverse effects, so many patients do not take the drug consistently. To counteract this, haloperidol has been esterified into haloperidol decanoate, which can be given by intra-muscular injection in a clinic. It is more hydrophobic than haloperidol and is concentrated in fat cells. Slow hydrolysis of the decanoate ester releases haloperidol into the blood system over the course of 4 weeks.

A newer and more commonly prescribed drug for the treatment of schizophrenia is paliperidone (trade name = Invega). Paliperidone also must be taken daily and patient compliance with this drug is also a problem. To circumvent this problem, a prodrug has been developed in which the OH group has been converted into an ester group containing a long, nonpolar chain (16 carbon atoms). This prodrug, called paliperidone palmitate (trade name = Invega-sustena), is more hydrophobic than the original paliperidone. Like haloperidol, it concentrates in fat cells and is slowly released into the rest of the body as the ester group is slowly hydrolyzed. This prodrug can be given by injection once every 4 weeks.

Aminolysis of Esters

Esters react slowly with amines to yield amides.

This process has little practical utility, because preparation of amides is achieved more efficiently from the reaction between acid chlorides and ammonia or primary or secondary amines.

Reduction of Esters with Hydride-Reducing Agents

When treated with lithium aluminum hydride, esters are reduced to yield alcohols.

This process is believed to occur via a mechanism that is somewhat complex, but the simplified version shown in Mechanism 20.9 will be sufficient for our purposes.

MECHANISM 20.9 REDUCTION OF AN ESTER WITH $LiAlH_4$

This mechanism is directly analogous to the mechanism that we saw for reduction of an acid chloride with $LiAlH_4$. The first equivalent of $LiAlH_4$ reduces the ester to an aldehyde, and the second equivalent of $LiAlH_4$ reduces the aldehyde to an alcohol. Treating an ester with only one equivalent of $LiAlH_4$ is not an efficient method for preparing an aldehyde, because aldehydes are more reactive than esters and will react with $LiAlH_4$ immediately after being formed. If the desired product is an aldehyde, then DIBAH (diisobutylaluminum hydride) can be used as a reducing agent instead of $LiAlH_4$. The reaction is performed at low temperature to prevent further reduction of the aldehyde.

Reactions between Esters and Grignard Reagents

When treated with a Grignard reagent, esters are reduced to yield alcohols with the introduction of two alkyl groups.

This process (Mechanism 20.10) is directly analogous to the reaction between a Grignard reagent and an acid chloride.

MECHANISM 20.10 THE REACTION BETWEEN AN ESTER AND A GRIGNARD REAGENT

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

20.22 Predict the major organic product(s) for each of the following reactions:

20.23 Propose a mechanism for the following transformation:

20.12 Preparation and Reactions of Amides

Preparation of Amides

Amides can be prepared from any of the carboxylic acid derivatives discussed earlier in this chapter.

LOOKING AHEAD
Amides can also be prepared efficiently from carboxylic acids using a reagent called DCC. This reagent and its action are discussed in Section 25.6.

Among these methods, amides are most efficiently prepared from acid chlorides.

Acid halides are the most reactive of the carboxylic acid derivatives, so the yields are best when an acid chloride is used as a starting material.

WorldLinks Polyesters and Polyamides

Consider what happens when a diacid reacts with a diol:

A diacid

A diol

Each molecule has two reactive ends, allowing formation of a polymer.

Polyethylene terephthalate (PET)

This polymer, polyethylene terephthalate (PET, or sometimes PETE), exhibits multiple ester linkages and is therefore called a *polyester*. PET is just one example of a polyester and is sold under many trade names, including Dacron and Mylar. It is primarily used in the manufacture of clothing, but is also commonly used to make plastic bottles.

Polyamides are polymers with repeating amide linkages and can be made in a similar way that polyesters are made. Consider what happens when a diacid chloride and a diamine react together:

A diacid halide

A diamine

Each molecule has two reactive ends, allowing formation of the following polyamide:

Nylon 6,6

This specific polymer is called Nylon 6,6 because it is created from two different compounds that both contain six carbon atoms. Nylon 6,6 was first synthesized in 1935 by Walter Carothers, working for the DuPont Corporation. A patent for Nylon 6,6 was issued to Dupont in 1938, and practical uses were rapidly developed. It was used initially in toothbrushes (replacing hog bristles) and nylon stockings (replacing silk). World War II resulted in American nylon production being diverted to make military materials, primarily parachutes (which had been previously made from silk imported from Japan). After World War II, nylon stockings returned, along with molded plastic parts and a huge assortment of plastic devices, including health related items such as dental floss and suture materials.

Paul Schlack, an industrial organic chemist working for a large German chemical company called IG Farben, learned of Dupont's development of Nylon 6,6 and sought to develop a polyamide polymer with properties similar to Nylon 6,6 that would not be subject

to DuPont's patent. In January 1938, he developed Nylon 6, which is similar to Nylon 6,6, but different enough to avoid infringing on Dupont's patent.

Nylon 6 can be regarded as a polymer of 6-aminohexanoic acid. This compound has two reactive ends, which can react end-to-end to produce a long polyamide chain:

6-Aminohexanoic acid

Nylon 6

This polymer is called Nylon 6 because it can be made from just one type of compound which has six carbon atoms. Unlike Nylon 6,6 (which is made from two compounds: a diacid halide and a diamine), Nylon 6 can be made from one molecule that has a carboxylic acid on one end and an amino group on the other end.

Although Nylon 6 and Nylon 6,6 are both made from compounds containing six carbon atoms, other nylons can be made from compounds containing any number of carbon atoms. Longer-chain nylons have increased flexibility, reduced reactivity, and reduced absorbance of water (compared to Nylon 6 and Nylon 6,6). A commercially important example is Nylon 12, shown here:

Nylon 12

Nylon 12 is less polar than shorter chain nylons (like Nylon 6) and is used in a wide variety of applications, including electrical insulation, natural gas pipelines, automotive fuel lines, and as a bulking agent in skin creams. Nylon 12 is truly a multitasker!

There are many different kinds of polyesters and polyamides, serving a variety of purposes. As one more example, Kevlar is a polyamide that is stronger than steel and is used in bulletproof vests:

Kevlar

Acid-Catalyzed Hydrolysis of Amides

Amides can be hydrolyzed to give carboxylic acids in the presence of aqueous acid, but the process is slow and requires heating to occur at an appreciable rate.

The accepted mechanism for this transformation (Mechanism 20.11) is directly analogous to the mechanism that we saw for the acid-catalyzed hydrolysis of esters (Section 20.11).

In this reaction, notice that an ammonium ion (NH_4^+) is formed as a by-product. The ammonium ion ($pK_a = 9.2$) is a much weaker acid than H_3O^+ ($pK_a = -1.7$), and the formation of a weak acid is one of the driving forces for this reaction. Indeed, the equilibrium greatly favors formation of products, and the process is effectively irreversible.

MECHANISM 20.11 ACID-CATALYZED HYDROLYSIS OF AN AMIDE

Hydrolysis of Amides under Basic Conditions

Amides are also hydrolyzed when heated in basic aqueous solutions, although the process is very slow.

The accepted mechanism for this process (Mechanism 20.12) is directly analogous to the mechanism that we saw for the saponification of esters (Section 20.11).

MECHANISM 20.12 HYDROLYSIS OF AMIDES UNDER BASIC CONDITIONS

In the last step, formation of the carboxylate ion drives the reaction to completion and renders the process irreversible. After the reaction is complete, aqueous acidic workup of the carboxylate ion gives a carboxylic acid.

Reduction of Amides

When treated with excess $LiAlH_4$, followed by aqueous workup, amides are converted into amines.

This is the first reaction we have seen that is somewhat different than the other reactions in this chapter. In this case, the carbonyl group is completely removed. Furthermore, the workup procedure is also different in this case. We use H_2O (rather than H_3O^+), because the product of this reaction is an amine, and amines are protonated in the presence of H_3O^+ to give ammonium ions (RNH_3^+). To avoid protonating the amine, we use H_2O for the workup of this reaction.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

20.24 Predict the major organic product for each of the following reactions:

(a)

(b)

(c)

20.25 Identify reagents that can be used to achieve the following transformation:

20.26 Propose a mechanism for each of the following transformations:

(a)

(b)

BioLinks Beta-Lactam Antibiotics

In 1928, Alexander Fleming made a serendipitous discovery that had a profound impact on the field of medicine. He was growing a colony of *Staphylococcus* bacteria in a petri dish that was accidentally contaminated with spores of the *Penicillium notatum* mold. Fleming noticed that the spores of mold prevented the colony from growing, and he surmised that the mold was producing a compound with antibiotic properties, which he called penicillin. Penicillin was initially used to treat wounded soldiers as early as 1943 and shortly thereafter was used on the general population. It has been credited with saving millions of lives, and for his discovery, Fleming was a corecipient of the 1945 Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine.

Penicillin was initially believed to be one compound, as Fleming had suggested. However, in 1944, it became apparent that the *P. notatum* mold manufactures many structurally similar compounds, all of which exhibit antibacterial properties. This group of compounds is now said to belong to the penicillin family of drugs and can be represented with the following structural formula, where the R group can vary:

Penicillin

Over a dozen penicillin drugs are currently in clinical use, including ampicillin and amoxicillin, shown here:

Ampicillin

Amoxicillin

The key structural feature common to all penicillin drugs is an amide group contained in a four-membered ring, called a beta (β) lactam ring.

Amides are generally stable—they resist hydrolysis under most conditions. However β-lactams are particularly susceptible to hydrolysis because of the ring strain of the four-membered ring. Hydrolysis opens the ring and releases the ring strain. It is believed that the β-lactam ring reacts with *transpeptidase*, an enzyme that bacteria utilize in building their cell walls:

This reaction effectively acylates an OH group at the active site of the enzyme, and the acylated enzyme is inactive. By inactivating this enzyme, penicillin drugs are able to prevent bacteria from producing functional cell walls. Under these conditions, the bacteria are not able to reproduce, which allows the body's natural immune system to take control.

Some strains of bacteria were originally sensitive to penicillin drugs, but have since become resistant. One way of becoming resistant is to acquire the genes for making enzymes called β-lactamases, which are capable of prematurely hydrolyzing the β-lactam ring before it has a chance to react with transpeptidase:

Once the β-lactam ring has been opened, the drug no longer has any antibiotic properties.

Cephalosporins are another family of antibiotics closely related in structure to penicillins:

Cephalosporins also exhibit a β-lactam ring, but the lactam ring is fused to a six-membered ring. The cephalosporin family of antibiotics was first isolated in 1945 from *Cephalosporium* fungi, now called *Acremonium* fungi.

20.13 Preparation and Reactions of Nitriles

Preparation of Nitriles via S_N2 Reactions

Nitriles can be prepared by treating an alkyl halide with a cyanide ion.

This transformation proceeds via an S_N2 mechanism, so tertiary alkyl halides cannot be used.

Preparation of Nitriles from Amides

Nitriles can also be prepared via the dehydration of an amide. Many reagents can be used to accomplish the transformation. One such reagent is thionyl chloride ($SOCl_2$).

This process (Mechanism 20.13) is useful for preparing tertiary nitriles, which cannot be prepared via an S_N2 process.

MECHANISM 20.13 DEHYDRATION OF AMIDES

Hydrolysis of Nitriles

In aqueous acidic conditions, nitriles are hydrolyzed to afford amides, which are then further hydrolyzed to yield carboxylic acids.

Formation of the amide occurs via Mechanism 20.14, and conversion of the amide into the carboxylic acid was discussed earlier (Mechanism 20.11).

MECHANISM 20.14 ACID-CATALYZED HYDROLYSIS OF NITRILES

Alternatively, nitriles can also be hydrolyzed in aqueous base.

Once again, the nitrile is first converted to an amide (Mechanism 20.15), which is then converted to a carboxylic acid (see Mechanism 20.12).

MECHANISM 20.15 BASE-CATALYZED HYDROLYSIS OF NITRILES

Reactions between Nitriles and Grignard Reagents

A ketone is obtained when a nitrile is treated with a Grignard reagent, followed by aqueous acid.

The Grignard reagent attacks the nitrile, much like it attacks a carbonyl group.

The resulting anion is then treated with aqueous acid to give an imine, which is then hydrolyzed to a ketone under acidic conditions (see Section 19.6).

Reduction of Nitriles

In Section 20.5, we saw that carboxylic acids can be reduced to alcohols upon treatment with $LiAlH_4$. Similarly, nitriles are converted to amines when treated with $LiAlH_4$, followed by aqueous workup:

Notice that we use H_2O (rather than H_3O^+) for the workup step, because the product of this reaction is an amine, and we want to avoid protonating the amine. Using H_3O^+ for the workup step would result in an ammonium ion (RNH_3^+).

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

20.27 Predict the major product for each of the following reactions:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

20.28 Identify reagents that can be used to achieve each of the following transformations:

(a)

(b)

20.29 Propose a mechanism for the following transformation:

20.14 Synthesis Strategies

Recall from Chapter 11 that there are two primary considerations when approaching a synthesis problem: (1) a change in the carbon skeleton and (2) a change in the functional groups.

Let's focus on each of these issues separately, beginning with functional groups.

Functional Group Interconversions

In this chapter, we have seen many different reactions that change the identity of a functional group without changing its location. Figure 20.11 summarizes how functional groups can be

FIGURE 20.11
A summary of reactions from this chapter that enable the interconversion of functional groups.

interconverted. The figure shows many reactions, but there are a few key aspects of the diagram that are worth special attention:

- The figure is organized according to oxidation state. Carboxylic acids and their derivatives all have the same oxidation state and are shown at the top of the figure (for ease of presentation, carboxylic acids are shown above the derivatives but do have the same oxidation state). Aldehydes exhibit a lower oxidation state and are therefore shown below the carboxylic acid derivatives. Alcohols and amines are at the bottom of the figure, since they have the lowest oxidation state.
- Among the carboxylic acid derivatives, the reactions are shown from left to right, from most reactive to least reactive. That is, acid chlorides (leftmost) are the most reactive and are most readily converted into the other derivatives:

Going from right to left—for example, converting an ester into an acid chloride—requires two steps: first hydrolysis to form a carboxylic acid, then conversion of the acid into an acid chloride.

- We did not see a method for directly converting a carboxylic acid into either an amide or a nitrile. All other carboxylic acid derivatives (acid chlorides, acid anhydrides, and esters) can be made directly from a carboxylic acid.
- We have only seen two ways to make amines in this chapter (Chapter 22 will cover many other ways for making amines).

SKILLBUILDER

20.2 INTERCONVERTING FUNCTIONAL GROUPS

LEARN the skill

Propose an efficient synthesis for the following transformation:

SOLUTION

This problem requires the transformation of an amide into an acid chloride. Amides are less reactive than acid chlorides, so this transformation requires a two-step process. The first step is hydrolysis of the amide to form a carboxylic acid.

The second step is to convert the carboxylic acid into the desired acid chloride.

In summary, conversion of an amide into an acid chloride requires the following two steps.

PRACTICE the skill

20.30 Identify reagents that will accomplish each of the following transformations:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

(f)

(g)

(h)

(i)

(j)

APPLY the skill

20.31 Juvabione is produced by fir trees of the genus *Abies* and is known to inhibit insect reproduction and growth, thereby offering the trees some protection from insect infestations. One laboratory synthesis of juvabione involved the conversion of compound **1** into compound **3**, as shown.[2]

(a) Identify reagents that can be used to convert **1** into **2**.

(b) Identify reagents that can be used to convert **2** into **3**.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 20.41a,b, 20.42a, 20.48, 20.49a,c,e, 20.53, 20.70, 20.71, 20.76**

C—C Bond-Forming Reactions

This chapter covered five new C—C bond-forming reactions, which can be placed into two categories (Table 20.2). In the first category (left), the location of the functional group remains unchanged. In each of the three reactions in this category, the product exhibits a functional group in the same location as the reactant.

In the second category (right side of Table 20.2), the position of the functional group changes.

In this case, installation of the extra carbon atom is accompanied by a change in the location of the functional group. Specifically, the functional group moves to the newly installed carbon atom. In your mind, you should always categorize C—C bond-forming reactions in terms of the ultimate location of the functional group. It will be useful to keep this in mind when planning a synthesis, and it will be especially important in Chapter 21, which focuses on many C—C bond-forming reactions.

TABLE 20.2 TWO KINDS OF C—C BOND-FORMING REACTIONS COVERED IN THIS CHAPTER

In Section 13.12, we also saw a method for installing an alkyl chain while simultaneously moving the position of a functional group by two carbon atoms.

This is just another example of a C—C bond-forming reaction in which the ultimate location of the functional group is an important factor.

When planning a synthesis in which a C—C bond is formed, it is very important to consider the location of the functional group, as that will dictate which C—C bond-forming reaction to choose. Once the proper carbon atom has been functionalized, it is generally easy to change the identity of the functional group at that carbon atom (as we saw in the previous section). However, it is slightly more complicated to change the location of a functional group if it is installed in the wrong location. The following example illustrates this idea.

SKILLBUILDER

20.3 CHOOSING THE MOST EFFICIENT C—C BOND-FORMING REACTION

LEARN the skill

Propose an efficient synthesis for the following transformation:

SOLUTION

Always begin a synthesis problem by asking the following two questions:

1. ***Is there any change in the carbon skeleton?*** Yes. The product has one additional carbon atom.
2. ***Is there any change in the identity or position of the functional group?*** Yes. The starting material is a carboxylic acid, and the product is an acid chloride. The position of the functional group has changed.

If we focus on the first question without considering the answer to the second question, we might end up going down a long, inefficient pathway. For example, imagine that we first install a methyl group without considering the desired location of the functional group.

Now the carbon skeleton is correct, but the position of the functional group is wrong. Completing this synthesis involves moving the functional group with a multistep process.

This synthesis is unnecessarily inefficient. It is more efficient to consider both questions at the same time (the change in carbon skeleton and the location of the functional group), because it is possible to install the carbon atom in such a way that the functional group is placed in the desired location.

This approach forms the necessary C—C bond while simultaneously installing a functional group at the desired location. With this approach, it is possible to obtain the desired product using just one additional step. This provides for a shorter, more efficient synthesis without regiochemical complications.

PRACTICE the skill

20.32 Propose an efficient synthesis for each of the following transformations:

APPLY the skill

20.33 α-Bisabolol is the primary constituent of the essential oil of the chamomile plant. It has a long history of use in cosmetics due to its anti-inflammatory and skin-soothing properties. One laboratory synthesis involved the conversion of compound **1** into α-bisabolol.[3] Propose reagents that can be used to achieve this transformation.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 20.41b, 20.49b,d,f, 20.50, 20.51, 20.54, 20.78, 20.79**

20.15 Spectroscopy of Carboxylic Acids and Their Derivatives

IR Spectroscopy

Recall that a carbonyl group produces a very strong signal between 1650 and 1850 cm^{-1} in an IR spectrum. The precise location of the signal depends on the nature of the carbonyl group. Table 20.3 gives carbonyl stretching frequencies for each of the carboxylic acid derivatives.

TABLE 20.3 IMPORTANT SIGNALS IN IR SPECTROSCOPY

Type of carbonyl group						
Wavenumber of absorption (cm^{-1})	~ 1790	1760, 1820 (two signals)	~ 1735	~ 1720	~ 1715	~ 1650

These numbers can be used to determine the type of carbonyl group in an unknown compound. When performing this type of analysis, recall that conjugated carbonyl groups will produce signals at lower frequencies (Section 14.3).

This shift to lower frequencies is observed for all conjugated carbonyl groups, including those present in carboxylic acid derivatives. For example, a conjugated ester will produce a signal below 1735 cm^{-1}, and this must be taken into account when analyzing a signal.

In addition, carboxylic acids show very broad O—H signals that span the distance between 2200 and 3600 cm^{-1} (Section 14.5). The C—N triple bond of a nitrile appears in the triple-bond region of the spectrum, at approximately 2200 cm^{-1} (Section 14.3).

^{13}C NMR Spectroscopy

The carbonyl group of a carboxylic acid derivative generally produces a signal in the region between 160 and 185 ppm, and it is very difficult to use the precise location of a signal to determine the type of carbonyl group present in an unknown compound. The carbon atom of a nitrile typically produces a signal between 115 and 130 ppm in a ^{13}C NMR spectrum.

^{1}H NMR Spectroscopy

As discussed in Section 15.5, the proton of a carboxylic acid typically produces a signal at approximately 12 ppm in a ^{1}H NMR spectrum.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

20.34 Compound **A** has the molecular formula $C_9H_8O_2$ and exhibits a strong signal at 1740 cm^{-1} in its IR spectrum. Treatment with two equivalents of $LiAlH_4$ followed by aqueous workup gives the following diol. Identify the structure of compound **A**.

REVIEW OF REACTIONS

Preparation of Carboxylic Acids

Reactions of Carboxylic Acids

Preparation and Reactions of Acid Chlorides

Preparation and Reactions of Acid Anhydrides

Preparation of Esters

Reactions of Esters

Preparation of Amides

Reactions of Amides

Preparation of Nitriles

Reactions of Nitriles

REVIEW OF CONCEPTS AND VOCABULARY

SECTION 20.1

- Carboxylic acids are abundant in nature, and they are widely used in the pharmaceutical and other industries.
- For industrial purposes, acetic acid is converted into vinyl acetate, which is a *carboxylic acid derivative*.

SECTION 20.2

- Compounds containing a carboxylic acid group are named with the suffix "oic acid."
- Compounds containing two carboxylic acid groups are named with the suffix "dioic acid."
- Many simple carboxylic acids and diacids have common names accepted by IUPAC.

SECTION 20.3

- Carboxylic acids can form two hydrogen-bonding interactions.
- Treatment of a carboxylic acid with a strong base, such as sodium hydroxide, yields a carboxylate salt.
- Carboxylate ions are named by replacing the suffix "ic acid" with "ate."
- The pK_a of most carboxylic acids is between 4 and 5.
- The acidity of carboxylic acids is due to the stability of the conjugate base, which is resonance stabilized.
- Using the **Henderson–Hasselbalch equation**, it can be shown that carboxylic acids exist primarily as carboxylate salts at **physiological pH**.
- Electron-withdrawing substituents can increase the acidity of a carboxylic acid; the strength of this effect depends on the distance between the electron-withdrawing substituent and the carboxylic acid group.

SECTION 20.4

- When treated with aqueous acid, a nitrile will undergo *hydrolysis*, yielding a carboxylic acid.
- Carboxylic acids can also be prepared by treating a Grignard reagent with carbon dioxide.

SECTION 20.5

- Carboxylic acids are reduced to alcohols upon treatment with lithium aluminum hydride or borane.

SECTION 20.6

- **Carboxylic acid derivatives** exhibit the same oxidation state as carboxylic acids.
- Acid halides are named by replacing the suffix "ic acid" with "yl halide."
- Acid anhydrides are named by replacing the suffix "ic acid" with "anhydride."
- Esters are named by first indicating the alkyl group attached to the oxygen atom, followed by the carboxylic acid, for which the suffix "ic acid" is replaced with "ate."
- Amides are named by replacing the suffix "ic acid" or "oic acid" with "amide."
- Nitriles are named by replacing the suffix "ic acid" with "nitrile."

SECTION 20.7

- Carboxylic acid derivatives differ in reactivity, with acid halides being the most reactive and amides the least reactive.
- The C—N bond of an amide has double-bond character and exhibits a relatively high barrier to rotation.
- When a nucleophile attacks a carboxylic acid derivative, a **nucleophilic acyl substitution** can occur in which the nucleophile replaces the leaving group. The process involves two core steps and often utilizes several proton transfer steps as well (especially in acidic conditions).
- When drawing a mechanism, avoid formation of a strong base in acidic conditions and avoid formation of a strong acid in basic conditions.
- When a nucleophile attacks a carbonyl group to form a **tetrahedral intermediate**, always re-form the carbonyl group if possible but avoid expelling H^- or C^-.

SECTION 20.8

- Acid chlorides can be formed by treating carboxylic acids with thionyl chloride.
- When treated with water, acid chlorides are hydrolyzed to give carboxylic acids.
- When treated with an alcohol, acid chlorides are converted into esters.

- When treated with ammonia, acid chlorides are converted into amides. Two equivalents of ammonia are required: one to serve as a nucleophile and the other to serve as a base.
- When treated with excess $LiAlH_4$, acid chlorides are reduced to give alcohols because two equivalents of hydride attack. Selective hydride-reducing agents, such as lithium tri(*t*-butoxy) aluminum hydride, can be used to prepare the aldehyde.
- When treated with a Grignard reagent, acid chlorides are converted into alcohols with the introduction of two alkyl groups. Two equivalents of Grignard reagent attack. Preparing a ketone requires the use of a more selective organometallic reagent, such as a **lithium dialkyl cuprate**, also called a **Gilman reagent**.

SECTION 20.9

- Acetic acid can be converted into acetic anhydride with excessive heating.
- Acid anhydrides can be prepared by treating an acid chloride with a carboxylate ion.
- The reactions of anhydrides are the same as the reactions of acid chlorides except for the identity of the leaving group.

SECTION 20.10

- When treated with a strong base followed by an alkyl halide, carboxylic acids are converted into esters.
- In a process called the **Fischer esterification**, carboxylic acids are converted into esters when treated with an alcohol in the presence of an acid catalyst. This process is reversible.
- Esters can also be prepared by treating an acid chloride with an alcohol in the presence of pyridine.

SECTION 20.11

- Esters can be hydrolyzed to yield carboxylic acids upon treatment with either aqueous base or aqueous acid. Hydrolysis under basic conditions is also called **saponification**.
- When treated with lithium aluminum hydride, esters are reduced to yield alcohols. If the desired product is an aldehyde, then DIBAH is used as a reducing agent instead of $LiAlH_4$.
- When treated with a Grignard reagent, esters are reduced to yield alcohols, with the introduction of two alkyl groups.

SECTION 20.12

- Amides can be efficiently prepared from acid chlorides.
- Amides are hydrolyzed to yield carboxylic acids by treatment with either aqueous base or aqueous acid.
- When treated with excess $LiAlH_4$, amides are converted into amines.

SECTION 20.13

- Nitriles can be prepared by treating an alkyl halide with a cyanide ion or via the dehydration of an amide.
- Nitriles can be hydrolyzed to yield carboxylic acids by treatment with either aqueous base or aqueous acid.
- A ketone is obtained when a nitrile is treated with a Grignard reagent, followed by aqueous acid.
- Nitriles are converted to amines when treated with $LiAlH_4$.

SECTION 20.14

- Carboxylic acids, their derivatives, aldehydes, alcohols, and amines can be readily interconverted using reactions covered in this chapter.
- When forming a C—C bond, always consider where you want the functional group to be located, as that will dictate which C—C bond-forming reaction to choose.

SECTION 20.15

- In IR spectroscopy, the precise location of a carbonyl stretching signal, which appears between 1650 and 1850 cm^{-1}, can be used to determine the type of carbonyl group in an unknown compound.
- Conjugated carbonyl groups produce signals at lower frequencies.
- In a ^{13}C NMR spectrum, the carbonyl group of a carboxylic acid derivative will generally produce a signal in the region between 160 and 185 ppm, and the carbon atom of a nitrile produces a signal between 115 and 130 ppm.
- In a ^{1}H NMR spectrum, the proton of a carboxylic acid produces a signal at approximately 12 ppm.

SKILLBUILDER REVIEW

20.1 DRAWING A MECHANISM FOR A NUCLEOPHILIC ACYL SUBSTITUTION REACTION

Every nucleophilic acyl substitution reaction exhibits these two steps, which must be drawn separately.

Proton transfer	Nucleophilic attack	Proton transfer	Loss of a leaving group	Proton transfer
In acidic conditions, the carbonyl group is first protonated		In acidic conditions, the leaving group is protonated before it leaves		Required in acidic conditions in order to obtain a neutral product

Try Problems **20.14, 20.15, 20.57, 20.68**

20.2 INTERCONVERTING FUNCTIONAL GROUPS

Try Problems 20.30, 20.31, 20.41a,b, 20.42a, 20.48, 20.49a,c,e, 20.53, 20.70, 20.71, 20.76

20.3 CHOOSING THE MOST EFFICIENT C—C BOND-FORMING REACTION

C—C Bond-Forming Reactions for Which the Functional Group Remains in the Same Location

C—C Bond-Forming Reactions Involving a Change in the Location of the Functional Group

Try Problems 20.32, 20.33, 20.41b, 20.49b,d,f, 20.50, 20.51, 20.54, 20.78, 20.79

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

• **Included in Answers section**

20.35 • Rank each set of compounds in order of increasing acidity:

(a)

(b)

20.36 Malonic acid has two acidic protons:

Malonic acid

The pK_a of the first proton (pK_{a1}) is measured to be 2.8, while the pK_a of the second proton (pK_{a2}) is measured to be 5.7.

(a) Explain why the first proton is more acidic than acetic acid (pK_a = 4.76).

(b) Explain why the second proton is less acidic than acetic acid.

(c) Draw the form of malonic acid that is expected to predominate at physiological pH, and explain your answer.

(d) For succinic acid ($HO_2CCH_2CH_2CO_2H$), pK_{a1} = 4.2 (which is higher than pK_{a1} for malonic acid) and pK_{a2} = 5.6 (which is lower than pK_{a2} for malonic acid). In other words, the difference between pK_{a1} and pK_{a2} is not as large for succinic acid as it is for malonic acid. Explain this observation.

20.37 Identify a systematic (IUPAC) name for each of the following compounds:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e) $CH_3(CH_2)_4CO_2H$

(f) $CH_3(CH_2)_3COCl$

(g) $CH_3(CH_2)_4CONH_2$

20.38 Identify the common name for each of the following compounds:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

20.39 Draw the structures of eight different carboxylic acids with the molecular formula $C_6H_{12}O_2$. Then, provide a systematic name for each compound and identify which three isomers exhibit chiral centers.

20.40 Draw and name all constitutionally isomeric acid chlorides with the molecular formula C_4H_7ClO. Then provide a systematic name for each isomer.

20.41 Identify the reagents you would use to convert pentanoic acid into each of the following compounds:

(a) 1-Pentanol (b) 1-Pentene (c) Hexanoic acid

20.42 • Identify the reagents you would use to convert each of the following compounds into pentanoic acid:

(a) 1-Pentene (b) 1-Bromobutane

20.43 Careful measurements reveal that *para*-methoxybenzoic acid is less acidic than benzoic acid, while *meta*-methoxybenzoic acid is more acidic than benzoic acid. Explain these observations.

20.44 • Predict the major product formed when hexanoyl chloride is treated with each of the following reagents:

(a) $CH_3CH_2NH_2$ (excess) (b) $LiAlH_4$ (excess), followed by H_3O^+

(c) CH_3CH_2OH, pyridine (d) H_2O

(e) $C_6H_5CO_2Na$ (f) NH_3 (excess)

(g) Et_2CuLi (h) EtMgBr (excess), followed by H_3O^+

20.45 Predict the major product(s) formed when cyclopentanecarboxylic acid is treated with each of the following reagents:

(a) $SOCl_2$ (b) $LiAlH_4$ (excess), followed by H_3O^+

(c) NaOH (d) $[H^+]$, EtOH

20.46 Predict the major product for each of the following reactions:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

(f)

(g)

(h)

20.47 • Identify the carboxylic acid and the alcohol that are necessary in order to make each of the following compounds via a Fischer esterification:

(a)

(b)

20.48 Determine the structures of compounds **A** through **F**:

20.49 • Identify the reagents you would use to convert 1-bromopentane into each of the following compounds:

(a) Pentanoic acid (b) Hexanoic acid (c) Pentanoyl chloride

(d) Hexanamide (e) Pentanamide (f) Ethyl hexanoate

20.50 • Starting with benzene and using any other reagents of your choice, show how you would prepare each of the following compounds:

20.51 Propose an efficient synthesis for each of the following transformations:

20.52 When methyl benzoate bears a substituent at the *para* position, the rate of hydrolysis of the ester group depends on the nature of the substituent at the *para* position. A methoxy substituent renders the ester less reactive, while a nitro substituent renders the ester more reactive. Explain this observation.

20.53 Identify reagents that can be used to accomplish each of the following transformations:

20.54 DEET is the active ingredient in many insect repellants, such as OFF™. Starting with *meta*-bromotoluene and using any other reagents of your choice, devise an efficient synthesis for DEET.

20.55 Predict the products that are formed when diphenyl carbonate is treated with excess methyl magnesium bromide.

20.56 When acetic acid is treated with isotopically labeled water (^{18}O, shown in red) in the presence of a catalytic amount of acid, it is observed that the isotopic label becomes incorporated at both possible positions of acetic acid. Draw a mechanism that accounts for this observation.

20.57 Phosgene is highly toxic and was used as a chemical weapon in World War I. It is also a synthetic precursor used in the production of many plastics.

Phosgene

(a) When vapors of phosgene are inhaled, the compound rapidly reacts with any nucleophilic sites present in the body (OH groups, NH_2 groups, etc.), producing HCl gas. Draw a mechanism for this process.

(b) When phosgene is treated with ethylene glycol ($HOCH_2CH_2OH$), a compound with the molecular formula $C_3H_4O_3$ is obtained. Draw the structure of this product.

(c) Predict the product that is expected when phosgene is treated with excess phenylmagnesium bromide, followed by aqueous workup.

20.58 Fluphenazine is an antipsychotic drug that is administered as an ester prodrug via intramuscular injection:

Fluphenazine decanoate

The hydrophobic tail of the ester is deliberately designed to enable a slow release of the prodrug into the bloodstream, where the ester is hydrolyzed to produce the active drug.

(a) Draw the structure of the active drug.

(b) Draw the structure of and assign a systematic name for the carboxylic acid that is produced as a by-product of the hydrolysis step.

20.59 Benzyl acetate is a pleasant-smelling ester found in the essential oil of jasmine flowers and is used in many perfume formulations. Starting with benzene and using any other reagents of your choice, design an efficient synthesis for benzyl acetate.

Benzyl acetate

20.60 Aspartame (below) is an artificial sweetener used in diet soft drinks and is marketed under many trade names, including Equal and Nutrasweet. In the body, aspartame is hydrolyzed to produce methanol, aspartic acid, and phenylalanine. The production of phenylalanine from aspartame poses a health risk to infants born with a rare condition called phenylketonuria, which prevents phenylalanine from being digested properly. Draw the structures of aspartic acid and phenylalanine.

Aspartame

20.61 Draw a plausible mechanism for each of the following transformations:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

20.62 Ethyl trichloroacetate is significantly more reactive toward hydrolysis than ethyl acetate. Explain this observation.

20.63 Draw the structure of the diol that is produced when the following carbonate is heated under aqueous acidic conditions:

20.64 Pivampicillin is an antibiotic prodrug:

Pivampicillin

Pivampicillin has an ester group (in red) with an attached lipophilic protecting group that enables the compound to pass through cell membranes. The pivaloyloxymethyl (POM) protective group (highlighted) is subsequently removed by cellular processes, thus releasing the active drug.

(a) Draw the structure of the active drug.

(b) What is the name of the active drug (see the BioLinks box at the end of Section 20.12)?

20.65 Dexon (below) is a polyester that is spun into fibers and used for surgical stitches that dissolve over time, eliminating the need for a follow-up procedure to remove the stitches. The ester groups are slowly hydrolyzed by enzymes present in the body, and in this way, the stitches are dissolved over a period of several months. Hydrolysis of the polymer produces glycolic acid, which is readily metabolized by the body. Draw the structure of glycolic acid. Provide a systematic name for glycolic acid.

Dexon

20.66 Draw the structure of the polymer produced when the following two monomers are allowed to react with each other in the presence of a base:

20.67 Identify what monomers you would use to produce the following polymer:

20.68 *meta*-Hydroxybenzoyl chloride is not a stable compound, and it polymerizes upon preparation. Draw the dimer that would form when *meta*-hydroxybenzoyl chloride is prepared, and show a mechanism for formation of the dimer.

20.69 • Propose an efficient synthesis for each of the following transformations:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

(f)

(g)

ACS-STYLE PROBLEMS (Multiple Choice)

Problems 20.70–20.77 follow the style of the ACS organic chemistry exam. For each of these problems, there will be one correct answer and three distractors.

20.70 • What is the major product of this reaction?

(a)
(b)
(c)
(d)

20.71 • Which compounds will react with each other in the presence of catalytic acid to give $CH_3CH_2CO_2CH(CH_3)_2$ via a Fischer esterification process?

(a)
(b)
(c)
(d)

20.72 • Which of the following structures is NOT an intermediate in the mechanism of this reaction?

(a)
(b)
(c)
(d)

20.73 • Provide a systematic name for the following compound.

(a) isopropyl butanoic ester
(b) 2-methylpropyl butanoate
(c) butyl 2-methylpropanoic ester
(d) 2-butoxy propanoate

20.74 • Which of the following does NOT represent a likely intermediate in the mechanism of the given reaction?

(a)
(b)
(c)
(d)

20.75 • Identify which of the proposed syntheses will achieve the following transformation.

I
II
III

(a) I and II only
(b) II and III only
(c) I and III only
(d) I, II, and III

20.76 • Predict the major product of the following reaction.

(a)
(b)
(c)
(d)

20.77 • Of the following, which is the best electrophile?

(a)
(b)
(c)
(d)

INTEGRATED PROBLEMS

20.78 • Starting with benzene and using any other reagents of your choice, devise a synthesis for acetaminophen, the active ingredient in Tylenol:

Acetaminophen

20.79 Using acetonitrile (CH_3CN) and CO_2 as your only sources of carbon atoms, identify how you could prepare each of the following compounds:

20.80 Draw a plausible mechanism for the following transformation:

20.81 A carboxylic acid with the molecular formula $C_5H_{10}O_2$ is treated with thionyl chloride to give compound **A**. Compound **A** has only one signal in its ^{1}H NMR spectrum. Draw the structure of the product that is formed when compound **A** is treated with excess ammonia.

20.82 A compound with the molecular formula $C_{10}H_{10}O_4$ exhibits only two signals in its ^{1}H NMR spectrum: a singlet at 4.0 (I = 3H) and a singlet at 8.1 (I = 2H). Identify the structure of this compound.

20.83 Describe how you could use IR spectroscopy to distinguish between ethyl acetate and butyric acid.

20.84 Describe how you could use NMR spectroscopy to distinguish between benzoyl chloride and *para*-chlorobenzaldehyde.

20.85 A compound with the molecular formula $C_8H_8O_3$ exhibits the following ^{1}H NMR, ^{13}C NMR, and IR spectra. Deduce the structure of this compound.

20.86 Propose a mechanism for the following transformation. If R = H, explain how you could use an isotopic labeling experiment to verify your proposed mechanism:

20.87 *N*-Acetylazoles undergo hydrolysis more readily than regular amides. Suggest a reason for the enhanced reactivity of *N*-acetylazoles toward nucleophilic acyl substitution.

***N*-Acetylazole**

20.88 Dimethylformamide (DMF) is a common solvent:

Dimethylformamide

(a) The ^{1}H NMR spectrum of DMF exhibits three signals. Upon treatment with excess $LiAlH_4$ followed by water, DMF is converted into a new compound that exhibits only one signal in its ^{1}H NMR spectrum. Explain the number of signals observed in both ^{1}H NMR spectra.

(b) Based on your answer to part a, how many signals do you expect in the ^{13}C NMR spectrum of DMF?

20.89 As we will see in Chapter 23, an important tool for organic synthesis is called olefin metathesis (2005 Nobel Prize in Chemistry) using the Grubbs catalyst (e.g., **2** to **3**). Metathesis substrate **2** can be prepared from compound **1** in three steps, shown below.[4] Show the product of each synthetic step.

20.90 Aminotetralins are a class of compounds currently being studied for their promise as antidepressant drugs. The following conversion was employed during a mechanistic study associated with a synthetic route for preparing aminotetralin drugs.[5] Propose a three-step synthesis for this transformation.

20.91 Steroidal derivatives are important pharmacologically and biologically, and the search for new biologically active steroid analogues is ongoing. Propose a possible three-step synthesis for the conversion of steroid **1** to steroid **2**, an intermediate in the synthesis of pentacyclic steroids.[6]

20.92 Allylic bromide **2** was recently used in efforts toward the total synthesis of an analogue of amphidinolide N, a potent cytotoxic agent isolated from the marine organism *Amphidinium sp.*[7] Propose an efficient synthesis of bromide **2** from carboxylic acid **1**.

20.93 Compound **3** (below) was used as an intermediate in a reported synthesis of the γ-secretase inhibitor BMS-708163.[8] Compound **3** was made from compound **1** via the two-step process shown.

(a) Compound **1** cannot be directly converted into compound **3** upon treatment with aqueous sodium hydroxide, because undesired side products would occur. Identify the possible side products.

(b) Draw a complete mechanism for the two-step synthesis below.

20.94 The *meta*- and *para*-substituted methyl benzoates listed in the table below were treated with NaOH in dioxane and water. The rate constants of saponification, *k*, are also listed in the table.[9] Provide explanations for the trend observed in the rate constants by comparing the effects of the various substituents on the rate constant. Include all relevant resonance structures in your discussion.

Ester Substrate	k ($M^{-1}min^{-1}$)
Methyl *p*-nitrobenzoate	102
Methyl *m*-nitrobenzoate	63
Methyl *m*-chlorobenzoate	9.1
Methyl *m*-bromobenzoate	8.6
Methyl benzoate	1.7
Methyl *p*-methylbenzoate	0.98
Methyl *p*-methoxybenzoate	0.42
Methyl *p*-aminobenzoate	0.06

CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

20.95 Prostaglandins (Section 26.7) are a group of structurally related compounds that function as biochemical regulators and exhibit a wide array of activity, including the regulation of blood pressure, blood clotting, gastric secretions, inflammation, kidney function, and reproductive systems. The following two-step transformation was employed by E. J. Corey during his classic prostaglandin synthesis.[10] Identify the reagents that you would use to convert compound **1** to compound **3** and draw the structure of compound **2**.

20.96 The following two-step rearrangement was the cornerstone of the first stereoselective total synthesis of quadrone, a biologically active natural product isolated from an *Aspergillus* fungus.[11] Propose a plausible mechanism for this transformation.

20.97 During research studies to determine the absolute stereochemistry of a bromohydrin, the investigators observed an unexpected skeletal rearrangement.[12] Provide a plausible mechanism for the formation of epoxide **2** from bromohydrin **1**.

20.98 During a total synthesis of englerin A, a potent cytotoxic natural product isolated from the stem bark of a Tanzanian plant, the investigators observed the following (unusual) base-catalyzed ring contraction.[13] Propose a plausible mechanism for this transformation.

LIST OF REFERENCES

1. *J. Org. Chem.* **2015**, *80*, 6076–6082.
2. *Tetrahedron Lett.* **1989**, *30*, 197–200.
3. *Tet. Lett.* **1988**, *29*, 3659–3662.
4. *Org. Lett.* **2000**, *2*, 791–794.
5. *J. Org. Chem.* **2012**, *77*, 5503–5514.
6. *Tetrahedron Lett.* **2012**, *53*, 1859–1862.
7. *Org. Biomol. Chem.* **2006**, *4*, 2119–2157.
8. *Tetrahedron Lett.* **2010**, *51*, 6542–6544.
9. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1961**, *83*, 4214–4216.
10. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1970**, *92*, 397–398.
11. *J. Org. Chem.* **1984**, *49*, 4094–4095.
12. *Tetrahedron Lett.* **2008**, *49*, 6853–6855.
13. *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed.* **2009**, *48*, 9105–9108.

21

Alpha Carbon Chemistry: Enols and Enolates

21.1 Introduction to Alpha Carbon Chemistry: Enols and Enolates
21.2 Alpha Halogenation of Enols and Enolates
21.3 Aldol Reactions
21.4 Claisen Condensations
21.5 Alkylation of the Alpha Position
21.6 Conjugate Addition Reactions
21.7 Synthesis Strategies

Top (*Pineapple barbell*) Daniel Loiselle/Getty Images

DID YOU EVER **WONDER...**

how our bodies convert food into energy that powers our muscles?

In this chapter, we will explore a variety of C—C bond-forming reactions that are among the most versatile reactions available to synthetic organic chemists. Many of these reactions also occur in biochemical processes, including the metabolic pathways that produce energy for muscle contractions. The reactions in this chapter will greatly expand your ability to design syntheses for a wide variety of compounds.

Daniel Loiselle/Getty Images

DO YOU **REMEMBER?**

Before you go on, be sure you understand the following topics.
If necessary, review the suggested sections to prepare for this chapter.

- Brønsted–Lowry Acidity (Section 3.4)
- Position of Equilibrium and Choice of Reagents (Section 3.6)
- Energy Diagrams: Thermodynamics vs. Kinetics (Section 6.6)
- Keto-Enol Tautomerization (Section 9.7)
- Multi-step Synthesis and Retrosynthetic Analysis (Section 11.5)
- Nucleophilic Acyl Substitution (Section 20.7)

Take the DO YOU **REMEMBER?** QUIZ in the **online course** to check your understanding.

21.1 Introduction to Alpha Carbon Chemistry: Enols and Enolates

The Alpha Carbon

For compounds containing a carbonyl group, Greek letters are used to describe the proximity of each carbon atom to the carbonyl group.

The carbonyl group itself does not receive a Greek letter. In this example there are two carbon atoms designated as alpha (α) positions. Hydrogen atoms are designated with the Greek letter of the carbon to which they are attached; for example, the hydrogen atoms (protons) connected to the α carbon atoms are called α protons. This chapter will explore reactions occurring at the α position.

These reactions can occur via either an enol or an enolate intermediate. The vast majority of the reactions in this chapter will proceed via an enolate intermediate, but we will also explore some reactions that proceed via an enol intermediate.

Enols

In the presence of catalytic acid or base, a ketone will exist in equilibrium with an enol.

Recall that the ketone and enol shown are tautomers—rapidly interconverting constitutional isomers that differ from each other in the placement of a proton and the position of a double bond. Do not confuse tautomers with resonance structures. The two structures above are not resonance structures because they differ in the arrangement of their atoms. These structures represent two

different compounds, both of which are present at equilibrium. In general, the position of equilibrium will significantly favor the ketone, as seen in the following example:

Cyclohexanone exists in equilibrium with its tautomeric enol form, which exhibits a very minor presence. This is the case for most ketones.

In some cases, the enol tautomer is stabilized and exhibits a more substantial presence at equilibrium. Consider, for example, the enol form of a beta-diketone, such as 2,4-pentanedione.

The equilibrium concentrations of the diketone and the enol depend on the solvent that is used, but the enol generally dominates. Two factors contribute to the remarkable stability of the enol in this case: (1) The enol has a conjugated π system, which is a stabilizing factor (see Section 16.2), and (2) the enol can form an intramolecular H-bonding interaction between the hydroxyl proton and the nearby carbonyl group (shown with a gray dotted line above). Both of these factors serve to stabilize the enol.

Phenol is an extreme example in that the concentration of the ketone is practically negligible. In this case, the ketone lacks aromaticity, while the enol is aromatic and significantly more stable.

Tautomerization is catalyzed by trace amounts of either acid or base. The acid-catalyzed process is shown in Mechanism 21.1 (seen previously in Mechanism 9.2).

MECHANISM 21.1 ACID-CATALYZED TAUTOMERIZATION

LOOKING BACK
This requirement was discussed in Section 20.7.

In the first step, the carbonyl group is protonated to form a resonance-stabilized cation, which is then deprotonated at the α position to give the enol. Notice that none of the reagents or intermediates are strong bases, which is consistent with acidic conditions.

The base-catalyzed process for tautomerization is shown in Mechanism 21.2.

MECHANISM 21.2 BASE-CATALYZED TAUTOMERIZATION

In the first step, the α position is deprotonated to form a resonance-stabilized anion, which is then protonated to give the enol. Notice that none of the reagents or intermediates are strong acids, in order to be consistent with basic conditions.

The mechanisms for acid-catalyzed and base-catalyzed tautomerization involve the same two steps (protonation at the carbonyl group and deprotonation of the α position). The difference between these mechanisms is the order of events. In acidic conditions, the first step is protonation of the carbonyl group, giving a positively charged intermediate. In basic conditions, the first step is deprotonation of the α position, giving a negatively charged intermediate.

It is difficult to prevent tautomerization, even if care is taken to remove all acids and bases from the solution. Tautomerization can still be catalyzed by the trace amounts of acid or base that are adsorbed to the surface of the glassware (even after washing the glassware scrupulously). Unless extremely rare conditions are employed, you should always assume that tautomerization will occur if possible, and an equilibrium will quickly be established favoring the more stable tautomer. The enol tautomer is generally present only in small amounts, but it is very reactive. Specifically, the α position is very nucleophilic, which can be justified with resonance structures:

FIGURE 21.1
An electrostatic potential map of the enol of acetone, showing the nucleophilic character of the α position.

In the second resonance structure, the α position exhibits a lone pair and a negative charge, rendering that position nucleophilic. The effect of an OH group in activating the α position is similar to its effect in activating an aromatic ring (as seen in Section 18.10). The electron-donating effect of the OH group can be visualized with an electrostatic potential map of a simple enol (Figure 21.1). Notice that the α position is somewhat red, representing an electron-rich site. In Section 21.2, we will see two reactions in which the α position of an enol functions as a nucleophile.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

21.1 Draw a mechanism for the acid-catalyzed conversion of cyclohexanone into its tautomeric enol.

21.2 Draw a mechanism for the reverse process of the previous problem. In other words, draw the acid-catalyzed conversion of 1-cyclohexenol to cyclohexanone.

21.3 Draw the two possible enols that can be formed from 3-methyl-2-butanone and show a mechanism of formation of each under base-catalyzed conditions.

Enolates

When treated with a strong base, the α position of a ketone is deprotonated to give a resonance-stabilized intermediate called an **enolate**.

Enolates are ambident nucleophiles (*ambi* is Latin for "both" and *dent* is Latin for "teeth"), because they possess two nucleophilic sites, each of which can attack an electrophile. When the oxygen atom attacks an electrophile, it is called O-attack; and when the α carbon attacks an electrophile, it is called C-attack.

Although the oxygen atom of an enolate bears the majority of the negative charge, C-attack is nevertheless more common than O-attack. All of the reactions presented in this chapter will be examples of C-attack. When drawing the mechanism of an enolate undergoing C-attack, it is more appropriate to draw the resonance structure of the enolate in which the negative charge appears on the oxygen atom, because that drawing represents the more significant resonance contributor. Therefore, C-attack should be drawn like this:

If you have trouble seeing why this is called C-attack, you can draw both resonance structures of the enolate, as shown below. When drawn like this, it is clear that the enolate is undergoing C-attack:

Enolates are more useful than enols because (1) enolates possess a full negative charge and are therefore more reactive than enols and (2) enolates can be isolated and stored for short periods of time, unlike enols, which cannot be isolated or stored. For these two reasons, the vast majority of reactions in this chapter proceed via enolate intermediates.

LOOKING BACK
For a review of the factors that affect the acidity of a proton, see Section 3.4.

As we progress through the chapter, it is important to keep in mind that only the α protons are acidic in aldehydes and ketones.

In the example shown, the beta (β) and gamma (γ) protons are not acidic, and neither is the aldehydic proton. Deprotonation at any of those positions does not lead to a resonance-stabilized anion.

SKILLBUILDER

21.1 DRAWING ENOLATES

LEARN the skill

When the following ketone is treated with a strong base, an enolate ion is formed. Draw both resonance structures of the enolate.

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Identify all α positions.

Begin by identifying all α positions. In this case, there are two α positions, but only one of them bears a proton. The α position on the right side of the carbonyl group has no protons, and therefore, an enolate cannot form on that side of the carbonyl group. The other α carbon (on the left side) does have a proton, and an enolate can be formed at that location.

STEP 2
Remove the proton at the α position and draw the resulting anion.

Using two curved arrows, remove the proton, and then draw the enolate with a lone pair and a negative charge at the α position (in place of the proton).

STEP 3
Draw the resonance structure, showing the charge on the oxygen atom.

Finally, draw the other (more-significant) resonance structure (with the negative charge on oxygen rather than on carbon) using the skills developed in Section 2.10.

Notice that, in order to deprotonate the ketone, we drew two curved arrows to give the less-significant resonance structure, and then we used the rules from Section 2.10 to draw the other (more-significant) resonance structure. Alternatively, we can draw the deprotonation step using three curved arrows, rather than two, to give the more-significant resonance structure, like this:

and then we can draw the other (less-significant) resonance structure using the skills developed in Section 2.10:

Both methods are acceptable, although after this SkillBuilder, we will generally represent enolates by showing only the more-significant resonance structure (rather than showing

both resonance structures). So, moving forward, we will generally draw three curved arrows when showing the deprotonation of a ketone to give an enolate:

An enolate
(most significant resonance structure)

PRACTICE the skill

21.4 Draw both resonance structures of the enolate formed when each of the following ketones is treated with a strong base:

APPLY the skill

21.5 As with aldehydes and ketones, the α position of an ester can also be deprotonated. The enolate of ethyl diethoxyacetate was prepared[1] in a synthesis of leustroducsin B, a natural product that has been shown to increase resistance to bacterial infection.[2] Show a mechanism of formation of the enolate of ethyl diethoxyacetate by treatment with a strong base, and draw both resonance structures of the enolate formed.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 21.49, 21.89**

Choosing a Base for Enolate Formation

In this chapter, we will see many reactions involving enolates, and the choice of base will always be important. Some cases require a relatively mild base to form the enolate, while other cases demand a very strong base. In order to choose an appropriate base, we must take a careful look at pK_a values. Aldehydes and ketones typically have pK_a values in the range of 16–20, as seen in Table 21.1.

TABLE 21.1 pK_a VALUES OF SOME COMMON KETONES AND ALDEHYDES

Compound	pK_a	Enolate
Acetone	19.2	
Acetophenone	18.3	
Acetaldehyde	16.7	

The range of pK_a values is similar to the range exhibited by alcohols (ethanol has a pK_a of 16 and *tert*-butanol has a pK_a of 18). As a result, when an alkoxide ion is used as the base, an equilibrium is established in which the alkoxide ion and the enolate ion are both present. The relative amount of alkoxide and enolate ions is determined by the relative pK_a values, although there will usually be less of the enolate present at equilibrium. Consider the following example:

In this example, ethoxide is used as a base to deprotonate a ketone (acetone). The equilibrium strongly favors the ketone, rather than its enolate, although both are present. The presence of both the ketone and its enolate is important because the enolate is a nucleophile and the ketone is an electrophile, and these two species will react with each other when they are both present, as we will see in Section 21.3.

In contrast, many other bases, such as sodium hydride, can irreversibly and completely convert the ketone into an enolate.

When sodium hydride is used as the base, hydrogen gas is formed. It bubbles out of solution, as all of the ketone molecules are converted into enolate ions. Under these conditions, the ketone and the enolate are not both present. Only the enolate is present. Another base commonly used for irreversible enolate formation is lithium diisopropylamide (LDA), which is prepared by treating diisopropylamine with butyllithium.

The pK_a of diisopropylamine is approximately 36, and therefore, LDA can be used to accomplish irreversible enolate formation.

When LDA is used as a base, the amount of ketone present at equilibrium is negligible.

Now consider a compound with two carbonyl groups that are beta to each other:

In this case, the central CH_2 group is flanked by two carbonyl groups. The protons of the CH_2 group (shown in red) are therefore highly acidic. As opposed to most ketones (with a pK_a somewhere in the range of 16–20), the pK_a of this compound is approximately 9. The acidity of these protons can be attributed to the highly stabilized anion formed upon deprotonation.

The anion is a highly stabilized enolate ion with the negative charge being spread over two oxygen atoms and one carbon atom. Because of the relatively high acidity of beta diketones, LDA is not required to irreversibly deprotonate these compounds. Rather, treatment with hydroxide or an alkoxide ion is sufficient to ensure nearly complete enolate formation.

LOOKING BACK
To review how pK_a values can be used to determine equilibrium concentrations for an acid-base reaction, see Section 3.3.

The difference in pK_a values is about 7 (which represents seven orders of magnitude). In other words, when ethoxide is used as the base, 99.99999% of the diketone molecules are deprotonated to form enolates.

Figure 21.2 summarizes the relevant factors for choosing a base to form an enolate ion. The information summarized in this figure will be used several times in the upcoming sections of this chapter.

FIGURE 21.2 A summary of the outcomes observed when various bases are used to deprotonate ketones or 1,3-diketones.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

21.6 Draw the enolate ion that is formed when each of the following compounds is treated with sodium ethoxide. In each case, draw all resonance structures of the enolate ion and predict whether or not a substantial amount of starting ketone will be present together with the enolate at equilibrium.

21.7 For each pair of compounds, identify which compound is more acidic and explain your choice.

(a) 2,4-Dimethyl-3,5-heptanedione or 4,4-dimethyl-3,5-heptanedione

(b) 1,2-Cyclopentanedione or 1,3-cyclopentanedione

(c) Acetophenone or benzaldehyde

21.2 Alpha Halogenation of Enols and Enolates

Alpha Halogenation in Acidic Conditions

Under acid-catalyzed conditions, ketones and aldehydes will undergo halogenation at the α position.

The reaction is observed for chlorine, bromine, and iodine, but not for fluorine. A variety of solvents can be used, including acetic acid, water, chloroform, and diethyl ether. The rate of halogenation is found to be independent of the concentration or identity of the halogen, indicating that the halogen does not participate in the rate-determining step. This information is consistent with Mechanism 21.3.

MECHANISM 21.3 ACID-CATALYZED HALOGENATION OF KETONES

The mechanism has two parts. First the ketone undergoes tautomerization to produce an enol. Then, in the second part of the mechanism, the enol serves as a nucleophile and installs a halogen atom at the α position. The second part of the mechanism (halogenation) occurs more rapidly than the first part (enol formation), and therefore, enol formation represents the rate-determining step for the process. The halogen is not involved in enol formation, and therefore, the concentration of the halogen has no measurable impact on the rate of the overall process.

The by-product of α bromination is HBr, which is an acid and is capable of catalyzing the first part of the mechanism (enol formation). As a result, the reaction is said to be **autocatalytic**; that is, the reagent necessary to catalyze the reaction is produced by the reaction itself.

When an unsymmetrical ketone is used, bromination occurs primarily at the more substituted side of the ketone.

In this example, a mixture of products is generally unavoidable. However, bromination occurs primarily at the side bearing the alkyl group, which can be attributed to the fact that the reaction proceeds more rapidly through the more substituted enol.

More substituted (more stable) | Less substituted (less stable)

The halogenated product can undergo elimination when treated with a base.

A variety of bases can be used, including pyridine, lithium carbonate (Li_2CO_3), or potassium *tert*-butoxide. This provides a two-step method for introducing α,β-unsaturation in a ketone. This procedure is only practical in some cases, and yields are often low.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

21.8 Predict the major product for each of the following reaction sequences and propose a mechanism for its formation:

21.9 Identify reagents that can be used to accomplish each of the following transformations (**Note:** you will need to use reactions from previous chapters):

Alpha Bromination of Carboxylic Acids: The Hell–Volhard–Zelinsky Reaction

Alpha halogenation, as described earlier in this section, occurs readily with ketones and aldehydes, but not with carboxylic acids, esters, or amides. This is likely due to the fact that these functional groups are not readily converted to their corresponding enols. Nevertheless, carboxylic acids do undergo alpha halogenation when treated with bromine in the presence of PBr_3.

(90%)

This process, called the **Hell–Volhard–Zelinsky reaction**, is believed to occur via the following sequence of events:

An acid halide | An acid halide enol

The carboxylic acid first reacts with PBr_3 to form an acid halide, which exists in equilibrium with an enol. This enol then functions as a nucleophile and undergoes halogenation at the α position. Finally, hydrolysis regenerates the carboxylic acid.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

21.10 Predict the major product for each of the following reaction sequences:

21.11 Identify reagents that can be used to accomplish each of the following transformations (you will also need to use reactions from previous chapters).

Alpha Halogenation in Basic Conditions: The Haloform Reaction

We have seen that ketones will undergo alpha halogenation in acid-catalyzed conditions. A similar result can also be achieved in basic conditions:

The base abstracts a proton to form the enolate, which then functions as a nucleophile and undergoes alpha halogenation.

With hydroxide as the base, the concentration of enolate is always low but is continuously maintained by the equilibrium as the reaction proceeds.

When more than one α proton is present, it is difficult to achieve monobromination in basic conditions, because the brominated product is more reactive and rapidly undergoes further bromination.

After the first halogenation reaction occurs, the presence of the halogen renders the α position more acidic, and the second halogenation step occurs more rapidly. As a result, it is often difficult to isolate the monobrominated product.

When a methyl ketone is treated with excess base and excess halogen, a reaction occurs in which a carboxylic acid is produced after acidic workup.

The mechanism is believed to involve several steps. First, the α protons are removed and replaced with bromine atoms, one at a time. Then, the tribromomethyl group can function as a leaving group, resulting in a nucleophilic acyl substitution reaction.

Notice that the leaving group is a carbanion, which violates the rule that we saw in Section 20.7 (re-form the carbonyl if possible but avoid expelling C^-). The discussion in Chapter 20 indicated that there would be some exceptions to the rule, and here is the first exception. The negative charge on carbon is stabilized in this case by the electron-withdrawing effects of the three bromine atoms, rendering CBr_3^- a suitable leaving group. The resulting carboxylic acid is then deprotonated, producing a carboxylate ion and $CHBr_3$ (called bromoform). The formation of a carboxylate ion drives the reaction to completion.

The same process occurs with chlorine and iodine, and the by-products are chloroform and iodoform, respectively. This reaction is named after the by-product that is formed and is called the **haloform reaction**. The reaction must be followed by treatment with a proton source to protonate the carboxylate ion and form the carboxylic acid. This process is synthetically useful for converting methyl ketones into carboxylic acids.

The haloform reaction is most efficient when the other side of the ketone has no α protons.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

21.12 Predict the major product obtained when each of the following compounds is treated with bromine (Br_2) together with sodium hydroxide (NaOH) followed by aqueous acid (H_3O^+):

21.13 Identify reagents that can be used to accomplish each of the following transformations (you will need to use reactions from previous chapters):

21.3 Aldol Reactions

Aldol Additions

Recall that when an aldehyde is treated with sodium hydroxide, both the aldehyde and the enolate will be present at equilibrium. Under such conditions, a reaction can occur between these two species. For example, treatment of acetaldehyde with sodium hydroxide gives 3-hydroxybutanal.

The product exhibits both an aldehydic group and a hydroxyl group, and it is therefore called an aldol (*ald* for "aldehyde" and *ol* for "alcohol"). In recognition of the type of product formed, the reaction is called an **aldol addition reaction**. Notice that the hydroxyl group is located specifically at the β position relative to the carbonyl group. The product of an aldol addition reaction is always a β-hydroxy aldehyde or ketone. Mechanism 21.4 shows three steps for an aldol addition reaction.

MECHANISM 21.4 ALDOL ADDITION

In the first step, the aldehyde is deprotonated to form an enolate. Since hydroxide is used as the base, both the enolate and the aldehyde are present at equilibrium, and the enolate attacks the aldehyde. The resulting alkoxide ion is then protonated to yield the product. Notice the use of equilibrium arrows for every step of the mechanism. For most simple aldehydes, the position of equilibrium favors the aldol product.

However, for most ketones, the aldol product is not favored, and poor yields are common.

In this reaction, the reverse process is favored, that is, the β-hydroxy ketone is converted back into cyclohexanone more readily than the forward reaction. This reverse process, which is called a **retro-aldol reaction** (Mechanism 21.5), can be exploited in many situations (an example can be seen in the upcoming WorldLinks box on muscle power).

MECHANISM 21.5 RETRO-ALDOL REACTION

Once again, this mechanism has three steps. In fact, these three steps are simply the reverse of the three steps for an aldol addition reaction. Notice that the second step in this mechanism involves re-formation of a carbonyl group to expel an enolate ion as a leaving group. This reaction therefore represents another exception to the rule about avoiding the expulsion of C^-. This exception is justified because an enolate is resonance stabilized, with the vast majority of the negative charge residing on the oxygen atom.

SKILLBUILDER

21.2 PREDICTING THE PRODUCTS OF AN ALDOL ADDITION REACTION

LEARN the skill

Predict the product of the aldol addition reaction that occurs when the following aldehyde is treated with aqueous sodium hydroxide.

SOLUTION

The best way to draw the product of an aldol addition reaction is to consider its mechanism. In the first step, the α position of the aldehyde is deprotonated to form an enolate.

STEP 1
Consider all three steps of the mechanism.

Remember that the aldehydic proton is not acidic. Only the α protons are acidic. In the second step of the mechanism, the enolate attacks an aldehyde, forming an alkoxide ion.

Finally, the alkoxide intermediate is protonated to give the product.

In total, there are three mechanistic steps: (1) deprotonation, (2) nucleophilic attack, and (3) protonation. Notice that the product is a β-hydroxy aldehyde. When drawing the product of an aldol addition reaction, always make sure that the hydroxyl group is located at the β position relative to the carbonyl group.

STEP 2
Double-check your answer to make sure that the product has an OH group at the β position.

PRACTICE the skill

21.14 Predict the major product obtained when each of the following aldehydes is treated with aqueous sodium hydroxide:

21.15 When each of the following ketones is treated with aqueous sodium hydroxide, the aldol addition product is obtained in poor yields. In these cases, special distillation techniques are used to increase the yield of aldol product. In each case, predict the aldol addition product that is obtained and propose a mechanism for its formation:

APPLY the skill

21.16 When conducted in a chiral environment (for example, by using a chiral catalyst or adding a chiral auxiliary), an asymmetric aldol reaction can occur that favors the production of a single stereoisomer over others. The aldehyde shown below was used to discover new reaction conditions for asymmetric aldol addition reactions.[3]

(a) Without showing any stereochemistry, draw the expected aldol addition product that is obtained when the aldehyde above is treated with aqueous sodium hydroxide.

(b) Draw all possible stereoisomers of this product.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 21.62, 21.104, 21.105**

WorldLinks Muscle Power

Retro-aldol reactions play a vital role in many biochemical processes, including one of the processes by which energy is generated for our muscles. We first mentioned in Section 12.11 that energy in our bodies is stored in the form of ATP molecules. That is, energy from the food we eat is used to convert ADP into ATP, which is stored. When energy is needed, ATP is broken down to ADP, and the energy that is released can be used for various life processes, such as muscle contraction.

Adenosine diphosphate (ADP)

Adenosine triphosphate (ATP)

Notice that the structural difference between ATP and ADP is in the number of phosphate groups present (two in the case of ADP, three in the case of ATP). The ATP molecules in our muscles are used for any activity that requires a short burst of energy, such as a tennis serve, jumping, or throwing a ball. For activities that last longer than a second, such as sprinting, ATP molecules must be synthesized on the spot. This is initially achieved by a process called glycolysis, in which a molecule of glucose (obtained from metabolism of the carbohydrates we eat) is converted into two molecules of pyruvic acid.

Glucose **Pyruvic acid**

Glycolysis involves many steps and is accompanied by the conversion of two molecules of ADP into ATP. This metabolic process therefore generates the necessary ATP for muscle contraction. One of the steps involved in glycolysis is a retro-aldol reaction, which is achieved with the help of an enzyme called aldolase.

The end product of glycolysis is pyruvic acid, which is used as a starting material in a variety of biochemical processes.

Glycolysis provides ATP for activities lasting up to 1.5 min. Activities that exceed this time frame, such as long-distance running, require a different process for ATP generation, called the citric acid cycle. Unlike glycolysis, which can be achieved without oxygen (it is an anaerobic process), the citric acid cycle requires oxygen (it is an aerobic process). This explains why we breathe more rapidly during and after strenuous activity. The term "aerobic workout" is commonly used to refer to a workout that utilizes ATP that was generated by the citric acid cycle (an aerobic process) rather than glycolysis (an anaerobic process). A casual athlete can sense a shift from anaerobic ATP synthesis to aerobic ATP synthesis after about 1.5 min. Seasoned athletes will detect the shift occurring after about 2.5 min. If you watch the summer Olympics, you are likely aware of the distinction between sprinting and long-distance running. Athletes can run faster in a sprinting race, which relies mostly on glycolysis for energy production. Long-distance running requires the citric acid cycle for energy production.

Daniel Loiselle/Getty Images

Aldol Condensations

When heated in acidic or basic conditions, the product of an aldol addition reaction will undergo elimination to produce unsaturation between the α and β positions:

Practically, this transformation is most readily achieved when an aldol addition is performed at elevated temperature. Under these basic conditions, the aldol addition reaction occurs, followed by dehydration to give an α,β-unsaturated product.

This two-step process (aldol addition plus dehydration) is called an **aldol condensation**. The term *condensation* is used to refer to any reaction in which two molecules undergo addition accompanied by the loss of a small molecule such as water, carbon dioxide, or nitrogen gas. In the case of aldol condensations, water is the small molecule that is lost. Notice that the product of an aldol addition is a β-hydroxy aldehyde or ketone, while the product of an aldol condensation is an α,β-unsaturated aldehyde or ketone.

MECHANISM 21.6 ALDOL CONDENSATION

PART 1 : ALDOL ADDITION

PART 2: ELIMINATION OF H_2O

An aldol condensation (Mechanism 21.6) has two parts. The first part is just an aldol addition reaction, which has three mechanistic steps. The second part has two steps that accomplish the elimination of water. Normally, alcohols do not undergo dehydration in the presence of a strong base, but here, the presence of the carbonyl group renders the α position mildly acidic, thereby enabling the dehydration reaction to occur. The α position is first deprotonated to form an enolate ion, followed by expulsion of a hydroxide ion to produce α,β unsaturation. This two-step process, which is different from the elimination reactions we saw in Chapter 7, is called an **E1cb mechanism**. Unlike an E1 process, in which the intermediate is a cation, the intermediate in this case is an anion (an enolate). This enolate is formed via deprotonation, so it is a conjugate base (thus the letters "cb"), and the "1" indicates that the reaction is first order (see Section 5.5 for a description of first-order reactions).

In cases where two stereoisomeric π bonds can be formed, the product with fewer steric interactions is generally the major product.

LOOKING BACK
The stability of conjugated π systems was discussed in Section 16.2.

In this example, formation of the *trans* π bond is favored over formation of the *cis* π bond.

The driving force for an aldol condensation is formation of a conjugated system. The reaction conditions required for an aldol condensation are only slightly more vigorous than the conditions required for an aldol addition reaction. Usually, an aldol condensation can be achieved by simply performing the reaction at an elevated temperature. In fact, in some cases, it is not even possible to isolate the β-hydroxyketone. As an example, consider the following case:

In this case, the aldol addition product cannot be isolated. Even at moderate temperatures, only the condensation product is obtained, because the condensation reaction involves formation of a highly conjugated π system. Even in cases where the aldol addition product can be isolated (by performing the reaction at a low temperature), the yields for condensation reactions are often much greater than the yields for addition reactions. The following example illustrates this point:

When the reaction is performed at low temperature, the aldol addition product is obtained, but the yield is very poor. As explained earlier, the starting material is a ketone, and the equilibrium does not favor formation of the aldol addition product. However, when the reaction is performed at an elevated temperature, the aldol condensation product is obtained in very good yield, because the equilibrium is driven by formation of a conjugated π system.

SKILLBUILDER

21.3 DRAWING THE PRODUCT OF AN ALDOL CONDENSATION

LEARN the skill

Predict the product of the aldol condensation that occurs when the following ketone is heated in the presence of aqueous sodium hydroxide:

SOLUTION

One way to draw the product is to draw the entire mechanism, but there is a faster method for drawing the product of an aldol condensation. Begin by considering the number of α protons (shown below in red) connected to each α position:

STEP 1
Identify an α position that bears at least two protons.

In order to achieve an aldol condensation, one of the α carbon atoms must bear at least two protons. In this case, one of the α positions (left) has one proton, and the other α position (right) has three protons. Therefore, the reaction occurs at the α position with three protons.

Next, draw two molecules of the ketone, oriented such that the nucleophilic α carbon of one molecule is aligned with the electrophilic carbonyl carbon of the other molecule.

STEP 2
Redraw two molecules of the ketone, oriented such that the two α protons of one molecule are directly facing the carbonyl group of the other molecule.

In this orientation, two α protons of one molecule are directly facing the carbonyl group of the other molecule:

When drawn in this way, it is easier to predict the product without having to draw the entire mechanism. Simply remove the two α protons and the oxygen atom (shown in red) and replace them with a double bond:

STEP 3
Remove H_2O and replace with a C═C bond.

The product is an α,β-unsaturated ketone, and water is liberated as a by-product. In this case, two stereoisomers are possible, so we draw the product with less steric strain.

STEP 4
Draw the isomer with less steric strain.

PRACTICE the skill

21.17 Draw the condensation product obtained when each of the following compounds is heated in the presence of aqueous sodium hydroxide:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

(f)

APPLY the skill

21.18 Perhydroazulene derivatives have shown usefulness in electronic display applications.[4] In a study to find an efficient route for the synthesis of the perhydroazulene skeleton, compound **1** was heated in an aqueous basic solution.[5] The resulting intramolecular aldol condensation gave compound **2**, a perhydroazulene derivative with the molecular formula $C_{10}H_{14}O$. Propose a structure for **2**.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 21.61, 21.74c, 21.90, 21.95**

Crossed Aldol Reactions

Until now, we have focused on symmetrical aldol reactions, that is, aldol reactions that occur between two identical partners. In this section, we explore **crossed aldol**, or **mixed aldol, reactions**, which are aldol reactions that can occur between different partners. As an example, consider what happens when a mixture of acetaldehyde and propionaldehyde is treated with a base. Under these circumstances, four possible aldol products can be formed (Figure 21.3).

FIGURE 21.3
A crossed aldol reaction can produce many different products.

The first two products are formed from symmetrical aldol reactions, while the latter two products are formed from crossed aldol reactions. Reactions that form mixtures of products are of little use, and therefore, crossed aldol reactions are only efficient if they can be performed in a way that minimizes the number of possible products. This is best accomplished in either of the following ways:

1. If one of the aldehydes lacks α protons and possesses an unhindered carbonyl group, then a crossed aldol can be performed. As an example, consider what happens when a mixture of formaldehyde and propionaldehyde is treated with a base.

In this case, only one major aldol product is produced. Why? Formaldehyde has no α protons and therefore cannot form an enolate. As a result, only the enolate formed from propionaldehyde is present in solution. Under these conditions, there are only two possible products. The enolate can attack a molecule of propionaldehyde to produce a symmetrical aldol reaction, or the enolate can attack a molecule of formaldehyde to produce a crossed aldol reaction. The latter occurs more rapidly because the carbonyl group of formaldehyde is less hindered and more reactive than the carbonyl group of propionaldehyde. As a result, one product predominates.

Crossed aldol reactions can also be performed with benzaldehyde.

When benzaldehyde is used, the dehydration step is spontaneous, and the equilibrium favors the condensation product rather than the addition product, because the condensation product is highly conjugated.

Aldol reactions involving aromatic aldehydes generally produce condensation reactions.

2. Crossed aldol reactions can also be performed using LDA as a base.

Recall that LDA causes irreversible enolate formation. If the ketone is added dropwise to a solution of LDA, the result is a solution of enolate ions. Propionaldehyde can then be added dropwise to the mixture, giving a crossed aldol addition. The resulting alkoxide ion can then be protonated by introducing a proton source (such as H_3O^+) into the reaction flask, giving one major product:

This type of process is called a **directed aldol addition**, and its success is limited by the rate at which enolate ions can equilibrate. In other words, it is possible for an enolate ion to function as a base (rather than a nucleophile) and deprotonate a molecule of propionaldehyde. If this process occurs too rapidly, then a mixture of products will result.

SKILLBUILDER

21.4 IDENTIFYING REAGENTS FOR A CROSSED ALDOL REACTION

LEARN the skill

Identify reagents that can be used to produce the following compound via an aldol reaction:

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Identify the α and β positions.

Begin by identifying the α and β positions.

STEP 2
Use a retrosynthetic analysis that focuses on the α,β bond.

Now apply a retrosynthetic analysis. The bond between the α and β positions is the bond formed during an aldol reaction. To draw the necessary starting materials, disconnect the bond between the α and β positions, drawing a carbonyl group in place of the OH group.

These are the two starting carbonyl compounds. They are not identical, so a crossed aldol reaction is required.

STEP 3
Identify an appropriate base.

The final step is to determine which base should be used. Both starting compounds have α protons, so hydroxide cannot be used because it would result in a mixture of products. In this case, a crossed aldol can only be accomplished if LDA is used to achieve a directed aldol reaction, followed by acidic workup.

In the first step, the symmetrical ketone is irreversibly and completely deprotonated by LDA to produce a solution of enolate ions. Then, the aldehyde is added dropwise to the solution, followed by acidic workup, to achieve a directed aldol addition.

PRACTICE the skill

21.19 Identify suitable reactants and reagents that can be used to produce each of the following compounds via an aldol reaction.

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

APPLY the skill

21.20 In an effort to make lasers more affordable and easier to make, chemists are developing organic solid-state lasers (OSSLs) using small organic molecules that are capable of lasing

(releasing laser light). One such molecule, DPHP, was prepared using an aldol reaction.[6] Identify suitable reactants and reagents that can be used to produce DPHP via an aldol condensation.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 21.57, 21.58, 21.102**

Intramolecular Aldol Reactions

Compounds that possess two carbonyl groups can undergo intramolecular aldol reactions. Consider the reaction that occurs when 2,5-hexanedione is heated in the presence of aqueous sodium hydroxide.

In this case, a cyclic product is formed. The accepted mechanism for this process is nearly identical to the mechanism for any other aldol condensation but with one notable difference—the enolate and the carbonyl group are both present in the same structure, resulting in an intramolecular attack.

Intramolecular aldol reactions show a preference for formation of five- and six-membered rings. Smaller rings are possible but are generally not observed.

It is conceivable that the three-membered ring might be formed initially, but recall that the products of aldol reactions are determined by equilibrium concentrations. Once the equilibrium has been achieved, the strained, three-membered ring is not present in substantial amounts because the equilibrium favors formation of a nearly strain-free product.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

21.21 Draw a mechanism for the following transformation:

21.22 The reaction in the previous problem is an equilibrium process. Draw a mechanism of the reverse process. That is, draw a mechanism showing conversion of the conjugated, cyclic enone into the acyclic dione in the presence of sodium hydroxide.

21.23 When 2,6-heptanedione is heated in the presence of aqueous sodium hydroxide, a condensation product with a six-membered ring is obtained. Draw the product and show a mechanism for its formation.

21.4 Claisen Condensations

The Claisen Condensation

Like aldehydes and ketones, esters also exhibit reversible condensation reactions.

This type of reaction is called a **Claisen condensation**, and a mechanism for this process is shown in Mechanism 21.7.

MECHANISM 21.7 CLAISEN CONDENSATION

The first two steps of this mechanism are much like an aldol addition. The ester is first deprotonated to form an enolate, which then functions as a nucleophile and attacks another molecule of the ester. The difference between an aldol reaction and a Claisen condensation is the fate of the tetrahedral intermediate. In a Claisen condensation, the tetrahedral intermediate can expel a leaving group to re-form a C═O bond. The Claisen condensation is simply a nucleophilic acyl substitution reaction in which the nucleophile is an ester enolate and the electrophile is an ester. The product of this reaction is a β-keto ester.

Notice that the last step in the mechanism is deprotonation of the β-keto ester to give a highly stabilized enolate. This deprotonation step cannot be avoided, because the reaction occurs under basic conditions. Each molecule of base (alkoxide ion) is converted into the highly stabilized enolate, which is a favorable transformation (downhill in energy). In fact, the deprotonation step at the end of the mechanism provides a driving force that causes the equilibrium to favor condensation. As a result, the base is not a catalyst but is actually consumed as the reaction proceeds.

When performing a Claisen condensation, the starting ester must have two α protons. If it only has one α proton, then the driving force for condensation is absent (a highly stabilized enolate cannot be formed).

After the reaction is complete, it is necessary to use an acid in order to protonate the highly stabilized enolate.

Notice that the product contains an ester group. In order to avoid the hydrolysis of this ester group (in the presence of H_3O^+), we must use an extremely mild source of aqueous acid. One common way to produce such conditions is to use a solution of ammonium chloride (NH_4Cl) in water. Under these conditions, ammonium ions (NH_4^+) are present in solution, rather than hydronium ions (H_3O^+). Ammonium ions ($pK_a = 9.2$) are significantly less acidic than hydronium ions ($pK_a = -1.7$), providing for extremely mild aqueous acidic conditions. Under these mild workup conditions, the ester group in the product is not hydrolyzed.

Hydroxide cannot be used as the base for a Claisen condensation because it can cause hydrolysis of the starting ester, as shown here:

If hydroxide is used as a base, the ester is hydrolyzed to form a carboxylic acid, which is then irreversibly deprotonated to form a carboxylate salt, thereby preventing the Claisen condensation from occurring. Instead, Claisen condensations are achieved by using an alkoxide ion as the base. Specifically, the alkoxide used must be the same alkoxy group that is present in the starting ester in order to avoid *transesterification*. For example, if an ethyl ester is treated with methoxide, transesterification can convert the ethyl ester into a methyl ester.

Crossed Claisen Condensations

Claisen condensation reactions that occur between two different partners are called **crossed Claisen condensations**. Just as we saw with aldol reactions, crossed Claisen condensation reactions also produce a mixture of products and are only efficient if one of the two following criteria are met:

1. If one ester has no α protons and cannot form an enolate; for example:

   In this reaction, the aryl ester lacks α protons and cannot form an enolate. Only the other ester is capable of forming an enolate, which reduces the number of possible products.

2. A directed Claisen condensation can be performed in which LDA is used as a base to irreversibly form an ester enolate, which is then treated with a different ester.

Intramolecular Claisen Condensations: The Dieckmann Cyclization

Just as we saw with aldol reactions, Claisen condensations can also occur in an intramolecular fashion; for example:

BY THE WAY
When drawing the product of a Dieckmann cyclization, it is wise to use a numbering system to keep track of all carbon atoms, as shown here.

This process is called a **Dieckmann cyclization**, and the product is a cyclic, β-keto ester. Notice that the ester enolate and the ester group are both present in the same molecule, resulting in an intramolecular attack.

Intramolecular Claisen condensations show a preference for formation of five- and six-membered rings, just as we saw with intramolecular aldol reactions.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

21.24 Identify the base you would use for each of the following transformations:

(a)

(b)

21.25 Predict the major product obtained when each of the following compounds undergoes a Claisen condensation:

(a)

(b)

(c)

21.26 Identify suitable reactants and reagents that can be used to produce each of the following compounds using a Claisen condensation:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

21.27 Predict the product of the Dieckmann cyclization that occurs when each of the following compounds is treated with sodium ethoxide, followed by acid workup:

(a)

(b)

(c)

21.28 When the following compound is treated with sodium ethoxide, followed by acid workup, two condensation products are obtained, both of which are produced via Dieckmann cyclizations. Draw both products.

21.5 Alkylation of the Alpha Position

Alkylation via Enolate Ions

The α position of a ketone or an aldehyde can be alkylated via a two-step process: (1) formation of an enolate followed by (2) treating the enolate with an alkyl halide.

In this process, the enolate ion functions as a nucleophile and attacks the alkyl halide in an S_N2 reaction.

The usual restrictions for S_N2 reactions apply, so that the alkyl halide should be either a methyl halide or a primary halide. With a secondary or tertiary alkyl halide, the enolate functions as a base instead of a nucleophile, and the alkyl halide undergoes elimination rather than substitution.

When forming the enolate for an alkylation process, the choice of base is important. Hydroxide or alkoxide ions cannot be used because under those conditions (1) both the ketone and its enolate are present at equilibrium and aldol reactions will compete with alkylation, and (2) some of the base is not consumed (an equilibrium will be established) and the base can attack the alkyl halide directly, providing for competing S_N2 and E2 reactions.

Both of these problems are mitigated by using a stronger base, such as LDA. With a stronger base, the ketone is irreversibly and quantitatively deprotonated to form enolate ions. Aldol reactions do not readily occur, because the ketone is no longer present. Also, the use of one equivalent of LDA ensures that very little of the base survives after the enolate is formed.

With an unsymmetrical ketone, two possible enolates can be formed.

The more-substituted enolate is more stable and is called the *thermodynamic enolate*. The less-substituted enolate is less stable, but it is formed more rapidly and is therefore called the *kinetic enolate*. Figure 21.4 compares the pathways that lead to each of these enolates.

FIGURE 21.4
An energy diagram showing two possible pathways for the deprotonation of an unsymmetrical ketone. One pathway leads to the kinetic enolate, and the other pathway leads to the thermodynamic enolate. The difference in energy between these two pathways has been exaggerated for clarity of presentation.

Notice that formation of the kinetic enolate (red pathway) involves a lower energy barrier (E_a) and therefore occurs more rapidly, while the thermodynamic enolate (blue pathway) is the more stable enolate.

In general, it is possible to choose conditions that will favor formation of either enolate. When the kinetic enolate is desired, LDA can be used at low temperature (−78°C). LDA is a sterically hindered base and can more readily deprotonate the less hindered α position, thereby forming the kinetic enolate. Low temperature is necessary to favor formation of the kinetic enolate and to prevent equilibration of the enolates via proton transfers. When the thermodynamic enolate is desired, a nonsterically hindered base (such as NaH) can be used, and the reaction is performed at room temperature. Under these conditions, both enolates are formed and an equilibration process occurs

that favors the more stable, thermodynamic enolate. In this way, alkylation can be achieved at either α position by carefully choosing the reagents and conditions.

When the base is LDA (at low temperature), alkylation occurs at the less-substituted α position. When the base is NaH (at room temperature), alkylation occurs at the more-substituted α position. For each of these processes, we have assumed that *monoalkylation* occurs exclusively (only one alkyl group is installed, not more), but in practice, the alkylation of ketones can be challenging and may lead to mixtures of *polyalkylated* products (where more than one alkyl group is installed). To justify the occurrence of polyalkylation, consider the fact that each molecule of the desired monoalkylated product is formed in an environment of anions. In this environment, the desired product can be deprotonated to give an enolate, which can then undergo a subsequent alkylation reaction, thereby installing another alkyl group. We will soon explore a more reliable method for creating substituted ketones.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

21.29 For each of the following reaction sequences, predict the major product and propose a mechanism for its formation:

21.30 Identify reagents that can be used to achieve the following transformation:

The Acetoacetic Ester Synthesis

We have just seen a method to install an alkyl group at the α position of a ketone (by treating the ketone with a very strong base, such as LDA, followed by an alkyl halide). As an example, an alkylation process can be used to convert acetone into a substituted derivative of acetone, as shown here:

Secondary and tertiary alkyl halides cannot be used, because an enolate ion is a strong base, so E2 elimination would predominate over S_N2 substitution. But even when a primary alkyl halide is used, the process may be inefficient, as a result of polyalkylation. To avoid this issue, we will now

explore an alternative, more reliable method for preparing substituted derivatives of acetone. This alternative method begins with a compound called ethyl acetoacetate:

Ethyl acetoacetate

Ethyl acetoacetate is mildly acidic, so treatment with a strong base will result in deprotonation to give a highly stabilized enolate (in which the negative charge is delocalized over *two* oxygen atoms, rather than one):

If this enolate is then treated with an alkyl halide, the result is an alkylation reaction, via an S_N2 process:

For this alkylation step, it is best to use a primary alkyl halide or methyl halide, as is usually the case for S_N2 processes. Because the stabilized enolate is a very weak base (relative to a typical, unstabilized enolate), substitution with a secondary alkyl halide is possible, but a tertiary alkyl halide will favor elimination products over the S_N2 product, as always. When a primary alkyl halide is used, the alkylated product can then be treated with aqueous acid, which results in hydrolysis of the ester group:

A mechanism for the acid-catalyzed hydrolysis of esters was discussed in Section 20.11. If hydrolysis is performed at an elevated temperature, the resulting carboxylic acid will undergo a reaction in which a carboxyl group is removed, called **decarboxylation**, to produce a monosubstituted derivative of acetone, as well as carbon dioxide:

Decarboxylation can occur because the carboxylic acid exhibits a carbonyl group in the β position (relative to the carboxylic acid group), which enables the following pericyclic reaction:

LOOKING BACK
For a review of tautomerization, see Section 9.7.

Notice that the product of the decarboxylation step is an enol, which rapidly undergoes tautomerization.

This process, called an **acetoacetic ester synthesis**, produces a substituted derivative of acetone. The following is a specific example of an acetoacetic ester synthesis:

The starting material is ethyl acetoacetate, which is deprotonated upon treatment with a base to give a highly stabilized enolate. Then, in the second step, the enolate undergoes alkylation. And finally, in the third step, heating with aqueous acid will achieve both hydrolysis and decarboxylation (followed by tautomerization) to give the product. Note that the identity of the alkyl halide (highlighted above) is what differentiates this acetoacetic ester synthesis from any other acetoacetic ester synthesis. The first step will be treatment with NaOEt, and the third step will be treatment with aqueous acid and heat. The only decision to make is the identity of the alkyl halide in the second step.

This process can also be used to prepare *disubstituted* derivates of acetone, in which there are *two* alkyl groups connected to the same α position. This can be achieved if we start with ethyl acetoacetate and perform two successive alkylation reactions, followed by heating with aqueous acid, as shown here:

Note that the two alkylation reactions are performed separately, enabling us to install two different alkyl groups (shown in red and blue), and the ultimate product is a disubstituted derivate of acetone.

SKILLBUILDER

21.5 USING AN ACETOACETIC ESTER SYNTHESIS

LEARN the skill

Show how you would use an acetoacetic ester synthesis to prepare the following compound:

SOLUTION

Find the α position connected to the methyl ketone group and identify the alkyl groups connected to the α position:

STEP 1
Identify the alkyl groups connected to the α position.

STEP 2
Identify suitable alkyl halides and make sure they can serve as substrates in an S_N2 process.

In this case, there are two. Next, identify suitable alkyl halides to install those two alkyl groups. Just redraw those alkyl groups connected to some halide. Below are two alkyl iodides that can be used.

Analyze the structures of these alkyl halides and make sure that both will readily undergo S_N2 reactions. If either substrate is tertiary, then an acetoacetic ester synthesis will fail, because the alkylation step will not occur. In this case, both alkyl halides are primary, so the acetoacetic ester synthesis can be used. We have seen that the acetoacetic ester synthesis requires ethyl acetoacetate and the two alkyl halides shown. It does not matter which alkyl group is installed first. The synthesis can be summarized as follows:

STEP 3
Identify all reagents, beginning with ethyl acetoacetate.

PRACTICE the skill

21.31 Propose an efficient synthesis for each of the following compounds using an acetoacetic ester synthesis:

APPLY the skill

21.32 (*E*)-9-Oxo-2-decenoic acid (compound **2**), a pheromone of the honeybee queen, has been shown to have anti-bacterial and anti-inflammatory properties. One laboratory synthesis of this pheromone involved the preparation of **1**, followed by the conversion of **1** into **2**.[7] Using an acetoacetic ester synthesis, show how **1** can be converted into **2**. Note that the COOH group is mildly acidic, so the investigators first treated **1** with a base (CH_3NH_2) to remove the acidic proton. Make sure to include this deprotonation step in your proposed synthesis.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 21.69, 21.113, 21.114**

The Malonic Ester Synthesis

We have just seen a reliable method for preparing substituted derivatives of acetone, and we will now consider a very similar method for preparing substituted derivatives of acetic acid:

A substituted derivative of acetic acid

Direct alkylation of acetic acid (by treating with a strong base, followed by an alkyl halide) will not work, because the carboxylic acid group is mildly acidic and is therefore incompatible with a strong base:

If acetic acid was treated with LDA, the carboxylic acid group (COOH) would be deprotonated to give a carboxylate ion, which would *not* undergo further deprotonation at the α position, because that would give a dianion, which is too high in energy to form.

We will now explore an efficient method, called the **malonic ester synthesis**, for creating substituted derivatives of acetic acid. This method begins with a compound called diethyl malonate, which is very similar in structure to ethyl acetoacetate:

Indeed, a malonic ester synthesis is very similar to an acetoacetic ester synthesis. Just as we saw for an acetoacetic ester synthesis, the first step of a malonic ester synthesis is deprotonation to give a highly stabilized enolate (in which the negative charge is delocalized over *two* oxygen atoms, rather than one):

If this enolate is then treated with an alkyl halide, the result is an alkylation reaction, via an S_N2 process:

For this alkylation step, it is best to use a primary alkyl halide (or methyl halide), as is usually the case for S_N2 processes. Because the stabilized enolate is a very weak base (relative to a typical, unstabilized enolate), substitution with a secondary alkyl halide is possible, but a tertiary alkyl halide will favor elimination products over the S_N2 product, as always. When a primary alkyl halide is used, the alkylated product can then be treated with aqueous acid, which results in hydrolysis of both ester groups to give a diacid:

If this hydrolysis step is performed at elevated temperatures, the resulting diacid will undergo **decarboxylation** to produce a derivative of acetic acid, as well as carbon dioxide:

Decarboxylation occurs via the following pericyclic reaction (much like we saw in the acetoacetic ester synthesis):

LOOKING BACK
For a review of tautomerization, see Section 9.7.

Notice that the product of the decarboxylation step is an enol, which rapidly undergoes tautomerization.

The product of a malonic ester synthesis is a substituted derivative of acetic acid, which does not undergo further decarboxylation. The following is a specific example of a malonic ester synthesis:

The starting material is diethyl malonate, which is deprotonated upon treatment with a base to give a highly stabilized enolate. Then, in the second step, the enolate undergoes alkylation. And finally, in the third step, heating with aqueous acid will achieve both hydrolysis and decarboxylation (followed by tautomerization) to give the product. Note that the identity of the alkyl halide (highlighted above) is what differentiates this malonic ester synthesis from any other malonic ester synthesis. The first step will be NaOEt, and the third step will be aqueous acid and heat. The only decision to make is the identity of the alkyl halide in the second step.

This process can also be used to prepare *disubstituted* derivates of acetic acid, in which there are *two* alkyl groups connected to the α position. This can be achieved if we start with diethyl malonate and perform two successive alkylation reactions, followed by heating with aqueous acid, as shown here:

Note that the two alkylation reactions are performed separately, enabling us to install two different alkyl groups (shown in red and blue), and the ultimate product is a disubstituted derivate of acetic acid.

SKILLBUILDER

21.6 USING THE MALONIC ESTER SYNTHESIS

LEARN the skill

Show how you would use the malonic ester synthesis to prepare the following compound:

SOLUTION

Begin by locating the carboxylic acid group and the α position.

Identify the alkyl groups connected to the α position.

STEP 1
Identify the alkyl groups connected to the α position.

STEP 2
Identify suitable alkyl halides and make sure they can serve as substrates in an S_N2 process.

In this case, there are two. Next, identify suitable alkyl halides in order to install those two alkyl groups. Just redraw the alkyl groups connected to some halide (iodide and bromide are more commonly used as leaving groups, although chloride can be used). Below are alkyl bromides that can be used:

Analyze the structures of these alkyl halides and make sure that both will readily undergo an S_N2 process. If either substrate is tertiary, then a malonic ester synthesis will fail, because the alkylation step will not occur. In this case, both alkyl halides are primary, so the malonic ester synthesis can be used.

In order to perform the malonic ester synthesis, we will need diethyl malonate and the two alkyl halides shown above. It does not matter which alkyl group is installed first. The synthesis can be summarized as follows:

STEP 3
Identify all reagents, beginning with diethyl malonate.

PRACTICE the skill

21.33 Propose an efficient synthesis for each of the following compounds using the malonic ester synthesis:

APPLY the skill

21.34 In a study to prepare new and more effective anti-inflammatory agents, 2-fluoroloxoprofen was prepared from compound **2**, which in turn was the product of a malonic ester synthesis.[8] Starting with diethyl malonate, identify reagents that can be used to prepare compound **1**. Then predict the structure of compound **2** based on the reactions indicated. Note that the second step involves an S_NAr reaction where the arene is the electrophile, and fluoride is expelled as the leaving group.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 21.68, 21.93, 21.111, 21.112**

21.6 Conjugate Addition Reactions

Michael Reactions

Recall that the product of an aldol condensation is an α,β-unsaturated aldehyde or ketone; for example:

Aldehydes and ketones that possess α,β unsaturation, like the compound above, exhibit unique reactivity at the β position. In this section, we will explore reactions that can take place at the β position. To understand why the β position is reactive, we must draw resonance structures.

Notice that two of the resonance contributors exhibit a positive charge. In other words, the compound will have two electrophilic positions: the carbon of the carbonyl group as well as the β position.

Two electrophilic positions

Both of these positions are therefore subject to attack by a nucleophile, and the nature of the nucleophile determines which position is attacked. For example, Grignard reagents tend to attack the carbonyl group rather than the β position.

In this reaction, the nucleophile attacks the carbonyl group, giving a tetrahedral intermediate, which is then treated with a proton source in a separate step. In this process, two groups (R and H) have added across the C═O π bond in a 1,2-addition (for a review of the difference between 1,2-additions and 1,4-additions, see Section 16.4).

A different outcome is observed when a lithium dialkyl cuprate (R_2CuLi) is employed.

In this case, the nucleophile is less reactive than a Grignard reagent, and the R group is ultimately positioned at the β position. A variety of nucleophiles can be used to attack the β position of an α,β-unsaturated aldehyde or ketone. The process involves attack at the β position followed by protonation to give an enol.

This type of reaction is called a **conjugate addition**, or a *1,4-addition*, because the nucleophile and the proton have added across the ends of a conjugated π system. Conjugate addition reactions

were first discussed in Section 16.4 when we explored the reactivity of conjugated dienes. A major difference between conjugate addition across a diene and conjugate addition across an enone is that the latter produces an enol as the product, and the enol rapidly tautomerizes to form a carbonyl group.

After the reaction is complete, it might appear that the two groups (shown in red) have added across the α and β positions in a 1,2-addition. However, the actual mechanism likely involves a 1,4-addition followed by tautomerization to give the ultimate product shown.

With this in mind, let's now explore the outcome of a reaction in which an enolate ion is used as a nucleophile to attack an α,β-unsaturated aldehyde or ketone. In general, enolates are less reactive than Grignard reagents but more reactive than lithium dialkyl cuprates. As such, both 1,2-addition and 1,4-addition are observed, and a mixture of products is obtained. In contrast, highly stabilized enolates are sufficiently stabilized to produce 1,4-conjugate addition exclusively.

In this case, the starting diketone is deprotonated to form a highly stabilized enolate ion, which then serves as a nucleophile in a 1,4-conjugate addition. This process is called a **Michael reaction**. The highly stabilized enolate is called a **Michael donor**, while the α,β-unsaturated aldehyde is called a **Michael acceptor**.

A variety of Michael donors and acceptors are observed to react with each other to produce a Michael reaction. Table 21.2 shows some common examples of Michael donors and acceptors. Any one of the Michael donors in this table will react with any one of the Michael acceptors to give a 1,4-conjugate addition reaction.

TABLE 21.2 A LIST OF COMMON MICHAEL DONORS AND MICHAEL ACCEPTORS

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

21.35 Identify the major product formed when each of the following compounds is treated with Et_2CuLi followed by mild acid:

21.36 Predict the major product of the following reaction sequence, and show a mechanism for its formation:

21.37 In Section 21.5, we learned how to use diethyl malonate as a starting material in the preparation of substituted carboxylic acids (the malonic ester synthesis). That method employed a step in which the enolate of diethyl malonate attacked an alkyl halide to give an alkylation product. In this section, we saw that the enolate of diethyl malonate can attack many electrophilic reagents other than simple alkyl halides. Specifically, the enolate of diethyl malonate can attack any of the Michael acceptors in Table 21.2. Using diethyl malonate as your starting material and any other reagents of your choice, show how you would prepare each of the following compounds:

BioLinks Glutathione Conjugation and Biochemical Michael Reactions

Glutathione is found in all mammals and plays many biological roles.

Glutathione

As we saw in the BioLinks box at the end of Section 10.9, glutathione functions as a radical scavenger by reacting with free radicals that are generated during metabolic processes. This compound has many other important biological functions. For example, the sulfur atom in glutathione is highly nucleophilic, which allows this compound to function as a scavenger for harmful *electrophiles* that are ingested or are produced by metabolic processes. Glutathione intercepts these electrophiles and reacts with them before they can react with the nucleophilic sites of vital biomolecules, such as DNA and proteins. Glutathione can react with many kinds of electrophiles through a variety of mechanisms, including S_N2, S_NAr, nucleophilic acyl substitution, and Michael addition.

A Michael addition occurs in the metabolism of morphine. One of the metabolites of morphine is generated via oxidation of the allylic alcohol group to produce an α,β-unsaturated ketone:

Morphine

A metabolite of morphine

The β position of this metabolite is now highly electrophilic and subject to attack by a variety of nucleophiles. The sulfur atom of glutathione attacks at the β position, producing a Michael addition. This process is called glutathione conjugation, and the product is called a glutathione conjugate, which can be further metabolized to produce a compound that can be excreted in the urine.

Glutathione conjugation also occurs in the metabolism of acetaminophen (the active ingredient in Tylenol). Metabolic oxidation produces an *N*-acetylimidoquinone intermediate, which is highly reactive.

Acetaminophen — **A metabolite of acetaminophen (*N*-acetylimidoquinone)**

This metabolite undergoes glutathione conjugation followed by further metabolism that generates a water-soluble derivative, which is excreted in the urine.

A glutathione conjugate

In our first discussion of glutathione and its role as a radical scavenger, we mentioned that an overdose of acetaminophen causes a temporary depletion of glutathione in the liver, during which time harmful radicals and electrophiles are free to run amok and cause permanent damage. Our current discussion of glutathione now explains why glutathione levels drop in the presence of too much acetaminophen. To review how an acetaminophen overdose is treated, see the BioLinks box at the end of Section 10.9.

The Stork Enamine Synthesis

In this section, we have seen that highly stabilized enolates can serve as Michael donors. It is important to point out that regular enolates do not serve as Michael donors.

A Michael donor — ***Not* a Michael donor**

Therefore, the following synthesis will not be efficient:

Not obtained in good yields

This synthetic route relies on an enolate serving as a Michael donor and attacking the β position of an α,β-unsaturated ketone. The process will not work because enolates are not stable enough to function as Michael donors. This transformation requires a stabilized enolate, or some species that will behave like a stabilized enolate. Gilbert Stork (Columbia University) developed a method for such a transformation in which the ketone is converted into an enamine by treatment with a secondary amine.

The mechanism for conversion of a ketone into an enamine was discussed in Section 19.6. To see the similarity between an enolate and an enamine, compare the resonance structures of an enolate with the resonance structures of an enamine.

Much like enolates, enamines are also nucleophilic at the α position. However, enamines do not possess a net negative charge, as enolates do, and therefore, enamines are less reactive than enolates. As such, enamines are effective Michael donors and will participate in a Michael reaction with a suitable Michael acceptor.

This Michael reaction generates an intermediate that is both an iminium ion and an enolate ion, as shown below. When treated with aqueous acid, both groups are converted into carbonyl groups.

The iminium ion undergoes hydrolysis to form a carbonyl group (see Section 19.7), and the enolate ion is protonated to form an enol, which tautomerizes to form a carbonyl group.

The net result is a process for achieving the following type of transformation:

This process is called a **Stork enamine synthesis**, and it has three steps: (1) formation of an enamine, (2) a Michael addition, and (3) hydrolysis.

SKILLBUILDER

21.7 DETERMINING WHEN TO USE A STORK ENAMINE SYNTHESIS

LEARN the skill

Using any reagents of your choosing, show how you might accomplish the following transformation:

SOLUTION

This transformation requires that we install the following (highlighted) group at the α position of the starting material:

STEP 1
Using a retrosynthetic analysis, identify whether it is possible to prepare the target compound with a Michael addition

Using a retrosynthetic analysis, we determine that this transformation might be possible via a Michael addition:

STEP 2
If the Michael donor must be an enolate, then a Stork enamine synthesis is required.

However, a Michael reaction won't work because the enolate is not sufficiently stabilized to function as a Michael donor. This is a perfect example of a situation in which a Stork enamine synthesis might be used to achieve the desired Michael addition.

The starting ketone is first converted into an enamine and then used as a Michael donor followed by hydrolysis.

PRACTICE the skill

21.38 Using a Stork enamine synthesis, show how you might accomplish each of the following transformations:

(a)

(b)

(c)

APPLY the skill

21.39 Tricyclic ring structures, such as the one found in compound **6** shown below, are found in a large number of biologically active natural products. Fused rings are challenging to construct, so chemists are continuously working to develop more efficient syntheses. Part of one such approach is shown below.[9] Identify reagents that can be used to convert **1** into **5**, using Stork enamines in the first two steps. (**Note:** If there is more than one α proton available, as in the case of the transformation from compound **2** to **3** below, enamine formation on the less hindered side is generally preferred.)

1 **2** **3** **4** **5** **6**

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problem 21.77c**

The Robinson Annulation Reaction

In this chapter, we have seen many reactions. When performed in combination, they can be very versatile. One such example is a two-step method for forming a ring, in which a Michael addition is followed by an intramolecular aldol condensation.

This two-step method is called a **Robinson annulation**, named after Sir Robert Robinson (Oxford University), and is often used for the synthesis of polycyclic compounds. The term *annulation* is derived from the Latin word for ring (*annulus*).

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

21.40 Draw a complete mechanism for the following transformation:

21.41 Identify reactants that can be used to prepare the following compound via a Robinson annulation:

21.7 Synthesis Strategies

Reactions That Yield Difunctionalized Compounds

In this chapter, we have seen many reactions that form C—C bonds. Three of those reactions are worth special attention, because of their ability to produce compounds with two functional groups. The aldol addition, the Claisen condensation, and the Stork enamine synthesis all produce difunctionalized compounds, yet they differ from each other in the ultimate positioning of the functional groups. The Stork enamine synthesis produces 1,5-difunctionalized compounds.

In contrast, aldol addition reactions and Claisen condensation reactions both produce 1,3-difunctionalized compounds.

Although the relative positioning of the functional groups is similar for aldol additions and Claisen condensations, the oxidation states are different. An aldol addition produces a carbonyl group and a hydroxyl group, while a Claisen condensation produces an ester and a carbonyl group.

These considerations can be very helpful when designing a synthesis. If the target compound has two functional groups, then you should look at their relative positions. If the target compound is 1,5-difunctionalized, then you should think of using a Stork enamine synthesis. If it is 1,3-difunctionalized, then you should think of using an aldol addition or a Claisen condensation. The choice (aldol vs. Claisen) will be influenced by the oxidation states of the functional groups. The following exercise illustrates this type of analysis.

SKILLBUILDER

21.8 DETERMINING WHICH ADDITION OR CONDENSATION REACTION TO USE

LEARN the skill

Using 1-butanol as your only source of carbon, propose a synthesis for the following compound:

SOLUTION

Recall from Chapter 11 that there are always two things to analyze when approaching a synthesis problem: (1) any changes in the C—C framework and (2) the location and identity of the functional groups. Let's begin with the C—C framework. The target compound has a total of eight carbon atoms, and the starting material has only four carbon atoms. Therefore, our synthesis will require two molecules of butanol to construct the C—C framework of the target compound. In other words, we will need to use some kind of addition or condensation reaction. We have seen many such reactions. To determine which one will be most efficient in this case, we analyze the location and identity of the functional groups.

This compound is 1,3-difunctionalized, so we should focus our attention on either an aldol or a Claisen. To decide which reaction to use, look at the oxidation states of the two functional groups (a carbonyl group and a carboxylic acid group). In this case, a Claisen condensation seems like the likely candidate, because the product of a Claisen condensation is always a β-keto ester. This type of compound (a β-keto ester) is very similar to the desired target molecule, which is a β-keto carboxylic acid. Our retrosynthetic analysis begins by recognizing that the β-keto carboxylic acid can be prepared from the corresponding β-ketoester, which is suitable to make the required C—C bond disconnection related to the Claisen condensation.

In this case, the two starting esters are identical, which simplifies the problem (it is not necessary to perform a mixed Claisen). This transformation is accomplished by simply treating the ester (ethyl butanoate) with sodium ethoxide.

To complete the synthesis, we need a method for making the necessary ester from 1-butanol. This can be accomplished by using reactions from previous chapters.

Our proposed synthesis is summarized as follows:

The last step has two functions: (1) to protonate the highly stabilized enolate that is produced by the Claisen condensation and (2) to hydrolyze the resulting ester to give a carboxylic acid. Hydrolysis might require gentle heating, but excessive heating should be avoided as it would likely cause decarboxylation. Alternatively, the last step can be replaced with NaOH, followed by H_3O^+. When treated with NaOH, the ester is hydrolyzed via saponification (base-catalyzed hydrolysis), and the resulting carboxylate ion is then protonated upon work-up with aqueous acid (H_3O^+). Under these conditions, decarboxylation is not a concern.

PRACTICE the skill

21.42 Using cyclopentanone as your starting material and using any other reagents of your choice, propose an efficient synthesis for each of the following compounds:

(a)

(b)

(c)

21.43 Using 1-propanol as your only source of carbon, propose an efficient synthesis for each of the following compounds:

(a)

(b)

(c)

APPLY the skill

21.44 The following reaction sequence utilizes a Michael addition, followed by a Claisen-type reaction to make racemic diketoester **3** as part of the total synthesis of dynemicin A, a natural product with promising anti-tumor activity in several human tumor cell lines.[10]

(a) Draw a complete mechanism for the formation of compound **3** (as described in the problem statement).

(b) Why is one reaction referred to as a "Claisen-type" condensation rather than a traditional Claisen condensation?

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 21.77c, 21.115**

Alkylation of the Alpha and Beta Positions

Recall that the initial product of a Michael addition is an enolate ion, which is then quenched with water to give the product.

Instead of quenching with water, the enolate generated from a Michael addition can be treated with an alkyl halide, which results in alkylation of the α position.

This provides a method for alkylating both the α and β positions in one reaction flask. When using this method, the two alkyl groups need not be the same. Below is an example of such a reaction.

First, a carbon nucleophile is used to install an alkyl group at the β position, and then a carbon electrophile is used to install an alkyl group at the α position. The following exercise demonstrates the use of this technique.

SKILLBUILDER

21.9 ALKYLATING THE ALPHA AND BETA POSITIONS

LEARN the skill

Propose an efficient synthesis for the following transformation:

SOLUTION

Recall that there are always two things to analyze when approaching a synthesis problem: (1) any changes in the C—C framework and (2) the location and identity of functional groups. In this case, let's begin with functional groups, because very little change seems to have taken place. The hydroxyl group remains in the same position, but the double bond

is destroyed. Now let's focus on the C—C framework. It appears that two alkyl groups have added across the double bond: a methyl group and an ethyl group.

We did not see a way to add two alkyl groups across a double bond, but we did see a way to install two alkyl groups when the double bond is conjugated with a carbonyl group. Therefore, a logical retrosynthesis of the alcohol target molecule begins by working back to an aldehyde, which provides the required carbonyl group.

The retrosynthesis continues by making two simultaneous disconnections, at the alkyl groups attached to the α and β positions.

If we started with an α,β-unsaturated aldehyde, then the two alkyl groups could be installed by conjugate addition of a dimethylcuprate nucleophile, followed by alkylation with ethyl iodide. To use this method for installing the alkyl groups, we must first oxidize the alcohol to give a carbonyl group, which would then have to be reduced back to an alcohol at the end of the synthesis.

Solving this problem required us to recognize that the hydroxyl group could be oxidized and then later reduced. The ability to interchange functional groups is an important skill, as this problem demonstrates.

PRACTICE the skill

21.45 Propose an efficient synthesis for each of the following transformations:

APPLY the skill

21.46 Diastereoselective transformations, including the one shown below, have been developed during efforts toward the syntheses of antifungal and antibacterial natural products.[11] Disregarding stereochemistry, propose an efficient synthesis for this transformation.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 21.72, 21.78c, 21.91**

REVIEW OF REACTIONS

Alpha Halogenation

Of Ketones

Of Carboxylic Acids (Hell–Volhard–Zelinsky Reaction)

Haloform Reaction

Aldol Reactions

Aldol Addition and Condensation

Crossed Aldol Condensation

Intramolecular Aldol Condensation

Claisen Condensation

Claisen Condensation

Crossed Claisen Condensations

Intramolecular Claisen Condensation (Dieckmann Cyclization)

Alkylation

Via Enolate Ions

The Malonic Ester Synthesis

The Acetoacetic Ester Synthesis

Michael Additions

Stabilized Carbon Nucleophiles

The Stork Enamine Synthesis

The Robinson Annulation

REVIEW OF CONCEPTS AND VOCABULARY

SECTION 21.1

- Greek letters are used to describe the proximity of each carbon atom to the carbonyl group. Alpha (α) protons are the protons connected to the α carbon.
- In the presence of catalytic acid or base, a ketone will exist in equilibrium with an enol. In general, the equilibrium will significantly favor the ketone.
- The α position of an enol can function as a nucleophile.
- When treated with a strong base, the α position of a ketone is deprotonated to give an **enolate**.
- Sodium hydride or LDA will irreversibly and completely convert an aldehyde or ketone into an enolate.

SECTION 21.2

- Ketones and aldehydes will undergo alpha halogenation in acidic or basic conditions.
- The acid-catalyzed process produces HBr and is therefore **autocatalytic**.
- In the **Hell–Volhard–Zelinsky reaction**, a carboxylic acid undergoes alpha halogenation when treated with bromine in the presence of PBr_3.
- In the **haloform reaction**, a methyl ketone is converted into a carboxylic acid upon treatment with excess base and excess halogen followed by acid workup.

SECTION 21.3

- When an aldehyde is treated with sodium hydroxide, an **aldol addition reaction** occurs, and the product is a β-hydroxy aldehyde or ketone.
- For most simple aldehydes, the position of equilibrium favors the aldol product.
- For most ketones, the reverse process, called a **retro-aldol reaction**, is favored.
- When an aldehyde is heated in aqueous sodium hydroxide, an **aldol condensation reaction** occurs, and the product is an α,β-unsaturated aldehyde or ketone. Elimination of water occurs via an **E1cb mechanism**.
- **Crossed aldol**, or **mixed aldol**, **reactions** are aldol reactions that occur between different partners and are only efficient if one partner lacks α protons or if a **directed aldol addition** is performed.
- Intramolecular aldol reactions show a preference for formation of five- and six-membered rings.

SECTION 21.4

- When an ester is treated with an alkoxide base, a **Claisen condensation reaction** occurs, and the product is a β-keto ester.

- A Claisen condensation between two different partners is called a **crossed Claisen condensation**.
- An intramolecular Claisen condensation, called a **Dieckmann cyclization**, produces a cyclic, β-keto ester.

SECTION 21.5

- The α position of a ketone or an aldehyde can be alkylated by forming an enolate and treating it with an alkyl halide.
- For unsymmetrical ketones, reactions with LDA at low temperature favor formation of the kinetic enolate, while reactions with NaH at room temperature favor the thermodynamic enolate.
- When LDA is used with an unsymmetrical ketone, alkylation occurs at the less hindered position.
- The **acetoacetic ester synthesis** can be used to prepare substituted derivatives of acetone, while the **malonic ester synthesis** can be used to prepare substituted derivatives of acetic acid.
- **Decarboxylation** occurs upon heating a carboxylic acid with a β-carbonyl group.

SECTION 21.6

- Aldehydes and ketones that possess α,β unsaturation are susceptible to nucleophilic attack at the β position. This reaction is called a **conjugate addition**, *1,4-addition*, or a **Michael reaction**.
- The nucleophile is called a **Michael donor**, and the electrophile is called a **Michael acceptor**.
- Regular enolates do not serve as Michael donors, but the desired Michael reaction can be achieved with a **Stork enamine synthesis**.
- A **Robinson annulation** is a Michael addition followed by an intramolecular aldol and can be used to make cyclic compounds.

SECTION 21.7

- The Stork enamine synthesis produces 1,5-difunctionalized compounds.
- Aldol addition reactions and Claisen condensation reactions both produce 1,3-difunctionalized compounds.
- The initial product of a Michael addition is an enolate ion, which can be treated with an alkyl halide, thereby alkylating both the α and β positions in one reaction flask.

SKILLBUILDER REVIEW

21.1 DRAWING ENOLATES

STEP 1 Identify all α protons.

STEP 2 Using two curved arrows, remove the proton, and then draw the enolate with a lone pair and a negative charge at the α position.

STEP 3 Draw the other resonance structure of the enolate.

Try Problems **21.4, 21.5, 21.49, 21.89**

21.2 PREDICTING THE PRODUCTS OF AN ALDOL ADDITION REACTION

STEP 1 Draw all three steps of the mechanism as a guide for predicting the product.

STEP 2 Double-check your answer to ensure that the product has a hydroxyl group at the β position.

Try Problems **21.14–21.16, 21.62, 21.104, 21.105**

21.3 DRAWING THE PRODUCT OF AN ALDOL CONDENSATION

STEP 1 Identify an α position that bears at least two protons:

STEP 2 Draw two molecules of the ketone, oriented such that two α protons of one molecule are directly facing the carbonyl group of the other molecule.

STEP 3 Remove H_2O and replace with a C=C bond.

STEP 4 Draw the isomer with less steric strain.

Major product
(less steric strain)

Try Problems 21.17, 21.18, 21.61, 21.74c, 21.90, 21.95

21.4 IDENTIFYING REAGENTS FOR A CROSSED ALDOL REACTION

STEP 1 Identify the α and β positions.

STEP 2 Using a retrosynthetic analysis, break apart the bond between the α and β positions, placing a carbonyl group in place of the hydroxyl group.

STEP 3 Determine which base should be used. A crossed aldol will require the use of LDA.

Try Problems 21.19, 21.20, 21.57, 21.58, 21.102

21.5 USING AN ACETOACETIC ESTER SYNTHESIS

STEP 1 Identify the alkyl groups that are connected to the α position of the methyl ketone.

STEP 2 Identify suitable alkyl halides and ensure that both will readily undergo an S_N2 process.

STEP 3 Identify the reagents. Begin with ethyl acetoacetate as the starting material. Perform each alkylation and then heat with aqueous acid.

Try Problems 21.31, 21.32, 21.69, 21.113, 21.114

21.6 USING THE MALONIC ESTER SYNTHESIS

STEP 1 Identify the alkyl groups that are connected to the α position of the carboxylic acid.

STEP 2 Identify suitable alkyl halides and ensure that both will readily undergo an S_N2 process.

STEP 3 Identify the reagents. Begin with diethyl malonate as the starting material. Perform each alkylation and then heat with aqueous acid.

Try Problems 21.33, 21.34, 21.68, 21.93, 21.111, 21.112

21.7 DETERMINING WHEN TO USE A STORK ENAMINE SYNTHESIS

STEP 1 Using a retrosynthetic analysis, identify whether it is possible to prepare the target compound with a Michael addition.

STEP 2 If the Michael donor must be an enolate, then a Stork enamine synthesis is required.

Try Problems **21.38, 21.39, 21.77c**

21.8 DETERMINING WHICH ADDITION OR CONDENSATION REACTION TO USE

For compounds with two functional groups, the relative positioning of the groups, as well as their oxidation states, will dictate which addition or condensation reaction to use.

1,5-DIFUNCTIONALIZED COMPOUNDS

Stork enamine synthesis

1,3-DIFUNCTIONALIZED COMPOUNDS

Aldol addition

Claisen condensation

Try Problems **21.42–21.44, 21.77c, 21.115**

21.9 ALKYLATING THE ALPHA AND BETA POSITIONS

A strategy for installing two neighboring alkyl groups at the α and β positions.

Try Problems **21.45, 21.46, 21.72, 21.78c, 21.91**

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

• **Included in Answers section**

21.47 Identify which of the following compounds are expected to have a $pK_a < 20$. For each compound with a $pK_a < 20$, identify the most acidic proton in the compound.

21.48 One of the compounds from the previous problem has a $pK_a < 10$. Identify that compound and explain why it is so much more acidic than all of the other compounds.

21.49 • Draw resonance structures for the conjugate base that is produced when each of the following compounds is treated with sodium ethoxide:

21.50 Rank the following compounds in terms of increasing acidity:

21.51 Draw the enol of each of the following compounds and identify whether the enol exhibits a significant presence at equilibrium. Explain.

21.52 Ethyl acetoacetate has three enol isomers. Draw all three.

21.53 • Draw the enolate that is formed when each of the following compounds is treated with LDA:

21.54 When 2-hepten-4-one is treated with LDA, a proton is removed from one of the gamma (γ) positions. Identify which γ position is deprotonated and explain why the γ proton is the most acidic proton in the compound.

21.55 When (*S*)-2-methylcyclopentanone is treated with aqueous base, the compound loses its optical activity. Explain this observation and draw a mechanism that shows how racemization occurs.

21.56 The racemization process described in the previous problem also occurs in acidic conditions. Draw a mechanism for the racemization process in aqueous acid.

21.57 Draw all four β-hydroxyaldehydes that are formed when a mixture of acetaldehyde and pentanal is treated with aqueous sodium hydroxide.

21.58 • Identify all of the different β-hydroxyaldehydes that are formed when a mixture of benzaldehyde and hexanal is treated with aqueous sodium hydroxide.

21.59 Propose a plausible mechanism for the following isomerization and explain the driving force behind this reaction. In other words, explain why the equilibrium favors the product.

21.60 The isomerization in the previous problem can also occur in basic conditions. Draw a mechanism for the transformation in the presence of catalytic hydroxide.

21.61 Draw the product obtained when each of the following compounds is heated in the presence of a base to give an aldol condensation:

21.62 Trimethylacetaldehyde does not undergo an aldol reaction when treated with a base. Explain why not.

21.63 • Identify reactant(s) that can be used to make each of the following compounds with an aldol condensation:

21.64 When acetaldehyde is treated with aqueous acid, an aldol reaction can occur. In other words, aldol reactions can also occur in acidic conditions, although the intermediate is different than the intermediate involved in the base-catalyzed reaction. Draw a plausible mechanism for the acid-catalyzed process.

21.65 Diethyl malonate (the starting material for the malonic ester synthesis) reacts with Br_2 in acid-catalyzed conditions to form a product with the molecular formula $C_7H_{11}BrO_4$.

(a) Draw the structure of the product.

(b) Draw a mechanism of formation for the product.

(c) Would you expect this product to be more or less acidic than diethyl malonate?

21.66 Cinnamaldehyde is one of the primary constituents of cinnamon oil and contributes significantly to the odor of cinnamon. Starting with benzaldehyde and using any other necessary reagents, show how you might prepare cinnamaldehyde.

Cinnamaldehyde

21.67 • Draw the condensation product that is expected when each of the following esters is treated with sodium ethoxide followed by acid workup:

21.68 • Starting with diethyl malonate and using any other reagents of your choice, show how you would prepare each of the following compounds:

21.69 Starting with ethyl acetoacetate and using any other reagents of your choice, show how you would prepare each of the following compounds:

21.70 Propose a plausible mechanism for the following transformation:

21.71 Draw the condensation product obtained when the following compound is heated in the presence of aqueous sodium hydroxide:

21.72 Identify the reagents you would use to convert 3-pentanone into 3-hexanone.

21.73 Identify reagents that can be used to achieve each of the following transformations:

21.74 Draw the structure of the product that is obtained when acetophenone is treated with each of following reagents:

(a) Sodium hydroxide and excess iodine followed by H_3O^+

(b) Bromine in acetic acid

(c) Aqueous sodium hydroxide at elevated temperature

21.75 Draw a reasonable mechanism for the following transformation:

21.76 Predict the major product for each of the following transformations:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

21.77 • Propose an efficient synthesis for each of the following transformations:

(a)

(b)

(c)

21.78 Identify the reagents you would use to convert cyclohexanone into each of the following compounds:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

(f)

(g)

21.79 The enolate of a ketone can be treated with an ester to give a diketone. Draw a mechanism for this Claisen-like reaction and explain why an acid source is required after the reaction is complete.

21.80 Beta-keto esters can be prepared by treating the enolate of a ketone with diethyl carbonate. Draw a plausible mechanism for this reaction.

21.81 The enolate of an ester can be treated with a ketone to give a β-hydroxy ester. Draw a mechanism for this aldol-like reaction.

21.82 Nitriles undergo alkylation at the α position much like ketones undergo alkylation at the α position.

The α position of the nitrile is first deprotonated to give a resonance-stabilized anion (like an enolate), which then functions as a nucleophile to attack the alkyl halide.

(a) Draw the mechanism described above.

(b) Using this process, show the reagents you would use to achieve the following transformation:

21.83 Identify the Michael donor and Michael acceptor that could be used to prepare each of the following compounds via a Michael addition:

21.84 The conjugate base of diethyl malonate can serve as a nucleophile to attack a wide range of electrophiles. Identify the product that is formed when the conjugate base of diethyl malonate reacts with each of the following electrophiles, followed by acid workup when relevant:

21.85 Draw the product of the Robinson annulation reaction that occurs when the following compounds are treated with aqueous sodium hydroxide:

21.86 Identify reactants and reagents that can be used to make the following compound with a Robinson annulation reaction:

21.87 Draw a plausible mechanism for the following transformation:

21.88 Propose an efficient synthesis for the following transformation:

ACS-STYLE PROBLEMS (Multiple Choice)

Problems 21.89–21.96 follow the style of the ACS organic chemistry exam. For each of these problems, there will be one correct answer and three distractors.

21.89 • What enolate is formed in this reaction?

21.90 • Which pair of compounds, when treated with base, would generate the given product?

21.91 • Which set of reagents can be used to achieve this transformation?

(a) Et_2CuLi → MeI → (b) MeI → Et_2CuLi →

(c) EtI → Me_2CuLi → (d) Me_2CuLi → EtI →

21.92 • Of the highlighted positions, which bears the most acidic proton?

(a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D

21.93 • Predict the major product of the following reaction sequence.

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

21.94 • Which of the following is NOT a Michael acceptor?

(a) (b) (c) (d)

21.95 • Predict the major product of the following reaction.

(a) (b) (c) (d)

21.96 • Which of the following is the best retrosynthesis of the given target molecule?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

INTEGRATED PROBLEMS

21.97 For a pair of keto-enol tautomers, explain how IR spectroscopy might be used to identify whether the equilibrium favors the ketone or the enol.

21.98 Acrolein is an α,β-unsaturated aldehyde that is used in the production of a variety of polymers. Acrolein can be prepared by treating glycerol with an acid catalyst. Propose a plausible mechanism for this transformation.

Glycerol **Acrolein**

21.99 Draw the structure of the product with the molecular formula $C_{10}H_{10}O$ that is obtained when the compound below is heated with aqueous acid.

21.100 Lactones can be prepared from diethyl malonate and epoxides. Diethyl malonate is treated with a base, followed by an epoxide, followed by heating in aqueous acid:

Using this process, identify what reagents you would need to prepare the following compound:

21.101 Predict the major product of the following transformation:

21.102 Using formaldehyde and acetaldehyde as your only sources of carbon atoms, show how you could make each of the following compounds. You may find it helpful to review acetal formation (Section 19.5).

(a)

(b)

21.103 Consider the structures of the constitutional isomers shown below, **A** and **B**. When treated with aqueous acid, compound **A** undergoes isomerization to go from the *trans* stereoisomer to the *cis* stereoisomer. In contrast, compound **B** does not undergo isomerization when treated with the same conditions. That is, in aqueous acid, compound **B** remains in the *trans* configuration. Explain the difference in reactivity between compound **A** and compound **B**.

A

B

21.104 An alcohol with the molecular formula $C_4H_{10}O$ was treated with PCC to produce an aldehyde that exhibits exactly three signals in its ^{1}H NMR spectrum. Predict the aldol addition product that is obtained when this aldehyde is treated with aqueous sodium hydroxide.

21.105 Using acetaldehyde as your only source of carbon, show how you would prepare 1,3-butanediol.

21.106 Propose a plausible mechanism for the following transformation:

21.107 Propose a plausible mechanism for the following transformation:

21.108 This chapter covered many C—C bond-forming reactions, including aldol reactions, Claisen condensations, and Michael addition reactions. Two or more of these reactions are often performed sequentially, providing a great deal of versatility and complexity in the type of structures that can be prepared. Propose a plausible mechanism for each of the following transformations:

(a)

(b)

21.109 The following transformation cannot be accomplished by direct alkylation of an enolate. Explain why not and then devise an alternate synthesis for this transformation.

21.110 The product of an aldol condensation is an α,β-unsaturated ketone, which is capable of undergoing hydrogenation to yield a saturated ketone. Using this technique, identify the reagents that you would need in order to prepare rheosmin via a crossed aldol reaction. Rheosmin is isolated from raspberries and is often used in perfume formulations for its pleasant odor. **Hint:** The presence of a phenolic proton will be problematic during an aldol reaction. (Can you explain why?) Consider using a protecting group (Section 12.7).

Rheosmin

21.111 Starting with diethyl malonate and using any other reagents of your choice, propose an efficient synthesis for each of the following compounds:

(a)

(b)

(c)

21.112 When a malonic ester synthesis is performed using excess base and 1,4-dibromobutane as the alkyl halide, an intramolecular reaction occurs, and the product contains a ring. Draw the final product of this process (after the decarboxylation step).

21.113 Starting with ethyl acetoacetate and using any other reagents of your choice, propose an efficient synthesis for each of the following compounds:

(a)

(b)

(c)

21.114 The product of a Dieckmann cyclization can undergo alkylation, hydrolysis, and decarboxylation. This sequence represents an efficient method for preparing alpha-substituted cyclopentanones (below) and cyclohexanones. Using this information, propose an efficient synthesis of 2-propylcyclohexanone that uses 1,7-heptanediol and propyl iodide.

21.115 Using ethanol as your only source of carbon atoms, propose a synthesis for each of the following compounds:

(a)

(b)

21.116 We have seen that the alpha carbon atom of an enamine can function as a nucleophile in a Michael reaction, and in fact, enamines can function as nucleophiles in a wide variety of reactions. For example, an enamine will undergo alkylation when treated with an alkyl halide. Draw the structure of intermediate **A** and the alkylation product **B** in the following reaction scheme:[12]

21.117 Consider the reaction between cyclohexanone and the optically pure amine shown.[13] (a) Draw the structure of the resulting enamine and determine whether or not a mixture of diastereomers is formed. (b) When the enamine(s) formed in part a is (are) treated with methyl iodide, followed by aqueous acid, 2-methylcyclohexanone with 83% *ee* is isolated. Explain the source of the observed enantiomeric excess (as compared with the racemic mixture obtained in Problem 21.116), and predict which enantiomer predominates.

21.118 Predict the product of the following reaction sequence, which was used in a synthetic route toward a series of 1,3,6-substituted fulvenes:[14]

21.119 The following synthetic step was utilized as part of a synthesis of the polycyclic natural product haouamine B.[15] This step represents both an electrophilic aromatic substitution and a Michael addition. In this reaction, the function of the first reagent (triflic anhydride) is to activate the Michael acceptor that is present in the starting compound (rendering it even more electrophilic), so that it can undergo an intramolecular Michael reaction. Draw a mechanism for this reaction and explain the observed stereochemistry of the newly formed chiral center.

21.120 In an effort to devise a new preparation of useful building blocks for the synthesis of natural products, compound **2** was prepared by treating compound **1** with diethylmalonate in the presence of potassium carbonate.[16] Propose a plausible mechanism for this reaction.

CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

21.121 The natural product (–)-*N*-methylwelwitindolinone C isothiocyanate is isolated from a blue-green algae and has been identified as a promising compound to treat drug-resistant tumors. Compound **X** (R = protecting group) was utilized as a key synthetic intermediate in the synthesis of the natural product.[17] Compound **X** can be prepared in a ring-forming reaction from compound **Y** under strongly basic conditions (excess $NaNH_2$), as illustrated in the following retrosynthetic scheme:

(a) Propose a plausible mechanism for conversion of **Y** into **X** under basic conditions.

(b) When **Y** is converted into **X**, a minor side product of the reaction is a constitutional isomer of **X** which lacks a ketone group. Propose a structure for this side product. (**Hint:** Recall that enolates have two nucleophilic centers.)

21.122 Insect pheromones can play an important role in pest management strategies. The following sequence, beginning with a cyclic hemiacetal (compound **A**, where R is a protecting group), was part of an enantiospecific synthesis of a powerful sex pheromone of the mealybug *Pseudococcus viburni*:[18]

(a) Draw the structures of compounds **B** and **C**.

(b) Describe in words how the cyclopentyl ring is closed during the conversion of compound **C** into compound **D**.

(c) Identify the reagents you would use to convert compound **D** into compound **F** (in just two steps). Also identify the structure of compound **E**.

21.123 The compound fusarisetin A (isolated from a soil fungus) displays significant anticancer activity without detectable cytotoxicity (toxicity to cells). A key step in a reported synthesis of the enantiomer of fusarisetin A involves a Dieckmann cyclization followed by the intramolecular formation of a hemiacetal under basic conditions, as shown below.[19] Propose a plausible mechanism for this reaction.

LIST OF REFERENCES

1. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **2015**, *137*, 11594–11597.
2. *Microbiol. Immunol.* **1994**, *38*, 741–745.
3. *Eur. J. Org. Chem.* **2015**, *23*, 5075–5078.
4. *Beilstein J. Org. Chem.* **2012**, *8*, 403–410.
5. *J. Org. Chem.* **1983**, *48*, 5285–5288.
6. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **2015**, *137*, 9289–9295.
7. *Chem. Nat. Comp.* **2011**, *47*, 789–791.
8. *J. Med. Chem.* **2012**, *55*, 5143–5150.
9. *J. Org. Chem.* **2015**, *80*, 10464–10473.
10. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1997**, *119*, 6072.
11. *Tetrahedron* **2015**, *71*, 6361–6368.
12. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1954**, *76*, 2029–2030.
13. *J. Org. Chem.* **1977**, *42*, 1663–1664.
14. *J. Org. Chem.* **2012**, *77*, 6371–6376.
15. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **2012**, *134*, 9291–9295.
16. *Tetrahedron Lett.* **2010**, *51*, 6918–6920.
17. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **2011**, *133*, 15797–15799.
18. *Tetrahedron Lett.* **2010**, *51*, 5291–5293.
19. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **2012**, *134*, 920–923.

22 Amines

22.1 Introduction to Amines
22.2 Nomenclature of Amines
22.3 Properties of Amines
22.4 Preparation of Amines: A Review
22.5 Preparation of Amines via Substitution Reactions
22.6 Preparation of Amines via Reductive Amination
22.7 Synthesis Strategies
22.8 Acylation of Amines
22.9 Hofmann Elimination
22.10 Reactions of Amines with Nitrous Acid
22.11 Reactions of Aryl Diazonium Ions
22.12 Nitrogen Heterocycles
22.13 Spectroscopy of Amines

DID YOU EVER **WONDER…**

how drugs like Tagamet, Zantac, and Pepcid are able to control stomach acid production and alleviate the symptoms of acid reflux disease?

Tagamet, Zantac, and Pepcid are all compounds that contain several nitrogen atoms, which are important for the function of these drugs. In this chapter, we will explore the properties, reactions, and biological activity of many different nitrogen-containing compounds. The end of the chapter will revisit the structures and activity of the three drugs listed above, with a special emphasis on how medicinal chemists designed the first of these blockbuster drugs.

Top (*Pair red peppers*) Doug Cannell/Getty Images; *Bottom* (*Green pepper*) Reinhold Leitner/Shutterstock, (*Red Pepper*) Vito Zgonc/Adobe Stock Photos, (*Yellow pepper*) J.D. Rogers/Shutterstock, (*Pink tablets*) Bryan Sikora/Shutterstock

DO YOU **REMEMBER?**

Before you go on, be sure you understand the following topics.
If necessary, review the suggested sections to prepare for this chapter:

- Delocalized and Localized Lone Pairs (Section 2.13)
- Brønsted–Lowry Acidity: A Quantitative Perspective (Section 3.3)
- Aromatic Heterocycles (Section 17.5)
- Activating Groups and Deactivating Groups (Sections 18.7 and 18.8)

Take the DO YOU **REMEMBER?** QUIZ in the **online course** to check your understanding.

22.1 Introduction to Amines

Classification of Amines

Amines are derivatives of ammonia in which one or more of the protons have been replaced with alkyl or aryl groups.

Amines are classified as primary, secondary, or tertiary, depending on the number of groups attached to the nitrogen atom. Note that these terms have a different meaning than when they were used in naming alcohols. A tertiary alcohol has three groups attached to the α carbon, while a tertiary amine has three groups attached to the nitrogen atom.

Amines are abundant in nature. Naturally occurring amines isolated from plants are called **alkaloids**. Below are examples of several alkaloids that have garnered public awareness as a result of their physiological activity:

Morphine
(A potent analgesic isolated from the unripe seeds of the poppy plant *Papaver somniferum*)

Cocaine
(A potent stimulant isolated from the leaves of the coca plant)

Nicotine
(An addictive and toxic compound found in tobacco)

Many amines also play vital roles in neurochemistry (chemistry taking place in the brain). Below are a few examples:

Adrenaline
(A "fight-or-flight" hormone, first discussed in Chapter 7)

Noradrenaline
(Regulates heart rate and dilates air passages)

Dopamine
(Regulates motor skills and emotions)

In fact, many pharmaceuticals are amines, as we will see throughout this chapter.

BioLinks | Drug Metabolism Studies

Recall that many drugs are converted in our bodies to water-soluble compounds that can be excreted in the urine (see the BioLinks box in Section 12.9). This process, called drug metabolism, often involves the conversion of a drug into many different compounds called metabolites. Whenever a new drug is developed, medicinal chemists conduct drug metabolism studies in order to determine whether the observed activity is a property of the drug itself or whether the activity is derived from one of the drug's metabolites. Each of the metabolites is isolated, if possible, and tested for drug activity. In some cases, it is found that the drug and one of its metabolites both exhibit activity. In other cases, the drug itself has no activity, but one of its metabolites is found to be responsible for the observed activity. Drug metabolism studies have, in some cases, led to the development of safer drugs. One such example will now be described.

Terfenadine, marketed under the trade name Seldane, was one of the first nonsedating antihistamines. After being widely used, it was discovered to cause cardiac arrhythmia (abnormal heart rhythm) among patients who were concurrently using either the antifungal agent ketoconazole or the antibiotic agent erythromycin. These agents are believed to inhibit the enzyme responsible for metabolizing terfenadine so that the drug remains in the body for a longer time. After several doses of terfenadine, the drug accumulates, and the high concentrations ultimately lead to the observed arrhythmia.

Medicinal chemists were able to sidestep this problem by carefully analyzing and testing the metabolites of terfenandine. Specifically, one of the metabolites was isolated and was found to possess a carboxylic acid group. Further studies showed that this metabolite, named fexofenadine, is the active compound, and terfenadine simply functions as a prodrug. But unlike the prodrug, this metabolite is further metabolized in the presence of antifungal or antibiotic agents. As a result, terfenadine was removed from the market and replaced with fexofenadine, which is now marketed in the United States under the trade name Allegra. This example illustrates how drug metabolism studies can lead to the development of safer drugs.

R = CH_3 — **Seldane** (terfenadine)

R = COOH — **Allegra** (fexofenadine)

Reactivity of Amines

The nitrogen atom of an amine possesses a lone pair that represents a region of high electron density. This can be seen in an electrostatic potential map of trimethylamine (Figure 22.1). The presence of this lone pair is responsible for most of the reactions exhibited by amines. Specifically, the lone pair can function as a base or as a nucleophile:

Section 22.3 explores the basicity of amines, while Sections 22.8–22.11 explore reactions in which amines function as nucleophiles.

FIGURE 22.1
An electrostatic potential map of trimethylamine. The red area indicates a region of high electron density.

22.2 Nomenclature of Amines

Nomenclature of Primary Amines

A primary amine is a compound containing an NH_2 group connected to an alkyl group. IUPAC nomenclature allows two different ways to name primary amines. While either method can be used in most circumstances, the choice most often depends on the complexity of the alkyl group. If the alkyl

group is rather simple, then the compound is generally named as an **alkyl amine**. With this approach, the alkyl substituent is identified followed by the suffix "amine." Below are several examples.

Ethylamine Isopropylamine Cyclohexylamine

Primary amines containing more complex alkyl groups are generally named as **alkanamines**. With this approach, the amine is named much like an alcohol, where the suffix *-amine* is used in place of *-ol*.

(2*R*,4*R*)-4,6-Dimethyl-2-heptanamine (2*R*,4*R*)-4,6-Dimethyl-2-heptanol

To use this approach, a parent is selected and the location of each substituent is identified with the appropriate locant. The parent chain is numbered starting with the side that is closer to the functional group. Any chiral centers are indicated at the beginning of the name. When another functional group is present in the compound, the amino group is generally listed as a substituent. The other functional group (with the exception of halogens) receives priority and its name becomes the suffix.

4-Aminobutanol *para*-Aminobenzoic acid

Aromatic amines, also called **aryl amines**, are generally named as derivatives of aniline.

Aniline *meta*-Chloroaniline 5-Ethyl-2-fluoroaniline

Notice in the last example that the numbering begins at the carbon attached to the amino group and continues in the direction that gives the lower number to the first point of difference (2-fluoro rather than 3-ethyl). When the name is assembled, all substituents are listed alphabetically, so ethyl is listed before fluoro.

Nomenclature of Secondary and Tertiary Amines

Much like primary amines, secondary and tertiary amines can also be named as alkyl amines or as alkanamines. Once again, the complexity of the alkyl groups typically determines which system is chosen. If all alkyl groups are rather simple in structure, then the groups are listed in alphabetical order. The prefixes "di" and "tri" are used if the same alkyl group appears more than once.

Ethylmethylpropylamine Diethylamine Trimethylamine

If one of the alkyl groups is complex, then the compound is typically named as an alkanamine, with the most complex alkyl group treated as the parent and the simpler alkyl groups treated as substituents.

(*S*)-2,2-Dichloro-*N*-ethyl-*N*-methyl-3-hexanamine

In this example, the parent is a hexane chain and the suffix is *-amine*. The methyl and ethyl groups are listed as substituents using the locant "*N*" to identify that they are connected to the nitrogen atom.

SKILLBUILDER

22.1 NAMING AN AMINE

LEARN the skill

Assign a name for the following compound:

SOLUTION

STEP 1 Identify all of the alkyl groups connected to the nitrogen atom.

First identify all of the alkyl groups connected to the nitrogen atom: There are two alkyl groups, so this compound is a secondary amine.

STEP 2 Determine what method to use.

STEP 3 If naming as an alkanamine, choose the more complex group to be the parent.

Next, determine whether to name the compound as an alkyl amine or as an alkanamine. If the alkyl groups are simple, then the compound can be named as an alkyl amine; otherwise, it should be named as an alkanamine. In this case, one of the alkyl groups is complex, so the compound will be named as an alkanamine. The complex alkyl group is chosen as the parent, and the other alkyl group is listed as a substituent, using the letter *N* as a locant. Notice that the parent is numbered starting from the side closer to the amine group.

STEP 4 Assign locants, assemble the name, and assign configuration.

Finally, assign locants to each substituent, assemble the name, and assign the configuration of any chiral centers:

(*R*)-*N*-Ethyl-6-methyl-3-heptanamine

PRACTICE the skill

22.1 Assign a name for each of the following compounds:

22.2 Draw the structure of each of the following compounds:

(a) Cyclohexylmethylamine **(b)** Tricyclobutylamine **(c)** 2,4-Diethylaniline
(d) (1*R*,2*S*)-2-Methylcyclohexanamine **(e)** *ortho*-Aminobenzaldehyde

APPLY the skill

22.3 Dogs are used by police and emergency personnel to detect a variety of things, including drugs, explosives, and humans (both as missing persons and as deceased bodies). Canines that are trained to detect human remains (aka, cadaver dogs) can be trained using synthetic scents that are characteristic of the odors produced by decomposition.[1] Assign a name to each of the following compounds that are characteristic by-products of decomposition and have been used in the training of cadaver dogs:

(Recall from Table 4.1 that a 13-carbon alkane is called tridecane)

(also called "cadaverine")

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 22.37, 22.41, 22.42**

22.3 Properties of Amines

Geometry

The nitrogen atom of an amine is typically sp^3 hybridized, with the lone pair occupying an sp^3-hybridized orbital. Consider trimethylamine as an example (shown at right). The nitrogen atom exhibits trigonal pyramidal geometry (see Section 1.11), with bond angles of 108°. The C—N bond lengths are 147 pm, which is shorter than the average C—C bond of an alkane (153 pm) and longer than the average C—O bond of an alcohol (143 pm).

Amines containing three different alkyl groups are chiral compounds (Figure 22.2). The nitrogen atom has a total of four different groups (three alkyl groups and a lone pair) and is therefore a chiral center. Compounds of this type are generally not optically active at room temperature, because pyramidal inversion occurs quite rapidly, producing a racemic mixture of enantiomers (Figure 22.3).

FIGURE 22.2
The mirror-image relationship of enantiomeric amines.

FIGURE 22.3
Pyramidal inversion of an amine enables the enantiomers to rapidly interconvert at room temperature.

During pyramidal inversion, the compound passes through a transition state in which the nitrogen atom has sp^2 hybridization. This transition state is only about 25 kJ/mol (6 kcal/mol) higher in energy than the sp^3-hybridized geometry. This energy barrier is relatively small and is easily surmounted at room temperature. For this reason, most amines bearing three different alkyl groups cannot be resolved at room temperature.

Solubility and Boiling Points

Amines exhibit solubility trends that are similar to the trends exhibited by alcohols. Specifically, amines with fewer than five carbon atoms per amino group will typically be water soluble, while amines with more than five carbon atoms per amino group will be only sparingly soluble. For example, ethylamine is soluble in water, while octylamine is not.

Primary and secondary amines can form intermolecular H bonds and typically have higher boiling points than analogous alkanes but lower boiling points than analogous alcohols.

Propane
bp = −42°C

Ethylamine
bp = 17°C

Ethanol
bp = 78°C

The boiling point of amines increases as a function of their capacity to form hydrogen bonds. As a result, primary amines typically have higher boiling points, while tertiary amines have lower boiling points. This trend can be observed by comparing the physical properties of the following three constitutional isomers:

Propylamine bp = 50°C | **Ethylmethylamine** bp = 34°C | **Trimethylamine** bp = 3°C

Other Distinctive Features of Amines

Amines with low molecular weights, such as trimethylamine, typically have a fishlike odor. In fact, the odor of fish is caused by amines that are produced when enzymes break down certain fish proteins. Putrescine and cadaverine are examples of compounds present in rotting fish. They are also present in urine, contributing to its characteristic odor.

Putrescine (1,4-butanediamine) | **Cadaverine (1,5-pentanediamine)**

BioLinks Fortunate Side Effects

Most drugs produce more than one physiological response. In general, one response is the desired response, and the rest are considered to be undesirable side effects. However, in some cases, the side effects have turned out to be fortunate discoveries. These accidental discoveries have led to the development of novel treatments for a wide range of ailments. The following are some of the better-known historical examples of this phenomenon.

Dimenhydrinate, which was originally developed as an antihistamine, is a mixture of two compounds: diphenhydramine (Benadryl) and 8-chlorotheophylline:

The former is a first-generation (sedating) antihistamine, while the latter is a chlorinated derivative of caffeine (a stimulant). It was believed that the drowsiness of the former would be reduced by the effects of the latter. Unfortunately, the sedating effects of the antihistamine were too strong and overpowered the effects of the stimulant. However, an accidental discovery was made when this mixture was tested in 1947. During clinical studies at the Johns Hopkins University, one patient suffering from car sickness reported alleviation of his symptoms. Further studies were then conducted, and it was discovered that the mixture of compounds was effective in treating other forms of motion sickness, including air sickness and sea sickness. Marketed under the trade name Dramamine, this formulation quickly became one of the most widely used drugs for the treatment of motion sickness. It has since been replaced with a newer drug, called meclizine, which is sold under the trade name Dramamine II (less-drowsy formula).

ps/Getty Images

Bupropion and sildenafil are two other drugs that have useful side effects:

Zyban (bupropion) | **Viagra (sildenafil)**

Bupropion was developed as an antidepressant but was found to help patients quit smoking during clinical trials. It is now marketed as a smoking cessation aid under the trade name Zyban.

Sildenafil was designed to treat angina (chest pain that occurs when the heart muscle receives insufficient oxygen). In clinical studies, many of the volunteers experienced increased erectile function. Since sildenafil was found to be ineffective in treating angina, its manufacturer (Pfizer) decided to market the drug instead as a treatment for erectile dysfunction, a condition that affects one in nine adult males. Sildenafil is now marketed and sold under the trade name Viagra, with annual sales in excess of $1 billion.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

22.4 Rank this group of compounds in order of increasing boiling point.

22.5 Identify whether each of the following compounds is expected to be water soluble:

(a)

(b)

(c)

Basicity of Amines

One of the most important properties of amines is their basicity. Amines are generally stronger bases than alcohols or ethers, and they can be effectively protonated even by weak acids.

In this example, triethylamine is protonated using acetic acid. Compare the pK_a values of acetic acid (4.76) and the ammonium ion (10.76). Recall that the equilibrium will favor the weaker acid. In this case, the ammonium ion is six orders of magnitude weaker than acetic acid, and therefore, the amine will exist almost completely in protonated form (one in every million molecules will be in the neutral form). This example illustrates how the basicity of an amine can be quantified by measuring the pK_a of the corresponding ammonium ion. *A high pK_a indicates that the amine is strongly basic, while a low pK_a indicates that the amine is only weakly basic.* Table 22.1 shows pK_a values for the ammonium ions of many amines.

TABLE 22.1 THE pK_a VALUES OF THE AMMONIUM IONS OF SEVERAL AMINES

Alkyl amines		*Alkyl amines*	
AMINE	**pK_a OF AMMONIUM ION**	**AMINE**	**pK_a OF AMMONIUM ION**
Methylamine	pK_a = 10.6	Dimethylamine	pK_a = 10.7
Ethylamine	pK_a = 10.6	Diethylamine	pK_a = 11.0
Isopropylamine	pK_a = 10.6	Trimethylamine	pK_a = 9.8
Cyclohexylamine	pK_a = 10.7	Triethylamine	pK_a = 10.8

(continued)

TABLE 22.1 *(continued)*

Aryl amines			*Heterocyclic amines*		
Amine		**pK_a of Ammonium Ion**	**Amine**		**pK_a of Ammonium Ion**
Aniline		pK_a = 4.6	Pyrrole		pK_a = 0.4
N-Methylaniline		pK_a = 4.8	Pyridine		pK_a = 5.3
N,N-Dimethylaniline		pK_a = 5.1			

The ease with which amines are protonated can be used to remove them from mixtures of organic compounds. This process is called **solvent extraction**. A mixture of organic compounds is first dissolved in an organic solvent. A solution of aqueous acid is then added to the mixture, and the contents are shaken vigorously. Upon standing, the organic and aqueous layers separate from one another, much the way oil and vinegar separate from each other in salad dressing bottles. Under these conditions, most of the amine molecules are protonated, forming ammonium ions. The ammonium ions bear charges and are therefore more soluble in the aqueous layer than the organic layer. Manual separation of the aqueous layer provides the ammonium ions, which are then treated with base to regenerate the neutral amine. In this way, amines can be readily separated from a mixture of organic compounds. This process was used extensively in the nineteenth century to isolate amines from plant extracts. It was recognized early on that amines could be isolated from plants by exploiting their basic properties. For this reason, amines extracted from plants were called alkaloids (derived from the word *alkaline*, which means basic).

Delocalization Effects

The ammonium ions of most alkyl amines are characterized by a pK_a value between 10 and 11, but aryl amines are very different. Ammonium ions of aryl amines are more acidic (lower pK_a) than the ammonium ion of alkyl amines (Table 22.2). In other words, aryl amines are less basic than alkyl amines. This can be rationalized by considering the delocalized nature of the lone pair of an aryl amine:

LOOKING BACK
For a review of delocalized lone pairs, see Section 2.13.

The lone pair occupies a *p* orbital and is delocalized by the aromatic system. This resonance stabilization is lost if the lone pair is protonated, and as a result, the nitrogen atom of an aryl amine is less basic than the nitrogen atom of an alkyl amine. If the aromatic ring bears a substituent, the basicity of the amino group will depend on the identity of the substituent (Table 22.2). Electron-donating groups, such as a methoxy group, slightly increase the basicity of aryl amines, while electron-withdrawing groups, such as a nitro group, can significantly decrease the basicity

TABLE 22.2 THE pK_a VALUES OF THE AMMONIUM IONS OF SEVERAL *PARA*-SUBSTITUTED ANILINES

para-Substituted aniline	Ammonium ion	
H_2N	H_2N	pK_a = 6.2
MeO	MeO	pK_a = 5.3
Me	Me	pK_a = 5.1
		pK_a = 4.6
Cl	Cl	pK_a = 4.0
NC	NC	pK_a = 1.7
O_2N	O_2N	pK_a = 1.0

Increasing basicity ↑ (aniline side); Increasing acidity ↓ (ammonium ion side)

of aryl amines. This profound effect is attributed to the fact that the lone pair in *para*-nitroaniline is extensively delocalized:

Amides also represent an extreme case of lone-pair delocalization. The lone pair on the nitrogen atom of an amide is highly delocalized by resonance. In fact, the nitrogen atom exhibits very little electron density, as can be seen in an electrostatic potential map (Figure 22.4). For this reason, the nitrogen atom of an amide generally does not function as a base or as a nucleophile.

FIGURE 22.4
An electrostatic potential map of an amide. The nitrogen atom is not a region of high electron density.

LOOKING BACK
To visualize the orbitals occupied by the lone pairs in pyrrole and pyridine, see Figures 17.14 and 17.15.

Another example of electron delocalization can be seen in a comparison of the electrostatic potential maps of pyrrole and pyridine in Figure 17.16. The lone pair of pyrrole is delocalized due to its participation in establishing aromatic stabilization. As a result, pyrrole is an extremely weak base because protonation of pyrrole would result in the loss of aromaticity. In contrast, the lone pair in pyridine is localized and does not participate in establishing aromaticity. As a result, pyridine can

function as a base without destroying its aromatic stabilization. For this reason, pyridine is a stronger base than pyrrole. In fact, inspection of the pK_a values in Table 22.1 reveals that pyridine is five orders of magnitude (~100,000 times) more basic than pyrrole.

Amines at Physiological pH

In Chapter 20, we used the Henderson–Hasselbalch equation to show that a carboxylic acid group (COOH) exists primarily as a carboxylate ion at physiological pH. A similar argument can be used to show that an amine also exists primarily as a charged ammonium ion at physiological pH:

The ammonium ion predominates at physiological pH

This fact is important for understanding the activity of pharmaceuticals containing amine groups, a topic that was explored in the BioLinks box in Section 3.3.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

22.6 For each of the following pairs of compounds, identify which compound is the stronger base, and explain your choice:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

22.7 Rank the following compounds in terms of increasing basicity, and explain your choice:

22.8 When (*E*)-4-amino-3-buten-2-one is treated with molecular hydrogen in the presence of platinum, the resulting product is more basic than the reactant. Draw the reactant and the product and explain why the product amine is a stronger base than the reactant amine.

22.9 For each of the following compounds, draw the form that predominates at physiological pH:

(a) **Sertraline (Zoloft)** An antidepressant

(b) **Amantadine** Used in the treatment of Parkinson's disease

(c) **Phenylpropanolamine** A nasal decongestant

WorldLinks Chemical Warfare Among Ants

Humans are not the first species to use chemical warfare. Many ant species can inject formic acid when they bite, and the formic acid greatly increases the pain of the bite (*formica* is the Latin word for ant). Aggressive fire ants, a genus of ants that invaded the southern U.S. from Argentina in the 1920s, have amplified the level of chemical warfare by making an even more toxic compound, solenopsin, which is a cyclic amine:

Solenopsin

Solenopsin is a hydrophobic molecule that dissolves through the waxy cuticle layer of other ants and is a potent neurotoxin. Fire ants can squirt solenopsin onto ants from other species and kill them with their toxin. Tawny crazy ants, another species of aggressive invasive ants from Argentina, have invaded the southern U.S. more recently and have been taking over territory inhabited by fire ants. In battles between fire ants and crazy ants, the crazy ants do get sprayed with the fire ants' neurotoxin, but they retreat and secrete formic acid from the tip of their abdomen and groom themselves with formic acid. Afterwards, they return to battle, seemingly unaffected by the exposure to the fire ants' neurotoxin. How does the formic acid block the action of solenopsin? Although there is no definitive

answer yet, the simplest explanation is that formic acid chemically neutralizes the amine group of solenopsin, forming an ionic ammonium ion salt that is not permeable/soluble in the ant's hydrophobic cuticle. As a result, the ionic form of solenopsin never gets inside the crazy ants, and they are able to battle the fire ants virtually unaffected by the neurotoxin.

Crazy ants have in fact been taking over fire ants' territory in the southern U.S., something that has never before been observed. This is a great example of how chemistry helps elucidate animal behavior and ecology.

22.4 Preparation of Amines: A Review

In previous chapters, we have seen reactions that can be used to make amines from alkyl halides, carboxylic acids, or benzene. This section will briefly summarize each of these three methods.

Preparing an Amine from an Alkyl Halide

Amines can be prepared from alkyl halides in a two-step process in which the alkyl halide is converted to a nitrile, which is then reduced.

The first step is an S_N2 process in which a cyanide ion functions as a nucleophile, displacing the halide leaving group. The limitations of S_N2 reactions apply in that tertiary alkyl halides and vinyl halides cannot be used. The second step involving reduction of the resulting nitrile can be accomplished with a strong reducing agent, such as $LiAlH_4$. Notice that installation of an amino group using this approach is accompanied by the introduction of one additional carbon atom (highlighted in red).

Preparing an Amine from a Carboxylic Acid

Amines can be prepared from carboxylic acids using the following approach:

The carboxylic acid is first converted into an amide, which is then reduced to give an amine (Section 20.14). This approach for installation of an amino group does not involve introduction of any additional carbon atoms; that is, the carbon skeleton is not changed.

Preparing Aniline and Its Derivatives from Benzene

Aryl amines, such as aniline, can be prepared from benzene using the following approach:

The first step involves nitration of the aromatic ring, and the second step involves reduction of the nitro group. Several reagents can be used to accomplish this reduction, including hydrogenation in the presence of a catalyst or reduction with iron, zinc, tin, or tin(II) chloride ($SnCl_2$) in the presence of aqueous acid. The latter method is a more mild approach that is used when other functional groups are present that would otherwise be susceptible to hydrogenation.

For example, a nitro group can be reduced selectively in the presence of a carbonyl group:

When reducing a nitro group in acidic conditions, the reaction must be followed up with a base, such as sodium hydroxide, because the resulting amino group will be protonated under acidic conditions (as we saw in Section 22.3).

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

22.10 Each of the following amines can be prepared from either an alkyl halide or a carboxylic acid. For each amine, draw the structures of both possible starting materials.

(a)

(b)

(c)

22.11 The following compound cannot be prepared from an alkyl halide or a carboxylic acid using the methods described in this section. Explain why each synthesis cannot be performed.

22.5 Preparation of Amines via Substitution Reactions

Alkylation of Ammonia

Ammonia is a very good nucleophile and will readily undergo alkylation when treated with an alkyl halide.

This reaction proceeds via an S_N2 process followed by deprotonation to give a primary amine. As the primary amine is formed, it can undergo further alkylation to produce a secondary amine, which undergoes further alkylation to produce a tertiary amine. Finally, the tertiary amine undergoes alkylation one more time to produce a **quaternary ammonium salt**.

If the quaternary ammonium salt is the desired product, then an excess of the alkyl halide is used, and ammonia is said to undergo *exhaustive alkylation*. However, monoalkylation is difficult to

achieve because each successive alkylation renders the nitrogen atom more nucleophilic. If the primary amine is the desired product, then the process is generally not efficient because when 1 mol of ammonia is treated with 1 mol of the alkyl halide, a mixture of products is obtained. For this reason, the alkylation of ammonia is only useful when the starting alkyl halide is inexpensive and the desired product can be easily separated or when exhaustive alkylation is performed to yield the quaternary ammonium salt.

The Azide Synthesis

The **azide synthesis** is a better method for preparing primary amines than alkylation of ammonia because it avoids the formation of secondary and tertiary amines. This method involves treating an alkyl halide with sodium azide followed by reduction (Mechanism 22.1).

MECHANISM 22.1 THE AZIDE SYNTHESIS

In the first step of this mechanism, the azide ion functions as a nucleophile and attacks the alkyl halide in an S_N2 process, producing an alkyl azide. The alkyl azide is then reduced using $LiAlH_4$. When performing this procedure, special precautions must be observed, because alkyl azides can be explosive, liberating nitrogen gas.

The Gabriel Synthesis

The **Gabriel synthesis** is another method for preparing primary amines while avoiding formation of secondary and tertiary amines. The key reagent is potassium phthalimide, which is prepared by treating phthalimide with potassium hydroxide.

Hydroxide functions as a base and deprotonates phthalimide. The proton is relatively acidic ($pK_a = 8.3$), because it is flanked by two C═O groups (similar to a β-keto ester). Potassium

phthalimide can function as a nucleophile and is readily alkylated to form a C—N bond (directly analogous to the acetoacetic ester synthesis, Section 21.5):

Potassium phthalimide

This reaction proceeds via an S_N2 process, so it works best with primary alkyl halides. It can be performed with secondary alkyl halides in many cases, but tertiary alkyl halides cannot be used. Acid-catalyzed or base-catalyzed hydrolysis is then performed to release the amine. Acidic conditions are more common than basic conditions.

Under acidic conditions, an ammonium ion is generated, which must be treated with a base to give the uncharged amine.

Hydrolysis is believed to proceed via a mechanism that is directly analogous to the mechanism that we saw for amide hydrolysis (Section 20.12). The hydrolysis process is slow, and many alternative approaches have been developed. One such alternative employs hydrazine to release the amine and involves two successive nucleophilic acyl substitution reactions.

SKILLBUILDER

22.2 PREPARING A PRIMARY AMINE VIA THE GABRIEL REACTION

LEARN the skill

Amphetamine is a stimulant (stronger than caffeine) that increases alertness and decreases appetite. It was used extensively during World War II to prevent combat fatigue.

Amphetamine

Using a Gabriel synthesis, show how amphetamine can be prepared.

SOLUTION

First identify an alkyl halide that can serve as a precursor in the preparation of amphetamine. To draw this precursor, simply replace the amino group with a halide:

STEP 1 Identify an appropriate alkyl halide to use.

In the Gabriel synthesis, the nitrogen atom comes from phthalimide, which serves as the starting material. The process requires three steps: (1) deprotonation to form potassium phthalimide, (2) nucleophilic attack with an alkyl halide, and (3) releasing the amine via hydrolysis or via treatment with hydrazine. Draw the reagents for all three steps of the Gabriel synthesis:

STEP 2
Draw all three steps, starting with phthalimide.

Note: Planning a Gabriel synthesis requires that you identify the alkyl halide to use in the second step of the process. The first and third steps remain the same regardless of the identity of the desired product.

PRACTICE the skill

22.12 Using a Gabriel synthesis, show how you would make each of the following compounds:

APPLY the skill

22.13 Fluorescent compounds emit light when excited, and some fluorescent compounds have been used for the detection, or *sensing*, of small molecules, metals, and changes in pH, among other things. Dapoxylsulfonic acid (DSA) is a fluorescent molecule that responds differently depending on the polarity of its environment, and is thus a unique sensing molecule.[2] A reported synthesis of DSA involves the conversion of compound **1** into compound **2**. Starting with **1**, propose a synthesis of **2** that includes a Gabriel synthesis.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 22.46a, 22.55, 22.56, 22.57b**

22.6 Preparation of Amines via Reductive Amination

Recall that ketones or aldehydes can be converted into imines when treated with ammonia in acidic conditions (Section 20.5). If the reaction is carried out in the presence of a reducing agent, such as H_2, then the imine is reduced as soon as it is formed, giving an amine.

This process, called **reductive amination**, can be accomplished in one reaction flask by hydrogenating a solution containing the ketone, ammonia, and a proton source. With this approach, the imine is reduced under the conditions of its formation. Many other reducing agents are also frequently employed instead of hydrogenation. One common reducing agent for this purpose is **sodium cyanoborohydride** ($NaBH_3CN$), which is similar in structure to sodium borohydride ($NaBH_4$), but a cyano group has replaced one of the hydrogen atoms.

Recall that a cyano group is electron withdrawing (Section 18.10), and its presence stabilizes the negative charge on the boron atom. As a result, $NaBH_3CN$ is a more selective hydride-reducing

agent than $NaBH_4$. This selectivity can be exploited to achieve the reductive amination of a ketone or aldehyde:

This process cannot be achieved with $NaBH_4$, which would simply reduce the ketone before it is converted into an imine. In contrast, $NaBH_3CN$ does not react with ketones but will reduce an iminium ion (a protonated imine). This process enables the conversion of a ketone or aldehyde into an amine in one reaction flask. The identity of the nucleophile (NH_3) can be changed, enabling the preparation of primary, secondary, or tertiary amines:

SKILLBUILDER

22.3 PREPARING AN AMINE VIA A REDUCTIVE AMINATION

LEARN the skill

Fluoxetine, sold under the trade name Prozac, is used in the treatment of depression and obsessive compulsive disorder. Show two different ways of preparing fluoxetine via reductive amination.

Fluoxetine

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Identify all C—N bonds.

STEP 2
Apply a retrosynthetic analysis of each C—N bond.

Begin by identifying all C—N bonds. Then, using a retrosynthetic analysis, identify the starting amine and the carbonyl compound that could be used to make each of the C—N bonds:

Method 1

Method 2

STEP 3
Draw all reagents necessary for each possible route.

Finally, show all of the reagents necessary for each synthetic route shown. In each case, the desired compound can be produced in just one step, using $NaBH_3CN$:

PRACTICE the skill

22.14 Show two different ways of preparing each of the following compounds via a reductive amination:

APPLY the skill

22.15 Methamphetamine, the illicit drug known as *meth*, is used in some FDA-approved formulations for the treatment of attention deficit disorder. Meth can be prepared by reductive amination using phenylacetone and methylamine. Draw the structure of phenylacetone and methamphetamine.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 22.60, 22.61, 22.74, 22.95**

22.7 Synthesis Strategies

In the previous sections, we explored a variety of methods for preparing primary amines. Each of these methods utilizes a different source of nitrogen atoms.

The Gabriel synthesis uses potassium phthalimide as the source of nitrogen, the azide synthesis uses sodium azide as the source of nitrogen, and reductive amination uses ammonia as the source of nitrogen. When preparing a primary amine, the available starting materials will dictate which of the three methods will be chosen.

Primary amines are readily converted into secondary amines via reductive amination. Similarly, secondary amines are readily converted into tertiary amines via reductive amination, as shown here:

Direct alkylation of the primary amine is not efficient because polyalkylation is generally unavoidable, as seen in Section 22.5. Therefore, it is more efficient to use reductive amination as an indirect method for alkylating the nitrogen atom of an amine.

Tertiary amines can be converted into quaternary ammonium salts via alkylation. This process is efficient because polyalkylation is not possible with tertiary amines.

Using just a few reactions, it is possible to prepare a wide variety of amines from simple starting materials.

Using potassium phthalimide, sodium azide, or ammonia together with suitable alkyl halides, ketones, or aldehydes, it is possible to generate a large variety of primary, secondary, and tertiary amines as well as quaternary ammonium salts. Let's get some practice using these methods to prepare amines.

SKILLBUILDER

22.4 PROPOSING A SYNTHESIS FOR AN AMINE

LEARN the skill

Using ammonia as your source of nitrogen, show what reagents you would use to prepare the following amine:

SOLUTION

Begin by identifying the alkyl groups connected to the nitrogen atom and determine whether the amine is primary, secondary, or tertiary.

In this case, the amine is secondary because the nitrogen atom bears two alkyl groups and one hydrogen atom. Each of the highlighted groups must be installed separately. The source of nitrogen is ammonia, which dictates that both groups must be installed via reductive amination. The following retrosynthetic analysis reveals the necessary starting materials:

Each C—N bond in the product (left) can be formed via the reaction between ammonia and a ketone or aldehyde. This synthesis therefore requires two successive reductive aminations, which can be performed in either order. One reaction is used to install the first group,

and another reductive amination is used to install the second group,

PRACTICE the skill

22.16 Using ammonia as your source of nitrogen, show the reagents you would use to prepare each of the following amines:

22.17 Starting with potassium phthalimide as your source of nitrogen and using any other reagents of your choice, show how you would prepare each of the compounds in Problem 22.16.

22.18 Starting with sodium azide (NaN_3) as your source of nitrogen and using any other reagents of your choice, show how you would prepare each of the compounds in Problem 22.16.

APPLY the skill

22.19 Neuroscience research has led chemists to explore compound **3** below and other related structures as potential drug candidates to treat obesity and depression.[3] As part of this effort, compound **3** was prepared from compound **1**. Propose reagents that might be used to achieve the transformations shown.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 22.45, 22.46, 22.90, 22.91**

22.8 Acylation of Amines

As discussed in Chapter 20, amines will react with acyl halides to yield amides.

The reaction takes place via a nucleophilic acyl substitution process, and HCl is a by-product of the reaction. As HCl is produced, the starting amine is protonated to form an ammonium ion, which will not attack the acyl halide. Therefore, two equivalents of the amine are required. Polyacylation does not occur, because the resulting amide is not nucleophilic.

Acylation of an amino group is an extremely useful technique when performing electrophilic aromatic substitution reactions, because it enables transformations that are otherwise difficult to achieve. For example, consider what happens when aniline is treated with bromine.

The amino group strongly activates the ring, and tribromination occurs readily. Monobromination of aniline is extremely difficult to achieve. Even when one equivalent of bromine is used, a mixture of products is obtained. This problem can be circumvented by first acylating the amino group. The resulting amide group is less activating than an amino group, and monobromination becomes possible. After the bromination step, the amide group can be removed by hydrolysis. This three-step procedure provides a method for the monobromination of aniline, which would otherwise be difficult to achieve.

As another example, consider what happens if we try to perform a Friedel–Crafts reaction (alkylation or acylation) using aniline as a starting material.

The amino group attacks the Lewis acid to form an acid-base complex in which the aromatic ring is now strongly deactivated. Recall that strongly deactivated rings are unreactive toward Friedel–Crafts reactions. As a result, it is not possible to achieve a Friedel–Crafts reaction with aniline as a starting material. Once again, this problem can be circumvented by first acylating the amino group. In this case, the acylation process can be viewed as the installation of a protecting group, because we are preventing an undesired reaction between two incompatible species. The nitrogen atom of the resulting amide is no longer nucleophilic—it is now *protected*. Under these conditions, a Friedel–Crafts reaction can be performed, and the amide protecting group can then be removed via hydrolysis. This three-step procedure provides a method for alkylating aniline, something that cannot be accomplished directly.

Alkylation of the ring is efficient if the amino group is protected

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

22.20 When aniline is treated with a mixture of nitric acid and sulfuric acid, the expected nitration product (*para*-nitroaniline) is obtained in poor yield. Instead, an isolated product of the nitration reaction is *meta*-nitroaniline. Apparently, the amino group is protonated under the acidic nitration conditions, and the resulting ammonium group is a *meta* director, rather than an *ortho*-*para* director. Propose a plausible method for the successful conversion of aniline into *para*-nitroaniline.

22.21 Starting with nitrobenzene and using any other reagents of your choice, outline a synthesis of *para*-chloroaniline.

22.22 Using acetic acid as your only source of carbon atoms, show how you could make *N*-ethyl acetamide.

22.9 Hofmann Elimination

Amines, like alcohols, can serve as precursors in the preparation of alkenes.

Recall that alcohols can only undergo an E2 process if the OH group is first converted into a better leaving group (such as a tosylate). Similarly, amines can also undergo an E2 reaction if the amino group is first converted into a better leaving group. This can be accomplished by treating the amine with excess methyl iodide.

As we saw in Section 22.5, amines will undergo exhaustive alkylation in the presence of excess methyl iodide, producing a quaternary ammonium salt. This process transforms the amino group into an excellent leaving group. Treating the quaternary ammonium salt with a strong base causes an E2 reaction that yields an alkene. A commonly used reagent is aqueous silver oxide (Ag_2O):

This process is called a **Hofmann elimination**. The function of silver oxide is to convert one ammonium salt into another ammonium salt by exchanging the iodide ion for a hydroxide ion.

The newly formed hydroxide ion then serves as the base that triggers the E2 process:

Take special notice of the regiochemical outcome; it is not what we might have expected. Recall that E2 reactions generally proceed to form the more substituted alkene. But in this case, the major product is the less substituted alkene, and only trace amounts of the more substituted product are formed. This observation can be rationalized with a steric argument, because the leaving group is very bulky. To understand the effect of the leaving group in controlling the regiochemical outcome, recall that E2 reactions take place via a conformation in which the leaving group is anticoplanar with the proton being removed. Consider a Newman projection showing the anticoplanar conformation that leads to the more substituted alkene.

This conformation exhibits a *gauche* interaction, which raises the energy of the transition state. This *gauche* interaction is not present in the anticoplanar conformation that leads to the less substituted alkene.

As a result, the transition state for formation of the less substituted alkene is lower in energy than the transition state for formation of the more substituted alkene (Figure 22.5). Formation of the less substituted alkene (shown in red) occurs more rapidly because it has a lower energy of activation, despite the fact that it is not the more stable product.

FIGURE 22.5
An energy diagram showing the two possible pathways for a Hofmann elimination. The less substituted alkene is formed because the activation energy is lower for that pathway.

SKILLBUILDER

22.5 PREDICTING THE PRODUCT OF A HOFMANN ELIMINATION

LEARN the skill

Draw the major product obtained when 3-methyl-3-hexanamine is treated with excess methyl iodide followed by aqueous silver oxide and heat.

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Identify all α and β positions.

STEP 2
Consider the regiochemical possibilities.

Begin by drawing the starting amine and identifying all α and β positions. Then, consider forming a C═C double bond between each possible pair of α and β positions:

STEP 3
Identify the least substituted alkene.

Compare the products and identify the alkene that is least substituted:

The disubstituted alkene is expected to be the major product:

PRACTICE the skill

22.23 Draw the major product that is expected when each of the following compounds is treated with excess methyl iodide followed by aqueous Ag_2O and heat:

(a) Cyclohexylamine

(b) (*R*)-3-Methyl-2-butanamine

(c) *N*,*N*-Dimethyl-1-phenylpropan-2-amine

APPLY the skill

22.24 Phencyclidine (PCP) was originally developed as an anesthetic for animals, but it has since become an illegal street drug because it is a powerful hallucinogen. Treatment of PCP with excess methyl iodide followed by aqueous Ag_2O produces a mixture of the following three compounds. Draw the structure of PCP.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 22.52, 22.64, 22.76, 22.81, 22.93**

22.10 Reactions of Amines with Nitrous Acid

This section will explore the reactions that occur when amines are treated with **nitrous acid**. Compare the structures of nitric acid (HNO_3) and nitrous acid (HNO_2):

Nitrous acid is unstable, and therefore, treating an amine with nitrous acid requires that the nitrous acid be prepared in the presence of the amine, called an *in situ* preparation. This is achieved by treating sodium nitrite ($NaNO_2$) with a strong acid, such as HCl or H_2SO_4. Under these conditions, nitrous acid is further protonated, followed by loss of water, to give a **nitrosonium ion** (Mechanism 22.2).

MECHANISM 22.2 FORMATION OF NITROUS ACID AND NITROSONIUM IONS

The nitrosonium ion is an extremely strong electrophile and is subject to attack by any amine that is present in solution. An equilibrium is established in which the concentration of nitrosonium ion is rather small. However, as the nitrosonium ion is formed, it can react with the amine that is present. The equilibrium then adjusts to produce more nitrosonium ion. The outcome of the reaction depends on whether the amine is primary or secondary. We will explore these possibilities separately, beginning with secondary amines.

Secondary Amines and Nitrous Acid

When a secondary amine is treated with sodium nitrite and HCl, the reaction produces an ***N*-nitrosamine** (Mechanism 22.3):

An *N*-nitrosamine

MECHANISM 22.3 FORMATION OF *N*-NITROSAMINES

The amine functions as a nucleophile and attacks a nitrosonium ion that was generated *in situ* from sodium nitrite and HCl. The resulting ammonium ion is then deprotonated to give the product. Nitrosamines are known to be potent carcinogens. Several examples are shown below:

***N*-Nitrosodimethylamine**
(Found in many food products, including cured meat, fish, and beer)

***N*-Nitrosopyrrolidine**
(Found in fried bacon)

***N*-Nitrosonornicotine**
(Found in tobacco smoke)

Primary Amines and Nitrous Acid

When a primary amine is treated with sodium nitrite and HCl, the reaction produces a **diazonium salt** (*azo* indicates a nitrogen atom, *diazo* indicates two nitrogen atoms, and *diazonium* indicates two nitrogen atoms with a positive charge).

This process is called **diazotization** and is believed to proceed via Mechanism 22.4. The amine functions as a nucleophile and attacks a nitrosonium ion, which was generated *in situ* from sodium nitrite and HCl. Several proton transfers follow, and the last step involves loss of water to generate the diazonium salt.

MECHANISM 22.4 DIAZOTIZATION

When the R group of the primary amine is an alkyl group as opposed to an aryl group, then the resulting diazonium salt is highly unstable and is too reactive to be isolated. It can spontaneously liberate nitrogen gas to form a carbocation, which then reacts in a variety of ways.

For example, the carbocation can be captured by water to form an alcohol or it can lose a proton to form an alkene. The reaction generates a mixture of products and is therefore not useful. In addition, the process is also dangerous, because the expulsion of nitrogen gas can be an explosive process.

If, however, the primary amine is an aryl amine, then the resulting aryldiazonium salt is stable enough to be useful. It does not liberate nitrogen gas, because that would involve formation of a high-energy aryl cation.

Aryldiazonium salts are extremely useful, because the diazonium group can be readily replaced with a number of other groups that are otherwise difficult to install on an aromatic ring. Reactions of aryldiazonium salts will be discussed in Section 22.11.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

22.25 Predict the major product obtained when each of the following amines is treated with a mixture of $NaNO_2$ and HCl:

22.11 Reactions of Aryl Diazonium Ions

In Section 22.10, we saw that aryl amines can be converted into aryl diazonium salts upon treatment with nitrous acid.

As mentioned earlier, this reaction is extremely useful, because many different reagents will replace the diazo group, allowing for a simple procedure for installing a wide variety of groups on an aromatic ring:

In this section, we will explore some of the groups that can be installed on an aromatic ring using this procedure.

Sandmeyer Reactions

The **Sandmeyer reactions** utilize copper salts (CuX) and enable the installation of a halogen or a cyano group on an aromatic ring:

Notice the installation of a cyano group. Recall that a cyano group can be hydrolyzed in aqueous acid or base, which provides a method for installing a carboxylic acid group on an aromatic ring.

Fluorination

When treated with fluoroboric acid (HBF_4), an aryl diazonium salt is converted into a fluorobenzene. This reaction, called the **Schiemann reaction**, is useful for installing fluorine on an aromatic ring, which is not easy to accomplish with other methods.

Other Substitution Reactions of Aryl Diazonium Salts

When an aryl diazonium salt is heated in the presence of water, the diazo group is replaced with a hydroxyl group.

This procedure is very useful, because there are not many other ways to install an OH group on an aromatic ring. An example of this process is shown below.

When treated with hypophosphorus acid (H_3PO_2), the diazo group of an aryldiazonium salt is replaced with a hydrogen atom:

This reaction can be useful for manipulating the directing effects of a substituted aromatic ring. For example, consider the following synthesis of 1,3,5-tribromobenzene:

The amino group is first installed, its activating and directing effects are exploited, and then it is completely removed. The product of this sequence cannot be easily prepared from benzene via successive halogenation reactions because halogens are *ortho-para* directors.

The reactions of diazonium salts are believed to occur via radical intermediates, and their mechanisms are beyond the scope of our discussion.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

22.26 Propose an efficient synthesis for each of the following transformations:

Azo Coupling

Aryldiazonium salts are also known to react with activated aromatic rings.

This process, called **azo coupling**, is believed to occur via an electrophilic aromatic substitution reaction.

The reaction works best when the nucleophile is an activated aromatic ring. The resulting azo compound has extended conjugation and therefore exhibits color. By structurally modifying the starting materials (by placing substituents on the aromatic rings prior to azo coupling), a variety of products can be made, each of which will exhibit a unique color. These compounds, called **azo dyes**, were discussed in more detail in the WorldLinks box in Section 18.3.

LOOKING BACK
For more on the origin of color, see Section 16.12.

SKILLBUILDER

22.6 DETERMINING THE REACTANTS FOR PREPARING AN AZO DYE

LEARN the skill

Identify the reactants you would use to prepare the following azo dye via an azo coupling reaction.

SOLUTION

Begin by identifying all substituents as activators or deactivators (for help, see Table 18.1).

STEP 1
Determine which ring is more strongly activated.

Based on this information, identify which ring is more strongly activated. In this case, it is the ring that bears the methoxy substituent. Using a retrosynthetic analysis, identify the starting nucleophile and electrophile needed to make this azo dye. The activated ring must be the nucleophile, and the other ring must function as the diazonium salt:

STEP 2
Identify the starting nucleophile and electrophile.

Next, identify the starting aniline that is necessary in order to make the diazonium salt (the electrophile):

STEP 3
Identify the substituted aniline that is necessary to make the desired electrophile.

Finally, show all reagents. Draw the substituted aniline as the reactant and then show the two steps necessary to convert this compound into the desired product. The first step utilizes $NaNO_2$ and HCl to produce the diazonium salt, and the second step is an azo coupling reaction:

STEP 4
Show all reagents.

PRACTICE the skill

22.27 Identify the reactants you would use to prepare each of the following azo dyes via an azo coupling reaction:

(a)

(b)

(c)

APPLY the skill

22.28 As part of the effort to create new anti-cancer drugs that selectively target cancer cells, scientists are developing light-activated compounds such as *trans*-PST-1, which can be prepared from compound **A**, shown below. Upon irradiation with blue light, *trans*-PST-1 undergoes isomerization to give a *cis* isomer that is 250 times more cytotoxic (toxic to cells) than the *trans* isomer.[4] Since the *cis* isomer of PST-1 is relatively unstable, it quickly isomerizes back to the *trans* isomer in the absence of light. Therefore, the more active form of the drug only exists in therapeutic concentrations in the region of the body that is exposed to blue light, enabling focused targeting of the chemotherapeutic agent by using an external blue light source.

(a) Starting with commercially available 3,4,5-trimethoxyaniline, and any other reagents of your choosing, propose an efficient synthesis for compound **A**.

(b) Draw the more cytotoxic *cis* isomer of PST-1.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 22.63, 22.68d, 22.72, 22.85**

22.12 Nitrogen Heterocycles

A *heterocycle* is a ring that contains atoms of more than one element. Common organic heterocycles are comprised of carbon and either nitrogen, oxygen, or sulfur. Consider, for example, the structures of Viagra and Nexium. Both of these compounds contain nitrogen heterocycles, highlighted in red. Many different kinds of heterocycles are commonly found in the structures of biological molecules and pharmaceuticals. We will discuss just a few simple heterocycles in this section.

Esomeprazole
(Nexium)
A proton pump inhibitor used in the treatment of ulcers and acid reflux disease

Sildenafil
(Viagra)
Used in the treatment of erectile dysfunction and pulmonary arterial hypertension

Pyrrole and Imidazole

Pyrrole, a five-membered aromatic ring containing one nitrogen atom, is numbered starting with the nitrogen atom. As seen in Chapter 17, the lone pair of this nitrogen atom participates in aromaticity (Figure 17.15) and is therefore significantly less basic and less nucleophilic than a typical amine. Pyrrole undergoes reactions that are expected for an aromatic system, such as electrophilic aromatic substitution. In fact, pyrrole is even more reactive than benzene, and low temperatures are often required to control the reaction.

Pyrrole

Pyrrole 2-Bromopyrrole (90%)

Electrophilic aromatic substitution occurs primarily at C2, because the intermediate formed during attack at C2 is stabilized by resonance.

When attack takes place at C2, the intermediate has three resonance structures. In contrast, when attack takes place at C3, the intermediate has only two resonance structures.

An **imidazole** ring is like pyrrole but has one extra nitrogen atom at the 3 position. Histamine is an example of an important biological compound that contains an imidazole ring.

Imidazole Histamine

BioLinks H_2-Receptor Antagonists and the Development of Cimetidine

Recall that histamine binds to the H_1 receptor, triggering allergic reactions (as seen in the BioLinks box in Section 17.5). It is now understood that histamine binds to other types of receptors as well, each of which elicits a different physiological response. The H_2 receptor has been associated with the stimulation of gastric (stomach) acid secretion. While histamine can bind with both H_1 and H_2 receptors, traditional antihistamines only bind with H_1 receptors. That is, they are H_1 antagonists, but they show no activity toward H_2 receptors. The discovery of the H_2 receptor naturally led to the search for new drugs that would selectively bind with the H_2 receptor and not with the H_1 receptor. The hope was that such drugs could theoretically be used to control the overproduction of gastric acid associated with acid reflux disease and ulcers. Years of research ultimately led to the development of cimetidine (Tagamet), the first selective H_2 antagonist.

The story of cimetidine begins with consideration of the features that might be required for a compound to exhibit selective H_2 antagonism. Medicinal chemists reasoned that the target compound must be sufficiently similar in structure to histamine to bind to the H_2 receptor, but it must be sufficiently different in order to be an antagonist, rather than an agonist. It was assumed that the imidazole ring was necessary for binding, so several hundred imidazole derivatives were prepared and tested. The first compound that showed any H_2 antagonistic activity was *N*-guanylhistamine.

Histamine *N*-Guanylhistamine

Further studies revealed that *N*-guanylhistamine is not actually an H_2 antagonist, but rather, it is a partial H_2 agonist. It binds with the H_2 receptor and elicits the stimulation of gastric acid secretion, but to a smaller extent than histamine. This, of course, defeats the purpose. So the chemists continued their search, using *N*-guanylhistamine as a starting point. This compound was known to be protonated at physiological pH.

Medicinal chemists then tried to modify the guanyl group so that it would be neutral at physiological pH. After many different possibilities, a thiourea analogue was created that has one

additional CH_2 group in the side chain, and the basic nitrogen atom of the guanyl group has been replaced with a sulfur atom that is not protonated at physiological pH.

This compound did, in fact, exhibit weak antagonistic activity toward the H_2 receptor. The search then focused on creating analogues that might exhibit greater potency. An additional CH_2 was inserted in the side chain, and the terminal nitrogen atom was methylated. The resulting compound, called burimamide, was shown to be effective in inhibiting gastric acid secretion in rats.

Burimamide

Burimamide was the first H_2 antagonist tested in humans. Unfortunately, it did not exhibit sufficient activity when taken orally, so the search continued, this time using the structure of burimamide as a starting point.

One approach was to compare the basicity of histamine and burimamide. In other words, we compare the pK_a values of the protonated imidazole ring in histamine and burimamide:

Histamine **Burimamide**

The protonated imidazole ring of histamine has a pK_a of 5.9, while the protonated imidazole ring of burimamide has a pK_a of 7.3. Therefore, at physiological pH, the equilibrium concentrations of neutral and ionic forms are different for histamine and burimamide. Research efforts were then directed toward developing an analogue of burimamide that more closely resembles the basicity of histamine. It was reasoned that the presence of an electron-withdrawing group in the side chain would lower the pK_a while an electron-donating group at the C4 position would increase the basicity of the nitrogen atom. This rationale led to the development of metiamide.

Metiamide

The structure of metiamide differs from that of burimamide in the presence of a methyl group at C4, and the replacement of one of the CH_2 groups in the side chain with a sulfur atom. This type of replacement is called an isosteric replacement, because the sulfur atom occupies roughly the same amount of space as a CH_2 group, but it has very different electronic properties. The net result is that the protonated form of metiamide has a pK_a that is nearly identical with the protonated form of histamine. Clinical trials showed that metiamide exhibited H_2 antagonistic activity that was nine times greater than burimamide, and it was effective in relieving ulcer symptoms; however, a few patients developed granulocytopenia (lowering of the white blood cell count). This side effect was not acceptable, because it would temporarily impair the ability of the immune system to function properly. It was believed that the cases of granulocytopenia were caused by the presence of the thiourea group, so alternative groups were considered. Ultimately, the thiourea group was replaced with a cyanoguanidine group.

Tagamet (cimetidine)

Recall from earlier in our discussion that the presence of the guanyl group precluded antagonistic activity because the guanyl group is charged at physiological pH. However, in this derivative, the cyano group withdraws electron density from the neighboring nitrogen atom and delocalizes its lone pair. The resulting group is less basic and is not protonated at physiological pH. This compound, called cimetidine, was found to exhibit potent H_2 antagonistic properties and did not cause granulocytopenia in patients.

Cimetidine became available to the public in England in 1976 and in the United States in 1979, sold under the trade name Tagamet. Annual sales of this drug skyrocketed, ultimately reaching more than $1 billion in annual sales. Cimetidine earned its place in history as the first blockbuster drug (a drug with sales over $1 billion/year). Since the development of cimetidine, other H_2 antagonists were developed and approved for use, including Zantac and Pepcid:

Zantac (ranitidine)

Pepcid (famotidine)

(*Green pepper*) Reinhold Leitner/Shutterstock, (*Red Pepper*) Vito Zgonc/Adobe Stock Photos, (*Yellow pepper*) J.D. Rogers/Shutterstock

Bryan Sikora/Shutterstock

Ranitidine (Zantac) soon overcame cimetidine (Tagamet) as the best-selling drug worldwide, before being recalled by the FDA in April, 2020 (ranitidine formulations were found to contain a contaminant, whose concentration increases over time to potentially harmful levels).

Upon inspection of the structures above (ranitidine and famotidine), it is clear that the imidazole ring is not absolutely essential for H_2 antagonistic activity, as analogous heterocyclic aromatic rings can replace the imidazole ring. However, all of these analogues appear to have some derivative of the guanyl group on the side chain.

Pyridine and Pyrimidine

Pyridine is a six-membered aromatic ring containing one nitrogen atom and is numbered starting with the nitrogen atom:

Pyridine

The lone pair of the nitrogen atom is localized and occupies an sp^2-hybridized orbital, and as a result, pyridine is a stronger base than pyrrole. Nevertheless, pyridine is still a weaker base than alkyl amines, because the lone pair occupies an sp^2-hybridized orbital, rather than an sp^3-hybridized orbital (as seen in Figure 17.14). By occupying an sp^2-hybridized orbital, the electrons of the lone pair have more *s* character and are therefore closer to the positively charged nucleus, rendering them less basic.

Since pyridine is an aromatic compound, we would expect it to exhibit reactions that are characteristic of aromatic systems. In fact, pyridine undergoes electrophilic aromatic substitution reactions; however, the yields are generally quite low, because the inductive effect of the nitrogen atom renders the ring electron poor. High temperatures are required:

Pyridine 3-Bromopyridine (30%)

Pyrimidine is similar in structure to pyridine but contains one extra nitrogen atom at the 3 position. Pyrimidine rings are very common in biological molecules. Pyrimidine is less basic than pyridine due to the inductive effect of the second nitrogen atom:

Pyrimidine

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

22.29 Pyridine undergoes electrophilic aromatic substitution at the C3 position. Justify this regiochemical outcome by drawing resonance structures of the sigma-complex intermediates produced from attack at C2, at C3, and at C4.

22.30 Predict the product obtained when pyrrole is treated with a mixture of HNO_3 and H_2SO_4 at 0°C.

22.13 Spectroscopy of Amines

IR Spectroscopy

In their IR spectra, primary and secondary amines exhibit signals between 3350 and 3500 cm^{-1}. These signals correspond with N—H stretching and are typically less intense than O—H signals. Primary amines give two peaks (symmetric and asymmetric stretching), while secondary amines give only one peak (Figure 14.19). This phenomenon was first explained in Section 14.5.

Tertiary amines lack an N—H bond and do not exhibit a signal in the region between 3350 and 3500 cm^{-1}. Tertiary amines can be detected with IR spectroscopy by treatment with HCl. The resulting N—H bond exhibits a characteristic signal between 2200 and 3000 cm^{-1}:

NMR Spectroscopy

In the ^{1}H NMR spectrum of an amine, any proton attached directly to the nitrogen atom (for primary and secondary amines) will typically appear as a broad signal somewhere between 0.5 and 5.0 ppm. The precise location is sensitive to many factors, including the solvent, concentration, and temperature. Splitting is generally not observed for these protons, because they are labile and are exchanged at a rate that is faster than the timescale of the NMR spectrometer (as described in Section 15.7). The broad signal for these protons can generally be removed from the spectrum by dissolving the amine in D_2O, which results in a proton exchange that replaces these protons for deuterons.

Protons connected to the α position typically appear between 2 and 3 ppm because of the deshielding effect of the nitrogen atom. As an example, consider the chemical shifts for the protons in propylamine:

Notice that the deshielding effect of the nitrogen atom is greatest for the α protons (2.7 ppm) and tapers off with distance. The β protons are affected to a lesser extent (1.5 ppm), and the γ protons are not measurably affected (0.9 ppm).

In the ^{13}C NMR spectrum of an amine, the α carbon atoms typically appear between 30 and 50 ppm. That is, they are shifted about 20 ppm downfield due to the deshielding effect of the nitrogen atom.

Once again, notice that the deshielding effect of the nitrogen atom is greatest for the α carbon (44.4 ppm) and tapers off with distance. The β carbon is affected to a lesser extent (27.1 ppm), and the γ carbon is not measurably affected (11.4 ppm).

Mass Spectrometry

The mass spectrum of an amine is characterized by the presence of a parent ion with an odd molecular weight. This follows the nitrogen rule (see Section 14.9), which states that a compound with an odd number of nitrogen atoms will produce a parent ion with an odd molecular weight. In addition, amines generally exhibit a characteristic fragmentation pattern. They undergo α cleavage to generate a radical and a resonance-stabilized cation (see Section 14.12).

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

22.31 How would you use IR spectroscopy to distinguish between the following compounds?

(a)

(b)

22.32 How would you use NMR spectroscopy to distinguish between the following compounds?

(a)

(b)

REVIEW OF REACTIONS

Preparation of Amines

From Alkyl Halides

From Carboxylic Acids

From Benzene

The Azide Synthesis

The Gabriel Synthesis

Via Reductive Amination

Reactions of Amines

Acylation

Hofmann Elimination

Reactions with Nitrous Acid

Reactions of Aryldiazonium Salts

Sandmeyer Reactions

Fluorination (Schiemann Reaction)

Other Reactions of Aryldiazonium Salts

Azo Coupling

Reactions of Nitrogen Heterocycles

REVIEW OF CONCEPTS AND VOCABULARY

SECTION 22.1

- **Amines** are derivatives of ammonia, in which one or more of the protons are replaced with alkyl or aryl groups.
- Amines are primary, secondary, or tertiary, depending on the number of groups attached to the nitrogen atom.
- Naturally occurring amines isolated from plants are called **alkaloids**.
- The lone pair on the nitrogen atom of an amine can function as a base or as a nucleophile.

SECTION 22.2

- Amines can be named as **alkyl amines** or as **alkanamines**, depending on the complexity of the alkyl groups.
- When naming an amine as an alkanamine, the most complex alkyl group is chosen as the parent, and the other alkyl groups are listed as N substituents.
- Aromatic amines, also called **aryl amines**, are generally named as derivatives of aniline.

SECTION 22.3

- The nitrogen atom of an amine is typically sp^3 hybridized; the lone pair occupies an sp^3-hybridized orbital.
- Amines containing three different alkyl groups are chiral, but they are generally not optically active at room temperature.
- Amines with fewer than five carbon atoms per functional group will typically be water soluble, while amines with more than five carbon atoms per functional group will be only sparingly soluble.
- The boiling point of an amine increases as a function of its capacity to form hydrogen bonds.
- Amines are effectively protonated even by weak acids.
- The basicity of an amine can be quantified by measuring the pK_a of the corresponding ammonium ion. A large pK_a indicates a strongly basic amine, while a low pK_a indicates a weakly basic amine.
- The ease with which amines are protonated can be used to remove them from mixtures of organic compounds in a process called **solvent extraction**.

- Aryl amines are less basic than alkyl amines, because the lone pair is delocalized.
- Electron-donating groups slightly increase the basicity of aryl amines, while electron-withdrawing groups significantly decrease the basicity of aryl amines.
- Amides generally do not function as bases, and they are very poor nucleophiles.
- Pyridine is a stronger base than pyrrole, because the lone pair in pyrrole participates in aromaticity.
- An amine group exists primarily as a charged ammonium ion at physiological pH.

SECTION 22.4

- Amines can be prepared from alkyl halides or from carboxylic acids.
- Aryl amines, such as aniline, can be prepared from benzene.

SECTION 22.5

- Monoalkylation of ammonia is difficult to achieve because the resulting primary amine is even more nucleophilic than ammonia.
- If the **quaternary ammonium salt** is the desired product, then an excess of alkyl halide can be used, and ammonia undergoes *exhaustive alkylation*.
- The **azide synthesis** involves treating an alkyl halide with sodium azide followed by reduction.
- The **Gabriel synthesis** generates primary amines upon treatment of potassium phthalimide with an alkyl halide, followed by hydrolysis or reaction with N_2H_4.

SECTION 22.6

- Amines can be prepared via **reductive amination**, in which a ketone or aldehyde is converted into an imine in the presence of a reducing agent, such as **sodium cyanoborohydride** ($NaBH_3CN$).

SECTION 22.7

- Amines can be prepared by a variety of methods, each using a different source of nitrogen. The starting materials dictate which method will be used.
- Secondary amines are readily prepared from primary amines via reductive amination. Tertiary amines are readily prepared from secondary amines via reductive amination.
- Quaternary ammonium salts are prepared from tertiary amines via direct alkylation.

SECTION 22.8

- Amines react with acyl halides to produce amides.
- Acylation of an amino group is a useful technique when performing electrophilic aromatic substitution reactions, because it enables transformations that are otherwise difficult to achieve.

SECTION 22.9

- In the **Hofmann elimination**, an amino group is converted into a better leaving group, which is expelled in an E2 process to form an alkene.
- The less substituted alkene is formed for steric reasons.

SECTION 22.10

- **Nitrous acid** is unstable and must be prepared *in situ* from sodium nitrite and an acid.
- In the presence of HCl, nitrous acid is protonated, followed by loss of water, to give a **nitrosonium ion**.
- Primary amines react with a nitrosonium ion to yield a **diazonium salt** in a process called **diazotization**.
- Alkyldiazonium salts are unstable, but aryldiazonium salts can be isolated.
- Secondary amines react with a nitrosonium ion to produce an ***N*-nitrosamine**.

SECTION 22.11

- Aryldiazonium salts are very useful, because many different reagents will replace the diazo group.
- **Sandmeyer reactions** utilize copper salts (CuX), enabling the installation of a halogen or a cyano group.
- In the **Schiemann reaction**, an aryl diazonium salt is converted into a fluorobenzene by treatment with fluoroboric acid (HBF_4).
- An aryldiazonium salt can be treated with water to install a hydroxyl group or with hypophosphorus acid (H_3PO_2) to replace the diazo group with a hydrogen atom.
- Aryldiazonium salts react with activated aromatic rings in a process called **azo coupling** to produce colored compounds called **azo dyes**.

SECTION 22.12

- A *heterocycle* is a ring that contains atoms of more than one element.
- Pyrrole undergoes electrophilic aromatic substitution reactions, which occur primarily at C2.
- An **imidazole** ring is like pyrrole but has one extra nitrogen atom at the 3 position.
- Pyridine will undergo electrophilic aromatic substitution; however, the yields are quite low.
- **Pyrimidine** is similar in structure to pyridine but contains one extra nitrogen atom at the 3 position.

SECTION 22.13

- In their IR spectra, primary and secondary amines exhibit signals between 3350 and 3500 cm^{-1}. Primary amines give two peaks (symmetric and asymmetric stretching), while secondary amines give only one peak.
- When treated with HCl, tertiary amines can be readily detected with IR spectroscopy.
- In the ^1H NMR spectrum of an amine, any proton attached directly to the nitrogen atom will typically appear as a broad signal somewhere between 0.5 and 5.0 ppm. The protons connected to the α position typically appear between 2 and 3 ppm.
- In the ^{13}C NMR spectrum of an amine, the α carbon atoms typically appear between 30 and 50 ppm.

SKILLBUILDER REVIEW

22.1 NAMING AN AMINE

STEP 1 Identify all of the alkyl groups connected to the nitrogen atom.

STEP 2 Determine whether to name the compound as an alkyl amine or as an alkanamine:

Alkyl amine = if all alkyl groups are simple

Alkanamine = if one of the alkyl groups is complex

STEP 3 If naming as an alkanamine, choose the complex alkyl group as the parent and list the other alkyl groups as substituents (using the letter "***N***" as a locant).

STEP 4 Assign locants to each substituent, assemble the name, and assign the configuration of any chiral centers.

(*R*)-*N*-Ethyl-6-methyl-3-heptanamine

Try Problems **22.1–22.3, 22.37, 22.41, 22.42**

22.2 PREPARING A PRIMARY AMINE VIA THE GABRIEL REACTION

STEP 1 Identify an alkyl halide that can serve as a precursor for preparing the desired amine. Simply replace the amino group with a halide.

STEP 2 Draw the reagents for all three steps, starting with phthalimide as the starting material.

Try Problems **22.12, 22.13, 22.46a, 22.55, 22.56, 22.57b**

22.3 PREPARING AN AMINE VIA A REDUCTIVE AMINATION

STEP 1 Identify all C—N bonds.

STEP 2 Using a retrosynthetic analysis, identify the starting amine and the carbonyl group that could be used to make each of the C—N bonds.

STEP 3 Show all reagents necessary for each synthetic route.

Try Problems **22.14, 22.15, 22.60, 22.61, 22.74, 22.95**

22.4 PROPOSING A SYNTHESIS FOR AN AMINE

Try Problems **22.16–22.19, 22.45, 22.46, 22.90, 22.91**

22.5 PREDICTING THE PRODUCT OF A HOFMANN ELIMINATION

STEP 1 Identify all α and β positions.

STEP 2 Consider forming a C═C bond between each pair of α and β positions.

STEP 3 Compare all possible alkenes and identify which is the least substituted.

Try Problems **22.23, 22.24, 22.52, 22.64, 22.76, 22.81, 22.93**

22.6 DETERMINING THE REACTANTS FOR PREPARING AN AZO DYE

STEP 1 Analyze all substituents and determine which ring is more activated.

STEP 2 Using a retrosynthetic analysis, identify the starting nucleophile and electrophile.

STEP 3 Identify the starting aniline that is necessary in order to make the diazonium salt.

STEP 4 Show all reagents.

Try Problems **22.27, 22.28, 22.63, 22.68d, 22.72, 22.85**

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

• **Included in Answers section**

22.33 Spermine is a naturally occurring compound that contributes to the characteristic odor of semen. Classify each nitrogen atom in spermine as primary, secondary, or tertiary.

Spermine

22.34 Clomipramine is marketed under the trade name Anafranil and is used in the treatment of obsessive compulsive disorder.

Clomipramine

(a) Identify which nitrogen atom in clomipramine is more basic and justify your choice.

(b) Draw the form of clomipramine that is expected to predominate at physiological pH.

22.35 Cinchocaine is a long-acting local anesthetic used in spinal anesthesia. Identify the most basic nitrogen atom in cinchocaine and explain your choice.

Cinchocaine

22.36 For each pair of compounds, identify the stronger base and explain your choice.

(a)

(b)

22.37 Draw the structure of each of the following compounds:

(a) *N*-Ethyl-*N*-isopropylaniline (b) *N*,*N*-Dimethylcyclopropanamine

(c) (2*R*,3*S*)-3-(*N*,*N*-Dimethylamino)-2-pentanamine

(d) Benzylamine

22.38 • Consider the structure of lysergic acid diethylamide (LSD), a potent hallucinogen containing three nitrogen atoms. One of these three nitrogen atoms is significantly more basic than the other two. Identify the most basic nitrogen atom in LSD and explain your choice.

LSD

22.39 Identify the number of chiral centers in each of the following structures:

(a) (b)

22.40 Assign a name for each of the following compounds:

(a) (b) (c)

(d) (e) (f)

22.41 Draw all constitutional isomers with the molecular formula $C_4H_{11}N$ and provide a name for each isomer.

22.42 Draw all tertiary amines with the molecular formula $C_5H_{13}N$ and provide a name for each isomer. Are any of these compounds chiral?

22.43 • Each pair of compounds below will undergo an acid-base reaction. In each case, identify the acid, identify the base, draw curved arrows that show the transfer of a proton, and draw the products.

(a) (b)

22.44 Draw the structure of the major product obtained when aniline is treated with each of the following reagents:

(a) Excess Br_2 (b) $PhCH_2COCl$, py

(c) Excess methyl iodide (d) $NaNO_2$ and HCl followed by H_3PO_2

(e) $NaNO_2$ and HCl followed by CuCN

22.45 • Identify how you would make each of the following compounds from 1-hexanol:

(a) Hexylamine (b) Heptylamine (c) Pentylamine

22.46 Propose an efficient synthesis of hexylamine from each of the following compounds:

(a) 1-Bromohexane (b) 1-Bromopentane

(c) Hexanoic acid (d) 1-Cyanopentane

22.47 Tertiary amines with three different alkyl groups are chiral but cannot be resolved because pyramidal inversion causes racemization at room temperature. Nevertheless, chiral aziridines can be resolved and stored at room temperature. Aziridine is a three-membered heterocycle containing a nitrogen atom. The following is an example of a chiral aziridine. In this compound, the nitrogen atom is a chiral center. Suggest a reason why chiral aziridines do not undergo racemization at room temperature.

22.48 • Lidocaine is one of the most widely used local anesthetics. Draw the form of lidocaine that is expected to predominate at physiological pH.

Lidocaine

22.49 Propose a mechanism for the following transformation:

22.50 When aniline is treated with fuming sulfuric acid, an electrophilic aromatic substitution reaction takes place at the *meta* position instead of the *para* position, despite the fact that the amino group is an *ortho-para* director. Explain this curious result.

22.51 *para*-Nitroaniline is an order of magnitude less basic than *meta*-nitroaniline.

(a) Explain the observed difference in basicity.

(b) Would you expect the basicity of *ortho*-nitroaniline to be closer in value to *meta*-nitroaniline or to *para*-nitroaniline? Explain.

22.52 Methadone is a powerful analgesic that can be used to suppress withdrawal symptoms in the rehabilitation of someone who is addicted to heroin. Identify the major product that is obtained when methadone is subjected to a Hofmann elimination.

Methadone

22.53 In general, nitrogen atoms are more basic than oxygen atoms. However, when an amide is treated with a strong acid, such as sulfuric acid, it is the oxygen atom of the amide that is protonated, rather than the nitrogen atom. Explain this observation.

22.54 • Propose a synthesis for each of the following transformations:

(a)

(b)

22.55 Draw a mechanism for the last step of the Gabriel synthesis, performed under basic conditions.

22.56 One variation of the Gabriel synthesis employs hydrazine to free the amine in the final step of the synthesis. Draw the by-product obtained in this process.

22.57 Predict the major product for each of the following reactions:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

22.58 Fill in the missing reagents:

22.59 In this chapter, we explained why pyrrole is such a weak base, but we did not discuss the acidity of pyrrole. In fact, pyrrole has a pK_a of 16.5, which is 20 orders of magnitude more acidic than most simple amines. Draw the conjugate base of pyrrole and explain the relatively high acidity of pyrrole.

22.60 Rimantadine is an antiviral drug used to treat people infected with life-threatening influenza viruses. Identify the starting ketone that would be necessary in order to prepare rimantadine via a reductive amination.

Rimantadine

22.61 Benzphetamine is an appetite suppressant that is marketed under the trade name Didrex and used in the treatment of obesity. Identify at least two different ways to make benzphetamine via a reductive amination process.

Benzphetamine

22.62 Draw the product formed when each of the following compounds is treated with $NaNO_2$ and HCl:

(a)

(b)

22.63 Consider the structure of the azo dye called alizarine yellow R. Show the reagents you would use to prepare this compound via an azo coupling process.

Alizarine yellow R

22.64 • Draw the major product(s) that are expected when each of the following amines is treated with excess methyl iodide and then heated in the presence of aqueous Ag_2O.

(a)

(b)

22.65 • Predict the major product(s) for each of the following reactions:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

22.66 *meta*-Bromoaniline was treated with $NaNO_2$ and HCl to yield a diazonium salt. Draw the product obtained when that diazonium salt is treated with each of the following reagents:

(a) H_2O (b) HBF_4 (c) CuCN (d) H_3PO_2 (e) CuBr

22.67 The following aminoketone can undergo an intramolecular reductive amination. Draw the expected product of the given reaction:

22.68 Starting with benzene and any reagents with three or fewer carbon atoms, show how you would prepare each of the following compounds:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

22.69 Draw the structures of all isomeric amines with the molecular formula $C_6H_{15}N$ that are not expected to produce any signal above 3000 cm^{-1} in their IR spectra.

22.70 When the following compound is treated with excess methyl iodide, a quaternary ammonium salt is obtained that bears only one positive charge. Draw the structure of the quaternary ammonium salt.

22.71 Provide a plausible mechanism for the following electrophilic aromatic substitution reaction:

22.72 Draw the azo coupling product obtained when the diazonium salt formed from aniline is treated with each of the following compounds:

(a) Aniline

(b) Phenol

(c) Anisole (methoxybenzene)

ACS-STYLE PROBLEMS (Multiple Choice)

Problems 22.73–22.79 follow the style of the ACS organic chemistry exam. For each of these problems, there will be one correct answer and three distractors.

22.73 • Of the following, which is the strongest base?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

22.74 • What is the expected major product of this reaction?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

22.75 • Which reagents can be used to achieve this transformation?

(a) $\xrightarrow[\text{Heat}]{\text{HCN}}$

(b) $\xrightarrow[H_2SO_4]{HNO_3}$ $\xrightarrow[\text{2) NaOH}]{\text{1) Fe, } H_3O^+}$ $\xrightarrow[\text{HCl}]{NaNO_2}$ $\xrightarrow{\text{CuCN}}$

(c) $\xrightarrow[AlCl_3]{\text{acetyl chloride}}$ $\xrightarrow[NaBH_3CN]{\text{Catalytic } H_2SO_4,}$

(d) $\xrightarrow[AlBr_3]{Br_2}$ $\xrightarrow{\text{CuCN}}$

22.76 • Predict the major product of the following reaction sequence.

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

22.77 • Predict the major product of the following reaction sequence.

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

22.78 • Identify the synthesis that will achieve the following transformation.

(a) $\xrightarrow[H_2SO_4]{HNO_3}$ $\xrightarrow[\text{2) NaOH}]{\text{1) Fe, } H_3O^+}$ $\xrightarrow[FeBr_3]{Br_2}$ $\xrightarrow[\text{HCl}]{NaNO_2}$ $\xrightarrow{\text{CuCl}}$

(b) $\xrightarrow[H_2SO_4]{HNO_3}$ $\xrightarrow[FeBr_3]{Br_2}$ $\xrightarrow{\text{CuCl}}$

(c) $\xrightarrow[H_2SO_4]{HNO_3}$ $\xrightarrow[FeBr_3]{Br_2}$ $\xrightarrow[\text{2) NaOH}]{\text{1) Fe, } H_3O^+}$ $\xrightarrow[\text{HCl}]{NaNO_2}$ $\xrightarrow{\text{CuCl}}$

(d) $\xrightarrow[AlCl_3]{Cl_2}$ $\xrightarrow[FeBr_3]{Br_2}$

22.79 • Identify the synthesis that will achieve the following transformation.

(a) $\xrightarrow{\text{NaCN}}$ $\xrightarrow[\text{2) } H_2O]{\text{1) xs LiAlH}_4}$

(b)

$\xrightarrow[H_2O]{\text{NaOH}}$

(c) $\xrightarrow{\text{Mg}}$ $\xrightarrow{NH_3}$

(d) $\xrightarrow{\text{Mg}}$ $\xrightarrow{NH_2OH}$

INTEGRATED PROBLEMS

22.80 • A compound with the molecular formula $C_5H_{13}N$ exhibits three signals in its proton NMR spectrum and no signals above 3000 cm^{-1} in its IR spectrum. Draw two possible structures for this compound.

22.81 Coniine has the molecular formula $C_8H_{17}N$ and was present in the hemlock extract used to execute the Greek philosopher Socrates. Subjecting coniine to a Hofmann elimination produces (*S*)-*N*,*N*-dimethyloct-7-en-4-amine. Coniine exhibits one peak above 3000 cm^{-1} in its IR spectrum. Draw the structure of coniine.

22.82 Piperazine is an antihelminthic agent (a drug used in the treatment of intestinal worms) that has the molecular formula $C_4H_{10}N_2$. The proton NMR spectrum of piperazine exhibits two signals. When dissolved in D_2O, one of these signals vanishes. Propose a structure for piperazine.

22.83 Primary or secondary amines will attack epoxides in a ring-opening process:

For substituted epoxides, nucleophilic attack generally takes place at the less sterically hindered side of the epoxide. Using this type of reaction, show how you might prepare the following compound from benzene, ammonia, and any other reagents of your choice.

22.84 Phenacetin was widely used as an analgesic before it was removed from the market in 1983 on suspicion of being a carcinogen (something that causes cancer). It was widely replaced with acetaminophen, the active ingredient in Tylenol, which is very similar in structure but is not carcinogenic. Starting with benzene and using any other reagents of your choice, outline a synthesis of phenacetin.

Phenacetin

22.85 Starting with benzene and isopropyl chloride, show how you would prepare the following compound:

22.86 Propose a mechanism for the following process:

22.87 Draw the structure of the compound with the molecular formula $C_6H_{15}N$ that exhibits the following ^{1}H NMR and ^{13}C NMR spectra:

22.88 Draw the structure of the compound with the molecular formula $C_8H_{11}N$ that exhibits the following ^{1}H NMR and ^{13}C NMR spectra:

22.89 Using benzene as your only source of carbon atoms and ammonia as your only source of nitrogen atoms, propose an efficient synthesis for the following compound:

22.90 Propose an efficient synthesis for the following transformation:

22.91 Show the reagents you would use to achieve the following transformation:

22.92 Propose a synthesis for the following transformation (be sure to count the carbon atoms):

22.93 Compound **A** is an amine that does not possess a chiral center. Compound **A** was treated with excess methyl iodide and then heated in the presence of aqueous $AgNO_3$ to produce an alkene. The alkene was further subjected to ozonolysis to produce butanal and pentanal. Draw the structure of compound **A**.

22.94 When 3-methyl-3-phenyl-1-butanamine is treated with $NaNO_2$ and HCl, a mixture of products is obtained. The following compound was found to be present in the reaction mixture. Account for its formation with a complete mechanism (make sure to show formation of a nitrosonium ion).

22.95 Propose an efficient synthesis for the following transformation:

22.96 Guanidine lacks a negative charge but is an extremely powerful base. In fact, it is almost as strong a base as a hydroxide ion. Identify which nitrogen atom in guanidine is the most basic and explain why guanidine is a much stronger base than alkyl amines.

Guanidine

22.97 In the first asymmetric synthesis of (−)-(*S*,*S*)-homaline, an alkaloid isolated in the early 1970s, a key intermediate was compound **2**.[5] Provide reagents for converting compound **1** into compound **2**.

1 **2**

22.98 Nicotine is well known for its addictive characteristic in cigarettes. Interestingly, it has also been suggested to have potential therapeutic potential in central nervous system disorders such as Alzheimer's disease, Parkinson's disease, and depression. However, due to the toxicity of nicotine, structurally related compounds are being developed, such as compound **2**, which shows much lower toxicity and exhibits analgesic

(pain-inhibiting) properties.[6] Suggest an efficient synthesis of compound **2** from compound **1**.

22.99 The formal synthesis of quinine in 1944 by Woodward and Doering was a landmark achievement.[7] During their synthesis, the following compound was treated with excess methyl iodide, followed by an aqueous solution of NaOH. Under these conditions, the initial Hofmann elimination product undergoes two successive hydrolysis reactions to afford a product with the molecular formula $C_{10}H_{17}NO_2$ (after being neutralized during workup). Identify the structure of the neutral product.

CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

22.100 Piperazinone derivatives, such as compound **4**, are being investigated for their potential use in the treatment of migraines as well as a variety of other diseases, including hypertension and sepsis. The following two-step synthetic procedure was developed as a general method for producing a variety of piperazinone derivatives.[8] Compound **1** is a readily available starting material that can be converted to compound **2** via an S_N2 process. Reductive amination of compound **2** affords compound **3**, which is short-lived and rapidly undergoes acid-catalyzed amide formation to the cyclic product **4**.

(a) Draw the structure of **3** and explain why it is produced as a diastereomeric mixture.

(b) Draw the structure of **4** and determine whether it will be produced as a mixture of diastereomers. Explain your reasoning.

22.101 Enaminoesters (also called vinylogous carbamates), such as compound **4** below, can serve as building blocks in the synthesis of nitrogen heterocycles. Compound **4** was prepared from compound **1** in a one-pot method (the entire transformation took place in one reaction vessel).[9] Compound **1** was first converted to compound **2**, but in the presence of methyl acetoacetate, compound **2** was further converted into imine **3**, even without the introduction of an acid catalyst. Upon its formation, compound **3** then tautomerized to give enamine **4**.

(a) Draw the structures of **2** and **3**.

(b) Imine-enamine tautomerization is very similar to keto-enol tautomerization. Draw an acid-catalyzed mechanism (using H_3O^+) for the conversion of **3** to **4**.

(c) The equilibrium for imine-enamine tautomerization generally favors the imine, but in this case, the enamine is favored. Give at least two reasons why the equilibrium favors enamine **4** over imine **3**.

22.102 The following reaction was attempted during the total synthesis of crispine A, a cytotoxic alkaloid isolated from a Mongolian thistle.[10] Propose a plausible mechanism for the formation of compound **2** from amine **1**.

22.103 Propose a plausible mechanism for the following transformation and justify the stereochemical outcome:[11]

LIST OF REFERENCES

1. *J. Chromatogr. A* **2012**, *1255*, 202–206.
2. *Photochem. Photobiol.* **1997**, *66*, 424–431.
3. *Org. Process Res. Dev.* **2015**, *19*, 1568–1575.
4. *Cell* **2015**, *162*, 403–411.
5. *Tetrahedron Lett.* **2012**, *53*, 1119–1121.
6. *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.* **2006**, *16*, 2013–2016.
7. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1945**, *67*, 860–874.
8. *Tetrahedron Lett.* **2009**, *50*, 3817–3819.
9. *Tetrahedron Lett.* **2005**, *46*, 979–982.
10. *J. Org. Chem.* **2011**, *76*, 1605–1613.
11. *J. Org. Chem.* **1999**, *64*, 4617–4626.

23

23.1 General Properties of Organometallic Compounds
23.2 Organolithium and Organomagnesium Compounds
23.3 Lithium Dialkyl Cuprates (Gilman Reagents)
23.4 The Simmons–Smith Reaction and Carbenoids
23.5 Stille Coupling
23.6 Suzuki Coupling
23.7 Negishi Coupling
23.8 The Heck Reaction
23.9 Alkene Metathesis

Top (*Valve and tip of burette*) Andrew McClenaghan/Science Source

Introduction to Organometallic Compounds

DID YOU EVER **WONDER...**

how long it takes organic chemists to synthesize new drugs?

Common sense dictates that it should depend on the complexity of the desired structure (a true assertion), although popular TV might have you believe that even complex structures can be made overnight. This is simply not true! Organic synthesis takes time, often a lot of time. Why? Each step of the synthesis requires detailed planning, assembling the glassware apparatus, running the reaction, isolating the desired product from the product mixture, purifying the product, and then confirming its structure via spectroscopic techniques, such as NMR and IR. A synthetic chemist must first complete all of these activities successfully before moving on to the next step of the synthesis. As a result, each step of the synthesis can take days—and that's in a best-case scenario, where everything works according to plan. Often, a planned step will fail, requiring the chemist to devise a way to circumvent the problematic step. This process can take weeks, months, or even years. In a multistep synthesis (with dozens of planned steps), the entire synthesis can often span years, if not decades.

The boundaries of organic chemistry are constantly evolving; the nonstop emergence and discovery of new reactions, methods, and techniques have enabled chemists to prepare increasingly complex structures in ever shorter time frames. In this chapter, we will explore a group of reactions, all discovered in recent decades, that have allowed for the construction of relatively sophisticated structures in relatively few steps.

Many of these reactions employ special catalysts that belong to a class of compounds, called *organometallic compounds*. This chapter is therefore arranged to serve as a brief survey of organometallic compounds and their unique chemistry.

Prostock-Studio/Getty Images

DO YOU **REMEMBER?**

Before you go on, be sure you understand the following topics.
If necessary, review the suggested sections to prepare for this chapter:

- Induction and Polar Covalent Bonds (Section 1.5)
- Stereoisomerism in Alkenes – *E* and *Z* Stereoisomers (Section 5.11)
- Preparation of Alcohols via Grignard Reagents (Section 12.6)
- Carbon Nucleophiles (Section 19.10)

Take the DO YOU **REMEMBER?** QUIZ in the **online course** to check your understanding.

23.1 General Properties of Organometallic Compounds

Compounds containing a bond between a carbon atom and a metal (C—M) are called **organometallic compounds**, and we have already encountered many such compounds in previous chapters, including the following:

An organolithium compound (RLi) | An organomagnesium compound (RMgX) | An organocopper compound (R_2CuLi)

In each case, the highlighted carbon atom is more electronegative than the metal to which it is attached, and as a result, each of the highlighted carbon atoms is electron rich. This can be visualized if we compare electrostatic potential maps for methyl chloride and methyllithium:

The carbon atom is electron-deficient | The carbon atom is electron-rich

In methyl chloride, the chlorine atom withdraws electron density away from the carbon atom via induction, rendering the carbon atom electron-deficient (δ+). In contrast, the carbon atom in methyllithium is electron-rich (δ−), because the inductive effect occurs in the opposite direction (carbon withdraws electron density from the metal). Indeed, methyllithium is both a very strong base and a very strong nucleophile. This property makes organometallic reagents particularly useful in synthesis as a source of nucleophilic carbon.

For any C—M bond, the magnitude of the partial charge (δ−) on the carbon atom is dependent on the identity of the metal. Consider the electronegativity values of elements that we will encounter in this chapter:

Increasing electronegativity →

Li	Mg	Zn	Mo	Cu	B	Ru	Pd	C
1.0	1.2	1.6	1.8	1.9	2.0	2.2	2.2	2.5
							Pt	
							2.2	

The difference in electronegativity between C (2.5) and Mg (1.2) is much greater than the difference in electronegativity between C (2.5) and Cu (1.9), for example. As such, organomagnesium compounds (RMgX) are much stronger nucleophiles and much stronger bases than organocopper reagents (R_2CuLi). Indeed, in Chapter 20, we encountered a difference in the reactivity of these reagents. Recall that acid halides react with two equivalents of an organomagnesium (Grignard) reagent, but acid halides react with only one equivalent of an organocopper reagent (giving a ketone):

We have encountered yet another difference in reactivity between these reagents. In Section 21.6, we saw that organocopper reagents are effective Michael donors, while organomagnesium reagents are not. For example, the following transformation (a Michael reaction) cannot be efficiently achieved with an organomagnesium reagent (see Section 21.6):

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

23.1 Identify which of the following reagents is expected to be a stronger nucleophile and explain your choice:

The use of transition metals (as described in the upcoming sections of this chapter) has revolutionized the field of synthetic organic chemistry, and the number of advancements in this field has grown exponentially in recent decades. One chapter is surely insufficient to cover the enormous field of organometallic chemistry, so this chapter is meant to serve only as an introduction.

23.2 Organolithium and Organomagnesium Compounds

The Ionic Nature of RLi and RMgX

LOOKING BACK
Recall from Section 1.5 that a C—Li bond can be drawn either as polar covalent or as ionic (both drawings are acceptable). The same is true of a C—Mg bond; it can be drawn either as polar covalent or as ionic, as shown here.

Both organolithium (RLi) and organomagnesium (RMgX) compounds exhibit a C—M bond with a high degree of ionic character. As such, organolithium and organomagnesium compounds behave very much like carbanions:

Carbanions are strong bases and strong nucleophiles. In fact, RLi and RMgX are among the strongest bases and strongest nucleophiles. Victor Grignard was awarded the 1912 Nobel Prize in Chemistry for his pioneering work on the preparation and use of organomagnesium compounds, now commonly called Grignard reagents. Since the reactivity of Grignard reagents is similar to the reactivity of organolithium reagents (RLi), we will cover both in the same section, beginning with their preparation.

Preparation of RLi

Organolithium reagents can be prepared by treating an organohalide (RX) with two equivalents of Li:

$$R{-}X \xrightarrow{\text{Li (2 eq.)}} R{-}Li + LiX$$

The R group of the organohalide can be alkyl, aryl, or vinyl, as seen in the following examples:

In each case, the transformation is believed to occur via radical intermediates, and a detailed mechanism is beyond the scope of our current discussion. A nonpolar solvent, such as hexane or diethyl ether, is typically used.

Preparation of RMgX

Grignard reagents can be prepared by treating an organohalide (RX) with Mg in an ether solvent, such as diethyl ether, which results in the insertion of magnesium into the C—X bond:

$$R{-}X \xrightarrow[Et_2O]{Mg} R{-}Mg{-}X$$

Much as we saw in the formation of organolithium compounds, the formation of organomagnesium compounds is also believed to occur via radical intermediates. The R group can be an alkyl, aryl, or vinyl group, as seen in the following examples:

Iodides are the most reactive (I > Br > Cl), although bromides are used more commonly, because bromides are less expensive and less toxic than iodides (and bromides get the job done!).

The preparation of a Grignard reagent requires the use of a solvent, such as diethyl ether, that can function as a Lewis base and stabilize the Grignard reagent as it is formed:

For less reactive halides, such as vinyl chlorides, tetrahydrofuran (THF) can be used in place of diethyl ether. THF has a higher boiling point, so the process can be performed at a higher temperature:

The solvent, whether it is diethyl ether or THF, must be anhydrous (free of water). That is, care must be taken to remove even the trace amounts of water that are normally dissolved in ether, because the presence of even trace amounts of water will consume the Grignard reagent upon its formation. Similarly, the preparation of organolithium reagents must also be performed with anhydrous solvents, for the same reason. The reaction between Grignard reagents (or organolithium reagents) and water is shown below.

RLi and RMgX Are Strong Bases

Grignard reagents (RMgX) and organolithium reagents (RLi) are both very strong bases, and each of them reacts rapidly with water to give a hydrocarbon (R—H), as shown:

Note the enormous difference in pK_a values between water (15.7) and the hydrocarbon (~50), rendering the process irreversible. A similar irreversible reaction occurs when RMgX or RLi is treated with D_2O. This reaction can be used to install a deuterium atom into a compound, in a process called *deuteration*:

Grignard reagents (and organolithium reagents) will not only react with H_2O and D_2O, but they will also react with any functional group that exhibits a weakly acidic proton (OH, NH, SH, C≡CH, or COOH). Therefore, none of these functional groups can be present in the starting RX. For example, a Grignard reagent cannot be prepared if an OH group is present in the compound:

Cannot form this Grignard reagent

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

23.2 Draw the structures of compounds **A–E** in the following reaction scheme:

23.3 Draw a mechanism for the conversion of compound **C** to compound **E** in the previous problem.

RLi and RMgX Are Strong Nucleophiles

In previous chapters, we have encountered the use of Grignard reagents in many different reactions, which are summarized in Table 23.1. Organolithium reagents behave very much like Grignard reagents and will also undergo similar reactions.

TABLE 23.1 PREVIOUSLY SEEN REACTIONS INVOLVING GRIGNARD REAGENTS

REACTION	SECTION
Reaction with ketones and aldehydes	12.6, 20.10
Reaction with epoxides	13.10
Reaction with CO_2	20.4
Reaction with esters	20.11
Reaction with nitriles	20.13

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

23.4 Draw the structures of compounds **A–E** in the following reaction scheme:

23.5 Draw the structures of compounds **A–C** in the following reaction scheme:

23.6 Draw the structure of the product that is expected when the following lactone (cyclic ester) is treated with two equivalents of MeMgBr followed by aqueous acidic workup:

23.3 Lithium Dialkyl Cuprates (Gilman Reagents)

Preparation of Gilman Reagents

Lithium dialkyl cuprates (R_2CuLi) were previously encountered as carbon nucleophiles (Chapters 20 and 21). Specifically, we saw that these nucleophiles react with certain carbon electrophiles in a selective manner, as summarized in Table 23.2.

TABLE 23.2 PREVIOUSLY SEEN REACTIONS INVOLVING LITHIUM DIALKYL CUPRATES

REACTION	CHAPTER	SELECTIVITY
	Section 20.8	An acid halide is converted into a ketone upon treatment with a lithium dialkyl cuprate. In contrast, treating an acid halide with a Grignard reagent initially gives a ketone that cannot survive under the conditions of its formation; the ketone is further attacked by a Grignard reagent, giving an alcohol.
	Section 21.6	If a Grignard reagent had been used, it would have attacked the α,β-unsaturated ketone predominantly via 1,2-addition (attacking the carbonyl group). In contrast, lithium dialkyl cuprates are more selective and will attack the β position exclusively, in a 1,4-addition.

Lithium dialkyl cuprates are often called Gilman reagents, in tribute to Henry Gilman (Iowa State University), who first prepared and studied them. These reagents can be prepared by treating an organohalide with lithium to give an organolithium, followed by treatment of the organolithium with CuX:

The **R** group can be alkyl, aryl, or vinyl, as seen in the following examples:

Gilman reagents are nucleophiles, and as such, they will attack a variety of electrophiles. Of notable importance is the reaction that occurs when a Gilman reagent reacts with an organohalide, as we will now explore.

Reaction with RX (Coupling)

Gilman reagents (R_2CuLi) react with organohalides (**R′**X) to give a product in which the **R** and **R′** groups have been coupled together:

This *coupling* reaction, called the Corey–Posner/Whitesides–House reaction, can be performed in diethyl ether or THF (as solvent) at low temperature (due to the thermal instability of Gilman reagents). The halogen can be I, Br, or Cl, with iodides being the most reactive and chlorides being

the least reactive (I > Br > Cl). The **R′** group of the organohalide (**R′**X) can be methyl, primary, vinyl, or aryl, as seen in the following general examples:

R′X cannot be a tertiary alkyl halide, as elimination products predominate. Even secondary alkyl halides are generally ineffective, also because of competing elimination reactions. Nevertheless, some secondary alkyl halides, such as cyclic halides, are observed to couple effectively with Gilman reagents:

In each of the general reactions shown above, **R** (of $\mathbf{R}_2$CuLi) can be alkyl, aryl, or vinyl, giving rise to a wide variety of bonds that can be made with this process. During the process, only one of the two **R** groups (from $\mathbf{R}_2$CuLi) is coupled to **R′** of the organohalide (**R′**X).

The coupling process is stereospecific because it is observed to proceed with retention of configuration at each of the C═C units (in the Gilman reagent and in the organohalide), as seen in the following example:

The mechanism of this process is not well understood and is likely dependent on the identity of **R′** as well as the reaction conditions. The coupling process can occur in the presence of a variety of functional groups, including keto, ester, or amide groups. For example, consider the following transformation, in which the presence of the ester group does not interfere with the reaction:

Retrosynthesis

From a retrosynthetic perspective, coupling allows us to make **R—R′** from two organohalides, **R**X and **R′**X, highlighted in the following retrosynthetic scheme:

The forward reaction sequence can be shown in the following way:

When **R** ≠ **R′**, the process is called a *cross-coupling* reaction. After these coupling reactions were first discovered, Gilman reagents were commonly used by chemists in the synthesis of a wide range of target compounds. But in the past few decades, more versatile reagents have been developed for achieving coupling reactions, as will be discussed in Sections 23.5–23.8.

SKILLBUILDER

23.1 IDENTIFYING THE PARTNERS FOR A COREY–POSNER/WHITESIDES–HOUSE COUPLING REACTION

LEARN the skill

Show how you would prepare 1-butylcyclopentene from 1-bromobutane and any other organohalide of your choice:

SOLUTION

In order to determine which bond (in the product) will be made via a coupling process, we compare the structure of the product (1-butylcyclopentene) and the structure of the given starting material (1-bromobutane):

STEP 1
Analyze the structure of the product and determine which bond must be made via a coupling process.

Note that the desired product contains a butyl group, so this butyl group must come from 1-bromobutane. Therefore, we draw a wavy line in between the ring and the butyl group to indicate the bond that must be made via coupling.

Once we have identified which bond will be made via coupling, we can draw the two organohalides that are necessary for the coupling process. One of the organohalides has already been identified in the problem statement (1-bromobutane). The other organohalide (of our choice) must be a vinyl halide, so we draw an iodide (because iodides are more reactive than bromides or chlorides):

STEP 2
Identify the two organohalides that are necessary.

Now that we have identified the two starting organohalides, one of them must be converted into a Gilman reagent and then treated with the other. This leads to two possible synthetic routes, both of which are viable. In the first possibility, the vinyl iodide is converted into a Gilman reagent and then treated with 1-bromobutane, as shown:

STEP 3
Draw the forward scheme, showing both possible synthetic routes (either organohalide can be converted into a Gilman reagent).

Route 1

In the second possibility, 1-bromobutane is converted into a Gilman reagent and then treated with the vinyl iodide, as shown:

Route 2

PRACTICE the skill

23.7 For each of the following cases, show how you would make the desired product from the organohalide shown and any other organohalide (RX) of your choice:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

23.8 Using any two organohalides of your choice (where each organohalide can have no more than six carbon atoms), show how you would prepare each of the following compounds:

(a)

(b)

(c)

APPLY the skill

23.9 Using styrene as your only source of carbon atoms, show how you would prepare 1,4-diphenylbutane:

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 23.40a, 23.43, 23.47, 23.62**

23.4 The Simmons–Smith Reaction and Carbenoids

Compounds with a C—Zn bond are called organozinc compounds, and they can be prepared in much the same way that Grignard reagents are prepared. Specifically, an alkyl halide is treated with the metal (Zn in this case), which inserts itself into the C—X bond:

$$R{-}X \xrightarrow[Et_2O]{Zn} R{-}Zn{-}X$$

An ether, such as diethyl ether (Et_2O), is used to stabilize the resulting organozinc compound. Carbon is more electronegative than zinc, so induction gives the carbon atom a partial negative charge ($\delta-$). This was also the case with Grignard reagents, although Grignard reagents have much greater ionic character than organozinc reagents. A C—Zn bond should be viewed as polar covalent rather than ionic.

One very useful organozinc reagent, called (iodomethyl)zinc iodide (ICH_2ZnI), was developed in 1959 by Howard E. Simmons and Ronald D. Smith, working for DuPont. This reagent can be prepared by treating diiodomethane (CH_2I_2) with a zinc copper couple (Zn–Cu), which is formed by treating zinc dust with CuCl or $CuSO_4$:

(Iodomethyl)zinc iodide

The structure of ICH_2ZnI is actually more complex than shown and is beyond the scope of our current discussion. Simmons and Smith demonstrated that alkenes react with ICH_2ZnI to form a three-membered ring. This process is called *cyclopropanation*:

Notice that one methylene (CH_2) group is added across the π bond, thereby converting the alkene into a cyclopropane derivative. The following are several examples of Simmons–Smith cyclopropanation:

The cyclopropanation process is observed to be stereospecific, with the configuration of the alkene being preserved in the cyclopropane product, as seen in the following examples:

In all of the previous examples, ICH_2ZnI functions as a source of a methylene (CH_2) group. In this way, the reactivity of ICH_2ZnI resembles the reactivity of carbenes, which can also be used to achieve cyclopropanation. Carbenes are generally short-lived intermediates in which a carbon atom has two bonds and two unshared electrons:

A carbene

This carbon atom lacks an octet of electrons, accounting for the electrophilicity of carbene intermediates. One useful carbene, called dichlorocarbene, can be prepared by treating chloroform ($CHCl_3$) with a strong base, such as potassium *tert*-butoxide. Under these conditions, deprotonation is followed by loss of a leaving group, giving dichlorocarbene:

This process is called α-elimination (as opposed to β-elimination, seen in Chapter 7), because the proton and the leaving group are removed from the same carbon atom, rather than from adjacent carbon atoms. When dichlorocarbene is prepared in the presence of an alkene, the carbene reacts with the alkene to give a cyclopropane ring, as shown:

Notice that the carbene intermediate functions both as a nucleophile (it has a lone pair) and as an electrophile (it lacks an octet of electrons). This ring-forming process, called cyclopropanation, is

observed to be stereospecific, with the configuration of the alkene being preserved in the cyclopropane product, as seen in the following examples:

Direct cyclopropanation of alkenes (without the chlorine atoms present) is more difficult to achieve with carbenes, but it can be achieved readily with the procedure developed by Simmons and Smith. That is, the Simmons–Smith reaction resembles the reactions between carbenes and alkenes, although a different mechanism operates. As seen in Mechanism 23.1, free carbenes are not involved under Simmons–Smith conditions.

MECHANISM 23.1 SIMMONS–SMITH CYCLOPROPANATION

The reaction is believed to occur in a concerted manner, thus explaining why the configuration of the starting alkene is preserved throughout the process. The Simmons–Smith procedure can be used to achieve cyclopropanation in good yields, while avoiding the formation of undesired by-products that often accompany reactions involving reactive carbene intermediates. Since the action of ICH_2ZnI resembles the action of carbenes, it is commonly referred to as a *carbenoid* reagent.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

23.10 Draw the product that is expected when each of the following alkenes is treated with CH_2I_2 and Zn–Cu:

23.11 When treated with molecular hydrogen (H_2) in the presence of PtO_2, cyclopropanes readily undergo carbon-carbon bond cleavage as a means to relieve ring strain, in a process known as *hydrogenolysis*:

This hydrogenolysis procedure was successfully employed during the total synthesis of spongian-16-one, a unique sponge metabolite that exhibits potential anticancer properties.[1] Show how compound **1** can be converted into spongian-16-one:

1 **Spongian-16-one**

23.5 Stille Coupling

Introduction to Palladium Compounds

In the periodic table shown in Figure 23.1, the orange region represents *transition metal elements*, which are characterized by partly filled *d* (or *f*) orbitals.

Transition metal elements can react with molecules or ions, giving rise to complexes that exhibit useful properties and behavior. A very large number of transition metal complexes have been developed for use as catalysts in performing synthetic transformations that would otherwise be difficult or even impossible to achieve. Over the past several decades, the advent of these incredibly useful catalysts has transformed the field of synthetic organic chemistry. Indeed, as we will soon see, several Nobel prizes in chemistry have been awarded for the development of synthetic techniques that employ transition metal catalysts. In particular, palladium (Pd) catalysts have been among the most important catalysts available to practicing synthetic organic chemists, and as such, most of the remainder of this chapter will focus on the chemistry of palladium catalysts.

As is characteristic of transition metals, Pd reacts with a variety of molecules or ions, called *ligands*, to give transition metal complexes. For example, in the reaction below, the first structure has two ligands, while the second structure has four ligands:

The second structure illustrates the accepted convention to omit formal charges on the metal and on the ligands (for example, each of the phosphorus atoms has a positive formal charge that is not indicated). Ligands donate electron density to vacant orbitals, giving rise to bonds (Pd—L) that are generally polar covalent. These ligands are weakly associated with the palladium center (they are labile). As a result, the number of ligands that are bonded to palladium can change, depending

FIGURE 23.1
A periodic table of the elements, in which the tan region represents transition metals.

PERIODIC TABLE OF THE ELEMENTS

Atomic number : 6
Symbol : C
Name (IUPAC) : Carbon
Atomic mass : 12.011

IUPAC recommendations:
Chemical Abstracts Service group notation :

1 IA	2 IIA	3 IIIB	4 IVB	5 VB	6 VIB	7 VIIB	8 VIIIB	9 VIIIB	10 VIIIB	11 IB	12 IIB	13 IIIA	14 IVA	15 VA	16 VIA	17 VIIA	18 VIIIA
1 H Hydrogen 1.0078																	2 He Helium 4.0026
3 Li Lithium 6.941	4 Be Beryllium 9.0122											5 B Boron 10.811	6 C Carbon 12.011	7 N Nitrogen 14.007	8 O Oxygen 15.999	9 F Fluorine 18.998	10 Ne Neon 20.180
11 Na Sodium 22.990	12 Mg Magnesium 24.305											13 Al Aluminum 26.982	14 Si Silicon 28.086	15 P Phosphorus 30.974	16 S Sulfur 32.065	17 Cl Chlorine 35.453	18 Ar Argon 39.948
19 K Potassium 39.098	20 Ca Calcium 40.078	21 Sc Scandium 44.956	22 Ti Titanium 47.867	23 V Vanadium 50.942	24 Cr Chromium 51.996	25 Mn Manganese 54.938	26 Fe Iron 55.845	27 Co Cobalt 58.933	28 Ni Nickel 58.693	29 Cu Copper 63.546	30 Zn Zinc 65.409	31 Ga Gallium 69.723	32 Ge Germanium 72.64	33 As Arsenic 74.922	34 Se Selenium 78.96	35 Br Bromine 79.904	36 Kr Krypton 83.798
37 Rb Rubidium 85.468	38 Sr Strontium 87.62	39 Y Yttrium 88.906	40 Zr Zirconium 91.224	41 Nb Niobium 92.906	42 Mo Molybdenum 95.94	43 Tc Technetium (98)	44 Ru Ruthenium 101.07	45 Rh Rhodium 102.91	46 Pd Palladium 106.42	47 Ag Silver 107.87	48 Cd Cadmium 112.41	49 In Indium 114.82	50 Sn Tin 118.71	51 Sb Antimony 121.76	52 Te Tellurium 127.60	53 I Iodine 126.90	54 Xe Xeno 131.29
55 Cs Caesium 132.91	56 Ba Barium 137.33	57 *La Lanthanum 138.91	72 Hf Hafnium 178.49	73 Ta Tantalum 180.95	74 W Tungsten 183.84	75 Re Rhenium 186.21	76 Os Osmium 190.23	77 Ir Iridium 192.22	78 Pt Platinum 195.08	79 Au Gold 196.97	80 Hg Mercury 200.59	81 Tl Thallium 204.38	82 Pb Lead 207.2	83 Bi Bismuth 208.98	84 Po Polonium (209)	85 At Astatine (210)	86 Rn Radon (222)

on the conditions, although transition metals are most stable when they achieve the electronic configuration of a noble gas. We have seen similar behavior with second-row elements, although second-row elements can only accommodate 8 valence electrons (the valence shell has only one *s* orbital and three *p* orbitals, each of which can accommodate 2 electrons). In contrast, the valence shell of transition metal elements can accommodate 18 electrons (the valence shell has one *s* orbital, three *p* orbitals, and five *d* orbitals). Thus, the *18-electron rule* for transition metals parallels the octet rule for second-row elements.

A transition metal is said to be *coordinatively saturated* if it has 18 electrons. For example, $Pd(PPh_3)_4$ features a palladium atom that is coordinatively saturated because palladium has 10 valence electrons (when the oxidation state is 0, as it is in this case), and each of the ligands provides 2 electrons, for a total of 18 electrons.

Coordinatively saturated (18 e⁻)

Complexes in which the palladium atom has *fewer* than 18 electrons are said to be *coordinatively unsaturated*, and such complexes will often function as reactive intermediates in the reactions that we will soon encounter. Throughout the remainder of this chapter, we will see many useful synthetic transformations that utilize Pd complexes as catalysts.

Stille Coupling

Stille coupling, pioneered by John Stille at Colorado State University, has emerged as a powerful and versatile transformation used frequently by practicing synthetic organic chemists. Stille coupling, which occurs in the presence of a suitable palladium catalyst, is the reaction between an organostannane (a compound with a C—Sn bond, also called an organotin compound) and an organic electrophile to form a new C—C σ bond:

This coupling reaction between R and R′ can be achieved with a catalyst such as $Pd(PPh_3)_4$, in which the palladium atom has an oxidation state of 0. Alternatively, Pd(II) complexes can be used (where the oxidation state of Pd is +2), such as $Pd(OAc)_2$ or $PdCl_2(PPh_3)_2$. When a Pd(II) complex is used, it is converted into a Pd(0) complex, which is believed to function as the active catalyst.

In the Stille coupling process, each of the coupling partners (R and R′) can be aryl or vinyl groups, and X can be a halogen (Cl, Br, or I) or a triflate (OTf).

LOOKING BACK
Triflate (OTf) groups were first introduced in Section 7.10.

When both partners are aryl groups, the product is a substituted biaryl system, as seen in the following example:

In this way, Stille coupling provides a convenient method for joining two aromatic systems into biaryl structures (a common structural feature in many pharmaceutical agents).

When one coupling partner is aryl and the other coupling partner is vinyl, the product is a styrene derivative, as seen in the following example:

If both coupling partners are vinyl, then the product will have a conjugated diene group, as seen in the following example:

As such, Stille coupling is a useful way to prepare conjugated dienes, and the process is observed to be stereospecific. That is, the process generally proceeds with retention of configuration at each of the C═C units, as seen in the following example:

Notice that in all of the previous examples of Stille coupling, the new σ bond is formed between two sp^2-hybridized centers, enabling the assembly of the following types of bonds:

Stille coupling can be extended to include formation of a σ bond between sp^3- and sp^2-hybridized centers when an allylic or benzylic stannane is used, as seen in the following examples:

These reactions further extend the utility of the Stille coupling process. Indeed, the Stille coupling process has been extended in many other ways, providing great versatility to organic chemists, and a full treatment is beyond the scope of our discussion.

Preparation and Stability of Organostannanes

Many organostannanes are commercially available, and they can be stored for periods of time, as they are not sensitive to oxygen or moisture. They can also be readily prepared from Grignard reagents, upon treatment with tributyltin chloride (Bu_3SnCl), as shown:

$$R{-}X \xrightarrow[Et_2O]{Mg} RMgX \xrightarrow{Bu_3SnCl} R{-}SnBu_3$$

Organostannanes are so useful because they are extremely selective in their reactivity. In the presence of a palladium catalyst, they react with aryl and vinyl halides or triflates, even when other functional groups are present, including carboxylic acids, amides, esters, nitro groups, ethers, amines, hydroxyl

groups, ketones, and aldehydes. Therefore, the process can be performed even when each of the coupling partners bears other functional groups, as seen in following example:

A Mechanism for Stille Coupling

The detailed mechanism of Stille coupling is still debated, but it is accepted to be comprised of three stages: oxidative addition, transmetallation, and reductive elimination. We will now briefly explore each of these stages:

1. ***Oxidative Addition*** The electrophile (R′X) reacts with an active palladium complex giving a new complex in which both R′ and X are each bonded directly to palladium:

During this addition process, the oxidation state of the palladium atom increases, and the process is therefore called an oxidative addition. The ligands (L) are not identified, because their identity (and, indeed, even the number of ligands) can change during the process. So the convention is to show only the crucial reacting groups.

2. ***Transmetallation*** The R group of the organostannane is transferred to the palladium complex and takes the place of the X group:

The term "transmetallation" indicates that the R group was transferred from one metal (Sn) to another (Pd). This step is generally the rate-determining step of the overall coupling process, and the rate of transmetallation is dependent on the identity of the R group. The following relative rates have been observed:

$$\text{vinyl} > \text{aryl} > \text{allyl} \sim \text{benzyl} >>>> \text{alkyl}$$

Vinyl groups migrate most rapidly, while alkyl groups migrate most slowly. Indeed, the low rate of migration of alkyl groups is exploited during Stille coupling, which typically employs organostannanes with three alkyl groups (either three butyl groups or three methyl groups):

A vinyl, aryl, allyl, or benzyl R group will migrate much more rapidly than the other three alkyl groups (Bu or Me), enabling the selective migration of the R group during the transmetallation step.

3. ***Reductive Elimination*** Both R and R′ are released from the palladium complex, with formation of a new σ bond between the coupling partners:

During this process, the oxidation state of palladium is reduced, thereby regenerating the active Pd(0) catalyst, PdL_2.

Mechanism 23.2 illustrates that all three stages (oxidative addition, transmetallation, and reductive elimination) comprise a catalytic cycle that consumes the starting materials (an organostannane and an organic electrophile), produces the coupling product (R—R′), and regenerates the catalyst. Notice that

curved arrows do not appear in Mechanism 23.2, because the mechanism for each stage of the catalytic cycle is likely dependent on conditions. Throughout the rest of this chapter, we will explore many other coupling reactions, and in each case, the catalytic cycle will be shown without curved arrows.

MECHANISM 23.2 STILLE COUPLING

SKILLBUILDER

23.2 PREDICTING THE PRODUCT OF A STILLE COUPLING REACTION

LEARN the skill

Draw the coupling product that is expected when the following aryl iodide is treated with the following organostannane in the presence of $Pd(PPh_3)_4$:

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Identify the carbon atoms that will be joined via a new σ bond.

Begin by identifying the carbon atoms that will be joined. The carbon atom connected directly to iodide (in the aryl iodide) will be joined with the carbon atom connected directly to tin (Sn) in the organostannane, highlighted here:

STEP 2
Rotate the coupling partners.

In order to draw the coupling product more easily, rotate each of the coupling partners, so that they are properly aligned to form a bond between them, as shown:

STEP 3
Draw the product, making sure to retain the configuration of any C═C units.

Finally, when drawing the product, make sure that the configuration of each C═C unit is retained. In this case, notice that the *E* configuration of the organostannane is preserved in the coupling product.

PRACTICE the skill

23.12 For each of the following cases, draw the product of the Stille coupling reaction that is expected when the organic electrophile is treated with the organostannane in the presence of catalytic $Pd(PPh_3)_4$:

23.13 A compound possessing a vinyl triflate group as well as a trimethylstannane group, such as compound **1**, can undergo an intramolecular Stille coupling reaction.[2] This annulation (ring-making) procedure provides an efficient pathway for the construction of a variety of bicyclic diene systems. Draw the structure of the coupling product (compound **2**) that is formed when **1** is treated with $Pd(PPh_3)_4$:

23.14 (*S*)-Zearalenone, a natural product isolated from the fungus *Gibberella zeae*, exhibits useful biological activity, including antibiotic properties. In a total synthesis of (*S*)-zearalenone, an intramolecular Stille coupling process was employed as shown below (R represents a protecting group for the phenolic OH groups).[3] The resulting coupling product was then treated with HCl to remove the protecting groups, giving (*S*)-zearalenone. Draw the structure of (*S*)-zearalenone:

23.15 (+)-Jatrophone, a natural product isolated from the flowering plant *Jatropha gossypiifolia*, is known to function as a tumor inhibitor and has been used to treat cancerous growths. As part of the first total synthesis of (+)-jatrophone, compound **1** was prepared and then treated with organostannane **2** in the presence of $Pd(PPh_3)_4$ to give compound **3**.[4] Draw the structure of compound **3**.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 23.33, 23.52, 23.70**

23.6 Suzuki Coupling

Reagents and Conditions for Suzuki Coupling

Suzuki coupling, named after Professor Akira Suzuki (Hokkaido University), is very similar to Stille coupling, but an organoboron compound is used instead of an organotin compound:

An organoboron compound

An organotin compound

Much like Stille coupling, a palladium catalyst such as $Pd(PPh_3)_4$ is employed, but Suzuki coupling also requires basic conditions (we will soon explore the function of the base). For a Suzuki coupling, the coupling partners are an organoboron compound (RBY_2) and an organic electrophile (R′X), giving R—R′ as the coupling product:

In the organoboron compound, the Y groups can be alkyl groups, alkoxy groups, or hydroxyl groups, depending on the method of preparation. These compounds are called organoboranes, boronic esters, and boronic acids, respectively:

An organoborane

A boronic ester

A boronic acid

Just as we saw for Stille coupling, the R group (of the organoboron compound) can be vinyl, aryl, or allyl. The following are all suitable organoboron compounds for Suzuki coupling:

An aryl borane

A vinyl boronic ester

An allyl boronic acid

Now let's explore the structure of the organic electrophile (R′X) in Suzuki coupling. Again, just as we saw with Stille coupling, R′ can be aryl or vinyl, and X can be a halide or a triflate group (although chlorides are generally much less reactive). The following are all suitable organic electrophiles (R′X) for Suzuki coupling:

An aryl iodide

A vinyl bromide

A vinyl triflate

Two examples of Suzuki coupling are shown below:

Suzuki coupling offers several advantages over Stille coupling. One significant advantage of Suzuki coupling is the ability to use an alkyl borane in the coupling process, as seen in the following example:

This provides a general method for making a bond between sp^3- and sp^2-hybridized centers. Suzuki coupling therefore provides greater versatility than Stille coupling in the types of bonds that can be made, as summarized in Table 23.3.

TABLE 23.3 BONDS THAT CAN BE MADE VIA STILLE COUPLING AND/OR VIA SUZUKI COUPLING

Stille or Suzuki Coupling	Suzuki Coupling

Other advantages of Suzuki coupling include the ease with which inorganic by-products are removed as well as the lower cost and lower toxicity of organoboron compounds relative to organotin compounds. One disadvantage of the Suzuki coupling reaction (relative to Stille coupling) is the requirement for basic conditions. Under these conditions, if either coupling partner has a keto or aldehyde group that bears α protons, aldol-type reactions can occur to give undesired side products. Both Stille coupling and Suzuki coupling are frequently employed by practicing synthetic organic chemists, and the choice (of which method to use) will generally be determined by the details of the particular transformation that is desired.

Suzuki coupling is particularly useful for making conjugated dienes, and the process is observed to be stereospecific. That is, the process generally proceeds with retention of configuration at each of the C═C units, as seen in the following example:

Preparation of Organoboron Compounds

Organoboron compounds can be readily prepared from a variety of starting materials. For example, vinyl boronic esters and vinyl boranes can be prepared via hydroboration of alkynes using catecholborane or 9-BBN, respectively:

Similarly, alkyl boronic esters and alkyl boranes can be prepared via hydroboration of alkenes using catecholborane or 9-BBN, respectively:

And aryl boronic esters can be made by treating the corresponding aryllithium compound with trimethylborate, $B(OMe)_3$:

A Mechanism for Suzuki Coupling

Suzuki coupling is believed to occur via a mechanism that is similar to the mechanism shown for Stille coupling in Section 23.5. That is, the catalytic cycle begins with oxidative addition and ends with transmetallation and reductive elimination (thereby regenerating the active palladium catalyst). But with Suzuki coupling, which occurs in basic conditions, there is an additional step that occurs as part of the catalytic cycle (Mechanism 23.3). In this additional step, called displacement, the X group (halide or triflate) is displaced by an alkoxide ion, thereby rendering the palladium complex more reactive toward transmetallation.

MECHANISM 23.3 SUZUKI COUPLING

During Suzuki coupling, the base also plays another critical role. Not only does it activate the catalyst for the transmetallation step, but it also activates the organoboron compound by converting it into an organoborate anion, which undergoes transmetallation more rapidly:

Commonly used bases include NaOH and NaOEt, although many other bases are often used.

Suzuki Coupling in Synthesis

Suzuki coupling tolerates the presence of a wide range of functional groups, although as mentioned earlier, ketones and aldehydes can give aldol-type reactions in basic conditions. This issue can be mitigated by using milder conditions. Indeed, a variety of modified reagents and conditions have been developed to further enhance the versatility of Suzuki coupling. A full treatment of Suzuki coupling is beyond the scope of our discussion.

Suzuki coupling is generally inefficient when the organic electrophile (R′X) is an alkyl halide. Under the basic conditions required for Suzuki coupling, an alkyl halide can undergo undesired elimination (E2) reactions. Nevertheless, recent advances have begun to circumvent this problem as well. Specifically, conditions and reagents have been developed that allow for the coupling between two sp^3-hybridized centers under certain circumstances. These developments, and many others, continue to improve the significant versatility of Suzuki coupling.

For his pioneering work on palladium-catalyzed cross-coupling reactions, Suzuki shared in the 2010 Nobel Prize in Chemistry.

SKILLBUILDER

23.3 PREDICTING THE PRODUCT OF A SUZUKI COUPLING REACTION

LEARN the skill

Bombykol is a sex pheromone used by silkworms (females release it to attract the males), and it can be prepared in the laboratory via a Suzuki coupling reaction between the two partners shown below:

The synthetic production of bombykol provides farmers with powerful methods for preventing outbreaks that can destroy crops. Specifically, bombykol can be released to confuse the males (thereby interfering with the mating process) or it can be used as a lure to trap the males. These methods reduce the need for powerful insecticides. Draw the structure of bombykol.

SOLUTION

STEP 1 Identify the carbon atoms that will be joined via a new σ bond.

Begin by identifying the carbon atoms that will be joined. The carbon atom connected directly to boron in the organoboron compound will be joined with the carbon atom connected directly to bromide (in the vinyl bromide), highlighted here:

STEP 2
Rotate the coupling partners.

In order to draw the coupling product more easily, rotate the coupling partners, so that they are properly aligned to form a bond between them, as shown:

STEP 3
Draw the product, making sure to retain the configuration of any C═C units.

Finally, when drawing the product, make sure that the configuration of each C═C unit is retained. In this case, notice that the *E* configuration of the organoboron compound and the *Z* configuration of the vinyl bromide are both preserved in the coupling product:

PRACTICE the skill

23.16 For each of the following cases, draw the product of the Suzuki coupling reaction that is expected when the organic electrophile is treated with the organoboron compound in the presence of a base and catalytic $Pd(PPh_3)_4$:

23.17 Draw the structures of boronic ester **A** and Suzuki coupling product **B** in the following reaction sequence:

APPLY the skill

23.18 Taxol, used in the treatment of breast cancer, is produced by fungi in the bark of the Pacific Yew tree. Taxol is part of a class of structurally related natural compounds called taxanes that represent particularly challenging synthetic targets for organic chemists due to the complexity of their structure. In an effort to prepare a key eight-membered ring of taxol, compound **1** was prepared and treated with 9-BBN to give compound **2**, followed by addition of a palladium catalyst under basic conditions, giving compound **3**.[5] Draw structures for organoborane **2** and Suzuki coupling product **3**.

23.19 By virtue of noncovalent π–π interactions, compound **1** has proven useful in the field of nonlinear optics. Compound **1** can be prepared via sequential Suzuki cross-coupling reactions with an appropriate catalyst.[6] First, compound **A** is treated with an aryl iodide to give compound **B**, which is then treated with an aryl boronic acid to produce compound **1**.

(a) Draw structures for the requisite aryl iodide, boronic acid, and compound **B**.
(b) Explain why **A** cross couples with the aryl iodide, rather than two molecules of **A** coupling together.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 23.40b–c, 23.44, 23.60, 23.74, 23.77**

23.7 Negishi Coupling

Reagents and Scope for Negishi Coupling

The Negishi coupling is another versatile reaction that utilizes an organometallic species containing zinc, aluminum, or zirconium:

The organometallic reagent is coupled to an organic electrophile in the presence of a transition metal catalyst (palladium or nickel). With a few exceptions, this section will focus primarily on a major subset of this reaction: palladium-catalyzed couplings of organozinc reagents, as shown below.

This class of reactions is named for Professor Ei-ichi Negishi (Purdue University), who shared the 2010 Nobel Prize in Chemistry with Akira Suzuki (Section 23.6) and Richard Heck (Section 23.8) for their work on palladium-catalyzed cross couplings.

Organozinc compounds are generally more reactive than the corresponding organostannanes and organoboranes, in part due to the low electronegativity of zinc (1.6) relative to tin (1.8) and boron (2.0). The greater difference in electronegativity between the metal and carbon gives rise to a more polar carbon-metal bond and thus a more reactive species. This increase in reactivity in some cases leads to efficient Negishi coupling reactions where the analogous Stille and Suzuki reactions fail or are sluggish. A disadvantage of the increased reactivity is that many organozinc reagents are air sensitive and water sensitive, necessitating the use of equipment to ensure that the reaction is run in an inert atmosphere. Recent advances, including the preparation of salt-stabilized organozinc reagents, have somewhat diminished this problem.

Successful Negishi coupling reactions have been reported using a wide variety of organozinc reagents (RZnX), including those where R = vinyl, aryl, alkynyl, benzyl, and alkyl.

Likewise, a broad range of organic electrophiles (R′X) are known to be successful coupling partners such as those where R′ = allyl, benzyl, vinyl, aryl, and alkyl.

The general order of reactivity of carbon electrophiles is as follows: allyl > benzyl > vinyl > aryl > alkyl. In the following Negishi coupling, the vinyl iodide is reported to be >100 times as reactive as the primary alkyl iodide, resulting in the formation of the product shown in high yield (96%). Note that the reaction proceeds with retention of configuration of the C═C unit.

The stereoselectivity of Negishi coupling is often dependent on the metal catalyst. For example, consider the coupling reaction between an *E* vinyl organoaluminum and a *Z* vinyliodide, shown here:

Use of a palladium catalyst results in a highly stereoselective process, where the configuration of each C═C unit is retained in the product (>99% *E*,*Z*). When a nickel transition metal catalyst is used instead, the stereospecificity is diminished (90% *E*,*Z*). Note that in the organoaluminum reactant, the aluminum has one vinyl group and two alkyl groups (*i*Bu). As in Stille coupling, the vinyl group migrates more rapidly from the aluminum to the palladium in the transmetallation step, thus resulting in selective coupling of the vinyl group over the alkyl groups.

The scope of effective Negishi reactions, which includes combinations of the coupling partners listed above among others, is too broad to fully cover here. While not every combination of organozinc reagent with an organic electrophile produces the desired cross-coupling product in high yield, and some pairings require special catalysts or additives, many of them are successful. For example, alkynylzincs are known to couple successfully with a variety of organic electrophiles in the presence of a transition metal catalyst, as seen in the following reactions:

As with Suzuki coupling, Negishi coupling can even be used to form a new bond between two sp^3-hybridized carbons in certain circumstances, often with the use of unconventional catalysts and/or additives.

Preparation of Organozinc Reagents

Organozinc reagents are generally prepared in one of two ways. One common method is to treat a carbanion (organolithium compound or Grignard reagent) with ZnX_2, where X = Cl, Br, or I:

Alternatively, organozinc reagents can be prepared by the addition of zinc metal to an ether solution of the aryl, vinyl, or alkyl halide.

Palladium-catalyzed cross-coupling reactions using organometallic reagents containing Al, Zr, or Cu can often be greatly accelerated by the addition of $ZnCl_2$ or $ZnBr_2$. The addition of a ZnX_2 catalyst can increase the reaction rate several thousand times or in some cases can produce a successful cross coupling that would otherwise fail in the absence of the additive. It has been proposed that the organometallic reagents undergo *in situ* reversible transmetallation with ZnX_2 to produce the more reactive organozinc reagents. Recently, $InCl_3$ (which generates organoindium reagents *in situ*) has been demonstrated as an even more effective additive than $ZnBr_2$ or $ZnCl_2$ for the acceleration of similar cross-coupling reactions.

A Mechanism for Negishi Coupling

The generally accepted mechanism for Negishi coupling is a catalytic cycle analogous to that of Stille coupling. Oxidative addition of an organic electrophile to the active palladium species results in a new (oxidized) palladium complex. In the transmetallation step, the organic group from the organozinc reagent is transferred to the palladium complex and ZnX_2 is expelled. Finally, the reductive elimination step produces the coupled product (R—R′) and regenerates the active palladium complex.

MECHANISM 23.4 NEGISHI COUPLING

Negishi Coupling in Synthesis

The carbon-carbon bond formation of the Negishi coupling provides access to a diversity of molecular structures and has been used extensively in the preparation of natural products and pharmaceuticals. In 2001, a total synthesis of several carotenoids, including vitamin A, γ-carotene, and β-carotene (shown below), was reported. Each of these natural products was prepared by the use of a series of organometallic reactions. In fact, each of the indicated C—C bonds in β-carotene was produced by a Pd- and Zn-catalyzed Negishi cross coupling.

The final step in the synthesis of β-carotene is shown here:

Two equivalents of the vinylaluminum reagent are combined with (*E*)-1-bromo-2-iodoethene in this tandem palladium-catalyzed cross coupling. The addition of $ZnCl_2$ accelerates the reaction by undergoing a transmetallation with the vinylaluminum as described earlier. The (*E*)-1-bromo-2-iodoethene allows for two sequential cross couplings: first with the more reactive vinyl iodide followed by the vinyl bromide to produce the symmetric β-carotene in 68% yield. Note that the *E* configuration of the bromoiodoethylene is retained in the product.

SKILLBUILDER

23.4 PREDICTING THE PRODUCT OF A NEGISHI COUPLING REACTION

LEARN the skill

Coenzyme Q_{10} (also called ubiquinone) is a natural product that is found throughout the human body. It resides in the nonpolar regions of biological membranes and is involved in a number of essential biochemical processes, including energy generation. It can be prepared using a Negishi cross-coupling reaction between the following two partners:

Coenzyme Q_{10} is sold as a dietary supplement that is purported to produce a number of benefits, including an energy boost after exercise and an immune system aid. Draw the structure of coenzyme Q_{10}.

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Identify the carbon atoms that will be joined via a new σ bond.

Begin by identifying the carbon atoms that will be joined. The carbon atom connected directly to aluminum will be joined with the carbon atom connected to the chlorine atom, highlighted here:

STEP 2
Redraw the coupling partners, so that they are oriented in a way that more clearly shows where the bond will be formed.

Next, redraw the coupling partners so that the two highlighted carbon atoms are adjacent and in an orientation that will make it easy to draw the product.

STEP 3
Draw the product, making sure to retain the configuration of any C═C units.

Finally, when drawing the product, make sure that the configuration of each C═C unit is retained. In this case, notice that the *E* configuration of the organoaluminum is preserved in the coupling product.

PRACTICE the skill

23.20 For each of the following cases, draw the product of the Negishi coupling reaction that is expected when the organic electrophile is treated with the organozinc in the presence of catalytic $Pd(PPh_3)_4$:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

23.21 Keeping in mind the relative reactivity of vinyl iodides and vinyl bromides, draw the structures of Negishi coupling products **A** and **B** in the following reaction sequence:

APPLY the skill

23.22 The antitumor agent FR901464 is a natural product isolated from a bacterium found in a Japanese soil sample. In a reported total synthesis of this molecule, organozirconium **1** was treated with compound **2**, in the presence of $ZnCl_2$ and $Pd(PPh_3)_4$, to produce compound **3**, a synthetic intermediate en route to the natural product.[7] Draw the structure of compound **3**.

23.23 Savinin and gadain are two naturally occurring compounds with structures that differ only in the configuration of a C═C unit. Organozinc compound **1** was treated with vinyl bromide **2** in the presence of $Pd(PPh_3)_4$ to produce compound **3**, which was subsequently converted to savinin.[8] **(a)** Draw the structure of compound **2**. **(b)** Draw the structure of gadain and the corresponding vinyl bromide that was used in its preparation.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 23.54, 23.58**

23.8 The Heck Reaction

The General Reaction

In the late 1960s, Richard Heck (working at the Hercules chemical manufacturing company and then later at the University of Delaware) discovered and developed the coupling reaction between an aryl, vinyl, or benzyl halide (RX) and an alkene in the presence of an appropriate Pd catalyst:

This process replaces a vinylic hydrogen atom of the alkene with an R group. The Heck reaction is particularly useful as there are no other general ways for achieving this type of transformation directly. The reaction is most efficient when the organohalide (RX) is an iodide, although bromides and triflates are also very effective (I > Br ~ OTf >> Cl). The following are examples of Heck reactions:

Notice that, in each case, the newly formed C—C bond is between two sp^2-hybridized centers, which is a characteristic feature of the Heck reaction. We have seen other reactions that can also create a C—C bond between two sp^2-hybridized centers (such as Stille or Suzuki coupling), but the Heck reaction has the advantage that it does not require the preparation of an organotin compound or an organoboron compound. Indeed, the Heck reaction is one of the most widely used methods for C—C bond formation. For his pioneering work on Pd-catalyzed coupling reactions, Richard Heck shared the 2010 Nobel Prize in Chemistry with Akira Suzuki (see Section 23.6) and Ei-ichi Negishi (Section 23.7).

The Catalyst

Like Stille coupling and Suzuki coupling, the Heck reaction can be achieved with a catalyst such as $Pd(PPh_3)_4$, in which the palladium atom has an oxidation state of 0. Alternatively, Pd(II) complexes can be used, such as $Pd(OAc)_2$. When a Pd(II) complex is used, it is converted into a Pd(0) complex, which is believed to function as the active catalyst. As we will see in Mechanism 23.5, the function of the base is to regenerate the active catalyst (PdL_2), thereby restarting the catalytic cycle. A commonly used base is triethylamine (Et_3N), although other bases are often used, including NaOAc, KOAc, and $NaHCO_3$.

The Alkene

In a Heck reaction, the reactivity of the alkene decreases with increasing substitution, and the highest yields are obtained for ethylene and monosubstituted ethylenes. In particular, the most reactive monosubstituted ethylenes are those in which the substituent is electron withdrawing, as in the following examples:

When a monosubstituted alkene is used in a Heck reaction, the process is generally observed to be highly regioselective, with the R group (of RX) being installed at the less substituted vinylic position of the alkene:

LOOKING BACK
See Figure 7.14 to review the difference between the terms "stereoselective" and "stereospecific."

Notice also that this reaction is stereoselective with respect to the alkene, with the *E* isomer being formed (rather than the *Z* isomer), often exclusively. The reaction is also stereospecific with respect to RX (when RX is a vinyl halide). That is, the configuration of the C═C unit in the vinyl halide is retained, as seen in the following examples:

A Mechanism for the Heck Reaction

The Heck reaction occurs via a catalytic cycle that is believed to be comprised of several stages, shown in Mechanism 23.5. For each stage of the catalytic cycle, the mechanism may vary, depending on the conditions, so curved arrows are not shown. In the first stage of the catalytic cycle, the organohalide (RX) reacts with the active catalyst via oxidative addition (as we have seen in previous mechanisms involving Pd catalysts):

The resulting complex then reacts with the starting alkene, adding R and Pd across the π bond in a *syn* addition, with the R group being installed at the less substituted position:

The resulting adduct then undergoes a conformational change (via C—C bond rotation), followed by a *syn* reductive elimination that gives the product:

The catalytic cycle is completed when the base removes HX, via reductive elimination, to regenerate the active catalyst:

The entire catalytic cycle is shown in Mechanism 23.5.

MECHANISM 23.5 THE HECK REACTION

In some cases, the regiochemical outcome of a Heck reaction can be affected by the *syn* requirement of stage 2 (*syn* addition). For example, consider a Heck reaction in which cyclohexene is used as the alkene:

Notice that the π bond is not located in the position that we might expect. This regiochemical outcome can be rationalized if we analyze the structure of the intermediate (shown in brackets below) that undergoes a *syn* elimination to give the product:

Notice that the intermediate has only one hydrogen atom (highlighted) that is properly positioned to undergo a *syn* elimination with the Pd group. The other neighboring hydrogen atoms are not *syn* to the Pd group, and as a result, there is only one possible regiochemical outcome that can accommodate *syn* elimination. This explains the ultimate position of the π bond in the product.

Much as we saw with Stille, Negishi, and Suzuki coupling, the Heck reaction also tolerates a wide variety of functional groups, including alcohols, ethers, aldehydes, ketones, and esters. This feature contributes to the enormous synthetic utility of the Heck reaction.

SKILLBUILDER

23.5 IDENTIFYING THE PARTNERS FOR A HECK REACTION

LEARN the skill

Identify the coupling partners that can be used to prepare the following compound via a Heck reaction:

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Analyze the structure of the product and determine which bond(s) can be made via a Heck reaction.

Recall that a Heck reaction forms a bond between a vinyl position and either an aryl, vinyl, or benzyl position. In the desired compound, there is only one bond that fits this criterion:

STEP 2
Identify the starting organohalide and alkene.

This bond, indicated with a wavy line, is between two vinyl positions, so we will explore the reagents necessary to make this C—C bond via a Heck reaction. Note that in many cases there will be more than one bond that can be made via a Heck reaction. In such cases, multiple synthetic pathways may be viable.

In order to make the desired C—C bond via a Heck reaction, we must draw an alkene and an organohalide. There are two possibilities, shown here:

The first possibility is not viable because Heck reactions are stereoselective with respect to the starting alkene, and the *E* isomer (rather than the *Z* isomer) would be expected:

This is not the desired stereochemical outcome, so we turn our attention to the second possibility. This possibility works, and it has the added advantage that the starting monosubstituted alkene has an electron-withdrawing substituent (so we expect the reaction to be very effective):

PRACTICE the skill

23.24 Identify the coupling partners that can be used to prepare each of the following compounds via a Heck reaction:

APPLY the skill

23.25 Predict the product of the following intramolecular Heck reaction:

23.26 Strychnine is a highly toxic, heptacyclic alkaloid isolated from seeds of the *Strychnos* genus of plant, which are distributed throughout Asia, Africa, and the Americas. In addition to being toxic to humans, it has also been used for centuries as a vertebrate pesticide. Since the 1950s, several total syntheses have been reported, and in one landmark synthesis, an intramolecular Heck reaction was utilized to produce compound **2**. Provide a rationale for the observed stereochemical outcome as well as the observed regiochemical outcome for this process.[9]

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 23.37, 23.40d, 23.42, 23.45, 23.49, 23.59, 23.78**

23.9 Alkene Metathesis

BY THE WAY
The term "olefin" refers to unsaturated compounds, such as alkenes and alkynes. The term is used in this context because metathesis is observed for both alkenes and alkynes, although we will only explore alkene metathesis in this section.

Alkene metathesis, also called **olefin metathesis**, has recently emerged as one of the most powerful synthetic techniques available to practicing synthetic organic chemists.

The term *metathesis* is derived from the Greek words *meta* and *thesis* (which can be translated as "change" and "position"). Alkene metathesis is characterized by the redistribution (changing of position) of carbon-carbon double bonds, as seen in the following general reaction:

We will soon see that this process provides extraordinary synthetic utility, and indeed, the 2005 Nobel Prize in Chemistry was awarded to Robert Grubbs (Caltech), Richard Schrock (MIT), and Yves Chauvin (French Institute of Petroleum) for their contributions to developing alkene metathesis into a versatile synthetic technique.

The Catalyst

Many catalysts have been developed for achieving alkene metathesis. All of these catalysts contain a transition metal element with a double bond to a carbon atom (C═M), and are therefore called *metal alkylidenes*. Schrock catalysts are based on molybdenum (Mo), while Grubbs catalysts are based on ruthenium (Ru). In each case, a variety of ligands have been used, with the most commonly utilized catalysts shown below:

The C═M bond has been identified (in red) in each case. As we have seen in earlier sections, it is the convention to omit formal charges on the metal and ligands of organometallic compounds. While all three of these catalysts can participate in alkene metathesis reactions, each has a specialized use that distinguishes

it from the others. In many cases, the most reactive of these catalysts toward metathesis is the Schrock catalyst. However, the Schrock catalyst is not easily handled in an oxygen-rich environment, therefore hindering its ability to be employed in routine synthesis. As a result, the Grubbs catalysts, which are both air and moisture stable, have risen to prominence among modern synthetic organic chemists.

The Products

When an alkene is treated with a metal alkylidene catalyst (Schrock or Grubbs), the two vinyl positions of the alkene are separated from each other and the fragments can then be recombined:

This process is particularly effective in (although not limited to) cases that involve terminal alkenes (monosubstituted alkenes or 2,2-disubstituted alkenes):

In such cases, one of the products is ethylene gas ($H_2C{=}CH_2$), which bubbles out of solution and is effectively removed from the product mixture. The evolution of ethylene gas drives the reaction toward the formation of one alkene with excellent yields.

Below are specific examples of alkene metathesis. Notice that mixtures of *E* and *Z* isomers are obtained:

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

23.27 Draw the metathesis products that are expected when each of the following compounds is treated with a Grubbs catalyst:

23.28 Draw all of the products that are expected when *trans*-2-pentene is treated with a Grubbs catalyst.

23.29 Draw the alkene that you would use to prepare the following compound via an alkene metathesis reaction:

A Mechanism for Alkene Metathesis

Alkene metathesis can be divided into two stages. In the first stage, the catalyst reacts with the starting material (in one of two possible ways) to give two different metal alkylidene complexes (intermediates **A** and **B**, highlighted below):

Each intermediate is formed via a [2+2] cycloaddition, followed by a fragmentation process. Notice that by-products are formed along with **A** and **B**. Only small amounts of these by-products are formed because the metal complex is only present in a catalytic amount. Once **A** and **B** are formed, they function as catalysts for stage 2 of the process, in which the starting material is converted into the product. Both **A** and **B** can react with the starting alkene, so let's first explore the reaction between intermediate **A** and the starting alkene. This reaction gives the product as well as intermediate **B**:

Notice that the cycloaddition step has been drawn to show the metal being installed at the less substituted carbon of the starting alkene. If, instead, the metal had been installed at the more substituted carbon of the starting alkene, the result would be the production of the starting alkene and intermediate **A**. Although this can certainly occur, it does not involve a net change (starting alkene + **A** → starting alkene + **A**), so it can be ignored.

Now let's explore the reaction between intermediate **B** and the starting alkene, which regenerates intermediate **A** and produces ethylene gas:

Notice that the cycloaddition step has been drawn to show the metal being installed at the more substituted carbon of the starting alkene. If, instead, the metal had been installed at the less substituted carbon of the starting alkene, the result would be the production of the starting alkene and intermediate **B**. Once again, this can certainly occur, but it does not involve a net change (starting alkene + **B** → starting alkene + **B**), so it can be ignored.

Stage 2 of the process can thus be summarized as follows: **A** is converted into **B** (with conversion of starting alkene into product), and then **B** is converted back to **A** (with conversion of starting

alkene into ethylene). In this way, the starting alkene is continuously converted into the product and ethylene. This catalytic cycle is summarized here:

The entire mechanism, as described in this section, is summarized in Mechanism 23.6.

MECHANISM 23.6 ALKENE METATHESIS

STAGE 1 (FORMATION OF INTERMEDIATES A AND B)

STAGE 2 (CATALYTIC CYCLE)

Ring-Closing Metathesis and Ring-Opening Metathesis

When the starting material is a diene and the reaction is conducted in dilute solutions (thereby favoring intramolecular processes over intermolecular processes), alkene metathesis can serve as a method for ring formation. This process is called **ring-closing metathesis**:

This procedure can be used to make a ring of virtually any size (rings of more than 20 carbon atoms have been prepared), and indeed, this procedure has been used creatively and frequently in the construction of a wide variety of synthetic targets.

Similarly, **ring-opening metathesis** can be achieved in the presence of ethylene. Under these conditions, a cycloalkene can be opened to give a diene, with the introduction of two methylene (CH_2) groups; for example:

Alkene metathesis can be achieved in the presence of a wide variety of functional groups, including ketones, aldehydes, esters, amines, amides, sulfonate esters, ethers, and even alcohols. This feature contributes to the enormous synthetic utility of alkene metathesis.

SKILLBUILDER

23.6 IDENTIFYING THE STARTING MATERIAL FOR A RING-CLOSING METATHESIS

LEARN the skill

Draw the diene that you would use to prepare the following compound via a ring-closing metathesis reaction.

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Identify any C═C unit contained in a ring.

Identify any C═C unit that is incorporated into a ring. In this case, there is a π bond incorporated into an eight-membered ring:

STEP 2
Break the C═C unit apart and attach a methylene (CH_2) group to each of the two vinyl positions of the broken C═C unit.

In order to draw the starting diene, we erase the highlighted C═C bond of the ring and then connect a methylene (CH_2) group to each of the two vinyl positions, like this:

PRACTICE the skill

23.30 Draw the diene that you would use to prepare each of the following compounds via a ring-closing metathesis reaction:

(a)
(b)
(c)
(d)

23.31 Draw the ring-closing metathesis product that is expected when each of the following compounds is treated with a Grubbs catalyst:

(a)
(b)
(c)
(d)

APPLY the skill

23.32 In a study exploring the utility of olefin metathesis reactions, each of the following trienes was prepared and subjected to a Grubbs catalyst.[10] Each molecule underwent a tandem ring-opening/ring-closing reaction resulting in the cleavage of the C═C unit within the ring, the formation of two new cyclic C═C groups, and the expulsion of ethylene gas. Draw the structure of the product in each case.

(a)
(b)

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 23.36, 23.39, 23.51, 23.53, 23.64, 23.76, 23.79**

WorldLinks Improving Biodiesel via Alkene Metathesis

Alkene metathesis has certainly become an invaluable tool for practicing synthetic chemists, but it has also found a wide variety of industrial applications. For example, alkene metathesis can be used to improve the properties of biodiesel, a renewable energy source. You will see in Section 26.4 that biodiesel can be made from triacylglycerides, which are comprised of a glycerol backbone and three fatty acid residues:

A triacylglyceride

Triacylglycerides can be obtained from a wide variety of natural sources, including oilseed crops, such as canola (*Brassica napus*). Treatment of a triacylglyceride with methanol, under acidic conditions, gives biodiesel. As you will see in Section 26.4, this process is called

transesterification and it results in the release of the fatty acid residues from the glycerol backbone, giving methyl esters (biodiesel), shown here:

In canola oil, one of the most abundant fatty acid residues is oleic acid, so biodiesel made from canola oil will have a large quantity of oleic acid methyl ester, shown below. This methyl ester can be used directly in specially modified internal combustion engines; however, it has some properties, especially in cold weather, that make it less than optimal as a fuel. These undesirable properties are the result of the presence of the ester group. One of the applications of metathesis catalysts is to remove the ester group, giving a hydrocarbon with improved combustion properties. For example, the reaction of two molecules of oleic acid methyl ester, in the presence of a metathesis catalyst, produces an alkene and a diester:

Distillation of the reaction mixture allows for the alkene to be separated from the diester (which also has useful industrial applications). The alkene can then be used directly in an unmodified diesel engine. Indeed, this alkene exhibits significantly improved cold-weather performance, compared to oleic acid methyl ester. This example illustrates just one of the many exciting ways in which alkene metathesis can be used to solve global challenges.

REVIEW OF REACTIONS

Organolithium and Organomagnesium Compounds

Preparation

$$R{-}X \xrightarrow{\text{Li (2 eq.)}} R{-}Li + LiX$$

$$R{-}X \xrightarrow[Et_2O]{Mg} R{-}Mg{-}X$$

Organocuprates

Preparation of Gilman Reagents

$$R{-}X \xrightarrow[(-LiX)]{\text{Li (2 eq.)}} R{-}Li \xrightarrow[(-LiX)]{\text{CuX (0.5 eq.)}} R_2CuLi$$

R = **alkyl, aryl, or vinyl**
X = **I, Br, or Cl**

Coupling Reaction of a Gilman Reagent with an Organohalide

Simmons–Smith Reaction

Stille Coupling

Preparation of Organostannanes

Coupling Reaction of an Organostannane with an Organohalide

Suzuki Coupling

Preparation of Organoboron Compounds

Coupling Reaction of an Organoboron Compound with an Organohalide

R = alkyl, aryl, vinyl, allyl, or benzyl

R′ = aryl or vinyl
X = I, Br, Cl, or OTf

Coupling product

By-product

Negishi Coupling

Preparation of Organozinc Compounds

Coupling Reaction of an Organozinc Compound with an Organohalide

Coupling Reaction of an Organoaluminum Compound with an Organohalide

The Heck Reaction

R = aryl, vinyl, or benzyl
X = I, Br, or OTf

Alkene Metathesis

Ring-Closing Metathesis

Ring-Opening Metathesis

REVIEW OF CONCEPTS AND VOCABULARY

SECTION 23.1

- Compounds containing a bond between a carbon atom and a metal (C—M) are called **organometallic compounds**.
- For any C—M bond, the magnitude of the partial charge ($\delta-$) on the carbon atom is dependent on the identity of the metal.

SECTION 23.2

- Organolithium (RLi) and organomagnesium (RMgX) compounds are strong bases and strong nucleophiles.
- Grignard reagents (and organolithium reagents) react rapidly with H_2O or D_2O or with any functional group that exhibits a weakly acidic proton (OH, NH, SH, C≡CH, or COOH).

SECTION 23.3

- Gilman reagents can be prepared by treating an organohalide with lithium to give an organolithium, followed by treatment of the organolithium with CuX.
- Gilman reagents (R_2CuLi) react with organohalides (R′X) to give a product in which the R and R′ groups have been coupled together.
- The coupling process is stereospecific. It is observed to proceed with retention of configuration at each of the C═C units.
- When R ≠ R′, the process is called a *cross-coupling* reaction.

SECTION 23.4

- Alkenes react with ICH_2ZnI to form a three-membered ring in a process called *cyclopropanation*.
- The cyclopropanation process is observed to be stereospecific, with the configuration of the alkene being preserved in the cyclopropane product.
- Since the action of ICH_2ZnI resembles the action of carbenes, it is commonly referred to as a *carbenoid* reagent.

SECTION 23.5

- Stille coupling, which occurs in the presence of a suitable palladium catalyst, is the reaction between an organostannane (a compound with a C—Sn bond, also called an organotin compound) and an organic electrophile to form a new C—C σ bond.
- The coupling process is stereospecific. It is observed to proceed with retention of configuration at each of the C═C units.
- Organostannanes react with aryl and vinyl halides or triflates, even when other functional groups are present, including carboxylic acids, amides, esters, nitro groups, ethers, amines, hydroxyl groups, ketones, and aldehydes.

SECTION 23.6

- Suzuki coupling, which occurs in the presence of a suitable palladium catalyst and a base, is the reaction between an organoboron compound (RBY_2) and an organic electrophile (R′X) to form a new C—C σ bond.
- The coupling process is stereospecific. It is observed to proceed with retention of configuration at each of the C═C units.

SECTION 23.7

- Negishi coupling, which occurs in the presence of a suitable palladium catalyst, is the reaction between an organic electrophile (R′X) and an organometallic species containing zinc, aluminum, or zirconium, to form a new C—C σ bond.
- The coupling process is stereospecific. It is observed to proceed with retention of configuration at each of the C═C units.

SECTION 23.8

- The Heck reaction is a coupling reaction that occurs between an aryl, vinyl, or benzyl halide (RX) and an alkene in the presence of an appropriate Pd catalyst and a base.
- When a monosubstituted alkene is used in a Heck reaction, the process is observed to be highly regioselective, with the R group (of RX) being installed at the less substituted vinylic position of the alkene.
- When a monosubstituted alkene is used in a Heck reaction, the process is observed to be highly stereoselective with respect to the alkene, with the *E* isomer being formed (rather than the *Z* isomer), often exclusively.

- The Heck reaction is also stereospecific with respect to RX (when RX is a vinyl halide). That is, the configuration of the C═C unit in the vinyl halide is retained.

SECTION 23.9

- **Alkene metathesis**, also called **olefin metathesis**, is characterized by the redistribution (changing of position) of carbon-carbon double bonds.
- When terminal alkenes are used, the evolution of ethylene gas drives the reaction toward the formation of one alkene with excellent yields.
- When the starting material is a diene and the reaction is conducted in dilute solutions (thereby favoring an intramolecular process over intermolecular processes), alkene metathesis can serve as a method for ring formation. This process is called **ring-closing metathesis**. Similarly, **ring-opening metathesis** can be achieved in the presence of ethylene.
- Alkene metathesis can be achieved in the presence of a wide variety of functional groups, including ketones, aldehydes, esters, amines, amides, sulfonate esters, ethers, and even alcohols.

SKILLBUILDER REVIEW

23.1 IDENTIFYING THE PARTNERS FOR A COREY–POSNER/WHITESIDES–HOUSE COUPLING REACTION

EXAMPLE Show how you would prepare 1-butylcyclopentene from 1-bromobutane and any other organohalide of your choice.

STEP 1 Analyze the structure of the product and determine which bond must be made via a coupling process.

STEP 2 Identify the two organohalides that are necessary.

STEP 3 Draw the forward scheme, showing both possible synthetic routes (either organohalide can be converted into a Gilman reagent).

Try Problems 23.7–23.9, 23.40a, 23.43, 23.47, 23.62

23.2 PREDICTING THE PRODUCT OF A STILLE COUPLING REACTION

STEP 1 Identify the carbon atoms that will be joined via a new σ bond.

STEPS 2 and 3 Rotate the coupling partners and draw the product, making sure to retain the configuration of any C═C units.

Try Problems 23.12–23.15, 23.33, 23.52, 23.70

23.3 PREDICTING THE PRODUCT OF A SUZUKI COUPLING REACTION

STEP 1 Identify the carbon atoms that will be joined via a new σ bond.

STEPS 2 and 3 Rotate the coupling partners and draw the product, making sure to retain the configuration of any C═C units.

Try Problems 23.16–23.19, 23.40b–c, 23.44, 23.60, 23.74, 23.77

23.4 PREDICTING THE PRODUCT OF A NEGISHI COUPLING REACTION

STEP 1 Identify the carbon atoms that will be joined via a new σ bond.

STEPS 2 and 3 Rotate the coupling partners and draw the product, making sure to retain the configuration of any C═C units.

Try Problems **23.20–23.23, 23.54, 23.58**

23.5 IDENTIFYING THE PARTNERS FOR A HECK REACTION

STEP 1 Analyze the structure of the product and determine which bond(s) can be made via a Heck reaction.

STEP 2 Identify the organohalide and alkene necessary. Keep in mind that Heck reactions are stereoselective with respect to the starting alkene and stereospecific with respect to the organohalide (if it is a vinyl halide, as in this case).

Try Problems **23.24–23.26, 23.37, 23.40d, 23.42, 23.45, 23.49, 23.59, 23.78**

23.6 IDENTIFYING THE STARTING MATERIAL FOR A RING-CLOSING METATHESIS

STEP 1 Identify any C═C unit contained in a ring.

STEP 2 Break the C═C unit apart and attach a methylene (CH_2) group to each of the two vinyl positions of the broken C═C unit.

Try Problems **23.30–23.32, 23.36, 23.39, 23.51, 23.53, 23.64, 23.76, 23.79**

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

• **Included in Answers section**

23.33 • Stille coupling has been extended to include the coupling between *sp*- and sp^2-hybridized carbon atoms, when an alkynyl stannane (R—≡—$SnBu_3$) is used. Draw the coupling product that is expected when *para*-nitrobromobenzene is treated with the following alkynyl stannane in the presence of $Pd(PPh_3)_4$:

23.34 • Draw the structures of compounds **A**, **B**, and **C** in the following reaction sequence:

23.35 Draw the structures of compounds **A**, **B**, and **C** in the following reaction sequence:

23.36 Exaltolide is a lactone (cyclic ester) used in perfume formulations, and it can be prepared as shown below. Draw the structure of exaltolide:

23.37 • Draw the expected product for each of the following coupling reactions:

23.38 • Draw the product that is expected when each of the following undergoes a ring-opening metathesis (ROM) in the presence of ethylene gas:

23.39 Draw the product that is expected when each of the following undergoes a ring-closing metathesis (RCM):

23.40 Draw the expected product for each of the following coupling reactions:

23.41 When 5-*tert*-butylcycloheptene undergoes a Simmons–Smith reaction, two products are formed, **A** and **B**, each of which has the molecular formula $C_{12}H_{22}$. (a) Draw structures for **A** and **B**. (b) Identify the relationship between **A** and **B**. (c) Taking steric considerations into account, which product would you expect to predominate? Explain your choice.

23.42 Compounds **A** and **B** will each undergo an intramolecular Heck reaction, although each compound generates a different product. Draw the product of each reaction and explain why different products are obtained.

A **B**

23.43 Using lithium diphenylcuprate (Ph_2CuLi) and any other reagents of your choice, show how you would prepare each of the following compounds:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

23.44 • Starting with 1-butyne and using any other reagents of your choice, show how you would use a Suzuki coupling reaction to make each of the following compounds:

(a)

(b)

(c)

23.45 Starting with 4-nitrostyrene and using any other reagents of your choice, show how you would make each of the following:

(a)

(b)

(c)

23.46 Propose a two-step synthesis that will achieve the following transformation:

23.47 Using 1-pentene as your only source of carbon atoms, show how you would use a Corey–Posner/Whitesides–House reaction to prepare decane.

23.48 Starting with benzene and any other reagents of your choice, propose a synthesis for each of the following compounds:

(a)

(b)

(c)
(racemic)

(d)

23.49 • The following compound will undergo an intramolecular Heck reaction to give a single product with two chiral centers. This process is observed to occur diastereoselectively (a new chiral center is formed, but only one stereoisomer is obtained). Draw the product and rationalize the source of the observed diastereoselectivity:

23.50 Starting with cyclopentene and using any other reagents of your choice, show how you would make each of the following compounds:

(a)

(b)

(c)

23.51 When treated with a Grubbs catalyst, compound **A** (under conditions of high dilution) is converted into one product (compound **1**) with the molecular formula $C_6H_8O_2$. Under similar conditions, compound **B** is converted into two products, compounds **2** and **3**, each of which has the molecular formula $C_8H_{12}O_2$. Draw the structures of compounds **1**, **2**, and **3** and explain why compound **A** gives only one metathesis product while compound **B** gives two metathesis products.

A

B

23.52 When a Stille coupling reaction is performed in the presence of carbon monoxide (CO), a ketone is obtained, as shown here:

Using this procedure, show how you would make each of the following compounds from bromobenzene:

23.53 When treated with a Grubbs catalyst, 1-pentene is converted into two products, **A** and **B**, each of which has the molecular formula C_8H_{16}. Compound **A** undergoes a Simmons–Smith reaction to give **1**, while **B** undergoes a Simmons–Smith reaction to give compounds **2** and **3**.

(a) Draw the structures of compounds **1**, **2**, and **3** and explain why compound **A** gives only one Simmons–Smith product while compound **B** gives two Simmons–Smith products. (b) Identify the relationship between compounds **2** and **3**.

23.54 The following synthesis was developed as a method to prepare 4-aryl piperidine derivatives, a group of compounds containing a common structural unit found in a variety of active pharmaceutical agents.[11] Draw the structures of compounds **A** and **B**.

23.55 A calix[4]arene is a cone-shaped macrocycle (large ring) composed of four arenes connected by intervening CH_2 groups. The calix[4]arene below was subjected to the following reaction sequence: (1) excess *t*-BuLi; (2) excess $ZnCl_2$; (3) excess 4-iodotoluene, $Pd(PPh_3)_4$.[12] In the first step of this sequence, *t*-BuLi was used (in place of excess lithium) to convert the C—Br bonds into C—Li bonds. Draw the structure of the product of this reaction sequence.

23.56 Compounds **1**–**3**, called alkenyl phosphates, were investigated as electrophiles in Negishi coupling reactions with organozinc compounds **4** and **5**.[13] The phosphate group, —OP(=O)$(OPh)_2$, serves as the leaving group in the reaction. Draw the structures of the products from each of the following combinations of reactants in the presence of a Pd catalyst:

(a) **1** (1 equivalent) + **4** (1 equivalent)
(b) **1** (1 equivalent) + **5** (1 equivalent)
(c) **2** (1 equivalent) + **4** (1 equivalent)
(d) **3** (1 equivalent) + **5** (2 equivalents)

23.57 Bipyridine compounds are used as ligands in a broad range of metal complexes. Asymmetric bipyridines, in which the two pyridine units are not identical, can be produced by Negishi coupling between an arylzinc and an aryl triflate as shown.[14]

Provide the structure of the aryl triflate used to produce each of the following bipyridines:

(a) R_1 = Me, R_2 = H, R_3 = H
(b) R_1 = H, R_2 = Me, R_3 = H
(c) R_1 = H, R_2 = H, R_3 = Me

23.58 K-13 is a naturally occurring molecule with a cyclic structure that constrains its tripeptide backbone. A key step in a synthesis of K-13 involves an intramolecular Pd-catalyzed Negishi coupling to produce compound **1**, which is subsequently converted to the natural product.[15] Draw the structure of compound **1**.

ACS-STYLE PROBLEMS (Multiple Choice)

Problems 23.59–23.64 follow the style of the ACS organic chemistry exam. For each of these problems, there will be one correct answer and three distractors.

23.59 • What is the expected major product of the following Heck cross-coupling reaction?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

23.60 • In the presence of $Pd(PPh_3)_4$ and a suitable base, which coupling partners will react in a Suzuki coupling reaction to give the following diene?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

23.61 • Which set of reagents can be used to achieve this transformation?

(a) Mg,

(b) CH_3MgBr, NaOH

(c) NaOEt, RCO_3H

(d) NaOEt, CH_2I_2, Zn–Cu

23.62 • Which of the following is the required starting material for the given reaction?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

23.63 • Shown below is a step in the catalytic cycle of the Suzuki reaction (L represents a ligand). Which of the given terms best describes this step?

(a) Oxidative addition
(b) Reductive elimination
(c) Transmetallation
(d) Nucleophilic substitution

23.64 • Which of the following is the major product formed when the given diene is treated with a Grubbs catalyst and undergoes a ring-closing metathesis reaction?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

INTEGRATED PROBLEMS

23.65 The reaction sequence to the right allows for the preparation of novel liquid crystalline materials using a series of Pd-mediated coupling reactions.[16] The aryllithium shown is converted to organozinc **A**. This compound then undergoes Negishi coupling with an organic electrophile containing a tributyltin group to produce compound **B**. The tin group survives the mild conditions of this reaction. A subsequent Stille coupling at elevated temperature produces compound **C**. Draw the structures of compounds **A**, **B**, and **C**.

23.66 Saudin is a naturally occurring compound that has been found to induce hypoglycemia (low blood sugar) in mice and may thus serve as a potential lead structure for the development of new drugs to help control diabetes.

A section of the fused polycyclic structure of saudin has been synthesized using the Stille reaction shown below.[17] The vinyl iodide (**1**) and vinyl stannane (**2**) were combined in the presence of a palladium catalyst to produce the Stille product, which spontaneously undergoes an electrocyclic reaction to produce compound **3**. Draw the initial product of the Stille reaction and then propose a mechanism for the subsequent reaction that produces compound **3**. Also draw the transition state of the final reaction.

23.67 The compound below was treated with a palladium catalyst to produce a macrocycle (large ring). The macrocycle subsequently underwent an intramolecular [4+2] cycloaddition reaction to produce a fused hexacyclic (six-ring) structure.[18] The ring system of the final product is one that is found in a number of polycyclic natural products. Draw the initial product of the palladium-catalyzed reaction, the final product, and a mechanism for the cycloaddition process.

23.68 Disorazoles are a family of structurally related natural products first isolated in 1994 from the fermentation broth of the bacterium *Sorangium cellulosum*. These natural products exhibit anticancer properties, thereby fueling the search for more potent analogs of these compounds. In 2011, a cyclopropane-containing analog, called CP_2-disorazole C_1, was synthesized and its biological activity assessed.[19] This new compound was found to have significant activity against human colon cancer cell lines. During the synthesis of CP_2-disorazole C_1, compound **1** was prepared from alkenes **2** and **3**. Provide a reasonable synthesis of compound **1** from alkenes **2** and **3**.

23.69 During a total synthesis of asteriscanolide, a sesquiterpene lactone with a unique molecular architecture, compound **A** was heated with the Grubbs 2nd generation catalyst under an atmosphere of ethylene gas to form compound **B**. Compound **B** is not isolated, because at elevated temperature (80°C) it undergoes a rearrangement to give compound **C**.[20]

(a) Draw the structure of **B**.

(b) Propose a plausible mechanism for the conversion of **B** into **C**.

(c) Identify the driving force for the conversion of **A** into **B**.

(d) Identify the driving force for the conversion of **B** into **C**.

(e) Propose an alternate route to synthesize **C** from **A** that does not involve ring-opening metathesis.

23.70 (−)-Rapamycin, a powerful immunosuppressive and antibiotic agent, is produced by the bacterium *Streptomyces hygroscopicus*, found in the soil native to Easter Island (in the South Pacific). K. C. Nicolaou was the first of several investigators to report a total synthesis of (−)-rapamycin.[21] The final maneuver involved a novel cyclization procedure in which compound **1** was treated with a distannane (compound **2**)

in the presence of a suitable palladium catalyst to afford (−)-rapamycin. Under these conditions, an initial intermolecular Stille coupling process occurs followed by an intramolecular Stille coupling process. This tandem inter/intramolecular Stille coupling effectively "stitches up" compound **1** into a macrolide (a large ring). Draw the structure of (−)-rapamycin.

23.71 The bicyclic compound *cis*-sabinene hydrate is a natural product that is one of the main molecules responsible for the flavor of the herb marjoram. It can be prepared as a racemic mixture via the one-pot synthesis shown below.[22] Step 2 is diastereoselective, giving rise to the product shown and its enantiomer.

(a) Draw a mechanism for each step in the reaction sequence.

(b) Suggest a source for the observed diastereoselectivity.

(c) If steps 2 and 3 are reversed, the reaction sequence proves unsuccessful. That is, if the starting material is treated with methyllithium followed by water, the product resulting from those two steps would be very unstable and would decompose quickly in the presence of a small trace of acid or under the conditions of the final step. Propose an explanation for this observation.

23.72 Compound **1**, called 5-*epi*-hydroxycornexistin, is a diastereoisomer of the herbicidal natural product hydroxycornexistin. The nine-membered carbocyclic core of compound **1** was synthesized using two sequential organometallic operations. Provide a reasonable synthesis of compound **2** from compound **3** and any other reagents of your choice.[23]

23.73 Compound **1** undergoes an intramolecular Simmons–Smith type reaction to afford a fused bicyclic *meso* product (compound **3**), which can be used as a synthetic intermediate for subsequent ring-opening reactions.[24] The cyclopropanation process is initiated by replacement of one of the iodine atoms with a ZnEt group to give the carbenoid intermediate shown.

Unlike compound **1**, compound **2** produces only a small amount of the cyclopropanation product:

Draw the structure of the cyclopropanation product derived from **1** and propose an explanation for the difference in reactivity of compounds **1** and **2**.

CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

23.74 *N*-Acetylcolchinol is a highly potent anticancer drug, and its characteristic 6,7,6 fused ring system can also be seen in the structure of dibenzo[*a*,*c*]cyclohepten-5-one.

***N*-acetylcolchinol**

Dibenzo[*a*,*c*]cyclohepten-5-one

This ketone (and derivatives of it) may thus serve as a useful synthetic intermediate toward analogs of the cancer drug.[25] Using starting materials with eight or fewer carbon atoms, propose a synthesis of dibenzo[*a*,*c*]cyclohepten-5-one that includes a Suzuki coupling.

23.75 Diene **1** is useful in that it can be utilized in sequential Stille and Suzuki coupling reactions.

1

The researchers who developed this reagent recognized that a Stille coupling could be selectively accomplished on the tin-bearing end of the molecule because of the requirement of basic conditions for transmetallation at the boron-bearing end of the structure.[26] **(a)** Determine the product of the reaction of **1** with 4-iodoanisole and a palladium catalyst, followed by the addition of CsF (which serves as a base), and 4-*tert*-butyliodobenzene.

(b) Propose a synthesis of **2** (which contains the side chain of the natural product and antitumor agent lucilactaene) using a similar protocol.

2

23.76 In a study exploring the utility of olefin metathesis reactions, the following triene was prepared and subjected to a Grubbs catalyst.[27] The triene underwent a tandem ring-opening/ring-closing reaction resulting in the cleavage of the C═C unit within the ring, the formation of two new cyclic C═C groups, and the expulsion of ethylene gas. Draw the structure of the product, showing the configuration at all chiral centers:

23.77 Like alcohols, boronic acids [RB(OH)$_2$)] can be protected, in order to mask the functional group's acidic protons. One such protecting group for boronic acids is *N*-methyliminodiacetic acid (MIDA). The MIDA boronates that result are unreactive to normal Suzuki coupling conditions. When treated with NaOH, the boronic acid can be revealed and utilized in a Suzuki reaction.

MIDA boronate
(unreactive toward Suzuki coupling)

This technique enables synthetic organic chemists to perform iterative Suzuki coupling reactions. For example, consider a starting material that contains both a MIDA boronate group as well as a halide group. This type of bifunctional compound can be used to achieve successive (iterative) Suzuki coupling reactions, as shown:

This strategy (iterative Suzuki coupling) was employed in a synthesis of ratanhine, the most complex member of a family of compounds isolated from the medicinal plant *Ratanhiae radix*.[28] Propose a reasonable synthesis of ratanhine using the four building blocks shown. Note: R is a protecting group that can be cleaved upon treatment with HCl to give an OH group.

Ratanhine

23.78 First isolated in 1969, ecteinascidin 743 belongs to a family of cytotoxic natural products isolated from a marine sponge of genus *Ecteinascidia*. These natural products were not fully identified until 1990, when exhaustive NMR studies provided synthetic chemists with the overall structures of these compounds. During a total synthesis of ecteinascidin 743, compound **1** was treated with a palladium catalyst under Heck reaction conditions to form compound **A**.[29] Draw the structure of compound **A** and provide a rationale for the observed stereochemical outcome as well as the observed regiochemical outcome for this process.

1

23.79 Treatment of compound **1** with a Grubbs catalyst affords a mixture of two cyclic ethers, **A** and **B**.

1

(a) Draw the structures of the products **A** and **B**. **Note:** A four-membered ring will not form if the option of a five-membered ring (or larger ring) is possible.

(b) Compound **A** was employed as a key intermediate in the synthesis of mucocin, a compound with noted inhibitory activity against a number of cancer cell lines.[30] In order to prepare **A** selectively (without the concurrent formation of **B**), compound **2** was used in place of compound **1**. Compound **2** has three monosubstituted C═C units, but one of them (the allyl ether group) is significantly less hindered than the others. The Grubbs catalyst will preferentially metathesize that C═C unit first (giving intermediate **3**) and then "relay" to the internal alkene via a ring-closing metathesis event, giving intermediate **4** and cyclic compound **5**. This process, called *relay ring-closing metathesis*, enables the selective formation of cyclic ether **A**. Identify which of the two cyclic ethers [from part (a) of this problem] is compound **A** and draw the structure of compound **5**.

LIST OF REFERENCES

1. *Tet. Lett.* **1996**, *37*, 4191–4194.
2. *Tetrahedron* **1991**, *47*, 4555–4570.
3. *J. Org. Chem.* **1991**, *56*, 2883–2894.
4. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1992**, *114*, 7692–7697.
5. *Org. Lett.* **2004**, *6*, 4491–4494.
6. *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed.* **1995**, *34*, 1485–1488.
7. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **2000**, *122*, 10482–10483.
8. *Synthesis* **1997**, *9*, 1061–1066.
9. *J. Org. Chem.* **1994**, *59*, 2685–2686.
10. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1996**, *118*, 6634–6640.
11. *J. Org. Chem.* **2004**, *69*, 5120–5123.
12. *J. Org. Chem.* **1997**, *62*, 4171–4173.
13. *J. Org. Chem.* **2007**, *72*, 6464–6472.
14. *J. Org. Chem.* **1998**, *63*, 10048–10051.
15. *J. Org. Chem.* **2009**, *74*, 8280–8289.
16. *J. Org. Chem.* **2008**, *73*, 830–839.
17. *Org. Lett.* **2005**, *7*, 2413–2416.
18. *Org. Lett.* **2002**, *4*, 3391–3393.
19. *Org. Lett.* **2011**, *13*, 4088–4091.
20. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **2000**, *122*, 8071–8072.
21. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1993**, *115*, 4419–4420.
22. *Org. Lett.* **2001**, *3*, 2121–2123.
23. *Org. Biomol. Chem.* **2008**, *6*, 4012–4025.
24. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **2010**, *132*, 1895–1902.
25. *J. Org. Chem.* **2009**, *74*, 3948–3951.
26. *Org. Lett.* **2005**, *7*, 2289–2291.
27. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1996**, *118*, 6634–6640.
28. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **2007**, *129*, 6716–6717.
29. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **2002**, *124*, 6552–6554.
30. *Org. Lett.* **2006**, *8*, 2369–2372.

24

Carbohydrates

24.1 Introduction to Carbohydrates
24.2 Classification of Monosaccharides
24.3 Configuration of Aldoses
24.4 Configuration of Ketoses
24.5 Cyclic Structures of Monosaccharides
24.6 Reactions of Monosaccharides
24.7 Disaccharides
24.8 Polysaccharides
24.9 Amino Sugars
24.10 *N*-Glycosides

DID YOU EVER **WONDER...**
what Neosporin is and how it works?

Neosporin is an antibiotic cream that contains three active ingredients. One of them, called neomycin, is a carbohydrate derivative. In this chapter, we will investigate carbohydrates and the various roles they play in nature. After an introduction to the structure and reactivity of carbohydrates, we will return to analyze the structure of neomycin and related antibiotics in more detail.

ILYA AKINSHIN/Shutterstock

Science Photo Library/Alamy Stock Photo

DO YOU **REMEMBER?**

Before you go on, be sure you understand the following topics.
If necessary, review the suggested sections to prepare for this chapter:

- Drawing Chair Conformations (Section 4.11)
- Haworth Projections (Section 4.14)
- Fischer Projections (Section 5.7)
- Hemiacetals and Acetals (Section 19.5)
- Reduction of Aldehydes and Ketones (Section 19.9)

Take the DO YOU **REMEMBER?** QUIZ in the **online course** to check your understanding.

24.1 Introduction to Carbohydrates

Carbohydrates, commonly referred to as sugars, are abundant in nature. They represent a significant portion of the foods that we eat, providing us with the energy necessary to drive most of the biochemical processes in our bodies. Carbohydrates are the building blocks used to provide structural rigidity for living organisms, including the wood found in trees and the shells of lobsters. Even our DNA is assembled from derivatives of carbohydrates, as we will see at the end of this chapter.

The earliest carbohydrates to be isolated and purified were originally considered to be hydrates of carbon. For example, glucose was known to have the molecular formula $C_6H_{12}O_6$, which could be rearranged as $C_6(H_2O)_6$ to indicate six carbon atoms and six water molecules. As the structure of glucose was elucidated, this view was discarded, but the term *carbohydrate* persisted. Carbohydrates are now understood to be polyhydroxy aldehydes or ketones. For example, consider the structure of naturally occurring glucose. Trees and plants convert carbon dioxide and water into glucose during photosynthesis.

Glucose

Energy from the sun is absorbed by vegetation and is used to convert CO_2 molecules into larger organic compounds. These organic compounds, such as glucose, have C—C and C—H bonds, which are higher in energy than the C═O bonds in CO_2. Our bodies utilize a series of chemical reactions to convert these compounds back into CO_2, thereby releasing the stored solar energy. In the process, we return carbon dioxide and water back to the environment to be recycled. In essence, our bodies are powered, in large part, by solar energy that has been stored in the form of glucose molecules.

24.2 Classification of Monosaccharides

Aldoses vs. Ketoses

Simple sugars are called **monosaccharides**, a term that derives from the Latin word for sugar, *saccharum*. Complex sugars, such as disaccharides and polysaccharides, are made by joining monosaccharides together, and they will be discussed in Sections 24.7 and 24.8.

Monosaccharides generally contain multiple chiral centers, and Fischer projections are used to indicate the configuration at each chiral center. Glucose and fructose are two examples of simple sugars.

LOOKING BACK
For a review of Fischer projections and the skills necessary to interpret these drawings refer to Section 5.7.

Glucose Fructose

The suffix *-ose* is used to signify a carbohydrate. Hundreds of different monosaccharides are known, each of which can generally be classified as either an *aldose* or a *ketose*. **Aldoses** contain an aldehyde group, while **ketoses** contain a ketone group. According to this classification scheme, glucose is an aldose and fructose is a ketose.

Aldoses and ketoses can be further classified based on the number of carbon atoms they contain. This is accomplished by inserting a term (tri-, tetr-, pent-, hex-, or hept-) immediately before the suffix *-ose*.

The first compound is an aldose with five carbon atoms, and it is therefore called an *aldopentose*. The second compound is a ketose with six carbon atoms, and it is therefore called a *ketohexose*. In this way, carbohydrates are classified using three descriptors:

1. *aldo* or *keto*, indicating whether the compound is an aldehyde or a ketone
2. *tri-*, *tetr-*, *pent-*, *hex-*, or *hept-*, indicating the number of carbon atoms
3. *-ose*, indicating a carbohydrate

D and L Sugars

Glyceraldehyde is one of the smallest compounds considered to be a carbohydrate. It has only one chiral center and therefore can exist as a pair of enantiomers.

As discussed in Section 5.4, enantiomers rotate plane-polarized light in opposite directions. One enantiomer rotates plane-polarized light in a clockwise fashion (dextrorotatory) and is designated as (+); the other enantiomer rotates plane-polarized light in a counterclockwise direction (levorotatory) and is designated as (−). Only (+)-glyceraldehyde is abundant in nature, so glyceraldehyde obtained from natural sources is generally referred to as D-glyceraldehyde. Levorotatory or L-glyceraldehyde can be made in the laboratory, but it is generally not observed in nature.

Early studies with carbohydrates revealed that most naturally occurring carbohydrates can be degraded (broken down) to produce D-glyceraldehyde. For example, degradation of naturally occurring glucose yields D-glyceraldehyde (Figure 24.1). During the degradation process, the carbon

FIGURE 24.1
Degradation of most naturally occurring sugars produces D-glyceraldehyde.

atoms are removed one at a time (from the top of the Fischer projection). The loss of three carbon atoms from naturally occurring glucose yields D-glyceraldehyde. The same observation is made for other naturally occurring carbohydrates.

In contrast, when synthetic sugars (those prepared in the laboratory) are degraded, they produce a mixture of D- and L-glyceraldehyde. In response to these observations, chemists began using the Fischer–Rosanoff convention in which the letter D designates any sugar that degrades to (+)-glyceraldehyde. In accord with this convention, almost all naturally occurring carbohydrates are **D sugars**—that is, the chiral center farthest from the carbonyl group will have an OH group pointing to the right in the Fischer projection, as in the following examples:

D-Ribose D-Glucose D-Fructose

While D-glyceraldehyde is dextrorotatory (by definition), other D sugars are not necessarily dextrorotatory. For example, D-erythrose and D-threose are actually levorotatory.

D-Erythrose D-Threose

$[\alpha]_D^{27} = -32.7°$ $[\alpha]_D^{20} = -12.2°$

In this context, the D no longer refers to the direction in which plane-polarized light is rotated. Rather, it means that the lowest chiral center (the one farthest from the carbonyl group) has the *R* configuration just as it does in (+)-glyceraldehyde. Similarly, **L sugars** are not necessarily levorotatory, but rather an L sugar is simply the enantiomer of the corresponding D sugar.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

24.1 Classify each of the following carbohydrates as an aldose or ketose and then insert the appropriate term to indicate the number of carbon atoms present (e.g., an aldo*pent*ose):

24.2 Would you expect an aldohexose and a ketohexose to be constitutionally isomeric? Explain why or why not.

24.3 Determine whether each of the following carbohydrates is a D sugar or an L sugar and assign a configuration for each chiral center. After assigning the configuration for all of the chiral centers, do you notice any trend that would enable you to assign the configuration of a chiral center in a carbohydrate more quickly?

24.4 D-Allose is an aldohexose in which all four chiral centers have the *R* configuration. Draw a Fischer projection of each of the following compounds:

(a) D-Allose (b) L-Allose

24.5 There are only two stereoisomeric ketotetroses.

(a) Draw both of them.

(b) Identify their stereoisomeric relationship.

(c) Identify which is a D sugar and which is an L sugar.

24.6 There are four stereoisomeric aldotetroses.

(a) Draw all four and arrange them in pairs of enantiomers.

(b) Identify which stereoisomers are D sugars and which are L sugars.

24.3 Configuration of Aldoses

Aldotetroses

Aldotetroses have two chiral centers, and there are only four possible aldotetroses (two pairs of enantiomers). Two of the possible aldotetroses are D sugars, while the other two are L sugars. The D sugars are called D-erythrose and D-threose (Figure 24.2). The L sugars, called L-erythrose and L-threose, are the enantiomers of the D aldotetroses.

FIGURE 24.2
The structures of the D aldotetroses.

Aldopentoses

LOOKING BACK
For a review of the 2^n rule, see Section 5.5.

Aldopentoses have three chiral centers, which means that there are eight (2^3) possible aldopentoses (four pairs of enantiomers). Four of the possible aldopentoses are D sugars, while the other four are L sugars. Figure 24.3 shows the D sugars. D-Ribose is a key building block of RNA, as we will see in Section 24.10. D-Arabinose is produced by most plants, and D-xylose is found in wood.

FIGURE 24.3
The structures of the D-aldopentoses.

Aldohexoses

Aldohexoses have four chiral centers, giving rise to 2^4 (or 16) possible stereoisomers. These 16 stereoisomers can be grouped into eight pairs of enantiomers, where each pair consists of one D sugar and one L sugar. Since D sugars are observed in nature, let's focus on the D sugars. There are eight of them (Figure 24.4).

FIGURE 24.4
The structures of the D-aldohexoses.

Of the eight D aldohexoses, D-glucose is the most common and most important, and the rest of this chapter will focus primarily on D-glucose. Its structure should be at your fingertips.

Figure 24.5 summarizes the family of D aldoses discussed in this section. The family tree is constructed in the following way: Starting with D-glyceraldehyde, a new chiral center is inserted just below the carbonyl group, generating two possible aldotetroses. A new chiral center is then inserted just below the carbonyl group of each aldotetrose, generating four possible aldopentoses. In a similar way, each of the aldopentoses leads to two aldohexoses, giving a total of eight aldohexoses. Each compound in Figure 24.5 has a corresponding L enantiomer that is not shown.

FIGURE 24.5
A family tree of the D-aldoses that have between three and six carbon atoms.

24.4 Configuration of Ketoses

Figure 24.6 summarizes the family of D ketoses that have between three and six carbon atoms. This family tree is constructed in much the same way as the family tree of aldoses, beginning with dihydroxyacetone as the parent. However, because the carbonyl group is at C2 rather than

C1, ketoses have one less chiral center than aldoses of the same molecular formula. As a result, there are only four D ketohexoses, rather than eight. The most common naturally occurring ketose is D-fructose. Each compound in Figure 24.6 has a corresponding L enantiomer that is not shown.

FIGURE 24.6
A family tree of the D ketoses that have between three and six carbon atoms.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

24.7 Draw and name the enantiomer of D-fructose.

24.8 Which of the following terms best describes the relationship between D-fructose and D-glucose? Explain your choice.

(a) Enantiomers (b) Diastereomers (c) Constitutional isomers

24.5 Cyclic Structures of Monosaccharides

Cyclization of Hydroxyaldehydes

Recall from Section 19.5 (Mechanism 19.5) that an aldehyde can react with an alcohol in the presence of an acid catalyst to produce a hemiacetal.

We saw that the equilibrium does not favor formation of the hemiacetal. However, when the aldehyde group and the hydroxyl group are contained in the same molecule, an intramolecular process can occur to form a cyclic hemiacetal with a more favorable equilibrium constant.

Six-membered rings are relatively strain free, and the equilibrium favors formation of the cyclic hemiacetal. This type of reaction is characteristic of bifunctional compounds containing both a hydroxyl group and a carbonyl group (an aldehyde or ketone group). When drawing the hemiacetal of a hydroxyaldehyde or hydroxyketone, it is crucial to keep track of all carbon atoms. It is a common mistake to draw the hemiacetal with either too many or too few carbon atoms. The following exercises are designed to help you avoid those mistakes.

SKILLBUILDER

24.1 DRAWING THE CYCLIC HEMIACETAL OF A HYDROXYALDEHYDE

LEARN the skill

Draw the cyclic hemiacetal that is formed when the following hydroxyaldehyde undergoes cyclization under acidic conditions:

SOLUTION

This compound contains both a hydroxyl group and an aldehyde group, so it is expected to form a hemiacetal. We must first determine the size of the ring that is formed. In order to account for all carbon atoms and to avoid drawing an incorrect ring, it is best to assign numbers to the carbon atoms so we can keep track of them. Begin with the carbon atom of the aldehyde group and continue until reaching the carbon atom connected to the OH group.

STEP 1
Using a numbering system, determine the size of the ring that is formed.

For now, we will not focus on the methyl groups as we will account for them after drawing the proper size ring. In this case, there are four carbon atoms that will be incorporated into the ring. The ring is formed when the oxygen atom of the OH group attacks the carbonyl group, and as a result, the oxygen atom of the OH group must also be incorporated into the ring—that is, the ring will be comprised of four carbon atoms and one oxygen atom, generating a five-membered ring:

STEP 2
Draw the ring, making sure to incorporate an oxygen atom in the ring.

Notice that the first carbon atom (the C1 position) is connected to the oxygen atom of the ring as well as to the newly formed OH group. In other words, the hemiacetal group is located at C1. This numbering system not only helps with drawing the appropriate ring, but it also facilitates the proper placement of the substituents. In this case, there are two methyl groups, both attached to the C3 position.

STEP 3
Place the substituents.

PRACTICE the skill

24.9 Draw the cyclic hemiacetal that is formed when each of the following bifunctional compounds is treated with aqueous acid:

APPLY the skill

24.10 Identify the hydroxyaldehyde that will cyclize under acidic conditions to give the following hemiacetal:

24.11 The following compound has one aldehyde group and two OH groups. Under acidic conditions, either one of the OH groups can function as a nucleophile and attack the carbonyl group, giving rise to two possible ring sizes.

(a) Ignoring stereochemistry (for now), draw both possible rings.

(b) In Section 4.9, we discussed the ring strain associated with different size rings. Based on those concepts, predict which cyclic hemiacetal will be favored in this case.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 24.46, 24.47**

Pyranose Forms of Monosaccharides

We have seen that a compound containing both an OH group and an aldehyde group will undergo an intramolecular process to form a cyclic hemiacetal, with a favorable equilibrium constant. A similar equilibrium between open and closed forms is observed for carbohydrates. For example, D-glucose can exist in both open and closed forms. The following Haworth projections indicate the configuration at each chiral center:

LOOKING BACK
For an introduction to Haworth projections, see Section 2.6.

In the cyclic form, the ring is called a **pyranose ring**, named after pyran, a simple compound that possesses a six-membered ring with an oxygen atom incorporated in the ring. This equilibrium greatly favors formation of the cyclic hemiacetal. That is, D-glucose exists almost exclusively in the cyclic hemiacetal form called D-glucopyranose, and only a trace amount of the open-chain form is present at equilibrium.

When D-glucose is closed into a cyclic hemiacetal, two different stereoisomers of D-glucopyranose can be formed (Figure 24.7). The aldehydic carbon (C1) becomes a chiral center, and both configurations for that new chiral center are possible. The C1 position is called the **anomeric carbon**, and the stereoisomers are called **anomers**. The two anomers are designated as α-D-glucopyranose and β-D-glucopyranose. In the α **anomer**, the hydroxyl group at the anomeric position is *trans* to the CH_2OH group, while in the β **anomer**, the hydroxyl group is *cis* to the CH_2OH group (Figure 24.8). An equilibrium is established between α-D-glucopyranose and β-D-glucopyranose with the equilibrium favoring the β anomer (63% β and 37% α). The open-chain form exhibits only a minimal presence at equilibrium (<0.01%), but it is important nonetheless, because it serves as the intermediate for equilibration between the two anomers.

FIGURE 24.7
Formation of the two possible cyclic hemiacetals of D-glucose.

As we might expect, α-D-glucopyranose and β-D-glucopyranose have different physical properties because their relationship is diastereomeric. For example, compare the specific rotation for these two compounds:

When the pure α anomer is dissolved in water, it begins to equilibrate with the β anomer, resulting in a mixture that ultimately achieves the expected equilibrium concentrations. At first, the pure anomer exhibits a specific rotation of +112°, but as it equilibrates with the β anomer, the specific rotation changes until the equilibrium is established, and the specific rotation is measured to be +52.6°. A similar result is achieved when the pure β anomer is dissolved in water. At first, the pure anomer has a specific rotation of +18.7°, but as the mixture equilibrates, the specific rotation changes and

ultimately is measured to be +52.6°. This phenomenon is called **mutarotation**, a term commonly used to describe the fact that α and β anomers can equilibrate via the open-chain form. Mutarotation occurs more rapidly in the presence of catalytic acid or base.

FIGURE 24.8
The α and β anomers are distinguished based on the relative position of the OH group at the anomeric position and the CH_2OH group at C5.

It is not always possible to determine by inspection which pyranose form (α or β) will predominate. For D-glucose, the β form predominates once equilibrium has been achieved, while for D-mannose, the α form predominates at equilibrium.

SKILLBUILDER

24.2 DRAWING A HAWORTH PROJECTION OF AN ALDOHEXOSE IN THE PYRANOSE FORM

LEARN the skill

Draw the structure of α-D-galactopyranose.

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Draw the skeleton of a Haworth projection.

Analyze all parts of the name. This compound is D-galactose that has undergone cyclization to form an α-pyranose ring. Let's begin by drawing the skeleton of a pyranose ring.

When drawing a pyranose ring, the accepted convention is to place the oxygen atom in the back right position. Now we must account for all carbon atoms. A pyranose ring contains only five carbon atoms, but D-galactose has six carbon atoms.

The sixth carbon atom (C6) in D-galactose is a CH_2OH group, and it is connected to the C5 position. Therefore, we draw a CH_2OH group connected to the C5 position in the pyranose ring. The "D" indicates that the CH_2OH group must be in the up position in the pyranose ring:

D-Galactose

STEP 2
Draw the CH_2OH group.

STEP 3
Draw the OH group at the anomeric position.

That takes care of the configuration at one of the positions of the pyranose ring. Now let's focus on the remaining positions. The configuration at C1 (the anomeric carbon) is conveyed in the name of the pyranose ring form. The term *alpha* means that the OH group at the C1 position must be down (*trans* to the CH_2OH group).

The remaining chiral centers (C2, C3, and C4) are drawn using the following rule: Any OH groups on the right side of the Fischer projection of the open-chain form will be pointing

STEP 4
Draw the remaining groups.

down in the Haworth projection of the cyclic form, while any OH groups on the left side of the Fischer projection will be pointing up in the Haworth projection:

PRACTICE the skill

24.12 Draw a Haworth projection for each of the following compounds:

(a) β-D-Galactopyranose **(b)** α-D-Mannopyranose **(c)** α-D-Allopyranose
(d) β-D-Mannopyranose **(e)** β-D-Glucopyranose **(f)** α-D-Glucopyranose

24.13 Provide a complete name for the following compound:

APPLY the skill

24.14 Mutarotation causes the conversion of β-D-mannopyranose to α-D-mannopyranose. Using Haworth projections, draw the equilibrium between the two pyranose forms and the open-chain form of D-mannose.

24.15 When D-talose is dissolved in water, an equilibrium is established in which two pyranose forms are present. Draw both pyranose forms and name them.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 24.48a, 24.53b,c,d**

Three-Dimensional Representations of Pyranose Rings

We have seen that Haworth projections are often used for drawing the cyclic forms of D-glucose. While Haworth projections are extremely useful for showing configurations, they are not effective for communicating the conformation of a compound. A cyclic form of D-glucose will spend the majority of its time in a chair conformation.

LOOKING BACK
For a review of chair conformations and axial/equatorial positions, see Section 4.11.

When drawing either a Haworth projection or a chair conformation, the convention is to place the oxygen atom in the upper, rear-right position, as highlighted in red. Notice that in a cyclic form of D-glucose all substituents can occupy equatorial positions, which renders the compound particularly stable and explains why D-glucose is the most common naturally occurring monosaccharide.

SKILLBUILDER

24.3 DRAWING THE MORE STABLE CHAIR CONFORMATION OF A PYRANOSE RING

LEARN the skill

Draw the more stable chair conformation of α-D-galactopyranose.

SOLUTION

The first step is to draw the Haworth projection of the compound, which was done in the previous SkillBuilder:

STEP 1
Draw the Haworth projection.

This compound can adopt two different chair conformations, and we must determine which one is more stable. We begin by drawing one of the chair conformations. The oxygen atom occupies the upper, rear-right position:

STEP 2
Draw the skeleton of a chair conformation with an oxygen atom in the upper, rear-right position.

The following alternatives are not conventional for the reasons indicated:

Drawing the appropriate skeleton is critical for drawing the chair conformation properly. The next step is to draw all substituents on the chair using the skills we learned in SkillBuilders 4.12 and 4.13. Each substituent is labeled as UP or DOWN and then placed in the appropriate position on the chair conformation:

STEP 3
Label each substituent as UP or DOWN and draw each substituent on the chair.

This is one of the two chair conformations that the compound can adopt. Before drawing the ring flip to give the other chair conformation, let's first analyze this one. Specifically, we look at each substituent and determine whether it occupies an axial or equatorial position. In this case, two of the OH groups occupy axial positions and two occupy equatorial positions; the CH_2OH group occupies an equatorial position.

STEP 4
Verify that this chair conformation is the more stable chair conformation.

Recall that a ring flip converts all axial positions into equatorial positions and all equatorial positions into axial positions (see Section 4.10). Also recall that the more stable chair conformation will generally be the one in which the largest groups occupy equatorial positions. In this case, the CH_2OH is the largest group, so the most stable chair conformation will be the one in which this group occupies an equatorial position, as shown. The other chair conformation will be less stable, so it is not necessary to draw the ring flip. This is generally the case for D-aldohexoses.

PRACTICE the skill **24.16** Draw the more stable chair conformation for each of the following compounds:

(a) β-D-Galactopyranose **(b)** α-D-Glucopyranose **(c)** β-D-Glucopyranose

APPLY the skill

24.17 Draw the open-chain form of the following cyclic monosaccharide:

24.18 There are two chair conformations for β-D-glucopyranose. Draw the less stable chair conformation.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 24.60, 24.82**

Furanose Forms of Monosaccharides

As seen in SkillBuilder 24.1, hydroxyaldehydes can form five-membered cyclic hemiacetals.

Cyclic hemiacetal

In much the same way, many carbohydrates can also form five-membered rings, called **furanose** rings, named after furan, a simple compound that possesses a five-membered ring with an oxygen atom incorporated in the ring. As an example, D-fructose can form a furanose ring that results from the reaction between the carbonyl group and the hydroxyl group connected to C5.

D-Fructose

A furanose ring

D-Fructose can also cyclize to give pyranose forms that result from the reaction involving the hydroxyl group at C6.

D-Fructose

A pyranose ring

Therefore, D-fructose exists as an equilibrium between an open-chain form, two pyranose forms (α and β), and two furanose forms (α and β). When D-fructose is dissolved in water, the following equilibrium concentrations are observed: 70% β-pyranose, 2% α-pyranose, 23% β-furanose, 5% α-furanose, and 0.7% open chain. Despite the fact that the β-pyranose ring predominates at equilibrium as observed in the laboratory, it is the β-furanose form of D-fructose that participates in most biochemical pathways.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

24.19 Consider the structures of the following two D-aldotetroses:

D-Erythrose D-Threose

Each of these compounds exists as a furanose ring, which is formed when the OH at C4 attacks the aldehyde group. Draw each of the following furanose rings:

(a) α-D-Erythrofuranose (b) β-D-Erythrofuranose
(c) α-D-Threofuranose (d) β-D-Threofuranose

24.20 Draw a mechanism for the acid-catalyzed cyclization of L-threose to give β-L-threofuranose. (**Hint:** You may want to first review the mechanism for acid-catalyzed hemiacetal formation, Mechanism 19.5.)

24.21 Draw a mechanism for the acid-catalyzed cyclization of D-fructose to give β-D-fructofuranose.

24.22 Draw the open-chain form of the carbohydrate that can undergo acid-catalyzed cyclization to produce α-D-fructopyranose.

24.6 Reactions of Monosaccharides

Ester and Ether Formation

Monosaccharides are highly soluble in water (due to the presence of many hydroxyl groups) and are generally insoluble in most organic solvents. This property makes them difficult to purify by conventional methods. However, the ester derivatives of monosaccharides are soluble in most organic solvents and are easily purified. Monosaccharides are converted into their ester derivatives when treated with an excess of acid chloride or acid anhydride in the presence of a base, such as pyridine. Under these conditions, all five hydroxyl groups of β-D-glucopyranose are converted into ester groups.

β-D-Glucopyranose Penta-O-acetyl-β-D-glucopyranose

Monosaccharides can also be converted into their ether derivatives via the Williamson ether synthesis. As discussed in Section 13.5, this process generally involves treating an alcohol with a strong base to form an alkoxide ion followed by treatment with an alkyl halide (an S_N2 process). When dealing with monosaccharides, a strong base cannot be used, for reasons that we will discuss later, and instead, a mild base such as silver oxide is used. Under these conditions, all five hydroxyl groups of β-D-glucopyranose are converted into ether groups.

β-D-Glucopyranose β-D-Glucopyranose pentamethyl ether

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

24.23 Draw the product obtained when each of the following compounds is treated with acetic anhydride in the presence of pyridine:

(a) α-D-Galactopyranose (b) α-D-Glucopyranose
(c) β-D-Galactopyranose

24.24 Draw the product obtained when each of the compounds from the previous problem is treated with methyl iodide in the presence of silver oxide (Ag_2O).

Glycoside Formation

Recall from Section 19.5 that a hemiacetal will react with an alcohol in the presence of an acid catalyst to produce an acetal.

As mentioned earlier in Section 24.5, monosaccharides exist primarily as cyclic hemiacetals; they are therefore converted into acetals when treated with an alcohol under acid-catalyzed conditions. The acetal products obtained are called **glycosides**.

Glycosides are named by placing the alkyl group as a prefix and the term *-oside* as a suffix. During glycoside formation, only the anomeric hydroxyl group is replaced. This is best explained by exploring a mechanism for glycoside formation, which is directly analogous to the mechanism of acetal formation presented in Section 19.5. The anomeric hydroxyl group is protonated, followed by loss of water to generate a carbocation.

Notice that the carbocation intermediate is resonance stabilized. This stabilization only occurs when the reaction takes place at the anomeric position. The carbocation intermediate is then attacked by the alcohol, followed by loss of a proton to generate the product.

This mechanism shows formation of the β anomer. The α anomer is also observed, because the alcohol can attack the carbocation from the other face of the planar intermediate.

The product distribution is independent of the identity of the starting anomer—that is, α-D-glucopyranose and β-D-glucopyranose each yield the same ratio of anomeric glycosides when treated with an alcohol in acid-catalyzed conditions. Once isolated, the glycoside products are stable under neutral or basic conditions. However, upon treatment with aqueous acid, they are readily converted back to a hemiacetal.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

24.25 When α-D-galactopyranose is treated with ethanol in the presence of an acid catalyst, such as HCl, two products are formed. Draw both products and account for their formation with a mechanism.

24.26 Methyl α-D-glucopyranoside is a stable compound that does not undergo mutarotation under neutral or basic conditions. However, when subjected to acidic conditions, an equilibrium is established consisting of both methyl α-D-glucopyranoside and methyl β-D-glucopyranoside. Draw a mechanism that accounts for this observation.

Epimerization

When D-glucose is exposed to strongly basic conditions, it is converted into a mixture containing both D-glucose and D-mannose via the following process:

D-Glucose first undergoes base-catalyzed tautomerization to form an enediol. This intermediate can undergo tautomerization once again to revert back to the aldose, but in the process, the configuration at C2 is lost, leading to a mixture of D-glucose and D-mannose. D-Glucose and D-mannose are said to be **epimers** because they are diastereomers that differ from each other in the configuration of only one chiral center. When either pure D-glucose or pure D-mannose is treated with a strong base, epimerization occurs, giving a mixture containing both D-glucose and D-mannose. For this reason, chemists generally avoid exposing carbohydrates to strongly basic conditions.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

24.27 Draw and name the structure of the aldohexose that is epimeric with D-glucose at each of the following positions:

(a) C2 (b) C3 (c) C4

Reduction of Monosaccharides

The carbonyl group of an aldose or ketose can be reduced upon treatment with sodium borohydride to yield a product called an **alditol**. Consider, for example, the reduction of D-glucose.

The starting monosaccharide exists primarily as a hemiacetal, which does not react with sodium borohydride because it lacks a carbonyl group. However, a small amount of the open-chain form is present at equilibrium, and it is that form that reacts with sodium borohydride to produce an alditol. As the open-chain form of glucose is converted into the alditol, the equilibrium is perturbed. According to

Le Châtelier's principle, this causes more of the glucose molecules to adopt an open-chain form, which then also undergo reduction. This process continues until nearly all of the glucose molecules have been reduced to D-glucitol. D-Glucitol is found in many fruits and berries. It is commonly referred to as D-sorbitol, or just sorbitol, and is often used as a sugar substitute in processed foods.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

24.28 The same product is obtained when either D-altrose or D-talose is treated with sodium borohydride in the presence of water. Explain this observation.

24.29 The same product is obtained when either D-allose or L-allose is treated with sodium borohydride in the presence of water. Explain this observation.

24.30 Of the eight D-aldohexoses, only two of them form optically inactive alditols when treated with sodium borohydride in the presence of water. Identify these two aldohexoses and explain why their alditols are optically inactive.

Oxidation of Monosaccharides

When treated with a suitable oxidizing agent, the aldehyde group of an aldose can be oxidized to yield a compound called an **aldonic acid**.

This reaction is observed for a wide variety of oxidizing agents. When a high yield is desired, a useful oxidizing agent is an aqueous solution of bromine buffered to a pH of 6. For example:

The starting monosaccharide exists primarily as a hemiacetal, and the OH groups are not oxidized by this mild oxidizing agent. However, a small amount of the open-chain form is present at equilibrium, and it is the aldehyde group of the open-chain form that reacts with the oxidizing agent to produce an aldonic acid. As the open-chain form of glucose is converted into the aldonic acid, the equilibrium is perturbed. This causes more of the glucose molecules to adopt an open-chain form, which then undergo oxidation, a process that continues until nearly all of the glucose molecules have been oxidized.

The oxidizing agent above will oxidize aldoses but does not react with ketoses. A ketose lacks the aldehydic hydrogen that is characteristic of an aldose.

It is true that ketoses slowly equilibrate with aldoses via a process that is similar to epimerization, and we might therefore expect that a small concentration of the ketose would be converted into an aldose, which would then undergo oxidation, providing a pathway for the ketose to be oxidized as well. However, the mildly acidic conditions employed (a buffered solution of pH = 6) prevent isomerization from occurring. Under these conditions, a ketose does not undergo isomerization to give an

aldose at an appreciable rate, and ketoses are therefore not oxidized by a buffered solution of aqueous bromine. This, in fact, provides a method for distinguishing between aldoses and ketoses. In contrast, there are other oxidizing agents that employ conditions under which isomerization can occur. These alternative reagents can oxidize ketoses as well as aldoses. Examples of such oxidizing agents include the Tollens' reagent (Ag^+ in aqueous ammonia), Fehling's reagent (Cu^{2+} in aqueous sodium tartrate), and Benedict's reagent (Cu^{2+} in aqueous sodium citrate). All three can be used as chemical tests for the presence of an aldose or ketose.

The Tollens' reagent indicates the presence of an aldose or ketose when the surface of the reaction flask is coated with metallic silver (looking like a mirror), while the other two tests indicate the presence of an aldose or ketose with the formation of a reddish precipitate (Cu_2O). These three reactions are used only as tests to obtain structural information about unknown carbohydrates but are not efficient as preparative methods when sufficient quantities of the aldonic acid are desired. A carbohydrate that tests positively for any of these three tests is said to be a **reducing sugar** because the carbohydrate can reduce the oxidizing agent.

These chemical tests are useful for distinguishing between aldoses or ketoses and their glycosides. While aldoses and ketoses are reducing sugars, their corresponding glycosides are not. Glycosides do not exhibit ring-opening reactions under neutral or basic conditions and therefore do not produce even small quantities of an open-chain form containing an aldehyde group. As such they are not oxidized by any of the oxidizing agents discussed.

In the presence of a stronger oxidizing agent, such as HNO_3, the primary hydroxyl group is also oxidized, giving a dicarboxylic acid, called an **aldaric acid**. This reaction involves the oxidation of both of the highlighted functional groups.

β-D-Glucopyranose D-Glucose D-Glucaric acid (an aldaric acid)

SKILLBUILDER

24.4 IDENTIFYING A REDUCING SUGAR

LEARN the skill

Identify whether the following compound is a reducing sugar:

SOLUTION

Begin by identifying the anomeric position:

STEP 1
Identify the anomeric position.

Now determine whether this compound is a hemiacetal or an acetal. Specifically, look to see if the group attached to the anomeric position is a hydroxy group (OH) or an alkoxy group (OR). If it is a hydroxy group, then the compound is a hemiacetal and will be a reducing

sugar. If it is an alkoxy group, then the compound is an acetal and will not be a reducing sugar. In this case, the group attached to the anomeric position is a methoxy group. Therefore, this compound is an acetal and is not a reducing sugar.

STEP 2
Determine if the group at the anomeric position is a hydroxy group or alkoxy group.

PRACTICE the skill **24.31** Determine whether or not each of the following compounds is a reducing sugar:

APPLY the skill **24.32** Draw and name the product obtained when each of the following compounds is treated with aqueous bromine (at pH = 6):

(a) α-D-Galactopyranose **(b)** β-D-Galactopyranose

(c) α-D-Glucopyranose **(d)** β-D-Glucopyranose

24.33 Do you expect β-D-glucopyranose pentamethyl ether to be a reducing sugar? Explain your reasoning.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 24.69, 24.76a**

Chain Lengthening: The Kiliani–Fischer Synthesis

In 1886, Heinrich Kiliani (University of Freiburg, Germany) observed that an aldose will react with HCN to form a pair of stereoisomeric cyanohydrins.

This process occurs via a nucleophilic acyl addition. A mechanism for cyanohydrin formation was discussed in Section 19.10. Building on Kiliani's observation, Emil Fischer (the same Fischer who gave us Fischer projections) then devised a multistep method for converting a cyano group to an aldehyde.

Overall, the net result is the ability to lengthen the chain of a carbohydrate by one carbon atom. For example, an aldopentose can be converted into an aldohexose using this process, called the **Kiliani–Fischer synthesis**. A more modern version of the Kiliani–Fischer synthesis enables the conversion of a cyano group into an aldehyde in just one step (rather than several steps). This is accomplished via hydrogenation of the cyano group using a poisoned catalyst in an aqueous solution. Under these conditions, the cyano group is reduced to give an imine, which then undergoes hydrolysis to give an aldehyde.

As an example of this process, consider the outcome achieved when the modern version of the Kiliani–Fischer synthesis is performed with D-arabinose as the starting material:

D-Arabinose has five carbon atoms (an aldopentose), and the products each have six carbon atoms (aldohexoses). In the process, C1 of the starting material is transformed into C2 in the products. Notice that two products are formed because the first step of the process is not stereoselective; that is, the new chiral center (C2) can have either configuration, giving D-glucose and D-mannose, which are C2 epimers.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

24.34 Draw and name the pair of epimers formed when the following aldopentoses undergo a Kiliani–Fischer chain-lengthening process:

(a) D-Ribose (b) D-Xylose (c) D-Lyxose

24.35 Identify the reagents you would use to convert D-erythrose (Problem 24.22) into D-ribose. What other product is also formed in this process?

Chain Shortening: The Wohl Degradation

The **Wohl degradation** is the reverse of the Kiliani–Fischer synthesis and involves the removal of a carbon atom from an aldose. The aldehyde group is first converted to a cyanohydrin, followed by loss of HCN in the presence of a base.

Overall, the net result is the ability to shorten a carbohydrate chain by one carbon atom. Conversion of the aldehyde into a cyano group is accomplished via oxime formation (as seen in Section 19.6) followed by dehydration. The resulting cyanohydrin then loses HCN when treated with a strong base to afford the new carbohydrate that has one less carbon atom than the starting carbohydrate:

This chain reduction process generates only one product, in contrast with chain lengthening (Kiliani–Fischer), which gives two products. The yields of the Wohl degradation are generally not very high, but this process and others like it were incredibly useful during early investigations aimed at elucidating the structures of monosaccharides.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

24.36 Draw and name the two aldohexoses that can be converted into D-ribose (Problem 24.34a) using a Wohl degradation.

24.37 Identify the reagents you would use to convert D-ribose into D-erythrose (Problem 24.22).

24.38 When D-glucose undergoes a Wohl degradation followed by a Kiliani–Fischer chain-lengthening process, a mixture of two epimeric products is obtained. Identify both epimers.

24.7 Disaccharides

Maltose

Disaccharides are carbohydrates comprised of two monosaccharide units joined via a glycosidic linkage between the anomeric carbon of one monosaccharide and a hydroxyl group of the other monosaccharide. For example, consider the structure of maltose (shown at left).

Maltose is obtained from the hydrolysis of starch. It is comprised of two α-D-glucopyranose units joined between the anomeric carbon (C1) of one glucopyranose unit and the OH at C4 of the other glucopyranose unit. This type of linkage is called a 1→4 link. Two monosaccharides can link together in a variety of ways, but the 1→4 link is especially common.

Maltose undergoes mutarotation, because one of the rings (bottom right) is a hemiacetal. As a result, the anomeric position of that ring is capable of opening and closing, allowing for equilibration between the two possible anomers.

These anomers are interchanged as a result of mutarotation, which occurs more rapidly in the presence of catalytic acid or base.

Maltose is also a reducing sugar because one of the rings is a hemiacetal and exists in equilibrium with the open-chain form.

In the presence of an oxidizing agent, the aldehyde group of the open-chain form is oxidized to give an aldonic acid.

SKILLBUILDER

24.5 DETERMINING WHETHER A DISACCHARIDE IS A REDUCING SUGAR

LEARN the skill

Determine whether lactose is a reducing sugar:

Lactose

SOLUTION

Begin by identifying the anomeric carbon on each ring. Remember the anomeric position of a ring is the position that is connected to two oxygen atoms.

STEP 1
Identify the anomeric position on each ring.

STEP 2
Determine if the group at each anomeric position is a hydroxy group or alkoxy group.

Now determine whether either of these positions is a hemiacetal. Specifically, identify whether the group attached to each anomeric position is a hydroxy group (OH) or an alkoxy group (OR). If even one of the anomeric positions has an OH group, then the compound has a hemiacetal group and will be a reducing sugar. If neither of the anomeric positions has an OH group, then the compound lacks a hemiacetal group and will not be a reducing sugar. In this case, one of the anomeric positions has an OH group. Therefore, this compound is a reducing sugar.

PRACTICE the skill

24.39 Determine whether or not each of the following disaccharides is a reducing sugar:

(a)

(b)

(c)

Sucrose

APPLY the skill

24.40 Draw the structure of the product obtained when the following disaccharide is treated with $NaBH_4$ in methanol:

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problem 24.73**

Cellobiose

Another example of a disaccharide is cellobiose, which is obtained from the hydrolysis of cellulose. It is comprised of two D-glucopyranose units joined by a beta-1,4 link.

Cellobiose
(a β-1,4-glycoside)

This compound is very similar in structure to maltose, only it is comprised of β-D-glucopyranose units rather than α-D-glucopyranose units. Much like maltose, cellobiose also exhibits mutarotation and is a reducing sugar, because the ring on the right is a hemiacetal and is therefore capable of opening and closing.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

24.41 Predict the product that is obtained when cellobiose is treated with each of the following reagents:

(a) $NaBH_4$, H_2O (b) Br_2, H_2O (pH = 6) (c) CH_3OH, HCl (d) Ac_2O, pyridine

Lactose

Lactose, commonly called milk sugar, is a naturally occurring disaccharide found in milk. Unlike maltose or cellobiose, lactose is comprised of two different monosaccharides—galactose and glucose.

The two monosaccharide units are joined by a beta-1,4 link, between C1 of galactose and C4 of glucose. Like the other disaccharides we have seen so far, lactose also exhibits mutarotation and is a reducing sugar, because the ring on the bottom right is a hemiacetal and is therefore capable of opening and closing.

Lactose
(a β-1,4-glycoside)

BioLinks | Lactose Intolerance

In our bodies, an enzyme called lactase (β-galactosidase) catalyzes the hydrolysis of lactose to form glucose and galactose.

The galactose produced in this process is subsequently converted by the liver into additional glucose, which can then be further metabolized to produce energy. Many people do not produce a sufficient amount of lactase and are incapable of hydrolyzing large quantities of lactose. Instead, lactose accumulates and is ultimately broken down into CO_2 and H_2 by bacteria present in the intestines. Bacterial degradation of lactose produces several by-products, including lactic acid.

The buildup of lactic acid and other acidic by-products causes cramps, nausea, and diarrhea. This condition is called lactose intolerance, and it is estimated that between 30 and 50 million Americans are lactose intolerant. Different ethnic and racial groups are affected to different extents, with the highest incidence of lactose intolerance occurring among Asians and the lowest incidence occurring among Europeans.

Lactose intolerance develops with time. Lactase production begins to decline for most children at about age two, although many people do not experience symptoms of lactose intolerance until later in life. It is estimated that 75% of the adult population worldwide will develop lactose intolerance. This condition also affects other species, including dogs and cats, both of which are particularly susceptible to developing lactose intolerance.

Lactose intolerance is easily treated through a controlled diet that minimizes the intake of food products containing lactose. Several dairy products are produced via processes that remove the lactose, and these products are marketed as being "lactose free." In addition, the enzyme lactase is available in tablet form without a prescription and can be taken prior to eating any products containing lactose.

Donald Erickson/Getty Images

Sucrose

Sucrose, commonly referred to as table sugar, is a disaccharide comprised of glucose and fructose linked at C1 of glucose and C2 of fructose. Hydrolysis of sucrose yields glucose and fructose. Honeybees have enzymes that catalyze this hydrolysis, allowing them to convert sucrose into honey, which is primarily a mixture of sucrose, glucose, and fructose. Honey is sweeter than table sugar, because fructose is sweeter than sucrose.

Unlike the other disaccharides we have seen thus far, sucrose is not a reducing sugar and does not undergo mutarotation. This can be explained by noting that sucrose is comprised of two units that are linked to each other via their anomeric positions. As such, neither unit has a hemiacetal group and neither unit is capable of adopting an open-chain form.

WorldLinks Artificial Sweeteners

A variety of health problems have been associated with excessive consumption of sugar, including diabetes and tooth decay. These issues, together with the desire of many people to reduce their caloric intake, have fueled the development of many artificial sweeteners, such as the following compounds.

Saccharin

Aspartame

Neotame

Steviol

An example stevioside

Acesulfame K

Sucralose

Saccharin (sold under the trade name Sweet 'n Low) is the oldest known artificial sweetener. It was discovered by accident in 1879 and was originally used by people with diabetes as an alternative to sucrose. In the 1970s some studies suggested that it might be carcinogenic. Extensive research since then has indicated that it is safe for consumption. Nevertheless, due to its metallic aftertaste, it has been largely replaced by many of the other artificial sweeteners on the market.

Aspartame (sold under the trade names NutraSweet and Equal) was approved by the FDA in 1981 and has been widely used in soft drinks ever since. It is about 200 times sweeter than sucrose. People with a condition called *phenylketonuria* are incapable of fully metabolizing aspartame and must avoid consuming this compound, as discussed in Problem 20.57.

There has been a lot of controversy about the widespread use of aspartame, because the methyl ester in aspartame is hydrolyzed in the body producing methanol, which in turn is metabolized into potentially toxic formaldehyde and formic acid. The manufacturer's response is that this is not a cause for concern because the actual amount of methanol released is extremely small, and in fact is comparable to the amount of methanol released from hydrolysis of methyl esters found in fruit juices, such as orange juice.

A derivative of aspartame called Neotame was approved by the FDA in 2001 and is about 10,000 times sweeter than sucrose. Neotame must also be avoided by people with phenylketonuria.

Acesulfame potassium, also called acesulfame K, was approved by the FDA in 1998 for use in beverages and is now commonly blended with aspartame in soft drinks. The mixture of aspartame and acesulfame K is reputed to have less of a bitter aftertaste than either compound alone.

Among the common artificial sweeteners, only sucralose and stevia have structures that resemble a carbohydrate. Sucralose is 600 times sweeter than sucrose and is in fact prepared from sucrose, whereby three of the hydroxyl groups are replaced with chlorine atoms. The presence of the chlorine atoms prevents the body from effectively metabolizing the compound and releasing its energy content. Sucralose is especially popular for use in baked goods, because it does not decompose upon heating, as is the case for many of the other artificial sweeteners.

Stevia is a noncaloric sweetener that has become popular in the U.S. in the last 10 years. It is a mixture of molecules obtained from the South American herb, *Stevia rebaudiana*. This mixture contains the compound steviol covalently bonded to several glucose molecules to form a stevioside (an example of a stevioside is shown). The glucose units of the steviosides bind to taste bud receptors in the tongue, and stevia is approximately 200 times sweeter than sucrose. Like sucralose, stevia is stable to heat and to a wide range of pHs, so it can be added to baked goods and to acidic juices. The steviosides are not metabolized

by humans' pancreatic enzymes and are not absorbed into the bloodstream from the small intestine, so there is no rise in blood glucose and no caloric value to the steviosides. Bacteria in the colon have a more versatile set of enzymes and metabolize the steviosides into steviol and glucose. The glucose molecules are utilized by the bacteria for energy, and the steviol is excreted in the feces (stools).

Many of the artificial sweeteners on the market were discovered by accident. Nevertheless, extensive ongoing research is aimed at finding new sweeteners with even better properties (none of the artificial sweeteners taste exactly like sucrose, to the dismay of many consumers). Over the decades to come, we are likely to see many other sugar substitutes enter the market.

24.8 Polysaccharides

Cellulose

Polysaccharides are polymers made up of repeating monosaccharide units linked together by glycoside bonds. For example, cellulose is comprised of several thousand D-glucose units linked by beta-1,4 glycoside bonds.

Cellulose
[a β-1,4 *O*-(glucopyranoside) polymer]

The average cellulose strand is comprised of approximately 7,000 glucose units but can be as large as 12,000 units. The strands of the polymer interact with each other via hydrogen bonding, providing structural rigidity for trees and plants. Wood is comprised of 30–40% cellulose, and cotton is comprised of 90% cellulose.

Starch

Starch is the major component of many of the foods that we eat, including potatoes, corn, and cereal grain. Starch can be separated into two components: amylose, which is insoluble in cold water, and amylopectin, which is soluble in cold water. Amylose is comprised of glucose units linked by 1→4 α-glycoside bonds.

Amylose
[an α-1,4 *O*-(glucopyranoside) polymer]

A strand of amylose is linear, like cellulose, but is comprised of repeating α-D-glucopyranose units rather than β-D-glucopyranose units. Amylose accounts for approximately 20% of starch. The

remaining 80% of starch is amylopectin, which is similar to amylose but also contains alpha-1,6 glycoside branches approximately every 25 glucose units:

Starch is digested by glycosidase enzymes that catalyze its hydrolysis, releasing individual molecules of glucose. These enzymes are highly selective in their activity and will not catalyze the hydrolysis of cellulose. There are organisms that have enzymes that can catalyze the hydrolysis of cellulose, but human beings lack those enzymes, which is why we can eat corn and potatoes but we cannot eat grass. Cows are also incapable of synthesizing the enzymes necessary to digest cellulose; however, the stomachs of cows contain microorganisms that do produce enzymes necessary to hydrolyze cellulose. As a result, cows are able to digest grass.

Glycogen

Glucose serves as a fuel to provide the energy needs for both plants and animals. Glucose molecules not required for immediate energy needs are stored in the form of a polymer. Plants store excess glucose in the form of starch, while animals store excess glucose in the form of glycogen. Glycogen is similar in structure to amylopectin (the major component of starch), but its polymer chain exhibits more regular branching. While amylopectin has branches approximately every 25 glucose units, glycogen has branches approximately every 10 glucose units. Individual glycogen molecules can contain up to 100,000 glucose units.

24.9 Amino Sugars

Amino sugars are carbohydrate derivatives in which an OH group has been replaced with an amino group. Amino sugars are quite common in nature and serve as important building blocks for biological polymers. One such example is β-D-glucosamine, which is biosynthesized from D-glucose:

β-D-Glucosamine
(an amino sugar)

The *N*-acetyl derivative of this amino sugar serves as the repeating monosaccharide unit in the important biopolymer called chitin (pronounced "kie-tin"):

Chitin is similar in structure to cellulose, but the amide groups allow for more significant hydrogen bonding between neighboring strands, which renders the polymer even stronger than cellulose (wood). Chitin is the material used in the exoskeletons of arthropods and insects, and over a trillion pounds of this polymer are produced by living organisms each year.

24.10 *N*-Glycosides

When treated with an amine in the presence of an acid catalyst, monosaccharides are converted into their corresponding ***N*-glycosides**:

This process likely occurs via a mechanism that is analogous to the mechanism that was presented for glycoside formation. Two monosaccharides, in particular, D-ribose and 2-deoxy-D-ribose, form especially important *N*-glycosides.

These two monosaccharides serve as the building blocks for RNA and DNA, respectively. These compounds are biologically coupled with certain nitrogen heterocycles (called bases) to yield special *N*-glycosides, called **nucleosides**. In each case, the β anomers are formed exclusively.

BioLinks | Aminoglycoside Antibiotics

Aminoglycoside antibiotics are antibiotic compounds that contain both an amino sugar and a glycosidic linkage. The first known example, called streptomycin, was isolated in 1944 from the genus *Streptomyces*:

Notice that the structure of streptomycin contains an amino sugar (highlighted). Interestingly, this amino hexose is a derivative of L-glucosamine, rather than D-glucosamine, which indicates that *Streptomyces* has developed a pathway for synthesizing L-glucose; this is somewhat unusual, although there are other known examples of L sugars in nature.

Many other antibiotic compounds have also been isolated from the genus *Streptomyces*, all of which are closely related in structure to streptomycin. At least four of them are currently in use in the United States: neomycin, gentamicin, tobramycin, and netilmicin. All of these compounds exhibit at least one aminohexose in their structure, and extensive research on the relationship between structure and activity indicates that at least one amino sugar is necessary for antibiotic activity. As shown, neomycin contains two amino sugars. As mentioned in the chapter opener, neomycin is one of the three active ingredients in Neosporin.

This family of antibiotics (aminoglycoside antibiotics) are used primarily topically, for external infections. If taken orally, all of these compounds can cause kidney damage and hearing loss, as well as other adverse effects.

Many studies have been undertaken to elucidate the mechanism of antibiotic action of aminoglycosides. It is believed that all of these compounds act by inhibiting protein synthesis in bacteria. In other words, these compounds prevent bacteria from synthesizing the enzymes that are necessary for proper functioning. The development of strains of antibiotic-resistant bacteria is a very serious problem in the field of medicine. The aminoglycosides are no exception to this problem. As clinical use of aminoglycoside antibiotics became more popular, some strains of bacteria have become resistant to them. Specifically, many strains of bacteria have developed the ability to produce enzymes that catalyze the modification of hydroxyl and amino groups of these antibiotics. Much of the current research on aminoglycoside antibiotics is directed toward designing structures that are less susceptible to inactivation by bacterial enzymes.

Carlos Caetano/Shutterstock

DNA

Four kinds of heterocyclic amines are found as bases in DNA: cytosine (C), thymine (T), adenine (A), and guanine (G):

Cytosine C | Thymine T | Adenine A | Guanine G

Each of these four bases can couple to 2-deoxyribose, giving rise to four possible deoxyribonucleosides (Figure 24.9).

FIGURE 24.9
Structures of the four naturally occurring deoxyribonucleosides present in DNA.

Each of these four nucleosides can then be coupled to a phosphate group, giving compounds called **nucleotides** (rather than nucleosides). One of the four possible deoxyribonucleotides is shown at right.

A deoxyribonucleotide (deoxycytidine monophosphate)

The difference between a nucleoside and a nucleotide is the presence of a phosphate group. Deoxyribonucleotides are comprised of three parts: deoxyribose, a nitrogen-containing base, and a phosphate group. When linked together, they serve as the building blocks of DNA (Figure 24.10).

FIGURE 24.10
A segment of DNA, consisting of deoxynucleotides linked together in a polymer.

The segment of DNA in Figure 24.10 shows nucleotides linked together in a polymer, or **polynucleotide**. Notice that each sugar is connected to two phosphate groups and serves as the backbone for DNA. The familiar double-helix form of DNA is formed from two polynucleotide strands twisted into a shape that resembles a spiral ladder (Figure 24.11). The sugar-phosphate backbone is

FIGURE 24.11
Two illustrations of the double-helix structure of DNA. Left, a structure showing the identity of the individual bases. Right, a color-coded space-filling model of DNA.

represented in the figure as -P-S-P-S- on the two purple ribbons. The rungs of the ladder are hydrogen bonds between the bases, which interact with each other in pairs. As shown in Figure 24.12, cytosine (C) forms hydrogen bonds with guanine (G), while adenine (A) forms hydrogen bonds with thymine (T). The two strands of the spiral ladder are therefore complementary strands. They can be separated from each other much the way a zipper can be opened. DNA encodes all of our genetic information and serves as a template for assembling RNA, as we will now describe.

FIGURE 24.12
The hydrogen-bonding interactions that occur between complementary base pairs in DNA.

RNA

A strand of RNA is very similar in structure to a single strand of DNA. Both are comprised of repeating nucleotide units where each unit consists of a sugar, a phosphate, and a base. There are two important differences between DNA and RNA: (1) the sugar in DNA is D-deoxyribose while the sugar in RNA is D-ribose and (2) in place of the thymine found in DNA, RNA contains a base called uracil (U). The difference between thymine and uracil is that thymine contains a methyl group that is lacking in uracil. Like thymine, uracil forms hydrogen bonds with adenine (A).

The four bases from which RNA is comprised are C, G, A, and U, giving rise to four possible nucleosides (Figure 24.13). Each of these nucleosides is coupled with a phosphate group, giving rise to four possible nucleotides that are the building blocks of RNA. A segment of RNA is shown in Figure 24.14. RNA directs the assembly of the proteins and enzymes that are used to catalyze the chemical reactions occurring in cells. Proteins and enzymes are the subjects of Chapter 26.

FIGURE 24.13
Structures of the four naturally occurring ribonucleosides present in RNA.

FIGURE 24.14
A segment of RNA, consisting of nucleotides linked together in a polymer.

BioLinks | Erythromycin Biosynthesis

The genetic code (DNA) of all living things, including bacteria and fungi, is a blueprint for the biosynthesis of a wide variety of structurally complex compounds with a wide variety of functions. Some of these compounds can have powerful medicinal applications, as demonstrated by Alexander Fleming's discovery of penicillin in 1928. That discovery fueled an intensive search for other antibiotic compounds produced by microorganisms. Many such compounds have been discovered, including the broad-spectrum antibiotic erythromycin, identified in the 1950s.

Erythromycin

Erythromycin is effective against certain kinds of bacteria, including *Staphylococcus aureus* and *Streptococcus pneumonia*, two pathogenic bacteria responsible for numerous infections in humans. Erythromycin is produced by fermentation cultures of the bacterium *Saccharopolyspora erythraea*, and strains of this organism are still used today for the large-scale industrial production of erythromycin.

Erythromycin is one member of a class of compounds called *macrolide* antibiotics, so named because of the presence of a large ring that forms the central part of their structures. Attached to the central macrolide structure of erythromycin are two carbohydrate rings, which are believed to be essential for its antibiotic activity. Erythromycin functions by inhibiting the formation of proteins essential for the survival of the bacteria.

Much work has been done to understand how erythromycin is produced by *S. erythraea*. One of the most exciting developments has been the complete sequencing of the genes in *S. erythraea* that are responsible for erythromycin biosynthesis. By introducing specific modifications to those genes, scientists have created modified bacteria that produce analogues of erythromycin that might also have potent antibiotic properties. Examples (shown on the next page) include the introduction of additional carbon atoms (analogue **1**) or an aromatic ring (analogue **2**) or even a halogen (analogue **3**). These derivatives, and many others produced in a similar manner, are being investigated in the hopes of finding new antibiotic compounds that may be more potent than erythromycin. In other words, scientists have learned how to use bacteria as miniature production facilities for compounds that would otherwise be very difficult to prepare in the laboratory. Modified bacteria can be used to achieve the biosynthesis of complex structures that would take synthetic organic chemists years to make through conventional synthetic techniques.

1

2

3

REVIEW OF REACTIONS

Hemiacetal Formation

Pyranose Rings

D-Glucose

A pyranose ring

Furanose Rings

Reactions of Monosaccharides

1. Acetylation
2. Alkylation
3. Glycoside formation
4. Reduction
5. Oxidation to an aldonic acid
6. Oxidation to an aldaric acid

Chain Lengthening and Chain Shortening

REVIEW OF CONCEPTS AND VOCABULARY

SECTION 24.1

- **Carbohydrates** are polyhydroxy aldehydes or ketones.
- In nature, carbohydrates are used for energy storage and structural rigidity.

SECTION 24.2

- Simple sugars are called **monosaccharides** and are generally classified as **aldoses** and **ketoses.**
- Aldoses and ketoses are further classified according to the number of carbon atoms they contain.
- (+)-Glyceraldehyde, called D-glyceraldehyde, is abundant in nature, but its enantiomer is not.
- For all **D sugars,** the chiral center farthest from the carbonyl group has the *R* configuration.
- An **L sugar** is the enantiomer of the corresponding D sugar and is not necessarily levorotatory.

SECTION 24.3

- There are two D aldotetroses called D-erythrose and D-threose.
- There are four D aldopentoses called D-ribose, D-arabinose, D-xylose, and D-lyxose.
- There are eight D aldohexoses, of which D-glucose is the most abundant in nature.

SECTION 24.4

- There is one D ketotetrose called D-erythrulose.
- There are two D ketopentoses called D-ribulose and D-xylulose.
- There are four D ketohexoses called D-psicose, D-fructose, D-sorbose, and D-tagatose.

SECTION 24.5

- Aldohexoses can form cyclic hemiacetals that exhibit a **pyranose ring**.
- Cyclization produces two stereoisomeric hemiacetals, called **anomers.** The newly created chiral center is called the **anomeric carbon.**
- In the α **anomer** the hydroxyl group at the anomeric position is *trans* to the CH_2OH group, while in the β **anomer** the hydroxyl group is *cis* to the CH_2OH group.
- The open-chain form exhibits only a minimal presence at equilibrium.
- Anomers equilibrate by a process called **mutarotation**, which is catalyzed by either acid or base.
- Some carbohydrates, such as D-fructose, can also form five-membered rings, called **furanose** rings.

SECTION 24.6

- Monosaccharides are converted into their ester derivatives when treated with excess acid chloride or anhydride.
- Monosaccharides are converted into their ether derivatives when treated with excess alkyl halide and silver oxide.
- When treated with an alcohol under acid-catalyzed conditions, monosaccharides are converted into acetals, called **glycosides**. Both anomers are formed.
- Upon treatment with sodium borohydride, an aldose or ketose can be reduced to yield an **alditol**.
- When treated with a suitable oxidizing agent, an aldose can be oxidized to yield an **aldonic acid**.
- Aldoses and ketoses are **reducing sugars**.
- When treated with HNO_3, an aldose is oxidized to give a dicarboxylic acid called an **aldaric acid**.
- D-Glucose and D-mannose are **epimers** and are interconverted under strongly basic conditions.
- The **Kiliani–Fischer synthesis** can be used to lengthen the chain of an aldose.
- The **Wohl degradation** can be used to shorten the chain of an aldose.

SECTION 24.7

- **Disaccharides** are comprised of two monosaccharide units joined together via a glycosidic linkage.
- Examples of disaccharides are maltose, cellobiose, lactose, and sucrose.

SECTION 24.8

- **Polysaccharides** are polymers consisting of repeating monosaccharide units linked by glycoside bonds.
- Examples of polysaccharides are starch, cellulose, and glycogen.

SECTION 24.9

- **Amino sugars** are carbohydrate derivatives in which one or more OH groups have been replaced with amino groups.
- The *N*-acetyl derivative of β-D-glucosamine serves as the repeating monosaccharide unit in chitin.

SECTION 24.10

- When treated with an amine in the presence of an acid catalyst, monosaccharides are converted into their corresponding ***N*-glycosides**.
- D-Ribose and D-2-deoxyribose are carbohydrates that form especially important *N*-glycosides called **nucleosides**.
- There are four naturally occurring nucleosides of 2-deoxyribose, each of which can be coupled to a phosphate group to form a **nucleotide**.
- DNA is comprised of nucleotides linked together in a polymer, or **polynucleotide**.
- RNA differs from DNA in that RNA contains D-ribose rather than deoxyribose, and contains uracil in place of thymine.

SKILLBUILDER REVIEW

24.1 DRAWING THE CYCLIC HEMIACETAL OF A HYDROXYALDEHYDE

STEP 1 Assign numbers to the carbon atoms, beginning with the carbon of the aldehyde group, and continue until reaching the carbon connected to the OH group.

STEP 2 Using the numbering system from step 1, draw a ring that incorporates an oxygen atom in the ring.

STEP 3 Using the numbering system from step 1, place the substituents in the correct locations.

Try Problems **24.9–24.11, 24.46, 24.47**

24.2 DRAWING A HAWORTH PROJECTION OF AN ALDOHEXOSE IN THE PYRANOSE FORM

STEP 1 Draw the skeleton of a Haworth projection, with the ring oxygen in the back right corner. Number each position.

STEP 2 For D sugars, place the CH_2OH group pointing up at C5.

STEP 3 Place the OH group at the anomeric position. For the α anomer, the OH group should be *trans* to the CH_2OH group.

STEP 4 Place the remaining OH groups at C2, C3, and C4. Groups on the left side of the Fischer projection should point up. Groups on the right side of the Fischer projection should point down.

Try Problems **24.12–24.15, 24.48a, 24.53b,c,d**

24.3 DRAWING THE MORE STABLE CHAIR CONFORMATION OF A PYRANOSE RING

STEP 1 Draw the Haworth projection.

STEP 2 Draw the skeleton of a chair conformation, with the oxygen atom in the upper, rear-right corner.

STEP 3 Label each substituent as either "up" or "down" and then place each substituent on the chair accordingly.

STEP 4 Verify that this chair conformation is more stable. Look for the largest group and make sure it is equatorial.

Try Problems **24.16–24.18, 24.60, 24.82**

24.4 IDENTIFYING A REDUCING SUGAR

STEP 1 Identify the anomeric position.

STEP 2 Determine if the group attached to the anomeric position is a hydroxy group or alkoxy group:

- If hydroxy group, then the compound is a reducing sugar.
- If alkoxy group, then the compound is not a reducing sugar.

Try Problems **24.31–24.33, 24.69, 24.76a**

24.5 DETERMINING WHETHER A DISACCHARIDE IS A REDUCING SUGAR

STEP 1 Identify the anomeric positions.

STEP 2 Determine if the groups attached to the anomeric positions are hydroxy groups or alkoxy groups:

- If at least one is a hydroxy group, then the compound is a reducing sugar.
- If neither are hydroxy groups, then the compound is not a reducing sugar.

Try Problems **24.39, 24.40, 24.73**

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

• **Included in Answers section**

24.42 • Classify each of the following monosaccharides as either D or L, as either an aldo or a keto sugar, and as a tetrose, pentose, or hexose:

24.43 • Identify each of the following structures as either D- or L-glyceraldehyde:

24.44 • Name each of the following aldohexoses:

24.45 • Consider the structures of the D aldopentoses:

(a) Identify the aldopentose that is epimeric with D-arabinose at C2.

(b) Identify the aldopentose that is epimeric with D-lyxose at C3.

(c) Draw the enantiomer of D-ribose.

(d) Identify the relationship between the enantiomer of D-arabinose and the C2 epimer of L-ribose.

(e) Identify the relationship between D-ribose and D-lyxose.

24.46 • Draw the cyclic hemiacetal that is formed when each of the following bifunctional compounds is treated with aqueous acid.

24.47 Identify the hydroxyaldehyde that will cyclize under acidic conditions to give the following hemiacetal:

24.48 D-Ribose can adopt two pyranose forms and two furanose forms.

(a) Draw both pyranose forms of D-ribose and identify each as α or β.

(b) Draw both furanose forms of D-ribose and identify each as α or β.

24.49 For each of the following pairs of compounds, determine whether they are enantiomers, epimers, diastereomers that are not epimers, or identical compounds:

24.50 Draw the open-chain form of the compound formed when methyl β-D-glucopyranoside is treated with aqueous acid.

24.51 Assign the configuration of each chiral center in the following compounds:

24.52 Draw a Fischer projection for each of the following compounds:

(a) D-Glucose (b) D-Galactose

(c) D-Mannose (d) D-Allose

24.53 Draw a Haworth projection for each of the following compounds:

(a) β-D-Fructofuranose (b) β-D-Galactopyranose

(c) β-D-Glucopyranose (d) β-D-Mannopyranose

24.54 Draw a Haworth projection showing the α-pyranose form of the D-aldohexose that is epimeric with D-glucose at C3.

24.55 Provide a complete name for each of the following compounds:

24.56 Draw the open-chain form of each of the compounds in the previous problem.

24.57 Draw the products that are expected when β-D-allopyranose is treated with each of the following reagents:

(a) Excess CH_3I, Ag_2O (b) Excess acetic anhydride, pyridine

(c) CH_3OH, HCl

24.58 When D-galactose is heated in the presence of nitric acid, an optically inactive compound is obtained. Draw the structure of the product and explain why it is optically inactive.

24.59 In addition to D-galactose, one other D-aldohexose also forms an optically inactive aldaric acid when treated with nitric acid. Draw the structure of this aldohexose.

24.60 Draw the more stable chair conformation of α-D-altropyranose and label all substituents as axial or equatorial.

24.61 Draw the products that are expected when α-D-galactopyranose is treated with excess methyl iodide in the presence of silver oxide, followed by aqueous acid.

24.62 For each of the following pairs of compounds, determine whether they are enantiomers, epimers, diastereomers that are not epimers, or identical compounds:

(a) D-Glucose and D-gulose

(b) 2-Deoxy-D-ribose and 2-deoxy-D-arabinose

24.63 Draw all possible 2-ketohexoses that are D sugars.

24.64 Identify the two aldohexoses that will undergo a Wohl degradation to yield D-ribose. Draw a Fischer projection of the open-chain form for each of these two aldohexoses.

24.65 Identify the two aldohexoses that are obtained when D-arabinose undergoes a Kiliani–Fischer synthesis.

24.66 Identify the two products obtained when D-glyceraldehyde is treated with HCN and determine the relationship between these two products.

24.67 When treated with sodium borohydride, D-glucose is converted into an alditol.

(a) Draw the structure of the alditol.

(b) Which L-aldohexose gives the same alditol when treated with sodium borohydride?

24.68 Which of the D-aldohexoses are converted into optically inactive alditols upon treatment with sodium borohydride?

24.69 Determine whether or not each of the following compounds is a reducing sugar:

24.70 Identify the reagents that you would use to convert β-D-glucopyranose into each of the following compounds:

24.71 Identify the product(s) that would be formed when each of the following compounds is treated with aqueous acid:

(a) Methyl α-D-glucopyranoside (b) Ethyl β-D-galactopyranoside

24.72 Consider the structures of the four D-aldopentoses (Figure 24.3).

(a) When oxidized with nitric acid, which D-aldopentose produces the same aldaric acid as D-lyxose?

(b) Which D-aldopentoses yield optically inactive alditols when treated with sodium borohydride?

(c) Which D-aldopentose yields the same alditol as L-xylose?

(d) Which D-aldopentose has a β-pyranose form in which all substituents are equatorial?

24.73 Trehalose is a naturally occurring disaccharide found in bacteria, insects, and many plants. It protects cells from dry conditions because of its ability to retain water, thereby preventing cellular damage from dehydration. This property of trehalose has also been exploited in the preparation of food and cosmetics. Trehalose is not a reducing sugar, it is hydrolyzed to yield two equivalents of D-glucose, and it does not have any β-glycoside linkages. Draw the structure of trehalose.

24.74 Xylitol is found in many kinds of berries. It is approximately as sweet as sucrose but with fewer calories. It is often used in sugarless chewing gum. Xylitol is obtained upon reduction of D-xylose with $NaBH_4$. Draw a structure of xylitol.

24.75 Isomaltose is similar in structure to maltose, except that it is an alpha-1,6 glycoside, rather than an alpha-1,4 glycoside. Draw the structure of isomaltose.

24.76 Salicin is a natural analgesic present in the bark of willow trees, and it has been used for thousands of years to treat pain and reduce fevers.

Salicin

(a) Is salicin a reducing sugar?

(b) Identify the products obtained when salicin is hydrolyzed in the presence of an acid.

(c) Is salicin an α-glycoside or a β-glycoside?

(d) Draw the major product expected when salicin is treated with excess acetic anhydride in the presence of pyridine.

(e) Would you expect salicin to exhibit mutarotation when dissolved in neutral water?

24.77 Draw a mechanism for the following transformation:

24.78 Draw the α-*N*-glycoside and the β-*N*-glycoside formed when D-glucose is treated with aniline ($C_6H_5NH_2$).

24.79 Draw and name the nucleoside formed from each of the following pairs of compounds:

(a) 2-Deoxy-D-ribose and adenine

(b) D-Ribose and guanine

24.80 Compound **A** is a D-aldopentose that is converted into an optically active alditol upon treatment with sodium borohydride. Draw two possible structures for compound **A**.

ACS-STYLE PROBLEMS (Multiple Choice)

Problems 24.81–24.85 follow the style of the ACS organic chemistry exam. For each of these problems, there will be one correct answer and three distractors.

24.81 • What is the relationship between the following two carbohydrates?

(a) Enantiomers (b) Diastereomers

(c) Resonance forms (d) Constitutional isomers

24.82 • Which of the following structures represents a pyranose form of glucose?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

24.83 • Which of the following is NOT an example of a D sugar?

24.84 • Which carbon atom is described as the anomeric carbon?

(a) a (b) b (c) c (d) d

24.85 • Which of the following can be described as an epimer of the given aldose?

INTEGRATED PROBLEMS

24.86 When D-glucose is treated with an aqueous bromine solution (buffered to a pH of 6), an aldonic acid is formed called D-gluconic acid. Treatment of D-gluconic acid with an acid catalyst produces a lactone (cyclic ester) with a six-membered ring.

(a) Draw the structure of D-gluconic acid.

(b) Draw the structure of the lactone formed from D-gluconic acid, showing the configuration at each chiral center.

(c) Would you expect this lactone to be optically active? Explain.

(d) Explain how you would distinguish between the D-gluconic acid and the lactone using IR spectroscopy.

24.87 When each of the D-aldohexoses assumes a pyranose form, the CH_2OH group occupies an equatorial position in the more stable chair conformation. The one exception is D-idose, for which the CH_2OH group occupies an axial position in the more stable chair conformation. Explain this observation and then draw the more stable chair conformation of L-idose in its α-pyranose form.

24.88 Draw the product that is expected when the β-pyranose form of compound **A** is treated with excess ethyl iodide in the presence of silver oxide. The following information can be used to determine the identity of compound **A**:

1. The molecular formula of compound **A** is $C_6H_{12}O_6$.
2. Compound **A** is a reducing sugar.
3. When compound **A** is subjected to a Wohl degradation two times sequentially, D-erythrose is obtained.
4. Compound **A** is epimeric with D-glucose at C3.
5. The configuration at C2 is *R*.

24.89 Propose an explanation for why glucose is the most common monosaccharide observed in nature.

CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

24.90 When D-glucose is treated with aqueous sodium hydroxide, a complex mixture of carbohydrates is formed, including D-mannose and D-fructose. Over time, almost all aldohexoses will be present in the mixture. Even L-glucose can be detected, albeit in very small concentrations. Using the fewest number of mechanistic steps possible, draw a reasonable mechanism showing the formation of L-glucose from D-glucose:

24.91 Compound **X** is a D-aldohexose that can adopt a β-pyranose form with only one axial substituent. Compound **X** undergoes a Wohl degradation to produce an aldopentose, which is converted into an optically active alditol when treated with sodium borohydride. From the information presented, there are only two possible structures for compound **X**. Identify the two possibilities and then propose a chemical test that would allow you to distinguish between the two possibilities and thereby determine the structure of compound **X**.

24.92 Compound **A** is a D-aldopentose. When treated with sodium borohydride, compound **A** is converted into an alditol that exhibits three signals in its ^{13}C NMR spectrum. Compound **A** undergoes a Kiliani–Fischer synthesis to produce two aldohexoses, compounds **B** and **C**. Upon treatment with nitric acid, compound **B** yields compound **D**, while compound **C** yields compound **E** upon treatment with nitric acid. Both **D** and **E** are optically active aldaric acids.

(a) Draw the structure of compound **A**.

(b) Draw the structures of compounds **D** and **E** and describe how you might be able to distinguish between these two compounds using ^{13}C NMR spectroscopy.

25 Amino Acids, Peptides, and Proteins

25.1 Introduction to Amino Acids, Peptides, and Proteins
25.2 Structure and Properties of Amino Acids
25.3 Amino Acid Synthesis
25.4 Structure of Peptides
25.5 Sequencing a Peptide
25.6 Peptide Synthesis
25.7 Protein Structure
25.8 Protein Function

Top (*Magnifying glass*) dem10/Getty Images

DID YOU EVER **WONDER...**

how crime-scene investigators are able to find invisible fingerprints and render them visible?

A fingerprint can often be the most important piece of evidence left behind at the scene of a crime. Police investigators use a variety of methods to visualize fingerprints. One such method involves the use of a chemical agent called ninhydrin, which reacts with the amino acids present in the fingerprint to produce colored compounds that can be seen. But what are amino acids, why are they present in our fingerprints, and what function do amino acids serve?

In this chapter, we will explore the structure and properties of amino acids, and we will see how they function as the building blocks that nature employs to assemble important biological compounds called peptides and proteins. These compounds serve a wide array of functions, as we will see later in this chapter. This chapter focuses on the structure, properties, function, and synthesis of amino acids, peptides, and proteins.

blackwaterimages/Getty Images

TommL/Getty Images

DO YOU **REMEMBER?**

Before you go on, be sure you understand the following topics.
If necessary, review the suggested sections to prepare for this chapter:

- Designating Configuration Using the Cahn–Ingold–Prelog System (Section 5.3)
- Structure and Properties of Carboxylic Acids (Section 20.3)
- Nucleophilic Acyl Substitution (Section 20.7)
- Properties of Amines (Section 22.3)

Take the DO YOU **REMEMBER?** QUIZ in the **online course** to check your understanding.

25.1 Introduction to Amino Acids, Peptides, and Proteins

Throughout this book, particularly in the BioLinks boxes, we have explored the relationship between the structure of a compound and its medicinal activity. The relationship between structure and activity is perhaps most striking for biological molecules called proteins. **Proteins** are polymers that are assembled from amino acid monomers that have been linked together, much like jigsaw puzzle pieces (Figure 25.1). Each **amino acid** contains an amino group (shown in red) and a carboxylic acid group

FIGURE 25.1
An illustration showing how amino acids serve as building blocks for proteins.

(shown in blue). It is the presence of these two functional groups that enables amino acids to link together. An amino acid can have any number of carbon atoms separating the two functional groups, but of particular interest are the **alpha (α) amino acids** in which the two functional groups are separated by exactly one carbon atom.

Amino acids of this type are called α-amino acids because the amino group is connected to the carbon atom that is alpha (α) to the carboxylic acid group. Notice that this α carbon is a chiral center, provided that the R group is not simply a hydrogen atom. The configuration of the α position will be discussed in the coming sections.

Amino acids are coupled together by amide linkages, also called **peptide bonds**:

Relatively short amino acid chains are called **peptides**. A dipeptide is formed when two amino acids are coupled together, a tripeptide from three amino acids, a tetrapeptide from four, and so on. Chains comprised of fewer than 40 or 50 amino acids are often called polypeptides, while still larger chains are called proteins. Proteins serve a wide array of important biological functions, as we will discuss in Section 25.8. Certain proteins, called enzymes, serve as catalysts for most of the reactions that occur in living cells, and it is estimated that more than 50,000 different enzymes are needed for our bodies to function properly.

In order to understand the structure and function of proteins, we must first explore the structure and properties of the most basic building blocks, amino acids.

25.2 Structure and Properties of Amino Acids

Naturally Occurring Amino Acids

Hundreds of different amino acids are observed in nature, but only 20 amino acids are abundantly found in proteins. These twenty α-amino acids differ from each other only in the identity of the side chain (the R group, highlighted).

The structures of all 20 amino acids are shown in Table 25.1, together with the accepted three-letter abbreviation and one-letter abbreviation for each amino acid. Except for glycine (R=H), all of these amino acids are chiral, and nature typically employs only one enantiomer of each. The amino acids primarily observed in nature are called **L amino acids**, because their Fischer projections resemble the Fischer projection of L-glyceraldehyde, with an amino group taking the place of an OH group on C2.

There are some examples of D amino acids found in nature, but for the most part, the peptides and proteins found in humans and other mammals are constructed almost exclusively from L amino acids.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

25.1 Although most naturally occurring proteins are made up only of L amino acids, proteins isolated from bacteria will sometimes contain D amino acids. Draw Fischer projections for D-alanine and D-valine. In each case, assign the configuration (*R* or *S*) of the chiral center.

25.2 Draw a bond-line structure for each of the following amino acids:

(a) L-Leucine
(b) L-Tryptophan
(c) L-Methionine
(d) L-Valine

25.3 Of the 20 naturally occurring amino acids shown in Table 25.1, identify any amino acids that exhibit the following:

(a) A cyclic structure
(b) An aromatic side chain
(c) A side chain with a basic group
(d) A sulfur atom
(e) A side chain with an acidic group
(f) A side chain containing a proton that is capable of participating in hydrogen-bonding

TABLE 25.1 THE STRUCTURES OF THE TWENTY NATURALLY OCCURRING AMINO ACIDS THAT ARE FOUND IN PROTEINS

Name	Structure	Abbreviation	Name	Structure	Abbreviation
Amino acids with nonpolar side chains			**Amino acids with polar side chains**		
Glycine		Gly G	Asparagine		Asn N
Alanine		Ala A	Glutamine		Gln Q
Valine		Val V	Serine		Ser S
Leucine		Leu L	Threonine		Thr T
Isoleucine		Ile I	Tyrosine		Tyr Y
Methionine		Met M	Cysteine		Cys C
Proline		Pro P	**Amino acids with acidic side chains**		
Phenylalanine		Phe F	Aspartic acid		Asp D
Tryptophan		Trp W	Glutamic acid		Glu E
			Amino acids with basic side chains		
			Arginine		Arg R
			Histidine		His H
			Lysine		Lys K

Other Naturally Occurring Amino Acids

In addition to the 20 amino acids found in proteins (Table 25.1), there are other amino acids used by organisms for a variety of functions. For example, consider the structures of γ-aminobutyric acid (GABA) and thyroxine.

γ-Aminobutyric acid (GABA)

Thyroxine

Both of these compounds are amino acids, but they are not found in proteins. GABA acts as a neurotransmitter in the brain, while thyroxine is found in the thyroid gland and acts as a hormone. There are many other examples as well, but this chapter will focus almost exclusively on the 20 amino acids found in proteins.

WorldLinks Nutrition and Sources of Amino Acids

In Section 25.1, we saw that 20 different L amino acids serve as the building blocks of proteins. Our bodies can synthesize 10 of these amino acids in sufficient quantity, but the other 10, called *essential amino acids*, must be obtained from our diet. The essential amino acids are isoleucine, leucine, methionine, phenylalanine, threonine, tryptophan, valine, arginine, histidine, and lysine. These amino acids are obtained from digesting foods containing proteins.

Frans Rombout/Getty Images

Smitt/iStock/Getty Images

Ivan Kmit/Getty Images

Proteins that contain all 10 essential amino acids are called *complete proteins*, as they provide us with all of the building blocks that we need. Examples of complete proteins include meat, fish, milk, and eggs. Proteins that are deficient in one or more of the essential amino acids are called *incomplete proteins*. Examples include rice (deficient in lysine and threonine), corn (deficient in lysine and tryptophan), and beans and peas (deficient in methionine).

Inadequate intake of the essential amino acids can lead to a host of diseases, which can be avoided with proper nutrition. Meat eaters receive all of the necessary amino acids from a piece of meat, while vegetarians can receive all of the necessary amino acids from milk and eggs. Vegans abstain from eating any animal products, including milk, eggs, cheese, and yogurt, and must therefore eat a variety of plant foods that complement each other.

Acid-Base Properties

When an amino acid is dissolved in a solution at a pH of 1, both functional groups exist primarily in their protonated forms.

Each of the highlighted protons has its own unique pK_a value, often called pK_{a1} and pK_{a2}.

Notice that the carboxylic acid group is deprotonated first. That is, the first pK_a value refers to the acidity of the carboxylic acid group, while the second pK_a value refers to the acidity of the ammonium group. Some of the amino acids have side chains containing either basic or acidic groups. These amino acids will have a third pK_a value associated with the side chain, as can be seen in Table 25.2.

TABLE 25.2 THE pK_a VALUES FOR TWENTY NATURALLY OCCURRING AMINO ACIDS

AMINO ACID	α-COOH	α-NH_3^+	SIDE CHAIN
Alanine	2.34	9.69	—
Arginine	2.17	9.04	12.48
Asparagine	2.02	8.80	—
Aspartic acid	1.88	9.60	3.65
Cysteine	1.96	10.28	8.18
Glutamic acid	2.19	9.67	4.25
Glutamine	2.17	9.13	—
Glycine	2.34	9.60	—
Histidine	1.82	9.17	6.00
Isoleucine	2.36	9.60	—
Leucine	2.36	9.60	—
Lysine	2.18	8.95	10.53
Methionine	2.28	9.21	—
Phenylalanine	1.83	9.13	—
Proline	1.99	10.60	—
Serine	2.21	9.15	—
Threonine	2.09	9.10	—
Tryptophan	2.83	9.39	—
Tyrosine	2.20	9.11	10.07
Valine	2.32	9.62	—

Notice that the pK_a values for the carboxylic acid groups are in the range of 2–3 for nearly all of the amino acids shown. For example, alanine has a pK_{a1} of 2.34. This value indicates that the uncharged form (COOH) and the anionic form (COO^-) will be present in equal amounts at a pH of 2.34. At any pH below 2.34 (highly acidic conditions), the uncharged form will predominate. At any pH above 2.34, the carboxylate anion will predominate. Indeed, this anionic form predominates at physiological pH (7.4).

LOOKING BACK
Recall that the pH of blood is approximately 7.4, which is called physiological pH (see Section 20.3).

Now let's focus on the pK_a values for the ammonium groups of amino acids. Table 25.2 indicates that these values are in the range of 9–10 for nearly all of the amino acids. For example, alanine has a pK_{a2} of 9.69. This value indicates that the uncharged and cationic forms of the ammonium group will be present in equal amounts at a pH of 9.69. At any pH above 9.69, the uncharged form will predominate. At any pH below 9.69, the cationic ammonium group will predominate. Indeed, the cationic form predominates at physiological pH.

In summary, consider the structure of an amino acid at physiological pH. The amino group is protonated, while the carboxylic acid group is deprotonated.

In this form, the amino acid is said to be a **zwitterion** (or dipolar ion), which is a net neutral compound that exhibits charge separation. An amino acid can be thought of as an internal salt, and as such, it will exhibit many of the physical properties of salts. For example, amino acids are highly soluble in water and have very high melting points. Amino acids are also said to be **amphoteric**, because they will react with either acids or bases. When treated with a base, an amino acid will function as an acid by giving up a proton (the ammonium group is deprotonated).

However, when treated with an acid, an amino acid will serve as a base by abstracting a proton (the carboxylate group is protonated).

These two reactions show that, in its zwitterionic form, an amino acid can function either as an acid or as a base.

SKILLBUILDER

25.1 DETERMINING THE PREDOMINANT FORM OF AN AMINO ACID AT A SPECIFIC pH

LEARN the skill

Draw the form of lysine that predominates at a pH of 9.5.

SOLUTION

The identity of the side chain of lysine can be found in Table 25.1. This amino acid has a basic side chain, which means that the compound has three locations that we must consider.

STEP 1
Identify the pK_a of the carboxylic acid group and determine which form predominates.

We must consider whether or not each amino group is protonated and whether or not the carboxylic acid group is deprotonated at the stated pH. Let's begin with the carboxylic acid group. Table 25.2 indicates that pK_{a1} for lysine is 2.18. At a pH below 2.18 (highly acidic conditions), we expect the COOH group to have its proton. But at higher pH, we expect the carboxylate anion to predominate. Accordingly, at a pH of 9.5, we expect the deprotonated form (the carboxylate) to predominate.

STEP 2
Identify the pK_a of the α-amino group and determine which form predominates.

Next consider the α-amino group. Table 25.2 indicates that pK_{a2} for lysine is 8.95. At a pH below 8.95 (lower pH = more acidic), we expect the amino group to be protonated, but at a higher pH, we expect the amino group to predominate in its uncharged form. Accordingly, at a pH of 9.5, we expect the uncharged form of the α-amino group to predominate.

STEP 3
Identify the pK_a of the side chain, if necessary, and determine which form predominates.

Finally, consider the side chain, which has a pK_a of 10.53. At a pH below 10.53 (lower pH = more acidic), we expect the amino group to be protonated, but at a higher pH, we expect the amino group to predominate in its uncharged form. Accordingly, at a pH of 9.5, we expect the protonated form of the side-chain amino group to predominate. Therefore, the following form of lysine is expected to predominate at a pH of 9.5:

PRACTICE the skill

25.4 For each example, draw the form of the amino acid that is expected to predominate at the stated pH.

(a) Alanine at a pH of 10
(b) Proline at a pH of 10
(c) Tyrosine at a pH of 9
(d) Asparagine at physiological pH
(e) Histidine at physiological pH
(f) Glutamic acid at a pH of 3

APPLY the skill

25.5 At a pH of 11, arginine is a more effective proton donor than asparagine. Explain.

25.6 The OH group on the side chain of serine is not deprotonated to a significant extent at a pH of 12. However, the OH group on the side chain of tyrosine is essentially fully deprotonated at a pH of 12. This can be verified by inspecting the pK_a values in Table 25.2. Suggest an explanation for the difference in acidity between these two OH groups.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 25.40, 25.47, 25.48, 25.84**

Isoelectric Point

For each amino acid, there is a specific pH at which the concentration of the zwitterionic form reaches its maximum value. This pH is called the **isoelectric point (pI)**, and each amino acid has its own unique pI. For amino acids that lack an acidic or basic side chain, the pI is simply the average of the two pK_a values. The following example shows the calculation for the pI of alanine.

$$\text{pI} = \frac{2.34 + 9.69}{2} = 6.02$$

For amino acids with acidic or basic side chains, the pI is the average of the two pK_a values that correspond with the similar groups. For example, the pI of lysine is determined by the two amino groups, while the pI of glutamic acid is determined by the two carboxylic acid groups.

Separation of Amino Acids via Electrophoresis

Amino acids can be separated from each other by a variety of techniques. One method, called **electrophoresis**, relies on a difference in pI values and can be used to determine the number of different amino acids present in a mixture. In practice, a few drops of the mixture are applied to filter paper or gel that is placed in a buffered solution between two electrodes. When an electric field is applied, the amino acids separate based on their different pI values. If the pI of an amino acid is greater than the pH of the solution, the amino acid will exist predominantly in a form that bears a positive charge and will migrate toward the cathode. The greater the difference between pI and pH, the faster it will migrate. An amino acid with a pI that is lower than the pH of the solution will exist predominantly in a form that bears a negative charge and will migrate toward the anode. The greater the difference between pI and pH, the faster it will migrate (Figure 25.2). If two amino acids have very similar pI

FIGURE 25.2
Separation of amino acids via electrophoresis.

values (such as glycine and leucine), the amino acid with the larger molecular weight will move more slowly, because the charge has to carry a greater mass.

Amino acids are colorless, so a detection technique is necessary in order to visualize the location of the various spots. The most common method involves treating the filter paper or gel with a solution containing ninhydrin followed by heating in an oven. Ninhydrin reacts with amino acids to produce a purple product.

The nitrogen atom of the amino acid is ultimately incorporated into the purple product, and the rest of the amino acid is degraded into a few by-products (water, carbon dioxide, and an aldehyde). The purple compound is obtained regardless of the identity of the amino acid, provided that the amino acid is primary (i.e., not proline). The number of purple spots indicates the number of different kinds of amino acids present.

Electrophoresis cannot be used to separate large quantities of amino acids. It is used just as an analytical method for determining the number of amino acids in a mixture. In order to actually separate an entire mixture of amino acids, other laboratory techniques are used, such as column chromatography (see Section 5.10).

WorldLinks Forensic Chemistry and Fingerprint Detection

There are many popular TV shows that portray the work of crime-scene investigators and the methods they employ to analyze evidence. The use of chemicals to visualize latent (invisible) fingerprints is a particularly common practice, and many compounds can be used for this purpose, including ninhydrin.

Latent fingerprints are created by the residue of sweat found on the surface of the skin. Sweat is comprised primarily of water (99%), but it also contains a variety of organic compounds, including amino acids. These amino acids are present only in very small concentrations, but they are relatively stable over long periods of time. When treated with ninhydrin, a reaction occurs between the amino acids and the ninhydrin, forming a fluorescent purple image.

To develop a fingerprint, a solution of ninhydrin is applied as a spray, and then mild heating is used to accelerate the reaction. The process has several undesirable features, including background staining (which reduces the contrast of the image) as well as light-induced fading of the image.

TommL/Getty Images

blackwaterimages/Getty Images

For best results, the ninhydrin solution should be applied in the dark and at room temperature. Under such conditions, the development process can take up to two weeks, which is not feasible for most cases in which a rapid analysis is required.

Over the past 50 years, many attempts have been made to design ninhydrin analogues with better properties. The following are a few examples.

Some of these reagents do have slightly improved properties, but the improvements are not significant enough to justify the added expense associated with the replacement of ninhydrin as a standard method used by forensic chemists to develop latent fingerprints.

Ninhydrin

Ninhydrin analogues

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

25.7 Using the data in Table 25.2, calculate the pI for each of the following amino acids:

(a) Aspartic acid (b) Leucine

(c) Lysine (d) Proline

25.8 For each group of amino acids, identify the amino acid with the lowest pI (try to solve this problem by inspecting their structures, rather than performing calculations).

(a) Alanine, aspartic acid, or lysine

(b) Methionine, glutamic acid, or histidine

25.9 Identify which two of the 20 naturally occurring amino acids are expected to have the same pI.

25.10 A mixture containing phenylalanine, tryptophan, and leucine was subjected to electrophoresis. Predict which amino acid would move the farthest, if the experiment was performed at each of the given pH values:

(a) pH = 6.0 (b) pH = 5.0

25.11 Draw the aldehyde that is obtained as a by-product when L-leucine is treated with ninhydrin and NaOH.

25.3 Amino Acid Synthesis

Over the last century, many methods have been used to prepare amino acids in the laboratory. In this section, we will explore a few of those methods.

Amino Acid Synthesis via α-Haloacids

One of the oldest methods for preparing racemic mixtures of α-amino acids involves the use of the Hell–Volhard–Zelinsky reaction (Section 21.2) to functionalize the α position of a carboxylic acid.

The halogen is then replaced with an amino group in an S_N2 reaction.

In Section 22.5, we saw that polyalkylation is often unavoidable when ammonia is treated with an alkyl halide. However, in this case, polyalkylation is not a problem because the alkyl halide is fairly large and steric hindrance prevents subsequent alkylations.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

25.12 Identify the starting material and the reagents necessary to make each of the following amino acids using a Hell–Volhard–Zelinsky reaction:

(a) Leucine (b) Alanine (c) Valine

25.13 Each of the following carboxylic acids was treated with bromine and PBr_3 followed by water, and the resulting α-haloacid was then treated with excess ammonia. In each case, draw and name the amino acid that is produced.

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d) Acetic acid

Amino Acid Synthesis via the Amidomalonate Synthesis

Recall that the malonic ester synthesis (Section 21.5) can be used to prepare carboxylic acids, starting with diethyl malonate.

A clever adaptation of this process, called the **amidomalonate synthesis**, employs diethyl acetamidomalonate as the starting material, enabling the preparation of racemic α-amino acids.

The process involves the same three steps used in the malonic ester synthesis: (1) deprotonation, (2) alkylation, and (3) hydrolysis and decarboxylation. During the hydrolysis step, the amide is hydrolyzed as well. As an example, consider the synthesis of phenylalanine via the amidomalonate synthesis.

The identity of the amino acid obtained is determined by the choice of the alkyl halide in the second step.

SKILLBUILDER

25.2 USING THE AMIDOMALONATE SYNTHESIS

LEARN the skill

Show how you would use the amidomalonate synthesis to prepare a racemic mixture of tryptophan.

SOLUTION

Begin by identifying the side chain attached to the α position of tryptophan (see Table 25.1).

STEP 1
Identify the side chain connected to the α position.

Next, identify the alkyl halide needed to install this group. Just redraw the alkyl group connected to a leaving group. Iodide and bromide are commonly used as leaving groups.

STEP 2
Identify the necessary alkyl halide and ensure that it will readily undergo S_N2.

Analyze the structure of this alkyl halide and make sure that it will readily participate in an S_N2 reaction. If the substrate is tertiary, then an amidomalonate synthesis will fail, because the alkylation step will not occur. In this case, the alkyl halide is primary and would be expected to undergo an S_N2 process quite rapidly.

In order to perform the amidomalonate synthesis, we must first deprotonate diethyl acetamidomalonate with a strong base and then treat the resulting anion with the alkyl halide. The resulting product is then heated in the presence of aqueous acid to achieve hydrolysis and decarboxylation.

STEP 3
Identify the reagents beginning with acetamidomalonate.

PRACTICE the skill

25.14 Identify the reagents necessary to make each of the following amino acids via the amidomalonate synthesis:

(a) Isoleucine **(b)** Alanine **(c)** Valine

APPLY the skill

25.15 An amidomalonate synthesis was performed using each of the following alkyl halides. In each case, draw and name the amino acid that was produced.

(a) Methyl iodide **(b)** Isopropyl chloride **(c)** 2-Methyl-1-chloropropane

25.16 Both leucine and isoleucine can be prepared via the amidomalonate synthesis, although one of these amino acids can be produced in higher yields. Identify the higher yielding process and explain your choice.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 25.57, 25.58, 25.59c, 25.60b, 25.89**

Amino Acid Synthesis via the Strecker Synthesis

Racemic α-amino acids can also be prepared from aldehydes via a two-step process called the **Strecker synthesis**.

The first step involves conversion of the aldehyde into an α-amino nitrile, and the second step involves hydrolysis of the cyano group to yield a carboxylic acid group.

Formation of the α-amino nitrile likely proceeds via Mechanism 25.1. The resulting α-amino nitrile then undergoes hydrolysis via a mechanism found in Section 20.13.

As an example, consider the synthesis of alanine via the Strecker synthesis:

The identity of the amino acid obtained is determined by the choice of the starting aldehyde.

MECHANISM 25.1 FORMATION OF AN α-AMINO NITRILE

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

25.17 Identify a suitable starting material and the reagents necessary to make each of the following amino acids using a Strecker synthesis:

(a) Methionine (b) Histidine

(c) Phenylalanine (d) Leucine

25.18 Each of the following aldehydes was converted into an α-amino nitrile, and then hydrolyzed to yield an amino acid. In each case, draw and name the amino acid that was produced.

(a) Acetaldehyde (b) 3-Methylbutanal (c) 2-Methylpropanal

Enantioselective Synthesis of L Amino Acids

Racemic mixtures of amino acids are produced from each of the three methods described thus far. Obtaining optically active amino acids requires either resolution of the racemic mixture or enantioselective synthesis. Resolution is less efficient and more costly because half of the starting material is wasted in the process. Resolution is not necessary if an enantioselective synthesis is performed. In Section 8.9 we saw how Knowles developed a procedure for achieving asymmetric hydrogenation and then used that procedure for the enantioselective synthesis of L-dopa.

(S)-3,4-Dihydroxyphenylalanine (L-dopa)

This technique employs a chiral catalyst and can be used to prepare amino acids with very high enantiomeric excess (% *ee*). Many of the chiral catalysts that have been developed contain a ruthenium atom (Ru) complexed to a chiral ligand, such as BINAP.

(*R*)-(+)-BINAP
(*R*)-2,2'-Bis(diphenylphosphino)-1,1'-binaphthyl

(*R*)-(+)-Ru(BINAP)Cl_2
(chiral catalyst)

Only small amounts of a chiral catalyst are required to prepare amino acids with very high enantioselectivity. For example, preparation of D-phenylalanine proceeds with 99% *ee* when this chiral catalyst is employed.

(*R*)-(+)-Ru(BINAP)Cl_2

99% *ee*

D-Phenylalanine

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

25.19 Identify the starting alkene necessary to make each of the following amino acids using an asymmetric catalytic hydrogenation:

(a) L-Alanine (b) L-Valine (c) L-Leucine (d) L-Tyrosine

25.20 Explain why it is inappropriate to use a chiral catalyst in the preparation of glycine.

25.4 Structure of Peptides

The Assembly of Peptides from Amino Acids

We saw in Section 25.1 that amino acids are joined together to form peptides. As an example, glutathione is a tripeptide assembled from glutamic acid, cysteine, and glycine (Figure 25.3).

FIGURE 25.3
The tripeptide glutathione is assembled from three amino acids.

Glutathione is found in all mammals, and it serves an important role as a scavenger of harmful radicals and electrophiles. Glutathione exhibits two peptide bonds and is comprised of three **amino acid residues**. When amino acids join together to form a peptide, the order in which they are connected is important. For example, consider a simple dipeptide made by joining alanine and glycine. The peptide bond can be formed between the COOH group of alanine and the NH_2 group of glycine, or from the COOH group of glycine and the NH_2 group of alanine.

These two dipeptides are not the same compound. They are, in fact, constitutional isomers.

Peptide chains always have an amino group on one end, called the **N terminus**, and a COOH group on the other end, called the **C terminus** (Figure 25.4). By convention, peptides are always drawn with the N terminus on the left side.

FIGURE 25.4
The N terminus and C terminus of a peptide chain.

The sequence of amino acid residues in a peptide can be abbreviated with one- or three-letter abbreviations, starting with the N terminus. For example, a dipeptide of glycine and alanine can be written as follows:

Simple peptide chains will have one N terminus and one C terminus. For example, consider the following decapeptide, for which the alanine residue is the N terminus and the leucine residue is the C terminus:

SKILLBUILDER

25.3 DRAWING A PEPTIDE

LEARN the skill

Draw a bond-line structure showing the tripeptide Phe-Val-Trp (assume that all three residues are L amino acids).

SOLUTION

Begin by drawing a peptide comprised of three residues with the N terminus on the left and the C terminus on the right.

STEP 1
Draw a peptide with the correct number of residues.

STEP 2
Identify the side chain associated with each residue.

Next, identify the side chain (R group) associated with each residue. The side chains associated with Phe, Trp, and Val are highlighted.

STEP 3
Assign the proper configuration for each α position.

Finally, assign the proper configuration for each side chain.

Recall that all naturally occurring amino acids will have the *S* configuration, except for cysteine, which has the *R* configuration. With this information, it is possible to draw each chiral center using the Cahn–Ingold–Prelog convention (Section 5.3). Alternatively, the following stereochemical shortcut can be applied to save time: When the peptide is drawn conventionally with the N terminus on the left and the C terminus on the right, all side chains at the top of the drawing will be on wedges, and all side chains at the bottom of the drawing will be on dashes.

PRACTICE the skill

25.21 Draw the structure of each of the following peptides:

(a) Leu-Ala-Gly **(b)** Cys-Asp-Ala-Gly **(c)** Met-Lys-His-Tyr-Ser-Phe-Val

APPLY the skill

25.22 Using three- and one-letter abbreviations, show the sequence of amino acid residues in the following pentapeptide:

25.23 Determine which of the following peptides will have a higher molecular weight. (**Hint:** It is not necessary to actually calculate the molecular weight of each peptide, but rather, just compare the side chains.)

Cys-Tyr-Leu or Cys-Phe-Ile

25.24 Compare the following tripeptides and determine whether they are constitutional isomers or the same compound:

Ala-Gly-Leu and Leu-Gly-Ala

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 25.65, 25.66, 25.85**

The Geometry of Peptide Bonds

In order to understand the three-dimensional geometry of peptides, we must first explore the geometry of peptide bonds. Recall that peptide bonds are amide linkages and that amides have a significant resonance structure that endows the C—N bond with some double-bond character.

FIGURE 25.5
The planar structure of an amide.

As a result, the nitrogen atom is sp^2 hybridized and planar (Figure 25.5). Peptide bonds are simply amides and therefore exhibit double-bond character just like regular amides. As such, a peptide bond experiences restricted rotation, giving rise to two possible conformations called *s-trans* and *s-cis*.

The *s-trans* conformation is usually more stable because it lacks the steric interaction that is present in the *s-cis* conformation.

In a polypeptide, each peptide bond will show a preference for adopting an *s-trans* conformation. Nevertheless, polypeptides are not entirely planar, because they still possess σ bonds that experience free rotation. Only the peptide bonds experience restricted rotation.

As a result, polypeptides can assume a variety of conformations, as will be discussed in Section 25.7.

Disulfide Bridges

In Section 13.11 we saw that two thiols can be joined via an oxidation process to form a disulfide.

Of the 20 amino acids found in proteins, only cysteine contains a thiol group. As such, cysteine residues are uniquely capable of being joined to one another via **disulfide bridges**.

Disulfide bridges are commonly observed between cysteine residues in the same strand or between cysteine residues in different strands.

These disulfide bridges greatly affect the three-dimensional structure and properties of peptides and proteins, as will be discussed in Section 25.7.

Some Interesting Peptides

Peptides play a variety of important biological roles. For example, consider the structures of the following two pentapeptides:

Leucine enkephalin and methionine enkephalin are both found in the brain, where they function in the control of pain. It is believed that they interact with the same receptor as morphine. Notice that the sequences of these compounds are the same except for the last residue (Leu vs. Met).

Bradykinin is another biologically important peptide. It functions as a hormone that dilates blood vessels and acts as an anti-inflammatory agent. Bradykinin is a nonapeptide (nine residues) with the following sequence:

Vasopressin and oxytocin are very similar in structure and represent two more biologically important peptides.

Each of these peptides contains a disulfide bridge. Also notice that the C-terminal end in each case has been modified. The NH_2 group in each case indicates that the OH group of the C terminus has been replaced with an NH_2 group. In other words, the COOH group has been converted into a $CONH_2$ group (an amide group). While vasopressin and oxytocin are similar in structure (differing only in the identity of two residues, highlighted in red), they nevertheless have very different functions. Vasopressin is released from the pituitary gland and causes readsorption of water by the kidneys and controls blood pressure. Oxytocin induces labor and stimulates milk production in nursing mothers. These examples illustrate how a small difference in structure can produce a large difference in function. Throughout the rest of the chapter, we will see several other examples of the relationship between structure and function.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

25.25 Draw the *s-trans* conformation of the dipeptide Phe-Leu and identify both the N terminus and the C terminus.

25.26 Draw the *s-cis* conformation of the dipeptide Phe-Phe and identify the source of the large steric interaction associated with that conformation.

25.27 Using a bond-line structure, show the tetrapeptide obtained when two units of Cys-Phe are joined by a disulfide bridge.

25.28 Aspartame is an artificial sweetener sold under the trade name NutraSweet. Aspartame is the methyl ester of a dipeptide formed from L-aspartic acid and L-phenylalanine and can be represented as Asp-Phe-OCH_3. Surprisingly, the analogous ethyl ester (Asp-Phe-OCH_2CH_3) is not sweet. If either L residue is replaced with its enantiomeric D residue, the resulting compound is bitter instead of sweet.

(a) Draw a bond-line structure of aspartame.

(b) Draw a bond-line structure for each of the three bitter stereoisomers of aspartame.

BioLinks Polypeptide Antibiotics

Some naturally occurring polypeptides are among the most powerful bactericidal antibiotics. Most have cyclic structures, and they often contain D amino acids not typically found in plants and animals. In addition, many polypeptide antibiotics contain regions comprised of carbohydrates or heterocycles instead of amino acids.

In Chapter 24, we explored the structure of neomycin, one of the principal components of Neosporin. The other two ingredients in Neosporin are polypeptide antibiotics, called bacitracin and polymyxin.

Bacitracin is a complex mixture of polypeptides that was first isolated in 1945 from a strain of *Bacillus subtilis*. The commercial product called bacitracin is a mixture comprised primarily of bacitracin A. This compound is believed to bind to an enzyme that bacteria use for synthesis of their cell walls, thereby inhibiting cell wall synthesis. Under these conditions, bacteria cannot sustain the high internal osmotic pressure (4–20 atm), which causes the bacteria to burst. It has been found that the effects of bacitracin are enhanced by the presence of zinc, and therefore, bacitracin zinc is used commonly in topical preparations used to treat local infections in skin wounds and in eyes. It is not absorbed by the gastrointestinal tract, so oral administration is generally ineffective.

Bacitracin A

Polymyxin B

Polymyxin B was first isolated from the bacterium *Bacillus polymyxa* in 1947. Polymyxin B is also commonly used in topical preparations to treat local infections. Like bacitracin A, it is also not absorbed by the gastrointestinal tract, so oral administration is ineffective except in treatment of intestinal infections. Bacitracin A and polymyxin B target different bacteria and are therefore commonly mixed together in topical preparations, such as Neosporin.

Alex Veluscek/Getty Images

motorolka/ Shutterstock

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

25.29 Bacitracin A is produced by bacteria and therefore contains some residues that are not from the list of 20 naturally occurring amino acids (Figure 25.1).

(a) Identify which amino acid residues are found in Table 25.1 and name them.

(b) Identify which of these amino acids are D rather than L.

(c) Identify all residues that are not listed in Table 25.1.

25.5 Sequencing a Peptide

The sequence of amino acids in a peptide can be analyzed using a variety of techniques. One such method is called the Edman degradation.

The Edman Degradation

The **Edman degradation** involves removing one amino acid residue at a time and identifying each residue as it is removed. The process is repeated until the entire peptide has been sequenced. To perform an Edman degradation, a peptide is first treated with phenyl isothiocyanate followed by trifluoroacetic acid. These two reagents remove the amino acid residue at the N terminus and convert it into a phenylthiohydantoin (PTH) derivative.

The PTH derivative can then be analyzed by a variety of different techniques to determine the identity of the amino acid residue that was removed. The transformation is believed to occur via Mechanism 25.2.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

25.30 Consider an Edman degradation of the tripeptide Ala-Phe-Val, and draw the structure of the initial PTH derivative formed (after treatment with PhN=C=S).

MECHANISM 25.2 THE EDMAN DEGRADATION

The process can be repeated on the chain-shortened peptide to remove another amino acid residue. In this way, the amino acid residues are removed one at a time until the entire sequence has been identified. This entire process has been fully automated, and automated peptide sequencers are capable of sequencing a peptide chain with as many as 50 amino acid residues.

Enzymatic Cleavage

For peptides containing more than 50 residues, the removal of each residue one at a time is not practical because unwanted side products accumulate and interfere with the results. Larger peptides are analyzed by first cleaving them into smaller fragments and then sequencing the fragments. A variety of enzymes, called **peptidases**, selectively hydrolyze specific peptide bonds. For example, trypsin is a digestive enzyme that catalyzes the hydrolysis of the peptide bond at the carboxyl side of the basic amino acids arginine and lysine.

Chymotrypsin, another digestive enzyme, selectively hydrolyzes the carboxyl end of amino acids containing aromatic side chains, which includes phenylalanine, tyrosine, and tryptophan.

Many other digestive enzymes are known, and their ability to cleave peptide bonds selectively has been exploited. The fragments obtained are then individually sequenced and compared. In this way, even large peptides can be fully sequenced.

SKILLBUILDER

25.4 SEQUENCING A PEPTIDE VIA ENZYMATIC CLEAVAGE

LEARN the skill

A peptide with 16 amino acid residues is treated with trypsin to give three fragments (shown below), while treatment of the same peptide with chymotrypsin gives four fragments (shown). Identify the sequence of the 16 amino acid residues in the starting peptide.

TRYPSIN FRAGMENTS	CHYMOTRYPSIN FRAGMENTS
Ala-Ser-Ala-Gly-Phe-Lys	Ile-Trp
Val-Cys	Lys-Val-Cys
Ile-Trp-Met-His-Phe-Met-Cys-Arg	Met-His-Phe
	Met-Cys-Arg-Ala-Ser-Ala-Gly-Phe

SOLUTION

First consider the fragments generated upon cleavage with trypsin. Recall that trypsin will hydrolyze a peptide bond at the carboxyl side of arginine and lysine. We therefore expect that all fragments will have a C terminus that is either arginine or lysine, except for the fragment that contains the C terminus of the original peptide. This allows us to identify which fragment was last in the peptide sequence.

Val—Cys

This residue must have been the C terminus of the original peptide

There are only two other fragments, so there are only two possibilities for the sequence of the original peptide. The correct sequence can be determined by analyzing the chymotrypsin fragments. Specifically, we look for the fragment that ends with Val-Cys, and we find that this fragment has a lysine residue immediately before the valine residue.

Lys—Val—Cys

This information makes it possible to determine the order of the trypsin fragments.

Ile—Trp—Met—His—Phe—Met—Cys—Arg- - - - - - -Ala—Ser—Ala—Gly—Phe—Lys- - - - - - -Val—Cys

N terminus **C terminus**

PRACTICE the skill

25.31 A peptide with 22 amino acid residues is treated with trypsin to give four fragments (shown below), while treatment of the same peptide with chymotrypsin yields six fragments. Identify the sequence of the 22 amino acid residues in the starting peptide.

TRYPSIN FRAGMENTS		CHYMOTRYPSIN FRAGMENTS	
Trp-His-Phe-Met-Cys-Arg	Ser-Val-Ile-Leu-Arg	Lys-Ser-Val-Ile-Leu-Arg-Trp	His-Phe
Met-Phe-Val-Ala-Tyr-Lys	Gly-Pro-Phe-Ala-Val	Val-Ala-Tyr	Ala-Val
		Met-Cys-Arg-Gly-Pro-Phe	Met-Phe

APPLY the skill

25.32 The tetrapeptide Val-Lys-Ala-Phe is cleaved into two fragments upon treatment with trypsin. Identify the sequence of a tetrapeptide that will produce the same two fragments when treated with chymotrypsin.

25.33 Consider the structure of the following cyclic octapeptide. Would cleavage of this peptide with trypsin produce different fragments than cleavage with chymotrypsin? Explain.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 25.71, 25.74**

25.6 Peptide Synthesis

Peptide Bond Formation

Forming a peptide bond requires the coupling of a carboxylic acid group and an amino group.

Several reagents are available to achieve this type of transformation. One common reagent is dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (DCC).

Formation of a peptide bond via DCC is believed to proceed via Mechanism 25.3.

Dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (DCC)

MECHANISM 25.3 PEPTIDE BOND FORMATION VIA DCC

A lack of regioselectivity becomes problematic when DCC is used to couple two different amino acids. Specifically, four different dipeptides are possible:

This problem can be circumvented by first protecting the NH_2 group of one amino acid and the COOH group of the other amino acid (Figure 25.6):

FIGURE 25.6
The overall strategy for synthesizing dipeptides involves protection, coupling, and then deprotection.

The protected amino acids can be coupled regioselectively followed by removal of the protecting groups. We will now describe how amino groups and carboxylic acid groups can be protected.

Protecting the Amino Group of an Amino Acid

An amino group can be protected by converting it into a carbamate.

The nitrogen atom of a carbamate is less nucleophilic because its lone pair is delocalized by the neighboring carboxyl group. One of the most common carbamate protecting groups is the *tert*-butoxycarbonyl group (Boc), formed via treatment with di-*tert*-butyl dicarbonate.

A likely mechanism for this process involves the amino group functioning as a nucleophile and performing a nucleophilic acyl substitution reaction (Mechanism 25.4).

MECHANISM 25.4 INSTALLATION OF A BOC PROTECTING GROUP

The Boc group is one of the most commonly used protecting groups because of the ease with which it can be removed. Several reagents can be used to remove a Boc group, including trifluoroacetic acid.

The mechanism is believed to involve protonation of the carbonyl group followed by formation of a carbocation and loss of carbon dioxide (Mechanism 25.5). This process generates isobutylene and carbon dioxide, both of which are gases. The evolution of gases effectively drives the reaction to completion, and the yield for removal of a Boc group is often 100%.

An alternative protecting group is known as Fmoc; it is formed by treating an amino acid with 9-fluorenylmethyl chloroformate.

MECHANISM 25.5 REMOVAL OF A BOC PROTECTING GROUP

This process likely occurs via a mechanism that is similar to Mechanism 25.4; that is, the amino group functions as a nucleophile and performs a nucleophilic acyl substitution reaction (where chloride is the leaving group that is replaced). The Fmoc protecting group can be removed with a base, such as piperidine, which initiates the process by deprotonating the acidic benzylic position (Mechanism 25.6). Deprotonation at this position generates an anion that is similar to the anion of cyclopentadiene. The anion is aromatic and is therefore highly stabilized. Loss of carbon dioxide then drives the deprotection process to completion.

MECHANISM 25.6 REMOVAL OF AN FMOC PROTECTING GROUP

Protecting the Carboxylic Acid Group of an Amino Acid

A carboxylic acid group can be protected by converting it into an ester, which is achieved upon treatment with an alcohol under acidic conditions (as seen in Section 20.10).

Carboxylic acid groups are most commonly converted to methyl esters by treatment with MeOH or to benzyl esters by treatment with $PhCH_2OH$.

The ester protecting group can be removed with aqueous base (H_2O, NaOH).

Benzyl esters can also be removed with hydrogenolysis or with HBr in acetic acid.

Preparing a Dipeptide

The overall synthesis of a dipeptide requires several steps: (1) protect the COOH group of one amino acid and the NH_2 group of the other amino acid, (2) couple the protected amino acids with DCC, and (3) remove both protecting groups. This process is illustrated in the synthesis of Ala-Gly.

A similar method can be used to prepare tripeptides and tetrapeptides.

SKILLBUILDER

25.5 PLANNING THE SYNTHESIS OF A DIPEPTIDE

LEARN the skill

Propose a synthesis for the following dipeptide: Phe-Val.

SOLUTION

Draw the two amino acids necessary and identify the functional groups that must be joined to form a peptide bond.

Identify the groups that must be protected (the groups that are not being coupled). The amino group is protected by installing a Boc protecting group.

STEP 1
Install the appropriate protecting groups.

The carboxylic acid group is protected by converting it to an ester, such as a benzyl ester.

With the protecting groups in place, the next step is to form the desired peptide linkage using DCC.

STEP 2
Couple the protected amino acids using DCC.

The final step is to remove the protecting groups to yield the desired product.

STEP 3
Remove the protecting groups.

PRACTICE the skill

25.34 Draw all of the steps and reagents necessary to prepare each of the following dipeptides from their corresponding amino acids:

(a) Trp-Met **(b)** Ala-Ile **(c)** Leu-Val

APPLY the skill

25.35 Starting with individual amino acids, draw all of the steps and reagents necessary to prepare a tripeptide with the sequence Ile-Phe-Gly.

25.36 Starting with individual amino acids, draw all of the steps and reagents necessary to prepare a pentapeptide with the sequence Leu-Val-Phe-Ile-Ala.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 25.77–25.79, 25.88**

The Merrifield Synthesis

The method outlined in this section works well for very small peptides, but it is not feasible to use it for larger peptides, because each step requires isolation and purification due to the accumulation of unwanted side products. Larger peptides can be prepared with the **Merrifield synthesis**, developed by R. Bruce Merrifield (Rockefeller University). A protected amino acid is first tethered to beads of an insoluble polymer. One such polymer is a polystyrene derivative with CH_2Cl groups on some of the aromatic rings.

An amino acid protected with a Boc group is first attached to the polymer via an S_N2 reaction. In this way, the polymer serves as a handle that holds the amino acid in place. The Boc protecting group is then removed, and DCC is used to couple the next Boc-protected amino acid:

After the coupling step, impurities and by-products are simply washed away, while the peptide chain remains tethered to the insoluble polymer. The process can then be repeated many times, each time lengthening the chain of the peptide by one amino acid residue. When the desired polypeptide has been created, it is removed from the polymer using hydrofluoric acid (HF).

In 1969, Merrifield used this technique in the preparation of a protein called ribonuclease, which is comprised of 128 residues. The procedure required 369 separate reactions, which were performed in just six weeks. The overall yield of the process was 17%, implying that each individual step had a yield greater than 99%. Merrifield's ingenious method set the stage for an entirely new way of performing chemical reactions. For his groundbreaking work, he received the 1984 Nobel Prize in Chemistry. Merrifield's solid-phase method has now been completely automated and is accomplished by machines called peptide synthesizers.

SKILLBUILDER

25.6 PREPARING A PEPTIDE USING THE MERRIFIELD SYNTHESIS

LEARN the skill

Identify the steps you would use to prepare the following peptide via the Merrifield synthesis:

Ile-Gly-Leu-Ala-Phe

SOLUTION

Begin with the C terminus. In this case, the C terminus must be a phenylalanine residue, so the first step is to attach a Boc-protected phenylalanine to the polymer via an S_N2 process.

STEP 1
Attach the appropriate Boc-protected residue to the polymer.

The second step is to remove the protecting group, exposing the N terminus of the phenylalanine residue.

STEP 2
Remove the Boc protecting group.

STEP 3
Using DCC, create a new peptide bond with a Boc-protected amino acid.

In the third step, the next residue (Ala) is installed as a Boc-protected residue using DCC to form the peptide bond.

Steps 2 and 3 are then repeated for the installation of each additional residue until the desired peptide chain has been assembled.

STEP 4
Repeat steps 2 and 3 for each residue that is to be added to the growing peptide chain.

STEP 5
Remove the Boc protecting group and detach the peptide from the polymer.

Finally, the protecting group is removed, and the peptide is released from the polymer.

PRACTICE the skill

25.37 Identify all of the steps necessary to prepare each of the following peptides with a Merrifield synthesis:

(a) Phe-Leu-Val-Phe **(b)** Ala-Val-Leu-Ile

APPLY the skill

25.38 Identify the sequence of the tripeptide that would be formed from the following Merrifield synthetic sequence. Clearly label the C terminus and N terminus of the tripeptide.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 25.80, 25.81**

25.7 Protein Structure

Proteins are fairly large organic compounds, and as such, the structure of a protein is more complex than the structures of simple organic compounds. In fact, proteins are generally described in terms of four levels of structure: primary, secondary, tertiary, and quaternary structure.

Primary Structure

The **primary structure** of a protein is the sequence of amino acid residues. Figure 25.7 shows the primary structure of human insulin. Insulin is comprised of two polypeptide chains, called chains A and B, which are linked together by disulfide bridges.

FIGURE 25.7
The primary structure of human insulin consists of two chains linked by disulfide bridges.

Secondary Structure

The **secondary structure** of a protein refers to the three-dimensional conformations of localized regions of the protein. Recall that each peptide bond exhibits restricted rotation and planar geometry (Figure 25.8). This is the case for each amino acid residue in a protein (Figure 25.9).

FIGURE 25.8
The planar geometry of a peptide bond.

FIGURE 25.9
Proteins are comprised of repeating planar units, each of which can freely rotate with respect to the others.

FIGURE 25.10
An α helix. (Illustration, Irving Geis. Image from Irving Geis Collection/Howard Hughes Medical Institute. Rights owned by ***HHMI***. Not to be reproduced without permission.)

Although the individual planes are free to rotate with respect to each other, their presence limits the conformations available to the protein. Depending on the sequence of amino acid residues, localized regions of peptides often adopt particular shapes. Two particularly stable arrangements are the α **helix** and β **pleated sheet**. An α helix forms when a portion of the protein twists into a clockwise spiral (Figure 25.10). Each turn has approximately four amino acid residues, and each C═O group experiences hydrogen bonding with an N—H group that is four residues farther along on the chain. In an α helix, the R groups (side chains) extend outward, away from the helix. A proline residue cannot be part of an α helix, because it lacks an N—H proton and does not participate in hydrogen bonding. Many proteins contain α helices. For example, α-keratin, the major component of hair, is comprised almost entirely of α helices. The composition of hair will be further discussed in Section 25.8.

Beta pleated sheets are formed when two or more protein chains line up side by side (Figure 25.11). In a β pleated sheet, hydrogen bonding occurs between the C═O group and N—H group of neighboring strands. The R groups (side chains) are positioned above and below the plane of the sheet, in an alternating pattern. Beta sheets are commonly formed from segments that bear residues with small R groups, such as Ala and Gly. With larger side chains, steric hindrance prevents the strands from getting close enough to participate in hydrogen bonding. Spider webs are comprised primarily of fibroin, a protein containing a pleated sheet arrangement that endows fibroin with structural strength. Fibroin is also the major component of silk.

FIGURE 25.11
A β pleated sheet. (Illustration, Irving Geis. Image from Irving Geis Collection/Howard Hughes Medical Institute. Rights owned by ***HHMI***. Not to be reproduced without permission.)

FIGURE 25.12
Symbols used when illustrating the secondary structure of proteins: (a) an α helix and (b) a β pleated sheet.

Proteins are generally comprised of many structural domains, including α helices as well as β pleated sheets. In order to draw a protein in a way that illustrates its secondary structure, the shorthand symbols given in Figure 25.12 are frequently used. The flat helical ribbon represents an α helix, while the flat wide arrow represents a β sheet. Beta sheets can be either parallel or antiparallel, depending on the direction of neighboring segments (Figure 25.13). Both chains of human insulin exhibit α helices (Figure 25.14).

FIGURE 25.13
Parallel and antiparallel β sheets.

FIGURE 25.14
Alpha helices in the two peptide chains of human insulin.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

25.39 Below is the primary structure for a peptide. Identify the regions that are most likely to form β pleated sheets.

Trp-His-Pro-Ala-Gly-Gly-Ala-Val-His-Cys-Asp-Ser-Arg-Arg-Ala-Gly-Ala-Phe

FIGURE 25.15
A space-filling model of myoglobin with hydrophilic groups highlighted in red.

Tertiary Structure

The **tertiary structure** of a protein refers to its three-dimensional shape. Proteins typically adopt conformations that maximize stability. In aqueous solution, a protein will adopt a conformation in which the polar groups are pointing toward the exterior of the protein and the nonpolar groups are located in the interior. Consider the structure of myoglobin, a protein used to store molecular oxygen (Figure 25.15). The regions marked in red represent polar side groups, and they are positioned on the surface of the three-dimensional structure so that they can interact with water, thereby maximizing the stability of the protein.

The intramolecular forces holding a typical protein in its folded shape are relatively weak, and under conditions of mild heating, a protein can unfold, in a process called **denaturation** (Figure 25.16).

FIGURE 25.16
A protein loses its secondary and tertiary structures when it is denatured.

A common example is the cooking of an egg, during which the protein albumin is denatured and changes from a clear solution to a white solid. The secondary and tertiary structures are lost, but the primary structure remains intact. That is, the sequence of amino acid residues does not change. Loss of tertiary structure is typically accompanied by a loss of function, because the function of a protein is very much dependent on its three-dimensional shape. The denaturation process is irreversible in most cases. Factors other than heat can also cause denaturation, including a change in pH or a change in solvent.

FIGURE 25.17
The quaternary structure of hemoglobin. For clarity, each subunit is presented in a different color.

Quaternary Structure

A **quaternary structure** arises when a protein consists of two or more folded polypeptide chains, called *subunits*, that aggregate to form one protein complex. For example, consider the quaternary structure of hemoglobin, which is comprised of four different subunits (Figure 25.17). Each subunit in hemoglobin is displayed in a different color. The subunits have many nonpolar amino acid residues, and as such, there are many nonpolar groups on their surfaces. These nonpolar groups experience van der Waals interactions, which hold the quaternary structure together.

BioLinks Diseases Caused by Misfolded Proteins

Until recently, it was widely believed that all contagious diseases were caused by living pathogens, such as viruses, bacteria, or fungi. For a small number of contagious diseases, scientists were baffled by their inability to identify the pathogen responsible. Examples include *Creutzfeldt–Jakob disease* in humans and *scrapie* in sheep. Both diseases are similar, causing loss of mental function and death. Autopsies of victims revealed plaques of amyloid protein surrounded by spongelike tissue in the brain. These diseases came to be known as spongiform encephalopathies. The prevailing belief was that some virus or other organism would soon be isolated and identified as the causitive pathogen.

In the 1980s Stanley Prusiner, a neurologist at the University of California at San Francisco, systematically and scrupulously separated all of the components of scrapie-infected sheep brains. He found the infectious agent to be a particular protein. He suggested that scrapie and other related diseases are caused by *infectious proteins*, which he called *prions*. This conclusion was highly significant, because it represented the first example of a nonliving pathogen capable of causing deadly infections without employing DNA or RNA. For his groundbreaking work, Prusiner was awarded the 1997 Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine.

Prion diseases attracted significant public awareness in the 1990s when cows in England, Canada, and the United States became infected with a disease called bovine spongiform encephalopathy, which caused them to move around erratically and eventually die. This disease, commonly referred to as *mad cow disease*, was presumably caused by using the remains of scrapie-infected sheep to feed cows. Mad cow disease represents a significant risk to humans because eating infected meat could trigger a form of Creutzfeldt–Jakob disease in humans, which is a fatal disease with no cure.

Prions are believed to be normal proteins that have become misfolded. In other words, the primary structure of the protein remains unaltered, but the tertiary structure is different. The normal protein unfolds and then refolds into a new shape (a prion). When animals eat the remains of scrapie-infected sheep, the prion is not digested and is not detected by the immune system as a harmful substance. The infectious form of the prion then causes other normal proteins to misfold as well. As the amount of misfolded proteins increases, they begin to aggregate in the brain, causing the plaques and spongelike tissues associated with spongiform encephalopathies.

Over the last decade, progress in finding a cure for prion diseases has been slow. Current research efforts are focused primarily on the design of drugs that can potentially inhibit misfolding. It is now understood that the body utilizes a variety of proteins called chemical *chaperones* to guide the folding of other proteins. By studying how these chaperones function, scientists believe that they will be able to synthesize chaperones that will prevent formation of the misfolded proteins characteristic of prion diseases. Prion diseases are an extreme example of the relationship between structure and function.

Supertrooper/Shutterstock

FIGURE 25.18
Polypeptide chains of α-keratin, coiled into a right-handed α helix.

25.8 Protein Function

Based on their shape, proteins are often classified as fibrous or globular. **Fibrous proteins** consist of linear chains that are bundled together. **Globular proteins** are chains that are coiled into compact shapes.

Proteins are also classified according to their function. A few different classes of proteins will now be described.

Structural Proteins

Structural proteins are fibrous proteins that are used for their structural rigidity. For example, α-keratins are structural proteins found in hair, nails, skin, feathers, and wool. Hair is comprised of many polypeptide chains of α-keratin, each coiled into a right-handed α helix, as seen in Figure 25.18. Four of these right-handed helices are then wrapped into left-handed superhelices, similar to the way that rope is made from twisting individual threads. These superhelices are then clustered together to form individual hairs. In general, α-keratins contain many cysteine residues, which allows them to form disulfide bridges. The number of disulfide bridges determines the

strength of the protein. For example, the α-keratins in fingernails have more disulfide bridges than the α-keratins in hair.

Enzymes

Enzymes are among the most important biological molecules because they catalyze virtually all cellular processes. For example, glycosidase enzymes speed up the hydrolysis of polysaccharides by a factor of 10^{17}. In other words, a reaction that would normally take millions of years is accomplished in milliseconds in the presence of an enzyme. Enzymes speed up reactions through their ability to bind to the transition state of a particular reaction, thereby lowering the energy of the transition state (Figure 25.19).

FIGURE 25.19
An energy diagram showing that an enzyme speeds up a reaction by lowering the energy of the transition state.

By lowering the energy of the transition state, the energy of activation is lowered, and the reaction occurs more rapidly. Even the simplest bacteria require thousands of enzymes to carry out their life processes, and humans require over fifty thousand.

Transport Proteins

Transport proteins are used to transport molecules or ions from one location to another. Hemoglobin is a classic example of a transport protein, used to transport molecular oxygen from the lungs to all the tissues of the body. Hemoglobin consists of a protein unit bound to a nonprotein unit called a **prosthetic group**. The protein portion of hemoglobin was shown in Figure 25.17. The prosthetic group of hemoglobin binds oxygen.

A small change in primary structure can result in a large change in function. Hemoglobin is a good example of this phenomenon. Hundreds of variations of hemoglobin have been discovered. Most humans have the common type, called HbA, but some people have genetic variations in which one amino acid residue is different. In many of these cases, the genetic variation has no effect on the

Mary Martin/ Science Source

(a) (b)

FIGURE 25.20
(a) Healthy red blood cells and (b) sickle-shaped red blood cells.

structure or activity of hemoglobin. However, some variations can be deadly. In one such variation, called HbS, the sixth residue from the N terminus of the β chain (consisting of 146 residues) is valine instead of glutamic acid. This variation greatly affects the structure and activity of hemoglobin, causing red blood cells to be distorted, or sickle shaped (Figure 25.20). These distorted cells are highly susceptible to rupturing, and they interfere with the regular flow of blood. This condition is called sickle-cell anemia, and it can be fatal. A person with sickle-cell anemia has inherited two copies of the gene for abnormal hemoglobin, one from each parent. A person who carries only one copy of the sickle-cell gene is said to have the sickle-cell trait, which is a less severe form of the disease, but it can still cause serious problems under conditions of stress. Interestingly, the sickle-cell trait offers an advantage in that it seems to be accompanied by a resistance to malaria. This example illustrates how a change in a single amino acid residue can greatly affect the structure and function of a protein.

REVIEW OF REACTIONS

Analysis of Amino Acids

Reaction with Ninhydrin

An amino acid | Ninhydrin | Purple-colored product | By-products

Synthesis of Amino Acids

Via an α-Haloacid

Via the Amidomalonate Synthesis

Via the Strecker Synthesis

Enantioselective Synthesis

Analysis of Amino Acids

Edman Degradation

Synthesis of Peptides

Peptide Bond Formation

Protection and Deprotection of the N Terminus

Protection and Deprotection of the C Terminus

REVIEW OF CONCEPTS AND VOCABULARY

SECTION 25.1

- **Proteins** are large compounds formed from **amino acids** linked together.
- Each amino acid contains one amino group and one carboxylic acid group. Amino acids in which the two functional groups are separated by exactly one carbon atom are called **alpha amino acids**.
- Amino acids are coupled together by amide linkages called **peptide bonds.**
- Relatively short chains of amino acids are called **peptides**.

SECTION 25.2

- Amino acids are said to be **amphoteric**, because they can function either as acids or as bases.
- Only 20 amino acids are abundantly found in proteins, all of which are L **amino acids**, except for glycine, which lacks a chiral center.
- Amino acids have two pK_a values, one for the carboxylic acid group and one for the ammonium group.
- Amino acids with basic or acidic side chains will exhibit a third pK_a value.

- Amino acids exist primarily as **zwitterions** at physiological pH.
- The **isoelectric point (pI)** of an amino acid is the pH at which the concentration of the zwitterionic form reaches its maximum value. During **electrophoresis**, amino acids are separated based on pI values.

SECTION 25.3

- Racemic mixtures of amino acids can be prepared in the laboratory via α-haloacids, via the **amidomalonate synthesis**, or via the **Strecker synthesis**. Optically active amino acids are obtained either via resolution of a racemic mixture or via enantioselective synthesis.

SECTION 25.4

- Peptides are comprised of **amino acid residues** joined by peptide bonds.
- Peptide chains have an amino group called the **N terminus** and a COOH group called the **C terminus**.
- Peptide bonds experience restricted rotation, giving rise to two possible conformations, called *s-trans* and *s-cis*. The *s-trans* conformation is generally more stable.
- Cysteine residues are uniquely capable of being joined to one another via **disulfide bridges.**

SECTION 25.5

- The sequence of amino acids in a peptide can be analyzed using an **Edman degradation.**
- Large peptides are first cleaved into smaller fragments using **peptidases**, such as trypsin or chymotrypsin.

SECTION 25.6

- DCC is commonly used to form peptide bonds.
- Protecting groups are used to control regioselectivity.
- Amino groups can be protected by conversion to carbamates, while carboxylic acid groups can be protected by conversion to esters.
- In the **Merrifield synthesis**, a peptide chain is assembled while tethered to an insoluble polymer.

SECTION 25.7

- The **primary structure** of a protein is the sequence of amino acid residues.
- The **secondary structure** of a protein refers to the three-dimensional conformations of localized regions of the protein. Two particularly stable arrangements are the α **helix** and β **pleated sheet**.
- The **tertiary structure** of a protein refers to its three-dimensional shape.
- Under conditions of mild heating, a protein can unfold, a process called **denaturation**.
- **Quaternary structure** arises when a protein consists of two or more folded polypeptide chains, called *subunits*, that aggregate to form one protein complex.

SECTION 25.8

- **Fibrous proteins** consist of linear chains that are bundled together.
- **Globular proteins** are chains that are coiled into compact shapes.
- **Structural proteins**, such as α-keratin, are fibrous proteins that provide structural rigidity.
- **Enzymes** catalyze virtually all cellular processes.
- **Transport proteins**, such as hemoglobin, are used to transport molecules or ions from one location to another. Hemoglobin consists of a protein unit bound to a nonprotein unit called a **prosthetic group**.
- A small change in primary structure can result in a large change in function.

SKILLBUILDER REVIEW

25.1 DETERMINING THE PREDOMINANT FORM OF AN AMINO ACID AT A SPECIFIC pH

STEP 1 Identify the pK_a associated with the carboxylic acid group and determine whether this group will predominate as the uncharged form or as the carboxylate anion at the specified pH.

STEP 2 Identify the pK_a associated with the α-amino group and determine whether this group will predominate as the uncharged form or as the cationic form at the specified pH.

STEP 3 If the side chain has an ionizable group, identify the pK_a associated with the side chain and determine the form of the side chain that will predominate at the specified pH.

Try Problems 25.4–25.6, 25.40, 25.47, 25.48, 25.84

25.2 USING THE AMIDOMALONATE SYNTHESIS

STEP 1 Identify the side chain that is connected to the α position.

STEP 2 Identify the alkyl halide necessary and ensure it will readily undergo an S_N2 process.

STEP 3 Identify the reagents. Begin with diethyl acetamidomalonate as the starting material. Perform the alkylation and then heat with aqueous acid.

Try Problems **25.14–25.16, 25.57, 25.58, 25.59c, 25.60b, 25.89**

25.3 DRAWING A PEPTIDE

STEP 1 Draw a peptide with the correct number of residues.

STEP 2 Identify the side chain associated with each residue.

STEP 3 Assign the proper configuration for each α position.

Try Problems **25.21–25.24, 25.65, 25.66, 25.85**

25.4 SEQUENCING A PEPTIDE VIA ENZYMATIC CLEAVAGE

Ala-Phe-**Lys**-Val-Met-Tyr-Gly-**Arg**-Ser-Trp-Leu-His

Trypsin cleaves the peptide at these locations

$\xrightarrow{\text{Trypsin}}$

Ala-Phe-**Lys**

Val-Met-Tyr-Gly-**Arg**

Ser-Trp-Leu-His

Ala-**Phe**-Lys-Val-Met-**Tyr**-Gly-Arg-Ser-**Trp**-Leu-His

Chymotrypsin cleaves the peptide at these locations

$\xrightarrow{\text{Chymotrypsin}}$

Ala-**Phe**

Lys-Val-Met-**Tyr**

Gly-Arg-Ser-**Trp**

Leu-His

Try Problems **25.31–25.33, 25.71, 25.74**

25.5 PLANNING THE SYNTHESIS OF A DIPEPTIDE

STEP 1 Install the appropriate protecting groups.

STEP 2 Couple the protected amino acids using DCC.

STEP 3 Remove the protecting groups.

Try Problems **25.34–25.36, 25.77–25.79, 25.88**

25.6 PREPARING A PEPTIDE USING THE MERRIFIELD SYNTHESIS

Try Problems 25.37, 25.38, 25.80, 25.81

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

• Included in Answers section

25.40 • Draw a bond-line structure showing the zwitterionic form of each of the following amino acids:

(a) L-Valine (b) L-Tryptophan
(c) L-Glutamine (d) L-Proline

25.41 The 20 naturally occurring amino acids (Table 25.1) are all L amino acids, and they all have the *S* configuration, with the exception of glycine (which lacks a chiral center) and cysteine. Naturally occurring cysteine is an L amino acid, but it has the *R* configuration. Explain.

25.42 • Draw a Fischer projection for each of the following amino acids:

(a) L-Threonine (b) L-Serine
(c) L-Phenylalanine (d) L-Asparagine

25.43 Seventeen of the 20 naturally occurring amino acids (Table 25.1) exhibit exactly one chiral center. Of the remaining three amino acids, glycine has no chiral center, and the other two amino acids each have two chiral centers.

(a) Identify the amino acids with two chiral centers.

(b) Assign the configuration of each chiral center in these two amino acids.

25.44 Draw all stereoisomers of L-isoleucine. In each stereoisomer, assign the configuration (*R* or *S*) of all chiral centers.

25.45 Arginine is the most basic of the 20 naturally occurring amino acids. At physiological pH, the side chain of arginine is protonated. Identify which nitrogen atom in the side chain is protonated. (**Hint:** Consider all three conjugate acids and draw all resonance structures.)

25.46 Histidine possesses a basic side chain that is protonated at physiological pH. Identify which nitrogen atom in the side chain is protonated.

25.47 Draw the form of L-glutamic acid that predominates at each pH:

(a) 1.9 (b) 2.4 (c) 5.8 (d) 10.4

25.48 • For each of the following amino acids, draw the form that is expected to predominate at physiological pH:

(a) L-Isoleucine (b) L-Tryptophan
(c) L-Glutamine (d) L-Glutamic acid

25.49 Using the data in Table 25.2, calculate the pI of the following amino acids:

(a) L-Alanine (b) L-Asparagine
(c) L-Histidine (d) L-Glutamic acid

25.50 Just as each amino acid has a unique pI value, proteins also have an overall observable pI. For example, lysozyme (present in tears and saliva) has a pI of 11.0 while pepsin (used in our stomachs to digest other proteins) has a pI of 1.0. What information does this give you about the types of amino acid residues that predominantly make up each of these proteins?

25.51 For each amino acid, draw the structure that predominates at the isoelectric point:

(a) L-Glutamine (b) L-Phenylalanine

(c) L-Proline (d) L-Threonine

25.52 Optically active amino acids undergo racemization at the α position when treated with strongly basic conditions. Provide a mechanism that supports this observation.

25.53 A mixture containing glycine, L-glutamine, and L-asparagine was subjected to electrophoresis. Predict which amino acid would move the farthest, if the experiment was performed at each of the given pH values:

(a) pH = 6.0 (b) pH = 5.0

25.54 Draw the products that are expected when each of the following amino acids is treated with ninhydrin:

(a) L-Aspartic acid (b) L-Leucine

(c) L-Phenylalanine (d) L-Proline

25.55 A mixture of three amino acids was treated with ninhydrin, and the following aldehydes were observed in the product mixture:

(a) Identify the structure and name all three amino acids in the starting mixture.

(b) In addition to the aldehydes, a purple-colored product is obtained. Draw the structure of the compound responsible for the purple color.

(c) Describe the origin of the purple color.

25.56 • Show how you would use a Strecker synthesis to make valine.

25.57 Under similar conditions, alanine and valine were each prepared with an amidomalonate synthesis, and alanine was obtained in higher yields than valine. Explain the difference in yields.

25.58 The amidomalonate synthesis can be used to prepare amino acids from alkyl halides. The amidomalonate synthesis is not suitable to make glycine. Explain.

25.59 • Predict the major product(s) in each of the following cases:

25.60 Show how racemic valine can be prepared by each of the following methods:

(a) The Hell–Volhard–Zelinsky reaction

(b) The amidomalonate synthesis

(c) The Strecker synthesis

25.61 How many different pentapeptides can be constructed from the 20 naturally occurring amino acids in Table 25.1?

25.62 Using an asymmetric catalytic hydrogenation, identify the starting alkene that you would use to make L-histidine.

25.63 Using three-letter abbreviations, identify all possible acyclic tripeptides containing L-leucine, L-methionine, and L-valine.

25.64 Draw the predominant form of Asp-Lys-Phe at physiological pH.

25.65 Draw a bond-line structure of the peptide that corresponds with the following sequence of amino acid residues and identify the N terminus and C terminus:

Trp-Val-Ser-Met-Gly-Glu

25.66 Methionine enkephalin is a pentapeptide that is produced by the body to control pain. From the sequence of its amino acid residues, draw a bond-line structure of methionine enkephalin.

25.67 Draw the form of aspartame (represented below) that is expected to predominate at physiological pH:

Asp-**Phe**-OCH_3

25.68 It is believed that penicillin antibiotics are biosynthesized from amino acid precursors. Identify the two amino acids that are most likely utilized during the biosynthesis of penicillin antibiotics:

25.69 Green fluorescent protein (GFP), first isolated from bioluminescent jellyfish, is a protein containing 238 amino acid residues. The discovery of GFP has revolutionized the field of fluorescence microscopy, which enables biochemists to monitor the biosynthesis of proteins. The 2008 Nobel Prize in Chemistry was awarded to Martin Chalfie, Osamu Shimomura, and Roger Tsien for the discovery and

development of GFP. The structural subunit of GFP responsible for fluorescence, called the fluorophore, results when three amino acid residues undergo cyclization. Identify the three amino acids that are necessary for the biosynthesis of this fluorophore:

25.70 Propose two structures for a tripeptide that contains glycine, L-alanine, and L-phenylalanine, but does not react with phenyl isothiocyanate.

25.71 Bradykinin has the following sequence:

Arg-Val-Pro-Gly-Phe-Ser-Pro-Phe-Arg

Identify all fragments that will be produced when bradykinin is treated with:

(a) Trypsin (b) Chymotrypsin

25.72 Identify the N-terminal residue of a peptide that yields the following PTH derivative upon Edman degradation:

25.73 Treatment of a tripeptide with phenyl isothiocyanate yields compound **A** and a dipeptide. Subsequent treatment of the dipeptide with phenyl isothiocyanate yields compound **B** and glycine. Identify the structure of the starting tripeptide.

Compound A

Compound B

25.74 Glucagon is a peptide hormone produced by the pancreas that, with insulin, regulates blood glucose levels. Glucagon is comprised of 29 amino acid residues. Treatment with trypsin yields four fragments (shown below), while treatment with chymotrypsin yields six fragments. Identify the sequence of amino acid residues for glucagon and determine whether any disulfide bridges are present.

Trypsin fragments

His-Ser-Gln-Gly-Thr-Phe-Thr-Ser-Asp-Tyr-Ser-Lys
Ala-Gln-Asp-Phe-Val-Gln-Trp-Leu-Met-Asn-Thr
Tyr-Leu-Asp-Ser-Arg
Arg

Chymotrypsin fragments

His-Ser-Gln-Gly-Thr-Phe
Thr-Ser-Asp-Tyr
Leu-Met-Asn-Thr
Ser-Lys-Tyr
Leu-Asp-Ser-Arg-Arg-Ala-Gln-Asp-Phe
Val-Gln-Trp

25.75 When the N terminus of a peptide is acetylated, the peptide derivative that is formed is unreactive toward phenyl isothiocyanate. Explain.

25.76 Predict the major product of the reaction between L-valine and:

(a) MeOH, H^+ (b) Di-*tert*-butyl-dicarbonate
(c) NaOH, H_2O (d) HCl

25.77 • Show all steps necessary to make the dipeptide Phe-Ala from L-phenylalanine and L-alanine via coupling with DCC.

25.78 Draw all four possible dipeptides that are obtained when a mixture of L-phenylalanine and L-alanine is treated with DCC.

25.79 Identify the reagents needed and the steps you would use to combine Val-Leu and Phe-Ile to form the tetrapeptide Phe-Ile-Val-Leu.

25.80 Identify all of the steps necessary to prepare the tripeptide Leu-Val-Ala with a Merrifield synthesis.

25.81 Draw the structure of the protected amino acid that must be anchored to the solid support in order to use a Merrifield synthesis to prepare leucine enkephalin:

Tyr-Gly-Gly-Phe-Leu

25.82 A proline residue often appears at the end of an α helix but will rarely appear in the middle. Explain why proline generally cannot be incorporated into an α helix.

25.83 Draw a mechanism for the following reaction:

ACS-STYLE PROBLEMS (Multiple Choice)

Problems 25.84–25.88 follow the style of the ACS organic chemistry exam. For each of these problems, there will be one correct answer and three distractors.

25.84 • Which of the following is the predominant form of proline at physiological pH (pH = 7.4)?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

25.85 • Which of the following terms properly describes the given peptide?

(a) Tripeptide (b) Tetrapeptide
(c) Pentapeptide (d) Hexapeptide

25.86 • The two pK_a values for serine are given below. What is the isoelectric point (pI) for serine?

(a) 9.15 (b) 6.94 (c) 5.68 (d) 2.21

24.87 • Of the following, which best describes a peptide bond and its planar character?

(a) A peptide bond is within an ester group that has an sp^2 hybridized carbonyl group.

(b) A peptide bond is a C—N bond with substantial double-bond character.

(c) A peptide bond is an amide group in which the nitrogen atom bears a lone pair that is localized.

(d) A peptide bond involves an amine that is rapidly inverting.

25.88 • In order to synthesize a dipeptide, a chemist prepares two protected amino acids: a BOC-protected glycine, and the methyl ester of phenylalanine. Which of the following best describes the two functional groups that will react to form the dipeptide?

(a) The Gly carboxylic acid reacts with the Phe amino group.

(b) The Gly carboxylic acid reacts with the Phe carboxylic acid.

(c) The Gly amino group reacts with the Phe carboxylic acid.

(d) The Gly amino group reacts with the Phe ester.

INTEGRATED PROBLEMS

25.89 Draw the alkyl halide that would be necessary to make the amino acid tyrosine using an amidomalonate synthesis. This same alkyl halide is highly susceptible to polymerization. Draw a segment of the expected polymeric material.

25.90 When leucine is prepared with an amidomalonate synthesis, isobutylene (also called 2-methylpropene) is a gaseous by-product. Draw a mechanism for the formation of this by-product.

25.91 The side chain of tryptophan is not considered to be basic, despite the fact that it possesses a nitrogen atom with a lone pair. Explain.

25.92 Consider a process that attempts to prepare tyrosine using a Hell–Volhard–Zelinsky reaction:

(a) Identify the necessary startin g carboxylic acid.

(b) When treated with two equivalents of Br_2, the starting carboxylic acid produces a compound with the molecular formula $C_9H_8Br_2O_3$, in which neither of the bromine atoms is located at the α position. Propose a structure for the observed product, and describe the mechanism that occurred.

CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

25.93 Proton NMR spectroscopy provides evidence for the restricted rotation of amides, as found in peptide bonds. For example, *N*,*N*-dimethylformamide exhibits three signals in its proton NMR spectrum at room temperature. Two of those signals are observed upfield, at 2.9 and 3.0 ppm. As the temperature is raised, the two signals begin to merge together. At temperatures above 180°C, these two signals combine into one signal. Explain how these results are evidence for the restricted rotation of peptide bonds.

25.94 We saw in Section 25.6 that DCC can be used to form a peptide bond. We explored the mechanism, and we saw that DCC activates the COOH group so that it readily undergoes nucleophilic acyl substitution. An alternative method for activating a COOH group involves converting it into an activated ester, such as a *para*-nitrophenyl ester:

The activated ester is readily attacked by a suitably protected amino acid to form a peptide bond:

(a) Explain how the *p*-nitrophenyl ester activates the carbonyl group toward nucleophilic acyl substitution.

(b) What is the function of the nitro group?

(c) A *meta*-nitrophenyl ester is less activating than a *para*-nitrophenyl ester. Explain.

25.95 When the following compound is treated with concentrated HCl at 100°C for several hours, hydrolysis occurs, producing one of the 20 naturally occurring amino acids. Identify which one.

26

Lipids

26.1 Introduction to Lipids
26.2 Waxes
26.3 Triglycerides
26.4 Reactions of Triglycerides
26.5 Phospholipids
26.6 Steroids
26.7 Prostaglandins
26.8 Terpenes

DID YOU EVER **WONDER...**

why high cholesterol levels increase the risk of a heart attack?

Cholesterol is a type of steroid that belongs to a larger class of naturally occurring compounds called lipids. Cholesterol serves many important functions, as we will see in this chapter, and maintaining healthy cholesterol levels can truly be a matter of life and death. In this chapter, we will explore the properties and functions of steroids, as well as the properties and functions of many other classes of lipids.

Pixelbliss/Shutterstock

DO YOU **REMEMBER?**

Before you go on, be sure you understand the following topics.
If necessary, review the suggested sections to prepare for this chapter:

- Partially Hydrogenated Fats (Section 8.9)
- Autooxidation and Antioxidants (Section 10.9)
- Base-Catalyzed Hydrolysis of Esters: Saponification (Section 20.11)

Take the DO YOU **REMEMBER?** QUIZ in the **online course** to check your understanding.

26.1 Introduction to Lipids

Throughout the chapters of this book, we have regularly classified organic compounds based on their functional groups (e.g., alkenes, alkynes, alcohols). **Lipids** represent a somewhat unique category because they are not defined by the presence or absence of a particular functional group. Instead, they are defined by a physical property—solubility. Specifically, lipids are naturally occurring compounds that can be extracted from cells using nonpolar organic solvents. An extremely large number of biological compounds are considered to be lipids, so it is helpful to classify and categorize them. **Complex lipids** are lipids that readily undergo hydrolysis in aqueous acid or base to produce smaller fragments, while **simple lipids** do not readily undergo hydrolysis. The terms "simple" and "complex" can be somewhat misleading in this context, since many complex lipids have rather simple structures, while many simple lipids have more complex structures. Complex lipids are so named because they contain one or more ester groups, which can be hydrolyzed to produce a carboxylic acid and an alcohol (see Section 20.11). In this chapter, we will explore three classes of complex lipids and three classes of simple lipids, as seen in Figure 26.1.

FIGURE 26.1
The six classes of lipids that will be discussed in this chapter.

The three major classes of complex lipids are waxes, triglycerides, and phospholipids. One example of each class is shown. Notice that all three classes contain ester groups, rendering them easily hydrolyzed, and they also contain long, hydrocarbon chains, rendering them soluble in organic solvents.

Just as complex lipids can be divided into several classes, simple lipids can also be divided into several classes. In this chapter, we will explore three such classes: steroids, prostaglandins, and terpenes. One example of each class is shown below.

26.2 Waxes

Waxes are high-molecular-weight esters that are constructed from carboxylic acids and alcohols. For example, triacontyl hexadecanoate, a major component of beeswax, is constructed from a carboxylic acid with 16 carbon atoms and an alcohol with 30 carbon atoms.

Triacontyl hexadecanoate
(a major component of beeswax)

LOOKING BACK
For a review of London dispersion forces, see Section 1.13.

Other waxes are similar in structure, differing only in the number of carbon atoms on either side of the ester group. These long hydrocarbon chains endow these compounds with high melting points as the result of extensive, intermolecular London dispersion forces between the hydrocarbon tails.

Waxes serve a wide variety of functions in living organisms. Sperm whales are believed to use spermaceti wax as an antenna for detecting sound waves (sonar), allowing the whale to map its environment. Many insects have protective coatings of wax on their exoskeletons. Birds utilize waxes on their feathers, rendering them water repellant. Similarly, the fur of some mammals, such as sheep, is coated with a mixture of waxes called lanolin. Waxes coat the surface of the leaves of many plants, thereby preventing evaporation and reducing water loss. For example, carnauba wax (a mixture of high-molecular-weight esters) is produced by the Brazilian palm tree and is commonly used in polish formulations for boats and automobiles.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

26.1 Waxes can be hydrolyzed to yield an alcohol and a carboxylic acid. Draw the products obtained when triacontyl hexadecanoate undergoes hydrolysis.

26.2 Lanolin is a mixture of many compounds, one of which was isolated, purified, and then treated with aqueous sodium hydroxide to yield an unbranched alcohol with 20 carbon atoms and an unbranched carboxylic acid with 22 carbon atoms. Draw the structure of the compound.

26.3 Triglycerides

The Structure and Function of Triglycerides

Triglycerides are triesters formed from glycerol and three long-chain carboxylic acids, or **fatty acids** (Figure 26.2).

FIGURE 26.2
Triglycerides are triesters that are assembled from one equivalent of glycerol and three equivalents of fatty acids.

A triglyceride is said to contain three *fatty acid residues*. Triglycerides are used by mammals and plants for long-term energy storage. Triglycerides store approximately 9 kcal/g, which means that they are more than twice as efficient for energy storage than carbohydrates and proteins, which can only store approximately 4 kcal/g. The exact structure, physical properties, and energy content of a triglyceride depend on the identity of the three fatty acid residues. Let's take a closer look at the fatty acids that are commonly found in naturally occurring triglycerides.

Properties of Fatty Acids and Triglycerides

Fatty acids obtained from hydrolysis of naturally occurring triglycerides are long, unbranched carboxylic acids typically containing between 12 and 20 carbon atoms. They generally contain an even number of carbon atoms (12, 14, 16, 18, or 20), because fatty acids are biosynthesized from building blocks containing two carbon atoms. Some fatty acids are saturated (contain no carbon-carbon π bonds), while others are unsaturated (contain carbon-carbon π bonds). Figure 26.3 compares space-filling models of a saturated fatty acid (stearic acid) and an unsaturated fatty acid (oleic acid), both with 18 carbon atoms. In its lowest energy conformation, stearic acid is fairly linear (Figure 26.3a). In contrast, oleic acid exhibits a kink that prevents the compound from adopting a linear conformation (Figure 26.3b). The presence or absence of a kink has a profound impact on the melting point of fatty acids. Table 26.1 provides the melting points of several saturated and unsaturated fatty acids.

FIGURE 26.3
(a) A space-filling model for the lowest energy conformation of stearic acid. (b) A space-filling model for the lowest energy conformation of oleic acid.

TABLE 26.1 MELTING POINTS OF COMMON SATURATED AND UNSATURATED FATTY ACIDS

STRUCTURE AND NAME	NUMBER OF CARBON ATOMS	NUMBER OF CARBON–CARBON DOUBLE BONDS	MELTING POINT (°C)
SATURATED			
Lauric acid	12	0	43
Myristic acid	14	0	54
Palmitic acid	16	0	63
Stearic acid	18	0	69
Arachidic acid	20	0	77
UNSATURATED			
Palmitoleic acid	16	1	0
Oleic acid	18	1	13
Linoleic acid	18	2	−5
Arachidonic acid	20	4	−50

Two important trends emerge from the data in Table 26.1:

1. For saturated fatty acids, the melting point increases with increasing molecular weight. For example, myristic acid exhibits a higher melting point than lauric acid, because myristic acid has more carbon atoms.

2. The presence of a *cis* double bond causes a decrease in the melting point. For example, oleic acid exhibits a lower melting point than stearic acid, because oleic acid has a *cis* double bond. Stearic acid molecules can pack more tightly in the solid phase, leading to stronger intermolecular London dispersion forces and, consequently, a higher melting point. In contrast, oleic acid molecules have a kink that prevents them from packing as efficiently, thereby decreasing the strength of the intermolecular London dispersion forces and lowering the melting point. Additional double bonds further lower the melting point, as can be seen when comparing the melting points of oleic acid and linoleic acid.

These two trends are also observed when comparing the melting points of triglycerides. That is, the melting point of a triglyceride depends on the number of carbon atoms in the fatty acid residues as well as the presence of any unsaturation. Triglycerides with unsaturated fatty acid residues have lower melting points than triglycerides with saturated fatty acid residues. For example, compare space-filling models of tristearin and triolein (Figure 26.4). Tristearin is a triglyceride formed from three molecules of stearic acid. Since all three fatty acids are saturated, the resulting triglyceride can pack efficiently in the solid state, allowing for strong intermolecular London dispersion forces. As a result, tristearin has a relatively high melting point (it is a solid at room temperature). In contrast, triolein is a triglyceride formed from three molecules of oleic acid. Since all three fatty acids are unsaturated, the resulting triglyceride cannot pack as efficiently in the solid state. As a result, triolein experiences weaker intermolecular London dispersion forces and therefore has a relatively low melting point (it is a liquid at room temperature). Triglycerides that are solids at room temperature are called **fats**, while those that are liquids at room temperature are called **oils**.

Tristearin
mp = 72°C

Triolein
mp = −4°C

FIGURE 26.4
Space-filling models of tristearin and triolein.

SKILLBUILDER

26.1 COMPARING MOLECULAR PROPERTIES OF TRIGLYCERIDES

LEARN the skill

Which triglyceride would be expected to have the higher melting point?

Tripalmitolein

Tripalmitin

SOLUTION

First identify the fatty acid residues in each triglyceride:

Tripalmitolein

Tripalmitin

STEP 1
Identify the fatty acid residues.

STEP 2
Compare the length and saturation of the residues.

As the names imply, tripalmitolein contains three palmitoleic acid residues, and tripalmitin contains three palmitic acid residues. We must compare these fatty acid residues, keeping in mind that two features contribute to a higher melting point:

1. Length of fatty acid residues (longer chain = higher melting point)
2. Absence of C═C unsaturation (no unsaturation = higher melting point)

The first feature cannot be used to distinguish these triglycerides, because palmitoleic acid and palmitic acid each have 16 carbon atoms. However, the second feature does distinguish these triglycerides. Specifically, palmitoleic acid is an unsaturated carboxylic acid, while palmitic acid is a saturated carboxylic acid. We have seen that unsaturation causes inefficient packing, thereby lowering the melting point. Therefore, we expect tripalmitolein will have the lower melting point and tripalmitin the higher melting point.

PRACTICE the skill

26.3 For each pair of triglycerides, identify the one that is expected to have the higher melting point. Consult Table 26.1 to determine which fatty acid residues are present in each triglyceride.

(a) Trilaurin and trimyristin
(b) Triarachidin and trilinolein
(c) Triolein and trilinolein
(d) Trimyristin and tristearin

APPLY the skill

26.4 Arrange the following three triglycerides in order of increasing melting point:

Tristearin, tripalmitin, and tripalmitolein

26.5 Tristearin has a melting point of 72°C. Based on this information, would you expect triarachadin to be classified as a fat or as an oil?

26.6 Identify each of the following compounds as a fat or an oil. Explain your answers.

(a) A triglyceride containing one palmitic acid residue and two stearic acid residues
(b) A triglyceride containing one oleic acid residue and two linoleic acid residues

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 26.40a,d,e, 26.41a,d,e, 26.43**

26.4 Reactions of Triglycerides

Hydrogenation of Triglycerides

Triglycerides containing unsaturated fatty acid residues will undergo hydrogenation (see Section 8.9).

This type of transformation is generally achieved using high temperatures and a catalyst such as nickel (Ni). In the previous example, all of the carbon-carbon π bonds are hydrogenated, but it is also possible to control the conditions so that only some of the carbon-carbon π bonds are hydrogenated to give partially hydrogenated vegetable oils. For example, margarine is produced by hydrogenating soybean, peanut, or cottonseed oil until the desired consistency is achieved.

During the hydrogenation process, some of the double bonds can isomerize to give *trans* π bonds.

The hydrogenation process typically gives a mixture containing 10–15% *trans* unsaturated fatty acids. These "*trans* fats" have been implicated as culprits in raising cholesterol levels, thereby increasing the risk of heart attacks (as described in Section 26.6). The FDA requires food product labels to indicate the amount of *trans* fats present in food and mandated that the use of artificial *trans* fats in foods be phased out.

Nutrition Facts

Serving Size 1 ounce Servings in bag 4

Amount Per Serving

Calories 155 Calories from Fat 93

	% Daily Value*
Fat 13g	20%
Saturated Fat 3g + Trans Fat 2g	25%
Cholesterol 0mg	0%
Sodium 148mg	6%
Total Carbohydrate 14g	5%
Dietary Fiber 1g	5%
Sugars 1g	
Protein 2g	

Vitamin A	0%	• Vitamin C	9%
Calcium	1%	• Iron	3%

*Percent Daily Values are based on a 2,000 calorie diet. Your daily values may be higher or lower depending on your calorie needs.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

26.7 Triolein was treated with molecular hydrogen at high temperature in the presence of nickel. At completion, the reaction had consumed three equivalents of molecular hydrogen.

(a) Draw the structure of the product.

(b) Identify the name of the product.

(c) Determine whether the melting point of the product is higher or lower than triolein.

(d) When the product is treated with aqueous base, three equivalents of a fatty acid are produced. Identify this fatty acid.

26.8 Partial hydrogenation of triolein produces several different *trans* fats. Draw all possible *trans* fats that might be obtained in the process.

Autooxidation of Triglycerides

In the presence of molecular oxygen, triglycerides that contain unsaturated fatty acid residues are particularly susceptible to autooxidation at the allylic position to yield hydroperoxides (see Section 10.9).

A hydroperoxide

This process occurs via a radical mechanism initiated by a hydrogen abstraction at the allylic position to give a resonance-stabilized allylic radical (Mechanism 10.2).

As with all radical mechanisms, the net reaction is the sum of the propagation steps:

The resulting hydroperoxide is responsible for the rancid smell that develops over time in foods containing unsaturated oils. In addition, hydroperoxides are also toxic. Therefore, food products containing unsaturated oils have a short shelf-life unless radical inhibitors are used to slow the formation of hydroperoxides. The role of radical inhibitors in food chemistry was discussed in Section 10.9.

Hydrolysis of Triglycerides

When treated with aqueous base, triglycerides undergo hydrolysis, yielding glycerol and three carboxylate ions.

Each of the three ester groups of the triglyceride is hydrolyzed via a nucleophilic acyl substitution reaction (Mechanism 26.1). This process, called saponification, was first encountered in Chapter 20 (Mechanism 20.7).

MECHANISM 26.1 HYDROLYSIS OF AN ESTER UNDER BASIC CONDITIONS

In the first step, a hydroxide ion functions as a nucleophile and attacks the carbonyl group of the ester, generating a tetrahedral intermediate. This tetrahedral intermediate then re-forms the carbonyl group by expelling an alkoxide ion as a leaving group. Alkoxide ions are generally poor leaving groups, but in this case, the tetrahedral intermediate itself is an alkoxide ion, so expulsion of an alkoxide ion is not uphill in energy. In the final step, the alkoxide ion functions as a base and deprotonates the carboxylic acid, generating a carboxylate ion. For a triglyceride, this three-step process is repeated until all three fatty acid residues have been released.

Naturally occurring fats and oils are usually complex mixtures of many different triglycerides. In fact, the three fatty acid residues within a single triglyceride are often different, as in the following example:

When heated with aqueous base, fats and oils can be completely hydrolyzed to provide a mixture of fatty acid carboxylates. Table 26.2 gives the approximate fatty acid composition of several common fats and oils. Two important observations emerge from the data in Table 26.2:

1. Triglycerides found in animals generally have a higher concentration of saturated fatty acids than triglycerides from vegetable origins.

2. The exact ratio of fatty acids differs from one source to another. For example, hydrolysis of corn oil produces more linoleic acid than oleic acid, while hydrolysis of olive oil produces more oleic acid.

TABLE 26.2 APPROXIMATE FATTY ACID COMPOSITIONS FOR SEVERAL FATS AND OILS

SOURCE	PERCENT SATURATED FATTY ACIDS	PERCENT OLEIC ACID	PERCENT LINOLEIC ACID	SOURCE	PERCENT SATURATED FATTY ACIDS	PERCENT OLEIC ACID	PERCENT LINOLEIC ACID
Animal Fat				**Vegetable Oil**			
Beef fat	55	40	3	Corn oil	14	34	48
Milk fat	37	33	3	Olive oil	11	82	5
Lard	41	50	6	Canola oil	9	54	30
Human fat	37	46	10	Peanut oil	12	60	20

SKILLBUILDER

26.2 IDENTIFYING THE PRODUCTS OF TRIGLYCERIDE HYDROLYSIS

LEARN the skill

Identify the products expected when the following triglyceride is hydrolyzed with aqueous base:

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Identify the ester groups.

First identify the three ester groups (highlighted in red). Each ester group is hydrolyzed to give an alcohol and a carboxylate ion, according to the following mechanism:

STEP 2
Draw glycerol and the three appropriate carboxylate ions.

Therefore, we expect the following products:

The products are glycerol and three carboxylate ions. Using Table 26.1, we can identify these carboxylate ions as the conjugate bases of palmitic acid, myristic acid, and linoleic acid.

PRACTICE the skill

26.9 Identify the products that are expected when the following triglyceride is hydrolyzed with aqueous sodium hydroxide:

APPLY the skill

26.10 A triglyceride was treated with sodium hydroxide to yield glycerol and three equivalents of sodium laurate (the conjugate base of lauric acid). Draw the structure of the triglyceride.

26.11 An achiral triglyceride was hydrolyzed to yield one equivalent of palmitic acid and two equivalents of lauric acid. Draw the structure of the triglyceride.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 26.30b, 26.40c, 26.41c**

Hydrolysis of triglycerides is commercially valuable, because soap is prepared via this process. Accordingly, the hydrolysis of triglycerides in the presence of aqueous base is also called saponification, derived from the Latin word for soap, *saponis*. Saponification of triglycerides produces carboxylate ions, which are the primary ingredients of soap. Recall from Chapter 1 that carboxylate ions function as soap because they have both a polar, hydrophilic group and a nonpolar, hydrophobic group.

When dissolved in water, compounds of this type assemble around nonpolar substances to form spheres called *micelles* (Figure 1.49). The nonpolar substance is located at the center of the micelle, where it interacts with the nonpolar ends of the soap molecules via intermolecular London dispersion forces. The surface of the micelle is comprised of polar groups, which interact with the polar solvent. That is, the micelle acts as a unit that is solvated by the polar solvent. In this way, soap molecules can solvate nonpolar substances, such as grease, in polar solvents, such as water.

Most soaps are produced by boiling either animal fat or vegetable oil together with a strong alkaline solution, such as aqueous sodium hydroxide. The identity of the alkyl chains can vary, depending on the source of the fat or oil, but the concept is the same for all soaps.

Transesterification of Triglycerides

We have seen that triglycerides are extremely efficient at storing energy. For this reason, our bodies use triglycerides as a source of fuel. It should therefore come as no surprise that diesel engines can be modified to use cooking oil as a fuel. In fact, coconut oil was used extensively as fuel for vehicles in World War I and World War II, when the supply of gasoline was scarce. This technique cannot be used in colder climates, because many oils will solidify at low temperatures. An alternative to

WorldLinks Soaps Versus Synthetic Detergents

Soap has been used for over two millennia, as people discovered long ago that soap could be made by heating animal fat together with wood ashes, which contain alkaline substances. Nevertheless, the usefulness of soap is diminished in the presence of water that contains high concentrations of calcium ions (Ca^{2+}) or magnesium ions (Mg^{2+}). When soap is used with such water, called hard water, a precipitate is formed as a result of the following ion exchange reaction:

The generation of a precipitate, often called soap scum, limits the usefulness of soap. To circumvent this problem, chemists have developed synthetic detergents that have less tendency to form precipitates when used with hard water. Like soap, synthetic detergents also contain both hydrophobic and hydrophilic regions, but the identity of the hydrophilic region has been modified. Rather than using a carboxylate group, synthetic detergents use a different group. For example, consider the structure of sodium lauryl sulfate.

Sodium lauryl sulfate

Like soap molecules, this compound also has a hydrophobic group and a hydrophilic group. However, in this case, an ion exchange reaction does not generate a precipitate, because the calcium salt of lauryl sulfate is water soluble, hence, no soap scum. Sodium lauryl sulfate is in fact a common ingredient found in many shampoo formulations.

markokg/Getty Images

vegetable oil is biodiesel, which is formed from the transesterification of vegetable oils to produce a mixture of fatty acid methyl esters.

Biodiesel
(a mixture of fatty acid methyl esters)

This transformation can be achieved with either acid catalysis or base catalysis. Mechanism 26.2 shows the acid-catalyzed mechanism.

MECHANISM 26.2 ACID-CATALYZED TRANSESTERIFICATION

In the first step, the carbonyl group of the ester is protonated, which renders the carbonyl group more electrophilic. An alcohol, such as methanol, then functions as a nucleophile and attacks the protonated carbonyl group, giving a tetrahedral intermediate. After two proton transfer steps, the carbonyl group can re-form, followed by a final proton transfer step. This mechanism is identical to Mechanism 20.8 (Section 20.11). The mechanism consists of two core steps (nucleophilic attack and loss of a leaving group) and four proton transfers.

Transesterifiction with methanol converts triglycerides that are typically quite viscous (slow-flowing) into less viscous (fast-flowing) fatty acid methyl esters that can be used as fuel in current diesel engines without modifying the engine. Since biodiesel can be derived from plants (vegetable oil), it serves as a potential alternative to petroleum-based diesel fuel as a renewable source of energy. Unfortunately, the current cost associated with producing biodiesel outweighs the cost of producing an equivalent amount of diesel. There is considerable disagreement as to whether biodiesel can compete economically with petroleum-based diesel fuel, even at higher petroleum prices.

SKILLBUILDER

26.3 DRAWING A MECHANISM FOR TRANSESTERIFICATION OF A TRIGLYCERIDE

LEARN the skill

Draw a mechanism for the transesterification of trilaurin using ethanol in the presence of an acid catalyst.

SOLUTION

Each ester group undergoes transesterification via a mechanism that has two core steps and four proton transfers.

Each of the four proton transfers serves a function, as we first saw in Chapter 20 when discussing the reactions of carboxylic acid derivatives. Recall that there is one guiding rule that determines when proton transfers are used: *In acidic conditions, a mechanism will only be reasonable if it avoids the use or formation of strong bases.* The first step is to protonate one of the ester groups. This renders the carbonyl group more electrophilic, and it avoids the formation of a strong base, which would result if the carbonyl group were attacked by the nucleophile without first being protonated.

The second step is a nucleophilic attack. Ethanol functions as a nucleophile and attacks the protonated carbonyl group.

The next two steps are both proton transfers.

The first proton transfer removes the positive charge so as to avoid the formation of two positive charges that would result from the second proton transfer. The second proton transfer occurs to protonate the leaving group. This avoids the formation of a strong base when the leaving group leaves in the next step.

The final proton transfer removes the positive charge.

These six steps are then repeated for each of the other remaining fatty acid residues.

PRACTICE the skill

26.12 Draw a mechanism for the transesterification of tristearin using methanol in the presence of catalytic acid.

26.13 Draw the products obtained when triolein undergoes transesterification using isopropyl alcohol in the presence of catalytic sulfuric acid.

APPLY the skill

26.14 The conversion of triglycerides into biodiesel can be achieved in the presence of either catalytic acid or catalytic base. We have seen a mechanism for transesterification with catalytic acid. In contrast, the mechanism for base-catalyzed transesterification has fewer steps. The base, such as hydroxide, functions as a catalyst by establishing the following equilibrium:

This equilibrium favors the hydroxide ions. Nevertheless, some ethoxide ions are present at equilibrium. These ethoxide ions are strong nucleophiles that can attack each ester group of the triglyceride according to the following mechanism:

In the final step, water is deprotonated, regenerating the catalyst.

(a) Draw a mechanism for the following process:

(b) When sodium hydroxide is used as a catalyst for transesterification, it is essential that only a small amount of the catalyst is present. Explain what would happen in the presence of too much sodium hydroxide.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 26.44, 26.45**

26.5 Phospholipids

Phospholipids are esterlike derivatives of phosphoric acid.

Phosphoric acid | A phosphoric acid monoester | A phosphoric acid diester | A phosphoric acid triester

The most common phospholipids are phosphoglycerides.

Phosphoglycerides

Phosphoglycerides are very similar in structure to triglycerides, with the main difference being that in phosphoglycerides one of the three fatty acid residues is replaced by a phosphoester group. The simplest kind of phosphoglyceride is a phosphoric monoester called a **phosphatidic acid**.

At physiological pH, the ionized form of a phosphatidic acid predominates.

The most abundant phosphoglycerides are phosphoric acid diesters:

The identity of the alkoxy group can vary. Phosphoglycerides derived from ethanolamine and from choline are particularly abundant in the cells of plants and animals.

Ethanolamine Choline

Phosphoglycerides that contain ethanolamine are called **cephalins**, while those that contain choline are called **lecithins**.

A cephalin A lecithin

These compounds contain a chiral center (C2 of the glycerol unit) and generally exhibit the *R* configuration. Cephalins and lecithins have two nonpolar, hydrophobic tails and one polar head group. The polar head consists of the glycerol backbone as well as the phosphodiester, while the nonpolar tails are hydrocarbon chains. These features determine their function in cells, as we will now describe.

Lipid Bilayers

In water, phosphoglycerides self-assemble into a **lipid bilayer** (Figure 26.5). In this way, the hydrophobic tails avoid contact with water and interact with each other via London dispersion forces. The surface of the bilayer is polar and therefore water soluble. Lipid bilayers constitute the main fabric of cell membranes, where they function as barriers that restrict the flow of water and ions. Cell membranes enable cells to maintain concentration gradients—that is, the concentrations of sodium and potassium ions inside the cell are different from those outside of the cell. These concentration gradients are necessary in order for a cell to function properly.

FIGURE 26.5
A graphic illustration of the three-dimensional structure of a lipid bilayer.

In order for compounds to self-assemble and form lipid bilayers, the compounds must have both a polar head and nonpolar tails. In addition, the three-dimensional shape of the compounds are also important, as illustrated in Figure 26.6. Fatty acids have a polar head group and a nonpolar tail, but their geometry precludes them from forming a bilayer. As seen in Figure 26.6a, fatty acids cannot form a bilayer because assembly of a bilayer would leave empty space in between each fatty acid. Similarly, triglycerides (Figure 26.6c) also lack the appropriate geometry for bilayer formation. In contrast, phospholipids (Figure 26.6b) have two hydrophobic tails and therefore exhibit the necessary geometry for bilayer formation.

FIGURE 26.6
(a) The assembly of fatty acids in a lipid bilayer would leave empty space between the molecules, thereby destabilizing the potential bilayer.
(b) Phospholipids have just the right geometry to form lipid bilayers, with no empty space between the molecules.
(c) The assembly of triglycerides in a lipid bilayer would leave empty space between the molecules, thereby destabilizing the potential bilayer.

Many different phospholipids contribute to the fabric of the lipid bilayer, including cephalins and lecithins containing various fatty acid residues as well as a variety of other phospholipids.

Flexibility and Stability of Lipid Bilayers

The center of a lipid bilayer (the hydrophobic region) is highly fluid and resembles a liquid hydrocarbon.

The hydrophobic tails are in rapid motion. This is an important feature, because it imparts flexibility to the lipid bilayer. However, if the bilayer is too fluid, then it becomes unstable. It would be incapable of holding its shape and carrying out its vital functions. In order to prevent the bilayer from becoming too fluid, it must contain embedded *stiffening agents*. These agents are typically lipids with rigid geometry, and their effect is to limit the movement of the hydrocarbon tails. In the cells of all animals (including humans), the predominant stiffening agent is cholesterol:

Cholesterol

Cholesterol is a naturally occurring steroid, discussed in Section 26.6. Cholesterol has an OH group that serves as a very small polar head, while the rest of the compound is hydrophobic and fairly rigid (as we will soon see). When a bilayer contains cholesterol, the hydrophobic region of the bilayer is still fluid, but motion is more limited, rendering the cell membrane more stiff.

Indeed, this is one of the many important biological functions of cholesterol.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

26.15 A lecithin was hydrolyzed to yield two equivalents of myristic acid.

(a) Draw the structure of the lecithin.

(b) This compound is chiral, but only one enantiomer predominates in nature. Draw the enantiomer that is found in nature.

(c) The phosphodiester is generally located at C3 of the glycerol unit. If the phosphodiester was located at C2, would the compound be chiral?

26.16 A cephalin was hydrolyzed to yield one equivalent of palmitic acid and one equivalent of oleic acid.

(a) Draw two possible structures of the cephalin.

(b) If the phosphodiester was located at C2 of the glycerol unit, would the compound be chiral?

26.17 Draw the resonance structures of a fully deprotonated phosphatidic acid.

26.18 Octanol is more efficient than hexanol at crossing a cell membrane and entering a cell. Explain.

26.19 Would you expect glycerol to readily cross a cell membrane? Explain why or why not.

BioLinks Polyether Antibiotics

Some antibiotics function very much like crown ethers (Section 13.4). For example, consider the structures of nonactin and monensin.

Nonactin

Monensin

These compounds are polyethers and therefore are capable of serving as hosts for metal cations, much like crown ethers. These polyethers are called *ionophores* because the internal cavity is capable of binding a metal ion. The outside surface of the ionophore is hydrocarbon-like (or *lipophilic*), allowing it to pass through cell membranes readily.

In order to function properly, cells must maintain a gradient between the concentration of sodium and potassium ions

inside and outside the cell. That gradient is established because ions are not free to pass through the cell membrane, except through special ion channels where K^+ ions are pumped into the cell and Na^+ ions are pumped out of the cell. Ionophores effectively render the cell membrane permeable to these ions. The ionophores serve as hosts to the ions, carrying them across the cell membrane and destroying the necessary concentration gradient. In this way, ionophores interrupt cell function, thereby killing the cell. Unfortunately, currently available ionophores are toxic to animal cells as well as bacteria, which has limited their use as antibacterial agents. One exception is monensin, which is commonly added at low doses as a feed supplement for dairy cows to increase milk production, for calves to increase weight gain, and for poultry to inhibit parasitic diseases.

26.6 Steroids

Introduction to Steroids

Most steroids function as chemical messengers, or hormones, that are secreted by endocrine glands and transported through the bloodstream to their target organs. Steroids and their derivatives are also among the most widely used therapeutic agents. They are used in birth control and hormone replacement therapy, and in the treatment of inflammatory conditions and cancer.

The structures of **steroids** are based on a tetracyclic ring system involving three six-membered rings and one five-membered ring.

The tetracyclic skeleton of steroids

These rings are labeled using the letters A, B, C, and D, where the D ring is the five-membered ring. The carbon atoms in this system are numbered as shown.

In order to analyze the configuration of each ring fusion, recall the structures of *cis*-decalin and *trans*-decalin.

When six-membered rings are fused with a *cis* configuration, as in *cis*-decalin, the two rings are both free to exhibit ring flipping. In contrast, *trans*-decalin does not exhibit ring flipping and is a more rigid structure. The ring fusions are all *trans* in most steroids, giving steroids their rigid

FIGURE 26.7
(a) The carbon skeleton of most steroids, (b) a ball-and-stick model of the carbon skeleton of a steroid, and (c) a space-filling model of the carbon skeleton of a steroid.

geometry. For some steroids, the A–B ring fusion is *cis*, although the B–C and C–D fusions are almost always *trans* in naturally occurring steroids. As a result, the carbon skeleton of most steroids provides for a fairly flat compound (Figure 26.7). The rigid geometry of cholesterol serves as an example.

Cholesterol
(a steroid)

In Section 26.5, we saw that the rigid structure of cholesterol enables the compound to function as a stiffening agent for lipid bilayers. Cholesterol contains two methyl groups (one attached to C10 and the other attached to C13) as well as a side chain attached to C17. This substitution pattern is common among many steroids. The two methyl groups occupy axial positions and are therefore perpendicular to the nearly planar skeleton, while the side chain occupies an equatorial position. This can be seen more clearly with three-dimensional representations of cholesterol (Figure 26.8). Cholesterol has eight chiral centers, giving rise to 2^8, or 256, possible stereoisomers. Nevertheless, only the one stereoisomer shown exists in nature.

FIGURE 26.8
(a) A ball-and-stick representation of cholesterol, which clearly shows that the two methyl groups occupy axial positions while the side chain occupies an equatorial position.
(b) A space-filling model of cholesterol, which also shows the locations of the two methyl groups and the side chain.

In addition to serving as a stiffening agent for lipid bilayers, cholesterol has many other important biological functions. For example, cholesterol serves as a precursor in the biosynthesis of most other steroids, including sex hormones. We will now explore how cholesterol is made in nature (biosynthesis).

LOOKING BACK
For a discussion of the role of chiral catalysts in asymmetric epoxidation, see Section 13.9.

Biosynthesis of Cholesterol

The biosynthesis of cholesterol involves many steps, some of which are shown in Mechanism 26.3. The starting material is squalene, which undergoes asymmetric epoxidation via enzymatic catalysis. The epoxide then opens to generate a carbocation, which undergoes a series of intramolecular cyclization reactions. All of these steps involve a π bond functioning as a nucleophile and attacking a carbocation in an intramolecular process. Each of these steps occurs within the cavity of an enzyme, where the configuration of each new chiral center is carefully controlled. Then, a series of rearrangements occurs that includes both methyl shifts and hydride shifts. Finally, deprotonation yields lanosterol, which is a precursor for cholesterol and all other steroids.

MECHANISM 26.3 BIOSYNTHESIS OF CHOLESTEROL

BioLinks | Cholesterol and Heart Disease

deliormanli/Getty Images

Our bodies can produce all the cholesterol we need, but we also obtain cholesterol in our diet. If dietary intake of cholesterol is high, our bodies produce less of it, in an attempt to compensate. If intake is excessively large, then cholesterol levels can rise, increasing the risk of heart attack and stroke. In order to understand the reason for this, we must consider how cholesterol is transported throughout the body.

Cholesterol is a lipid, which means that it is not water soluble. As a result, cholesterol cannot, by itself, be dissolved in the aqueous medium of the blood. Cholesterol is produced in the liver and then transported in the blood by large particles called lipoproteins. Lipoproteins consist of many proteins and lipids bound together via intermolecular interactions. Cholesterol and ester derivatives of cholesterol are contained in the center (the lipophilic region). Lipoproteins are soluble in the aqueous environment of the blood and are used by the body to transport lipids, such as cholesterol, throughout the body.

Lipoproteins are categorized into several different categories based on their density. High-density lipoproteins, or HDLs, have a higher proportion of proteins, while low-density lipoproteins, or LDLs, have a higher proportion of lipids. It is now understood that HDLs and LDLs have different functions. LDLs transport cholesterol from the liver to cells throughout the body, while HDLs transport excess cholesterol for the reverse journey, back to the liver, where they are either recycled or used as precursors for the synthesis of other steroids. If the LDL levels in the blood are too high, then some of the LDLs will be unable to unload their cholesterol to appropriate receptors, and instead, cholesterol accumulates and forms deposits in the artery walls, which can cause inflammation at those sites. These deposits restrict blood flow, which can lead to a heart attack (caused by an inadequate flow of blood to the heart) or a stroke (caused by an inadequate flow of blood to the brain). It is important that the HDL levels are sufficiently high to remove excess cholesterol deposited in the artery wall. Clinical lab measurements look at the ratio of LDL to HDL to estimate the risk of heart attack or stroke. The larger this ratio, the higher the risk.

There are many drugs available for the treatment of high levels of LDL cholesterol. Most notably, the *statins* are a family of compounds that were all developed based on the chemical structure of a single natural product, called lovastatin.

Scientists at Merck Research laboratories in the United States discovered lovastatin in the late 1970s in fermentation cultures of the fungus *Aspergillus terreus*. In clinical trials, lovastatin was found to be very effective at lowering LDL cholesterol levels, by inhibiting an enzyme (HMG-CoA reductase) that catalyzes a critical step in the biosynthesis of cholesterol in humans. Lovastatin, sold under the trade name Mevacor, once enjoyed annual sales in excess of $1 billion. Due to the success of lovastatin, a search was undertaken for analogues that could also be used for treating high cholesterol.

DebbiSmirnoff/Getty Images

Lovastatin (Mevacor)

A molecule very similar to lovastatin, called compactin (missing only a methyl group), had been isolated from fermentation cultures of the fungus *Penicillium citrinum* by scientists in Japan a few years before lovastatin was discovered. Although compactin failed during clinical testing, it was discovered that biotransformation with a bacteria would introduce an alcohol group into the ring, and this simple modification eliminated the problems observed with compactin. The modified structure, called pravastatin, became a widely prescribed cholesterol-lowering drug, sold under the trade name Pravacol.

Compactin **Pravastatin (Pravacol)**

This drug is produced by a two-stage fermentation process, where the compactin isolated from a fungal fermentation culture is then fed to a bacterial culture to produce pravastatin.

In recent years, synthetic chemistry has been used to generate a series of analogues of lovastatin. A "semisynthetic" analogue of lovastatin is the molecule simvastatin (Zocor), which is made by introducing a methyl group, in a single synthetic step, into the side chain of lovastatin. Other analogues of lovastatin include fluvastatin (Lescol) and atorvastatin (Lipitor), both of which are made entirely by chemical synthesis. Simvastatin and atorvastatin are currently the most widely prescribed drugs in the world and have proven extremely successful in lowering cholesterol.

The statins serve as an example of how a single natural product can act as inspiration for an entirely new class of drugs.

Simvastatin
(Zocor)

Fluvastatin
(Lescol)

Atorvastatin
(Lipitor)

Sex Hormones

Human sex hormones are steroids that regulate tissue growth and reproductive processes. Male sex hormones are called **androgens**, and there are two types of female sex hormones called **estrogens** and **progestins**. Table 26.3 shows the most important male and female sex hormones. All five of

TABLE 26.3 THE MOST IMPORTANT MALE AND FEMALE SEX HORMONES

Male sex hormones

Testosterone

Androsterone

Androgens

Female sex hormones

Estradiol

Estrone

Progesterone

Estrogens

A progestin

these sex hormones are present in both males and females. Estrogens and progestins are produced in greater concentrations in women, while androgens are produced in greater concentrations in men. Testosterone and androsterone are among the more potent androgens, and they control the development of secondary sex characteristics in males. Estradiol and estrone are estrogens, which are characterized by an aromatic A ring and the absence of a methyl group at C10. These hormones are produced in the ovaries from testosterone and play important roles in regulating a woman's menstrual cycle and controlling the development of secondary sex characteristics. Progesterone is a progestin that prepares the uterus for nurturing a fertilized egg during pregnancy.

During pregnancy, ovulation is inhibited by the release of estrogens and progestins from the placenta and ovaries. This process is mimicked by most birth control formulations, which generally

contain a mixture of a synthetic estrogen (such as ethynyl estradiol) and a synthetic progestin (such as norethindrone).

Ethynyl estradiol

Norethindrone

This mixture of compounds inhibits ovulation in much the same way that the body naturally inhibits ovulation during pregnancy.

Adrenocortical Hormones

Adrenocortical hormones are thus named because they are secreted by the cortex (the outer layer) of the adrenal glands. Adrenocortical hormones are typically characterized by a carbonyl group or hydroxyl group at C11. Examples include cortisone and cortisol.

Cortisone

Cortisol

Cortisone and cortisol differ only in the identity of one functional group (highlighted in red). Cortisone has a ketone group at C11 (indicated by the "-one" suffix), while cortisol has a hydroxy group at C11 (indicated by the "-ol" suffix). Cortisol is more abundant in nature, but cortisone is better known because of its therapeutic use. Both agents are used to treat the effects of inflammatory diseases, including psoriasis (inflammation of the skin), arthritis (inflammation of the joints), and asthma (inflammation of the lungs).

Many synthetic corticoids have been developed that are even more potent than their natural analogues. Synthetic corticoids are used in the treatment of rashes caused by poison oak, poison ivy, and eczema as well as inflammatory diseases such as psoriasis, arthritis, and asthma.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

26.20 Draw the hypothetical ring-flip of *trans*-decalin and explain why it does not occur (you might find it helpful to use a molecular model set to build a model of *trans*-decalin, and then see what happens when you try to do a ring flip). Use this analysis to explain why cholesterol has a fairly rigid three-dimensional geometry.

26.21 Draw chair conformations for each of the following compounds and then identify whether each substituent is axial or equatorial:

(a)

(b)

(c)

26.22 Prednisolone acetate is an anti-inflammatory agent in clinical use. It is similar in structure to cortisol, with the following two differences: (1) Prednisolone acetate exhibits a double bond between C1 and C2 of the A ring, and (2) the primary hydroxyl group has been acetylated. Using this information, draw the structure of prednisolone acetate.

BioLinks Anabolic Steroids and Competitive Sports

Anabolic steroids are compounds that promote muscle growth by mimicking the tissue-building effect of testosterone. Many synthetic androgen analogues have been created that are even more potent than testosterone, including stanozolol, nandrolone, and methandrostenolone.

Stanozolol

Nandrolone

Methandrostenolone

Synthetic anabolic steroids were originally developed in the 1930s for use in treating illnesses and injuries that involved muscle deterioration. Unfortunately, the development of these drugs led to rampant abuse by athletes and bodybuilders, even as early as the 1940s. The problem received wide public attention during the 1988 Olympics when Ben Johnson (Canada) was disqualified as the gold medal winner of the 100-meter dash because his urine tested positive for traces of stanozolol.

Steroid abuse is still a major problem, particularly among bodybuilders and professional baseball and football players. Many studies have been conducted to determine whether there is any correlation between steroid use and increased athletic performance. Some studies have shown a small connection, while other studies show no connection whatsoever. It appears that the health risks associated with steroid use outweigh the uncertain benefits. The health risks include increased risk of heart disease, stroke, liver cancer, sterility, as well as adverse behavorial changes caused by increased aggressive tendencies (called "steroid rage").

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

26.23 The following compounds are steroids. One is an anabolic steroid called oxymetholone and the other, called norgestrel, is used in oral contraceptive formulations. Identify which compound is likely the contraceptive based on its structural features (functional groups).

Spanic/Getty Images

26.7 Prostaglandins

In the early 1930s, it was observed that human seminal fluid could induce muscle contractions in uterine tissue. It was believed that this phenomenon was caused by an acidic substance produced in the prostate gland. This unknown substance was called **prostaglandin** by Ulf von Euler (Karolina Institute in Sweden). In the 1950s, the acidic extract from sheep prostate glands was found to contain not one, but many structurally related prostaglandin substances. These prostaglandin compounds were separated, purified, and characterized and are now known to be present in all body tissues and fluid in very small concentrations. Despite our current understanding of the ubiquitous nature of these compounds, the original name is still used.

Prostaglandins contain 20 carbon atoms and are characterized by a five-membered ring with two side chains. Many substitution patterns are observed in nature, the most common of which are shown in Figure 26.9. In each case, the letters PG indicate that the compound is a

FIGURE 26.9
Common substitution patterns for prostaglandins.

PGA
(an α,β-unsaturated ketone)

PGB
(an α,β-unsaturated ketone)

PGC
(a β,γ-unsaturated ketone)

PGD
(a β-hydroxy ketone)

PGE
(a β-hydroxy ketone)

PGF
(a 1,3-diol)

PGG
(an endoperoxide)

prostaglandin and the third letter indicates the substitution pattern. PGAs, PGBs, and PGCs all exhibit a carbonyl group and a carbon-carbon π bond in the five-membered ring. These three substitution patterns differ from each other only in the location of the carbon-carbon π bond. PGDs and PGEs are β-hydroxyketones, PGFs are 1,3-diols, and PGGs are endoperoxides. The number of carbon-carbon π bonds in the side chains is indicated with a subscript after the letter for the substitution pattern. For example, PGE_2 (dinoprostone) has the E substitution pattern and contains two double bonds in the side chains.

PGE_2

This particular prostaglandin regulates muscle contractions during labor and can be administered in larger doses to terminate pregnancies.

For the PGF substitution pattern, an additional descriptor is added to the name to indicate the configuration of the OH groups. A *cis* diol is designated as "α," while a *trans* diol is designated as "β."

$PGF_{2\alpha}$

$PGF_{2\beta}$

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

26.24 Classify each prostaglandin according to the instructions provided in Section 26.7.

(a)

(b)

Prostaglandins are biochemical regulators that are even more powerful than steroids. Unlike hormones, which are produced in one location and then transported to another location in the body, prostaglandins are called local mediators because they perform their function where they are synthesized. Prostaglandins exhibit a wide array of biological activity, including the regulation of blood pressure, blood clotting, gastric secretions, inflammation, kidney function, and reproductive systems. Prostaglandins are biosynthesized from arachidonic acid with the help of enzymes called cyclooxygenases. A few key steps of this process are outlined in Mechanism 26.4.

MECHANISM 26.4 BIOSYNTHESIS OF PROSTAGLANDINS FROM ARACHIDONIC ACID

The release of arachidonic acid is stimulated in response to trauma (tissue damage). It is believed that the anti-inflammatory effects of adrenocortical steroids derive from their ability to suppress the enzymes that cause the release of arachidonic acid, thereby preventing the biosynthesis of prostaglandins.

BioLinks NSAIDs and COX-2 Inhibitors

As previously mentioned, the action of anti-inflammatory steroids stems from their ability to prevent the release of arachidonic acid. There is another class of therapeutic agents that also exhibit anti-inflammatory properties, but their mode of action is entirely different. These drugs are called nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs, or NSAIDs, and the most common examples are aspirin, ibuprofen, and naproxen.

Aspirin

Ibuprofen

Naproxen

NSAIDs do not inhibit the enzymes that cause the release of arachidonic acid, but rather, they inhibit the cyclooxygenase enzymes that catalyze the conversion of arachidonic acid into prostaglandins. Ibuprofen and naproxen deactivate the cyclooxygenase enzymes by binding to them (thereby preventing the binding of arachidonic acid), while aspirin deactivates the cyclooxygenase enzymes by transferring an acetyl group to a serine residue within the active site of the enzymes.

In this way, aspirin functions as an acetylating agent, which effectively deactivates the enzymes, thereby inhibiting the production of prostaglandins. With a decreased concentration of prostaglandins, the onset of inflammation is slowed, and fevers are reduced.

More recently, it has been discovered that there are two different kinds of cyclooxygenase enzymes, called COX-1 and COX-2. The primary function of COX-2 is to catalyze the synthesis of prostaglandins that cause inflammation and pain, while the primary function of COX-1 is to catalyze the synthesis of prostaglandins that stimulate the production of mucus that protects the stomach lining from concentrated hydrochloric acid. NSAIDs inhibit the action of both COX-1 and COX-2 enzymes, and it has been discovered that the inhibition of COX-1 can block the formation of this mucus and result in gastric irritation or an ulcer. This understanding instigated an intensive search for therapeutic agents capable of selectively inhibiting COX-2 without also inhibiting COX-1. Extensive research efforts culminated in the release of several COX-2 inhibitors on the market in the late 1990s.

Unfortunately, it was later discovered that many of these drugs caused an increased risk of heart attacks and strokes, especially in elderly patients. As a result, Vioxx and Bextra were removed from the market in 2004 and 2005, respectively. Celecoxib is still on the market, but is prescribed much less often, as a result of these concerns.

Prostaglandins belong to a larger class of compounds called **eicosanoids**, which include leukotrienes, prostaglandins, thromboxanes, and prostacyclins, all of which are biosynthesized from arachidonic acid.

These four classes of compounds exhibit a wide array of biological activity. In some cases, their biological functions oppose each other. For example, thromboxanes are generally vasoconstrictors that trigger blood clotting, while prostacyclins are generally vasodilators that inhibit blood clotting. Our bodies are dependent on the proper balance between the effects of these compounds.

26.8 Terpenes

Terpenes are a diverse class of naturally occurring compounds that share one feature in common. According to the isoprene rule, all terpenes can be thought of as being assembled from **isoprene** units, each of which contains five carbon atoms.

Isoprene

Consequently, the number of carbon atoms present in terpenes will be a multiple of five. The following examples have either 10 or 15 carbons:

Myrcene
(isolated from bay and myrcia plants)
10 carbon atoms

α-Pinene
(isolated from pine trees)
10 carbon atoms

β-Selinene
(isolated from celery)
15 carbon atoms

A wide variety of terpenes are isolated from the essential oils of plants. Terpenes generally have a strong fragrance and are often used as flavorants and odorants in a wide variety of applications, including food products and cosmetics.

During the biosynthesis of terpenes, isoprene units are generally connected head to tail.

Isoprene

Myrcene

Many terpenes also contain functional groups:

Menthol
(isolated from peppermint oil)

Camphor
(isolated from evergreen trees)

***R*-Carvone**
(flavor of spearmint)

TABLE 26.4 CLASSIFICATION OF TERPENES

CLASS	NO. OF CARBON ATOMS
Monoterpene	10
Sesquiterpene	15
Diterpene	20
Triterpene	30
Tetraterpene	40

Classification of Terpenes

Terpenes are classified based on units of 10 carbon atoms (two isoprene units). For example, a terpene with 10 carbon atoms is called a monoterpene, while a terpene with 20 carbon atoms is called a diterpene. As seen in Table 26.4, a compound with 15 carbon atoms is called a sesquiterpene. An example of a sesquiterpene is α-farnesene, found in the waxy coating on apple skins.

α-Farnesene

Beta-carotene and lycopene each contain 40 carbon atoms and are therefore classified as tetraterpenes.

Lycopene

β-Carotene

Each of these compounds is assembled from two diterpenes.

SKILLBUILDER

26.4 IDENTIFYING ISOPRENE UNITS IN A TERPENE

LEARN the skill

Identify the isoprene units in camphor:

SOLUTION

STEP 1
Count the carbon atoms and identify the number of isoprene units.

First count the number of carbon atoms. This compound is a monoterpene, because it has 10 carbon atoms. Therefore, we are looking for two isoprene units. Each isoprene unit may or may not have double bonds, but there must be four carbon atoms in a straight chain with exactly one branch.

STEP 2
Look for methyl groups.

To identify the isoprene units, it is best to focus on any methyl groups as well as the carbon atoms to which they are attached. For example, the following carbon atoms must be grouped together:

We now consider whether it is possible for the group of five carbon atoms to represent one isoprene unit. Are these five carbon atoms connected in a way that gives four carbon atoms in a straight chain with one branch?

Indeed, these five carbon atoms could be an isoprene unit because they have the correct branching pattern. However, when we analyze the remaining five carbon atoms, they do not have the correct branching pattern.

STEP 3
Use trial and error to find the isoprene units.

The remaining five carbon atoms cannot represent an isoprene unit because they do not exhibit a branch. Therefore, the original five carbon atoms that we first identified must in fact be part of two separate isoprene units:

Finding each isoprene unit sometimes requires a little bit of trial and error. In this case, there are two acceptable solutions.

PRACTICE the skill **26.25** Circle the isoprene units in each of the following compounds:

(a) Menthol (b) Grandisol (c) Carvone

APPLY the skill **26.26** Determine whether or not each of the following compounds is a terpene:

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 26.52, 26.60**

Biosynthesis of Terpenes

Although the isoprene rule considers terpenes to be constructed from isoprene units, the actual building blocks are dimethylallyl pyrophosphate and isopentenyl pyrophosphate.

Dimethylallyl pyrophosphate

Isopentenyl pyrophosphate

All terpenes are biosynthesized from these two starting materials. In each of these compounds, the OPP group represents a biological leaving group, called pyrophosphate. OPP is a good leaving group because it is a weak base.

LOOKING BACK
For a review of the connection between leaving groups and basicity, see Section 7.1.

Pyrophosphate (good leaving group)

Weak base

The reaction between dimethylallyl pyrophosphate and isopentenyl pyrophosphate yields a monoterpene called geranyl pyrophosphate, which is the starting material for all other monoterpenes (Mechanism 26.5).

MECHANISM 26.5 BIOSYNTHESIS OF GERANYL PYROPHOSPHATE

The biosynthesis of geranyl pyrophosphate is achieved in just three steps. The first step involves loss of a leaving group (pyrophosphate) to generate a resonance-stabilized carbocation. The second step is a nucleophilic attack in which the carbocation is attacked by the π bond of isopentenyl pyrophosphate to generate a new carbocation. Finally, a proton transfer yields geranyl pyrophosphate.

The same three mechanistic steps can be repeated to add another isoprene unit to geranyl pyrophosphate, yielding the sesquiterpene farnesyl pyrophosphate. Once again, loss of a leaving group is followed by nucleophilic attack and then a proton transfer (Mechanism 26.6). Farnesyl pyrophosphate is the starting material for all other sesquiterpenes and diterpenes.

MECHANISM 26.6 BIOSYNTHESIS OF FARNESYL PYROPHOSPHATE

Squalene, the biological precursor for all steroids (as seen in Mechanism 26.3), is biosynthesized from the coupling of two molecules of farnesyl pyrophosphate.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

26.27 Draw a mechanism for the following transformation:

26.28 Draw a mechanism for the biosynthesis of α-farnesene starting with dimethylallyl pyrophosphate and isopentenyl pyrophosphate.

α-Farnesene

REVIEW OF REACTIONS SYNTHETICALLY USEFUL REACTIONS

Reactions of Triglycerides

Hydrogenation (production of margarine)

Saponification (production of soap)

Transesterification (production of biodiesel)

REVIEW OF CONCEPTS AND VOCABULARY

SECTION 26.1

- **Lipids** are naturally occurring compounds that are extracted from cells using nonpolar solvents.
- **Complex lipids** readily undergo hydrolysis, while **simple lipids** do not undergo hydrolysis.

SECTION 26.2

- **Waxes** are high-molecular-weight esters that are constructed from carboxylic acids and alcohols.

SECTION 26.3

- **Triglycerides** are the triesters formed from glycerol and three long-chain carboxylic acids, called **fatty acids**. The resulting triglyceride is said to contain three *fatty acid residues*.
- For saturated fatty acids, the melting point increases with increasing molecular weight. The presence of a *cis* double bond causes a decrease in the melting point.
- Triglycerides with unsaturated fatty acid residues generally have lower melting points than triglycerides with saturated fatty acid residues.

- Triglycerides that are solids at room temperature are called **fats**, while those that are liquids at room temperature are called **oils**.
- Triglycerides found in animals have a higher concentration of saturated fatty acids than triglycerides from vegetable origins.
- The exact ratio of fatty acids differs from one source to another.

SECTION 26.4

- Triglycerides containing unsaturated fatty acid residues will undergo hydrogenation. During the hydrogenation process, some of the double bonds can isomerize to give *trans* π bonds.
- In the presence of molecular oxygen, triglycerides are particularly susceptible to oxidation at the allylic position to produce hydroperoxides.
- When treated with aqueous base, triglycerides undergo hydrolysis, also called saponification.
- Transesterification of triglycerides can be achieved via either acid catalysis or base catalysis to produce biodiesel.

SECTION 26.5

- **Phospholipids** are esterlike derivatives of phosphoric acid.
- **Phosphoglycerides** are similar in structure to triglycerides except that one of the three fatty acid residues is replaced by a phosphoester group.
- The simplest kind of phosphoglyceride is a phosphoric monoester, called a **phosphatidic acid**.
- Phosphoglycerides that contain ethanolamine are called **cephalins,** while phosphoglycerides that contain choline are called **lecithins**.
- In water, phosphoglycerides will self-assemble to form a **lipid bilayer**.

SECTION 26.6

- The structures of **steroids** are based on a tetracyclic ring system, involving three six-membered rings and one five-membered ring.
- The ring fusions are all *trans* in most steroids, giving steroids their rigid geometry.
- All steroids, including cholesterol, are biosynthesized from squalene.
- Human sex hormones are steroids that regulate tissue growth and reproductive processes. Male sex hormones are called **androgens**, and the two types of female sex hormones are called **estrogens** and **progestins**.
- **Adrenocortical hormones** are employed by nature to treat the effects of inflammatory diseases.

SECTION 26.7

- **Prostaglandins** are biochemical regulators that are even more powerful than steroids.
- Prostaglandins are biosynthesized from arachidonic acid with the help of enzymes called cyclooxygenases.
- Prostaglandins contain 20 carbon atoms and are characterized by a five-membered ring with two side chains.
- Prostaglandins belong to a larger class of compounds called **eicosanoids**, which include leukotrienes, prostaglandins, thromboxanes, and prostacyclins, all of which exhibit a wide array of biological activity.

SECTION 26.8

- **Terpenes** are a class of naturally occurring compounds that can be thought of as being assembled from **isoprene** units.
- A terpene with 10 carbon atoms is called a monoterpene, while a terpene with 20 carbon atoms is called a diterpene.
- All terpenes are biosynthesized from dimethylallyl pyrophosphate and isopentenyl pyrophosphate.
- Geranyl pyrophosphate is the starting material for all monoterpenes, and farnesyl pyrophosphate is the starting material for all sesquiterpenes.

SKILLBUILDER REVIEW

26.1 COMPARING MOLECULAR PROPERTIES OF TRIGLYCERIDES

STEP 1 Identify the fatty acid residues in each triglyceride.

STEP 2 Compare the residues, keeping in mind that the melting point is affected by:

1) Length of the chain (longer chain = higher melting point).

2) Saturated residues (no C—C π bonds) have higher melting points.

Try Problems **26.3–26.6, 26.40a,d,e, 26.41a,d,e, 26.43**

26.2 IDENTIFYING THE PRODUCTS OF TRIGLYCERIDE HYDROLYSIS

STEP 1 Identify the three ester groups.

STEP 2 Each ester group is hydrolyzed, generating glycerol and three carboxylate ions.

Try Problems **26.9–26.11, 26.30b, 26.40c, 26.41c**

26.3 DRAWING A MECHANISM FOR TRANSESTERIFICATION OF A TRIGLYCERIDE

Core steps

Proton transfer	Nucleophilic attack	Proton transfer	Proton transfer	Loss of a leaving group	Proton transfer
A carbonyl group is protonated.	The alcohol functions as a nucleophile and attacks the protonated carbonyl group.	The resulting tetrahedral intermediate is deprotonated, thereby removing the positive charge.	The leaving group is protonated.	The carbonyl group is regenerated via expulsion of the leaving group.	Deprotonation yields the product.

Try Problems **26.12–26.14, 26.44, 26.45**

26.4 IDENTIFYING ISOPRENE UNITS IN A TERPENE

STEP 1 Count the number of carbon atoms in order to identify the number of isoprene units.

10 Carbon atoms = 2 Isoprene units

STEP 2 Look for any methyl groups and the carbon atoms to which they are attached.

These three carbon atoms must be grouped together

These two carbon atoms must be grouped together

STEP 3 Using trial and error, identify the isoprene units that have the correct branching structure.

Try Problems **26.25, 26.26, 26.52, 26.60**

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

• **Included in Answers section**

26.29 Identify each of the following compounds as a wax, triglyceride, phospholipid, steroid, prostaglandin, or terpene:

(a) Stanozolol (b) Lycopene
(c) Tristearin (d) Distearoyl lecithin
(e) PGF_2 (f) Pentadecyl octadecanoate

26.30 • Predict the product(s) formed when tripalmitolein is treated with each of the following reagents:

(a) Excess H_2, Ni (b) Excess NaOH, H_2O

26.31 Draw two different cephalins that contain one lauric acid residue and one myristic acid residue. Are both of these compounds chiral?

26.32 Draw a chiral triglyceride that contains one palmitic acid residue and two myristic acid residues. Will this compound react with molecular hydrogen in the presence of a catalyst?

26.33 Which of the following compounds are lipids?

(a) L-Threonine (b) 1-Octanol
(c) Lycopene (d) Trimyristin
(e) Palmitic acid (f) D-Glucose
(g) Testosterone (h) D-Mannose

26.34 • Draw the structure of *trans*-oleic acid.

26.35 Tristearin is less susceptible to becoming rancid than triolein. Explain.

26.36 Arrange the following compounds in order of increasing water solubility:

- A triglyceride constructed from one equivalent of glycerol and three equivalents of myristic acid
- A diglyceride constructed from one equivalent of glycerol and two equivalents of myristic acid
- A monoglyceride constructed from one equivalent of glycerol and one equivalent of myristic acid

26.37 • Identify whether hexane or water would be more appropriate for extracting terpenes from plant tissues. Explain your choice.

26.38 Identify each of the following fatty acids as saturated or unsaturated:

(a) Palmitic acid (b) Myristic acid
(c) Oleic acid (d) Lauric acid
(e) Linoleic acid (f) Arachidonic acid

26.39 Which of the fatty acids in the previous problem has four carbon-carbon double bonds?

26.40 Which of the following statements applies to triolein?

(a) It is a solid at room temperature.
(b) It is unreactive toward molecular hydrogen in the presence of Ni.
(c) It undergoes hydrolysis to produce unsaturated fatty acids.
(d) It is a complex lipid.
(e) It is a wax.
(f) It has a phosphate group.

26.41 Identify which of the following statements applies to tristearin:

(a) It is a solid at room temperature.
(b) It is unreactive toward molecular hydrogen in the presence of Ni.
(c) It undergoes hydrolysis to produce unsaturated fatty acids.
(d) It is a complex lipid.
(e) It is a wax.
(f) It has a phosphate group.

26.42 One of the compounds present in carnauba wax was isolated, purified, and then treated with aqueous sodium hydroxide to yield an alcohol with 30 carbon atoms and a carboxylate ion with 20 carbon atoms. Draw the likely structure of the compound.

26.43 Draw the structures of trimyristin and tripalmitin and determine which is expected to have the lower melting point. Explain your choice.

26.44 Draw a mechanism for the transesterification of trimyristin using excess isopropanol in the presence of an acid catalyst.

26.45 Draw a mechanism for the base-catalyzed transesterification of trimyristin using ethanol in the presence of sodium hydroxide.

26.46 Draw the structure of an achiral triglyceride that contains two oleic acid residues and one palmitic acid residue.

26.47 Draw the structure of a chiral triglyceride that contains two oleic acid residues and one palmitic acid residue.

26.48 Draw the enantiomer of cholesterol.

26.49 • Circle the isoprene units in each of the following compounds:

(a) **Bisabolene**

(b) **Flexibilene**

(c) **Humulene**

(d) **Vitamin A**

(e) **Geraniol**

(f) **Sabinene**

26.50 Sphingomyelins are lipids with the following general structure:

Sphingomyelins

(a) Identify the polar head and all hydrophobic tails in sphingomyelins.
(b) Do sphingomyelins have the appropriate structural features and three-dimensional geometry necessary to be major constituents of lipid bilayers?

ACS-STYLE PROBLEMS (Multiple Choice)

Problems 26.51–26.55 follow the style of the ACS organic chemistry exam. For each of these problems, there will be one correct answer and three distractors.

26.51 • Which of the following statements is NOT true about the given compound?

(a) It reacts with molecular hydrogen in the presence of Ni.

(b) It undergoes hydrolysis to produce glycerin.

(c) It is a solid at room temperature.

(d) It is a triglyceride.

26.52 • Which of the following correctly identifies the isoprene units in the given terpene?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

26.53 • Which of the following has the appropriate geometry for bilayer formation?

(a) Fatty acids (b) Phospholipids

(c) Triglycerides (d) All of the above

26.54 • Which of the following compounds is a saturated fatty acid?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

26.55 • Which of the following are NOT lipids?

(a) Triglycerides (b) Tripeptides

(c) Diterpenes (d) Steroids

INTEGRATED PROBLEMS

26.56 Treatment of cholesterol with a peroxy acid (RCO_3H) could potentially produce two diastereomeric epoxides.

(a) Draw both diastereomeric epoxides.

(b) Only one of these epoxides is formed. Predict which one and explain why the other is not formed.

26.57 Identify the products expected when estradiol is treated with each of the following reagents:

(a) Excess Br_2 (b) PCC

(c) Excess strong base followed by excess ethyl iodide

(d) Excess acetyl chloride in the presence of pyridine

26.58 Olestra (sold under the trade name Olean) is a noncaloric oil substitute that is produced by esterifying sucrose with eight equivalents of fatty acids obtained from the hydrolysis of vegetable oils. The eight fatty acid residues give Olestra the consistency and flavor of cooking oil, but the steric bulk of the compound prevents digestive enzymes from hydrolyzing the ester groups. Olestra can be added to food products to give the texture and taste of fat. But, unlike fat, Olestra passes through the gastrointestinal (GI) tract unaltered and unabsorbed. Hence it provides no calories. After passing through the GI tract, it is excreted in the feces. Consumption of large amounts of food containing Olestra (such as potato chips) can result in "loose stools," a polite term for an "accident." As a result, foods made with

Olestra never became all that popular. Draw the structure of a molecule of Olestra that contains eight lauric acid residues. Is this compound chiral?

26.59 Identify the reagents you would use to convert oleic acid into each of the following compounds:

(a) Stearic acid
(b) Ethyl stearate
(c) 1-Octadecanol
(d) Nonanedioic acid
(e) 2-Bromostearic acid

26.60 Limonene is an optically active compound isolated from the peels of lemons and oranges.

(a) Is limonene a monoterpene or a diterpene?

(b) Treatment of limonene with excess HBr yields a compound with the molecular formula $C_{10}H_{18}Br_2$. Identify the structure of this compound and determine whether it is chiral or achiral.

(c) Draw the products obtained when limonene is treated with O_3 followed by DMS.

Limonene

CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

26.61 Starting with the following compound and using any other reagents of your choice, outline a synthesis for trimyristin:

26.62 The following compound was isolated from nerve cells:

(a) Describe how this compound differs in structure from fats and oils.

(b) Three products are obtained when this compound is hydrolyzed with aqueous sodium hydroxide. Draw the structures of all three products.

(c) Four products are obtained when this compound is hydrolyzed with aqueous acid. Draw the structures of all four products.

27

Synthetic Polymers

Vladimir Kant/Shutterstock

27.1 Introduction to Synthetic Polymers
27.2 Nomenclature of Synthetic Polymers
27.3 Copolymers
27.4 Polymer Classification by Reaction Type
27.5 Polymer Classification by Mode of Assembly
27.6 Polymer Classification by Structure
27.7 Polymer Classification by Properties
27.8 Polymer Recycling

DID YOU EVER **WONDER...**
how bulletproof glass works?

Bulletproof glass, such as that used in armored vehicles, consists of several sheets of glass sandwiched between transparent polymer sheets. The resulting material is comprised of many layers, and the outer layers are capable of absorbing the impact of the bullet, thereby preventing it from penetrating the inner layers. The ability of the glass to resist bullets depends on many factors, including the type of polymer used, the thickness of the glass, the number of layers sandwiched together, the type of bullet, and the range from which the bullet is fired. For this reason, the glass is generally described as "bullet resistant" rather than "bulletproof."

This chapter will focus on the preparation, classification, and properties of a variety of synthetic polymers, including those found in bullet-resistant glass as well as a large variety of other applications.

Irochka/123RF

DO YOU **REMEMBER?**

Before you go on, be sure you understand the following topics.
If necessary, review the suggested sections to prepare for this chapter:

- Sources and Uses of Alkanes: An Introduction to Polymers (Section 4.5)
- Cationic Polymerization and Polystyrene (Section 8.5)
- Radical Polymerization (Section 10.11)

Take the DO YOU **REMEMBER?** QUIZ in the **online course** to check your understanding.

27.1 Introduction to Synthetic Polymers

Over the past century, our society has become heavily reliant on polymers. Coffee cups, soft-drink bottles, synthetic fabrics for clothing, Blu-rays, trash bags, artificial heart valves, and automobile parts are all manufactured from polymers. Polymers represent a multibillion-dollar industry, with more than 50 trillion pounds of synthetic polymers being manufactured each year in the United States alone.

Recall that polymers are comprised of repeating units that are constructed by joining monomers together.

Polymers are drawn most efficiently by placing brackets around the repeating unit, where the subscript "*n*" indicates that the polymer is constructed from a large number of repeating units. Polymers have been discussed many times throughout this textbook, as indicated in Table 27.1.

TABLE 27.1 REFERENCES TO PRIOR DISCUSSIONS OF POLYMERS IN THIS TEXTBOOK

TOPIC	SECTION
Introduction to polymers	4.5
Cationic polymerization	8.5
Conducting organic polymers	9.1
Radical polymerization	10.11
Polymers from dienes	16.5
Polyesters and polyamides	20.12
Polysaccharides	24.8
N-Glycosides (DNA and RNA)	24.10
Proteins	25.1

Polymers can be divided into two major categories: *synthetic polymers* and *biopolymers*. Synthetic polymers are prepared by scientists in the laboratory or in factories, while biopolymers are produced by living organisms. Biopolymers include polysaccharides, DNA, RNA, and proteins, all of which were discussed in Chapters 24 and 25. This chapter will focus exclusively on synthetic polymers.

27.2 Nomenclature of Synthetic Polymers

IUPAC has established rules for assigning systematic names to polymers, but these names are rarely used by scientists. An alternative and more common system, also recognized by IUPAC, involves naming the polymer based on the monomers from which it was derived, as shown in the following examples:

When writing the name of a polymer whose monomer contains two words, parentheses are used around the name of the monomer. Thus, polymerization of vinyl chloride yields poly(vinyl chloride).

Polymers are also often called by their trade name, such as Teflon and Kevlar. Table 27.2 provides a list of many common polymers and their uses.

TABLE 27.2 SEVERAL COMMON POLYMERS AND THEIR USES

NAME OF POLYMER	MONOMER STRUCTURE	POLYMER STRUCTURE	USES
Polyethylene			Bottles and trash bags
Polypropylene			Carpet fibers, appliances, car tires
Polyisobutylene			Caulks and sealants, bicycle inner tubes, basketballs
Polystyrene			Foam insulation, televisions, radios
Poly(vinyl chloride)			Water pipes, vinyl plastics
Poly(methyl-α-cyanoacrylate)			Superglue
Polytetrafluoroethylene			Nonstick coating for frying pans (Teflon)

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

27.1 Draw and name the polymer that results when each of the following monomers undergoes polymerization:

(a) **Vinyl acetate** (b) **Vinyl bromide** (c) **α-Butylene**

27.2 Sodium polyacrylate is a synthetic polymer used in diapers, because of its ability to absorb several hundred times its own mass of water. This extraordinary polymer is made from another polymer, poly(methyl acrylate), via hydrolysis of the ester groups. Draw and name the monomer used to make poly(methyl acrylate).

Poly(methyl acrylate) **Sodium polyacrylate**

27.3 Copolymers

The polymers discussed thus far are all called homopolymers. A **homopolymer** is a polymer constructed from a single type of monomer. In contrast, polymers constructed from two or more different types of monomers are called **copolymers**. A common example of a copolymer is Saran, which is made from vinyl chloride and vinylidene chloride.

Vinyl chloride **Vinylidene chloride** **Saran**

Copolymers often have different properties than either of their corresponding homopolymers. A list of some common copolymers and their applications is presented in Table 27.3.

TABLE 27.3 SOME COMMON COPOLYMERS AND THEIR USES

MONOMERS	COPOLYMER NAME	USES
Vinyl chloride + Vinylidene chloride	Saran	Food packaging
Styrene + Acrylonitrile	SAN	Dishwasher-safe kitchenware and battery cases
Styrene + Acrylonitrile + 1,3-Butadiene	ABS	Crash helmets, luggage, and car bumpers
Isobutylene + Isoprene	Butyl rubber	Inner tubes, balls, sporting goods
Hexafluoropropylene + Vinylidene fluoride	Viton	Gaskets, seals, and automotive fuel lines

Copolymers are often classified based on the order in which the monomers are joined together. **Alternating copolymers** contain an alternating distribution of repeating units, while **random copolymers** contain a random distribution of repeating units.

The precise distribution of any copolymer is dependent on the conditions of its formation. In practice, however, even alternating copolymers will exhibit regions in which the repeating units are distributed randomly.

Copolymers comprised of homopolymer subunits are classified as either block copolymers or graft copolymers.

In a **block copolymer**, the different homopolymer subunits are connected together in one chain. In contrast, a **graft copolymer** contains sections of one homopolymer that have been grafted onto a chain of the other homopolymer. Block copolymers and graft copolymers are formed by controlling the conditions under which polymerization occurs.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

27.3 Draw a region of an alternating copolymer constructed from styrene and ethylene.

27.4 Draw a region of a block copolymer constructed from propylene and vinyl chloride.

27.5 Identify the monomers required to make the following alternating copolymer:

27.4 Polymer Classification by Reaction Type

Polymers can be classified in a variety of ways. Common classification schemes focus on either the type of reaction used to make the polymer, the mode of assembly, the structure, or the properties of the polymer. We will explore each of these classification schemes, beginning with the type of reaction used to make the polymer.

LOOKING BACK
Cationic addition was discussed in Chapter 8, free-radical addition was discussed in Chapter 10, and anionic addition was discussed in Chapter 21.

Addition Polymers

As seen in previous chapters, addition reactions involving π bonds can occur through a variety of mechanisms, including cationic addition, anionic addition, and free-radical addition. In much the same way, monomers can join together to form polymers via cationic addition, anionic addition, or

free-radical addition. Polymers formed via any one of these processes are called **addition polymers**. A mechanism for radical polymerization was first discussed in Section 10.11 and is reviewed in Mechanism 27.1.

MECHANISM 27.1 RADICAL POLYMERIZATION

Initiation

A radical initiator is formed, which reacts with a monomer to give a carbon radical

Propagation

The radical addition process is repeated, building up the polymer chain

Termination

Each of these coupling reactions destroys radicals and is therefore an example of a termination step

In the initiation steps, a radical initiator is formed and then couples to one of the monomers, forming a carbon radical. This highly reactive intermediate then undergoes a propagation step in which it couples with another monomer. This process repeats itself, causing the polymer chain to grow. The process ends with a termination step in which two radicals couple together. Since the concentration of radicals is quite low at all times, the probability of two radicals coupling is rather small. As a result, thousands of monomers can be strung together in a single polymer chain before a termination step occurs. In this way, ethylene can be converted into polyethylene in the presence of a radical initiator. In fact, most derivatives of ethylene will also undergo radical polymerization under suitable conditions.

In contrast, cationic addition is only efficient with ethylene derivatives that contain an electron-donating group, such as the following examples:

A mechanism for cationic polymerization was first discussed in the WorldLinks box in Section 8.5 and is reviewed here in Mechanism 27.2.

MECHANISM 27.2 CATIONIC POLYMERIZATION

Initiation

The π bond of a monomer is protonated, generating a carbocation intermediate

Propagation

The π bond of a monomer acts as a nucleophile and attacks the carbocation. This process is repeated, building up the polymer chain

Termination

The polymerization process is terminated when either a base deprotonates the carbocation or a nucleophile attacks the carbocation

The cationic polymerization process is initiated in the presence of an acid, which transfers a proton to the π bond of a monomer, thereby generating a carbocation. A commonly used acid catalyst is formed by treating BF_3 with water.

Acid catalyst

The carbocation generated during the initiation stage is then attacked by another monomer in a propagation step, and the process repeats itself, enabling the polymer chain to grow. The function of the electron-donating group is to stabilize the carbocation intermediate that is formed after the addition of each monomer to the growing polymer chain. For example, isobutylene readily undergoes cationic polymerization because a tertiary carbocation intermediate is formed during each propagation step.

Isobutylene **3° Carbocation** **3° Carbocation** **3° Carbocation**

In contrast, ethylene does not readily undergo cationic polymerization, because the process would involve formation of a primary carbocation, which is not sufficiently stable to form at an appreciable rate.

Ethylene **1° Carbocation (does not form)** **1° Carbocation (does not form)**

For monomers that undergo cationic polymerization, the process is terminated when the carbocation intermediate is deprotonated by a base or attacked by a nucleophile, as seen in Mechanism 27.2.

Unlike cationic addition, anionic addition is only efficient with ethylene derivatives that contain an electron-withdrawing group, such as the following examples:

Electron-withdrawing groups were first discussed in Chapter 18, and a list can be found in Section 18.10. Anionic polymerization is believed to proceed via Mechanism 27.3.

MECHANISM 27.3 ANIONIC POLYMERIZATION

Initiation

A carbon nucleophile initiates the process by attacking the π bond, generating a carbanion

Propagation

The carbanion acts as a nucleophile and attacks a monomer, creating a new carbanion. This process is repeated, building up the polymer chain

Termination

The polymerization process is terminated when the growing polymer is treated with a weak acid (such as H_2O) or with an electrophile (such as CO_2)

Anionic polymerization is initiated in the presence of a highly reactive anion, such as butyl lithium. The anion functions as a nucleophile and attacks the π bond of a monomer, thereby generating a new carbanion. The carbanion generated during the initiation stage then functions as a Michael donor and attacks another monomer, which functions as a Michael acceptor:

LOOKING BACK
For a review of Michael donors and Michael acceptors, see Section 21.6.

This propagation step is repeated, enabling the polymer chain to grow. The function of the electron-withdrawing group is to stabilize the carbanion intermediate that is formed after the addition of each monomer to the growing polymer chain.

For monomers that undergo anionic polymerization, the process continues until all of the monomers have been consumed. But even after all of the monomers have been exhausted, the process is not actually terminated until a suitable acid (such as water) or electrophile (such as CO_2) is added to the reaction mixture. In the absence of a suitable acid or electrophile, the end of each polymer chain will possess a stabilized carbanion site, and the polymerization process can continue if more monomers are added to the reaction mixture. For this reason polymers generated through this process are often called **living polymers**.

Superglue is a common example of a monomer that readily polymerizes via an anionic addition process. Superglue is a pure solution of methyl-α-cyanoacrylate, which is a monomer containing two electron-withdrawing groups.

Methyl α-cyanoacrylate (superglue)

With two electron-withdrawing groups, the compound is so reactive toward anionic polymerization that even a weak nucleophile, such as water, will initiate the polymerization process. When superglue is applied to a metal surface, the moisture on the surface of the metal is sufficient to catalyze polymerization, which then occurs very rapidly. In fact, the water and other nucleophiles present in your skin will initiate the polymerization process, explaining why superglue bonds to skin so tightly. In some cases, doctors utilize compounds like superglue to close wounds, instead of using stitches. These compounds are structurally very similar to superglue, except that the methyl group of the ester is replaced with a slightly larger alkyl group. For example, Dermabond, a cyanoacrylate ester with a 2-octyl group, was developed to replace stitches in certain situations.

2-Octyl α-cyanoacrylate (Dermabond)

SKILLBUILDER

27.1 DETERMINING THE MORE EFFICIENT POLYMERIZATION TECHNIQUE

LEARN the skill

Determine whether preparation of the following polymer would be best achieved via cationic addition or anionic addition:

SOLUTION

First identify the repeating units in the polymer structure.

STEP 1
Identify the repeating units.

STEP 2
Identify the required monomer.

Next identify the monomer necessary to prepare a polymer with those repeating units.

STEP 3
Determine the nature of the vinylic group.

STEP 4
Use anionic conditions if the vinylic group is electron withdrawing and cationic conditions for an electron-donating group.

Now determine whether the group attached to the vinyl position is an electron-withdrawing group or an electron-donating group, as first described in Section 18.10. In this case, the necessary monomer has a carbonyl group, which is an electron-withdrawing group because it can stabilize a negative charge via resonance. We therefore expect this monomer to polymerize most efficiently under anionic (basic) conditions.

PRACTICE the skill

27.6 Determine whether preparation of each of the following polymers would best be achieved via cationic addition or anionic addition:

APPLY the skill

27.7 Arrange the following monomers in order of increasing reactivity toward cationic polymerization, and explain your answer:

27.8 Arrange the following monomers in order of increasing reactivity toward anionic polymerization, and explain your answer:

27.9 Many monomers that readily undergo cationic polymerization, such as isobutylene, will not readily undergo anionic polymerization. Styrene, however, can be effectively polymerized via cationic, anionic, or radical addition. Explain.

27.10 A tube of superglue will harden if it remains open too long in a humid environment. Draw a mechanism that shows how superglue polymerizes in the presence of atmospheric moisture. When drawing your mechanism, make sure to draw the initiation step, at least two propagation steps, and a termination step involving water as the acid.

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 27.27, 27.28, 27.34, 27.38–27.40, 27.46, 27.47**

Condensation Polymers

As seen in Chapter 21, the term "condensation" is used to characterize any reaction in which two molecules undergo addition accompanied by the loss of a small molecule such as water, carbon dioxide, or nitrogen gas. Throughout this book, we have seen many condensation reactions. One such example is the Fischer esterification process, as seen in Section 20.10.

In this reaction, a carboxylic acid is treated with an alcohol in the presence of an acid catalyst, forming an ester and a water molecule. This process is considered to be a condensation reaction because the reactants undergo addition accompanied by the loss of a water molecule.

Now consider the condensation reactions that can occur when a diacid is treated with a diol. Each compound is capable of reacting twice, enabling formation of a polymer. As an example, consider the formation of poly(ethylene terephthalate), also known simply as PET, which is used to make soft-drink bottles.

As shown, PET is prepared by successive Fischer esterification reactions. Since the polymer is generated via condensation reactions, it is called a **condensation polymer**. Because PET has repeating ester groups, the polymer is also classified as a polyester. Like PET, nylon 6,6 is also prepared via condensation reactions and is also a condensation polymer. Nylon 6,6 is a polyamide, which is prepared from adipic acid and 1,6-hexanediamine.

LOOKING BACK
For a review of polyesters and polyamides, see the WorldLinks box in Section 20.12.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

27.11 Draw the mechanism of formation of PET in acidic conditions, as shown above. It might be helpful to first review the mechanism for the Fischer esterification process.

27.12 Draw the polymer that would be generated from the acid-catalyzed condensation reaction between oxalic acid and resorcinol.

Polycarbonates are similar in structure to polyesters, but with repeating carbonate groups instead of repeating ester groups:

Carbonates can be formed from the reaction between phosgene and an alcohol.

Polycarbonates are formed in a similar way, by treating phosgene with a diol. As an example, consider the reaction between phosgene and bisphenol A.

The resulting polymer is a condensation polymer sold under the trade name Lexan. It is a lightweight, transparent polymer with high impact strength and is used to make bicycle safety helmets, bullet-resistant glass, and traffic lights. Lexan is also used in the production of safety goggles, because it is both lightweight and shatterproof. Polycarbonates have also been used in the production of CDs, DVDs, and Blu-rays.

SKILLBUILDER

27.2 IDENTIFYING MONOMERS FOR A CONDENSATION POLYMER

LEARN the skill

Determine which monomers you would use to prepare the following condensation polymer:

SOLUTION

First identify the type of functional group that repeats itself:

STEP 1
Identify the repeating functional group.

A polyester

In this case, the repeating functional group is an ester group, so this condensation polymer is a polyester. Recall that ester groups can be prepared from the reaction between a carboxylic acid and an alcohol via a Fischer esterification process.

STEP 2
Identify the type of reaction that will produce the desired functional group.

Preparing a polymer that exhibits repeating ester groups requires reactants that are difunctional; specifically, a suitable diacid and diol must be selected. To determine the starting diol and diacid, it is best to work backward from the structure of the polyester; that is, imagine hydrolyzing each ester group (the reverse of a Fischer esterification).

STEP 3
For a condensation polymer, identify the two difunctional monomers that are necessary.

Inspection of the individual monomers reveals that two different monomers are required. The following diacid and diol can be used to prepare the desired polymer.

PRACTICE the skill

27.13 Kevlar is a condensation polymer used in the manufacture of bulletproof vests. Identify the two monomers required for the preparation of Kevlar.

Kevlar

27.14 Identify the monomers required to make each of the following condensation polymers:

(a)

(b)

APPLY the skill

27.15 Identify the condensation polymer that would be produced when phosgene is treated with 1,4-butanediol.

27.16 Nylon 6 is a polyamide used in the manufacture of ropes. It can be prepared via hydrolysis of ε-caprolactam to form ε-aminocaproic acid followed by acid-catalyzed polymerization.

ε-Caprolactam ε-Aminocaproic acid

(a) Draw the structure of Nylon 6.

(b) Compare the structure of Nylon 6 with the structure of Nylon 6,6 (shown just before Conceptual Checkpoint 27.11). Which polymer exhibits a smaller repeating unit?

need more **PRACTICE?** **Try Problems 27.23, 27.30a,b,d, 27.31, 27.32, 27.43–27.45**

27.5 Polymer Classification by Mode of Assembly

Chain-Growth Polymers

Polymers are also often classified as either chain-growth or step-growth polymers. These terms are used to signify the way in which the polymers are assembled. **Chain-growth polymers** are formed under conditions in which the monomers do not react directly with each other, but rather, each monomer is added to the growing chain one at a time. The growing polymer chain generally has only one reactive site, called a *growth point*, and the monomers attach to the chain at the growth point.

All of the addition reactions seen in Section 27.4 (radical, cationic, and anionic polymerization) are examples of chain-growth processes. Polymers created by any of these addition processes are chain-growth polymers. In contrast, most condensation polymers are not chain-growth polymers, but instead belong to a class called step-growth polymers.

Step-Growth Polymers

Step-growth polymers are formed under conditions in which the individual monomers react with each other to form **oligomers** (compounds constructed from just a few monomers), which are then joined together to form polymers.

This mode of assembly occurs when difunctional monomers are used, just as we saw with condensation polymers in Section 27.4. In such a case, all monomers and oligomers have two growth points instead of just one. As an example, consider the formation of PET.

In general, step-growth polymers are usually condensation polymers, while chain-growth polymers are usually addition polymers, but there are exceptions, such as polyurethanes. **Polyurethanes** are made up of repeating urethane groups, also sometimes called carbamate groups.

Urethanes can be prepared by treating an isocyanate with an alcohol.

Polyurethanes can be prepared by treating a diisocyanate with a diol. In preparing polyurethanes, the diols most commonly used are small polymers that bear hydroxyl ends.

This process is not a condensation, because it does not involve the loss of a small molecule. Polyurethanes are technically addition polymers, but nevertheless, they are step-growth polymers because the growing polymer chain has two growth points rather than one. This example illustrates that step-growth polymers cannot always be classified as condensation polymers. Polyurethanes are used for insulation in the construction of homes and portable coolers.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

27.17 Would each of the given pairs of monomers form chain-growth or step-growth polymers?

27.18 Should the following polymer be classified as a chain-growth polymer or a step-growth polymer? Explain.

27.6 Polymer Classification by Structure

Branched Polymers

Polymers are also often classified by their structure. **Branched polymers** contain a large number of branches connected to the main chain of the polymer.

Branching occurs when the location of a growth point is moved during the polymerization process. For example, during radical addition, a hydrogen abstraction step can produce a growth point in the middle of an existing chain:

Branching is very common and is observed during many polymerization processes. Polymers can be differentiated from each other based on the extent of branching. Some polymers are highly branched, while other polymers have only a minimal amount of branching or no branching at all. The former are called branched polymers, while the latter are called **linear polymers**. The synthesis of linear polymers often requires the use of special catalysts, as we will now describe.

Linear Polymers

The field of polymer chemistry was revolutionized in 1953 with the development of Ziegler–Natta catalysts. These catalysts are organometallic complexes that can be prepared by treating an alkyl aluminum compound, such as Et_3Al, with $TiCl_4$. The development of Ziegler–Natta catalysts enabled scientists to control the polymerization process in the following ways:

1. *Extent of branching.* Free radicals are not involved as intermediates when Ziegler–Natta catalysts are employed, and therefore very little branching occurs. Polymers produced with these catalysts are generally linear polymers, which have very different properties than branched polymers. Without a Ziegler–Natta catalyst, ethylene polymerizes to form a polymer that exhibits about 20 branches per thousand carbon atoms. The resulting polymer chains cannot effectively pack, giving rise to a material with a relatively low density (~0.92 g/cm^3) called low-density polyethylene, or LDPE. However, in the presence of a Ziegler–Natta catalyst, ethylene polymerizes to form a polymer that exhibits about five branches per thousand carbon atoms. The resulting polymer chains can pack more efficiently, giving rise to a material with a relatively high density, ~0.96 g/cm^3, called high-density polyethylene, or HDPE. LDPE is used to make trash bags, while HDPE has greater strength and is used to make plastic squeeze bottles and Tupperware.
2. *Stereochemical control.* When polymerization is performed using monosubstituted ethylenes as monomers, the resulting polymer has a large number of chiral centers. The relative configurations of these chiral centers are classified as isotactic, syndiotactic, or atactic.

The term **isotactic** is used when all of the chiral centers have the same configuration, **syndiotactic** is used when the chiral centers have alternating configuration, and **atactic** is used when the chiral centers are not arranged in a pattern (they have random configurations). Isotactic, syndiotactic, and atactic polymers exhibit different properties, and all three can be made with the appropriate Ziegler–Natta catalyst.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

27.19 Polyisobutylene cannot be described as isotactic, syndiotactic, or atactic. Explain.

27.20 Polyethylene is used to make Ziploc bags and folding tables. Identify which of these applications is most likely to be made from HDPE and which is most likely to be made from LDPE.

Cross-Linked Polymers

In the WorldLinks box at the end of Section 16.5, we discussed natural and synthetic rubbers. Recall from that discussion that the vulcanization process introduces disulfide bridges between neighboring chains within the polymer.

Vulcanized rubber

The resulting polymer is said to be a **crossed-linked polymer**, which markedly affects the properties of the polymer. Disulfide bridges are not the only way for chains to cross-link. For example, chains can also be cross-linked with branches.

The conditions of polymer formation can be controlled so as to favor either a greater or lesser amount of cross-linking. This difference can have a profound impact on the properties of the resulting polymer, as we will see in Section 27.7.

Crystalline vs. Amorphous Polymers

Many polymers contain regions, called **crystallites**, in which the chains are linearly extended and close in proximity to one another, resulting in van der Waals forces that hold the chains close together.

The regions that are not crystalline are called **amorphous** regions. Crystalline regions render a polymer hard and durable, while amorphous regions render a polymer flexible. The degree of crystallinity of a polymer, and therefore its physical properties, greatly depends on the steric requirements of the substituent(s) present in the repeating unit of the polymer. For example, compare the structures of polyethylene and polyisobutylene.

Polyethylene Polyisobutylene

Linear polyethylene (HDPE) exhibits a high degree of crystallinity because there are no substituents to prevent the chains from closely packing. In contrast, polyisobutylene exhibits a low degree of crystallinity, because there are two methyl groups that provide steric bulk, preventing the chains from closely packing.

When highly crystalline polymers like HDPE are heated, the crystalline regions become amorphous at a specific temperature called the **melt transition temperature** (T_m). When noncrystalline polymers like polyisobutylene are heated, they become very soft. The temperature at which this transition takes place is called the **glass transition temperature** (T_g).

27.7 Polymer Classification by Properties

Polymers are also sometimes classified by their properties. The four most common categories are thermoplastics, elastomers, fibers, and thermosetting resins.

Thermoplastics

Thermoplastics are polymers that are hard at room temperature but soft when heated; that is, they exhibit a high glass transition temperature (T_g). Polymers in this category are very useful because they can be easily molded and are commonly used to make toys and storage containers. For example, PET is a thermoplastic used in the manufacture of soft-drink bottles. Other examples of thermoplastics include polystyrene, polyvinyl chloride (PVC), and low-density polyethylene.

Many thermoplastics become brittle at room temperature, which severely limits their utility. This is true of PVC. Pure PVC is highly susceptible to cracking at room temperature and is therefore useless for most applications. To avoid this problem, the polymer can be prepared in the presence of small molecules called **plasticizers**. These molecules become trapped between the polymer chains where they function as lubricants. Common plasticizers are dialkyl phthalates, such as di-2-ethylhexyl phthalate used in vinyl upholstery, raincoats, shower curtains, inflatable boats, and garden hoses. Some plasticizers evaporate slowly with time, and the polymer ultimately returns to a brittle state in which it can be easily cracked. Intravenous (IV) drip bags used in hospitals are typically made from PVC with plasticizers.

Elastomers

Elastomers are polymers that return to their original shape after being stretched. Elastomers are typically amorphous polymers that have a small degree of cross-linking. Natural rubber (described in Section 16.5) is a great example of an elastomer. A more contemporary example is Spandex, which is a polyurethane with a small degree of cross-linking. Spandex fibers are used to make bathing suits and athletic gear, among other applications.

Chewing gum is a complex mixture of polymers, many of which are elastomers. The polymer mixture, called the gum base, serves as a delivery vehicle for the flavors that are present in the mixture. Most gum manufacturers do not reveal the identity of the polymers present in their gum base, as this information is regarded as a trade secret. One thing is certain though: When you chew gum, you are chewing on a glob of synthetic polymers.

Fibers

Fibers are generated when certain polymers are heated, forced though small holes, and then cooled. The resulting fibers exhibit crystalline regions that are oriented along the axis of the fiber, which endow the fibers with significant tensile strength. Examples include Nylon, Dacron, and polyethylene, all of which have the appropriate degree of crystallinity to form fibers.

Thermosetting Resins

Thermosetting resins are highly cross-linked polymers that are generally very hard and insoluble. One such example is Bakelite, first produced in 1907 from the reaction between phenol and formaldehyde.

Phenol functions as a nucleophile, and formaldehyde (activated by protonation) functions as an electrophile in an electrophilic aromatic substitution reaction. The resulting alcohol then functions

as an electrophile (again activated by protonation) and reacts with phenol in another electrophilic aromatic substitution reaction.

LOOKING BACK
For a justification of *ortho-para* directing effects, see Section 18.7.

This process continues and can occur at the *ortho* and *para* positions of each ring.

Thermosetting resins can generally withstand high temperatures and are often used in high-temperature applications, such as missile nose cones.

WorldLinks Safety Glass and Car Windshields

Automobile windshields are specifically designed so that they do not create free shards of glass when broken. This is accomplished in very much the same way that bullet-resistant glass is manufactured, as described in the chapter opener. Two sheets of glass are pressed together with a thin layer of polymer between them. The polymer most often used is poly(vinyl butyral), often called PVB.

The PVB layer is generally prepared by treating poly(vinyl alcohol) with butyraldehyde.

The carbonyl group of butyraldehyde reacts with two hydroxyl groups to form a cyclic acetal. The resulting polyacetal adheres to both sheets of glass. In the event of a collision, the glass breaks, but the individual pieces remain stuck to the polymer interlayer, thereby preventing the pieces of glass from causing injury. Bullet-resistant glass is very similar, but multiple sheets of glass are used, rather than just two. Alternatively, bullet-resistant glass can also be made using thicker polycarbonate interlayers such as Lexan.

Irochka/123RF

27.8 Polymer Recycling

Polymers have certainly increased our quality of life in countless ways, but their preparation and use have caused serious environmental concerns. Specifically, most synthetic polymers are not biodegradable, which means that they persist and accumulate in the environment. To address this growing problem, many polymers can be recycled. Some polymers are recycled with greater ease than others, depending on the identity of the polymer. For example, in the recycling of soft-drink bottles (made from PET) the bottles are chopped into small chips that are washed to remove the labels and adhesives, then treated with aqueous acid. A reaction occurs in which the polymer chips are broken down into the corresponding monomers. This process is essentially the reverse of the polymerization process that formed PET in the first place. The ester groups undergo hydrolysis to produce terephthalic acid and ethylene glycol.

Poly(ethylene terephthalate) (PET) — Terephthalic acid

These monomers are purified and then used as feedstock for the production of new PET. PET is somewhat unique in its ease of recycling, because the polymer can be converted back into monomers. As of yet, there is no way to break down addition polymers, such as polyethylene or polystyrene, into their corresponding monomers. These polymers can be melted down and remolded into a new shape or they can be broken down into smaller fragments in a process that is similar to the cracking of petroleum.

There are many logistical problems that limit the effectiveness of polymer recycling, most significantly the collection and sorting of used polymer products. Different kinds of polymers must be recycled in different ways. When recycling PET, a small amount of a different polymer present in the batch will interfere with the recycling process. As such, polymer recycling requires that polymer products be sorted by hand. To facilitate the sorting process, most polymer products are labeled with recycling codes that indicate their composition. These codes (1–7) indicate the type of polymer used and are arranged in order of ease with which the polymer can be recycled (1 being the easiest and 7 being the most difficult). Table 27.4 indicates the seven recycling codes, the polymers that correspond with each code, and several uses for the recycled products. In many cases, the recycled polymer can be contaminated with adhesives and other materials that may have survived the washing stage. Therefore, recycled polymers cannot be used for food packaging.

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

27.21 Propose a mechanism for the acid-catalyzed hydrolysis of a segment of PET to regenerate the monomers terephthalic acid and ethylene glycol.

Another, more promising, method of reducing the accumulation of polymers in the environment is to develop polymers that are biodegradable and can be recycled by natural processes. **Biodegradable polymers** are polymers that can be broken down by enzymes produced by soil microorganisms. Much research is directed at the development of such polymers, and many have already been developed. Most biodegradable polymers exhibit ester or amide groups, which can be hydrolyzed by enzymes. Examples include a class of compounds called polyhydroxyalkanoates (PHAs), which are polymers of β-hydroxy carboxylic acids.

A β-hydroxy carboxylic acid — A polyhydroxyalkanoate (PHA)

TABLE 27.4 RECYCLING CODES AND USES OF RECYCLED PRODUCTS

RECYCLING CODE	POLYMER	STRUCTURE	RECYCLED PRODUCT
01 PET	Poly(ethylene terephthalate)		Clothing, carpet fibers, detergent bottles, audio and video tapes
02 PE-HD	High-density polyethylene		Tyvek insulation, clothing, picnic tables
03 PVC	Poly(vinyl chloride)		Floor mats, garden hoses, shower curtains, plumbing pipes
04 PE-LD	Low-density polyethylene		Trash bags
05 PP	Polypropylene		Rope, fishing nets, carpets
06 PS	Polystyrene		Styrofoam packaging materials, coat hangers, trash cans
07 O	All other polymers	Polycarbonates, polyurethanes, polyamides, etc.	Auto parts

There are many different PHAs, depending on the identity of the R group. The salient feature in all PHAs is the presence of the repeating ester groups, which are readily hydrolyzed. These ester groups serve as the "weak link" in the polymer. Much research has been devoted to creating polymers with weak links that render the polymers biodegradable. The decades to come are likely to see the emergence of new biodegradable polymers with properties that will rival the properties of traditional, nonbiodegradable polymers.

REVIEW OF REACTIONS

Reactions for Formation of Chain-Growth Polymers

Radical Addition

Cationic Addition

Anionic Addition

Reactions for Formation of Step-Growth Polymers

Fischer Esterification

Carbonate Formation

Amide Formation

Urethane Formation

REVIEW OF CONCEPTS AND VOCABULARY

SECTION 27.1

- Polymers are comprised of repeating units that are constructed by joining monomers together.
- Synthetic polymers are prepared by scientists in the laboratory or in factories, while biopolymers are produced by living organisms.

SECTION 27.2

- The names of polymers are most commonly based on the monomers from which they are derived.

SECTION 27.3

- A **homopolymer** is a polymer made up of a single type of monomer. Polymers made from two or more different types of monomers are called **copolymers**.
- **Alternating copolymers** contain an alternating distribution of repeating units, while **random copolymers** contain a random distribution of repeating units.
- In a **block copolymer**, different homopolymer subunits are connected together in one chain. In a **graft copolymer**, sections of one homopolymer have been grafted onto a chain of another homopolymer.

SECTION 27.4

- Monomers can join together to form **addition polymers** by cationic, anionic, or free-radical addition.
- Most derivatives of ethylene will undergo radical polymerization under suitable conditions.
- Cationic addition is only efficient with derivatives of ethylene that contain an electron-donating group.
- Anionic addition is only efficient with derivatives of ethylene that contain an electron-withdrawing group, and polymers generated through this process are often called **living polymers**.
- Polymers generated via condensation reactions are called **condensation polymers**.
- **Polycarbonates** are similar in structure to polyesters, but with repeating carbonate groups instead of repeating ester groups.

SECTION 27.5

- **Chain-growth polymers** are formed under conditions in which each monomer is added to the growing chain one at a time. The monomers do not react directly with each other.
- **Step-growth polymers** are formed under conditions in which the individual monomers react with each other to form **oligomers**, which are then joined together to form polymers.
- In general, step-growth polymers are usually condensation polymers, while chain-growth polymers are usually addition polymers, but there are exceptions, such as **polyurethanes**.

SECTION 27.6

- **Branched polymers** contain a large number of branches connected to the main chain of the polymer, while **linear polymers** have only a minimal amount of branching.
- Polymers produced with Ziegler–Natta catalysts are generally linear polymers.
- When polymerization is performed using monosubstituted ethylenes as monomers, **isotactic**, **syndiotactic**, or **atactic** polymers can be formed, depending on the catalyst used.
- **Crossed-linked polymers** contain disulfide bridges or branches that connect neighboring chains.
- Most polymers contain some degree of cross-linking, and the conditions of polymer formation can be controlled so as to favor either more or less cross-linking.
- Many polymers contain regions called **crystallites** in which the chains are linearly extended and close in proximity to one another. The regions that are not crystalline are said to be **amorphous**.
- Crystalline regions become amorphous at the **melt transition temperature** (T_m).
- Noncrystalline polymers become soft at the **glass transition temperature** (T_g).

SECTION 27.7

- **Thermoplastics** are polymers that are hard at room temperature but soft when heated. They are often prepared in the presence of **plasticizers** to prevent the polymer from being brittle.

- **Elastomers** are polymers that return to their original shape after being stretched.
- **Fibers** are generated when certain polymers are heated, forced though small holes, and then cooled.
- **Thermosetting resins** are highly cross-linked polymers that are generally very hard and insoluble.

SECTION 27.8

- Most synthetic polymers persist and accumulate in the environment.
- For recycling purposes, polymer products are labeled with recycling codes that indicate their composition.
- **Biodegradable polymers** can be broken down by enzymes produced by microorganisms in the soil.

SKILLBUILDER REVIEW

27.1 DETERMINING THE MORE EFFICIENT POLYMERIZATION TECHNIQUE

STEP 1 Identify the repeating units.

STEP 2 Identify the monomer necessary to make this polymer.

STEP 3 Determine whether the monomer bears an electron-withdrawing group or an electron-donating group:

STEP 4
If EWG, then use anionic addition.

If EDG, then use cationic addition.

Try Problems **27.6–27.10, 27.27, 27.28, 27.34, 27.38–27.40, 27.46, 27.47**

27.2 IDENTIFYING MONOMERS FOR A CONDENSATION POLYMER

STEP 1 Identify the functional group that repeats itself.

A polyester

STEP 2 Identify the type of reaction that will produce the desired functional group.

STEP 3 Identify the two difunctional monomers necessary to form the desired condensation polymer.

Try Problems **27.13–27.16, 27.23, 27.30a,b,d, 27.31, 27.32, 27.43–27.45**

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

• **Included in Answers section**

27.22 • Name and draw the repeating unit of the polymer that results when each of the following monomers undergoes polymerization:

(a) **Nitroethylene**

(b) **Acrylonitrile**

(c) **Vinylidene fluoride**

27.23 • Kodel is a synthetic polyester with the following structure:

Kodel

(a) Identify what two monomers you would use to make Kodel.

(b) Would you use acidic conditions or basic conditions for this polymerization process? Explain.

27.24 • Draw the structures of the monomers required to make the following alternating copolymer:

27.25 Draw a region of a block copolymer constructed from isobutylene and styrene.

27.26 Draw a region of an alternating copolymer constructed from vinyl chloride and ethylene.

27.27 Identify which of the following monomers would be most reactive toward cationic polymerization, and explain your answer:

27.28 Identify which of the following monomers would be most reactive toward anionic polymerization, and explain your answer:

27.29 Identify the repeating unit of the polymer formed from each of the following reactions and then determine whether the polymer is a chain-growth or a step-growth polymer.

27.30 • Quiana is a synthetic polymer that can be used to make fabric that mimics the texture of silk. It can be prepared from the following monomers:

(a) Draw the structure of Quiana.

(b) Is Quiana a polyester, a polyamide, a polycarbonate, or a polyurethane?

(c) Is Quiana a step-growth polymer or a chain-growth polymer?

(d) Is Quiana an addition polymer or a condensation polymer?

27.31 Draw the monomer(s) required to make each of the following condensation polymers:

27.32 • Draw the condensation polymer produced when 1,4-cyclohexanediol is treated with phosgene ($Cl_2C{=}O$).

27.33 Determine whether the following pairs of monomers would combine to form chain-growth polymers or step-growth polymers.

27.34 Nitroethylene undergoes anionic polymerization so rapidly that it is difficult to isolate nitroethylene without it polymerizing. Explain.

27.35 Explain why vinyl shower curtains develop cracks over time.

27.36 Polyformaldehyde, sold under the trade name Delrin, is a strong polymer used in the manufacture of many guitar picks. It is prepared via the acid-catalyzed polymerization of formaldehyde.

(a) Draw the structure of polyformaldehyde.

(b) Is polyformaldehyde a step-growth polymer or a chain-growth polymer?

(c) Is polyformaldehyde an addition polymer or a condensation polymer?

27.37 The following monomer can be polymerized under either acidic or basic conditions. Explain.

27.38 Anionic polymerization of *para*-nitrostyrene occurs much more rapidly than anionic polymerization of styrene. Explain this difference in rate.

27.39 Cationic polymerization of *para*-methoxystyrene occurs much more rapidly than cationic polymerization of styrene. Explain this difference in rate.

27.40 Cationic polymerization of *para*-methoxystyrene occurs much more rapidly than cationic polymerization of *meta*-methoxystyrene. Explain this difference in rate.

27.41 Draw segments of the following polymers, indicating the stereochemistry with wedges and/or dashes.

(a) Syndiotactic poly(vinyl chloride)

(b) Isotactic polystyrene

27.42 Consider the structure of the following polymer:

(a) Draw the monomers you would use to prepare this polymer.

(b) Determine whether this polymer is a step-growth polymer or a chain-growth polymer.

(c) Determine whether this polymer is an addition polymer or a condensation polymer.

ACS-STYLE PROBLEMS (Multiple Choice)

Problems 27.43–27.47 follow the style of the ACS organic chemistry exam. For each of these problems, there will be one correct answer and three distractors.

27.43 • Which monomer can be used to prepare the following polymer under acidic conditions?

(a) (b) (c) (d)

27.44 • Which monomers are formed when the following polymer undergoes acid-catalyzed hydrolysis?

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

27.45 • Which polymer is formed by the condensation of these two monomers?

(a) (b)

(c) (d)

27.46 • Of the following monomers, which is best suited for cationic polymerization?

(a) (b)

(c) (d)

27.47 • Which of the following monomers is unlikely to undergo anionic polymerization?

(a) (b)

(c) (d)

INTEGRATED PROBLEMS

27.48 Draw the polymer that is expected when the following monomers react under acidic conditions. You may find it helpful to review Section 19.6.

27.49 As described in the WorldLinks box in Section 27.7, poly(vinyl alcohol) is used as a precursor to make PVB for use in automobile windshields. Poly(vinyl alcohol) can be prepared by polymerizing vinyl acetate and then removing the acetate groups via hydrolysis.

Vinyl acetate **Poly(vinyl acetate)** **Poly(vinyl alcohol)**

This two-step process is required because poly(vinyl alcohol) cannot be made from its corresponding monomer. Explain why vinyl alcohol will not directly undergo polymerization.

27.50 When a solution of aqueous sodium hydroxide is spilled on polyester clothing, a hole develops in the fabric. Describe how the polyester is destroyed.

CHALLENGE PROBLEMS

27.51 When 3-methyl-1-butene is treated with a catalytic amount of BF_3 and H_2O, a cationic polymerization process occurs, but the expected homopolymer is not formed. Instead, a random copolymer is obtained.

(a) Explain why there are two different repeating units.

(b) Draw a segment of the random copolymer that is formed, clearly showing the two different repeating units.

(c) Would you expect cationic polymerization of 3,3-dimethyl-1-butene to produce a random copolymer as well? Justify your answer.

27.52 When ethylene oxide is treated with a strong nucleophile, the epoxide ring is opened to form an alkoxide ion that can function as a nucleophile to attack another molecule of ethylene oxide. This process repeats itself many times, and a polymer is formed.

Ethylene oxide **Poly(ethylene oxide)**

The resulting polymer is called poly(ethylene oxide) or poly(ethylene glycol). It is sold under the trade name Carbowax and is used as an adhesive and a thickening agent.

(a) Draw a mechanism showing the formation of a segment of poly(ethylene oxide).

(b) Ethylene oxide can also be polymerized when treated with an acid. Draw a mechanism of formation of a segment of poly(ethylene oxide) under acidic conditions.

(c) Identify the monomer you would use to prepare the following polymer:

(d) Determine whether you would use basic conditions or acidic conditions to prepare the following polymer. Explain your choice.

27.53 Using vinyl acetate as your only source of carbon atoms, design a synthesis for the following polymer:

Vinyl acetate

Appendix

Nomenclature of Polyfunctional Compounds

Rules of nomenclature were first introduced for naming alkanes in Chapter 4. Those rules were then further developed in subsequent chapters to include the naming of a variety of functional groups. Table A.1 contains a list of sections in which nomenclature rules were discussed.

TABLE A.1 RULES OF NOMENCLATURE COVERED IN PREVIOUS CHAPTERS

GROUP	SECTION
Alkanes	4.2
Alkyl halides	7.2
Alkenes	7.6
Alkynes	9.2
Alcohols and phenols	12.1
Ethers	13.2
Epoxides	13.7
Thiols and sulfides	13.11
Benzene derivatives	17.2
Aldehydes and ketones	19.2
Carboxylic acids	20.2
Carboxylic acid derivatives	20.6
Amines	22.2

As you progress through the topics in Table A.1, you might notice some patterns that emerge. For example, the systematic name of an organic compound will generally have at least three parts, as seen in each of the following examples:

Each of these compounds has three parts (highlighted) in its name.

parent unsaturation suffix

First is the *parent* (meth, eth, etc.), which indicates the number of carbon atoms in the parent structure (see Section 4.2). The next part of the name, called *unsaturation*, indicates the presence or absence of C═C or C≡C bonds (where "an" indicates the absence of any C═C or C≡C bonds; "en" indicates the presence of a C═C bond; and "yn" indicates the presence of a C≡C bond). The final part of the name, or *suffix*, indicates the presence of a functional group (for example, "-ol" indicates the presence of an OH group, while "-one" indicates a ketone group). If no

functional group is present (other than C═C or C≡C bonds), then "e" is used as the suffix, such as in methan**e** or propyn**e**.

If substituents are present, then the systematic name will have at least four parts, rather than just three, for example:

Notice that all of the substituents appear before the parent. Locants are used to indicate the locations of all substituents, as well as the locations of any unsaturation and the location of the group named in the suffix. Notice also that locants are separated from letters with hyphens (5-chloro), but separated from each other with commas (4,4,6). When multiple substituents are present, they are organized in alphabetical order (see Section 4.2 for a review of the non-intuitive alphabetization rules; for example, "isopropyl" is alphabetized by "i" rather than "p," while *tert*-butyl is alphabetized by "b" rather than "t").

Compounds with chiral centers or stereoisomeric C═C bonds must include stereodescriptors to identify their configuration. These stereodescriptors (*R* or *S*, *E* or *Z*, *cis* or *trans*) must be placed at the beginning of the name, and therefore constitute a fifth part to consider when assigning a compound's name. For example, each of the following compounds has five parts to its name, where the first part indicates configuration:

The more complex a compound is, the longer its name will be. But even for very long names that are a paragraph in length, it should still be possible to dissect the name into its five parts:

stereoisomerism | substituents | parent | unsaturation | suffix

Table A.2 contains a list of sections in which the rules for each of these five parts were introduced.

TABLE A.2 THE PREVIOUS SECTIONS IN WHICH EACH OF THE FIVE PARTS OF A COMPOUND'S NAME WERE FIRST INTRODUCED

PART OF NAME	SECTIONS
Stereoisomerism	5.3, 5.11
Substituents	4.2
Parent	4.2
Unsaturation	7.6, 9.2
Suffix	12.1, 13.2, 13.7, 13.11, 19.2, 20.2, 20.6, and 22.2

When a compound contains multiple functional groups, we must choose which functional group has the highest priority and is assigned the suffix of the name. The other functional groups must be listed as substituents. For example, consider the following compound

Notice that two functional groups are present, but the suffix of a compound's name can only indicate one of these functional groups. In this case, the aldehyde group gets the priority (suffix = "al"), and the ketone group must be named as a substituent (oxo). Table A.3 shows the terminology that is used for several commonly encountered functional groups, in order of priority, with carboxylic acids having the highest priority.

TABLE A.3 THE NAMING OF COMMON FUNCTIONAL GROUPS, EITHER AS THE SUFFIX OR AS SUBSTITUENTS. GROUPS ARE ARRANGED IN ORDER OF PRIORITY, WITH CARBOXYLIC ACIDS HAVING THE HIGHEST PRIORITY AND ETHERS HAVING THE LOWEST PRIORITY

FUNCTIONAL GROUP	NAME AS SUFFIX	NAME AS SUBSTITUENT
Carboxylic acids	-oic acid	carboxy
Esters	-oate	alkoxycarbonyl
Acid halides	-oyl halide	halocarbonyl
Amides	-amide	carbamoyl
Nitriles	-nitrile	cyano
Aldehydes	-al	oxo
Ketones	-one	oxo
Alcohols	-ol	hydroxy
Amines	-amine	amino
Ethers	ether	alkoxy

When assigning locants, the functional group in the suffix should be assigned the lowest possible number, for example:

Correct

4-hydroxy-4-methylpentan-2-one

Incorrect

2-hydroxy-2-methylpentan-4-one

In this example, there are two functional groups. The ketone group takes priority, so the suffix will be "-one," and the OH group gets named as a substituent (hydroxy). Notice that the locant for the ketone group is 2, rather than 4.

When there is a choice, the parent chain should include the functional group that did not receive the priority, for example:

3-propyl-4-oxobutanoic acid

In this case, there are two functional groups—a carboxylic acid group and an aldehyde group. The former will command the suffix, while the latter will be indicated as a substituent. It is clear that the carbon atom of the carboxylic acid group must represent the beginning of the parent chain, but notice that the carbon atom of the aldehyde group should also be contained in the parent chain, even though doing so results in a smaller chain size (a parent of four carbon atoms, rather than a parent of six, in this case).

When assigning locants in bicyclic systems, keep in mind that locants must begin at a bridgehead atom and then continue along the longest bridge, followed by the second longest bridge, and ending with the shortest bridge; even if it means that the locant assigned to the suffix will be a high number, as seen in the following case:

bicyclo[3.2.1]oct-6-en-8-one

This example exhibits a ketone group that will command the suffix. Nevertheless, this functional group is at C8 (the highest possible locant in this case), because it is located on the shortest bridge. If there was a hydroxyl group at C3 of this compound, we would name that group as a substituent (3-hydroxy-), even while the ketone group would remain at C8. This is often a feature of rigid systems with defined numbering systems (such as bicyclic compounds).

CONCEPTUAL CHECKPOINT

A.1 (+)-Spisulosine, a marine natural product isolated from clams, is known to inhibit cell proliferation and is, therefore, of interest for cancer chemotherapy.[1] Provide an IUPAC name for (+)-spisulosine.

(+)-Spisulosine

LIST OF REFERENCES

1. *Tet. Lett.* **2010**, *51*, 4140–4142.

Selected Answers

1.1. (a)

(b)

1.3. (a)

1.7. (a)

1.10. (a)

1.13. (a)

1.15. (a) $1s^2 2s^2 2p^2$

1.21. (a) The highlighted carbon atom (below) is sp^3 hybridized. The other carbon atoms in this structure are all sp^2 hybridized.

1.24. (a) Tetrahedral geometry

1.28. (a)

1.30. (a) The second compound is expected to have a higher boiling point, because it is less branched.

1.32. (a) There is only one compound with the molecular formula C_2H_5Cl.

1.37. The aluminum atom has four bonds and no lone pairs, so the steric number is 4, which means that this aluminum atom will have tetrahedral geometry.

1.48. This compound has sixteen σ bonds and three π bonds.

1.53. Each of the highlighted carbon atoms is sp^3 hybridized with tetrahedral geometry. Each of the other fourteen carbon atoms in this structure is sp^2 hybridized, with trigonal planar geometry.

1.62.

1.63. (a) **1.64.** (c) **1.65.** (b) **1.66.** (a)
1.67. (d) **1.68.** (c) **1.69.** (c) **1.70.** (b)
1.71. (b) **1.72.** (d)

1.73. (a) Compounds A and B share the same molecular formula (C_4H_9N) but differ in their constitution (connectivity of atoms), and they are therefore constitutional isomers.

2.1. (a)

2.4. (a)

2.8. (a)

2.10. (a)

2.12. (a) This curved arrow violates the second rule by giving a fifth bond to a nitrogen atom (thus exceeding its octet).

2.15. (a)

2.26. (a)

2.29. (a)

Resonance hybrid

2.31. (a)

2.41.

2.48. (a)

$(CH_3)_3CCH_2CH_2CH(CH_3)_2$

2.50.

2.58. Each nitrogen atom has a lone pair that is adjacent to a π bond and is, therefore, delocalized via resonance. In order to be delocalized via resonance, the lone pair must occupy a *p* orbital, and therefore, each nitrogen atom must be sp^2 hybridized. As such, each nitrogen atom is trigonal planar.

2.62.

2.64. (c) **2.65.** (a) **2.66.** (d) **2.67.** (c)
2.68. (c) **2.69.** (a) **2.70.** (a) **2.71.** (d)
2.72. (b)

3.1. (a)

3.4. (a) Phenol (C_6H_5OH) has a lower pK_a value and is therefore more acidic.

3.7. (a)

3.10. (a) The equilibrium will favor the weaker acid (CH_3CH_2OH), so the left side of the reaction is favored.

3.13. (a) Oxygen is more electronegative than carbon and can better stabilize the negative charge that will be generated upon deprotonation. A more stable (weaker) conjugate base indicates a stronger parent acid. Therefore, a proton connected to an oxygen atom is expected to be more acidic than a proton connected to a carbon atom:

3.15. (a) The proton marked in blue is expected to be more acidic than the proton marked in red, because removal of the blue proton leads to a resonance-stabilized anion, shown below. A more stable (weaker) conjugate base indicates a stronger parent acid.

3.18. (a) The highlighted proton is the most acidic. When this proton is removed, the resulting anionic conjugate base is stabilized by the electron-withdrawing effects of the nearby electronegative fluorine atoms. A more stable (weaker) conjugate base indicates a stronger parent acid.

3.21. The most acidic proton is highlighted in each of the following compounds. For each of the first two compounds, deprotonation leads to a conjugate base in which the negative charge is associated with an *sp* hybridized orbital (which is more stable than being associated with an sp^2 or sp^3 hybridized orbital). In the final compound, deprotonation leads to a conjugate base in which the negative charge is associated with an sp^2 hybridized orbital (which is more stable than being associated with an sp^3 hybridized orbital).

3.23. (a) The proton marked in red is expected to be more acidic than the proton marked in blue, because removal of the red proton leads to a resonance-stabilized anion in which the negative charge is spread over one oxygen atom and three carbon atoms:

Formation of a more stable (weaker) conjugate base indicates the more acidic proton has been removed.

Removal of the proton marked in blue results in an anion that is not resonance-stabilized.

3.26. The most acidic proton belongs to the carboxylic acid group (COOH).

3.27. (a) Nitrogen is better at stabilizing a positive charge (compared with oxygen), because nitrogen is less electronegative than oxygen. With O^+ being less stable than N^+, we conclude that the following acid is the stronger acid (*less* stable = *more* acidic):

3.30. (a) Nitrogen is more electronegative than carbon, so a negative charge will be more stable on a nitrogen atom. The base on the product side is the more stable (weaker) base. As such, the reaction favors the products.

3.32. (a) Yes, because a negative charge on an oxygen atom will be more stable than a negative charge on a nitrogen atom. This proton transfer reaction is favorable because it produces a more stable (weaker) base.

3.35. (a)

3.37. (a)

3.41.

3.45. (a)

3.47. (a) The second compound is more acidic, because its conjugate base (shown below) has a negative charge on a sulfur atom, which is more stable than a negative charge on an oxygen atom (factor #1 of ARIO). A more stable (weaker) conjugate base indicates a stronger parent acid.

3.52. Nitrogen is better at stabilizing a positive charge (compared with oxygen), because nitrogen is less electronegative than oxygen. With O^+ being less stable than N^+, we conclude that ROH_2^+ is a stronger acid than RNH_3^+. So the most acidic proton in this structure is connected to the positively charged oxygen atom.

3.55. (c) **3.56.** (a) **3.57.** (c) **3.58.** (d)
3.59. (b) **3.60.** (d) **3.61.** (d) **3.62.** (c)
3.63. (a)

3.64. (a)

4.1. (a)

Parent = hexane

4.4. (a)

4.6. (a)

Systematic = (1,1-dimethylethyl)
Common = *tert*-butyl

4.8. (a) 3,4,6-trimethyloctane

4.11. (a) 4-ethyl-1-methylbicyclo[3.2.1]octane

4.14. (a) These structures have the same name (2,3-dimethylpentane), so they represent the same compound.

4.16. (a)

4.19. (a)

Lowest energy Highest energy

4.21.

4.23. The six axial positions are indicated with bold bonds, and the other six positions are equatorial:

4.25. (a)

4.28. (a)

4.30. (a)

more stable

4.36. (a) 4-ethyl-3-methyloctane

4.43. (a)

4.47. (a)

4.50.

more stable

4.52. (a)

4.61. (d) **4.62.** (b) **4.63.** (c) **4.64.** (d)
4.65. (d) **4.66.** (c) **4.67.** (b) **4.68.** (c)
4.69. (a)
4.70.

5.4. (a)

5.7. (a)

5.9. (a)

5.11. [α] = +25.6

5.15. % *ee* = 94%

5.19. (a) Enantiomers.

5.24. (a)

meso

5.26. (a)

R

5.29. (a)

5.31.

5.38. (a)

5.45. (a) Diastereomers

5.51. (a)

5.55. (a) Chiral.

5.57. (a) **5.58.** (b) **5.59.** (d) **5.60.** (b)

5.61. (c) **5.62.** (a) **5.63.** (c)

5.64. (a) This is a *meso* compound, so it is achiral and optically inactive:

6.1. (a) $\Delta H° = -63$ kJ/mol. The reaction is exothermic.

6.8. (a) Electrophile

6.11. (a) Carbocation rearrangement

6.13. (a) **(i)** nucleophilic attack, **(ii)** proton transfer, **(iii)** proton transfer

6.15. (a)

6.17. (a)

6.24. (a) ΔS_{sys} is negative ($\Delta S_{sys} < 0$, a decrease in entropy)

6.25. (a)

6.28. (a)

6.34. (i) Nucleophilic attack, **(ii)** Loss of a leaving group, **(iii)** proton transfer:

6.41. (a)

6.42. (c) **6.43.** (d) **6.44.** (b) **6.45.** (c)

6.46. (a) **6.47.** (d) **6.48.** (b) **6.49.** (b)

7.3. (a)

(*S*)-2-chloropentane

7.5. (a)

7.12. (a)

major (more substituted) minor (less substituted)

7.15. (a)

major minor

7.19. (a)

major minor

7.21. (a)

7.28. (a)

7.35. (a)

Retrosynthesis:

Forward synthesis:

7.38. (a)

Retrosynthesis:

Forward synthesis:

7.49. (a)

7.50.

7.54.

7.55. (a)

Target molecule

7.75. (a)

major minor minor

7.79. (d) **7.80.** (d) **7.81.** (c) **7.82.** (d)
7.83. (c) **7.84.** (b) **7.85.** (c) **7.86.** (a)
7.87. (d) **7.88.** (b) **7.89.** (c) **7.90.** (a)

7.91. (a)

8.7. (a)

8.10. (a)

8.14. (a)

8.20. (a)

8.22. (a)

8.25. (a)

8.28. (a)

8.32. (a)

8.35. (a)

8.39. (a)

8.42. (a)

8.45. (a)

8.47. (a)

(*E*)-3,4,5,5-tetramethyl-3-heptene

8.51. (a)

8.54.

8.72.

8.81. (c) **8.82.** (d) **8.83.** (b) **8.84.** (d)
8.85. (b) **8.86.** (a) **8.87.** (c) **8.88.** (d)
8.89. (c)

8.90.

Alternatively:

9.1. (a) 3-hexyne

9.5. (a) $NaNH_2$ is a sufficiently strong base to deprotonate a terminal alkyne.

9.16. (a)

9.22. (a) H_2SO_4, H_2O, $HgSO_4$

9.27. (a)

9.29. (a)

9.32. (a) 2,2,5-trimethyl-3-hexyne

9.34.

9.35. (a) Because of the large difference in pK_a values, this reaction is considered to be irreversible.

9.36. (a)

9.41. (a)

9.48. (a)

Alternatively, the final step of the synthesis (conversion of the alkyne into the desired ketone) can be achieved via hydroboration-oxidation.

9.58. (a) **9.59.** (c) **9.60.** (c) **9.61.** (d)
9.62. (b) **9.63.** (b) **9.64.** (c) **9.65.** (d)

9.66. (a)

10.2. (a)

10.5. (a)

10.8. (a)

10.10. (a)

Initiation

Propagation

Termination

10.12. (a)

10.14. (a) The product does not contain a chiral center:

no chiral center

10.16. (a)

10.21. (a)

10.24. (a)

10.26. (a)

10.29.

10.30. The intermediate benzylic radical is expected to be attacked from either face of the planar radical with equal likelihood, giving rise to a racemic mixture of enantiomers:

10.32. (a)

10.34. (a)

10.42. (c) **10.43.** (b) **10.44.** (c) **10.45.** (d)
10.46. (b) **10.47.** (a) **10.48.** (d)

10.49. Methyl radicals are less stable than *tert*-butyl radicals so methyl radicals react with each other (couple) more rapidly. Also, methyl radicals are less hindered than *tert*-butyl radicals, so that further explains why methyl radicals couple more rapidly than *tert*-butyl radicals.

11.3. (a)

11.5. (a)

11.7. (a)

11.9. (a)

11.13.

11.17.

11.18. (a)

11.21. (a) The following is one acceptable answer (there are others):

11.25. The following is one acceptable answer (there are others):

11.26. (c) **11.27.** (c) **11.28.** (d)
11.29. (d) **11.30.** (c) **11.31.** (b)
11.32. (a)

11.33. The following is one acceptable answer (there are others):

12.1. (a) 5,5-dibromo-2-methyl-2-hexanol, or 5,5-dibromo-2-methylhexan-2-ol

12.6. (a) The first compound is more acidic because the conjugate base of a primary alcohol will be more easily solvated than the conjugate base of a tertiary alcohol. The better solvated, more stable conjugate base is the weaker conjugate base, and is related to the stronger parent acid.

12.10. (a) The starting material is neither oxidized nor reduced.

12.12. (a)

12.15. (a)

12.19. (a) The transformation can be achieved with PBr_3. Alternatively, the same transformation can be achieved with TsCl and pyridine, followed by NaBr.

12.22. (a)

12.24. (a)

Alternatively:

12.27. (a)

12.31.

12.36. (a) The desired aldehyde can be prepared in one step, using PCC, or DMP, or the Swern oxidation.

12.37. (a)

12.39. (a)

12.47. (a)

12.53. (c) **12.54.** (d) **12.55.** (b)
12.56. (d) **12.57.** (c) **12.58.** (b)
12.59. (a) **12.60.** (d) **12.61.** (a)

13.1. (a) 2-Ethoxypropane

13.5. (a) A Williamson ether synthesis will be more efficient with a less sterically hindered substrate, so it is better to start with a secondary alcohol and a primary alkyl halide, rather than a primary alcohol and a secondary alkyl halide:

13.13. (a)

13.16. (a)

13.18. (a)

13.22. (a)

13.24. (a)

13.26. (a) (1*S*,2*S*)-1-Ethoxy-2-methylcyclohexane

13.27. (a)

13.29. (a)

Alternatively:

13.35.

13.37. (a)

13.43. (a)

13.46. (b) **13.47.** (d) **13.48.** (a) **13.49.** (a)
13.50. (c) **13.51.** (b) **13.52.** (d) **13.53.** (c)

14.12. (a) The first spectrum is consistent with this structure:

14.14. (a) The starting material is an alcohol and is expected to produce a typical signal for an O—H stretch (a broad signal between 3200 and 3600 cm^{-1}). In contrast, the product is a carboxylic acid and is expected to produce an even broader O—H signal (2200–3600 cm^{-1}) as a result of more extensive hydrogen bonding. In addition, the product can be differentiated from the starting material by looking for a signal at around 1715 cm^{-1}. The carboxylic acid product has a C═O bond and should exhibit this signal. The alcohol starting material lacks a C═O bond and will not show a signal at 1715 cm^{-1}.

14.20. (a) C_4H_8O

14.30. (a) HDI = 2

14.33. (a)

14.35. (a) In addition to the Csp^3—H stretching signals that are expected to appear just below 3000 cm^{-1}, the C═N bond and the C═O bond should each produce a signal in the double bond region (1600–1850 cm^{-1}).

14.36. (a) The IR spectrum of the alkene reactant should have a signal near 1650 cm^{-1} (for the C═C bond) and a signal near 3100 cm^{-1} (for the Csp^2—H bond). In contrast, the IR spectrum of the alkane product should not exhibit either of these signals.

14.38. There are certainly many acceptable answers to this problem, including $C_5H_{10}O$ and $C_4H_{10}N_2$.

14.49.

14.56.

1-butyne

14.57. (a) **14.58.** (a) **14.59** (a) **14.60.** (c)
14.61. (d) **14.62.** (d) **14.63.** (c)

14.65.

15.1. (a) homotopic

15.5. (a) eight

15.8. (a) Five signals are expected (moving from left to right in the structure), with the following chemical shifts: 1.1 ppm, 2.2 ppm, 4.2 ppm, 1.8 ppm, and 0.9 ppm.

15.11. The signal at 4.0 ppm represents two protons. The signal at 2.0 ppm represents three protons. The signal at 1.6 ppm represents two protons. The signal at 0.9 ppm represents three protons.

15.15. (a) This compound has four different kinds of protons, highlighted here. In each case, we apply the $n+1$ rule, giving the multiplicities shown:

15.19. (a) This compound is expected to produce four signals in its ^{1}H NMR spectrum. For each signal, its expected chemical shift, multiplicity, and integration are shown.

15.21. (a) The first compound exhibits symmetry so it will have only three signals in its ^{1}H NMR spectrum, while the second compound will have six signals.

15.23. (a)

15.26. (a) The two methyl groups are chemically equivalent. All of the other carbon atoms are unique, giving rise to a total of four signals. Three

of the signals are produced by sp^3 hybridized carbon atoms (not connected to electronegative atoms), and are therefore expected to appear in the region 10–60 ppm. The fourth signal is produced by the carbon atom of the aldehyde carbonyl group (C═O), which is expected to appear in the region 185–220 ppm.

15.28.

15.32. (a)

15.33.

15.35. (a) Two

15.41. (a) homotopic

15.59.

15.63. (a) **15.64.** (b) **15.65.** (b)
15.66. (d) **15.67.** (a) **15.68.** (d)
15.69. (d) **15.70.** (c) **15.71.** (c)

15.72.

16.6. (a) Three products are formed. The mechanism of formation for one product is shown here:

The mechanism of formation for each of the other two products is shown here:

16.9. (a)

16.13. (a)

16.21. (a)

16.27. (a) 247 nm

16.32.

16.34.

16.35.

16.42. (a)

16.44.

16.60. (c) **16.61.** (d) **16.62.** (b)
16.63. (d) **16.64.** (c) **16.65.** (b)
16.66. (c) **16.67.** (a)

16.68. (a)

α-terpinene

17.1. (a) 3-isopropylbenzaldehyde, or *meta*-isopropylbenzaldehyde), or 3-(1-methylethyl) benzaldehyde

17.11. (a) antiaromatic

17.13. (a) One of the lone pairs participates in aromaticity.

17.18. (a)

17.20. (a)

17.24. (a) 4-ethylbenzoic acid or *para*-ethylbenzoic acid

17.30. (a) ten

17.32. (a) aromatic

17.34. **(a)** antiaromatic

17.42. **(a)**

17.48. (a) **17.49.** (d) **17.50.** (b) **17.51.** (c)
17.52. (d) **17.53.** (a) **17.54.** (c)

18.16. **(a)** As seen in Table 18.1, the nitro group is strongly deactivating and *meta*-directing.

18.18. **(a)**

18.20. **(a)**

18.22. **(a)** Yes, a blocking group will be required.

18.26. **(a)**

18.28. **(a)**

18.35. **(a)**

Under the basic conditions employed, the resulting product (phenol) is deprotonated to give a phenolate ion:

This is why aqueous acid must be introduced into the reaction flask after the reaction is complete, in order to serve as a proton source to regenerate phenol:

18.40.

18.41. **(a)**

18.45. **(a)** The *para* isomer is likely the major product because of steric considerations.

18.53. **(a)**

18.63. **(a)**

18.73. (b) **18.74.** (c) **18.75.** (d) **18.76.** (b)
18.77. (a) **18.78.** (c) **18.79.** (a)

19.1. **(a)** 5,5-dibromo-2,2-dimethylhexanal

19.8. **(a)**

19.14. (a)

19.19. (a)

19.23. (a)

19.34. (a)

19.40. (a)

19.50. (a)

19.52. (a)

19.56.

19.57. (a)

19.66.

19.67. (a)

19.74. (a) **19.75.** (d) **19.76.** (b)
19.77. (d) **19.78.** (c) **19.79.** (b)
19.80. (d) **19.81.** (c)

20.14. (a)

20.30. (a)

20.32. (a)

20.42. (a)

20.44. (a)

20.47. (a)

20.49. (a)

20.50. (a)

20.69. (a)

20.70. (c) **20.71.** (d) **20.72.** (d)
20.73. (b) **20.74.** (a) **20.75.** (c)
20.76. (b) **20.77.** (a)

20.78.

21.4. (a)

21.14. (a)

21.17. (a)

21.19. (a)

21.31. (a)

21.33. (a)

21.38. (a)

21.42. (a)

21.45. (a)

21.49. (a)

21.53. (a)

21.58.

21.63. (a)

21.67. (a)

21.68. (a)

21.77. (a)

Alternatively,

21.89. (b) **21.90.** (c) **21.91.** (d)
21.92. (c) **21.93.** (d) **21.94.** (a)
21.95. (a) **21.96.** (b)

22.1. (a) 3,3-dimethyl-1-butanamine

22.12. (a)

22.14. (a) Two possible synthetic routes are shown here:

22.16. (a)

22.23. (a)

22.27. (a)

22.38. Only one of the nitrogen atoms (highlighted) has a localized lone pair.

As such, this nitrogen atom is significantly more basic than the other two nitrogen atoms, each of which exhibits a highly delocalized lone pair.

22.43. (a)

22.45. (a)

22.48.

22.54. (a)

22.64. (a)

22.65. (a)

22.73. (d) **22.74.** (a) **22.75.** (b) **22.76.** (a) **22.77.** (c) **22.78.** (c) **22.79.** (a)

22.80.

23.7. (a)

23.12. (a)

23.16. (a)

23.20. (a)

23.24. (a)

23.30. (a)

23.33.

23.34.

23.37. (a)

23.38. (a)

23.44. (a)

23.49.

The observed diastereoselectivity can be rationalized by considering the existing chiral center (in the starting material). As a result of the configuration of this chiral center, the organohalide partner must approach the C═C unit from one particular face of the C═C bond (behind the plane of the five-membered ring).

23.59. (c) **23.60.** (d) **23.61.** (d)
23.62. (b) **23.63.** (a) **23.64.** (c)

24.9. (a)

24.12. (a)

24.16. (a)

24.31. (a) This compound is not a reducing sugar.

24.39. (a) This disaccharide is a reducing sugar.

24.42. (a) This compound is a D-sugar, it is an aldose, and it is a tetrose. In summary, this compound is a D-aldotetrose.

24.43. (a) D-glyceraldehyde

24.44. (a) D-glucose (see Figure 24.5).

24.45. (a) D-ribose

24.46. (a)

24.81. (d) **24.82.** (c) **24.83.** (b)
24.84. (d) **24.85.** (a)

25.4. (a)

25.14. (a)

25.21. (a)

25.31. Met-Phe-Val-Ala-Tyr-Lys-Ser-Val-Ile-Leu-Arg-Trp-His-Phe-Met-Cys-Arg-Gly-Pro-Phe-Ala-Val

25.34. (a)

25.37. (a)

25.40. (a)

25.42. (a)

25.48. (a)

25.56.

25.59. (a)

25.77.

25.84. (d) **25.85.** (c) **25.86.** (c)
25.87. (b) **25.88.** (a)
26.3. **(a)** Trimyristin
26.9.

26.12.

26.25. **(a)**

menthol

26.30. **(a)**

26.34.

26.37. The phrase "like dissolves like" helps us to identify a suitable solvent. Water would not be appropriate because it is a polar solvent, and terpenes are nonpolar. Hexane is a nonpolar solvent and would be suitable.

26.49. **(a)**

bisabolene

26.51. (c) **26.52.** (a) **26.53.** (b)
26.54. (b) **26.55.** (b)

27.6. **(a)** A cyano group is an electron-withdrawing substituent (see Table 18.1 and associated discussion), so preparation of this compound would be best achieved via anionic addition.

27.13.

27.22. **(a)**

polynitroethylene

27.23. **(a)**

27.24.

27.30. **(a)**

27.32.

27.43. (b) **27.44.** (b) **27.45.** (b)
27.46. (d) **27.47.** (a)

Glossary

[4+2]-cycloaddition (Sect. 16.7): A pericyclic reaction, also called a Diels–Alder reaction, that takes place between two different π systems, one of which is associated with four atoms while the other is associated with two atoms.

1,2-addition (Sect. 16.4): A reaction involving the addition of two groups to a conjugated π system in which one group is installed at the C1 position and the other group is installed at the C2 position.

1,2-adduct (Sect. 16.4): The product obtained from 1,2-addition across a conjugated π system.

1,3-diaxial interaction (Sect. 4.12): Steric interactions that occur between axial substituents in a chair conformation.

1,4-addition (Sect. 16.4): A reaction involving the addition of two groups to a conjugated π system in which one group is installed at the C1 position and the other group is installed at the C4 position.

1,4-adduct (Sect. 16.4): The product obtained from 1,4-addition across a conjugated π system.

A

absorbance (Sect. 16.11): In UV-Vis spectroscopy, the value log (I_0/I) where I_0 is the intensity of the reference beam and I is the intensity of the sample beam.

absorption spectrum (Sect. 14.2): In IR spectroscopy as well as UV-VIS spectroscopy, a plot that measures the percent transmittance or absorption as a function of frequency.

acetal (Sect. 19.5): A functional group characterized by two alkoxy (OR) groups connected to the same carbon atom. Acetals can be used as protecting groups for aldehydes or ketones.

acetoacetic ester synthesis (Sect. 21.5): A three-step process that converts an alkyl halide into a methyl ketone with the introduction of three new carbon atoms.

acetylide ion (Sect. 9.3): The conjugate base of acetylene or any terminal alkyne.

acid-catalyzed hydration (Sect. 8.6): A reaction that achieves the addition of water across a double bond in the presence of an acid catalyst.

acidic cleavage (Sect. 13.6): A reaction in which bonds are broken in the presence of an acid. For example, in the presence of a strong acid, a dialkyl ether is converted into two alkyl halides.

activate (Sect. 18.7): For a substituted aromatic ring, the effect of an electron-donating substituent that increases the rate of electrophilic aromatic substitution.

acyl group (Sect. 18.6): The term describing a carbonyl group (C═O bond) connected to an alkyl group or aryl group.

acylium ion (Sect. 18.6): The resonance-stabilized, cationic intermediate of a Friedel–Crafts acylation, formed by treating an acyl halide with aluminum trichloride.

acyl peroxide (Sect. 10.3): A compound with the general structure R—O—O—R, where the R groups are both acyl groups.

addition polymers (Sect. 27.4): Polymers that are formed via cationic addition, anionic addition, or free-radical addition.

addition reactions (Sect. 8.1): Reactions that are characterized by the addition of two groups across a double bond. In the process, the pi (π) bond is broken.

addition to a π bond (Sect. 10.2): One of the six kinds of arrow-pushing patterns used in drawing mechanisms for radical reactions. A radical adds to a π bond, destroying the π bond and generating a new radical.

adrenocortical hormones (Sect. 26.6): Hormones that are secreted by the cortex (the outer layer) of the adrenal glands. Adrenocortical hormones are typically characterized by a carbonyl group or hydroxyl group at C11 of the steroid skeleton.

alcohol (Sect. 12.1): A compound that possesses a hydroxyl group (OH) connected to an sp^3-hybridized carbon atom.

aldaric acid (Sect. 24.6): A dicarboxylic acid that is produced when an aldose or ketose is treated with a strong oxidizing agent, such as HNO_3.

alditol (Sect. 24.6): The product obtained when the aldehyde group of an aldose is reduced.

aldol addition reaction (Sect. 21.3): A reaction that occurs when an aldehyde or ketone is attacked by an enolate ion. The product of an aldol addition reaction is always a β-hydroxy aldehyde or ketone.

aldol condensation (Sect. 21.3): An aldol addition followed by dehydration to give an α,β-unsaturated ketone or aldehyde.

aldonic acid (Sect. 24.6): The product obtained when the aldehyde group of an aldose is oxidized.

aldose (Sect. 24.2): A carbohydrate that contains an aldehyde group.

alkaloids (Sect. 22.1): Naturally occurring amines isolated from plants.

alkanamine (Sect. 22.2): A format for naming primary amines containing a complex alkyl group.

alkane (Sect. 4.1): A hydrocarbon that lacks π bonds.

alkene metathesis (Sect. 23.9): A reaction between two alkenes, resulting in the redistribution (changing of position) of carbon-carbon double bonds.

alkoxide (Sect. 12.2): The conjugate base of an alcohol.

alkoxymercuration-demercuration (Sect. 13.5): A two-step process that achieves Markovnikov addition of an alcohol (H and OR) across an alkene. The product of this process is an ether.

alkoxy substituent (Sect. 13.2): An OR group.

alkyl amines (Sect. 22.2): A format for naming amines containing simple alkyl groups.

alkylation (Sect. 9.10): A reaction that achieves the installation of an alkyl group. For example, an S_N2 reaction in which an alkyl group is connected to an attacking nucleophile.

alkyl group (Sect. 4.2): A substituent lacking π bonds and comprised of only carbon and hydrogen atoms.

alkyl halide (Sect. 7.2): A compound in which a halogen (such as Cl, Br, or I) is connected to an sp^3 hybridized carbon atom.

alkyl peroxide (Sect. 10.3): A compound with the general structure R—O—O—R, where the R groups are both alkyl groups.

alkylthio group (Sect. 13.11): An SR group.

alkynes (Sect. 9.1): Compounds containing a carbon-carbon triple bond.

alkynide ion (Sect. 9.3): The conjugate base of a terminal alkyne.

allenes (Sect. 5.9): Compounds that contain two adjacent C═C bonds.

allylic bromination (Sect. 10.7): A radical reaction that achieves installation of a bromine atom at an allylic position.

allylic carbocation (Sect. 6.11): A carbocation in which the positive charge is adjacent to a carbon-carbon double bond.

allylic (Sect. 2.10): The positions that are adjacent to the vinylic positions of a carbon-carbon double bond.

alpha (α) amino acid (Sect. 25.1): A compound containing a carboxylic acid group (COOH) as well as an amino group (NH_2), both of which are attached to the same carbon atom.

alpha (α) anomer (Sect. 24.5): The cyclic hemiacetal of an aldose in which the hydroxyl group at the anomeric position is *trans* to the CH_2OH group.

alpha (α) helix (Sect. 25.7): For proteins, a feature of secondary structure that forms when a portion of the protein twists into a spiral.

alpha (α) position (Sect. 7.2): The position immediately adjacent to a functional group.

alternating copolymers (Sect. 27.3): A copolymer that contains an alternating distribution of repeating units.

amidomalonate synthesis (Sect. 25.3): A synthetic method that employs diethyl acetamidomalonate as the starting material and enables the preparation of racemic α-amino acids.

amine (Sect. 22.1): Compounds containing a nitrogen atom that is connected to one, two, or three alkyl or aryl groups.

amino acid residue (Sect. 25.4): The individual repeating units in a polypeptide chain or protein.

amino acid (Sect. 25.1): A compound containing a carboxylic acid group (COOH) as well as an amino group (NH_2).

amino sugars (Sect. 24.9): Carbohydrate derivatives in which an OH group has been replaced with an amino group.

amorphous (Sect. 27.6): A region of a polymer in which nearby chains are not linearly extended and are not parallel to one another.

amphoteric (Sect. 25.2): Compounds that will react with either acids or bases. Amino acids are amphoteric.

androgens (Sect. 26.6): Male sex hormones.

angle strain (Sect. 4.9): The increase in energy associated with a bond angle that has deviated from the preferred angle of 109.5°.

annulenes (Sect. 17.5): Compounds consisting of a single ring containing a fully conjugated π system. Benzene is [6]annulene.

anomeric carbon (Sect. 24.5): The C1 position of the cyclic hemiacetal of an aldose or the C2 position of the cyclic hemiacetal of a ketose.

anomers (Sect. 24.5): Stereoisomeric cyclic hemiacetals of an aldose or ketose that differ from each other in their configuration at the anomeric carbon.

***anti* addition** (Sect. 8.10): An addition reaction in which two groups are installed on opposite sides of a π bond.

antiaromatic (Sect. 17.4): Instability that arises when a planar ring of continuously overlapping *p* orbitals contains $4n$ π electrons.

antibonding MO (Sect. 1.9): A high-energy molecular orbital resulting from the destructive interference between atomic orbitals.

***anti* conformation** (Sect. 4.8): A conformation in which the dihedral angle between two groups is 180°.

***anti*-coplanar** (Sect. 7.7): A conformation in which a hydrogen atom and a leaving group are separated by a dihedral angle of exactly 180°.

***anti*-Markovnikov addition** (Sect. 8.5): An addition reaction in which a hydrogen atom is installed at the more substituted vinylic position and another group (such as a halogen) is installed at the less substituted vinylic position.

antioxidants (Sect. 10.9): Radical scavengers that prevent autooxidation by preventing radical chain reactions from beginning.

***anti*-periplanar** (Sect. 7.7): A conformation in which a hydrogen atom and a leaving group are separated by a dihedral angle of approximately 180°.

arenium ion (Sect. 18.2): The positively charged, resonance-stabilized, intermediate of an electrophilic aromatic substitution reaction. Also called a sigma complex.

aromatic (Sect. 17.1): A compound containing a planar ring of continuously overlapping *p* orbitals with $4n + 2$ π electrons.

aryl amine (Sect. 22.2): An amine in which the nitrogen atom is connected directly to an aromatic ring.

asymmetric hydrogenation (Sect. 8.9): The addition of H_2 across only one face of a π bond.

asymmetric stretching (Sect. 14.5): In IR spectroscopy, when two bonds are stretching out of phase with each other.

atactic (Sect. 27.6): A polymer in which the repeating units contain chiral centers that are not arranged in a pattern (they have random configurations).

atomic mass unit (amu) (Sect. 14.13): A unit of measure equivalent to 1 g divided by Avogadro's number.

atomic orbital (Sect. 1.7): A three-dimensional plot of ψ^2 of a wavefunction. It is a region of space that can accommodate electron density.

atropisomers (Sect. 5.9): Stereoisomers that result from the hindered rotation of a single bond.

Aufbau principle (Sect. 1.7): A rule that determines the order in which orbitals are filled by electrons. Specifically, the lowest energy orbital is filled first.

autocatalytic (Sect. 21.2): A reaction for which the reagent necessary to catalyze the reaction is produced by the reaction itself.

autooxidation (Sect. 10.9): The slow oxidation of organic compounds that occurs in the presence of atmospheric oxygen.

auxochrome (Sect. 16.11): When applying Woodward–Fieser rules, the groups attached to the chromophore.

axial position (Sect. 4.11): For chair conformations of substituted cyclohexanes, a position that is parallel to a vertical axis passing through the center of the ring.

axis of symmetry (Sect. 5.6): An axis about which a compound possesses rotational symmetry.

azide synthesis (Sect. 22.5): A method for preparing primary amines that avoids the formation of secondary and tertiary amines.

azo coupling (Sect. 22.11): An electrophilic aromatic substitution reaction in which an aryldiazonium salt reacts with an activated aromatic ring.

azo dyes (Sect. 22.11): A class of colored compounds that are formed via azo coupling.

B

back-side attack (Sect. 7.3): In S_N2 reactions, the side opposite the leaving group, which is where the nucleophile attacks.

Baeyer–Villiger oxidation (Sect. 19.11): A reaction in which a ketone is treated with a peroxy acid and is converted into an ester via the insertion of an oxygen atom.

base peak (Sect. 14.8): In mass spectrometry, the tallest peak in the spectrum, which is assigned a relative value of 100%.

Beer-Lambert law (Sect. 16.11): In UV-Vis spectroscopy, an equation describing the relationship between molar absorptivity (ε), absorbance (A), concentration (C), and path length (l):

$$\varepsilon = \frac{A}{(C \times l)}$$

bending (Sect. 14.2): In IR spectroscopy, a type of vibration that generally produces a signal in the fingerprint region of an IR spectrum.

bent (Sect. 1.11): A geometric arrangement for three atoms connected to each other (such as H—O—H) in a nonlinear fashion.

benzylic position (Sect. 17.6): A carbon atom that is immediately adjacent to a benzene ring.

benzyne (Sect. 18.14): A high-energy intermediate formed during the elimination-addition reaction that occurs between chlorobenzene and either NaOH (at high temperature) or $NaNH_2$.

beta elimination (Sect. 7.5): An elimination reaction in which a proton from the beta (β) position is removed together with the leaving group, thereby forming a double bond.

beta (β) anomer (Sect. 24.5): The cyclic hemiacetal of an aldose, in which the hydroxyl group at the anomeric position is *cis* to the CH_2OH group.

beta (β) pleated sheet (Sect. 25.7): For proteins, a feature of secondary structure that forms when two or more protein chains line up side by side.

beta (β) position (Sect. 7.2): The position immediately adjacent to an alpha (α) position.

bicycloalkane (Sect. 4.2): An alkane with two rings that are connected to one another. Converting this type of compound into an acyclic compound requires breaking two C—C bonds.

bimolecular (Sect. 7.3 and 7.5): For mechanisms, a step that involves two chemical entities.

biodegradable polymers (Sect. 27.8): Polymers that can be broken down by enzymes produced by soil microorganisms.

Birch reduction (Sect. 17.7): A reaction in which benzene is reduced to give 1,4-cyclohexadiene.

block copolymer (Sect. 27.3): A copolymer in which the different homopolymer subunits are connected together in one chain.

blocking group (Sect. 18.11): A group that can be readily installed and uninstalled. Used for regiochemical control during synthesis.

boat conformation (Sect. 4.10): A conformation of cyclohexane in which all bond angles are fairly close to 109.5° and many hydrogen atoms are eclipsing each other.

bond cleavage (Sect. 11.3): The breaking of a bond, either homolytically or heterolytically.

bond dissociation energy (Sect. 6.1): The energy required to achieve homolytic bond cleavage (generating radicals).

bonding MO (Sect. 1.9): A low-energy molecular orbital resulting from the constructive interference between atomic orbitals.

bond-line structures (Sect. 1.6): The most common drawing style employed by organic chemists. All carbon atoms and most hydrogen atoms are implied but not explicitly drawn in a bond-line structure.

branched polymer (Sect. 27.6): A polymer that contains a large number of branches connected to the main chain of the polymer.

Bredt's rule (Sect. 7.6): A rule that states that it is not possible for a bridgehead carbon of a bicyclic system to possess a carbon-carbon double bond if it involves a *trans* π bond being incorporated in a ring comprised of fewer than eight atoms.

bridgeheads (Sect. 4.2): In a bicyclic system, the carbon atoms where the rings are fused together.

broadband decoupling (Sect. 15.11): In ^{13}C NMR spectroscopy, a technique in which all ^{13}C—^{1}H splitting is suppressed with the use of two rf transmitters.

bromohydrin (Sect. 8.10): A compound containing a Br group and a hydroxyl group (OH) on adjacent carbon atoms.

bromonium ion (Sect. 8.10): A positively charged, bridged intermediate formed during the addition reaction that occurs when an alkene is treated with molecular bromine (Br_2).

Brønsted-Lowry acid (Sect. 3.1): A compound that can serve as a proton donor.

Brønsted-Lowry base (Sect. 3.1): A compound that can serve as a proton acceptor.

C

carbinolamine (Sect. 19.6): A compound containing a hydroxyl group (OH) and a nitrogen atom, both of which are connected to the same carbon atom.

carbocation (Sect. 6.7): An intermediate containing a positively charged carbon atom.

carbohydrates (Sect. 24.1): Polyhydroxy aldehydes or ketones with the molecular formula $C_xH_{2x}O_x$.

carbonyl group (Sect. 12.4): A C═O bond.

carboxylic acid derivative (Sect. 20.6): A compound that is similar in structure to a carboxylic acid (RCOOH) but the OH group of the carboxylic acid has been replaced with a different group, Z, where Z is a heteroatom such as Cl, O, N, etc. Nitriles (R—C≡N) are also considered to be carboxylic acid derivatives because they have the same oxidation state as carboxylic acids.

catalyst (Sect. 6.5): A compound that can speed up the rate of a reaction without itself being consumed by the reaction.

catalytic hydrogenation (Sect. 8.9): A reaction that involves the addition of molecular hydrogen (H_2) across a double bond in the presence of a metal catalyst.

cation (Sect. 3.9): A structure that bears a positive charge.

cellular respiration (Sect. 12.12): A process by which molecular oxygen is used to convert food into CO_2, water, and energy.

cephalins (Sect. 26.5): Phosphoglycerides that contain ethanolamine.

chain-growth polymer (Sect. 27.5): A polymer that is formed under conditions in which the monomers do not react directly with each other, but rather, each monomer is added to the growing chain, one at a time.

chain reaction (Sect. 10.3): A reaction (generally involving radicals) in which one chemical entity can ultimately cause a chemical transformation for thousands of molecules.

chair conformation (Sect. 4.10): The lowest energy conformation for cyclohexane, in which all bond angles are fairly close to 109.5° and all hydrogen atoms are staggered.

chemically equivalent (Sect. 15.4): In NMR spectroscopy, protons (or carbon atoms) that occupy identical electronic environments and produce only one signal.

chemical shift (δ) (Sect. 15.5): In an NMR spectrum, the location of a signal, defined relative to the frequency of absorption of a reference compound, tetramethylsilane (TMS).

chirality center (Sect. 5.2): A tetrahedral carbon atom bearing four different groups.

chiral (Sect. 5.2): An object that is not superimposable on its mirror image.

chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs) (Sect. 10.8): Compounds containing only carbon, chlorine, and fluorine.

chlorohydrin (Sect. 8.10): A compound containing a Cl group and a hydroxyl group (OH) on adjacent carbon atoms.

chromatogram (Sect. 14.14): In gas chromatography, a plot that identifies the retention time of each compound in the mixture.

chromophore (Sect. 16.11): In UV-Vis spectroscopy, the region of the molecule responsible for the absorption (the conjugated π system).

Claisen condensation (Sect. 21.4): A nucleophilic acyl substitution reaction in which the nucleophile is an ester enolate and the electrophile is an ester.

Claisen rearrangement (Sect. 16.10): A [3,3] sigmatropic rearrangement that is observed for allylic vinylic ethers.

Clemmensen reduction (Sect. 18.6): A reaction in which a carbonyl group is completely reduced and replaced with a methylene (CH_2) group.

column chromatography (Sect. 5.10): A technique by which compounds are separated from each other based on a difference in the way they interact with the medium (the adsorbent) through which they are passed.

complex lipid (Sect. 26.1): A lipid that readily undergoes hydrolysis in aqueous acid or base to produce smaller fragments.

condensation polymer (Sect. 27.4): A polymer that is formed via a condensation reaction.

condensed structure (Sect. 2.1): A drawing style in which none of the bonds are drawn. Groups of atoms are clustered together when possible. For example, isopropanol has two CH_3 groups, both of which are connected to the central carbon atom, shown like this: $(CH_3)_2CHOH$.

configuration (Sect. 5.3): The 3D spatial orientation of the groups connected to a chiral center (*R* or *S*) or of the groups in a stereoisiomeric alkene (*E* or *Z*).

conformation (Sect. 4.6): A three-dimensional shape that can be adopted by a compound as a result of rotation about single bonds.

conjugate acid (Sect. 3.1): In an acid-base reaction, the product that results when a base is protonated.

conjugate addition (Sect. 21.6): An addition reaction in which a nucleophile and a proton are added across the two ends of a conjugated π system.

conjugate base (Sect. 3.1): In an acid-base reaction, the product that results when an acid is deprotonated.

conjugated (Sects. 2.10, 14.3): A compound in which two π bonds are separated from each other by exactly one σ bond.

conjugated diene (Sect. 16.1): A compound in which two carbon-carbon π bonds are separated from each other by exactly one σ bond.

conrotatory (Sect. 16.9): In electrocyclic reactions, a type of rotation in which the orbitals being used to form the new σ bond must rotate in the same way.

conservation of orbital symmetry (Sect. 16.8): During a reaction, the requirement that the phases of the frontier MOs must be aligned.

constitutional isomers (Sect. 1.2): Compounds that have the same molecular formula but differ in the way the atoms are connected.

constructive interference (Sect. 1.8): When two waves interact with each other in a way that produces a wave with a larger amplitude.

continuous-wave (CW) spectrometer (Sect. 15.2): An NMR spectrometer that holds the frequency of rf radiation constant and slowly increases the magnetic field strength, while monitoring which field strengths produce a signal.

Cope rearrangement (Sect. 16.10): A [3,3] sigmatropic rearrangement in which all six atoms of the cyclic transition state are carbon atoms.

coplanar (Sect. 7.7): For E2 reactions, this term refers to a conformation of the substrate in which the following four groups occupy the same plane: the leaving group, the beta hydrogen atom, and the alpha and beta carbon atoms.

copolymer (Sect. 27.3): A polymer that is constructed from more than one repeating unit.

coupling constant (Sect. 15.7): When signal splitting occurs in NMR spectroscopy, the distance between the individual peaks of a signal.

coupling (of protons) (Sect. 15.7): A phenomenon observed most commonly for nonequivalent protons connected to adjacent carbon atoms in which the multiplicity of each signal is affected by the other.

coupling (of radicals) (Sect. 10.2): A radical process in which two radicals join together and form a bond.

covalent bond (Sect. 1.3): A bond that results when two atoms share a pair of electrons.

crossed aldol reaction (Sect. 21.3): An aldol reaction that occurs between different partners.

crossed Claisen condensation (Sect. 21.4): A Claisen condensation reaction that occurs between different partners.

crossed-linked polymer (Sect. 27.6): A polymer in which neighboring chains are linked together, for example, by disulfide bonds.

crown ether (Sect. 13.4): A cyclic polyether whose molecular model resembles a crown.

crystallite (Sect. 27.6): A region of a polymer in which the chains are linearly extended and close in proximity to one another, resulting in van der Waals forces that hold the chains close together.

C terminus (Sect. 25.4): For a peptide chain, the end that contains the COOH group.

cumulated diene (Sect. 16.1): A compound containing two adjacent π bonds.

curved arrows (Sect. 2.8): Tools that are used for drawing resonance structures and for showing the flow of electron density during each step of a reaction mechanism.

cyanohydrin (Sect. 19.10): A compound containing a cyano group and a hydroxyl group connected to the same carbon atom.

cycloaddition reactions (Sect. 16.6): Reactions in which two π systems are joined together in a way that forms a ring. In the process, two π bonds are converted into two σ bonds.

cycloalkane (Sect. 4.2): An alkane whose structure contains a ring.

D

dash (Sect. 2.6): In bond-line structures, a group going behind the page.

deactivate (Sect. 18.8): For a substituted aromatic ring, the effect of an electron-withdrawing substituent that decreases the rate of electrophilic aromatic substitution.

debye (D) (Sect. 1.12): A unit of measure for dipole moments, where 1 debye = 10^{-18} esu · cm.

decarboxylation (Sect. 21.5): A reaction involving loss of CO_2, characteristic of compounds containing a carbonyl group that is beta to a COOH group.

degenerate orbitals (Sect. 1.7): Orbitals that have the same energy.

degenerate (Sect. 4.7): Having the same energy.

degree of unsaturation (Sect. 14.16): The absence of two hydrogen atoms associated with a ring or a π bond.

delocalization (Sect. 2.7): The spreading of a charge or lone pair as described by resonance theory.

delocalized lone pair (Sect. 2.13): A lone pair or charge that is participating in resonance.

denaturation (Sect. 25.7): A process during which a protein unfolds under conditions of mild heating.

DEPT ^{13}C NMR (Sect. 15.13): In ^{13}C NMR spectroscopy, a technique that utilizes two rf radiation emitters and provides information regarding the number of protons attached to each carbon atom in a compound.

deshielded (Sect. 15.1): In NMR spectroscopy, protons or carbon atoms whose surrounding electron density is poor.

desulfurization (Sect. 19.8): The conversion of a thioacetal into an alkane in the presence of Raney nickel.

deuterium isotope effect (Sect. 7.12): A measurable difference in rate between two similar reactions that differ only in the presence or absence of deuterium in the starting material.

dextrorotatory (Sect. 5.4): A compound that rotates plane-polarized light in a clockwise direction (+).

diagnostic region (Sect. 14.3): The region of an IR spectrum that contains signals that arise from double bonds, triple bonds, and X—H bonds.

diamagnetic anisotropy (Sect. 15.5): An effect that causes different regions of space to be characterized by different magnetic field strengths.

diamagnetism (Sect. 15.1): The circulation of electron density in the presence of an external magnetic field, which produces a local (induced) magnetic field that opposes the external magnetic field.

diastereomers (Sect. 5.5): Stereoisomers that are not mirror images of one another.

diastereotopic (Sect. 15.4): Nonequivalent protons for which the replacement test produces diastereomers.

diazonium salt (Sect. 22.10): An ionic compound that is formed upon treatment of a primary amine with $NaNO_2$ and HCl.

diazotization (Sect. 22.10): The process of forming a diazonium salt by treating a primary amine with $NaNO_2$ and HCl.

diborane (Sect. 8.8): B_2H_6. A dimeric structure formed when one borane molecule reacts with another.

Dieckmann cyclization (Sect. 21.4): An intramolecular Claisen condensation.

diene (Sect. 16.1): A compound containing two carbon-carbon π bonds.

dienophile (Sect. 16.7): A compound that reacts with a diene in a Diels–Alder reaction.

dihedral angle (Sect. 4.7): The angle by which two groups are separated in a Newman projection.

dihydroxylation (Sect. 8.11): A reaction characterized by the addition of two hydroxyl groups (OH) across an alkene.

diol (Sect. 12.5): A compound containing two hydroxyl groups (OH).

dipole-dipole interactions (Sect. 1.13): The resulting net attraction between two dipoles.

dipole moment (μ) (Sect. 1.12): The amount of partial charge (δ) on either end of a dipole multiplied by the distance of separation (d):

$$\mu = \delta \times d$$

directed aldol addition (Sect. 21.3): A technique for performing a crossed aldol addition that produces one major product.

disaccharide (Sect. 24.7): Carbohydrates comprised of two monosaccharide units joined via a glycosidic linkage between the anomeric carbon of one monosaccharide and a hydroxyl group of the other monosaccharide.

disrotatory (Sect. 16.9): In electrocyclic reactions, a type of rotation in which the orbitals being used to form the new σ bond must rotate in opposite directions (one rotates clockwise while the other rotates counterclockwise).

dissolving metal reduction (Sect. 9.5): A reaction in which an internal alkyne is converted into a *trans* alkene.

disulfide bridge (Sect. 25.4): The group that is formed when two cysteine residues of a polypeptide or protein are joined together.

disulfide (Sect. 13.11): A compound with the structure R—S—S—R.

divalent (Sect. 1.2): An element that forms two bonds, such as oxygen.

doublet (Sect. 15.7): In NMR spectroscopy, a signal that is comprised of two peaks.

downfield (Sect. 15.5): Toward the left on an NMR spectrum.

D sugar (Sect. 24.2): A carbohydrate for which the chiral center farthest from the carbonyl group will have an OH group pointing to the right in the Fischer projection.

E

E (Sect. 5.11): For alkenes, a stereodescriptor that indicates that the two priority groups are on opposite sides of the π bond.

E1 (Sect. 7.9): An elimination reaction for which the rate-determining step involves only one chemical entity. E1 reactions proceed via carbocation intermediates (unlike E2 reactions, which are concerted processes and don't have intermediates).

E1cb mechanism (Sect. 21.3): An elimination reaction in which the leaving group only leaves after deprotonation occurs. This process occurs at the end of an aldol condensation.

E2 (Sect. 7.5): A bimolecular beta-elimination reaction.

eclipsed conformation (Sect. 4.7): A conformation in which groups are eclipsing each other in a Newman projection.

Edman degradation (Sect. 25.5): A method for analyzing the sequence of amino acids in a peptide by removing one amino acid residue at a time and identifying each residue as it is removed.

eicosanoids (Sect. 26.7): A class of lipids that includes leukotrienes, prostaglandins, thromboxanes, and prostacyclins.

elastomers (Sect. 27.7): Polymers that return to their original shape after being stretched.

electrocyclic reaction (Sect. 16.6): A pericyclic process in which a conjugated polyene undergoes cyclization. In the process, one π bond is converted into a σ bond, while the remaining π bonds all change their location. The newly formed σ bond joins the ends of the original π system, thereby creating a ring.

electromagnetic spectrum (Sect. 14.1): The range of all frequencies of electromagnetic radiation, which is arbitrarily divided into several regions, most commonly by wavelength.

electron density (Sect. 1.7): A term associated with the probability of finding an electron in a particular region of space.

electron impact ionization (EI) (Sect. 14.8): In mass spectrometry, an ionization technique that involves bombarding a compound with high-energy electrons.

electrophile (Sect. 6.7): An electron-deficient molecule or ion that is capable of accepting a pair of electrons.

electrophilic aromatic substitution (Sect. 18.1): A substitution reaction in which an aromatic proton is replaced by an electrophile and the aromatic ring is preserved.

electrophoresis (Sect. 25.2): A technique for separating amino acids from each other based on a difference in pI values.

electrospray ionization (ESI) (Sect. 14.15): In mass spectrometry, an ionization technique in which the compound is first dissolved in a solvent and then sprayed via a high-voltage needle into a vacuum chamber. The tiny droplets of solution become charged by the needle, and subsequent evaporation forms gas-phase molecular ions that typically carry one or more charges.

electrostatic potential maps (Sect. 1.5): A three-dimensional, rainbowlike image used to visualize partial charges in a compound.

elimination-addition (Sect. 18.14): A reaction that occurs between chlorobenzene and either NaOH (at high temperature) or $NaNH_2$.

elimination (of radicals) (Sect. 10.2): In radical reaction mechanisms, a step in which a bond forms between the alpha (α) and beta (β) positions. As a result, a single bond at the β position is cleaved, causing the compound to fragment into two pieces.

elimination reaction (Sect. 7.1): A reaction involving the loss of a leaving group and formation of a π bond.

enamine (Sect. 19.6): A compound containing a nitrogen atom directly connected to a carbon-carbon π bond.

enantiomer (Sect. 5.2): A nonsuperimposable mirror image.

enantiomerically pure (Sect. 5.4): A substance that consists of a single enantiomer, and not its mirror image.

enantiomeric excess (Sect. 5.4): For a mixture containing two enantiomers, the difference between the percent concentration of the major enantiomer and the percent concentration of its mirror image.

enantiotopic (Sect. 15.4): Protons that are not interchangeable by rotational symmetry but are interchangeable by reflectional symmetry.

endergonic (Sect. 6.3): Any process with a positive ΔG.

endo (Sect. 16.7): In Diels–Alder reactions that produce bicyclic structures, the positions that are *syn* to the larger bridge.

endothermic (Sect. 6.1): Any process with a positive ΔH (the system receives energy from the surroundings).

energy of activation (E_a) (Sect. 6.5): In an energy diagram, the height of the energy barrier (the hump) between the reactants and the products.

enolate (Sect. 21.1): The resonance-stabilized conjugate base of a ketone, aldehyde, or ester.

enol (Sect. 9.7): A compound containing a hydroxyl group (OH) connected directly to a carbon-carbon double bond.

enthalpy (Sect. 6.1): A measure of the exchange of energy between the system and its surroundings during any process.

entropy (Sect. 6.2): The measure of disorder associated with a system.

enzymes (Sect. 25.8): Important biological molecules that catalyze virtually all cellular processes.

epimer (Sect. 24.6): Diastereomers that differ from each other in the configuration of only one chiral center.

epoxide (Sect. 8.11): A cyclic ether containing a three-membered ring system. Also called an oxirane (also see Sect. 13.7).

equatorial position (Sect. 4.11): For chair conformations of substituted cyclohexanes, a position that is approximately along the equator of the ring.

equilibrium (Sect. 3.3): For a reaction, a state in which there is no longer an observable change in the concentrations of reactants and products.

estrogens (Sect. 26.6): Female sex hormones.

ether (Sect. 13.1): A compound with the structure R—O—R.

excited state (Sect. 16.3): A state that is achieved when a compound absorbs energy.

exergonic (Sect. 6.3): Any process with a negative ΔG.

exo (Sect. 16.7): In Diels–Alder reactions that produce bicyclic structures, the positions that are *anti* to the larger bridge.

exothermic (Sect. 6.1): Any process with a negative ΔH (the system gives energy to the surroundings).

F

fats (Sect. 26.3): Triglycerides that are solids at room temperature.

fatty acids (Sect. 26.3): Long-chain carboxylic acids.

fibers (Sect. 27.7): Strands of a polymer that are generated when the polymer is heated, forced through small holes, and then cooled.

fibrous proteins (Sect. 25.8): Proteins that consist of linear chains that are bundled together.

fingerprint region (Sect. 14.3): The region of an IR spectrum that contains signals resulting from the vibrational excitation of most single bonds (stretching and bending).

first order (Sects. 6.5, 7.8) A reaction that has a rate equation in which the sum of all exponents is one. For nucleophilic substitution reactions with alkyl halides, this term is used to describe a reaction for which the rate is linearly dependent on the concentration of only the alkyl halide.

Fischer esterification (Sect. 20.10): A process in which a carboxylic acid is converted into an ester when treated with an alcohol in the presence of an acid catalyst.

Fischer projections (Sect. 2.6): A drawing style that is often used when dealing with compounds bearing multiple chiral centers, especially for carbohydrates. (See also Sect. 5.7.)

fishhook arrow (Sect. 9.5): A curved arrow with only one barb, indicating the motion of just one electron (also see Sect. 10.1).

flagpole interactions (Sect. 4.10): For cyclohexane, the steric interactions that occur between the flagpole hydrogen atoms in a boat conformation.

formal charge (Sect. 1.4): A charge associated with any atom that does not exhibit the appropriate number of valence electrons.

Fourier-transform NMR (FT-NMR) (Sect. 15.2): In nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) spectroscopy, a technique in which the sample is irradiated with a short pulse that covers the entire range of relevant rf frequencies.

fragmentation (Sect. 14.8): In mass spectrometry, when the molecular ion breaks apart into fragments.

free induction decay (Sect. 15.2): In NMR spectroscopy, a complex signal that is a combination of all of the electrical impulses generated by each type of proton.

Freons (Sect. 10.8): CFCs that were heavily used for a wide variety of commercial applications, including as refrigerants, as propellants, in the production of foam insulation, as fire-fighting materials, and many other useful applications.

frequency (Sect. 14.1): For electromagnetic radiation, the number of wavelengths that pass a particular point in space per unit time.

Friedel–Crafts acylation (Sect. 18.6): An electrophilic aromatic substitution reaction that installs an acyl group on an aromatic ring.

Friedel–Crafts alkylation (Sect. 18.5): An electrophilic aromatic substitution reaction that installs an alkyl group on an aromatic ring.

frontier orbitals (Sect. 16.3): The highest occupied molecular orbital (HOMO) and lowest unoccupied molecular orbital (LUMO) that participate in a reaction.

frontier orbital theory (Sect. 16.3): The analysis of a reaction using MO theory, where only the frontier orbitals (HOMO and LUMO) are considered.

Frost circles (Sect. 17.4): A simple method for drawing the relative energy levels of the MOs for a ring assembled from continuously overlapping *p* orbitals.

functional group (Sect. 2.3): A characteristic group of atoms/bonds that possess a predictable chemical behavior.

furanose (Sect. 24.5): A five-membered cyclic hemiacetal form of a carbohydrate.

G

Gabriel synthesis (Sect. 22.5): A method for preparing primary amines that avoids formation of secondary and tertiary amines.

gas chromatograph–mass spectrometer (Sect. 14.14): A device used for the analysis of a mixture that contains several compounds.

***gauche* conformation** (Sect. 4.8): A conformation that exhibits a *gauche* interaction.

***gauche* interaction** (Sect. 4.8): The steric interaction that results when two groups in a Newman projection are separated by a dihedral angle of 60°.

geminal (Sect. 9.4): Two groups connected to the same carbon atom. For example, a geminal dihalide is a compound with two halogens connected to the same carbon atom.

Gibbs free energy (G) (Sect. 6.3): The ultimate arbiter of the spontaneity of a reaction, where $\Delta G = \Delta H - T\Delta S$.

Gilman reagent (Sect. 20.8): A lithium dialkyl cuprate (R_2CuLi).

glass transition temperature (T_g) (Sect. 27.6): The temperature at which noncrystalline polymers become very soft.

globular proteins (Sect. 25.8): Proteins that consist of chains that are coiled into compact shapes.

glycoside (Sect. 24.6): An acetal that is obtained by treating the cyclic hemiacetal form of a monosaccharide with an alcohol under acid-catalyzed conditions.

graft copolymer (Sect. 27.3): A polymer that contains sections of one homopolymer that have been grafted onto a chain of the other homopolymer.

Grignard reagent (Sect. 12.6): A carbanion with the structure RMgX.

H

haloalkane (Sect. 7.2): A compound in which a halogen (such as Cl, Br, or I) is connected to an sp^3 hybridized carbon atom.

haloform reaction (Sect. 21.2): A reaction in which a methyl ketone is converted into a carboxylic acid upon treatment with excess base and excess halogen, followed by aqueous acid.

halogen abstraction (Sect. 10.2): In radical reactions, a type of arrow-pushing pattern in which a halogen atom is abstracted by a radical, generating a new radical.

halogenation (Sect. 8.10): A reaction that involves the addition of X_2 (either Br_2 or Cl_2) across an alkene.

halohydrin formation (Sect. 8.10): A reaction which involves the addition of a halogen and a hydroxyl group (OH) across an alkene.

Hammond postulate (Sect. 6.6): In an exothermic process the transition state is closer in energy to the reactants than to the products, and therefore the structure of the transition state more closely resembles the reactants. In contrast, the transition state in an endothermic process is closer in energy to the products, and therefore the transition state more closely resembles the products.

Haworth projection (Sect. 2.6): For substituted cycloalkanes, a drawing style used to clearly identify which groups are above the ring and which groups are below the ring. (See also Sect. 4.14.)

heat of combustion (Sect. 4.4): The heat given off during a reaction in which an alkane reacts with oxygen to produce CO_2 and water.

heat of reaction (Sect. 6.1): The heat given off during a reaction.

Hell–Volhard–Zelinsky reaction (Sect. 21.2): A reaction in which a carboxylic acid undergoes α-halogenation when treated with bromine in the presence of PBr_3.

hemiacetal (Sect. 19.5): A compound containing a hydroxyl group (OH) and an alkoxy group (OR) connected to the same carbon atom.

Henderson–Hasselbalch equation (Sect. 20.3): An equation that is often employed to calculate the pH of buffered solutions:

$$\text{pH} = \text{p}K_a + \log \frac{[\text{conjugated base}]}{[\text{acid}]}$$

heterocycle (Sect. 17.5): A cyclic compound containing at least one heteroatom (such as S, N, or O) in the ring.

heterogeneous catalyst (Sect. 8.9): A catalyst that does not dissolve in the reaction medium.

heterolytic bond cleavage (Sect. 6.1): Bond breaking that results in the formation of ions.

high-resolution mass spectrometry (Sect. 14.13): A technique that involves the use of a detector that can measure *m/z* values to four decimal places. This technique allows for the determination of the molecular formula of an unknown compound.

Hofmann elimination (Sect. 22.9): A reaction in which an amino group is treated with excess methyl iodide, thereby converting it into an excellent leaving group, followed by treatment with a strong base to give an E2 reaction that yields an alkene.

Hofmann product (Sect. 7.7): The less substituted product (alkene) of an elimination reaction.

homogeneous catalyst (Sect. 8.9): A catalyst that dissolves in the reaction medium.

homolytic bond cleavage (Sects. 6.1, 10.2, and 11.2): Bond breaking that results in the formation of uncharged species called radicals.

homopolymer (Sect. 27.3): A polymer constructed from a single type of monomer.

HOMO (Sect. 1.9): The highest occupied molecular orbital.

homotopic (Sect. 15.4): Protons that are interchangeable by rotational symmetry.

Hückel's rule (Sect. 17.4): The requirement for an odd number of π electron pairs in order for a compound to be aromatic.

Hund's rule (Sect. 1.7): When considering electrons in atomic orbitals, a rule that states that one electron is placed in each degenerate orbital first, before electrons are paired up.

hydrate (Sect. 19.5): A compound containing two hydroxyl groups (OH) connected to the same carbon atom.

hydration (Sect. 8.6): A reaction in which a proton and a hydroxyl group (OH) are added across a π bond.

hydrazone (Sect. 19.6): A compound with the structure $R_2C{=}N{-}NH_2$.

hydride shift (Sect. 6.8): A type of carbocation rearrangement that involves the migration of a hydride ion (H^-).

hydroboration-oxidation (Sect. 8.8): A two-step process that achieves an *anti*-Markovnikov addition of a proton and a hydroxyl group (OH) across an alkene.

hydrocracking (Sect. 10.12): A process performed in the presence of hydrogen gas by which large alkanes in petroleum are converted into smaller alkanes that are more suitable for use as gasoline.

hydrofluoroalkanes (HFAs) (Sect. 10.8): Compounds that contain only carbon, fluorine, and hydrogen (no chlorine).

hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs) (Sect. 10.8): Compounds that contain only carbon, fluorine, and hydrogen (no chlorine).

hydrogen abstraction (Sect. 10.2): In radical reactions, a type of arrow-pushing pattern in which a hydrogen atom is abstracted by a radical, generating a new radical.

hydrogen bonding (Sect. 1.13): A special type of dipole-dipole interaction that occurs between an electronegative atom and a hydrogen atom that is connected to an electronegative atom.

hydrogen deficiency index (HDI) (Sect. 14.16): A measure of the number of degrees of unsaturation in a compound.

hydrohalogenation (Sect. 8.5): A reaction that involves the addition of H and X (either Br or Cl) across an alkene.

hydrolysis (Sect. 19.7): A reaction in which bonds are cleaved by treatment with water.

hydroperoxide (Sect. 10.9): A compound with the structure ROOH.

hydrophilic (Sect. 1.14): A polar group that has favorable interactions with water.

hydrophobic (Sect. 1.14): A nonpolar group that does not have favorable interactions with water.

hydroxyl group (Sect. 12.1): An OH group.

hyperconjugation (Sect. 6.8): An effect that explains why alkyl groups stabilize a neighboring C^+.

I

imidazole (Sect. 22.12): A compound containing a five-membered ring that is similar to pyrrole but has one extra nitrogen atom at the 3 position.

imine (Sect. 19.6): A compound containing a C═N bond.

induction (Sect. 1.5): The withdrawal of electron density that occurs when a bond is shared by two atoms of differing electronegativity.

initiation (Sect. 10.2): In radical reaction mechanisms, a step in which radicals are created.

inorganic (Sect. 1.1): Compounds lacking carbon atoms.

integration (Sect. 15.6): In ^{1}H NMR spectroscopy, the area under a signal indicates the number of protons giving rise to the signal.

intermediate (Sect. 6.6): A structure corresponding to a local minimum (valley) in an energy diagram.

intermolecular forces (Sect. 1.13): The attractive forces between molecules.

internal alkyne (Sect. 9.2): A compound with the structure R—C≡C—R, where each R group is not a hydrogen atom.

inversion of configuration (Sect. 7.3): During a reaction, when the configuration of a chiral center is changed.

ionic bond (Sect. 1.5): A bond that results from the force of attraction between two oppositely charged ions.

ionic reaction (Sect. 6.7): A reaction that involves the participation of ions as reactants, intermediates, or products.

isoelectric point (pI) (Sect. 25.2): For an amino acid, the specific pH at which the concentration of the zwitterionic form reaches its maximum value.

isolated diene (Sect. 16.1): A compound containing two carbon-carbon π bonds that are separated by two or more σ bonds.

isoprene (Sect. 26.8): A structural unit, comprised of five-carbon atoms, commonly found in terpenes.

isotactic (Sect. 27.6): A polymer in which the repeating units contain chiral centers that all have the same configuration.

IUPAC (Sect. 4.2): The International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry. An organization that sets the rules for nomenclature (naming compounds).

J

***J* value** (Sect. 15.7): When signal splitting occurs in ^{1}H NMR spectroscopy, the distance (in hertz) between the individual peaks of a signal.

K

***K*$_a$** (Sect. 3.3): A measure of the strength of an acid:

$$K_a = K_{eq}[H_2O] = \frac{[H_3O^+][A^-]}{[HA]}$$

***K*$_{eq}$** (Sect. 3.3): A term that describes the position of equilibrium for a reaction:

$$K_{eq} = \frac{[H_3O^+][A^-]}{[HA][H_2O]}$$

keto-enol tautomerization (Sect. 9.7): The equilibrium that is established between an enol and a ketone in either acid-catalyzed or base-catalyzed conditions.

ketose (Sect. 24.2): A carbohydrate that contains a ketone group.

Kiliani–Fischer synthesis (Sect. 24.6): A process by which the chain of a carbohydrate is lengthened by one carbon atom.

kinetic control (Sect. 16.5): A reaction for which the product distribution is determined by the relative rates at which the products are formed.

kinetic isotope effect (Sect. 7.12): A measurable difference in rate between two similar reactions that differ only in the presence or absence of a particular isotope (such as deuterium) in the starting material.

kinetics (Sect. 6.5): A term that refers to the rate of a reaction.

L

labile (Sect. 15.7): Protons that are exchanged at a rapid rate.

lactone (Sect. 19.11): A cyclic ester.

lambda max (λ_{max}) (Sect. 16.11): In UV-Vis spectroscopy, the wavelength of maximum absorption.

L amino acids (Sect. 25.2): Amino acids with Fischer projections that resemble the Fischer projections of L sugars.

leaving group (Sect. 7.1): A group capable of separating from a compound.

lecithins (Sect. 26.5): Phosphoglycerides that contain choline.

leveling effect (Sect. 3.7): An effect that prevents the use of bases stronger than the conjugate base of the solvent employed.

levorotatory (Sect. 5.4): A compound that rotates plane-polarized light in a counterclockwise direction (−).

Lewis acid (Sect. 3.10): A compound capable of functioning as an electron-pair acceptor.

Lewis base (Sect. 3.10): A compound capable of functioning as an electron-pair donor.

Lewis structures (Sect. 1.3): A drawing style in which the electrons take center stage.

linear geometry (Sect. 1.11): A geometric arrangement for three atoms connected to each other (such as H—Be—H) with a bond angle of 180 degrees.

linear polymer (Sect. 27.6): A polymer that has only a minimal amount of branching or no branching at all.

lipid bilayer (Sect. 26.5): The main fabric of cell membranes, assembled primarily from phosphoglycerides.

lipid (Sect. 26.1): A naturally occuring compound that can be extracted from cells using nonpolar organic solvents.

lithium dialkyl cuprate (Sect. 20.8): A nucleophilic compound with the general structure R_2CuLi.

living polymer (Sect. 27.4): A polymer that is formed via anionic polymerization.

localized lone pair (Sect. 2.13): A lone pair that is not participating in resonance.

locant (Sect. 4.2): In nomenclature, a number used to identify the location of a substituent.

London dispersion forces (Sect. 1.13): Attractive forces between transient dipole moments, observed in alkanes.

lone pair (Sect. 1.3): A pair of unshared, or nonbonding, electrons.

loss of a leaving group (Sect. 6.8): One of the four arrow-pushing patterns for ionic reactions.

L sugar (Sect. 24.2): A carbohydrate for which the chiral center farthest from the carbonyl group will have an OH group pointing to the left in the Fischer projection.

LUMO (Sect. 1.9): The lowest unoccupied molecular orbital.

M

magnetic moment (Sect. 15.1): A magnetic field associated with a nucleus that exhibits nuclear spin.

malonic ester synthesis (Sect. 21.5): A synthetic technique that enables the transformation of a halide into a carboxylic acid with the introduction of two new carbon atoms.

Markovnikov addition (Sect. 8.5): In addition reactions, the observation that the hydrogen atom is generally placed at the vinylic position already bearing the larger number of hydrogen atoms.

mass spectrometer (Sect. 14.8): A device in which a compound is first vaporized and converted into ions, which are then separated and detected.

mass spectrometry (Sect. 14.8): The study of the interaction between matter and an energy source other than electromagnetic radiation. Mass spectrometry is used primarily to determine the molecular weight and molecular formula of a compound.

mass spectrum (Sect. 14.8): In mass spectrometry, a plot that shows the relative abundance of each cation that was detected.

mass-to-charge ratio (*m/z*) (Sect. 14.8): The determining factor by which ions are separated from each other in mass spectrometry.

Meisenheimer complex (Sect. 18.13): The resonance-stabilized intermediate of a nucleophilic aromatic substitution reaction.

melt transition temperature (T_m) (Sect. 27.6): The temperature at which the noncrystalline regions of a polymer become amorphous.

mercapto group (Sect. 13.11): An SH group.

mercurinium ion (Sect. 8.7): The intermediate formed during oxymercuration.

Merrifield synthesis (Sect. 25.6): A method for building a peptide from protected building blocks.

***meso* compound** (Sect. 5.6): A compound that possesses chiral centers and an internal plane of symmetry.

***meta* director** (Sect. 18.8): An electron-withdrawing group that directs the regiochemistry of an electrophilic aromatic substitution reaction such that the incoming electrophile is installed at the *meta* position.

meta (Sect. 17.2): On an aromatic ring, the C3 position.

methine group (Sect. 15.5): A CH group.

methylene group (Sect. 15.5): A CH_2 group.

methyl shift (Sect. 6.8): A type of carbocation rearrangement in which a methyl group migrates.

micelle (Sect. 1.14): A group of molecules arranged in a sphere such that the surface of the sphere is comprised of polar groups, rendering the micelle water soluble.

Michael acceptor (Sect. 21.6): The electrophile in a Michael reaction.

Michael donor (Sect. 21.6): The nucleophile in a Michael reaction.

Michael reaction (Sect. 21.6): A reaction in which a nucleophile attacks a conjugated π system, resulting in a 1,4-addition.

migratory aptitude (Sect. 19.11): In a Baeyer–Villiger oxidation, the migration rates of different groups, which determine the regiochemical outcome of the reaction.

miscible (Sect. 12.1): Two liquids that can be mixed with each other in any proportion.

mixed aldol reaction (Sect. 21.3): An aldol reaction that occurs between different partners.

moderate activators (Sect. 18.10): Groups that moderately activate an aromatic ring toward an electrophilic aromatic substitution reaction.

moderate deactivators (Sect. 18.10): Groups that moderately deactivate an aromatic ring toward an electrophilic aromatic substitution reaction.

molar absorptivity (Sect. 16.11): Determines the amount of UV light absorbed at the λ_{max} of a compound, as described by Beer's law.

molecular dipole moment (Sect. 1.12): The vector sum of the individual dipole moments in a compound.

molecular ion (Sect. 14.8): In mass spectrometry, the ion that is generated when the compound is ionized.

molecular orbital (MO) theory (Sect. 1.9): A description of bonding in terms of molecular orbitals, which are orbitals associated with an entire molecule rather than an individual atom.

molecular orbitals (Sect. 1.9): Orbitals associated with an entire molecule rather than an individual atom.

monosaccharides (Sect. 24.2): Simple sugars that generally contain multiple chiral centers.

monovalent (Sect. 1.2): An element that is capable of forming one bond (such as hydrogen).

multiplet (Sect. 15.7): In ^{1}H NMR spectroscopy, a signal whose multiplicity requires a more detailed analysis.

multiplicity (Sect. 15.7): In ^{1}H NMR spectroscopy, the number of peaks in a signal.

mutarotation (Sect. 24.5): A term used to describe the fact that α and β anomers of carbohydrates can equilibrate via the open-chain form.

N

***n* + 1 rule** (Sect. 15.7): In NMR spectroscopy, if n is the number of neighboring protons, then the multiplicity will be $n + 1$.

***N*-bromosuccinimide** (Sect. 10.7): A reagent used for allylic bromination to avoid a competing reaction in which bromine adds across the π bond.

Newman projection (Sect. 4.6): A drawing style that is designed to show the conformation of a molecule.

***N*-glycoside** (Sect. 24.10): The product obtained when a monosaccharide is treated with an amine in the presence of an acid catalyst.

nitration (Sect. 18.4): An electrophilic aromatic substitution reaction that involves the installation of a nitro group (NO_2) on an aromatic ring.

nitrogen rule (Sect. 14.9): In mass spectrometry, an odd molecular weight indicates an odd number of nitrogen atoms in the compound, while an even molecular weight indicates either an even number of nitrogen atoms or the absence of nitrogen.

nitronium ion (Sect. 18.4): The NO_2^+ ion, which is present in a mixture of nitric acid and sulfuric acid.

nitrosonium ion (Sect. 22.10): The NO^+ ion, which is formed when $NaNO_2$ is treated with HCl.

nitrous acid (Sect. 22.10): A compound with the molecular formula HONO.

***N*-nitrosamine** (Sect. 22.10): A compound with the structure $R_2N{-}N{=}O$.

node (Sect. 1.7): In atomic and molecular orbitals, a location where the value of ψ is zero.

nomenclature (Sect. 4.1): A system for naming organic compounds.

nonaromatic (Sect. 17.5): A compound that lacks a ring with a continuous system of overlapping *p* orbitals.

norbornane (Sect. 4.15): The common name for bicyclo[2.2.1]heptane.

N terminus (Sect. 25.4): For a peptide chain, the end that contains the amino group.

nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) (Sect. 15.1): A form of spectroscopy that involves the study of the interaction between electromagnetic radiation and the nuclei of atoms.

nucleophile (Sect. 6.7): An electron-rich molecule or ion that is capable of donating a pair of electrons.

nucleophilic acyl substitution (Sect. 20.7): A reaction in which a nucleophile attacks a carboxylic acid derivative.

nucleophilic aromatic substitution (Sect. 18.13): A substitution reaction in which an aromatic ring is attacked by a nucleophile, which replaces a leaving group.

nucleophilic attack (Sect. 6.8): One of the four arrow-pushing patterns for ionic reactions.

nucleophilicity (Sect. 7.4) A term referring to the strength of a nucleophile, measured by the rate at which the nucleophile will attack a suitable electrophile.

nucleosides (Sect. 24.10): The product formed when either D-ribose or 2-deoxy-D-ribose is coupled with certain nitrogen heterocycles (called bases).

nucleotides (Sect. 24.10): The product formed when a nucleoside is coupled to a phosphate group.

O

observed rotation (Sect. 5.4): The extent to which plane-polarized light is rotated by a solution of a chiral compound.

octet rule (Sect. 1.3): The observation that second-row elements (C, N, O, and F) will generally form the necessary number of bonds so as to achieve a full valence shell (eight electrons).

off-resonance decoupling (Sect. 15.11): In NMR spectroscopy, a technique in which only the one-bond couplings are observed. CH_3 groups appear as quartets, CH_2 groups appear as triplets, CH groups appear as doublets, and quaternary carbon atoms appear as singlets.

oils (Sect. 26.3): Triglycerides that are liquids at room temperature.

olefin metathesis (Sect. 23.9): A reaction between two alkenes, resulting in the redistribution (changing of position) of carbon-carbon double bonds.

oligomers (Sect. 27.5): During the polymerization process, compounds constructed from just a few monomers.

optically active (Sect. 5.4): A compound that rotates plane-polarized light.

optically inactive (Sect. 5.4): A compound that does not rotate plane-polarized light.

optically pure (Sect. 5.4): A solution containing just one enantiomer, but not its mirror image.

organic (Sect. 1.1): Compounds containing carbon atoms.

organohalide (Sect. 7.2): An organic compound containing at least one halogen.

organometallic compound (Sect 23.1): A compound containing a bond between a carbon atom and a metal (C—M).

ortho (Sect. 17.2): On an aromatic ring, the C2 position.

***ortho-para* director** (Sect. 18.7): A group that directs the regiochemistry of an electrophilic aromatic substitution reaction such that the incoming electrophile is installed at the *ortho* or *para* positions.

oxidation (Sect. 12.4): A reaction in which a compound undergoes an increase in oxidation state.

oxidation state (Sect. 12.4): A method of electron bookkeeping in which all bonds are treated as if they were purely ionic.

oxime (Sect. 19.6): A compound with the structure $R_2C{=}N{-}OH$.

oxirane (Sect. 13.7): A cyclic ether containing a three-membered ring system. Also called an epoxide.

oxonium ion (Sect. 8.6): An intermediate with a positively charged oxygen atom.

oxymercuration-demercuration (Sect. 8.7): A two-step process for the Markovnikov addition of water across an alkene. With this process, carbocation rearrangements do not occur.

ozonolysis (Sect. 8.13): A reaction in which the C=C bond of an alkene is cleaved to form two C=O bonds.

P

para (Sect. 17.2): On an aromatic ring, the C4 position.

parent ion (Sect. 14.8): In mass spectrometry, the ion that is generated when the compound is ionized.

partially condensed structures (Sect. 2.1): A drawing style in which the CH bonds are not drawn explicitly, but other bonds are drawn.

Pauli exclusion principle (Sect. 1.7): The rule that states that an atomic orbital or molecular orbital can accommodate a maximum of two electrons with opposite spin.

peptidases (Sect. 25.5): A variety of enzymes that selectively hydrolyze specific peptide bonds.

peptide (Sect. 25.1): A chain comprised of a small number of amino acid residues.

peptide bond (Sect. 25.1): The amide linkage by which two amino acids are coupled together to form peptides.

pericylic reactions (Sect. 16.6): Reactions that occur via a concerted process and do not involve either ionic or radical intermediates.

periplanar (Sect. 7.7): A conformation in which a hydrogen atom and a leaving group are approximately coplanar.

phenolate (Sect. 12.2): The conjugate base of phenol or a substituted phenol.

phenoxide (Sect. 12.2): The conjugate base of phenol or a substituted phenol.

phenyl group (Sect. 17.2): A C_6H_5 group.

phosphatidic acid (Sect. 26.5): A phosphoric monoester, which is the simplest kind of phosphoglyceride.

phosphoglycerides (Sect. 26.5): Compounds that are very similar in structure to triglycerides, with the main difference being that one of the three fatty acid residues is replaced by a phosphoester group.

phospholipids (Sect. 26.5): Esterlike derivatives of phosphoric acid.

photochemical reaction (Sect. 16.3): A reaction that is performed with photochemical excitation (usually UV light).

photon (Sect. 14.1): When electromagnetic radiation is viewed as a particle, an individual packet of energy.

physiological pH (Sect. 20.3): The pH of blood (approximately 7.3).

pi (π) bond (Sect. 1.10): A bond formed from adjacent, overlapping *p* orbitals.

plane of symmetry (Sect. 5.6): A plane that bisects a compound into two halves that are mirror images of each other.

plane-polarized light (Sect. 5.4): Light for which all photons have the same polarization, generally formed by passing light through a polarizing filter.

plasticizers (Sect. 27.7): Small molecules that are trapped between polymer chains where they function as lubricants, preventing the polymer from being brittle.

polar aprotic solvent (Sect. 7.12): A solvent that is polar, but nevertheless lacks hydrogen atoms connected directly to an electronegative atom.

polar covalent bond (Sect. 1.5): A bond in which the difference in electronegative values of the two atoms is between 0.5 and 1.7.

polarimeter (Sect. 5.4): A device that measures the rotation of plane-polarized light caused by optically active compounds.

polarizability (Sect. 6.7): The ability of an atom or molecule to distribute its electron density unevenly in response to external influences.

polarization (Sect. 5.4): For light, the orientation of the electric field.

polar reaction (Sect. 6.7): A reaction that involves the participation of ions as reactants, intermediates, or products.

polycarbonates (Sect. 27.4): Polymers that are similar in structure to polyesters but with repeating carbonate groups (—O—CO_2—) instead of repeating ester groups (—CO_2—).

polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs) (Sect. 17.5): Compounds containing multiple aromatic rings fused together.

polyether (Sect. 13.4): A compound containing several ether groups.

polynucleotide (Sect. 24.10): A polymer constructed from nucleotides linked together.

polysaccharides (Sect. 24.8): Polymers made up of repeating monosaccharide units linked together by glycoside bonds.

polyurethanes (Sect. 27.5): Polymers made up of repeating urethane groups, also sometimes called carbamate groups (—N—CO_2—).

polyvinyl chloride (PVC) (Sect. 10.11): A polymer formed from the polymerization of vinyl chloride ($H_2C{=}CHCl$).

primary alkyl halide (Sect. 7.2): An alkyl halide in which the alpha (α) position is connected to only one alkyl group.

primary (Sect. 6.8): A term used to indicate that exactly one alkyl group is attached directly to a particular position. For example, a primary carbocation has one alkyl group (not more) attached directly to the electrophilic carbon atom (C^+).

primary structure (Sect. 25.7): For proteins, the sequence of amino acid residues.

progestins (Sect. 26.6): Female sex hormones.

propagation (Sect. 10.2): For radical reactions, the steps whose sum gives the net chemical reaction.

prostaglandins (Sect. 26.7): Lipids that contain 20 carbon atoms and are characterized by a five-membered ring with two side chains.

prosthetic group (Sect. 25.8): A nonprotein unit attached to a protein, such as heme in hemoglobin.

protecting group (Sect. 12.7): A group that is used during synthesis to protect a functional group from the reaction conditions.

proteins (Sect. 25.1): Polypeptide chains comprised of more than 40 or 50 amino acids.

protic solvent (Sect. 7.12): A solvent that contains at least one hydrogen atom connected directly to an electronegative atom.

proton transfer (Sect. 6.8): One of the four arrow-pushing patterns for ionic reactions.

pyranose ring (Sect. 24.5): A six-membered cyclic hemiacetal form of a carbohydrate.

pyrimidine (Sect. 22.12): A compound that is similar in structure to pyridine but contains one extra nitrogen atom at the 3 position.

Q

quantum mechanics (Sect. 1.7): A mathematical description of an electron that incorporates its wavelike properties.

quartet (Sect. 15.7): In NMR spectroscopy, a signal that is comprised of four peaks.

quaternary ammonium salt (Sect. 22.5): An ionic compound containing a positively charged nitrogen atom connected to four alkyl groups.

quaternary structure (Sect. 25.7): The structure that arises when a protein consists of two or more folded polypeptide chains that aggregate to form one protein complex.

quintet (Sect. 15.7): In NMR spectroscopy, a signal that is comprised of five peaks.

R

R (Sect. 5.3): A term used to designate the configuration of a chiral center, determined in the following way: Each of the four groups is assigned a priority, and the molecule is then rotated (if necessary) so that the #4 group is directed behind the page (on a dash). A clockwise sequence for 1-2-3 is designated as *R*.

racemic mixture (Sect. 5.4): A solution containing equal amounts of both enantiomers.

radical (Sect. 6.1): A chemical entity with an unpaired electron.

radical anion (Sect. 9.5): An intermediate that has both a negative charge and an unpaired electron.

radical inhibitor (Sect. 10.3): A compound that prevents a radical chain process from either getting started or continuing.

radical initiator (Sect. 10.3): A compound with a weak bond that undergoes homolytic bond cleavage with great ease, producing radicals that can initiate a radical chain process.

random copolymer (Sect. 27.3): A polymer, comprised of more than one kind of repeating unit, in which there is a random distribution of repeating units.

rate equation (Sect. 6.5): An equation that describes the relationship between the rate of a reaction and the concentration of reactants.

reaction mechanism (Sect. 3.2): A series of intermediates and curved arrows that show how the reaction occurs in terms of the motion of electrons.

rearrangement (Sect. 6.8): One of the four arrow-pushing patterns for ionic reactions.

reducing agent (Sect. 12.4): A compound that reduces another compound and in the process is itself oxidized. Sodium borohydride and lithium aluminum hydride are reducing agents.

reducing sugar (Sect. 24.6): A carbohydrate that is oxidized upon treatment with Tollens' reagent, Fehling's reagent, or Benedict's reagent.

reduction (Sect. 12.4): A reaction in which a compound undergoes a decrease in oxidation state.

reductive amination (Sect. 22.6): The conversion of a ketone or aldehyde into an imine under conditions in which the imine is reduced as soon as it is formed, giving an amine.

regiochemistry (Sect. 7.7): A term describing a consideration that must be taken into account for a reaction in which two or more constitutional isomers can be formed.

regioselective (Sect. 7.7): A reaction that can produce two or more constitutional isomers but nevertheless produces one as the major product.

replacement test (Sect. 15.4): A test for determining the relationship between two protons. The compound is drawn two times, each time replacing one of the protons with deuterium. If the two compounds are identical, the protons are homotopic. If the two compounds are enantiomers, the protons are enantiotopic. If the two compounds are diastereomers, the protons are diastereotopic.

resolution (Sect. 5.10): The separation of enantiomers from a mixture containing both enantiomers.

resolving agents (Sect. 5.10): Compounds that can be used to achieve the resolution of enantiomers.

resonance (Sect. 2.7): A method that chemists use to deal with the inadequacy of bond-line drawings.

resonance hybrid (Sect. 2.7): A term used to describe the character of a chemical entity (molecule, ion, or radical) exhibiting more than one significant resonance structure.

resonance stabilization (Sect. 2.7): The stabilization associated with the delocalization of electrons via resonance.

resonance structures (Sect. 2.7): A series of structures that are melded together (conceptually) to circumvent the inadequacies of bond-line drawings.

retention of configuration (Sect. 7.8): During a reaction, when the configuration of a chiral center remains unchanged.

retention time (Sect. 14.14): The amount of time required for a compound to exit from a gas chromatograph.

retro-aldol reaction (Sect. 21.3): The reverse of an aldol reaction. A β-hydroxyketone or aldehyde is converted into two ketones or aldehydes.

retro Diels–Alder reaction (Sect. 16.7): The reverse of a Diels–Alder reaction, achieved at high temperature. A cyclohexene derivative is converted into a diene and a dienophile.

ring-closing metathesis (Sect. 23.9): In dilute solutions, a reaction in which a suitable diene will undergo alkene metathesis to form a ring.

ring flip (Sect. 4.12): A conformational change in which one chair conformation is converted into the other.

ring-opening metathesis (Sect. 23.9): Under conditions that favor alkene metathesis, a reaction in which a cycloalkene will react with ethylene to give an acyclic diene.

Robinson annulation (Sect. 21.6): The combination of a Michael addition followed by an aldol condensation to form a ring.

S

S (Sect. 5.3): A term used to designate the configuration of a chiral center, determined in the following way: Each of the four groups is assigned a priority, and the molecule is then rotated (if necessary) so that the #4 group is directed behind the page (on a dash). A counterclockwise sequence for 1-2-3 is designated as *S*.

***S*-adenosylmethionine (SAM)** (Sect. 7.4): A biological methylating agent.

Sandmeyer reactions (Sect. 22.11): Reactions that utilize copper salts (CuX) and enable the installation of a halogen or a cyano group on an aromatic ring.

saponification (Sect. 20.11): The base-catalyzed hydrolysis of an ester. This method is used to make soap.

saturated (Sect. 14.16): A compound that contains no π bonds.

saturated hydrocarbon (Sect. 4.1): A hydrocarbon that contains no π bonds.

Schiemann reaction (Sect. 22.11): The conversion of an aryl diazonium salt into fluorobenzene upon treatment with fluoroboric acid (HBF_4).

s-cis (Sect. 16.2): A conformation of a conjugated diene in which the disposition of the two π bonds with regard to the connecting single bond is *cis-like* (a dihedral angle of 0°).

secondary alkyl halide (Sect. 7.2): An alkyl halide in which the alpha (α) position is connected to exactly two alkyl groups.

secondary (Sect. 6.8): A term used to indicate that exactly two alkyl groups are attached directly to a particular position. For example, a secondary carbocation has two alkyl groups attached directly to the electrophilic carbon atom (C^+).

secondary structure (Sect. 25.7): The three-dimensional conformations of localized regions of a protein, including helices and β-pleated sheets.

second order (Sects. 6.5, 7.4): A reaction that has a rate equation in which the sum of all exponents is two.

Sharpless asymmetric epoxidation (Sect. 13.9): A reaction that converts an alkene into an epoxide via a stereospecific pathway.

shielded (Sect. 15.1): In NMR spectroscopy, protons or carbon atoms whose surrounding electron density is rich.

sigma (σ) bond (Sect. 1.8): A bond that is characterized by circular symmetry with respect to the bond axis.

sigma complex (Sect. 18.2): The positively charged, resonance-stabilized intermediate of an electrophilic aromatic substitution reaction.

sigmatropic rearrangements (Sect. 16.6): A pericyclic reaction in which one σ bond is formed at the expense of another.

simple lipid (Sect. 26.1): A lipid that does not readily undergo hydrolysis in aqueous acid or base to produce smaller fragments.

singlet (Sect. 15.7): In NMR spectroscopy, a signal that is comprised of only one peak.

S_N1 (Sect. 7.8): A unimolecular nucleophilic substitution reaction.

S_N2 (Sect. 7.3): A bimolecular nucleophilic substitution reaction.

sodium cyanoborohydride (Sect. 22.6): A selective reducing agent ($NaBH_3CN$) that can be used for reductive amination.

soluble (Sect. 12.1): A term used to indicate that a certain amount of a compound will dissolve in a specified volume of a liquid at room temperature.

solvent extraction (Sect. 22.3): A process by which one or more compounds are removed from a mixture of organic compounds, based on a difference in solubility and/or acid-base properties.

***sp*-hybridized** (Sect. 1.10): Atomic orbitals that are achieved by mathematically averaging one *s* orbital with only one *p* orbital to form two hybridized atomic orbitals.

sp^2-hybridized orbitals (Sect. 1.10): Atomic orbitals that are achieved by mathematically averaging one *s* orbital with two *p* orbitals to form three hybridized atomic orbitals.

sp^3-hybridized orbitals (Sect. 1.10): Atomic orbitals that are achieved by mathematically averaging one *s* orbital with three *p* orbitals to form four hybridized atomic orbitals.

specific rotation (Sect. 5.4): For a chiral compound that is subjected to plane-polarized light, the observed rotation when a standard concentration (1 g/mL) and a standard pathlength (1 dm) are used.

spectroscopy (Sect. 14.1): The study of the interaction between matter and electromagnetic radiation.

spin-spin splitting (Sect. 15.7): A phenomenon observed most commonly for nonequivalent protons connected to adjacent carbon atoms, in which the multiplicity of each signal is affected by the other.

spontaneous (Sect. 6.2): A reaction with a negative ΔG, which means that products are favored at equilibrium.

staggered conformation (Sect. 4.7): A conformation in which nearby groups in a Newman projection have a dihedral angle of 60°.

standard atomic weight (Sect. 14.13): The weighted averages for each element, which takes into account isotopic abundance.

step-growth polymers (Sect. 27.5): Polymers that are formed under conditions in which the individual monomers react with each other to form oligomers, which are then joined together to form polymers.

stereoisomers (Sect. 5.1): Compounds that have the same molecular formula and have the same connectivity of atoms (constitution), but differ in their spatial arrangement of atoms.

stereospecific (Sect. 7.3): A reaction in which the configuration of the product is dependent on the configuration of the starting material.

sterically hindered (Sect. 3.8): A compound or region of a compound that is very bulky.

steric number (Sect. 1.11): The total of electron pairs (single bonds + lone pairs) for an atom in a compound.

steroids (Sect. 26.6): Lipids that are based on a tetracyclic ring system involving three six-membered rings and one five-membered ring. Cholesterol is an example.

Stork enamine synthesis (Sect. 21.6): A Michael reaction in which an enamine functions as a nucleophile.

s-trans (Sect. 16.2): A conformation of a conjugated diene in which the disposition of the two π bonds with regard to the connecting single bond is *trans-like* (a dihedral angle of 180°).

Strecker synthesis (Sect. 25.3): A synthetic technique for preparing racemic α-amino acids from aldehydes.

stretching (Sect. 14.2): In IR spectroscopy, a type of vibration that generally produces a signal in the diagnostic region of an IR spectrum.

strong activators (Sect. 18.10): Groups that strongly activate an aromatic ring toward electrophilic aromatic substitution, thereby significantly enhancing the rate of the reaction.

strong deactivators (Sect. 18.10): Groups that strongy deactivate an aromatic ring toward electrophilic aromatic substitution, thereby significantly decreasing the rate of the reaction.

structural proteins (Sect. 25.8): Fibrous proteins that are used for their structural rigidity. Examples include α-keratins found in hair, nails, skin, feathers, and wool.

substituents (Sect. 4.2): In nomenclature, the groups connected to the parent chain.

substitution reactions (Sect. 7.1): Reactions in which one group is replaced by another group.

substrate (Sect. 7.1): The starting alkyl halide in a nucleophilic substitution or beta elimination reaction.

sulfide (Sect. 13.11): A compound that is similar in structure to an ether, but the oxygen atom has been replaced with a sulfur atom. Also called a thioether.

sulfonation (Sect. 18.3): An electrophilic aromatic substitution reaction in which an SO_3H group is installed on an aromatic ring.

sulfone (Sect. 13.11): A compound that contains a sulfur atom that has double bonds with two oxygen atoms and is flanked on both sides by R groups.

sulfoxide (Sect. 13.11): A compound containing an S═O bond that is flanked on both sides by R groups.

superimposable (Sect. 5.2): Two objects that are identical.

symmetrical ether (Sect. 13.2): An ether (R—O—R) where both R groups are identical.

symmetric stretching (Sect. 14.5): In IR spectroscopy, when two bonds are stretching in phase with each other.

symmetry allowed (Sect. 16.8): A reaction that obeys conservation of orbital symmetry.

symmetry forbidden (Sect. 16.8): A reaction that disobeys conservation of orbital symmetry.

***syn* addition** (Sect. 8.8): An addition reaction in which two groups are added to the same face of a π bond.

***syn*-coplanar** (Sect. 7.7): A conformation in which a hydrogen atom and a leaving group are separated by a dihedral angle of exactly 0°.

syndiotactic (Sect. 27.6): A polymer in which the repeating units contain chiral centers that have alternating configuration.

systematic name (Sect. 4.2): A name that is assigned using the rules of IUPAC nomenclature.

T

tautomers (Sect. 9.7): Constitutional isomers that rapidly interconvert via the migration of a proton.

terminal alkynes (Sect. 9.2): Compounds with the following structure: R—C≡C—H.

termination (Sect. 10.2): In radical reactions, a step in which two radicals are joined to give a compound with no unshared electrons.

termolecular (Sect. 9.6): For mechanisms, a step that involves three chemical entities.

terpenes (Sect. 26.8): A diverse class of naturally occurring compounds that can be thought of as being assembled from isoprene units, each of which contains five carbon atoms.

tertiary alkyl halide (Sect. 7.2): An alkyl halide in which the alpha (α) position is connected to three alkyl groups.

tertiary (Sect. 6.8): A term used to indicate that exactly three alkyl groups are attached directly to a particular position. For example, a tertiary carbocation has three alkyl groups attached directly to the electrophilic carbon atom (C^+).

tertiary structure (Sect. 25.7): The three-dimensional shape of a protein.

tetrahedral intermediate (Sect. 20.7): An intermediate with tetrahedral geometry. This type of intermediate is formed when a nucleophile attacks the carbonyl group of a carboxylic acid derivative.

tetrahedral (Sect. 1.11): The geometry of an atom with four bonds separated from each other by 109.5°.

tetravalent (Sect. 1.2): An element, such as carbon, that forms four bonds.

thermodynamic control (Sect. 16.5): A reaction for which the ratio of products is determined solely by the distribution of energy among the products.

thermodynamics (Sect. 6.4): The study of how energy is distributed under the influence of entropy. For chemists, the thermodynamics of a reaction specifically refers to the study of the relative energy levels of reactants and products.

thermoplastics (Sect. 27.7): Polymers that are hard at room temperature but soft when heated.

thermosetting resins (Sect. 27.7): Highly cross-linked polymers that are generally very hard and insoluble.

thioacetal (Sect. 19.8): A compound that contains two SR groups, both of which are connected to the same carbon atom.

thiolate (Sect. 13.11): The conjugate base of a thiol.

thiols (Sect. 13.11): Compounds containing a mercapto group (SH).

third order (Sect. 6.5): A reaction that has a rate equation in which the sum of all exponents is three.

three-center, two-electron bonds (Sect. 8.8): A bond in which two electrons are associated with three atoms, such as in diborane (B_2H_6).

torsional angle (Sect. 4.7): The angle between two groups in a Newman projection, also called the dihedral angle.

torsional strain (Sect. 4.7): The difference in energy between staggered and eclipsed conformations (for example, in ethane).

transition state (Sect. 6.6): A state through which a reaction passes. On an energy diagram, a transition state corresponds with a local maximum.

transport protein (Sect. 25.8): A protein used to transport molecules or ions from one location to another. Hemoglobin is a classic example of a transport protein, used to transport molecular oxygen from the lungs to all the tissues of the body.

triglyceride (Sect. 26.3): A triester formed from glycerol and three long-chain carboxylic acids.

trigonal planar (Sect. 1.11): A geometry adopted by an atom with a steric number of 3. All three groups lie in one plane and are separated by 120°.

trigonal pyramidal (Sect. 1.11): A geometry adopted by an atom that has one lone pair and a steric number of 4.

triplet (Sect. 15.7): In NMR spectroscopy, a signal that is comprised of three peaks.

trivalent (Sect. 1.2): An element, such as nitrogen, that forms three bonds.

twist boat (Sect. 4.10): A conformation of cyclohexane that is lower in energy than a boat conformation but higher in energy than a chair conformation.

U

unimolecular (Sect. 7.8): For mechanisms, a step that involves only one chemical entity.

unsaturated (Sect. 14.16): A compound containing one or more π bonds.

unsymmetrical ether (Sect. 13.2): An ether (R—O—R) where the two R groups are not identical.

upfield (Sect. 15.5): Toward the right on an NMR spectrum.

V

valence bond theory (Sect. 1.8): A theory that treats a bond as the sharing of electrons that are associated with individual atoms, rather than being associated with the entire molecule.

vibrational excitation (Sect. 14.1): In IR spectroscopy, the energy of a photon is absorbed and temporarily stored as vibrational energy.

vicinal (Sect. 9.4): A term used to describe two identical groups attached to adjacent carbon atoms.

vinylic (Sect. 2.10): The carbon atoms of a carbon-carbon double bond.

vinylic carbocation (Sect. 9.6): A carbocation in which the positive charge resides on a vinylic carbon atom. This type of carbocation is generally very unstable and will not readily form in most cases.

VSEPR theory (Sect. 1.11): Valence shell electron pair repulsion theory, which can be used to predict the geometry around an atom.

W

wave equation (Sect. 1.7) A mathematical equation that describes the energy of an electron that is in the electric field of a proton.

wavefunctions (Sect. 1.7) A series of solutions for a wave equation, where each wavefunction corresponds to an allowed energy level for the electron being described by the wave equation.

wavelength (Sect. 14.1): The distance between adjacent peaks of an oscillating magnetic or electric field.

wavenumber (Sect. 14.2): In IR spectroscopy, the location of each signal is reported in terms of this frequency-related unit.

waxes (Sect. 26.2): High-molecular-weight esters that are constructed from carboxylic acids and alcohols.

weak activators (Sect. 18.10): Groups that weakly activate an aromatic ring toward electrophilic aromatic substitution, thereby enhancing the rate of the reaction.

weak deactivators (Sect. 18.10): Groups that weakly deactivate an aromatic ring toward electrophilic aromatic substitution, thereby decreasing the rate of the reaction.

wedge (Sect. 2.6): In bond-line structures, a group in front of the page.

Williamson ether synthesis (Sect. 13.5): A method for preparing an ether from an alkoxide ion and an alkyl halide (via an S_N2 process).

Wittig reaction (Sect. 19.10): A reaction that converts an aldehyde or ketone into an alkene, with the introduction of one or more carbon atoms.

Wittig reagent (Sect. 19.10): A reagent used to perform a Wittig reaction.

Wohl degradation (Sect. 24.6): A process that involves the removal of a carbon atom from an aldose. The aldehyde group is first converted to a cyanohydrin, followed by loss of HCN in the presence of a base.

Wolff–Kishner reduction (Sect. 19.6): A method for converting a carbonyl group into a methylene group (CH_2) under basic conditions.

Woodward–Fieser rules (Sect. 16.11): Rules for predicting the wavelength of maximum absorption for a compound with extended conjugation.

Y

ylide (Sect. 19.10): A compound with two oppositely charged atoms adjacent to each other.

Z

Z (Sect. 5.11): For alkenes, a stereodescriptor that indicates that the two priority groups are on the same side of the π bond.

Zaitsev product (Sect. 7.7): The more substituted product (alkene) of an elimination reaction.

zwitterion (Sect. 25.2): A net neutral compound that exhibits charge separation. Amino acids exist as zwitterions at physiological pH.

Index

Note: Page numbers followed by *f* and *t* refer to figures and tables, respectively.

A

Absorbance, 772
Absorption spectrum, 641, 641*f*, 642*f*, 772, 772*f*
Abstraction reactions, 460–462, 461*f*, 468
Acesulfame K, 1178
Acetaldehyde, 565
Acetals, 893–899, 895*f*, 908–910, 1168
  see also Hemiacetals
  formation, 894–897
  hydrolysis, 908–911
  as prodrugs, 898
  as protecting groups, 897–898
Acetaminophen, 87, 482, 558, 1034
Acetate ion, 942*f*
Acetic acid
  as carboxylic acid, 939, 941
  from ethanol, 565
  and induction, 109–110
  pK_a, 99
  as protic solvent, 340
  resonance, 107
Acetic anhydride, 964
Acetoacetic ester synthesis, 1024–1027
Acetone
  industrial importance of, 885
  isobutylene vs., 34
  in phenol preparation, 553–554
  pK_a, 99
  as polar aprotic solvent, 340
Acetonitrile, 340
Acetonitrile-d_3, 688
Acetophenone, 814
Acetylation, with acetic anhydride, 964
N-Acetylazole, 993
Acetylcholine, 8, 71
N-Acetylcolchinol, 1150
N-Acetylcysteine (NAC), 482
Acetylene, 348
  acidity, 423–424
  alkylation of, 440–441
  ARIO prioritization scheme, 113–114
  bond length and energy, 25*t*
  conjugate base, 424*f*
  electrostatic potential map, 418, 418*f*
  ethane and ethylene vs., 418–419, 419*t*
  pi bonds, 24, 24*f*
  pK_a value, 112*f*
  synthesis problems with, 520–521
Acetylide ion, 348, 424
Acetylsalicylic acid, 87, 939
  see also Aspirin
Acid anhydrides, 947, 948, 962–965, 963*f*
Acid-base reactions, 93–127
  amino acids in, 1198–1200
  Brønsted-Lowry acids and bases, 94, 97–115
  counterions, 124–125
  electron density in, 94–97
  leveling effect, 123–124
  Lewis acids and bases, 126–128
  position of equilibrium, 120–122
  qualitative approach, 104–115
  quantitative approach, 97–104
  solvating effects, 124
Acid-catalyzed cationic polymerization, 1283
Acid-catalyzed halogenation, 1005–1006
Acid-catalyzed hydration
  alcohol synthesis, 538
  alkenes, 371–374
  alkynes, 433–436
  defined, 371
  green chemistry considerations with, 519, 520
  and oxygen nucleophiles, 893
Acid-catalyzed hydrolysis, 968, 973, 976, 977
Acid-catalyzed ring opening, 609–612
Acid-catalyzed tautomerization, 434–436, 998
Acid-catalyzed transesterification, 1250
Acid chlorides, 957–962
  ester preparation, 966
  preparation of, 957–958
  reactions of, 957–962, 962*f*
Acid halides, 947, 1006
Acidic cleavage, of ethers, 596–597
Acidic protons, 1000
Acidity
  alcohols, 534–537, 535–538
  alkynes, 423–426
  carboxylic acids, 941–942
  cationic acids, 115–119
  induction, 109–111
  nucleophilic acyl substitutions, 953
  nucleophilic addition, 891
  orbitals, 111–113
  phenols, 535–538
  pK_a, 97–99
  stability of conjugate bases, 282*t*
Acid reflux, 1054
Acids, 94
  amino *see* Amino acids
  benzoic, 941, 943*f*
  Brønsted-Lowry, 94
  carboxylic *see* Carboxylic acids
  conjugate, 94–95
  diacids, 940, 972
  fatty, 1241–1244, 1242*t*, 1254*f*
  Lewis, 126–128
  monocarboxylic, 939–940
  peroxy, 393, 600–601
  strong, 282, 535
cis-Aconitic acid, 739
Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS), 138, 164
Acrolein, 1050
Activating groups, 842–846, 850–851, 852*t*
Activation, of aromatic rings, 842
(+)-Acutiphycin, 426
Acyclic compounds, bond-line structures, 62*f*
Acylation
  amines, 1074–1075
  Friedel–Crafts, 840–842
Acyl groups, 840
Acylium ion, 840–841
Acyl peroxides, 466, 496
Acyl substitution reactions, 951–957
Adamantane, 303
Addition polymers, 1281–1286
Addition reactions, 356–416
  alcohol synthesis, 539
  aldols, 1017
  alkenes, 357–361, 357*t*
  anti dihydroxylation, 392–395
  anti-Markovnikov *see* Anti-Markovnikov additions
  catalytic hydrogenation, 382–388
  conjugate *see* Conjugate addition reactions
  definition, 357
  electrophilic, 746–749
  electrophilic aromatic substitution vs., 829
  elimination vs., 361–362
  enantioselective, 381
  halogenation and halohydrin formation, 388–392
  hydroboration-oxidation, 376–382
  hydrohalogenation, 363–370
  Markovnikov *see* Markovnikov additions
  nucleophilic *see* Nucleophilic addition reactions
  oxidative additions, 1115, 1130
  oxidative cleavage, 396–398
  oxymercuration-demercuration, 375–376
  products of, 398–400
  radical, 460, 461, 461*f*, 463*f*, 483–487
  syn additions, 377, 383–384, 1130, 1131
  syn dihydroxylation, 395–396
  synthesis strategies, 400–404
  synthetic polymers, 1281–1286
1,2-Addition reactions, 746, 749–750, 749*f*
1,4-Addition reactions, 746, 749–750, 749*f*, 1032
  see also Conjugate addition reactions
1,2-Adducts, 746, 749
1,4-Adducts, 746, 749
Adenine, 563, 1182–1185, 1182*f*
Adenosine diphosphate (ADP), 564, 1012
Adenosine triphosphate (ATP), 295–296, 564, 1012
S-Adenosylmethionine (SAM), 295–296
Adipic acid, 1287
ADP *see* Adenosine diphosphate
Adrenaline, 194, 296, 1055
Adrenocortical hormones, 1262
AIBN, 494
AIDS *see* Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome
Alanine, 1196, 1201
Albuterol, 194
Alcohols
  acidity, 534–538
  in addition reactions, 538
  alkynes from, 514–515
  bond-line structures of, 56
  definition, 530
  deprotonating, 535
  diol synthesis, 546–547
  elimination reactions, 329–331, 558–559
  ether preparatation, 593–596
  and ethers, 588
  fragmentation of, 667
  Grignard reagents, 547–553
  and Grignard reagents, 590
  IR signals for, 649
  oxidation of, 559–563
  preparation, 538–546
  primary *see* Primary alcohols
  protection, 552–553
  in redox reactions, 559–565
  from reduction reactions, 539–545
  secondary, 531, 554–555, 559, 562
  structure and properties, 530–537
  substitution reactions, 329–331, 538, 552, 554–558
  synthetic applications, 567–572
  in synthetic polymers, 1287, 1290
  tertiary, 531, 554, 559
  tosylate synthesis, 328
Alcoholysis, of acid chlorides, 959
Aldaric acid, 1170, 1171
Aldehydes, 884–931
  acid-catalyzed halogenation of, 1005–1006
  Baeyer–Villiger oxidation of, 921–922
  and carbon nucleophiles, 913–921
  fragmentation of, 667
  from hydroboration-oxidation reactions, 437, 438
  from primary alcohols, 559–562, 567
  and Grignard reagents, 548–549
  and hydrogen nucleophiles, 912–913
  hydroxyaldehydes, 1160–1161
  IR spectroscopy, 926
  and nitrogen nucleophiles, 900–908

Aldehydes (*continued*)
NMR spectroscopy, 926–927
nomenclature, 886–888
nucleophilic addition reactions of, 889–892
and oxygen nucleophiles, 892–899
pK_a values for, 1002, 1002*t*
preparation of, 888, 889*t*
reductions, 541–544
spectroscopic analysis, 925–927
structure and uses of, 885
and sulfur nucleophiles, 911–912
in synthesis strategies, 922–925
Alder, Kurt, 754
Alditol, 1169
Aldohexoses, 1157–1158, 1157*f*, 1163–1164
Aldol reactions, 1009–1019
additions, 1009–1011, 1017
condensations, 1012–1016
crossed, 1016–1018
intramolecular, 1019
Aldopentoses, 1157, 1157*f*
Aldoses, 1158*f*
configurations, 1157–1158, 1158*f*
ketoses vs., 1155
oxidation, 1170, 1171
Aldotetroses, 1155, 1157, 1157*f*
Alkaline, 1062
Alkaloids, 1055
Alkanamines, 1057
Alkanes, 138–164
see also Cycloalkanes
alkynes from, 442*f*, 443–444
conformations, 158–164
constitutional isomers, 152–153, 152*t*
fragmentation of, 665–666
functionalization, 490, 502
IR spectra, 644*f*
Newman projections, 156–158
nomenclature, 139–151
parent chains, 140–141, 140*t*
sources and uses, 154–156
stability, 153–154
structure, 139
substituents, 142–145
systematic names, 146–148
Alka Seltzer (Sodium bicarbonate), 96–97
Alkene metathesis, 1133–1139
biodiesel improvement, 1138–1139
catalysts, 1133–1134
mechanism, 1135–1136
products of, 1134
ring-closing and ring-opening, 1137–1138
Alkenes
acid-catalyzed hydration, 371–374
addition reactions *see* Addition reactions
alkynes from, 442*f*, 443–444, 515
anti-Markovnikov hydration, 521
bond-line structures, 56
catalytic hydrogenation, 382–388
epoxide preparation, 601
E and *Z* designations, 220–223
Heck reactions, 1129–1130
hydration reactions, 371–382, 521
hydroboration-oxidation, 376–382
hydrohalogenation, 363–370
IR spectra, 644*f*
nomenclature, 359–361
oxidative cleavage, 396–398
ozonolysis, 396–398
sources, 358–359
stability, 299–301
synthesis, 920–921
Alkoxide ions, 332, 535
Alkoxymercuration-demercuration, 596
Alkoxy substituents, 587
Alkyl amines, 1057
Alkylation
alkynes, 506
alpha and beta positions, 1040–1041
alpha carbons, 1022–1029
ammonia, 1066–1067
definition, 295
exhaustive, 1066–1067
Friedel–Crafts, 838–840
methylation, 295–296
terminal alkynes, 440–442
Alkyl bromides, 1123
Alkyl chain length, 534
Alkyl dihalides, 426
Alkyl groups, 142, 142*t*
Alkyl halides, 280–344
alkenes from, 426–427
alkene stability, 299–301
amines from, 1065
definition, 284
E1 reactions, 313–315, 317–320
E2 reactions, 296–299, 301–312
in Friedel–Crafts alkylation, 839
from acidic cleavage of ethers, 597
from alcohols, 556–557
kinetic isotope effects, 343–344
in methylation reactions, 295–296
nomenclature, 283–285
predicting products of reactions, 320–327
radiolabeled compounds in diagnostic medicine, 338–339
reactions with other substrates vs., 327–331
reactivity, 281–282
rearrangements, 316–317
S_N1 reactions, 312–315, 316–317, 341–342
S_N2 reactions, 286–296, 340–341
solvent effects, 339–342
structure of, 282–283
in synthesis strategies, 331–338, 506
as synthetic precursors, 285
unimolecular reactions, 311–320
uses, 284–285
in Wittig reaction, 921
Alkyl mesylates, 327–328
Alkyl organozinc reagents, 1123
Alkyl peroxides, 466
Alkyl sulfonates, 327–328
Alkylthio group, 615
Alkyl tosylates, 327–328
Alkyl triflates, 327–328, 1123
Alkynes, 417–453
see also Terminal alkynes
acidity of, 423–426
alkylation, 440–442, 506
from alcohols, 514–515
from alkenes and alkanes, 515
from vicinal dihalides, 514–515
halogenation, 439
hydration, 433–439
hydroboration–oxidation, 437
hydrogen bromide addition, 432–433
hydrohalogenation, 431–433
internal, 422, 436
IR spectra for, 644*f*
nomenclature of, 421–423
ozonolysis, 439–440
preparation of, 426–428
reduction of, 428–431, 430*f*
structure, geometry, and sources, 418–421
synthesis strategies, 442–444
Alkynide ions, 424, 428, 440, 489–490, 506
Alkynyl organozinc reagents, 1123
Allegra (Fexofenadine), 1056
Allenes, 218, 739
Allicin, 358
Allyl boronic acid, 1118
Allylic (allyl) carbocations, 266
bond-line structures, 64
bond-line structures for, 64*f*
drawing resonance structures for, 72
in electrophilic additions, 746
as resonance hybrids, 79
in unimolecular processes, 318
Allylic bromination, 474–477
Allylic group, in Claisen rearrangement, 769
Allylic halides, 318
Allylic lone pairs, 70–71
Allylic position, 70–71
Allylic radicals, 457–459
Alpha (α) amino acids, 1195
Alpha (α-)amino nitriles, 1205–1206
Alpha (α) anomer, 1162, 1163*f*
Alpha (α-)bromination, carboxylic acids, 1006–1007
Alpha (α) carbons, 996–1054
aldol reactions, 1009–1019
alkylation of alpha position, 1022–1029
alpha halogenation of enols and enolates, 1004–1009
Claisen condensations, 1020–1022
conjugate addition reactions, 1031–1037
intermediates of, 997–1004
in synthesis strategies, 1037–1041
Alpha (α-)haloacids, 1203
Alpha (α-)halogenation, 1004–1009
Alpha (α) helix, 1225, 1225*f*
Alpha (α-)keratins, 1227–1228, 1227*f*
Alpha (α) position
see also Alpha (α) carbons
alkylations, 1040–1041
Alpha (α) positions, 282
S_N2 reactions, 289–291
Alternating copolymers, 1281
Aluminum hydroxide, 96
Aluminum tribromide, 830
Aluminum trichloride, 831
Amantadine, 1064
Ambident nucleophiles, 1000
Ambien (Zolpidem), 45, 948
Ambuic acid, 546
Amide ions, 123
Amides, 947, 971–975
electrostatic potential map, 1063*f*
geometry, 951*f*, 1210*f*
lone pairs, 81, 81*f*
nitriles from, 975–976
nomenclature, 949
planar structure, 1210*f*
p orbitals, 81*f*
preparation, 971–972
reactions of, 973–975
reactivity, 950–951
Amidomalonate synthesis, 1204–1205
Amination, reductive, 1069–1071
Amines, 277, 1054–1099
acylation, 1074–1075
and aryldiazonium ions, 1080–1084
classification and reactivity, 1055–1056
fragmentation, 667
from reductive amination, 1069–1071
from substitution reactions, 1066–1069
Hofmann elimination, 1075–1077, 1076*f*
IR signals, 651–652, 651*f*
and nitrogen heterocycles, 1084–1087
with nitrous acid, 1078–1080
nomenclature, 1056–1058
preparation, 1065–1071
primary *see* Primary amines
properties, 1059–1065
secondary *see* Secondary amines
spectroscopy, 1087–1088

synthesis, 1071–1073
tertiary, 1057, 1072
Amino acid residues, 1208
Amino acids, 87, 1195–1207
alpha, 1195
amino groups, 1217–1219
carboxylic acid groups, 1220
definition, 1195
essential, 1198
and ninhydrin, 1202
peptides from, 1207–1210
and pH, 1200–1201
pK_a of, 1198–1199, 1199*t*
and proteins, 1195*f*
structure and properties of, 1196–1203, 1197*t*
synthesis, 1203–1207
L-amino acids, 1196, 1206–1207
γ-Amino butyric acid (GABA), 476–477, 1197–1198
ε-Aminocaproic acid, 1289
Aminoglycoside antibiotics, 1182
Amino groups of amino acids, 1217–1219
Amino hexoses, 1182
Aminolysis, 959, 969–970
5-Amino-4-oxopentanoic acid, 71
4-Aminosalicylic acid, 939
Amino sugars, 1180–1181
Amlodipine, 789
Ammonia
alkylation, 1066–1067
and amines, 1055
ammonium ions from, 30
ARIO prioritization scheme, 113–114
geometry, 27, 27*f*
hydrogen bonding, 34*f*
and sodium amide, 427
and sodium metal, 429
as a solvent, 123–124, 340
in synthesis strategies, 1071, 1072
Ammonium cyanate, 2
Ammonium ions
from amines, 277, 1064
from amino acids, 1199
from ammonia, 30
in imine formation, 901
pK_a, 1061*t*–1062*t*
Amorphous polymers, 1293
Amoxicillin, 11–12, 975
Amphetamine, 193–194, 1068
Amphidolinide N, 994
Amphoteric, definition, 1200
Amphotericin B, 115
Ampicillin, 974
amu (atomic mass unit), 669
Amygdalin, 916
Amylopectin, 1180
Amylose, 1179
Anabolic steroids, 1263
Analysis, Retrosynthetic, 336–338
Anchimeric assistance, 293
Androgens, 1261, 1261*t*, 1262
Anesthetics, 166, 589–590
Angle strain, 164–165
Anhydrides, acid, 947, 948, 962–965, 963*f*
Anilines, 865, 1063*t*, 1065–1066
Anionic polymerization, 1284–1285
Anions
carbanions, 29, 288, 455, 455*f*, 914
cyclopentadienyl, 802
induction, 109–110
molecular orbitals, 111–113
organoborate, 1121
radical, 429
resonance, 107–109
stability, 104–115
Anisole, nitration of, 844–846, 845*f*, 846*f*
Anisotropic effects, 700–701
Annulation reactions, 1037
Annulenes, 701, 801
Anomeric carbon, 1162
Anomers, 1162
Antacids, 96–97
Antagonists, H_2-receptor, 1085–1086
Antiaromatic, 799
Antibacterials, 534
Antibiotics, 974–975, 1182, 1185, 1212–1213, 1256–1257
Antibonding molecular orbitals, 19, 19*f*
and conjugated pi systems, 742, 742*f*
of ethylene, 23*f*
nodes, 64
theory, 798–800
Anti conformations, 161
Anti-coplanar conformation, 304
Anti dihydroxylation, 392–395
Antifreeze, 547
Antihistamines, nonsedating, 788, 806–808
Anti-HIV drugs, 138, 164
Anti-Markovnikov additions, 363–364
dihydroxylation, 392–395
in halogenation reactions, 388–390
in hydroboration-oxidation, 376–377, 436, 437
of radicals, 483–487
to alkenes, 521
to alkynes, 436, 437
Antioxidants, 481–483
Anti-periplanar conformations
definition, 304
E2 reaction products, 304–305, 307–308
Ants, chemical warfare, 1064–1065
Aprotic solvents, polar, 340–341
D-Arabinose, 1173
Arachidonic acid, 964, 1265, 1266
Area, under NMR signals, 689
Arenes, 788
Arenium ion, 830
ARIO prioritization scheme, 113–115
Aroclor 1254 (PCB), 284
Aromatic compounds, 788–827
see also Benzene
benzylic reactivity, 808–812
IR spectra, 816*t*
other than benzene, 801–808
reductions, 813–815
spectroscopy, 815–817
substitution reactions *see* Aromatic substitution reactions
uses, 789–790
Aromatic heterocycles, 803–804
Aromatic ions, 802
Aromaticity, 801, 803, 805–806
Aromatic substitution reactions, 828–883
activating groups, 842–846
deactivating groups, 846–848
directing effects of substituents, 850–853
electrophilic aromatic substitution, 829–865
elimination-addition, 868–870
Friedel–Crafts acylation, 840–842
Friedel–Crafts alkylation, 838–840
halogenation, 829–833
halogens in, 848–849
mechanisms, 870–872, 870*f*
with multiple substituents, 853–858
nitration, 835–837
nucleophilic aromatic, 866–867
sulfonation, 833–835
in synthesis strategies, 859–865
Arrow-pushing patterns
see also Curved-arrow notation
combining, 261–263
identifying, 260–261
for loss of leaving group, 257–258
for nucleophilic attack, 257
for proton transfers, 258–259
for radical reactions, 460–463
for rearrangements, 259–260
Artemidin, 505
Artificial sweeteners, 1178–1179
Aryl amines, 1057, 1062, 1063
Aryl borane, 1118
Aryl bromides, 1123
Aryl carbocations, 318
Aryldiazonium ions/salts, 1080–1084
Aryl groups, 293, 769
Aryl halides, 281, 317–318
Aryl iodide, 1118, 1129
Aryl organozinc reagents, 1123
Ascorbic acid, 109, 192
Aspartame, 991, 1178
Aspartic acid, 200
Aspernomine, 186
Aspirin, 87, 103, 964, 1265
Assembly of synthetic polymers, 1289–1291
Asymmetric catalytic hydrogenation, 385–388
Asymmetric centers, 191
Asymmetric stretching, 651
Atactic (term), 1292
Atenolol, 57
Ativan (Lorazepam), 948
Atmospheric radicals, 477–479
Atomic mass, relative, 669, 669*t*
Atomic mass unit (amu), 669
Atomic number, in Cahn-Ingold-Prelog system, 196
Atomic orbitals (AO)
degenerate, 16
and electron density, 14–15
and electron filling, 16
hybridized *see* Hybridized atomic orbitals
molecular orbitals vs., 287
in molecular orbital theory, 18–19
phases of, 15–16, 16*f*
and quantum mechanics, 17
s character, 740, 740*f*
shapes, 643–644, 643*f*
triple bonds, 418, 418*f*
Atomic weight, 668–670, 668*t*
Atoms
Lewis structures, 5–6
maximizing economy of, 519–520
negative charges on, 105–107
size of, 106
Atorvastatin (Lipitor), 789, 1261
ATP *see* Adenosine triphosphate
Atropisomers, 217–218
Aufbau principle, 16
(+)-Aureol, 278
Autocatalytic, 1005
Autooxidation
of ethers, 598–599
of organic compounds, 480–481
of triglycerides, 1245
Auxochromes, 773
Auxophore, 63
Avobenzone, 775
Axial protons, 695
Axial substituents, 169, 169*f*, 171*f*
Axis of symmetry, 210, 211
Azide synthesis, 1067
Azo coupling, 1082–1084
Azo dyes, 1082–1084
Azulene, 824

B

Bacitracin A, 1212
Back-side attack, 287
Baeyer, Adolph von, 164–165, 921

Baeyer–Villiger oxidation, 921–922
Bakelite, 881, 1294
Baking, acid-base reactions, 93, 125–126
Baking powder, 93, 125–126
Baking soda, 93, 97, 125–126
Barbituric acid, 139
Base-catalyzed halogenation, 1006–1008
Base-catalyzed hydration, 892
Base-catalyzed hydrolysis
amides, 973–974
esters, 1246
nitriles, 976–977
Base-catalyzed tautomerization, 437, 999
Base peak, 659
Bases
Brønsted–Lowry, 94
conjugate *see* Conjugate bases
definition, 94
E2 reactions, 301*t*
in elimination reactions, 281
for enolate formation, 1002–1004, 1004*f*
and ketones/diketones, 1004*f*
leveling effect, 123–124
Lewis, 126–128
and pi bonds, 357–358
in reactions *see* Acid-base reactions
terminal alkyne deprotonations, 425–426, 425*t*
Basicity
amines, 1061–1062
eliminations vs. substitutions, 320–321
nucleophilic acyl substitutions, 953
nucleophilic addition, 890
organomagnesium/organolithium compounds, 1104
pK_a, 99–101
Basic red, 1, 91
9-BBN *see* 9-Borabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane
Beer making, 248
Beer's law, 772–773
BeH_2 (Beryllium hydride), 28, 28*f*
Benadryl (Diphenhydramine), 806
Bending, of bonds, 639
Bent geometry, 27–28, 27*f*, 33
Benzaldehyde, 885, 1017
Benzene, 788, 793–800, 822
amine synthesis, 1065–1066
from coal, 790
derivative nomenclature, 790–793
disubstituted *see* Disubstituted benzene rings
in drug-receptor interactions, 39
Friedel–Crafts alkylation of, 838–840
halogenation of, 830–832
heat of hydrogenation, 795*f*
mass spectra, 661, 661*f*
molecular orbitals, 797*f*
monosubstituted, 790–791, 859
nitration, 835–836
phenol synthesis, 553
p orbitals, 795–796, 796*f*
stability, 794–800
structure of, 793–794
substitution vs. addition pathways, 831*f*
sulfonation, 833–834
Benzene-d_6, 688
Benzene derivatives, 790–793
Benzimidazole, 863
Benzo[*a*]pyrene, 612
Benzoic acids, 941, 943*f*
Benzoquinone, 466, 566
Benzphetamine, 1095
Benzyl acetate, 990
Benzyl chlorides, 1123
Benzylic (benzyl) carbocations, 91, 318
Benzylic halides, 318, 810
Benzylic position, 808–812, 811*f*
Benzylic radicals, 457
Benzyl organozinc reagents, 1123
Benzylpiperazine (BZP), 692
Benzyne, 868
Bergström, Sune, 964
Beryllium, 16*f*
Beryllium hydride (BeH_2), 28, 28*f*
Beta (β) anomers, 1162, 1163*f*
Beta-carotene, 776, 777, 884, 904, 1126, 1267
Beta elimination, 297
Beta-lactam antibiotics, 974–975
Beta (β) pleated sheets, 1225, 1225*f*
Beta (β) positions, 282–283
alkylations, 1040–1041
S_N2 reactions, 289–291
Bextra (Valdecoxib), 1266
BF_3 (Boron trifluoride), 28–29, 28*f*
BHA *see* Butylated hydroxyanisole
BHT *see* Butylated hydroxytoluene
Bicyclic compounds, 62*f*, 148–150
bridged, 300
Bilayers, lipid, 1254–1257, 1254*f*
Bilirubin, 222–223
Bilirubin glucuronide, 223
Bimolecular (term), 287, 298
BINAP *see* 2,2'-Bis(diphenylphosphino)-1,1'-binaphthyl
Biodegradable polymers, 1296–1297
Biodiesel, 1138–1139, 1249, 1250
Biomimicry, 37
Biomolecules, mass spectra, 671
Biosynthesis
cholesterol, 1258–1259
erythromycin, 1186
farnesyl pyrophosphate, 1270
geranyl pyrophosphate, 1269–1270
prostaglandin, 1265
terpenes, 1269–1270
vitamin D, 770–771
Biotechnology, mass spectrometry in, 660
Biotin, 199
Biot, Jean Baptiste, 202
Biphenyl, 284
Birch, Arthur, 813
Birch reduction, 813–815
Bisabolane, 55
2,2'-Bis(diphenylphosphino)-1,1'-binaphthyl (BINAP), 217–218, 388, 1207
Bismuth subsalicylate, 96
Bisphenol A, 1288
Bleaching agents, 738, 777
Block copolymers, 1281
Blocking groups, 857–858
Blood-alcohol tests, 648
Boat conformations, 167
Boc protecting groups, 1218, 1219
Boiling points, 589, 1059–1060
hydrocarbons, 36–37, 36*t*
Bombykol, 1121–1122
Bond angles, 165*f*
Bond cleavage, 506
acidic, 596–597
enzymatic, 1214–1216
heterolytic, 234, 234*f*, 455*f*, 540
homolytic *see* Homolytic bond cleavage
oxidative, 396–398, 439–440
Bond dissociation energy (ΔH°), 234–237, 235*t*
halogenation reactions, 467*t*
of radicals, 456, 456*f*, 457, 457*f*, 459*f*
Bond energy, 25–26, 25*t*
Bonding electrons, in bond-line structures, 63–64
Bonding molecular orbitals
allylic carbocations, 64
aromatic ions, 802
conjugated pi systems, 742, 742*f*
energy levels, 19, 19*f*
enthalpy, 234, 234*f*
ethylene, 23*f*
theory, 798–800
Bond lengths, 25–26, 25*t*, 740
Bond-line structures, 52–62
drawing, 53–55
formal charges, 58
of functional groups, 55–57, 56*t*
inadequacy of, 63–64
lone pairs, 58–61
reading, 11–13
three-dimensional, 61–63
Bonds
bending of, 639
in Cahn–Ingold–Prelog system, 197
carbon–carbon *see* Carbon–carbon bonds
carbon–hydrogen, 459–460, 648
covalent, 5, 9*f*
curved-arrow notation, 263–267
double *see* Double bonds
electrons in, 4–5
enthalpy for breaking and forming, 234–237
formal charges, 7–8
hydrogen, 34–35, 34–35*f*, 649–651
interconversions, 442–444, 442*f*, 502, 567*f*
ionic, 9, 9*f*, 31–32, 1102
Lewis structures, 5–8
peptide *see* Peptide bonds
pi *see* Pi (π) bonds
pi-conjugated, 72, 74
polar covalent, 8–14, 9*f*
sigma *see* Sigma (σ) bonds
single, 53, 65
strengths and lengths, 25–26
stretching, 639, 651–652
sulfur–oxygen, 833, 833*f*
Suzuki/Stille coupling, 1119*t*
three-center, two-electron, 378
triple *see* Triple bonds
valence bond theory, 17–18
X–H, 654*f*
Bond stretching, 639, 651–652
9-Borabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane (9-BBN), 437
Borane, 377–378
Boron, 16*f*
Boronic acid, 1118
Boronic esters, 1118
Boron trifluoride (BF_3), 28–29, 28*f*
Bradykinin, 1211
Branched polymers, 1291–1292
Bredt's rule, 300
Brevianamide S, 737
Bridged bicyclic compounds, 300
Bridgeheads, 149
Broadband decoupling, 721
Bromide ions, 321
Bromination
allylic, 474–477
benzene, 830–831
at benzylic positions, 810
carboxylic acids, 1006–1008
chlorination vs., 468, 469*f*–471*f*
radical *see* Radical bromination
Bromine, 389*f*, 664, 749
Bromobenzene, 664*f*
(*R*)-2-Bromobutane, 288
Bromohydrin, 391
Bromomethane, 18–19, 19*f*, 20*f*
Bromonium ions, 389–391, 394
3-Bromopyridine, 1087
N-Bromosuccinimide (NBS), 475
m-Bromotoluene, 990
Brompheniramine, 832
Bronopol, 285

Brønsted-Lowry acids, 94, 97
conjugate base stability, 104–105
pK_a values, 97–104
Brønsted-Lowry bases, 94, 97, 105–115
Buckminster Fuller, R., 818
Buckyballs, 818–819
Bulletproof glass, 1277
t-BuOK (potassium *tert*-butoxide), 301
Bupropion, 1060
Burimamide, 1086
1,3-Butadiene, 761*f*, 771, 771*f*, 772*f*
addition of bromine across, 749
addition of HX across, 746–747
conformations of, 741–742
heat of hydration, 740–741
molecular orbitals of, 741*f*–743*f*, 743–744
in synthetic rubber, 752
Butane, 35
conformational analysis, 160–162, 160*f*
conformational mobility, 216
conjugate base, 104, 105
eclipsed conformations, 161*f*, 162*f*
gauche interactions, 161*f*, 171, 171*f*
radical chlorination, 472–473
structure and HDI of, 672
1,4-Butanediol, 628
2,3-Butanedione, 888
Butanoic acid, 939
2-Butanol, 643*f*, 649*f*
tert-Butanol, pK_a, 537
1-Butene, 740–741
2-Butene, 190, 207
halogenation, 390
stability, 299–300, 299*f*
Butlerov, Alexander M., 3
tert-Butoxide, 323
electrostatic potential map, 124*f*
solvent effects, 124
Butyl acetate, 947
Butylated hydroxyanisole (BHA), 481, 554
Butylated hydroxytoluene (BHT), 481, 494, 554
tert-Butyl bromide, 289, 312, 312*f*
tert-Butyl chloride, 316–317, 317*t*, 553*f*
tert-Butylcyclohexane, 172
tert-Butyl group, 710, 710*f*
tert-Butyl methyl ether (MTBE), 594, 702–703
Butyric acid, 650, 650*f*
BZP *see* Benzylpiperazine

C

Cadaverine, 1060
Caffeine, 46, 87
Cahn–Ingold–Prelog system, 195–201
chiral drugs, 200–201
nomenclature, 200
priorities of groups, 196–197
rotating molecules, 197–200
Calcium carbonate, 96
Calcium citrate, 592–593
Calcium gluconate, 593
Calcium oxalate, 592
(–)-Cameroonanol, 237
Camphene, 178
Camphor, 178, 1267
Cancer, 280, 521–522, 600, 612–613, 640
ε-Caprolactam, 1289
Capsaicin, 530
Carbamate, 1217
Carbamazepine, 603
Carbamazepine-10,11-epoxide, 603
Carbanions, 29, 288, 455, 455*f*, 914
Carbenes, 1110–1111
Carbenoid reagents, 1111
Carbinolamine, 900, 900*f*, 901*f*
Carbocation rearrangements
arrow pushing, 259–260
hydride shifts, 260, 266*f*
hydrohalogenations, 368–369
predicting, 266–268
reversible/irreversible, 269–270
Carbocations, 29
acid-catalyzed hydration, 373, 373*f*
allylic *see* Allylic (allyl) carbocations
aryl, 318
benzylic, 91, 318
cationic polymerization, 1283
as electrophiles, 253–254
Friedel–Crafts alkylation, 838–839
glycoside formation, 1168
HBr additions, 484
hydrohalogenation reactions, 365, 366, 432
hyperconjugation, 259*f*
ionization rates, 318
mass spectrometry, 659
phenyl, 1080
p orbitals, 254*f*
primary, 259, 432, 1283
secondary *see* Secondary carbocations
S_N1/E1 reactions, 311–315
stability, 259–260
structure and geometry, 455, 455*f*
tertiary *see* Tertiary carbocations
unimolecular reactions, 311–312, 311–315
vinylic, 318, 432
Carbohydrates, 1153–1189
amino sugars, 1180–1181
classifications, 1154–1157
configurations, monosaccharides, 1157–1159
cyclic structures, 1160–1167
disaccharides, 1174–1179
N-glycosides, 1181–1185
monosaccharides, 1154–1174
polysaccharides, 1179–1180
reactions of monosaccharides, 1167–1174
sources, 1154
Carbon
alpha *see* Alpha (α) carbons
anomeric, 1162
in bond-line structures, 12, 53
chirality, 191*f*
^{13}C NMR signals, 721–722, 722*f*
curved arrow notation, 263
electronic configuration, 16*f*, 20*f*
formal charges, 58
forms of, 818–819
hybridization states, 24
lithium and magnesium bonds, 1102
mass spectra, 662–664
Carbonates, 1287
Carbon–carbon bonds
allylic position, 70
dipole moments, 647–648, 647*f*
formation, 571–573, 571*t*, 981–983, 981*t*
IR spectra, 647*f*
skeletal changes, 505–508, 923
Carbon dioxide, 540, 564
Carbon–hydrogen bonds, 648
Carbonic acid, 97, 126
Carbon ions, stability, 104
Carbon nucleophiles, 913–921
Carbon skeletons, changes in, 505–508, 923
Carbon tetrachloride, 32, 32*f*, 464
Carbonyl groups
alcohol preparation, 541–544
definition, 885
dipole moments, 647, 647*f*
IR spectra, 647*f*
nucleophilic addition, 889–891, 890*f*, 891*f*
structure, 941*f*
Carboxylate ions, 941, 1199, 1246
Carboxylation, of Grignard reagents, 945
Carboxylic acid derivatives, 939, 946–983
acid anhydrides, 962–965
acid chlorides, 957–962
amides, 971–975
classification, 946–950
esters, 965–971
nitriles, 975–977
nomenclature, 946–950
reactivity, 950–957, 950*f*
spectroscopy, 984
synthesis, 978–982
Carboxylic acids, 938–946
alpha bromination, 1006–1008
amine synthesis, 1065
in amino acids, 1220
Grignard reagents, 548–549
IR spectra, 650
from nitriles, 658
nomenclature, 939–940
physiological pH, 942–943
preparation, 559–560, 658, 944–945, 944*t*
from primary alcohols, 559, 560
reactions of, 945–946
reductions, 544
resonance stabilization, 107–108
sources, 939
spectroscopy, 984, 984*t*
structure and properties, 941–944
Carcerands, 798
Carcinogenic epoxides, 612–613
Carlsson, Arvid, 386
β-Carotene, 776
Carvacrol, 793
Carvone, 195, 256
isomers, 202
as a ketone, 885
NMR spectra, 695
pi bonds, 739
as terpene, 1267
Car windshields, 1295
(–)-Cassioside, 169
Catalysts
see also specific reactions or compounds
alkene metathesis, 1133–1134
chirality, 385–388, 604*f*
definition, 248
and free energy, 248*f*
in green chemistry, 520
Grubbs, 1133–1134
Heck reaction, 1129
Lindlar's, 428
metal, 383, 383*f*
poisoned, 428, 428*f*
Schrock, 1133–1134
Wilkinson's, 385, 386
Ziegler–Natta, 1292
Catalytic cracking, 155
Catalytic hydrogenation
alkenes, 382–388
alkynes, 428–430
asymmetric, 385–388
catalysts, 382–385, 383*f*, 386*f*
partially hydrogenated fats and oils, 387
products, 383*t*, 384–385
stereospecificity, 382
Catechol, 932
Cationic acids, 115–119
Cationic polymerization, 370, 1283
Cations, 120, 625, 633, 765
see also Carbocations
Celebrex (Celecoxib), 1266
Cellobiose, 1176
Cellular respiration, 566

Cellulose, 1179
Cephalins, 1254
Cetirizine, 808
CFCs *see* Chlorofluorocarbons
Chain-growth polymers, 1289–1290
Chain length
drug design, 534
monosaccharides, 1172–1174
Chain reactions, 464
Chair conformations
cyclohexane, 167
disubstituted cyclohexane, 172–176
drawing, 168–174
monosubstituted cyclohexane, 170–172
pyranose rings, 1164–1166
stability of, 171–172, 174–176
stereoisomerism, 216–217
Chalfie, Martin, 1234
Change in enthalpy ($\Delta H°$), 154
Chaperones, 1227
Charge(s)
delocalization, 76, 1062–1064
formal *see* Formal charge(s)
mass-to-charge ratio, 659
negative *see* Negative charge(s)
partial, 9–10
positive, 70, 72–73
resonance structures, 76
Chauvin, Yves, 1133
Chelating agents, 592–593
Chemical equivalence, 689–695, 691*f*
Chemical reactivity, 233–273
alkyl halides, 281–282
amines, 1056
and arrow pushing, 256–266
carbocation rearrangements, 266–268
carboxylic acid derivatives, 950–957, 950*f*
curved arrow notation, 263–266
energy diagrams, 249–252
enthalpy, 234–237
entropy, 237–239
equilibria, 242–244
Gibbs free energy, 239–242
kinetics, 244–248
nucleophiles/electrophiles, 252–255
reversible/irreversible reactions, 268–270
Chemical shifts (δ)
anisotropic effects, 700–701
^{13}C NMR spectroscopy, 721–723, 722–723*t*
functional groups, 698*t*
^{1}H NMR, 695–701
inductive effects, 697–699
Chemical warfare, by ants, 1064–1065
Chemotherapy, 280
Chiral column chromatography, 219
Chirality, 190–195
see also Cahn–Ingold–Prelog system
Atropisomers, 217–218
of catalysts, 385–388, 604*f*
definition, 191
of drugs, 200–201
enantiomers, 193–195
molecular, 191–193
optical activity, 201–206
resolving agents, 219
and sense of smell, 195
and symmetry, 210–214
without chiral centers, 217–218
Chirality centers
alkyl halides, 283
Cahn–Ingold–Prelog system, 197–200
and catalytic hydrogenation, 382–384, 383*t*
chiral compounds without, 217–218
definition, 191
enantiomers and diastereomers, 207–208
finding, 192–193
Fischer projections, 214
from reactions *see* Stereochemistry
halogenation reactions, 472–473
hydroboration-oxidation, 380
priorities of groups, 196–197
rotating molecules around, 196–198
Chiral (term), 191
Chitin, 1181
Chlorambucil, 292–294
Chloramphenicol, 199, 530, 558, 681
Chlordane, 284, 783
Chloride ions, 104
Chlorides, acid *see* Acid chlorides
Chlorination
of benzene, 831–832
bromination vs., 468, 469*f*–471*f*
of methane, 463–466
polychlorination, 464
radical *see* Radical chlorination
Chlorine, mass spectrum of, 664
Chlorobenzene, 664*f*, 849*f*
Chlorocatechelin A, 957
Chloroethane, 533, 673
Chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs), 477
Chloroform, 166, 464, 688, 1110
Chloroform-d, 688
Chlorohydrin, 391
Chloromethane, 11, 30–31, 31*f*
meta-Chloroperoxybenzoic acid (MCPBA), 600
Chloropheniramine, 285
Chlorophyll a, 512
Chloroprene, 752
8-Chlorotheophylline, 1060
Chlortrimeton (Chlorpheniramine), 806, 832
Chlotrimazole, 832
Cholecalciferol (Vitamin D_3), 192, 530, 770, 775
Cholesta-4,6,8(14)-triene, 784
Cholesterol, 91
biosynthesis, 1258–1259
and heart disease, 1238, 1260–1261
natural sources of, 358
in nature, 530
stereoisomerism, 208
as a steroid, 1240, 1258, 1258*f*
Choline, 1254
Chromate esters, 560
Chromatogram, 671, 671*f*
Chromatography, 219, 670–671, 671*f*
Chromic acid, 559–561
Chromium trioxide, 559
Chromophores, 773
(+)-*trans*-Chrysanthemic acid, 656
Chymotrypsin, 1214
Cigarette smoking, 585, 612–613
Cimetidine (Tagamet), 1054, 1085–1086
Cinchocaine, 1093
Cinnamaldehyde, 885, 1047
Cinnamic acid, 705
cis-trans isomerism, 189–190
alkenes, 299–300
cycloalkanes, 176–177
diastereomers, 207
E2 reaction products, 303–304
elimination reaction products, 303*f*
and symmetry, 210
Citrate, 592–593
Citric acid, 125
Citric acid cycle, 564
(+)-Citronellal, 423
CL-20 (explosive), 91
Claisen condensations, 1020–1022
Claisen rearrangement, 769
Cleavage reactions *see* Bond cleavage reactions
Clemmensen reduction, 841
Clinical environment, mass spectrometry in, 660
Clomipramine, 1093
Clopidogrel, 789
^{13}C NMR spectroscopy, 721–726
acquiring spectra, 721
aldehydes and ketones, 927, 927*f*
aromatic compounds, 817
carboxylic acids and derivatives, 984
chemical shifts, 721–723, 722–723*t*
DEPT, 724–727
Coal, 790
Cocaine, 1055
Codeine, 62, 103–104
Coenzyme Q10, 1126–1127
Coibacin B, 230
Color, 776–777
Color scale, electrostatic potential map, 11
Color wheel, 776*f*, 777
Column chromatography, 219
Combustion, 454, 479
see also Heat of combustion ($-\Delta H°$)
Common names
alkanes, 144
alkyl halides, 283
Compactin, 1260
Complete proteins, 1198
Complex lipids, 1239–1240
Compounds
acyclic, 62*f*
aromatic *see* Aromatic compounds
bicyclic, 62*f*, 148–150, 300
cyclic, 62*f*, 239, 673
difunctionalized, 1037–1039
IR spectroscopy, 657–658
meso, 212–214, 383–384
NMR spectroscopy, 715–717
optically active vs. inactive, 202
organic vs. inorganic, 2
organometallic *see* Organometallic compounds
protons in, 691–692
radiolabeled, 338–339
saturated, 672
Concentration
and equilibrium in hydration reactions, 372–373
and Gibbs free energy, 243, 243*f*
and K_{eq}, 243
in rate equation, 244–245
Concerted mechanisms, 286
E2 reaction, 297
Condensation polymers, 1286–1289
Condensation reactions
aldol, 1012–1016
Claisen, 1020–1022
of synthetic polymers, 1286–1289
Condensation (term), 1013
Condensed structures, 51–52
Conducting organic polymers, 421
Cones (photoreceptors), 777
Configuration, retention of, 319–320
Configurations
at chiral centers, 196
electron, 16, 16*f*, 20*f*, 745*f*
of enantiomers *see* Cahn–Ingold–Prelog system
Fischer projections, 215–216
inversion of, 287
monosaccharides, 1157–1159, 1158*f*
R and *S*, 196, 200, 201, 207, 208
substituents, 172
Conformational analysis
of butane, 160–162, 160*f*
of cyclohexane, 167*f*
of ethane and propane, 158–160, 159*f*, 160*f*

Conformationally mobile systems, 216–217
Conformations, 156
of alkanes, 158–164
anti, 161
anti-coplanar, 304
boat, 167
1,3-butadiene, 741–742
chair *see* Chair conformations
cyclohexane, 167–169
degenerate, 159
of drugs, 164
eclipsed, 158–162, 158*f*–162*f*
E and *Z*, 220–222, 1134
gauche, 161
lowest energy, 1241, 1241*f*
relative energies, 162–163, 162*t*
staggered, 156–161, 158*f*, 159*f*, 161*f*
syn-coplanar, 304
twist boat, 167
s-cis Conformers, 741, 741*f*, 1210
Diels–Alder reactions, 757
in equilibria, 742, 742*f*
s-trans Conformers, 741, 741*f*, 1210
Diels–Alder reactions, 757
equilibria, 742, 742*f*
Conjugate acids, 94–95
Conjugate addition reactions, 1031–1037
Michael reactions, 1031–1034
Robinson annulation reaction, 1037
Stork enamine synthesis, 1034–1036
Conjugate bases, 94–95, 98*t*
equilibrium positions, 120–122
leaving groups as, 282
stability, 104–115, 282*t*
terminal alkyne deprotonation, 425, 425*t*
Conjugated bilirubin, 223
Conjugated dienes
definition, 739
electrophilic addition to, 747–748, 750–751
HOMO of, 765*f*, 767*f*
p orbitals, 739*f*
structure and properties, 740–742
Conjugated pi (π) bonds, 72, 74
Conjugated pi (π) systems, 738–782
see also Aromatic compounds
and color, 776–777
dienes, 739, 740–742
electrophilic addition, 746–751
molecular orbitals, 742–745
thermodynamic vs. kinetic control, 749–751
UV-Vis spectroscopy, 771–775
and vision, 777–778
Conjugated (term), 644
Conrotatory rotation, 765–766, 765*f*, 766*f*
Conservation of orbital symmetry, 761–762
Constitutional isomers, 3–4
of alkanes, 152–154, 152*t*
of C_4H_6, 673*f*
stability, 153–154
stereoisomers vs., 189
Constructive interference, 17–18, 17*f*
Continuous-wave (CW) spectrometers, 687
Coordinatively saturated (term), 1113
Coordinatively unsaturated (term), 1113
Cope rearrangement, 769
Coplanar conformations, 304
Copolymers, 1280–1281, 1280*t*
Corey, E. J., 137, 514, 519, 994
Corey–Posner/Whitesides–House reaction, 1106–1109
Corrin rings, 512–513
Cortisol, 1262
Cortisone, 1262
Counterions, 125–126
Couper, Alexander Scott, 3
Coupling
arrow-pushing patterns, 460, 461
autooxidation, 480
azo, 1082–1084
cross-coupling reaction, 1106
with Gilman reagents, 1106–1109
in Heck reaction, 1128–1133
and multiplicity of NMR signal, 705–708, 707*t*
Negishi, 1123–1128
of radicals, 461*f*, 463*f*
Stille, 1112–1117, 1119*t*
Suzuki, 1117–1123, 1119*t*
Coupling constant (*J* value), 708–709, 708*f*
for complex splitting, 710–712, 711*f*
protons without, 713
Covalent bonds, 5, 9*f*
see also Polar covalent bonds
COX-2 inhibitors, 1265–1266
Cracking, petroleum, 155, 489
Crafts, James, 838
Cram, Donald, 591, 798
Creutzfeldt–Jakob disease, 1227
Cross-coupling reaction, 1106
Crossed aldol reactions, 1016–1018, 1016*f*
Crossed Claisen condensations, 1021
Cross-linked polymers, 1292–1293
12-Crown-4, 590, 591
15-Crown-5, 590, 591
18-Crown-6, 590–591, 590*f*, 591*f*
Crown ethers, 590–592, 590*f*, 1256
Crutzen, Paul, 478
Crystalline polymers, 1293
Crystallites, 1293
Crystallization, 218–219
C terminus, of peptide chains, 1208, 1208*f*
Cumene, 553
Cumene hydroperoxide, 553
Cumulated dienes, 739, 739*f*
Curl, Robert, 818
Curved-arrow notation
see also Arrow-pushing patterns
acid-base reactions, 94–97
drawing, 263–266
formal charges, 68–70
proton transfers, 95–96
for radicals, 430*f*, 455, 455*f*
for resonance structures, 65–68
CW (continuous-wave) spectrometers, 687
Cyanide ions, 290, 290*f*
Cyanohydrins, 914–917, 1173
Cyclic compounds, 62*f*, 239, 673
Cyclic hemiacetals, 899, 1160, 1162*f*, 1166
Cyclic osmate esters, 395
Cyclic structures, of monosaccharides, 1160–1167
Cyclic thioacetals, 911
Cycloaddition reactions
[4+2] cycloadditions, 754
definition, 753
Diels–Alder reactions, 754–760, 754*f*, 761*f*
in molecular orbital theory, 760–763, 762*f*
Cycloadducts, 869–870
Cycloalkanes, 140, 164–178
bicyclic compound naming, 148–150
cis-trans stereoisomerism, 176–177
cyclohexane, 167–176
in polycyclic systems, 177–178
types of, 164–166
Cycloalkenes, stability, 300–301
Cyclobutadiene, 797–799, 798*f*
Cyclobutane, 46, 166
Cycloheptatrienone, 824
Cyclohexadiene, 795*f*
Cyclohexane, 167–176, 822
conformational analysis, 167*f*
conformations of, 167–169
degree of unsaturation, 673
disubstituted, 172–176
mass spectrometry, 669–670
monosubstituted, 170–172
NMR spectroscopy, 695
polycyclic systems, 177–178
radical bromination, 474–477
Cyclohexanol, 536
Cyclohexanone, 682
Cyclohexene, 795*f*
Cyclononyne, 418
Cyclooctatetraene, 797, 799, 799*f*
trans-Cyclooctene, 300
Cyclooxygenase, 964, 1266
Cyclopentadiene, 134, 757–758, 802
Cyclopentadienone, 824
Cyclopentadienyl anions, 802
Cyclopentane, 166
Cyclopentanone (C_5H_8O), 669–670
Cyclopropanation, 1109–1111
Cyclopropane, 21, 45, 165–166, 165*f*
Cycloserine, 90
Cyclotrimethylenetrinitramine (RDX), 240
Cysteine, 200, 482, 1211
Cytosine, 1182–1185, 1182*f*

D

Dactylyne, 348
β-Damascenone, 748
Dapoxylsulfonic acid, 1069
Dark current, 778
Dashes, in bond-line structures, 61, 61–62
DBN (1,5-Diazabicyclo[4.3.0]non-5-ene), 321
DBU (1,5-Diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene), 321
DBZP (Dibenzylpiperazine), 692
DCC (Dicyclohexylcarbodiimide), 1216, 1217
DDT (Dichlorodiphenyltrichloroethane), 284
10-Deacetylbacatin III, 522
Deactivating groups, 846–849, 851, 852*t*
Deactivation, of aromatic rings, 846
de Broglie, Louis, 14
Debye, Peter, 30
Debye (unit), 30
Decalin, 177, 186
Decane, 662*f*
Decarboxylation reactions, 1025, 1028
Decay, free induction, 688
Decoupling, 721
Decytospolides, 623
DEET (*N*,*N*-Diethyl-*m*-toluamide), 990
Degenerate conformation, 159
Degenerate orbitals, 16
Degradation reactions
Edman, 1213–1214
for sugars, 1155*f*
Wohl, 1173–1174
Degree of substitution, alkenes, 299–300, 301*f*
Degree of unsaturation, 672–675, 718
Dehydration reactions, 975–976
7-Dehydrocholesterol, 770
Dehydrohalogenation, 297
Delocalization
of charge, 76, 1062–1064
of electrons, 65
of lone pairs, 81–83
δ *see* Chemical shifts
$\Delta H°$ *see* Bond dissociation energy
$-\Delta H°$ *see* Heat of combustion
Demercuration, 375–376, 519, 520, 538, 596
Demerol (Meperidine), 62–63
Denaturation, of proteins, 1226, 1226*f*
Density, electron *see* Electron density
Deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA), 1182–1184
cross-linking, 293–294, 293*f*
double-helix structure, 1184*f*

Deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) (*continued*)
and ethylene oxide, 608
hydrogen bonding, 35, 35*f*, 1184*f*
nucleotides, 1183*f*
UV irradiation, 775
Deoxyribonucleosides, 1181, 1183*f*
Deoxyribonucleotides, 1183, 1183*f*
2-Deoxy-D-ribose, 1181
Deprotonation
of alcohols, 535
of ketones, 1023*f*
of terminal alkynes, 425–426, 425*t*
DEPT (Distortionless enhancement by polarization transfer), 724–727, 725*t*
Dermabond, 1285
Desflurane, 589
Deshielded protons, 686–687
Desorption electrospray ionization (DESI), 660
Dess–Martin periodinane (DMP) oxidation, 562
Destructive interference, 18, 18*f*
Desulfurization, 911
DET (Diethyl tartrate), 604
Detergents, 1249
Deuteration, 1104
Deuterium, 688
Deuterium isotope effect, 343–344
Deuterium oxide, 688
Dexon, 991
Dextromethorphan, 96
Dextrorotatory, 204
DHA ethyl ester, 57
Diacids, 940, 972
Diagnostic medicine, 338–339
Diagnostic region (of IR spectrum), 643*f*, 654*f*
analyzing, 652–656
defined, 642
signals in, 653*t*
Diamagnetic anisotropy, 700–701
Diamagnetism, 686
Diamines, 972
Diamond, 178, 178*f*, 818
Diastereomers
enantiomers vs., 207–210
E and *Z* designations, 220–223
Fischer projections, 215
from radical halogenation, 473
Diastereotopic protons, 691
1,3-Diaxial interactions, 171–172, 171*f*, 172*t*
1,5-Diazabicyclo[4.3.0]non-5-ene (DBN), 321
1,5-Diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (DBU), 321
Diazepam (Valium), 13, 853, 948
Diazonium salts, 1079
Diazotization, 1079–1080
Dibenzo[*a*,*c*]cyclohepten-5-one, 1150
Dibenzylpiperazine (DBZP), 692
Diborane, 377–378
DIBP (Diisobutyl phthalate), 727
Di-*tert*-butyl dicarbonate, 1218
Dichlorocarbene, 1110–1111
trans-1,3-Dichlorocyclobutane, 185
Dichlorodiphenyltrichloroethane (DDT), 284
Dichloromethane, 31*f*
Dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (DCC), 1216, 1217
Dieckmann cyclization, 1021
Diels–Alder reactions, 754–760, 754*f*, 761*f*
Diels, Otto, 754
Dienes
classes of, 739
conjugated *see* Conjugated dienes
cumulated, 739, 739*f*
definition, 739
in Diels–Alder reactions, 757–758
isolated, 739, 739*f*
symmetry, 759–760
Dienophiles, 755–756, 759–760
Diesters, 1139
Diethyl acetamidomalonate, 1204
Diethyl ether, 166, 481, 494, 589, 593–594
Diethyl malonate, 1027, 1028, 1204
Diethyl tartrate (DET), 604
N,*N*-Diethyl-*m*-toluamide (DEET), 990
Difunctionalized compound synthesis, 1037–1039
Dihalides, 426, 427, 433, 439, 514–515
Dihedral angle, 158, 158*f*
trans-10,11-Dihydroxycarbamazepine, 603
Dihydroxylation
anti, 392–395
in diol preparation, 547
syn, 395–396
(*S*)-3,4-Dihydroxyphenylalanine (L-Dopa), 99, 386, 387, 420, 837, 1206
Diisobutyl phthalate (DIBP), 727
Diisocyanates, 1291
Diisopropylamine, 301, 1002–1003
1,3-Diketones, 1003–1004
Dimercaprol, 613
Dimethindene, 807
Dimethoxyethane, 631
2,3-Dimethyl-2-butene, 647*f*
Dimethylallyl pyrophosphate, 1269
1,2-Dimethylcyclohexane
chirality and symmetry, 210–211, 211*f*
stereoisomerism, 176–177, 177*f*, 189–190, 217
Dimethyl ether, 3, 588, 589
Dimethylformamide (DMF), 340
2,2-Dimethylpropane, 37
Dimethylsulfoxide (DMSO), 340, 616
Diol epoxides, 612
Diols, 393, 394, 546–547, 972
Dioxane, 589, 631, 933
Dipeptides, 1220–1221
Diphenhydramine, 806, 1060
Diphenyl ether, 33
Diphenylmethane, 807
Diphosphate linkages, 563
Dipivefrin, 969
Dipole-dipole interactions, 34–37, 37*f*
Dipole moments, 30–33
in halogenation reactions, 389, 389*f*
and IR signals, 646–648, 646*f*
molecular, 31–32, 31–32*f*, 32*t*
of solvents, 32*t*
Dipropyl ether, 589
Dirac, Paul, 14
Directed aldol addition, 1017
Directing effects
activating groups, 842–846
deactivating groups, 846–848
halogens, 848–849
multiple substituents, 853–855
substituents, 850–853
ortho-para directors, 844, 848–849
Disaccharides, 1174–1179
Disease(s)
acid reflux, 1054
Creutzfeldt–Jakob, 1227
heart, 1238, 1260–1261
and misfolded proteins, 1227
Parkinson's, 386, 417, 420, 837
Disiamylborane, 437
Disparlure, 599
Disrotatory rotation, 765, 765*f*, 767*f*
Dissolving metal reduction, 429–430
Distortionless enhancement by polarization transfer (DEPT), 724–727, 725*t*
Disubstituted alkenes, 301*f*, 1134
Disubstituted benzene rings, 791
directing effects, 854–855
steric effects, 855–856
in synthesis strategies, 859–863, 860*t*
Disubstituted cyclohexane, 172–176
Disulfide bridges, 1210–1211
Disulfide formation, 614
Divalent elements, 3
Divinylamine, 785
DMF (Dimethylformamide), 340
DMP (Dess–Martin periodinane) oxidation, 562
DMSO (Dimethylsulfoxide), 340, 616
DNA (Deoxyribonucleic acid), 1182–1184
cross-linking, 293–294, 293*f*
double-helix structure, 1184*f*
and ethylene oxide, 608
hydrogen bonding, 35, 35*f*, 1184*f*
nucleotides, 1183*f*
UV irradiation, 775
Docetaxel (Taxotere), 522
Doering, W. E., 1099
Domagk, Gerhard, 837
L-Dopa, 99, 386, 387, 420, 837, 1206
Dopamine, 386, 420, 837, 1055
Double bonds
bond-line structures, 12, 53
Cahn-Ingold-Prelog system, 197
interconversions, 442–444, 442*f*, 502, 515, 567*f*
moving, 502
sp^2 hybridization, 22–23
Doublet peak, 705–706, 705*f*, 817
Downfield, of NMR spectrum, 696–697
DPHP, 1018
(+)-Dragmacidin D, 81
Drugs (Pharmaceuticals)
see also Prodrugs
active metabolite, 603
anti-HIV, 138, 164
aromatic compounds as, 789
chain lengths, 534
chiral, 200–201
conformations, 164
design of, 50, 292–294, 534, 832, 837
epothilones, 600
ethers in, 586
fortunate side effects, 1060
halogenation, 832
impurity analysis, 717
interactions, 603
marine natural products, 56–57
mass spectrometry, 671
metabolism, 557–558, 603, 1056
molecular rigidity, 420
nomenclature, 151, 151*t*
pharmacophores, 62–63
pK_a and distribution, 103–104
polyether antibiotics, 1256–1257
receptor interactions, 38–39
safety, 188–189, 717
solubility, 40–41
synthesis, 1100
Dry cleaning, 40
D sugars, 1155–1156
Duryne, 580
Dyes, azo, 1082–1084
Dynemicin A, 1039

E

E1cb mechanism, 1013
E1 reactions, 317–319
alcohols, 329–330, 558
kinetic isotope effects, 343–344
mechanisms, 313–314
regiochemistry and stereochemistry, 318–319, 324*t*
S_N1 reactions vs., 313, 314*f*
E2 reactions, 296–299, 301–312, 324*t*
alcohols, 558–559
drawing products, 309–311
kinetic isotope effects, 343

kinetics, 298
predicting products, 305–307
regioselectivity, 301–303
stereoselectivity, 303
stereospecificity, 303–309, 307–309
substituted cyclohexanes, 307–309
substrate structures and rates, 298–299
tosylates, 327–328
E_a *see* Energy of activation
Eclipsed conformations, 158–162, 158*f*–162*f*
Econazole, 832
E conformations, 220–222, 1134
Ectocarpene, 358
Edman degradation, 1213–1214
EDTA (Ethylenediaminetetraacetate), 593
EI (Electron impact ionization), 659
Eijkman, Christiaan, 508
Elaidic acid, 448
Elasticity, 752
Elastomers, 752, 1294
Electrocyclic reactions, 753, 763–768
Electromagnetic radiation, 637*f*
Electromagnetic spectrum, 637, 638*f*, 771–775
Electron configurations, 16, 16*f*, 20*f*, 745*f*
Electron density, 14–15, 94–97, 257, 259
Electronegativity, 8–9, 9*t*
conjugate base stability, 105–106
inductive effects, 697–698, 697*f*
organometallic compounds, 1101–1102
periodicity, 105*f*
resonance structures, 73, 76
Electronic effect, 379, 380, 609–610, 890
Electron impact ionization (EI), 659
Electrons
18-electron rule, 1113
atomic orbitals, 16
bond-line structures, 63–64
in bonds, 4–5
delocalization, 65
lone pairs *see* Lone pairs of electrons
in polymerizations, 1282, 1284
in reactions, 1–2
spin, 16
Electrophiles, 254–255, 255*t*
carbonyl group protonations, 891
definition, 253
Friedel–Crafts alkylation, 839
halogenation reactions, 829
and Michael reactions, 1033
nucleophilic attack, 257
Electrophilic addition reactions, 746–751
Electrophilic aromatic substitution, 829–865
activating groups, 842–846
addition vs., 829
deactivating groups, 846–848
directing effects, 850–853
Friedel–Crafts acylation, 840–842
Friedel–Crafts alkylation, 838–840
halogenation, 829–833, 848–849
multiple substituents, 853–858
nitration, 835–837
regioselectivity, 857–858
sulfonation, 833–835
in synthesis strategies, 859–865, 859*f*
Electrophilicity, carboxylic acid derivatives, 950–951
Electrophilic sites, 1019, 1031
Electrophoresis, 1201–1203, 1201*f*
Electrospray ionization (ESI), 671
Electrostatic forces, 34
Electrostatic potential maps, 11
acetate ions, 942*f*
acetylene, 418, 418*f*
amides, 1063*f*
tert-butoxide, 124*f*
crown ethers, 590*f*
enols, 999*f*
ethoxide, 124*f*
methyl chlorides, 252*f*
methyl halides, 281*f*
methyllithium, 252*f*
pyridine, 804, 804*f*
pyrrole, 804, 804*f*
sulfur trioxide, 833*f*
trimethylamine, 1056*f*
Elimination-addition reactions
aromatic, 868–870
halogens, 402
hydroxide groups, 402–403
pi (π) bonds, 404–405
Elimination reactions, 461*f*, 463*f*
see also E1 reactions; E2 reactions
addition vs., 361–362
alcohols, 329–330, 558–559
alkyl halide reactivity, 281–282
alkyne preparation, 427
benzylic halides, 810
definition, 281
functional group transformations, 501–502
Hofmann, 1075–1077, 1076*f*
kinetic isotope effects, 343–344
pi bond relocation, 404–405
product predicton, 320–327
radicals in, 460, 461
reductive, 1115–1116, 1130
substitution vs., 320–327
in syntheses, 400
tosylates, 327–328
1,2-eliminations, 297
Enalapril, 57
Enamines
formation, 905–907
hydrolysis, 909–910
Stork synthesis, 1034–1036
Enantiomerically pure (term), 205
Enantiomeric excess, 205–206
Enantiomers, 193–195
see also Cahn-Ingold-Prelog system
amines as, 1059*f*
diastereomers vs., 207–210
Fischer projections, 215
halogenation reactions, 388
resolution, 218–219
Enantioselective addition reactions, 381
Enantioselective epoxidation, 603–605
Enantioselective synthesis, of L amino acids, 1206–1207
Enantiotopic protons, 690–691
Endergonic processes, 241, 241*f*
Endiandric acid, 786
Endo products, of Diels–Alder reactions, 758–759, 759*f*
Endothermic processes, 235, 236*f*, 251, 251*f*, 252
Enediols, 1169
Energy
see also Bond dissociation energy; Enthalpy; Gibbs free energy
alkane conformations, 161*f*, 162–163, 162*t*
bond, 25–26, 25*t*
conformational stability, 1241, 1241*f*
halogenation reactions, 467–469
internuclear distances, 5, 5*f*
kinetic, 246*f*
in muscles, 996, 1012
quantized, 14
radical chain reactions, 466
in reactions, 249–252
stabilization, 741, 795
vibrational states, 638, 638*f*, 640*f*
Energy of activation (E_a), 245–246, 245*f*, 246*f*, 953*f*, 954*f*
Energy diagrams
activation energy, 245*f*
1,2-addition vs. 1,4-addition, 749*f*
catalysts, 248*f*
catalytic hydrogenations, 383*f*
chiral catalysts, 386*f*, 604*f*
conjugated pi systems, 772*f*
Diels–Alder reactions, 754*f*, 759*f*
E1 and S_N1 reactions, 311*f*
E2 reactions, 303*f*
endothermic/exothermic processes, 235–236, 236*f*
enzymes, 1228*f*
exergonic/endergonic processes, 241–242, 241*f*, 242*f*
Gibbs free energy, 242–243, 243*f*
Hofmann eliminations, 1076*f*
hydrohalogenation reactions, 364–366, 365*f*
intermediates, 251*f*
ketone deprotonation, 1023*f*
kinetics vs. thermodynamics, 249*f*
nitration reactions, 844*f*, 846*f*, 848*f*
poisoned catalysts, 428*f*
radical chlorination vs. bromination, 469*f*
reading, 249–252
similar states, 251, 251*f*
S_N1 reactions, 311*f*
S_N2 reactions, 290*f*, 291*f*, 606*f*
thermodynamics vs. kinetics, 249*f*
transition states, 250*f*
Energy efficiency, 520
Enflurane, 589
Enolate ions, 437, 1022–1024, 1035, 1040
Enolates
alpha carbon reactions, 1000–1004
alpha halogenation, 1004–1009
drawing, 1000–1002
formation, 1002–1004
kinetic and thermodynamic, 1023
Enols
alpha carbon reactions, 997–999
alpha halogenation, 1004–1009
definition, 434
electrostatic potential map, 999*f*
ketone synthesis, 434–436
Enones, conjugated, 739
Enthalpy, 234–237
addition vs. elimination reactions, 361–362
change in, 154
Diels–Alder reactions, 755
halogenation reactions, 467, 468
radical additions, 485
Entropy, 237–239
addition vs. elimination reactions, 361–362
definition, 237
Diels–Alder reactions, 755
Gibbs free energy, 239–240
halogenation reactions, 467
increases in, 239*f*
and life, 242
radical additions, 485
Environmental industry, mass spectrometry in, 660
Enzymatic cleavage, 1214–1216
Enzymes, 248, 1228, 1228*f*, 1266
EPA ethyl ester, 57
Ephedrine, 199, 681
Epibatidine, 63
Epichlorohydrin, 11
Epimers, 1169
Epinephrine, 968
Epothilones, 600
Epoxidation reactions, 603–605, 605*f*
Epoxides
anti dihydroxylation, 393
carcinogenic, 612–613
enantioselective preparation of, 603–605
Grignard reagents, 619–622

Epoxides (*continued*)
nomenclature, 599–600
preparation, 600–605
ring-opening, 605–612
S_N2 mechanism, 606*f*
synthesis, 617–622
2,3-Epoxy-1-hexanol, 604
Equatorial position substituents, 169, 169*f*, 172*f*
Equatorial protons, 695
Equilibria, 242
acetylene acidity, 424
acid-base reactions, 97, 101–103
acid-catalyzed hydration, 372–373
chemical reactivity, 242–244
s-cis and *s-trans* conformers, 742*f*
pK_a, 101–103
tautomerization, 434–435
Equilibrium constant (K_{eq}), 97, 243, 243*t*
Equivalence, chemical, 689–695, 691*f*
Ergocalciferol (Vitamin D_2), 508, 770
Ergosterol, 770
Eribulin mesylate, 57
Erythromycin, 1186
L-Erythrose, 1156
Eschenmoser, Albert, 513
ESI (Electrospray ionization), 671
Esomeprazole, 1084
Essential amino acids, 1198
Esterification reactions, 965–966, 1020, 1248–1253
Esters, 947, 965–971
acetoacetic synthesis, 1024–1027
base-catalyzed hydrolysis, 1246
chromate, 560
from monosaccharides, 1167
Grignard reagents, 549–550
malonic ester synthesis, 1027–1029
mandelate, 534
nomenclature, 949
preparation, 965–966, 1167
as prodrugs, 968–969
reactivity, 966–971
reduction, 544–545
resonance structures, 645
Estradiol, 88, 177–178
Estragole, 580
Estrogens, 1261–1262, 1261*t*
ET-743 (Trabectedin), 57
Ethane
acetylene and ethylene vs., 418–419, 419*t*
bond length and energy, 25*t*
conformational analysis, 158–159, 159*f*
conjugate base, 424*f*
dihedral angles, 158*f*
eclipsed conformation, 158*f*, 159*f*
HDI of, 672–673
hybrid orbitals, 21, 21*f*
Newman projection, 156–157, 156*f*
physical properties, 533
pK_a value, 112*f*
radical bromination vs. chlorination, 468, 469*f*
staggered conformations, 158*f*, 159*f*
structure, 672
Ethanol, 3
acetic acid vs., 941
acidity of, 124
and ARIO prioritization scheme, 113
biological oxidation of, 565
boiling point, 589, 1059
in chemical synthesis, 403
commercial importance of, 533
constitutional isomers, 189
deprotonation, 535
ether from, 593
HDI of, 673
^{1}H NMR spectrum of, 713
hydrogen bonding in, 35, 35*f*
as nucleophile, 253
physical properties of, 38, 533
pK_a, 113*f*, 537
resonance, 107
solvent effects, 124
structure of, 38
Ethanolamine, 1254
Ethers
crown ethers, 590–592, 590*f*
definition, 586
from monosaccharides, 1167
nomenclature, 586–588
preparation, 593–596
reactivity, 596–599
structure and properties, 588–590
symmetrical, 587
synthesis reactions involving, 332
unsymmetrical, 586
Ethoxide, 124*f*
Ethoxide ion, 536*f*
Ethoxides, 253, 1252
Ethyl 3-ethoxypropanoate, 699
(2*Z*,6*E*)-3-Ethyl-7-methyldeca-2,6-dien-1-ol, 358–359
Ethyl acetoacetate, 1025–1027
Ethylamine, 673, 1059
Ethylbenzene, 700, 815–816, 816*f*
Ethyl bromide, 289
Ethyl chloroacetate, 709, 791*f*
Ethyl (2*E*,4*Z*)-2,4-decadienoate, 361
Ethyl diethoxyacetate, 1001
Ethylene, 784
acetylene and ethane vs., 418–419, 419*t*
bonding and antibonding MOs, 23*f*, 742*f*
bond length and energy, 25*t*
cationic polymerization, 1283
conjugate base, 424*f*
dihydroxylation, 392
from alkene metathesis, 1134, 1135
ground state, 762*f*
hybrid orbitals, 22–23, 22*f*, 23*f*
industrially important compounds, 361*f*
molecular orbitals, 762*f*
pK_a value, 112*f*, 113*f*
polymerization, 156
radical polymerization, 487–489, 489*t*
Ethylenediaminetetraacetate (EDTA), 593
Ethylene glycol
antifreeze, 547
dioxane synthesis, 627
from ethanol, 403
and PET, 1287, 1296
staggered conformations, 186
as a sterilizing agent, 609
Ethylene oxide, 599, 608, 609, 627, 1302
Ethyl estradiol, 1262
Ethyl group, splitting pattern for, 709, 709*f*, 710*f*
Ethylmethylamine, 35, 1060
Ethyl methyl ether, 4, 51
Ethynylestradiol, 419–420
Etorphine, 63
Eugenol, 793
Euler, Ulf von, 1263
Exaltolide, 1145
Excitation
of carbon, 20*f*
vibrational, 638–640
Excited states, 745, 771*f*
electronic configurations, 745*f*
Exergonic processes, 241, 241*f*, 242*f*
Exhaustive alkylation, 1066–1067
Exo product, of Diels–Alder reactions, 758–759, 759*f*
Exothermic processes, 235, 236*f*, 251, 251*f*
Expansion of gases, 238, 238*f*
Explosives, 240, 247, 660
Extraction, by solvents, 1062

F

Famotidine, 1086
Faraday, Michael, 793
Farnesene, 358, 1267
Farnesyl pyrophosphate, 1270
Fats
composition, 1247*t*
definition, 1243
partially hydrogenated, 387
trans, 387, 1245
Fatty acid residues, 1138, 1241
Fatty acids, 1241–1244, 1242*t*, 1254*f*
FDA (Food and Drug Administration), 188, 201
FDG (^{18}F-2-Fluorodeoxyglucose), 338–339
Fenn, John, 671
Fentanyl, 63
Ferrous gluconate, 593
Fexofenadine, 192, 808, 1056
Fibers (synthetic polymers), 1294
Fibrous proteins, 1227
FID (Free induction decay), 688
Fingerprint detection, 1194, 1202
Fingerprint region (IR spectrum), 642–643, 643*f*, 653*t*
Fingolimod, 74
Fire extinguishers, 454, 479
First-generation antihistamines, 808
First-order rate equation, 245, 245*f*, 311
Fischer, Emil, 214, 1172
Fischer esterification, 965–966
Fischer projections, 62, 214–216
Fishhook arrows, 430, 455, 461–462
Flagpole interactions, 167
Flavonoids, 538
Fleming, Alexander, 974, 1186
Flexibility
lipid bilayers, 1255–1256
molecular, 138
Fluocinonide, 898
9-Fluorenylmethyl chloroformate, 1218
Fluoride, 318
Fluoride ions, as nucleophiles, 295, 341
Fluorination, 471, 471*t*, 1081
Fluorine, 16*f*
^{18}F-2-Fluorodeoxyglucose (FDG), 338–339
2-Fluoroloxoprofen, 1026
4-Fluorophenylacetonitrile, 352
Fluoxetine, 285, 586, 1070–1071
Fluphenazine decanoate, 990
Flutamide, 737, 865
Fluvastatin, 1261
FM-200 (firefighting agent), 479
Fmoc protecting group, 1218, 1219
Food additives, 481–482
chelating agents, 592–593
Food coloring, 828, 834–835
Food and Drug Administration (FDA), 188, 201
for aromatic substitution reactions, 842–846
Force constant, 642
Forensics, mass spectrometry, 660
Formal charge(s)
bond-line structures, 58
bonds, 7–8
carbon, 58
lone pairs, 58–61
nitrogen, 60–61, 60*t*
oxidation states, 539*f*
oxygen, 58–60, 59*t*
resonance structures, 68–70, 76

Formaldehyde, 23, 540
  crossed aldol reaction, 1016–1017
  hydration, 892–893
  industrial importance, 885
  from methanol oxidation, 565
  prodrugs, 911
  from Wittig reactions, 920
Formic acid, 139, 540, 565, 1064–1065
Fourier transform nuclear mangetic resonance spectroscopy (FT-NMR), 687–688, 688*f*
FR901464 (antitumor agent), 1128
Fragmentation, 659
Fragments, mass spectrometry, 665–668
Free energy *see* Gibbs free energy
Free expansion of gases, 238, 238*f*
Free induction decay (FID), 688
Free-radical bromination *see* Radical bromination
Freons, 478, 479
Frequency, 637, 641, 687
Friedel, Charles, 838
Friedel–Crafts acylation, 840–842
Friedel–Crafts alkylation, 838–840
Frontalin, 897
Frontier orbitals, 745, 760–763, 761*f*–763*f*
Frost circles, 798–800, 800*f*, 802*f*
Fructose, 1154, 1156, 1166
FT-NMR *see* Fourier transform nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy
Fukui, Kenichi, 745
Fullerenes, 818–819
Functional groups
  see also specific functional groups...
  alkane additions, 490, 502
  bond-line structures, 55–57, 56*t*
  chemical shifts, 698*t*
  Grignard reagents, 619–622
  installing two adjacent, 617–619
  interconversion of, 567–571, 568*f*, 572–573, 922, 923*f*, 978–980, 978*f*
  IR spectroscopy, 640
  oxidation states, 568*f*
Functional group transformations, 567–571, 568*f*, 922, 923*f*, 978–980, 978*f*
  carbon–carbon bond formation, 572–573
  and synthesis, 501–505
Funk, Casimir, 508
Furanoses, 1166
Furans, 869, 881

G

GABA (γ-Amino butyric acid), 476–477, 1197–1198
Gabriel synthesis, 1067–1069
D-Galactose, 1177
Galanthamine, 563
Gas chromatograph-mass spectrometers, 670–671, 671*f*
Gases, free expansion of, 238, 238*f*
Gasoline, 154, 155
Gauche conformations, 161
Gauche interactions, 161, 161*f*, 171, 171*f*
Gauss (unit), 687
Geckos, 37
Geminal dihalides, 427
Generic names, 151
Geology, mass spectrometry in, 660
Geometry
  of alkynes, 418–419
  of amides, 951*f*
  of amines, 1059
  of peptide bonds, 1210–1211, 1224*f*
  of radicals, 455–456, 456*f*
  VSEPR theory, 26–30, 29*t*
Geosmin, 717
Geraniol, 358, 732
Geranyl pyrophosphate, 1269
Germinal dibromide, 514
Germinal protons, 707
GFP (Green fluorescent protein), 1234
GHB (γ-Hydroxybutyric acid), 715
Gibbs free energy
  addition vs. elimination reactions, 361–362
  chemical reactivity, 239–242
  and concentration, 243, 243*f*
  halogenation reactions, 467, 468
  and K_{eq}, 243, 244*t*
  radical additions, 485
Gilman, Henry, 1106
Gilman reagents, 961, 1105–1109
Glass, 1277, 1295
Glass transition temperature (T_g), 1293
Globular proteins, 1227
D-Glucaric acid, 1171
D-Glucitol, 1169–1170
Gluconate, 592–593
Gluconic acid, 125, 1170
D-Glucopyranose, 1162–1163, 1167–1170, 1181
β-D-Glucopyranose pentamethyl ether, 1167
β-D-Glucosamine, 1180
Glucose, 183, 1192
  as a cyclic hemiacetal, 899
  in drug metabolism, 557
  in glycolysis, 1012
  metabolism of, 242, 1012
  as a monosaccharide, 1154–1156
  pyranose forms, 1161–1163, 1162*f*
  radiolabeled, 338–339
  reduction, 1169
  and sucrose, 1177
  Wohl degradation, 1173
Glucuronic acid, 223
β-Glucuronide, 558
Glucuronyl transferase, 222–223
Glutamic acid, 482, 1201
Glutaraldehyde, 932
Glutathione, 482, 1033–1034, 1207*f*
Glutathione disulfide, 482
Glyceraldehyde, 1155, 1196
Glycerol, 1050, 1138, 1241
Glycine, 104, 482
Glycogen, 1180
Glycolic acid, 67
Glycolysis, 340
Glycosides, 1168, 1181–1185
Goodyear, Charles, 752
Graft copolymer, 1281
Graphite, 818
Green chemistry, 519–520
Green fluorescent protein (GFP), 1234
Grignard reagents, 1102–1104
  and acid chlorides, 961
  alcohol preparation, 547–552
  alcohol protection, 552–553
  and alcohols, 590
  and aldehydes/ketones, 913–914
  carbon–carbon bond formation, 571–573
  carboxylation, 945
  and esters, 970–971
  and ethers, 590
  and nitriles, 977
  reactions involving, 1105*t*
  regioselective functionalization, 619–622
Grignard, Victor, 546, 1102
Griselimycin derivatives, 185
Ground states, 745*f*, 762*f*, 771*f*
Growth point, 1289
Grubbs catalysts, 1133–1134
Grubbs, Robert, 1133
Guanidine, 1098
Guanine, 1182–1184, 1182*f*
N-Guanylhistamine, 1085

H

Halichondrin B, 57
Halides
  see also Organohalides
  acid, 947, 1006
  alkyl *see* Alkyl halides
  allylic, 318
  aryl, 281, 317–318, 318
  benzylic, 318, 810
  dihalides, 426, 427, 433, 439, 514–515
  methyl, 281*f*, 440, 921
  tetrahalides, 439
Haloalkanes, 284
Haloform reaction, 1007–1008
Halogen abstraction reactions, 460–462, 461*f*, 463*f*, 468
Halogenated organic compounds *see* Alkyl halides
Halogenation, 829–833
  see also Hydrohalogenation
  acid-catalyzed, 1005–1006
  alkenes, 388–390
  alkynes, 439
  allylic bromination, 474–477
  alpha, 1004–1009
  base-catalyzed, 1006–1008
  dehydrohalogenation, 297
  enols and enolates, 1004–1009
  methane chlorination, 463–466
  radical, 463–477, 489–490
  regioselectivity, 469–472, 471*t*
  stereochemistry, 472–474
  stereospecificity, 388
  thermodynamics, 467–469
Halogens
  aromatic substitution reactions, 848–849
  elimination–addition, 402
  HDI effects, 673
  substitution and elimination reactions, 281–282
Halohydrins, 390–391, 601
Halomon, 199
Halons, 479
Haloperidol, 969
Hammond postulate, 251–252, 470, 470*f*
Hangovers, 529
Haworth projections, 62, 177, 1163–1164
HBr *see* Hydrogen bromide
HCFCs (Hydrochlorofluorocarbons), 478
HCl *see* Hydrochloric acid
HDI (Hydrogen deficiency index), 672–675, 718
Head, of curved arrow, 65
Heartburn, 96–97
Heart disease, 1238, 1260–1261
Heat of combustion ($-\Delta H°$), 154, 154*f*
  alkenes, 301, 301*t*
  cycloalkanes, 165*f*, 165*t*
Heat of hydrogenation, 740–741, 741*f*
Heat of reaction, 235
Heck reaction, 1128–1133
  alkenes, 1129–1130
  catalysts, 1129
  general, 1128–1129
  mechanism, 1130–1131
  partners for, 1131–1133
Heck, Richard, 1123, 1128
Heeger, Alan, 421
Heisenberg, Werner, 14
Helium, electron configuration, 16*f*
Hell–Volhard–Zelinski reaction, 1007–1008
Heme, 1228
Hemiacetals
  acetal formation, 894–896, 895*f*
  cyclic, 1160, 1162*f*, 1166
  formation, 894*f*
  glycoside formation, 1168
  hydroxyaldehyde cyclization, 1160
  stable, 899

Hemoglobin, 1226*f*, 1228–1229
Henderson–Hasselbalch equation, 942–943
Heparin sodium, 717
1,1,1,2,3,3,3-Heptafluropropane (HFA-227), 478
Heptane, 38
Heroin, 62, 164
Heteroatoms, bond-line structures, 54
Heterocycles
  aromatic, 803–804
  definition, 1084
  nitrogen, 1084–1087
Heterogeneous catalysts, 385
Heterolytic bond cleavage, 234, 234*f*, 455*f*, 540
Hexanal, 526
Hexane, 35, 123–124
1,6-Hexanediamine, 1287
2,5-Hexanedione, 527
Hexanoic acid, 939
3-Hexanol, 38
Hexatrienes, 744–745, 744*f*, 745*f*
trans-2-Hexen-1-ol, 604
(*E*)-2-Hexenal, 527
1-Hexene, 673
(*Z*)-Hexenyl acetate, 527
Hexyl butanoate, 572
Hexylresorcinol, 534
HFAs (Hydrofluoroalkanes), 478
HFCs (Hydrofluorocarbons), 479
Highest occupied molecular orbital (HOMO), 19, 745
  conjugated dienes, 765*f*, 767*f*
  conjugated trienes, 764*f*, 766*f*
  molecular orbital theory, 760–763, 761*f*, 762*f*
  photochemical electrocyclic reactions, 766–767
  S_N2 reactions, 288
  thermal electrocyclic reactions, 764–765
High-resolution mass spectrometry, 668–670
HI (Hydrogen iodide), 282, 485
Histamine, 82–83, 1084
Histidine, 200
Histrionicotoxins, 419
HIV *see* Human immunodeficiency virus
HMX, 91
^{1}H NMR spectroscopy, 687–720
  acquiring spectra, 687–688
  aldehydes and ketones, 926–927
  analyzing spectra, 718–720
  aromatic compounds, 816–817
  carboxylic acids and derivatives, 984
  chemical shifts, 695–701
  compound analysis, 715–717
  drawing spectra, 713–715
  impurity analysis, 717
  multiplicities of signals, 705–713
  number of signals, 689–695
  signal integration, 702–705
  spectral characteristics, 688–689
Hodgkin, Dorothy Crowfoot, 512
Hoffmann, Roald, 513, 761, 764
Hofmann elimination, 1075–1077, 1076*f*
Hofmann product, 301, 402
Holton, Robert, 522
HOMO *see* Highest occupied molecular orbital
Homogeneous catalysts, 385
Homolytic bond cleavage, 539–540
  enthalpy, 234, 234*f*
  radical, 455*f*, 460, 461, 461*f*, 463*f*
Homopolymers, 1280
Homosalate, 775
Homotopic protons, 689
Hooke's law, 641–643
Hopkins, Gowland, 507
Hormones, 1261–1262
Horner–Wadsworth–Emmons (HWE) reaction, 919–921
Host-guest chemistry, 591
H_2-receptor antagonists, 1085–1086
H_2S (Hydrogen sulfide), 106
H_2SO_4 (Sulfuric acid), 124, 894
Hückel's rule, 797–800
Hughes, Edward D., 285–287
Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), 138, 164
Hund's rule, 16
HWE *see* Horner–Wadsworth–Emmons reaction
Hybridization, IR signals, 643–644
Hybridized atomic orbitals, 20–26
  acetylene acidity, 424
  acidity, 111–113
  bond strengths and lengths, 25
  double bonds, 22–23
  methane, 20–22
  relative shapes, 111, 111*f*
  state identification, 25
  triple bonds, 23–24
  VSEPR theory, 26–30
Hydrates, 892–893
Hydration reactions, 371
  acid-catalyzed *see* Acid-catalyzed hydration
  alkenes, 371–382, 521
  alkynes, 433–439
  base-catalyzed, 892
  hydroboration-oxidation, 376–382
  oxygen nucleophiles, 892–893
  oxymercuration-demercuration, 375–376
  rules for drawing, 893
Hydrazone, 903
Hydride agents, 912–913, 970
Hydride ions, 259, 321
Hydride reductions, 542–546
  lithium aluminum hydride, 543–545
  sodium borohydride, 542–543
Hydride shifts
  carbocation rearrangements, 260, 266, 266*f*
  hydrohalogenation reaction, 368
  S_N1 reactions, 316
Hydroboration-oxidation
  alcohol preparation, 538
  alkenes, 376–382
  alkynes, 437–438
  electronic effects, 378–379
  regioselectivity, 378–379
  stereospecificity, 380–382
  steric effects, 379
Hydrocarbons
  see also Alkanes
  boiling points, 36–37, 36*t*
  cracking, 155, 489
  polycyclic aromatic, 806, 806*t*
  saturated, 139
Hydrochloric acid (HCl), 126, 368–369, 485
Hydrochlorofluorocarbons (HCFCs), 478
Hydrocracking, 489
Hydrofluoroalkanes (HFAs), 478
Hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), 479
Hydrogen
  see also Hydrogenation reactions
  alcohol deprotonations, 535
  bond-line structures, 12
  carbon–hydrogen bonds, 648
  electron configuration, 16*f*
  energy and internuclear distance, 5, 5*f*
  overlapping atomic orbitals, 18, 18*f*
Hydrogen abstraction, 461*f*, 463*f*
  in autooxidation, 480
  radicals in, 460
  selectivity of, 469, 469*f*
Hydrogenation reactions
  aromatic compounds, 813
  asymmetric catalytic, 385–388
  catalytic *see* Catalytic hydrogenation
  heat of, 740–741, 741*f*
  triglycerides, 1244–1245
Hydrogen bonding, 34–35, 34–35*f*, 36*f*
  IR spectra, 649–651
Hydrogen bromide (HBr), 363–364, 483–487
  radical addition, 432–433
Hydrogen deficiency index (HDI), 672–675, 718
Hydrogen iodide (HI), 282, 485
Hydrogen nucleophiles, 912–913
Hydrogenolysis, 1111
Hydrogen sulfide (H_2S), 106
Hydrohalogenation
  alkenes, 363–370
  alkynes, 431–433
  carbocation rearrangements, 368–369
  cationic polymerization of polystyrene, 370
  mechanisms, 364–367
  regioselectivity, 363–364, 366
  stereochemistry, 367–368, 367*f*
Hydrolysis
  acetals, 908–911
  acid-catalyzed, 968, 973, 976
  acid chlorides, 958–959
  amides, 973–974
  base-catalyzed *see* Base-catalyzed hydrolysis
  defined, 908
  esters, 968
  imines and enamines, 909–911
  nitriles, 944, 976–977
  of triglycerides, 1246–1248
Hydroperoxides, 480–481, 494, 598, 1245
Hydrophilic region, 40*f*
  of alcohols, 533, 533*f*
  of soaps, 967
  and solubility, 40
Hydrophobic region, 40*f*
  of alcohols, 533–534, 533*f*
  of soaps, 967
  and solubility, 40
Hydroquinone, 103, 466, 566
Hydroxide
  acid-base reactions, 95
  as leaving group, 282, 501
  leveling effect, 123
  nucleophilicity, 294
  S_N2 reactions, 288
Hydroxide groups, movement of, 402
Hydroxyaldehydes, 1160–1161
para-Hydroxybenzoic acid, 135
γ-Hydroxybutyric acid (GHB), 715
β-Hydroxy carboxylic acid, 1296
Hydroxyl group, 530, 534–535
Hydroxymethylfurfural, 60
Hyperconjugation, 259, 259*f*

I

Ibuprofen, 201, 1265
Icosane, 662*f*, 666, 666*f*
Ignarro, Louis, 247
Imidazole, 1085
Imines, 277
  formation, 900–903, 900*f*, 901*f*
  hydrolysis, 909, 910
Iminium ion, 277
Impurity analysis, proton NMR, 717
Induction
  acidity, 109–111
  alcohol acidity, 536
  NMR spectroscopy, 697–699, 697*f*
  nucleophilic addition reactions, 889
  polar covalent bonds, 8–14
Infectious proteins, 1227
Infrared (IR) signals
  intensities, 646–648
  shapes, 648–652, 649*f*
  wavenumbers, 641–646

Infrared (IR) spectrometers, 641
absorption spectra, 641
and light/matter in spectroscopy, 637–639
Infrared (IR) spectroscopy, 637–658
aldehydes and ketones, 926, 926*f*
amines, 1087
analyzing spectra, 652–656
aromatic compounds, 815–816, 816*t*
carboxylic acids and derivatives, 984
compound analysis, 657–658
diagnostic region, 642, 643*f*, 652–656, 653*t*, 654*f*
fingerprint region, 642–643, 643*f*, 653*t*
functional group identification, 640
intensities, 646–648
Infrared (IR) spectrum
analyzing, 652–656
diagnostic region of, 642, 643*f*
fingerprint region of, 642–643, 643*f*
intensity of signals, 646–648
shape of signals, 648–652
vibrational excitation, 638–640
wavenumber of signals, 641–646
Infrared (IR) thermal imaging, 640
Ingold, Christopher, Sir, 285–287
Inhalation anesthetics, 166, 589–590
Inhibitors
COX-2, 1265–1266
protease, 216
radical, 466
Initiation steps, 463, 463*f*
addition of HBr, 484
autooxidation, 480, 598
chlorination, 464
polymerization, 488
Initiators, radical, 466
Inorganic compounds, 2
Insect pheromones, 358–359
Insulin, 1224*f*, 1225*f*
Integration, of ^{1}H NMR signals, 702–705
Intensities, IR signals, 646–648, 646*f*
Interference, 17–18, 17–18*f*
Intermediates
alkene metathesis, 1135
alpha carbon reactions, 997–1004
aromatic substitution reactions, 870
energy of, 250–251, 251*f*
ester reduction, 544–545
HBr additions, 484
hydrohalogenation, 431
tetrahedral, 890, 952
Intermolecular forces, 33–39
Internal alkynes, 422
acid-catalyzed hydration, 436
International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry (IUPAC), 139–140, 284, 360–361
Internuclear distances, 5, 5*f*
Inthomycin C, 768
Intramolecular aldol reactions, 1019
Intramolecular Claisen condensations, 1021
Intramolecular proton transfers, 96
Inversion of configuration, 287
Iodide, 282, 318
(Iodomethyl)zinc iodide, 1109–1111
Ionic bonds, 9, 9*f*, 1102
Ionic reactions
see also specific reactions
definition, 93
nucleophiles and electrophiles in, 252–255
Ionization
alkyl halides, 311–313
desorption electrospray, 660
electron impact, 659
electrospray, 671
percent, 103
solvent effects, 341–342
unimolecular reactions, 317–318
Ionophores, 1256–1257
Ions
see also Anions; Carbocations; Cations; *specific ions*
alkoxide, 535
aromatic, 802
aryldiazonium, 1080–1084
carboxylate, 1199
counterions, 125–126
enolate, 437, 1022–1024, 1035, 1040
molecular, 659, 667
nitrosonium, 1078
oxonium, 372
parent, 659
sizes of, 106*f*
IR *see* Infrared
Iron, chelation, 592–593
Iron tribromide, 830
Irreversible reaction arrows, 268–270
Isobutylene, 34, 1283
Isocoumarin, 505
Isocyanate, 1290
Isoelectric point (pI), amino acids, 1201
Isoflurane, 589
Isolated dienes, 739, 739*f*
Isomers
see also cis-trans isomerism; Stereoisomerism
atropisomers, 217–218
categories, 189
constitutional *see* Constitutional isomers
definition, 189
meta, 791, 843–849
ortho, 791, 843–849
para, 791, 843–849
ortho isomers, 791
anisole nitration, 845–846
chlorobenzene nitration, 849
nitrobenzene nitration, 847–848
toluene nitration, 843–844
para isomers, 791
anisole nitration, 845–846
chlorobenzene nitration, 849
nitrobenzene nitration, 847–848
toluene nitration, 843–844
Isoniazid, 84
Isopentenyl pyrophosphate, 1269
Isopentyl acetate, 947
Isoprene, 732, 752, 1266–1269
Isopropanol (2-Propanol), 51, 533, 643*f*
Isopropyl acetate, 714
Isopropyl group, 144, 710, 710*f*
Isoroquefortine C, 787
Isotactic (term), 1292
Isotopes, mass spectrometry, 662–664
Isotretinoin, 939
IUPAC *see* International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry
Ixabepilone (Ixempra), 195, 600

J

Jackson, Michael, 40
cis-Jasmone, 739
(+)-Jatrophone, 1117
Jaundice, neonatal, 222–223
Johnson, Ben, 1263
Johnson, W. S., 91
Juvabione, 981
J value *see* Coupling constant

K

K_a, definition, 97
Kanamycin B, 1182
Kekulé, August, 3, 793
K_{eq} *see* Equilibrium constant
Kerosene, 154
Ketamine, 194
Keto-enol tautomerization, 434–436
Ketohexoses, 1155
Ketones, 884, 924–931
acid-catalyzed halogenation, 1005–1006
Baeyer–Villiger oxidation, 921–922
base-catalyzed halogenation, 1006–1008
base reactions, 1004*f*
and carbon nucleophiles, 913–921
deprotonation, 1023*f*
fragmentation, 667
from acid-catalyzed hydration, 434–436, 438
from alcohols, 559, 562
from enols, 434–436
Grignard reagents, 548–549
and hydrogen nucleophiles, 912–913
IR spectroscopy, 926
and nitrogen nucleophiles, 900–908
NMR spectroscopy, 926–927
nomenclature, 887–888
nucleophilic addition reactions, 889–892
and oxygen nucleophiles, 892–899
pK_a values, 1002, 1002*t*
preparation, 888, 889*t*
protonation, 258
reduction, 542–544
resonance structures, 644–645
spectroscopic analysis, 925–927
structure and uses, 885
and sulfur nucleophiles, 911–912
in synthesis strategies, 922–925
Ketoses
aldoses vs., 1155
configurations, 1158–1159, 1159*f*
oxidation, 1170–1171
Kevlar, 972, 1289
Kiliani–Fischer synthesis, 1172–1173
Kiliani, Heinrich, 1172
Kinetic energy, 246*f*
Kinetic enolates, 1023
Kinetic isotope effects, 343–344
Kinetics
conjugated pi systems, 749–751
E2 reactions, 298
hydrohalogenation reaction, 432
and reactivity, 244–248
S_N1 and E1 reactions, 317–318
S_N2 reactions, 286–292, 289–292
thermodynamics vs., 249–250
Kishner, N. M., 907
Klarer, Joseph, 837
Knocking, 155
Knowles, William S., 385–386, 604
Kodel, 1299
k (rate constant), 244–246
Kroto, Harold, 818
Kumepaloxane, 199, 285

L

Labile (term), 713
β-Lactamase, 975
Lactic acid, 125, 939, 1177
Lactones, 922
Lactose, 1176
Lactose intolerance, 1177
LAH *see* Lithium aluminum hydride
Lambda max (λ_{max}), 772–775, 773*t*
Lansoprazole, 789
Lapworth, Arthur, 914
(3*E*)-Laureatin, 285
LDA (Lithium diisopropylamide), 1003, 1017
L-Dopa, 99, 386, 387, 420, 837, 1206
Lead modification, 62
Leavening agents, 93, 125

Leaving groups
alcohol substitutions, 554, 555
aromatic substitution reactions, 870
arrow-pushing patterns, 257–258
carbanions as, 914
E2 reactions, 313–314
elimination reactions, 282, 282*t*, 298, 329, 1075
hydrides as, 913
hydroxides as, 402, 501
nucleophilic acyl substitution, 952, 955
reversible/irreversible reaction arrows, 269
S_N1 reactions, 311–312, 312–313
S_N2 reactions, 286
Le Châtelier's principle, 372, 896, 966
Lecithins, 1240, 1254
Lehn, Jean-Marie, 591
Lescol (Fluvastatin), 1261
Leucine enkephalin, 1211
Leukotrienes, 1266
Leustroducsin B, 1002
Leveling effect, 123–124
Levitation, in magnetic field, 684
Levorotatory, 204
Lewis acids, 126–128
Lewis bases, 126–128
Lewis, Gilbert, 5
Lewis structures, 5–8, 51–52
Lexan, 1288
Lidocaine, 1094
Life, and entropy, 242
Ligands, 1112
Light
and matter, 638–639
nature of, 637–638
plane-polarized, 202, 202*f*
unpolarized, 202*f*
as waves, 202*f*
Lightning, 1–2
Limonene, 358, 1240, 1275
Linamarin, 916
Lindane, 174, 284
Lind, James, 507
Lindlar's catalyst, 428
Linear geometry, 28, 28*f*, 33
Linear polymers, 1292
Lipid bilayers, 1254–1257, 1254*f*
Lipids, 1238–1273
classifications, 1239–1240, 1239*f*
phospholipids, 1253–1257, 1254*f*
prostaglandins, 1263–1266
simple and complex, 1239–1240
steroids, 1257–1263
terpenes, 1266–1270
triglyceride reactions, 1244–1253
triglycerides, 1241–1253
waxes, 1240
Lipitor (Atorvastatin), 789, 1261
Lipophilic surfaces, 592
Lithium, 16*f*, 1102
Lithium aluminum hydride (LAH), 543–546, 960, 970
Lithium dialkyl cuprates, 961, 1105–1109, 1106*t*
Lithium diisopropylamide (LDA), 1003, 1017
Lithium tri(*t*-butoxy) aluminum hydride, 960
Living polymers, 1285
Localized lone pairs, 82–83
Locant, 146
Location of NMR signals, 689
London dispersion forces, 36
London, Fritz, 36
Lone pairs of electrons, 6
allylic, 70–71
aromaticity, 805–806
bond-line structures, 58–61
curved-arrow notation, 263
delocalized, 81–83
localized, 82–83
resonance structures, 70–73, 81–83
Longifolene, 519
Lorazepam, 948
Lovastatin, 1260
Lowest unoccupied molecular orbital (LUMO), 19, 19*f*
as frontier orbital, 745
molecular orbital theory, 760–763, 761*f*, 762*f*
S_N2 reactions, 287*f*, 288
LSD *see* Lysergic acid diethylamide
L-sugars, 1155–1156
Luciferin, 822
Lukeran (Chlorambucil), 294
LUMO *see* Lowest unoccupied molecular orbital
Lycopene, 776, 1267
Lysergic acid diethylamide (LSD), 1094
Lysine, 1201

M

$(M+1)^{+\bullet}$ peak (mass spectrometry), 662–664
$(M+2)^{+\bullet}$ peak (mass spectrometry), 664–665
$(M)^{+\bullet}$ peak (mass spectrometry), 661–662
M–18 signal, 667
Maalox, 96
MacDiamid, Alan, 421
McIntire, Ray, 370
McLafferty rearrangement, 667
Macrolide antibiotics, 1186
Magnesium, carbon bonds with, 1102
Magnesium hydroxide, 96
Magnetic fields, 685*f*
energy gap of spin states, 686*f*
induced, 686*f*, 700*f*
levitation in, 684
nuclear resonance, 685–686
strength of, 687
Magnetic moment, 685, 685*f*, 686*f*
Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), 727
Major products
Diels–Alder reactions, 760
electrophilic additions to conjugated dienes, 750–751
of syntheses, 515
Malonic acid, 989
Malonic ester synthesis, 1027–1029
Maltose, 1174
Mandelate esters, 534
D-Mannose, 1169, 1173
Marine natural products (MNPs), 56–57
Markovnikov additions, 363, 364
acid-catalyzed hydration as, 371, 433
halogens, 485
hydrogen bromide, 483
hydrohalogenation, 431
mechanism, 364–367
oxymercuration-demercuration, 375–376
Markovnikov, Vladimir, 363
Markovnikov vs. *anti*-Markovnikov addition, 379*f*
Mass spectra, 659
Mass spectrometers, 658–659, 659*f*
Mass spectrometry, 658–675
amines, 1088
analysis, 665–668
common fragments, 667*t*
concepts, 658–661
gas chromatography combined, 670–671
high-resolution, 668–670
and hydrogen deficiency index, 672–675
large biomolecules, 671
$(M+1)^{+\bullet}$ peak, 662–664
$(M+2)^{+\bullet}$ peak, 664–665
$(M)^{+\bullet}$ peak, 661–662
medical applications, 671–672
Mass-to-charge ratio, 659
Matter
and light, 638–639
nature of, 638
structural theory, 3–4
Maytansine, 925
MCPBA *see meta*-Chloroperoxybenzoic acid
Mechlorethamine, 293
Meclizine, 808
Medicine
see also Drugs
chelating agents, 592–593
impurity analysis, 17
magnetic resonance imaging, 727
mass spectrometry, 671–672
Meisenheimer complexes, 866
Melatonin, 88, 586, 948
Melphalan, 294
Melt transition temperature (T_m), 1293
Menthol, 183, 1267
Menthyl chloride, 308–309
Meperidine (Demerol), 63
Mercapto group, 613
Mercuric acetate, 375
Mercuric cation, 375
Mercurinium ions, 375–376, 389, 394, 433–434
Merrifield, R. Bruce, 1221, 1222
Merrifield synthesis, 1221–1223
meso compounds, 212–214, 383–384
Mestranol, 192
Mesylates, 327–328
Metabolic analysis, newborns, 671
Metabolism
of drugs, 557–558, 603, 1056
of glucose, 242, 340
of morphine, 558, 1033–1034
meta directors, 848
Metaformaldehyde, 936
meta isomers, 791
anisole nitration, 845–846
chlorobenzene nitration, 849
nitrobenzene nitration, 847–848
toluene nitration, 843–844
Metal alkylidenes, 1133
Metal catalysts, 383, 383*f*
Metathesis, 1133–1139
Methadone, 62, 164, 1094
Methandrostenolone, 1263
Methane
chlorination, 463–466
geometry, 20*f*, 26–27, 26*f*
mass spectrum, 659–661, 660*f*
oxidation states, 540
sp^3-hybridized orbitals, 20–21, 21*f*
structure and HDI of, 672
Methanol
acid-base reactions, 95
biological oxidations, 565
bond angles, 588
oxidation states, 540
partial charges, 10
physical properties, 533
Methapyrilene, 807
Methdilazine, 807
Methenamine, 911
Methine groups, 698
Methionine, 296
Methionine enkephalin, 1211, 1234
Methoxide, 95
Methoxymethane, 35, 189
(*S*)-5-Methoxy-2-[(4-methoxy-3,5-dimethylpyridin-2-yl)methylsulfinyl]-3*H*-benzoimidazole, 151
7-Methyl-3-octyne, 441
Methyl 4-methylpentanoate, 527
Methylation, 295–296
4-Methylbenzylidene camphor, 775
Methyl bromide, 284, 288, 288*f*, 291, 291*f*
3-Methylbutanal, 527

2-Methylbutane, 37
Methyl butanoate, 947
Methyl chloride, 252–253, 252*f*, 463–465, 1101
Methyl-α-cyanoacrylate, 1285
Methylcyclohexane, 171
5-Methylcyclopentadiene, 458
Methylene chloride, 464, 465, 688
Methylene chloride-d_2, 688
Methylene groups, 698
Methyl D-glucopyranoside, 1168
Methyl groups, 161–162, 161*f*, 698
Methyl halides, 281*f*, 440, 921
2-Methylheptadecane, 143
Methyl iodide, 295–296
Methyl ketones, 436, 438
Methyllithium, 252–253, 252*f*, 1101
N-Methylmorpholine *N*-oxide (NMO), 395
Methyl phenyl sulfide, 616
Methyl phenyl sulfone, 616
Methyl phenyl sulfoxide, 616
Methyl radicals, 456
Methyl shifts
  arrow-pushing patterns, 260
  carbocation rearrangements, 266, 266*f*
  S_N1 reactions, 316
Methyl substrates, S_N2 reactions with, 291, 291*f*
N-Methylwelwitindolinone C isothiocyanate, 872
Metiamide, 1086
Mevacor (Lovastatin), 1260
Micelles, 40, 40*f*, 1248
Michael acceptors, 1032–1033, 1033*t*, 1035, 1284
Michael donors, 1032–1035, 1033*t*, 1284
Michael reactions, 1031–1034
Microwave ovens, 639
MIDA boronates, 1151
Mietzsch, Fritz, 837
Migratory aptitude, 922
Miscible (term), 533
Mitchell, Peter, 567
Mixed (crossed) aldol reactions, 1016–1018, 1016*f*
Mixtures, racemic, 205, 473
MNPs (Marine natural products), 56–57
Moderate activators, 850
Moderate deactivators, 851
Molar absorptivity, 772
Molecular cages, 798
Molecular chirality, 191–193
Molecular dipole moments, 31–32, 31–32*f*, 32*t*
Molecular flexibility, 138
Molecular formulae
  definition, 51
  from high-resolution mass spectrometry, 669–670
  from mass spectra, 663–664
Molecular ions, 659, 667
Molecular model sets, 12
Molecular orbitals (MOs), 18–19
  see also Antibonding molecular orbitals; Bonding molecular orbitals
  acidity, 111–113
  benzene, 797*f*
  bond-line structures, 64
  1,3-butadiene, 741*f*–743*f*, 743–744
  conjugated pi systems, 742–745
  cycloadditions, 760–763
  cyclooctatetraene, 799*f*
  frontier orbitals, 745, 760–763, 761*f*–763*f*
  Frost circles, 798–800
  hexatriene, 744–745, 744*f*
  pi (π) bonds, 796*f*
  S_N2 reactions, 288
  theory, 18–19
Molecular polarity, 30–33
Molecular representations, 50–91
  bond-line structures, 52–62, 61–63
  condensed/partially condensed, 51–52
  curved arrow notation, 65–68
  drawing, 70–75
  formal charges, 58, 68–70
  functional groups, 55–57
  lone pairs, 58–61, 81–83
  relative importance of, 75–78
  resonance structures, 63–83
  three-dimensional bond-line structures, 61–63
Molecular rigidity, of drugs, 420
Molecular structure
  degree of unsaturation, 672–675
  from DEPT ^{13}C NMR spectra, 725–727
  from ^{1}H NMR spectra, 718–720
  and physical properties, 35–38
Molecular weight, from mass spectrum, 661
Molecules
  see also Molecular representations
  constitutional isomers, 3–4
  Lewis structures, 6–8
  retrosynthetic analysis, 335–338
  rotating, 196–198
Molina, Mario, 478
Monensin, 592, 1256
Monocarboxylic acids, 939–940
Monomers, 1278, 1288–1290
Monosaccharides
  aldoses, 1157–1158
  classification, 1154–1157
  configurations, 1157–1159, 1158*f*
  cyclic structures, 1160–1167
  ketoses, 1158–1159
  reactions, 1167–1174
Monosubstituted alkenes, 301*f*, 1134
Monosubstituted benzene rings, 790–791, 859
Monosubstituted cyclohexane, 170–172
Monovalent elements, 3
Morphine, 1055
  conformation, 164
  ether group, 586
  metabolism, 558, 1033–1034
  nomenclature, 139
  pharmacore, 62–63
MOs *see* Molecular orbitals
MRI (Magnetic resonance imaging), 727
MTBE (*tert*-Butyl methyl ether), 594, 702–703
Multiplets, 711
Multiplicity (^{1}H NMR signals), 705–713
  complex splitting, 710–712, 711*f*
  coupling, 705–708, 707*t*
  coupling constants, 708–709
  pattern recognition, 709–710
  protons without coupling constants, 713
Multi-step synthesis, 514–519
Muscalure, 358
Muscles, energy in, 996, 1012
Mustard gas, 293
Mutarotation, 1163
Mylanta, 96
Myoglobin, 1226*f*
Myrcene, 1267

N

n+1 rule, 706
NAC (*N*-Acetylcysteine), 482
NAD^+, 564, 564*f*
NADH, 563–564, 564*f*
Nakanishi, Koji, 778
Nandrolone, 1263
Nanotubes, 818–819
Naphthalene, 790, 826
Naproxen, 201, 1265
Naringenin, 538
Natural rubber, 752
Natural sources
  alkenes, 358–359
  alkynes, 419–420
  amino acids, 1196–1198, 1197*t*
  antioxidants, 483
  carboxylic acid derivatives, 947
  cyanohydrin derivatives, 916–917
  epoxides, 599
  ethers, 586
NBS (*N*-Bromosuccinimide), 475
Neat samples, 641
Negative charge(s), atomic, 105–107
Negishi coupling, 1123–1128
  mechanism, 1125
  organozinc reagent preparation, 1125
  products of, 1126–1128
  reagents and scope for, 1123–1124
  in synthesis, 1126
Negishi, Ei-ichi, 1123
Nemotin, 25
Neomenthyl chloride, 308–309
Neomycin C, 1182
Neon, electron configuration, 16*f*
Neonatal jaundice, 222–223
Neopentane, 37
Neopentyl bromide, 291, 316
Neoprene (*trans*-1,4-Polychloroprene), 752
Neosporin, 1153
Neotame, 1178
Newman projections, 156–158
Newton, Isaac, Sir, 777
Nexium (Esomeprazole), 1084
Nicolaou, Kyriacos C., 522, 581
Nicotine, 45, 84, 101, 194, 1055
Night vision goggles, 636
Ninhydrin, 1202
Nitration reactions
  anisole, 844–846, 845*f*, 846*f*
  benzene, 835–836
  nitrobenzene, 846–848, 847*f*, 848*f*
  toluene, 842–844, 843*f*
Nitric acid, 1078
Nitriles, 975–977
  α-amino, 1205–1206
  carboxylic acids from, 658
  hydrolysis, 944
  nomenclature, 949
  preparation, 975–976
  reactions of, 976–977
  structure of, 947
2-Nitroaniline, 863
Nitrobenzene, 846–848, 847*f*, 848*f*
Nitroethylene, 784
Nitrogen
  curved-arrow notation, 264
  electron configuration, 16, 16*f*
  HDI of compounds, 673
  lone pairs, 60–61, 60*t*
Nitrogen heterocycles, 1084–1087
Nitrogen mustard (Mechlorethamine), 293
Nitrogen nucleophiles, 900–908
Nitrogen rule, 661
Nitroglycerin, 240, 247
Nitro groups, 73, 839
Nitronium ions, 835
1-Nitropropane, 711, 711*f*
N-Nitrosamines, 1078–1079
Nitrosobenzene, 880
N-Nitrosodimethylamine, 1079
Nitrosonium ions, 1078
N-Nitrosonornicotine, 1079
N-Nitrosopyrrolidine, 1079
Nitrous acid, 1078–1080
NMO (*N*-Methylmorpholine *N*-oxide), 395
NMR *see* Nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy
Nobel, Alfred, 247
Nobel, Emil, 247

Nodes of orbitals, 15
Nomenclature
alcohols, 530–531
aldehydes, 886
alkanes, 139–151
alkenes, 359–361
alkyl halides, 283–285
alkynes, 421–423
amines, 1056–1058
benzene derivatives, 790–793
bicyclic compounds, 148–150
carboxylic acid derivatives, 947–950
carboxylic acids, 939–940
chiral compounds, 200
chirality centers, 191
common names, 144
diols, 546
drugs, 151, 151*t*
epoxides, 599
ethers, 586–588
ketones, 887
parent chains, 140–141
phenols, 532
substituents, 142–145
sulfides, 615
synthetic polymers, 1278–1280
thiols, 613
Nonactin, 592, 1256
Nonaromatic (term), 801
Nonbonding molecular orbitals
allylic carbocations, 64, 64*f*
theory, 798, 799
Nonpolar groups, 967, 1248, 1249
Nonsedating antihistamines, 806–808
Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), 1265–1266
Nonsuperimposable images, 191, 191*f*
Nootkatone, 274
Noradrenaline, 296, 1055
Norbornane, 178
Norethindrone, 1262
Norvasc (Amlodipine), 789
Noyori, Ryoji, 387–388, 604
NSAIDs *see* Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs
N terminus, of peptide chains, 1208, 1208*f*
Nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy (NMR), 684–737
acquiring spectra, 687–688, 721
aldehydes and ketones, 926–927
amines, 1088
analyzing spectra, 718–720
aromatic compounds, 816–817
carboxylic acids and derivatives, 984
characteristics of spectra, 688–689
chemical shifts, 695–701, 721–723
compound identification, 715–717
^{13}C spectroscopy, 721–727
DEPT, 724–727
drawing spectra, 713–715
^{1}H spectroscopy, 687–720
impurity analysis, 717
integration of signals, 702–705
magnetic resonance imaging, 727
multiplicity of signals, 705–713
number of signals, 689–695
principles, 685–687
Nuclear resonance, 686
Nuclear spin, 685
Nucleophiles, 253–254, 255*t*
ambident, 1000
carbon, 913–921
definition, 253
epoxide ring opening, 605–608
halogenation reactions, 829
hydrogen, 912–913
intramolecular aldol reactions, 1019
nitrogen, 900–908
organometallic compounds, 1104
oxygen, 892–899
pi bonds, 254, 357–358
sulfur, 911–912
Nucleophilic acyl substitution, 938, 951–957
Nucleophilic addition reactions, 889–921
carbon nucleophiles, 913–921
hydrogen nucleophiles, 912–913
nitrogen nucleophiles, 900–908
oxygen nucleophiles, 892–899
sulfur nucleophiles, 911–912
Nucleophilic aromatic substitution, 866–867
Nucleophilic attack
acid-catalyzed ring opening, 609
alcohol substitutions, 554, 555
arrow-pushing patterns, 257
curved-arrow notation, 264
electrophilic additions, 746
nucleophilic acyl substitution, 952, 955
nucleophilic addition reactions, 891*f*
reversible reaction arrows, 268
S_N1 reactions, 312
S_N2 reactions, 286
Nucleophilicity
eliminations vs. substitutions, 320–321
S_N2 reactions, 294–295
solvent effects, 341
Nucleosides, 1181
Nucleotides, 1183
Nutrition, 1198
Nylon-6,6, 972, 1287

O

Observed rotation, 203
Ocimene, 739
Octane, 154*f*
(*S*)-2-Octanol, 353
Octet rule, 6–7, 65–66, 75–76, 264, 517
2-Octyl-α-cyanoacrylate, 1285
Octyl methoxycinnamate, 775
(*R*)-2-Octyl sulfonate, 353
Odors, 195
Off-resonance decoupling, 721
of substituents, 850–851, 852*t*
Oils, 387, 1247*t*
Olah, George, 268
Olanzapine, 789
Olefin metathesis *see* Alkene metathesis
Olefins, 1133
Oleic acid, 448, 1241, 1241*f*, 1243
Oleic acid methyl ester, 1139
Oleoyl residues, 1246
Oligomers, 1290
Omega-3-acid ethyl ester, 57
Omeprazole, 789
One-step syntheses, 400–401, 500–501
Operating frequency, 687
Opium, 62
Optical activity, 201–206
Optically active compounds, 202
Optically inactive compounds, 202
Optically pure (term), 205
Orange #1, 835
Orbitals *see* Atomic orbitals; Molecular orbitals
Orbital symmetry, conservation of, 761–762
Organic chemistry, 2
Organic compounds, 2
Organic polymers, 421
Organoaluminum compounds, 1123
Organoborane, 1118
Organoborate anions, 1121
Organoboron compounds, 1117, 1119–1120
Organocopper compounds, 1101
Organohalides (Alkyl halides)
amine synthesis, 1065
coupling reactions, 1106–1107
definition, 284
from alcohols, 556–557
as synthetic precursors, 285
uses of, 284–285
Organolithium compounds, 1101–1105
Organomagnesium compounds, 1101–1105
Organometallic compounds, 1100–1152
alkene metathesis, 1133–1139
Heck reaction, 1128–1133
lithium dialkyl cuprates, 1105–1109
Negishi coupling, 1123–1128
organolithium and organomagnesium compounds, 1102–1105
properties of, 1101–1102
Simmons–Smith reaction, 1109–1111
Stille coupling, 1112–1117
Suzuki coupling, 1117–1123
Organometallic reagents, 961, 1123
Organostannanes, 1114–1115
Organotin compounds, 1117
Organozinc compounds, 1109–1111, 1123, 1125
Organozirconium compounds, 1123
ortho isomers, 791
anisole nitration, 845–846
chlorobenzene nitration, 849
nitrobenzene nitration, 847–848
toluene nitration, 843–844
ortho-para directors, 844, 848–849
Osmium tetroxide, 395
Oxalic acid, 592
Oxetane, 628
Oxidation
see also Autooxidation
alcohols, 559–563
Baeyer–Villiger, 921–922
at benzylic position, 809
monosaccharides, 1170–1172
phenols, 565–566
thiols, 614–615
Oxidation-reduction (redox) reactions
alcohols, 559–565
NAD^+, 564, 564*f*
NADH, 563–564, 564*f*
Oxidation states, 539–540, 539*f*
Oxidative addition reactions, 1115, 1130
Oxidative cleavage reactions, 396–398, 439–440
Oximes, 903, 1173
Oxiranes, 599
Oxonium ions, 312, 328, 372
Oxybenzone, 775
Oxybutynin, 194
Oxycodone, 63
Oxygen
curved-arrow notation, 264
electron configuration, 16*f*
HDI of compounds, 673
lone pairs, 58–60, 59*t*
Oxygen nucleophiles, 892–899
Oxymercuration-demercuration, 375–376, 519, 520, 538
Oxytocin, 1211, 1212
Ozone, 396, 477–479, 477*f*
Ozonides, 396–397
Ozonolysis
alkenes, 396–398
alkynes, 439–440
changes in carbon skeletons, 506

P

Paclitaxel (Taxol), 521–522
PAHs (Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons), 806, 806*t*
Paliperidone, 969

Palladium compounds, 1112–1113
Palmitoyl residues, 1246
para isomers, 791
  anisole nitration, 845–846
  chlorobenzene nitration, 849
  nitrobenzene nitration, 847–848
  toluene nitration, 843–844
para-substituted anilines, 1063*t*
Parent chains
  alcohols, 531
  alkanes, 140–141, 140*t*
  alkynes, 421
  complex substituents, 144–145
Parent ions, 659
Parkinson's disease, 386, 417, 420, 837
Partial charges, 9–10
Partially condensed structures, 51–52
Partially hydrogenated fats and oils, 387
Partners for Heck reaction, 1131–1133
Pasteur, Louis, 203, 218–219
Pathogenic bacteria, identification, 671–672
Pattern recognition
  ^{1}H NMR signals, 709–710
  resonance structures, 70–75
Pauli exclusion principle, 16
Pauling, Linus, 20
PBr_3 (Phosphorus tribromide), 556
PCBs (Polychlorinated biphenyls), 284
PCC (Pyridinium chlorochromate), 560
Pedersen, Charles J., 590
PEEK (Polyether ether ketone), 103
Penicillamine, 201
Penicillin, 974, 975
Penta-*O*-acetyl-β-D-glucopyranose, 1167
1,4-Pentadiene, 785
Pentaerythritol tertranitrate (PETN), 240
Pentane
  dipole-dipole interactions, 35, 37, 37*f*
  fragmentation, 665–666, 666*f*
  mass spectrum, 661, 661*f*, 665–666, 666*f*
3-Pentanone, 703
Pentavalent carbon, 517
1-Penten-3-ol, 527
Pentyne, 427–428
Pepcid (Famotidine), 1054, 1086
Peptidases, 1214
Peptide bonds, 1195
  formation, 1216–1217
  geometry, 1210–1211, 1224*f*
Peptides, 1207–1223
  definition, 1196
  drawing, 1208–1210
  sequencing, 1213–1216
  structure, 1207–1213
  synthesis, 1216–1223, 1217*f*
Pepto Bismol (Bismuth subsalicylate), 96
Percent ionization, 103
Pericyclic reactions, 753–771, 753*f*, 753*t*
  cycloadditions, 760–763
  definition, 753
  Diels–Alder reactions, 754–760
  electrocyclic reactions, 763–768
  sigmatropic rearrangements, 768–771
Periodic table, 1112*f*
  group numbers, 5*f*
  trends in conjugate bases, 105–106, 105*f*
  trends in sizes, 106*f*
Periodinane intermediates, 562
Periplanar conformations, 304
Periplanone B, 599
Peroxides, 466
Peroxyacetic acid, 600
Peroxy acids, 393, 600–601
PET *see* Poly(ethylene terephthalate)
PETN *see* Pentaerythritol tertranitrate
Petrochemical industry
  cracking, 155, 489
  radical reactions, 489
  reforming, 155
Petroleum, 154–155, 155*t*, 489
PGA (Polyglycolic acid), 67
PGE_2, 1264
$PGF_{2\alpha}$, 1240, 1264
$PGF_{2\beta}$, 1264
pH
  amino acids, 1200–1201
  imine formation, 901*f*
  physiological, 942–944, 1064, 1199
PHA (Polyhydroxyalkanoate), 1296
Pharmaceutical industry, mass spectrometry, 660
Pharmaceuticals *see* Drugs
Pharmacology, 292–294
Pharmacophores, 62–63
Phases, of atomic orbitals, 15–16, 16*f*
Phenacetin, 1097
Phenanthrene, 826
Phenindamine, 807
Pheniramine, 832
Phenolate ion, 536
Phenols
  acidity, 535–538
  from ethers, 597
  in nature, 530
  nomenclature, 532
  oxidation, 565–566
  pK_a, 535–536
  preparation, 553–554
Phenoxide ion, 536
Phenylalanine, 705, 1207
Phenyl carbocations, 1080
Phenyl group, 791
Phenylketonuria, 1178
Phenylpropanolamine, 1064
trans-1-Phenylpropene, 392
3-Phenylpropyl acetate, 525
Phenylthiohydantoin (PTH) derivative, 1213
Pheromones, 143, 358–359
Phosgene, 990, 1287, 1288
Phosphatidic acid, 1253
Phosphoglycerides, 1254
Phospholipids, 1253–1257, 1254*f*
Phosphonium salts, 918
Phosphorus tribromide (PBr_3), 556
Photochemical electrocyclic reactions, 766–767, 767*t*
Photochemical reactions, 745
Photochromism, 785
Photoisomerization, 223
Photons, 637
Phototherapy, 222–223
Phthalimide, 1067
Physical properties
  see also specific functional groups...
  intermolecular forces, 33–39
  molecular structure, 35–38
Physiological pH, 1199
  amines, 1064
  carboxylic acids, 942–944
Phytol, 532
Pi (π) bonds, 23, 23*f*
  see also Conjugated pi (π) systems
  acetylene, 24*f*
  addition reactions, 362, 460, 461, 461*f*, 463*f*
  alkyne acid-catalyzed hydration, 434
  bases, 357–358
  changing positions of, 403–404
  conjugated, 72, 74
  degrees of unsaturation, 672
  E2 reaction stereospecificity, 304
  electronegativity, 73
  lone pairs, 82
  molecular orbitals, 796*f*
  nucleophiles, 254, 254*f*, 357–358
  oxymercuration-demercuration, 375
  p orbitals, 190*f*
pI (Isoelectric point), of amino acids, 1201
α-Pinene, 358, 382, 1267
Pinnatoxin A, 903
Pivampicillin, 991
pK_a
  acidity, 97–99
  aldehydes, 1002, 1002*t*
  amino acids, 1198–1199, 1199*t*
  ammonium ions, 1061*t*–1062*t*
  basicity, 99–101
  common compounds, 98*t*
  drug distribution, 103–104
  ketones, 1002, 1002*t*
  para-substituted anilines, 1063*t*
  para-substituted benzoic acids, 943*f*
  position of equilibrium, 101–103
  solvent effects, 124–125
  strong acids, 535
Plane-polarized light, 202, 202*f*
Planes of symmetry, 211, 211*f*, 217
Plasticizers, 1294
Plavix (Clopidogrel), 789
Poisoned catalysts, 428, 428*f*
Polar aprotic solvents, 340–341
Polar covalent bonds, 8–14, 9*f*
Polar groups, 967, 1248, 1249
Polarimeters, 202, 203*f*
Polarimetry, 202–204
Polarity, molecular, 30–33
Polarizability, 254
  S_N2 reactions, 295
Polarization, 202
Polar reactions, 252
Polyacetylene, 421
Polyamides, 972
Polycarbonates, 1287–1288
Polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs), 284
Polychlorination, 464
trans-1,4-Polychloroprene (Neoprene), 752
Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs), 806, 806*t*
Polycyclic systems, 177–178
Polyesters, 972
Polyether antibiotics, 1256–1257
Polyether ether ketone (PEEK), 103
Polyethers, 590
Polyethylene, 156, 487, 1293
Poly(ethylene oxide), 1302
Poly(ethylene terephthalate) (PET), 972, 1287, 1290, 1296
Polyglycolic acid (PGA), 67
Polyhydroxyalkanoate (PHA), 1296
Polyisobutylene, 1293
Polymerization
  anionic, 1284–1285
  cationic, 370, 1283
  efficiency, 1285–1286
  ethylene, 156
  radical, 487–489, 489*t*, 1282
Polymers, 156, 370, 421, 1277–1299, 1278*t*
  addition, 1281–1286
  amorphous, 1293
  amylopectin, 1180
  amylose, 1179
  biodegradable, 1296–1297
  biological, 1179–1181
  branched, 1291–1292
  chain-growth, 1289–1290
  chitin, 1181
  classification, 1281–1295
  condensation, 1286–1289
  copolymers, 1280–1281, 1280*t*

Polymers (*continued*)
cross-linked, 1292–1293
crystalline, 1293
homopolymers, 1280
linear, 1292
living, 1285
modes of assembly, 1289–1291
nomenclature, 1278–1280
properties, 1294–1295
reactions, 1281–1289
recycling, 1296–1297
starches, 1179–1180
step-growth, 1290–1291
structure, 1278, 1291–1293
uses, 1279*t*
Polymyxin B, 1212, 1213
Polynucleotides, 1183
Polypeptide antibiotics, 1212–1213
Poly(*p*-phenylene vinylene) (PPV), 421
Polysaccharides, 1179–1180
Polystyrene, 356, 370
Polysubstituted benzene rings, 791–792
directing effects, 854–855
steric effects, 856
in synthesis strategies, 863–865
Polyurethanes, 1290–1291
Poly(vinyl acetate), 1302
Poly(vinyl alcohol), 1302
Poly(vinyl butyral) (PVB), 1295
Polyvinylchloride (PVC), 388, 488–489
p orbitals, 16*f*
amides, 81*f*
benzene, 795–796, 796*f*
carbocations, 64, 64*f*, 254*f*
conjugated dienes, 739*f*
cyclobutadiene, 798*f*
cyclooctatetraene, 799*f*
determining energy levels, 800*f*
electrophiles, 254
hyperconjugation, 259
phases, 16
pi bonds, 190*f*
pyridine, 82*f*, 803–804, 803*f*
pyrrole, 804, 804*f*
resonance, 81, 82*f*
sulfur-oxygen bonds, 833, 833*f*
Porphyrin rings, 512
Porritoxin, 91
Position of equilibrium, 101–103, 120–122
Positive charge(s)
curved-arrow notation, 70
resonance structures, 72–73
Positrons, 340
Potassium bitartrate, 125
Potassium cyanide, 2
Potassium permanganate, 396
Potassium phthalimide, 1067–1068, 1071, 1072
Potassium *tert*-butoxide (*t*-BuOK), 302
PPV *see* Poly(*p*-phenylene vinylene)
Pravacol (Pravastatin), 1260
Preparation
acetals, 894–897
acid anhydrides, 962–963
acid chlorides, 957–958
alcohols, 538–546
aldehydes/ketones, 888, 889*t*
alkenes, 920–921
alkynes, 426–428
amides, 971–972
amines, 1065–1071
azo dyes, 1083–1084
carboxylic acids, 944–945, 944*t*
conjugated dienes, 740
diols, 546
dipeptides, 1220–1221
epoxides, 600–605
esters, 965–966
ethers, 593–596
Gilman reagents, 1105–1106
nitriles, 975–976
organoboron compounds, 1119–1120
organolithium compounds, 1103
organomagnesium compounds, 1103–1104
organostannanes, 1114
organozinc reagents, 1125
phenols, 553–554
sulfides, 615–616
Prevacid (Lansoprazole), 789
Prilosec (Omeprazole), 789
Primary alcohols, 531
aldehyde synthesis, 559–562, 567
antibacterial properties, 534
oxidation, 559
S_N2 reactions, 552–553, 554–555
Primary alkyl halides, 283, 440
Primary amines
and aldehydes/ketones, 900–903
and nitrous acid, 1079–1080
nomenclature, 1056–1057
synthesis, 1071–1072
Primary carbocations, 259, 432, 1283
Primary isotope effect, 343–344
Primary radicals, 456, 459, 666
Primary structure of proteins, 1224, 1224*f*
Primary substrates
S_N2 reactions, 291, 291*f*
substitution vs. eliminations, 323
synthesis strategies, 331*f*
Prions, 1227
Probability, 237–238
Prodrugs
acetals, 898
discovery, 837
esters as, 968–969
methenamine, 911
Products
of aldol addition reactions, 1010–1011
of aldol condensation reactions, 1014–1016
of alkene addition reactions, 398–400
of alkene metathesis, 1134
of allylic bromination, 476–477
anti-periplanar, 304–305, 306–307
of Birch reduction, 814–815
of catalytic hydrogenation, 383*t*, 384–385
of Diels–Alder reactions, 756–760
of E2 reactions, 301–311, 301*t*
of electrocyclic reactions, 767–768
of electrophilic addition to conjugated diene, 750–751
of elimination vs. substitution reactions, 320–327
endo, 758–759, 759*f*
exo, 758–759, 759*f*
of Hofmann elimination, 1077
of hydroboration-oxidation, 381–382
of Negishi coupling, 1126–1128
of oxidation reactions with alcohols, 562–563
of ozonolysis, 397–398
retrosynthetic analysis, 336–338
of S_N2 reactions, 288
of Stille coupling, 1116–1117
of strong nucleophile and epoxide, 607–608
of Suzuki coupling, 1121–1123
of triglyceride hydrolysis, 1247–1248
Progesterone, 91, 885
Progestins, 1261–1262, 1261*t*
Proline, 200
Promethazine, 807
Prontosil, 837
Propagation, 463, 463*f*
autooxidations, 480, 598
chlorinations, 464
hydrogen bromide additions, 484, 486
polymerizations, 488
Propane
boiling point, 589, 1059
conformational analysis, 159–160, 160*f*
radical halogenation, 469–471
structure and HDI, 672
Propanol, 4, 51, 105, 643*f*
see also Isopropanol
Propanolol, 586
Propofol, 40–41
Propranolol, 99, 194
Propylamine, 35, 1060
Propylene, 113, 361*f*
Propylene glycol, 547
Prostacyclins, 1266
Prostaglandins, 964, 994, 1263–1266, 1263*f*
Prosthetic groups, 1228
Protease inhibitors, 216
Protecting groups, 552–553
acetals, 897–898
for amino group of amino acids, 1217–1220, 1217*f*
for carboxylic acid moeity of amino acids, 1220
Proteins, 1224–1229
amino acids, 1195*f*
complete, 1198
definition, 1195
and diseases, 1227
fibrous, 1227
functions of, 1227–1229
globular, 1227
infectious, 1227
misfolded, 1227
structural, 1227–1228
structure, 1224–1227, 1224*f*
transport, 1228–1229
Protic solvents, 340–341
Protium, 343
Protonations, alcohols, 329
Proton NMR. *see* ^{1}H NMR
Protons
acidic, 1000
atomic weight, 668–669
axial, 695
diastereotopic, 691
enantiotopic, 690–691
equatorial, 695
germinal, 707
homotopic, 689
magnetic moments, 685–686
relationships in compounds, 691–692
shielded and deshielded, 686–687
vicinal, 707
without coupling constants, 713
Proton transfers
acid-catalyzed ring opening, 609
alcohol reductions, 542–544
alcohols, 329
arrow-pushing patterns, 258–259
E1 reaction, 313–314
electrophilic additions, 746
elimination reactions, 298
ester reductions, 544–545
mechanisms, 94–96
nucleophilic acyl substitutions, 955
reagents for, 122–123
reversible/irreversible reaction arrows, 269
in substitution reactions with alcohols, 554
Proximity effect, 750
Prusiner, Stanley, 1227
trans-PST-1, 1084
PTH (Phenylthiohydantoin) derivative, 1213
Putrescine, 1060
PVB (Poly(vinyl butyral)), 1295
PVC (Polyvinylchloride), 388, 488–489

Pyramidal inversion of amines, 1059*f*
Pyranose rings, 1161–1166
Pyridine, 1087
  acid chloride alcoholysis, 959
  delocalization, 1063–1064
  electrostatic potential map, 804, 804*f*
  lone pairs, 82
  p orbitals, 82*f*, 803–804, 803*f*
Pyridinium chloride, 959
Pyridinium chlorochromate (PCC), 560
Pyrilamine, 807
Pyrimidine, 1087
Pyrrole, 1085
  delocalization, 1063–1064
  electrostatic potential map, 804, 804*f*
  p orbitals, 803, 804*f*
Pyruvic acid, 1012

Q

Quantized energy, 14
Quantum mechanics, 14
Quartet peaks, 705, 706, 706*f*, 711*f*
Quaternary ammonium hydroxide, 1076
Quaternary ammonium iodide, 1076
Quaternary ammonium salt, 1066–1067, 1072
Quaternary structure, of proteins, 1226, 1226*f*
Quintet peaks, 705

R

Racemic mixtures, 205, 473
Radiation, electromagnetic, 637*f*
Radical additions
  hydrogen bromide, 483–487
  to pi bonds, 460, 461, 461*f*, 463*f*
Radical anions, 429
Radical bromination
  at benzylic position, 810
  chlorination vs., 468, 469*f*–471*f*
  cyclohexane, 474–477
  regioselectivity, 470–472, 471*t*
  stereochemistry, 473–474
  in syntheses, 490
Radical chlorination:
  bromination vs., 468, 469*f*–471*f*
  methane, 463–466
  regioselectivity, 469–470, 471*t*
  stereochemistry, 472–473
  in syntheses, 489
Radical fluorination, 471, 471*t*
Radical inhibitors, 466
Radical initiators, 466
Radical polymerization, 487–489, 489*t*, 1282
Radical reactions, 454–498
  allylic bromination, 474–477
  arrow-pushing patterns, 460–463
  atmospheric, 477–479
  autooxidation, 480–483
  halogenations, 463–477, 489–490
  hydrogen bromide additions, 432–433, 483–487
  methane chlorination, 463–466
  in petrochemical industry, 489
  polymerization, 487–489, 1282
  as synthesis techniques, 489–490
Radicals, 234, 455–460
  allylic, 457–459
  bond dissociation energies, 456*f*, 457, 457*f*, 459*f*
  geometry, 455–456, 456*f*
  identifying weakest C–H bond, 459–460
  mass spectrometry, 659
  methyl, 456
  primary, 456, 459, 666
  resonance structures, 457–459
  secondary, 456
  stability, 456, 456*f*
  structures, 455–456
  tertiary, 456, 457
  vinylic, 458–459
Radiolabeled compounds, 338–339
Ramelteon, 90
Random copolymers, 1281
Ranitidine (Zantac), 1054, 1086
(–)-Rapamycin, 1149–1150
Rate constant (*k*), 244–246
Rate-determining step (RDS), 312
Rate equations, 244–245, 245*f*
Rates of reaction *see* Kinetics
R configuration, 196, 200, 201, 207, 208
RDS *see* rate-determining step
RDX (Cyclotrimethylenetrinitramine), 240
Reaction arrows, reversible/irreversible, 268–270
Reaction coordinates, 236
Reaction mechanisms, 94–95
  see also specific mechanisms and reactions
Reactive centers, 563
Reactivity *see* Chemical reactivity
Reagents
  alcohol deprotonations, 535
  carbenoid, 1111
  for crossed aldol reactions, 1017–1018
  determining function of, 320–322
  functional group transformations, 501–502
  Gilman, 961, 1105–1109
  green chemistry considerations, 519, 520
  Grignard *see* Grignard reagents
  hydroboration-oxidation, 377–378
  Negishi coupling, 1123–1124
  organometallic, 961, 1125
  position of equilibrium, 120–121
  proton transfers, 122–123
  substitution vs. elimination reactions, 298, 298*f*, 320–322
  Suzuki coupling, 1117–1119
  Wittig, 917–921
Rearrangement reactions
  see also Carbocation rearrangements
  arrow-pushing patterns, 259–260
  Claisen, 769
  Cope, 769
  McLafferty, 667
  sigmatropic, 768–771, 769*f*
  unimolecular, 316–317
Receptors
  drug interactions, 38–39
  H_2-receptor antagonists, 1085–1086
Recycling, synthetic polymers, 1296–1297, 1297*t*
Red #40, 834
Red blood cells, 1229*f*
Reduced mass, 642
Reducing agents, 541–546
Reducing sugars, 1171–1172, 1175–1176
Reductions
  acid chlorides, 960
  alcohol preparation, 539–545
  aldehydes, 542–544, 912–913
  alkynes, 428–431, 430*f*
  amides, 974
  aromatic compounds, 813–815
  Birch, 813–815
  Clemmensen, 841
  definition, 539
  diol preparation, 547
  dissolving metals, 429–430
  esters, 544–545, 970
  hydride agents, 544–545
  ketones, 542–544, 912–913
  monosaccharides, 1169–1170
  nitriles, 977
  Wolff–Kishner, 907–908
Reductive amination, 1069–1071
Reductive eliminations, 1115–1116, 1130
Refining of petroleum, 155
Reflectional symmetry, 210, 211
Reforming petroleum, 155, 489
Regioselectivity, 363
  acid-catalyzed hydration, 372
  alkyne hydration, 438
  Diels–Alder reactions, 759–760
  E1 reactions, 318–319
  E2 reactions, 301–303
  electrophilic substitution reactions, 857–858
  functionalizations, 519–522
  Grignard reagents, 519–522
  halogenation, 469–472, 471*t*
  halohydrin formation, 391
  hydroboration-oxidation, 378–379
  hydrogen abstraction, 469*f*
  hydrohalogenation, 363–364, 366
  radical addition HBr, 483
  ring-opening reactions, 606
  substitution vs. elimination reactions, 324, 324*t*
  unimolecular reactions, 318–319
Relative atomic mass, 669, 669*t*
Relative atomic weight, 668–669, 668*t*
Relative rates, kinetic control, 750
Renewable feedstocks, 520
Replacement test, 689–690
Representations of molecules *see* Molecular representations
Resins, thermosetting, 1294–1295
Resolution, enantiomers, 218–219
Resolving agents, chiral, 219
Resonance
  acidity, 107–109
  alcohol acidity, 536–537
  bond-line structures, 63–64
  definition, 64
  Friedel–Crafts acylation, 841
  IR wavenumbers, 644–645
  nuclear, in magnetic fields, 686
  nucleophilic addition reactions, 889
  radicals, 457–459
Resonance hybrids, 64, 77, 79–81
Resonance stabilization, 65
Resonance structures, 63–83
  charges on atoms, 76
  curved arrow notation, 65–68
  drawing, 70–75, 74*t*
  electronegativity, 73, 76
  esters and ketones, 644–645
  formal charges, 68–70
  lone pairs, 70–73, 81–83
  pattern recognition, 70–75
  relative importance of, 75–78
Resorcinol, 534
Respiration, cellular, 566
Restoril (Temazepam), 948
Resveratrol, 496
Retention of configuration, 319–320
Retention time, 671
11-*cis*-Retinal, 777, 778, 904
Retinol (Vitamin A), 87, 508, 777, 904
Retro-aldol reactions, 1010, 1012
Retro Diels–Alder reactions, 754–755
Retrosynthesis, lithium dialkyl cuprates, 1106
Retrosynthetic analysis, 336–338, 514–519
Reversible reaction arrows, 268–270
Rheosmin, 1051
Rhodopsin, 777–778, 904
Ribonucleic acid (RNA), 1184–1185, 1185*f*
Ribonucleosides, 1181, 1184*f*
Ribonucleotides, 1185*f*
Ribose, 563, 1156, 1157, 1181, 1189
Rickes, Ed, 512
Rigidity of drugs, 420
Rilpivirine, 135, 164

Rimantadine, 1095
Ring-closing alkene metathesis, 1137–1138
Ring flip, 170, 170*f*
Ring-opening reactions
  acid-catalyzed, 609–612
  alkene metathesis, 1137
  epoxides, 605–612
Rippertenol, 815
RNA (Ribonucleic acid), 1184–1185, 1185*f*
Robinson annulation reaction, 1037
Robinson, Robert, 1037
Rods (photoreceptors), 777
Rofecoxib (Vioxx), 188, 1266
Rolaids (Calcium carbonate), 96–97
Roquefortine C, 452, 787
Rotation
  conrotatory, 765–766, 765*f*, 766*f*
  dextrorotatory, 204
  disrotatory, 765, 765*f*, 767*f*
  levorotatory, 204
  mutarotation, 1163
  observed, 203
  specific, 203–205
Rotational symmetry, 210, 211
Rowland, Frank, 478
Rubber, 752, 1293
(*R*)-(+)-Ruthenium(BINAP)Cl_2 catalyst, 1207

S

Sabatier, Paul, 382
cis-Sabinene hydrate, 1150
Saccharin, 1178
Safety, of drugs, 188–189, 717
Safety glass, 1295
Salicin, 1192
Salicylic acid, 135
Salmeterol, 789
Salt plates, 641*f*
SAM (*S*-Adenosylmethionine), 295–296
Samuelsson, Bengt, 964
Sandmeyer reactions, 1080–1081
Saponification, 966–967
Saran, 1280
Saturated
  compounds, 672
  coordinately, 1113
  hydrocarbons, 139
Saudin, 1149
Savinin, 1128
Sawhorse drawings, 156*f*
SBR (Styrene-butadiene rubber), 752
Schiemann reaction, 1081
Schreiber, S. L., 136
Schrock catalysts, 1133–1134
Schrock, Richard, 1133
Schrödinger, Erwin, 14
S configurations, 196, 200, 201, 208
Scorzocreticin, 936
Secondary alcohols, 531, 554–555, 559, 562
Secondary alkyl halides, 283
Secondary amines
  and aldehydes/ketones, 905–907
  and nitrous acid, 1078–1079
  nomenclature, 1057
  synthesis, 1072
Secondary carbocations
  carbocation rearrangements, 259, 268
  Friedel–Crafts alkylation, 839
  hydrohalogenations, 365, 368, 369, 432
Secondary isotope effect, 343
Secondary radicals, 456
Secondary structure of proteins, 1224–1225, 1225*f*
Secondary substrates
  S_N2 reactions, 291, 291*f*
  substitutions vs. eliminations, 323
Second-generation antihistamines, 808
Second law of thermodynamics, 242
Second-order rate equation, 245, 245*f*
Sedatives, 948
Seldane (Terfenadine), 1056
Selectivity
  see also Regioselectivity; Stereoselectivity; Stereospecificity
  E2 reactions, 303–309, 305*f*
Selegiline, 420
Self-assembly, 91
β-Selinene, 1267
Sense of smell, 195
Separation of amino acids, 1201–1203, 1201*f*
Sequencing of peptides, 1213–1216
Serevent (Salmeterol), 789
L-Serine, 1196
Sertraline, 789, 1064
Sevoflurane, 589
Sex hormones, 1261–1262, 1261*t*
Shape
  see also Geometry
  of absorption spectrum, 641
  of atomic orbitals, 643–644, 643*f*
  of IR signals, 648–652, 649*f*
  of NMR signals, 689
Sharpless asymmetric epoxidation, 604–605, 605*f*
Sharpless, K. Barry, 387, 604
Shielded protons, 686
Shimomura, Osamu, 1234
Shirakawa, Hideki, 421
Sickle-shaped red blood cells, 1229*f*
Side chains of aromatic compounds, 811–812
Side effects, of drugs, 1060
Sigma (σ) bonds, 18, 18*f*
  acetylene, 24*f*
  addition reactions, 362
  ethylene, 22*f*
  sigmatropic rearrangements, 769
  Stille coupling, 1113–1114
Sigma complexes, 830
  anisole nitration, 845*f*
  azo coupling, 1082
  chlorobenzene nitration, 849*f*
  nitrobenzene nitration, 847*f*, 848*f*
  toluene nitration, 843*f*, 844*f*
Sigmatropic reactions, 753
Sigmatropic rearrangements, 768–771, 769*f*
Sildenafil (Viagra), 247, 1060, 1084
Simmons, Howard E., 1109
Simmons–Smith reaction, 1109–1111
Simple lipids, 1239–1240
Simvastatin, 1261
Single bonds
  bond-line structures, 53
  interconverting double and triple bonds, 442–444, 442*f*, 502, 567*f*
  resonance structures, 65
Singlet peaks, 705, 817
Smalley, Richard, 818
Smell, 195
Smith, Ronald D., 1109
Smoking, 585, 612–613
S_N1 reactions, 319–320
  alcohols, 329–330, 554
  alcohol synthesis, 538
  E1 reactions vs., 313, 314*f*
  mechanisms, 312–313
  regiochemistry and stereochemistry, 324*t*
  solvent effects, 341–342
  stereochemistry, 319–320
S_N2 reactions, 286–296
  acid-catalyzed ring opening, 609
  alcohols, 552–553, 554–555
  alcohol synthesis, 538
  drawing products, 288
  epoxides, 605, 606*f*
  ester synthesis, 965
  kinetics, 286–287
  methylation, 295–296
  nitriles from, 975
  nucleophilic strengths, 294–295
  pharmacology, 292–294
  regiochemistry, 324*t*
  solvent effects, 340–341
  stereospecificity, 287–289, 324*t*
  steric hindrance, 290–291
  substrate effects, 289–292
  tosylates, 327–328
  transition states, 290–292
S_N2-Si mechanism, 552–553
S_NAr reactions *see* Nucleophilic aromatic substitution
Soaps, 39–40, 39*f*, 967, 1249
Soap scum, 1249
$SOCl_2$ (Thionyl chloride), 555–556, 957–958
Sodium, ammonia, 429
Sodium amide, 427
Sodium azide, 1071, 1072
Sodium benzoate, 941
Sodium bicarbonate, 96–97, 97, 125
Sodium borohydride, 542–543, 1069–1070
Sodium carbonate, 2
Sodium chloride, 341
Sodium cyanoborohydride, 1069–1070
Sodium dichromate, 559
Sodium ethoxide, 535
Sodium hydride, 535
Sodium hydrosulfide, 613
Sodium lauryl sulfate, 1249
Sodium oxalate, 592
Solenopsin, 1064–1065
Solids, molecular alignment, 34–35, 34*f*
Solubility, 39–41, 533–534, 1059
Solvation effects, alcohol acidity, 537
Solvent effects, 339–343
  and pK_a, 124–125
  S_N1 reactions, 341–342
  S_N2 reactions, 340–341, 340*t*
Solvent extraction, 1062
Solvents
  dipole moments, 32*t*
  green chemistry, 519
  leveling effect, 123–124
  NMR spectroscopy, 688
  polar aprotic, 340–341
  protic, 340–341
Solvolysis, 312, 315, 316, 317–318
Sonata (Zaleplon), 948
s orbitals, 16*f*
Specific rotation, 203–205
Spectator ions, 125
Spectrometers
  continuous-wave, 688
  Fourier transform, 688–689, 688*f*
  infrared, 641
  mass, 659–660, 659*f*
Spectroscopy, 636–639
  see also Infrared spectroscopy; Nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy
  aldehydes and ketones, 925–927
  amines, 1087–1088
  aromatic compounds, 815–817
  carboxylic acids and derivatives, 984, 984*t*
  uses of, 638*t*
  UV-Vis, 771–775
Spermaceti wax, 1240
Spermine, 1093
Sphingomyelins, 1274
sp-hybridized orbitals, 23–24, 23–24*f*, 424
sp^2-hybridized orbitals, 22–23, 22*f*, 81

sp^3-hybridized orbitals, 20–22, 21*f*, 1059
Spin, 16, 685, 686*f*
Spin-spin splitting, 706
Spongian-16-one, 1111
(–)-Spongidepsin, 937
Spontaneous processes, 239, 244
  Gibbs free energy, 240, 241
Sports, anabolic steroids, 1263
Squalene, 1270
Stability
  alkanes, 153–154
  alkenes, 299–301
  anions, 104–115
  benzene, 794–800
  carbocations, 259–260
  chair conformations, 171–172, 174–176
  conjugate bases, 104–105, 104–115, 105*f*, 282*f*
  conjugated dienes, 740–741
  constitutional isomers, 153–154
  cycloalkenes, 300–301
  lipid bilayers, 1255–1256
  organostannanes, 1114–1115
  radicals, 456, 456*f*
Stabilization energy, 741, 795
Stabilized Wittig reagents, 918–919
Staggered conformations, 156–161
  butane, 161, 161*f*
  ethane, 158–159, 158*f*, 159*f*
Standard atomic weight, 669
Stanozolol, 1263
Starches, 1179–1180
Statins, 1260–1261
Stationary phases, 670–671
Stearic acid, 1241, 1241*f*, 1243
Stearoyl residues, 1246
Step curves, 702
Step-growth polymers, 1290–1291
Stepwise mechanisms
  E2 reactions, 297
  S_N2 reactions, 286
Stereocenters, 191
Stereochemical control, 1292
Stereochemistry
  acid-catalyzed hydration, 373, 373*f*
  dihydroxylation reactions, 392–396
  E1 reactions, 318–319
  E2 reactions, 303–309
  halogenation reactions, 472–474
  hydroboration-oxidation, 377
  hydrohalogenation, 367–368, 367*f*
  photochemical electrocyclic reactions, 766–767
  radical addition of HBr, 486
  ring-opening reactions, 606
  S_N1 reactions, 319–320
  substitution vs. elimination reactions, 324, 324*t*
  thermal electrocyclic reactions, 764–766
  unimolecular reactions, 319–320
Stereogenic centers, 191
Stereoisomers, 177, 188–232
  Atropisomers, 217–218
  Cahn–Ingold–Prelog system, 195–201
  categories, 207
  chirality, 190–195
  cis-trans isomerism, 176–177, 189–190
  conformationally mobile systems, 216–217
  cycloalkanes, 176–177
  definition, 177, 189, 207*f*
  drawing, 193–195
  enantiomers vs. diastereomers, 207–210
  E and *Z* configurations, 220–224
  Fischer projections, 214–216
  optical activity, 201–206
  resolution, 218–219
  symmetry and chirality, 210–214
  without chiral centers, 217–218
Stereoselectivity, E2 reactions, 303, 305, 305*f*
Stereospecificity
  catalytic hydrogenations, 382
  E2 reactions, 303–309, 305*f*, 307–309
  halogenation reactions, 388
  hydroboration-oxidation, 380–382
  S_N2 reactions, 287–289
Steric hindrance, 124–125
  acid-catalyzed ring openings, 610
  aromatic substitutions, 855–856
  chair conformations, 171, 171*f*
  E2 reactions, 298, 298*f*
  hydroboration-oxidation reactions, 379
  nucleophilic addition reactions, 890
  rates of reaction, 246
  S_N2 reactions, 290–291
Steric numbers, 26
Sterilization, 608
Steroids, 1257–1263
  adrenocortical hormones, 1262
  anabolic, 1263
  carbon skeletons, 1258*f*
  cholesterol, 1258–1261
  sex hormones, 1261–1262
  structures, 1257–1258
Steviol, 1178, 1179
Steviosides, 1178–1179
Stilbene, 350
Stille coupling, 1112–1117, 1119*t*
  mechanism, 1115–1116
  organostannanes, 1114–1115
  palladium compounds, 1112–1113
  products, 1116–1117
Stille, John, 1113
Stoney, George Johnstone, 4
Stork enamine synthesis, 1034–1036
Stork, Gilbert, 1035
Strain
  angle, 164–165
  torsional, 159
Strecker synthesis, 1205–1206
Streptimidone, 199
Streptomycin, 1182
Stretching of bonds, 639, 651–652
Strong acids, 282
Strong activators, 850
Strong deactivators, 851
Strong nucleophiles, 295
Structural proteins, 1227–1228
Structural theory of matter, 3–4
(–)-Strychnine, 278
Styrene, 370, 752
Styrene-butadiene rubber (SBR), 752
Styrofoam, 356, 370
Substantia nigra, 417
Substituents
  of alkanes, 142–145
  of alkynes, 422
  aromatic substitution effects, 850–858, 870
  axial, 169, 169*f*, 171*f*
  bicyclic compounds, 149
  carboxylic acids, 943–944
  complex, 144–145
  definition, 140
  equatorial, 169, 169*f*, 172*f*
  S_N2 reaction effects, 289–292
  S_N2 reaction rates, 289–292
para-substituted anilines, 1063*t*
Substituted cyclohexanes
  di-, 172–176
  E2 reactions, 307–309
  mono-, 170–172
Substituted ethylene, 488–489, 489*t*
Substituted oxiranes, 599
Substitution reactions
  see also Aromatic substitution reactions; S_N1 reactions; S_N2 reactions
  alcohols, 329–330, 538–539, 552, 554–558
  alkyl halide reactivity, 281–282
  amine synthesis, 1066–1069
  aryl diazonium salts, 1081
  benzylic halides, 810
  definition, 281
  elimination vs., 320–327
  nucleophilic acyl, 951–957
  predicting products, 320–327
  solvent effects, 340–342
  in syntheses, 400
  tosylates, 327–328
Substrates
  definition, 281
  E2 reaction rates, 298
  E2 reactions, 298*f*
  elimination reactions, 298*f*, 323, 323*f*
  front and back sides of, 287, 287*f*
  ionization rates, 318
  methyl, 291, 291*f*
  primary, 291, 291*f*, 323, 331*f*
  reaction rates and structures, 298*f*
  secondary, 291, 291*f*, 323
  S_N2 reactions, 287–291
  structure and rates effects, 289–292
  substitution reactions, 287–291, 323, 323*f*
  tertiary, 323, 331*f*
  unimolecular reactions, 318–319
Subunits, proteins, 1226
Sucralose, 285, 1178
Sucrose, 1177
Sugars
  see also Monosaccharides
  amino, 1180–1181
  degradation of, 1155*f*
  disaccharides, 1174–1179
  polysaccharides, 1179–1180
  reducing, 1171–1172, 1175–1176
D-sugars, 1155–1156
L-sugars, 1155–1156
Sulfanilamides, 837
Sulfides, 614–615
Sulfonation, 833–835
Sulfones, 616
Sulfoxides, 616
Sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4), 124, 894
Sulfur mustard, 280, 293, 293*f*
Sulfur nucleophiles, 294, 911–912
Sulfur-oxygen bonds, 833, 833*f*
Sulfur trioxide, 833*f*
Sunscreens, 775–776
Superglue, 1285
Superimposable images, 190*f*, 191
Suzuki, Akira, 1117, 1121, 1123
Suzuki coupling, 1117–1123, 1119*t*
  mechanism, 1120–1121
  organoboron compound synthesis, 1119–1120
  products, 1121–1123
  reagents and conditions for, 1117–1119
  as synthesis reaction, 1121
Sweeteners, artificial, 1178–1179
Swern oxidation, 561
Symmetrical dienes, 759
Symmetrical dienophiles, 759
Symmetrical ethers, 587
Symmetric stretching, 651
Symmetry
  axis of, 210, 211
  and chirality, 210–214
  conservation of orbital, 761–762
  dienes and dienophiles, 759–760
  plane of, 211, 211*f*, 217

Symmetry (*continued*)
reflectional, 210, 211
rotational, 210, 211
Symmetry-allowed processes, 762
Symmetry-forbidden processes, 762
Syn addition, 377, 383–384, 1130, 1131
Synaptic gap, 590
Syn-coplanar conformations, 304
Syn dihydroxylation, 395–396
Syndiotactic (term), 1292
Synthesis, 499–528
see also Preparation
acetoacetic ester, 1025–1027
addition reaction strategies, 400–404
alcohols, 567–572
with aldehydes and ketones, 922–925
alkyl halide strategies, 331–338
alkynes in, 442–444
alpha carbons, 1037–1041
amidomalonate, 1204–1205
amines, 1071–1073
amino acids, 1203–1207
aromatic substitution, 859–865
azides, 1067
carbon–carbon bond formation, 571–573, 571*t*
carboxylic acid derivatives, 978–982
changes in carbon skeletons, 505–508
difunctionalized compounds, 1037–1039
dipeptides, 1220–1221
epoxides, 617–622
functional group transformations, 501–505
Gabriel, 1067–1069
green chemistry, 519–520
Kiliani-Fischer, 1172–1173
malonic ester, 1027–1029
Merrifield, 1221–1223
Negishi coupling, 1126
new pharmaceuticals, 1100
one-step, 500–501
peptides, 1216–1223, 1217*f*
problem solving, 508–513, 520–521
radical, 489–490
retrosynthetic analysis, 336–338, 514–519
Stork enamine, 1034–1036
Strecker, 1205–1206
Suzuki coupling, 1121
toolboxes, 509–510*t*, 520–521, 569*t*, 571*t*
Williamson, 594–595
Synthesis reactions, *see also* Biosynthesis
Synthetic polymers, 1277–1299, 1278*t*
addition, 1281–1286
amorphous, 1293
biodegradable, 1296–1297
branched, 1291–1292
chain-growth, 1289–1290
classification, 1281–1295
condensation, 1286–1289
copolymers, 1280–1281, 1280*t*
cross-linked, 1292–1293
crystalline, 1293
homopolymers, 1280
linear, 1292
living, 1285
modes of assembly, 1289–1291
nomenclature, 1278–1280
properties, 1294–1295
reactions of, 1281–1289
recycling, 1296–1297
step-growth, 1290–1291
structure, 1278, 1291–1293
uses, 1279*t*
Synthetic precursors, organohalides, 285
Synthetic rubber, 752
Systematic names, 140, 146–148
see also Nomenclature

T

Tagamet (Cimetidine), 1054, 1085–1086
Tails, of curved arrows, 65
Tamoxifen, 586
Target molecules, retrosynthetic analysis, 335–338
Tartaric acid, 218–219
Tautomerization
acid-catalyzed, 434–436, 998
base-catalyzed, 437, 999
of enols, 997–999
keto-enol, 434–436
Tautomers, 434
Taxiphyllin, 916–917
Taxol (Paclitaxel), 521–522
Taxotere (Docetaxel), 522
TBAF (Tetrabutylammonium fluoride), 553
Tegretol (Carbamazepine), 603
Temazepam, 948
Temperature
glass and melt transitions, 1293
rates of reaction, 246, 246*f*
specific rotation, 203–204
variable, NMR, 695
Terephthalic acid, 1287, 1296
Terfenadine, 1056
Terminal alkynes, 422
acidity, 424–425
alkylation, 441–442
conversions, 433
deprotonation, 425–426, 425*t*
hydration, 433–439
oxidative cleavage, 440
preparation, 427
Termination steps, 463, 463*f*
addition of HBr, 484
autooxidation, 480, 598
chlorination, 464
polymerization, 488
Termolecular processes, 432
Terpenes, 1266–1270, 1266*t*
Tertiary alcohols, 531, 554, 559
Tertiary alkyl halides, 283
Tertiary amines, 1057, 1072
Tertiary carbocations:
carbocation rearrangements, 268
cationic polymerization, 1283
from fragmentation, 666
hydrohalogenation reactions, 365
Tertiary carbocations
carbocation rearrangements, 259
from unimolecular rearrangements, 317
hydrohalogenation reactions, 368, 369
unimolecular processes, 317–318
Tertiary radicals, 456, 457
Tertiary structure, proteins, 1226
Tertiary substrates
substitutions vs. eliminations, 323
synthesis strategies, 336*f*
Tesla (unit), 687
Testosterone, 88, 177–178, 885
Tetrabutylammonium fluoride (TBAF), 553
Tetracholoroethylene, 40
1,1,1,2-Tetrafluroethane (HFA-134a), 478
Tetrahalides, 439
Tetrahedral geometry, 26–27, 26*f*
Tetrahedral intermediates, 890, 952
Tetrahydrocannabinol (THC), 530
Tetrahydrofuran (THF), 123–124, 589, 628, 1103–1104
Tetramethylsilane (TMS), 695–696
Tetrasubstituted alkenes, 301*f*
Tetravalent elements, 3
T_g (Glass transition temperature), 1293
Thapsanes, 936
THC *see* Tetrahydrocannabinol
Thermal cracking, 155
Thermal electrocyclic reactions, 764–766, 767*t*
Thermal imaging, 640
Thermodynamic enolate, 1023
Thermodynamics, 244*f*
addition vs. elimination reactions, 361–362
conjugated pi systems, 749–751
definition, 244
Diels–Alder reactions, 754–755
halogenation reactions, 467–469
hydrogen bromide additions, 485–486
kinetics vs., 249–250
second law, 242
Thermoplastics, 1294
Thermosetting resins, 1294–1295
THF *see* Tetrahydrofuran
Thiamine (Vitamin B1), 508
Thioacetal, 911–912
Thiolate ions, 614
Thiols, 613–617
nomenclature, 613
oxidation, 614–615
sulfide preparation, 615–617
Thionyl chloride ($SOCl_2$), 555–556, 957–958
Third-order rate equation, 245, 245*f*
Thomson, J. J., 5
Three-center, two-electron bonds, 378
Three-dimensional bond-line structures, 61–63, 62*f*
L-Threose, 1156
Thromboxanes, 1266
Thymine, 775, 1182–1184, 1184*f*, 1185*f*
Thymol, 793
Thyroxine, 1197–1198
Timolol, 201
Titanium tetraisopropoxide, 603–605
T_m (Melt transition temperature), 1293
TMSCl (Trimethylsilyl chloride), 552, 552*f*
TMS (Tetramethylsilane), 695–696
TNT (Trinitrotoluene), 240
Tofacitinib, 13
Toluene
as an arene, 788
from coal tar, 790
nitration, 842–844, 843*f*
in synthesis reactions, 525
p-Toluenesulfonic acid, 328, 894
Toolboxes of reactions, 509–510*t*, 520–521, 569*t*, 571*t*
Torsional angles, 158
Torsional strain, 159
Tosylates, 327–328
Trabectedin, 57
Trade names, 151
Transesterification, 1020, 1248–1253
Trans fats, 387, 1245
Transition metal elements, 1112–1113, 1112*f*
Transition states, 250–252, 250*f*, 251*f*
halogenation reactions, 470, 470*f*, 471*f*
halohydrin formation, 391
hydrohalogenation reactions, 432
intermediates vs., 250–251
sigmatropic rearrangements, 769, 769*f*
S_N2 reactions, 290–292
Transmetallation, 1115
Transport proteins, 1228–1229
Triacontyl hexadecanoate, 1240
Triacylglycerides, 1138–1139
Trichloroacetic acid, 109–110
Trichloroethanol, pK_a, 537
Triethylamine, 301
Triflate groups, 1113, 1114
Triflates, 328, 1118, 1123, 1129
Trifluoromethane sulfonate, 1114
Trifluoromethanesulfonic acid, 328
(Trifluoromethyl) benzene, 865
Triglycerides, 1241–1253, 1241*f*

antioxidants, 481
autooxidation, 1245
fats and oils, 387
fatty acid properties, 1241–1244
hydrogenation, 1244–1245
hydrolysis, 1246–1248
lipid bilayers, 1254*f*
structure and function, 1241
transesterification, 1248–1253
Trigonal planar geometry, 28, 28*f*
Trigonal pyramidal geometry, 26–27, 27*f*
(+)-Trigonoliimine A, 231
Trimethylamine, 35, 1056*f*, 1060
Trimethylsilyl chloride (TMSCl), 552, 552*f*
Trimyristin, 1240
Trinitrotoluene (TNT), 240
Triolein, 1243, 1243*f*
Tripalmitin, 1243–1244
Tripalmitolein, 1243–1244
Tripelennamine, 807
Triphenylmethane, 494
Triple bonds
atomic orbitals, 418, 418*f*
bond-line structures, 12
interconvertions, 442–444, 442*f*, 502, 567*f*
sp hybridization, 24
Triplet peaks, 705, 706, 706*f*, 711*f*
Triprolidine, 807
Tristearin, 1243, 1243*f*
Trisubstituted alkenes, 301*f*
Tritium, 343
Trivalent elements, 3
Tropylium cation, 802
Trypsin, 1214
Tsien, Roger, 1234
Tums (Calcium carbonate), 96–97
Twist boat conformations, 167
Tylenol (Acetaminophen), 87, 482

U

Ubiquinones, 566–567
UDPGA (uridine-5'-diphospho-α-D-glucouronic acid), 557
Ultraviolet (UV) light, 775
Ultraviolet (UV) spectroscopy, 771–775
Ultraviolet–visible (UV-Vis) spectroscopy, 771–775
Undecane, 143
Unimolecular reactions, 311–320
carbocation intermediates, 311–315
E1 mechanism, 313–314, 318–319
ionization rates, 317–318
kinetic isotope effects, 343–344
rearrangements, 316–317
regiochemistry, 318–319
S_N1 mechanism, 312–313, 319–320, 341–342
solvent effects, 341–342
stereochemistry, 318–320
substrates, 317–318
Unpolarized light, 202*f*
Unsaturated (term), 644, 672, 1113
Unsaturation, degree of, 672–675, 718
Unsymmetrical ethers, 586
Unsymmetrical ketones, reduction, 542–543
Upfield, of NMR spectrum, 696–697
Uracil, 1185*f*
Urea, 2, 139
Urethanes, 1290–1291
Uridine-5'-diphospho-α-D-glucouronic acid (UDPGA), 557

V

Valdecoxib, 1266
Valderramenol A, 78
Valence, 3*f*
Valence bond theory, 17–18
Valence shell electron pair repulsion (VSEPR) theory, 26–30, 29*t*
Valium (Diazepam), 13, 853, 948
Vane, John, 964
Vanillin, 885
Variable-temperature NMR, 695
Vasopressin, 1211, 1212
Veisalgia, 529
Viagra (Sildenafil), 247, 1060, 1084
Vibrational excitation, 638–640
Vibrational states, energy gaps, 638, 638*f*, 640*f*
Vicinal dibromides, 514
Vicinal dihalides, 427, 514–515
Vicinal protons, 707
Villiger, Victor, 921
Vinyl acetates, 939, 1302
Vinyl boronic esters, 1118
Vinyl bromides, 1118
Vinyl chlorides, 1280
Vinyl halides, 281, 318
Vinylic groups, 769
Vinylic positions, 70
Vinylic radicals, 458–459
Vinylic (vinyl) carbocations, 318, 432
Vinylidene chloride, 1280
Vinyl iodides, 1123
Vinyl organozinc reagents, 1123
Vinyl triflates, 1118, 1129
Vioxx (Rofecoxib), 188, 1266
Vision, 777–778, 904
Vitalism, 2
Vitamin A (Retinol), 87, 508, 777, 904
Vitamin B_1 (Thiamine), 508
Vitamin B_{12}, 512–513
Vitamin C, 87, 483, 508
Vitamin D_2 (Ergocalciferol), 508, 770
Vitamin D_3 (Cholecalciferol), 192, 530, 770, 775
Vitamin D, 770–771
Vitamin E, 483, 586
Vitamin K_1, 508
Vitamins, 499, 507–508
VSEPR *see* Valence shell electron pair repulsion theory
Vulcanization, 752
Vulcanized rubber, 752, 1293

W

Walden inversion, 287
Wald, George, 777
Warfarin, 436
Waste prevention, 519
Water
see also Hydration reactions
acid-base reactions, 95
acidity, 106
bond angles, 588
geometry, 27, 27*f*
hydrogen bonding, 34*f*
leveling effect, 123–124
nucleophilicity, 294
as a solvent, 123–124, 340
Wavelength, 203–204, 637, 641
Wave mechanics, 14
Wavenumber, 641–646
Waves
of light, 202*f*
phases, 15–16, 15*f*
Waxes, 1240
Weak activators, 851
Weak deactivators, 851
Weak nucleophiles, 295
Wedge and dash drawings, 156*f*
Wedges, bond-line structures, 61–62
Weight
atomic, 668–670, 668*t*
molecular, 661
Whitesides–House reaction, 1106–1109
Wilkinson's catalyst, 385, 386
Williamson, Alexander, 594
Williamson ether synthesis, 594–595
Willstätter, Richard, 797
Windshields, 1295
Wittig reaction, 917–921
Wohl degradation, 1173–1174
Wöhler, Friedrich, 2
Wolff–Kishner reduction, 907–908
Wolff, Ludwig, 907
Woodward–Fieser rules, 773, 773*t*
Woodward, Robert B., 278, 513, 519, 761, 764, 1099

X

ortho-Xylene, 788

Y

Yellow #40, 834–835
Ylides, 917

Z

Zaitsev, Alexander M., 301
Zaitsev products, 301, 402
Zaleplon, 948
Zantac (Ranitidine), 1054, 1086
Z conformations, 220–222, 1134
Ziegler–Natta catalysts, 1292
Zinc chloride ($ZnCl_2$), 554–555
Zocor (Simvastatin), 1261
Zoloft (Sertraline), 789, 1064
Zolpidem (Ambien), 45, 948
Zwitterions, 1200
Zyban (Bupropion), 1060
Zyprexa (Olanzapine), 789
Zyrtec (Cetirizine), 808

PERIODIC TABLE OF THE ELEMENTS

Atomic number → 6
Symbol → C
Name (IUPAC) → Carbon
Atomic mass → 12.011

IUPAC recommendations →
Chemical Abstracts Service group notation →

1 IA	2 IIA	3 IIIB	4 IVB	5 VB	6 VIB	7 VIIB	8 VIIIB	9 VIIIB	10 VIIIB	11 IB	12 IIB	13 IIIA	14 IVA	15 VA	16 VIA	17 VIIA	18 VIIIA
1 **H** Hydrogen 1.0078																	2 **He** Helium 4.0026
3 **Li** Lithium 6.941	4 **Be** Berylium 9.0122											5 **B** Boron 10.811	6 **C** Carbon 12.011	7 **N** Nitrogen 14.007	8 **O** Oxygen 15.999	9 **F** Fluorine 18.998	10 **Ne** Neon 20.180
11 **Na** Sodium 22.990	12 **Mg** Magnesium 24.305											13 **Al** Aluminum 26.982	14 **Si** Silicon 28.086	15 **P** Phosphorus 30.974	16 **S** Sulfur 32.065	17 **Cl** Chlorine 35.453	18 **Ar** Argon 39.948
19 **K** Potassium 39.098	20 **Ca** Calcium 40.078	21 **Sc** Scandium 44.956	22 **Ti** Titanium 47.867	23 **V** Vanadium 50.942	24 **Cr** Chromium 51.996	25 **Mn** Manganese 54.938	26 **Fe** Iron 55.845	27 **Co** Cobalt 58.933	28 **Ni** Nickel 58.693	29 **Cu** Copper 63.546	30 **Zn** Zinc 65.409	31 **Ga** Gallium 69.723	32 **Ge** Germanium 72.64	33 **As** Arsenic 74.922	34 **Se** Selenium 78.96	35 **Br** Bromine 79.904	36 **Kr** Krypton 83.798
37 **Rb** Rubidium 85.468	38 **Sr** Strontium 87.62	39 **Y** Yttrium 88.906	40 **Zr** Zirconium 91.224	41 **Nb** Niobium 92.906	42 **Mo** Molybdenum 95.94	43 **Tc** Technetium (98)	44 **Ru** Ruthenium 101.07	45 **Rh** Rhodium 102.91	46 **Pd** Palladium 106.42	47 **Ag** Silver 107.87	48 **Cd** Cadmium 112.41	49 **In** Indium 114.82	50 **Sn** Tin 118.71	51 **Sb** Antimony 121.76	52 **Te** Tellurium 127.60	53 **I** Iodine 126.90	54 **Xe** Xeno 131.29
55 **Cs** Caesium 132.91	56 **Ba** Barium 137.33	57 ***La** Lanthanum 138.91	72 **Hf** Hafnium 178.49	73 **Ta** Tantalum 180.95	74 **W** Tungsten 183.84	75 **Re** Rhenium 186.21	76 **Os** Osmium 190.23	77 **Ir** Iridium 192.22	78 **Pt** Platinum 195.08	79 **Au** Gold 196.97	80 **Hg** Mercury 200.59	81 **Tl** Thallium 204.38	82 **Pb** Lead 207.2	83 **Bi** Bismuth 208.98	84 **Po** Polonium (209)	85 **At** Astatine (210)	86 **Rn** Radon (222)
87 **Fr** Francium (223)	88 **Ra** Radium (226)	89 **#Ac** Actinium (227)	104 **Rf** Rutherfordium (267)	105 **Db** Dubnium (268)	106 **Sg** Seaborgium (271)	107 **Bh** Bohrium (272)	108 **Hs** Hassium (270)	109 **Mt** Meitnerium (276)	110 **Ds** Darmstadtium (281)	111 **Rg** Roentgenium (280)	112 **Cn** Copernicium (285)	113 **Nh** Nihonium (284)	114 **Fl** Flerovium (289)	115 **Mc** Moscovium (288)	116 **Lv** Livermorium (293)	117 **Ts** Tennessine (292)	118 **Og** Oganesson (294)

*Lanthanide Series	58 **Ce** Cerium 140.12	59 **Pr** Praseodymium 140.91	60 **Nd** Neodymium 144.24	61 **Pm** Promethium (145)	62 **Sm** Samarium 150.36	63 **Eu** Europium 151.96	64 **Gd** Gadolinium 157.25	65 **Tb** Terbium 158.93	66 **Dy** Dysprosium 162.50	67 **Ho** Holmium 164.93	68 **Er** Erbium 167.26	69 **Tm** Thulium 168.93	70 **Yb** Ytterbium 173.05	71 **Lu** Lutetium 174.97
# Actinide Series	90 **Th** Thorium 232.04	91 **Pa** Protactinium 231.04	92 **U** Uranium 238.03	93 **Np** Neptunium (237)	94 **Pu** Plutonium (244)	95 **Am** Americium (243)	96 **Cm** Curium (247)	97 **Bk** Berkelium (247)	98 **Cf** Californium (251)	99 **Es** Einsteinium (252)	100 **Fm** Fermium (257)	101 **Md** Mendelevium (258)	102 **No** Nobelium (259)	103 **Lr** Lawrencium (262)

WILEY END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

Go to www.wiley.com/go/eula to access Wiley’s ebook EULA.

PERCEPTIONS OF A RENEGADE MIND

DAVID ICKE

PERCEPTIONS
OF A
RENEGADE
MIND
DAVID ICKE

PERCEPTIONS OF A RENEGADE MIND

ickonic
publishing

First published in July 2021.

New Enterprise House
St Helens Street
Derby
DE1 3GY
UK

email: gareth.icke@davidicke.com

Copyright © 2021 David Icke

No part of this book may be reproduced in any form without permission from the Publisher, except for the quotation of brief passages in criticism

Cover Design: Gareth Icke
Book Design: Neil Hague

British Library Cataloguing-in Publication Data
A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

eISBN 978-18384153-1-0

PERCEPTIONS OF A RENEGADE MIND

DAVID ICKE

Dedication:

To *Freeeeeedom!*

ICKONIC
THE ALTERNATIVE

NEW. DIFFERENT. REVOLUTIONARY

HUNDREDS OF CUTTING EDGE DOCUMENTARIES,
FEATURE FILMS, SERIES & PODCASTS.

SIGN UP NOW AT ICKONIC.COM

THE LIFE STORY OF DAVID ICKE

RENEGADE

THE FEATURE LENGTH FILM

AVAILABLE NOW AT DAVIDICKE.COM

Renegade:
Adjective
'Having rejected tradition: Unconventional.'
Merriam-Webster Dictionary

Acquiescence to tyranny is the death of the spirit

You may be 38 years old, as I happen to be. And one day, some great opportunity stands before you and calls you to stand up for some great principle, some great issue, some great cause. And you refuse to do it because you are afraid … You refuse to do it because you want to live longer … You're afraid that you will lose your job, or you are afraid that you will be criticised or that you will lose your popularity, or you're afraid that somebody will stab you, or shoot at you or bomb your house; so you refuse to take the stand.

Well, you may go on and live until you are 90, but you're just as dead at 38 as you would be at 90. And the cessation of breathing in your life is but the belated announcement of an earlier death of the spirit.

Martin Luther King

How the few control the many and always have – the many do whatever they're told

'Forward, the Light Brigade!'
Was there a man dismayed?
Not though the soldier knew
Someone had blundered.
Theirs not to make reply,
Theirs not to reason why,
Theirs but to do and die.
Into the valley of Death
Rode the six hundred.

Cannon to right of them,
Cannon to left of them,
Cannon in front of them
Volleyed and thundered;
Stormed at with shot and shell,
Boldly they rode and well,
Into the jaws of Death,
Into the mouth of hell
Rode the six hundred

Alfred Lord Tennyson (1809-1892)

The mist is lifting slowly
I can see the way ahead
And I've left behind the empty streets
That once inspired my life
And the strength of the emotion
Is like thunder in the air
'Cos the promise that we made each other
Haunts me to the end

The secret of your beauty
And the mystery of your soul
I've been searching for in everyone I meet
And the times I've been mistaken
It's impossible to say
And the grass is growing
Underneath our feet

The words that I remember
From my childhood still are true
That there's none so blind
As those who will not see
And to those who lack the courage
And say it's dangerous to try
Well they just don't know
That love eternal will not be denied

I know you're out there somewhere
Somewhere, somewhere
I know you're out there somewhere

Somewhere you can hear my voice
I know I'll find you somehow
Somehow, somehow
I know I'll find you somehow
And somehow I'll return again to you

The Moody Blues

Are you a gutless wonder - or a Renegade Mind?

Monuments put from pen to paper,
Turns me into a gutless wonder,
And if you tolerate this,
Then your children will be next.
Gravity keeps my head down,
Or is it maybe shame ...

Manic Street Preachers

Rise like lions after slumber
In unvanquishable number.
Shake your chains to earth like dew
Which in sleep have fallen on you.
Ye are many – they are few.

Percy Shelley

Contents

CHAPTER 1 'I'm thinking' – Oh, but *are* you?
CHAPTER 2 Renegade perception
CHAPTER 3 The Pushbacker sting
CHAPTER 4 'Covid': The calculated catastrophe
CHAPTER 5 There *is no* 'virus'
CHAPTER 6 Sequence of deceit
CHAPTER 7 War on your mind
CHAPTER 8 'Reframing' insanity
CHAPTER 9 We must have it? So what is it?
CHAPTER 10 Human 2.0
CHAPTER 11 Who controls the Cult?
CHAPTER 12 Escaping Wetiko

POSTSCRIPT
APPENDIX Cowan-Kaufman-Morell Statement on Virus Isolation
BIBLIOGRAPHY
INDEX

CHAPTER ONE

I'm thinking' – Oh, but *are* you?

Think for yourself and let others enjoy the privilege of doing so too
Voltaire

French-born philosopher, mathematician and scientist René Descartes became famous for his statement in Latin in the 17th century which translates into English as: 'I think, therefore I am.'

On the face of it that is true. Thought reflects perception and perception leads to both behaviour and self-identity. In that sense 'we' are what we think. But who or what is doing the thinking and is thinking the only route to perception? Clearly, as we shall see, 'we' are not always the source of 'our' perception, indeed with regard to humanity as a whole this is rarely the case; and thinking is far from the only means of perception. Thought is the village idiot compared with other expressions of consciousness that we all have the potential to access and tap into. This has to be true when we *are* those other expressions of consciousness which are infinite in nature. We have forgotten this, or, more to the point, been manipulated to forget.

These are not just the esoteric musings of the navel. The whole foundation of human control and oppression is control of perception. Once perception is hijacked then so is behaviour which is dictated by perception. Collective perception becomes collective behaviour and collective behaviour is what we call human society. Perception is all and those behind human control know that which is

why perception is the target 24/7 of the psychopathic manipulators that I call the Global Cult. They know that if they dictate perception they will dictate behaviour and collectively dictate the nature of human society. They are further aware that perception is formed from information received and if they control the circulation of information they will to a vast extent direct human behaviour. Censorship of information and opinion has become globally Nazi-like in recent years and never more blatantly than since the illusory 'virus pandemic' was triggered out of China in 2019 and across the world in 2020. Why have billions submitted to house arrest and accepted fascistic societies in a way they would have never believed possible? Those controlling the information spewing from government, mainstream media and Silicon Valley (all controlled by the same Global Cult networks) told them they were in danger from a 'deadly virus' and only by submitting to house arrest and conceding their most basic of freedoms could they and their families be protected. This monumental and provable lie became the *perception* of the billions and therefore the *behaviour* of the billions. In those few words you have the whole structure and modus operandi of human control. Fear is a perception – **F**alse **E**motion **A**ppearing **R**eal – and fear is the currency of control. In short … get them by the balls (or give them the impression that you have) and their hearts and minds will follow. Nothing grips the dangly bits and freezes the rear-end more comprehensively than fear.

World number 1

There are two 'worlds' in what appears to be one 'world' and the prime difference between them is knowledge. First we have the mass of human society in which the population is maintained in coldly-calculated ignorance through control of information and the 'education' (indoctrination) system. That's all you really need to control to enslave billions in a perceptual delusion in which what are perceived to be *their* thoughts and opinions are ever-repeated mantras that the system has been downloading all their lives through 'education', media, science, medicine, politics and academia

in which the personnel and advocates are themselves overwhelmingly the perceptual products of the same repetition. Teachers and academics in general are processed by the same programming machine as everyone else, but unlike the great majority they never leave the 'education' program. It gripped them as students and continues to grip them as programmers of subsequent generations of students. The programmed become the programmers – the programmed programmers. The same can largely be said for scientists, doctors and politicians and not least because as the American writer Upton Sinclair said: 'It is difficult to get a man to understand something when his salary depends upon his not understanding it.' If your career and income depend on thinking the way the system demands then you will – bar a few free-minded exceptions – concede your mind to the Perceptual Mainframe that I call the Postage Stamp Consensus. This is a tiny band of perceived knowledge and possibility 'taught' (downloaded) in the schools and universities, pounded out by the mainstream media and on which all government policy is founded. Try thinking, and especially speaking and acting, outside of the 'box' of consensus and see what that does for your career in the Mainstream Everything which bullies, harasses, intimidates and ridicules the population into compliance. Here we have the simple structure which enslaves most of humanity in a perceptual prison cell for an entire lifetime and I'll go deeper into this process shortly. Most of what humanity is taught as fact is nothing more than programmed belief. American science fiction author Frank Herbert was right when he said: 'Belief can be manipulated. Only knowledge is dangerous.' In the 'Covid' age belief is promoted and knowledge is censored. It was always so, but never to the extreme of today.

World number 2

A 'number 2' is slang for 'doing a poo' and how appropriate that is when this other 'world' is doing just that on humanity every minute of every day. World number 2 is a global network of secret societies and semi-secret groups dictating the direction of society via

governments, corporations and authorities of every kind. I have spent more than 30 years uncovering and exposing this network that I call the Global Cult and knowing its agenda is what has made my books so accurate in predicting current and past events. Secret societies are secret for a reason. They want to keep their hoarded knowledge to themselves and their chosen initiates and to hide it from the population which they seek through ignorance to control and subdue. The whole foundation of the division between World 1 and World 2 is *knowledge*. What number 1 knows number 2 must not. Knowledge they have worked so hard to keep secret includes (a) the agenda to enslave humanity in a centrally-controlled global dictatorship, and (b) the nature of reality and life itself. The latter (b) must be suppressed to allow the former (a) to prevail as I shall be explaining. The way the Cult manipulates and interacts with the population can be likened to a spider's web. The 'spider' sits at the centre in the shadows and imposes its will through the web with each strand represented in World number 2 by a secret society, satanic or semi-secret group, and in World number 1 – the world of the seen – by governments, agencies of government, law enforcement, corporations, the banking system, media conglomerates and Silicon Valley (Fig 1 overleaf). The spider and the web connect and coordinate all these organisations to pursue the same global outcome while the population sees them as individual entities working randomly and independently. At the level of the web governments *are* the banking system *are* the corporations *are* the media *are* Silicon Valley *are* the World Health Organization working from their inner cores as one unit. Apparently unconnected countries, corporations, institutions, organisations and people are on the *same team* pursuing the same global outcome. Strands in the web immediately around the spider are the most secretive and exclusive secret societies and their membership is emphatically restricted to the Cult inner-circle emerging through the generations from particular bloodlines for reasons I will come to. At the core of the core you would get them in a single room. That's how many people are dictating the direction of human society and its transformation

through the 'Covid' hoax and other means. As the web expands out from the spider we meet the secret societies that many people will be aware of – the Freemasons, Knights Templar, Knights of Malta, Opus Dei, the inner sanctum of the Jesuit Order, and such like. Note how many are connected to the Church of Rome and there is a reason for that. The Roman Church was established as a revamp, a rebranding, of the relocated 'Church' of Babylon and the Cult imposing global tyranny today can be tracked back to Babylon and Sumer in what is now Iraq.

Figure 1: The global web through which the few control the many. (Image Neil Hague.)

Inner levels of the web operate in the unseen away from the public eye and then we have what I call the cusp organisations located at the point where the hidden meets the seen. They include a series of satellite organisations answering to a secret society founded in London in the late 19th century called the Round Table and among them are the Royal Institute of International Affairs (UK, founded in 1920); Council on Foreign Relations (US, 1921); Bilderberg Group (worldwide, 1954); Trilateral Commission (US/worldwide, 1972); and the Club of Rome (worldwide, 1968) which was created to exploit environmental concerns to justify the centralisation of global power to 'save the planet'. The Club of Rome instigated with others the human-caused climate change hoax which has led to all the 'green

new deals' demanding that very centralisation of control. Cusp organisations, which include endless 'think tanks' all over the world, are designed to coordinate a single global policy between political and business leaders, intelligence personnel, media organisations and anyone who can influence the direction of policy in their own sphere of operation. Major players and regular attenders will know what is happening – or some of it – while others come and go and are kept overwhelmingly in the dark about the big picture. I refer to these cusp groupings as semi-secret in that they can be publicly identified, but what goes on at the inner-core is kept very much 'in house' even from most of their members and participants through a fiercely-imposed system of compartmentalisation. Only let them know what they need to know to serve your interests and no more. The structure of secret societies serves as a perfect example of this principle. Most Freemasons never get higher than the bottom three levels of 'degree' (degree of knowledge) when there are 33 official degrees of the Scottish Rite. Initiates only qualify for the next higher 'compartment' or degree if those at that level choose to allow them. Knowledge can be carefully assigned only to those considered 'safe'. I went to my local Freemason's lodge a few years ago when they were having an 'open day' to show how cuddly they were and when I chatted to some of them I was astonished at how little the rank and file knew even about the most ubiquitous symbols they use. The mushroom technique – keep them in the dark and feed them bullshit – applies to most people in the web as well as the population as a whole. Sub-divisions of the web mirror in theme and structure transnational corporations which have a headquarters somewhere in the world dictating to all their subsidiaries in different countries. Subsidiaries operate in their methodology and branding to the same centrally-dictated plan and policy in pursuit of particular ends. The Cult web functions in the same way. Each country has its own web as a subsidiary of the global one. They consist of networks of secret societies, semi-secret groups and bloodline families and their job is to impose the will of the spider and the global web in their particular country. Subsidiary networks control and manipulate the national political system, finance, corporations, media, medicine, etc. to

ensure that they follow the globally-dictated Cult agenda. These networks were the means through which the 'Covid' hoax could be played out with almost every country responding in the same way.

The 'Yessir' pyramid

Compartmentalisation is the key to understanding how a tiny few can dictate the lives of billions when combined with a top-down sequence of imposition and acquiescence. The inner core of the Cult sits at the peak of the pyramidal hierarchy of human society (Fig 2 overleaf). It imposes its will – its agenda for the world – on the level immediately below which acquiesces to that imposition. This level then imposes the Cult will on the level below them which acquiesces and imposes on the next level. Very quickly we meet levels in the hierarchy that have no idea there even is a Cult, but the sequence of imposition and acquiescence continues down the pyramid in just the same way. 'I don't know why we are doing this but the order came from "on-high" and so we better just do it.' Alfred Lord Tennyson said of the cannon fodder levels in his poem *The Charge of the Light Brigade*: 'Theirs not to reason why; theirs but to do and die.' The next line says that 'into the valley of death rode the six hundred' and they died because they obeyed without question what their perceived 'superiors' told them to do. In the same way the population capitulated to 'Covid'. The whole hierarchical pyramid functions like this to allow the very few to direct the enormous many. Eventually imposition-acquiescence-imposition-acquiescence comes down to the mass of the population at the foot of the pyramid. If they acquiesce to those levels of the hierarchy imposing on them (governments/law enforcement/doctors/media) a circuit is completed between the population and the handful of super-psychopaths in the Cult inner core at the top of the pyramid. Without a circuit-breaking refusal to obey, the sequence of imposition and acquiescence allows a staggeringly few people to impose their will upon the entirety of humankind. We are looking at the very sequence that has subjugated billions since the start of 2020. Our freedom has not been taken from us. Humanity has given it

away. Fascists do not impose fascism because there are not enough of them. Fascism is imposed by the population acquiescing to fascism. Put another way allowing their perceptions to be programmed to the extent that leads to the population giving their freedom away by giving their perceptions – their mind – away. If this circuit is not broken by humanity ceasing to cooperate with their own enslavement then nothing can change. For that to happen people have to critically think and see through the lies and window dressing and then summon the backbone to act upon what they see. The Cult spends its days working to stop either happening and its methodology is systematic and highly detailed, but it can be overcome and that is what this book is all about.

Figure 2: The simple sequence of imposition and compliance that allows a handful of people at the peak of the pyramid to dictate the lives of billions.

The Life Program

Okay, back to world number 1 or the world of the 'masses'. Observe the process of what we call 'life' and it is a perceptual download from cradle to grave. The Cult has created a global structure in which perception can be programmed and the program continually topped-up with what appears to be constant confirmation that the program is indeed true reality. The important word here is 'appears'.

This is the structure, the fly-trap, the Postage Stamp Consensus or Perceptual Mainframe, which represents that incredibly narrow band of perceived possibility delivered by the 'education' system, mainstream media, science and medicine. From the earliest age the download begins with parents who have themselves succumbed to the very programming their children are about to go through. Most parents don't do this out of malevolence and mostly it is quite the opposite. They do what they believe is best for their children and that is what the program has told them is best. Within three or four years comes the major transition from parental programming to full-blown state (Cult) programming in school, college and university where perceptually-programmed teachers and academics pass on their programming to the next generations. Teachers who resist are soon marginalised and their careers ended while children who resist are called a problem child for whom Ritalin may need to be prescribed. A few years after entering the 'world' children are under the control of authority figures representing the state telling them when they have to be there, when they can leave and when they can speak, eat, even go to the toilet. This is calculated preparation for a lifetime of obeying authority in all its forms. Reflex-action fear of authority is instilled by authority from the start. Children soon learn the carrot and stick consequences of obeying or defying authority which is underpinned daily for the rest of their life. Fortunately I daydreamed through this crap and never obeyed authority simply because it told me to. This approach to my alleged 'betters' continues to this day. There can be consequences of pursuing open-minded freedom in a world of closed-minded conformity. I spent a lot of time in school corridors after being ejected from the classroom for not taking some of it seriously and now I spend a lot of time being ejected from Facebook, YouTube and Twitter. But I can tell you that being true to yourself and not compromising your self-respect is far more exhilarating than bowing to authority for authority's sake. You don't have to be a sheep to the shepherd (authority) and the sheep dog (fear of not obeying authority).

The perceptual download continues throughout the formative years in school, college and university while script-reading 'teachers', 'academics' 'scientists', 'doctors' and 'journalists' insist that ongoing generations must be as programmed as they are. Accept the program or you will not pass your 'exams' which confirm your 'degree' of programming. It is tragic to think that many parents pressure their offspring to work hard at school to download the program and qualify for the next stage at college and university. The late, great, American comedian George Carlin said: 'Here's a bumper sticker I'd like to see: We are proud parents of a child who has resisted his teachers' attempts to break his spirit and bend him to the will of his corporate masters.' Well, the best of luck finding many of those, George. Then comes the moment to leave the formal programming years in academia and enter the 'adult' world of work. There you meet others in your chosen or prescribed arena who went through the same Postage Stamp Consensus program before you did. There is therefore overwhelming agreement between almost everyone on the basic foundations of Postage Stamp reality and the rejection, even contempt, of the few who have a mind of their own and are prepared to use it. This has two major effects. Firstly, the consensus confirms to the programmed that their download is really how things are. I mean, everyone knows that, right? Secondly, the arrogance and ignorance of Postage Stamp adherents ensure that anyone questioning the program will have unpleasant consequences for seeking their own truth and not picking their perceptions from the shelf marked: 'Things you must believe without question and if you don't you're a dangerous lunatic conspiracy theorist and a harebrained nutter'.

Every government, agency and corporation is founded on the same Postage Stamp prison cell and you can see why so many people believe the same thing while calling it their own 'opinion'. Fusion of governments and corporations in pursuit of the same agenda was the definition of fascism described by Italian dictator Benito Mussolini. The pressure to conform to perceptual norms downloaded for a lifetime is incessant and infiltrates society right

down to family groups that become censors and condemners of their own 'black sheep' for not, ironically, being sheep. We have seen an explosion of that in the 'Covid' era. Cult-owned global media unleashes its propaganda all day every day in support of the Postage Stamp and targets with abuse and ridicule anyone in the public eye who won't bend their mind to the will of the tyranny. Any response to this is denied (certainly in my case). They don't want to give a platform to expose official lies. Cult-owned-and-created Internet giants like Facebook, Google, YouTube and Twitter delete you for having an unapproved opinion. Facebook boasts that its AI censors delete 97-percent of 'hate speech' before anyone even reports it. Much of that 'hate speech' will simply be an opinion that Facebook and its masters don't want people to see. Such perceptual oppression is widely known as fascism. Even Facebook executive Benny Thomas, a 'CEO Global Planning Lead', said in comments secretly recorded by investigative journalism operation Project Veritas that Facebook is 'too powerful' and should be broken up:

> I mean, no king in history has been the ruler of two billion people, but Mark Zuckerberg is … And he's 36. That's too much for a 36-year-old ... You should not have power over two billion people. I just think that's wrong.

Thomas said Facebook-owned platforms like Instagram, Oculus, and WhatsApp needed to be separate companies. 'It's too much power when they're all one together'. That's the way the Cult likes it, however. We have an executive of a Cult organisation in Benny Thomas that doesn't know there is a Cult such is the compartmentalisation. Thomas said that Facebook and Google 'are no longer companies, they're countries'. Actually they are more powerful than countries on the basis that if you control information you control perception and control human society.

I love my oppressor

Another expression of this psychological trickery is for those who realise they are being pressured into compliance to eventually

convince themselves to believe the official narratives to protect their self-respect from accepting the truth that they have succumbed to meek and subservient compliance. Such people become some of the most vehement defenders of the system. You can see them everywhere screaming abuse at those who prefer to think for themselves and by doing so reminding the compliers of their own capitulation to conformity. 'You are talking dangerous nonsense you Covidiot!!' Are you trying to convince me or yourself? It is a potent form of Stockholm syndrome which is defined as: 'A psychological condition that occurs when a victim of abuse identifies and attaches, or bonds, positively with their abuser.' An example is hostages bonding and even 'falling in love' with their kidnappers. The syndrome has been observed in domestic violence, abused children, concentration camp inmates, prisoners of war and many and various Satanic cults. These are some traits of Stockholm syndrome listed at goodtherapy.org:

- Positive regard towards perpetrators of abuse or captor [see 'Covid'].
- Failure to cooperate with police and other government authorities when it comes to holding perpetrators of abuse or kidnapping accountable [or in the case of 'Covid' cooperating with the police to enforce and defend their captors' demands].
- Little or no effort to escape [see 'Covid'].
- Belief in the goodness of the perpetrators or kidnappers [see 'Covid'].
- Appeasement of captors. This is a manipulative strategy for maintaining one's safety. As victims get rewarded – perhaps with less abuse or even with life itself – their appeasing behaviours are reinforced [see 'Covid'].
- Learned helplessness. This can be akin to 'if you can't beat 'em, join 'em'. As the victims fail to escape the abuse or captivity, they may start giving up and soon realize it's just easier for everyone if they acquiesce all their power to their captors [see 'Covid'].

- Feelings of pity toward the abusers, believing they are actually victims themselves. Because of this, victims may go on a crusade or mission to 'save' [protect] their abuser [see the venom unleashed on those challenging the official 'Covid' narrative].
- Unwillingness to learn to detach from their perpetrators and heal. In essence, victims may tend to be less loyal to themselves than to their abuser [*definitely* see 'Covid'].

Ponder on those traits and compare them with the behaviour of great swathes of the global population who have defended governments and authorities which have spent every minute destroying their lives and livelihoods and those of their children and grandchildren since early 2020 with fascistic lockdowns, house arrest and employment deletion to 'protect' them from a 'deadly virus' that their abusers' perceptually created to bring about this very outcome. We are looking at mass Stockholm syndrome. All those that agree to concede their freedom will believe those perceptions are originating in their own independent 'mind' when in fact by conceding their reality to Stockholm syndrome they have by definition conceded any independence of mind. Listen to the 'opinions' of the acquiescing masses in this 'Covid' era and what gushes forth is the repetition of the official version of everything delivered unprocessed, unfiltered and unquestioned. The whole programming dynamic works this way. I must be free because I'm told that I am and so I think that I am.

You can see what I mean with the chapter theme of 'I'm thinking – Oh, but *are* you?' The great majority are not thinking, let alone for themselves. They are repeating what authority has told them to believe which allows them to be controlled. Weaving through this mentality is the fear that the 'conspiracy theorists' are right and this again explains the often hysterical abuse that ensues when you dare to contest the official narrative of anything. Denial is the mechanism of hiding from yourself what you don't want to be true. Telling people what they want to hear is easy, but it's an infinitely greater challenge to tell them what they would rather not be happening.

One is akin to pushing against an open door while the other is met with vehement resistance no matter what the scale of evidence. I don't want it to be true so I'll convince myself that it's not. Examples are everywhere from the denial that a partner is cheating despite all the signs to the reflex-action rejection of any idea that world events in which country after country act in exactly the same way are centrally coordinated. To accept the latter is to accept that a force of unspeakable evil is working to destroy your life and the lives of your children with nothing too horrific to achieve that end. Who the heck wants that to be true? But if we don't face reality the end is duly achieved and the consequences are far worse and ongoing than breaking through the walls of denial today with the courage to make a stand against tyranny.

Connect the dots – but how?

A crucial aspect of perceptual programming is to portray a world in which everything is random and almost nothing is connected to anything else. Randomness cannot be coordinated by its very nature and once you perceive events as random the idea they could be connected is waved away as the rantings of the tinfoil-hat brigade. You can't plan and coordinate random you idiot! No, you can't, but you can hide the coldly-calculated and long-planned behind the *illusion* of randomness. A foundation manifestation of the Renegade Mind is to scan reality for patterns that connect the apparently random and turn pixels and dots into pictures. This is the way I work and have done so for more than 30 years. You look for similarities in people, modus operandi and desired outcomes and slowly, then ever quicker, the picture forms. For instance: There would seem to be no connection between the 'Covid pandemic' hoax and the human-caused global-warming hoax and yet they are masks (appropriately) on the same face seeking the same outcome. Those pushing the global warming myth through the Club of Rome and other Cult agencies are driving the lies about 'Covid' – Bill Gates is an obvious one, but they are endless. Why would the same people be involved in both when they are clearly not connected? Oh, but they

are. Common themes with personnel are matched by common goals. The 'solutions' to both 'problems' are centralisation of global power to impose the will of the few on the many to 'save' humanity from 'Covid' and save the planet from an 'existential threat' (we need 'zero Covid' and 'zero carbon emissions'). These, in turn, connect with the 'dot' of globalisation which was coined to describe the centralisation of global power in every area of life through incessant political and corporate expansion, trading blocks and superstates like the European Union. If you are the few and you want to control the many you have to centralise power and decision-making. The more you centralise power the more power the few at the centre will have over the many; and the more that power is centralised the more power those at the centre have to centralise even quicker. The momentum of centralisation gets faster and faster which is exactly the process we have witnessed. In this way the hoaxed 'pandemic' and the fakery of human-caused global warming serve the interests of globalisation and the seizure of global power in the hands of the Cult inner-circle which is behind 'Covid', 'climate change' *and* globalisation. At this point random 'dots' become a clear and obvious picture or pattern.

Klaus Schwab, the classic Bond villain who founded the Cult's Gates-funded World Economic Forum, published a book in 2020, *The Great Reset*, in which he used the 'problem' of 'Covid' to justify a total transformation of human society to 'save' humanity from 'climate change'. Schwab said: 'The pandemic represents a rare but narrow window of opportunity to reflect, reimagine, and reset our world.' What he didn't mention is that the Cult he serves is behind both hoaxes as I show in my book *The Answer*. He and the Cult don't have to reimagine the world. They know precisely what they want and that's why they destroyed human society with 'Covid' to 'build back better' in their grand design. Their job is not to imagine, but to get humanity to imagine and agree with their plans while believing it's all random. It must be pure coincidence that 'The Great Reset' has long been the Cult's code name for the global imposition of fascism and replaced previous code-names of the 'New World

Order' used by Cult frontmen like Father George Bush and the 'New Order of the Ages' which emerged from Freemasonry and much older secret societies. New Order of the Ages appears on the reverse of the Great Seal of the United States as 'Novus ordo seclorum' underneath the Cult symbol used since way back of the pyramid and all seeing-eye (Fig 3). The pyramid is the hierarchy of human control headed by the illuminated eye that symbolises the force behind the Cult which I will expose in later chapters. The term 'Annuit Coeptis' translates as 'He favours our undertaking'. We are told the 'He' is the Christian god, but 'He' is not as I will be explaining.

Figure 3: The all-seeing eye of the Cult 'god' on the Freemason-designed Great Seal of the United States and also on the dollar bill.

Having you on

Two major Cult techniques of perceptual manipulation that relate to all this are what I have called since the 1990s Problem-Reaction-Solution (PRS) and the Totalitarian Tiptoe (TT). They can be uncovered by the inquiring mind with a simple question: Who benefits? The answer usually identifies the perpetrators of a given action or happening through the concept of 'he who most benefits from a crime is the one most likely to have committed it'. The Latin 'Cue bono?' – Who benefits? – is widely attributed to the Roman orator and statesman Marcus Tullius Cicero. No wonder it goes back so far when the concept has been relevant to human behaviour since

history was recorded. Problem-Reaction-Solution is the technique used to manipulate us every day by covertly creating a problem (or the illusion of one) and offering the solution to the problem (or the illusion of one). In the first phase you create the problem and blame someone or something else for why it has happened. This may relate to a financial collapse, terrorist attack, war, global warming or pandemic, anything in fact that will allow you to impose the 'solution' to change society in the way you desire at that time. The 'problem' doesn't have to be real. PRS is manipulation of perception and all you need is the population to believe the problem is real. Human-caused global warming and the 'Covid pandemic' only have to be *perceived* to be real for the population to accept the 'solutions' of authority. I refer to this technique as NO-Problem-Reaction-Solution. Billions did not meekly accept house arrest from early 2020 because there was a real deadly 'Covid pandemic' but because they perceived – believed – that to be the case. The antidote to Problem-Reaction-Solution is to ask who benefits from the proposed solution. Invariably it will be anyone who wants to justify more control through deletion of freedom and centralisation of power and decision-making.

The two world wars were Problem-Reaction-Solutions that transformed and realigned global society. Both were manipulated into being by the Cult as I have detailed in books since the mid-1990s. They dramatically centralised global power, especially World War Two, which led to the United Nations and other global bodies thanks to the overt and covert manipulations of the Rockefeller family and other Cult bloodlines like the Rothschilds. The UN is a stalking horse for full-blown world government that I will come to shortly. The land on which the UN building stands in New York was donated by the Rockefellers and the same Cult family was behind Big Pharma scalpel and drug 'medicine' and the creation of the World Health Organization as part of the UN. They have been stalwarts of the eugenics movement and funded Hitler's race-purity expert' Ernst Rudin. The human-caused global warming hoax has been orchestrated by the Club of Rome through the UN which is

manufacturing both the 'problem' through its Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change and imposing the 'solution' through its Agenda 21 and Agenda 2030 which demand the total centralisation of global power to 'save the world' from a climate hoax the United Nations is itself perpetrating. What a small world the Cult can be seen to be particularly among the inner circles. The bedfellow of Problem-Reaction-Solution is the Totalitarian Tiptoe which became the Totalitarian Sprint in 2020. The technique is fashioned to hide the carefully-coordinated behind the cover of apparently random events. You start the sequence at 'A' and you know you are heading for 'Z'. You don't want people to know that and each step on the journey is presented as a random happening while all the steps strung together lead in the same direction. The speed may have quickened dramatically in recent times, but you can still see the incremental approach of the Tiptoe in the case of 'Covid' as each new imposition takes us deeper into fascism. Tell people they have to do this or that to get back to 'normal', then this and this and this. With each new demand adding to the ones that went before the population's freedom is deleted until it disappears. The spider wraps its web around the flies more comprehensively with each new diktat. I'll highlight this in more detail when I get to the 'Covid' hoax and how it has been pulled off. Another prime example of the Totalitarian Tiptoe is how the Cult-created European Union went from a 'free-trade zone' to a centralised bureaucratic dictatorship through the Tiptoe of incremental centralisation of power until nations became mere administrative units for Cult-owned dark suits in Brussels.

The antidote to ignorance is knowledge which the Cult seeks vehemently to deny us, but despite the systematic censorship to that end the Renegade Mind can overcome this by vociferously seeking out the facts no matter the impediments put in the way. There is also a method of thinking and perceiving – *knowing* – that doesn't even need names, dates, place-type facts to identify the patterns that reveal the story. I'll get to that in the final chapter. All you need to know about the manipulation of human society and to what end is still out there – *at the time of writing* – in the form of books, videos

and websites for those that really want to breach the walls of programmed perception. To access this knowledge requires the abandonment of the mainstream media as a source of information in the awareness that this is owned and controlled by the Cult and therefore promotes mass perceptions that suit the Cult. Mainstream media lies all day, every day. That is its function and very reason for being. Where it does tell the truth, here and there, is only because the truth and the Cult agenda very occasionally coincide. If you look for fact and insight to the BBC, CNN and virtually all the rest of them you are asking to be conned and perceptually programmed.

Know the outcome and you'll see the journey

Events seem random when you have no idea where the world is being taken. Once you do the random becomes the carefully planned. Know the outcome and you'll see the journey is a phrase I have been using for a long time to give context to daily happenings that appear unconnected. Does a problem, or illusion of a problem, trigger a proposed 'solution' that further drives society in the direction of the outcome? Invariably the answer will be yes and the random – *abracadabra* – becomes the clearly coordinated. So what is this outcome that unlocks the door to a massively expanded understanding of daily events? I will summarise its major aspects – the fine detail is in my other books – and those new to this information will see that the world they thought they were living in is a very different place. The foundation of the Cult agenda is the incessant centralisation of power and all such centralisation is ultimately in pursuit of Cult control on a global level. I have described for a long time the planned world structure of top-down dictatorship as the Hunger Games Society. The term obviously comes from the movie series which portrayed a world in which a few living in military-protected hi-tech luxury were the overlords of a population condemned to abject poverty in isolated 'sectors' that were not allowed to interact. 'Covid' lockdowns and travel bans anyone? The 'Hunger Games' pyramid of structural control has the inner circle of the Cult at the top with pretty much the entire

population at the bottom under their control through dependency for survival on the Cult. The whole structure is planned to be protected and enforced by a military-police state (Fig 4).

Here you have the reason for the global lockdowns of the fake pandemic to coldly destroy independent incomes and livelihoods and make everyone dependent on the 'state' (the Cult that controls the 'states'). I have warned in my books for many years about the plan to introduce a 'guaranteed income' – a barely survivable pittance – designed to impose dependency when employment was destroyed by AI technology and now even more comprehensively at great speed by the 'Covid' scam. Once the pandemic was played and lockdown consequences began to delete independent income the authorities began to talk right on cue about the need for a guaranteed income and a 'Great Reset'. Guaranteed income will be presented as benevolent governments seeking to help a desperate people – desperate as a direct result of actions of the same governments. The truth is that such payments are a trap. You will only get them if you do exactly what the authorities demand including mass vaccination (genetic manipulation). We have seen this theme already in Australia where those dependent on government benefits have them reduced if parents don't agree to have their children vaccinated according to an insane health-destroying government-dictated schedule. Calculated economic collapse applies to governments as well as people. The Cult wants rid of countries through the creation of a world state with countries broken up into regions ruled by a world government and super states like the European Union. Countries must be bankrupted, too, to this end and it's being achieved by the trillions in 'rescue packages' and furlough payments, trillions in lost taxation, and money-no-object spending on 'Covid' including constant all-medium advertising (programming) which has made the media dependent on government for much of its income. The day of reckoning is coming – as planned – for government spending and given that it has been made possible by printing money and not by production/taxation there is inflation on the way that has the

potential to wipe out monetary value. In that case there will be no need for the Cult to steal your money. It just won't be worth anything (see the German Weimar Republic before the Nazis took over). Many have been okay with lockdowns while getting a percentage of their income from so-called furlough payments without having to work. Those payments are dependent, however, on people having at least a theoretical job with a business considered non-essential and ordered to close. As these business go under because they are closed by lockdown after lockdown the furlough stops and it will for everyone eventually. Then what? The 'then what?' is precisely the idea.

Figure 4: The Hunger Games Society structure I have long warned was planned and now the 'Covid' hoax has made it possible. This is the real reason for lockdowns.

Hired hands

Between the Hunger Games Cult elite and the dependent population is planned to be a vicious military-police state (a fusion of the two into one force). This has been in the making for a long time with police looking ever more like the military and carrying weapons to match. The pandemic scam has seen this process accelerate so fast as

lockdown house arrest is brutally enforced by carefully recruited fascist minds and gormless system-servers. The police and military are planned to merge into a centrally-directed world army in a global structure headed by a world government which wouldn't be elected even by the election fixes now in place. The world army is not planned even to be human and instead wars would be fought, primarily against the population, using robot technology controlled by artificial intelligence. I have been warning about this for decades and now militaries around the world are being transformed by this very AI technology. The global regime that I describe is a particular form of fascism known as a technocracy in which decisions are not made by clueless and co-opted politicians but by unelected technocrats – scientists, engineers, technologists and bureaucrats. Cult-owned-and-controlled Silicon Valley giants are examples of technocracy and they already have far more power to direct world events than governments. They are with their censorship *selecting* governments. I know that some are calling the 'Great Reset' a Marxist communist takeover, but fascism and Marxism are different labels for the same tyranny. Tell those who lived in fascist Germany and Stalinist Russia that there was a difference in the way their freedom was deleted and their lives controlled. I could call it a fascist technocracy or a Marxist technocracy and they would be equally accurate. The Hunger Games society with its world government structure would oversee a world army, world central bank and single world cashless currency imposing its will on a microchipped population (Fig 5). Scan its different elements and see how the illusory pandemic is forcing society in this very direction at great speed. Leaders of 23 countries and the World Health Organization (WHO) backed the idea in March, 2021, of a global treaty for 'international cooperation' in 'health emergencies' and nations should 'come together as a global community for peaceful cooperation that extends beyond this crisis'. Cut the Orwellian bullshit and this means another step towards global government. The plan includes a cashless digital money system that I first warned about in 1993. Right at the start of 'Covid' the deeply corrupt Tedros

Adhanom Ghebreyesus, the crooked and merely gofer 'head' of the World Health Organization, said it was possible to catch the 'virus' by touching cash and it was better to use cashless means. The claim was ridiculous nonsense and like the whole 'Covid' mind-trick it was nothing to do with 'health' and everything to do with pushing every aspect of the Cult agenda. As a result of the Tedros lie the use of cash has plummeted. The Cult script involves a single world digital currency that would eventually be technologically embedded in the body. China is a massive global centre for the Cult and if you watch what is happening there you will know what is planned for everywhere. The Chinese government is developing a digital currency which would allow fines to be deducted immediately via AI for anyone caught on camera breaking its fantastic list of laws and the money is going to be programmable with an expiry date to ensure that no one can accrue wealth except the Cult and its operatives.

Figure 5: The structure of global control the Cult has been working towards for so long and this has been enormously advanced by the 'Covid' illusion.

Serfdom is so smart

The Cult plan is far wider, extreme, and more comprehensive than even most conspiracy researchers appreciate and I will come to the true depths of deceit and control in the chapters 'Who controls the

Cult?' and 'Escaping Wetiko'. Even the world that we know is crazy enough. We are being deluged with ever more sophisticated and controlling technology under the heading of 'smart'. We have smart televisions, smart meters, smart cards, smart cars, smart driving, smart roads, smart pills, smart patches, smart watches, smart skin, smart borders, smart pavements, smart streets, smart cities, smart communities, smart environments, smart growth, smart planet ... smart *everything* around us. Smart technologies and methods of operation are designed to interlock to create a global Smart Grid connecting the entirety of human society including human minds to create a centrally-dictated 'hive' mind. 'Smart cities' is code for densely-occupied megacities of total surveillance and control through AI. Ever more destructive frequency communication systems like 5G have been rolled out without any official testing for health and psychological effects (colossal). 5G/6G/7G systems are needed to run the Smart Grid and each one becomes more destructive of body and mind. Deleting independent income is crucial to forcing people into these AI-policed prisons by ending private property ownership (except for the Cult elite). The Cult's Great Reset now openly foresees a global society in which no one will own any possessions and everything will be rented while the Cult would own literally everything under the guise of government and corporations. The aim has been to use the lockdowns to destroy sources of income on a mass scale and when the people are destitute and in unrepayable amounts of debt (problem) Cult assets come forward with the pledge to write-off debt in return for handing over all property and possessions (solution). Everything – literally everything including people – would be connected to the Internet via AI. I was warning years ago about the coming Internet of Things (IoT) in which all devices and technology from your car to your fridge would be plugged into the Internet and controlled by AI. Now we are already there with much more to come. The next stage is the Internet of Everything (IoE) which is planned to include the connection of AI to the human brain and body to replace the human mind with a centrally-controlled AI mind. Instead of perceptions

being manipulated through control of information and censorship those perceptions would come direct from the Cult through AI. What do you think? You think whatever AI decides that you think. In human terms there would be no individual 'think' any longer. Too incredible? The ravings of a lunatic? Not at all. Cult-owned crazies in Silicon Valley have been telling us the plan for years without explaining the real motivation and calculated implications. These include Google executive and 'futurist' Ray Kurzweil who highlights the year 2030 for when this would be underway. He said:

> Our thinking ... will be a hybrid of biological and non-biological thinking ... humans will be able to extend their limitations and 'think in the cloud' ... We're going to put gateways to the cloud in our brains ... We're going to gradually merge and enhance ourselves ... In my view, that's the nature of being human – we transcend our limitations.
>
> As the technology becomes vastly superior to what we are then the small proportion that is still human gets smaller and smaller and smaller until it's just utterly negligible.

The sales-pitch of Kurzweil and Cult-owned Silicon Valley is that this would make us 'super-human' when the real aim is to make us post-human and no longer 'human' in the sense that we have come to know. The entire global population would be connected to AI and become the centrally-controlled 'hive-mind' of externally-delivered perceptions. The Smart Grid being installed to impose the Cult's will on the world is being constructed to allow particular locations – even one location – to control the whole global system. From these prime control centres, which absolutely include China and Israel, anything connected to the Internet would be switched on or off and manipulated at will. Energy systems could be cut, communication via the Internet taken down, computer-controlled driverless autonomous vehicles driven off the road, medical devices switched off, the potential is limitless given how much AI and Internet connections now run human society. We have seen nothing yet if we allow this to continue. Autonomous vehicle makers are working with law enforcement to produce cars designed to automatically pull over if they detect a police or emergency vehicle flashing from up to 100 feet away. At a police stop the car would be unlocked and the

window rolled down automatically. Vehicles would only take you where the computer (the state) allowed. The end of petrol vehicles and speed limiters on all new cars in the UK and EU from 2022 are steps leading to electric computerised transport over which ultimately you have no control. The picture is far bigger even than the Cult global network or web and that will become clear when I get to the nature of the 'spider'. There is a connection between all these happenings and the instigation of DNA-manipulating 'vaccines' (which aren't 'vaccines') justified by the 'Covid' hoax. That connection is the unfolding plan to transform the human body from a biological to a synthetic biological state and this is why synthetic biology is such a fast-emerging discipline of mainstream science. 'Covid vaccines' are infusing self-replicating synthetic genetic material into the cells to cumulatively take us on the Totalitarian Tiptoe from Human 1.0 to the synthetic biological Human 2.0 which will be physically and perceptually attached to the Smart Grid to one hundred percent control every thought, perception and deed. Humanity needs to wake up and *fast*.

This is the barest explanation of where the 'outcome' is planned to go but it's enough to see the journey happening all around us. Those new to this information will already see 'Covid' in a whole new context. I will add much more detail as we go along, but for the minutiae evidence see my mega-works, *The Answer, The Trigger* and *Everything You Need to Know But Have Never Been Told*.

Now – how does a Renegade Mind see the 'world'?

CHAPTER TWO

Renegade Perception

It is one thing to be clever and another to be wise
George R.R. Martin

A simple definition of the difference between a programmed mind and a Renegade Mind would be that one sees only dots while the other connects them to see the picture. Reading reality with accuracy requires the observer to (a) know the planned outcome and (b) realise that everything, but *everything*, is connected.

The entirety of infinite reality is connected – that's its very nature – and with human society an expression of infinite reality the same must apply. Simple cause and effect is a connection. The effect is triggered by the cause and the effect then becomes the cause of another effect. Nothing happens in isolation because it *can't*. Life in whatever reality is simple choice and consequence. We make choices and these lead to consequences. If we don't like the consequences we can make different choices and get different consequences which lead to other choices and consequences. The choice and the consequence are not only connected they are indivisible. You can't have one without the other as an old song goes. A few cannot control the world unless those being controlled allow that to happen – cause and effect, choice and consequence. Control – who has it and who doesn't – is a two-way process, a symbiotic relationship, involving the controller and controlled. 'They took my freedom away!!' Well, yes, but you also gave it to them. Humanity is

subjected to mass control because humanity has acquiesced to that control. This is all cause and effect and literally a case of give and take. In the same way world events of every kind are connected and the Cult works incessantly to sell the illusion of the random and coincidental to maintain the essential (to them) perception of dots that hide the picture. Renegade Minds know this and constantly scan the world for patterns of connection. This is absolutely pivotal in understanding the happenings in the world and without that perspective clarity is impossible. First you know the planned outcome and then you identify the steps on the journey – the day-by-day apparently random which, when connected in relation to the outcome, no longer appear as individual events, but as the proverbial *chain* of events leading in the same direction. I'll give you some examples:

Political puppet show

We are told to believe that politics is 'adversarial' in that different parties with different beliefs engage in an endless tussle for power. There may have been some truth in that up to a point – and only a point – but today divisions between 'different' parties are rhetorical not ideological. Even the rhetorical is fusing into one-speak as the parties eject any remaining free thinkers while others succumb to the ever-gathering intimidation of anyone with the 'wrong' opinion. The Cult is not a new phenomenon and can be traced back thousands of years as my books have documented. Its intergenerational initiates have been manipulating events with increasing effect the more that global power has been centralised. In ancient times the Cult secured control through the system of monarchy in which 'special' bloodlines (of which more later) demanded the right to rule as kings and queens simply by birthright and by vanquishing others who claimed the same birthright. There came a time, however, when people had matured enough to see the unfairness of such tyranny and demanded a say in who governed them. Note the word – *governed* them. Not served them – *governed* them, hence government defined as 'the political direction and control exercised over the

actions of the members, citizens, or inhabitants of communities, societies, and states; direction of the affairs of a state, community, etc.' Governments exercise control over rather than serve just like the monarchies before them. Bizarrely there are still countries like the United Kingdom which are ruled by a monarch *and* a government that officially answers to the monarch. The UK head of state and that of Commonwealth countries such as Canada, Australia and New Zealand is 'selected' by who in a *single family* had unprotected sex with whom and in what order. Pinch me it can't be true. Ouch! Shit, it is. The demise of monarchies in most countries offered a potential vacuum in which some form of free and fair society could arise and the Cult had that base covered. Monarchies had served its interests but they couldn't continue in the face of such widespread opposition and, anyway, replacing a 'royal' dictatorship that people could see with a dictatorship 'of the people' hiding behind the concept of 'democracy' presented far greater manipulative possibilities and ways of hiding coordinated tyranny behind the illusion of 'freedom'.

Democracy is quite wrongly defined as government selected by the population. This is not the case at all. It is government selected by *some* of the population (and then only in theory). This 'some' doesn't even have to be the majority as we have seen so often in first-past-the-post elections in which the so-called majority party wins fewer votes than the 'losing' parties combined. Democracy can give total power to a party in government from a minority of the votes cast. It's a sleight of hand to sell tyranny as freedom. Seventy-four million Trump-supporting Americans didn't vote for the 'Democratic' Party of Joe Biden in the distinctly dodgy election in 2020 and yet far from acknowledging the wishes and feelings of that great percentage of American society the Cult-owned Biden government set out from day one to destroy them and their right to a voice and opinion. Empty shell Biden and his Cult handlers said they were doing this to 'protect democracy'. Such is the level of lunacy and sickness to which politics has descended. Connect the dots and relate them to the desired outcome – a world government run by self-appointed technocrats and no longer even elected

politicians. While operating through its political agents in government the Cult is at the same time encouraging public distain for politicians by putting idiots and incompetents in theoretical power on the road to deleting them. The idea is to instil a public reaction that says of the technocrats: 'Well, they couldn't do any worse than the pathetic politicians.' It's all about controlling perception and Renegade Minds can see through that while programmed minds cannot when they are ignorant of both the planned outcome and the manipulation techniques employed to secure that end. This knowledge can be learned, however, and fast if people choose to get informed.

Politics may at first sight appear very difficult to control from a central point. I mean look at the 'different' parties and how would you be able to oversee them all and their constituent parts? In truth, it's very straightforward because of their structure. We are back to the pyramid of imposition and acquiescence. Organisations are structured in the same way as the system as a whole. Political parties are not open forums of free expression. They are hierarchies. I was a national spokesman for the British Green Party which claimed to be a different kind of politics in which influence and power was devolved; but I can tell you from direct experience – and it's far worse now – that Green parties are run as hierarchies like all the others however much they may try to hide that fact or kid themselves that it's not true. A very few at the top of all political parties are directing policy and personnel. They decide if you are elevated in the party or serve as a government minister and to do that you have to be a yes man or woman. Look at all the maverick political thinkers who never ascended the greasy pole. If you want to progress within the party or reach 'high-office' you need to fall into line and conform. Exceptions to this are rare indeed. Should you want to run for parliament or Congress you have to persuade the local or state level of the party to select you and for that you need to play the game as dictated by the hierarchy. If you secure election and wish to progress within the greater structure you need to go on conforming to what is acceptable to those running the hierarchy

from the peak of the pyramid. Political parties are perceptual gulags and the very fact that there are party 'Whips' appointed to 'whip' politicians into voting the way the hierarchy demands exposes the ridiculous idea that politicians are elected to serve the people they are supposed to represent. Cult operatives and manipulation has long seized control of major parties that have any chance of forming a government and at least most of those that haven't. A new party forms and the Cult goes to work to infiltrate and direct. This has reached such a level today that you see video compilations of 'leaders' of all parties whether Democrats, Republicans, Conservative, Labour and Green parroting the same Cult mantra of 'Build Back Better' and the 'Great Reset' which are straight off the Cult song-sheet to describe the transformation of global society in response to the Cult-instigated hoaxes of the 'Covid pandemic' and human-caused 'climate change'. To see Caroline Lucas, the Green Party MP that I knew when I was in the party in the 1980s, speaking in support of plans proposed by Cult operative Klaus Schwab representing the billionaire global elite is a real head-shaker.

Many parties – one master

The party system is another mind-trick and was instigated to change the nature of the dictatorship by swapping 'royalty' for dark suits that people believed – though now ever less so – represented their interests. Understanding this trick is to realise that a single force (the Cult) controls all parties either directly in terms of the major ones or through manipulation of perception and ideology with others. You don't need to manipulate Green parties to demand your transformation of society in the name of 'climate change' when they are obsessed with the lie that this is essential to 'save the planet'. You just give them a platform and away they go serving your interests while believing they are being environmentally virtuous. America's political structure is a perfect blueprint for how the two or multi-party system is really a one-party state. The Republican Party is controlled from one step back in the shadows by a group made up of billionaires and their gofers known as neoconservatives or Neocons.

I have exposed them in fine detail in my books and they were the driving force behind the policies of the imbecilic presidency of Boy George Bush which included 9/11 (see *The Trigger* for a comprehensive demolition of the official story), the subsequent 'war on terror' (war *of* terror) and the invasions of Afghanistan and Iraq. The latter was a No-Problem-Reaction-Solution based on claims by Cult operatives, including Bush and British Prime Minister Tony Blair, about Saddam Hussein's 'weapons of mass destruction' which did not exist as war criminals Bush and Blair well knew.

Figure 6: Different front people, different parties – same control system.

The Democratic Party has its own 'Neocon' group controlling from the background which I call the 'Democons' and here's the penny-drop – the Neocons and Democons answer to the same masters one step further back into the shadows (Fig 6). At that level of the Cult the Republican and Democrat parties are controlled by the same people and no matter which is in power the Cult is in power. This is how it works in almost every country and certainly in Britain with Conservative, Labour, Liberal Democrat and Green parties now all on the same page whatever the rhetoric may be in their feeble attempts to appear different. Neocons operated at the time of Bush through a think tank called The Project for the New American Century which in September, 2000, published a document entitled *Rebuilding America's Defenses: Strategies, Forces, and Resources*

For a New Century demanding that America fight 'multiple, simultaneous major theatre wars' as a 'core mission' to force regime-change in countries including Iraq, Libya and Syria. Neocons arranged for Bush ('Republican') and Blair ('Labour Party') to front-up the invasion of Iraq and when they departed the Democons orchestrated the targeting of Libya and Syria through Barack Obama ('Democrat') and British Prime Minister David Cameron ('Conservative Party'). We have 'different' parties and 'different' people, but the same unfolding script. The more the Cult has seized the reigns of parties and personnel the more their policies have transparently pursued the same agenda to the point where the fascist 'Covid' impositions of the Conservative junta of Jackboot Johnson in Britain were opposed by the Labour Party because they were not fascist enough. The Labour Party is likened to the US Democrats while the Conservative Party is akin to a British version of the Republicans and on both sides of the Atlantic they all speak the same language and support the direction demanded by the Cult although some more enthusiastically than others. It's a similar story in country after country because it's all centrally controlled. Oh, but what about Trump? I'll come to him shortly. Political 'choice' in the 'party' system goes like this: You vote for Party A and they get into government. You don't like what they do so next time you vote for Party B and they get into government. You don't like what they do when it's pretty much the same as Party A and why wouldn't that be with both controlled by the same force? Given that only two, sometimes three, parties have any chance of forming a government to get rid of Party B that you don't like you have to vote again for Party A which … you don't like. This, ladies and gentlemen, is what they call 'democracy' which we are told – wrongly – is a term interchangeable with 'freedom'.

The cult of cults

At this point I need to introduce a major expression of the Global Cult known as Sabbatian-Frankism. Sabbatian is also spelt as Sabbatean. I will summarise here. I have published major exposés

and detailed background in other works. Sabbatian-Frankism combines the names of two frauds posing as 'Jewish' men, Sabbatai Zevi (1626-1676), a rabbi, black magician and occultist who proclaimed he was the Jewish messiah; and Jacob Frank (1726-1791), the Polish 'Jew', black magician and occultist who said he was the reincarnation of 'messiah' Zevi and biblical patriarch Jacob. They worked across two centuries to establish the Sabbatian-Frankist cult that plays a major, indeed central, role in the manipulation of human society by the Global Cult which has its origins much further back in history than Sabbatai Zevi. I should emphasise two points here in response to the shrill voices that will scream 'anti-Semitism': (1) Sabbatian-Frankists are NOT Jewish and only pose as such to hide their cult behind a Jewish façade; and (2) my information about this cult has come from Jewish sources who have long realised that their society and community has been infiltrated and taken over by interloper Sabbatian-Frankists. Infiltration has been the foundation technique of Sabbatian-Frankism from its official origin in the 17th century. Zevi's Sabbatian sect attracted a massive following described as the biggest messianic movement in Jewish history, spreading as far as Africa and Asia, and he promised a return for the Jews to the 'Promised Land' of Israel. Sabbatianism was not Judaism but an inversion of everything that mainstream Judaism stood for. So much so that this sinister cult would have a feast day when Judaism had a fast day and whatever was forbidden in Judaism the Sabbatians were encouraged and even commanded to do. This included incest and what would be today called Satanism. Members were forbidden to marry outside the sect and there was a system of keeping their children ignorant of what they were part of until they were old enough to be trusted not to unknowingly reveal anything to outsiders. The same system is employed to this day by the Global Cult in general which Sabbatian-Frankism has enormously influenced and now largely controls.

Zevi and his Sabbatians suffered a setback with the intervention by the Sultan of the Islamic Ottoman Empire in the Middle East and what is now the Republic of Turkey where Zevi was located. The

Sultan gave him the choice of proving his 'divinity', converting to Islam or facing torture and death. Funnily enough Zevi chose to convert or at least appear to. Some of his supporters were disillusioned and drifted away, but many did not with 300 families also converting – only in theory – to Islam. They continued behind this Islamic smokescreen to follow the goals, rules and rituals of Sabbatianism and became known as 'crypto-Jews' or the 'Dönmeh' which means 'to turn'. This is rather ironic because they didn't 'turn' and instead hid behind a fake Islamic persona. The process of appearing to be one thing while being very much another would become the calling card of Sabbatianism especially after Zevi's death and the arrival of the Satanist Jacob Frank in the 18th century when the cult became Sabbatian-Frankism and plumbed still new depths of depravity and infiltration which included – still includes – human sacrifice and sex with children. Wherever Sabbatians go paedophilia and Satanism follow and is it really a surprise that Hollywood is so infested with child abuse and Satanism when it was established by Sabbatian-Frankists and is still controlled by them? Hollywood has been one of the prime vehicles for global perceptual programming and manipulation. How many believe the version of 'history' portrayed in movies when it is a travesty and inversion (again) of the truth? Rabbi Marvin Antelman describes Frankism in his book, *To Eliminate the Opiate*, as 'a movement of complete evil' while Jewish professor Gershom Scholem said of Frank in *The Messianic Idea in Judaism*: 'In all his actions [he was] a truly corrupt and degenerate individual ... one of the most frightening phenomena in the whole of Jewish history.' Frank was excommunicated by traditional rabbis, as was Zevi, but Frank was undeterred and enjoyed vital support from the House of Rothschild, the infamous banking dynasty whose inner-core are Sabbatian-Frankists and not Jews. Infiltration of the Roman Church and Vatican was instigated by Frank with many Dönmeh 'turning' again to convert to Roman Catholicism with a view to hijacking the reins of power. This was the ever-repeating modus operandi and continues to be so. Pose as an advocate of the religion, culture or country that you want to control and then

manipulate your people into the positions of authority and influence largely as advisers, administrators and Svengalis for those that appear to be in power. They did this with Judaism, Christianity (Christian Zionism is part of this), Islam and other religions and nations until Sabbatian-Frankism spanned the world as it does today.

Sabbatian Saudis and the terror network

One expression of the Sabbatian-Frankist Dönmeh within Islam is the ruling family of Saudi Arabia, the House of Saud, through which came the vile distortion of Islam known as Wahhabism. This is the violent creed followed by terrorist groups like Al-Qaeda and ISIS or Islamic State. Wahhabism is the hand-chopping, head-chopping 'religion' of Saudi Arabia which is used to keep the people in a constant state of fear so the interloper House of Saud can continue to rule. Al-Qaeda and Islamic State were lavishly funded by the House of Saud while being created and directed by the Sabbatian-Frankist network in the United States that operates through the Pentagon, CIA and the government in general of whichever 'party'. The front man for the establishment of Wahhabism in the middle of the 18th century was a Sabbatian-Frankist 'crypto-Jew' posing as Islamic called Muhammad ibn Abd al-Wahhab. His daughter would marry the son of Muhammad bin Saud who established the first Saudi state before his death in 1765 with support from the British Empire. Bin Saud's successors would establish modern Saudi Arabia in league with the British and Americans in 1932 which allowed them to seize control of Islam's major shrines in Mecca and Medina. They have dictated the direction of Sunni Islam ever since while Iran is the major centre of the Shiite version and here we have the source of at least the public conflict between them. The Sabbatian network has used its Wahhabi extremists to carry out Problem-Reaction-Solution terrorist attacks in the name of 'Al-Qaeda' and 'Islamic State' to justify a devastating 'war on terror', ever-increasing surveillance of the population and to terrify people into compliance. Another insight of the Renegade Mind is the streetwise understanding that

just because a country, location or people are attacked doesn't mean that those apparently representing that country, location or people are not behind the attackers. Often they are *orchestrating* the attacks because of the societal changes that can be then justified in the name of 'saving the population from terrorists'.

I show in great detail in *The Trigger* how Sabbatian-Frankists were the real perpetrators of 9/11 and not '19 Arab hijackers' who were blamed for what happened. Observe what was justified in the name of 9/11 alone in terms of Middle East invasions, mass surveillance and control that fulfilled the demands of the Project for the New American Century document published by the Sabbatian Neocons. What appear to be enemies are on the deep inside players on the same Sabbatian team. Israel and Arab 'royal' dictatorships are all ruled by Sabbatians and the recent peace agreements between Israel and Saudi Arabia, the United Arab Emirates (UAE) and others are only making formal what has always been the case behind the scenes. Palestinians who have been subjected to grotesque tyranny since Israel was bombed and terrorised into existence in 1948 have never stood a chance. Sabbatian-Frankists have controlled Israel (so the constant theme of violence and war which Sabbatians love) and they have controlled the Arab countries that Palestinians have looked to for real support that never comes. 'Royal families' of the Arab world in Saudi Arabia, Bahrain, UAE, etc., are all Sabbatians with allegiance to the aims of the cult and not what is best for their Arabic populations. They have stolen the oil and financial resources from their people by false claims to be 'royal dynasties' with a genetic right to rule and by employing vicious militaries to impose their will.

Satanic 'illumination'

The Satanist Jacob Frank formed an alliance in 1773 with two other Sabbatians, Mayer Amschel Rothschild (1744-1812), founder of the Rothschild banking dynasty, and Jesuit-educated fraudulent Jew, Adam Weishaupt, and this led to the formation of the Bavarian Illuminati, firstly under another name, in 1776. The Illuminati would

be the manipulating force behind the French Revolution (1789-1799) and was also involved in the American Revolution (1775-1783) before and after the Illuminati's official creation. Weishaupt would later become (in public) a Protestant Christian in archetypal Sabbatian style. I read that his name can be decoded as Adam-Weishaupt or 'the first man to lead those who know'. He wasn't a leader in the sense that he was a subordinate, but he did lead those below him in a crusade of transforming human society that still continues today. The theme was confirmed as early as 1785 when a horseman courier called Lanz was reported to be struck by lighting and extensive Illuminati documents were found in his saddlebags. They made the link to Weishaupt and detailed the plan for world takeover. Current events with 'Covid' fascism have been in the making for a very long time. Jacob Frank was jailed for 13 years by the Catholic Inquisition after his arrest in 1760 and on his release he headed for Frankfurt, Germany, home city and headquarters of the House of Rothschild where the alliance was struck with Mayer Amschel Rothschild and Weishaupt. Rothschild arranged for Frank to be given the title of Baron and he became a wealthy nobleman with a big following of Jews in Germany, the Austro-Hungarian Empire and other European countries. Most of them would have believed he was on their side.

The name 'Illuminati' came from the Zohar which is a body of works in the Jewish mystical 'bible' called the Kabbalah. 'Zohar' is the foundation of Sabbatian-Frankist belief and in Hebrew 'Zohar' means 'splendour', 'radiance', 'illuminated', and so we have 'Illuminati'. They claim to be the 'Illuminated Ones' from their knowledge systematically hidden from the human population and passed on through generations of carefully-chosen initiates in the global secret society network or Cult. Hidden knowledge includes an awareness of the Cult agenda for the world and the nature of our collective reality that I will explore later. Cult 'illumination' is symbolised by the torch held by the Statue of Liberty which was gifted to New York by French Freemasons in Paris who knew exactly what it represents. 'Liberty' symbolises the goddess worshipped in

Babylon as Queen Semiramis or Ishtar. The significance of this will become clear. Notice again the ubiquitous theme of inversion with the Statue of 'Liberty' really symbolising mass control (Fig 7). A mirror-image statute stands on an island in the River Seine in Paris from where New York Liberty originated (Fig 8). A large replica of the Liberty flame stands on top of the Pont de l'Alma tunnel in Paris where Princess Diana died in a Cult ritual described in *The Biggest Secret*. Lucifer 'the light bringer' is related to all this (and much more as we'll see) and 'Lucifer' is a central figure in Sabbatian-Frankism and its associated Satanism. Sabbatians reject the Jewish Torah, or Pentateuch, the 'five books of Moses' in the Old Testament known as Genesis, Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers, and Deuteronomy which are claimed by Judaism and Christianity to have been dictated by 'God' to Moses on Mount Sinai. Sabbatians say these do not apply to them and they seek to replace them with the Zohar to absorb Judaism and its followers into their inversion which is an expression of a much greater global inversion. They want to delete all religions and force humanity to worship a one-world religion – Sabbatian Satanism that also includes worship of the Earth goddess. Satanic themes are being more and more introduced into mainstream society and while Christianity is currently the foremost target for destruction the others are planned to follow.

Figure 7: The Cult goddess of Babylon disguised as the Statue of Liberty holding the flame of Lucifer the 'light bringer'.

Figure 8: Liberty's mirror image in Paris where the New York version originated.

Marx brothers

Rabbi Marvin Antelman connects the Illuminati to the Jacobins in *To Eliminate the Opiate* and Jacobins were the force behind the French Revolution. He links both to the Bund der Gerechten, or League of the Just, which was the network that inflicted communism/Marxism on the world. Antelman wrote:

> The original inner circle of the Bund der Gerechten consisted of born Catholics, Protestants and Jews [Sabbatian-Frankist infiltrators], and those representatives of respective subdivisions formulated schemes for the ultimate destruction of their faiths. The heretical Catholics laid plans which they felt would take a century or more for the ultimate destruction of the church; the apostate Jews for the ultimate destruction of the Jewish religion.

Sabbatian-created communism connects into this anti-religion agenda in that communism does not allow for the free practice of religion. The Sabbatian 'Bund' became the International Communist Party and Communist League and in 1848 'Marxism' was born with the Communist Manifesto of Sabbatian assets Karl Marx and Friedrich Engels. It is absolutely no coincidence that Marxism, just a different name for fascist and other centrally-controlled tyrannies, is being imposed worldwide as a result of the 'Covid' hoax and nor that Marxist/fascist China was the place where the hoax originated. The reason for this will become very clear in the chapter 'Covid: The calculated catastrophe'. The so-called 'Woke' mentality has hijacked

traditional beliefs of the political left and replaced them with far-right make-believe 'social justice' better known as Marxism. Woke will, however, be swallowed by its own perceived 'revolution' which is really the work of billionaires and billionaire corporations feigning being 'Woke'. Marxism is being touted by Wokers as a replacement for 'capitalism' when we don't have 'capitalism'. We have cartelism in which the market is stitched up by the very Cult billionaires and corporations bankrolling Woke. Billionaires love Marxism which keeps the people in servitude while they control from the top. Terminally naïve Wokers think they are 'changing the world' when it's the Cult that is doing the changing and when they have played their vital part and become surplus to requirements they, too, will be targeted. The Illuminati-Jacobins were behind the period known as 'The Terror' in the French Revolution in 1793 and 1794 when Jacobin Maximillian de Robespierre and his Orwellian 'Committee of Public Safety' killed 17,000 'enemies of the Revolution' who had once been 'friends of the Revolution'. Karl Marx (1818-1883), whose Sabbatian creed of Marxism has cost the lives of at least 100 million people, is a hero once again to Wokers who have been systematically kept ignorant of real history by their 'education' programming. As a result they now promote a Sabbatian 'Marxist' abomination destined at some point to consume them. Rabbi Antelman, who spent decades researching the Sabbatian plot, said of the League of the Just and Karl Marx:

> Contrary to popular opinion Karl Marx did not originate the Communist Manifesto. He was paid for his services by the League of the Just, which was known in its country of origin, Germany, as the Bund der Geaechteten.

Antelman said the text attributed to Marx was the work of other people and Marx 'was only repeating what others already said'. Marx was 'a hired hack – lackey of the wealthy Illuminists'. Marx famously said that religion was the 'opium of the people' (part of the Sabbatian plan to demonise religion) and Antelman called his books, *To Eliminate the Opiate*. Marx was born Jewish, but his family converted to Christianity (Sabbatian modus operandi) and he

attacked Jews, not least in his book, *A World Without Jews*. In doing so he supported the Sabbatian plan to destroy traditional Jewishness and Judaism which we are clearly seeing today with the vindictive targeting of orthodox Jews by the Sabbatian government of Israel over 'Covid' laws. I don't follow any religion and it has done much damage to the world over centuries and acted as a perceptual straightjacket. Renegade Minds, however, are always asking *why* something is being done. It doesn't matter if they agree or disagree with what is happening – *why* is it happening is the question. The 'why?' can be answered with regard to religion in that religions create interacting communities of believers when the Cult wants to dismantle all discourse, unity and interaction (see 'Covid' lockdowns) and the ultimate goal is to delete all religions for a one-world religion of Cult Satanism worshipping their 'god' of which more later. We see the same 'why?' with gun control in America. I don't have guns and don't want them, but why is the Cult seeking to disarm the population at the same time that law enforcement agencies are armed to their molars and why has every tyrant in history sought to disarm people before launching the final takeover? They include Hitler, Stalin, Pol Pot and Mao who followed confiscation with violent seizing of power. You know it's a Cult agenda by the people who immediately race to the microphones to exploit dead people in multiple shootings. Ultra-Zionist Cult lackey Senator Chuck Schumer was straight on the case after ten people were killed in Boulder, Colorado in March, 2121. Simple rule … if Schumer wants it the Cult wants it and the same with his ultra-Zionist mate the wild-eyed Senator Adam Schiff. At the same time they were calling for the disarmament of Americans, many of whom live a long way from a police response, Schumer, Schiff and the rest of these pampered clowns were sitting on Capitol Hill behind a razor-wired security fence protected by thousands of armed troops in addition to their own armed bodyguards. Mom and pop in an isolated home? They're just potential mass shooters.

Zion Mainframe

Sabbatian-Frankists and most importantly the Rothschilds were behind the creation of 'Zionism', a political movement that demanded a Jewish homeland in Israel as promised by Sabbatai Zevi. The very symbol of Israel comes from the German meaning of the name Rothschild. Dynasty founder Mayer Amschel Rothschild changed the family name from Bauer to Rothschild, or 'Red-Shield' in German, in deference to the six-pointed 'Star of David' hexagram displayed on the family's home in Frankfurt. The symbol later appeared on the flag of Israel after the Rothschilds were centrally involved in its creation. Hexagrams are not a uniquely Jewish symbol and are widely used in occult ('hidden') networks often as a symbol for Saturn (see my other books for why). Neither are Zionism and Jewishness interchangeable. Zionism is a political movement and philosophy and not a 'race' or a people. Many Jews oppose Zionism and many non-Jews, including US President Joe Biden, call themselves Zionists as does Israel-centric Donald Trump. America's support for the Israel government is pretty much a gimme with ultra-Zionist billionaires and corporations providing fantastic and dominant funding for both political parties. Former Congresswoman Cynthia McKinney has told how she was approached immediately she ran for office to 'sign the pledge' to Israel and confirm that she would always vote in that country's best interests. All American politicians are approached in this way. Anyone who refuses will get no support or funding from the enormous and all-powerful Zionist lobby that includes organisations like mega-lobby group AIPAC, the American Israel Public Affairs Committee. Trump's biggest funder was ultra-Zionist casino and media billionaire Sheldon Adelson while major funders of the Democratic Party include ultra-Zionist George Soros and ultra-Zionist financial and media mogul, Haim Saban. Some may reel back at the suggestion that Soros is an Israel-firster (Sabbatian-controlled Israel-firster), but Renegade Minds watch the actions not the words and everywhere Soros donates his billions the Sabbatian agenda benefits. In the spirit of Sabbatian inversion Soros pledged $1 billion for a new university network to promote 'liberal values and tackle intolerance'. He made the announcement during his annual speech

at the Cult-owned World Economic Forum in Davos, Switzerland, in January, 2020, after his 'harsh criticism' of 'authoritarian rulers' around the world. You can only laugh at such brazen mendacity. How *he* doesn't laugh is the mystery. Translated from the Orwellian 'liberal values and tackle intolerance' means teaching non-white people to hate white people and for white people to loathe themselves for being born white. The reason for that will become clear.

The 'Anti-Semitism' fraud

Zionists support the Jewish homeland in the land of Palestine which has been the Sabbatian-Rothschild goal for so long, but not for the benefit of Jews. Sabbatians and their global Anti-Semitism Industry have skewed public and political opinion to equate opposing the violent extremes of Zionism to be a blanket attack and condemnation of all Jewish people. Sabbatians and their global Anti-Semitism Industry have skewed public and political opinion to equate opposing the violent extremes of Zionism to be a blanket attack and condemnation of all Jewish people. This is nothing more than a Sabbatian protection racket to stop legitimate investigation and exposure of their agendas and activities. The official definition of 'anti-Semitism' has more recently been expanded to include criticism of Zionism – a *political movement* – and this was done to further stop exposure of Sabbatian infiltrators who created Zionism as we know it today in the 19th century. Renegade Minds will talk about these subjects when they know the shit that will come their way. People must decide if they want to know the truth or just cower in the corner in fear of what others will say. Sabbatians have been trying to label me as 'anti-Semitic' since the 1990s as I have uncovered more and more about their background and agendas. Useless, gutless, fraudulent 'journalists' then just repeat the smears without question and on the day I was writing this section a pair of unquestioning repeaters called Ben Quinn and Archie Bland (how appropriate) outright called me an 'anti-Semite' in the establishment propaganda sheet, the London *Guardian*, with no supporting evidence. The

Sabbatian Anti-Semitism Industry said so and who are they to question that? They wouldn't dare. Ironically 'Semitic' refers to a group of languages in the Middle East that are almost entirely Arabic. 'Anti-Semitism' becomes 'anti-Arab' which if the consequences of this misunderstanding were not so grave would be hilarious. Don't bother telling Quinn and Bland. I don't want to confuse them, bless 'em. One reason I am dubbed 'anti-Semitic' is that I wrote in the 1990s that Jewish operatives (Sabbatians) were heavily involved in the Russian Revolution when Sabbatians overthrew the Romanov dynasty. This apparently made me 'anti-Semitic'. Oh, really? Here is a section from *The Trigger*:

British journalist Robert Wilton confirmed these themes in his 1920 book *The Last Days of the Romanovs* when he studied official documents from the Russian government to identify the members of the Bolshevik ruling elite between 1917 and 1919. The Central Committee included 41 Jews among 62 members; the Council of the People's Commissars had 17 Jews out of 22 members; and 458 of the 556 most important Bolshevik positions between 1918 and 1919 were occupied by Jewish people. Only 17 were Russian. Then there were the 23 Jews among the 36 members of the vicious Cheka Soviet secret police established in 1917 who would soon appear all across the country.

Professor Robert Service of Oxford University, an expert on 20th century Russian history, found evidence that ['Jewish'] Leon Trotsky had sought to make sure that Jews were enrolled in the Red Army and were disproportionately represented in the Soviet civil bureaucracy that included the Cheka which performed mass arrests, imprisonment and executions of 'enemies of the people'. A US State Department Decimal File (861.00/5339) dated November 13th, 1918, names [Rothschild banking agent in America] Jacob Schiff and a list of ultra-Zionists as funders of the Russian Revolution leading to claims of a 'Jewish plot', but the key point missed by all is they were not 'Jews' – they were Sabbatian-Frankists.

Britain's Winston Churchill made the same error by mistake or otherwise. He wrote in a 1920 edition of the *Illustrated Sunday Herald* that those behind the Russian revolution were part of a 'worldwide conspiracy for the overthrow of civilisation and for the reconstitution of society on the basis of arrested development, of envious malevolence, and impossible equality' (see 'Woke' today because that has been created by the same network). Churchill said there was no need to exaggerate the part played in the creation of Bolshevism and in the actual bringing about of the Russian

Revolution 'by these international and for the most part atheistical Jews' ['atheistical Jews' = Sabbatians]. Churchill said it is certainly a very great one and probably outweighs all others: 'With the notable exception of Lenin, the majority of the leading figures are Jews.' He went on to describe, knowingly or not, the Sabbatian modus operandi of placing puppet leaders nominally in power while they control from the background:

> Moreover, the principal inspiration and driving power comes from the Jewish leaders. Thus Tchitcherin, a pure Russian, is eclipsed by his nominal subordinate, Litvinoff, and the influence of Russians like Bukharin or Lunacharski cannot be compared with the power of Trotsky, or of Zinovieff, the Dictator of the Red Citadel (Petrograd), or of Krassin or Radek – all Jews. In the Soviet institutions the predominance of Jews is even more astonishing. And the prominent, if not indeed the principal, part in the system of terrorism applied by the Extraordinary Commissions for Combatting Counter-Revolution has been taken by Jews, and in some notable cases by Jewesses.

What I said about seriously disproportionate involvement in the Russian Revolution by Jewish 'revolutionaries' (Sabbatians) is provable fact, but truth is no defence against the Sabbatian Anti-Semitism Industry, its repeater parrots like Quinn and Bland, and the now breathtaking network of so-called 'Woke' 'anti-hate' groups with interlocking leaderships and funding which have the role of discrediting and silencing anyone who gets too close to exposing the Sabbatians. We have seen 'truth is no defence' confirmed in legal judgements with the Saskatchewan Human Rights Commission in Canada decreeing this: 'Truthful statements can be presented in a manner that would meet the definition of hate speech, and not all truthful statements must be free from restriction.' Most 'anti-hate' activists, who are themselves consumed by hatred, are too stupid and ignorant of the world to know how they are being used. They are far too far up their own virtue-signalling arses and it's far too dark for them to see anything.

The 'revolution' game

The background and methods of the 'Russian' Revolution are straight from the Sabbatian playbook seen in the French Revolution

and endless others around the world that appear to start as a revolution of the people against tyrannical rule and end up with a regime change to more tyrannical rule overtly or covertly. Wars, terror attacks and regime overthrows follow the Sabbatian cult through history with its agents creating them as Problem-Reaction-Solutions to remove opposition on the road to world domination. Sabbatian dots connect the Rothschilds with the Illuminati, Jacobins of the French Revolution, the 'Bund' or League of the Just, the International Communist Party, Communist League and the Communist Manifesto of Karl Marx and Friedrich Engels that would lead to the Rothschild-funded Russian Revolution. The sequence comes under the heading of 'creative destruction' when you advance to your global goal by continually destroying the status quo to install a new status quo which you then also destroy. The two world wars come to mind. With each new status quo you move closer to your planned outcome. Wars and mass murder are to Sabbatians a collective blood sacrifice ritual. They are obsessed with death for many reasons and one is that death is an inversion of life. Satanists and Sabbatians are obsessed with death and often target churches and churchyards for their rituals. Inversion-obsessed Sabbatians explain the use of inverted symbolism including the *inverted* pentagram and *inverted* cross. The inversion of the cross has been related to targeting Christianity, but the cross was a religious symbol long before Christianity and its inversion is a statement about the Sabbatian mentality and goals more than any single religion.

Sabbatians operating in Germany were behind the rise of the occult-obsessed Nazis and the subsequent Jewish exodus from Germany and Europe to Palestine and the United States after World War Two. The Rothschild dynasty was at the forefront of this both as political manipulators and by funding the operation. Why would Sabbatians help to orchestrate the horrors inflicted on Jews by the Nazis and by Stalin after they organised the Russian Revolution? Sabbatians hate Jews and their religion, that's why. They pose as Jews and secure positions of control within Jewish society and play the 'anti-Semitism' card to protect themselves from exposure

through a global network of organisations answering to the Sabbatian-created-and-controlled globe-spanning intelligence network that involves a stunning web of military-intelligence operatives and operations for a tiny country of just nine million. Among them are Jewish assets who are not Sabbatians but have been convinced by them that what they are doing is for the good of Israel and the Jewish community to protect them from what they have been programmed since childhood to believe is a Jew-hating hostile world. The Jewish community is just a highly convenient cover to hide the true nature of Sabbatians. Anyone getting close to exposing their game is accused by Sabbatian place-people and gofers of 'anti-Semitism' and claiming that all Jews are part of a plot to take over the world. I am not saying that. I am saying that Sabbatians – the *real* Jew-haters – have infiltrated the Jewish community to use them both as a cover and an 'anti-Semitic' defence against exposure. Thus we have the Anti-Semitism Industry targeted researchers in this way and most Jewish people think this is justified and genuine. They don't know that their 'Jewish' leaders and institutions of state, intelligence and military are not controlled by Jews at all, but cultists and stooges of Sabbatian-Frankism. I once added my name to a pro-Jewish freedom petition online and the next time I looked my name was gone and text had been added to the petition blurb to attack me as an 'anti-Semite' such is the scale of perceptual programming.

Moving on America

I tell the story in *The Trigger* and a chapter called 'Atlantic Crossing' how particularly after Israel was established the Sabbatians moved in on the United States and eventually grasped control of government administration, the political system via both Democrats and Republicans, the intelligence community like the CIA and National Security Agency (NSA), the Pentagon and mass media. Through this seriously compartmentalised network Sabbatians and their operatives in Mossad, Israeli Defense Forces (IDF) and US agencies pulled off 9/11 and blamed it on 19 'Al-Qaeda hijackers' dominated by men from, or connected to, Sabbatian-ruled Saudi

Arabia. The '19' were not even on the planes let alone flew those big passenger jets into buildings while being largely incompetent at piloting one-engine light aircraft. 'Hijacker' Hani Hanjour who is said to have flown American Airlines Flight 77 into the Pentagon with a turn and manoeuvre most professional pilots said they would have struggled to do was banned from renting a small plane by instructors at the Freeway Airport in Bowie, Maryland, just *six weeks* earlier on the grounds that he was an incompetent pilot. The Jewish population of the world is just 0.2 percent with even that almost entirely concentrated in Israel (75 percent Jewish) and the United States (around two percent). This two percent and globally 0.2 percent refers to *Jewish* people and not Sabbatian interlopers who are a fraction of that fraction. What a sobering thought when you think of the fantastic influence on world affairs of tiny Israel and that the Project for the New America Century (PNAC) which laid out the blueprint in September, 2000, for America's war on terror and regime change wars in Iraq, Libya and Syria was founded and dominated by Sabbatians known as 'Neocons'. The document conceded that this plan would not be supported politically or publicly without a major attack on American soil and a Problem-Reaction-Solution excuse to send troops to war across the Middle East. Sabbatian Neocons said:

> ... [The] process of transformation ... [war and regime change] ... is likely to be a long one, absent some catastrophic and catalysing event – like a new Pearl Harbor.

Four months later many of those who produced that document came to power with their inane puppet George Bush from the long-time Sabbatian Bush family. They included Sabbatian Dick Cheney who was officially vice-president, but really de-facto president for the entirety of the 'Bush' government. Nine months after the 'Bush' inauguration came what Bush called at the time 'the Pearl Harbor of the 21st century' and with typical Sabbatian timing and symbolism 2001 was the 60th anniversary of the attack in 1941 by the Japanese Air Force on Pearl Harbor, Hawaii, which allowed President Franklin Delano Roosevelt to take the United States into a Sabbatian-

instigated Second World War that he said in his election campaign that he never would. The evidence is overwhelming that Roosevelt and his military and intelligence networks knew the attack was coming and did nothing to stop it, but they did make sure that America's most essential naval ships were not in Hawaii at the time. Three thousand Americans died in the Pearl Harbor attacks as they did on September 11th. By the 9/11 year of 2001 Sabbatians had widely infiltrated the US government, military and intelligence operations and used their compartmentalised assets to pull off the 'Al-Qaeda' attacks. If you read *The Trigger* it will blow your mind to see the utterly staggering concentration of 'Jewish' operatives (Sabbatian infiltrators) in essential positions of political, security, legal, law enforcement, financial and business power before, during, and after the attacks to make them happen, carry them out, and then cover their tracks – and I do mean *staggering* when you think of that 0.2 percent of the world population and two percent of Americans which are Jewish while Sabbatian infiltrators are a fraction of that. A central foundation of the 9/11 conspiracy was the hijacking of government, military, Air Force and intelligence computer systems in real time through 'back-door' access made possible by Israeli (Sabbatian) 'cyber security' software. Sabbatian-controlled Israel is on the way to rivalling Silicon Valley for domination of cyberspace and is becoming the dominant force in cyber-security which gives them access to entire computer systems and their passcodes across the world. Then add to this that Zionists head (officially) Silicon Valley giants like Google (Larry Page and Sergey Brin), Google-owned YouTube (Susan Wojcicki), Facebook (Mark Zuckerberg and Sheryl Sandberg), and Apple (Chairman Arthur D. Levinson), and that ultra-Zionist hedge fund billionaire Paul Singer has a $1 billion stake in Twitter which is only nominally headed by 'CEO' pothead Jack Dorsey. As cable news host Tucker Carlson said of Dorsey: 'There used to be debate in the medical community whether dropping a ton of acid had permanent effects and I think that debate has now ended.' Carlson made the comment after Dorsey told a hearing on Capitol Hill (if you cut through his bullshit) that he

believed in free speech so long as he got to decide what you can hear and see. These 'big names' of Silicon Valley are only front men and women for the Global Cult, not least the Sabbatians, who are the true controllers of these corporations. Does anyone still wonder why these same people and companies have been ferociously censoring and banning people (like me) for exposing any aspect of the Cult agenda and especially the truth about the 'Covid' hoax which Sabbatians have orchestrated?

The Jeffrey Epstein paedophile ring was a Sabbatian operation. He was officially 'Jewish' but he was a Sabbatian and women abused by the ring have told me about the high number of 'Jewish' people involved. The Epstein horror has Sabbatian written all over it and matches perfectly their modus operandi and obsession with sex and ritual. Epstein was running a Sabbatian blackmail ring in which famous people with political and other influence were provided with young girls for sex while everything was being filmed and recorded on hidden cameras and microphones at his New York house, Caribbean island and other properties. Epstein survivors have described this surveillance system to me and some have gone public. Once the famous politician or other figure knew he or she was on video they tended to do whatever they were told. Here we go again …when you've got them by the balls their hearts and minds will follow. Sabbatians use this blackmail technique on a wide scale across the world to entrap politicians and others they need to act as demanded. Epstein's private plane, the infamous 'Lolita Express', had many well-known passengers including Bill Clinton while Bill Gates has flown on an Epstein plane and met with him four years after Epstein had been jailed for paedophilia. They subsequently met many times at Epstein's home in New York according to a witness who was there. Epstein's infamous side-kick was Ghislaine Maxwell, daughter of Mossad agent and ultra-Zionist mega-crooked British businessman, Bob Maxwell, who at one time owned the *Daily Mirror* newspaper. Maxwell was murdered at sea on his boat in 1991 by Sabbatian-controlled Mossad when he became a liability with his

business empire collapsing as a former Mossad operative has confirmed (see *The Trigger*).

Money, money, money, funny money ...

Before I come to the Sabbatian connection with the last three US presidents I will lay out the crucial importance to Sabbatians of controlling banking and finance. Sabbatian Mayer Amschel Rothschild set out to dominate this arena in his family's quest for total global control. What is freedom? It is, in effect, choice. The more choices you have the freer you are and the fewer your choices the more you are enslaved. In the global structure created over centuries by Sabbatians the biggest decider and restrictor of choice is … money. Across the world if you ask people what they would like to do with their lives and why they are not doing that they will reply 'I don't have the money'. This is the idea. A global elite of multi-billionaires are described as 'greedy' and that is true on one level; but control of money – who has it and who doesn't – is not primarily about greed. It's about control. Sabbatians have seized ever more control of finance and sucked the wealth of the world out of the hands of the population. We talk now, after all, about the 'One-percent' and even then the wealthiest are a lot fewer even than that. This has been made possible by a money scam so outrageous and so vast it could rightly be called the scam of scams founded on creating 'money' out of nothing and 'loaning' that with interest to the population. Money out of nothing is called 'credit'. Sabbatians have asserted control over governments and banking ever more completely through the centuries and secured financial laws that allow banks to lend hugely more than they have on deposit in a confidence trick known as fractional reserve lending. Imagine if you could lend money that doesn't exist and charge the recipient interest for doing so. You would end up in jail. Bankers by contrast end up in mansions, private jets, Malibu and Monaco.

Banks are only required to keep a fraction of their deposits and wealth in their vaults and they are allowed to lend 'money' they don't have called 'credit. Go into a bank for a loan and if you succeed

the banker will not move any real wealth into your account. They will type into your account the amount of the agreed 'loan' – say £100,000. This is not wealth that really exists; it is non-existent, fresh-air, created-out-of-nothing 'credit' which has never, does not, and will never exist except in theory. Credit is backed by nothing except wind and only has buying power because people think that it has buying power and accept it in return for property, goods and services. I have described this situation as like those cartoon characters you see chasing each other and when they run over the edge of a cliff they keep running forward on fresh air until one of them looks down, realises what's happened, and they all crash into the ravine. The whole foundation of the Sabbatian financial system is to stop people looking down except for periodic moments when they want to crash the system (as in 2008 and 2020 ongoing) and reap the rewards from all the property, businesses and wealth their borrowers had signed over as 'collateral' in return for a 'loan' of fresh air. Most people think that money is somehow created by governments when it comes into existence from the start as a debt through banks 'lending' illusory money called credit. Yes, the very currency of exchange is a *debt* from day one issued as an interest-bearing loan. Why don't governments create money interest-free and lend it to their people interest-free? Governments are controlled by Sabbatians and the financial system is controlled by Sabbatians for whom interest-free money would be a nightmare come true. Sabbatians underpin their financial domination through their global network of central banks, including the privately-owned US Federal Reserve and Britain's Bank of England, and this is orchestrated by a privately-owned central bank coordination body called the Bank for International Settlements in Basle, Switzerland, created by the usual suspects including the Rockefellers and Rothschilds. Central bank chiefs don't answer to governments or the people. They answer to the Bank for International Settlements or, in other words, the Global Cult which is dominated today by Sabbatians.

Built-in disaster

There are so many constituent scams within the overall banking scam. When you take out a loan of thin-air credit only the amount of that loan is theoretically brought into circulation to add to the amount in circulation; but you are paying back the principle plus interest. The additional interest is not created and this means that with every 'loan' there is a shortfall in the money in circulation between what is borrowed and what has to be paid back. There is never even close to enough money in circulation to repay all outstanding public and private debt including interest. Coldly weaved in the very fabric of the system is the certainty that some will lose their homes, businesses and possessions to the banking 'lender'. This is less obvious in times of 'boom' when the amount of money in circulation (and the debt) is expanding through more people wanting and getting loans. When a downturn comes and the money supply contracts it becomes painfully obvious that there is not enough money to service all debt and interest. This is less obvious in times of 'boom' when the amount of money in circulation (and the debt) is expanding through more people wanting and getting loans. When a downturn comes and the money supply contracts and it becomes painfully obvious – as in 2008 and currently – that there is not enough money to service all debt and interest. Sabbatian banksters have been leading the human population through a calculated series of booms (more debt incurred) and busts (when the debt can't be repaid and the banks get the debtor's tangible wealth in exchange for non-existent 'credit'). With each 'bust' Sabbatian bankers have absorbed more of the world's tangible wealth and we end up with the One-percent. Governments are in bankruptcy levels of debt to the same system and are therefore owned by a system they do not control. The Federal Reserve, 'America's central bank', is privately-owned and American presidents only nominally appoint its chairman or woman to maintain the illusion that it's an arm of government. It's not. The 'Fed' is a cartel of private banks which handed billions to its associates and friends after the crash of 2008 and has been Sabbatian-controlled since it was manipulated into being in 1913 through the covert trickery of Rothschild banking agents Jacob Schiff and Paul

Warburg, and the Sabbatian Rockefeller family. Somehow from a Jewish population of two-percent and globally 0.2 percent (Sabbatian interlopers remember are far smaller) ultra-Zionists headed the Federal Reserve for 31 years between 1987 and 2018 in the form of Alan Greenspan, Bernard Bernanke and Janet Yellen (now Biden's Treasury Secretary) with Yellen's deputy chairman a Israeli-American duel citizen and ultra-Zionist Stanley Fischer, a former governor of the Bank of Israel. Ultra-Zionist Fed chiefs spanned the presidencies of Ronald Reagan ('Republican'), Father George Bush ('Republican'), Bill Clinton ('Democrat'), Boy George Bush ('Republican') and Barack Obama ('Democrat'). We should really add the pre-Greenspan chairman, Paul Adolph Volcker, 'appointed' by Jimmy Carter ('Democrat') who ran the Fed between 1979 and 1987 during the Carter and Reagan administrations before Greenspan took over. Volcker was a long-time associate and business partner of the Rothschilds. No matter what the 'party' officially in power the United States economy was directed by the same force. Here are members of the Obama, Trump and Biden administrations and see if you can make out a common theme.

Barack Obama ('Democrat')

Ultra-Zionists Robert Rubin, Larry Summers, and Timothy Geithner ran the US Treasury in the Clinton administration and two of them reappeared with Obama. Ultra-Zionist Fed chairman Alan Greenspan had manipulated the crash of 2008 through deregulation and jumped ship just before the disaster to make way for ultra-Zionist Bernard Bernanke to hand out trillions to Sabbatian 'too big to fail' banks and businesses, including the ubiquitous ultra-Zionist Goldman Sachs which has an ongoing staff revolving door operation between itself and major financial positions in government worldwide. Obama inherited the fallout of the crash when he took office in January, 2009, and fortunately he had the support of his ultra-Zionist White House Chief of Staff Rahm Emmanuel, son of a terrorist who helped to bomb Israel into being in 1948, and his ultra-Zionist senior adviser David Axelrod, chief strategist in Obama's two

successful presidential campaigns. Emmanuel, later mayor of Chicago and former senior fundraiser and strategist for Bill Clinton, is an example of the Sabbatian policy after Israel was established of migrating insider families to America so their children would be born American citizens. 'Obama' chose this financial team throughout his administration to respond to the Sabbatian-instigated crisis:

Timothy Geithner (ultra-Zionist) Treasury Secretary; Jacob J. Lew, Treasury Secretary; Larry Summers (ultra-Zionist), director of the White House National Economic Council; Paul Adolph Volcker (Rothschild business partner), chairman of the Economic Recovery Advisory Board; Peter Orszag (ultra-Zionist), director of the Office of Management and Budget overseeing all government spending; Penny Pritzker (ultra-Zionist), Commerce Secretary; Jared Bernstein (ultra-Zionist), chief economist and economic policy adviser to Vice President Joe Biden; Mary Schapiro (ultra-Zionist), chair of the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC); Gary Gensler (ultra-Zionist), chairman of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission (CFTC); Sheila Bair (ultra-Zionist), chair of the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC); Karen Mills (ultra-Zionist), head of the Small Business Administration (SBA); Kenneth Feinberg (ultra-Zionist), Special Master for Executive [bail-out] Compensation. Feinberg would be appointed to oversee compensation (with strings) to 9/11 victims and families in a campaign to stop them having their day in court to question the official story. At the same time ultra-Zionist Bernard Bernanke was chairman of the Federal Reserve and these are only some of the ultra-Zionists with allegiance to Sabbatian-controlled Israel in the Obama government. Obama's biggest corporate donor was ultra-Zionist Goldman Sachs which had employed many in his administration.

Donald Trump ('Republican')

Trump claimed to be an outsider (he wasn't) who had come to 'drain the swamp'. He embarked on this goal by immediately appointing ultra-Zionist Steve Mnuchin, a Goldman Sachs employee for 17

years, as his Treasury Secretary. Others included Gary Cohn (ultra-Zionist), chief operating officer of Goldman Sachs, his first Director of the National Economic Council and chief economic adviser, who was later replaced by Larry Kudlow (ultra-Zionist). Trump's senior adviser throughout his four years in the White House was his sinister son-in-law Jared Kushner, a life-long friend of Israel Prime Minister Benjamin Netanyahu. Kushner is the son of a convicted crook who was pardoned by Trump in his last days in office. Other ultra-Zionists in the Trump administration included: Stephen Miller, Senior Policy Adviser; Avrahm Berkowitz, Deputy Adviser to Trump and his Senior Adviser Jared Kushner; Ivanka Trump, Adviser to the President, who converted to Judaism when she married Jared Kushner; David Friedman, Trump lawyer and Ambassador to Israel; Jason Greenblatt, Trump Organization executive vice president and chief legal officer, who was made Special Representative for International Negotiations and the Israeli-Palestinian Conflict; Rod Rosenstein, Deputy Attorney General; Elliot Abrams, Special Representative for Venezuela, then Iran; John Eisenberg, National Security Council Legal Adviser and Deputy Council to the President for National Security Affairs; Anne Neuberger, Deputy National Manager, National Security Agency; Ezra Cohen-Watnick, Acting Under Secretary of Defense for Intelligence; Elan Carr, Special Envoy to monitor and combat anti-Semitism; Len Khodorkovsky, Deputy Special Envoy to monitor and combat anti-Semitism; Reed Cordish, Assistant to the President, Intragovernmental and Technology Initiatives. Trump Vice President Mike Pence and Secretary of State Mike Pompeo, both Christian Zionists, were also vehement supporters of Israel and its goals and ambitions.

Donald 'free-speech believer' Trump pardoned a number of financial and violent criminals while ignoring calls to pardon Julian Assange and Edward Snowden whose crimes are revealing highly relevant information about government manipulation and corruption and the widespread illegal surveillance of the American people by US 'security' agencies. It's so good to know that Trump is on the side of freedom and justice and not mega-criminals with

allegiance to Sabbatian-controlled Israel. These included a pardon for Israeli spy Jonathan Pollard who was jailed for life in 1987 under the Espionage Act. Aviem Sella, the Mossad agent who recruited Pollard, was also pardoned by Trump while Assange sat in jail and Snowden remained in exile in Russia. Sella had 'fled' (was helped to escape) to Israel in 1987 and was never extradited despite being charged under the Espionage Act. A Trump White House statement said that Sella's clemency had been 'supported by Benjamin Netanyahu, Ron Dermer, Israel's US Ambassador, David Friedman, US Ambassador to Israel and Miriam Adelson, wife of leading Trump donor Sheldon Adelson who died shortly before. Other friends of Jared Kushner were pardoned along with Sholom Weiss who was believed to be serving the longest-ever white-collar prison sentence of more than 800 years in 2000. The sentence was commuted of Ponzi-schemer Eliyahu Weinstein who defrauded Jews and others out of $200 million. I did mention that Assange and Snowden were ignored, right? Trump gave Sabbatians almost everything they asked for in military and political support, moving the US Embassy from Tel Aviv to Jerusalem with its critical symbolic and literal implications for Palestinian statehood, and the 'deal of the Century' designed by Jared Kushner and David Friedman which gave the Sabbatian Israeli government the green light to substantially expand its already widespread program of building illegal Jewish-only settlements in the occupied land of the West Bank. This made a two-state 'solution' impossible by seizing all the land of a potential Palestinian homeland and that had been the plan since 1948 and then 1967 when the Arab-controlled Gaza Strip, West Bank, Sinai Peninsula and Syrian Golan Heights were occupied by Israel. All the talks about talks and road maps and delays have been buying time until the West Bank was physically occupied by Israeli real estate. Trump would have to be a monumentally ill-informed idiot not to see that this was the plan he was helping to complete. The Trump administration was in so many ways the Kushner administration which means the Netanyahu administration which means the Sabbatian administration. I understand why many opposing Cult fascism in all its forms gravitated to Trump, but he

was a crucial part of the Sabbatian plan and I will deal with this in the next chapter.

Joe Biden ('Democrat')

A barely cognitive Joe Biden took over the presidency in January, 2021, along with his fellow empty shell, Vice-President Kamala Harris, as the latest Sabbatian gofers to enter the White House. Names on the door may have changed and the 'party' – the force behind them remained the same as Zionists were appointed to a stream of pivotal areas relating to Sabbatian plans and policy. They included: Janet Yellen, Treasury Secretary, former head of the Federal Reserve, and still another ultra-Zionist running the US Treasury after Mnuchin (Trump), Lew and Geithner (Obama), and Summers and Rubin (Clinton); Anthony Blinken, Secretary of State; Wendy Sherman, Deputy Secretary of State (so that's 'Biden's' Sabbatian foreign policy sorted); Jeff Zients, White House coronavirus coordinator; Rochelle Walensky, head of the Centers for Disease Control; Rachel Levine, transgender deputy health secretary (that's 'Covid' hoax policy under control); Merrick Garland, Attorney General; Alejandro Mayorkas, Secretary of Homeland Security; Cass Sunstein, Homeland Security with responsibility for new immigration laws; Avril Haines, Director of National Intelligence; Anne Neuberger, National Security Agency cybersecurity director (note, cybersecurity); David Cohen, CIA Deputy Director; Ronald Klain, Biden's Chief of Staff (see Rahm Emanuel); Eric Lander, a 'leading geneticist', Office of Science and Technology Policy director (see Smart Grid, synthetic biology agenda); Jessica Rosenworcel, acting head of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) which controls Smart Grid technology policy and electromagnetic communication systems including 5G. How can it be that so many pivotal positions are held by two-percent of the American population and 0.2 percent of the world population administration after administration no matter who is the president and what is the party? It's a coincidence? Of course it's not and this is why Sabbatians have built their colossal global web of interlocking 'anti-

hate' hate groups to condemn anyone who asks these glaring questions as an 'anti-Semite'. The way that Jewish people horrifically abused in Sabbatian-backed Nazi Germany are exploited to this end is stomach-turning and disgusting beyond words.

Political fusion

Sabbatian manipulation has reversed the roles of Republicans and Democrats and the same has happened in Britain with the Conservative and Labour Parties. Republicans and Conservatives were always labelled the 'right' and Democrats and Labour the 'left', but look at the policy positions now and the Democrat-Labour 'left' has moved further to the 'right' than Republicans and Conservatives under the banner of 'Woke', the Cult-created far-right tyranny. Where once the Democrat-Labour 'left' defended free speech and human rights they now seek to delete them and as I said earlier despite the 'Covid' fascism of the Jackboot Johnson Conservative government in the UK the Labour Party of leader Keir Starmer demanded even more extreme measures. The Labour Party has been very publicly absorbed by Sabbatians after a political and media onslaught against the previous leader, the weak and inept Jeremy Corbyn, over made-up allegations of 'anti-Semitism' both by him and his party. The plan was clear with this 'anti-Semite' propaganda and what was required in response was a swift and decisive 'fuck off' from Corbyn and a statement to expose the Anti-Semitism Industry (Sabbatian) attempt to silence Labour criticism of the Israeli government (Sabbatians) and purge the party of all dissent against the extremes of ultra-Zionism (Sabbatians). Instead Corbyn and his party fell to their knees and appeased the abusers which, by definition, is impossible. Appeasing one demand leads only to a new demand to be appeased until takeover is complete. Like I say – 'fuck off' would have been a much more effective policy and I have used it myself with great effect over the years when Sabbatians are on my case which is most of the time. I consider that fact a great compliment, by the way. The outcome of the Labour Party capitulation is that we now have a Sabbatian-controlled

Conservative Party 'opposed' by a Sabbatian-controlled Labour Party in a one-party Sabbatian state that hurtles towards the extremes of tyranny (the Sabbatian cult agenda). In America the situation is the same. Labour's Keir Starmer spends his days on his knees with his tongue out pointing to Tel Aviv, or I guess now Jerusalem, while Boris Johnson has an 'anti-Semitism czar' in the form of former Labour MP John Mann who keeps Starmer company on his prayer mat.

Sabbatian influence can be seen in Jewish members of the Labour Party who have been ejected for criticism of Israel including those from families that suffered in Nazi Germany. Sabbatians despise real Jewish people and target them even more harshly because it is so much more difficult to dub them 'anti-Semitic' although in their desperation they do try.

CHAPTER THREE

The Pushbacker sting

Until you realize how easy it is for your mind to be manipulated, you remain the puppet of someone else's game
Evita Ochel

I will use the presidencies of Trump and Biden to show how the manipulation of the one-party state plays out behind the illusion of political choice across the world. No two presidencies could – on the face of it – be more different and apparently at odds in terms of direction and policy.

A Renegade Mind sees beyond the obvious and focuses on outcomes and consequences and not image, words and waffle. The Cult embarked on a campaign to divide America between those who blindly support its agenda (the mentality known as 'Woke') and those who are pushing back on where the Cult and its Sabbatians want to go. This presents infinite possibilities for dividing and ruling the population by setting them at war with each other and allows a perceptual ring fence of demonisation to encircle the Pushbackers in a modern version of the Little Big Horn in 1876 when American cavalry led by Lieutenant Colonel George Custer were drawn into a trap, surrounded and killed by Native American tribes defending their land of thousands of years from being seized by the government. In this modern version the roles are reversed and it's those defending themselves from the Sabbatian government who are surrounded and the government that's seeking to destroy them. This trap was set years ago and to explain how we must return to 2016

and the emergence of Donald Trump as a candidate to be President of the United States. He set out to overcome the best part of 20 other candidates in the Republican Party before and during the primaries and was not considered by many in those early stages to have a prayer of living in the White House. The Republican Party was said to have great reservations about Trump and yet somehow he won the nomination. When you know how American politics works – politics in general – there is no way that Trump could have become the party's candidate unless the Sabbatian-controlled 'Neocons' that run the Republican Party wanted that to happen. We saw the proof in emails and documents made public by WikiLeaks that the Democratic Party hierarchy, or Democons, systematically undermined the campaign of Bernie Sanders to make sure that Sabbatian gofer Hillary Clinton won the nomination to be their presidential candidate. If the Democons could do that then the Neocons in the Republican Party could have derailed Trump in the same way. But they didn't and at that stage I began to conclude that Trump could well be the one chosen to be president. If that was the case the 'why' was pretty clear to see – the goal of dividing America between Cult agenda-supporting Wokers and Pushbackers who gravitated to Trump because he was telling them what they wanted to hear. His constituency of support had been increasingly ignored and voiceless for decades and profoundly through the eight years of Sabbatian puppet Barack Obama. Now here was someone speaking their language of pulling back from the incessant globalisation of political and economic power, the exporting of American jobs to China and elsewhere by 'American' (Sabbatian) corporations, the deletion of free speech, and the mass immigration policies that had further devastated job opportunities for the urban working class of all races and the once American heartlands of the Midwest.

Beware the forked tongue

Those people collectively sighed with relief that at last a political leader was apparently on their side, but another trait of the Renegade Mind is that you look even harder at people telling you

what you want to hear than those who are telling you otherwise. Obviously as I said earlier people wish what they want to hear to be true and genuine and they are much more likely to believe that than someone saying what they don't want to here and don't want to be true. Sales people are taught to be skilled in eliciting by calculated questioning what their customers want to hear and repeating that back to them as their own opinion to get their targets to like and trust them. Assets of the Cult are also sales people in the sense of selling perception. To read Cult manipulation you have to play the long and expanded game and not fall for the Vaudeville show of party politics. Both American parties are vehicles for the Cult and they exploit them in different ways depending on what the agenda requires at that moment. Trump and the Republicans were used to be the focus of dividing America and isolating Pushbackers to open the way for a Biden presidency to become the most extreme in American history by advancing the full-blown Woke (Cult) agenda with the aim of destroying and silencing Pushbackers now labelled Nazi Trump supporters and white supremacists.

Sabbatians wanted Trump in office for the reasons described by ultra-Zionist Saul Alinsky (1909-1972) who was promoting the Woke philosophy through 'community organising' long before anyone had heard of it. In those days it still went by its traditional name of Marxism. The reason for the manipulated Trump phenomenon was laid out in Alinsky's 1971 book, *Rules for Radicals*, which was his blueprint for overthrowing democratic and other regimes and replacing them with Sabbatian Marxism. Not surprisingly his to-do list was evident in the Sabbatian French and Russian 'Revolutions' and that in China which will become very relevant in the next chapter about the 'Covid' hoax. Among Alinsky's followers have been the deeply corrupt Barack Obama, House Speaker Nancy Pelosi and Hillary Clinton who described him as a 'hero'. All three are Sabbatian stooges with Pelosi personifying the arrogant corrupt idiocy that so widely fronts up for the Cult inner core. Predictably as a Sabbatian advocate of the 'light-bringer' Alinsky features Lucifer on the dedication page of his book as the original radical who gained

his own kingdom ('Earth' as we shall see). One of Alinsky's golden radical rules was to pick an individual and focus all attention, hatred and blame on them and not to target faceless bureaucracies and corporations. *Rules for Radicals* is really a Sabbatian handbook with its contents repeatedly employed all over the world for centuries and why wouldn't Sabbatians bring to power their designer-villain to be used as the individual on which all attention, hatred and blame was bestowed? This is what they did and the only question for me is how much Trump knew that and how much he was manipulated. A bit of both, I suspect. This was Alinsky's Trump technique from a man who died in 1972. The technique has spanned history:

> Pick the target, freeze it, personalize it, polarize it. Don't try to attack abstract corporations or bureaucracies. Identify a responsible individual. Ignore attempts to shift or spread the blame.

From the moment Trump came to illusory power everything was about him. It wasn't about Republican policy or opinion, but all about Trump. Everything he did was presented in negative, derogatory and abusive terms by the Sabbatian-dominated media led by Cult operations such as CNN, MSNBC, *The New York Times* and the Jeff Bezos-owned *Washington Post* – 'Pick the target, freeze it, personalize it, polarize it.' Trump was turned into a demon to be vilified by those who hated him and a demi-god loved by those who worshipped him. This, in turn, had his supporters, too, presented as equally demonic in preparation for the punchline later down the line when Biden was about to take office. It was here's a Trump, there's a Trump, everywhere a Trump, Trump. Virtually every news story or happening was filtered through the lens of 'The Donald'. You loved him or hated him and which one you chose was said to define you as Satan's spawn or a paragon of virtue. Even supporting some Trump policies or statements and not others was enough for an assault on your character. No shades of grey were or are allowed. Everything is black and white (literally and figuratively). A Californian I knew had her head utterly scrambled by her hatred for Trump while telling people they should love each other. She was so totally consumed by

Trump Derangement Syndrome as it became to be known that this glaring contradiction would never have occurred to her. By definition anyone who criticised Trump or praised his opponents was a hero and this lady described Joe Biden as 'a kind, honest gentleman' when he's a provable liar, mega-crook and vicious piece of work to boot. Sabbatians had indeed divided America using Trump as the fall-guy and all along the clock was ticking on the consequences for his supporters.

In hock to his masters

Trump gave Sabbatians via Israel almost everything they wanted in his four years. Ask and you shall receive was the dynamic between himself and Benjamin Netanyahu orchestrated by Trump's ultra-Zionist son-in-law Jared Kushner, his ultra-Zionist Ambassador to Israel, David Friedman, and ultra-Zionist 'Israel adviser', Jason Greenblatt. The last two were central to the running and protecting from collapse of his business empire, the Trump Organisation, and colossal business failures made him forever beholding to Sabbatian networks that bailed him out. By the start of the 1990s Trump owed $4 billion to banks that he couldn't pay and almost $1billion of that was down to him personally and not his companies. This mega-disaster was the result of building two new casinos in Atlantic City and buying the enormous Taj Mahal operation which led to crippling debt payments. He had borrowed fantastic sums from 72 banks with major Sabbatian connections and although the scale of debt should have had him living in a tent alongside the highway they never foreclosed. A plan was devised to lift Trump from the mire by BT Securities Corporation and Rothschild Inc. and the case was handled by Wilber Ross who had worked for the Rothschilds for 27 years. Ross would be named US Commerce Secretary after Trump's election. Another crucial figure in saving Trump was ultra-Zionist 'investor' Carl Icahn who bought the Taj Mahal casino. Icahn was made special economic adviser on financial regulation in the Trump administration. He didn't stay long but still managed to find time to make a tidy sum of a reported $31.3 million when he sold his

holdings affected by the price of steel three days before Trump imposed a 235 percent tariff on steel imports. What amazing bits of luck these people have. Trump and Sabbatian operatives have long had a close association and his mentor and legal adviser from the early 1970s until 1986 was the dark and genetically corrupt ultra-Zionist Roy Cohn who was chief counsel to Senator Joseph McCarthy's 'communist' witch-hunt in the 1950s. *Esquire* magazine published an article about Cohn with the headline 'Don't mess with Roy Cohn'. He was described as the most feared lawyer in New York and 'a ruthless master of dirty tricks ... [with] ... more than one Mafia Don on speed dial'. Cohn's influence, contacts, support and protection made Trump a front man for Sabbatians in New York with their connections to one of Cohn's many criminal employers, the 'Russian' Sabbatian Mafia. Israel-centric media mogul Rupert Murdoch was introduced to Trump by Cohn and they started a long friendship. Cohn died in 1986 weeks after being disbarred for unethical conduct by the Appellate Division of the New York State Supreme Court. The wheels of justice do indeed run slow given the length of Cohn's crooked career.

QAnon-sense

We are asked to believe that Donald Trump with his fundamental connections to Sabbatian networks and operatives has been leading the fight to stop the Sabbatian agenda for the fascistic control of America and the world. Sure he has. A man entrapped during his years in the White House by Sabbatian operatives and whose biggest financial donor was casino billionaire Sheldon Adelson who was Sabbatian to his DNA?? Oh, do come on. Trump has been used to divide America and isolate Pushbackers on the Cult agenda under the heading of 'Trump supporters', 'insurrectionists' and 'white supremacists'. The US Intelligence/Mossad Psyop or psychological operation known as QAnon emerged during the Trump years as a central pillar in the Sabbatian campaign to lead Pushbackers into the trap set by those that wished to destroy them. I knew from the start that QAnon was a scam because I had seen the same scenario many

times before over 30 years under different names and I had written about one in particular in the books. 'Not again' was my reaction when QAnon came to the fore. The same script is pulled out every few years and a new name added to the letterhead. The story always takes the same form: 'Insiders' or 'the good guys' in the government-intelligence-military 'Deep State' apparatus were going to instigate mass arrests of the 'bad guys' which would include the Rockefellers, Rothschilds, Barack Obama, Hillary Clinton, George Soros, etc., etc. Dates are given for when the 'good guys' are going to move in, but the dates pass without incident and new dates are given which pass without incident. The central message to Pushbackers in each case is that they don't have to do anything because there is 'a plan' and it is all going to be sorted by the 'good guys' on the inside. 'Trust the plan' was a QAnon mantra when the only plan was to misdirect Pushbackers into putting their trust in a Psyop they believed to be real. Beware, beware, those who tell you what you want to hear and always check it out. Right up to Biden's inauguration QAnon was still claiming that 'the Storm' was coming and Trump would stay on as president when Biden and his cronies were arrested and jailed. It was never going to happen and of course it didn't, but what did happen as a result provided that punchline to the Sabbatian Trump/QAnon Psyop.

On January 6th, 2021, a very big crowd of Trump supporters gathered in the National Mall in Washington DC down from the Capitol Building to protest at what they believed to be widespread corruption and vote fraud that stopped Trump being re-elected for a second term as president in November, 2020. I say as someone that does not support Trump or Biden that the evidence is clear that major vote-fixing went on to favour Biden, a man with cognitive problems so advanced he can often hardly string a sentence together without reading the words written for him on the Teleprompter. Glaring ballot discrepancies included serious questions about electronic voting machines that make vote rigging a comparative cinch and hundreds of thousands of paper votes that suddenly appeared during already advanced vote counts and virtually all of

them for Biden. Early Trump leads in crucial swing states suddenly began to close and disappear. The pandemic hoax was used as the excuse to issue almost limitless numbers of mail-in ballots with no checks to establish that the recipients were still alive or lived at that address. They were sent to streams of people who had not even asked for them. Private organisations were employed to gather these ballots and who knows what they did with them before they turned up at the counts. The American election system has been manipulated over decades to become a sick joke with more holes than a Swiss cheese for the express purpose of dictating the results. Then there was the criminal manipulation of information by Sabbatian tech giants like Facebook, Twitter and Google-owned YouTube which deleted pro-Trump, anti-Biden accounts and posts while everything in support of Biden was left alone. Sabbatians wanted Biden to win because after the dividing of America it was time for full-on Woke and every aspect of the Cult agenda to be unleashed.

Hunter gatherer

Extreme Silicon Valley bias included blocking information by the *New York Post* exposing a Biden scandal that should have ended his bid for president in the final weeks of the campaign. Hunter Biden, his monumentally corrupt son, is reported to have sent a laptop to be repaired at a local store and failed to return for it. Time passed until the laptop became the property of the store for non-payment of the bill. When the owner saw what was on the hard drive he gave a copy to the FBI who did nothing even though it confirmed widespread corruption in which the Joe Biden family were using his political position, especially when he was vice president to Obama, to make multiple millions in countries around the world and most notably Ukraine and China. Hunter Biden's one-time business partner Tony Bobulinski went public when the story broke in the *New York Post* to confirm the corruption he saw and that Joe Biden not only knew what was going on he also profited from the spoils. Millions were handed over by a Chinese company with close

connections – like all major businesses in China – to the Chinese communist party of President Xi Jinping. Joe Biden even boasted at a meeting of the Cult's World Economic Forum that as vice president he had ordered the government of Ukraine to fire a prosecutor. What he didn't mention was that the same man just happened to be investigating an energy company which was part of Hunter Biden's corrupt portfolio. The company was paying him big bucks for no other reason than the influence his father had. Overnight Biden's presidential campaign should have been over given that he had lied publicly about not knowing what his son was doing. Instead almost the entire Sabbatian-owned mainstream media and Sabbatian-owned Silicon Valley suppressed circulation of the story. This alone went a mighty way to rigging the election of 2020. Cult assets like Mark Zuckerberg at Facebook also spent hundreds of millions to be used in support of Biden and vote 'administration'.

The Cult had used Trump as the focus to divide America and was now desperate to bring in moronic, pliable, corrupt Biden to complete the double-whammy. No way were they going to let little things like the will of the people thwart their plan. Silicon Valley widely censored claims that the election was rigged because it *was* rigged. For the same reason anyone claiming it was rigged was denounced as a 'white supremacist' including the pathetically few Republican politicians willing to say so. Right across the media where the claim was mentioned it was described as a 'false claim' even though these excuses for 'journalists' would have done no research into the subject whatsoever. Trump won seven million more votes than any sitting president had ever achieved while somehow a cognitively-challenged soon to be 78-year-old who was hidden away from the public for most of the campaign managed to win more votes than any presidential candidate in history. It makes no sense. You only had to see election rallies for both candidates to witness the enthusiasm for Trump and the apathy for Biden. Tens of thousands would attend Trump events while Biden was speaking in empty car parks with often only television crews attending and framing their shots to hide the fact that no one was there. It was pathetic to see

footage come to light of Biden standing at a podium making speeches only to TV crews and party fixers while reading the words written for him on massive Teleprompter screens. So, yes, those protestors on January 6th had a point about election rigging, but some were about to walk into a trap laid for them in Washington by the Cult Deep State and its QAnon Psyop. This was the Capitol Hill riot ludicrously dubbed an 'insurrection'.

The spider and the fly

Renegade Minds know there are not two 'sides' in politics, only one side, the Cult, working through all 'sides'. It's a stage show, a puppet show, to direct the perceptions of the population into focusing on diversions like parties and candidates while missing the puppeteers with their hands holding all the strings. The Capitol Hill 'insurrection' brings us back to the Little Big Horn. Having created two distinct opposing groupings – Woke and Pushbackers – the trap was about to be sprung. Pushbackers were to be encircled and isolated by associating them all in the public mind with Trump and then labelling Trump as some sort of Confederate leader. I knew immediately that the Capitol riot was a set-up because of two things. One was how easy the rioters got into the building with virtually no credible resistance and secondly I could see – as with the 'Covid' hoax in the West at the start of 2020 – how the Cult could exploit the situation to move its agenda forward with great speed. My experience of Cult techniques and activities over more than 30 years has showed me that while they do exploit situations they haven't themselves created this never happens with events of fundamental agenda significance. Every time major events giving cultists the excuse to rapidly advance their plan you find they are manipulated into being for the specific reason of providing that excuse – Problem-Reaction-Solution. Only a tiny minority of the huge crowd of Washington protestors sought to gain entry to the Capitol by smashing windows and breaching doors. That didn't matter. The whole crowd and all Pushbackers, even if they did not support Trump, were going to be lumped together as dangerous

insurrectionists and conspiracy theorists. The latter term came into widespread use through a CIA memo in the 1960s aimed at discrediting those questioning the nonsensical official story of the Kennedy assassination and it subsequently became widely employed by the media. It's still being used by inept 'journalists' with no idea of its origin to discredit anyone questioning anything that authority claims to be true. When you are perpetrating a conspiracy you need to discredit the very word itself even though the dictionary definition of conspiracy is merely 'the activity of secretly planning with other people to do something bad or illegal' and 'a general agreement to keep silent about a subject for the purpose of keeping it secret'. On that basis there are conspiracies almost wherever you look. For obvious reasons the Cult and its lapdog media have to claim there are no conspiracies even though the word appears in state laws as with conspiracy to defraud, to murder, and to corrupt public morals.

Agent provocateurs are widely used by the Cult Deep State to manipulate genuine people into acting in ways that suit the desired outcome. By genuine in this case I mean protestors genuinely supporting Trump and claims that the election was stolen. In among them, however, were agents of the state wearing the garb of Trump supporters and QAnon to pump-prime the Capital riot which some genuine Trump supporters naively fell for. I described the situation as 'Come into my parlour said the spider to the fly'. Leaflets appeared through the Woke paramilitary arm Antifa, the anti-fascist fascists, calling on supporters to turn up in Washington looking like Trump supporters even though they hated him. Some of those arrested for breaching the Capitol Building were sourced to Antifa and its stable mate Black Lives Matter. Both organisations are funded by Cult billionaires and corporations. One man charged for the riot was according to his lawyer a former FBI agent who had held top secret security clearance for 40 years. Attorney Thomas Plofchan said of his client, 66-year-old Thomas Edward Caldwell:

He has held a Top Secret Security Clearance since 1979 and has undergone multiple Special Background Investigations in support of his clearances. After retiring from the Navy, he

worked as a section chief for the Federal Bureau of Investigation from 2009-2010 as a GS-12 [mid-level employee].

He also formed and operated a consulting firm performing work, often classified, for U.S government customers including the US. Drug Enforcement Agency, Department of Housing and Urban Development, the US Coast Guard, and the US Army Personnel Command.

A judge later released Caldwell pending trial in the absence of evidence about a conspiracy or that he tried to force his way into the building. *The New York Post* reported a 'law enforcement source' as saying that 'at least two known Antifa members were spotted' on camera among Trump supporters during the riot while one of the rioters arrested was John Earle Sullivan, a seriously extreme Black Lives Matter Trump-hater from Utah who was previously arrested and charged in July, 2020, over a BLM-Antifa riot in which drivers were threatened and one was shot. Sullivan is the founder of Utah-based Insurgence USA which is an affiliate of the Cult-created-and-funded Black Lives Matter movement. Footage appeared and was then deleted by Twitter of Trump supporters calling out Antifa infiltrators and a group was filmed changing into pro-Trump clothing before the riot. Security at the building was *pathetic* – as planned. Colonel Leroy Fletcher Prouty, a man with long experience in covert operations working with the US security apparatus, once described the tell-tale sign to identify who is involved in an assassination. He said:

No one has to direct an assassination – it happens. The active role is played secretly by permitting it to happen. This is the greatest single clue. Who has the power to call off or reduce the usual security precautions?

This principle applies to many other situations and certainly to the Capitol riot of January 6th, 2021.

The sting

With such a big and potentially angry crowd known to be gathering near the Capitol the security apparatus would have had a major police detail to defend the building with National Guard troops on

standby given the strength of feeling among people arriving from all over America encouraged by the QAnon Psyop and statements by Donald Trump. Instead Capitol Police 'security' was flimsy, weak, and easily breached. The same number of officers was deployed as on a regular day and that is a blatant red flag. They were not staffed or equipped for a possible riot that had been an obvious possibility in the circumstances. No protective and effective fencing worth the name was put in place and there were no contingency plans. The whole thing was basically a case of standing aside and waving people in. Once inside police mostly backed off apart from one Capitol police officer who ridiculously shot dead unarmed Air Force veteran protestor Ashli Babbitt without a warning as she climbed through a broken window. The 'investigation' refused to name or charge the officer after what must surely be considered a murder in the circumstances. They just lifted a carpet and swept. The story was endlessly repeated about five people dying in the 'armed insurrection' when there was no report of rioters using weapons. Apart from Babbitt the other four died from a heart attack, strokes and apparently a drug overdose. Capitol police officer Brian Sicknick was reported to have died after being bludgeoned with a fire extinguisher when he was alive after the riot was over and died later of what the Washington Medical Examiner's Office said was a stroke. Sicknick had no external injuries. The lies were delivered like rapid fire. There was a narrative to build with incessant repetition of the lie until the lie became the accepted 'everybody knows that' truth. The 'Big Lie' technique of Nazi Propaganda Minister Joseph Goebbels is constantly used by the Cult which was behind the Nazis and is today behind the 'Covid' and 'climate change' hoaxes. Goebbels said:

> If you tell a lie big enough and keep repeating it, people will eventually come to believe it. The lie can be maintained only for such time as the State can shield the people from the political, economic and/or military consequences of the lie. It thus becomes vitally important for the State to use all of its powers to repress dissent, for the truth is the mortal enemy of the lie, and thus by extension, the truth is the greatest enemy of the State.

Most protestors had a free run of the Capitol Building. This allowed pictures to be taken of rioters in iconic parts of the building including the Senate chamber which could be used as propaganda images against all Pushbackers. One Congresswoman described the scene as 'the worst kind of non-security anybody could ever imagine'. Well, the first part was true, but someone obviously did imagine it and made sure it happened. Some photographs most widely circulated featured people wearing QAnon symbols and now the Psyop would be used to dub all QAnon followers with the ubiquitous fit-all label of 'white supremacist' and 'insurrectionists'. When a Muslim extremist called Noah Green drove his car at two police officers at the Capitol Building killing one in April, 2021, there was no such political and media hysteria. They were just disappointed he wasn't white.

The witch-hunt

Government prosecutor Michael Sherwin, an aggressive, dark-eyed, professional Rottweiler led the 'investigation' and to call it over the top would be to understate reality a thousand fold. Hundreds were tracked down and arrested for the crime of having the wrong political views and people were jailed who had done nothing more than walk in the building, committed no violence or damage to property, took a few pictures and left. They were labelled a 'threat to the Republic' while Biden sat in the White House signing executive orders written for him that were dismantling 'the Republic'. Even when judges ruled that a mother and son should not be in jail the government kept them there. Some of those arrested have been badly beaten by prison guards in Washington and lawyers for one man said he suffered a fractured skull and was made blind in one eye. Meanwhile a woman is shot dead for no reason by a Capitol Police officer and we are not allowed to know who he is never mind what has happened to him although that will be *nothing*. The Cult's QAnon/Trump sting to identify and isolate Pushbackers and then target them on the road to crushing and deleting them was a resounding success. You would have thought the Russians had

invaded the building at gunpoint and lined up senators for a firing squad to see the political and media reaction. Congresswoman Alexandria Ocasio-Cortez is a child in a woman's body, a terrible-twos, me, me, me, Woker narcissist of such proportions that words have no meaning. She said she thought she was going to die when 'insurrectionists' banged on her office door. It turned out she wasn't even in the Capitol Building when the riot was happening and the 'banging' was a Capitol Police officer. She referred to herself as a 'survivor' which is an insult to all those true survivors of violent and sexual abuse while she lives her pampered and privileged life talking drivel for a living. Her Woke colleague and fellow mega-narcissist Rashida Tlaib broke down describing the devastating effect on her, too, of *not being* in the building when the rioters were there. Ocasio-Cortez and Tlaib are members of a fully-Woke group of Congresswomen known as 'The Squad' along with Ilhan Omar and Ayanna Pressley. The Squad from what I can see can be identified by its vehement anti-white racism, anti-white men agenda, and, as always in these cases, the absence of brain cells on active duty.

The usual suspects were on the riot case immediately in the form of Democrat ultra-Zionist senators and operatives Chuck Schumer and Adam Schiff demanding that Trump be impeached for 'his part in the insurrection'. The same pair of prats had led the failed impeachment of Trump over the invented 'Russia collusion' nonsense which claimed Russia had helped Trump win the 2016 election. I didn't realise that Tel Aviv had been relocated just outside Moscow. I must find an up-to-date map. The Russia hoax was a Sabbatian operation to keep Trump occupied and impotent and to stop any rapport with Russia which the Cult wants to retain as a perceptual enemy to be pulled out at will. Puppet Biden began attacking Russia when he came to office as the Cult seeks more upheaval, division and war across the world. A two-year stage show 'Russia collusion inquiry' headed by the not-very-bright former 9/11 FBI chief Robert Mueller, with support from 19 lawyers, 40 FBI agents plus intelligence analysts, forensic accountants and other

staff, devoured tens of millions of dollars and found no evidence of Russia collusion which a ten-year-old could have told them on day one. Now the same moronic Schumer and Schiff wanted a second impeachment of Trump over the Capitol 'insurrection' (riot) which the arrested development of Schumer called another 'Pearl Harbor' while others compared it with 9/11 in which 3,000 died and, in the case of CNN, with the Rwandan genocide in the 1990s in which an estimated 500,000 to 600,000 were murdered, between 250, 000 and 500,000 women were raped, and populations of whole towns were hacked to death with machetes. To make those comparisons purely for Cult political reasons is beyond insulting to those that suffered and lost their lives and confirms yet again the callous inhumanity that we are dealing with. Schumer is a monumental idiot and so is Schiff, but they serve the Cult agenda and do whatever they're told so they get looked after. Talking of idiots – another inane man who spanned the Russia and Capitol impeachment attempts was Senator Eric Swalwell who had the nerve to accuse Trump of collusion with the Russians while sleeping with a Chinese spy called Christine Fang or 'Fang Fang' which is straight out of a Bond film no doubt starring Klaus Schwab as the bloke living on a secret island and controlling laser weapons positioned in space and pointing at world capitals. Fang Fang plays the part of Bond's infiltrator girlfriend which I'm sure she would enjoy rather more than sharing a bed with the brainless Swalwell, lying back and thinking of China. The FBI eventually warned Swalwell about Fang Fang which gave her time to escape back to the Chinese dictatorship. How very thoughtful of them. The second Trump impeachment also failed and hardly surprising when an impeachment is supposed to remove a sitting president and by the time it happened Trump was no longer president. These people are running your country America, well, officially anyway. Terrifying isn't it?

Outcomes tell the story - always

The outcome of all this – and it's the *outcome* on which Renegade Minds focus, not the words – was that a vicious, hysterical and

obviously pre-planned assault was launched on Pushbackers to censor, silence and discredit them and even targeted their right to earn a living. They have since been condemned as 'domestic terrorists' that need to be treated like Al-Qaeda and Islamic State. 'Domestic terrorists' is a label the Cult has been trying to make stick since the period of the Oklahoma bombing in 1995 which was blamed on 'far-right domestic terrorists'. If you read *The Trigger* you will see that the bombing was clearly a Problem-Reaction-Solution carried out by the Deep State during a Bill Clinton administration so corrupt that no dictionary definition of the term would even nearly suffice. Nearly 30, 000 troops were deployed from all over America to the empty streets of Washington for Biden's inauguration. Ten thousand of them stayed on with the pretext of protecting the capital from insurrectionists when it was more psychological programming to normalise the use of the military in domestic law enforcement in support of the Cult plan for a police-military state. Biden's fascist administration began a purge of 'wrong-thinkers' in the military which means anyone that is not on board with Woke. The Capitol Building was surrounded by a fence with razor wire and the Land of the Free was further symbolically and literally dismantled. The circle was completed with the installation of Biden and the exploitation of the QAnon Psyop.

America had never been so divided since the civil war of the 19th century, Pushbackers were isolated and dubbed terrorists and now, as was always going to happen, the Cult immediately set about deleting what little was left of freedom and transforming American society through a swish of the hand of the most controlled 'president' in American history leading (officially at least) the most extreme regime since the country was declared an independent state on July 4th, 1776. Biden issued undebated, dictatorial executive orders almost by the hour in his opening days in office across the whole spectrum of the Cult wish-list including diluting controls on the border with Mexico allowing thousands of migrants to illegally enter the United States to transform the demographics of America and import an election-changing number of perceived Democrat

voters. Then there were Biden deportation amnesties for the already illegally resident (estimated to be as high as 20 or even 30 million). A bill before Congress awarded American citizenship to anyone who could prove they had worked in agriculture for just 180 days in the previous two years as 'Big Ag' secured its slave labour long-term. There were the plans to add new states to the union such as Puerto Rico and making Washington DC a state. They are all parts of a plan to ensure that the Cult-owned Woke Democrats would be permanently in power.

Border – what border?

I have exposed in detail in other books how mass immigration into the United States and Europe is the work of Cult networks fuelled by the tens of billions spent to this and other ends by George Soros and his global Open Society (open borders) Foundations. The impact can be seen in America alone where the population has increased by *100 million* in little more than 30 years mostly through immigration. I wrote in *The Answer* that the plan was to have so many people crossing the southern border that the numbers become unstoppable and we are now there under Cult-owned Biden. El Salvador in Central America puts the scale of what is happening into context. A third of the population now lives in the United States, much of it illegally, and many more are on the way. The methodology is to crush Central and South American countries economically and spread violence through machete-wielding psychopathic gangs like MS-13 based in El Salvador and now operating in many American cities. Biden-imposed lax security at the southern border means that it is all but open. He said before his 'election' that he wanted to see a surge towards the border if he became president and that was the green light for people to do just that after election day to create the human disaster that followed for both America and the migrants. When that surge came the imbecilic Alexandria Ocasio-Cortez said it wasn't a 'surge' because they are 'children, not insurgents' and the term 'surge' (used by Biden) was a claim of 'white supremacists'.

This disingenuous lady may one day enter the realm of the most basic intelligence, but it won't be any time soon.

Sabbatians and the Cult are in the process of destroying America by importing violent people and gangs in among the genuine to terrorise American cities and by overwhelming services that cannot cope with the sheer volume of new arrivals. Something similar is happening in Europe as Western society in general is targeted for demographic and cultural transformation and upheaval. The plan demands violence and crime to create an environment of intimidation, fear and division and Soros has been funding the election of district attorneys across America who then stop prosecuting many crimes, reduce sentences for violent crimes and free as many violent criminals as they can. Sabbatians are creating the chaos from which order – their order – can respond in a classic Problem-Reaction-Solution. A Freemasonic moto says 'Ordo Ab Chao' (Order out of Chaos) and this is why the Cult is constantly creating chaos to impose a new 'order'. Here you have the reason the Cult is constantly creating chaos. The 'Covid' hoax can be seen with those entering the United States by plane being forced to take a 'Covid' test while migrants flooding through southern border processing facilities do not. Nothing is put in the way of mass migration and if that means ignoring the government's own 'Covid' rules then so be it. They know it's all bullshit anyway. Any pushback on this is denounced as 'racist' by Wokers and Sabbatian fronts like the ultra-Zionist Anti-Defamation League headed by the appalling Jonathan Greenblatt which at the same time argues that Israel should not give citizenship and voting rights to more Palestinian Arabs or the 'Jewish population' (in truth the Sabbatian network) will lose control of the country.

Society-changing numbers

Biden's masters have declared that countries like El Salvador are so dangerous that their people must be allowed into the United States for humanitarian reasons when there are fewer murders in large parts of many Central American countries than in US cities like

Baltimore. That is not to say Central America cannot be a dangerous place and Cult-controlled American governments have been making it so since way back, along with the dismantling of economies, in a long-term plan to drive people north into the United States. Parts of Central America are very dangerous, but in other areas the story is being greatly exaggerated to justify relaxing immigration criteria. Migrants are being offered free healthcare and education in the United States as another incentive to head for the border and there is no requirement to be financially independent before you can enter to prevent the resources of America being drained. You can't blame migrants for seeking what they believe will be a better life, but they are being played by the Cult for dark and nefarious ends. The numbers since Biden took office are huge. In February, 2021, more than 100,000 people were known to have tried to enter the US illegally through the southern border (it was 34,000 in the same month in 2020) and in March it was 170,000 – a 418 percent increase on March, 2020. These numbers are only known people, not the ones who get in unseen. The true figure for migrants illegally crossing the border in a single month was estimated by one congressman at 250,000 and that number will only rise under Biden's current policy. Gangs of murdering drug-running thugs that control the Mexican side of the border demand money – thousands of dollars – to let migrants cross the Rio Grande into America. At the same time gun battles are breaking out on the border several times a week between rival Mexican drug gangs (which now operate globally) who are equipped with sophisticated military-grade weapons, grenades and armoured vehicles. While the Capitol Building was being 'protected' from a non-existent 'threat' by thousands of troops, and others were still deployed at the time in the Cult Neocon war in Afghanistan, the southern border of America was left to its fate. This is not incompetence, it is cold calculation.

By March, 2021, there were 17,000 unaccompanied children held at border facilities and many of them are ensnared by people traffickers for paedophile rings and raped on their journey north to America. This is not conjecture – this is fact. Many of those designated

children are in reality teenage boys or older. Meanwhile Wokers posture their self-purity for encouraging poor and tragic people to come to America and face this nightmare both on the journey and at the border with the disgusting figure of House Speaker Nancy Pelosi giving disingenuous speeches about caring for migrants. The woman's evil. Wokers condemned Trump for having children in cages at the border (so did Obama, *Shhhh*), but now they are sleeping on the floor without access to a shower with one border facility 729 percent over capacity. The Biden insanity even proposed flying migrants from the southern border to the northern border with Canada for 'processing'. The whole shambles is being overseen by ultra-Zionist Secretary of Homeland Security, the moronic liar Alejandro Mayorkas, who banned news cameras at border facilities to stop Americans seeing what was happening. Mayorkas said there was not a ban on news crews; it was just that they were not allowed to film. Alongside him at Homeland Security is another ultra-Zionist Cass Sunstein appointed by Biden to oversee new immigration laws. Sunstein despises conspiracy researchers to the point where he suggests they should be banned or *taxed* for having such views. The man is not bonkers or anything. He's perfectly well-adjusted, but adjusted to what is the question. Criticise what is happening and you are a 'white supremacist' when earlier non-white immigrants also oppose the numbers which effect their lives and opportunities. Black people in poor areas are particularly damaged by uncontrolled immigration and the increased competition for work opportunities with those who will work for less. They are also losing voting power as Hispanics become more dominant in former black areas. It's a downward spiral for them while the billionaires behind the policy drone on about how much they care about black people and 'racism'. None of this is about compassion for migrants or black people – that's just wind and air. Migrants are instead being mercilessly exploited to transform America while the countries they leave are losing their future and the same is true in Europe. Mass immigration may now be the work of Woke Democrats, but it can be traced back to the 1986 Immigration Reform and Control Act (it

wasn't) signed into law by Republican hero President Ronald Reagan which gave amnesty to millions living in the United States illegally and other incentives for people to head for the southern border. Here we have the one-party state at work again.

Save me syndrome

Almost every aspect of what I have been exposing as the Cult agenda was on display in even the first days of 'Biden' with silencing of Pushbackers at the forefront of everything. A Renegade Mind will view the Trump years and QAnon in a very different light to their supporters and advocates as the dots are connected. The QAnon/Trump Psyop has given the Cult all it was looking for. We may not know how much, or little, that Trump realised he was being used, but that's a side issue. This pincer movement produced the desired outcome of dividing America and having Pushbackers isolated. To turn this around we have to look at new routes to empowerment which do not include handing our power to other people and groups through what I will call the 'Save Me Syndrome' – 'I want someone else to do it so that I don't have to'. We have seen this at work throughout human history and the QAnon/Trump Psyop is only the latest incarnation alongside all the others. Religion is an obvious expression of this when people look to a 'god' or priest to save them or tell them how to be saved and then there are 'save me' politicians like Trump. Politics is a diversion and not a 'saviour'. It is a means to block positive change, not make it possible.

Save Me Syndrome always comes with the same repeating theme of handing your power to whom or what you believe will save you while your real 'saviour' stares back from the mirror every morning. Renegade Minds are constantly vigilant in this regard and always asking the question 'What can I do?' rather than 'What can someone else do for me?' Gandhi was right when he said: 'You must be the change you want to see in the world.' We are indeed the people we have been waiting for. We are presented with a constant raft of reasons to concede that power to others and forget where the real power is. Humanity has the numbers and the Cult does not. It has to

use diversion and division to target the unstoppable power that comes from unity. Religions, governments, politicians, corporations, media, QAnon, are all different manifestations of this power-diversion and dilution. Refusing to give your power to governments and instead handing it to Trump and QAnon is not to take a new direction, but merely to recycle the old one with new names on the posters. I will explore this phenomenon as we proceed and how to break the cycles and recycles that got us here through the mists of repeating perception and so repeating history.

For now we shall turn to the most potent example in the entire human story of the consequences that follow when you give your power away. I am talking, of course, of the 'Covid' hoax.

CHAPTER FOUR

'Covid': Calculated catastrophe

Facts are threatening to those invested in fraud
DaShanne Stokes

We can easily unravel the real reason for the 'Covid pandemic' hoax by employing the Renegade Mind methodology that I have outlined this far. We'll start by comparing the long-planned Cult outcome with the 'Covid pandemic' outcome. Know the outcome and you'll see the journey.

I have highlighted the plan for the Hunger Games Society which has been in my books for so many years with the very few controlling the very many through ongoing dependency. To create this dependency it is essential to destroy independent livelihoods, businesses and employment to make the population reliant on the state (the Cult) for even the basics of life through a guaranteed pittance income. While independence of income remained these Cult ambitions would be thwarted. With this knowledge it was easy to see where the 'pandemic' hoax was going once talk of 'lockdowns' began and the closing of all but perceived 'essential' businesses to 'save' us from an alleged 'deadly virus'. Cult corporations like Amazon and Walmart were naturally considered 'essential' while mom and pop shops and stores had their doors closed by fascist decree. As a result with every new lockdown and new regulation more small and medium, even large businesses not owned by the Cult, went to the wall while Cult giants and their frontmen and women grew financially fatter by the second. Mom and pop were

denied an income and the right to earn a living and the wealth of people like Jeff Bezos (Amazon), Mark Zuckerberg (Facebook) and Sergei Brin and Larry Page (Google/Alphabet) have reached record levels. The Cult was increasing its own power through further dramatic concentrations of wealth while the competition was being destroyed and brought into a state of dependency. Lockdowns have been instigated to secure that very end and were never anything to do with health. My brother Paul spent 45 years building up a bus repair business, but lockdowns meant buses were running at a fraction of normal levels for months on end. Similar stories can told in their hundreds of millions worldwide. Efforts of a lifetime coldly destroyed by Cult multi-billionaires and their lackeys in government and law enforcement who continued to earn their living from the taxation of the people while denying the right of the same people to earn theirs. How different it would have been if those making and enforcing these decisions had to face the same financial hardships of those they affected, but they never do.

Gates of Hell

Behind it all in the full knowledge of what he is doing and why is the psychopathic figure of Cult operative Bill Gates. His puppet Tedros at the World Health Organization declared 'Covid' a pandemic in March, 2020. The WHO had changed the definition of a 'pandemic' in 2009 just a month before declaring the 'swine flu pandemic' which would not have been so under the previous definition. The same applies to 'Covid'. The definition had included… 'an infection by an infectious agent, occurring simultaneously in different countries, with a significant mortality rate relative to the proportion of the population infected'. The new definition removed the need for 'significant mortality'. The 'pandemic' has been fraudulent even down to the definition, but Gates demanded economy-destroying lockdowns, school closures, social distancing, mandatory masks, a 'vaccination' for every man, woman and child on the planet and severe consequences and restrictions for those that refused. Who gave him this power? The

Cult did which he serves like a little boy in short trousers doing what his daddy tells him. He and his psychopathic missus even smiled when they said that much worse was to come (what they knew was planned to come). Gates responded in the matter-of-fact way of all psychopaths to a question about the effect on the world economy of what he was doing:

> Well, it won't go to zero but it will shrink. Global GDP is probably going to take the biggest hit ever [Gates was smiling as he said this] … in my lifetime this will be the greatest economic hit. But you don't have a choice. People act as if you have a choice. People don't feel like going to the stadium when they might get infected … People are deeply affected by seeing these stats, by knowing they could be part of the transmission chain, old people, their parents and grandparents, could be affected by this, and so you don't get to say ignore what is going on here.
>
> There will be the ability to open up, particularly in rich countries, if things are done well over the next few months, but for the world at large normalcy only returns when we have largely vaccinated the entire population.

The man has no compassion or empathy. How could he when he's a psychopath like all Cult players? My own view is that even beyond that he is very seriously mentally ill. Look in his eyes and you can see this along with his crazy flailing arms. You don't do what he has done to the world population since the start of 2020 unless you are mentally ill and at the most extreme end of psychopathic. You especially don't do it when to you know, as we shall see, that cases and deaths from 'Covid' are fakery and a product of monumental figure massaging. 'These stats' that Gates referred to are based on a 'test' that's not testing for the 'virus' as he has known all along. He made his fortune with big Cult support as an infamously ruthless software salesman and now buys global control of 'health' (death) policy without the population he affects having any say. It's a breathtaking outrage. Gates talked about people being deeply affected by fear of 'Covid' when that was because of *him* and his global network lying to them minute-by-minute supported by a lying media that he seriously influences and funds to the tune of hundreds of millions. He's handed big sums to media operations including the BBC, NBC, Al Jazeera, Univision, *PBS NewsHour*,

ProPublica, National Journal, The Guardian, The Financial Times, The Atlantic, Texas Tribune, USA Today publisher Gannett, *Washington Monthly, Le Monde,* Center for Investigative Reporting, Pulitzer Center on Crisis Reporting, National Press Foundation, International Center for Journalists, Solutions Journalism Network, the Poynter Institute for Media Studies, and many more. Gates is everywhere in the 'Covid' hoax and the man must go to prison – or a mental facility – for the rest of his life and his money distributed to those he has taken such enormous psychopathic pleasure in crushing.

The Muscle

The Hunger Games global structure demands a police-military state – a fusion of the two into one force – which viciously imposes the will of the Cult on the population and protects the Cult from public rebellion. In that regard, too, the 'Covid' hoax just keeps on giving. Often unlawful, ridiculous and contradictory 'Covid' rules and regulations have been policed across the world by moronic automatons and psychopaths made faceless by face-nappy masks and acting like the Nazi SS and fascist blackshirts and brownshirts of Hitler and Mussolini. The smallest departure from the rules decreed by the psychos in government and their clueless gofers were jumped upon by the face-nappy fascists. Brutality against public protestors soon became commonplace even on girls, women and old people as the brave men with the batons – the Face-Nappies as I call them – broke up peaceful protests and handed out fines like confetti to people who couldn't earn a living let alone pay hundreds of pounds for what was once an accepted human right. Robot Face-Nappies of Nottingham police in the English East Midlands fined one group £11,000 for attending a child's birthday party. For decades I charted the transformation of law enforcement as genuine, decent officers were replaced with psychopaths and the brain dead who would happily and brutally do whatever their masters told them. Now they were let loose on the public and I would emphasise the point that none of this just happened. The step-by-step change in the dynamic between police and public was orchestrated from the shadows by

those who knew where this was all going and the same with the perceptual reframing of those in all levels of authority and official administration through 'training courses' by organisations such as Common Purpose which was created in the late 1980s and given a massive boost in Blair era Britain until it became a global phenomenon. Supposed public 'servants' began to view the population as the enemy and the same was true of the police. This was the start of the explosion of behaviour manipulation organisations and networks preparing for the all-war on the human psyche unleashed with the dawn of 2020. I will go into more detail about this later in the book because it is a core part of what is happening.

Police desecrated beauty spots to deter people gathering and arrested women for walking in the countryside alone 'too far' from their homes. We had arrogant, clueless sergeants in the Isle of Wight police where I live posting on Facebook what they insisted the population must do or else. A schoolmaster sergeant called Radford looked young enough for me to ask if his mother knew he was out, but he was posting what he *expected* people to do while a Sergeant Wilkinson boasted about fining lads for meeting in a McDonald's car park where they went to get a lockdown takeaway. Wilkinson added that he had even cancelled their order. What a pair of prats these people are and yet they have increasingly become the norm among Jackboot Johnson's Yellowshirts once known as the British police. This was the theme all over the world with police savagery common during lockdown protests in the United States, the Netherlands, and the fascist state of Victoria in Australia under its tyrannical and again moronic premier Daniel Andrews. Amazing how tyrannical and moronic tend to work as a team and the same combination could be seen across America as arrogant, narcissistic Woke governors and mayors such as Gavin Newsom (California), Andrew Cuomo (New York), Gretchen Whitmer (Michigan), Lori Lightfoot (Chicago) and Eric Garcetti (Los Angeles) did their Nazi and Stalin impressions with the full support of the compliant brutality of their enforcers in uniform as they arrested small business owners defying

fascist shutdown orders and took them to jail in ankle shackles and handcuffs. This happened to bistro owner Marlena Pavlos-Hackney in Gretchen Whitmer's fascist state of Michigan when police arrived to enforce an order by a state-owned judge for 'putting the community at risk' at a time when other states like Texas were dropping restrictions and migrants were pouring across the southern border without any 'Covid' questions at all. I'm sure there are many officers appalled by what they are ordered to do, but not nearly enough of them. If they were truly appalled they would not do it. As the months passed every opportunity was taken to have the military involved to make their presence on the streets ever more familiar and 'normal' for the longer-term goal of police-military fusion.

Another crucial element to the Hunger Games enforcement network has been encouraging the public to report neighbours and others for 'breaking the lockdown rules'. The group faced with £11,000 in fines at the child's birthday party would have been dobbed-in by a neighbour with a brain the size of a pea. The technique was most famously employed by the Stasi secret police in communist East Germany who had public informants placed throughout the population. A police chief in the UK says his force doesn't need to carry out 'Covid' patrols when they are flooded with so many calls from the public reporting other people for visiting the beach. Dorset police chief James Vaughan said people were so enthusiastic about snitching on their fellow humans they were now operating as an auxiliary arm of the police: 'We are still getting around 400 reports a week from the public, so we will respond to reports …We won't need to be doing hotspot patrols because people are very quick to pick the phone up and tell us.' Vaughan didn't say that this is a pillar of all tyrannies of whatever complexion and the means to hugely extend the reach of enforcement while spreading distrust among the people and making them wary of doing anything that might get them reported. Those narcissistic Isle of Wight sergeants Radford and Wilkinson never fail to add a link to their Facebook posts where the public can inform on their fellow slaves.

Neither would be self-aware enough to realise they were imitating the Stasi which they might well never have heard of. Government psychologists that I will expose later laid out a policy to turn communities against each other in the same way.

A coincidence? Yep, and I can knit fog

I knew from the start of the alleged pandemic that this was a Cult operation. It presented limitless potential to rapidly advance the Cult agenda and exploit manipulated fear to demand that every man, woman and child on the planet was 'vaccinated' in a process never used on humans before which infuses self-replicating *synthetic* material into human cells. Remember the plan to transform the human body from a biological to a synthetic biological state. I'll deal with the 'vaccine' (that's not actually a vaccine) when I focus on the genetic agenda. Enough to say here that mass global 'vaccination' justified by this 'new virus' set alarms ringing after 30 years of tracking these people and their methods. The 'Covid' hoax officially beginning in China was also a big red flag for reasons I will be explaining. The agenda potential was so enormous that I could dismiss any idea that the 'virus' appeared naturally. Major happenings with major agenda implications never occur without Cult involvement in making them happen. My questions were twofold in early 2020 as the media began its campaign to induce global fear and hysteria: Was this alleged infectious agent released on purpose by the Cult or did it even exist at all? I then did what I always do in these situations. I sat, observed and waited to see where the evidence and information would take me. By March and early April synchronicity was strongly – and ever more so since then – pointing me in the direction of *there is no 'virus'*. I went public on that with derision even from swathes of the alternative media that voiced a scenario that the Chinese government released the 'virus' in league with Deep State elements in the United States from a top-level bio-lab in Wuhan where the 'virus' is said to have first appeared. I looked at that possibility, but I didn't buy it for several reasons. Deaths from the 'virus' did not in any way match what they

would have been with a 'deadly bioweapon' and it is much more effective if you sell the *illusion* of an infectious agent rather than having a real one unless you can control through injection who has it and who doesn't. Otherwise you lose control of events. A made-up 'virus' gives you a blank sheet of paper on which you can make it do whatever you like and have any symptoms or mutant 'variants' you choose to add while a real infectious agent would limit you to what it actually does. A phantom disease allows you to have endless ludicrous 'studies' on the 'Covid' dollar to widen the perceived impact by inventing ever more 'at risk' groups including one study which said those who walk slowly may be almost four times more likely to die from the 'virus'. People are in psychiatric wards for less.

A real 'deadly bioweapon' can take out people in the hierarchy that are not part of the Cult, but essential to its operation. Obviously they don't want that. Releasing a real disease means you immediately lose control of it. Releasing an illusory one means you don't. Again it's vital that people are extra careful when dealing with what they want to hear. A bioweapon unleashed from a Chinese laboratory in collusion with the American Deep State may fit a conspiracy narrative, but is it true? Would it not be far more effective to use the excuse of a 'virus' to justify the real bioweapon – the 'vaccine'? That way your disease agent does not have to be transmitted and arrives directly through a syringe. I saw a French virologist Luc Montagnier quoted in the alternative media as saying he had discovered that the alleged 'new' severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus , or SARS-CoV-2, was made artificially and included elements of the human immunodeficiency 'virus' (HIV) and a parasite that causes malaria. SARS-CoV-2 is alleged to trigger an alleged illness called Covid-19. I remembered Montagnier's name from my research years before into claims that an HIV 'retrovirus' causes AIDs – claims that were demolished by Berkeley virologist Peter Duesberg who showed that no one had ever proved that HIV causes acquired immunodeficiency syndrome or AIDS. Claims that become accepted as fact, publicly and medically, with no proof whatsoever are an ever-recurring story that profoundly applies to

'Covid'. Nevertheless, despite the lack of proof, Montagnier's team at the Pasteur Institute in Paris had a long dispute with American researcher Robert Gallo over which of them discovered and isolated the HIV 'virus' and with *no evidence* found it to cause AIDS. You will see later that there is also no evidence that any 'virus' causes any disease or that there is even such a thing as a 'virus' in the way it is said to exist. The claim to have 'isolated' the HIV 'virus' will be presented in its real context as we come to the shocking story – and it is a story – of SARS-CoV-2 and so will Montagnier's assertion that he identified the full SARS-CoV-2 genome.

Hoax in the making

We can pick up the 'Covid' story in 2010 and the publication by the Rockefeller Foundation of a document called 'Scenarios for the Future of Technology and International Development'. The inner circle of the Rockefeller family has been serving the Cult since John D. Rockefeller (1839-1937) made his fortune with Standard Oil. It is less well known that the same Rockefeller – the Bill Gates of his day – was responsible for establishing what is now referred to as 'Big Pharma', the global network of pharmaceutical companies that make outrageous profits dispensing scalpel and drug 'medicine' and are obsessed with pumping vaccines in ever-increasing number into as many human arms and backsides as possible. John D. Rockefeller was the driving force behind the creation of the 'education' system in the United States and elsewhere specifically designed to program the perceptions of generations thereafter. The Rockefeller family donated exceptionally valuable land in New York for the United Nations building and were central in establishing the World Health Organization in 1948 as an agency of the UN which was created from the start as a Trojan horse and stalking horse for world government. Now enter Bill Gates. His family and the Rockefellers have long been extremely close and I have seen genealogy which claims that if you go back far enough the two families fuse into the same bloodline. Gates has said that the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation was inspired by the Rockefeller Foundation and why not

when both are serving the same Cult? Major tax-exempt foundations are overwhelmingly criminal enterprises in which Cult assets fund the Cult agenda in the guise of 'philanthropy' while avoiding tax in the process. Cult operatives can become mega-rich in their role of front men and women for the psychopaths at the inner core and they, too, have to be psychopaths to knowingly serve such evil. Part of the deal is that a big percentage of the wealth gleaned from representing the Cult has to be spent advancing the ambitions of the Cult and hence you have the Rockefeller Foundation, Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation (and *so* many more) and people like George Soros with his global Open Society Foundations spending their billions in pursuit of global Cult control. Gates is a global public face of the Cult with his interventions in world affairs including Big Tech influence; a central role in the 'Covid' and 'vaccine' scam; promotion of the climate change shakedown; manipulation of education; geoengineering of the skies; and his food-control agenda as the biggest owner of farmland in America, his GMO promotion and through other means. As one writer said: 'Gates monopolizes or wields disproportionate influence over the tech industry, global health and vaccines, agriculture and food policy (including biopiracy and fake food), weather modification and other climate technologies, surveillance, education and media.' The almost limitless wealth secured through Microsoft and other not-allowed-to-fail ventures (including vaccines) has been ploughed into a long, long list of Cult projects designed to enslave the entire human race. Gates and the Rockefellers have been working as one unit with the Rockefeller-established World Health Organization leading global 'Covid' policy controlled by Gates through his mouth-piece Tedros. Gates became the WHO's biggest funder when Trump announced that the American government would cease its donations, but Biden immediately said he would restore the money when he took office in January, 2021. The Gates Foundation (the Cult) owns through limitless funding the world health system and the major players across the globe in the 'Covid' hoax.

Okay, with that background we return to that Rockefeller Foundation document of 2010 headed 'Scenarios for the Future of Technology and International Development' and its 'imaginary' epidemic of a virulent and deadly influenza strain which infected 20 percent of the global population and killed eight million in seven months. The Rockefeller scenario was that the epidemic destroyed economies, closed shops, offices and other businesses and led to governments imposing fierce rules and restrictions that included mandatory wearing of face masks and body-temperature checks to enter communal spaces like railway stations and supermarkets. The document predicted that even after the height of the Rockefeller-envisaged epidemic the authoritarian rule would continue to deal with further pandemics, transnational terrorism, environmental crises and rising poverty. Now you may think that the Rockefellers are our modern-day seers or alternatively, and rather more likely, that they well knew what was planned a few years further on. Fascism had to be imposed, you see, to 'protect citizens from risk and exposure'. The Rockefeller scenario document said:

During the pandemic, national leaders around the world flexed their authority and imposed airtight rules and restrictions, from the mandatory wearing of face masks to body-temperature checks at the entries to communal spaces like train stations and supermarkets. Even after the pandemic faded, this more authoritarian control and oversight of citizens and their activities stuck and even intensified. In order to protect themselves from the spread of increasingly global problems – from pandemics and transnational terrorism to environmental crises and rising poverty – leaders around the world took a firmer grip on power.

At first, the notion of a more controlled world gained wide acceptance and approval. Citizens willingly gave up some of their sovereignty – and their privacy – to more paternalistic states in exchange for greater safety and stability. Citizens were more tolerant, and even eager, for top-down direction and oversight, and national leaders had more latitude to impose order in the ways they saw fit.

In developed countries, this heightened oversight took many forms: biometric IDs for all citizens, for example, and tighter regulation of key industries whose stability was deemed vital to national interests. In many developed countries, enforced cooperation with a suite of new regulations and agreements slowly but steadily restored both order and, importantly, economic growth.

There we have the prophetic Rockefellers in 2010 and three years later came their paper for the Global Health Summit in Beijing, China, when government representatives, the private sector, international organisations and groups met to discuss the next 100 years of 'global health'. The Rockefeller Foundation-funded paper was called 'Dreaming the Future of Health for the Next 100 Years and more prophecy ensued as it described a dystopian future: 'The abundance of data, digitally tracking and linking people may mean the 'death of privacy' and may replace physical interaction with transient, virtual connection, generating isolation and raising questions of how values are shaped in virtual networks.' Next in the 'Covid' hoax preparation sequence came a 'table top' simulation in 2018 for another 'imaginary' pandemic of a disease called Clade X which was said to kill 900 million people. The exercise was organised by the Gates-funded Johns Hopkins University's Center for Health Security in the United States and this is the very same university that has been compiling the disgustingly and systematically erroneous global figures for 'Covid' cases and deaths. Similar Johns Hopkins health crisis scenarios have included the Dark Winter exercise in 2001 and Atlantic Storm in 2005.

Nostradamus 201

For sheer predictive genius look no further prophecy-watchers than the Bill Gates-funded Event 201 held only six weeks before the 'coronavirus pandemic' is supposed to have broken out in China and Event 201 was based on a scenario of a global 'coronavirus pandemic'. Melinda Gates, the great man's missus, told the BBC that he had 'prepared for years' for a coronavirus pandemic which told us what we already knew. Nostradamugates had predicted in a TED talk in 2015 that a pandemic was coming that would kill a lot of people and demolish the world economy. My god, the man is a machine – possibly even literally. Now here he was only weeks before the real thing funding just such a simulated scenario and involving his friends and associates at Johns Hopkins, the World Economic Forum Cult-front of Klaus Schwab, the United Nations,

Johnson & Johnson, major banks, and officials from China and the Centers for Disease Control in the United States. What synchronicity – Johns Hopkins would go on to compile the fraudulent 'Covid' figures, the World Economic Forum and Schwab would push the 'Great Reset' in response to 'Covid', the Centers for Disease Control would be at the forefront of 'Covid' policy in the United States, Johnson & Johnson would produce a 'Covid vaccine', and everything would officially start just weeks later in China. Spooky, eh? They were even accurate in creating a simulation of a 'virus' pandemic because the 'real thing' would also be a simulation. Event 201 was not an exercise preparing for something that might happen; it was a rehearsal for what those in control knew was *going* to happen and very shortly. Hours of this simulation were posted on the Internet and the various themes and responses mirrored what would soon be imposed to transform human society. News stories were inserted and what they said would be commonplace a few weeks later with still more prophecy perfection. Much discussion focused on the need to deal with misinformation and the 'anti-vax movement' which is exactly what happened when the 'virus' arrived – was said to have arrived – in the West.

Cult-owned social media banned criticism and exposure of the official 'virus' narrative and when I said there *was* no 'virus' in early April, 2020, I was banned by one platform after another including YouTube, Facebook and later Twitter. The mainstream broadcast media in Britain was in effect banned from interviewing me by the Tony-Blair-created government broadcasting censor Ofcom headed by career government bureaucrat Melanie Dawes who was appointed just as the 'virus' hoax was about to play out in January, 2020. At the same time the Ickonic media platform was using Vimeo, another ultra-Zionist-owned operation, while our own player was being created and they deleted in an instant hundreds of videos, documentaries, series and shows to confirm their unbelievable vindictiveness. We had copies, of course, and they had to be restored one by one when our player was ready. These people have no class. Sabbatian Facebook promised free advertisements for the Gates-

controlled World Health Organization narrative while deleting 'false claims and conspiracy theories' to stop 'misinformation' about the alleged coronavirus. All these responses could be seen just a short while earlier in the scenarios of Event 201. Extreme censorship was absolutely crucial for the Cult because the official story was so ridiculous and unsupportable by the evidence that it could never survive open debate and the free-flow of information and opinion. If you can't win a debate then don't have one is the Cult's approach throughout history. Facebook's little boy front man – front boy – Mark Zuckerberg equated 'credible and accurate information' with official sources and exposing their lies with 'misinformation'.

Silencing those that can see

The censorship dynamic of Event 201 is now the norm with an army of narrative-supporting 'fact-checker' organisations whose entire reason for being is to tell the public that official narratives are true and those exposing them are lying. One of the most appalling of these 'fact-checkers' is called NewsGuard founded by ultra-Zionist Americans Gordon Crovitz and Steven Brill. Crovitz is a former publisher of *The Wall Street Journal*, former Executive Vice President of Dow Jones, a member of the Council on Foreign Relations (CFR), and on the board of the American Association of Rhodes Scholars. The CFR and Rhodes Scholarships, named after Rothschild agent Cecil Rhodes who plundered the gold and diamonds of South Africa for his masters and the Cult, have featured widely in my books. NewsGuard don't seem to like me for some reason – I really can't think why – and they have done all they can to have me censored and discredited which is, to quote an old British politician, like being savaged by a dead sheep. They are, however, like all in the censorship network, very well connected and funded by organisations themselves funded by, or connected to, Bill Gates. As you would expect with anything associated with Gates NewsGuard has an offshoot called HealthGuard which 'fights online health care hoaxes'. How very kind. Somehow the NewsGuard European Managing Director Anna-Sophie Harling, a remarkably young-

looking woman with no broadcasting experience and little hands-on work in journalism, has somehow secured a position on the 'Content Board' of UK government broadcast censor Ofcom. An executive of an organisation seeking to discredit dissidents of the official narratives is making decisions for the government broadcast 'regulator' about content?? Another appalling 'fact-checker' is Full Fact funded by George Soros and global censors Google and Facebook.

It's amazing how many activists in the 'fact-checking', 'anti-hate', arena turn up in government-related positions – people like UK Labour Party activist Imran Ahmed who heads the Center for Countering Digital Hate founded by people like Morgan McSweeney, now chief of staff to the Labour Party's hapless and useless 'leader' Keir Starmer. Digital Hate – which is what it really is – uses the American spelling of Center to betray its connection to a transatlantic network of similar organisations which in 2020 shapeshifted from attacking people for 'hate' to attacking them for questioning the 'Covid' hoax and the dangers of the 'Covid vaccine'. It's just a coincidence, you understand. This is one of Imran Ahmed's hysterical statements: 'I would go beyond calling anti-vaxxers conspiracy theorists to say they are an extremist group that pose a national security risk.' No one could ever accuse this prat of understatement and he's including in that those parents who are now against vaccines after their children were damaged for life or killed by them. He's such a nice man. Ahmed does the rounds of the Woke media getting soft-ball questions from spineless 'journalists' who never ask what right he has to campaign to destroy the freedom of speech of others while he demands it for himself. There also seems to be an overrepresentation in Ofcom of people connected to the narrative-worshipping BBC. This incredible global network of narrative-support was super-vital when the 'Covid' hoax was played in the light of the mega-whopper lies that have to be defended from the spotlight cast by the most basic intelligence.

Setting the scene

The Cult plays the long game and proceeds step-by-step ensuring that everything is in place before major cards are played and they don't come any bigger than the 'Covid' hoax. The psychopaths can't handle events where the outcome isn't certain and as little as possible – preferably nothing – is left to chance. Politicians, government and medical officials who would follow direction were brought to illusory power in advance by the Cult web whether on the national stage or others like state governors and mayors of America. For decades the dynamic between officialdom, law enforcement and the public was changed from one of service to one of control and dictatorship. Behaviour manipulation networks established within government were waiting to impose the coming 'Covid' rules and regulations specifically designed to subdue and rewire the psyche of the people in the guise of protecting health. These included in the UK the Behavioural Insights Team part-owned by the British government Cabinet Office; the Scientific Pandemic Insights Group on Behaviours (SPI-B); and a whole web of intelligence and military groups seeking to direct the conversation on social media and control the narrative. Among them are the cyberwarfare (on the people) 77th Brigade of the British military which is also coordinated through the Cabinet Office as civilian and military leadership continues to combine in what they call the Fusion Doctrine. The 77th Brigade is a British equivalent of the infamous Israeli (Sabbatian) military cyberwarfare and Internet manipulation operation Unit 8200 which I expose at length in *The Trigger*. Also carefully in place were the medical and science advisers to government – many on the payroll past or present of Bill Gates – and a whole alternative structure of unelected government stood by to take control when elected parliaments were effectively closed down once the 'Covid' card was slammed on the table. The structure I have described here and so much more was installed in every major country through the Cult networks. The top-down control hierarchy looks like this: The Cult – Cult-owned Gates – the World Health Organization and Tedros – Gates-funded or controlled chief medical officers and science 'advisers' (dictators) in each country –

political 'leaders'– law enforcement – The People. Through this simple global communication and enforcement structure the policy of the Cult could be imposed on virtually the entire human population so long as they acquiesced to the fascism. With everything in place it was time for the button to be pressed in late 2019/early 2020.

These were the prime goals the Cult had to secure for its will to prevail:

1) Locking down economies, closing all but designated 'essential' businesses (Cult-owned corporations were 'essential'), and putting the population under house arrest was an imperative to destroy independent income and employment and ensure dependency on the Cult-controlled state in the Hunger Games Society. Lockdowns had to be established as the global blueprint from the start to respond to the 'virus' and followed by pretty much the entire world.

2) The global population had to be terrified into believing in a deadly 'virus' that didn't actually exist so they would unquestioningly obey authority in the belief that authority must know how best to protect them and their families. Software salesman Gates would suddenly morph into the world's health expert and be promoted as such by the Cult-owned media.

3) A method of testing that wasn't testing for the 'virus', but was only claimed to be, had to be in place to provide the illusion of 'cases' and subsequent 'deaths' that had a very different cause to the 'Covid-19' that would be scribbled on the death certificate.

4) Because there was no 'virus' and the great majority testing positive with a test not testing for the 'virus' would have no symptoms of anything the lie had to be sold that people without symptoms (without the 'virus') could still pass it on to others. This was crucial to justify for the first time quarantining – house arresting – healthy people. Without this the economy-destroying lockdown of *everybody* could not have been credibly sold.

5) The 'saviour' had to be seen as a vaccine which beyond evil drug companies were working like angels of mercy to develop as quickly as possible, with all corners cut, to save the day. The public must absolutely not know that the 'vaccine' had nothing to do with a 'virus' or that the contents were ready and waiting with a very different motive long before the 'Covid' card was even lifted from the pack.

I said in March, 2020, that the 'vaccine' would have been created way ahead of the 'Covid' hoax which justified its use and the following December an article in the New York *Intelligencer* magazine said the Moderna 'vaccine' had been 'designed' by

January, 2020. This was 'before China had even acknowledged that the disease could be transmitted from human to human, more than a week before the first confirmed coronavirus case in the United States'. The article said that by the time the first American death was announced a month later 'the vaccine had already been manufactured and shipped to the National Institutes of Health for the beginning of its Phase I clinical trial'. The 'vaccine' was actually 'designed' long before that although even with this timescale you would expect the article to ask how on earth it could have been done that quickly. Instead it asked why the 'vaccine' had not been rolled out then and not months later. Journalism in the mainstream is truly dead. I am going to detail in the next chapter why the 'virus' has never existed and how a hoax on that scale was possible, but first the foundation on which the Big Lie of 'Covid' was built.

The test that doesn't test

Fraudulent 'testing' is the bottom line of the whole 'Covid' hoax and was the means by which a 'virus' that did not exist *appeared* to exist. They could only achieve this magic trick by using a test not testing for the 'virus'. To use a test that *was* testing for the 'virus' would mean that every test would come back negative given there was no 'virus'. They chose to exploit something called the RT-PCR test invented by American biochemist Kary Mullis in the 1980s who said publicly that his PCR test … *cannot detect infectious disease*. Yes, the 'test' used worldwide to detect infectious 'Covid' to produce all the illusory 'cases' and 'deaths' compiled by Johns Hopkins and others *cannot detect infectious disease*. This fact came from the mouth of the man who invented PCR and was awarded the Nobel Prize in Chemistry in 1993 for doing so. Sadly, and incredibly conveniently for the Cult, Mullis died in August, 2019, at the age of 74 just before his test would be fraudulently used to unleash fascism on the world. He was said to have died from pneumonia which was an irony in itself. A few months later he would have had 'Covid-19' on his death certificate. I say the timing of his death was convenient because had he lived Mullis, a brilliant, honest and decent man, would have been

vociferously speaking out against the use of his test to detect 'Covid' when it was never designed, or able, to do that. I know that to be true given that Mullis made the same point when his test was used to 'detect' – not detect – HIV. He had been seriously critical of the Gallo/Montagnier claim to have isolated the HIV 'virus' and shown it to cause AIDS for which Mullis said there was no evidence. AIDS is actually not a disease but a series of diseases from which people die all the time. When they die from those *same diseases* after a positive 'test' for HIV then AIDS goes on their death certificate. I think I've heard that before somewhere. Countries instigated a policy with 'Covid' that anyone who tested positive with a test not testing for the 'virus' and died of any other cause within 28 days and even longer 'Covid-19' had to go on the death certificate. Cases have come from the test that can't test for infectious disease and the deaths are those who have died of *anything* after testing positive with a test not testing for the 'virus'. I'll have much more later about the death certificate scandal.

Mullis was deeply dismissive of the now US 'Covid' star Anthony Fauci who he said was a liar who didn't know anything about anything – 'and I would say that to his face – nothing.' He said of Fauci: 'The man thinks he can take a blood sample, put it in an electron microscope and if it's got a virus in there you'll know it – he doesn't understand electron microscopy and he doesn't understand medicine and shouldn't be in a position like he's in.' That position, terrifyingly, has made him the decider of 'Covid' fascism policy on behalf of the Cult in his role as director since 1984 of the National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIAID) while his record of being wrong is laughable; but being wrong, so long as it's the *right kind* of wrong, is why the Cult loves him. He'll say anything the Cult tells him to say. Fauci was made Chief Medical Adviser to the President immediately Biden took office. Biden was installed in the White House by Cult manipulation and one of his first decisions was to elevate Fauci to a position of even more control. This is a coincidence? Yes, and I identify as a flamenco dancer called Lola. How does such an incompetent criminal like Fauci remain in that

pivotal position in American health since *the 1980s*? When you serve the Cult it looks after you until you are surplus to requirements. Kary Mullis said prophetically of Fauci and his like: 'Those guys have an agenda and it's not an agenda we would like them to have … they make their own rules, they change them when they want to, and Tony Fauci does not mind going on television in front of the people who pay his salary and lie directly into the camera.' Fauci has done that almost daily since the 'Covid' hoax began. Lying is in Fauci's DNA. To make the situation crystal clear about the PCR test this is a direct quote from its inventor Kary Mullis:

> It [the PCR test] doesn't tell you that you're sick and doesn't tell you that the thing you ended up with was really going to hurt you ...'

Ask yourself why governments and medical systems the world over have been using this very test to decide who is 'infected' with the SARS-CoV-2 'virus' and the alleged disease it allegedly causes, 'Covid-19'. The answer to that question will tell you what has been going on. By the way, here's a little show-stopper – the 'new' SARS-CoV-2 'virus' was 'identified' as such right from the start using … *the PCR test not testing for the 'virus'*. If you are new to this and find that shocking then stick around. I have hardly started yet. Even worse, other 'tests', like the 'Lateral Flow Device' (LFD), are considered so useless that they have to be *confirmed* by the PCR test! Leaked emails written by Ben Dyson, adviser to UK 'Health' Secretary Matt Hancock, said they were 'dangerously unreliable'. Dyson, executive director of strategy at the Department of Health, wrote: 'As of today, someone who gets a positive LFD result in (say) London has at best a 25 per cent chance of it being a true positive, but if it is a self-reported test potentially as low as 10 per cent (on an optimistic assumption about specificity) or as low as 2 per cent (on a more pessimistic assumption).' These are the 'tests' that schoolchildren and the public are being urged to have twice a week or more and have to isolate if they get a positive. Each fake positive goes in the statistics as a 'case' no matter how ludicrously inaccurate and the

'cases' drive lockdown, masks and the pressure to 'vaccinate'. The government said in response to the email leak that the 'tests' were accurate which confirmed yet again what shocking bloody liars they are. The real false positive rate is *100 percent* as we'll see. In another 'you couldn't make it up' the UK government agreed to pay £2.8 billion to California's Innova Medical Group to supply the irrelevant lateral flow tests. The company's primary test-making centre is in China. Innova Medical Group, established in March, 2020, is owned by Pasaca Capital Inc, chaired by Chinese-American millionaire Charles Huang who was born in Wuhan.

How it works – and how it doesn't

The RT-PCR test, known by its full title of Polymerase chain reaction, is used across the world to make millions, even billions, of copies of a DNA/RNA genetic information sample. The process is called 'amplification' and means that a tiny sample of genetic material is amplified to bring out the detailed content. I stress that it is not testing for an infectious disease. It is simply amplifying a sample of genetic material. In the words of Kary Mullis: 'PCR is … just a process that's used to make a whole lot of something out of something.' To emphasise the point companies that make the PCR tests circulated around the world to 'test' for 'Covid' warn on the box that it can't be used to detect 'Covid' or infectious disease and is for research purposes only. It's okay, rest for a minute and you'll be fine. This is the test that produces the 'cases' and 'deaths' that have been used to destroy human society. All those global and national medical and scientific 'experts' demanding this destruction to 'save us' *KNOW* that the test is not testing for the 'virus' and the cases and deaths they claim to be real are an almost unimaginable fraud. Every one of them and so many others including politicians and psychopaths like Gates and Tedros must be brought before Nuremburg-type trials and jailed for the rest of their lives. The more the genetic sample is amplified by PCR the more elements of that material become sensitive to the test and by that I don't mean sensitive for a 'virus' but for elements of the genetic material which

is *naturally* in the body or relates to remnants of old conditions of various kinds lying dormant and causing no disease. Once the amplification of the PCR reaches a certain level *everyone* will test positive. So much of the material has been made sensitive to the test that everyone will have some part of it in their body. Even lying criminals like Fauci have said that once PCR amplifications pass 35 cycles everything will be a false positive that cannot be trusted for the reasons I have described. I say, like many proper doctors and scientists, that 100 percent of the 'positives' are false, but let's just go with Fauci for a moment.

He says that any amplification over 35 cycles will produce false positives and yet the US Centers for Disease Control (CDC) and Food and Drug Administration (FDA) have recommended up to *40 cycles* and the National Health Service (NHS) in Britain admitted in an internal document for staff that it was using *45 cycles* of amplification. A long list of other countries has been doing the same and at least one 'testing' laboratory has been using *50 cycles*. Have you ever heard a doctor, medical 'expert' or the media ask what level of amplification has been used to claim a 'positive'. The 'test' comes back 'positive' and so you have the 'virus', end of story. Now we can see how the government in Tanzania could send off samples from a goat and a pawpaw fruit under human names and both came back positive for 'Covid-19'. Tanzania president John Magufuli mocked the 'Covid' hysteria, the PCR test and masks and refused to import the DNA-manipulating 'vaccine'. The Cult hated him and an article sponsored by the Bill Gates Foundation appeared in the London *Guardian* in February, 2021, headed 'It's time for Africa to rein in Tanzania's anti-vaxxer president'. Well, 'reined in' he shortly was. Magufuli appeared in good health, but then, in March, 2021, he was dead at 61 from 'heart failure'. He was replaced by Samia Hassan Suhulu who is connected to Klaus Schwab's World Economic Forum and she immediately reversed Magufuli's 'Covid' policy. A sample of cola tested positive for 'Covid' with the PCR test in Germany while American actress and singer-songwriter Erykah Badu tested positive in one nostril and negative in the other. Footballer Ronaldo called

the PCR test 'bullshit' after testing positive three times and being forced to quarantine and miss matches when there was nothing wrong with him. The mantra from Tedros at the World Health Organization and national governments (same thing) has been test, test, test. They know that the more tests they can generate the more fake 'cases' they have which go on to become 'deaths' in ways I am coming to. The UK government has its Operation Moonshot planned to test multiple millions every day in workplaces and schools with free tests for everyone to use twice a week at home in line with the Cult plan from the start to make testing part of life. A government advertisement for an 'Interim Head of Asymptomatic Testing Communication' said the job included responsibility for delivering a 'communications strategy' (propaganda) 'to support the expansion of asymptomatic testing that *'normalises testing as part of everyday life'*. More tests means more fake 'cases', 'deaths' and fascism. I have heard of, and from, many people who booked a test, couldn't turn up, and yet got a positive result through the post for a test they'd never even had. The whole thing is crazy, but for the Cult there's method in the madness. Controlling and manipulating the level of amplification of the test means the authorities can control whenever they want the number of apparent 'cases' and 'deaths'. If they want to justify more fascist lockdown and destruction of livelihoods they keep the amplification high. If they want to give the illusion that lockdowns and the 'vaccine' are working then they lower the amplification and 'cases' and 'deaths' will appear to fall. In January, 2021, the Cult-owned World Health Organization suddenly warned laboratories about over-amplification of the test and to lower the threshold. Suddenly headlines began appearing such as: 'Why ARE "Covid" cases plummeting?' This was just when the vaccine rollout was underway and I had predicted months before they would make cases appear to fall through amplification tampering when the 'vaccine' came. These people are so predictable.

Cow vaccines?

The question must be asked of what is on the test swabs being poked far up the nose of the population to the base of the brain? A nasal swab punctured one woman's brain and caused it to leak fluid. Most of these procedures are being done by people with little training or medical knowledge. Dr Lorraine Day, former orthopaedic trauma surgeon and Chief of Orthopaedic Surgery at San Francisco General Hospital, says the tests are really a *'vaccine'*. Cows have long been vaccinated this way. She points out that masks have to cover the nose and the mouth where it is claimed the 'virus' exists in saliva. Why then don't they take saliva from the mouth as they do with a DNA test instead of pushing a long swab up the nose towards the brain? The ethmoid bone separates the nasal cavity from the brain and within that bone is the cribriform plate. Dr Day says that when the swab is pushed up against this plate and twisted the procedure is 'depositing things back there'. She claims that among these 'things' are nanoparticles that can enter the brain. Researchers have noted that a team at the Gates-funded Johns Hopkins have designed tiny, star-shaped micro-devices that can latch onto intestinal mucosa and release drugs into the body. Mucosa is the thin skin that covers the inside surface of parts of the body such as *the nose* and mouth and produces mucus to protect them. The Johns Hopkins micro-devices are called 'theragrippers' and were 'inspired' by a parasitic worm that digs its sharp teeth into a host's intestines. Nasal swabs are also coated in the sterilisation agent ethylene oxide. The US National Cancer Institute posts this explanation on its website:

> At room temperature, ethylene oxide is a flammable colorless gas with a sweet odor. It is used primarily to produce other chemicals, including antifreeze. In smaller amounts, ethylene oxide is used as a pesticide and a sterilizing agent. The ability of ethylene oxide to damage DNA makes it an effective sterilizing agent but also accounts for its cancer-causing activity.

The Institute mentions lymphoma and leukaemia as cancers most frequently reported to be associated with occupational exposure to ethylene oxide along with stomach and breast cancers. How does anyone think this is going to work out with the constant testing

regime being inflicted on adults and children at home and at school that will accumulate in the body anything that's on the swab?

Doctors know best

It is vital for people to realise that 'hero' doctors 'know' only what the Big Pharma-dominated medical authorities tell them to 'know' and if they refuse to 'know' what they are told to 'know' they are out the door. They are mostly not physicians or healers, but repeaters of the official narrative – or else. I have seen alleged professional doctors on British television make shocking statements that we are supposed to take seriously. One called 'Dr' Amir Khan, who is actually telling patients how to respond to illness, said that men could take the birth pill to 'help slow down the effects of Covid-19'. In March, 2021, another ridiculous 'Covid study' by an American doctor proposed injecting men with the female sex hormone progesterone as a 'Covid' treatment. British doctor Nighat Arif told the BBC that face coverings were now going to be part of ongoing normal. Yes, the vaccine protects you, she said (evidence?) … but the way to deal with viruses in the community was always going to come down to hand washing, face covering and keeping a physical distance. That's not what we were told before the 'vaccine' was circulating. Arif said she couldn't imagine ever again going on the underground or in a lift without a mask. I was just thanking my good luck that she was not my doctor when she said – in March, 2021 – that if 'we are *behaving* and we are doing all the right things' she thought we could 'have our nearest and dearest around us at home … around *Christmas* and N*ew Year!* Her patronising delivery was the usual school teacher talking to six-year-olds as she repeated every government talking point and probably believed them all. If we have learned anything from the 'Covid' experience surely it must be that humanity's perception of doctors needs a fundamental rethink. NHS 'doctor' Sara Kayat told her television audience that the 'Covid vaccine' would '100 percent prevent hospitalisation and death'. Not even Big Pharma claimed that. We have to stop taking 'experts' at their word without question when so many of them are

clueless and only repeating the party line on which their careers depend. That is not to say there are not brilliants doctors – there are and I have spoken to many of them since all this began – but you won't see them in the mainstream media or quoted by the psychopaths and yes-people in government.

Remember the name – Christian Drosten

German virologist Christian Drosten, Director of Charité Institute of Virology in Berlin, became a national star after the pandemic hoax began. He was feted on television and advised the German government on 'Covid' policy. Most importantly to the wider world Drosten led a group that produced the 'Covid' testing protocol for the PCR test. What a remarkable feat given the PCR cannot test for infectious disease and even more so when you think that Drosten said that his method of testing for SARS-CoV-2 was developed 'without having virus material available'. *He developed a test for a 'virus' that he didn't have and had never seen*. Let that sink in as you survey the global devastation that came from what he did. The whole catastrophe of Drosten's 'test' was based on the alleged genetic sequence published by Chinese scientists on the Internet. We will see in the next chapter that this alleged 'genetic sequence' has never been produced by China or anyone and cannot be when there *is no* SARS-CoV-2. Drosten, however, doesn't seem to let little details like that get in the way. He was the lead author with Victor Corman from the same Charité Hospital of the paper 'Detection of 2019 novel coronavirus (2019-nCoV) by real-time PCR' published in a magazine called *Eurosurveillance*. This became known as the Corman-Drosten paper. In November, 2020, with human society devastated by the effects of the Corman-Drosten test baloney, the protocol was publicly challenged by 22 international scientists and independent researchers from Europe, the United States, and Japan. Among them were senior molecular geneticists, biochemists, immunologists, and microbiologists. They produced a document headed 'External peer review of the RTPCR test to detect SARS-Cov-2 Reveals 10 Major Flaws At The Molecular and Methodological Level: Consequences

For False-Positive Results'. The flaws in the Corman-Drosten test included the following:

- The test is non-specific because of erroneous design
- Results are enormously variable
- The test is unable to discriminate between the whole 'virus' and viral fragments
- It doesn't have positive or negative controls
- The test lacks a standard operating procedure
- It is unsupported by proper peer view

The scientists said the PCR 'Covid' testing protocol was not founded on science and they demanded the Corman-Drosten paper be retracted by *Eurosurveillance*. They said all present and previous Covid deaths, cases, and 'infection rates' should be subject to a massive retroactive inquiry. Lockdowns and travel restrictions should be reviewed and relaxed and those diagnosed through PCR to have 'Covid-19' should not be forced to isolate. Dr Kevin Corbett, a health researcher and nurse educator with a long academic career producing a stream of peer-reviewed publications at many UK universities, made the same point about the PCR test debacle. He said of the scientists' conclusions: 'Every scientific rationale for the development of that test has been totally destroyed by this paper. It's like Hiroshima/Nagasaki to the Covid test.' He said that China hadn't given them an isolated 'virus' when Drosten developed the test. Instead they had developed the test from *a sequence in a gene bank*.' Put another way … *they made it up*! The scientists were supported in this contention by a Portuguese appeals court which ruled in November, 2020, that PCR tests are unreliable and it is unlawful to quarantine people based solely on a PCR test. The point about China not providing an isolated virus must be true when the 'virus' has never been isolated to this day and the consequences of that will become clear. Drosten and company produced this useless 'protocol' right on cue in January, 2020, just as the 'virus' was said to

be moving westward and it somehow managed to successfully pass a peer-review in 24 hours. In other words there was no peer-review for a test that would be used to decide who had 'Covid' and who didn't across the world. The Cult-created, Gates-controlled World Health Organization immediately recommended all its nearly 200 member countries to use the Drosten PCR protocol to detect 'cases' and 'deaths'. The sting was underway and it continues to this day.

So who is this Christian Drosten that produced the means through which death, destruction and economic catastrophe would be justified? His education background, including his doctoral thesis, would appear to be somewhat shrouded in mystery and his track record is dire as with another essential player in the 'Covid' hoax, the Gates-funded Professor Neil Ferguson at the Gates-funded Imperial College in London of whom more shortly. Drosten predicted in 2003 that the alleged original SARS 'virus' (SARS-1') was an epidemic that could have serious effects on economies and an effective vaccine would take at least two years to produce. Drosten's answer to every alleged 'outbreak' is a vaccine which you won't be shocked to know. What followed were just 774 official deaths worldwide and none in Germany where there were only nine cases. That is even if you believe there ever was a SARS 'virus' when the evidence is zilch and I will expand on this in the next chapter. Drosten claims to be co-discoverer of 'SARS-1' and developed a test for it in 2003. He was screaming warnings about 'swine flu' in 2009 and how it was a widespread infection far more severe than any dangers from a vaccine could be and people should get vaccinated. It would be helpful for Drosten's vocal chords if he simply recorded the words 'the virus is deadly and you need to get vaccinated' and copies could be handed out whenever the latest made-up threat comes along. Drosten's swine flu epidemic never happened, but Big Pharma didn't mind with governments spending hundreds of millions on vaccines that hardly anyone bothered to use and many who did wished they hadn't. A study in 2010 revealed that the risk of dying from swine flu, or H1N1, was no higher than that of the annual seasonal flu which is what at least most of 'it' really was as in

the case of 'Covid-19'. A media investigation into Drosten asked how with such a record of inaccuracy he could be *the* government adviser on these issues. The answer to that question is the same with Drosten, Ferguson and Fauci – they keep on giving the authorities the 'conclusions' and 'advice' they want to hear. Drosten certainly produced the goods for them in January, 2020, with his PCR protocol garbage and provided the foundation of what German internal medicine specialist Dr Claus Köhnlein, co-author of *Virus Mania*, called the 'test pandemic'. The 22 scientists in the *Eurosurveillance* challenge called out conflicts of interest within the Drosten 'protocol' group and with good reason. Olfert Landt, a regular co-author of Drosten 'studies', owns the biotech company TIB Molbiol Syntheselabor GmbH in Berlin which manufactures and sells the tests that Drosten and his mates come up with. They have done this with SARS, Enterotoxigenic E. coli (ETEC), MERS, Zika 'virus', yellow fever, and now 'Covid'. Landt told the *Berliner Zeitung* newspaper:

> The testing, design and development came from the Charité [Drosten and Corman]. We simply implemented it immediately in the form of a kit. And if we don't have the virus, which originally only existed in Wuhan, we can make a synthetic gene to simulate the genome of the virus. That's what we did very quickly.

This is more confirmation that the Drosten test was designed without access to the 'virus' and only a synthetic simulation which is what SARS-CoV-2 really is – a computer-generated synthetic fiction. It's quite an enterprise they have going here. A Drosten team decides what the test for something should be and Landt's biotech company flogs it to governments and medical systems across the world. His company must have made an absolute fortune since the 'Covid' hoax began. Dr Reiner Fuellmich, a prominent German consumer protection trial lawyer in Germany and California, is on Drosten's case and that of Tedros at the World Health Organization for crimes against humanity with a class-action lawsuit being prepared in the United States and other legal action in Germany.

Why China?

Scamming the world with a 'virus' that doesn't exist would seem impossible on the face of it, but not if you have control of the relatively few people that make policy decisions and the great majority of the global media. Remember it's not about changing 'real' reality it's about controlling *perception* of reality. You don't have to make something happen you only have make people *believe* that it's happening. Renegade Minds understand this and are therefore much harder to swindle. 'Covid-19' is not a 'real' 'virus'. It's a mind virus, like a computer virus, which has infected the minds, not the bodies, of billions. It all started, publically at least, in China and that alone is of central significance. The Cult was behind the revolution led by its asset Mao Zedong, or Chairman Mao, which established the People's Republic of China on October 1st, 1949. It should have been called The Cult's Republic of China, but the name had to reflect the recurring illusion that vicious dictatorships are run by and for the people (see all the 'Democratic Republics' controlled by tyrants). In the same way we have the 'Biden' Democratic Republic of America officially ruled by a puppet tyrant (at least temporarily) on behalf of Cult tyrants. The creation of Mao's merciless communist/fascist dictatorship was part of a frenzy of activity by the Cult at the conclusion of World War Two which, like the First World War, it had instigated through its assets in Germany, Britain, France, the United States and elsewhere. Israel was formed in 1948; the Soviet Union expanded its 'Iron Curtain' control, influence and military power with the Warsaw Pact communist alliance in 1955; the United Nations was formed in 1945 as a Cult precursor to world government; and a long list of world bodies would be established including the World Health Organization (1948), World Trade Organization (1948 under another name until 1995), International Monetary Fund (1945) and World Bank (1944). Human society was redrawn and hugely centralised in the global Problem-Reaction-Solution that was World War Two. All these changes were significant. Israel would become the headquarters of the Sabbatians

and the revolution in China would prepare the ground and control system for the events of 2019/2020.

Renegade Minds know there are no borders except for public consumption. The Cult is a seamless, borderless global entity and to understand the game we need to put aside labels like borders, nations, countries, communism, fascism and democracy. These delude the population into believing that countries are ruled within their borders by a government of whatever shade when these are mere agencies of a global power. America's illusion of democracy and China's communism/fascism are subsidiaries – vehicles – for the same agenda. We may hear about conflict and competition between America and China and on the lower levels that will be true; but at the Cult level they are branches of the same company in the way of the McDonald's example I gave earlier. I have tracked in the books over the years support by US governments of both parties for Chinese Communist Party infiltration of American society through allowing the sale of land, even military facilities, and the acquisition of American business and university influence. All this is underpinned by the infamous stealing of intellectual property and technological know-how. Cult-owned Silicon Valley corporations waive their fraudulent 'morality' to do business with human-rights-free China; Cult-controlled Disney has become China's PR department; and China in effect owns 'American' sports such as basketball which depends for much of its income on Chinese audiences. As a result any sports player, coach or official speaking out against China's horrific human rights record is immediately condemned or fired by the China-worshipping National Basketball Association. One of the first acts of China-controlled Biden was to issue an executive order telling federal agencies to stop making references to the 'virus' by the 'geographic location of its origin'. Long-time Congressman Jerry Nadler warned that criticising China, America's biggest rival, leads to hate crimes against Asian people in the United States. So shut up you bigot. China is fast closing in on Israel as a country that must not be criticised which is apt, really, given that Sabbatians control them both. The two countries have

developed close economic, military, technological and strategic ties which include involvement in China's 'Silk Road' transport and economic initiative to connect China with Europe. Israel was the first country in the Middle East to recognise the establishment of Mao's tyranny in 1950 months after it was established.

Project Wuhan – the 'Covid' Psyop

I emphasise again that the Cult plays the long game and what is happening to the world today is the result of centuries of calculated manipulation following a script to take control step-by-step of every aspect of human society. I will discuss later the common force behind all this that has spanned those centuries and thousands of years if the truth be told. Instigating the Mao revolution in China in 1949 with a 2020 'pandemic' in mind is not only how they work – the 71 years between them is really quite short by the Cult's standards of manipulation preparation. The reason for the Cult's Chinese revolution was to create a fiercely-controlled environment within which an extreme structure for human control could be incubated to eventually be unleashed across the world. We have seen this happen since the 'pandemic' emerged from China with the Chinese control-structure founded on AI technology and tyrannical enforcement sweep across the West. Until the moment when the Cult went for broke in the West and put its fascism on public display Western governments had to pay some lip-service to freedom and democracy to not alert too many people to the tyranny-in-the-making. Freedoms were more subtly eroded and power centralised with covert government structures put in place waiting for the arrival of 2020 when that smokescreen of 'freedom' could be dispensed with. The West was not able to move towards tyranny before 2020 anything like as fast as China which was created as a tyranny and had no limits on how fast it could construct the Cult's blueprint for global control. When the time came to impose that structure on the world it was the same Cult-owned Chinese communist/fascist government that provided the excuse – the 'Covid pandemic'. It was absolutely crucial to the Cult plan for the Chinese response to the 'pandemic' –

draconian lockdowns of the entire population – to become the blueprint that Western countries would follow to destroy the livelihoods and freedom of their people. This is why the Cult-owned, Gates-owned, WHO Director-General Tedros said early on:

> The Chinese government is to be congratulated for the extraordinary measures it has taken to contain the outbreak. China is actually setting a new standard for outbreak response and it is not an exaggeration.

Forbes magazine said of China: '… those measures protected untold millions from getting the disease'. The Rockefeller Foundation 'epidemic scenario' document in 2010 said 'prophetically':

> However, a few countries did fare better – China in particular. The Chinese government's quick imposition and enforcement of mandatory quarantine for all citizens, as well as its instant and near-hermetic sealing off of all borders, saved millions of lives, stopping the spread of the virus far earlier than in other countries and enabling a swifter post-pandemic recovery.

Once again – *spooky*.

The first official story was the 'bat theory' or rather the bat diversion. The source of the 'virus outbreak' we were told was a ''wet market' in Wuhan where bats and other animals are bought and eaten in horrifically unhygienic conditions. Then another story emerged through the alternative media that the 'virus' had been released on purpose or by accident from a BSL-4 (biosafety level 4) laboratory in Wuhan not far from the wet market. The lab was reported to create and work with lethal concoctions and bioweapons. Biosafety level 4 is the highest in the World Health Organization system of safety and containment. Renegade Minds are aware of what I call designer manipulation. The ideal for the Cult is for people to buy its prime narrative which in the opening salvoes of the 'pandemic' was the wet market story. It knows, however, that there is now a considerable worldwide alternative media of researchers sceptical of anything governments say and they are often given a version of events in a form they can perceive as credible while misdirecting them from the real truth. In this case let them

think that the conspiracy involved is a 'bioweapon virus' released from the Wuhan lab to keep them from the real conspiracy – *there is no 'virus'*. The WHO's current position on the source of the outbreak at the time of writing appears to be: 'We haven't got a clue, mate.' This is a good position to maintain mystery and bewilderment. The inner circle will know where the 'virus' came from – *nowhere*. The bottom line was to ensure the public believed there *was* a 'virus' and it didn't much matter if they thought it was natural or had been released from a lab. The belief that there was a 'deadly virus' was all that was needed to trigger global panic and fear. The population was terrified into handing their power to authority and doing what they were told. They had to or they were 'all gonna die'.

In March, 2020, information began to come my way from real doctors and scientists and my own additional research which had my intuition screaming: 'Yes, that's it! *There is no virus*.' The 'bioweapon' was not the 'virus'; it was the *'vaccine'* already being talked about that would be the bioweapon. My conclusion was further enhanced by happenings in Wuhan. The 'virus' was said to be sweeping the city and news footage circulated of people collapsing in the street (which they've never done in the West with the same 'virus'). The Chinese government was building 'new hospitals' in a matter of ten days to 'cope with demand' such was the virulent nature of the 'virus'. Yet in what seemed like no time the 'new hospitals' closed – even if they even opened – and China declared itself 'virus-free'. It was back to business as usual. This was more propaganda to promote the Chinese draconian lockdowns in the West as the way to 'beat the virus'. Trouble was that we subsequently had lockdown after lockdown, but never business as usual. As the people of the West and most of the rest of the world were caught in an ever-worsening spiral of lockdown, social distancing, masks, isolated old people, families forced apart, and livelihood destruction, it was party-time in Wuhan. Pictures emerged of thousands of people enjoying pool parties and concerts. It made no sense until you realised there never was a 'virus' and the

whole thing was a Cult set-up to transform human society out of one its major global strongholds – China.

How is it possible to deceive virtually the entire world population into believing there is a deadly virus when there is not even a 'virus' let alone a deadly one? It's nothing like as difficult as you would think and that's clearly true because it happened.

Postscript: See end of book Postscript for more on the 'Wuhan lab virus release' story which the authorities and media were pushing heavily in the summer of 2021 to divert attention from the truth that the 'Covid virus' is pure invention.

CHAPTER FIVE

There *is no* 'virus'

You can fool some of the people all of the time, and all of the people some of the time, but you cannot fool all of the people all of the time
Abraham Lincoln

The greatest form of mind control is repetition. The more you repeat the same mantra of alleged 'facts' the more will accept them to be true. It becomes an 'everyone knows that, mate'. If you can also censor any other version or alternative to your alleged 'facts' you are pretty much home and cooking.

By the start of 2020 the Cult owned the global mainstream media almost in its entirety to spew out its 'Covid' propaganda and ignore or discredit any other information and view. Cult-owned social media platforms in Cult-owned Silicon Valley were poised and ready to unleash a campaign of ferocious censorship to obliterate all but the official narrative. To complete the circle many demands for censorship by Silicon Valley were led by the mainstream media as 'journalists' became full-out enforcers for the Cult both as propagandists and censors. Part of this has been the influx of young people straight out of university who have become 'journalists' in significant positions. They have no experience and a headful of programmed perceptions from their years at school and university at a time when today's young are the most perceptually-targeted generations in known human history given the insidious impact of technology. They enter the media perceptually prepared and ready to repeat the narratives of the system that programmed them to

repeat its narratives. The BBC has a truly pathetic 'specialist disinformation reporter' called Marianna Spring who fits this bill perfectly. She is clueless about the world, how it works and what is really going on. Her role is to discredit anyone doing the job that a proper journalist would do and system-serving hacks like Spring wouldn't dare to do or even see the need to do. They are too busy licking the arse of authority which can never be wrong and, in the case of the BBC propaganda programme, *Panorama*, contacting payments systems such as PayPal to have a donations page taken down for a film company making documentaries questioning vaccines. Even the BBC soap opera *EastEnders* included a disgracefully biased scene in which an inarticulate white working class woman was made to look foolish for questioning the 'vaccine' while a well-spoken black man and Asian woman promoted the government narrative. It ticked every BBC box and the fact that the black and minority community was resisting the 'vaccine' had nothing to do with the way the scene was written. The BBC has become a disgusting tyrannical propaganda and censorship operation that should be defunded and disbanded and a free media take its place with a brief to stop censorship instead of demanding it. A BBC 'interview' with Gates goes something like: 'Mr Gates, sir, if I can call you sir, would you like to tell our audience why you are such a great man, a wonderful humanitarian philanthropist, and why you should absolutely be allowed as a software salesman to decide health policy for approaching eight billion people? Thank you, sir, please sir.' Propaganda programming has been incessant and merciless and when all you hear is the same story from the media, repeated by those around you who have only heard the same story, is it any wonder that people on a grand scale believe absolute mendacious garbage to be true? You are about to see, too, why this level of information control is necessary when the official 'Covid' narrative is so nonsensical and unsupportable by the evidence.

Structure of Deceit

The pyramid structure through which the 'Covid' hoax has been manifested is very simple and has to be to work. As few people as possible have to be involved with full knowledge of what they are doing – and why – or the real story would get out. At the top of the pyramid are the inner core of the Cult which controls Bill Gates who, in turn, controls the World Health Organization through his pivotal funding and his puppet Director-General mouthpiece, Tedros. Before he was appointed Tedros was chair of the Gates-founded Global Fund to 'fight against AIDS, tuberculosis and malaria', a board member of the Gates-funded 'vaccine alliance' GAVI, and on the board of another Gates-funded organisation. Gates owns him and picked him for a specific reason – Tedros is a crook and worse. 'Dr' Tedros (he's not a medical doctor, the first WHO chief not to be) was a member of the tyrannical Marxist government of Ethiopia for decades with all its human rights abuses. He has faced allegations of corruption and misappropriation of funds and was exposed three times for covering up cholera epidemics while Ethiopia's health minister. Tedros appointed the mass-murdering genocidal Zimbabwe dictator Robert Mugabe as a WHO goodwill ambassador for public health which, as with Tedros, is like appointing a psychopath to run a peace and love campaign. The move was so ridiculous that he had to drop Mugabe in the face of widespread condemnation. American economist David Steinman, a Nobel peace prize nominee, lodged a complaint with the International Criminal Court in The Hague over alleged genocide by Tedros when he was Ethiopia's foreign minister. Steinman says Tedros was a 'crucial decision maker' who directed the actions of Ethiopia's security forces from 2013 to 2015 and one of three officials in charge when those security services embarked on the 'killing' and 'torturing' of Ethiopians. You can see where Tedros is coming from and it's sobering to think that he has been the vehicle for Gates and the Cult to direct the global response to 'Covid'. Think about that. A psychopathic Cult dictates to psychopath Gates who dictates to psychopath Tedros who dictates how countries of the world must respond to a 'Covid virus' never scientifically shown to exist. At the same time psychopathic Cult-owned Silicon Valley information

giants like Google, YouTube, Facebook and Twitter announced very early on that they would give the Cult/Gates/Tedros/WHO version of the narrative free advertising and censor those who challenged their intelligence-insulting, mendacious story.

The next layer in the global 'medical' structure below the Cult, Gates and Tedros are the chief medical officers and science 'advisers' in each of the WHO member countries which means virtually all of them. Medical officers and arbiters of science (they're not) then take the WHO policy and recommended responses and impose them on their country's population while the political 'leaders' say they are deciding policy (they're clearly not) by 'following the science' on the advice of the 'experts' – the same medical officers and science 'advisers' (dictators). In this way with the rarest of exceptions the entire world followed the same policy of lockdown, people distancing, masks and 'vaccines' dictated by the psychopathic Cult, psychopathic Gates and psychopathic Tedros who we are supposed to believe give a damn about the health of the world population they are seeking to enslave. That, amazingly, is all there is to it in terms of crucial decision-making. Medical staff in each country then follow like sheep the dictates of the shepherds at the top of the national medical hierarchies – chief medical officers and science 'advisers' who themselves follow like sheep the shepherds of the World Health Organization and the Cult. Shepherds at the national level often have major funding and other connections to Gates and his Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation which carefully hands out money like confetti at a wedding to control the entire global medical system from the WHO down.

Follow the money

Christopher Whitty, Chief Medical Adviser to the UK Government at the centre of 'virus' policy, a senior adviser to the government's Scientific Advisory Group for Emergencies (SAGE), and Executive Board member of the World Health Organization, was gifted a grant of $40 million by the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation for malaria research in Africa. The BBC described the unelected Whitty as 'the

official who will probably have the greatest impact on our everyday lives of any individual policymaker in modern times' and so it turned out. What Gates and Tedros have said Whitty has done like his equivalents around the world. Patrick Vallance, co-chair of SAGE and the government's Chief Scientific Adviser, is a former executive of Big Pharma giant GlaxoSmithKline with its fundamental financial and business connections to Bill Gates. In September, 2020, it was revealed that Vallance owned a deferred bonus of shares in GlaxoSmithKline worth £600,000 while the company was 'developing' a 'Covid vaccine'. Move along now – nothing to see here – what could possibly be wrong with that? Imperial College in London, a major player in 'Covid' policy in Britain and elsewhere with its 'Covid-19' Response Team, is funded by Gates and has big connections to China while the now infamous Professor Neil Ferguson, the useless 'computer modeller' at Imperial College is also funded by Gates. Ferguson delivered the dramatically inaccurate excuse for the first lockdowns (much more in the next chapter). The Institute for Health Metrics and Evaluation (IHME) in the United States, another source of outrageously false 'Covid' computer models to justify lockdowns, is bankrolled by Gates who is a vehement promotor of lockdowns. America's version of Whitty and Vallance, the again now infamous Anthony Fauci, has connections to 'Covid vaccine' maker Moderna as does Bill Gates through funding from the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation. Fauci is director of the National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIAID), a major recipient of Gates money, and they are very close. Deborah Birx who was appointed White House Coronavirus Response Coordinator in February, 2020, is yet another with ties to Gates. Everywhere you look at the different elements around the world behind the coordination and decision making of the 'Covid' hoax there is Bill Gates and his money. They include the World Health Organization; Centers for Disease Control (CDC) in the United States; National Institutes of Health (NIH) of Anthony Fauci; Imperial College and Neil Ferguson; the London School of Hygiene where Chris Whitty worked; Regulatory agencies like the UK Medicines & Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (MHRA)

which gave emergency approval for 'Covid vaccines'; Wellcome Trust; GAVI, the Vaccine Alliance; the Coalition for Epidemic Preparedness Innovations (CEPI); Johns Hopkins University which has compiled the false 'Covid' figures; and the World Economic Forum. A Nationalfile.com article said:

> Gates has a lot of pull in the medical world, he has a multi-million dollar relationship with Dr. Fauci, and Fauci originally took the Gates line supporting vaccines and casting doubt on [the drug hydroxychloroquine]. Coronavirus response team member Dr. Deborah Birx, appointed by former president Obama to serve as United States Global AIDS Coordinator, also sits on the board of a group that has received billions from Gates' foundation, and Birx reportedly used a disputed Bill Gates-funded model for the White House's Coronavirus effort. Gates is a big proponent for a population lockdown scenario for the Coronavirus outbreak.

Another funder of Moderna is the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (DARPA), the technology-development arm of the Pentagon and one of the most sinister organisations on earth. DARPA had a major role with the CIA covert technology-funding operation In-Q-Tel in the development of Google and social media which is now at the centre of global censorship. Fauci and Gates are extremely close and openly admit to talking regularly about 'Covid' policy, but then why wouldn't Gates have a seat at every national 'Covid' table after his Foundation committed $1.75 billion to the 'fight against Covid-19'. When passed through our Orwellian Translation Unit this means that he has bought and paid for the Cult-driven 'Covid' response worldwide. Research the major 'Covid' response personnel in your own country and you will find the same Gates funding and other connections again and again. Medical and science chiefs following World Health Organization 'policy' sit atop a medical hierarchy in their country of administrators, doctors and nursing staff. These 'subordinates' are told they must work and behave in accordance with the policy delivered from the 'top' of the national 'health' pyramid which is largely the policy delivered by the WHO which is the policy delivered by Gates and the Cult. The whole 'Covid' narrative has been imposed on medical staff by a climate of fear although great numbers don't even need that to comply. They do so through breathtaking levels of ignorance and

include doctors who go through life simply repeating what Big Pharma and their hierarchical masters tell them to say and believe. No wonder Big Pharma 'medicine' is one of the biggest killers on Planet Earth.

The same top-down system of intimidation operates with regard to the Cult Big Pharma cartel which also dictates policy through national and global medical systems in this way. The Cult and Big Pharma agendas are the same because the former controls and owns the latter. 'Health' administrators, doctors, and nursing staff are told to support and parrot the dictated policy or they will face consequences which can include being fired. How sad it's been to see medical staff meekly repeating and imposing Cult policy without question and most of those who can see through the deceit are only willing to speak anonymously off the record. They know what will happen if their identity is known. This has left the courageous few to expose the lies about the 'virus', face masks, overwhelmed hospitals that aren't, and the dangers of the 'vaccine' that isn't a vaccine. When these medical professionals and scientists, some renowned in their field, have taken to the Internet to expose the truth their articles, comments and videos have been deleted by Cult-owned Facebook, Twitter and YouTube. What a real head-shaker to see YouTube videos with leading world scientists and highly qualified medical specialists with an added link underneath to the notorious Cult propaganda website *Wikipedia* to find the 'facts' about the same subject.

HIV – the 'Covid' trial-run

I'll give you an example of the consequences for health and truth that come from censorship and unquestioning belief in official narratives. The story was told by PCR inventor Kary Mullis in his book *Dancing Naked in the Mind Field*. He said that in 1984 he accepted as just another scientific fact that Luc Montagnier of France's Pasteur Institute and Robert Gallo of America's National Institutes of Health had independently discovered that a 'retrovirus' dubbed HIV (human immunodeficiency virus) caused AIDS. They

were, after all, Mullis writes, specialists in retroviruses. This is how the medical and science pyramids work. Something is announced or *assumed* and then becomes an everybody-knows-that purely through repetition of the assumption as if it is fact. Complete crap becomes accepted truth with no supporting evidence and only repetition of the crap. This is how a 'virus' that doesn't exist became the 'virus' that changed the world. The HIV-AIDS fairy story became a multi-billion pound industry and the media poured out propaganda terrifying the world about the deadly HIV 'virus' that caused the lethal AIDS. By then Mullis was working at a lab in Santa Monica, California, to detect retroviruses with his PCR test in blood donations received by the Red Cross. In doing so he asked a virologist where he could find a reference for HIV being the cause of AIDS. 'You don't need a reference,' the virologist said … *'Everybody knows it.'* Mullis said he wanted to quote a reference in the report he was doing and he said he felt a little funny about not knowing the source of such an important discovery when everyone else seemed to. The virologist suggested he cite a report by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) on morbidity and mortality. Mullis read the report, but it only said that an organism had been identified and did not say how. The report did not identify the original scientific work. Physicians, however, *assumed* (key recurring theme) that if the CDC was convinced that HIV caused AIDS then proof must exist. Mullis continues:

I did computer searches. Neither Montagnier, Gallo, nor anyone else had published papers describing experiments which led to the conclusion that HIV probably caused AIDS. I read the papers in Science for which they had become well known as AIDS doctors, but all they had said there was that they had found evidence of a past infection by something which was probably HIV in some AIDS patients.

They found antibodies. Antibodies to viruses had always been considered evidence of past disease, not present disease. Antibodies signaled that the virus had been defeated. The patient had saved himself. There was no indication in these papers that this virus caused a disease. They didn't show that everybody with the antibodies had the disease. In fact they found some healthy people with antibodies.

Mullis asked why their work had been published if Montagnier and Gallo hadn't really found this evidence, and why had they been fighting so hard to get credit for the discovery? He says he was hesitant to write 'HIV is the probable cause of AIDS' until he found published evidence to support that. 'Tens of thousands of scientists and researchers were spending billions of dollars a year doing research based on this idea,' Mullis writes. 'The reason had to be there somewhere; otherwise these people would not have allowed their research to settle into one narrow channel of investigation.' He said he lectured about PCR at numerous meetings where people were always talking about HIV and he asked them how they knew that HIV was the cause of AIDS:

> Everyone said something. Everyone had the answer at home, in the office, in some drawer. They all knew, and they would send me the papers as soon as they got back. But I never got any papers. Nobody ever sent me the news about how AIDS was caused by HIV.

Eventually Mullis was able to ask Montagnier himself about the reference proof when he lectured in San Diego at the grand opening of the University of California AIDS Research Center. Mullis says this was the last time he would ask his question without showing anger. Montagnier said he should reference the CDC report. 'I read it', Mullis said, and it didn't answer the question. 'If Montagnier didn't know the answer who the hell did?' Then one night Mullis was driving when an interview came on National Public Radio with Peter Duesberg, a prominent virologist at Berkeley and a California Scientist of the Year. Mullis says he finally understood why he could not find references that connected HIV to AIDS – *there weren't any!* No one had ever proved that HIV causes AIDS even though it had spawned a multi-billion pound global industry and the media was repeating this as fact every day in their articles and broadcasts terrifying the shit out of people about AIDS and giving the impression that a positive test for HIV (see 'Covid') was a death sentence. Duesberg was a threat to the AIDS gravy train and the agenda that underpinned it. He was therefore abused and castigated after he told the Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences

there was no good evidence implicating the new 'virus'. Editors rejected his manuscripts and his research funds were deleted. Mullis points out that the CDC has defined AIDS as one of more than 30 diseases *if accompanied* by a positive result on a test that detects antibodies to HIV; but those same diseases are not defined as AIDS cases when antibodies are not detected:

> If an HIV-positive woman develops uterine cancer, for example, she is considered to have AIDS. If she is not HIV positive, she simply has uterine cancer. An HIV-positive man with tuberculosis has AIDS; if he tests negative he simply has tuberculosis. If he lives in Kenya or Colombia, where the test for HIV antibodies is too expensive, he is simply presumed to have the antibodies and therefore AIDS, and therefore he can be treated in the World Health Organization's clinic. It's the only medical help available in some places. And it's free, because the countries that support WHO are worried about AIDS.

Mullis accuses the CDC of continually adding new diseases (see ever more 'Covid symptoms') to the grand AIDS definition and of virtually doctoring the books to make it appear as if the disease continued to spread. He cites how in 1993 the CDC enormously broadened its AIDS definition and county health authorities were delighted because they received $2,500 per year from the Federal government for every reported AIDS case. Ladies and gentlemen, I have just described, via Kary Mullis, the 'Covid pandemic' of 2020 and beyond. Every element is the same and it's been pulled off in the same way by the same networks.

The 'Covid virus' exists? Okay – prove it. Er … still waiting

What Kary Mullis described with regard to 'HIV' has been repeated with 'Covid'. A claim is made that a new, or 'novel', infection has been found and the entire medical system of the world repeats that as fact exactly as they did with HIV and AIDS. No one in the mainstream asks rather relevant questions such as 'How do you know?' and 'Where is your proof?' The SARS-Cov-2 'virus' and the 'Covid-19 disease' became an overnight 'everybody-knows-that'. The origin could be debated and mulled over, but what you could not suggest was that 'SARS-Cov-2' didn't exist. That would be

ridiculous. 'Everybody knows' the 'virus' exists. Well, I didn't for one along with American proper doctors like Andrew Kaufman and Tom Cowan and long-time American proper journalist Jon Rappaport. We dared to pursue the obvious and simple question: 'Where's the evidence?' The overwhelming majority in medicine, journalism and the general public did not think to ask that. After all, *everyone knew* there was a new 'virus'. Everyone was saying so and I heard it on the BBC. Some would eventually argue that the 'deadly virus' was nothing like as deadly as claimed, but few would venture into the realms of its very existence. Had they done so they would have found that the evidence for that claim had gone AWOL as with HIV causes AIDS. In fact, not even that. For something to go AWOL it has to exist in the first place and scientific proof for a 'SARS-Cov-2' can be filed under nothing, nowhere and zilch.

Dr Andrew Kaufman is a board-certified forensic psychiatrist in New York State, a Doctor of Medicine and former Assistant Professor and Medical Director of Psychiatry at SUNY Upstate Medical University, and Medical Instructor of Hematology and Oncology at the Medical School of South Carolina. He also studied biology at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT) and trained in Psychiatry at Duke University. Kaufman is retired from allopathic medicine, but remains a consultant and educator on natural healing, I saw a video of his very early on in the 'Covid' hoax in which he questioned claims about the 'virus' in the absence of any supporting evidence and with plenty pointing the other way. I did everything I could to circulate his work which I felt was asking the pivotal questions that needed an answer. I can recommend an excellent pull-together interview he did with the website The Last Vagabond entitled *Dr Andrew Kaufman: Virus Isolation, Terrain Theory and Covid-19* and his website is andrewkaufmanmd.com. Kaufman is not only a forensic psychiatrist; he is forensic in all that he does. He always reads original scientific papers, experiments and studies instead of second-third-fourth-hand reports about the 'virus' in the media which are repeating the repeated repetition of the narrative. When he did so with the original Chinese 'virus' papers Kaufman

realised that there was no evidence of a 'SARS-Cov-2'. They had never – from the start – shown it to exist and every repeat of this claim worldwide was based on the accepted existence of proof that was nowhere to be found – see Kary Mullis and HIV. Here we go again.

Let's postulate

Kaufman discovered that the Chinese authorities immediately concluded that the cause of an illness that broke out among about 200 initial patients in Wuhan was a 'new virus' when there were no grounds to make that conclusion. The alleged 'virus' was not isolated from other genetic material in their samples and then shown through a system known as Koch's postulates to be the causative agent of the illness. The world was told that the SARS-Cov-2 'virus' caused a disease they called 'Covid-19' which had 'flu-like' symptoms and could lead to respiratory problems and pneumonia. If it wasn't so tragic it would almost be funny. *'Flu-like' symptoms'? Pneumonia? Respiratory disease?* What in *CHINA* and particularly in *Wuhan*, one of the most polluted cities in the world with a resulting epidemic of respiratory disease?? Three hundred thousand people get pneumonia in China every year and there are nearly a billion cases worldwide of 'flu-like symptoms'. These have a whole range of causes – including pollution in Wuhan – but no other possibility was credibly considered in late 2019 when the world was told there was a new and deadly 'virus'. The global prevalence of pneumonia and 'flu-like systems' gave the Cult networks unlimited potential to re-diagnose these other causes as the mythical 'Covid-19' and that is what they did from the very start. Kaufman revealed how Chinese medical and science authorities (all subordinates to the Cult-owned communist government) took genetic material from the lungs of only a few of the first patients. The material contained their own cells, bacteria, fungi and other microorganisms living in their bodies. The only way you could prove the existence of the 'virus' and its responsibility for the alleged 'Covid-19' was to isolate the virus from all the other material – a process also known as 'purification' – and

then follow the postulates sequence developed in the late 19th century by German physician and bacteriologist Robert Koch which became the 'gold standard' for connecting an alleged causation agent to a disease:

1. The microorganism (bacteria, fungus, virus, etc.) must be present in every case of the disease and all patients must have the same symptoms. It must also *not be present in healthy individuals*.

2. The microorganism must be isolated from the host with the disease. If the microorganism is a bacteria or fungus it must be grown in a pure culture. If it is a virus, it must be purified (i.e. containing no other material except the virus particles) from a clinical sample.

3. The specific disease, with all of its characteristics, must be reproduced when the infectious agent (the purified virus or a pure culture of bacteria or fungi) is inoculated into a healthy, susceptible host.

4. The microorganism must be recoverable from the experimentally infected host as in step 2.

Not one of these criteria has been met in the case of 'SARS-Cov-2' and 'Covid-19'. Not ONE. *EVER*. Robert Koch refers to bacteria and not viruses. What are called 'viral particles' are so minute (hence masks are useless by any definition) that they could only be seen after the invention of the electron microscope in the 1930s and can still only be observed through that means. American bacteriologist and virologist Thomas Milton Rivers, the so-called 'Father of Modern Virology' who was very significantly director of the Rockefeller Institute for Medical Research in the 1930s, developed a less stringent version of Koch's postulates to identify 'virus' causation known as 'Rivers criteria'. 'Covid' did not pass that process either. Some even doubt whether any 'virus' can be isolated from other particles containing genetic material in the Koch method. Freedom of Information requests in many countries asking for scientific proof that the 'Covid virus' has been purified and isolated and shown to exist have all come back with a 'we don't have that' and when this happened with a request to the UK Department of Health they added this comment:

However, outside of the scope of the [Freedom of Information Act] and on a discretionary basis, the following information has been advised to us, which may be of interest. Most infectious diseases are caused by viruses, bacteria or fungi. Some bacteria or fungi have the capacity to grow on their own in isolation, for example in colonies on a petri dish. Viruses are different in that they are what we call 'obligate pathogens' – that is, they cannot survive or reproduce without infecting a host ...

… For some diseases, it is possible to establish causation between a microorganism and a disease by isolating the pathogen from a patient, growing it in pure culture and reintroducing it to a healthy organism. These are known as 'Koch's postulates' and were developed in 1882. However, as our understanding of disease and different disease-causing agents has advanced, these are no longer the method for determining causation [Andrew Kaufman asks why in that case are there two published articles falsely claiming to satisfy Koch's postulates].

It has long been known that viral diseases cannot be identified in this way as viruses cannot be grown in 'pure culture'. When a patient is tested for a viral illness, this is normally done by looking for the presence of antigens, or viral genetic code in a host with molecular biology techniques [Kaufman asks how you could know the origin of these chemicals without having a pure culture for comparison].

For the record 'antigens' are defined so:

Invading microorganisms have antigens on their surface that the human body can recognise as being foreign – meaning not belonging to it. When the body recognises a foreign antigen, lymphocytes (white blood cells) produce antibodies, which are complementary in shape to the antigen.

Notwithstanding that this is open to question in relation to 'SARS-Cov-2' the presence of 'antibodies' can have many causes and they are found in people that are perfectly well. Kary Mullis said: 'Antibodies … had always been considered evidence of past disease, not present disease.'

'Covid' really is a *computer* 'virus'

Where the UK Department of Health statement says 'viruses' are now 'diagnosed' through a 'viral genetic code in a host with molecular biology techniques', they mean … *the PCR test* which its inventor said cannot test for infectious disease. They have no credible method of connecting a 'virus' to a disease and we will see that there is no scientific proof that any 'virus' causes any disease or there is any such thing as a 'virus' in the way that it is described. Tenacious Canadian researcher Christine Massey and her team made

some 40 Freedom of Information requests to national public health agencies in different countries asking for proof that SARS-CoV-2 has been isolated and not one of them could supply that information. Massey said of her request in Canada: 'Freedom of Information reveals Public Health Agency of Canada has no record of 'SARS-COV-2' isolation performed by anyone, anywhere, ever.' If you accept the comment from the UK Department of Health it's because they can't isolate a 'virus'. Even so many 'science' papers claimed to have isolated the 'Covid virus' until they were questioned and had to admit they hadn't. A reply from the Robert Koch Institute in Germany was typical: 'I am not aware of a paper which purified isolated SARS-CoV-2.' So what the hell was Christian Drosten and his gang using to design the 'Covid' testing protocol that has produced all the illusory Covid' cases and 'Covid' deaths when the head of the Chinese version of the CDC admitted there was a problem right from the start in that the 'virus' had never been isolated/purified? Breathe deeply: What they are calling 'Covid' is actually created by a *computer program* i.e. *they made it up* – er, that's it. They took lung fluid, with many sources of genetic material, from one single person alleged to be infected with Covid-19 by a PCR test which they *claimed*, without clear evidence, contained a 'virus'. They used several computer programs to create a model of a theoretical virus genome sequence from more than fifty-six million small sequences of RNA, each of an unknown source, assembling them like a puzzle with no known solution. The computer filled in the gaps with sequences from bits in the gene bank to make it look like a bat SARS-like coronavirus! A wave of the magic wand and poof, an in silico (computer-generated) genome, a scientific fantasy, was created. UK health researcher Dr Kevin Corbett made the same point with this analogy:

> … It's like giving you a few bones and saying that's your fish. It could be any fish. Not even a skeleton. Here's a few fragments of bones. That's your fish … It's all from gene bank and the bits of the virus sequence that weren't there they made up.
>
> They synthetically created them to fill in the blanks. That's what genetics is; it's a code. So it's ABBBCCDDD and you're missing some what you think is EEE so you put it in. It's all

synthetic. You just manufacture the bits that are missing. This is the end result of the geneticization of virology. This is basically a computer virus.

Further confirmation came in an email exchange between British citizen journalist Frances Leader and the government's Medicines & Healthcare Products Regulatory Agency (the Gates-funded MHRA) which gave emergency permission for untested 'Covid vaccines' to be used. The agency admitted that the 'vaccine' is not based on an isolated 'virus', but comes from a *computer-generated model*. Frances Leader was naturally banned from Cult-owned fascist Twitter for making this exchange public. The process of creating computer-generated alleged 'viruses' is called 'in silico' or 'in silicon' – computer chips – and the term 'in silico' is believed to originate with biological experiments using only a computer in 1989. 'Vaccines' involved with 'Covid' are also produced 'in silico' or by computer not a natural process. If the original 'virus' is nothing more than a made-up computer model how can there be 'new variants' of something that never existed in the first place? They are not new 'variants'; they are new *computer models* only minutely different to the original program and designed to further terrify the population into having the 'vaccine' and submitting to fascism. You want a 'new variant'? Click, click, enter – there you go. Tell the medical profession that you have discovered a 'South African variant', 'UK variants' or a 'Brazilian variant' and in the usual HIV-causes-AIDS manner they will unquestioningly repeat it with no evidence whatsoever to support these claims. They will go on television and warn about the dangers of 'new variants' while doing nothing more than repeating what they have been told to be true and knowing that any deviation from that would be career suicide. Big-time insiders will know it's a hoax, but much of the medical community is clueless about the way they are being played and themselves play the public without even being aware they are doing so. What an interesting 'coincidence' that AstraZeneca and Oxford University were conducting 'Covid vaccine trials' in the three countries – the UK, South Africa and Brazil – where the first three 'variants' were claimed to have 'broken out'.

Here's your 'virus' – it's a unicorn

Dr Andrew Kaufman presented a brilliant analysis describing how the 'virus' was imagined into fake existence when he dissected an article published by *Nature* and written by 19 authors detailing *alleged* 'sequencing of a complete viral genome' of the 'new SARS-CoV-2 virus'. This computer-modelled *in silico* genome was used as a template for all subsequent genome sequencing experiments that resulted in the so-called variants which he said now number more than *6,000*. The fake genome was constructed from more than 56 million individual short strands of RNA. Those little pieces were assembled into longer pieces by finding areas of overlapping sequences. The computer programs created over two million possible combinations from which the authors simply chose the longest one. They then compared this to a 'bat virus' and the computer 'alignment' rearranged the sequence and filled in the gaps! They called this computer-generated abomination the 'complete genome'. Dr Tom Cowan, a fellow medical author and collaborator with Kaufman, said such computer-generation constitutes scientific fraud and he makes this superb analogy:

> Here is an equivalency: A group of researchers claim to have found a unicorn because they found a piece of a hoof, a hair from a tail, and a snippet of a horn. They then add that information into a computer and program it to re-create the unicorn, and they then claim this computer re-creation is the real unicorn. Of course, they had never actually seen a unicorn so could not possibly have examined its genetic makeup to compare their samples with the actual unicorn's hair, hooves and horn.
>
> The researchers claim they decided which is the real genome of SARS-CoV-2 by 'consensus', sort of like a vote. Again, different computer programs will come up with different versions of the imaginary 'unicorn', so they come together as a group and decide which is the real imaginary unicorn.

This is how the 'virus' that has transformed the world was brought into fraudulent 'existence'. Extraordinary, yes, but as the Nazis said the bigger the lie the more will believe it. Cowan, however, wasn't finished and he went on to identify what he called the real blockbuster in the paper. He quotes this section from a paper written

by virologists and published by the CDC and then explains what it means:

> Therefore, we examined the capacity of SARS-CoV-2 to infect and replicate in several common primate and human cell lines, including human adenocarcinoma cells (A549), human liver cells (HUH 7.0), and human embryonic kidney cells (HEK-293T). In addition to Vero E6 and Vero CCL81 cells. ... Each cell line was inoculated at high multiplicity of infection and examined 24h post-infection.
>
> No CPE was observed in any of the cell lines except in Vero cells, which grew to greater than 10 to the 7th power at 24 h post-infection. In contrast, HUH 7.0 and 293T showed only modest viral replication, and A549 cells were incompatible with SARS CoV-2 infection.

Cowan explains that when virologists attempt to prove infection they have three possible 'hosts' or models on which they can test. The first was humans. Exposure to humans was generally not done for ethical reasons and has never been done with SARS-CoV-2 or any coronavirus. The second possible host was animals. Cowan said that forgetting for a moment that they never actually use purified virus when exposing animals they do use solutions that they *claim* contain the virus. Exposure to animals has been done with SARS-CoV-2 in an experiment involving mice and this is what they found: *None of the wild (normal) mice got sick*. In a group of genetically-modified mice, a statistically insignificant number lost weight and had slightly bristled fur, but they experienced nothing like the illness called 'Covid-19'. Cowan said the third method – the one they mostly rely on – is to inoculate solutions they *say* contain the virus onto a variety of tissue cultures. This process had never been shown to kill tissue *unless* the sample material was starved of nutrients and poisoned as *part of the process*. Yes, incredibly, in tissue experiments designed to show the 'virus' is responsible for killing the tissue they starve the tissue of nutrients and add toxic drugs including antibiotics and they do not have control studies to see if it's the starvation and poisoning that is degrading the tissue rather than the 'virus' they allege to be in there somewhere. You want me to pinch you? Yep, I understand. Tom Cowan said this about the whole nonsensical farce as he explains what that quote from the CDC paper really means:

The shocking thing about the above quote is that using their own methods, the virologists found that solutions containing SARS-CoV-2 – even in high amounts – were NOT, I repeat NOT, infective to any of the three human tissue cultures they tested. In plain English, this means they proved, on their terms, that this 'new coronavirus' is not infectious to human beings. It is ONLY infective to monkey kidney cells, and only then when you add two potent drugs (gentamicin and amphotericin), known to be toxic to kidneys, to the mix.

My friends, read this again and again. These virologists, published by the CDC, performed a clear proof, on their terms, showing that the SARS-CoV-2 virus is harmless to human beings. That is the only possible conclusion, but, unfortunately, this result is not even mentioned in their conclusion. They simply say they can provide virus stocks cultured only on monkey Vero cells, thanks for coming.

Cowan concluded: 'If people really understood how this "science" was done, I would hope they would storm the gates and demand honesty, transparency and truth.' Dr Michael Yeadon, former Vice President and Chief Scientific Adviser at drug giant Pfizer has been a vocal critic of the 'Covid vaccine' and its potential for multiple harm. He said in an interview in April, 2021, that 'not one [vaccine] has the virus. He was asked why vaccines normally using a 'dead' version of a disease to activate the immune system were not used for 'Covid' and instead we had the synthetic methods of the 'mRNA Covid vaccine'. Yeadon said that to do the former 'you'd have to have some of [the virus] wouldn't you?' He added: 'No-one's got any – seriously.' Yeadon said that surely they couldn't have fooled the whole world for a year without having a virus, 'but oddly enough ask around – no one's got it'. He didn't know why with all the 'great labs' around the world that the virus had not been isolated – 'Maybe they've been too busy running bad PCR tests and vaccines that people don't need.' What is today called 'science' is not 'science' at all. Science is no longer what is, but whatever people can be manipulated to *believe* that it is. Real science has been hijacked by the Cult to dispense and produce the 'expert scientists' and contentions that suit the agenda of the Cult. How big-time this has happened with the 'Covid' hoax which is entirely based on fake science delivered by fake 'scientists' and fake 'doctors'. The human-caused climate change hoax is also entirely based on fake science delivered by fake 'scientists' and fake 'climate experts'. In both cases real

scientists, climate experts and doctors have their views suppressed and deleted by the Cult-owned science establishment, media and Silicon Valley. This is the 'science' that politicians claim to be 'following' and a common denominator of 'Covid' and climate are Cult psychopaths Bill Gates and his mate Klaus Schwab at the Gates-funded World Economic Forum. But, don't worry, it's all just a coincidence and absolutely nothing to worry about. *Zzzzzzzz*.

What is a 'virus' REALLY?

Dr Tom Cowan is one of many contesting the very existence of viruses let alone that they cause disease. This is understandable when there is no scientific evidence for a disease-causing 'virus'. German virologist Dr Stefan Lanka won a landmark case in 2017 in the German Supreme Court over his contention that there is no such thing as a measles virus. He had offered a big prize for anyone who could prove there is and Lanka won his case when someone sought to claim the money. There is currently a prize of more than 225,000 euros on offer from an Isolate Truth Fund for anyone who can prove the isolation of SARS-CoV-2 and its genetic substance. Lanka wrote in an article headed 'The Misconception Called Virus' that scientists think a 'virus' is causing tissue to become diseased and degraded when in fact it is the *processes they are using* which do that – not a 'virus'. Lanka has done an important job in making this point clear as Cowan did in his analysis of the CDC paper. Lanka says that all claims about viruses as disease-causing pathogens are wrong and based on 'easily recognisable, understandable and verifiable misinterpretations.' Scientists believed they were working with 'viruses' in their laboratories when they were really working with 'typical particles of specific dying tissues or cells …' Lanka said that the tissue decaying process claimed to be caused by a 'virus' still happens when no alleged 'virus' is involved. It's the *process* that does the damage and not a 'virus'. The genetic sample is deprived of nutrients, removed from its energy supply through removal from the body and then doused in toxic antibiotics to remove any bacteria. He confirms again that establishment scientists do not (pinch me)

conduct control experiments to see if this is the case and if they did they would see the claims that 'viruses' are doing the damage is nonsense. He adds that during the measles 'virus' court case he commissioned an independent laboratory to perform just such a control experiment and the result was that the tissues and cells died in the exact same way as with alleged 'infected' material. This is supported by a gathering number of scientists, doctors and researchers who reject what is called 'germ theory' or the belief in the body being infected by contagious sources emitted by other people. Researchers Dawn Lester and David Parker take the same stance in their highly-detailed and sourced book *What Really Makes You Ill – Why everything you thought you knew about disease is wrong* which was recommended to me by a number of medical professionals genuinely seeking the truth. Lester and Parker say there is no provable scientific evidence to show that a 'virus' can be transmitted between people or people and animals or animals and people:

> The definition also claims that viruses are the cause of many diseases, as if this has been definitively proven. But this is not the case; there is no original scientific evidence that definitively demonstrates that any virus is the cause of any disease. The burden of proof for any theory lies with those who proposed it; but none of the existing documents provides 'proof' that supports the claim that 'viruses' are pathogens.

Dr Tom Cowan employs one of his clever analogies to describe the process by which a 'virus' is named as the culprit for a disease when what is called a 'virus' is only material released by cells detoxing themselves from infiltration by chemical or radiation poisoning. The tidal wave of technologically-generated radiation in the 'smart' modern world plus all the toxic food and drink are causing this to happen more than ever. Deluded 'scientists' misread this as a gathering impact of what they wrongly label 'viruses'.

Paper can infect houses

Cowan said in an article for davidicke.com – with his tongue only mildly in his cheek – that he believed he had made a tremendous

discovery that may revolutionise science. He had discovered that small bits of paper are alive, 'well alive-ish', can 'infect' houses, and then reproduce themselves inside the house. The result was that this explosion of growth in the paper inside the house causes the house to explode, blowing it to smithereens. His evidence for this new theory is that in the past months he had carefully examined many of the houses in his neighbourhood and found almost no scraps of paper on the lawns and surrounds of the house. There was an occasional stray label, but nothing more. Then he would return to these same houses a week or so later and with a few, not all of them, particularly the old and decrepit ones, he found to his shock and surprise they were littered with stray bits of paper. He knew then that the paper had infected these houses, made copies of itself, and blew up the house. A young boy on a bicycle at one of the sites told him he had seen a demolition crew using dynamite to explode the house the previous week, but Cowan dismissed this as the idle thoughts of silly boys because 'I was on to something big'. He was on to how 'scientists' mistake genetic material in the detoxifying process for something they call a 'virus'. Cowan said of his house and paper story:

If this sounds crazy to you, it's because it should. This scenario is obviously nuts. But consider this admittedly embellished, for effect, current viral theory that all scientists, medical doctors and virologists currently believe.

He takes the example of the 'novel SARS-Cov2' virus to prove the point. First they take someone with an undefined illness called 'Covid-19' and don't even attempt to find any virus in their sputum. Never mind the scientists still describe how this 'virus', which they have not located attaches to a cell receptor, injects its genetic material, in 'Covid's' case, RNA, into the cell. The RNA once inserted exploits the cell to reproduce itself and makes 'thousands, nay millions, of copies of itself … Then it emerges victorious to claim its next victim':

If you were to look in the scientific literature for proof, actual scientific proof, that uniform SARS-CoV2 viruses have been properly isolated from the sputum of a sick person, that actual spike proteins could be seen protruding from the virus (which has not been found), you would find that such evidence doesn't exist.

If you go looking in the published scientific literature for actual pictures, proof, that these spike proteins or any viral proteins are ever attached to any receptor embedded in any cell membrane, you would also find that no such evidence exists. If you were to look for a video or documented evidence of the intact virus injecting its genetic material into the body of the cell, reproducing itself and then emerging victorious by budding off the cell membrane, you would find that no such evidence exists.

The closest thing you would find is electron micrograph pictures of cellular particles, possibly attached to cell debris, both of which to be seen were stained by heavy metals, a process that completely distorts their architecture within the living organism. This is like finding bits of paper stuck to the blown-up bricks, thereby proving the paper emerged by taking pieces of the bricks on its way out.

The Enders baloney

Cowan describes the 'Covid' story as being just as make-believe as his paper story and he charts back this fantasy to a Nobel Prize winner called John Enders (1897-1985), an American biomedical scientist who has been dubbed 'The Father of Modern Vaccines'. Enders is claimed to have 'discovered' the process of the viral culture which 'proved' that a 'virus' caused measles. Cowan explains how Enders did this 'by using the EXACT same procedure that has been followed by every virologist to find and characterize every new virus since 1954'. Enders took throat swabs from children with measles and immersed them in 2ml of milk. Penicillin (100u/ml) and the antibiotic streptomycin (50,g/ml) were added and the whole mix was centrifuged – rotated at high speed to separate large cellular debris from small particles and molecules as with milk and cream, for example. Cowan says that if the aim is to find little particles of genetic material ('viruses') in the snot from children with measles it would seem that the last thing you would do is mix the snot with other material – milk –that also has genetic material. 'How are you ever going to know whether whatever you found came from the snot or the milk?' He points out that streptomycin is a 'nephrotoxic' or poisonous-to-the-kidney drug. You will see the relevance of that

shortly. Cowan says that it gets worse, much worse, when Enders describes the culture medium upon which the virus 'grows': 'The culture medium consisted of bovine amniotic fluid (90%), beef embryo extract (5%), horse serum (5%), antibiotics and phenol red as an indicator of cell metabolism.' Cowan asks incredulously: 'Did he just say that the culture medium also contained fluids and tissues that are themselves rich sources of genetic material?' The genetic cocktail, or 'medium', is inoculated onto tissue and cells from rhesus monkey *kidney* tissue. This is where the importance of streptomycin comes in and currently-used antimicrobials and other drugs that are *poisonous to kidneys* and used in ALL modern viral cultures (e.g. gentamicin, streptomycin, and amphotericin). Cowan asks: 'How are you ever going to know from this witch's brew where any genetic material comes from as we now have five different sources of rich genetic material in our mix?' Remember, he says, that all genetic material, whether from monkey kidney tissues, bovine serum, milk, etc., is made from the exact same components. The same central question returns: 'How are you possibly going to know that it was the virus that killed the kidney tissue and not the toxic antibiotic and starvation rations on which you are growing the tissue?' John Enders answered the question himself – *you can't*:

A second agent was obtained from an uninoculated culture of monkey kidney cells. The cytopathic changes [death of the cells] it induced in the unstained preparations could not be distinguished with confidence from the viruses isolated from measles.

The death of the cells ('cytopathic changes') happened in exactly the same manner, whether they inoculated the kidney tissue with the measles snot or not, Cowan says. 'This is evidence that the destruction of the tissue, the very proof of viral causation of illness, was not caused by anything in the snot because they saw the same destructive effect when the snot was not even used … the cytopathic, i.e., cell-killing, changes come from the process of the culture itself, not from any virus in any snot, period.' Enders quotes in his 1957 paper a virologist called Ruckle as reporting similar findings 'and in addition has isolated an agent from monkey kidney tissue that is so

far indistinguishable from human measles virus'. In other words, Cowan says, these particles called 'measles viruses' are simply and clearly breakdown products of the starved and poisoned tissue. For measles 'virus' see all 'viruses' including the so-called 'Covid virus'. Enders, the 'Father of Modern Vaccines', also said:

There is a potential risk in employing cultures of primate cells for the production of vaccines composed of attenuated virus, since the presence of other agents possibly latent in primate tissues cannot be definitely excluded by any known method.

Cowan further quotes from a paper published in the journal *Viruses* in May, 2020, while the 'Covid pandemic' was well underway in the media if not in reality. 'EVs' here refers to particles of genetic debris from our own tissues, such as exosomes of which more in a moment: 'The remarkable resemblance between EVs and viruses has caused quite a few problems in the studies focused on the analysis of EVs released during viral infections.' Later the paper adds that to date a reliable method that can actually guarantee a complete separation (of EVs from viruses) DOES NOT EXIST. This was published at a time when a fairy tale 'virus' was claimed in total certainty to be causing a fairy tale 'viral disease' called 'Covid-19' – a fairy tale that was already well on the way to transforming human society in the image that the Cult has worked to achieve for so long. Cowan concludes his article:

To summarize, there is no scientific evidence that pathogenic viruses exist. What we think of as 'viruses' are simply the normal breakdown products of dead and dying tissues and cells. When we are well, we make fewer of these particles; when we are starved, poisoned, suffocated by wearing masks, or afraid, we make more.

There is no engineered virus circulating and making people sick. People in laboratories all over the world are making genetically modified products to make people sick. These are called vaccines. There is no virome, no 'ecosystem' of viruses, viruses are not 8%, 50% or 100 % of our genetic material. These are all simply erroneous ideas based on the misconception called a virus.

What is 'Covid'? Load of bollocks

The background described here by Cowan and Lanka was emphasised in the first video presentation that I saw by Dr Andrew Kaufman when he asked whether the 'Covid virus' was in truth a natural defence mechanism of the body called 'exosomes'. These are released by cells when in states of toxicity – see the same themes returning over and over. They are released ever more profusely as chemical and radiation toxicity increases and think of the potential effect therefore of 5G alone as its destructive frequencies infest the human energetic information field with a gathering pace (5G went online in Wuhan in 2019 as the 'virus' emerged). I'll have more about this later. Exosomes transmit a warning to the rest of the body that 'Houston, we have a problem'. Kaufman presented images of exosomes and compared them with 'Covid' under an electron microscope and the similarity was remarkable. They both attach to the same cell receptors (*claimed* in the case of 'Covid'), contain the same genetic material in the form of RNA or ribonucleic acid, and both are found in 'viral cell cultures' with damaged or dying cells. James Hildreth MD, President and Chief Executive Officer of the Meharry Medical College at Johns Hopkins, said: 'The virus is fully an exosome in every sense of the word.' Kaufman's conclusion was that there is no 'virus': 'This entire pandemic is a completely manufactured crisis … there is no evidence of anyone dying from [this] illness.' Dr Tom Cowan and Sally Fallon Morell, authors of *The Contagion Myth*, published a statement with Dr Kaufman in February, 2021, explaining why the 'virus' does not exist and you can read it that in full in the Appendix.

'Virus' theory can be traced to the 'cell theory' in 1858 of German physician Rudolf Virchow (1821-1920) who contended that disease originates from a single cell infiltrated by a 'virus'. Dr Stefan Lanka said that findings and insights with respect to the structure, function and central importance of tissues in the creation of life, which were already known in 1858, comprehensively refute the cell theory. Virchow ignored them. We have seen the part later played by John Enders in the 1950s and Lanka notes that infection theories were only established as a global dogma through the policies and

eugenics of the Third Reich in Nazi Germany (creation of the same Sabbatian cult behind the 'Covid' hoax). Lanka said: 'Before 1933, scientists dared to contradict this theory; after 1933, these critical scientists were silenced'. Dr Tom Cowan's view is that ill-heath is caused by too much of something, too little of something, or toxification from chemicals and radiation – not contagion. We must also highlight as a major source of the 'virus' theology a man still called the 'Father of Modern Virology' – Thomas Milton Rivers (1888-1962). There is no way given the Cult's long game policy that it was a coincidence for the 'Father of Modern Virology' to be director of the Rockefeller Institute for Medical Research from 1937 to 1956 when he is credited with making the Rockefeller Institute a leader in 'viral research'. Cult Rockefellers were the force behind the creation of Big Pharma 'medicine', established the World Health Organisation in 1948, and have long and close associations with the Gates family that now runs the WHO during the pandemic hoax through mega-rich Cult gofer and psychopath Bill Gates.

Only a Renegade Mind can see through all this bullshit by asking the questions that need to be answered, not taking 'no' or prevarication for an answer, and certainly not hiding from the truth in fear of speaking it. Renegade Minds have always changed the world for the better and they will change this one no matter how bleak it may currently appear to be.

CHAPTER SIX

Sequence of deceit

If you tell the truth, you don't have to remember anything
Mark Twain

Against the background that I have laid out this far the sequence that took us from an invented 'virus' in Cult-owned China in late 2019 to the fascist transformation of human society can be seen and understood in a whole new context.

We were told that a deadly disease had broken out in Wuhan and the world media began its campaign (coordinated by behavioural psychologists as we shall see) to terrify the population into unquestioning compliance. We were shown images of Chinese people collapsing in the street which never happened in the West with what was supposed to be the same condition. In the earliest days when alleged cases and deaths were few the fear register was hysterical in many areas of the media and this would expand into the common media narrative across the world. The real story was rather different, but we were never told that. The Chinese government, one of the Cult's biggest centres of global operation, said they had discovered a new illness with flu-like and pneumonia-type symptoms in a city with such toxic air that it is overwhelmed with flu-like symptoms, pneumonia and respiratory disease. Chinese scientists said it was a new – 'novel' – coronavirus which they called Sars-Cov-2 and that it caused a disease they labelled 'Covid-19'. There was no evidence for this and the 'virus' has never to this day been isolated, purified and its genetic code established from that. It

was from the beginning a computer-generated fiction. Stories of Chinese whistleblowers saying the number of deaths was being supressed or that the 'new disease' was related to the Wuhan bio-lab misdirected mainstream and alternative media into cul-de-sacs to obscure the real truth – there was no 'virus'.

Chinese scientists took genetic material from the lung fluid of just a few people and said they had found a 'new' disease when this material had a wide range of content. There was no evidence for a 'virus' for the very reasons explained in the last two chapters. The 'virus' has never been shown to (a) exist and (b) cause any disease. People were diagnosed on symptoms that are so widespread in Wuhan and polluted China and with a PCR test that can't detect infectious disease. On this farce the whole global scam was sold to the rest of the world which would also diagnose respiratory disease as 'Covid-19' from symptoms alone or with a PCR test not testing for a 'virus'. Flu miraculously disappeared *worldwide* in 2020 and into 2021 as it was redesignated 'Covid-19'. It was really the same old flu with its 'flu-like' symptoms attributed to 'flu-like' 'Covid-19'. At the same time with very few exceptions the Chinese response of draconian lockdown and fascism was the chosen weapon to respond across the West as recommended by the Cult-owned Tedros at the Cult-owned World Health Organization run by the Cult-owned Gates. All was going according to plan. Chinese scientists – everything in China is controlled by the Cult-owned government – compared their contaminated RNA lung-fluid material with other RNA sequences and said it appeared to be just under 80 percent identical to the SARS-CoV-1 'virus' claimed to be the cause of the SARS (severe acute respiratory syndrome) 'outbreak' in 2003. They decreed that because of this the 'new virus' had to be related and they called it SARS-CoV-2. There are some serious problems with this assumption and *assumption* was all it was. Most 'factual' science turns out to be assumptions repeated into everyone-knows-that. A match of under 80-percent is meaningless. Dr Kaufman makes the point that there's a *96 percent* genetic correlation between humans and chimpanzees, but 'no one would say our genetic material is part

of the chimpanzee family'. Yet the Chinese authorities were claiming that a much lower percentage, less than 80 percent, proved the existence of a new 'coronavirus'. For goodness sake human DNA is 60 percent similar to a *banana*.

You are feeling sleepy

The entire 'Covid' hoax is a global Psyop, a psychological operation to program the human mind into believing and fearing a complete fantasy. A crucial aspect of this was what *appeared* to happen in Italy. It was all very well streaming out daily images of an alleged catastrophe in Wuhan, but to the Western mind it was still on the other side of the world in a very different culture and setting. A reaction of 'this could happen to me and my family' was still nothing like as intense enough for the mind-doctors. The Cult needed a Western example to push people over that edge and it chose Italy, one of its major global locations going back to the Roman Empire. An Italian 'Covid' crisis was manufactured in a particular area called Lombardy which just happens to be notorious for its toxic air and therefore respiratory disease. Wuhan, China, déjà vu. An hysterical media told horror stories of Italians dying from 'Covid' in their droves and how Lombardy hospitals were being overrun by a tidal wave of desperately ill people needing treatment after being struck down by the 'deadly virus'. Here was the psychological turning point the Cult had planned. Wow, if this is happening in Italy, the Western mind concluded, this indeed could happen to me and my family. Another point is that Italian authorities responded by following the Chinese blueprint so vehemently recommended by the Cult-owned World Health Organization. They imposed fascistic lockdowns on the whole country viciously policed with the help of surveillance drones sweeping through the streets seeking out anyone who escaped from mass house arrest. Livelihoods were destroyed and psychology unravelled in the way we have witnessed since in all lockdown countries. Crucial to the plan was that Italy responded in this way to set the precedent of suspending freedom and imposing fascism in a 'Western liberal democracy'. I emphasised in an

animated video explanation on davidicke.com posted in the summer of 2020 how important it was to the Cult to expand the Chinese lockdown model across the West. Without this, and the bare-faced lie that non-symptomatic people could still transmit a 'disease' they didn't have, there was no way locking down the whole population, sick and not sick, could be pulled off. At just the right time and with no evidence Cult operatives and gofers claimed that people without symptoms could pass on the 'disease'. In the name of protecting the 'vulnerable' like elderly people, who lockdowns would kill by the tens of thousands, we had for the first time healthy people told to isolate as well as the sick. The great majority of people who tested positive had no symptoms because there was nothing wrong with them. It was just a trick made possible by a test not testing for the 'virus'.

Months after my animated video the Gates-funded Professor Neil Ferguson at the Gates-funded Imperial College confirmed that I was right. He didn't say it in those terms, naturally, but he did say it. Ferguson will enter the story shortly for his outrageously crazy 'computer models' that led to Britain, the United States and many other countries following the Chinese and now Italian methods of response. Put another way, following the Cult script. Ferguson said that SAGE, the UK government's scientific advisory group which has controlled 'Covid' policy from the start, wanted to follow the Chinese lockdown model (while they all continued to work and be paid), but they wondered if they could possibly, in Ferguson's words, 'get away with it in Europe'. 'Get away with it'? Who the hell do these moronic, arrogant people think they are? This appalling man Ferguson said that once Italy went into national lockdown they realised they, too, could mimic China:

> It's a communist one-party state, we said. We couldn't get away with it in Europe, we thought … and then Italy did it. And we realised we could. Behind this garbage from Ferguson is a simple fact: Doing the same as China in every country was the plan from the start and Ferguson's 'models' would play a central role in achieving that. It's just a coincidence, of course, and absolutely nothing to worry your little head about.

Oops, sorry, our mistake

Once the Italian segment of the Psyop had done the job it was designed to do a very different story emerged. Italian authorities revealed that 99 percent of those who had 'died from Covid-19' in Italy had one, two, three, or more 'co-morbidities' or illnesses and health problems that could have ended their life. The US Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) published a figure of 94 percent for Americans dying of 'Covid' while having other serious medical conditions – on average two to three (some five or six) other potential causes of death. In terms of death from an unproven 'virus' I say it is 100 percent. The other one percent in Italy and six percent in the US would presumably have died from 'Covid's' flu-like symptoms with a range of other possible causes in conjunction with a test not testing for the 'virus'. Fox News reported that even more startling figures had emerged in one US county in which 410 of 422 deaths attributed to 'Covid-19' had other potentially deadly health conditions. The Italian National Health Institute said later that the average age of people dying with a 'Covid-19' diagnosis in Italy was about 81. Ninety percent were over 70 with ten percent over 90. In terms of other reasons to die some 80 percent had two or more chronic diseases with half having three or more including cardiovascular problems, diabetes, respiratory problems and cancer. Why is the phantom 'Covid-19' said to kill overwhelmingly old people and hardly affect the young? Old people continually die of many causes and especially respiratory disease which you can re-diagnose 'Covid-19' while young people die in tiny numbers by comparison and rarely of respiratory disease. Old people 'die of Covid' because they die of other things that can be redesignated 'Covid' and it really is that simple.

Flu has flown

The blueprint was in place. Get your illusory 'cases' from a test not testing for the 'virus' and redesignate other causes of death as 'Covid-19'. You have an instant 'pandemic' from something that is nothing more than a computer-generated fiction. With near-on a

billion people having 'flu-like' symptoms every year the potential was limitless and we can see why flu quickly and apparently miraculously disappeared *worldwide* by being diagnosed 'Covid-19'. The painfully bloody obvious was explained away by the childlike media in headlines like this in the UK '*Independent*': 'Not a single case of flu detected by Public Health England this year as Covid restrictions suppress virus'. I kid you not. The masking, social distancing and house arrest that did not make the 'Covid virus' disappear somehow did so with the 'flu virus'. Even worse the article, by a bloke called Samuel Lovett, suggested that maybe the masking, sanitising and other 'Covid' measures should continue to keep the flu away. With a ridiculousness that disturbs your breathing (it's 'Covid-19') the said Lovett wrote: 'With widespread social distancing and mask-wearing measures in place throughout the UK, the usual routes of transmission for influenza have been blocked.' He had absolutely no evidence to support that statement, but look at the consequences of him acknowledging the obvious. With flu not disappearing at all and only being relabelled 'Covid-19' he would have to contemplate that 'Covid' was a hoax on a scale that is hard to imagine. You need guts and commitment to truth to even go there and that's clearly something Samuel Lovett does not have in abundance. He would never have got it through the editors anyway.

Tens of thousands die in the United States alone every winter from flu including many with pneumonia complications. CDC figures record *45 million* Americans diagnosed with flu in 2017-2018 of which 61,000 died and some reports claim 80,000. Where was the same hysteria then that we have seen with 'Covid-19'? Some 250,000 Americans are admitted to hospital with pneumonia every year with about 50,000 cases proving fatal. About 65 million suffer respiratory disease every year and three million deaths makes this the third biggest cause of death worldwide. You only have to redesignate a portion of all these people 'Covid-19' and you have an instant global pandemic or the *appearance* of one. Why would doctors do this? They are told to do this and all but a few dare not refuse those who must be obeyed. Doctors in general are not researching their own

knowledge and instead take it direct and unquestioned from the authorities that own them and their careers. The authorities say they must now diagnose these symptoms 'Covid-19' and not flu, or whatever, and they do it. Dark suits say put 'Covid-19' on death certificates no matter what the cause of death and the doctors do it. Renegade Minds don't fall for the illusion that doctors and medical staff are all highly-intelligent, highly-principled, seekers of medical truth. *Some are*, but not the majority. They are repeaters, gofers, and yes sir, no sir, purveyors of what the system demands they purvey. The 'Covid' con is not merely confined to diseases of the lungs. Instructions to doctors to put 'Covid-19' on death certificates for anyone dying of *anything* within 28 days (or much more) of a positive test not testing for the 'virus' opened the floodgates. The term dying *with* 'Covid' and not *of* 'Covid' was coined to cover the truth. Whether it was a *with* or an *of* they were all added to the death numbers attributed to the 'deadly virus' compiled by national governments and globally by the Gates-funded Johns Hopkins operation in the United States that was so involved in those 'pandemic' simulations. Fraudulent deaths were added to the ever-growing list of fraudulent 'cases' from false positives from a false test. No wonder Professor Walter Ricciardi, scientific advisor to the Italian minister of health, said after the Lombardy hysteria had done its job that 'Covid' death rates were due to Italy having the second oldest population in the world and to *how hospitals record deaths*:

> The way in which we code deaths in our country is very generous in the sense that all the people who die in hospitals with the coronavirus are deemed to be dying of the coronavirus. On re-evaluation by the National Institute of Health, only 12 per cent of death certificates have shown a direct causality from coronavirus, while 88 per cent of patients who have died have at least one pre-morbidity – many had two or three.

This is extraordinary enough when you consider the propaganda campaign to use Italy to terrify the world, but how can they even say twelve percent were genuine when the 'virus' has not been shown to exist, its 'code' is a computer program, and diagnosis comes from a test not testing for it? As in China, and soon the world, 'Covid-19' in

Italy was a redesignation of diagnosis. Lies and corruption were to become the real 'pandemic' fuelled by a pathetically-compliant medical system taking its orders from the tiny few at the top of their national hierarchy who answered to the World Health Organization which answers to Gates and the Cult. Doctors were told – ordered – to diagnose a particular set of symptoms 'Covid-19' and put that on the death certificate for any cause of death if the patient had tested positive with a test not testing for the virus or had 'Covid' symptoms like the flu. The United States even introduced big financial incentives to manipulate the figures with hospitals receiving £4,600 from the Medicare system for diagnosing someone with regular pneumonia, $13,000 if they made the diagnosis from the same symptoms 'Covid-19' pneumonia, and $39, 000 if they put a 'Covid' diagnosed patient on a ventilator that would almost certainly kill them. A few – painfully and pathetically few – medical whistleblowers revealed (before Cult-owned YouTube deleted their videos) that they had been instructed to 'let the patient crash' and put them straight on a ventilator instead of going through a series of far less intrusive and dangerous methods as they would have done before the pandemic hoax began and the financial incentives kicked in. We are talking cold-blooded murder given that ventilators are so damaging to respiratory systems they are usually the last step before heaven awaits. Renegade Minds never fall for the belief that people in white coats are all angels of mercy and cannot be full-on psychopaths. I have explained in detail in *The Answer* how what I am describing here played out across the world coordinated by the World Health Organization through the medical hierarchies in almost every country.

Medical scientist calls it

Information about the non-existence of the 'virus' began to emerge for me in late March, 2020, and mushroomed after that. I was sent an email by Sir Julian Rose, a writer, researcher, and organic farming promotor, from a medical scientist friend of his in the United States. Even at that early stage in March the scientist was able to explain

how the 'Covid' hoax was being manipulated. He said there were no reliable tests for a specific 'Covid-19 virus' and nor were there any reliable agencies or media outlets for reporting numbers of actual 'Covid-19' cases. We have seen in the long period since then that he was absolutely right. 'Every action and reaction to Covid-19 is based on totally flawed data and we simply cannot make accurate assessments,' he said. Most people diagnosed with 'Covid-19' were showing nothing more than cold and flu-like symptoms 'because most coronavirus strains *are* nothing more than cold/flu-like symptoms'. We had farcical situations like an 84-year-old German man testing positive for 'Covid-19' and his nursing home ordered to quarantine only for him to be found to have a common cold. The scientist described back then why PCR tests and what he called the 'Mickey Mouse test kits' were useless for what they were claimed to be identifying. 'The idea these kits can isolate a specific virus like Covid-19 is nonsense,' he said. Significantly, he pointed out that 'if you want to create a totally false panic about a totally false pandemic – pick a coronavirus'. This is exactly what the Cult-owned Gates, World Economic Forum and Johns Hopkins University did with their Event 201 'simulation' followed by their real-life simulation called the 'pandemic'. The scientist said that all you had to do was select the sickest of people with respiratory-type diseases in a single location – 'say Wuhan' – and administer PCR tests to them. You can then claim that anyone showing 'viral sequences' similar to a coronavirus 'which will inevitably be quite a few' is suffering from a 'new' disease:

> Since you already selected the sickest flu cases a fairly high proportion of your sample will go on to die. You can then say this 'new' virus has a CFR [case fatality rate] higher than the flu and use this to infuse more concern and do more tests which will of course produce more 'cases', which expands the testing, which produces yet more 'cases' and so on and so on. Before long you have your 'pandemic', and all you have done is use a simple test kit trick to convert the worst flu and pneumonia cases into something new that doesn't ACTUALLY EXIST [my emphasis].

He said that you then 'just run the same scam in other countries' and make sure to keep the fear message running high 'so that people

will feel panicky and less able to think critically'. The only problem to overcome was the fact *there is no* actual new deadly pathogen and only regular sick people. This meant that deaths from the 'new deadly pathogen' were going to be way too low for a real new deadly virus pandemic, but he said this could be overcome in the following ways – all of which would go on to happen:

1. You can claim this is just the beginning and more deaths are imminent [you underpin this with fantasy 'computer projections']. Use this as an excuse to quarantine everyone and then claim the quarantine prevented the expected millions of dead.

2. You can [say that people] 'minimizing' the dangers are irresponsible and bully them into not talking about numbers.

3. You can talk crap about made up numbers hoping to blind people with pseudoscience.

4. You can start testing well people (who, of course, will also likely have shreds of coronavirus [RNA] in them) and thus inflate your 'case figures' with 'asymptomatic carriers' (you will of course have to spin that to sound deadly even though any virologist knows the more symptom-less cases you have the less deadly is your pathogen).

The scientist said that if you take these simple steps 'you can have your own entirely manufactured pandemic up and running in weeks'. His analysis made so early in the hoax was brilliantly prophetic of what would actually unfold. Pulling all the information together in these recent chapters we have this is simple 1, 2, 3, of how you can delude virtually the entire human population into believing in a 'virus' that doesn't exist:

- A 'Covid case' is someone who tests positive with a test not testing for the 'virus'.

- A 'Covid death' is someone who dies of *any cause* within 28 days (or much longer) of testing positive with a test not testing for the 'virus.

- Asymptomatic means there is nothing wrong with you, but they claim you can pass on what you don't have to justify locking

down (quarantining) healthy people in totality.

The foundations of the hoax are that simple. A study involving ten million people in Wuhan, published in November, 2020, demolished the whole lie about those without symptoms passing on the 'virus'. They found '300 asymptomatic cases' and traced their contacts to find that not one of them was detected with the 'virus'. 'Asymptomatic' patients and their contacts were isolated for no less than two weeks and nothing changed. I know it's all crap, but if you are going to claim that those without symptoms can transmit 'the virus' then you must produce evidence for that and they never have. Even World Health Organization official Dr Maria Van Kerkhove, head of the emerging diseases and zoonosis unit, said as early as June, 2020, that she doubted the validity of asymptomatic transmission. She said that 'from the data we have, it still seems to be rare that an asymptomatic person actually transmits onward to a secondary individual' and by 'rare' she meant that she couldn't cite any case of asymptomatic transmission.

The Ferguson factor

The problem for the Cult as it headed into March, 2020, when the script had lockdown due to start, was that despite all the manipulation of the case and death figures they still did not have enough people alleged to have died from 'Covid' to justify mass house arrest. This was overcome in the way the scientist described: 'You can claim this is just the beginning and more deaths are imminent … Use this as an excuse to quarantine everyone and then claim the quarantine prevented the expected millions of dead.' Enter one Professor Neil Ferguson, the Gates-funded 'epidemiologist' at the Gates-funded Imperial College in London. Ferguson is Britain's Christian Drosten in that he has a dire record of predicting health outcomes, but is still called upon to advise government on the next health outcome when another 'crisis' comes along. This may seem to be a strange and ridiculous thing to do. Why would you keep turning for policy guidance to people who have a history of being

monumentally wrong? Ah, but it makes sense from the Cult point of view. These 'experts' keep on producing predictions that suit the Cult agenda for societal transformation and so it was with Neil Ferguson as he revealed his horrific (and clearly insane) computer model predictions that allowed lockdowns to be imposed in Britain, the United States and many other countries. Ferguson does not have even an A-level in biology and would appear to have no formal training in computer modelling, medicine or epidemiology, according to Derek Winton, an MSc in Computational Intelligence. He wrote an article somewhat aghast at what Ferguson did which included taking no account of respiratory disease 'seasonality' which means it is far worse in the winter months. Who would have thought that respiratory disease could be worse in the winter? Well, certainly not Ferguson.

The massively China-connected Imperial College and its bizarre professor provided the excuse for the long-incubated Chinese model of human control to travel westward at lightning speed. Imperial College confirms on its website that it collaborates with the Chinese Research Institute; publishes more than 600 research papers every year with Chinese research institutions; has 225 Chinese staff; 2,600 Chinese students – the biggest international group; 7,000 former students living in China which is the largest group outside the UK; and was selected for a tour by China's President Xi Jinping during his state visit to the UK in 2015. The college takes major donations from China and describes itself as the UK's number one university collaborator with Chinese research institutions. The China communist/fascist government did not appear phased by the woeful predictions of Ferguson and Imperial when during the lockdown that Ferguson induced the college signed a five-year collaboration deal with China tech giant Huawei that will have Huawei's indoor 5G network equipment installed at the college's West London tech campus along with an 'AI cloud platform'. The deal includes Chinese sponsorship of Imperial's Venture Catalyst entrepreneurship competition. Imperial is an example of the enormous influence the Chinese government has within British and North American

universities and research centres – and further afield. Up to 200 academics from more than a dozen UK universities are being investigated on suspicion of 'unintentionally' helping the Chinese government build weapons of mass destruction by 'transferring world-leading research in advanced military technology such as aircraft, missile designs and cyberweapons'. Similar scandals have broken in the United States, but it's all a coincidence. Imperial College serves the agenda in many other ways including the promotion of every aspect of the United Nations Agenda 21/2030 (the Great Reset) and produced computer models to show that human-caused 'climate change' is happening when in the real world it isn't. Imperial College is driving the climate agenda as it drives the 'Covid' agenda (both Cult hoaxes) while Patrick Vallance, the UK government's Chief Scientific Adviser on 'Covid', was named Chief Scientific Adviser to the UN 'climate change' conference known as COP26 hosted by the government in Glasgow, Scotland. 'Covid' and 'climate' are fundamentally connected.

Professor Woeful

From Imperial's bosom came Neil Ferguson still advising government despite his previous disasters and it was announced early on that he and other key people like UK Chief Medical Adviser Chris Whitty had caught the 'virus' as the propaganda story was being sold. Somehow they managed to survive and we had Prime Minister Boris Johnson admitted to hospital with what was said to be a severe version of the 'virus' in this same period. His whole policy and demeanour changed when he returned to Downing Street. It's a small world with these government advisors – especially in their communal connections to Gates – and Ferguson had partnered with Whitty to write a paper called 'Infectious disease: Tough choices to reduce Ebola transmission' which involved another scare-story that didn't happen. Ferguson's 'models' predicted that up to150, 000 could die from 'mad cow disease', or BSE, and its version in sheep if it was transmitted to humans. BSE was not transmitted and instead triggered by an organophosphate pesticide used to treat a pest on

cows. Fewer than 200 deaths followed from the human form. Models by Ferguson and his fellow incompetents led to the unnecessary culling of millions of pigs, cattle and sheep in the foot and mouth outbreak in 2001 which destroyed the lives and livelihoods of farmers and their families who had often spent decades building their herds and flocks. Vast numbers of these animals did not have foot and mouth and had no contact with the infection. Another 'expert' behind the cull was Professor Roy Anderson, a computer modeller at Imperial College specialising in the epidemiology of *human*, not animal, disease. Anderson has served on the Bill and Melinda Gates Grand Challenges in Global Health advisory board and chairs another Gates-funded organisation. Gates is everywhere.

In a precursor to the 'Covid' script Ferguson backed closing schools 'for prolonged periods' over the swine flu 'pandemic' in 2009 and said it would affect a third of the world population if it continued to spread at the speed he claimed to be happening. His mates at Imperial College said much the same and a news report said: 'One of the authors, the epidemiologist and disease modeller Neil Ferguson, who sits on the World Health Organisation's emergency committee for the outbreak, said the virus had "full pandemic potential".' Professor Liam Donaldson, the Chris Whitty of his day as Chief Medical Officer, said the worst case could see 30 percent of the British people infected by swine flu with 65,000 dying. Ferguson and Donaldson were indeed proved correct when at the end of the year the number of deaths attributed to swine flu was 392. The term 'expert' is rather liberally applied unfortunately, not least to complete idiots. Swine flu 'projections' were great for GlaxoSmithKline (GSK) as millions rolled in for its Pandemrix influenza vaccine which led to brain damage with children most affected. The British government (taxpayers) paid out more than £60 million in compensation after GSK was given immunity from prosecution. Yet another 'Covid' déjà vu. Swine flu was supposed to have broken out in Mexico, but Dr Wolfgang Wodarg, a German doctor, former member of parliament and critic of the 'Covid' hoax, observed 'the spread of swine flu' in Mexico City at the time. He

said: 'What we experienced in Mexico City was a very mild flu which did not kill more than usual – which killed even fewer people than usual.' Hyping the fear against all the facts is not unique to 'Covid' and has happened many times before. Ferguson is reported to have over-estimated the projected death toll of bird flu (H5N1) by some three million-fold, but bird flu vaccine makers again made a killing from the scare. This is some of the background to the Neil Ferguson who produced the perfectly-timed computer models in early 2020 predicting that half a million people would die in Britain without draconian lockdown and 2.2 million in the United States. Politicians panicked, people panicked, and lockdowns of alleged short duration were instigated to 'flatten the curve' of cases gleaned from a test not testing for the 'virus'. I said at the time that the public could forget the 'short duration' bit. This was an agenda to destroy the livelihoods of the population and force them into mass control through dependency and there was going to be nothing 'short' about it. American researcher Daniel Horowitz described the consequences of the 'models' spewed out by Gates-funded Ferguson and Imperial College:

> What led our government and the governments of many other countries into panic was a single Imperial College of UK study, funded by global warming activists, that predicted 2.2 million deaths if we didn't lock down the country. In addition, the reported 8-9% death rate in Italy scared us into thinking there was some other mutation of this virus that they got, which might have come here.
>
> Together with the fact that we were finally testing and had the ability to actually report new cases, we thought we were headed for a death spiral. But again … we can't flatten a curve if we don't know when the curve started.

How about it *never* started?

Giving them what they want

An investigation by German news outlet *Welt Am Sonntag (World on Sunday)* revealed how in March, 2020, the German government gathered together 'leading scientists from several research institutes and universities' and 'together, they were to produce a [modelling]

paper that would serve as legitimization for further tough political measures'. The Cult agenda was justified by computer modelling not based on evidence or reality; it was specifically constructed to justify the Cult demand for lockdowns all over the world to destroy the independent livelihoods of the global population. All these modellers and everyone responsible for the 'Covid' hoax have a date with a trial like those in Nuremberg after World War Two when Nazis faced the consequences of their war crimes. These corrupt-beyond-belief 'modellers' wrote the paper according to government instructions and it said that that if lockdown measures were lifted then up to one million Germans would die from 'Covid-19' adding that some would die 'agonizingly at home, gasping for breath' unable to be treated by hospitals that couldn't cope. All lies. No matter – it gave the Cult all that it wanted. What did long-time government 'modeller' Neil Ferguson say? If the UK and the United States didn't lockdown half a million would die in Britain and 2.2 million Americans. Anyone see a theme here? 'Modellers' are such a crucial part of the lockdown strategy that we should look into their background and follow the money. Researcher Rosemary Frei produced an excellent article headlined 'The Modelling-paper Mafiosi'. She highlights a guy called John Edmunds, a British epidemiologist, and professor in the Faculty of Epidemiology and Population Health at the London School of Hygiene & Tropical Medicine. He studied at Imperial College. Edmunds is a member of government 'Covid' advisory bodies which have been dictating policy, the New and Emerging Respiratory Virus Threats Advisory Group (NERVTAG) and the Scientific Advisory Group for Emergencies (SAGE).

Ferguson, another member of NERVTAG and SAGE, led the way with the original 'virus' and Edmunds has followed in the 'variant' stage and especially the so-called UK or Kent variant known as the 'Variant of Concern' (VOC) B.1.1.7. He said in a co-written report for the Centre for Mathematical modelling of Infectious Diseases at the London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine, with input from the Centre's 'Covid-19' Working Group, that there was 'a realistic

possibility that VOC B.1.1.7 is associated with an increased risk of death compared to non-VOC viruses'. Fear, fear, fear, get the vaccine, fear, fear, fear, get the vaccine. Rosemary Frei reveals that almost all the paper's authors and members of the modelling centre's 'Covid-19' Working Group receive funding from the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation and/or the associated Gates-funded Wellcome Trust. The paper was published by e-journal *Medr χiv* which only publishes papers not peer-reviewed and the journal was established by an organisation headed by Facebook's Mark Zuckerberg and his missus. What a small world it is. Frei discovered that Edmunds is on the Scientific Advisory Board of the Coalition for Epidemic Preparedness Innovations (CEPI) which was established by the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation, Klaus Schwab's Davos World Economic Forum and Big Pharma giant Wellcome. CEPI was 'launched in Davos [in 2017] to develop vaccines to stop future epidemics', according to its website. 'Our mission is to accelerate the development of vaccines against emerging infectious diseases and enable equitable access to these vaccines for people during outbreaks.' What kind people they are. Rosemary Frei reveals that Public Health England (PHE) director Susan Hopkins is an author of her organisation's non-peer-reviewed reports on 'new variants'. Hopkins is a professor of infectious diseases at London's Imperial College which is gifted tens of millions of dollars a year by the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation. Gates-funded modelling disaster Neil Ferguson also co-authors Public Health England reports and he spoke in December, 2020, about the potential danger of the B.1.1.7. 'UK variant' promoted by Gates-funded modeller John Edmunds. When I come to the 'Covid vaccines' the 'new variants' will be shown for what they are – bollocks.

Connections, connections

All these people and modellers are lockdown-obsessed or, put another way, they demand what the Cult demands. Edmunds said in January, 2021, that to ease lockdowns too soon would be a disaster and they had to 'vaccinate much, much, much more widely than the

elderly'. Rosemary Frei highlights that Edmunds is married to Jeanne Pimenta who is described in a LinkedIn profile as director of epidemiology at GlaxoSmithKline (GSK) and she held shares in the company. Patrick Vallance, co-chair of SAGE and the government's Chief Scientific Adviser, is a former executive of GSK and has a deferred bonus of shares in the company worth £600,000. GSK has serious business connections with Bill Gates and is collaborating with mRNA-'vaccine' company CureVac to make 'vaccines' for the new variants that Edmunds is talking about. GSK is planning a 'Covid vaccine' with drug giant Sanofi. Puppet Prime Minister Boris Johnson announced in the spring of 2021 that up to 60 million vaccine doses were to be made at the GSK facility at Barnard Castle in the English North East. Barnard Castle, with a population of just 6,000, was famously visited in breach of lockdown rules in April, 2020, by Johnson aide Dominic Cummings who said that he drove there 'to test his eyesight' before driving back to London. Cummings would be better advised to test his integrity – not that it would take long. The GSK facility had nothing to do with his visit then although I'm sure Patrick Vallance would have been happy to arrange an introduction and some tea and biscuits. Ruthless psychopath Gates has made yet another fortune from vaccines in collaboration with Big Pharma companies and gushes at the phenomenal profits to be made from vaccines – more than a 20-to-1 return as he told one interviewer. Gates also tweeted in December, 2019, with the foreknowledge of what was coming: 'What's next for our foundation? I'm particularly excited about what the next year could mean for one of the best buys in global health: vaccines.'

Modeller John Edmunds is a big promotor of vaccines as all these people appear to be. He's the dean of the London School of Hygiene & Tropical Medicine's Faculty of Epidemiology and Population Health which is primarily funded by the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation and the Gates-established and funded GAVI vaccine alliance which is the Gates vehicle to vaccinate the world. The organisation Doctors Without Borders has described GAVI as being 'aimed more at supporting drug-industry desires to promote new

products than at finding the most efficient and sustainable means for fighting the diseases of poverty'. But then that's why the psychopath Gates created it. John Edmunds said in a video that the London School of Hygiene & Tropical Medicine is involved in every aspect of vaccine development including large-scale clinical trials. He contends that mathematical modelling can show that vaccines protect individuals and society. That's on the basis of shit in and shit out, I take it. Edmunds serves on the UK Vaccine Network as does Ferguson and the government's foremost 'Covid' adviser, the grim-faced, dark-eyed Chris Whitty. The Vaccine Network says it works 'to support the government to identify and shortlist targeted investment opportunities for the most promising vaccines and vaccine technologies that will help combat infectious diseases with epidemic potential, and to address structural issues related to the UK's broader vaccine infrastructure'. Ferguson is acting Director of the Imperial College Vaccine Impact Modelling Consortium which has funding from the Bill and Melina Gates Foundation and the Gates-created GAVI 'vaccine alliance'. Anyone wonder why these characters see vaccines as the answer to every problem? Ferguson is wildly enthusiastic in his support for GAVI's campaign to vaccine children en masse in poor countries. You would expect someone like Gates who has constantly talked about the need to reduce the population to want to fund vaccines to keep more people alive. I'm sure that's why he does it. The John Edmunds London School of Hygiene & Tropical Medicine (LSHTM) has a Vaccines Manufacturing Innovation Centre which develops, tests and commercialises vaccines. Rosemary Frei writes:

> The vaccines centre also performs affiliated activities like combating 'vaccine hesitancy'. The latter includes the Vaccine Confidence Project. The project's stated purpose is, among other things, 'to provide analysis and guidance for early response and engagement with the public to ensure sustained confidence in vaccines and immunisation'. The Vaccine Confidence Project's director is LSHTM professor Heidi Larson. For more than a decade she's been researching how to combat vaccine hesitancy.

How the bloody hell can blokes like John Edmunds and Neil Ferguson with those connections and financial ties model 'virus' case

and death projections for the government and especially in a way that gives their paymasters like Gates exactly what they want? It's insane, but this is what you find throughout the world.

'Covid' is not dangerous, oops, wait, yes it is

Only days before Ferguson's nightmare scenario made Jackboot Johnson take Britain into a China-style lockdown to save us from a deadly 'virus' the UK government website gov.uk was reporting something very different to Ferguson on a page of official government guidance for 'high consequence infectious diseases (HCID)'. It said this about 'Covid-19':

> As of 19 March 2020, COVID-19 *is no longer considered to be a high consequence infectious diseases (HCID) in the UK* [my emphasis]. The 4 nations public health HCID group made an interim recommendation in January 2020 to classify COVID-19 as an HCID. This was based on consideration of the UK HCID criteria about the virus and the disease with information available during the early stages of the outbreak.
>
> Now that more is known about COVID-19, the public health bodies in the UK have reviewed the most up to date information about COVID-19 against the UK HCID criteria. They have determined that several features have now changed; in particular, more information is available about mortality rates (low overall), and there is now greater clinical awareness and a specific and sensitive laboratory test, the availability of which continues to increase. The Advisory Committee on Dangerous Pathogens (ACDP) is also of the opinion that COVID-19 should no longer be classified as an HCID.

Soon after the government had been exposed for downgrading the risk they upgraded it again and everyone was back to singing from the same Cult hymn book. Ferguson and his fellow Gates clones indicated that lockdowns and restrictions would have to continue until a Gates-funded vaccine was developed. Gates said the same because Ferguson and his like were repeating the Gates script which is the Cult script. 'Flatten the curve' became an ongoing nightmare of continuing lockdowns with periods in between of severe restrictions in pursuit of destroying independent incomes and had nothing to do with protecting health about which the Cult gives not a shit. Why wouldn't Ferguson be pushing a vaccine 'solution' when he's owned by vaccine-obsessive Gates who makes a fortune from them and

when Ferguson heads the Vaccine Impact Modelling Consortium at Imperial College funded by the Gates Foundation and GAVI, the 'vaccine alliance', created by Gates as his personal vaccine promotion operation? To compound the human catastrophe that Ferguson's 'models' did so much to create he was later exposed for breaking his own lockdown rules by having sexual liaisons with his married girlfriend Antonia Staats at his home while she was living at another location with her husband and children. Staats was a 'climate' activist and senior campaigner at the Soros-funded Avaaz which I wouldn't trust to tell me that grass is green. Ferguson had to resign as a government advisor over this hypocrisy in May, 2020, but after a period of quiet he was back being quoted by the ridiculous media on the need for more lockdowns and a vaccine rollout. Other government-advising 'scientists' from Imperial College' held the fort in his absence and said lockdown could be indefinite until a vaccine was found. The Cult script was being sung by the payrolled choir. I said there was no intention of going back to 'normal' when the 'vaccine' came because the 'vaccine' is part of a very different agenda that I will discuss in Human 2.0. Why would the Cult want to let the world go back to normal when destroying that normal forever was the whole point of what was happening? House arrest, closing businesses and schools through lockdown, (un)social distancing and masks all followed the Ferguson fantasy models. Again as I predicted (these people are so predictable) when the 'vaccine' arrived we were told that house arrest, lockdown, (un)social distancing and masks would still have to continue. I will deal with the masks in the next chapter because they are of fundamental importance.

Where's the 'pandemic'?

Any mildly in-depth assessment of the figures revealed what was really going on. Cult-funded and controlled organisations still have genuine people working within them such is the number involved. So it is with Genevieve Briand, assistant program director of the Applied Economics master's degree program at Johns Hopkins

University. She analysed the impact that 'Covid-19' had on deaths from *all* causes in the United States using official data from the CDC for the period from early February to early September, 2020. She found that allegedly 'Covid' *related*-deaths exceeded those from heart disease which she found strange with heart disease always the biggest cause of fatalities. Her research became even more significant when she noted the sudden decline in 2020 of *all* non-'Covid' deaths: 'This trend is completely contrary to the pattern observed in all previous years … the total decrease in deaths by other causes almost exactly equals the increase in deaths by Covid-19.' This was such a game, set and match in terms of what was happening that Johns Hopkins University deleted the article on the grounds that it 'was being used to support false and dangerous inaccuracies about the impact of the pandemic'. No – because it exposed the scam from official CDC figures and this was confirmed when those figures were published in January, 2021. Here we can see the effect of people dying from heart attacks, cancer, road accidents and gunshot wounds – *anything* – having 'Covid-19' on the death certificate along with those diagnosed from 'symptoms' who had even not tested positive with a test not testing for the 'virus'. I am not kidding with the gunshot wounds, by the way. Brenda Bock, coroner in Grand County, Colorado, revealed that two gunshot victims tested positive for the 'virus' within the previous 30 days and were therefore classified as 'Covid deaths'. Bock said: 'These two people had tested positive for Covid, but that's not what killed them. A gunshot wound is what killed them.' She said she had not even finished her investigation when the state listed the gunshot victims as deaths due to the 'virus'. The death and case figures for 'Covid-19' are an absolute joke and yet they are repeated like parrots by the media, politicians and alleged medical 'experts'. The official Cult narrative is the only show in town.

Genevieve Briand found that deaths from all causes were not exceptional in 2020 compared with previous years and a Spanish magazine published figures that said the same about Spain which was a 'Covid' propaganda hotspot at one point. *Discovery Salud*, a

health and medicine magazine, quoted government figures which showed how 17,000 *fewer* people died in Spain in 2020 than in 2019 and more than 26,000 fewer than in 2018. The age-standardised mortality rate for England and Wales when age distribution is taken into account was significantly lower in 2020 than the 1970s, 80s and 90s, and was only the ninth highest since 2000. Where is the 'pandemic'?

Post mortems and autopsies virtually disappeared for 'Covid' deaths amid claims that 'virus-infected' bodily fluids posed a risk to those carrying out the autopsy. This was rejected by renowned German pathologist and forensic doctor Klaus Püschel who said that he and his staff had by then done 150 autopsies on 'Covid' patients with no problems at all. He said they were needed to know why some 'Covid' patients suffered blood clots and not severe respiratory infections. The 'virus' is, after all, called SARS or 'severe acute respiratory syndrome'. I highlighted in the spring of 2020 this phenomenon and quoted New York intensive care doctor Cameron Kyle-Sidell who posted a soon deleted YouTube video to say that they had been told to prepare to treat an infectious disease called 'Covid-19', but that was not what they were dealing with. Instead he likened the lung condition of the most severely ill patients to what you would expect with cabin depressurisation in a plane at 30,000 feet or someone dropped on the top of Everest without oxygen or acclimatisation. I have never said this is not happening to a small minority of alleged 'Covid' patients – I am saying this is not caused by a phantom 'contagious virus'. Indeed Kyle-Sidell said that 'Covid-19' was not the disease they were told was coming their way. 'We are operating under a medical paradigm that is untrue,' he said, and he believed they were treating the wrong disease: 'These people are being slowly starved of oxygen.' Patients would take off their oxygen masks in a state of fear and stress and while they were blue in the face on the brink of death. They did not look like patients dying of pneumonia. You can see why they don't want autopsies when their virus doesn't exist and there is another condition in some people that they don't wish to be uncovered. I should add here that

the 5G system of millimetre waves was being rapidly introduced around the world in 2020 and even more so now as they fire 5G at the Earth from satellites. At 60 gigahertz within the 5G range that frequency interacts with the oxygen molecule and stops people breathing in sufficient oxygen to be absorbed into the bloodstream. They are installing 5G in schools and hospitals. The world is not mad or anything. 5G can cause major changes to the lungs and blood as I detail in *The Answer* and these consequences are labelled 'Covid-19', the alleged symptoms of which can be caused by 5G and other electromagnetic frequencies as cells respond to radiation poisoning.

The 'Covid death' scam

Dr Scott Jensen, a Minnesota state senator and medical doctor, exposed 'Covid' Medicare payment incentives to hospitals and death certificate manipulation. He said he was sent a seven-page document by the US Department of Health 'coaching' him on how to fill out death certificates which had never happened before. The document said that he didn't need to have a laboratory test for 'Covid-19' to put that on the death certificate and that shocked him when death certificates are supposed to be about facts. Jensen described how doctors had been 'encouraged, if not pressured' to make a diagnosis of 'Covid-19' if they thought it was probable or *'presumed*'. No positive test was necessary – not that this would have mattered anyway. He said doctors were told to diagnose 'Covid' by symptoms when these were the same as colds, allergies, other respiratory problems, and certainly with influenza which 'disappeared' in the 'Covid' era. A common sniffle was enough to get the dreaded verdict. Ontario authorities decreed that a single care home resident with *one* symptom from a long list must lead to the isolation of the entire home. Other courageous doctors like Jensen made the same point about death figure manipulation and how deaths by other causes were falling while 'Covid-19 deaths' were rising at the same rate due to re-diagnosis. Their videos rarely survive long on YouTube with its Cult-supporting algorithms courtesy of CEO Susan Wojcicki and her bosses at Google. Figure-tampering was so glaring

and ubiquitous that even officials were letting it slip or outright saying it. UK chief scientific adviser Patrick Vallance said on one occasion that 'Covid' on the death certificate doesn't mean 'Covid' was the cause of death (so why the hell is it there?) and we had the rare sight of a BBC reporter telling the truth when she said: 'Someone could be successfully treated for Covid, in say April, discharged, and then in June, get run over by a bus and die … That person would still be counted as a Covid death in England.' Yet the BBC and the rest of the world media went on repeating the case and death figures as if they were real. Illinois Public Health Director Dr Ngozi Ezike revealed the deceit while her bosses must have been clenching their buttocks:

> If you were in a hospice and given a few weeks to live and you were then found to have Covid that would be counted as a Covid death. [There might be] a clear alternate cause, but it is still listed as a Covid death. So everyone listed as a Covid death doesn't mean that was the cause of the death, but that they had Covid at the time of death.

Yes, a 'Covid virus' never shown to exist and tested for with a test not testing for the 'virus'. In the first period of the pandemic hoax through the spring of 2020 the process began of designating almost everything a 'Covid' death and this has continued ever since. I sat in a restaurant one night listening to a loud conversation on the next table where a family was discussing in bewilderment how a relative who had no symptoms of 'Covid', and had died of a long-term problem, could have been diagnosed a death by the 'virus'. I could understand their bewilderment. If they read this book they will know why this medical fraud has been perpetrated the world over.

Some media truth shock

The media ignored the evidence of death certificate fraud until eventually one columnist did speak out when she saw it first-hand. Bel Mooney is a long-time national newspaper journalist in Britain currently working for the *Daily Mail*. Her article on February 19th, 2021, carried this headline: 'My dad Ted passed three Covid tests

and died of a chronic illness yet he's officially one of Britain's 120,000 victims of the virus and is far from alone ... so how many more are there?' She told how her 99-year-old father was in a care home with a long-standing chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and vascular dementia. Maybe, but he was still aware enough to tell her from the start that there was no 'virus' and he refused the 'vaccine' for that reason. His death was not unexpected given his chronic health problems and Mooney said she was shocked to find that 'Covid-19' was declared the cause of death on his death certificate. She said this was a 'bizarre and unacceptable untruth' for a man with long-time health problems who had tested negative twice at the home for the 'virus'. I was also shocked by this story although not by what she said. I had been highlighting the death certificate manipulation for ten months. It was the confirmation that a professional full-time journalist only realised this was going on when it affected her directly and neither did she know that whether her dad tested positive or negative was irrelevant with the test not testing for the 'virus'. Where had she been? She said she did not believe in 'conspiracy theories' without knowing I'm sure that this and 'conspiracy theorists' were terms put into widespread circulation by the CIA in the 1960s to discredit those who did not accept the ridiculous official story of the Kennedy assassination. A blanket statement of 'I don't believe in conspiracy theories' is always bizarre. The dictionary definition of the term alone means the world is drowning in conspiracies. What she said was even more daft when her dad had just been affected by the 'Covid' conspiracy. Why else does she think that 'Covid-19' was going on the death certificates of people who died of something else?

To be fair once she saw from personal experience what was happening she didn't mince words. Mooney was called by the care home on the morning of February 9th to be told her father had died in his sleep. When she asked for the official cause of death what came back was 'Covid-19'. Mooney challenged this and was told there had been deaths from Covid on the dementia floor (confirmed by a test not testing for the 'virus') so they considered it 'reasonable

to assume'. 'But doctor,' Mooney rightly protested, 'an assumption isn't a diagnosis.' She said she didn't blame the perfectly decent and sympathetic doctor – 'he was just doing his job'. Sorry, but that's *bullshit*. He wasn't doing his job at all. He was putting a false cause of death on the death certificate and that is a criminal offence for which he should be brought to account and the same with the millions of doctors worldwide who have done the same. They were not doing their job they were following orders and that must not wash at new Nuremberg trials any more than it did at the first ones. Mooney's doctor was 'assuming' (presuming) as he was told to, but 'just following orders' makes no difference to his actions. A doctor's job is to serve the patient and the truth, not follow orders, but that's what they have done all over the world and played a central part in making the 'Covid' hoax possible with all its catastrophic consequences for humanity. Shame on them and they must answer for their actions. Mooney said her disquiet worsened when she registered her father's death by telephone and was told by the registrar there had been very many other cases like hers where 'the deceased' had not tested positive for 'Covid' yet it was recorded as the cause of death. The test may not matter, but those involved at their level *think* it matters and it shows a callous disregard for accurate diagnosis. The pressure to do this is coming from the top of the national 'health' pyramids which in turn obey the World Health Organization which obeys Gates and the Cult. Mooney said the registrar agreed that this must distort the national figures adding that 'the strangest thing is that every winter we record countless deaths from flu, and this winter there have been none. Not one!' She asked if the registrar thought deaths from flu were being misdiagnosed and lumped together with 'Covid' deaths. The answer was a 'puzzled yes'. Mooney said that the funeral director said the same about 'Covid' deaths which had nothing to do with 'Covid'. They had lost count of the number of families upset by this and other funeral companies in different countries have had the same experience. Mooney wrote:

The nightly shroud-waving and shocking close-ups of pain imposed on us by the TV news bewildered and terrified the population into eager compliance with lockdowns. We were invited to 'save the NHS' and to grieve for strangers – the real-life loved ones behind those shocking death counts. Why would the public imagine what I now fear, namely that the way Covid-19 death statistics are compiled might make the numbers seem greater than they are?

Oh, just a little bit – like 100 percent.

Do the maths

Mooney asked why a country would wish to skew its mortality figures by wrongly certifying deaths? What had been going on? Well, if you don't believe in conspiracies you will never find the answer which is that *it's a conspiracy*. She did, however, describe what she had discovered as a 'national scandal'. In reality it's a global scandal and happening everywhere. Pillars of this conspiracy were all put into place before the button was pressed with the Drosten PCR protocol and high amplifications to produce the cases and death certificate changes to secure illusory 'Covid' deaths. Mooney notes that normally two doctors were needed to certify a death, with one having to know the patient, and how the rules were changed in the spring of 2020 to allow one doctor to do this. In the same period 'Covid deaths' were decreed to be all cases where Covid-19 was put on the death certificate even without a positive test or any symptoms. Mooney asked: 'How many of the 30,851 (as of January 15) care home resident deaths with Covid-19 on the certificate (32.4 per cent of all deaths so far) were based on an assumption, like that of my father? And what has that done to our national psyche?'All of them is the answer to the first question and it has devastated and dismantled the national psyche, actually the global psyche, on a colossal scale. In the UK case and death data is compiled by organisations like Public Health England (PHE) and the Office for National Statistics (ONS). Mooney highlights the insane policy of counting a death from any cause as 'Covid-19' if this happens within 28 days of a positive test (with a test not testing for the 'virus') and she points out that ONS statistics reflect deaths 'involving Covid' 'or due to Covid' which meant in practice any

death where 'Covid-19' was mentioned on the death certificate. She described the consequences of this fraud:

> Most people will accept the narrative they are fed, so panicky governments here and in Europe witnessed the harsh measures enacted in totalitarian China and jumped into lockdown. Headlines about Covid deaths tolled like the knell that would bring doomsday to us all. Fear stalked our empty streets. Politicians parroted the frankly ridiculous aim of 'zero Covid' and shut down the economy, while most British people agreed that lockdown was essential and (astonishingly to me, as a patriotic Brit) even wanted more restrictions.
>
> For what? Lies on death certificates? Never mind the grim toll of lives ruined, suicides, schools closed, rising inequality, depression, cancelled hospital treatments, cancer patients in a torture of waiting, poverty, economic devastation, loneliness, families kept apart, and so on. How many lives have been lost as a direct result of lockdown?

She said that we could join in a national chorus of shock and horror at reaching the 120,000 death toll which was surely certain to have been totally skewed all along, but what about the human cost of lockdown justified by these 'death figures'? *The British Medical Journal* had reported a 1,493 percent increase in cases of children taken to Great Ormond Street Hospital with abusive head injuries alone and then there was the effect on families:

> Perhaps the most shocking thing about all this is that families have been kept apart – and obeyed the most irrational, changing rules at the whim of government – because they believed in the statistics. They succumbed to fear, which his generation rejected in that war fought for freedom. Dad (God rest his soul) would be angry. And so am I.

Another theme to watch is that in the winter months when there are more deaths from all causes they focus on 'Covid' deaths and in the summer when the British Lung Foundation says respiratory disease plummets by 80 percent they rage on about 'cases'. Either way fascism on population is always the answer.

Nazi eugenics in the 21st century

Elderly people in care homes have been isolated from their families month after lonely month with no contact with relatives and grandchildren who were banned from seeing them. We were told

that lockdown fascism was to 'protect the vulnerable' like elderly people. At the same time Do Not Resuscitate (DNR) orders were placed on their medical files so that if they needed resuscitation it wasn't done and 'Covid-19' went on their death certificates. Old people were not being 'protected' they were being culled – murdered in truth. DNR orders were being decreed for disabled and young people with learning difficulties or psychological problems. The UK Care Quality Commission, a non-departmental body of the Department of Health and Social Care, found that 34 percent of those working in health and social care were pressured into placing 'do not attempt cardiopulmonary resuscitation' orders on 'Covid' patients who suffered from disabilities and learning difficulties without involving the patient or their families in the decision. UK judges ruled that an elderly woman with dementia should have the DNA-manipulating 'Covid vaccine' against her son's wishes and that a man with severe learning difficulties should have the jab despite his family's objections. Never mind that many had already died. The judiciary always supports doctors and government in fascist dictatorships. They wouldn't dare do otherwise. A horrific video was posted showing fascist officers from Los Angeles police forcibly giving the 'Covid' shot to women with special needs who were screaming that they didn't want it. The same fascists are seen giving the jab to a sleeping elderly woman in a care home. This is straight out of the Nazi playbook. Hitler's Nazis committed mass murder of the mentally ill and physically disabled throughout Germany and occupied territories in the programme that became known as Aktion T4, or just T4. Sabbatian-controlled Hitler and his grotesque crazies set out to kill those they considered useless and unnecessary. The Reich Committee for the Scientific Registering of Hereditary and Congenital Illnesses registered the births of babies identified by physicians to have 'defects'. By 1941 alone more than 5,000 children were murdered by the state and it is estimated that in total the number of innocent people killed in Aktion T4 was between 275,000 and 300,000. Parents were told their children had been sent away for 'special treatment' never to return. It is rather pathetic to see claims about plans for new extermination camps being dismissed today

when the same force behind current events did precisely that 80 years ago. Margaret Sanger was a Cult operative who used 'birth control' to sanitise her programme of eugenics. Organisations she founded became what is now Planned Parenthood. Sanger proposed that 'the whole dysgenic population would have its choice of segregation or sterilization'. These included epileptics, 'feeble-minded', and prostitutes. Sanger opposed charity because it perpetuated 'human waste'. She reveals the Cult mentality and if anyone thinks that extermination camps are a 'conspiracy theory' their naivety is touching if breathtakingly stupid.

If you don't believe that doctors can act with callous disregard for their patients it is worth considering that doctors and medical staff agreed to put government-decreed DNR orders on medical files and do nothing when resuscitation is called for. I don't know what you call such people in your house. In mine they are Nazis from the Josef Mengele School of Medicine. Phenomenal numbers of old people have died worldwide from the effects of lockdown, depression, lack of treatment, the 'vaccine' (more later) and losing the will to live. A common response at the start of the manufactured pandemic was to remove old people from hospital beds and transfer them to nursing homes. The decision would result in a mass cull of elderly people in those homes through lack of treatment – *not* 'Covid'. Care home whistleblowers have told how once the 'Covid' era began doctors would not come to their homes to treat patients and they were begging for drugs like antibiotics that often never came. The most infamous example was ordered by New York governor Andrew Cuomo, brother of a moronic CNN host, who amazingly was given an Emmy Award for his handling of the 'Covid crisis' by the ridiculous Wokers that hand them out. Just how ridiculous could be seen in February, 2021, when a Department of Justice and FBI investigation began into how thousands of old people in New York died in nursing homes after being discharged from hospital to make way for 'Covid' patients on Cuomo's say-so – and how he and his staff covered up these facts. This couldn't have happened to a nicer psychopath. Even then there was a 'Covid' spin. Reports said that

thousands of old people who tested positive for 'Covid' in hospital were transferred to nursing homes to both die of 'Covid' and transmit it to others. No – they were in hospital because they were ill and the fact that they tested positive with a test not testing for the 'virus' is irrelevant. They were ill often with respiratory diseases ubiquitous in old people near the end of their lives. Their transfer out of hospital meant that their treatment stopped and many would go on to die.

They're old. Who gives a damn?

I have exposed in the books for decades the Cult plan to cull the world's old people and even to introduce at some point what they call a 'demise pill' which at a certain age everyone would take and be out of here by law. In March, 2021, Spain legalised euthanasia and assisted suicide following the Netherlands, Belgium, Luxembourg and Canada on the Tiptoe to the demise pill. Treatment of old people by many 'care' homes has been a disgrace in the 'Covid' era. There are many, many, caring staff – I know some. There have, however, been legions of stories about callous treatment of old people and their families. Police were called when families came to take their loved ones home in the light of isolation that was killing them. They became prisoners of the state. Care home residents in insane, fascist Ontario, Canada, were not allowed to leave their *room* once the 'Covid' hoax began. UK staff have even wheeled elderly people away from windows where family members were talking with them. Oriana Criscuolo from Stockport in the English North West dropped off some things for her 80-year-old father who has Parkinson's disease and dementia and she wanted to wave to him through a ground-floor window. She was told that was 'illegal'. When she went anyway they closed the curtains in the middle of the day. Oriana said:

> It's just unbelievable. I cannot understand how care home staff – people who are being paid to care – have become so uncaring. Their behaviour is inhumane and cruel. It's beyond belief.

She was right and this was not a one-off. What a way to end your life in such loveless circumstances. UK registered nurse Nicky Millen, a proper old school nurse for 40 years, said that when she started her career care was based on dignity, choice, compassion and empathy. Now she said 'the things that are important to me have gone out of the window.' She was appalled that people were dying without their loved ones and saying goodbye on iPads. Nicky described how a distressed 89-year-old lady stroked her face and asked her 'how many paracetamol would it take to finish me off'. Life was no longer worth living while not seeing her family. Nicky said she was humiliated in front of the ward staff and patients for letting the lady stroke her face and giving her a cuddle. Such is the dehumanisation that the 'Covid' hoax has brought to the surface. Nicky worked in care homes where patients told her they were being held prisoner. 'I want to live until I die', one said to her. 'I had a lady in tears because she hadn't seen her great-grandson.' Nicky was compassionate old school meeting psychopathic New Normal. She also said she had worked on a 'Covid' ward with no 'Covid' patients. Jewish writer Shai Held wrote an article in March, 2020, which was headlined 'The Staggering, Heartless Cruelty Toward the Elderly'. What he described was happening from the earliest days of lockdown. He said 'the elderly' were considered a group and not unique individuals (the way of the Woke). Shai Held said:

> Notice how the all-too-familiar rhetoric of dehumanization works: 'The elderly' are bunched together as a faceless mass, all of them considered culprits and thus effectively deserving of the suffering the pandemic will inflict upon them. Lost entirely is the fact that the elderly are individual human beings, each with a distinctive face and voice, each with hopes and dreams, memories and regrets, friendships and marriages, loves lost and loves sustained.

'The elderly' have become another dehumanised group for which anything goes and for many that has resulted in cold disregard for their rights and their life. The distinctive face that Held talks about is designed to be deleted by masks until everyone is part of a faceless mass.

'War-zone' hospitals myth

Again and again medical professionals have told me what was really going on and how hospitals 'overrun like war zones' according to the media were virtually empty. The mantra from medical whistleblowers was please don't use my name or my career is over. Citizen journalists around the world sneaked into hospitals to film evidence exposing the 'war-zone' lie. They really *were* largely empty with closed wards and operating theatres. I met a hospital worker in my town on the Isle of Wight during the first lockdown in 2020 who said the only island hospital had never been so quiet. Lockdown was justified by the psychopaths to stop hospitals being overrun. At the same time that the island hospital was near-empty the military arrived here to provide *extra beds*. It was all propaganda to ramp up the fear to ensure compliance with fascism as were never-used temporary hospitals with thousands of beds known as Nightingales and never-used make-shift mortuaries opened by the criminal UK government. A man who helped to install those extra island beds attributed to the army said they were never used and the hospital was empty. Doctors and nurses 'stood around talking or on their phones, wandering down to us to see what we were doing'. There were no masks or social distancing. He accused the useless local island paper, the *County Press*, of 'pumping the fear as if our hospital was overrun and we only have one so it should have been'. He described ambulances parked up with crews outside in deck chairs. When his brother called an ambulance he was told there was a two-hour backlog which he called 'bullshit'. An old lady on the island fell 'and was in a bad way', but a caller who rang for an ambulance was told the situation wasn't urgent enough. Ambulance stations were working under capacity while people would hear ambulances with sirens blaring driving through the streets. When those living near the stations realised what was going on they would follow them as they left, circulated around an urban area with the sirens going, and then came back without stopping. All this was to increase levels of fear and the same goes for the 'ventilator shortage crisis' that cost tens of millions for hastily produced ventilators never to be used.

Ambulance crews that agreed to be exploited in this way for fear propaganda might find themselves a mirror. I wish them well with that. Empty hospitals were the obvious consequence of treatment and diagnoses of non-'Covid' conditions cancelled and those involved handed a death sentence. People have been dying at home from undiagnosed and untreated cancer, heart disease and other life-threatening conditions to allow empty hospitals to deal with a 'pandemic' that wasn't happening.

Death of the innocent

'War-zones' have been laying off nursing staff, even doctors where they can. There was no work for them. Lockdown was justified by saving lives and protecting the vulnerable they were actually killing with DNR orders and preventing empty hospitals being 'overrun'. In Britain the mantra of stay at home to 'save the NHS' was everywhere and across the world the same story was being sold when it was all lies. Two California doctors, Dan Erickson and Artin Massihi at Accelerated Urgent Care in Bakersfield, held a news conference in April, 2020, to say that intensive care units in California were 'empty, essentially', with hospitals shutting floors, not treating patients and laying off doctors. The California health system was working at minimum capacity 'getting rid of doctors because we just don't have the volume'. They said that people with conditions such as heart disease and cancer were not coming to hospital out of fear of 'Covid-19'. Their video was deleted by Susan Wojcicki's Cult-owned YouTube after reaching five million views. Florida governor Ron Desantis, who rejected the severe lockdowns of other states and is being targeted for doing so, said that in March, 2020, every US governor was given models claiming they would run out of hospital beds in days. That was never going to happen and the 'modellers' knew it. Deceit can be found at every level of the system. Urgent children's operations were cancelled including fracture repairs and biopsies to spot cancer. Eric Nicholls, a consultant paediatrician, said 'this is obviously concerning and we need to return to normal operating and to increase capacity as soon as possible'. Psychopaths

in power were rather less concerned *because* they are psychopaths. Deletion of urgent care and diagnosis has been happening all over the world and how many kids and others have died as a result of the actions of these cold and heartless lunatics dictating 'health' policy? The number must be stratospheric. Richard Sullivan, professor of cancer and global health at King's College London, said people feared 'Covid' more than cancer such was the campaign of fear. 'Years of lost life will be quite dramatic', Sullivan said, with 'a huge amount of avoidable mortality'. Sarah Woolnough, executive director for policy at Cancer Research UK, said there had been a 75 percent drop in urgent referrals to hospitals by family doctors of people with suspected cancer. Sullivan said that 'a lot of services have had to scale back – we've seen a dramatic decrease in the amount of elective cancer surgery'. Lockdown deaths worldwide has been absolutely fantastic with the *New York Post* reporting how data confirmed that 'lockdowns end more lives than they save':

> There was a sharp decline in visits to emergency rooms and an increase in fatal heart attacks because patients didn't receive prompt treatment. Many fewer people were screened for cancer. Social isolation contributed to excess deaths from dementia and Alzheimer's.
>
> Researchers predicted that the social and economic upheaval would lead to tens of thousands of "deaths of despair" from drug overdoses, alcoholism and suicide. As unemployment surged and mental-health and substance-abuse treatment programs were interrupted, the reported levels of anxiety, depression and suicidal thoughts increased dramatically, as did alcohol sales and fatal drug overdoses.

This has been happening while nurses and other staff had so much time on their hands in the 'war-zones' that Tic-Tok dancing videos began appearing across the Internet with medical staff dancing around in empty wards and corridors as people died at home from causes that would normally have been treated in hospital.

Mentions in dispatches

One brave and truth-committed whistleblower was Louise Hampton, a call handler with the UK NHS who made a viral Internet video saying she had done 'fuck all' during the 'pandemic'

which was 'a load of bollocks'. She said that 'Covid-19' was rebranded flu and of course she lost her job. This is what happens in the medical and endless other professions now when you tell the truth. Louise filmed inside 'war-zone' accident and emergency departments to show they were empty and I mean *empty* as in no one there. The mainstream media could have done the same and blown the gaff on the whole conspiracy. They haven't to their eternal shame. Not that most 'journalists' seem capable of manifesting shame as with the psychopaths they slavishly repeat without question. The relative few who were admitted with serious health problems were left to die alone with no loved ones allowed to see them because of 'Covid' rules and they included kids dying without the comfort of mum and dad at their bedside while the evil behind this couldn't give a damn. It was all good fun to them. A Scottish NHS staff nurse publicly quit in the spring of 2021 saying: 'I can no longer be part of the lies and the corruption by the government.' She said hospitals 'aren't full, the beds aren't full, beds have been shut, wards have been shut'. Hospitals were never busy throughout 'Covid'. The staff nurse said that Nicola Sturgeon, tragically the leader of the Scottish government, was on television saying save the hospitals and the NHS – 'but the beds are empty' and 'we've not seen flu, we always see flu every year'. She wrote to government and spoke with her union Unison (the unions are Cult-compromised and *useless*, but nothing changed. Many of her colleagues were scared of losing their jobs if they spoke out as they wanted to. She said nursing staff were being affected by wearing masks all day and 'my head is splitting every shift from wearing a mask'. The NHS is part of the fascist tyranny and must be dismantled so we can start again with human beings in charge. (Ironically, hospitals were reported to be busier again when official 'Covid' cases *fell* in spring/summer of 2021 and many other conditions required treatment at the same time as *the fake vaccine rollout*.)

I will cover the 'Covid vaccine' scam in detail later, but it is another indicator of the sickening disregard for human life that I am highlighting here. The DNA-manipulating concoctions do not fulfil

the definition of a 'vaccine', have never been used on humans before and were given only emergency approval because trials were not completed and they continued using the unknowing public. The result was what a NHS senior nurse with responsibility for 'vaccine' procedure said was 'genocide'. She said the 'vaccines' were not 'vaccines'. They had not been shown to be safe and claims about their effectiveness by drug companies were 'poetic licence'. She described what was happening as a 'horrid act of human annihilation'. The nurse said that management had instigated a policy of not providing a Patient Information Leaflet (PIL) before people were 'vaccinated' even though health care professionals are supposed to do this according to protocol. Patients should also be told that they are taking part in an ongoing clinical trial. Her challenges to what is happening had seen her excluded from meetings and ridiculed in others. She said she was told to 'watch my step … or I would find myself surplus to requirements'. The nurse, who spoke anonymously in fear of her career, said she asked her NHS manager why he/she was content with taking part in genocide against those having the 'vaccines'. The reply was that everyone had to play their part and to 'put up, shut up, and get it done'. Government was 'leaning heavily' on NHS management which was clearly leaning heavily on staff. This is how the global 'medical' hierarchy operates and it starts with the Cult and its World Health Organization.

She told the story of a doctor who had the Pfizer jab and when questioned had no idea what was in it. The doctor had never read the literature. We have to stop treating doctors as intellectual giants when so many are moral and medical pygmies. The doctor did not even know that the 'vaccines' were not fully approved or that their trials were ongoing. They were, however, asking their patients if they minded taking part in follow-ups for research purposes – yes, the *ongoing clinical trial*. The nurse said the doctor's ignorance was not rare and she had spoken to a hospital consultant who had the jab without any idea of the background or that the 'trials' had not been completed. Nurses and pharmacists had shown the same ignorance.

'My NHS colleagues have forsaken their duty of care, broken their code of conduct – Hippocratic Oath – and have been brainwashed just the same as the majority of the UK public through propaganda …' She said she had not been able to recruit a single NHS colleague, doctor, nurse or pharmacist to stand with her and speak out. Her union had refused to help. She said that if the genocide came to light she would not hesitate to give evidence at a Nuremberg-type trial against those in power who could have affected the outcomes but didn't.

And all for what?

To put the nonsense into perspective let's say the 'virus' does exist and let's go completely crazy and accept that the official manipulated figures for cases and deaths are accurate. *Even then* a study by Stanford University epidemiologist Dr John Ioannidis published on the World Health Organization website produced an average infection to fatality rate of … *0.23 percent!* Ioannidis said: 'If one could sample equally from all locations globally, the median infection fatality rate might even be substantially lower than the 0.23% observed in my analysis.' For healthy people under 70 it was … *0.05 percent*! This compares with the 3.4 percent claimed by the Cult-owned World Health Organization when the hoax was first played and maximum fear needed to be generated. An updated Stanford study in April, 2021, put the 'infection' to 'fatality' rate at just 0.15 percent. Another team of scientists led by Megan O'Driscoll and Henrik Salje studied data from 45 countries and published their findings on the Nature website. For children and young people the figure is so small it virtually does not register although authorities will be hyping dangers to the young when they introduce DNA-manipulating 'vaccines' for children. The O'Driscoll study produced an average infection-fatality figure of 0.003 for children from birth to four; 0.001 for 5 to 14; 0.003 for 15 to 19; and it was still only 0.456 up to 64. To claim that children must be 'vaccinated' to protect them from 'Covid' is an obvious lie and so there must be another reason and there is. What's more the average age of a 'Covid' death is akin

to the average age that people die in general. The average age of death in England is about 80 for men and 83 for women. The average age of death from alleged 'Covid' is between 82 and 83. California doctors, Dan Erickson and Artin Massihi, said at their April media conference that projection models of millions of deaths had been 'woefully inaccurate'. They produced detailed figures showing that Californians had a 0.03 chance of dying from 'Covid' based on the number of people who tested positive (with a test not testing for the 'virus'). Erickson said there was a 0.1 percent chance of dying from 'Covid' in the *state* of New York, not just the city, and a 0.05 percent chance in Spain, a centre of 'Covid-19' hysteria at one stage. The Stanford studies supported the doctors' data with fatality rate estimates of 0.23 and 0.15 percent. How close are these figures to my estimate of *zero*? Death-rate figures claimed by the World Health Organization at the start of the hoax were some 15 times higher. The California doctors said there was no justification for lockdowns and the economic devastation they caused. Everything they had ever learned about quarantine was that you quarantine the *sick* and not the healthy. They had never seen this before and it made no medical sense.

Why in the in the light of all this would governments and medical systems the world over say that billions must go under house arrest; lose their livelihood; in many cases lose their mind, their health and their life; force people to wear masks dangerous to health and psychology; make human interaction and even family interaction a criminal offence; ban travel; close restaurants, bars, watching live sport, concerts, theatre, and any activity involving human togetherness and discourse; and closing schools to isolate children from their friends and cause many to commit suicide in acts of hopelessness and despair? The California doctors said lockdown consequences included increased child abuse, partner abuse, alcoholism, depression, and other impacts they were seeing every day. Who would do that to the entire human race if not mentally-ill psychopaths of almost unimaginable extremes like Bill Gates? We must face the reality of what we are dealing with and come out of

denial. Fascism and tyranny are made possible only by the target population submitting and acquiescing to fascism and tyranny. The whole of human history shows that to be true. Most people naively and unquestioning believed what they were told about a 'deadly virus' and meekly and weakly submitted to house arrest. Those who didn't believe it – at least in total – still submitted in fear of the consequences of not doing so. For the rest who wouldn't submit draconian fines have been imposed, brutal policing by psychopaths *for* psychopaths, and condemnation from the meek and weak who condemn the Pushbackers on behalf of the very force that has them, too, in its gunsights. 'Pathetic' does not even begin to suffice. Britain's brainless 'Health' Secretary Matt Hancock warned anyone lying to border officials about returning from a list of 'hotspot' countries could face a jail sentence of up to ten years which is more than for racially-aggravated assault, incest and attempting to have sex with a child under 13. Hancock is a lunatic, but he has the state apparatus behind him in a Cult-led chain reaction and the same with UK 'Vaccine Minister' Nadhim Zahawi, a prominent member of the mega-Cult secret society, Le Cercle, which featured in my earlier books. The Cult enforces its will on governments and medical systems; government and medical systems enforce their will on business and police; business enforces its will on staff who enforce it on customers; police enforce the will of the Cult on the population and play their essential part in creating a world of fascist control that their own children and grandchildren will have to live in their entire lives. It is a hierarchical pyramid of imposition and acquiescence and, yes indeedy, of clinical insanity.

Does anyone bright enough to read this book have to ask what the answer is? I think not, but I will reveal it anyway in the fewest of syllables: Tell the psychos and their moronic lackeys to fuck off and let's get on with our lives. We are many – They are few.

CHAPTER SEVEN

War on your mind

One believes things because one has been conditioned to believe them
Aldous Huxley, *Brave New World*

I have described the 'Covid' hoax as a 'Psyop' and that is true in every sense and on every level in accordance with the definition of that term which is psychological warfare. Break down the 'Covid pandemic' to the foundation themes and it is psychological warfare on the human individual and collective mind.

The same can be said for the entire human belief system involving every subject you can imagine. Huxley was right in his contention that people believe what they are conditioned to believe and this comes from the repetition throughout their lives of the same falsehoods. They spew from government, corporations, media and endless streams of 'experts' telling you what the Cult wants you to believe and often believing it themselves (although *far* from always). 'Experts' are rewarded with 'prestigious' jobs and titles and as agents of perceptual programming with regular access to the media. The Cult has to control the narrative – control *information* – or they lose control of the vital, crucial, without-which-they-cannot-prevail public perception of reality. The foundation of that control today is the Internet made possible by the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (DARPA), the incredibly sinister technological arm of the Pentagon. The Internet is the result of military technology.

DARPA openly brags about establishing the Internet which has been a long-term project to lasso the minds of the global population. I have said for decades the plan is to control information to such an extreme that eventually no one would see or hear anything that the Cult does not approve. We are closing in on that end with ferocious censorship since the 'Covid' hoax began and in my case it started back in the 1990s in terms of books and speaking venues. I had to create my own publishing company in 1995 precisely because no one else would publish my books even then. I think they're all still running.

Cult Internet

To secure total control of information they needed the Internet in which pre-programmed algorithms can seek out 'unclean' content for deletion and even stop it being posted in the first place. The Cult had to dismantle print and non-Internet broadcast media to ensure the transfer of information to the appropriate-named 'Web' – a critical expression of the *Cult* web. We've seen the ever-quickening demise of traditional media and control of what is left by a tiny number of corporations operating worldwide. Independent journalism in the mainstream is already dead and never was that more obvious than since the turn of 2020. The Cult wants all information communicated via the Internet to globally censor and allow the plug to be pulled any time. Lockdowns and forced isolation has meant that communication between people has been through electronic means and no longer through face-to-face discourse and discussion. Cult psychopaths have targeted the bars, restaurants, sport, venues and meeting places in general for this reason. None of this is by chance and it's to stop people gathering in any kind of privacy or number while being able to track and monitor all Internet communications and block them as necessary. Even private messages between individuals have been censored by these fascists that control Cult fronts like Facebook, Twitter, Google and YouTube which are all officially run by Sabbatian place-people and from the background by higher-level Sabbatian place people.

Facebook, Google, Amazon and their like were seed-funded and supported into existence with money-no-object infusions of funds either directly or indirectly from DARPA and CIA technology arm In-Q-Tel. The Cult plays the long game and prepares very carefully for big plays like 'Covid'. Amazon is another front in the psychological war and pretty much controls the global market in book sales and increasingly publishing. Amazon's limitless funds have deleted fantastic numbers of independent publishers to seize global domination on the way to deciding which books can be sold and circulated and which cannot. Moves in that direction are already happening. Amazon's leading light Jeff Bezos is the grandson of Lawrence Preston Gise who worked with DARPA predecessor ARPA. Amazon has big connections to the CIA and the Pentagon. The plan I have long described went like this:

1. Employ military technology to establish the Internet.

2. Sell the Internet as a place where people can freely communicate without censorship and allow that to happen until the Net becomes the central and irreversible pillar of human society. If the Internet had been highly censored from the start many would have rejected it.

3. Fund and manipulate major corporations into being to control the circulation of information on your Internet using cover stories about geeks in garages to explain how they came about. Give them unlimited funds to expand rapidly with no need to make a profit for years while non-Cult companies who need to balance the books cannot compete. You know that in these circumstances your Googles, YouTubes, Facebooks and Amazons are going to secure near monopolies by either crushing or buying up the opposition.

4. Allow freedom of expression on both the Internet and communication platforms to draw people in until the Internet is the central and irreversible pillar of human society and your communication corporations have reached a stage of near monopoly domination.

5. Then unleash your always-planned frenzy of censorship on the basis of 'where else are you going to go?' and continue to expand that until nothing remains that the Cult does not want its human targets to see.

The process was timed to hit the 'Covid' hoax to ensure the best chance possible of controlling the narrative which they knew they had to do at all costs. They were, after all, about to unleash a 'deadly virus' that didn't really exist. If you do that in an environment of free-flowing information and opinion you would be dead in the

water before you could say Gates is a psychopath. The network was in place through which the Cult-created-and-owned World Health Organization could dictate the 'Covid' narrative and response policy slavishly supported by Cult-owned Internet communication giants and mainstream media while those telling a different story were censored. Google, YouTube, Facebook and Twitter openly announced that they would do this. What else would we expect from Cult-owned operations like Facebook which former executives have confirmed set out to make the platform more addictive than cigarettes and coldly manipulates emotions of its users to sow division between people and groups and scramble the minds of the young? If Zuckerberg lives out the rest of his life without going to jail for crimes against humanity, and most emphatically against the young, it will be a travesty of justice. Still, no matter, cause and effect will catch up with him eventually and the same with Sergey Brin and Larry Page at Google with its CEO Sundar Pichai who fix the Google search results to promote Cult narratives and hide the opposition. Put the same key words into Google and other search engines like DuckDuckGo and you will see how different results can be. Wikipedia is another intensely biased 'encyclopaedia' which skews its content to the Cult agenda. YouTube links to Wikipedia's version of 'Covid' and 'climate change' on video pages in which experts in their field offer a different opinion (even that is increasingly rare with Wojcicki censorship). Into this 'Covid' silence-them network must be added government media censors, sorry 'regulators', such as Ofcom in the UK which imposed tyrannical restrictions on British broadcasters that had the effect of banning me from ever appearing. Just to debate with me about my evidence and views on 'Covid' would mean breaking the fascistic impositions of Ofcom and its CEO career government bureaucrat Melanie Dawes. Gutless British broadcasters tremble at the very thought of fascist Ofcom.

Psychos behind 'Covid'

The reason for the 'Covid' catastrophe in all its facets and forms can be seen by whom and what is driving the policies worldwide in such a coordinated way. Decisions are not being made to protect health, but to target psychology. The dominant group guiding and 'advising' government policy are not medical professionals. They are psychologists and behavioural scientists. Every major country has its own version of this phenomenon and I'll use the British example to show how it works. In many ways the British version has been affecting the wider world in the form of the huge behaviour manipulation network in the UK which operates in other countries. The network involves private companies, government, intelligence and military. The Cabinet Office is at the centre of the government 'Covid' Psyop and part-owns, with 'innovation charity' Nesta, the Behavioural Insights Team (BIT) which claims to be independent of government but patently isn't. The BIT was established in 2010 and its job is to manipulate the psyche of the population to acquiesce to government demands and so much more. It is also known as the 'Nudge Unit', a name inspired by the 2009 book by two ultra-Zionists, Cass Sunstein and Richard Thaler, called *Nudge: Improving Decisions About Health, Wealth, and Happiness*. The book, as with the Behavioural Insights Team, seeks to 'nudge' behaviour (manipulate it) to make the public follow patterns of action and perception that suit those in authority (the Cult). Sunstein is so skilled at this that he advises the World Health Organization and the UK Behavioural Insights Team and was Administrator of the White House Office of Information and Regulatory Affairs in the Obama administration. Biden appointed him to the Department of Homeland Security – another ultra-Zionist in the fold to oversee new immigration laws which is another policy the Cult wants to control. Sunstein is desperate to silence anyone exposing conspiracies and co-authored a 2008 report on the subject in which suggestions were offered to ban 'conspiracy theorizing' or impose 'some kind of tax, financial or otherwise, on those who disseminate such theories'. I guess a psychiatrist's chair is out of the question?

Sunstein's mate Richard Thaler, an 'academic affiliate' of the UK Behavioural Insights Team, is a proponent of 'behavioural economics' which is defined as the study of 'the effects of psychological, cognitive, emotional, cultural and social factors on the decisions of individuals and institutions'. Study the effects so they can be manipulated to be what you want them to be. Other leading names in the development of behavioural economics are ultra-Zionists Daniel Kahneman and Robert J. Shiller and they, with Thaler, won the Nobel Memorial Prize in Economic Sciences for their work in this field. The Behavioural Insights Team is operating at the heart of the UK government and has expanded globally through partnerships with several universities including Harvard, Oxford, Cambridge, University College London (UCL) and Pennsylvania. They claim to have 'trained' (reframed) 20,000 civil servants and run more than 750 projects involving 400 randomised controlled trials in dozens of countries' as another version of mind reframers Common Purpose. BIT works from its office in New York with cities and their agencies, as well as other partners, across the United States and Canada – this is a company part-owned by the British government Cabinet Office. An executive order by President Cult-servant Obama established a US Social and Behavioral Sciences Team in 2015. They all have the same reason for being and that's to brainwash the population directly and by brainwashing those in positions of authority.

'Covid' mind game

Another prime aspect of the UK mind-control network is the 'independent' [joke] Scientific Pandemic Insights Group on Behaviours (SPI-B) which 'provides behavioural science advice aimed at anticipating and helping people adhere to interventions that are recommended by medical or epidemiological experts'. That means manipulating public perception and behaviour to do whatever government tells them to do. It's disgusting and if they really want the public to be 'safe' this lot should all be under lock and key. According to the government website SPI-B consists of

'behavioural scientists, health and social psychologists, anthropologists and historians' and advises the Whitty-Vallance-led Scientific Advisory Group for Emergencies (SAGE) which in turn advises the government on 'the science' (it doesn't) and 'Covid' policy. When politicians say they are being guided by 'the science' this is the rabble in each country they are talking about and that 'science' is dominated by behaviour manipulators to enforce government fascism through public compliance. The Behaviour Insight Team is headed by psychologist David Solomon Halpern, a visiting professor at King's College London, and connects with a national and global web of other civilian and military organisations as the Cult moves towards its goal of fusing them into one fascistic whole in every country through its 'Fusion Doctrine'. The behaviour manipulation network involves, but is not confined to, the Foreign Office; National Security Council; government communications headquarters (GCHQ); MI5; MI6; the Cabinet Office-based Media Monitoring Unit; and the Rapid Response Unit which 'monitors digital trends to spot emerging issues; including misinformation and disinformation; and identifies the best way to respond'.

There is also the 77th Brigade of the UK military which operates like the notorious Israeli military's Unit 8200 in manipulating information and discussion on the Internet by posing as members of the public to promote the narrative and discredit those who challenge it. Here we have the military seeking to manipulate *domestic* public opinion while the Nazis in government are fine with that. Conservative Member of Parliament Tobias Ellwood, an advocate of lockdown and control through 'vaccine passports', is a Lieutenant Colonel reservist in the 77th Brigade which connects with the military operation jHub, the 'innovation centre' for the Ministry of Defence and Strategic Command. jHub has also been involved with the civilian National Health Service (NHS) in 'symptom tracing' the population. The NHS is a key part of this mind control network and produced a document in December, 2020, explaining to staff how to use psychological manipulation with different groups and ages to get them to have the DNA-manipulating 'Covid vaccine'

that's designed to cumulatively rewrite human genetics. The document, called 'Optimising Vaccination Roll Out – Do's and Dont's for all messaging, documents and "communications" in the widest sense', was published by NHS England and the NHS Improvement *Behaviour Change Unit* in partnership with Public Health England and Warwick Business School. I hear the mantra about 'save the NHS' and 'protect the NHS' when we need to scrap the NHS and start again. The current version is far too corrupt, far too anti-human and totally compromised by Cult operatives and their assets. UK government broadcast media censor Ofcom will connect into this web – as will the BBC with its tremendous Ofcom influence – to control what the public see and hear and dictate mass perception. Nuremberg trials must include personnel from all these organisations.

The fear factor

The 'Covid' hoax has led to the creation of the UK Cabinet Office-connected Joint Biosecurity Centre (JBC) which is officially described as providing 'expert advice on pandemics' using its independent [all Cult operations are 'independent'] analytical function to provide real-time analysis about infection outbreaks to identify and respond to outbreaks of Covid-19'. Another role is to advise the government on a response to spikes in infections – 'for example by closing schools or workplaces in local areas where infection levels have risen'. Put another way, promoting the Cult agenda. The Joint Biosecurity Centre is modelled on the Joint Terrorism Analysis Centre which analyses intelligence to set 'terrorism threat levels' and here again you see the fusion of civilian and military operations and intelligence that has led to military intelligence producing documents about 'vaccine hesitancy' and how it can be combated. Domestic civilian matters and opinions should not be the business of the military. The Joint Biosecurity Centre is headed by Tom Hurd, director general of the Office for Security and Counter-Terrorism from the establishment-to-its-fingertips Hurd family. His father is former Foreign Secretary Douglas Hurd. How coincidental that Tom

Hurd went to the elite Eton College and Oxford University with Boris Johnson. Imperial College with its ridiculous computer modeller Neil Ferguson will connect with this gigantic web that will itself interconnect with similar set-ups in other major and not so major countries. Compared with this Cult network the politicians, be they Boris Johnson, Donald Trump or Joe Biden, are bit-part players 'following the science'. The network of psychologists was on the 'Covid' case from the start with the aim of generating maximum fear of the 'virus' to ensure compliance by the population. A government behavioural science group known as SPI-B produced a paper in March, 2020, for discussion by the main government science advisory group known as SAGE. It was headed 'Options for increasing adherence to social distancing measures' and it said the following in a section headed 'Persuasion':

- A substantial number of people still do not feel sufficiently personally threatened; it could be that they are reassured by the low death rate in their demographic group, although levels of concern may be rising. Having a good understanding of the risk has been found to be positively associated with adoption of COVID-19 social distancing measures in Hong Kong.

- The perceived level of personal threat needs to be increased among those who are complacent, using hard-hitting evaluation of options for increasing social distancing emotional messaging. To be effective this must also empower people by making clear the actions they can take to reduce the threat.

- Responsibility to others: There seems to be insufficient understanding of, or feelings of responsibility about, people's role in transmitting the infection to others … Messaging about actions need to be framed positively in terms of protecting oneself and the community, and increase confidence that they will be effective.

- Some people will be more persuaded by appeals to play by the rules, some by duty to the community, and some to personal risk.

> All these different approaches are needed. The messaging also needs to take account of the realities of different people's lives. Messaging needs to take account of the different motivational levers and circumstances of different people.

All this could be achieved the SPI-B psychologists said by *using the media to increase the sense of personal threat* which translates as terrify the shit out of the population, including children, so they all do what we want. That's not happened has it? Those excuses for 'journalists' who wouldn't know journalism if it bit them on the arse (the great majority) have played their crucial part in serving this Cult-government Psyop to enslave their own kids and grandkids. How they live with themselves I have no idea. The psychological war has been underpinned by constant government 'Covid' propaganda in almost every television and radio ad break, plus the Internet and print media, which has pounded out the fear with taxpayers footing the bill for their own programming. The result has been people terrified of a 'virus' that doesn't exist or one with a tiny fatality rate even if you believe it does. People walk down the street and around the shops wearing face-nappies damaging their health and psychology while others report those who refuse to be that naïve to the police who turn up in their own face-nappies. I had a cameraman come to my flat and he was so frightened of 'Covid' he came in wearing a mask and refused to shake my hand in case he caught something. He had – naïveitis – and the thought that he worked in the mainstream media was both depressing and made his behaviour perfectly explainable. The fear which has gripped the minds of so many and frozen them into compliance has been carefully cultivated by these psychologists who are really psychopaths. If lives get destroyed and a lot of young people commit suicide it shows our plan is working. SPI-B then turned to compulsion on the public to comply. 'With adequate preparation, rapid change can be achieved', it said. Some countries had introduced mandatory self-isolation on a wide scale without evidence of major public unrest and a large majority of the UK's population appeared to be supportive of more coercive measures with 64 percent of adults saying they would

support putting London under a lockdown (watch the 'polls' which are designed to make people believe that public opinion is in favour or against whatever the subject in hand).

For 'aggressive protective measures' to be effective, the SPI-B paper said, special attention should be devoted to those population groups that are more at risk. Translated from the Orwellian this means making the rest of population feel guilty for not protecting the 'vulnerable' such as old people which the Cult and its agencies were about to kill on an industrial scale with lockdown, lack of treatment and the Gates 'vaccine'. Psychopath psychologists sold their guilt-trip so comprehensively that Los Angeles County Supervisor Hilda Solis reported that children were apologising (from a distance) to their parents and grandparents for bringing 'Covid' into their homes and getting them sick. '… These apologies are just some of the last words that loved ones will ever hear as they die alone,' she said. Gut-wrenchingly Solis then used this childhood tragedy to tell children to stay at home and 'keep your loved ones alive'. Imagine heaping such potentially life-long guilt on a kid when it has absolutely nothing to do with them. These people are deeply disturbed and the psychologists behind this even more so.

Uncivil war – divide and rule

Professional mind-controllers at SPI-B wanted the media to increase a sense of responsibility to others (do as you're told) and promote 'positive messaging' for those actions while in contrast to invoke 'social disapproval' by the unquestioning, obedient, community of anyone with a mind of their own. Again the compliant Goebbels-like media obliged. This is an old, old, trick employed by tyrannies the world over throughout human history. You get the target population to keep the target population in line – *your* line. SPI-B said this could 'play an important role in preventing anti-social behaviour or discouraging failure to enact pro-social behaviour'. For 'anti-social' in the Orwellian parlance of SPI-B see any behaviour that government doesn't approve. SPI-B recommendations said that 'social disapproval' should be accompanied by clear messaging and

promotion of strong collective identity – hence the government and celebrity mantra of 'we're all in this together'. Sure we are. The mind doctors have such contempt for their targets that they think some clueless comedian, actor or singer telling them to do what the government wants will be enough to win them over. We have had UK comedian Lenny Henry, actor Michael Caine and singer Elton John wheeled out to serve the propagandists by urging people to have the DNA-manipulating 'Covid' non-'vaccine'. The role of Henry and fellow black celebrities in seeking to coax a 'vaccine' reluctant black community into doing the government's will was especially stomach-turning. An emotion-manipulating script and carefully edited video featuring these black 'celebs' was such an insult to the intelligence of black people and where's the self-respect of those involved selling their souls to a fascist government agenda? Henry said he heard black people's 'legitimate worries and concerns', but people must 'trust the facts' when they were doing exactly that by not having the 'vaccine'. They had to include the obligatory reference to Black Lives Matter with the line … 'Don't let coronavirus cost even more black lives – because we matter'. My god, it was pathetic. 'I know the vaccine is safe and what it does.' How? 'I'm a comedian and it says so in my script.'

SPI-B said social disapproval needed to be carefully managed to avoid victimisation, scapegoating and misdirected criticism, but they knew that their 'recommendations' would lead to exactly that and the media were specifically used to stir-up the divide-and-conquer hostility. Those who conform like good little baa, baas, are praised while those who have seen through the tidal wave of lies are 'Covidiots'. The awake have been abused by the fast asleep for not conforming to fascism and impositions that the awake know are designed to endanger their health, dehumanise them, and tear asunder the very fabric of human society. We have had the curtain-twitchers and morons reporting neighbours and others to the face-nappied police for breaking 'Covid rules' with fascist police delighting in posting links and phone numbers where this could be done. The Cult cannot impose its will without a compliant police

and military or a compliant population willing to play their part in enslaving themselves and their kids. The words of a pastor in Nazi Germany are so appropriate today:

First they came for the socialists and I did not speak out because I was not a socialist.

Then they came for the trade unionists and I did not speak out because I was not a trade unionist.

Then they came for the Jews and I did not speak out because I was not a Jew.

Then they came for me and there was no one left to speak for me.

Those who don't learn from history are destined to repeat it and so many are.

'Covid' rules: Rewiring the mind

With the background laid out to this gigantic national and global web of psychological manipulation we can put 'Covid' rules into a clear and sinister perspective. Forget the claims about protecting health. 'Covid' rules are about dismantling the human mind, breaking the human spirit, destroying self-respect, and then putting Humpty Dumpty together again as a servile, submissive slave. Social isolation through lockdown and distancing have devastating effects on the human psyche as the psychological psychopaths well know and that's the real reason for them. Humans need contact with each other, discourse, closeness and touch, or they eventually, and literarily, go crazy. Masks, which I will address at some length, fundamentally add to the effects of isolation and the Cult agenda to dehumanise and de-individualise the population. To do this while knowing – in fact *seeking* – this outcome is the very epitome of evil and psychologists involved in this *are* the epitome of evil. They must like all the rest of the Cult demons and their assets stand trial for crimes against humanity on a scale that defies the imagination. Psychopaths in uniform use isolation to break enemy troops and agents and make them subservient and submissive to tell what they know. The technique is rightly considered a form of torture and

torture is most certainly what has been imposed on the human population.

Clinically-insane American psychologist Harry Harlow became famous for his isolation experiments in the 1950s in which he separated baby monkeys from their mothers and imprisoned them for months on end in a metal container or 'pit of despair'. They soon began to show mental distress and depression as any idiot could have predicted. Harlow put other monkeys in steel chambers for three, six or twelve months while denying them any contact with animals or humans. He said that the effects of total social isolation for six months were 'so devastating and debilitating that we had assumed initially that twelve months of isolation would not produce any additional decrement'; but twelve months of isolation 'almost obliterated the animals socially'. This is what the Cult and its psychopaths are doing to you and your children. Even monkeys in partial isolation in which they were not allowed to form relationships with other monkeys became 'aggressive and hostile, not only to others, but also towards their own bodies'. We have seen this in the young as a consequence of lockdown. UK government psychopaths launched a public relations campaign telling people not to hug each other even after they received the 'Covid-19 vaccine' which we were told with more lies would allow a return to 'normal life'. A government source told *The Telegraph*: 'It will be along the lines that it is great that you have been vaccinated, but if you are going to visit your family and hug your grandchildren there is a chance you are going to infect people you love.' The source was apparently speaking from a secure psychiatric facility. Janet Lord, director of Birmingham University's Institute of Inflammation and Ageing, said that parents and grandparents should avoid hugging their children. Well, how can I put it, Ms Lord? Fuck off. Yep, that'll do.

Destroying the kids – where are the parents?

Observe what has happened to people enslaved and isolated by lockdown as suicide and self-harm has soared worldwide,

particularly among the young denied the freedom to associate with their friends. A study of 49,000 people in English-speaking countries concluded that almost half of young adults are at clinical risk of mental health disorders. A national survey in America of 1,000 currently enrolled high school and college students found that 5 percent reported attempting suicide during the pandemic. Data from the US CDC's National Syndromic Surveillance Program from January 1st to October 17th, 2020, revealed a *31 percent* increase in mental health issues among adolescents aged 12 to 17 compared with 2019. The CDC reported that America in general suffered the biggest drop in life expectancy since World War Two as it fell by a year in the first half of 2020 as a result of 'deaths of despair' – overdoses and suicides. Deaths of despair have leapt by more than 20 percent during lockdown and include the highest number of fatal overdoses ever recorded in a single year – 81,000. Internet addiction is another consequence of being isolated at home which lowers interest in physical activities as kids fall into inertia and what's the point? Children and young people are losing hope and giving up on life, sometimes literally. A 14-year-old boy killed himself in Maryland because he had 'given up' when his school district didn't reopen; an 11-year-old boy shot himself during a zoom class; a teenager in Maine succumbed to the isolation of the 'pandemic' when he ended his life after experiencing a disrupted senior year at school. Children as young as nine have taken their life and all these stories can be repeated around the world. Careers are being destroyed before they start and that includes those in sport in which promising youngsters have not been able to take part. The plan of the psycho-psychologists is working all right. Researchers at Cambridge University found that lockdowns cause significant harm to children's mental health. Their study was published in the *Archives of Disease in Childhood*, and followed 168 children aged between 7 and 11. The researchers concluded:

> During the UK lockdown, children's depression symptoms have increased substantially, relative to before lockdown. The scale of this effect has direct relevance for the continuation of different elements of lockdown policy, such as complete or partial school closures …

… Specifically, we observed a statistically significant increase in ratings of depression, with a medium-to-large effect size. Our findings emphasise the need to incorporate the potential impact of lockdown on child mental health in planning the ongoing response to the global pandemic and the recovery from it.

Not a chance when the Cult's psycho-psychologists were getting exactly what they wanted. The UK's Royal College of Paediatrics and Child Health has urged parents to look for signs of eating disorders in children and young people after a three to four fold increase. Specialists say the 'pandemic' is a major reason behind the rise. You don't say. The College said isolation from friends during school closures, exam cancellations, loss of extra-curricular activities like sport, and an increased use of social media were all contributory factors along with fears about the virus (psycho-psychologists again), family finances, and students being forced to quarantine. Doctors said young people were becoming severely ill by the time they were seen with 'Covid' regulations reducing face-to-face consultations. Nor is it only the young that have been devastated by the psychopaths. Like all bullies and cowards the Cult is targeting the young, elderly, weak and infirm. A typical story was told by a British lady called Lynn Parker who was not allowed to visit her husband in 2020 for the last ten and half months of his life 'when he needed me most' between March 20th and when he died on December 19th. This vacates the criminal and enters the territory of evil. The emotional impact on the immune system alone is immense as are the number of people of all ages worldwide who have died as a result of Cult-demanded, Gates-demanded, lockdowns.

Isolation is torture

The experience of imposing solitary confinement on millions of prisoners around the world has shown how a large percentage become 'actively psychotic and/or acutely suicidal'. Social isolation has been found to trigger 'a specific psychiatric syndrome, characterized by hallucinations; panic attacks; overt paranoia; diminished impulse control; hypersensitivity to external stimuli; and difficulties with thinking, concentration and memory'. Juan Mendez,

a United Nations rapporteur (investigator), said that isolation is a form of torture. Research has shown that even after isolation prisoners find it far more difficult to make social connections and I remember chatting to a shop assistant after one lockdown who told me that when her young son met another child again he had no idea how to act or what to do. Hannah Flanagan, Director of Emergency Services at Journey Mental Health Center in Dane County, Wisconsin, said: 'The specificity about Covid social distancing and isolation that we've come across as contributing factors to the suicides are really new to us this year.' But they are not new to those that devised them. They are getting the effect they want as the population is psychologically dismantled to be rebuilt in a totally different way. Children and the young are particularly targeted. They will be the adults when the full-on fascist AI-controlled technocracy is planned to be imposed and they are being prepared to meekly submit. At the same time older people who still have a memory of what life was like before – and how fascist the new normal really is – are being deleted. You are going to see efforts to turn the young against the old to support this geriatric genocide. Hannah Flanagan said the big increase in suicide in her county proved that social isolation is not only harmful, but deadly. Studies have shown that isolation from others is one of the main risk factors in suicide and even more so with women. Warnings that lockdown could create a 'perfect storm' for suicide were ignored. After all this was one of the *reasons* for lockdown. Suicide, however, is only the most extreme of isolation consequences. There are many others. Dr Dhruv Khullar, assistant professor of healthcare policy at Weill Cornell Medical College, said in a *New York Times* article in 2016 long before the fake 'pandemic':

> A wave of new research suggests social separation is bad for us. Individuals with less social connection have disrupted sleep patterns, altered immune systems, more inflammation and higher levels of stress hormones. One recent study found that isolation increases the risk of heart disease by 29 percent and stroke by 32 percent. Another analysis that pooled data from 70 studies and 3.4 million people found that socially isolated individuals had a 30 percent higher risk of dying in the next seven years, and that this effect was largest in middle age.

Loneliness can accelerate cognitive decline in older adults, and isolated individuals are twice as likely to die prematurely as those with more robust social interactions. These effects start early: Socially isolated children have significantly poorer health 20 years later, even after controlling for other factors. All told, loneliness is as important a risk factor for early death as obesity and smoking.

There you have proof from that one article alone four years before 2020 that those who have enforced lockdown, social distancing and isolation knew what the effect would be and that is even more so with professional psychologists that have been driving the policy across the globe. We can go back even further to the years 2000 and 2003 and the start of a major study on the effects of isolation on health by Dr Janine Gronewold and Professor Dirk M. Hermann at the University Hospital in Essen, Germany, who analysed data on 4,316 people with an average age of 59 who were recruited for the long-term research project. They found that socially isolated people are more than 40 percent more likely to have a heart attack, stroke, or other major cardiovascular event and nearly 50 percent more likely to die from any cause. Given the financial Armageddon unleashed by lockdown we should note that the study found a relationship between increased cardiovascular risk and lack of financial support. After excluding other factors social isolation was still connected to a 44 percent increased risk of cardiovascular problems and a 47 percent increased risk of death by any cause. Lack of financial support was associated with a 30 percent increase in the risk of cardiovascular health events. Dr Gronewold said it had been known for some time that feeling lonely or lacking contact with close friends and family can have an impact on physical health and the study had shown that having strong social relationships is of high importance for heart health. Gronewold said they didn't understand yet why people who are socially isolated have such poor health outcomes, but this was obviously a worrying finding, particularly during these times of prolonged social distancing. Well, it can be explained on many levels. You only have to identify the point in the body where people feel loneliness and missing people they are parted from – it's in the centre of the chest where they feel the ache of loneliness and the ache of missing people. 'My heart aches for

you' … 'My heart aches for some company.' I will explain this more in the chapter Escaping Wetiko, but when you realise that the body is the mind – they are expressions of each other – the reason why state of the mind dictates state of the body becomes clear.

American psychologist Ranjit Powar was highlighting the effects of lockdown isolation as early as April, 2020. She said humans have evolved to be social creatures and are wired to live in interactive groups. Being isolated from family, friends and colleagues could be unbalancing and traumatic for most people and could result in short or even long-term psychological and physical health problems. An increase in levels of anxiety, aggression, depression, forgetfulness and hallucinations were possible psychological effects of isolation. 'Mental conditions may be precipitated for those with underlying pre-existing susceptibilities and show up in many others without any pre-condition.' Powar said personal relationships helped us cope with stress and if we lost this outlet for letting off steam the result can be a big emotional void which, for an average person, was difficult to deal with. 'Just a few days of isolation can cause increased levels of anxiety and depression' – so what the hell has been the effect on the global population of *18 months* of this at the time of writing? Powar said: 'Add to it the looming threat of a dreadful disease being repeatedly hammered in through the media and you have a recipe for many shades of mental and physical distress.' For those with a house and a garden it is easy to forget that billions have had to endure lockdown isolation in tiny overcrowded flats and apartments with nowhere to go outside. The psychological and physical consequences of this are unimaginable and with lunatic and abusive partners and parents the consequences have led to tremendous increases in domestic and child abuse and alcoholism as people seek to shut out the horror. Ranjit Powar said:

> Staying in a confined space with family is not all a rosy picture for everyone. It can be extremely oppressive and claustrophobic for large low-income families huddled together in small single-room houses. Children here are not lucky enough to have many board/electronic games or books to keep them occupied.

Add to it the deep insecurity of running out of funds for food and basic necessities. On the other hand, there are people with dysfunctional family dynamics, such as domineering, abusive or alcoholic partners, siblings or parents which makes staying home a period of trial. Incidence of suicide and physical abuse against women has shown a worldwide increase. Heightened anxiety and depression also affect a person's immune system, making them more susceptible to illness.

To think that Powar's article was published on April 11th, 2020.

Six-feet fantasy

Social (unsocial) distancing demanded that people stay six feet or two metres apart. UK government advisor Robert Dingwall from the New and Emerging Respiratory Virus Threats Advisory Group said in a radio interview that the two-metre rule was 'conjured up out of nowhere' and was not based on science. No, it was not based on *medical* science, but it didn't come out of nowhere. The distance related to *psychological* science. Six feet/two metres was adopted in many countries and we were told by people like the criminal Anthony Fauci and his ilk that it was founded on science. Many schools could not reopen because they did not have the space for six-feet distancing. Then in March, 2021, after a year of six-feet 'science', a study published in the *Journal of Infectious Diseases* involving more than 500,000 students and almost 100,000 staff over 16 weeks revealed no significant difference in 'Covid' cases between six feet and three feet and Fauci changed his tune. Now three feet was okay. There is no difference between six feet and three *inches* when there is no 'virus' and they got away with six feet for psychological reasons for as long as they could. I hear journalists and others talk about 'unintended consequences' of lockdown. They are not *unintended* at all; they have been coldly-calculated for a specific outcome of human control and that's why super-psychopaths like Gates have called for them so vehemently. Super-psychopath psychologists have demanded them and psychopathic or clueless, spineless, politicians have gone along with them by 'following the science'. But it's not science at all. 'Science' is not what is; it's only what people can be manipulated to believe it is. The whole 'Covid' catastrophe is

founded on mind control. Three word or three statement mantras issued by the UK government are a well-known mind control technique and so we've had 'Stay home/protect the NHS/save lives', 'Stay alert/control the virus/save lives' and 'hands/face/space'. One of the most vocal proponents of extreme 'Covid' rules in the UK has been Professor Susan Michie, a member of the British Communist Party, who is not a medical professional. Michie is the director of the Centre for Behaviour Change at University College London. She is a *behavioural psychologist* and another filthy rich 'Marxist' who praised China's draconian lockdown. She was known by fellow students at Oxford University as 'Stalin's nanny' for her extreme Marxism. Michie is an influential member of the UK government's Scientific Advisory Group for Emergencies (SAGE) and behavioural manipulation groups which have dominated 'Covid' policy. She is a consultant adviser to the World Health Organization on 'Covid-19' and behaviour. Why the hell are lockdowns anything to do with her when they are claimed to be about health? Why does a behavioural psychologist from a group charged with changing the behaviour of the public want lockdown, human isolation and mandatory masks? Does that question really need an answer? Michie *absolutely* has to explain herself before a Nuremberg court when humanity takes back its world again and even more so when you see the consequences of masks that she demands are compulsory. This is a Michie classic:

> The benefits of getting primary school children to wear masks is that regardless of what little degree of transmission is occurring in those age groups it could help normalise the practice. Young children wearing masks may be more likely to get their families to accept masks.

Those words alone should carry a prison sentence when you ponder on the callous disregard for children involved and what a statement it makes about the mind and motivations of Susan Michie. What a lovely lady and what she said there encapsulates the mentality of the psychopaths behind the 'Covid' horror. Let us compare what Michie said with a countrywide study in Germany published at researchsquare.com involving 25,000 school children and 17,854 health complaints submitted by parents. Researchers

found that masks are harming children physically, psychologically, and behaviourally with 24 health issues associated with mask wearing. They include: shortness of breath (29.7%); dizziness (26.4%); increased headaches (53%); difficulty concentrating (50%); drowsiness or fatigue (37%); and malaise (42%). Nearly a third of children experienced more sleep issues than before and a quarter developed new fears. Researchers found health issues and other impairments in 68 percent of masked children covering their faces for an average of 4.5 hours a day. Hundreds of those taking part experienced accelerated respiration, tightness in the chest, weakness, and short-term impairment of consciousness. A reminder of what Michie said again:

> The benefits of getting primary school children to wear masks is that regardless of what little degree of transmission is occurring in those age groups it could help normalise the practice. Young children wearing masks may be more likely to get their families to accept masks.

Psychopaths in government and psychology now have children and young people – plus all the adults – wearing masks for hours on end while clueless teachers impose the will of the psychopaths on the young they should be protecting. What the hell are parents doing?

Cult lab rats

We have some schools already imposing on students microchipped buzzers that activate when they get 'too close' to their pals in the way they do with lab rats. How apt. To the Cult and its brain-dead servants our children *are* lab rats being conditioned to be unquestioning, dehumanised slaves for the rest of their lives. Children and young people are being weaned and frightened away from the most natural human instincts including closeness and touch. I have tracked in the books over the years how schools were banning pupils from greeting each other with a hug and the whole Cult-induced Me Too movement has terrified men and boys from a relaxed and natural interaction with female friends and work colleagues to the point where many men try never to be in a room

alone with a woman that's not their partner. Airhead celebrities have as always played their virtue-signalling part in making this happen with their gross exaggeration. For every monster like Harvey Weinstein there are at least tens of thousands of men that don't treat women like that; but everyone must be branded the same and policy changed for them as well as the monster. I am going to be using the word 'dehumanise' many times in this chapter because that is what the Cult is seeking to do and it goes very deep as we shall see. Don't let them kid you that social distancing is planned to end one day. That's not the idea. We are seeing more governments and companies funding and producing wearable gadgets to keep people apart and they would not be doing that if this was meant to be short-term. A tech start-up company backed by GCHQ, the British Intelligence and military surveillance headquarters, has created a social distancing wrist sensor that alerts people when they get too close to others. The CIA has also supported tech companies developing similar devices. The wearable sensor was developed by Tended, one of a number of start-up companies supported by GCHQ (see the CIA and DARPA). The device can be worn on the wrist or as a tag on the waistband and will vibrate whenever someone wearing the device breaches social distancing and gets anywhere near natural human contact. The company had a lucky break in that it was developing a distancing sensor when the 'Covid' hoax arrived which immediately provided a potentially enormous market. How fortunate. The government in big-time Cult-controlled Ontario in Canada is investing $2.5 million in wearable contact tracing technology that 'will alert users if they may have been exposed to the Covid-19 in the workplace and will beep or vibrate if they are within six feet of another person'. Facedrive Inc., the technology company behind this, was founded in 2016 with funding from the Ontario Together Fund and obviously they, too, had a prophet on the board of directors. The human surveillance and control technology is called TraceSCAN and would be worn by the human cyborgs in places such as airports, workplaces, construction sites, care homes and … *schools*.

I emphasise schools with children and young people the prime targets. You know what is planned for society as a whole if you keep your eyes on the schools. They have always been places where the state program the next generation of slaves to be its compliant worker-ants – or Woker-ants these days; but in the mist of the 'Covid' madness they have been transformed into mind laboratories on a scale never seen before. Teachers and head teachers are just as programmed as the kids – often more so. Children are kept apart from human interaction by walk lanes, classroom distancing, staggered meal times, masks, and the rolling-out of buzzer systems. Schools are now physically laid out as a laboratory maze for lab-rats. Lunatics at a school in Anchorage, Alaska, who should be prosecuted for child abuse, took away desks and forced children to kneel (know your place) on a mat for five hours a day while wearing a mask and using their chairs as a desk. How this was supposed to impact on a 'virus' only these clinically insane people can tell you and even then it would be clap-trap. The school banned recess (interaction), art classes (creativity), and physical exercise (getting body and mind moving out of inertia). Everyone behind this outrage should be in jail or better still a mental institution. The behavioural manipulators are all for this dystopian approach to schools. Professor Susan Michie, the mind-doctor and British Communist Party member, said it was wrong to say that schools were safe. They had to be made so by 'distancing', masks and ventilation (sitting all day in the cold). I must ask this lady round for dinner on a night I know I am going to be out and not back for weeks. She probably wouldn't be able to make it, anyway, with all the visits to her own psychologist she must have block-booked.

Masking identity

I know how shocking it must be for you that a behaviour manipulator like Michie wants everyone to wear masks which have long been a feature of mind-control programs like the infamous MKUltra in the United States, but, there we are. We live and learn. I spent many years from 1996 to right across the millennium

researching mind control in detail on both sides of the Atlantic and elsewhere. I met a large number of mind-control survivors and many had been held captive in body and mind by MKUltra. MK stands for mind-control, but employs the German spelling in deference to the Nazis spirited out of Germany at the end of World War Two by Operation Paperclip in which the US authorities, with help from the Vatican, transported Nazi mind-controllers and engineers to America to continue their work. Many of them were behind the creation of NASA and they included Nazi scientist and SS officer Wernher von Braun who swapped designing V-2 rockets to bombard London with designing the Saturn V rockets that powered the NASA moon programme's Apollo craft. I think I may have mentioned that the Cult has no borders. Among Paperclip escapees was Josef Mengele, the Angel of Death in the Nazi concentration camps where he conducted mind and genetic experiments on children often using twins to provide a control twin to measure the impact of his 'work' on the other. If you want to observe the Cult mentality in all its extremes of evil then look into the life of Mengele. I have met many people who suffered mercilessly under Mengele in the United States where he operated under the name Dr Greene and became a stalwart of MKUltra programming and torture. Among his locations was the underground facility in the Mojave Desert in California called the China Lake Naval Weapons Station which is almost entirely below the surface. My books *The Biggest Secret*, *Children of the Matrix* and *The Perception Deception* have the detailed background to MKUltra.

The best-known MKUltra survivor is American Cathy O'Brien. I first met her and her late partner Mark Phillips at a conference in Colorado in 1996. Mark helped her escape and deprogram from decades of captivity in an offshoot of MKUltra known as Project Monarch in which 'sex slaves' were provided for the rich and famous including Father George Bush, Dick Cheney and the Clintons. Read Cathy and Mark's book *Trance-Formation of America* and if you are new to this you will be shocked to the core. I read it in 1996 shortly before, with the usual synchronicity of my life, I found

myself given a book table at the conference right next to hers. MKUltra never ended despite being very publicly exposed (only a small part of it) in the 1970s and continues in other guises. I am still in touch with Cathy. She contacted me during 2020 after masks became compulsory in many countries to tell me how they were used as part of MKUltra programming. I had been observing 'Covid regulations' and the relationship between authority and public for months. I saw techniques that I knew were employed on individuals in MKUltra being used on the global population. I had read many books and manuals on mind control including one called *Silent Weapons for Quiet Wars* which came to light in the 1980s and was a guide on how to perceptually program on a mass scale. 'Silent Weapons' refers to mind-control. I remembered a line from the manual as governments, medical authorities and law enforcement agencies have so obviously talked to – or rather at – the adult population since the 'Covid' hoax began as if they are children. The document said:

> If a person is spoken to by a T.V. advertiser as if he were a twelve-year-old, then, due to suggestibility, he will, with a certain probability, respond or react to that suggestion with the uncritical response of a twelve-year-old and will reach in to his economic reservoir and deliver its energy to buy that product on impulse when he passes it in the store.

That's why authority has spoken to adults like children since all this began.

Why did Michael Jackson wear masks?

Every aspect of the 'Covid' narrative has mind-control as its central theme. Cathy O'Brien wrote an article for davidicke.com about the connection between masks and mind control. Her daughter Kelly who I first met in the 1990s was born while Cathy was still held captive in MKUltra. Kelly was forced to wear a mask as part of her programming from the age of *two* to dehumanise her, target her sense of individuality and reduce the amount of oxygen her brain and body received. *Bingo*. This is the real reason for compulsory

masks, why they have been enforced en masse, and why they seek to increase the number they demand you wear. First one, then two, with one disgraceful alleged 'doctor' recommending four which is nothing less than a death sentence. Where and how often they must be worn is being expanded for the purpose of mass mind control and damaging respiratory health which they can call 'Covid-19'. Canada's government headed by the man-child Justin Trudeau, says it's fine for children of two and older to wear masks. An insane 'study' in Italy involving just 47 children concluded there was no problem for babies as young as *four months* wearing them. Even after people were 'vaccinated' they were still told to wear masks by the criminal that is Anthony Fauci. Cathy wrote that mandating masks is allowing the authorities literally to control the air we breathe which is what was done in MKUltra. You might recall how the singer Michael Jackson wore masks and there is a reason for that. He was subjected to MKUltra mind control through Project Monarch and his psyche was scrambled by these simpletons. Cathy wrote:

> In MKUltra Project Monarch mind control, Michael Jackson had to wear a mask to silence his voice so he could not reach out for help. Remember how he developed that whisper voice when he wasn't singing? Masks control the mind from the outside in, like the redefining of words is doing. By controlling what we can and cannot say for fear of being labeled racist or beaten, for example, it ultimately controls thought that drives our words and ultimately actions (or lack thereof).
>
> Likewise, a mask muffles our speech so that we are not heard, which controls voice … words … mind. This is Mind Control. Masks are an obvious mind control device, and I am disturbed so many people are complying on a global scale. Masks depersonalize while making a person feel as though they have no voice. It is a barrier to others. People who would never choose to comply but are forced to wear a mask in order to keep their job, and ultimately their family fed, are compromised. They often feel shame and are subdued. People have stopped talking with each other while media controls the narrative.

The 'no voice' theme has often become literal with train passengers told not to speak to each other in case they pass on the 'virus', singing banned for the same reason and bonkers California officials telling people riding roller coasters that they cannot shout and scream. Cathy said she heard every day from healed MKUltra survivors who cannot wear a mask without flashing back on ways

their breathing was controlled – 'from ball gags and penises to water boarding'. She said that through the years when she saw images of people in China wearing masks 'due to pollution' that it was really to control their oxygen levels. 'I knew it was as much of a population control mechanism of depersonalisation as are burkas', she said. Masks are another Chinese communist/fascist method of control that has been swept across the West as the West becomes China at lightning speed since we entered 2020.

Mask-19

There are other reasons for mandatory masks and these include destroying respiratory health to call it 'Covid-19' and stunting brain development of children and the young. Dr Margarite Griesz-Brisson MD, PhD, is a Consultant Neurologist and Neurophysiologist and the Founder and Medical Director of the London Neurology and Pain Clinic. Her CV goes down the street and round the corner. She is clearly someone who cares about people and won't parrot the propaganda. Griesz-Brisson has a PhD in pharmacology, with special interest in neurotoxicology, environmental medicine, neuroregeneration and neuroplasticity (the way the brain can change in the light of information received). She went public in October, 2020, with a passionate warning about the effects of mask-wearing laws:

> The reinhalation of our exhaled air will without a doubt create oxygen deficiency and a flooding of carbon dioxide. We know that the human brain is very sensitive to oxygen deprivation. There are nerve cells for example in the hippocampus that can't be longer than 3 minutes without oxygen – they cannot survive. The acute warning symptoms are headaches, drowsiness, dizziness, issues in concentration, slowing down of reaction time – reactions of the cognitive system.

Oh, I know, let's tell bus, truck and taxi drivers to wear them and people working machinery. How about pilots, doctors and police? Griesz-Brisson makes the important point that while the symptoms she mentions may fade as the body readjusts this does not alter the fact that people continue to operate in oxygen deficit with long list of

potential consequences. She said it was well known that neurodegenerative diseases take years or decades to develop. 'If today you forget your phone number, the breakdown in your brain would have already started 20 or 30 years ago.' She said degenerative processes in your brain are getting amplified as your oxygen deprivation continues through wearing a mask. Nerve cells in the brain are unable to divide themselves normally in these circumstances and lost nerve cells will no longer be regenerated. 'What is gone is gone.' Now consider that people like shop workers and *schoolchildren* are wearing masks for hours every day. What in the name of sanity is going to be happening to them? 'I do not wear a mask, I need my brain to think', Griesz-Brisson said, 'I want to have a clear head when I deal with my patients and not be in a carbon dioxide-induced anaesthesia'. If you are told to wear a mask anywhere ask the organisation, police, store, whatever, for their risk assessment on the dangers and negative effects on mind and body of enforcing mask-wearing. They won't have one because it has never been done not even by government. All of them must be subject to class-action lawsuits as the consequences come to light. They don't do mask risk assessments for an obvious reason. They know what the conclusions would be and independent scientific studies that *have* been done tell a horror story of consequences.

'Masks are criminal'

Dr Griesz-Brisson said that for children and adolescents, masks are an absolute no-no. They had an extremely active and adaptive immune system and their brain was incredibly active with so much to learn. 'The child's brain, or the youth's brain, is thirsting for oxygen.' The more metabolically active an organ was, the more oxygen it required; and in children and adolescents every organ was metabolically active. Griesz-Brisson said that to deprive a child's or adolescent's brain of oxygen, or to restrict it in any way, was not only dangerous to their health, it was absolutely criminal. 'Oxygen deficiency inhibits the development of the brain, and the damage that has taken place as a result CANNOT be reversed.' Mind

manipulators of MKUltra put masks on two-year-olds they wanted to neurologically rewire and you can see why. Griesz-Brisson said a child needs the brain to learn and the brain needs oxygen to function. 'We don't need a clinical study for that. This is simple, indisputable physiology.' Consciously and purposely induced oxygen deficiency was an absolutely deliberate health hazard, and an absolute medical contraindication which means that 'this drug, this therapy, this method or measure should not be used, and is not allowed to be used'. To coerce an entire population to use an absolute medical contraindication by force, she said, there had to be definite and serious reasons and the reasons must be presented to competent interdisciplinary and independent bodies to be verified and authorised. She had this warning of the consequences that were coming if mask wearing continued:

> When, in ten years, dementia is going to increase exponentially, and the younger generations couldn't reach their god-given potential, it won't help to say 'we didn't need the masks'. I know how damaging oxygen deprivation is for the brain, cardiologists know how damaging it is for the heart, pulmonologists know how damaging it is for the lungs. Oxygen deprivation damages every single organ. Where are our health departments, our health insurance, our medical associations? It would have been their duty to be vehemently against the lockdown and to stop it and stop it from the very beginning.
>
> Why do the medical boards issue punishments to doctors who give people exemptions? Does the person or the doctor seriously have to prove that oxygen deprivation harms people? What kind of medicine are our doctors and medical associations representing? Who is responsible for this crime? The ones who want to enforce it? The ones who let it happen and play along, or the ones who don't prevent it?

All of the organisations and people she mentions there either answer directly to the Cult or do whatever hierarchical levels above them tell them to do. The outcome of both is the same. 'It's not about masks, it's not about viruses, it's certainly not about your health', Griesz-Brisson said. 'It is about much, much more. I am not participating. I am not afraid.' They were taking our air to breathe and there was no unfounded medical exemption from face masks. Oxygen deprivation was dangerous for every single brain. It had to be the free decision of every human being whether they want to

wear a mask that was absolutely ineffective to protect themselves from a virus. She ended by rightly identifying where the responsibility lies for all this:

> The imperative of the hour is personal responsibility. We are responsible for what we think, not the media. We are responsible for what we do, not our superiors. We are responsible for our health, not the World Health Organization. And we are responsible for what happens in our country, not the government.

Halle-bloody-lujah.

But surgeons wear masks, right?

Independent studies of mask-wearing have produced a long list of reports detailing mental, emotional and physical dangers. What a definition of insanity to see police officers imposing mask-wearing on the public which will cumulatively damage their health while the police themselves wear masks that will cumulatively damage *their* health. It's utter madness and both public and police do this because 'the government says so' – yes a government of brain-donor idiots like UK Health Secretary Matt Hancock reading the 'follow the science' scripts of psychopathic, lunatic psychologists. The response you get from Stockholm syndrome sufferers defending the very authorities that are destroying them and their families is that 'surgeons wear masks'. This is considered the game, set and match that they must work and don't cause oxygen deficit. Well, actually, scientific studies have shown that they *do* and oxygen levels are monitored in operating theatres to compensate. Surgeons wear masks to stop spittle and such like dropping into open wounds – not to stop 'viral particles' which are so miniscule they can only be seen through an electron microscope. Holes in the masks are significantly bigger than 'viral particles' and if you sneeze or cough they will breach the mask. I watched an incredibly disingenuous 'experiment' that claimed to prove that masks work in catching 'virus' material from the mouth and nose. They did this with a slow motion camera and the mask did block big stuff which stayed inside the mask and

against the face to be breathed in or cause infections on the face as we have seen with many children. 'Viral particles', however, would never have been picked up by the camera as they came through the mask when they are far too small to be seen. The 'experiment' was therefore disingenuous *and* useless.

Studies have concluded that wearing masks in operating theatres (and thus elsewhere) make no difference to preventing infection while the opposite is true with toxic shite building up in the mask and this had led to an explosion in tooth decay and gum disease dubbed by dentists 'mask mouth'. You might have seen the Internet video of a furious American doctor urging people to take off their masks after a four-year-old patient had been rushed to hospital the night before and nearly died with a lung infection that doctors sourced to mask wearing. A study in the journal *Cancer Discovery* found that inhalation of harmful microbes can contribute to advanced stage lung cancer in adults and long-term use of masks can help breed dangerous pathogens. Microbiologists have said frequent mask wearing creates a moist environment in which microbes can grow and proliferate before entering the lungs. The Canadian Agency for Drugs and Technologies in Health, or CADTH, a Canadian national organisation that provides research and analysis to healthcare decision-makers, said this as long ago as 2013 in a report entitled 'Use of Surgical Masks in the Operating Room: A Review of the Clinical Effectiveness and Guidelines'. It said:

- No evidence was found to support the use of surgical face masks to reduce the frequency of surgical site infections
- No evidence was found on the effectiveness of wearing surgical face masks to protect staff from infectious material in the operating room.
- Guidelines recommend the use of surgical face masks by staff in the operating room to protect both operating room staff and patients (despite the lack of evidence).

We were told that the world could go back to 'normal' with the arrival of the 'vaccines'. When they came, fraudulent as they are, the story changed as I knew that it would. We are in the midst of transforming 'normal', not going back to it. Mary Ramsay, head of immunisation at Public Health England, echoed the words of US criminal Anthony Fauci who said masks and other regulations must stay no matter if people are vaccinated. The Fauci idiot continued to wear two masks – different colours so both could be clearly seen – after he *claimed* to have been vaccinated. Senator Rand Paul told Fauci in one exchange that his double-masks were 'theatre' and he was right. It's all theatre. Mary Ramsay back-tracked on the vaccine-return-to-normal theme when she said the public may need to wear masks and social-distance for years despite the jabs. 'People have got used to those lower-level restrictions now, and [they] can live with them', she said telling us what the idea has been all along. 'The vaccine does not give you a pass, even if you have had it, you must continue to follow all the guidelines' said a Public Health England statement which reneged on what we had been told before and made having the 'vaccine' irrelevant to 'normality' even by the official story. Spain's fascist government trumped everyone by passing a law mandating the wearing of masks on the beach and even when swimming in the sea. The move would have devastated what's left of the Spanish tourist industry, posed potential breathing dangers to swimmers and had Northern European sunbathers walking around with their forehead brown and the rest of their face white as a sheet. The ruling was so crazy that it had to be retracted after pressure from public and tourist industry, but it confirmed where the Cult wants to go with masks and how clinically insane authority has become. The determination to make masks permanent and hide the serious dangers to body and mind can be seen in the censorship of scientist Professor Denis Rancourt by Bill Gates-funded academic publishing website ResearchGate over his papers exposing the dangers and uselessness of masks. Rancourt said:

ResearchGate today has permanently locked my account, which I have had since 2015. Their reasons graphically show the nature of their attack against democracy, and their corruption of

science … By their obscene non-logic, a scientific review of science articles reporting on harms caused by face masks has a 'potential to cause harm'. No criticism of the psychological device (face masks) is tolerated, if the said criticism shows potential to influence public policy.

This is what happens in a fascist world.

Where are the 'greens' (again)?

Other dangers of wearing masks especially regularly relate to the inhalation of minute plastic fibres into the lungs and the deluge of discarded masks in the environment and oceans. Estimates predicted that more than 1.5 billion disposable masks will end up in the world's oceans every year polluting the water with tons of plastic and endangering marine wildlife. Studies project that humans are using 129 billion face masks each month worldwide – about three million a minute. Most are disposable and made from plastic, non-biodegradable microfibers that break down into smaller plastic particles that become widespread in ecosystems. They are littering cities, clogging sewage channels and turning up in bodies of water. I have written in other books about the immense amounts of microplastics from endless sources now being absorbed into the body. Rolf Halden, director of the Arizona State University (ASU) Biodesign Center for Environmental Health Engineering, was the senior researcher in a 2020 study that analysed 47 human tissue samples and found microplastics in all of them. 'We have detected these chemicals of plastics in every single organ that we have investigated', he said. I wrote in *The Answer* about the world being deluged with microplastics. A study by the Worldwide Fund for Nature (WWF) found that people are consuming on average every week some 2,000 tiny pieces of plastic mostly through water and also through marine life and the air. Every year humans are ingesting enough microplastics to fill a heaped dinner plate and in a life-time of 79 years it is enough to fill two large waste bins. Marco Lambertini, WWF International director general said: 'Not only are plastics polluting our oceans and waterways and killing marine life – it's in all of us and we can't escape consuming plastics,' American

geologists found tiny plastic fibres, beads and shards in rainwater samples collected from the remote slopes of the Rocky Mountain National Park near Denver, Colorado. Their report was headed: 'It is raining plastic.' Rachel Adams, senior lecturer in Biomedical Science at Cardiff Metropolitan University, said that among health consequences are internal inflammation and immune responses to a 'foreign body'. She further pointed out that microplastics become carriers of toxins including mercury, pesticides and dioxins (a known cause of cancer and reproductive and developmental problems). These toxins accumulate in the fatty tissues once they enter the body through microplastics. Now this is being compounded massively by people putting plastic on their face and throwing it away.

Workers exposed to polypropylene plastic fibres known as 'flock' have developed 'flock worker's lung' from inhaling small pieces of the flock fibres which can damage lung tissue, reduce breathing capacity and exacerbate other respiratory problems. *Now* … commonly used surgical masks have three layers of melt-blown textiles made of … polypropylene. We have billions of people putting these microplastics against their mouth, nose and face for hours at a time day after day in the form of masks. How does anyone think that will work out? I mean – what could possibly go wrong? We posted a number of scientific studies on this at davidicke.com, but when I went back to them as I was writing this book the links to the science research website where they were hosted were dead. Anything that challenges the official narrative in any way is either censored or vilified. The official narrative is so unsupportable by the evidence that only deleting the truth can protect it. A study by Chinese scientists still survived – with the usual twist which it why it was still active, I guess. Yes, they found that virtually all the masks they tested increased the daily intake of microplastic fibres, but people should still wear them because the danger from the 'virus' was worse said the crazy 'team' from the Institute of Hydrobiology in Wuhan. Scientists first discovered microplastics in lung tissue of some patients who died of lung cancer

in the 1990s. Subsequent studies have confirmed the potential health damage with the plastic degrading slowly and remaining in the lungs to accumulate in volume. Wuhan researchers used a machine simulating human breathing to establish that masks shed up to nearly 4,000 microplastic fibres in a month with reused masks producing more. Scientists said some masks are laced with toxic chemicals and a variety of compounds seriously restricted for both health and environmental reasons. They include cobalt (used in blue dye) and formaldehyde known to cause watery eyes, burning sensations in the eyes, nose, and throat, plus coughing, wheezing and nausea. No – that must be 'Covid-19'.

Mask 'worms'

There is another and potentially even more sinister content of masks. Mostly new masks of different makes filmed under a microscope around the world have been found to contain strange black fibres or 'worms' that appear to move or 'crawl' by themselves and react to heat and water. The nearest I have seen to them are the self-replicating fibres that are pulled out through the skin of those suffering from Morgellons disease which has been connected to the phenomena of 'chemtrails' which I will bring into the story later on. Morgellons fibres continue to grow outside the body and have a form of artificial intelligence. Black 'worm' fibres in masks have that kind of feel to them and there is a nanotechnology technique called 'worm micelles' which carry and release drugs or anything else you want to deliver to the body. For sure the suppression of humanity by mind altering drugs is the Cult agenda big time and the more excuses they can find to gain access to the body the more opportunities there are to make that happen whether through 'vaccines' or masks pushed against the mouth and nose for hours on end.

So let us summarise the pros and cons of masks:

Against masks: Breathing in your own carbon dioxide; depriving the body and brain of sufficient oxygen; build-up of toxins in the mask that can be breathed into the lungs and cause rashes on the face and 'mask-mouth'; breathing microplastic fibres and toxic chemicals into the lungs; dehumanisation and deleting individualisation by literally making people faceless; destroying human emotional interaction through facial expression and deleting parental connection with their babies which look for guidance to their facial expression.

For masks: They don't protect you from a 'virus' that doesn't exist and even if it did 'viral' particles are so minute they are smaller than the holes in the mask.

Governments, police, supermarkets, businesses, transport companies, and all the rest who seek to impose masks have done no risk assessment on their consequences for health and psychology and are now open to group lawsuits when the impact becomes clear with a cumulative epidemic of respiratory and other disease. Authorities will try to exploit these effects and hide the real cause by dubbing them 'Covid-19'. Can you imagine setting out to force the population to wear health-destroying masks without doing any assessment of the risks? It is criminal and it is evil, but then how many people targeted in this way, who see their children told to wear them all day at school, have asked for a risk assessment? Billions can't be imposed upon by the few unless the billions allow it. Oh, yes, with just a tinge of irony, 85 percent of all masks made worldwide come from *China*.

Wash your hands in toxic shite

'Covid' rules include the use of toxic sanitisers and again the health consequences of constantly applying toxins to be absorbed through the skin is obvious to any level of Renegade Mind. America's Food and Drug Administration (FDA) said that sanitisers are drugs and issued a warning about 75 dangerous brands which contain

methanol used in antifreeze and can cause death, kidney damage and blindness. The FDA circulated the following warning even for those brands that it claims to be safe:

> Store hand sanitizer out of the reach of pets and children, and children should use it only with adult supervision. Do not drink hand sanitizer. This is particularly important for young children, especially toddlers, who may be attracted by the pleasant smell or brightly colored bottles of hand sanitizer.
>
> Drinking even a small amount of hand sanitizer can cause alcohol poisoning in children. (However, there is no need to be concerned if your children eat with or lick their hands after using hand sanitizer.) During this coronavirus pandemic, poison control centers have had an increase in calls about accidental ingestion of hand sanitizer, so it is important that adults monitor young children's use.
>
> Do not allow pets to swallow hand sanitizer. If you think your pet has eaten something potentially dangerous, call your veterinarian or a pet poison control center right away. Hand sanitizer is flammable and should be stored away from heat and flames. When using hand sanitizer, rub your hands until they feel completely dry before performing activities that may involve heat, sparks, static electricity, or open flames.

There you go, perfectly safe, then, and that's without even a mention of the toxins absorbed through the skin. Come on kids – sanitise your hands everywhere you go. It will save you from the 'virus'. Put all these elements together of the 'Covid' normal and see how much health and psychology is being cumulatively damaged, even devastated, to 'protect your health'. Makes sense, right? They are only imposing these things because they care, right? *Right?*

Submitting to insanity

Psychological reframing of the population goes very deep and is done in many less obvious ways. I hear people say how contradictory and crazy 'Covid' rules are and how they are ever changing. This is explained away by dismissing those involved as idiots. It is a big mistake. The Cult is delighted if its cold calculation is perceived as incompetence and idiocy when it is anything but. Oh, yes, there are idiots within the system – lots of them – but they are *administering* the Cult agenda, mostly unknowingly. They are not deciding and dictating it. The bulwark against tyranny is self-

respect, always has been, always will be. It is self-respect that has broken every tyranny in history. By its very nature self-respect will not bow to oppression and its perpetrators. There is so little self-respect that it's always the few that overturn dictators. Many may eventually follow, but the few with the iron spines (self-respect) kick it off and generate the momentum. The Cult targets self-respect in the knowledge that once this has gone only submission remains. Crazy, contradictory, ever-changing 'Covid' rules are systematically applied by psychologists to delete self-respect. They *want* you to see that the rules make no sense. It is one thing to decide to do something when *you* have made the choice based on evidence and logic. You still retain your self-respect. It is quite another when you can see what you are being told to do is insane, ridiculous and makes no sense, and *yet you still do it*. Your self-respect is extinguished and this has been happening as ever more obviously stupid and nonsensical things have been demanded and the great majority have complied even when they can see they are stupid and nonsensical.

People walk around in face-nappies knowing they are damaging their health and make no difference to a 'virus'. They do it in fear of not doing it. I know it's daft, but I'll do it anyway. When that happens something dies inside of you and submissive reframing has begun. Next there's a need to hide from yourself that you have conceded your self-respect and you convince yourself that you have not really submitted to fear and intimidation. You begin to believe that you are complying with craziness because it's the right thing to do. When first you concede your self-respect of 2+2 = 4 to 2+2 = 5 you *know* you are compromising your self-respect. Gradually to avoid facing that fact you begin to *believe* that 2+2=5. You have been reframed and I have been watching this process happening in the human psyche on an industrial scale. The Cult is working to break your spirit and one of its major tools in that war is humiliation. I read how former American soldier Bradley Manning (later Chelsea Manning after a sex-change) was treated after being jailed for supplying WikiLeaks with documents exposing the enormity of

government and elite mendacity. Manning was isolated in solitary confinement for eight months, put under 24-hour surveillance, forced to hand over clothing before going to bed, and stand naked for every roll call. This is systematic humiliation. The introduction of anal swab 'Covid' tests in China has been done for the same reason to delete self-respect and induce compliant submission. Anal swabs are mandatory for incoming passengers in parts of China and American diplomats have said they were forced to undergo the indignity which would have been calculated humiliation by the Cult-owned Chinese government that has America in its sights.

Government-people: An abusive relationship

Spirit-breaking psychological techniques include giving people hope and apparent respite from tyranny only to take it away again. This happened in the UK during Christmas, 2020, when the psycho-psychologists and their political lackeys announced an easing of restrictions over the holiday only to reimpose them almost immediately on the basis of yet another lie. There is a big psychological difference between getting used to oppression and being given hope of relief only to have that dashed. Psychologists know this and we have seen the technique used repeatedly. Then there is traumatising people before you introduce more extreme regulations that require compliance. A perfect case was the announcement by the dark and sinister Whitty and Vallance in the UK that 'new data' predicted that 4,000 could die every day over the winter of 2020/2021 if we did not lockdown again. I think they call it lying and after traumatising people with that claim out came Jackboot Johnson the next day with new curbs on human freedom. Psychologists know that a frightened and traumatised mind becomes suggestable to submission and behaviour reframing. Underpinning all this has been to make people fearful and suspicious of each other and see themselves as a potential danger to others. In league with deleted self-respect you have the perfect psychological recipe for self-loathing. The relationship between authority and public is now demonstrably the same as that of

subservience to an abusive partner. These are signs of an abusive relationship explained by psychologist Leslie Becker-Phelps:

Psychological and emotional abuse: Undermining a partner's self-worth with verbal attacks, name-calling, and belittling. Humiliating the partner in public, unjustly accusing them of having an affair, or interrogating them about their every behavior. Keeping partner confused or off balance by saying they were just kidding or blaming the partner for 'making' them act this way … Feigning in public that they care while turning against them in private. This leads to victims frequently feeling confused, incompetent, unworthy, hopeless, and chronically self-doubting. [Apply these techniques to how governments have treated the population since New Year, 2020, and the parallels are obvious.]

Physical abuse: The abuser might physically harm their partner in a range of ways, such as grabbing, hitting, punching, or shoving them. They might throw objects at them or harm them with a weapon. [Observe the physical harm imposed by masks, lockdown, and so on.]

Threats and intimidation: One way abusers keep their partners in line is by instilling fear. They might be verbally threatening, or give threatening looks or gestures. Abusers often make it known that they are tracking their partner's every move. They might destroy their partner's possessions, threaten to harm them, or threaten to harm their family members. Not surprisingly, victims of this abuse often feel anxiety, fear, and panic. [No words necessary.]

Isolation: Abusers often limit their partner's activities, forbidding them to talk or interact with friends or family. They might limit access to a car or even turn off their phone. All of this might be done by physically holding them against their will, but is often accomplished through psychological abuse and intimidation. The more isolated a person feels, the fewer resources they have to help gain perspective on their situation and to escape from it. [No words necessary.]

Economic abuse: Abusers often make their partners beholden to them for money by controlling access to funds of any kind. They might prevent their partner from getting a job or withhold access to money they earn from a job. This creates financial dependency that makes leaving the relationship very difficult. [See destruction of livelihoods and the proposed meagre 'guaranteed income' so long as you do whatever you are told.]

Using children: An abuser might disparage their partner's parenting skills, tell their children lies about their partner, threaten to take custody of their children, or threaten to harm their children. These tactics instil fear and often elicit compliance. [See reframed social service mafia and how children are being mercilessly abused by the state over 'Covid' while their parents look on too frightened to do anything.]

A further recurring trait in an abusive relationship is the abused blaming themselves for their abuse and making excuses for the abuser. We have the public blaming each other for lockdown abuse by government and many making excuses for the government while attacking those who challenge the government. How often we have heard authorities say that rules are being imposed or reimposed only because people have refused to 'behave' and follow the rules. We don't want to do it – it's *you*.

Renegade Minds are an antidote to all of these things. They will never concede their self-respect no matter what the circumstances. Even when apparent humiliation is heaped upon them they laugh in its face and reflect back the humiliation on the abuser where it belongs. Renegade Minds will never wear masks they know are only imposed to humiliate, suppress and damage both physically and psychologically. Consequences will take care of themselves and they will never break their spirit or cause them to concede to tyranny. UK newspaper columnist Peter Hitchens was one of the few in the mainstream media to speak out against lockdowns and forced vaccinations. He then announced he had taken the jab. He wanted to see family members abroad and he believed vaccine passports were inevitable even though they had not yet been introduced. Hitchens

has a questioning and critical mind, but not a Renegade one. If he had no amount of pressure would have made him concede. Hitchens excused his action by saying that the battle has been lost. Renegade Minds never accept defeat when freedom is at stake and even if they are the last one standing the self-respect of not submitting to tyranny is more important than any outcome or any consequence.

That's why Renegade Minds are the only minds that ever changed anything worth changing.

CHAPTER EIGHT

'Reframing' insanity

Insanity is relative. It depends on who has who locked in what cage
Ray Bradbury

'Reframing' a mind means simply to change its perception and behaviour. This can be done subconsciously to such an extent that subjects have no idea they have been 'reframed' while to any observer changes in behaviour and attitudes are obvious.

Human society is being reframed on a ginormous scale since the start of 2020 and here we have the reason why psychologists rather than doctors have been calling the shots. Ask most people who have succumbed to 'Covid' reframing if they have changed and most will say 'no'; but they *have* and fundamentally. The Cult's long-game has been preparing for these times since way back and crucial to that has been to prepare both population and officialdom mentally and emotionally. To use the mind-control parlance they had to reframe the population with a mentality that would submit to fascism and reframe those in government and law enforcement to impose fascism or at least go along with it. The result has been the fact-deleted mindlessness of 'Wokeness' and officialdom that has either enthusiastically or unquestioningly imposed global tyranny demanded by reframed politicians on behalf of psychopathic and deeply evil cultists. 'Cognitive reframing' identifies and challenges the way someone sees the world in the form of situations, experiences and emotions and then restructures those perceptions to view the same set of circumstances in a different way. This can have

benefits if the attitudes are personally destructive while on the other side it has the potential for individual and collective mind control which the subject has no idea has even happened.

Cognitive therapy was developed in the 1960s by Aaron T. Beck who was born in Rhode Island in 1921 as the son of Jewish immigrants from the Ukraine. He became interested in the techniques as a treatment for depression. Beck's daughter Judith S. Beck is prominent in the same field and they founded the Beck Institute for Cognitive Behavior Therapy in Philadelphia in 1994. Cognitive reframing, however, began to be used worldwide by those with a very dark agenda. The Cult reframes politicians to change their attitudes and actions until they are completely at odds with what they once appeared to stand for. The same has been happening to government administrators at all levels, law enforcement, military and the human population. Cultists love mind control for two main reasons: It allows them to control what people think, do and say to secure agenda advancement and, by definition, it calms their legendary insecurity and fear of the unexpected. I have studied mind control since the time I travelled America in 1996. I may have been talking to next to no one in terms of an audience in those years, but my goodness did I gather a phenomenal amount of information and knowledge about so many things including the techniques of mind control. I have described this in detail in other books going back to *The Biggest Secret* in 1998. I met a very large number of people recovering from MKUltra and its offshoots and successors and I began to see how these same techniques were being used on the population in general. This was never more obvious than since the 'Covid' hoax began.

Reframing the enforcers

I have observed over the last two decades and more the very clear transformation in the dynamic between the police, officialdom and the public. I tracked this in the books as the relationship mutated from one of serving the public to seeing them as almost the enemy and certainly a lower caste. There has always been a class divide

based on income and always been some psychopathic, corrupt, and big-I-am police officers. This was different. Wholesale change was unfolding in the collective dynamic; it was less about money and far more about position and perceived power. An us-and-them was emerging. Noses were lifted skyward by government administration and law enforcement and their attitude to the public they were *supposed* to be serving changed to one of increasing contempt, superiority and control. The transformation was so clear and widespread that it had to be planned. Collective attitudes and dynamics do not change naturally and organically that quickly on that scale. I then came across an organisation in Britain called Common Purpose created in the late 1980s by Julia Middleton who would work in the office of Deputy Prime Minister John Prescott during the long and disastrous premiership of war criminal Tony Blair. When Blair speaks the Cult is speaking and the man should have been in jail a long time ago. Common Purpose proclaims itself to be one of the biggest 'leadership development' organisations in the world while functioning as a *charity* with all the financial benefits which come from that. It hosts 'leadership development' courses and programmes all over the world and claims to have 'brought together' what it calls 'leaders' from more than 100 countries on six continents. The modus operandi of Common Purpose can be compared with the work of the UK government's reframing network that includes the Behavioural Insights Team 'nudge unit' and 'Covid' reframing specialists at SPI-B. WikiLeaks described Common Purpose long ago as 'a hidden virus in our government and schools' which is unknown to the general public: 'It recruits and trains "leaders" to be loyal to the directives of Common Purpose and the EU, instead of to their own departments, which they then undermine or subvert, the NHS [National Health Service] being an example.' This is a vital point to understand the 'Covid' hoax. The NHS, and its equivalent around the world, has been utterly reframed in terms of administrators and much of the medical personnel with the transformation underpinned by recruitment policies. The outcome has been the criminal and psychopathic behaviour of the

NHS over 'Covid' and we have seen the same in every other major country. WikiLeaks said Common Purpose trainees are 'learning to rule without regard to democracy' and to usher in a police state (current events explained). Common Purpose operated like a 'glue' and had members in the NHS, BBC, police, legal profession, church, many of Britain's 7,000 quangos, local councils, the Civil Service, government ministries and Parliament, and controlled many RDA's (Regional Development Agencies). Here we have one answer for how and why British institutions and their like in other countries have changed so negatively in relation to the public. This further explains how and why the beyond-disgraceful reframed BBC has become a propaganda arm of 'Covid' fascism. They are all part of a network pursuing the same goal.

By 2019 Common Purpose was quoting a figure of 85,000 'leaders' that had attended its programmes. These 'students' of all ages are known as Common Purpose 'graduates' and they consist of government, state and local government officials and administrators, police chiefs and officers, and a whole range of others operating within the national, local and global establishment. Cressida Dick, Commissioner of the London Metropolitan Police, is the Common Purpose graduate who was the 'Gold Commander' that oversaw what can only be described as the murder of Brazilian electrician Jean Charles de Menezes in 2005. He was held down by psychopathic police and shot seven times in the head by a psychopathic lunatic after being mistaken for a terrorist when he was just a bloke going about his day. Dick authorised officers to pursue and keep surveillance on de Menezes and ordered that he be stopped from entering the underground train system. Police psychopaths took her at her word clearly. She was 'disciplined' for this outrage by being *promoted* – eventually to the top of the 'Met' police where she has been a disaster. Many Chief Constables controlling the police in different parts of the UK are and have been Common Purpose graduates. I have heard the 'graduate' network described as a sort of Mafia or secret society operating within the fabric of government at all levels pursuing a collective policy

ingrained at Common Purpose training events. Founder Julia Middleton herself has said:

> Locally and internationally, Common Purpose graduates will be 'lighting small fires' to create change in their organisations and communities … The Common Purpose effect is best illustrated by the many stories of small changes brought about by leaders, who themselves have changed.

A Common Purpose mission statement declared:

> Common Purpose aims to improve the way society works by expanding the vision, decision-making ability and influence of all kinds of leaders. The organisation runs a variety of educational programmes for leaders of all ages, backgrounds and sectors, in order to provide them with the inspirational, information and opportunities they need to change the world.

Yes, but into what? Since 2020 the answer has become clear.

NLP and the Delphi technique

Common Purpose would seem to be a perfect name or would common programming be better? One of the foundation methods of reaching 'consensus' (group think) is by setting the agenda theme and then encouraging, cajoling or pressuring everyone to agree a 'consensus' in line with the core theme promoted by Common Purpose. The methodology involves the 'Delphi technique', or an adaption of it, in which opinions are expressed that are summarised by a 'facilitator or change agent' at each stage. Participants are 'encouraged' to modify their views in the light of what others have said. Stage by stage the former individual opinions are merged into group consensus which just happens to be what Common Purpose wants them to believe. A key part of this is to marginalise anyone refusing to concede to group think and turn the group against them to apply pressure to conform. We are seeing this very technique used on the general population to make 'Covid' group-thinkers hostile to those who have seen through the bullshit. People can be reframed by using perception manipulation methods such as Neuro-Linguistic Programming (NLP) in which you change perception with the use of

carefully constructed language. An NLP website described the technique this way:

> … A method of influencing brain behaviour (the 'neuro' part of the phrase) through the use of language (the 'linguistic' part) and other types of communication to enable a person to 'recode' the way the brain responds to stimuli (that's the 'programming') and manifest new and better behaviours. Neuro-Linguistic Programming often incorporates hypnosis and self-hypnosis to help achieve the change (or 'programming') that is wanted.

British alternative media operation UKColumn has done very detailed research into Common Purpose over a long period. I quoted co-founder and former naval officer Brian Gerrish in my book *Remember Who You Are*, published in 2011, as saying the following years before current times:

> It is interesting that many of the mothers who have had children taken by the State speak of the Social Services people being icily cool, emotionless and, as two ladies said in slightly different words, '… like little robots'. We know that NLP is cumulative, so people can be given small imperceptible doses of NLP in a course here, another in a few months, next year etc. In this way, major changes are accrued in their personality, but the day by day change is almost unnoticeable.

In these and other ways 'graduates' have had their perceptions uniformly reframed and they return to their roles in the institutions of government, law enforcement, legal profession, military, 'education', the UK National Health Service and the whole swathe of the establishment structure to pursue a common agenda preparing for the 'post-industrial', 'post-democratic' society. I say 'preparing' but we are now there. 'Post-industrial' is code for the Great Reset and 'post-democratic' is 'Covid' fascism. UKColumn has spoken to partners of those who have attended Common Purpose 'training'. They have described how personalities and attitudes of 'graduates' changed very noticeably for the worse by the time they had completed the course. They had been 'reframed' and told they are the 'leaders' – the special ones – who know better than the population. There has also been the very demonstrable recruitment of psychopaths and narcissists into government administration at all

levels and law enforcement. If you want psychopathy hire psychopaths and you get a simple cause and effect. If you want administrators, police officers and 'leaders' to perceive the public as lesser beings who don't matter then employ narcissists. These personalities are identified using 'psychometrics' that identifies knowledge, abilities, attitudes and personality traits, mostly through carefully-designed questionnaires and tests. As this policy has passed through the decades we have had power-crazy, power-trippers appointed into law enforcement, security and government administration in preparation for current times and the dynamic between public and law enforcement/officialdom has been transformed. UKColumn's Brian Gerrish said of the narcissistic personality:

> Their love of themselves and power automatically means that they will crush others who get in their way. I received a major piece of the puzzle when a friend pointed out that when they made public officials re-apply for their own jobs several years ago they were also required to do psychometric tests. This was undoubtedly the start of the screening process to get 'their' sort of people in post.

How obvious that has been since 2020 although it was clear what was happening long before if people paid attention to the changing public-establishment dynamic.

Change agents

At the centre of events in 'Covid' Britain is the National Health Service (NHS) which has behaved disgracefully in slavishly following the Cult agenda. The NHS management structure is awash with Common Purpose graduates or 'change agents' working to a common cause. Helen Bevan, a Chief of Service Transformation at the NHS Institute for Innovation and Improvement, co-authored a document called 'Towards a million change agents, a review of the social movements literature: implications for large scale change in the NHS'. The document compared a project management approach to that of change and social movements where 'people change

themselves and each other – peer to peer'. Two definitions given for a 'social movement' were:

A group of people who consciously attempt to build a radically new social order; involves people of a broad range of social backgrounds; and deploys politically confrontational and socially disruptive tactics – Cyrus Zirakzadeh 1997

Collective challenges, based on common purposes and social solidarities, in sustained interaction with elites, opponents, and authorities – Sidney Tarrow 1994

Helen Bevan wrote another NHS document in which she defined 'framing' as 'the process by which leaders construct, articulate and put across their message in a powerful and compelling way in order to win people to their cause and call them to action'. I think I could come up with another definition that would be rather more accurate. The National Health Service and institutions of Britain and the wider world have been taken over by reframed 'change agents' and that includes everything from the United Nations to national governments, local councils and social services which have been kidnapping children from loving parents on an extraordinary and gathering scale on the road to the end of parenthood altogether. Children from loving homes are stolen and kidnapped by the state and put into the 'care' (inversion) of the local authority through council homes, foster parents and forced adoption. At the same time children are allowed to be abused without response while many are under council 'care'. UKColumn highlighted the Common Purpose connection between South Yorkshire Police and Rotherham council officers in the case of the scandal in that area of the sexual exploitation of children to which the authorities turned not one blind eye, but both:

We were alarmed to discover that the Chief Executive, the Strategic Director of Children and Young People's Services, the Manager for the Local Strategic Partnership, the Community Cohesion Manager, the Cabinet Member for Cohesion, the Chief Constable and his predecessor had all attended Leadership training courses provided by the pseudo-charity Common Purpose.

Once 'change agents' have secured positions of hire and fire within any organisation things start to move very quickly. Personnel are then hired and fired on the basis of whether they will work towards the agenda the change agent represents. If they do they are rapidly promoted even though they may be incompetent. Those more qualified and skilled who are pre-Common Purpose 'old school' see their careers stall and even disappear. This has been happening for decades in every institution of state, police, 'health' and social services and all of them have been transformed as a result in their attitudes to their jobs and the public. Medical professions, including nursing, which were once vocations for the caring now employ many cold, callous and couldn't give a shit personality types. The UKColumn investigation concluded:

By blurring the boundaries between people, professions, public and private sectors, responsibility and accountability, Common Purpose encourages 'graduates' to believe that as new selected leaders, they can work together, outside of the established political and social structures, to achieve a paradigm shift or CHANGE – so called 'Leading Beyond Authority'. In doing so, the allegiance of the individual becomes 'reframed' on CP colleagues and their NETWORK.

Reframing the Face-Nappies

Nowhere has this process been more obvious than in the police where recruitment of psychopaths and development of unquestioning mind-controlled group-thinkers have transformed law enforcement into a politically-correct 'Woke' joke and a travesty of what should be public service. Today they wear their face-nappies like good little gofers and enforce 'Covid' rules which are fascism under another name. Alongside the specifically-recruited psychopaths we have software minds incapable of free thought. Brian Gerrish again:

An example is the policeman who would not get on a bike for a press photo because he had not done the cycling proficiency course. Normal people say this is political correctness gone mad. Nothing could be further from the truth. The policeman has been reframed, and in his reality it is perfect common sense not to get on the bike 'because he hasn't done the cycling course'.

Another example of this is where the police would not rescue a boy from a pond until they had taken advice from above on the 'risk assessment'. A normal person would have arrived, perhaps thought of the risk for a moment, and dived in. To the police now 'reframed', they followed 'normal' procedure.

There are shocking cases of reframed ambulance crews doing the same. Sheer unthinking stupidity of London Face-Nappies headed by Common Purpose graduate Cressida Dick can be seen in their behaviour at a vigil in March, 2021, for a murdered woman, Sarah Everard. A police officer had been charged with the crime. Anyone with a brain would have left the vigil alone in the circumstances. Instead they 'manhandled' women to stop them breaking 'Covid rules' to betray classic reframing. Minds in the thrall of perception control have no capacity for seeing a situation on its merits and acting accordingly. 'Rules is rules' is their only mind-set. My father used to say that rules and regulations are for the guidance of the intelligent and the blind obedience of the idiot. Most of the intelligent, decent, coppers have gone leaving only the other kind and a few old school for whom the job must be a daily nightmare. The combination of psychopaths and rule-book software minds has been clearly on public display in the 'Covid' era with automaton robots in uniform imposing fascistic 'Covid' regulations on the population without any personal initiative or judging situations on their merits. There are thousands of examples around the world, but I'll make my point with the infamous Derbyshire police in the English East Midlands – the ones who think pouring dye into beauty spots and using drones to track people walking in the countryside away from anyone is called 'policing'. To them there are rules decreed by the government which they have to enforce and in their bewildered state a group gathering in a closed space and someone walking alone in the countryside are the same thing. It is beyond idiocy and enters the realm of clinical insanity.

Police officers in Derbyshire said they were 'horrified' – *horrified* – to find 15 to 20 'irresponsible' kids playing a football match at a closed leisure centre 'in breach of coronavirus restrictions'. When they saw the police the kids ran away leaving their belongings behind and the reframed men and women of Derbyshire police were seeking to establish their identities with a view to fining their parents. The most natural thing for youngsters to do – kicking a ball about – is turned into a criminal activity and enforced by the moronic software programs of Derbyshire police. You find the same mentality in every country. These barely conscious 'horrified' officers said they had to take action because 'we need to ensure these rules are being followed' and 'it is of the utmost importance that you ensure your children are following the rules and regulations for Covid-19'. Had any of them done ten seconds of research to see if this parroting of their masters' script could be supported by any evidence? Nope. Reframed people don't think – others think for them and that's the whole idea of reframing. I have seen police officers one after the other repeating without question word for word what officialdom tells them just as I have seen great swathes of the public doing the same. Ask either for 'their' opinion and out spews what they have been told to think by the official narrative. Police and public may seem to be in different groups, but their mentality is the same. Most people do whatever they are told in fear not doing so or because they believe what officialdom tells them; almost the entirety of the police do what they are told for the same reason. Ultimately it's the tiny inner core of the global Cult that's telling both what to do.

So Derbyshire police were 'horrified'. Oh, really? Why did they think those kids were playing football? It was to relieve the psychological consequences of lockdown and being denied human contact with their friends and interaction, touch and discourse vital to human psychological health. Being denied this month after month has dismantled the psyche of many children and young people as depression and suicide have exploded. Were Derbyshire police *horrified by that*? Are you kidding? Reframed people don't have those

mental and emotional processes that can see how the impact on the psychological health of youngsters is far more dangerous than any 'virus' even if you take the mendacious official figures to be true. The reframed are told (programmed) how to act and so they do. The Derbyshire Chief Constable in the first period of lockdown when the black dye and drones nonsense was going on was Peter Goodman. He was the man who severed the connection between his force and the Derbyshire Constabulary *Male Voice* Choir when he decided that it was not inclusive enough to allow women to join. The fact it was a male voice choir making a particular sound produced by male voices seemed to elude a guy who terrifyingly ran policing in Derbyshire. He retired weeks after his force was condemned as disgraceful by former Supreme Court Justice Jonathan Sumption for their behaviour over extreme lockdown impositions. Goodman was replaced by his deputy Rachel Swann who was in charge when her officers were 'horrified'. The police statement over the boys committing the hanging-offence of playing football included the line about the youngsters being 'irresponsible in the times we are all living through' missing the point that the real relevance of the 'times we are all living through' is the imposition of fascism enforced by psychopaths and reframed minds of police officers playing such a vital part in establishing the fascist tyranny that their own children and grandchildren will have to live in their entire lives. As a definition of insanity that is hard to beat although it might be run close by imposing masks on people that can have a serious effect on their health while wearing a face nappy all day themselves. Once again public and police do it for the same reason – the authorities tell them to and who are they to have the self-respect to say no?

Wokers in uniform

How reframed do you have to be to arrest a *six-year-old* and take him to court for *picking a flower* while waiting for a bus? Brain dead police and officialdom did just that in North Carolina where criminal proceedings happen regularly for children under nine. Attorney Julie Boyer gave the six-year-old crayons and a colouring book

during the 'flower' hearing while the 'adults' decided his fate. County Chief District Court Judge Jay Corpening asked: 'Should a child that believes in Santa Claus, the Easter Bunny and the tooth fairy be making life-altering decisions?' Well, of course not, but common sense has no meaning when you have a common purpose and a reframed mind. Treating children in this way, and police operating in American schools, is all part of the psychological preparation for children to accept a police state as normal all their adult lives. The same goes for all the cameras and biometric tracking technology in schools. Police training is focused on reframing them as snowflake Wokers and this is happening in the military. Pentagon top brass said that 'training sessions on extremism' were needed for troops who asked why they were so focused on the Capitol Building riot when Black Lives Matter riots were ignored. What's the difference between them some apparently and rightly asked. Actually, there is a difference. Five people died in the Capitol riot, only one through violence, and that was a police officer shooting an unarmed protestor. BLM riots killed at least 25 people and cost billions. Asking the question prompted the psychopaths and reframed minds that run the Pentagon to say that more 'education' (programming) was needed. Troop training is all based on psychological programming to make them fodder for the Cult – 'Military men are just dumb, stupid animals to be used as pawns in foreign policy' as Cult-to-his-DNA former Secretary of State Henry Kissinger famously said. Governments see the police in similar terms and it's time for those among them who can see this to defend the people and stop being enforcers of the Cult agenda upon the people.

The US military, like the country itself, is being targeted for destruction through a long list of Woke impositions. Cult-owned gaga 'President' Biden signed an executive order when he took office to allow taxpayer money to pay for transgender surgery for active military personnel and veterans. Are you a man soldier? No, I'm a LGBTQIA+ with a hint of Skoliosexual and Spectrasexual. Oh, good man. Bad choice of words you bigot. The Pentagon announced in March, 2021, the appointment of the first 'diversity and inclusion

officer' for US Special Forces. Richard Torres-Estrada arrived with the publication of a 'D&I Strategic Plan which will guide the enterprise-wide effort to institutionalize and sustain D&I'. If you think a Special Forces 'Strategic Plan' should have something to do with defending America you haven't been paying attention. Defending Woke is now the military's new role. Torres-Estrada has posted images comparing Donald Trump with Adolf Hitler and we can expect no bias from him as a representative of the supposedly non-political Pentagon. Cable news host Tucker Carlson said: 'The Pentagon is now the Yale faculty lounge but with cruise missiles.' Meanwhile Secretary of Defense Lloyd Austin, a board member of weapons-maker Raytheon with stock and compensation interests in October, 2020, worth $1.4 million, said he was purging the military of the 'enemy within' – anyone who isn't Woke and supports Donald Trump. Austin refers to his targets as 'racist extremists' while in true Woke fashion being himself a racist extremist. Pentagon documents pledge to 'eradicate, eliminate and conquer all forms of racism, sexism and homophobia'. The definitions of these are decided by 'diversity and inclusion committees' peopled by those who see racism, sexism and homophobia in every situation and opinion. Woke (the Cult) is dismantling the US military and purging testosterone as China expands its military and gives its troops 'masculinity training'. How do we think that is going to end when this is all Cult coordinated? The US military, like the British military, is controlled by Woke and spineless top brass who just go along with it out of personal career interests.

'Woke' means fast asleep

Mind control and perception manipulation techniques used on individuals to create group-think have been unleashed on the global population in general. As a result many have no capacity to see the obvious fascist agenda being installed all around them or what 'Covid' is really all about. Their brains are firewalled like a computer system not to process certain concepts, thoughts and realisations that are bad for the Cult. The young are most targeted as the adults they

will be when the whole fascist global state is planned to be fully implemented. They need to be prepared for total compliance to eliminate all pushback from entire generations. The Cult has been pouring billions into taking complete control of 'education' from schools to universities via its operatives and corporations and not least Bill Gates as always. The plan has been to transform 'education' institutions into programming centres for the mentality of 'Woke'. James McConnell, professor of psychology at the University of Michigan, wrote in *Psychology Today* in 1970:

> The day has come when we can combine sensory deprivation with drugs, hypnosis, and astute manipulation of reward and punishment, to gain almost absolute control over an individual's behaviour. It should then be possible to achieve a very rapid and highly effective type of brainwashing that would allow us to make dramatic changes in a person's behaviour and personality ...
>
> … We should reshape society so that we all would be trained from birth to want to do what society wants us to do. We have the techniques to do it... no-one owns his own personality you acquired, and there's no reason to believe you should have the right to refuse to acquire a new personality if your old one is anti-social.

This was the potential for mass brainwashing in 1970 and the mentality there displayed captures the arrogant psychopathy that drives it forward. I emphasise that not all young people have succumbed to Woke programming and those that haven't are incredibly impressive people given that today's young are the most perceptually-targeted generations in history with all the technology now involved. Vast swathes of the young generations, however, have fallen into the spell – and that's what it is – of Woke. The Woke mentality and perceptual program is founded on *inversion* and you will appreciate later why that is so significant. Everything with Woke is inverted and the opposite of what it is claimed to be. Woke was a term used in African-American culture from the 1900s and referred to an awareness of social and racial justice. This is not the meaning of the modern version or 'New Woke' as I call it in *The Answer*. Oh, no, Woke today means something very different no matter how much Wokers may seek to hide that and insist Old Woke and New

Woke are the same. See if you find any 'awareness of social justice' here in the modern variety:

- Woke demands 'inclusivity' while excluding anyone with a different opinion and calls for mass censorship to silence other views.

- Woke claims to stand against oppression when imposing oppression is the foundation of all that it does. It is the driver of political correctness which is nothing more than a Cult invention to manipulate the population to silence itself.

- Woke believes itself to be 'liberal' while pursuing a global society that can only be described as fascist (see 'anti-fascist' fascist Antifa).

- Woke calls for 'social justice' while spreading injustice wherever it goes against the common 'enemy' which can be easily identified as a differing view.

- Woke is supposed to be a metaphor for 'awake' when it is solid-gold asleep and deep in a Cult-induced coma that meets the criteria for 'off with the fairies'.

I state these points as obvious facts if people only care to look. I don't do this with a sense of condemnation. We need to appreciate that the onslaught of perceptual programming on the young has been incessant and merciless. I can understand why so many have been reframed, or, given their youth, framed from the start to see the world as the Cult demands. The Cult has had access to their minds day after day in its 'education' system for their entire formative years. Perception is formed from information received and the Cult-created system is a life-long download of information delivered to elicit a particular perception, thus behaviour. The more this has expanded into still new extremes in recent decades and ever-increasing censorship has deleted other opinions and information why wouldn't that lead to a perceptual reframing on a mass scale? I

have described already cradle-to-grave programming and in more recent times the targeting of young minds from birth to adulthood has entered the stratosphere. This has taken the form of skewing what is 'taught' to fit the Cult agenda and the omnipresent techniques of group-think to isolate non-believers and pressure them into line. There has always been a tendency to follow the herd, but we really are in a new world now in relation to that. We have parents who can see the 'Covid' hoax told by their children not to stop them wearing masks at school, being 'Covid' tested or having the 'vaccine' in fear of the peer-pressure consequences of being different. What is 'peer-pressure' if not pressure to conform to group-think? Renegade Minds never group-think and always retain a set of perceptions that are unique to them. Group-think is always underpinned by consequences for not group-thinking. Abuse now aimed at those refusing DNA-manipulating 'Covid vaccines' are a potent example of this. The biggest pressure to conform comes from the very group which is itself being manipulated. 'I am programmed to be part of a hive mind and so you must be.'

Woke control structures in 'education' now apply to every mainstream organisation. Those at the top of the 'education' hierarchy (the Cult) decide the policy. This is imposed on governments through the Cult network; governments impose it on schools, colleges and universities; their leadership impose the policy on teachers and academics and they impose it on children and students. At any level where there is resistance, perhaps from a teacher or university lecturer, they are targeted by the authorities and often fired. Students themselves regularly demand the dismissal of academics (increasingly few) at odds with the narrative that the students have been programmed to believe in. It is quite a thought that students who are being targeted by the Cult become so consumed by programmed group-think that they launch protests and demand the removal of those who are trying to push back against those targeting the students. Such is the scale of perceptual inversion. We see this with 'Covid' programming as the Cult imposes the rules via psycho-psychologists and governments on

shops, transport companies and businesses which impose them on their staff who impose them on their customers who pressure Pushbackers to conform to the will of the Cult which is in the process of destroying them and their families. Scan all aspects of society and you will see the same sequence every time.

Fact free Woke and hijacking the 'left'

There is no more potent example of this than 'Woke', a mentality only made possible by the deletion of factual evidence by an 'education' system seeking to produce an ever more uniform society. Why would you bother with facts when you don't know any? Deletion of credible history both in volume and type is highly relevant. Orwell said: 'Who controls the past controls the future: who controls the present controls the past.' They who control the perception of the past control the perception of the future and they who control the present control the perception of the past through the writing and deleting of history. Why would you oppose the imposition of Marxism in the name of Wokeism when you don't know that Marxism cost at least 100 million lives in the 20th century alone? Watch videos and read reports in which Woker generations are asked basic historical questions – it's mind-blowing. A survey of 2,000 people found that six percent of millennials (born approximately early1980s to early 2000s) believed the Second World War (1939-1945) broke out with the assassination of President Kennedy (in 1963) and one in ten thought Margaret Thatcher was British Prime Minister at the time. She was in office between 1979 and 1990. We are in a post-fact society. Provable facts are no defence against the fascism of political correctness or Silicon Valley censorship. Facts don't matter anymore as we have witnessed with the 'Covid' hoax. Sacrificing uniqueness to the Woke group-think religion is all you are required to do and that means thinking for yourself is the biggest Woke no, no. All religions are an expression of group-think and censorship and Woke is just another religion with an orthodoxy defended by group-think and censorship. Burned at

the stake becomes burned on Twitter which leads back eventually to burned at the stake as Woke humanity regresses to ages past.

The biggest Woke inversion of all is its creators and funders. I grew up in a traditional left of centre political household on a council estate in Leicester in the 1950s and 60s – you know, the left that challenged the power of wealth-hoarding elites and threats to freedom of speech and opinion. In those days students went on marches defending freedom of speech while today's Wokers march for its deletion. What on earth could have happened? Those very elites (collectively the Cult) that we opposed in my youth and early life have funded into existence the antithesis of that former left and hijacked the 'brand' while inverting everything it ever stood for. We have a mentality that calls itself 'liberal' and 'progressive' while acting like fascists. Cult billionaires and their corporations have funded themselves into control of 'education' to ensure that Woke programming is unceasing throughout the formative years of children and young people and that non-Wokers are isolated (that word again) whether they be students, teachers or college professors. The Cult has funded into existence the now colossal global network of Woke organisations that have spawned and promoted all the 'causes' on the Cult wish-list for global transformation and turned Wokers into demanders of them. Does anyone really think it's a coincidence that the Cult agenda for humanity is a carbon (sorry) copy of the societal transformations desired by Woke?? These are only some of them:

Political correctness: The means by which the Cult deletes all public debates that it knows it cannot win if we had the free-flow of information and evidence.

Human-caused 'climate change': The means by which the Cult seeks to transform society into a globally-controlled dictatorship imposing its will over the fine detail of everyone's lives 'to save the planet' which doesn't actually need saving.

Transgender obsession: Preparing collective perception to accept the 'new human' which would not have genders because it would be created technologically and not through procreation. I'll have much more on this in Human 2.0.

Race obsession: The means by which the Cult seeks to divide and rule the population by triggering racial division through the perception that society is more racist than ever when the opposite is the case. Is it perfect in that regard? No. But to compare today with the racism of apartheid and segregation brought to an end by the civil rights movement in the 1960s is to insult the memory of that movement and inspirations like Martin Luther King. Why is the 'anti-racism' industry (which it is) so dominated by privileged white people?

White supremacy: This is a label used by privileged white people to demonise poor and deprived white people pushing back on tyranny to marginalise and destroy them. White people are being especially targeted as the dominant race by number within Western society which the Cult seeks to transform in its image. If you want to change a society you must weaken and undermine its biggest group and once you have done that by using the other groups you next turn on them to do the same … 'Then they came for the Jews and I was not a Jew so I did nothing.'

Mass migration: The mass movement of people from the Middle East, Africa and Asia into Europe, from the south into the United States and from Asia into Australia are another way the Cult seeks to dilute the racial, cultural and political influence of white people on Western society. White people ask why their governments appear to be working against them while being politically and culturally biased towards incoming cultures. Well, here's your answer. In the same way sexually 'straight' people, men and women, ask why the

authorities are biased against them in favour of other sexualities. The answer is the same – that's the way the Cult wants it to be for very sinister motives.

These are all central parts of the Cult agenda and central parts of the Woke agenda and Woke was created and continues to be funded to an immense degree by Cult billionaires and corporations. If anyone begins to say 'coincidence' the syllables should stick in their throat.

Billionaire 'social justice warriors'

Joe Biden is a 100 percent-owned asset of the Cult and the Wokers' man in the White House whenever he can remember his name and for however long he lasts with his rapidly diminishing cognitive function. Even walking up the steps of an aircraft without falling on his arse would appear to be a challenge. He's not an empty-shell puppet or anything. From the minute Biden took office (or the Cult did) he began his executive orders promoting the Woke wish-list. You will see the Woke agenda imposed ever more severely because it's really the *Cult* agenda. Woke organisations and activist networks spawned by the Cult are funded to the extreme so long as they promote what the Cult wants to happen. Woke is funded to promote 'social justice' by billionaires who become billionaires by destroying social justice. The social justice mantra is only a cover for dismantling social justice and funded by billionaires that couldn't give a damn about social justice. Everything makes sense when you see that. One of Woke's premier funders is Cult billionaire financier George Soros who said: 'I am basically there to make money, I cannot and do not look at the social consequences of what I do.' This is the same Soros who has given more than $32 billion to his Open Society Foundations global Woke network and funded Black Lives Matter, mass immigration into Europe and the United States, transgender activism, climate change activism, political correctness and groups targeting 'white supremacy' in the form of privileged white thugs that dominate Antifa. What a scam it all is and when

you are dealing with the unquestioning fact-free zone of Woke scamming them is child's play. All you need to pull it off in all these organisations are a few in-the-know agents of the Cult and an army of naïve, reframed, uninformed, narcissistic, know-nothings convinced of their own self-righteousness, self-purity and virtue.

Soros and fellow billionaires and billionaire corporations have poured hundreds of millions into Black Lives Matter and connected groups and promoted them to a global audience. None of this is motivated by caring about black people. These are the billionaires that have controlled and exploited a system that leaves millions of black people in abject poverty and deprivation which they do absolutely nothing to address. The same Cult networks funding BLM were behind the *slave trade!* Black Lives Matter hijacked a phrase that few would challenge and they have turned this laudable concept into a political weapon to divide society. You know that BLM is a fraud when it claims that *All* Lives Matter, the most inclusive statement of all, is 'racist'. BLM and its Cult masters don't want to end racism. To them it's a means to an end to control all of humanity never mind the colour, creed, culture or background. What has destroying the nuclear family got to do with ending racism? Nothing – but that is one of the goals of BLM and also happens to be a goal of the Cult as I have been exposing in my books for decades. Stealing children from loving parents and giving schools ever more power to override parents is part of that same agenda. BLM is a Marxist organisation and why would that not be the case when the Cult created Marxism *and* BLM? Patrisse Cullors, a BLM co-founder, said in a 2015 video that she and her fellow organisers, including co-founder Alicia Garza, are 'trained Marxists'. The lady known after marriage as Patrisse Khan-Cullors bought a $1.4 million home in 2021 in one of the whitest areas of California with a black population of just 1.6 per cent and has so far bought *four* high-end homes for a total of $3.2 million. How very Marxist. There must be a bit of spare in the BLM coffers, however, when Cult corporations and billionaires have handed over the best part of $100 million. Many black people can see that Black Lives Matter is not

working for them, but against them, and this is still more confirmation. Black journalist Jason Whitlock, who had his account suspended by Twitter for simply linking to the story about the 'Marxist's' home buying spree, said that BLM leaders are 'making millions of dollars off the backs of these dead black men who they wouldn't spit on if they were on fire and alive'.

Black Lies Matter

Cult assets and agencies came together to promote BLM in the wake of the death of career criminal George Floyd who had been jailed a number of times including for forcing his way into the home of a black woman with others in a raid in which a gun was pointed at her stomach. Floyd was filmed being held in a Minneapolis street in 2020 with the knee of a police officer on his neck and he subsequently died. It was an appalling thing for the officer to do, but the same technique has been used by police on peaceful protestors of lockdown without any outcry from the Woke brigade. As unquestioning supporters of the Cult agenda Wokers have supported lockdown and all the 'Covid' claptrap while attacking anyone standing up to the tyranny imposed in its name. Court documents would later include details of an autopsy on Floyd by County Medical Examiner Dr Andrew Baker who concluded that Floyd had taken a fatal level of the drug fentanyl. None of this mattered to fact-free, question-free, Woke. Floyd's death was followed by worldwide protests against police brutality amid calls to defund the police. Throwing babies out with the bathwater is a Woke speciality. In the wake of the murder of British woman Sarah Everard a Green Party member of the House of Lords, Baroness Jones of Moulescoomb (Nincompoopia would have been better), called for a 6pm curfew for all men. This would be in breach of the Geneva Conventions on war crimes which ban collective punishment, but that would never have crossed the black and white Woke mind of Baroness Nincompoopia who would have been far too convinced of her own self-righteousness to compute such details. Many American cities did defund the police in the face of Floyd riots

and after $15 million was deleted from the police budget in Washington DC under useless Woke mayor Muriel Bowser car-jacking alone rose by 300 percent and within six months the US capital recorded its highest murder rate in 15 years. The same happened in Chicago and other cities in line with the Cult/Soros plan to bring fear to streets and neighbourhoods by reducing the police, releasing violent criminals and not prosecuting crime. This is the mob-rule agenda that I have warned in the books was coming for so long. Shootings in the area of Minneapolis where Floyd was arrested increased by 2,500 percent compared with the year before. Defunding the police over George Floyd has led to a big increase in dead people with many of them black. Police protection for politicians making these decisions stayed the same or increased as you would expect from professional hypocrites. The Cult doesn't actually want to abolish the police. It wants to abolish local control over the police and hand it to federal government as the psychopaths advance the Hunger Games Society. Many George Floyd protests turned into violent riots with black stores and businesses destroyed by fire and looting across America fuelled by Black Lives Matter. Woke doesn't do irony. If you want civil rights you must loot the liquor store and the supermarket and make off with a smart TV. It's the only way.

It's not a race war – it's a class war

Black people are patronised by privileged blacks and whites alike and told they are victims of white supremacy. I find it extraordinary to watch privileged blacks supporting the very system and bloodline networks behind the slave trade and parroting the same Cult-serving manipulative crap of their privileged white, often billionaire, associates. It is indeed not a race war but a class war and colour is just a diversion. Black Senator Cory Booker and black Congresswoman Maxine Waters, more residents of Nincompoopia, personify this. Once you tell people they are victims of someone else you devalue both their own responsibility for their plight and the power they have to impact on their reality and experience. Instead

we have: 'You are only in your situation because of whitey – turn on them and everything will change.' It won't change. Nothing changes in our lives unless *we* change it. Crucial to that is never seeing yourself as a victim and always as the creator of your reality. Life is a simple sequence of choice and consequence. Make different choices and you create different consequences. *You* have to make those choices – not Black Lives Matter, the Woke Mafia and anyone else that seeks to dictate your life. Who are they these Wokers, an emotional and psychological road traffic accident, to tell you what to do? Personal empowerment is the last thing the Cult and its Black Lives Matter want black people or anyone else to have. They claim to be defending the underdog while *creating* and perpetuating the underdog. The Cult's worst nightmare is human unity and if they are going to keep blacks, whites and every other race under economic servitude and control then the focus must be diverted from what they have in common to what they can be manipulated to believe divides them. Blacks have to be told that their poverty and plight is the fault of the white bloke living on the street in the same poverty and with the same plight they are experiencing. The difference is that your plight black people is due to him, a white supremacist with 'white privilege' living on the street. Don't unite as one human family against your mutual oppressors and suppressors – fight the oppressor with the white face who is as financially deprived as you are. The Cult knows that as its 'Covid' agenda moves into still new levels of extremism people are going to respond and it has been spreading the seeds of disunity everywhere to stop a united response to the evil that targets *all of us*.

Racist attacks on 'whiteness' are getting ever more outrageous and especially through the American Democratic Party which has an appalling history for anti-black racism. Barack Obama, Joe Biden, Hillary Clinton and Nancy Pelosi all eulogised about Senator Robert Byrd at his funeral in 2010 after a nearly 60-year career in Congress. Byrd was a brutal Ku Klux Klan racist and a violent abuser of Cathy O'Brien in MKUltra. He said he would never fight in the military 'with a negro by my side' and 'rather I should die a thousand times,

and see Old Glory trampled in the dirt never to rise again, than to see this beloved land of ours become degraded by race mongrels, a throwback to the blackest specimen from the wilds'. Biden called Byrd a 'very close friend and mentor'. These 'Woke' hypocrites are not anti-racist they are anti-poor and anti-people not of their perceived class. Here is an illustration of the scale of anti-white racism to which we have now descended. Seriously Woke and moronic *New York Times* contributor Damon Young described whiteness as a 'virus' that 'like other viruses will not die until there are no bodies left for it to infect'. He went on: '… the only way to stop it is to locate it, isolate it, extract it, and kill it.' Young can say that as a black man with no consequences when a white man saying the same in reverse would be facing a jail sentence. *That's* racism. We had super-Woke numbskull senators Tammy Duckworth and Mazie Hirono saying they would object to future Biden Cabinet appointments if he did not nominate more Asian Americans and Pacific Islanders. Never mind the ability of the candidate what do they look like? Duckworth said: 'I will vote for racial minorities and I will vote for LGBTQ, but anyone else I'm not voting for.' Appointing people on the grounds of race is illegal, but that was not a problem for this ludicrous pair. They were on-message and that's a free pass in any situation.

Critical race racism

White children are told at school they are intrinsically racist as they are taught the divisive 'critical race theory'. This claims that the law and legal institutions are inherently racist and that race is a socially constructed concept used by white people to further their economic and political interests at the expense of people of colour. White is a 'virus' as we've seen. Racial inequality results from 'social, economic, and legal differences that white people create between races to maintain white interests which leads to poverty and criminality in minority communities'. I must tell that to the white guy sleeping on the street. The principal of East Side Community School in New York sent white parents a manifesto that called on

them to become 'white traitors' and advocate for full 'white abolition'. These people are teaching your kids when they urgently need a psychiatrist. The 'school' included a chart with 'eight white identities' that ranged from 'white supremacist' to 'white abolition' and defined the behaviour white people must follow to end 'the regime of whiteness'. Woke blacks and their privileged white associates are acting exactly like the slave owners of old and Ku Klux Klan racists like Robert Byrd. They are too full of their own self-purity to see that, but it's true. Racism is not a body type; it's a state of mind that can manifest through any colour, creed or culture.

Another racial fraud is *'equity'*. Not equality of treatment and opportunity – equity. It's a term spun as equality when it means something very different. Equality in its true sense is a raising up while 'equity' is a race to the bottom. Everyone in the same level of poverty is 'equity'. Keep everyone down – that's equity. The Cult doesn't want anyone in the human family to be empowered and BLM leaders, like all these 'anti-racist' organisations, continue their privileged, pampered existence by perpetuating the perception of gathering racism. When is the last time you heard an 'anti-racist' or 'anti-Semitism' organisation say that acts of racism and discrimination have *fallen?* It's not in the interests of their fund-raising and power to influence and the same goes for the professional soccer anti-racism operation, Kick It Out. Two things confirmed that the Black Lives Matter riots in the summer of 2020 were Cult creations. One was that while anti-lockdown protests were condemned in this same period for 'transmitting 'Covid' the authorities supported mass gatherings of Black Lives Matter supporters. I even saw self-deluding people claiming to be doctors say the two types of protest were not the same. No – the non-existent 'Covid' was in favour of lockdowns and attacked those that protested against them while 'Covid' supported Black Lives Matter and kept well away from its protests. The whole thing was a joke and as lockdown protestors were arrested, often brutally, by reframed Face-Nappies we had the grotesque sight of police officers taking the knee to Black Lives Matter, a Cult-funded Marxist

organisation that supports violent riots and wants to destroy the nuclear family and white people.

He's not white? Shucks!

Woke obsession with race was on display again when ten people were shot dead in Boulder, Colorado, in March, 2021. Cult-owned Woke TV channels like CNN said the shooter appeared to be a white man and Wokers were on Twitter condemning 'violent white men' with the usual mantras. Then the shooter's name was released as Ahmad Al Aliwi Alissa, an anti-Trump Arab-American, and the sigh of disappointment could be heard five miles away. Never mind that ten people were dead and what that meant for their families. Race baiting was all that mattered to these sick Cult-serving people like Barack Obama who exploited the deaths to further divide America on racial grounds which is his job for the Cult. This is the man that 'racist' white Americans made the first black president of the United States and then gave him a second term. Not-very-bright Obama has become filthy rich on the back of that and today appears to have a big influence on the Biden administration. Even so he's still a downtrodden black man and a victim of white supremacy. This disingenuous fraud reveals the contempt he has for black people when he puts on a Deep South Alabama accent whenever he talks to them, no, *at* them.

Another BLM red flag was how the now fully-Woke (fully-Cult) and fully-virtue-signalled professional soccer authorities had their teams taking the knee before every match in support of Marxist Black Lives Matter. Soccer authorities and clubs displayed 'Black Lives Matter' on the players' shirts and flashed the name on electronic billboards around the pitch. Any fans that condemned what is a Freemasonic taking-the-knee ritual were widely condemned as you would expect from the Woke virtue-signallers of professional sport and the now fully-Woke media. We have reverse racism in which you are banned from criticising any race or culture except for white people for whom anything goes – say what you like, no problem. What has this got to do with racial harmony and

equality? We've had black supremacists from Black Lives Matter telling white people to fall to their knees in the street and apologise for their white supremacy. Black supremacists acting like white supremacist slave owners of the past couldn't breach their self-obsessed, race-obsessed sense of self-purity. Joe Biden appointed a race-obsessed black supremacist Kristen Clarke to head the Justice Department Civil Rights Division. Clarke claimed that blacks are endowed with 'greater mental, physical and spiritual abilities' than whites. If anyone reversed that statement they would be vilified. Clarke is on-message so no problem. She's never seen a black-white situation in which the black figure is anything but a virtuous victim and she heads the Civil Rights Division which should treat everyone the same or it isn't civil rights. Another perception of the Renegade Mind: If something or someone is part of the Cult agenda they will be supported by Woke governments and media no matter what. If they're not, they will be condemned and censored. It really is that simple and so racist Clarke prospers despite (make that because of) her racism.

The end of culture

Biden's administration is full of such racial, cultural and economic bias as the Cult requires the human family to be divided into warring factions. We are now seeing racially-segregated graduations and everything, but everything, is defined through the lens of perceived 'racism. We have 'racist' mathematics, 'racist' food and even 'racist' *plants*. World famous Kew Gardens in London said it was changing labels on plants and flowers to tell its pre-'Covid' more than two million visitors a year how racist they are. Kew director Richard Deverell said this was part of an effort to 'move quickly to decolonise collections' after they were approached by one Ajay Chhabra 'an actor with an insight into how sugar cane was linked to slavery'. They are *plants* you idiots. 'Decolonisation' in the Woke manual really means colonisation of society with its mentality and by extension colonisation by the Cult. We are witnessing a new Chinese-style 'Cultural Revolution' so essential to the success of all

Marxist takeovers. Our cultural past and traditions have to be swept away to allow a new culture to be built-back-better. Woke targeting of long-standing Western cultural pillars including historical monuments and cancelling of historical figures is what happened in the Mao revolution in China which 'purged remnants of capitalist and traditional elements from Chinese society' and installed Maoism as the dominant ideology'. For China see the Western world today and for 'dominant ideology' see Woke. Better still see Marxism or Maoism. The 'Covid' hoax has specifically sought to destroy the arts and all elements of Western culture from people meeting in a pub or restaurant to closing theatres, music venues, sports stadiums, places of worship and even banning *singing*. Destruction of Western society is also why criticism of any religion is banned except for Christianity which again is the dominant religion as white is the numerically-dominant race. Christianity may be fading rapidly, but its history and traditions are weaved through the fabric of Western society. Delete the pillars and other structures will follow until the whole thing collapses. I am not a Christian defending that religion when I say that. I have no religion. It's just a fact. To this end Christianity has itself been turned Woke to usher its own downfall and its ranks are awash with 'change agents' – knowing and unknowing – at every level including Pope Francis (*definitely* knowing) and the clueless Archbishop of Canterbury Justin Welby (possibly not, but who can be sure?). Woke seeks to coordinate attacks on Western culture, traditions, and ways of life through 'intersectionality' defined as 'the complex, cumulative way in which the effects of multiple forms of discrimination (such as racism, sexism, and classism) combine, overlap, or intersect especially in the experiences of marginalised individuals or groups'. Wade through the Orwellian Woke-speak and this means coordinating disparate groups in a common cause to overthrow freedom and liberal values.

The entire structure of public institutions has been infested with Woke – government at all levels, political parties, police, military, schools, universities, advertising, media and trade unions. This abomination has been achieved through the Cult web by appointing

Wokers to positions of power and battering non-Wokers into line through intimidation, isolation and threats to their job. Many have been fired in the wake of the empathy-deleted, vicious hostility of 'social justice' Wokers and the desire of gutless, spineless employers to virtue-signal their Wokeness. Corporations are filled with Wokers today, most notably those in Silicon Valley. Ironically at the top they are not Woke at all. They are only exploiting the mentality their Cult masters have created and funded to censor and enslave while the Wokers cheer them on until it's their turn. Thus the Woke 'liberal left' is an inversion of the traditional liberal left. Campaigning for justice on the grounds of power and wealth distribution has been replaced by campaigning for identity politics. The genuine traditional left would never have taken money from today's billionaire abusers of fairness and justice and nor would the billionaires have wanted to fund that genuine left. It would not have been in their interests to do so. The division of opinion in those days was between the haves and have nots. This all changed with Cult manipulated and funded identity politics. The division of opinion today is between Wokers and non-Wokers and not income brackets. Cult corporations and their billionaires may have taken wealth disparity to cataclysmic levels of injustice, but as long as they speak the language of Woke, hand out the dosh to the Woke network and censor the enemy they are 'one of us'. Billionaires who don't give a damn about injustice are laughing at them till their bellies hurt. Wokers are not even close to self-aware enough to see that. The transformed 'left' dynamic means that Wokers who drone on about 'social justice' are funded by billionaires that have destroyed social justice the world over. It's *why* they are billionaires.

The climate con

Nothing encapsulates what I have said more comprehensively than the hoax of human-caused global warming. I have detailed in my books over the years how Cult operatives and organisations were the pump-primers from the start of the climate con. A purpose-built vehicle for this is the Club of Rome established by the Cult in 1968

with the Rockefellers and Rothschilds centrally involved all along. Their gofer frontman Maurice Strong, a Canadian oil millionaire, hosted the Earth Summit in Rio de Janeiro, Brazil, in 1992 where the global 'green movement' really expanded in earnest under the guiding hand of the Cult. The Earth Summit established Agenda 21 through the Cult-created-and-owned United Nations to use the illusion of human-caused climate change to justify the transformation of global society to save the world from climate disaster. It is a No-Problem-Reaction-Solution sold through governments, media, schools and universities as whole generations have been terrified into believing that the world was going to end in their lifetimes unless what old people had inflicted upon them was stopped by a complete restructuring of how everything is done. Chill, kids, it's all a hoax. Such restructuring is precisely what the Cult agenda demands (purely by coincidence of course). Today this has been given the codename of the Great Reset which is only an updated term for Agenda 21 and its associated Agenda 2030. The latter, too, is administered through the UN and was voted into being by the General Assembly in 2015. Both 21 and 2030 seek centralised control of all resources and food right down to the raindrops falling on your own land. These are some of the demands of Agenda 21 established in 1992. See if you recognise this society emerging today:

- End national sovereignty
- State planning and management of all land resources, ecosystems, deserts, forests, mountains, oceans and fresh water; agriculture; rural development; biotechnology; and ensuring *'equity'*
- The state to 'define the role' of business and financial resources
- Abolition of private property
- 'Restructuring' the family unit (see BLM)
- Children raised by the state
- People told what their job will be
- Major restrictions on movement
- Creation of 'human settlement zones'

- Mass resettlement as people are forced to vacate land where they live
- Dumbing down education
- Mass global depopulation in pursuit of all the above

The United Nations was created as a Trojan horse for world government. With the climate con of critical importance to promoting that outcome you would expect the UN to be involved. Oh, it's involved all right. The UN is promoting Agenda 21 and Agenda 2030 justified by 'climate change' while also driving the climate hoax through its Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC), one of the world's most corrupt organisations. The IPCC has been lying ferociously and constantly since the day it opened its doors with the global media hanging unquestioningly on its every mendacious word. The Green movement is entirely Woke and has long lost its original environmental focus since it was co-opted by the Cult. An obsession with 'global warming' has deleted its values and scrambled its head. I experienced a small example of what I mean on a beautiful country walk that I have enjoyed several times a week for many years. The path merged into the fields and forests and you felt at one with the natural world. Then a 'Green' organisation, the Hampshire and Isle of Wight Wildlife Trust, took over part of the land and proceeded to cut down a large number of trees, including mature ones, to install a horrible big, bright steel 'this-is-ours-stay-out' fence that destroyed the whole atmosphere of this beautiful place. No one with a feel for nature would do that. Day after day I walked to the sound of chainsaws and a magnificent mature weeping willow tree that I so admired was cut down at the base of the trunk. When I challenged a Woke young girl in a green shirt (of course) about this vandalism she replied: 'It's a weeping willow – it will grow back.' This is what people are paying for when they donate to the Hampshire and Isle of Wight Wildlife Trust and many other 'green' organisations today. It is not the environmental movement that I knew and instead has become a support-system – as with Extinction Rebellion – for a very dark agenda.

Private jets for climate justice

The Cult-owned, Gates-funded, World Economic Forum and its founder Klaus Schwab were behind the emergence of Greta Thunberg to harness the young behind the climate agenda and she was invited to speak to the world at … the UN. Schwab published a book, *Covid-19: The Great Reset* in 2020 in which he used the 'Covid' hoax and the climate hoax to lay out a new society straight out of Agenda 21 and Agenda 2030. Bill Gates followed in early 2021 when he took time out from destroying the world to produce a book in his name about the way to save it. Gates flies across the world in private jets and admitted that 'I probably have one of the highest greenhouse gas footprints of anyone on the planet … my personal flying alone is gigantic.' He has also bid for the planet's biggest private jet operator. Other climate change saviours who fly in private jets include John Kerry, the US Special Presidential Envoy for Climate, and actor Leonardo DiCaprio, a 'UN Messenger of Peace with special focus on climate change'. These people are so full of bullshit they could corner the market in manure. We mustn't be sceptical, though, because the Gates book, *How to Avoid a Climate Disaster: The Solutions We Have and the Breakthroughs We Need*, is a genuine attempt to protect the world and not an obvious pile of excrement attributed to a mega-psychopath aimed at selling his masters' plans for humanity. The Gates book and the other shite-pile by Klaus Schwab could have been written by the same person and may well have been. Both use 'climate change' and 'Covid' as the excuses for their new society and by coincidence the Cult's World Economic Forum and Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation promote the climate hoax and hosted Event 201 which pre-empted with a 'simulation' the very 'coronavirus' hoax that would be simulated for real on humanity within weeks. The British 'royal' family is promoting the 'Reset' as you would expect through Prince 'climate change caused the war in Syria' Charles and his hapless son Prince William who said that we must 'reset our relationship with nature and our trajectory as a species' to avoid a climate disaster. Amazing how many promotors of the 'Covid' and 'climate change' control

systems are connected to Gates and the World Economic Forum. A 'study' in early 2021 claimed that carbon dioxide emissions must fall by the equivalent of a global lockdown roughly every two years for the next decade to save the planet. The 'study' appeared in the same period that the Schwab mob claimed in a video that lockdowns destroying the lives of billions are good because they make the earth 'quieter' with less 'ambient noise'. They took down the video amid a public backlash for such arrogant, empathy-deleted stupidity You see, however, where they are going with this. Corinne Le Quéré, a professor at the Tyndall Centre for Climate Change Research, University of East Anglia, was lead author of the climate lockdown study, and she writes for … the World Economic Forum. Gates calls in 'his' book for changing 'every aspect of the economy' (long-time Cult agenda) and for humans to eat synthetic 'meat' (predicted in my books) while cows and other farm animals are eliminated. Australian TV host and commentator Alan Jones described what carbon emission targets would mean for farm animals in Australia alone if emissions were reduced as demanded by 35 percent by 2030 and zero by 2050:

> Well, let's take agriculture, the total emissions from agriculture are about 75 million tonnes of carbon dioxide, equivalent. Now reduce that by 35 percent and you have to come down to 50 million tonnes, I've done the maths. So if you take for example 1.5 million cows, you're going to have to reduce the herd by 525,000 [by] 2030, nine years, that's 58,000 cows a year. The beef herd's 30 million, reduce that by 35 percent, that's 10.5 million, which means 1.2 million cattle have to go every year between now and 2030. This is insanity!
>
> There are 75 million sheep. Reduce that by 35 percent, that's 26 million sheep, that's almost 3 million a year. So under the Paris Agreement over 30 million beasts. dairy cows, cattle, pigs and sheep would go. More than 8,000 every minute of every hour for the next decade, do these people know what they're talking about?

Clearly they don't at the level of campaigners, politicians and administrators. The Cult *does* know; that's the outcome it wants. We are faced with not just a war on humanity. Animals and the natural world are being targeted and I have been saying since the 'Covid' hoax began that the plan eventually was to claim that the 'deadly virus' is able to jump from animals, including farm animals and

domestic pets, to humans. Just before this book went into production came this story: 'Russia registers world's first Covid-19 vaccine for cats & dogs as makers of Sputnik V warn pets & farm animals could spread virus'. The report said 'top scientists warned that the deadly pathogen could soon begin spreading through homes and farms' and 'the next stage is the infection of farm and domestic animals'. Know the outcome and you'll see the journey. Think what that would mean for animals and keep your eye on a term called zoonosis or zoonotic diseases which transmit between animals and humans. The Cult wants to break the connection between animals and people as it does between people and people. Farm animals fit with the Cult agenda to transform food from natural to synthetic.

The gas of life is killing us

There can be few greater examples of Cult inversion than the condemnation of carbon dioxide as a dangerous pollutant when it is the gas of life. Without it the natural world would be dead and so we would all be dead. We breathe in oxygen and breathe out carbon dioxide while plants produce oxygen and absorb carbon dioxide. It is a perfect symbiotic relationship that the Cult wants to dismantle for reasons I will come to in the final two chapters. Gates, Schwab, other Cult operatives and mindless repeaters, want the world to be 'carbon neutral' by at least 2050 and the earlier the better. 'Zero carbon' is the cry echoed by lunatics calling for 'Zero Covid' when we already have it. These carbon emission targets will deindustrialise the world in accordance with Cult plans – the post-industrial, post-democratic society – and with so-called renewables like solar and wind not coming even close to meeting human energy needs blackouts and cold are inevitable. Texans got the picture in the winter of 2021 when a snow storm stopped wind turbines and solar panels from working and the lights went down along with water which relies on electricity for its supply system. Gates wants everything to be powered by electricity to ensure that his masters have the kill switch to stop all human activity, movement, cooking, water and warmth any time they like. The climate lie is so

stupendously inverted that it claims we must urgently reduce carbon dioxide when we *don't have enough*.

Co2 in the atmosphere is a little above 400 parts per million when the optimum for plant growth is 2,000 ppm and when it falls anywhere near 150 ppm the natural world starts to die and so do we. It fell to as low as 280 ppm in an 1880 measurement in Hawaii and rose to 413 ppm in 2019 with industrialisation which is why the planet has become *greener* in the industrial period. How insane then that psychopathic madman Gates is not satisfied only with blocking the rise of Co2. He's funding technology to suck it out of the atmosphere. The reason why will become clear. The industrial era is not destroying the world through Co2 and has instead turned around a potentially disastrous ongoing fall in Co2. Greenpeace co-founder and scientist Patrick Moore walked away from Greenpeace in 1986 and has exposed the green movement for fear-mongering and lies. He said that 500 million years ago there was *17 times* more Co2 in the atmosphere than we have today and levels have been falling for hundreds of millions of years. In the last 150 million years Co2 levels in Earth's atmosphere had reduced by *90 percent*. Moore said that by the time humanity began to unlock carbon dioxide from fossil fuels we were at '38 seconds to midnight' and in that sense: 'Humans are [the Earth's] salvation.' Moore made the point that only half the Co2 emitted by fossil fuels stays in the atmosphere and we should remember that all pollution pouring from chimneys that we are told is carbon dioxide is in fact nothing of the kind. It's pollution. Carbon dioxide is an invisible gas.

William Happer, Professor of Physics at Princeton University and long-time government adviser on climate, has emphasised the Co2 deficiency for maximum growth and food production. Greenhouse growers don't add carbon dioxide for a bit of fun. He said that most of the warming in the last 100 years, after the earth emerged from the super-cold period of the 'Little Ice Age' into a natural warming cycle, was over by 1940. Happer said that a peak year for warming in 1988 can be explained by a 'monster El Nino' which is a natural and cyclical warming of the Pacific that has nothing to do with 'climate

change'. He said the effect of Co2 could be compared to painting a wall with red paint in that once two or three coats have been applied it didn't matter how much more you slapped on because the wall will not get much redder. Almost all the effect of the rise in Co2 has already happened, he said, and the volume in the atmosphere would now have to *double* to increase temperature by a single degree. Climate hoaxers know this and they have invented the most ridiculously complicated series of 'feedback' loops to try to overcome this rather devastating fact. You hear puppet Greta going on cluelessly about feedback loops and this is why.

The Sun affects temperature? No you *climate denier*

Some other nonsense to contemplate: Climate graphs show that rises in temperature do not follow rises in Co2 – *it's the other way round* with a lag between the two of some 800 years. If we go back 800 years from present time we hit the Medieval Warm Period when temperatures were higher than now without any industrialisation and this was followed by the Little Ice Age when temperatures plummeted. The world was still emerging from these centuries of serious cold when many climate records began which makes the ever-repeated line of the 'hottest year since records began' meaningless when you are not comparing like with like. The coldest period of the Little Ice Age corresponded with the lowest period of sunspot activity when the Sun was at its least active. Proper scientists will not be at all surprised by this when it confirms the obvious fact that earth temperature is affected by the scale of Sun activity and the energetic power that it subsequently emits; but when is the last time you heard a climate hoaxer talking about the Sun as a source of earth temperature?? Everything has to be focussed on Co2 which makes up just 0.117 percent of so-called greenhouse gases and only a fraction of even that is generated by human activity. The rest is natural. More than *90 percent* of those greenhouse gases are water vapour and clouds (Fig 9). Ban moisture I say. Have you noticed that the climate hoaxers no longer use the polar bear as their promotion image? That's because far from becoming extinct polar

bear communities are stable or thriving. Joe Bastardi, American meteorologist, weather forecaster and outspoken critic of the climate lie, documents in his book *The Climate Chronicles* how weather patterns and events claimed to be evidence of climate change have been happening since long before industrialisation: 'What happened before naturally is happening again, as is to be expected given the cyclical nature of the climate due to the design of the planet.' If you read the detailed background to the climate hoax in my other books you will shake your head and wonder how anyone could believe the crap which has spawned a multi-trillion dollar industry based on absolute garbage (see HIV causes AIDs and Sars-Cov-2 causes 'Covid-19'). Climate and 'Covid' have much in common given they have the same source. They both have the contradictory *everything* factor in which everything is explained by reference to them. It's hot – 'it's climate change'. It's cold – 'it's climate change'. I got a sniffle – 'it's Covid'. I haven't got a sniffle – 'it's Covid'. Not having a sniffle has to be a symptom of 'Covid'. Everything is and not having a sniffle is especially dangerous if you are a slow walker. For sheer audacity I offer you a Cambridge University 'study' that actually linked 'Covid' to 'climate change'. It had to happen eventually. They concluded that climate change played a role in 'Covid-19' spreading from animals to humans because … wait for it … I kid you not … *the two groups were forced closer together as populations grow*. Er, that's it. The whole foundation on which this depended was that 'Bats are the likely zoonotic origin of SARS-CoV-1 and SARS-CoV-2'. Well, they are not. They are nothing to do with it. Apart from bats not being the origin and therefore 'climate change' effects on bats being irrelevant I am in awe of their academic insight. Where would we be without them? Not where we are that's for sure.

Figure 9: The idea that the gas of life is disastrously changing the climate is an insult to brain cell activity.

One other point about the weather is that climate modification is now well advanced and not every major weather event is natural – or earthquake come to that. I cover this subject at some length in other books. China is openly planning a rapid expansion of its weather modification programme which includes changing the climate in an area more than one and a half times the size of India. China used weather manipulation to ensure clear skies during the 2008 Olympics in Beijing. I have quoted from US military documents detailing how to employ weather manipulation as a weapon of war and they did that in the 1960s and 70s during the conflict in Vietnam with Operation Popeye manipulating monsoon rains for military purposes. Why would there be international treaties on weather modification if it wasn't possible? Of course it is. Weather is energetic information and it can be changed.

How was the climate hoax pulled off? See 'Covid'

If you can get billions to believe in a 'virus' that doesn't exist you can get them to believe in human-caused climate change that doesn't exist. Both are being used by the Cult to transform global society in the way it has long planned. Both hoaxes have been achieved in pretty much the same way. First you declare a lie is a fact. There's a

'virus' you call SARS-Cov-2 or humans are warming the planet with their behaviour. Next this becomes, via Cult networks, the foundation of government, academic and science policy and belief. Those who parrot the mantra are given big grants to produce research that confirms the narrative is true and ever more 'symptoms' are added to make the 'virus'/'climate change' sound even more scary. Scientists and researchers who challenge the narrative have their grants withdrawn and their careers destroyed. The media promote the lie as the unquestionable truth and censor those with an alternative view or evidence. A great percentage of the population believe what they are told as the lie becomes an everybody-knows-that and the believing-masses turn on those with a mind of their own. The technique has been used endlessly throughout human history. Wokers are the biggest promotors of the climate lie *and* 'Covid' fascism because their minds are owned by the Cult; their sense of self-righteous self-purity knows no bounds; and they exist in a bubble of reality in which facts are irrelevant and only get in the way of looking without seeing.

Running through all of this like veins in a blue cheese is control of information, which means control of perception, which means control of behaviour, which collectively means control of human society. The Cult owns the global media and Silicon Valley fascists for the simple reason that it *has* to. Without control of information it can't control perception and through that human society. Examine every facet of the Cult agenda and you will see that anything supporting its introduction is never censored while anything pushing back is always censored. I say again: Psychopaths that know why they are doing this must go before Nuremberg trials and those that follow their orders must trot along behind them into the same dock. 'I was just following orders' didn't work the first time and it must not work now. Nuremberg trials must be held all over the world before public juries for politicians, government officials, police, compliant doctors, scientists and virologists, and all Cult operatives such as Gates, Tedros, Fauci, Vallance, Whitty, Ferguson, Zuckerberg, Wojcicki, Brin, Page, Dorsey, the whole damn lot of

them – including, no *especially*, the psychopath psychologists. Without them and the brainless, gutless excuses for journalists that have repeated their lies, none of this could be happening. Nobody can be allowed to escape justice for the psychological and economic Armageddon they are all responsible for visiting upon the human race.

As for the compliant, unquestioning, swathes of humanity, and the self-obsessed, all-knowing ignorance of the Wokers … don't start me. God help their kids. God help their grandkids. God *help them*.

CHAPTER NINE

We must have it? So what is it?

Well I won't back down. No, I won't back down. You can stand me up at the Gates of Hell. But I won't back down
Tom Petty

I will now focus on the genetically-manipulating 'Covid vaccines' which do not meet this official definition of a vaccine by the US Centers for Disease Control (CDC): 'A product that stimulates a person's immune system to produce immunity to a specific disease, protecting the person from that disease.' On that basis 'Covid vaccines' are not a vaccine in that the makers don't even claim they stop infection or transmission.

They are instead part of a multi-levelled conspiracy to change the nature of the human body and what it means to be 'human' and to depopulate an enormous swathe of humanity. What I shall call Human 1.0 is on the cusp of becoming Human 2.0 and for very sinister reasons. Before I get to the 'Covid vaccine' in detail here's some background to vaccines in general. Government regulators do not test vaccines – the makers do – and the makers control which data is revealed and which isn't. Children in America are given 50 vaccine doses by age six and 69 by age 19 and the effect of the whole combined schedule has never been tested. Autoimmune diseases when the immune system attacks its own body have soared in the mass vaccine era and so has disease in general in children and the young. Why wouldn't this be the case when vaccines target the *immune system?* The US government gave Big Pharma drug

companies immunity from prosecution for vaccine death and injury in the 1986 National Childhood Vaccine Injury Act (NCVIA) and since then the government (taxpayer) has been funding compensation for the consequences of Big Pharma vaccines. The criminal and satanic drug giants can't lose and the vaccine schedule has increased dramatically since 1986 for this reason. There is no incentive to make vaccines safe and a big incentive to make money by introducing ever more. Even against a ridiculously high bar to prove vaccine liability, and with the government controlling the hearing in which it is being challenged for compensation, the vaccine court has so far paid out more than $4 billion. These are the vaccines we are told are safe and psychopaths like Zuckerberg censor posts saying otherwise. The immunity law was even justified by a ruling that vaccines by their nature were 'unavoidably unsafe'.

Check out the ingredients of vaccines and you will be shocked if you are new to this. *They put that in children's bodies?? What??* Try aluminium, a brain toxin connected to dementia, aborted foetal tissue and formaldehyde which is used to embalm corpses. World-renowned aluminium expert Christopher Exley had his research into the health effect of aluminium in vaccines shut down by Keele University in the UK when it began taking funding from the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation. Research when diseases 'eradicated' by vaccines began to decline and you will find the fall began long *before* the vaccine was introduced. Sometimes the fall even plateaued after the vaccine. Diseases like scarlet fever for which there was no vaccine declined in the same way because of environmental and other factors. A perfect case in point is the polio vaccine. Polio began when lead arsenate was first sprayed as an insecticide and residues remained in food products. Spraying started in 1892 and the first US polio epidemic came in Vermont in 1894. The simple answer was to stop spraying, but Rockefeller-created Big Pharma had a better idea. Polio was decreed to be caused by the *poliovirus* which 'spreads from person to person and can infect a person's spinal cord'. Lead arsenate was replaced by the lethal DDT which had the same effect of causing paralysis by damaging the brain and central nervous

system. Polio plummeted when DDT was reduced and then banned, but the vaccine is still given the credit for something it didn't do. Today by far the biggest cause of polio is the vaccines promoted by Bill Gates. Vaccine justice campaigner Robert Kennedy Jr, son of assassinated (by the Cult) US Attorney General Robert Kennedy, wrote:

> In 2017, the World Health Organization (WHO) reluctantly admitted that the global explosion in polio is predominantly vaccine strain. The most frightening epidemics in Congo, Afghanistan, and the Philippines, are all linked to vaccines. In fact, by 2018, 70% of global polio cases were vaccine strain.

Vaccines make fortunes for Cult-owned Gates and Big Pharma while undermining the health and immune systems of the population. We had a glimpse of the mentality behind the Big Pharma cartel with a report on WION (World is One News), an international English language TV station based in India, which exposed the extraordinary behaviour of US drug company Pfizer over its 'Covid vaccine'. The WION report told how Pfizer had made fantastic demands of Argentina, Brazil and other countries in return for its 'vaccine'. These included immunity from prosecution, even for Pfizer negligence, government insurance to protect Pfizer from law suits and handing over as collateral sovereign assets of the country to include Argentina's bank reserves, military bases and embassy buildings. Pfizer demanded the same of Brazil in the form of waiving sovereignty of its assets abroad; exempting Pfizer from Brazilian laws; and giving Pfizer immunity from all civil liability. This is a 'vaccine' developed with government funding. Big Pharma is evil incarnate as a creation of the Cult and all must be handed tickets to Nuremberg.

Phantom 'vaccine' for a phantom 'disease'

I'll expose the 'Covid vaccine' fraud and then go on to the wider background of why the Cult has set out to 'vaccinate' every man, woman and child on the planet for an alleged 'new disease' with a survival rate of 99.77 percent (or more) even by the grotesquely-

manipulated figures of the World Health Organization and Johns Hopkins University. The 'infection' to 'death' ratio is 0.23 to 0.15 percent according to Stanford epidemiologist Dr John Ioannidis and while estimates vary the danger remains tiny. I say that if the truth be told the fake infection to fake death ratio is zero. Never mind all the evidence I have presented here and in *The Answer* that there is no 'virus' let us just focus for a moment on that death-rate figure of say 0.23 percent. The figure includes all those worldwide who have tested positive with a test not testing for the 'virus' and then died within 28 days or even longer of any other cause – *any other cause*. Now subtract all those illusory 'Covid' deaths on the global data sheets from the 0.23 percent. What do you think you would be left with? *Zero*. A vaccination has never been successfully developed for a so-called coronavirus. They have all failed at the animal testing stage when they caused hypersensitivity to what they were claiming to protect against and made the impact of a disease far worse. Cult-owned vaccine corporations got around that problem this time by bypassing animal trials, going straight to humans and making the length of the 'trials' before the public rollout as short as they could get away with. Normally it takes five to ten years or more to develop vaccines that still cause demonstrable harm to many people and that's without including the long-term effects that are never officially connected to the vaccination. 'Covid' non-vaccines have been officially produced and approved in a matter of months from a standing start and part of the reason is that (a) they were developed before the 'Covid' hoax began and (b) they are based on computer programs and not natural sources. Official non-trials were so short that government agencies gave *emergency*, not full, approval. 'Trials' were not even completed and full approval cannot be secured until they are. Public 'Covid vaccination' is actually a *continuation of the trial*. Drug company 'trials' are not scheduled to end until 2023 by which time a lot of people are going to be dead. Data on which government agencies gave this emergency approval was supplied by the Big Pharma corporations themselves in the form of Pfizer/BioNTech, AstraZeneca, Moderna, Johnson & Johnson, and

others, and this is the case with all vaccines. By its very nature *emergency* approval means drug companies do not have to prove that the 'vaccine' is 'safe and effective'. How could they with trials way short of complete? Government regulators only have to *believe* that they *could* be safe and effective. It is criminal manipulation to get products in circulation with no testing worth the name. Agencies giving that approval are infested with Big Pharma-connected place-people and they act in the interests of Big Pharma (the Cult) and not the public about whom they do not give a damn.

More human lab rats

'Covid vaccines' produced in record time by Pfizer/BioNTech and Moderna employ a technique *never approved before for use on humans*. They are known as mRNA 'vaccines' and inject a synthetic version of 'viral' mRNA or 'messenger RNA'. The key is in the term 'messenger'. The body works, or doesn't, on the basis of information messaging. Communications are constantly passing between and within the genetic system and the brain. Change those messages and you change the state of the body and even its very nature and you can change psychology and behaviour by the way the brain processes information. I think you are going to see significant changes in personality and perception of many people who have had the 'Covid vaccine' synthetic potions. Insider Aldous Huxley predicted the following in 1961 and mRNA 'vaccines' can be included in the term 'pharmacological methods':

> There will be, in the next generation or so, a pharmacological method of making people love their servitude, and producing dictatorship without tears, so to speak, producing a kind of painless concentration camp for entire societies, so that people will in fact have their own liberties taken away from them, but rather enjoy it, because they will be distracted from any desire to rebel by propaganda or brainwashing, or brainwashing enhanced by pharmacological methods. And this seems to be the final revolution.

Apologists claim that mRNA synthetic 'vaccines' don't change the DNA genetic blueprint because RNA does not affect DNA only the other way round. This is so disingenuous. A process called 'reverse

transcription' can convert RNA into DNA and be integrated into DNA in the cell nucleus. This was highlighted in December, 2020, by scientists at Harvard and Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT). Geneticists report that more than 40 percent of mammalian genomes results from reverse transcription. On the most basic level if messaging changes then that sequence must lead to changes in DNA which is receiving and transmitting those communications. How can introducing synthetic material into cells not change the cells where DNA is located? The process is known as transfection which is defined as 'a technique to insert foreign nucleic acid (DNA or RNA) into a cell, typically with the intention of altering the properties of the cell'. Researchers at the Sloan Kettering Institute in New York found that changes in messenger RNA can deactivate tumour-suppressing proteins and thereby promote cancer. This is what happens when you mess with messaging. 'Covid vaccine' maker Moderna was founded in 2010 by Canadian stem cell biologist Derrick J. Rossi after his breakthrough discovery in the field of transforming and reprogramming stem cells. These are neutral cells that can be programmed to become any cell including sperm cells. Moderna was therefore founded on the principle of genetic manipulation and has never produced any vaccine or drug before its genetically-manipulating synthetic 'Covid' shite. Look at the name – Mode-RNA or Modify-RNA. Another important point is that the US Supreme Court has ruled that genetically-modified DNA, or complementary DNA (cDNA) synthesized in the laboratory from messenger RNA, can be patented and owned. These psychopaths are doing this to the human body.

Cells replicate synthetic mRNA in the 'Covid vaccines' and in theory the body is tricked into making antigens which trigger antibodies to target the 'virus spike proteins' which as Dr Tom Cowan said have *never been seen*. Cut the crap and these 'vaccines' deliver *self-replicating* synthetic material to the cells with the effect of changing human DNA. The more of them you have the more that process is compounded while synthetic material is all the time self-replicating. 'Vaccine'-maker Moderna describes mRNA as 'like

software for the cell' and so they are messing with the body's software. What happens when you change the software in a computer? Everything changes. For this reason the Cult is preparing a production line of mRNA 'Covid vaccines' and a long list of excuses to use them as with all the 'variants' of a 'virus' never shown to exist. The plan is further to transfer the mRNA technique to other vaccines mostly given to children and young people. The cumulative consequences will be a transformation of human DNA through a constant infusion of synthetic genetic material which will kill many and change the rest. Now consider that governments that have given emergency approval for a vaccine that's not a vaccine; never been approved for humans before; had no testing worth the name; and the makers have been given immunity from prosecution for any deaths or adverse effects suffered by the public. The UK government awarded *permanent legal indemnity* to itself and its employees for harm done when a patient is being treated for 'Covid-19' or 'suspected Covid-19'. That is quite a thought when these are possible 'side-effects' from the 'vaccine' (they are not 'side', they are effects) listed by the US Food and Drug Administration:

Guillain-Barre syndrome; acute disseminated encephalomyelitis; transverse myelitis; encephalitis; myelitis; encephalomyelitis; meningoencephalitis; meningitis; encephalopathy; convulsions; seizures; stroke; narcolepsy; cataplexy; anaphylaxis; acute myocardial infarction (heart attack); myocarditis; pericarditis; autoimmune disease; death; implications for pregnancy, and birth outcomes; other acute demyelinating diseases; non anaphylactic allergy reactions; thrombocytopenia ; disseminated intravascular coagulation; venous thromboembolism; arthritis; arthralgia; joint pain; Kawasaki disease; multisystem inflammatory syndrome in children; vaccine enhanced disease. The latter is the way the 'vaccine' has the potential to make diseases far worse than they would otherwise be.

UK doctor and freedom campaigner Vernon Coleman described the conditions in this list as 'all unpleasant, most of them very serious, and you can't get more serious than death'. The thought that anyone at all has had the 'vaccine' in these circumstances is testament to the potential that humanity has for clueless, unquestioning, stupidity and for many that programmed stupidity has already been terminal.

An insider speaks

Dr Michael Yeadon is a former Vice President, head of research and Chief Scientific Adviser at vaccine giant Pfizer. Yeadon worked on the inside of Big Pharma, but that did not stop him becoming a vocal critic of 'Covid vaccines' and their potential for multiple harms, including infertility in women. By the spring of 2021 he went much further and even used the no, no, term 'conspiracy'. When you begin to see what is going on it is impossible not to do so. Yeadon spoke out in an interview with freedom campaigner James Delingpole and I mentioned earlier how he said that no one had samples of 'the virus'. He explained that the mRNA technique originated in the anti-cancer field and ways to turn on and off certain genes which could be advantageous if you wanted to stop cancer growing out of control. 'That's the origin of them. They are a very unusual application, really.' Yeadon said that treating a cancer patient with an aggressive procedure might be understandable if the alternative was dying, but it was quite another thing to use the same technique as a public health measure. Most people involved wouldn't catch the infectious agent you were vaccinating against and if they did they probably wouldn't die:

> If you are really using it as a public health measure you really want to as close as you can get to zero sides-effects … I find it odd that they chose techniques that were really cutting their teeth in the field of oncology and I'm worried that in using gene-based vaccines that have to be injected in the body and spread around the body, get taken up into some cells, and the regulators haven't quite told us which cells they get taken up into … you are going to be generating a wide range of responses … with multiple steps each of which could go well or badly.

I doubt the Cult intends it to go well. Yeadon said that you can put any gene you like into the body through the 'vaccine'. 'You can certainly give them a gene that would do them some harm if you wanted.' I was intrigued when he said that when used in the cancer field the technique could turn genes on and off. I explore this process in *The Answer* and with different genes having different functions you could create mayhem – physically and psychologically – if you turned the wrong ones on and the right ones off. I read reports of an experiment by researchers at the University of Washington's school of computer science and engineering in which they encoded DNA to infect computers. The body is itself a biological computer and if human DNA can inflict damage on a computer why can't the computer via synthetic material mess with the human body? It can. The Washington research team said it was possible to insert malicious malware into 'physical DNA strands' and corrupt the computer system of a gene sequencing machine as it 'reads gene letters and stores them as binary digits 0 and 1'. They concluded that hackers could one day use blood or spit samples to access computer systems and obtain sensitive data from police forensics labs or infect genome files. It is at this level of digital interaction that synthetic 'vaccines' need to be seen to get the full picture and that will become very clear later on. Michael Yeadon said it made no sense to give the 'vaccine' to younger people who were in no danger from the 'virus'. What was the benefit? It was all downside with potential effects:

> The fact that my government in what I thought was a civilised, rational country, is raining [the 'vaccine'] on people in their 30s and 40s, even my children in their 20s, they're getting letters and phone calls, I know this is not right and any of you doctors who are vaccinating you know it's not right, too. They are not at risk. They are not at risk from the disease, so you are now hoping that the side-effects are so rare that you get away with it. You don't give new technology … that you don't understand to 100 percent of the population.

Blood clot problems with the AstraZeneca 'vaccine' have been affecting younger people to emphasise the downside risks with no benefit. AstraZeneca's version, produced with Oxford University, does not use mRNA, but still gets its toxic cocktail inside cells where

it targets DNA. The Johnson & Johnson 'vaccine' which uses a similar technique has also produced blood clot effects to such an extent that the United States paused its use at one point. They are all 'gene therapy' (cell modification) procedures and not 'vaccines'. The truth is that once the content of these injections enter cells we have no idea what the effect will be. People can speculate and some can give very educated opinions and that's good. In the end, though, only the makers know what their potions are designed to do and even they won't know every last consequence. Michael Yeadon was scathing about doctors doing what they knew to be wrong. 'Everyone's mute', he said. Doctors in the NHS must know this was not right, coming into work and injecting people. 'I don't know how they sleep at night. I know I couldn't do it. I know that if I were in that position I'd have to quit.' He said he knew enough about toxicology to know this was not a good risk-benefit. Yeadon had spoken to seven or eight university professors and all except two would not speak out publicly. Their universities had a policy that no one said anything that countered the government and its medical advisors. They were afraid of losing their government grants. This is how intimidation has been used to silence the truth at every level of the system. I say silence, but these people could still speak out if they made that choice. Yeadon called them 'moral cowards' – 'This is about your children and grandchildren's lives and you have just buggered off and left it.'

'Variant' nonsense

Some of his most powerful comments related to the alleged 'variants' being used to instil more fear, justify more lockdowns, and introduce more 'vaccines'. He said government claims about 'variants' were nonsense. He had checked the alleged variant 'codes' and they were 99.7 percent identical to the 'original'. This was the human identity difference equivalent to putting a baseball cap on and off or wearing it the other way round. A 0.3 percent difference would make it impossible for that 'variant' to escape immunity from the 'original'. This made no sense of having new 'vaccines' for

'variants'. He said there would have to be at least a *30 percent* difference for that to be justified and even then he believed the immune system would still recognise what it was. Gates-funded 'variant modeller' and 'vaccine'-pusher John Edmunds might care to comment. Yeadon said drug companies were making new versions of the 'vaccine' as a 'top up' for 'variants'. Worse than that, he said, the 'regulators' around the world like the MHRA in the UK had got together and agreed that because 'vaccines' for 'variants' were so similar to the first 'vaccines' *they did not have to do safety studies*. How transparently sinister that is. This is when Yeadon said: 'There is a conspiracy here.' There was no need for another vaccine for 'variants' and yet we were told that there was and the country had shut its borders because of them. 'They are going into hundreds of millions of arms without passing 'go' or any regulator. Why did they do that? Why did they pick this method of making the vaccine?'

The reason had to be something bigger than that it seemed and 'it's not protection against the virus'. It's was a far bigger project that meant politicians and advisers were willing to do things and not do things that knowingly resulted in avoidable deaths – 'that's already happened when you think about lockdown and deprivation of health care for a year.' He spoke of people prepared to do something that results in the avoidable death of their fellow human beings and it not bother them. This is the penny-drop I have been working to get across for more than 30 years – the level of pure evil we are dealing with. Yeadon said his friends and associates could not believe there could be that much evil, but he reminded them of Stalin, Pol Pot and Hitler and of what Stalin had said: 'One death is a tragedy. A million? A statistic.' He could not think of a benign explanation for why you need top-up vaccines 'which I'm sure you don't' and for the regulators 'to just get out of the way and wave them through'. Why would the regulators do that when they were still wrestling with the dangers of the 'parent' vaccine? He was clearly shocked by what he had seen since the 'Covid' hoax began and now he was thinking the previously unthinkable:

> If you wanted to depopulate a significant proportion of the world and to do it in a way that doesn't involve destruction of the environment with nuclear weapons, poisoning everyone with anthrax or something like that, and you wanted plausible deniability while you had a multi-year infectious disease crisis, I actually don't think you could come up with a better plan of work than seems to be in front of me. I can't say that's what they are going to do, but I can't think of a benign explanation why they are doing it.

He said he never thought that they would get rid of 99 percent of humans, but now he wondered. 'If you wanted to that this would be a hell of a way to do it – it would be unstoppable folks.' Yeadon had concluded that those who submitted to the 'vaccine' would be allowed to have some kind of normal life (but for how long?) while screws were tightened to coerce and mandate the last few percent. 'I think they'll put the rest of them in a prison camp. I wish I was wrong, but I don't think I am.' Other points he made included: There were no coronavirus vaccines then suddenly they all come along at the same time; we have no idea of the long term affect with trials so short; coercing or forcing people to have medical procedures is against the Nuremberg Code instigated when the Nazis did just that; people should at least delay having the 'vaccine'; a quick Internet search confirms that masks don't reduce respiratory viral transmission and 'the government knows that'; they have smashed civil society and they know that, too; two dozen peer-reviewed studies show no connection between lockdown and reducing deaths; he knew from personal friends the elite were still flying around and going on holiday while the public were locked down; the elite were not having the 'vaccines'. He was also asked if 'vaccines' could be made to target difference races. He said he didn't know, but the document by the Project for the New American Century in September, 2000, said developing 'advanced forms of biological warfare that can target *specific genotypes* may transform biological warfare from the realm of terror to a politically useful tool.' Oh, they're evil all right. Of that we can be *absolutely* sure.

Another cull of old people

We have seen from the CDC definition that the mRNA 'Covid vaccine' is not a vaccine and nor are the others that *claim* to reduce 'severity of symptoms' in *some* people, but not protect from infection or transmission. What about all the lies about returning to 'normal' if people were 'vaccinated'? If they are not claimed to stop infection and transmission of the alleged 'virus', how does anything change? This was all lies to manipulate people to take the jabs and we are seeing that now with masks and distancing still required for the 'vaccinated'. How did they think that elderly people with fragile health and immune responses were going to be affected by infusing their cells with synthetic material and other toxic substances? They *knew* that in the short and long term it would be devastating and fatal as the culling of the old that began with the first lockdowns was continued with the 'vaccine'. Death rates in care homes soared immediately residents began to be 'vaccinated' – infused with synthetic material. Brave and committed whistleblower nurses put their careers at risk by exposing this truth while the rest kept their heads down and their mouths shut to put their careers before those they are supposed to care for. A long-time American Certified Nursing Assistant who gave his name as James posted a video in which he described emotionally what happened in his care home when vaccination began. He said that during 2020 very few residents were sick with 'Covid' and no one died during the entire year; but shortly after the Pfizer mRNA injections 14 people died within two weeks and many others were near death. 'They're dropping like flies', he said. Residents who walked on their own before the shot could no longer and they had lost their ability to conduct an intelligent conversation. The home's management said the sudden deaths were caused by a 'super-spreader' of 'Covid-19'. Then how come, James asked, that residents who refused to take the injections were not sick? It was a case of inject the elderly with mRNA synthetic potions and blame their illness and death that followed on the 'virus'. James described what was happening in care homes as 'the greatest crime of genocide this country has ever seen'. Remember the NHS staff nurse from earlier who used the same

word ‘genocide’ for what was happening with the ‘vaccines’ and that it was an ‘act of human annihilation’. A UK care home whistleblower told a similar story to James about the effect of the ‘vaccine’ in deaths and ‘outbreaks’ of illness dubbed ‘Covid’ after getting the jab. She told how her care home management and staff had zealously imposed government regulations and no one was allowed to even question the official narrative let alone speak out against it. She said the NHS was even worse. Again we see the results of reframing. A worker at a local care home where I live said they had not had a single case of ‘Covid’ there for almost a year and when the residents were ‘vaccinated’ they had 19 positive cases in two weeks with eight dying.

It’s not the ‘vaccine’ – honest

The obvious cause and effect was being ignored by the media and most of the public. Australia’s health minister Greg Hunt (a former head of strategy at the World Economic Forum) was admitted to hospital after he had the ‘vaccine’. He was suffering according to reports from the skin infection ‘cellulitis’ and it must have been a severe case to have warranted days in hospital. Immediately the authorities said this was nothing to do with the ‘vaccine’ when an effect of some vaccines is a ‘cellulitis-like reaction’. We had families of perfectly healthy old people who died after the ‘vaccine’ saying that if only they had been given the ‘vaccine’ earlier they would still be alive. As a numbskull rating that is off the chart. A father of four ‘died of Covid’ at aged 48 when he was taken ill two days after having the ‘vaccine’. The man, a health administrator, had been ‘shielding during the pandemic’ and had ‘not really left the house’ until he went for the ‘vaccine’. Having the ‘vaccine’ and then falling ill and dying does not seem to have qualified as a possible cause and effect and ‘Covid-19’ went on his death certificate. His family said they had no idea how he ‘caught the virus’. A family member said: ‘Tragically, it could be that going for a vaccination ultimately led to him catching Covid …The sad truth is that they are never going to know where it came from.’ The family warned people to remember

that the virus still existed and was 'very real'. So was their stupidity. Nurses and doctors who had the first round of the 'vaccine' were collapsing, dying and ending up in a hospital bed while they or their grieving relatives were saying they'd still have the 'vaccine' again despite what happened. I kid you not. You mean if your husband returned from the dead he'd have the same 'vaccine' again that killed him??

Doctors at the VCU Medical Center in Richmond, Virginia, said the Johnson & Johnson 'vaccine' was to blame for a man's skin peeling off. Patient Richard Terrell said: 'It all just happened so fast. My skin peeled off. It's still coming off on my hands now.' He said it was stinging, burning and itching and when he bent his arms and legs it was very painful with 'the skin swollen and rubbing against itself'. Pfizer/BioNTech and Moderna vaccines use mRNA to change the cell while the Johnson & Johnson version uses DNA in a process similar to AstraZeneca's technique. Johnson & Johnson and AstraZeneca have both had their 'vaccines' paused by many countries after causing serious blood problems. Terrell's doctor Fnu Nutan said he could have died if he hadn't got medical attention. It sounds terrible so what did Nutan and Terrell say about the 'vaccine' now? Oh, they still recommend that people have it. A nurse in a hospital bed 40 minutes after the vaccination and unable to swallow due to throat swelling was told by a doctor that he lost mobility in his arm for 36 hours following the vaccination. What did he say to the ailing nurse? 'Good for you for getting the vaccination.' We are dealing with a serious form of cognitive dissonance madness in both public and medical staff. There is a remarkable correlation between those having the 'vaccine' and trumpeting the fact and suffering bad happenings shortly afterwards. Witold Rogiewicz, a Polish doctor, made a video of his 'vaccination' and ridiculed those who were questioning its safety and the intentions of Bill Gates: 'Vaccinate yourself to protect yourself, your loved ones, friends and also patients. And to mention quickly I have info for anti-vaxxers and anti-Coviders if you want to contact Bill Gates you can do this through me.' He further ridiculed the dangers of 5G. Days later he

was dead, but naturally the vaccination wasn't mentioned in the verdict of 'heart attack'.

Lies, lies and more lies

So many members of the human race have slipped into extreme states of insanity and unfortunately they include reframed doctors and nursing staff. Having a 'vaccine' and dying within minutes or hours is not considered a valid connection while death from any cause within 28 days or longer of a positive test with a test not testing for the 'virus' means 'Covid-19' goes on the death certificate. How could that 'vaccine'-death connection not have been made except by calculated deceit? US figures in the initial rollout period to February 12th, 2020, revealed that a third of the deaths reported to the CDC after 'Covid vaccines' happened within 48 hours. Five men in the UK suffered an 'extremely rare' blood clot problem after having the AstraZeneca 'vaccine', but no causal link was established said the Gates-funded Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (MHRA) which had given the 'vaccine' emergency approval to be used. Former Pfizer executive Dr Michael Yeadon explained in his interview how the procedures could cause blood coagulation and clots. People who should have been at no risk were dying from blood clots in the brain and he said he had heard from medical doctor friends that people were suffering from skin bleeding and massive headaches. The AstraZeneca 'shot' was stopped by some 20 countries over the blood clotting issue and still the corrupt MHRA, the European Medicines Agency (EMA) and the World Health Organization said that it should continue to be given even though the EMA admitted that it 'still cannot rule out definitively' a link between blood clotting and the 'vaccine'. Later Marco Cavaleri, head of EMA vaccine strategy, said there was indeed a clear link between the 'vaccine' and thrombosis, but they didn't know why. So much for the trials showing the 'vaccine' is safe. Blood clots were affecting younger people who would be under virtually no danger from 'Covid' even if it existed which makes it all the more stupid and sinister.

The British government responded to public alarm by wheeling out June Raine, the terrifyingly weak infant school headmistress sound-alike who heads the UK MHRA drug 'regulator'. The idea that she would stand up to Big Pharma and government pressure is laughable and she told us that all was well in the same way that she did when allowing untested, never-used-on-humans-before, genetically-manipulating 'vaccines' to be exposed to the public in the first place. Mass lying is the new normal of the 'Covid' era. The MHRA later said 30 cases of rare blood clots had by then been connected with the AstraZeneca 'vaccine' (that means a lot more in reality) while stressing that the benefits of the jab in preventing 'Covid-19' outweighed any risks. A more ridiculous and disingenuous statement with callous disregard for human health it is hard to contemplate. Immediately after the mendacious 'all-clears' two hospital workers in Denmark experienced blood clots and cerebral haemorrhaging following the AstraZeneca jab and one died. Top Norwegian health official Pål Andre Holme said the 'vaccine' was the only common factor: 'There is nothing in the patient history of these individuals that can give such a powerful immune response … I am confident that the antibodies that we have found are the cause, and I see no other explanation than it being the vaccine which triggers it.' Strokes, a clot or bleed in the brain, were clearly associated with the 'vaccine' from word of mouth and whistleblower reports. Similar consequences followed with all these 'vaccines' that we were told were so safe and as the numbers grew by the day it was clear we were witnessing human carnage.

Learning the hard way

A woman interviewed by UKColumn told how her husband suffered dramatic health effects after the vaccine when he'd been in good health all his life. He went from being a little unwell to losing all feeling in his legs and experiencing 'excruciating pain'. Misdiagnosis followed twice at Accident and Emergency (an 'allergy' and 'sciatica') before he was admitted to a neurology ward where doctors said his serious condition had been caused by the

‘vaccine’. Another seven ‘vaccinated’ people were apparently being treated on the same ward for similar symptoms. The woman said he had the ‘vaccine’ because they believed media claims that it was safe. ‘I didn’t think the government would give out a vaccine that does this to somebody; I believed they would be bringing out a vaccination that would be safe.’ What a tragic way to learn that lesson. Another woman posted that her husband was transporting stroke patients to hospital on almost every shift and when he asked them if they had been ‘vaccinated’ for ‘Covid’ they all replied ‘yes’. One had a ‘massive brain bleed’ the day after his second dose. She said her husband reported the ‘just been vaccinated’ information every time to doctors in A and E only for them to ignore it, make no notes and appear annoyed that it was even mentioned. This particular report cannot be verified, but it expresses a common theme that confirms the monumental underreporting of ‘vaccine’ consequences. Interestingly as the ‘vaccines’ and their brain blood clot/stroke consequences began to emerge the UK National Health Service began a publicity campaign telling the public what to do in the event of a stroke. A Scottish NHS staff nurse who quit in disgust in March, 2021, said:

> I have seen traumatic injuries from the vaccine, they’re not getting reported to the yellow card [adverse reaction] scheme, they’re treating the symptoms, not asking why, why it’s happening. It’s just treating the symptoms and when you speak about it you’re dismissed like you’re crazy, I’m not crazy, I’m not crazy because every other colleague I’ve spoken to is terrified to speak out, they’ve had enough.

Videos appeared on the Internet of people uncontrollably shaking after the ‘vaccine’ with no control over muscles, limbs and even their face. A Scottish mother broke out in a severe rash all over her body almost immediately after she was given the AstraZeneca ‘vaccine’. The pictures were horrific. Leigh King, a 41-year-old hairdresser from Lanarkshire said: ‘Never in my life was I prepared for what I was about to experience … My skin was so sore and constantly hot … I have never felt pain like this …’ But don’t you worry, the ‘vaccine’ is perfectly safe. Then there has been the effect on medical

staff who have been pressured to have the 'vaccine' by psychopathic 'health' authorities and government. A London hospital consultant who gave the name K. Polyakova wrote this to the *British Medical Journal* or *BMJ*:

> I am currently struggling with … the failure to report the reality of the morbidity caused by our current vaccination program within the health service and staff population. The levels of sickness after vaccination is unprecedented and staff are getting very sick and some with neurological symptoms which is having a huge impact on the health service function. Even the young and healthy are off for days, some for weeks, and some requiring medical treatment. Whole teams are being taken out as they went to get vaccinated together.
>
> Mandatory vaccination in this instance is stupid, unethical and irresponsible when it comes to protecting our staff and public health. We are in the voluntary phase of vaccination, and encouraging staff to take an unlicensed product that is impacting on their immediate health … it is clearly stated that these vaccine products do not offer immunity or stop transmission. In which case why are we doing it?

Not to protect health that's for sure. Medical workers are lauded by governments for agenda reasons when they couldn't give a toss about them any more than they can for the population in general. Schools across America faced the same situation as they closed due to the high number of teachers and other staff with bad reactions to the Pfizer/BioNTech, Moderna, and Johnson & Johnson 'Covid vaccines' all of which were linked to death and serious adverse effects. The *BMJ* took down the consultant's comments pretty quickly on the grounds that they were being used to spread 'disinformation'. They were exposing the truth about the 'vaccine' was the real reason. The cover-up is breathtaking.

Hiding the evidence

The scale of the 'vaccine' death cover-up worldwide can be confirmed by comparing official figures with the personal experience of the public. I heard of many people in my community who died immediately or soon after the vaccine that would never appear in the media or even likely on the official totals of 'vaccine' fatalities and adverse reactions when only about ten percent are estimated to be

reported and I have seen some estimates as low as one percent in a Harvard study. In the UK alone by April 29th, 2021, some 757,654 adverse reactions had been officially reported from the Pfizer/BioNTech, Oxford/AstraZeneca and Moderna 'vaccines' with more than a thousand deaths linked to jabs and that means an estimated ten times this number in reality from a ten percent reporting rate percentage. That's seven million adverse reactions and 10,000 potential deaths and a one percent reporting rate would be ten times *those* figures. In 1976 the US government pulled the swine flu vaccine after *53* deaths. The UK data included a combined 10,000 eye disorders from the 'Covid vaccines' with more than 750 suffering visual impairment or blindness and again multiply by the estimated reporting percentages. As 'Covid cases' officially fell hospitals virtually empty during the 'Covid crisis' began to fill up with a range of other problems in the wake of the 'vaccine' rollout. The numbers across America have also been catastrophic. Deaths linked to *all* types of vaccine increased by *6,000 percent* in the first quarter of 2021 compared with 2020. A 39-year-old woman from Ogden, Utah, died four days after receiving a second dose of Moderna's 'Covid vaccine' when her liver, heart and kidneys all failed despite the fact that she had no known medical issues or conditions. Her family sought an autopsy, but Dr Erik Christensen, Utah's chief medical examiner, said proving vaccine injury as a cause of death almost never happened. He could think of only one instance where an autopsy would name a vaccine as the official cause of death and that would be anaphylaxis where someone received a vaccine and died almost instantaneously. 'Short of that, it would be difficult for us to definitively say this is the vaccine,' Christensen said. If that is true this must be added to the estimated ten percent (or far less) reporting rate of vaccine deaths and serious reactions and the conclusion can only be that vaccine deaths and serious reactions – including these 'Covid' potions' – are phenomenally understated in official figures. The same story can be found everywhere. Endless accounts of deaths and serious reactions among the public, medical

and care home staff while official figures did not even begin to reflect this.

Professional script-reader Dr David Williams, a 'top public-health official' in Ontario, Canada, insulted our intelligence by claiming only four serious adverse reactions and no deaths from the more than 380,000 vaccine doses then given. This bore no resemblance to what people knew had happened in their owns circles and we had Dirk Huyer in charge of getting millions vaccinated in Ontario while at the same time he was Chief Coroner for the province investigating causes of death including possible death from the vaccine. An aide said he had stepped back from investigating deaths, but evidence indicated otherwise. Rosemary Frei, who secured a Master of Science degree in molecular biology at the Faculty of Medicine at Canada's University of Calgary before turning to investigative journalism, was one who could see that official figures for 'vaccine' deaths and reactions made no sense. She said that doctors seldom reported adverse events and when people got really sick or died after getting a vaccination they would attribute that to anything except the vaccines. It had been that way for years and anyone who wondered aloud whether the 'Covid vaccines' or other shots cause harm is immediately branded as 'anti-vax' and 'anti-science'. This was 'career-threatening' for health professionals. Then there was the huge pressure to support the push to 'vaccinate' billions in the quickest time possible. Frei said:

> So that's where we're at today. More than half a million vaccine doses have been given to people in Ontario alone. The rush is on to vaccinate all 15 million of us in the province by September. And the mainstream media are screaming for this to be sped up even more. That all adds up to only a very slim likelihood that we're going to be told the truth by officials about how many people are getting sick or dying from the vaccines.

What is true of Ontario is true of everywhere.

They KNEW – and still did it

The authorities knew what was going to happen with multiple deaths and adverse reactions. The UK government's Gates-funded

and Big Pharma-dominated Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (MHRA) hired a company to employ AI in compiling the projected reactions to the 'vaccine' that would otherwise be uncountable. The request for applications said: 'The MHRA urgently seeks an Artificial Intelligence (AI) software tool to process the expected high volume of Covid-19 vaccine Adverse Drug Reaction …' This was from the agency, headed by the disingenuous June Raine, that gave the 'vaccines' emergency approval and the company was hired before the first shot was given. 'We are going to kill and maim you – is that okay?' 'Oh, yes, perfectly fine – I'm very grateful, thank you, doctor.' The range of 'Covid vaccine' adverse reactions goes on for page after page in the MHRA criminally underreported 'Yellow Card' system and includes affects to eyes, ears, skin, digestion, blood and so on. Raine's MHRA amazingly claimed that the 'overall safety experience … is so far as expected from the clinical trials'. The death, serious adverse effects, deafness and blindness were *expected?* When did they ever mention that? If these human tragedies were expected then those that gave approval for the use of these 'vaccines' must be guilty of crimes against humanity including murder – a definition of which is 'killing a person with malice aforethought or with recklessness manifesting extreme indifference to the value of human life.' People involved at the MHRA, the CDC in America and their equivalent around the world must go before Nuremberg trials to answer for their callous inhumanity. We are only talking here about the immediate effects of the 'vaccine'. The longer-term impact of the DNA synthetic manipulation is the main reason they are so hysterically desperate to inoculate the entire global population in the shortest possible time.

Africa and the developing world are a major focus for the 'vaccine' depopulation agenda and a mass vaccination sales-pitch is underway thanks to caring people like the Rockefellers and other Cult assets. The Rockefeller Foundation, which pre-empted the 'Covid pandemic' in a document published in 2010 that 'predicted' what happened a decade later, announced an initial $34.95 million grant in February, 2021, 'to ensure more equitable access to Covid-19

testing and vaccines' among other things in Africa in collaboration with '24 organizations, businesses, and government agencies'. The pan-Africa initiative would focus on 10 countries: Burkina Faso, Ethiopia, Ghana, Kenya, Nigeria, Rwanda, South Africa, Tanzania, Uganda, and Zambia'. Rajiv Shah, President of the Rockefeller Foundation and former administrator of CIA-controlled USAID, said that if Africa was not mass-vaccinated (to change the DNA of its people) it was a 'threat to all of humanity' and not fair on Africans. When someone from the Rockefeller Foundation says they want to do something to help poor and deprived people and countries it is time for a belly-laugh. They are doing this out of the goodness of their 'heart' because 'vaccinating' the entire global population is what the 'Covid' hoax set out to achieve. Official 'decolonisation' of Africa by the Cult was merely a prelude to financial colonisation on the road to a return to physical colonisation. The 'vaccine' is vital to that and the sudden and convenient death of the 'Covid' sceptic president of Tanzania can be seen in its true light. A lot of people in Africa are aware that this is another form of colonisation and exploitation and they need to stand their ground.

The 'vaccine is working' scam

A potential problem for the Cult was that the 'vaccine' is meant to change human DNA and body messaging and not to protect anyone from a 'virus' never shown to exist. The vaccine couldn't work because it was not designed to work and how could they make it *appear* to be working so that more people would have it? This was overcome by lowering the amplification rate of the PCR test to produce fewer 'cases' and therefore fewer 'deaths'. Some of us had been pointing out since March, 2020, that the amplification rate of the test not testing for the 'virus' had been made artificially high to generate positive tests which they could call 'cases' to justify lockdowns. The World Health Organization recommended an absurdly high 45 amplification cycles to ensure the high positives required by the Cult and then remained silent on the issue until January 20th, 2021 – Biden's Inauguration Day. This was when the

'vaccinations' were seriously underway and on that day the WHO recommended after discussions with America's CDC that laboratories *lowered their testing amplification*. Dr David Samadi, a certified urologist and health writer, said the WHO was encouraging all labs to reduce their cycle count for PCR tests. He said the current cycle was much too high and was 'resulting in any particle being declared a positive case'. Even one mainstream news report I saw said this meant the number of 'Covid' infections may have been 'dramatically inflated'. Oh, just a little bit. The CDC in America issued new guidance to laboratories in April, 2021, to use 28 cycles *but only for 'vaccinated' people*. The timing of the CDC/WHO interventions were cynically designed to make it appear the 'vaccines' were responsible for falling cases and deaths when the real reason can be seen in the following examples. New York's state lab, the Wadsworth Center, identified 872 positive tests in July, 2020, based on a threshold of 40 cycles. When the figure was lowered to 35 cycles *43 percent* of the 872 were no longer 'positives'. At 30 cycles the figure was 63 percent. A Massachusetts lab found that between *85 to 90 percent* of people who tested positive in July with a cycle threshold of 40 would be negative at 30 cycles, Ashish Jha, MD, director of the Harvard Global Health Institute, said: 'I'm really shocked that it could be that high … Boy, does it really change the way we need to be thinking about testing.' I'm shocked that I could see the obvious in the spring of 2020, with no medical background, and most medical professionals still haven't worked it out. No, that's not shocking – it's terrifying.

Three weeks after the WHO directive to lower PCR cycles the London *Daily Mail* ran this headline: 'Why ARE Covid cases plummeting? New infections have fallen 45% in the US and 30% globally in the past 3 weeks but experts say vaccine is NOT the main driver because only 8% of Americans and 13% of people worldwide have received their first dose.' They acknowledged that the drop could not be attributed to the 'vaccine', but soon this morphed throughout the media into the 'vaccine' has caused cases and deaths to fall when it was the PCR threshold. In December, 2020, there was

chaos at English Channel ports with truck drivers needing negative 'Covid' tests before they could board a ferry home for Christmas. The government wanted to remove the backlog as fast as possible and they brought in troops to do the 'testing'. Out of 1,600 drivers just *36* tested positive and the rest were given the all clear to cross the Channel. I guess the authorities thought that 36 was the least they could get away with without the unquestioning catching on. The amplification trick which most people believed in the absence of information in the mainstream applied more pressure on those refusing the 'vaccine' to succumb when it 'obviously worked'. The truth was the exact opposite with deaths in care homes soaring with the 'vaccine' and in Israel the term used was 'skyrocket'. A re-analysis of published data from the Israeli Health Ministry led by Dr Hervé Seligmann at the Medicine Emerging Infectious and Tropical Diseases at Aix-Marseille University found that Pfizer's 'Covid vaccine' killed 'about 40 times more [elderly] people than the disease itself would have killed' during a five-week vaccination period and *260 times* more younger people than would have died from the 'virus' even according to the manipulated 'virus' figures. Dr Seligmann and his co-study author, Haim Yativ, declared after reviewing the Israeli 'vaccine' death data: 'This is a new Holocaust.'

Then, in mid-April, 2021, after vast numbers of people worldwide had been 'vaccinated', the story changed with clear coordination. The UK government began to prepare the ground for more future lockdowns when Nuremberg-destined Boris Johnson told yet another whopper. He said that cases had fallen because of *lockdowns* not 'vaccines'. Lockdowns are irrelevant when *there is no 'virus'* and the test and fraudulent death certificates are deciding the number of 'cases' and 'deaths'. Study after study has shown that lockdowns don't work and instead kill and psychologically destroy people. Meanwhile in the United States Anthony Fauci and Rochelle Walensky, the ultra-Zionist head of the CDC, peddled the same line. More lockdown was the answer and not the 'vaccine', a line repeated on cue by the moron that is Canadian Prime Minister Justin Trudeau. Why all the hysteria to get everyone 'vaccinated' if lockdowns and

not 'vaccines' made the difference? None of it makes sense on the face of it. Oh, but it does. The Cult wants lockdowns *and* the 'vaccine' and if the 'vaccine' is allowed to be seen as the total answer lockdowns would no longer be justified when there are still livelihoods to destroy. 'Variants' and renewed upward manipulation of PCR amplification are planned to instigate never-ending lockdown *and* more 'vaccines'.

You *must* have it – we're desperate

Israel, where the Jewish and Arab population are ruled by the Sabbatian Cult, was the front-runner in imposing the DNA-manipulating 'vaccine' on its people to such an extent that Jewish refusers began to liken what was happening to the early years of Nazi Germany. This would seem to be a fantastic claim. Why would a government of Jewish people be acting like the Nazis did? If you realise that the Sabbatian Cult was behind the Nazis and that Sabbatians hate Jews the pieces start to fit and the question of why a 'Jewish' government would treat Jews with such callous disregard for their lives and freedom finds an answer. Those controlling the government of Israel *aren't Jewish* – they're Sabbatian. Israeli lawyer Tamir Turgal was one who made the Nazi comparison in comments to German lawyer Reiner Fuellmich who is leading a class action lawsuit against the psychopaths for crimes against humanity. Turgal described how the Israeli government was vaccinating children and pregnant women on the basis that there was no evidence that this was dangerous when they had no evidence that it *wasn't* dangerous either. They just had no evidence. This was medical experimentation and Turgal said this breached the Nuremberg Code about medical experimentation and procedures requiring informed consent and choice. Think about that. A Nuremberg Code developed because of Nazi experimentation on Jews and others in concentration camps by people like the evil-beyond-belief Josef Mengele is being breached by the *Israeli* government; but when you know that it's a *Sabbatian* government along with its intelligence and military agencies like Mossad, Shin Bet and the Israeli Defense Forces, and that Sabbatians

were the force behind the Nazis, the kaleidoscope comes into focus. What have we come to when Israeli Jews are suing their government for violating the Nuremberg Code by essentially making Israelis subject to a medical experiment using the controversial 'vaccines'? It's a shocker that this has to be done in the light of what happened in Nazi Germany. The Anshe Ha-Emet, or 'People of the Truth', made up of Israeli doctors, lawyers, campaigners and public, have launched a lawsuit with the International Criminal Court. It says:

> When the heads of the Ministry of Health as well as the prime minister presented the vaccine in Israel and began the vaccination of Israeli residents, the vaccinated were not advised, that, in practice, they are taking part in a medical experiment and that their consent is required for this under the Nuremberg Code.

The irony is unbelievable, but easily explained in one word: Sabbatians. The foundation of Israeli 'Covid' apartheid is the 'green pass' or 'green passport' which allows Jews and Arabs who have had the DNA-manipulating 'vaccine' to go about their lives – to work, fly, travel in general, go to shopping malls, bars, restaurants, hotels, concerts, gyms, swimming pools, theatres and sports venues, while non-'vaccinated' are banned from all those places and activities. Israelis have likened the 'green pass' to the yellow stars that Jews in Nazi Germany were forced to wear – the same as the yellow stickers that a branch of UK supermarket chain Morrisons told exempt mask-wears they had to display when shopping. How very sensitive. The Israeli system is blatant South African-style apartheid on the basis of compliance or non-compliance to fascism rather than colour of the skin. How appropriate that the Sabbatian Israeli government was so close to the pre-Mandela apartheid regime in Pretoria. The Sabbatian-instigated 'vaccine passport' in Israel is planned for everywhere. Sabbatians struck a deal with Pfizer that allowed them to lead the way in the percentage of a national population infused with synthetic material and the result was catastrophic. Israeli freedom activist Shai Dannon told me how chairs were appearing on beaches that said 'vaccinated only'. Health Minister Yuli Edelstein said that anyone unwilling or unable to get

the jabs that 'confer immunity' will be 'left behind'. The man's a liar. Not even the makers claim the 'vaccines' confer immunity. When you see those figures of 'vaccine' deaths these psychopaths were saying that you must take the chance the 'vaccine' will kill you or maim you while knowing it will change your DNA or lockdown for you will be permanent. That's fascism. The Israeli parliament passed a law to allow personal information of the non-vaccinated to be shared with local and national authorities for three months. This was claimed by its supporters to be a way to 'encourage' people to be vaccinated. Hadas Ziv from Physicians for Human Rights described this as a 'draconian law which crushed medical ethics and the patient rights'. But that's the idea, the Sabbatians would reply.

Your papers, please

Sabbatian Israel was leading what has been planned all along to be a global 'vaccine pass' called a 'green passport' without which you would remain in permanent lockdown restriction and unable to do anything. This is how badly – *desperately* – the Cult is to get everyone 'vaccinated'. The term and colour 'green' was not by chance and related to the psychology of fusing the perception of the green climate hoax with the 'Covid' hoax and how the 'solution' to both is the same Great Reset. Lying politicians, health officials and psychologists denied there were any plans for mandatory vaccinations or restrictions based on vaccinations, but they knew that was exactly what was meant to happen with governments of all countries reaching agreements to enforce a global system. 'Free' Denmark and 'free' Sweden unveiled digital vaccine certification. Cyprus, Czech Republic, Estonia, Greece, Hungary, Iceland, Italy, Poland, Portugal, Slovakia, and Spain have all committed to a vaccine passport system and the rest including the whole of the EU would follow. The satanic UK government will certainly go this way despite mendacious denials and at the time of writing it is trying to manipulate the public into having the 'vaccine' so they could go abroad on a summer holiday. How would that work without something to prove you had the synthetic toxicity injected into you?

Documents show that the EU's European Commission was moving towards 'vaccine certificates' in 2018 and 2019 before the 'Covid' hoax began. They knew what was coming. Abracadabra – Ursula von der Leyen, the German President of the Commission, announced in March, 2021, an EU 'Digital Green Certificate' – green again – to track the public's 'Covid status'. The passport sting is worldwide and the Far East followed the same pattern with South Korea ruling that only those with 'vaccination' passports – again the *green* pass – would be able to 'return to their daily lives'.

Bill Gates has been preparing for this 'passport' with other Cult operatives for years and beyond the paper version is a Gates-funded 'digital tattoo' to identify who has been vaccinated and who hasn't. The 'tattoo' is reported to include a substance which is externally readable to confirm who has been vaccinated. This is a bio-luminous light-generating enzyme (think fireflies) called … *Luciferase*. Yes, named after the Cult 'god' Lucifer the 'light bringer' of whom more to come. Gates said he funded the readable tattoo to ensure children in the developing world were vaccinated and no one was missed out. He cares so much about poor kids as we know. This was just the cover story to develop a vaccine tagging system for everyone on the planet. Gates has been funding the ID2020 'alliance' to do just that in league with other lovely people at Microsoft, GAVI, the Rockefeller Foundation, Accenture and IDEO.org. He said in interviews in March, 2020, before any 'vaccine' publicly existed, that the world must have a globalised digital certificate to track the 'virus' and who had been vaccinated. Gates knew from the start that the mRNA vaccines were coming and when they would come and that the plan was to tag the 'vaccinated' to marginalise the intelligent and stop them doing anything including travel. Evil just doesn't suffice. Gates was exposed for offering a $10 million bribe to the Nigerian House of Representatives to invoke compulsory 'Covid' vaccination of all Nigerians. Sara Cunial, a member of the Italian Parliament, called Gates a 'vaccine criminal'. She urged the Italian President to hand him over to the International Criminal Court for crimes against

humanity and condemned his plans to 'chip the human race' through ID2020.

You know it's a long-planned agenda when war criminal and Cult gofer Tony Blair is on the case. With the scale of arrogance only someone as dark as Blair can muster he said: 'Vaccination in the end is going to be your route to liberty.' Blair is a disgusting piece of work and he confirms that again. The media has given a lot of coverage to a bloke called Charlie Mullins, founder of London's biggest independent plumbing company, Pimlico Plumbers, who has said he won't employ anyone who has not been vaccinated or have them go to any home where people are not vaccinated. He said that if he had his way no one would be allowed to walk the streets if they have not been vaccinated. Gates was cheering at the time while I was alerting the white coats. The plan is that people will qualify for 'passports' for having the first two doses and then to keep it they will have to have all the follow ups and new ones for invented 'variants' until human genetics is transformed and many are dead who can't adjust to the changes. Hollywood celebrities – the usual propaganda stunt – are promoting something called the WELL Health-Safety Rating to verify that a building or space has 'taken the necessary steps to prioritize the health and safety of their staff, visitors and other stakeholders'. They included Lady Gaga, Jennifer Lopez, Michael B. Jordan, Robert DeNiro, Venus Williams, Wolfgang Puck, Deepak Chopra and 17th Surgeon General Richard Carmona. Yawn. WELL Health-Safety has big connections with China. Parent company Delos is headed by former Goldman Sachs partner Paul Scialla. This is another example – and we will see so many others – of using the excuse of 'health' to dictate the lives and activities of the population. I guess one confirmation of the 'safety' of buildings is that only 'vaccinated' people can go in, right?

Electronic concentration camps

I wrote decades ago about the plans to restrict travel and here we are for those who refuse to bow to tyranny. This can be achieved in one go with air travel if the aviation industry makes a blanket decree.

The 'vaccine' and guaranteed income are designed to be part of a global version of China's social credit system which tracks behaviour 24/7 and awards or deletes 'credits' based on whether your behaviour is supported by the state or not. I mean your entire lifestyle – what you do, eat, say, everything. Once your credit score falls below a certain level consequences kick in. In China tens of millions have been denied travel by air and train because of this. All the locations and activities denied to refusers by the 'vaccine' passports will be included in one big mass ban on doing almost anything for those that don't bow their head to government. It's beyond fascist and a new term is required to describe its extremes – I guess fascist technocracy will have to do. The way the Chinese system of technological – technocratic – control is sweeping the West can be seen in the Los Angeles school system and is planned to be expanded worldwide. Every child is required to have a 'Covid'-tracking app scanned daily before they can enter the classroom. The so-called Daily Pass tracking system is produced by Gates' Microsoft which I'm sure will shock you rigid. The pass will be scanned using a barcode (one step from an inside-the-body barcode) and the information will include health checks, 'Covid' tests and vaccinations. Entry codes are for one specific building only and access will only be allowed if a student or teacher has a negative test with a test not testing for the 'virus', has no symptoms of anything alleged to be related to 'Covid' (symptoms from a range of other illness), and has a temperature under 100 degrees. No barcode, no entry, is planned to be the case for everywhere and not only schools.

Kids are being psychologically prepared to accept this as 'normal' their whole life which is why what they can impose in schools is so important to the Cult and its gofers. Long-time American freedom campaigner John Whitehead of the Rutherford Institute was not exaggerating when he said: 'Databit by databit, we are building our own electronic concentration camps.' Canada under its Cult gofer prime minister Justin Trudeau has taken a major step towards the real thing with people interned against their will if they test positive with a test not testing for the 'virus' when they arrive at a Canadian

airport. They are jailed in internment hotels often without food or water for long periods and with many doors failing to lock there have been sexual assaults. The interned are being charged sometimes $2,000 for the privilege of being abused in this way. Trudeau is fully on board with the Cult and says the 'Covid pandemic' has provided an opportunity for a global 'reset' to permanently change Western civilisation. His number two, Deputy Prime Minister Chrystia Freeland, is a trustee of the World Economic Forum and a Rhodes Scholar. The Trudeau family have long been servants of the Cult. See *The Biggest Secret* and Cathy O'Brien's book *Trance-Formation of America* for the horrific background to Trudeau's father Pierre Trudeau another Canadian prime minister. Hide your fascism behind the façade of a heart-on-the-sleeve liberal. It's a well-honed Cult technique.

What can the 'vaccine' *really* do?

We have a 'virus' never shown to exist and 'variants' of the 'virus' that have also never been shown to exist except, like the 'original', as computer-generated fictions. Even if you believe there's a 'virus' the 'case' to 'death' rate is in the region of 0.23 to 0.15 percent and those 'deaths' are concentrated among the very old around the same average age that people die anyway. In response to this lack of threat (in truth none) psychopaths and idiots, knowingly and unknowingly answering to Gates and the Cult, are seeking to 'vaccinate' every man, woman and child on Planet Earth. Clearly the 'vaccine' is not about 'Covid' – none of this ever has been. So what is it all about *really*? Why the desperation to infuse genetically-manipulating synthetic material into everyone through mRNA fraudulent 'vaccines' with the intent of doing this over and over with the excuses of 'variants' and other 'virus' inventions? Dr Sherri Tenpenny, an osteopathic medical doctor in the United States, has made herself an expert on vaccines and their effects as a vehement campaigner against their use. Tenpenny was board certified in emergency medicine, the director of a level two trauma centre for 12 years, and moved to Cleveland in 1996 to start an integrative

medicine practice which has treated patients from all 50 states and some 17 other countries. Weaning people off pharmaceutical drugs is a speciality.

She became interested in the consequences of vaccines after attending a meeting at the National Vaccine Information Center in Washington DC in 2000 where she 'sat through four days of listening to medical doctors and scientists and lawyers and parents of vaccine injured kids' and asked: 'What's going on?' She had never been vaccinated and never got ill while her father was given a list of vaccines to be in the military and was 'sick his entire life'. The experience added to her questions and she began to examine vaccine documents from the Centers for Disease Control (CDC). After reading the first one, the 1998 version of *The General Recommendations of Vaccination*, she thought: 'This is it?' The document was poorly written and bad science and Tenpenny began 20 years of research into vaccines that continues to this day. She began her research into 'Covid vaccines' in March, 2020, and she describes them as 'deadly'. For many, as we have seen, they already have been. Tenpenny said that in the first 30 days of the 'vaccine' rollout in the United States there had been more than 40,000 adverse events reported to the vaccine adverse event database. A document had been delivered to her the day before that was 172 pages long. 'We have over 40,000 adverse events; we have over 3,100 cases of [potentially deadly] anaphylactic shock; we have over 5,000 neurological reactions.' Effects ranged from headaches to numbness, dizziness and vertigo, to losing feeling in hands or feet and paraesthesia which is when limbs 'fall asleep' and people have the sensation of insects crawling underneath their skin. All this happened in the first 30 days and remember that only about *ten percent* (or far less) of adverse reactions and vaccine-related deaths are estimated to be officially reported. Tenpenny said:

So can you think of one single product in any industry, any industry, for as long as products have been made on the planet that within 30 days we have 40,000 people complaining of side effects that not only is still on the market but … we've got paid actors telling us how great

they are for getting their vaccine. We're offering people $500 if they will just get their vaccine and we've got nurses and doctors going; 'I got the vaccine, I got the vaccine'.

Tenpenny said they were not going to be 'happy dancing folks' when they began to suffer Bell's palsy (facial paralysis), neuropathies, cardiac arrhythmias and autoimmune reactions that kill through a blood disorder. 'They're not going to be so happy, happy then, but we're never going to see pictures of those people' she said. Tenpenny described the 'vaccine' as 'a well-designed killing tool'.

No off-switch

Bad as the initial consequences had been Tenpenny said it would be maybe 14 months before we began to see the 'full ravage' of what is going to happen to the 'Covid vaccinated' with full-out consequences taking anything between two years and 20 years to show. You can understand why when you consider that variations of the 'Covid vaccine' use mRNA (messenger RNA) to in theory activate the immune system to produce protective antibodies without using the actual 'virus'. How can they when it's a computer program and they've never isolated what they claim is the 'real thing'? Instead they use *synthetic* mRNA. They are inoculating synthetic material into the body which through a technique known as the Trojan horse is absorbed into cells to change the nature of DNA. Human DNA is changed by an infusion of messenger RNA and with each new 'vaccine' of this type it is changed even more. Say so and you are banned by Cult Internet platforms. The contempt the contemptuous Mark Zuckerberg has for the truth and human health can be seen in an internal Facebook video leaked to the Project Veritas investigative team in which he said of the 'Covid vaccines': '… I share some caution on this because we just don't know the long term side-effects of basically modifying people's DNA and RNA.' At the same time this disgusting man's Facebook was censoring and banning anyone saying exactly the same. He must go before a Nuremberg trial for crimes against humanity when he *knows* that he

is censoring legitimate concerns and denying the right of informed consent on behalf of the Cult that owns him. People have been killed and damaged by the very 'vaccination' technique he cast doubt on himself when they may not have had the 'vaccine' with access to information that he denied them. The plan is to have at least annual 'Covid vaccinations', add others to deal with invented 'variants', and change all other vaccines into the mRNA system. Pfizer executives told shareholders at a virtual Barclays Global Healthcare Conference in March, 2021, that the public may need a third dose of 'Covid vaccine', plus regular yearly boosters and the company planned to hike prices to milk the profits in a 'significant opportunity for our vaccine'. These are the professional liars, cheats and opportunists who are telling you their 'vaccine' is safe. Given this volume of mRNA planned to be infused into the human body and its ability to then replicate we will have a transformation of human genetics from biological to synthetic biological – exactly the long-time Cult plan for reasons we'll see – and many will die. Sherri Tenpenny said of this replication:

> It's like having an on-button but no off-button and that whole mechanism … they actually give it a name and they call it the Trojan horse mechanism, because it allows that [synthetic] virus and that piece of that [synthetic] virus to get inside of your cells, start to replicate and even get inserted into other parts of your DNA as a Trojan-horse.

Ask the overwhelming majority of people who have the 'vaccine' what they know about the contents and what they do and they would reply: 'The government says it will stop me getting the virus.' Governments give that false impression on purpose to increase take-up. You can read Sherri Tenpenny's detailed analysis of the health consequences in her blog at Vaxxter.com, but in summary these are some of them. She highlights the statement by Bill Gates about how human beings can become their own 'vaccine manufacturing machine'. The man is insane. ['Vaccine'-generated] 'antibodies' carry synthetic messenger RNA into the cells and the damage starts, Tenpenny contends, and she says that lungs can be adversely affected through varying degrees of pus and bleeding which

obviously affects breathing and would be dubbed 'Covid-19'. Even more sinister was the impact of 'antibodies' on macrophages, a white blood cell of the immune system. They consist of Type 1 and Type 2 which have very different functions. She said Type 1 are 'hyper-vigilant' white blood cells which 'gobble up' bacteria etc. However, in doing so, this could cause inflammation and in extreme circumstances be fatal. She says these affects are mitigated by Type 2 macrophages which kick in to calm down the system and stop it going rogue. They clear up dead tissue debris and reduce inflammation that the Type 1 'fire crews' have caused. Type 1 kills the infection and Type 2 heals the damage, she says. This is her punchline with regard to 'Covid vaccinations': She says that mRNA 'antibodies' block Type 2 macrophages by attaching to them and deactivating them. This meant that when the Type 1 response was triggered by infection there was nothing to stop that getting out of hand by calming everything down. There's an on-switch, but no off-switch, she says. What follows can be 'over and out, see you when I see you'.

Genetic suicide

Tenpenny also highlights the potential for autoimmune disease – the body attacking itself – which has been associated with vaccines since they first appeared. Infusing a synthetic foreign substance into cells could cause the immune system to react in a panic believing that the body is being overwhelmed by an invader (it is) and the consequences can again be fatal. There is an autoimmune response known as a 'cytokine storm' which I have likened to a homeowner panicked by an intruder and picking up a gun to shoot randomly in all directions before turning the fire on himself. The immune system unleashes a storm of inflammatory response called cytokines to a threat and the body commits hara-kiri. The lesson is that you mess with the body's immune response at your peril and these 'vaccines' seriously – fundamentally – mess with immune response. Tenpenny refers to a consequence called anaphylactic shock which is a severe and highly dangerous allergic reaction when the immune system

floods the body with chemicals. She gives the example of having a bee sting which primes the immune system and makes it sensitive to those chemicals. When people are stung again maybe years later the immune response can be so powerful that it leads to anaphylactic shock. Tenpenny relates this 'shock' with regard to the 'Covid vaccine' to something called polyethylene glycol or PEG. Enormous numbers of people have become sensitive to this over decades of use in a whole range of products and processes including food, drink, skin creams and 'medicine'. Studies have claimed that some 72 percent of people have antibodies triggered by PEG compared with two percent in the 1960s and allergic hypersensitive reactions to this become a gathering cause for concern. Tenpenny points out that the 'mRNA vaccine' is coated in a 'bubble' of polyethylene glycol which has the potential to cause anaphylactic shock through immune sensitivity. Many reports have appeared of people reacting this way after having the 'Covid vaccine'. What do we think is going to happen as humanity has more and more of these 'vaccines'? Tenpenny said: 'All these pictures we have seen with people with these rashes … these weepy rashes, big reactions on their arms and things like that – it's an acute allergic reaction most likely to the polyethylene glycol that you've been previously primed and sensitised to.'

Those who have not studied the conspiracy and its perpetrators at length might think that making the population sensitive to PEG and then putting it in these 'vaccines' is just a coincidence. It is not. It is instead testament to how carefully and coldly-planned current events have been and the scale of the conspiracy we are dealing with. Tenpenny further explains that the 'vaccine' mRNA procedure can breach the blood-brain barrier which protects the brain from toxins and other crap that will cause malfunction. In this case they could make two proteins corrupt brain function to cause Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS) , a progressive nervous system disease leading to loss of muscle control, and frontal lobe degeneration – Alzheimer's and dementia. Immunologist J. Bart Classon published a paper connecting mRNA 'vaccines' to prion

disease which can lead to Alzheimer's and other forms of neurogenerative disease while others have pointed out the potential to affect the placenta in ways that make women infertile. This will become highly significant in the next chapter when I will discuss other aspects of this non-vaccine that relate to its nanotechnology and transmission from the injected to the uninjected.

Qualified in idiocy

Tenpenny describes how research has confirmed that these 'vaccine'-generated antibodies can interact with a range of other tissues in the body and attack many other organs including the lungs. 'This means that if you have a hundred people standing in front of you that all got this shot they could have a hundred different symptoms.' Anyone really think that Cult gofers like the Queen, Tony Blair, Christopher Whitty, Anthony Fauci, and all the other psychopaths have really had this 'vaccine' in the pictures we've seen? Not a bloody chance. Why don't doctors all tell us about all these dangers and consequences of the 'Covid vaccine'? Why instead do they encourage and pressure patients to have the shot? Don't let's think for a moment that doctors and medical staff can't be stupid, lazy, and psychopathic and that's without the financial incentives to give the jab. Tenpenny again:

> Some people are going to die from the vaccine directly but a large number of people are going to start to get horribly sick and get all kinds of autoimmune diseases 42 days to maybe a year out. What are they going to do, these stupid doctors who say; 'Good for you for getting that vaccine.' What are they going to say; 'Oh, it must be a mutant, we need to give an extra dose of that vaccine.'
>
> Because now the vaccine, instead of one dose or two doses we need three or four because the stupid physicians aren't taking the time to learn anything about it. If I can learn this sitting in my living room reading a 19 page paper and several others so can they. There's nothing special about me, I just take the time to do it.

Remember how Sara Kayat, the NHS and TV doctor, said that the 'Covid vaccine' would '100 percent prevent hospitalisation and death'. Doctors can be idiots like every other profession and they

should not be worshipped as infallible. They are not and far from it. Behind many medical and scientific 'experts' lies an uninformed prat trying to hide themselves from you although in the 'Covid' era many have failed to do so as with UK narrative-repeating 'TV doctor' Hilary Jones. Pushing back against the minority of proper doctors and scientists speaking out against the 'vaccine' has been the entire edifice of the Cult global state in the form of governments, medical systems, corporations, mainstream media, Silicon Valley, and an army of compliant doctors, medical staff and scientists willing to say anything for money and to enhance their careers by promoting the party line. If you do that you are an 'expert' and if you won't you are an 'anti-vaxxer' and 'Covidiot'. The pressure to be 'vaccinated' is incessant. We have even had reports claiming that the 'vaccine' can help cure cancer and Alzheimer's and make the lame walk. I am waiting for the announcement that it can bring you coffee in the morning and cook your tea. Just as the symptoms of 'Covid' seem to increase by the week so have the miracles of the 'vaccine'. American supermarket giant Kroger Co. offered nearly 500,000 employees in 35 states a $100 bonus for having the 'vaccine' while donut chain Krispy Kreme promised 'vaccinated' customers a free glazed donut every day for the rest of 2021. Have your DNA changed and you will get a doughnut although we might not have to give you them for long. Such offers and incentives confirm the desperation.

Perhaps the worse vaccine-stunt of them all was UK 'Health' Secretary Matt-the-prat Hancock on live TV after watching a clip of someone being 'vaccinated' when the roll-out began. Hancock faked tears so badly it was embarrassing. Brain-of-Britain Piers Morgan, the lockdown-supporting, 'vaccine' supporting, 'vaccine' passport-supporting, TV host played along with Hancock – 'You're quite emotional about that' he said in response to acting so atrocious it would have been called out at a school nativity which will presumably today include Mary and Jesus in masks, wise men keeping their camels six feet apart, and shepherds under tent arrest. System-serving Morgan tweeted this: 'Love the idea of covid vaccine passports for everywhere: flights, restaurants, clubs, football, gyms,

shops etc. It's time covid-denying, anti-vaxxer loonies had their bullsh*t bluff called & bar themselves from going anywhere that responsible citizens go.' If only I could aspire to his genius. To think that Morgan, who specialises in shouting over anyone he disagrees with, was lauded as a free speech hero when he lost his job after storming off the set of his live show like a child throwing his dolly out of the pram. If he is a free speech hero we are in real trouble. I have no idea what 'bullsh*t' means, by the way, the * throws me completely.

The Cult is desperate to infuse its synthetic DNA-changing concoction into everyone and has been using every lie, trick and intimidation to do so. The question of '*Why*?' we shall now address.

CHAPTER TEN

Human 2.0

I believe that at the end of the century the use of words and general educated opinion will have altered so much that one will be able to speak of machines thinking without expecting to be contradicted –
Alan Turing (1912-1954), the 'Father of artificial intelligence'

I have been exposing for decades the plan to transform the human body from a biological to a synthetic-biological state. The new human that I will call Human 2.0 is planned to be connected to artificial intelligence and a global AI 'Smart Grid' that would operate as one global system in which AI would control everything from your fridge to your heating system to your car to your mind. Humans would no longer be 'human', but post-human and sub-human, with their thinking and emotional processes replaced by AI.

What I said sounded crazy and beyond science fiction and I could understand that. To any balanced, rational, mind it *is* crazy. Today, however, that world is becoming reality and it puts the 'Covid vaccine' into its true context. Ray Kurzweil is the ultra-Zionist 'computer scientist, inventor and futurist' and co-founder of the Singularity University. Singularity refers to the merging of humans with machines or 'transhumanism'. Kurzweil has said humanity would be connected to the cyber 'cloud' in the period of the ever-recurring year of 2030:

Our thinking … will be a hybrid of biological and non-biological thinking … humans will be able to extend their limitations and 'think in the cloud' … We're going to put gateways to the

cloud in our brains ... We're going to gradually merge and enhance ourselves ... In my view, that's the nature of being human – we transcend our limitations. As the technology becomes vastly superior to what we are then the small proportion that is still human gets smaller and smaller and smaller until it's just utterly negligible.

They are trying to sell this end-of-humanity-as-we-know-it as the next stage of 'evolution' when we become super-human and 'like the gods'. They are lying to you. Shocked, eh? The population, and again especially the young, have been manipulated into addiction to technologies designed to enslave them for life. First they induced an addiction to smartphones (holdables); next they moved to technology on the body (wearables); and then began the invasion of the body (implantables). I warned way back about the plan for microchipped people and we are now entering that era. We should not be diverted into thinking that this refers only to chips we can see. Most important are the nanochips known as smart dust, neural dust and nanobots which are far too small to be seen by the human eye. Nanotechnology is everywhere, increasingly in food products, and released into the atmosphere by the geoengineering of the skies funded by Bill Gates to 'shut out the Sun' and 'save the planet from global warming'. Gates has been funding a project to spray millions of tonnes of chalk (calcium carbonate) into the stratosphere over Sweden to 'dim the Sun' and cool the Earth. Scientists warned the move could be disastrous for weather systems in ways no one can predict and opposition led to the Swedish space agency announcing that the 'experiment' would not be happening as planned in the summer of 2021; but it shows where the Cult is going with dimming the impact of the Sun and there's an associated plan to change the planet's atmosphere. Who gives psychopath Gates the right to dictate to the entire human race and dismantle planetary systems? The world will not be safe while this man is at large.

The global warming hoax has made the Sun, like the gas of life, something to fear when both are essential to good health and human survival (more inversion). The body transforms sunlight into vital vitamin D through a process involving … *cholesterol*. This is the cholesterol we are also told to fear. We are urged to take Big Pharma

statin drugs to reduce cholesterol and it's all systematic. Reducing cholesterol means reducing vitamin D uptake with all the multiple health problems that will cause. At least if you take statins long term it saves the government from having to pay you a pension. The delivery system to block sunlight is widely referred to as chemtrails although these have a much deeper agenda, too. They appear at first to be contrails or condensation trails streaming from aircraft into cold air at high altitudes. Contrails disperse very quickly while chemtrails do not and spread out across the sky before eventually their content falls to earth. Many times I have watched aircraft cross-cross a clear blue sky releasing chemtrails until it looks like a cloudy day. Chemtrails contain many things harmful to humans and the natural world including toxic heavy metals, aluminium (see Alzheimer's) and nanotechnology. Ray Kurzweil reveals the reason without actually saying so: 'Nanobots will infuse all the matter around us with information. Rocks, trees, everything will become these intelligent creatures.' How do you deliver that? *From the sky*. Self-replicating nanobots would connect everything to the Smart Grid. The phenomenon of Morgellons disease began in the chemtrail era and the correlation has led to it being dubbed the 'chemtrail disease'. Self-replicating fibres appear in the body that can be pulled out through the skin. Morgellons fibres continue to grow outside the body and have a form of artificial intelligence. I cover this at greater length in *Phantom Self*.

'Vaccine' operating system

'Covid vaccines' with their self-replicating synthetic material are also designed to make the connection between humanity and Kurzweil's 'cloud'. American doctor and dedicated campaigner for truth, Carrie Madej, an Internal Medicine Specialist in Georgia with more than 20 years medical experience, has highlighted the nanotechnology aspect of the fake 'vaccines'. She explains how one of the components in at least the Moderna and Pfizer synthetic potions are 'lipid nanoparticles' which are 'like little tiny computer bits' – a 'sci-fi substance' known as nanobots and hydrogel which can be 'triggered

at any moment to deliver its payload' and act as 'biosensors'. The synthetic substance had 'the ability to accumulate data from your body like your breathing, your respiration, thoughts and emotions, all kind of things' and each syringe could carry a *million* nanobots:

This substance because it's like little bits of computers in your body, crazy, but it's true, it can do that, [and] obviously has the ability to act through Wi-Fi. It can receive and transmit energy, messages, frequencies or impulses. That issue has never been addressed by these companies. What does that do to the human?

Just imagine getting this substance in you and it can react to things all around you, the 5G, your smart device, your phones, what is happening with that? What if something is triggering it, too, like an impulse, a frequency? We have something completely foreign in the human body.

Madej said her research revealed that electromagnetic (EMF) frequencies emitted by phones and other devices had increased dramatically in the same period of the 'vaccine' rollout and she was seeing more people with radiation problems as 5G and other electromagnetic technology was expanded and introduced to schools and hospitals. She said she was 'floored with the EMF coming off' the devices she checked. All this makes total sense and syncs with my own work of decades when you think that Moderna refers in documents to its mRNA 'vaccine' as an 'operating system':

Recognizing the broad potential of mRNA science, we set out to create an mRNA technology platform that functions very much like an operating system on a computer. It is designed so that it can plug and play interchangeably with different programs. In our case, the 'program' or 'app' is our mRNA drug – the unique mRNA sequence that codes for a protein …

… Our MRNA Medicines – 'The 'Software Of Life': When we have a concept for a new mRNA medicine and begin research, fundamental components are already in place. Generally, the only thing that changes from one potential mRNA medicine to another is the coding region – the actual genetic code that instructs ribosomes to make protein. Utilizing these instruction sets gives our investigational mRNA medicines a software-like quality. We also have the ability to combine different mRNA sequences encoding for different proteins in a single mRNA investigational medicine.

Who needs a real 'virus' when you can create a computer version to justify infusing your operating system into the entire human race on the road to making living, breathing people into cyborgs? What is missed with the 'vaccines' is the *digital* connection between synthetic material and the body that I highlighted earlier with the study that hacked a computer with human DNA. On one level the body is digital, based on mathematical codes, and I'll have more about that in the next chapter. Those who ridiculously claim that mRNA 'vaccines' are not designed to change human genetics should explain the words of Dr Tal Zaks, chief medical officer at Moderna, in a 2017 TED talk. He said that over the last 30 years 'we've been living this phenomenal digital scientific revolution, and I'm here today to tell you, that we are actually *hacking the software of life*, and that it's changing the way we think about prevention and treatment of disease':

In every cell there's this thing called messenger RNA, or mRNA for short, that transmits the critical information from the DNA in our genes to the protein, which is really the stuff we're all made out of. This is the critical information that determines what the cell will do. So we think about it as an operating system. So if you could change that, if you could introduce a line of code, or change a line of code, it turns out, that has profound implications for everything, from the flu to cancer.

Zaks should more accurately have said that this has profound implications for the human genetic code and the nature of DNA. Communications within the body go both ways and not only one. But, hey, no, the 'Covid vaccine' will not affect your genetics. Cult fact-checkers say so even though the man who helped to develop the mRNA technique says that it does. Zaks said in 2017:

If you think about what it is we're trying to do. We've taken information and our understanding of that information and how that information is transmitted in a cell, and we've taken our understanding of medicine and how to make drugs, and we're fusing the two. We think of it as information therapy.

I have been writing for decades that the body is an information field communicating with itself and the wider world. This is why

radiation which is information can change the information field of body and mind through phenomena like 5G and change their nature and function. 'Information therapy' means to change the body's information field and change the way it operates. DNA is a receiver-transmitter of information and can be mutated by information like mRNA synthetic messaging. Technology to do this has been ready and waiting in the underground bases and other secret projects to be rolled out when the 'Covid' hoax was played. 'Trials' of such short and irrelevant duration were only for public consumption. When they say the 'vaccine' is 'experimental' that is not true. It may appear to be 'experimental' to those who don't know what's going on, but the trials have already been done to ensure the Cult gets the result it desires. Zaks said that it took decades to sequence the human genome, completed in 2003, but now they could do it in a week. By 'they' he means scientists operating in the public domain. In the secret projects they were sequencing the genome in a week long before even 2003.

Deluge of mRNA

Highly significantly the Moderna document says the guiding premise is that if using mRNA as a medicine works for one disease then it should work for many diseases. They were leveraging the flexibility afforded by their platform and the fundamental role mRNA plays in protein synthesis to pursue mRNA medicines for a broad spectrum of diseases. Moderna is confirming what I was saying through 2020 that multiple 'vaccines' were planned for 'Covid' (and later invented 'variants') and that previous vaccines would be converted to the mRNA system to infuse the body with massive amounts of genetically-manipulating synthetic material to secure a transformation to a synthetic-biological state. The 'vaccines' are designed to kill stunning numbers as part of the long-exposed Cult depopulation agenda and transform the rest. Given this is the goal you can appreciate why there is such hysterical demand for every human to be 'vaccinated' for an alleged 'disease' that has an estimated 'infection' to 'death' ratio of 0.23-0.15 percent. As I write

children are being given the 'vaccine' in trials (their parents are a disgrace) and ever-younger people are being offered the vaccine for a 'virus' that even if you believe it exists has virtually zero chance of harming them. Horrific effects of the 'trials' on a 12-year-old girl were revealed by a family member to be serious brain and gastric problems that included a bowel obstruction and the inability to swallow liquids or solids. She was unable to eat or drink without throwing up, had extreme pain in her back, neck and abdomen, and was paralysed from the waist down which stopped her urinating unaided. When the girl was first taken to hospital doctors said it was all in her mind. She was signed up for the 'trial' by her parents for whom no words suffice. None of this 'Covid vaccine' insanity makes any sense unless you see what the 'vaccine' really is – a body-changer. Synthetic biology or 'SynBio' is a fast-emerging and expanding scientific discipline which includes everything from genetic and molecular engineering to electrical and computer engineering. Synthetic biology is defined in these ways:

- A multidisciplinary area of research that seeks to create new biological parts, devices, and systems, or to redesign systems that are already found in nature.

- The use of a mixture of physical engineering and genetic engineering to create new (and therefore synthetic) life forms.

- An emerging field of research that aims to combine the knowledge and methods of biology, engineering and related disciplines in the design of chemically-synthesized DNA to create organisms with novel or enhanced characteristics and traits (synthetic organisms including humans).

We now have synthetic blood, skin, organs and limbs being developed along with synthetic body parts produced by 3D printers. These are all elements of the synthetic human programme and this comment by Kurzweil's co-founder of the Singularity University,

Peter Diamandis, can be seen in a whole new light with the 'Covid' hoax and the sanctions against those that refuse the 'vaccine':

Anybody who is going to be resisting the progress forward [to transhumanism] is going to be resisting evolution and, fundamentally, they will die out. It's not a matter of whether it's good or bad. It's going to happen.

'Resisting evolution'? What absolute bollocks. The arrogance of these people is without limit. His 'it's going to happen' mantra is another way of saying 'resistance is futile' to break the spirit of those pushing back and we must not fall for it. Getting this genetically-transforming 'vaccine' into everyone is crucial to the Cult plan for total control and the desperation to achieve that is clear for anyone to see. Vaccine passports are a major factor in this and they, too, are a form of resistance is futile. It's NOT. The paper funded by the Rockefeller Foundation for the 2013 'health conference' in China said:

We will interact more with artificial intelligence. The use of robotics, bio-engineering to augment human functioning is already well underway and will advance. Re-engineering of humans into potentially separate and unequal forms through genetic engineering or mixed human-robots raises debates on ethics and equality.

A new demography is projected to emerge after 2030 [that year again] of technologies (robotics, genetic engineering, nanotechnology) producing robots, engineered organisms, 'nanobots' and artificial intelligence (AI) that can self-replicate. Debates will grow on the implications of an impending reality of human designed life.

What is happening today is so long planned. The world army enforcing the will of the world government is intended to be a robot army, not a human one. Today's military and its technologically 'enhanced' troops, pilotless planes and driverless vehicles are just stepping stones to that end. Human soldiers are used as Cult fodder and its time they woke up to that and worked for the freedom of the population instead of their own destruction and their family's destruction – the same with the police. Join us and let's sort this out. The phenomenon of enforce my own destruction is widespread in the 'Covid' era with Woker 'luvvies' in the acting and entertainment

industries supporting 'Covid' rules which have destroyed their profession and the same with those among the public who put signs on the doors of their businesses 'closed due to Covid – stay safe' when many will never reopen. It's a form of masochism and most certainly insanity.

Transgender = transhumanism

When something explodes out of nowhere and is suddenly everywhere it is always the Cult agenda and so it is with the tidal wave of claims and demands that have infiltrated every aspect of society under the heading of 'transgenderism'. The term 'trans' is so 'in' and this is the dictionary definition:

> A prefix meaning 'across', 'through', occurring … in loanwords from Latin, used in particular for denoting movement or conveyance from place to place (transfer; transmit; transplant) or complete change (transform; transmute), or to form adjectives meaning 'crossing', 'on the other side of', or 'going beyond' the place named (transmontane; transnational; trans-Siberian).

Transgender means to go beyond gender and transhuman means to go beyond human. Both are aspects of the Cult plan to transform the human body to a synthetic state with *no gender*. Human 2.0 is not designed to procreate and would be produced technologically with no need for parents. The new human would mean the end of parents and so men, and increasingly women, are being targeted for the deletion of their rights and status. Parental rights are disappearing at an ever-quickening speed for the same reason. The new human would have no need for men or women when there is no procreation and no gender. Perhaps the transgender movement that appears to be in a permanent state of frenzy might now contemplate on how it is being used. This was never about transgender rights which are only the interim excuse for confusing gender, particularly in the young, on the road to *fusing* gender. Transgender activism is not an end; it is a *means* to an end. We see again the technique of creative destruction in which you destroy the status quo to 'build back better' in the form that you want. The gender status quo had to be

destroyed by persuading the Cult-created Woke mentality to believe that you can have 100 genders or more. A programme for 9 to 12 year olds produced by the Cult-owned BBC promoted the 100 genders narrative. The very idea may be the most monumental nonsense, but it is not what is true that counts, only what you can make people *believe* is true. Once the gender of 2 + 2 = 4 has been dismantled through indoctrination, intimidation and 2 + 2 = 5 then the new no-gender normal can take its place with Human 2.0. Aldous Huxley revealed the plan in his prophetic *Brave New World* in 1932:

> Natural reproduction has been done away with and children are created, decanted', and raised in 'hatcheries and conditioning centres'. From birth, people are genetically designed to fit into one of five castes, which are further split into 'Plus' and 'Minus' members and designed to fulfil predetermined positions within the social and economic strata of the World State.

How could Huxley know this in 1932? For the same reason George Orwell knew about the Big Brother state in 1948, Cult insiders I have quoted knew about it in 1969, and I have known about it since the early 1990s. If you are connected to the Cult or you work your balls off to uncover the plan you can predict the future. The process is simple. If there is a plan for the world and nothing intervenes to stop it then it will happen. Thus if you communicate the plan ahead of time you are perceived to have predicted the future, but you haven't. You have revealed the plan which without intervention will become the human future. The whole reason I have done what I have is to alert enough people to inspire an intervention and maybe at last that time has come with the Cult and its intentions now so obvious to anyone with a brain in working order.

The future is here

Technological wombs that Huxley described to replace parent procreation are already being developed and they are only the projects we know about in the public arena. Israeli scientists told *The Times of Israel* in March, 2021, that they have grown 250-cell embryos

into mouse foetuses with fully formed organs using artificial wombs in a development they say could pave the way for gestating humans outside the womb. Professor Jacob Hanna of the Weizmann Institute of Science said:

> We took mouse embryos from the mother at day five of development, when they are just of 250 cells, and had them in the incubator from day five until day 11, by which point they had grown all their organs.
>
> By day 11 they make their own blood and have a beating heart, a fully developed brain. Anybody would look at them and say, 'this is clearly a mouse foetus with all the characteristics of a mouse.' It's gone from being a ball of cells to being an advanced foetus.

A special liquid is used to nourish embryo cells in a laboratory dish and they float on the liquid to duplicate the first stage of embryonic development. The incubator creates all the right conditions for its development, Hanna said. The liquid gives the embryo 'all the nutrients, hormones and sugars they need' along with a custom-made electronic incubator which controls gas concentration, pressure and temperature. The cutting-edge in the underground bases and other secret locations will be light years ahead of that, however, and this was reported by the London *Guardian* in 2017:

> We are approaching a biotechnological breakthrough. Ectogenesis, the invention of a complete external womb, could completely change the nature of human reproduction. In April this year, researchers at the Children's Hospital of Philadelphia announced their development of an artificial womb.

The article was headed 'Artificial wombs could soon be a reality. What will this mean for women?' What would it mean for children is an even bigger question. No mother to bond with only a machine in preparation for a life of soulless interaction and control in a world governed by machines (see the *Matrix* movies). Now observe the calculated manipulations of the 'Covid' hoax as human interaction and warmth has been curtailed by distancing, isolation and fear with people communicating via machines on a scale never seen before.

These are all dots in the same picture as are all the personal assistants, gadgets and children's toys through which kids and adults communicate with AI as if it is human. The AI 'voice' on Sat-Nav should be included. All these things are psychological preparation for the Cult endgame. Before you can make a physical connection with AI you have to make a psychological connection and that is what people are being conditioned to do with this ever gathering human-AI interaction. Movies and TV programmes depicting the transhuman, robot dystopia relate to a phenomenon known as 'pre-emptive programming' in which the world that is planned is portrayed everywhere in movies, TV and advertising. This is conditioning the conscious and subconscious mind to become familiar with the planned reality to dilute resistance when it happens for real. What would have been a shock such is the change is made less so. We have young children put on the road to transgender transition surgery with puberty blocking drugs at an age when they could never be able to make those life-changing decisions.

Rachel Levine, a professor of paediatrics and psychiatry who believes in treating children this way, became America's highest-ranked openly-transgender official when she was confirmed as US Assistant Secretary at the Department of Health and Human Services after being nominated by Joe Biden (the Cult). Activists and governments press for laws to deny parents a say in their children's transition process so the kids can be isolated and manipulated into agreeing to irreversible medical procedures. A Canadian father Robert Hoogland was denied bail by the Vancouver Supreme Court in 2021 and remained in jail for breaching a court order that he stay silent over his young teenage daughter, a minor, who was being offered life-changing hormone therapy without parental consent. At the age of 12 the girl's 'school counsellor' said she may be transgender, referred her to a doctor and told the school to treat her like a boy. This is another example of state-serving schools imposing ever more control over children's lives while parents have ever less.

Contemptible and extreme child abuse is happening all over the world as the Cult gender-fusion operation goes into warp-speed.

Why the war on men – and now women?

The question about what artificial wombs mean for women should rightly be asked. The answer can be seen in the deletion of women's rights involving sport, changing rooms, toilets and status in favour of people in male bodies claiming to identify as women. I can identify as a mountain climber, but it doesn't mean I can climb a mountain any more than a biological man can be a biological woman. To believe so is a triumph of belief over factual reality which is the very perceptual basis of everything Woke. Women's sport is being destroyed by allowing those with male bodies who say they identify as female to 'compete' with girls and women. Male body 'women' dominate 'women's' competition with their greater muscle mass, bone density, strength and speed. With that disadvantage sport for women loses all meaning. To put this in perspective nearly 300 American high school boys can run faster than the quickest woman sprinter in the world. Women are seeing their previously protected spaces invaded by male bodies simply because they claim to identify as women. That's all they need to do to access all women's spaces and activities under the Biden 'Equality Act' that destroys equality for women with the usual Orwellian Woke inversion. Male sex offenders have already committed rapes in women's prisons after claiming to identify as women to get them transferred. Does this not matter to the Woke 'equality' hypocrites? Not in the least. What matters to Cult manipulators and funders behind transgender activists is to advance gender fusion on the way to the no-gender 'human'. When you are seeking to impose transparent nonsense like this, or the 'Covid' hoax, the only way the nonsense can prevail is through censorship and intimidation of dissenters, deletion of factual information, and programming of the unquestioning, bewildered and naive. You don't have to scan the world for long to see that all these things are happening.

Many women's rights organisations have realised that rights and status which took such a long time to secure are being eroded and that it is systematic. Kara Dansky of the global Women's Human Rights Campaign said that Biden's transgender executive order immediately he took office, subsequent orders, and Equality Act legislation that followed 'seek to erase women and girls in the law as a category'. *Exactly*. I said during the long ago-started war on men (in which many women play a crucial part) that this was going to turn into a war on them. The Cult is phasing out *both* male and female genders. To get away with that they are brought into conflict so they are busy fighting each other while the Cult completes the job with no unity of response. Unity, people, *unity*. We need unity everywhere. Transgender is the only show in town as the big step towards the no-gender human. It's not about rights for transgender people and never has been. Woke political correctness is deleting words relating to genders to the same end. Wokers believe this is to be 'inclusive' when the opposite is true. They are deleting words describing gender because gender *itself* is being deleted by Human 2.0. Terms like 'man', 'woman', 'mother' and 'father' are being deleted in the universities and other institutions to be replaced by the *no*-gender, not trans-gender, 'individuals' and 'guardians'. Women's rights campaigner Maria Keffler of Partners for Ethical Care said: 'Children are being taught from kindergarten upward that some boys have a vagina, some girls have a penis, and that kids can be any gender they want to be.' Do we really believe that suddenly countries all over the world at the same time had the idea of having drag queens go into schools or read transgender stories to very young children in the local library? It's coldly-calculated confusion of gender on the way to the fusion of gender. Suzanne Vierling, a psychologist from Southern California, made another important point:

> Yesterday's slave woman who endured gynecological medical experiments is today's girl-child being butchered in a booming gender-transitioning sector. Ovaries removed, pushing her into menopause and osteoporosis, uncharted territory, and parents' rights and authority decimated.

The erosion of parental rights is a common theme in line with the Cult plans to erase the very concept of parents and 'ovaries removed, pushing her into menopause' means what? Those born female lose the ability to have children – another way to discontinue humanity as we know it.

Eliminating Human 1.0 (before our very eyes)

To pave the way for Human 2.0 you must phase out Human 1.0. This is happening through plummeting sperm counts and making women infertile through an onslaught of chemicals, radiation (including smartphones in pockets of men) and mRNA 'vaccines'. Common agriculture pesticides are also having a devastating impact on human fertility. I have been tracking collapsing sperm counts in the books for a long time and in 2021 came a book by fertility scientist and reproductive epidemiologist Shanna Swan, *Count Down: How Our Modern World Is Threatening Sperm Counts, Altering Male and Female Reproductive Development and Imperiling the Future of the Human Race*. She reports how the global fertility rate dropped by *half* between 1960 and 2016 with America's birth rate 16 percent below where it needs to be to sustain the population. Women are experiencing declining egg quality, more miscarriages, and more couples suffer from infertility. Other findings were an increase in erectile dysfunction, infant boys developing more genital abnormalities, male problems with conception, and plunging levels of the male hormone testosterone which would explain why so many men have lost their backbone and masculinity. This has been very evident during the 'Covid' hoax when women have been prominent among the Pushbackers and big strapping blokes have bowed their heads, covered their faces with a nappy and quietly submitted. Mind control expert Cathy O'Brien also points to how global education introduced the concept of 'we're all winners' in sport and classrooms: 'Competition was defused, and it in turn defused a sense of fighting back.' This is another version of the 'equity' doctrine in which you drive down rather than raise up. What a contrast in Cult-controlled China with its global ambitions

where the government published plans in January, 2021, to 'cultivate masculinity' in boys from kindergarten through to high school in the face of a 'masculinity crisis'. A government adviser said boys would be soon become 'delicate, timid and effeminate' unless action was taken. Don't expect any similar policy in the targeted West. A 2006 study showed that a 65-year-old man in 2002 had testosterone levels *15 percent* lower than a 65-year-old man in 1987 while a 2020 study found a similar story with young adults and adolescents. Men are getting prescriptions for testosterone replacement therapy which causes an even greater drop in sperm count with up to 99 percent seeing sperm counts drop to zero during the treatment. More sperm is defective and malfunctioning with some having two heads or not pursuing an egg.

A class of *synthetic* chemicals known as phthalates are being blamed for the decline. These are found everywhere in plastics, shampoos, cosmetics, furniture, flame retardants, personal care products, pesticides, canned foods and even receipts. Why till receipts? Everyone touches them. Let no one delude themselves that all this is not systematic to advance the long-time agenda for human body transformation. Phthalates mimic hormones and disrupt the hormone balance causing testosterone to fall and genital birth defects in male infants. Animals and fish have been affected in the same way due to phthalates and other toxins in rivers. When fish turn gay or change sex through chemicals in rivers and streams it is a pointer to why there has been such an increase in gay people and the sexually confused. It doesn't matter to me what sexuality people choose to be, but if it's being affected by chemical pollution and consumption then we need to know. Does anyone really think that this is not connected to the transgender agenda, the war on men and the condemnation of male 'toxic masculinity'? You watch this being followed by 'toxic femininity'. It's already happening. When breastfeeding becomes 'chest-feeding', pregnant women become pregnant people along with all the other Woke claptrap you know that the world is going insane and there's a Cult scam in progress. Transgender activists are promoting the Cult agenda while Cult

billionaires support and fund the insanity as they laugh themselves to sleep at the sheer stupidity for which humans must be infamous in galaxies far, far away.

'Covid vaccines' and female infertility

We can now see why the 'vaccine' has been connected to potential infertility in women. Dr Michael Yeadon, former Vice President and Chief Scientific Advisor at Pfizer, and Dr Wolfgang Wodarg in Germany, filed a petition with the European Medicines Agency in December, 2020, urging them to stop trials for the Pfizer/BioNTech shot and all other mRNA trials until further studies had been done. They were particularly concerned about possible effects on fertility with 'vaccine'-produced antibodies attacking the protein Syncytin-1 which is responsible for developing the placenta. The result would be infertility 'of indefinite duration' in women who have the 'vaccine' with the placenta failing to form. Section 10.4.2 of the Pfizer/BioNTech trial protocol says that pregnant women or those who might become so should not have mRNA shots. Section 10.4 warns men taking mRNA shots to 'be abstinent from heterosexual intercourse' and not to donate sperm. The UK government said that it *did not know* if the mRNA procedure had an effect on fertility. *Did not know?* These people have to go to jail. UK government advice did not recommend at the start that pregnant women had the shot and said they should avoid pregnancy for at least two months after 'vaccination'. The 'advice' was later updated to pregnant women should only have the 'vaccine' if the benefits outweighed the risks to mother and foetus. What the hell is that supposed to mean? Then 'spontaneous abortions' began to appear and rapidly increase on the adverse reaction reporting schemes which include only a fraction of adverse reactions. Thousands and ever-growing numbers of 'vaccinated' women are describing changes to their menstrual cycle with heavier blood flow, irregular periods and menstruating again after going through the menopause – all links to reproduction effects. Women are passing blood clots and the lining of their uterus while men report erectile dysfunction and blood effects. Most

significantly of all *un*vaccinated women began to report similar menstrual changes after interaction with *'vaccinated'* people and men and children were also affected with bleeding noses, blood clots and other conditions. 'Shedding' is when vaccinated people can emit the content of a vaccine to affect the unvaccinated, but this is different. 'Vaccinated' people were not shedding a 'live virus' allegedly in 'vaccines' as before because the fake 'Covid vaccines' involve synthetic material and other toxicity. Doctors exposing what is happening prefer the term 'transmission' to shedding. Somehow those that have had the shots are transmitting effects to those that haven't. Dr Carrie Madej said the nano-content of the 'vaccines' can 'act like an antenna' to others around them which fits perfectly with my own conclusions. This 'vaccine' transmission phenomenon was becoming known as the book went into production and I deal with this further in the Postscript.

Vaccine effects on sterility are well known. The World Health Organization was accused in 2014 of sterilising millions of women in Kenya with the evidence confirmed by the content of the vaccines involved. The same WHO behind the 'Covid' hoax admitted its involvement for more than ten years with the vaccine programme. Other countries made similar claims. Charges were lodged by Tanzania, Nicaragua, Mexico, and the Philippines. The Gardasil vaccine claimed to protect against a genital 'virus' known as HPV has also been linked to infertility. Big Pharma and the WHO (same thing) are criminal and satanic entities. Then there's the Bill Gates Foundation which is connected through funding and shared interests with 20 pharmaceutical giants and laboratories. He stands accused of directing the policy of United Nations Children's Fund (UNICEF), vaccine alliance GAVI, and other groupings, to advance the vaccine agenda and silence opposition at great cost to women and children. At the same time Gates wants to reduce the global population. Coincidence?

Great Reset = Smart Grid = new human

The Cult agenda I have been exposing for 30 years is now being openly promoted by Cult assets like Gates and Klaus Schwab of the World Economic Forum under code-terms like the 'Great Reset', 'Build Back Better' and 'a rare but narrow window of opportunity to reflect, reimagine, and reset our world'. What provided this 'rare but narrow window of opportunity'? The 'Covid' hoax did. Who created that? *They* did. My books from not that long ago warned about the planned 'Internet of Things' (IoT) and its implications for human freedom. This was the plan to connect all technology to the Internet and artificial intelligence and today we are way down that road with an estimated 36 billion devices connected to the World Wide Web and that figure is projected to be 76 billion by 2025. I further warned that the Cult planned to go beyond that to the Internet of *Everything* when the human brain was connected via AI to the Internet and Kurzweil's 'cloud'. Now we have Cult operatives like Schwab calling for precisely that under the term 'Internet of Bodies', a fusion of the physical, digital and biological into one centrally-controlled Smart Grid system which the Cult refers to as the 'Fourth Industrial Revolution'. They talk about the 'biological', but they really mean the synthetic-biological which is required to fully integrate the human body and brain into the Smart Grid and artificial intelligence planned to replace the human mind. We have everything being synthetically manipulated including the natural world through GMO and smart dust, the food we eat and the human body itself with synthetic 'vaccines'. I said in *The Answer* that we would see the Cult push for synthetic meat to replace animals and in February, 2021, the so predictable psychopath Bill Gates called for the introduction of synthetic meat to save us all from 'climate change'. The climate hoax just keeps on giving like the 'Covid' hoax. The war on meat by vegan activists is a carbon (oops, sorry) copy of the manipulation of transgender activists. They have no idea (except their inner core) that they are being used to promote and impose the agenda of the Cult or that they are only the *vehicle* and not the *reason*. This is not to say those who choose not to eat meat shouldn't be respected and supported in that right, but there are ulterior motives

for those in power. A *Forbes* article in December, 2019, highlighted the plan so beloved of Schwab and the Cult under the heading: 'What Is The Internet of Bodies? And How Is It Changing Our World?' The article said the human body is the latest data platform (remember 'our vaccine is an operating system'). *Forbes* described the plan very accurately and the words could have come straight out of my books from long before:

> The Internet of Bodies (IoB) is an extension of the IoT and basically connects the human body to a network through devices that are ingested, implanted, or connected to the body in some way. Once connected, data can be exchanged, and the body and device can be remotely monitored and controlled.

They were really describing a human hive mind with human perception centrally-dictated via an AI connection as well as allowing people to be 'remotely monitored and controlled'. Everything from a fridge to a human mind could be directed from a central point by these insane psychopaths and 'Covid vaccines' are crucial to this. Forbes explained the process I mentioned earlier of holdable and wearable technology followed by implantable. The article said there were three generations of the Internet of Bodies that include:

- Body external: These are wearable devices such as Apple Watches or Fitbits that can monitor our health.

- Body internal: These include pacemakers, cochlear implants, and digital pills that go inside our bodies to monitor or control various aspects of health.

- Body embedded: The third generation of the Internet of Bodies is embedded technology where technology and the human body are melded together and have a real-time connection to a remote machine.

Forbes noted the development of the Brain Computer Interface (BCI) which merges the brain with an external device for monitoring and controlling in real-time. 'The ultimate goal is to help restore function to individuals with disabilities by using brain signals rather than conventional neuromuscular pathways.' Oh, do fuck off. The goal of brain interface technology is controlling human thought and emotion from the central point in a hive mind serving its masters wishes. Many people are now agreeing to be chipped to open doors without a key. You can recognise them because they'll be wearing a mask, social distancing and lining up for the 'vaccine'. The Cult plans a Great Reset money system after they have completed the demolition of the global economy in which 'money' will be exchanged through communication with body operating systems. Rand Corporation, a Cult-owned think tank, said of the Internet of Bodies or IoB:

> Internet of Bodies technologies fall under the broader IoT umbrella. But as the name suggests, IoB devices introduce an even more intimate interplay between humans and gadgets. IoB devices monitor the human body, collect health metrics and other personal information, and transmit those data over the Internet. Many devices, such as fitness trackers, are already in use … IoB devices … and those in development can track, record, and store users' whereabouts, bodily functions, and what they see, hear, and even think.

Schwab's World Economic Forum, a long-winded way of saying 'fascism' or 'the Cult', has gone full-on with the Internet of Bodies in the 'Covid' era. 'We're entering the era of the Internet of Bodies', it declared, 'collecting our physical data via a range of devices that can be implanted, swallowed or worn'. The result would be a huge amount of health-related data that could improve human wellbeing around the world, and prove crucial in fighting the 'Covid-19 pandemic'. Does anyone think these clowns care about 'human wellbeing' after the death and devastation their pandemic hoax has purposely caused? Schwab and co say we should move forward with the Internet of Bodies because 'Keeping track of symptoms could help us stop the spread of infection, and quickly detect new cases'. How wonderful, but keeping track' is all they are really bothered

about. Researchers were investigating if data gathered from smartwatches and similar devices could be used as viral infection alerts by tracking the user's heart rate and breathing. Schwab said in his 2018 book *Shaping the Future of the Fourth Industrial Revolution*:

> The lines between technologies and beings are becoming blurred and not just by the ability to create lifelike robots or synthetics. Instead it is about the ability of new technologies to literally become part of us. Technologies already influence how we understand ourselves, how we think about each other, and how we determine our realities. As the technologies … give us deeper access to parts of ourselves, we may begin to integrate digital technologies into our bodies.

You can see what the game is. Twenty-four hour control and people – if you could still call them that – would never know when something would go ping and take them out of circulation. It's the most obvious rush to a global fascist dictatorship and the complete submission of humanity and yet still so many are locked away in their Cult-induced perceptual coma and can't see it.

Smart Grid control centres

The human body is being transformed by the 'vaccines' and in other ways into a synthetic cyborg that can be attached to the global Smart Grid which would be controlled from a central point and other sub-locations of Grid manipulation. Where are these planned to be? Well, China for a start which is one of the Cult's biggest centres of operation. The technological control system and technocratic rule was incubated here to be unleashed across the world after the 'Covid' hoax came out of China in 2020. Another Smart Grid location that will surprise people new to this is Israel. I have exposed in *The Trigger* how Sabbatian technocrats, intelligence and military operatives were behind the horrors of 9/11 and not '19 Arab hijackers' who somehow manifested the ability to pilot big passenger airliners when instructors at puddle-jumping flying schools described some of them as a joke. The 9/11 attacks were made possible through control of civilian and military air computer systems and those of the White House, Pentagon and connected agencies. See *The Trigger* – it

will blow your mind. The controlling and coordinating force were the Sabbatian networks in Israel and the United States which by then had infiltrated the entire US government, military and intelligence system. The real name of the American Deep State is 'Sabbatian State'. Israel is a tiny country of only nine million people, but it is one of the global centres of cyber operations and fast catching Silicon Valley in importance to the Cult. Israel is known as the 'start-up nation' for all the cyber companies spawned there with the Sabbatian specialisation of 'cyber security' that I mentioned earlier which gives those companies access to computer systems of their clients in real time through 'backdoors' written into the coding when security software is downloaded. The Sabbatian centre of cyber operations outside Silicon Valley is the Israeli military Cyber Intelligence Unit, the biggest infrastructure project in Israel's history, headquartered in the desert-city of Beersheba and involving some 20,000 'cyber soldiers'. Here are located a literal army of Internet trolls scanning social media, forums and comment lists for anyone challenging the Cult agenda. The UK military has something similar with its 77th Brigade and associated operations. The Beersheba complex includes research and development centres for other Cult operations such as Intel, Microsoft, IBM, Google, Apple, Hewlett-Packard, Cisco Systems, Facebook and Motorola. Techcrunch.com ran an article about the Beersheba global Internet technology centre headlined 'Israel's desert city of Beersheba is turning into a cybertech oasis':

> The military's massive relocation of its prestigious technology units, the presence of multinational and local companies, a close proximity to Ben Gurion University and generous government subsidies are turning Beersheba into a major global cybertech hub. Beersheba has all of the ingredients of a vibrant security technology ecosystem, including Ben Gurion University with its graduate program in cybersecurity and Cyber Security Research Center, and the presence of companies such as EMC, Deutsche Telekom, PayPal, Oracle, IBM, and Lockheed Martin. It's also the future home of the INCB (Israeli National Cyber Bureau); offers a special income tax incentive for cyber security companies, and was the site for the relocation of the army's intelligence corps units.

Sabbatians have taken over the cyber world through the following process: They scan the schools for likely cyber talent and develop them at Ben Gurion University and their period of conscription in the Israeli Defense Forces when they are stationed at the Beersheba complex. When the cyber talented officially leave the army they are funded to start cyber companies with technology developed by themselves or given to them by the state. Much of this is stolen through backdoors of computer systems around the world with America top of the list. Others are sent off to Silicon Valley to start companies or join the major ones and so we have many major positions filled by apparently 'Jewish' but really Sabbatian operatives. Google, YouTube and Facebook are all run by 'Jewish' CEOs while Twitter is all but run by ultra-Zionist hedge-fund shark Paul Singer. At the centre of the Sabbatian global cyber web is the Israeli army's Unit 8200 which specialises in hacking into computer systems of other countries, inserting viruses, gathering information, instigating malfunction, and even taking control of them from a distance. A long list of Sabbatians involved with 9/11, Silicon Valley and Israeli cyber security companies are operatives of Unit 8200. This is not about Israel. It's about the Cult. Israel is planned to be a Smart Grid hub as with China and what is happening at Beersheba is not for the benefit of Jewish people who are treated disgustingly by the Sabbatian elite that control the country. A glance at the Nuremberg Codes will tell you that.

The story is much bigger than 'Covid', important as that is to where we are being taken. Now, though, it's time to really strap in. There's more … much more …

CHAPTER ELEVEN

Who controls the Cult?

Awake, arise or be forever fall'n
John Milton, *Paradise Lost*

I have exposed this far the level of the Cult conspiracy that operates in the world of the seen and within the global secret society and satanic network which operates in the shadows one step back from the seen. The story, however, goes much deeper than that.

The 'Covid' hoax is major part of the Cult agenda, but only part, and to grasp the biggest picture we have to expand our attention beyond the realm of human sight and into the infinity of possibility that we cannot see. It is from here, ultimately, that humanity is being manipulated into a state of total control by the force which dictates the actions of the Cult. How much of reality can we see? Next to damn all is the answer. We may appear to see all there is to see in the 'space' our eyes survey and observe, but little could be further from the truth. The human 'world' is only a tiny band of frequency that the body's visual and perceptual systems can decode into *perception* of a 'world'. According to mainstream science the electromagnetic spectrum is 0.005 percent of what exists in the Universe (Fig 10). The maximum estimate I have seen is 0.5 percent and either way it's miniscule. I say it is far, far, smaller even than 0.005 percent when you compare reality we see with the totality of reality that we don't. Now get this if you are new to such information: Visible light, the only band of frequency that we can see, is a *fraction* of the 0.005

percent (Fig 11 overleaf). Take this further and realise that our universe is one of infinite universes and that universes are only a fragment of overall reality – *infinite* reality. Then compare that with the almost infinitesimal frequency band of visible light or human sight. You see that humans are as near blind as it is possible to be without actually being so. Artist and filmmaker, Sergio Toporek, said:

Figure 10: Humans can perceive such a tiny band of visual reality it's laughable.

Figure 11: We can see a smear of the 0.005 percent electromagnetic spectrum, but we still know it all. Yep, makes sense.

Consider that you can see less than 1% of the electromagnetic spectrum and hear less than 1% of the acoustic spectrum. 90% of the cells in your body carry their own microbial DNA and are not 'you'. The atoms in your body are 99.9999999999999999% empty space and none of them are the ones you were born with ... Human beings have 46 chromosomes, two less than a potato.

The existence of the rainbow depends on the conical photoreceptors in your eyes; to animals without cones, the rainbow does not exist. So you don't just look at a rainbow, you create it. This is pretty amazing, especially considering that all the beautiful colours you see represent less than 1% of the electromagnetic spectrum.

Suddenly the 'world' of humans looks a very different place. Take into account, too, that Planet Earth when compared with the projected size of this single universe is the equivalent of a billionth of a pinhead. Imagine the ratio that would be when compared to infinite reality. To think that Christianity once insisted that Earth and humanity were the centre of everything. This background is vital if we are going to appreciate the nature of 'human' and how we can be manipulated by an unseen force. To human visual reality virtually *everything* is unseen and yet the prevailing perception within the institutions and so much of the public is that if we can't see it, touch it, hear it, taste it and smell it then it cannot exist. Such perception is indoctrinated and encouraged by the Cult and its agents because it isolates believers in the strictly limited, village-idiot, realm of the five senses where perceptions can be firewalled and information controlled. Most of those perpetuating the 'this-world-is-all-there-is' insanity are themselves indoctrinated into believing the same delusion. While major players and influencers know that official reality is laughable most of those in science, academia and medicine really believe the nonsense they peddle and teach succeeding generations. Those who challenge the orthodoxy are dismissed as nutters and freaks to protect the manufactured illusion from exposure. Observe the dynamic of the 'Covid' hoax and you will see how that takes the same form. The inner-circle psychopaths knows it's a gigantic scam, but almost the entirety of those imposing their fascist rules believe that 'Covid' is all that they're told it is.

Stolen identity

Ask people who they are and they will give you their name, place of birth, location, job, family background and life story. Yet that is not who they are – it is what they are *experiencing*. The difference is *absolutely crucial*. The true 'I', the eternal, infinite 'I', is consciousness,

a state of being aware. Forget 'form'. That is a vehicle for a brief experience. Consciousness does not come *from* the brain, but *through* the brain and even that is more symbolic than literal. We are awareness, pure awareness, and this is what withdraws from the body at what we call 'death' to continue our eternal beingness, *isness*, in other realms of reality within the limitlessness of infinity or the Biblical 'many mansions in my father's house'. Labels of a human life, man, woman, transgender, black, white, brown, nationality, circumstances and income are not who we are. They are what we are – awareness – is *experiencing* in a brief connection with a band of frequency we call 'human'. The labels are not the self; they are, to use the title of one of my books, a *Phantom* Self. I am not David Icke born in Leicester, England, on April 29th, 1952. I am the consciousness *having that experience*. The Cult and its non-human masters seek to convince us through the institutions of 'education', science, medicine, media and government that what we are *experiencing* is who we *are*. It's so easy to control and direct perception locked away in the bewildered illusions of the five senses with no expanded radar. Try, by contrast, doing the same with a humanity aware of its true self and its true power to consciously create its reality and experience. How is it possible to do this? We do it all day every day. If you perceive yourself as 'little me' with no power to impact upon your life and the world then your life experience will reflect that. You will hand the power you don't think you have to authority in all its forms which will use it to control your experience. This, in turn, will appear to confirm your perception of 'little me' in a self-fulfilling feedback loop. But that is what 'little me' really is – a *perception*. We are all 'big-me', infinite me, and the Cult has to make us forget that if its will is to prevail. We are therefore manipulated and pressured into self-identifying with human labels and not the consciousness/awareness *experiencing* those human labels.

The phenomenon of identity politics is a Cult-instigated manipulation technique to sub-divide previous labels into even smaller ones. A United States university employs this list of letters to

describe student identity: LGBTTQQFAGPBDSM or lesbian, gay, bisexual, transgender, transsexual, queer, questioning, flexual, asexual, gender-fuck, polyamorous, bondage/discipline, dominance/submission and sadism/masochism. I'm sure other lists are even longer by now as people feel the need to self-identity the 'I' with the minutiae of race and sexual preference. Wokers programmed by the Cult for generations believe this is about 'inclusivity' when it's really the Cult locking them away into smaller and smaller versions of Phantom Self while firewalling them from the influence of their true self, the infinite, eternal 'I'. You may notice that my philosophy which contends that we are all unique points of attention/awareness within the same infinite whole or Oneness is the ultimate non-racism. The very sense of Oneness makes the judgement of people by their body-type, colour or sexuality utterly ridiculous and confirms that racism has no understanding of reality (including anti-white racism). Yet despite my perception of life Cult agents and fast-asleep Wokers label me racist to discredit my information while they are themselves phenomenally racist and sexist. All they see is race and sexuality and they judge people as good or bad, demons or untouchables, by their race and sexuality. All they see is *Phantom Self* and perceive themselves in terms of Phantom Self. They are pawns and puppets of the Cult agenda to focus attention and self-identity in the five senses and play those identities against each other to divide and rule. Columbia University has introduced segregated graduations in another version of social distancing designed to drive people apart and teach them that different racial and cultural groups have nothing in common with each other. The last thing the Cult wants is unity. Again the pump-primers of this will be Cult operatives in the knowledge of what they are doing, but the rest are just the Phantom Self blind leading the Phantom Self blind. We *do* have something in common – we are all *the same consciousness* having different temporary experiences.

What is this 'human'?

Yes, what *is* 'human'? That is what we are supposed to be, right? I mean 'human'? True, but 'human' is the experience not the 'I'. Break it down to basics and 'human' is the way that information is processed. If we are to experience and interact with this band of frequency we call the 'world' we must have a vehicle that operates within that band of frequency. Our consciousness in its prime form cannot do that; it is way beyond the frequency of the human realm. My consciousness or awareness could not tap these keys and pick up the cup in front of me in the same way that radio station A cannot interact with radio station B when they are on different frequencies. The human body is the means through which we have that interaction. I have long described the body as a biological computer which processes information in a way that allows consciousness to experience this reality. The body is a receiver, transmitter and processor of information in a particular way that we call human. We visually perceive only the world of the five senses in a wakened state – that is the limit of the body's visual decoding system. In truth it's not even visual in the way we experience 'visual reality' as I will come to in a moment. We are 'human' because the body processes the information sources of human into a reality and behaviour system that we *perceive* as human. Why does an elephant act like an elephant and not like a human or a duck? The elephant's biological computer is a different information field and processes information according to that program into a visual and behaviour type we call an elephant. The same applies to everything in our reality. These body information fields are perpetuated through procreation (like making a copy of a software program). The Cult wants to break that cycle and intervene technologically to transform the human information field into one that will change what we call humanity. If it can change the human information field it will change the way that field processes information and change humanity both 'physically' and psychologically. Hence the *messenger* (information) RNA 'vaccines' and so much more that is targeting human genetics by changing the body's information – *messaging* – construct through food, drink, radiation, toxicity and other means.

Reality that we experience is nothing like reality as it really is in the same way that the reality people experience in virtual reality games is not the reality they are really living in. The game is only a decoded source of information that appears to be a reality. Our world is also an information construct – a *simulation* (more later). In its base form our reality is a wavefield of information much the same in theme as Wi-Fi. The five senses decode wavefield information into electrical information which they communicate to the brain to decode into holographic (illusory 'physical') information. Different parts of the brain specialise in decoding different senses and the information is fused into a reality that appears to be outside of us but is really inside the brain and the genetic structure in general (Fig 12 overleaf). DNA is a receiver-transmitter of information and a vital part of this decoding process and the body's connection to other realities. Change DNA and you change the way we decode and connect with reality – see 'Covid vaccines'. Think of computers decoding Wi-Fi. You have information encoded in a radiation field and the computer decodes that information into a very different form on the screen. You can't see the Wi-Fi until its information is made manifest on the screen and the information on the screen is inside the computer and not outside. I have just described how we decode the 'human world'. All five senses decode the waveform 'Wi-Fi' field into electrical signals and the brain (computer) constructs reality inside the brain and not outside – 'You don't just look at a rainbow, you create it'. Sound is a simple example. We don't hear sound until the brain decodes it. Waveform sound waves are picked up by the hearing sense and communicated to the brain in an electrical form to be decoded into the sounds that we hear. Everything we hear is inside the brain along with everything we see, feel, smell and taste. Words and language are waveform fields generated by our vocal chords which pass through this process until they are decoded by the brain into words that we hear. Different languages are different frequency fields or sound waves generated by vocal chords. Late British philosopher Alan Watts said:

Figure 12: The brain receives information from the five senses and constructs from that our perceived reality.

[Without the brain] the world is devoid of light, heat, weight, solidity, motion, space, time or any other imaginable feature. All these phenomena are interactions, or transactions, of vibrations with a certain arrangement of neurons.

That's exactly what they are and scientist Robert Lanza describes in his book, *Biocentrism*, how we decode electromagnetic waves and energy into visual and 'physical' experience. He uses the example of a flame emitting photons, electromagnetic energy, each pulsing electrically and magnetically:

… these … invisible electromagnetic waves strike a human retina, and if (and only if) the waves happen to measure between 400 and 700 nano meters in length from crest to crest, then their energy is just right to deliver a stimulus to the 8 million cone-shaped cells in the retina.

Each in turn send an electrical pulse to a neighbour neuron, and on up the line this goes, at 250 mph, until it reaches the … occipital lobe of the brain, in the back of the head. There, a cascading complex of neurons fire from the incoming stimuli, and we subjectively perceive this experience as a yellow brightness occurring in a place we have been conditioned to call the 'external world'.

You hear what you decode

If a tree falls or a building collapses they make no noise unless someone is there to decode the energetic waves generated by the disturbance into what we call sound. Does a falling tree make a noise? Only if you hear it – *decode* it. Everything in our reality is a frequency field of information operating within the overall 'Wi-Fi' field that I call The Field. A vibrational disturbance is generated in The Field by the fields of the falling tree or building. These disturbance waves are what we decode into the sound of them falling. If no one is there to do that then neither will make any noise. Reality is created by the observer – *decoder* – and the *perceptions* of the observer affect the decoding process. For this reason different people – different *perceptions* – will perceive the same reality or situation in a different way. What one may perceive as a nightmare another will see as an opportunity. The question of why the Cult is so focused on controlling human perception now answers itself. All experienced reality is the act of decoding and we don't experience Wi-Fi until it is decoded on the computer screen. The sight and sound of an Internet video is encoded in the Wi-Fi all around us, but we don't see or hear it until the computer decodes that information. Taste, smell and touch are all phenomena of the brain as a result of the same process. We don't taste, smell or feel anything except in the brain and there are pain relief techniques that seek to block the signal from the site of discomfort to the brain because if the brain doesn't decode that signal we don't feel pain. Pain is in the brain and only appears to be at the point of impact thanks to the feedback loop between them. We don't see anything until electrical information from the sight senses is decoded in an area at the back of the brain. If that area is damaged we can go blind when our eyes are perfectly okay. So why do we go blind if we damage an eye? We damage the information processing between the waveform visual information and the visual decoding area of the brain. If information doesn't reach the brain in a form it can decode then we can't see the visual reality that it represents. What's more the brain is decoding only a fraction of the information it receives and the rest is absorbed by the

sub-conscious mind. This explanation is from the science magazine, *Wonderpedia*:

> Every second, 11 million sensations crackle along these [brain] pathways ... The brain is confronted with an alarming array of images, sounds and smells which it rigorously filters down until it is left with a manageable list of around 40. Thus 40 sensations per second make up what we perceive as reality.

The 'world' is not what people are told to believe that is it and the inner circles of the Cult *know that*.

Illusory 'physical' reality

We can only see a smear of 0.005 percent of the Universe which is only one of a vast array of universes – 'mansions' – within infinite reality. Even then the brain decodes only 40 pieces of information ('sensations') from a potential *11 million* that we receive every second. Two points strike you from this immediately: The sheer breathtaking stupidity of believing we know anything so rigidly that there's nothing more to know; and the potential for these processes to be manipulated by a malevolent force to control the reality of the population. One thing I can say for sure with no risk of contradiction is that when you can perceive an almost indescribable fraction of infinite reality there is always more to know as in tidal waves of it. Ancient Greek philosopher Socrates was so right when he said that wisdom is to know how little we know. How obviously true that is when you think that we are experiencing a physical world of solidity that is neither physical nor solid and a world of apartness when everything is connected. Cult-controlled 'science' dismisses the so-called 'paranormal' and all phenomena related to that when the 'para'-normal is perfectly normal and explains the alleged 'great mysteries' which dumbfound scientific minds. There is a reason for this. A 'scientific mind' in terms of the mainstream is a material mind, a five-sense mind imprisoned in see it, touch it, hear it, smell it and taste it. Phenomena and happenings that can't be explained that way leave the 'scientific mind' bewildered and the rule is that if they

can't account for why something is happening then it can't, by definition, be happening. I beg to differ. Telepathy is thought waves passing through The Field (think wave disturbance again) to be decoded by someone able to connect with that wavelength (information). For example: You can pick up the thought waves of a friend at any distance and at the very least that will bring them to mind. A few minutes later the friend calls you. 'My god', you say, 'that's incredible – I was just thinking of you.' Ah, but *they* were thinking of *you* before they made the call and that's what you decoded. Native peoples not entrapped in five-sense reality do this so well it became known as the 'bush telegraph'. Those known as psychics and mediums (genuine ones) are doing the same only across dimensions of reality. 'Mind over matter' comes from the fact that matter and mind are the *same*. The state of one influences the state of the other. Indeed one *and* the other are illusions. They are aspects of the same field. Paranormal phenomena are all explainable so why are they still considered 'mysteries' or not happening? Once you go down this road of understanding you begin to expand awareness beyond the five senses and that's the nightmare for the Cult.

Figure 13: Holograms are not solid, but the best ones appear to be.

Figure 14: How holograms are created by capturing a waveform version of the subject image.

Holographic 'solidity'

Our reality is not solid, it is holographic. We are now well aware of holograms which are widely used today. Two-dimensional information is decoded into a three-dimensional reality that is not solid although can very much appear to be (Fig 13). Holograms are created with a laser divided into two parts. One goes directly onto a holographic photographic print ('reference beam') and the other takes a waveform image of the subject ('working beam') before being directed onto the print where it 'collides' with the other half of the laser (Fig 14). This creates a *waveform* interference pattern which contains the wavefield information of whatever is being photographed (Fig 15 overleaf). The process can be likened to dropping pebbles in a pond. Waves generated by each one spread out across the water to collide with the others and create a wave representation of where the stones fell and at what speed, weight and distance. A waveform interference pattern of a hologram is akin to the waveform information in The Field which the five senses decode into electrical signals to be decoded by the brain into a holographic illusory 'physical' reality. In the same way when a laser (think human attention) is directed at the waveform interference pattern a three-dimensional version of the subject is projected into apparently 'solid' reality (Fig 16). An amazing trait of holograms reveals more 'paranormal mysteries'. Information of the *whole*

hologram is encoded in waveform in every part of the interference pattern by the way they are created. This means that every *part* of a hologram is a smaller version of the whole. Cut the interference wave-pattern into four and you won't get four parts of the image. You get quarter-sized versions of the *whole* image. The body is a hologram and the same applies. Here we have the basis of acupuncture, reflexology and other forms of healing which identify representations of the whole body in all of the parts, hands, feet, ears, everywhere. Skilled palm readers can do what they do because the information of whole body is encoded in the hand. The concept of as above, so below, comes from this.

Figure 15: A waveform interference pattern that holds the information that transforms into a hologram.

Figure 16: Holographic people including 'Elvis' holographically inserted to sing a duet with Celine Dion.

The question will be asked of why, if solidity is illusory, we can't just walk through walls and each other. The resistance is not solid against solid; it is electromagnetic field against electromagnetic field and we decode this into the *experience* of solid against solid. We should also not underestimate the power of belief to dictate reality. What you believe is impossible *will be*. Your belief impacts on your decoding processes and they won't decode what you think is impossible. What we believe we perceive and what we perceive we experience. 'Can't dos' and 'impossibles' are like a firewall in a computer system that won't put on the screen what the firewall blocks. How vital that is to understanding how human experience has been hijacked. I explain in *The Answer*, *Everything You Need To Know But Have Never Been Told* and other books a long list of 'mysteries' and 'paranormal' phenomena that are not mysterious and perfectly normal once you realise what reality is and how it works. 'Ghosts' can be seen to pass through 'solid' walls because the walls are not solid and the ghost is a discarnate entity operating on a frequency so different to that of the wall that it's like two radio stations sharing the same space while never interfering with each other. I have seen ghosts do this myself. The apartness of people and objects is also an illusion. Everything is connected by the Field like all sea life is connected by the sea. It's just that within the limits of our visual reality we only 'see' holographic information and not the field of information that connects everything and from which the holographic world is made manifest. If you can only see holographic 'objects' and not the field that connects them they will appear to you as unconnected to each other in the same way that we see the computer while not seeing the Wi-Fi.

What you don't know *can* hurt you

Okay, we return to those 'two worlds' of human society and the Cult with its global network of interconnecting secret societies and satanic groups which manipulate through governments, corporations, media, religions, etc. The fundamental difference between them is *knowledge*. The idea has been to keep humanity

ignorant of the plan for its total enslavement underpinned by a crucial ignorance of reality – who we are and where we are – and how we interact with it. 'Human' should be the interaction between our expanded eternal consciousness and the five-sense body experience. We are meant to be *in* this world in terms of the five senses but not *of* this world in relation to our greater consciousness and perspective. In that state we experience the small picture of the five senses within the wider context of the big picture of awareness beyond the five senses. Put another way the five senses see the dots and expanded awareness connects them into pictures and patterns that give context to the apparently random and unconnected. Without the context of expanded awareness the five senses see only apartness and randomness with apparently no meaning. The Cult and its other-dimensional controllers seek to intervene in the frequency realm where five-sense reality is supposed to connect with expanded reality and to keep the two apart (more on this in the final chapter). When that happens five-sense mental and emotional processes are no longer influenced by expanded awareness, or the True 'I', and instead are driven by the isolated perceptions of the body's decoding systems. They are in the world *and* of it. Here we have the human plight and why humanity with its potential for infinite awareness can be so easily manipulatable and descend into such extremes of stupidity.

Once the Cult isolates five-sense mind from expanded awareness it can then program the mind with perceptions and beliefs by controlling information that the mind receives through the 'education' system of the formative years and the media perceptual bombardment and censorship of an entire lifetime. Limit perception and a sense of the possible through limiting knowledge by limiting and skewing information while censoring and discrediting that which could set people free. As the title of another of my books says *… And The Truth Shall Set You Free*. For this reason the last thing the Cult wants in circulation is the truth about anything – especially the reality of the eternal 'I' – and that's why it is desperate to control information. The Cult knows that information becomes perception

which becomes behaviour which, collectively, becomes human society. Cult-controlled and funded mainstream 'science' denies the existence of an eternal 'I' and seeks to dismiss and trash all evidence to the contrary. Cult-controlled mainstream religion has a version of 'God' that is little more than a system of control and dictatorship that employs threats of damnation in an afterlife to control perceptions and behaviour in the here and now through fear and guilt. Neither is true and it's the 'neither' that the Cult wishes to suppress. This 'neither' is that everything is an expression, a point of attention, within an infinite state of consciousness which is the real meaning of the term 'God'.

Perceptual obsession with the 'physical body' and five-senses means that 'God' becomes personified as a bearded bloke sitting among the clouds or a raging bully who loves us if we do what 'he' wants and condemns us to the fires of hell if we don't. These are no more than a 'spiritual' fairy tales to control and dictate events and behaviour through fear of this 'God' which has bizarrely made 'God-fearing' in religious circles a state to be desired. I would suggest that fearing *anything* is not to be encouraged and celebrated, but rather deleted. You can see why 'God fearing' is so beneficial to the Cult and its religions when *they* decide what 'God' wants and what 'God' demands (the Cult demands) that everyone do. As the great American comedian Bill Hicks said satirising a Christian zealot: 'I think what God meant to say.' How much of this infinite awareness ('God') that we access is decided by how far we choose to expand our perceptions, self-identity and sense of the possible. The scale of self-identity reflects itself in the scale of awareness that we can connect with and are influenced by – how much knowing and insight we have instead of programmed perception. You cannot expand your awareness into the infinity of possibility when you believe that you are little me Peter the postman or Mary in marketing and nothing more. I'll deal with this in the concluding chapter because it's crucial to how we turnaround current events.

Where the Cult came from

When I realised in the early 1990s there was a Cult network behind global events I asked the obvious question: When did it start? I took it back to ancient Rome and Egypt and on to Babylon and Sumer in Mesopotamia, the 'Land Between Two Rivers', in what we now call Iraq. The two rivers are the Tigris and Euphrates and this region is of immense historical and other importance to the Cult, as is the land called Israel only 550 miles away by air. There is much more going with deep esoteric meaning across this whole region. It's not only about 'wars for oil'. Priceless artefacts from Mesopotamia were stolen or destroyed after the American and British invasion of Iraq in 2003 justified by the lies of Boy Bush and Tony Blair (their Cult masters) about non-existent 'weapons of mass destruction'. Mesopotamia was the location of Sumer (about 5,400BC to 1,750BC), and Babylon (about 2,350BC to 539BC). Sabbatians may have become immensely influential in the Cult in modern times but they are part of a network that goes back into the mists of history. Sumer is said by historians to be the 'cradle of civilisation'. I disagree. I say it was the re-start of what we call human civilisation after cataclysmic events symbolised in part as the 'Great Flood' destroyed the world that existed before. These fantastic upheavals that I have been describing in detail in the books since the early1990s appear in accounts and legends of ancient cultures across the world and they are supported by geological and biological evidence. Stone tablets found in Iraq detailing the Sumer period say the cataclysms were caused by non-human 'gods' they call the Anunnaki. These are described in terms of extraterrestrial visitations in which knowledge supplied by the Anunnaki is said to have been the source of at least one of the world's oldest writing systems and developments in astronomy, mathematics and architecture that were way ahead of their time. I have covered this subject at length in *The Biggest Secret* and *Children of the Matrix* and the same basic 'Anunnaki' story can be found in Zulu accounts in South Africa where the late and very great Zulu high shaman Credo Mutwa told me that the Sumerian Anunnaki were known by Zulus as the Chitauri or 'children of the serpent'. See my six-hour video interview with Credo on this subject entitled *The*

Reptilian Agenda recorded at his then home near Johannesburg in 1999 which you can watch on the Ickonic media platform.

The Cult emerged out of Sumer, Babylon and Egypt (and elsewhere) and established the Roman Empire before expanding with the Romans into northern Europe from where many empires were savagely imposed in the form of Cult-controlled societies all over the world. Mass death and destruction was their calling card. The Cult established its centre of operations in Europe and European Empires were Cult empires which allowed it to expand into a global force. Spanish and Portuguese colonialists headed for Central and South America while the British and French targeted North America. Africa was colonised by Britain, France, Belgium, the Netherlands, Portugal, Spain, Italy, and Germany. Some like Britain and France moved in on the Middle East. The British Empire was by far the biggest for a simple reason. By now Britain was the headquarters of the Cult from which it expanded to form Canada, the United States, Australia and New Zealand. The Sun never set on the British Empire such was the scale of its occupation. London remains a global centre for the Cult along with Rome and the Vatican although others have emerged in Israel and China. It is no accident that the 'virus' is alleged to have come out of China while Italy was chosen as the means to terrify the Western population into compliance with 'Covid' fascism. Nor that Israel has led the world in 'Covid' fascism and mass 'vaccination'.

You would think that I would mention the United States here, but while it has been an important means of imposing the Cult's will it is less significant than would appear and is currently in the process of having what power it does have deleted. The Cult in Europe has mostly loaded the guns for the US to fire. America has been controlled from Europe from the start through Cult operatives in Britain and Europe. The American Revolution was an illusion to make it appear that America was governing itself while very different forces were pulling the strings in the form of Cult families such as the Rothschilds through the Rockefellers and other subordinates. The Rockefellers are extremely close to Bill Gates and

established both scalpel and drug 'medicine' and the World Health Organization. They play a major role in the development and circulation of vaccines through the Rockefeller Foundation on which Bill Gates said his Foundation is based. Why wouldn't this be the case when the Rockefellers and Gates are on the same team? Cult infiltration of human society goes way back into what we call history and has been constantly expanding and centralising power with the goal of establishing a global structure to dictate everything. Look how this has been advanced in great leaps with the 'Covid' hoax.

The non-human dimension

I researched and observed the comings and goings of Cult operatives through the centuries and even thousands of years as they were born, worked to promote the agenda within the secret society and satanic networks, and then died for others to replace them. Clearly there had to be a coordinating force that spanned this entire period while operatives who would not have seen the end goal in their lifetimes came and went advancing the plan over millennia. I went in search of that coordinating force with the usual support from the extraordinary synchronicity of my life which has been an almost daily experience since 1990. I saw common themes in religious texts and ancient cultures about a non-human force manipulating human society from the hidden. Christianity calls this force Satan, the Devil and demons; Islam refers to the Jinn or Djinn; Zulus have their Chitauri (spelt in other ways in different parts of Africa); and the Gnostic people in Egypt in the period around and before 400AD referred to this phenomena as the 'Archons', a word meaning rulers in Greek. Central American cultures speak of the 'Predators' among other names and the same theme is everywhere. I will use 'Archons' as a collective name for all of them. When you see how their nature and behaviour is described all these different sources are clearly talking about the same force. Gnostics described the Archons in terms of 'luminous fire' while Islam relates the Jinn to 'smokeless fire'. Some refer to beings in form that could occasionally be seen, but the most common of common theme is that they operate from

unseen realms which means almost all existence to the visual processes of humans. I had concluded that this was indeed the foundation of human control and that the Cult was operating within the human frequency band on behalf of this hidden force when I came across the writings of Gnostics which supported my conclusions in the most extraordinary way.

A sealed earthen jar was found in 1945 near the town of Nag Hammadi about 75-80 miles north of Luxor on the banks of the River Nile in Egypt. Inside was a treasure trove of manuscripts and texts left by the Gnostic people some 1,600 years earlier. They included 13 leather-bound papyrus codices (manuscripts) and more than 50 texts written in Coptic Egyptian estimated to have been hidden in the jar in the period of 400AD although the source of the information goes back much further. Gnostics oversaw the Great or Royal Library of Alexandria, the fantastic depository of ancient texts detailing advanced knowledge and accounts of human history. The Library was dismantled and destroyed in stages over a long period with the death-blow delivered by the Cult-established Roman Church in the period around 415AD. The Church of Rome was the Church of Babylon relocated as I said earlier. Gnostics were not a race. They were a way of perceiving reality. Whenever they established themselves and their information circulated the terrorists of the Church of Rome would target them for destruction. This happened with the Great Library and with the Gnostic Cathars who were burned to death by the psychopaths after a long period of oppression at the siege of the Castle of Monségur in southern France in 1244. The Church has always been terrified of Gnostic information which demolishes the official Christian narrative although there is much in the Bible that supports the Gnostic view if you read it in another way. To anyone studying the texts of what became known as the Nag Hammadi Library it is clear that great swathes of Christian and Biblical belief has its origin with Gnostics sources going back to Sumer. Gnostic themes have been twisted to manipulate the perceived reality of Bible believers. Biblical texts have been in the open for centuries where they could be changed while Gnostic

documents found at Nag Hammadi were sealed away and untouched for 1,600 years. What you see is what they wrote.

Use your *pneuma* not your *nous*

Gnosticism and Gnostic come from 'gnosis' which means knowledge, or rather *secret* knowledge, in the sense of spiritual awareness – knowledge about reality and life itself. The desperation of the Cult's Church of Rome to destroy the Gnostics can be understood when the knowledge they were circulating was the last thing the Cult wanted the population to know. Sixteen hundred years later the same Cult is working hard to undermine and silence me for the same reason. The dynamic between knowledge and ignorance is a constant. 'Time' appears to move on, but essential themes remain the same. We are told to 'use your nous', a Gnostic word for head/brain/intelligence. They said, however, that spiritual awakening or 'salvation' could only be secured by expanding awareness *beyond* what they called *nous* and into *pneuma* or Infinite Self. Obviously as I read these texts the parallels with what I have been saying since 1990 were fascinating to me. There is a universal truth that spans human history and in that case why wouldn't we be talking the same language 16 centuries apart? When you free yourself from the perception program of the five senses and explore expanded realms of consciousness you are going to connect with the same information no matter what the perceived 'era' within a manufactured timeline of a single and tiny range of manipulated frequency. Humans working with 'smart' technology or knocking rocks together in caves is only a timeline appearing to operate within the human frequency band. Expanded awareness and the knowledge it holds have always been there whether the era be Stone Age or computer age. We can only access that knowledge by opening ourselves to its frequency which the five-sense prison cell is designed to stop us doing. Gates, Fauci, Whitty, Vallance, Zuckerberg, Brin, Page, Wojcicki, Bezos, and all the others behind the 'Covid' hoax clearly have a long wait before their range of frequency can make that connection given that an open heart is

crucial to that as we shall see. Instead of accessing knowledge directly through expanded awareness it is given to Cult operatives by the secret society networks of the Cult where it has been passed on over thousands of years outside the public arena. Expanded realms of consciousness is where great artists, composers and writers find their inspiration and where truth awaits anyone open enough to connect with it. We need to go there fast.

Archon hijack

A fifth of the Nag Hammadi texts describe the existence and manipulation of the Archons led by a 'Chief Archon' they call 'Yaldabaoth', or the 'Demiurge', and this is the Christian 'Devil', 'Satan', 'Lucifer', and his demons. Archons in Biblical symbolism are the 'fallen ones' which are also referred to as fallen angels after the angels expelled from heaven according to the Abrahamic religions of Judaism, Christianity and Islam. These angels are claimed to tempt humans to 'sin' ongoing and you will see how accurate that symbolism is during the rest of the book. The theme of 'original sin' is related to the 'Fall' when Adam and Eve were 'tempted by the serpent' and fell from a state of innocence and 'obedience' (connection) with God into a state of disobedience (disconnection). The Fall is said to have brought sin into the world and corrupted everything including human nature. Yaldabaoth, the 'Lord Archon', is described by Gnostics as a 'counterfeit spirit', 'The Blind One', 'The Blind God', and 'The Foolish One'. The Jewish name for Yaldabaoth in Talmudic writings is Samael which translates as 'Poison of God', or 'Blindness of God'. You see the parallels. Yaldabaoth in Islamic belief is the Muslim Jinn devil known as Shaytan – Shaytan is Satan as the same themes are found all over the world in every religion and culture. The 'Lord God' of the Old Testament is the 'Lord Archon' of Gnostic manuscripts and that's why he's such a bloodthirsty bastard. Satan is known by Christians as 'the Demon of Demons' and Gnostics called Yaldabaoth the 'Archon of Archons'. Both are known as 'The Deceiver'. We are talking about the same 'bloke' for sure and these common themes

using different names, storylines and symbolism tell a common tale of the human plight.

Archons are referred to in Nag Hammadi documents as mind parasites, inverters, guards, gatekeepers, detainers, judges, pitiless ones and deceivers. The 'Covid' hoax alone is a glaring example of all these things. The Biblical 'God' is so different in the Old and New Testaments because they are not describing the same phenomenon. The vindictive, angry, hate-filled, 'God' of the Old Testament, known as Yahweh, is Yaldabaoth who is depicted in Cult-dictated popular culture as the 'Dark Lord', 'Lord of Time', Lord (Darth) Vader and Dormammu, the evil ruler of the 'Dark Dimension' trying to take over the 'Earth Dimension' in the Marvel comic movie, *Dr Strange*. Yaldabaoth is both the Old Testament 'god' and the Biblical 'Satan'. Gnostics referred to Yaldabaoth as the 'Great Architect of the Universe'and the Cult-controlled Freemason network calls their god 'the 'Great Architect of the Universe' (also Grand Architect). The 'Great Architect' Yaldabaoth is symbolised by the Cult as the all-seeing eye at the top of the pyramid on the Great Seal of the United States and the dollar bill. Archon is encoded in *arch*-itect as it is in *arch*-angels and *arch*-bishops. All religions have the theme of a force for good and force for evil in some sort of spiritual war and there is a reason for that – the theme is true. The Cult and its non-human masters are quite happy for this to circulate. They present themselves as the force for good fighting evil when they are really the force of evil (absence of love). The whole foundation of Cult modus operandi is inversion. They promote themselves as a force for good and anyone challenging them in pursuit of peace, love, fairness, truth and justice is condemned as a satanic force for evil. This has been the game plan throughout history whether the Church of Rome inquisitions of non-believers or 'conspiracy theorists' and 'anti-vaxxers' of today. The technique is the same whatever the timeline era.

Yaldabaoth is revolting (true)

Yaldabaoth and the Archons are said to have revolted against God with Yaldabaoth claiming to *be* God – the *All That Is*. The Old Testament 'God' (Yaldabaoth) demanded to be worshipped as such: '*I am* the LORD, and there is none else, there is no God beside me' (Isaiah 45:5). I have quoted in other books a man who said he was the unofficial son of the late Baron Philippe de Rothschild of the Mouton-Rothschild wine producing estates in France who died in 1988 and he told me about the Rothschild 'revolt from God'. The man said he was given the name Phillip Eugene de Rothschild and we shared long correspondence many years ago while he was living under another identity. He said that he was conceived through 'occult incest' which (within the Cult) was 'normal and to be admired'. 'Phillip' told me about his experience attending satanic rituals with rich and famous people whom he names and you can see them and the wider background to Cult Satanism in my other books starting with *The Biggest Secret*. Cult rituals are interactions with Archontic 'gods'. 'Phillip' described Baron Philippe de Rothschild as 'a master Satanist and hater of God' and he used the same term 'revolt from God' associated with Yaldabaoth/Satan/Lucifer/the Devil in describing the Sabbatian Rothschild dynasty. 'I played a key role in my family's revolt from God', he said. That role was to infiltrate in classic Sabbatian style the Christian Church, but eventually he escaped the mind-prison to live another life. The Cult has been targeting religion in a plan to make worship of the Archons the global one-world religion. Infiltration of Satanism into modern 'culture', especially among the young, through music videos, stage shows and other means, is all part of this.

Nag Hammadi texts describe Yaldabaoth and the Archons in their prime form as energy – consciousness – and say they can take form if they choose in the same way that consciousness takes form as a human. Yaldabaoth is called 'formless' and represents a deeply inverted, distorted and chaotic state of consciousness which seeks to attached to humans and turn them into a likeness of itself in an attempt at assimilation. For that to happen it has to manipulate

humans into low frequency mental and emotional states that match its own. Archons can certainly appear in human form and this is the origin of the psychopathic personality. The energetic distortion Gnostics called Yaldabaoth *is* psychopathy. When psychopathic Archons take human form that human will be a psychopath as an expression of Yaldabaoth consciousness. Cult psychopaths are Archons in human form. The principle is the same as that portrayed in the 2009 *Avatar* movie when the American military travelled to a fictional Earth-like moon called Pandora in the Alpha Centauri star system to infiltrate a society of blue people, or Na'vi, by hiding within bodies that looked like the Na'vi. Archons posing as humans have a particular hybrid information field, part human, part Archon, (the ancient 'demigods') which processes information in a way that manifests behaviour to match their psychopathic evil, lack of empathy and compassion, and stops them being influenced by the empathy, compassion and love that a fully-human information field is capable of expressing. Cult bloodlines interbreed, be they royalty or dark suits, for this reason and you have their obsession with incest. Interbreeding with full-blown humans would dilute the Archontic energy field that guarantees psychopathy in its representatives in the human realm.

Gnostic writings say the main non-human forms that Archons take are *serpentine* (what I have called for decades 'reptilian' amid unbounded ridicule from the Archontically-programmed) and what Gnostics describe as 'an unborn baby or foetus with grey skin and dark, unmoving eyes'. This is an excellent representation of the ET 'Greys' of UFO folklore which large numbers of people claim to have seen and been abducted by – Zulu shaman Credo Mutwa among them. I agree with those that believe in extraterrestrial or interdimensional visitations today and for thousands of years past. No wonder with their advanced knowledge and technological capability they were perceived and worshipped as gods for technological and other 'miracles' they appeared to perform. Imagine someone arriving in a culture disconnected from the modern world with a smartphone and computer. They would be

seen as a 'god' capable of 'miracles'. The Renegade Mind, however, wants to know the source of everything and not only the way that source manifests as human or non-human. In the same way that a Renegade Mind seeks the original source material for the 'Covid virus' to see if what is claimed is true. The original source of Archons in form is consciousness – the distorted state of consciousness known to Gnostics as Yaldabaoth.

'Revolt from God' is energetic disconnection

Where I am going next will make a lot of sense of religious texts and ancient legends relating to 'Satan', Lucifer' and the 'gods'. Gnostic descriptions sync perfectly with the themes of my own research over the years in how they describe a consciousness distortion seeking to impose itself on human consciousness. I've referred to the core of infinite awareness in previous books as Infinite Awareness in Awareness of Itself. By that I mean a level of awareness that knows that it is all awareness and is aware of all awareness. From here comes the frequency of love in its true sense and balance which is what love is on one level – the balance of all forces into a single whole called Oneness and Isness. The more we disconnect from this state of love that many call 'God' the constituent parts of that Oneness start to unravel and express themselves as a part and not a whole. They become individualised as intellect, mind, selfishness, hatred, envy, desire for power over others, and such like. This is not a problem in the greater scheme in that 'God', the *All That Is*, can experience all these possibilities through different expressions of itself including humans. What we as expressions of the whole experience the *All That Is* experiences. We are the *All That Is* experiencing itself. As we withdraw from that state of Oneness we disconnect from its influence and things can get very unpleasant and very stupid. Archontic consciousness is at the extreme end of that. It has so disconnected from the influence of Oneness that it has become an inversion of unity and love, an inversion of everything, an inversion of life itself. Evil is appropriately live written backwards. Archontic consciousness is obsessed with death, an inversion of life,

and so its manifestations in Satanism are obsessed with death. They use inverted symbols in their rituals such as the inverted pentagram and cross. Sabbatians as Archontic consciousness incarnate invert Judaism and every other religion and culture they infiltrate. They seek disunity and chaos and they fear unity and harmony as they fear love like garlic to a vampire. As a result the Cult, Archons incarnate, act with such evil, psychopathy and lack of empathy and compassion disconnected as they are from the source of love. How could Bill Gates and the rest of the Archontic psychopaths do what they have to human society in the 'Covid' era with all the death, suffering and destruction involved and have no emotional consequence for the impact on others? Now you know. Why have Zuckerberg, Brin, Page, Wojcicki and company callously censored information warning about the dangers of the 'vaccine' while thousands have been dying and having severe, sometimes life-changing reactions? Now you know. Why have Tedros, Fauci, Whitty, Vallance and their like around the world been using case and death figures they're aware are fraudulent to justify lockdowns and all the deaths and destroyed lives that have come from that? Now you know. Why did Christian Drosten produce and promote a 'testing' protocol that he knew couldn't test for infectious disease which led to a global human catastrophe. Now you know. The Archontic mind doesn't give a shit (Fig 17). I personally think that Gates and major Cult insiders are a form of AI cyborg that the Archons want humans to become.

Figure 17: Artist Neil Hague's version of the 'Covid' hierarchy.

Human batteries

A state of such inversion does have its consequences, however. The level of disconnection from the Source of All means that you withdraw from that source of energetic sustenance and creativity. This means that you have to find your own supply of energetic power and it has – *us*. When the Morpheus character in the first *Matrix* movie held up a battery he spoke a profound truth when he said: 'The Matrix is a computer-generated dream world built to keep us under control in order to change the human being into one of

these.' The statement was true in all respects. We do live in a technologically-generated virtual reality simulation (more very shortly) and we have been manipulated to be an energy source for Archontic consciousness. The Disney-Pixar animated movie *Monsters, Inc*. in 2001 symbolised the dynamic when monsters in their world had no energy source and they would enter the human world to terrify children in their beds, catch the child's scream, terror (low-vibrational frequencies), and take that energy back to power the monster world. The lead character you might remember was a single giant eye and the symbolism of the Cult's all-seeing eye was obvious. Every thought and emotion is broadcast as a frequency unique to that thought and emotion. Feelings of love and joy, empathy and compassion, are high, quick, frequencies while fear, depression, anxiety, suffering and hate are low, slow, dense frequencies. Which kind do you think Archontic consciousness can connect with and absorb? In such a low and dense frequency state there's no way it can connect with the energy of love and joy. Archons can only feed off energy compatible with their own frequency and they and their Cult agents want to delete the human world of love and joy and manipulate the transmission of low vibrational frequencies through low-vibrational human mental and emotional states. *We are their energy source*. Wars are energetic banquets to the Archons – a world war even more so – and think how much low-frequency mental and emotional energy has been generated from the consequences for humanity of the 'Covid' hoax orchestrated by Archons incarnate like Gates.

The ancient practice of human sacrifice 'to the gods', continued in secret today by the Cult, is based on the same principle. 'The gods' are Archontic consciousness in different forms and the sacrifice is induced into a state of intense terror to generate the energy the Archontic frequency can absorb. Incarnate Archons in the ritual drink the blood which contains an adrenaline they crave which floods into the bloodstream when people are terrorised. Most of the sacrifices, ancient and modern, are children and the theme of 'sacrificing young virgins to the gods' is just code for children. They

have a particular pre-puberty energy that Archons want more than anything and the energy of the young in general is their target. The California Department of Education wants students to chant the names of Aztec gods (Archontic gods) once worshipped in human sacrifice rituals in a curriculum designed to encourage them to 'challenge racist, bigoted, discriminatory, imperialist/colonial beliefs', join 'social movements that struggle for social justice', and 'build new possibilities for a post-racist, post-systemic racism society'. It's the usual Woke crap that inverts racism and calls it anti-racism. In this case solidarity with 'indigenous tribes' is being used as an excuse to chant the names of 'gods' to which people were sacrificed (and still are in secret). What an example of Woke's inability to see beyond black and white, us and them, They condemn the colonisation of these tribal cultures by Europeans (quite right), but those cultures sacrificing people including children to their 'gods', and mass murdering untold numbers as the Aztecs did, is just fine. One chant is to the Aztec god Tezcatlipoca who had a man sacrificed to him in the 5th month of the Aztec calendar. His heart was cut out and he was eaten. Oh, that's okay then. Come on children … after three … Other sacrificial 'gods' for the young to chant their allegiance include Quetzalcoatl, Huitzilopochtli and Xipe Totec. The curriculum says that 'chants, affirmations, and energizers can be used to bring the class together, build unity around ethnic studies principles and values, and to reinvigorate the class following a lesson that may be emotionally taxing or even when student engagement may appear to be low'. Well, that's the cover story, anyway. Chanting and mantras are the repetition of a particular frequency generated from the vocal cords and chanting the names of these Archontic 'gods' tunes you into their frequency. That is the last thing you want when it allows for energetic synchronisation, attachment and perceptual influence. Initiates chant the names of their 'Gods' in their rituals for this very reason.

Vampires of the Woke

Paedophilia is another way that Archons absorb the energy of children. Paedophiles possessed by Archontic consciousness are used as the conduit during sexual abuse for discarnate Archons to vampire the energy of the young they desire so much. Stupendous numbers of children disappear every year never to be seen again although you would never know from the media. Imagine how much low-vibrational energy has been generated by children during the 'Covid' hoax when so many have become depressed and psychologically destroyed to the point of killing themselves. Shocking numbers of children are now taken by the state from loving parents to be handed to others. I can tell you from long experience of researching this since 1996 that many end up with paedophiles and assets of the Cult through corrupt and Cult-owned social services which in the reframing era has hired many psychopaths and emotionless automatons to do the job. Children are even stolen to order using spurious reasons to take them by the corrupt and secret (because they're corrupt) 'family courts'. I have written in detail in other books, starting with *The Biggest Secret* in 1997, about the ubiquitous connections between the political, corporate, government, intelligence and military elites (Cult operatives) and Satanism and paedophilia. If you go deep enough both networks have an interlocking leadership. The Woke mentality has been developed by the Cult for many reasons: To promote almost every aspect of its agenda; to hijack the traditional political left and turn it fascist; to divide and rule; and to target agenda pushbackers. But there are other reasons which relate to what I am describing here. How many happy and joyful Wokers do you ever see especially at the extreme end? They are a mental and psychological mess consumed by emotional stress and constantly emotionally cocked for the next explosion of indignation at someone referring to a female as a female. They are walking, talking, batteries as Morpheus might say emitting frequencies which both enslave them in low-vibrational bubbles of perceptual limitation and feed the Archons. Add to this the hatred claimed to be love; fascism claimed to 'anti-fascism', racism claimed to be 'anti-racism';

exclusion claimed to inclusion; and the abuse-filled Internet trolling. You have a purpose-built Archontic energy system with not a wind turbine in sight and all founded on Archontic *inversion*. We have whole generations now manipulated to serve the Archons with their actions and energy. They will be doing so their entire adult lives unless they snap out of their Archon-induced trance. Is it really a surprise that Cult billionaires and corporations put so much money their way? Where is the energy of joy and laughter, including laughing at yourself which is confirmation of your own emotional security? Mark Twain said: 'The human race has one really effective weapon, and that is laughter.' We must use it all the time. Woke has destroyed comedy because it has no humour, no joy, sense of irony, or self-deprecation. Its energy is dense and intense. *Mmmmm*, lunch says the Archontic frequency. Rudolf Steiner (1861-1925) was the Austrian philosopher and famous esoteric thinker who established Waldorf education or Steiner schools to treat children like unique expressions of consciousness and not minds to be programmed with the perceptions determined by authority. I'd been writing about this energy vampiring for decades when I was sent in 2016 a quote by Steiner. He was spot on:

> There are beings in the spiritual realms for whom anxiety and fear emanating from human beings offer welcome food. When humans have no anxiety and fear, then these creatures starve. If fear and anxiety radiates from people and they break out in panic, then these creatures find welcome nutrition and they become more and more powerful. These beings are hostile towards humanity. Everything that feeds on negative feelings, on anxiety, fear and superstition, despair or doubt, are in reality hostile forces in super-sensible worlds, launching cruel attacks on human beings, while they are being fed ... These are exactly the feelings that belong to contemporary culture and materialism; because it estranges people from the spiritual world, it is especially suited to evoke hopelessness and fear of the unknown in people, thereby calling up the above mentioned hostile forces against them.

Pause for a moment from this perspective and reflect on what has happened in the world since the start of 2020. Not only will pennies drop, but billion dollar bills. We see the same theme from Don Juan Matus, a Yaqui Indian shaman in Mexico and the information source for Peruvian-born writer, Carlos Castaneda, who wrote a series of

books from the 1960s to 1990s. Don Juan described the force manipulating human society and his name for the Archons was the predator:

> We have a predator that came from the depths of the cosmos and took over the rule of our lives. Human beings are its prisoners. The predator is our lord and master. It has rendered us docile, helpless. If we want to protest, it suppresses our protest. If we want to act independently, it demands that we don't do so ... indeed we are held prisoner!
>
> They took us over because we are food to them, and they squeeze us mercilessly because we are their sustenance. Just as we rear chickens in coops, the predators rear us in human coops, humaneros. Therefore, their food is always available to them.
>
> Different cultures, different eras, same recurring theme.

The 'ennoia' dilemma

Nag Hammadi Gnostic manuscripts say that Archon consciousness has no 'ennoia'. This is directly translated as 'intentionality', but I'll use the term 'creative imagination'. The *All That Is* in awareness of itself is the source of all creativity – all possibility – and the more disconnected you are from that source the more you are subsequently denied 'creative imagination'. Given that Archon consciousness is almost entirely disconnected it severely lacks creativity and has to rely on far more mechanical processes of thought and exploit the creative potential of those that do have 'ennoia'. You can see cases of this throughout human society. Archon consciousness almost entirely dominates the global banking system and if we study how that system works you will appreciate what I mean. Banks manifest 'money' out of nothing by issuing lines of 'credit' which is 'money' that has never, does not, and will never exist except in theory. It's a confidence trick. If you think 'credit' figures-on-a-screen 'money' is worth anything you accept it as payment. If you don't then the whole system collapses through lack of confidence in the value of that 'money'. Archontic bankers with no 'ennoia' are 'lending' 'money' that doesn't exist to humans that *do* have creativity – those that have the inspired ideas and create businesses and products. Archon banking feeds off human creativity

which it controls through 'money' creation and debt. Humans have the creativity and Archons exploit that for their own benefit and control while having none themselves. Archon Internet platforms like Facebook claim joint copyright of everything that creative users post and while Archontic minds like Zuckerberg may officially head that company it will be human creatives on the staff that provide the creative inspiration. When you have limitless 'money' you can then buy other companies established by creative humans. Witness the acquisition record of Facebook, Google and their like. Survey the Archon-controlled music industry and you see non-creative dark suit executives making their fortune from the human creativity of their artists. The cases are endless. Research the history of people like Gates and Zuckerberg and how their empires were built on exploiting the creativity of others. Archon minds cannot create out of nothing, but they are skilled (because they have to be) in what Gnostic texts call 'countermimicry'. They can imitate, but not innovate. Sabbatians trawl the creativity of others through backdoors they install in computer systems through their cybersecurity systems. Archon-controlled China is globally infamous for stealing intellectual property and I remember how Hong Kong, now part of China, became notorious for making counterfeit copies of the creativity of others – 'countermimicry'. With the now pervasive and all-seeing surveillance systems able to infiltrate any computer you can appreciate the potential for Archons to vampire the creativity of humans. Author John Lamb Lash wrote in his book about the Nag Hammadi texts, *Not In His Image*:

> Although they cannot originate anything, because they lack the divine factor of ennoia (intentionality), Archons can imitate with a vengeance. Their expertise is simulation (HAL, virtual reality). The Demiurge [Yaldabaoth] fashions a heaven world copied from the fractal patterns [of the original] ... His construction is celestial kitsch, like the fake Italianate villa of a Mafia don complete with militant angels to guard every portal.

This brings us to something that I have been speaking about since the turn of the millennium. Our reality is a simulation; a virtual reality that we think is real. No, I'm not kidding.

Human reality? Well, virtually

I had pondered for years about whether our reality is 'real' or some kind of construct. I remembered being immensely affected on a visit as a small child in the late 1950s to the then newly-opened Planetarium on the Marylebone Road in London which is now closed and part of the adjacent Madame Tussauds wax museum. It was in the middle of the day, but when the lights went out there was the night sky projected in the Planetarium's domed ceiling and it appeared to be so real. The experience never left me and I didn't know why until around the turn of the millennium when I became certain that our 'night sky' and entire reality is a projection, a virtual reality, akin to the illusory world portrayed in the *Matrix* movies. I looked at the sky one day in this period and it appeared to me like the domed roof of the Planetarium. The release of the first *Matrix* movie in 1999 also provided a synchronistic and perfect visual representation of where my mind had been going for a long time. I hadn't come across the Gnostic Nag Hammadi texts then. When I did years later the correlation was once again astounding. As I read Gnostic accounts from 1,600 years and more earlier it was clear that they were describing the same simulation phenomenon. They tell how the Yaldabaoth 'Demiurge' and Archons created a 'bad copy' of original reality to rule over all that were captured by its illusions and the body was a prison to trap consciousness in the 'bad copy' fake reality. Read how Gnostics describe the 'bad copy' and update that to current times and they are referring to what we would call today a virtual reality simulation.

Author John Lamb Lash said 'the Demiurge fashions a heaven world copied from the fractal patterns' of the original through expertise in 'HAL' or virtual reality simulation. Fractal patterns are part of the energetic information construct of our reality, a sort of blueprint. If these patterns were copied in computer terms it would indeed give you a copy of a 'natural' reality in a non-natural frequency and digital form. The principle is the same as making a copy of a website. The original website still exists, but now you can change the copy version to make it whatever you like and it can

become very different to the original website. Archons have done this with our reality, a *synthetic* copy of prime reality that still exists beyond the frequency walls of the simulation. Trapped within the illusions of this synthetic Matrix, however, were and are human consciousness and other expressions of prime reality and this is why the Archons via the Cult are seeking to make the human body synthetic and give us synthetic AI minds to complete the job of turning the entire reality synthetic including what we perceive to be the natural world. To quote Kurzweil: 'Nanobots will infuse all the matter around us with information. Rocks, trees, everything will become these intelligent creatures.' Yes, *synthetic* 'creatures' just as 'Covid' and other genetically-manipulating 'vaccines' are designed to make the human body synthetic. From this perspective it is obvious why Archons and their Cult are so desperate to infuse synthetic material into every human with their 'Covid' scam.

Let there be (electromagnetic) light

Yaldabaoth, the force that created the simulation, or Matrix, makes sense of the Gnostic reference to 'The Great Architect' and its use by Cult Freemasonry as the name of its deity. The designer of the Matrix in the movies is called 'The Architect' and that trilogy is jam-packed with symbolism relating to these subjects. I have contended for years that the angry Old Testament God (Yaldabaoth) is the 'God' being symbolically 'quoted' in the opening of Genesis as 'creating the world'. This is not the creation of prime reality – it's the creation of the *simulation*. The Genesis 'God' says: 'Let there be Light: and there was light.' But what is this 'Light'? I have said for decades that the speed of light (186,000 miles per second) is not the fastest speed possible as claimed by mainstream science and is in fact the frequency walls or outer limits of the Matrix. You can't have a fastest or slowest anything within all possibility when everything is possible. The human body is encoded to operate within the speed of light or *within the simulation* and thus we see only the tiny frequency band of visible *light*. Near-death experiencers who perceive reality outside the body during temporary 'death' describe a very different

form of light and this is supported by the Nag Hammadi texts. Prime reality beyond the simulation ('Upper Aeons' to the Gnostics) is described as a realm of incredible beauty, bliss, love and harmony – a realm of 'watery light' that is so powerful 'there are no shadows'. Our false reality of Archon control, which Gnostics call the 'Lower Aeons', is depicted as a realm with a different kind of 'light' and described in terms of chaos, 'Hell', 'the Abyss' and 'Outer Darkness', where trapped souls are tormented and manipulated by demons (relate that to the 'Covid' hoax alone). The watery light theme can be found in near-death accounts and it is not the same as *simulation* 'light' which is electromagnetic or radiation light within the speed of light – the 'Lower Aeons'. Simulation 'light' is the 'luminous fire' associated by Gnostics with the Archons. The Bible refers to Yaldabaoth as 'that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world' (Revelation 12:9). I think that making a simulated copy of prime reality ('countermimicry') and changing it dramatically while all the time manipulating humanity to believe it to be real could probably meet the criteria of deceiving the whole world. Then we come to the Cult god Lucifer – the *Light Bringer*. Lucifer is symbolic of Yaldabaoth, the bringer of radiation light that forms the bad copy simulation within the speed of light. 'He' is symbolised by the lighted torch held by the Statue of Liberty and in the name 'Illuminati'. Sabbatian-Frankism declares that Lucifer is the true god and Lucifer is the real god of Freemasonry honoured as their 'Great or Grand Architect of the Universe' (simulation).

I would emphasise, too, the way Archontic technologically-generated luminous fire of radiation has deluged our environment since I was a kid in the 1950s and changed the nature of The Field with which we constantly interact. Through that interaction technological radiation is changing us. The Smart Grid is designed to operate with immense levels of communication power with 5G expanding across the world and 6G, 7G, in the process of development. Radiation is the simulation and the Archontic manipulation system. Why wouldn't the Archon Cult wish to unleash radiation upon us to an ever-greater extreme to form

Kurzweil's 'cloud'? The plan for a synthetic human is related to the need to cope with levels of radiation beyond even anything we've seen so far. Biological humans would not survive the scale of radiation they have in their script. The Smart Grid is a technological sub-reality within the technological simulation to further disconnect five-sense perception from expanded consciousness. It's a technological prison of the mind.

Infusing the 'spirit of darkness'

A recurring theme in religion and native cultures is the manipulation of human genetics by a non-human force and most famously recorded as the biblical 'sons of god' (the god*s* plural in the original) who interbred with the daughters of men. The Nag Hammadi *Apocryphon of John* tells the same story this way:

> He [Yaldabaoth] sent his angels [Archons/demons] to the daughters of men, that they might take some of them for themselves and raise offspring for their enjoyment. And at first they did not succeed. When they had no success, they gathered together again and they made a plan together ... And the angels changed themselves in their likeness into the likeness of their mates, filling them with the spirit of darkness, which they had mixed for them, and with evil ... And they took women and begot children out of the darkness according to the likeness of their spirit.

Possession when a discarnate entity takes over a human body is an age-old theme and continues today. It's very real and I've seen it. Satanic and secret society rituals can create an energetic environment in which entities can attach to initiates and I've heard many stories of how people have changed their personality after being initiated even into lower levels of the Freemasons. I have been inside three Freemasonic temples, one at a public open day and two by just walking in when there was no one around to stop me. They were in Ryde, the town where I live, Birmingham, England, when I was with a group, and Boston, Massachusetts. They all felt the same energetically – dark, dense, low-vibrational and sinister. Demonic attachment can happen while the initiate has no idea what is going on. To them it's just a ritual to get in the Masons and do a bit of good

business. In the far more extreme rituals of Satanism human possession is even more powerful and they are designed to make possession possible. The hierarchy of the Cult is dictated by the power and perceived status of the possessing Archon. In this way the Archon hierarchy becomes the Cult hierarchy. Once the entity has attached it can influence perception and behaviour and if it attaches to the extreme then so much of its energy (information) infuses into the body information field that the hologram starts to reflect the nature of the possessing entity. This is the *Exorcist* movie type of possession when facial features change and it's known as shapeshifting. Islam's Jinn are said to be invisible tricksters who change shape, 'whisper', confuse and take human form. These are all traits of the Archons and other versions of the same phenomenon. Extreme possession could certainty infuse the 'spirit of darkness' into a partner during sex as the Nag Hammadi texts appear to describe. Such an infusion can change genetics which is also energetic information. Human genetics is information and the 'spirit of darkness' is information. Mix one with the other and change must happen. Islam has the concept of a 'Jinn baby' through possession of the mother and by Jinn taking human form. There are many ways that human genetics can be changed and remember that Archons have been aware all along of advanced techniques to do this. What is being done in human society today – and far more – was known about by Archons at the time of the 'fallen ones' and their other versions described in religions and cultures.

Archons and their human-world Cult are obsessed with genetics as we see today and they know this dictates how information is processed into perceived reality during a human life. They needed to produce a human form that would decode the simulation and this is symbolically known as 'Adam and Eve' who left the 'garden' (prime reality) and 'fell' into Matrix reality. The simulation is not a 'physical' construct (there is no 'physical'); it is a source of information. Think Wi-Fi again. The simulation is an energetic field encoded with information and body-brain systems are designed to decode that information encoded in wave or frequency form which

is transmitted to the brain as electrical signals. These are decoded by the brain to construct our sense of reality – an illusory 'physical' world that only exists in the brain or the mind. Virtual reality games mimic this process using the same sensory decoding system. Information is fed to the senses to decode a virtual reality that can appear so real, but isn't (Figs 18 and 19). Some scientists believe – and I agree with them – that what we perceive as 'physical' reality only exists when we are looking or observing. The act of perception or focus triggers the decoding systems which turn waveform information into holographic reality. When we are not observing something our reality reverts from a holographic state to a waveform state. This relates to the same principle as a falling tree not making a noise unless someone is there to hear it or decode it. The concept makes sense from the simulation perspective. A computer is not decoding all the information in a Wi-Fi field all the time and only decodes or brings into reality on the screen that part of Wi-Fi that it's decoding – focusing upon – at that moment.

Figure 18: Virtual reality technology 'hacks' into the body's five-sense decoding system.

Figure 19: The result can be experienced as very 'real'.

Interestingly, Professor Donald Hoffman at the Department of Cognitive Sciences at the University of California, Irvine, says that our experienced reality is like a computer interface that shows us only the level with which we interact while hiding all that exists beyond it: 'Evolution shaped us with a user interface that hides the truth. Nothing that we see is the truth – the very language of space and time and objects is the wrong language to describe reality.' He is correct in what he says on so many levels. Space and time are not a universal reality. They are a phenomenon of decoded *simulation* reality as part of the process of enslaving our sense of reality. Near-death experiencers report again and again how space and time did not exist as we perceive them once they were free of the body – body decoding systems. You can appreciate from this why Archons and their Cult are so desperate to entrap human attention in the five senses where we are in the Matrix and of the Matrix. Opening your mind to expanded states of awareness takes you beyond the information confines of the simulation and you become aware of knowledge and insights denied to you before. This is what we call 'awakening' – *awakening from the Matrix* – and in the final chapter I will relate this to current events.

Where are the 'aliens'?

A simulation would explain the so-called 'Fermi Paradox' named after Italian physicist Enrico Fermi (1901-1954) who created the first nuclear reactor. He considered the question of why there is such a lack of extraterrestrial activity when there are so many stars and planets in an apparently vast universe; but what if the night sky that we see, or think we do, is a simulated projection as I say? If you control the simulation and your aim is to hold humanity fast in essential ignorance would you want other forms of life including advanced life coming and going sharing information with humanity? Or would you want them to believe they were isolated and apparently alone? Themes of human isolation and apartness are common whether they be the perception of a lifeless universe or the fascist isolation laws of the 'Covid' era. Paradoxically the very

existence of a simulation means that we are not alone when some force had to construct it. My view is that experiences that people have reported all over the world for centuries with Reptilians and Grey entities are Archon phenomena as Nag Hammadi texts describe; and that benevolent 'alien' interactions are non-human groups that come in and out of the simulation by overcoming Archon attempts to keep them out. It should be highlighted, too, that Reptilians and Greys are obsessed with *genetics* and *technology* as related by cultural accounts and those who say they have been abducted by them. Technology is their way of overcoming some of the limitations in their creative potential and our technology-driven and controlled human society of today is *arch*etypical Archon-Reptilian-Grey modus operandi. Technocracy is really *Archon*tocracy. The Universe does not have to be as big as it appears with a simulation. There is no space or distance only information decoded into holographic reality. What we call 'space' is only the absence of holographic 'objects' and that 'space' is The Field of energetic information which connects everything into a single whole. The same applies with the artificially-generated information field of the simulation. The Universe is not big or small as a physical reality. It is decoded information, that's all, and its perceived size is decided by the way the simulation is encoded to make it appear. The entire night sky as we perceive it only exists in our brain and so where are those 'millions of light years'? The 'stars' on the ceiling of the Planetarium looked a vast distance away.

There's another point to mention about 'aliens'. I have been highlighting since the 1990s the plan to stage a fake 'alien invasion' to justify the centralisation of global power and a world military. Nazi scientist Werner von Braun, who was taken to America by Operation Paperclip after World War Two to help found NASA, told his American assistant Dr Carol Rosin about the Cult agenda when he knew he was dying in 1977. Rosin said that he told her about a sequence that would lead to total human control by a one-world government. This included threats from terrorism, rogue nations, meteors and asteroids before finally an 'alien invasion'. All of these

things, von Braun said, would be bogus and what I would refer to as a No-Problem-Reaction-Solution. Keep this in mind when 'the aliens are coming' is the new mantra. The aliens are not coming – they are *already here* and they have infiltrated human society while looking human. French-Canadian investigative journalist Serge Monast said in 1994 that he had uncovered a NASA/military operation called Project Blue Beam which fits with what Werner von Braun predicted. Monast died of a 'heart attack' in 1996 the day after he was arrested and spent a night in prison. He was 51. He said Blue Beam was a plan to stage an alien invasion that would include religious figures beamed holographically into the sky as part of a global manipulation to usher in a 'new age' of worshipping what I would say is the Cult 'god' Yaldabaoth in a one-world religion. Fake holographic asteroids are also said to be part of the plan which again syncs with von Braun. How could you stage an illusory threat from asteroids unless they were holographic inserts? This is pretty straightforward given the advanced technology outside the public arena and the fact that our 'physical' reality is holographic anyway. Information fields would be projected and we would decode them into the illusion of a 'physical' asteroid. If they can sell a global 'pandemic' with a 'virus' that doesn't exist what will humans not believe if government and media tell them?

All this is particularly relevant as I write with the Pentagon planning to release in June, 2021, information about 'UFO sightings'. I have been following the UFO story since the early 1990s and the common theme throughout has been government and military denials and cover up. More recently, however, the Pentagon has suddenly become more talkative and apparently open with Air Force pilot radar images released of unexplained craft moving and changing direction at speeds well beyond anything believed possible with human technology. Then, in March, 2021, former Director of National Intelligence John Ratcliffe said a Pentagon report months later in June would reveal a great deal of information about UFO sightings unknown to the public. He said the report would have 'massive implications'. The order to do this was included bizarrely

in a $2.3 trillion 'coronavirus' relief and government funding bill passed by the Trump administration at the end of 2020. I would add some serious notes of caution here. I have been pointing out since the 1990s that the US military and intelligence networks have long had craft – 'flying saucers' or anti-gravity craft – which any observer would take to be extraterrestrial in origin. Keeping this knowledge from the public allows craft flown by *humans* to be perceived as alien visitations. I am not saying that 'aliens' do not exist. I would be the last one to say that, but we have to be streetwise here. President Ronald Reagan told the UN General Assembly in 1987: 'I occasionally think how quickly our differences worldwide would vanish if we were facing an alien threat from outside this world.' That's the idea. Unite against a common 'enemy' with a common purpose behind your 'saviour force' (the Cult) as this age-old technique of mass manipulation goes global.

Science moves this way ...

I could find only one other person who was discussing the simulation hypothesis publicly when I concluded it was real. This was Nick Bostrom, a Swedish-born philosopher at the University of Oxford, who has explored for many years the possibility that human reality is a computer simulation although his version and mine are not the same. Today the simulation and holographic reality hypothesis have increasingly entered the scientific mainstream. Well, the more open-minded mainstream, that is. Here are a few of the ever-gathering examples. American nuclear physicist Silas Beane led a team of physicists at the University of Bonn in Germany pursuing the question of whether we live in a simulation. They concluded that we probably do and it was likely based on a lattice of cubes. They found that cosmic rays align with that specific pattern. The team highlighted the Greisen–Zatsepin–Kuzmin (GZK) limit which refers to cosmic ray particle interaction with cosmic background radiation that creates an apparent boundary for cosmic ray particles. They say in a paper entitled 'Constraints on the Universe as a Numerical Simulation' that this 'pattern of constraint' is exactly what you

would find with a computer simulation. They also made the point that a simulation would create its own 'laws of physics' that would limit possibility. I've been making the same point for decades that the *perceived* laws of physics relate only to this reality, or what I would later call the simulation. When designers write codes to create computer and virtual reality games they are the equivalent of the laws of physics for that game. Players interact within the limitations laid out by the coding. In the same way those who wrote the codes for the simulation decided the laws of physics that would apply. These can be overridden by expanded states of consciousness, but not by those enslaved in only five-sense awareness where simulation codes rule. Overriding the codes is what people call 'miracles'. They are not. They are bypassing the encoded limits of the simulation. A population caught in simulation perception would have no idea that this was their plight. As the Bonn paper said: 'Like a prisoner in a pitch-black cell we would not be able to see the "walls" of our prison,' That's true if people remain mesmerised by the five senses. Open to expanded awareness and those walls become very clear. The main one is the speed of light.

American theoretical physicist James Gates is another who has explored the simulation question and found considerable evidence to support the idea. Gates was Professor of Physics at the University of Maryland, Director of The Center for String and Particle Theory, and on Barack Obama's Council of Advisors on Science and Technology. He and his team found *computer codes* of digital data embedded in the fabric of our reality. They relate to on-off electrical charges of 1 and 0 in the binary system used by computers. 'We have no idea what they are doing there', Gates said. They found within the energetic fabric mathematical sequences known as error-correcting codes or block codes that 'reboot' data to its original state or 'default settings' when something knocks it out of sync. Gates was asked if he had found a set of equations embedded in our reality indistinguishable from those that drive search engines and browsers and he said: 'That is correct.' Rich Terrile, director of the Centre for Evolutionary Computation and Automated Design at NASA's Jet

Propulsion Laboratory, has said publicly that he believes the Universe is a digital hologram that must have been created by a form of intelligence. I agree with that in every way. Waveform information is delivered electrically by the senses to the brain which constructs a *digital* holographic reality that we call the 'world'. This digital level of reality can be read by the esoteric art of numerology. Digital holograms are at the cutting edge of holographics today. We have digital technology everywhere designed to access and manipulate our digital level of perceived reality. Synthetic mRNA in 'Covid vaccines' has a digital component to manipulate the body's digital 'operating system'.

Reality is numbers

How many know that our reality can be broken down to numbers and codes that are the same as computer games? Max Tegmark, a physicist at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT), is the author of *Our Mathematical Universe* in which he lays out how reality can be entirely described by numbers and maths in the way that a video game is encoded with the 'physics' of computer games. Our world and computer virtual reality are essentially the same. Tegmark imagines the perceptions of characters in an advanced computer game when the graphics are so good they don't know they are in a game. They think they can bump into real objects (electromagnetic resistance in our reality), fall in love and feel emotions like excitement. When they began to study the apparently 'physical world' of the video game they would realise that everything was made of pixels (which have been found in our energetic reality as must be the case when on one level our world is digital). What computer game characters thought was physical 'stuff', Tegmark said, could actually be broken down into numbers:

> And we're exactly in this situation in our world. We look around and it doesn't seem that mathematical at all, but everything we see is made out of elementary particles like quarks and electrons. And what properties does an electron have? Does it have a smell or a colour or a texture? No! ... We physicists have come up with geeky names for [Electron] properties, like

electric charge, or spin, or lepton number, but the electron doesn't care what we call it, the properties are just numbers.

This is the illusory reality Gnostics were describing. This is the simulation. The A, C, G, and T codes of DNA have a binary value – A and C = 0 while G and T = 1. This has to be when the simulation is digital and the body must be digital to interact with it. Recurring mathematical sequences are encoded throughout reality and the body. They include the Fibonacci sequence in which the two previous numbers are added to get the next one, as in ... 1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, 21, 34, 55, etc. The sequence is encoded in the human face and body, proportions of animals, DNA, seed heads, pine cones, trees, shells, spiral galaxies, hurricanes and the number of petals in a flower. The list goes on and on. There are fractal patterns – a 'never-ending pattern that is infinitely complex and self-similar across all scales in the as above, so below, principle of holograms. These and other famous recurring geometrical and mathematical sequences such as Phi, Pi, Golden Mean, Golden Ratio and Golden Section are *computer codes* of the simulation. I had to laugh and give my head a shake the day I finished this book and it went into the production stage. I was sent an article in *Scientific American* published in April, 2021, with the headline 'Confirmed! We Live in a Simulation'. Two decades after I first said our reality is a simulation and the speed of light is it's outer limit the article suggested that we do live in a simulation and that the speed of light is its outer limit. I left school at 15 and never passed a major exam in my life while the writer was up to his eyes in qualifications. As I will explain in the final chapter *knowing* is far better than thinking and they come from very different sources. The article rightly connected the speed of light to the processing speed of the 'Matrix' and said what has been in my books all this time … 'If we are in a simulation, as it appears, then space is an abstract property written in code. It is not real'. No it's not and if we live in a simulation something created it and it wasn't *us*. 'That David Icke says we are manipulated by aliens' – he's crackers.'

Wow ...

The reality that humanity thinks is so real is an illusion. Politicians, governments, scientists, doctors, academics, law enforcement, media, school and university curriculums, on and on, are all founded on a world that *does not exist* except as a simulated prison cell. Is it such a stretch to accept that 'Covid' doesn't exist when our entire 'physical' reality doesn't exist? Revealed here is the knowledge kept under raps in the Cult networks of compartmentalised secrecy to control humanity's sense of reality by inducing the population to believe in a reality that's not real. If it wasn't so tragic in its experiential consequences the whole thing would be hysterically funny. None of this is new to Renegade Minds. Ancient Greek philosopher Plato (about 428 to about 347BC) was a major influence on Gnostic belief and he described the human plight thousands of years ago with his Allegory of the Cave. He told the symbolic story of prisoners living in a cave who had never been outside. They were chained and could only see one wall of the cave while behind them was a fire that they could not see. Figures walked past the fire casting shadows on the prisoners' wall and those moving shadows became their sense of reality. Some prisoners began to study the shadows and were considered experts on them (today's academics and scientists), but what they studied was only an illusion (today's academics and scientists). A prisoner escaped from the cave and saw reality as it really is. When he returned to report this revelation they didn't believe him, called him mad and threatened to kill him if he tried to set them free. Plato's tale is not only a brilliant analogy of the human plight and our illusory reality. It describes, too, the dynamics of the 'Covid' hoax. I have only skimmed the surface of these subjects here. The aim of this book is to crisply connect all essential dots to put what is happening today into its true context. All subject areas and their connections in this chapter are covered in great evidential detail in *Everything You Need To Know, But Have Never Been Told* and *The Answer*.

They say that bewildered people 'can't see the forest for the trees'. Humanity, however, can't see the forest for the *twigs*. The five senses

see only twigs while Renegade Minds can see the forest and it's the forest where the answers lie with the connections that reveals. Breaking free of perceptual programming so the forest can be seen is the way we turn all this around. Not breaking free is how humanity got into this mess. The situation may seem hopeless, but I promise you it's not. We are a perceptual heartbeat from paradise if only we knew.

CHAPTER TWELVE

Escaping Wetiko

Life is simply a vacation from the infinite
Dean Cavanagh

Renegade Minds weave the web of life and events and see common themes in the apparently random. They are always there if you look for them and their pursuit is aided by incredible synchronicity that comes when your mind is open rather than mesmerised by what it thinks it can see.

Infinite awareness is infinite possibility and the more of infinite possibility that we access the more becomes infinitely possible. That may be stating the apparently obvious, but it is a devastatingly-powerful fact that can set us free. We are a point of attention within an infinity of consciousness. The question is how much of that infinity do we choose to access? How much knowledge, insight, awareness, wisdom, do we want to connect with and explore? If your focus is only in the five senses you will be influenced by a fraction of infinite awareness. I mean a range so tiny that it gives new meaning to infinitesimal. Limitation of self-identity and a sense of the possible limit accordingly your range of consciousness. We are what we think we are. Life is what we think it is. The dream is the dreamer and the dreamer is the dream. Buddhist philosophy puts it this way: 'As a thing is viewed, so it appears.' Most humans live in the realm of touch, taste, see, hear, and smell and that's the limit of their sense of the possible and sense of self. Many will follow a religion and speak of a God in his heaven, but their lives are still

dominated by the five senses in their perceptions and actions. The five senses become the arbiter of everything. When that happens all except a smear of infinity is sealed away from influence by the rigid, unyielding, reality bubbles that are the five-sense human or Phantom Self. Archon Cult methodology is to isolate consciousness within five-sense reality – the simulation – and then program that consciousness with a sense of self and the world through a deluge of life-long information designed to instil the desired perception that allows global control. Efforts to do this have increased dramatically with identity politics as identity bubbles are squeezed into the minutiae of five-sense detail which disconnect people even more profoundly from the infinite 'I'.

Five-sense focus and self-identity are like a firewall that limits access to the infinite realms. You only perceive one radio or television station and no other. We'll take that literally for a moment. Imagine a vast array of stations giving different information and angles on reality, but you only ever listen to one. Here we have the human plight in which the population is overwhelmingly confined to CultFM. This relates only to the frequency range of CultFM and limits perception and insight to that band – limits *possibility* to that band. It means you are connecting with an almost imperceptibly minuscule range of possibility and creative potential within the infinite Field. It's a world where everything seems apart from everything else and where synchronicity is rare. Synchronicity is defined in the dictionary as 'the happening by chance of two or more related or similar events at the same time'. Use of 'by chance' betrays a complete misunderstanding of reality. Synchronicity is not 'by chance'. As people open their minds, or 'awaken' to use the term, they notice more and more coincidences in their lives, bits of 'luck', apparently miraculous happenings that put them in the right place at the right time with the right people. Days become peppered with 'fancy meeting you here' and 'what are the chances of that?' My entire life has been lived like this and ever more so since my own colossal awakening in 1990 and 91 which transformed my sense of reality. Synchronicity is not 'by chance'; it is by accessing expanded

realms of possibility which allow expanded potential for manifestation. People broadcasting the same vibe from the same openness of mind tend to be drawn 'by chance' to each other through what I call frequency magnetism and it's not only people. In the last more than 30 years incredible synchronicity has also led me through the Cult maze to information in so many forms and to crucial personal experiences. These 'coincidences' have allowed me to put the puzzle pieces together across an enormous array of subjects and situations. Those who have breached the bubble of five-sense reality will know exactly what I mean and this escape from the perceptual prison cell is open to everyone whenever they make that choice. This may appear super-human when compared with the limitations of 'human', but it's really our natural state. 'Human' as currently experienced is consciousness in an unnatural state of induced separation from the infinity of the whole. I'll come to how this transformation into unity can be made when I have described in more detail the force that holds humanity in servitude by denying this access to infinite self.

The Wetiko factor

I have been talking and writing for decades about the way five-sense mind is systematically barricaded from expanded awareness. I have used the analogy of a computer (five-sense mind) and someone at the keyboard (expanded awareness). Interaction between the computer and the operator is symbolic of the interaction between five-sense mind and expanded awareness. The computer directly experiences the Internet and the operator experiences the Internet via the computer which is how it's supposed to be – the two working as one. Archons seek to control that point where the operator connects with the computer to stop that interaction (Fig 20). Now the operator is banging the keyboard and clicking the mouse, but the computer is not responding and this happens when the computer is taken over – *possessed* – by an appropriately-named computer 'virus'. The operator has lost all influence over the computer which goes its own way making decisions under the control of the 'virus'. I have

just described the dynamic through which the force known to Gnostics as Yaldabaoth and Archons disconnects five-sense mind from expanded awareness to imprison humanity in perceptual servitude.

Figure 20: The mind 'virus' I have been writing about for decades seeks to isolate five-sense mind (the computer) from the true 'I'. (Image by Neil Hague).

About a year ago I came across a Native American concept of Wetiko which describes precisely the same phenomenon. Wetiko is the spelling used by the Cree and there are other versions including wintiko and windigo used by other tribal groups. They spell the name with lower case, but I see Wetiko as a proper noun as with Archons and prefer a capital. I first saw an article about Wetiko by writer and researcher Paul Levy which so synced with what I had been writing about the computer/operator disconnection and later the Archons. I then read his book, the fascinating *Dispelling Wetiko, Breaking the Spell of Evil*. The parallels between what I had concluded long before and the Native American concept of Wetiko were so clear and obvious that it was almost funny. For Wetiko see the Gnostic Archons for sure and the Jinn, the Predators, and every other name for a force of evil, inversion and chaos. Wetiko is the Native American name for the force that divides the computer from

the operator (Fig 21). Indigenous author Jack D. Forbes, a founder of the Native American movement in the 1960s, wrote another book about Wetiko entitled *Columbus And Other Cannibals – The Wetiko Disease of Exploitation, Imperialism, and Terrorism* which I also read. Forbes says that Wetiko refers to an evil person or spirit 'who terrorizes other creatures by means of terrible acts, including cannibalism'. Zulu shaman Credo Mutwa told me that African accounts tell how cannibalism was brought into the world by the Chitauri 'gods' – another manifestation of Wetiko. The distinction between 'evil person or spirit' relates to Archons/Wetiko possessing a human or acting as pure consciousness. Wetiko is said to be a sickness of the soul or spirit and a state of being that takes but gives nothing back – the Cult and its operatives perfectly described. Black Hawk, a Native American war leader defending their lands from confiscation, said European invaders had 'poisoned hearts' – Wetiko hearts – and that this would spread to native societies. Mention of the heart is very significant as we shall shortly see. Forbes writes: 'Tragically, the history of the world for the past 2,000 years is, in great part, the story of the epidemiology of the wetiko disease.' Yes, and much longer. Forbes is correct when he says: 'The wetikos destroyed Egypt and Babylon and Athens and Rome and Tenochtitlan [capital of the Aztec empire] and perhaps now they will destroy the entire earth.' Evil, he said, is the number one export of a Wetiko culture – see its globalisation with 'Covid'. Constant war, mass murder, suffering of all kinds, child abuse, Satanism, torture and human sacrifice are all expressions of Wetiko and the Wetiko possessed. The world is Wetiko made manifest, *but it doesn't have to be*. There is a way out of this even now.

Figure 21: The mind 'virus' is known to Native Americans as 'Wetiko'. (Image by Neil Hague).

Cult of Wetiko

Wetiko is the Yaldabaoth frequency distortion that seeks to attach to human consciousness and absorb it into its own. Once this connection is made Wetiko can drive the perceptions of the target which they believe to be coming from their own mind. All the horrors of history and today from mass killers to Satanists, paedophiles like Jeffrey Epstein and other psychopaths, are the embodiment of Wetiko and express its state of being in all its grotesqueness. The Cult is Wetiko incarnate, Yaldabaoth incarnate, and it seeks to facilitate Wetiko assimilation of humanity in totality into its distortion by manipulating the population into low frequency states that match its own. Paul Levy writes: 'Holographically enforced within the psyche of every human being the wetiko virus pervades and underlies the entire field of consciousness, and can therefore potentially manifest through any one of us at any moment if we are not mindful.' The 'Covid' hoax has achieved this with many people, but others have not fallen into Wetiko's frequency lair. Players in the 'Covid' human catastrophe including Gates, Schwab, Tedros, Fauci, Whitty, Vallance, Johnson, Hancock, Ferguson, Drosten, and all the rest, including the psychopath psychologists, are expressions of Wetiko. This is why

they have no compassion or empathy and no emotional consequence for what they do that would make them stop doing it. Observe all the people who support the psychopaths in authority against the Pushbackers despite the damaging impact the psychopaths have on their own lives and their family's lives. You are again looking at Wetiko possession which prevents them seeing through the lies to the obvious scam going on. *Why can't they see it?* Wetiko won't let them see it. The perceptual divide that has now become a chasm is between the Wetikoed and the non-Wetikoed.

Paul Levy describes Wetiko in the same way that I have long described the Archontic force. They are the same distorted consciousness operating across dimensions of reality: '… the subtle body of wetiko is not located in the third dimension of space and time, literally existing in another dimension … it is able to affect ordinary lives by mysteriously interpenetrating into our three-dimensional world.' Wetiko does this through its incarnate representatives in the Cult and by weaving itself into The Field which on our level of reality is the electromagnetic information field of the simulation or Matrix. More than that, the simulation *is* Wetiko / Yaldabaoth. Caleb Scharf, Director of Astrobiology at Columbia University, has speculated that 'alien life' could be so advanced that it has transcribed itself into the quantum realm to become what we call physics. He said intelligence indistinguishable from the fabric of the Universe would solve many of its greatest mysteries:

> Perhaps hyper-advanced life isn't just external. Perhaps it's already all around. It is embedded in what we perceive to be physics itself, from the root behaviour of particles and fields to the phenomena of complexity and emergence ... In other words, life might not just be in the equations. It might BE the equations [My emphasis].

Scharf said it is possible that 'we don't recognise advanced life because it forms an integral and unsuspicious part of what we've considered to be the natural world'. I agree. Wetiko/Yaldabaoth *is* the simulation. We are literally in the body of the beast. But that doesn't mean it has to control us. We all have the power to overcome Wetiko

influence and the Cult knows that. I doubt it sleeps too well because it knows that.

Which Field?

This, I suggest, is how it all works. There are two Fields. One is the fierce electromagnetic light of the Matrix within the speed of light; the other is the 'watery light' of The Field beyond the walls of the Matrix that connects with the Great Infinity. Five-sense mind and the decoding systems of the body attach us to the Field of Matrix light. They have to or we could not experience this reality. Five-sense mind sees only the Matrix Field of information while our expanded consciousness is part of the Infinity Field. When we open our minds, and most importantly our hearts, to the Infinity Field we have a mission control which gives us an expanded perspective, a road map, to understand the nature of the five-sense world. If we are isolated only in five-sense mind there is no mission control. We're on our own trying to understand a world that's constantly feeding us information to ensure we do not understand. People in this state can feel 'lost' and bewildered with no direction or radar. You can see ever more clearly those who are influenced by the Fields of Big Infinity or little five-sense mind simply by their views and behaviour with regard to the 'Covid' hoax. We have had this division throughout known human history with the mass of the people on one side and individuals who could see and intuit beyond the walls of the simulation – Plato's prisoner who broke out of the cave and saw reality for what it is. Such people have always been targeted by Wetiko/Archon-possessed authority, burned at the stake or demonised as mad, bad and dangerous. The Cult today and its global network of 'anti-hate', 'anti-fascist' Woke groups are all expressions of Wetiko attacking those exposing the conspiracy, 'Covid' lies and the 'vaccine' agenda.

Woke as a whole is Wetiko which explains its black and white mentality and how at one it is with the Wetiko-possessed Cult. Paul Levy said: 'To be in this paradigm is to still be under the thrall of a two-valued logic – where things are either true or false – of a

wetikoized mind.' Wetiko consciousness is in a permanent rage, therefore so is Woke, and then there is Woke inversion and contradiction. 'Anti-fascists' act like fascists because fascists *and* 'anti-fascists' are both Wetiko at work. Political parties act the same while claiming to be different for the same reason. Secret society and satanic rituals are attaching initiates to Wetiko and the cold, ruthless, psychopathic mentality that secures the positions of power all over the world is Wetiko. Reframing 'training programmes' have the same cumulative effect of attaching Wetiko and we have their graduates described as automatons and robots with a cold, psychopathic, uncaring demeanour. They are all traits of Wetiko possession and look how many times they have been described in this book and elsewhere with regard to personnel behind 'Covid' including the police and medical profession. Climbing the greasy pole in any profession in a Wetiko society requires traits of Wetiko to get there and that is particularly true of politics which is not about fair competition and pre-eminence of ideas. It is founded on how many backs you can stab and arses you can lick. This culminated in the global 'Covid' coordination between the Wetiko possessed who pulled it off in all the different countries without a trace of empathy and compassion for their impact on humans. Our sight sense can see only holographic form and not the Field which connects holographic form. Therefore we perceive 'physical' objects with 'space' in between. In fact that 'space' is energy/consciousness operating on multiple frequencies. One of them is Wetiko and that connects the Cult psychopaths, those who submit to the psychopaths, and those who serve the psychopaths in the media operations of the world. Wetiko is Gates. Wetiko is the mask-wearing submissive. Wetiko is the fake journalist and 'fact-checker'. The Wetiko Field is coordinating the whole thing. Psychopaths, gofers, media operatives, 'anti-hate' hate groups, 'fact-checkers' and submissive people work as one unit *even without human coordination* because they are attached to the *same* Field which is organising it all (Fig 22). Paul Levy is here describing how Wetiko-possessed people are drawn together and refuse to let any information breach their rigid

perceptions. He was writing long before 'Covid', but I think you will recognise followers of the 'Covid' religion *oh just a little bit*:

> People who are channelling the vibratory frequency of wetiko align with each other through psychic resonance to reinforce their unspoken shared agreement so as to uphold their deranged view of reality. Once an unconscious content takes possession of certain individuals, it irresistibly draws them together by mutual attraction and knits them into groups tied together by their shared madness that can easily swell into an avalanche of insanity.
>
> A psychic epidemic is a closed system, which is to say that it is insular and not open to any new information or informing influences from the outside world which contradict its fixed, limited, and limiting perspective.

There we have the Woke mind and the 'Covid' mind. Compatible resonance draws the awakening together, too, which is clearly happening today.

Figure 22: The Wetiko Field from which the Cult pyramid and its personnel are made manifest. (Image by Neil Hague).

Spiritual servitude

Wetiko doesn't care about humans. It's not human; it just possesses humans for its own ends and the effect (depending on the scale of

possession) can be anything from extreme psychopathy to unquestioning obedience. Wetiko's worst nightmare is for human consciousness to expand beyond the simulation. Everything is focussed on stopping that happening through control of information, thus perception, thus frequency. The 'education system', media, science, medicine, academia, are all geared to maintaining humanity in five-sense servitude as is the constant stimulation of low-vibrational mental and emotional states (see 'Covid'). Wetiko seeks to dominate those subconscious spaces between five-sense perception and expanded consciousness where the computer meets the operator. From these subconscious hiding places Wetiko speaks to us to trigger urges and desires that we take to be our own and manipulate us into anything from low-vibrational to psychopathic states. Remember how Islam describes the Jinn as invisible tricksters that 'whisper' and confuse. Wetiko is the origin of the 'trickster god' theme that you find in cultures all over the world. Jinn, like the Archons, are Wetiko which is terrified of humans awakening and reconnecting with our true self for then its energy source has gone. With that the feedback loop breaks between Wetiko and human perception that provides the energetic momentum on which its very existence depends as a force of evil. Humans are both its target and its source of survival, but only if we are operating in low-vibrational states of fear, hate, depression and the background anxiety that most people suffer. We are Wetiko's target because we are its key to survival. It needs us, not the other way round. Paul Levy writes:

> A vampire has no intrinsic, independent, substantial existence in its own right; it only exists in relation to us. The pathogenic, vampiric mind-parasite called wetiko is nothing in itself – not being able to exist from its own side – yet it has a 'virtual reality' such that it can potentially destroy our species …
>
> …The fact that a vampire is not reflected by a mirror can also mean that what we need to see is that there's nothing, no-thing to see, other than ourselves. The fact that wetiko is the expression of something inside of us means that the cure for wetiko is with us as well. The critical issue is finding this cure within us and then putting it into effect.

Evil begets evil because if evil does not constantly expand and find new sources of energetic sustenance its evil, its *distortion*, dies with the assimilation into balance and harmony. Love is the garlic to Wetiko's vampire. Evil, the absence of love, cannot exist in the presence of love. I think I see a way out of here. I have emphasised so many times over the decades that the Archons/Wetiko and their Cult are not all powerful. *They are not*. I don't care how it looks even now *they are not*. I have not called them little boys in short trousers for effect. I have said it because it is true. Wetiko's insatiable desire for power over others is not a sign of its omnipotence, but its insecurity. Paul Levy writes: 'Due to the primal fear which ultimately drives it and which it is driven to cultivate, wetiko's body politic has an intrinsic and insistent need for centralising power and control so as to create imagined safety for itself.' *Yeeeeeees!* Exactly! Why does Wetiko want humans in an ongoing state of fear? Wetiko itself *is* fear and it is petrified of love. As evil is an absence of love, so love is an absence of fear. Love conquers all and *especially* Wetiko which *is* fear. Wetiko brought fear into the world when it wasn't here before. *Fear* was the 'fall', the fall into low-frequency ignorance and illusion – fear is **F**alse **E**motion **A**ppearing **R**eal. The simulation is driven and energised by fear because Wetiko/Yaldabaoth (fear) *are* the simulation. Fear is the absence of love and Wetiko is the absence of love.

Wetiko today

We can now view current events from this level of perspective. The 'Covid' hoax has generated momentous amounts of ongoing fear, anxiety, depression and despair which have empowered Wetiko. No wonder people like Gates have been the instigators when they are Wetiko incarnate and exhibit every trait of Wetiko in the extreme. See how cold and unemotional these people are like Gates and his cronies, how dead of eye they are. That's Wetiko. Sabbatians are Wetiko and everything they control including the World Health Organization, Big Pharma and the 'vaccine' makers, national 'health'

hierarchies, corporate media, Silicon Valley, the banking system, and the United Nations with its planned transformation into world government. All are controlled and possessed by the Wetiko distortion into distorting human society in its image. We are with this knowledge at the gateway to understanding the world. Divisions of race, culture, creed and sexuality are diversions to hide the real division between those possessed and influenced by Wetiko and those that are not. The 'Covid' hoax has brought both clearly into view. Human behaviour is not about race. Tyrants and dictatorships come in all colours and creeds. What unites the US president bombing the innocent and an African tribe committing genocide against another as in Rwanda? What unites them? *Wetiko*. All wars are Wetiko, all genocide is Wetiko, all hunger over centuries in a world of plenty is Wetiko. Children going to bed hungry, including in the West, is Wetiko. Cult-generated Woke racial divisions that focus on the body are designed to obscure the reality that divisions in behaviour are manifestations of mind, not body. Obsession with body identity and group judgement is a means to divert attention from the real source of behaviour – mind and perception. Conflict sown by the Woke both within themselves and with their target groups are Wetiko providing lunch for itself through still more agents of the division, chaos, and fear on which it feeds. The Cult is seeking to assimilate the entirety of humanity and all children and young people into the Wetiko frequency by manipulating them into states of fear and despair. Witness all the suicide and psychological unravelling since the spring of 2020. Wetiko psychopaths want to impose a state of unquestioning obedience to authority which is no more than a conduit for Wetiko to enforce its will and assimilate humanity into itself. It needs us to believe that resistance is futile when it fears resistance and even more so the game-changing non-cooperation with its impositions. It can use violent resistance for its benefit. Violent impositions and violent resistance are *both* Wetiko. The Power of Love with its Power of No will sweep Wetiko from our world. Wetiko and its Cult know that. They just don't want us to know.

AI Wetiko

This brings me to AI or artificial intelligence and something else Wetikos don't want us to know. What is AI *really*? I know about computer code algorithms and AI that learns from data input. These, however, are more diversions, the expeditionary force, for the real AI that they want to connect to the human brain as promoted by Silicon Valley Wetikos like Kurzweil. What is this AI? It is the frequency of *Wetiko*, the frequency of the Archons. The connection of AI to the human brain is the connection of the Wetiko frequency to create a Wetiko hive mind and complete the job of assimilation. The hive mind is planned to be controlled from Israel and China which are both 100 percent owned by Wetiko Sabbatians. The assimilation process has been going on minute by minute in the 'smart' era which fused with the 'Covid' era. We are told that social media is scrambling the minds of the young and changing their personality. This is true, but what is social media? Look more deeply at how it works, how it creates divisions and conflict, the hostility and cruelty, the targeting of people until they are destroyed. That's Wetiko. Social media is manipulated to tune people to the Wetiko frequency with all the emotional exploitation tricks employed by platforms like Facebook and its Wetiko front man, Zuckerberg. Facebook's Instagram announced a new platform for children to overcome a legal bar on them using the main site. This is more Wetiko exploitation and manipulation of kids. Amnesty International likened the plan to foxes offering to guard the henhouse and said it was incompatible with human rights. Since when did Wetiko or Zuckerberg (I repeat myself) care about that? Would Brin and Page at Google, Wojcicki at YouTube, Bezos at Amazon and whoever the hell runs Twitter act as they do if they were not channelling Wetiko? Would those who are developing technologies for no other reason than human control? How about those designing and selling technologies to kill people and Big Pharma drug and 'vaccine' producers who know they will end or devastate lives? Quite a thought for these people to consider is that if you are Wetiko in a human life you are Wetiko on the 'other side' unless your frequency

changes and that can only change by a change of perception which becomes a change of behaviour. Where Gates is going does not bear thinking about although perhaps that's exactly where he wants to go. Either way, that's where he's going. His frequency will make it so.

The frequency lair

I have been saying for a long time that a big part of the addiction to smartphones and devices is that a frequency is coming off them that entraps the mind. People spend ages on their phones and sometimes even a minute or so after they put them down they pick them up again and it all repeats. 'Covid' lockdowns will have increased this addiction a million times for obvious reasons. Addictions to alcohol overindulgence and drugs are another way that Wetiko entraps consciousness to attach to its own. Both are symptoms of low-vibrational psychological distress which alcoholism and drug addiction further compound. Do we think it's really a coincidence that access to them is made so easy while potions that can take people into realms beyond the simulation are banned and illegal? I have explored smartphone addiction in other books, the scale is mind-blowing, and that level of addiction does not come without help. Tech companies that make these phones are Wetiko and they will have no qualms about destroying the minds of children. We are seeing again with these companies the Wetiko perceptual combination of psychopathic enforcers and weak and meek unquestioning compliance by the rank and file.

The global Smart Grid is the Wetiko Grid and it is crucial to complete the Cult endgame. The simulation is radiation and we are being deluged with technological radiation on a devastating scale. Wetiko frauds like Elon Musk serve Cult interests while occasionally criticising them to maintain his street-cred. 5G and other forms of Wi-Fi are being directed at the earth from space on a volume and scale that goes on increasing by the day. Elon Musk's (officially) SpaceX Starlink project is in the process of putting tens of thousands of satellites in low orbit to cover every inch of the planet with 5G and other Wi-Fi to create Kurzweil's global 'cloud' to which the

human mind is planned to be attached very soon. SpaceX has approval to operate 12,000 satellites with more than 1,300 launched at the time of writing and applications filed for *30,000* more. Other operators in the Wi-Fi, 5G, low-orbit satellite market include OneWeb (UK), Telesat (Canada), and AST & Science (US). Musk tells us that AI could be the end of humanity and then launches a company called Neuralink to connect the human brain to computers. Musk's (in theory) Tesla company is building electric cars and the driverless vehicles of the smart control grid. As frauds and bullshitters go Elon Musk in my opinion is Major League.

5G and technological radiation in general are destructive to human health, genetics and psychology and increasing the strength of artificial radiation underpins the five-sense perceptual bubbles which are themselves expressions of radiation or electromagnetism. Freedom activist John Whitehead was so right with his 'databit by databit, we are building our own electronic concentration camps'. The Smart Grid and 5G is a means to control the human mind and infuse perceptual information into The Field to influence anyone in sync with its frequency. You can change perception and behaviour en masse if you can manipulate the population into those levels of frequency and this is happening all around us today. The arrogance of Musk and his fellow Cult operatives knows no bounds in the way that we see with Gates. Musk's satellites are so many in number already they are changing the night sky when viewed from Earth. The astronomy community has complained about this and they have seen nothing yet. Some consequences of Musk's Wetiko hubris include: Radiation; visible pollution of the night sky; interference with astronomy and meteorology; ground and water pollution from intensive use of increasingly many spaceports; accumulating space debris; continual deorbiting and burning up of aging satellites, polluting the atmosphere with toxic dust and smoke; and ever-increasing likelihood of collisions. A collective public open letter of complaint to Musk said:

We are writing to you … because SpaceX is in process of surrounding the Earth with a network of thousands of satellites whose very purpose is to irradiate every square inch of the

Earth. SpaceX, like everyone else, is treating the radiation as if it were not there. As if the mitochondria in our cells do not depend on electrons moving undisturbed from the food we digest to the oxygen we breathe.

As if our nervous systems and our hearts are not subject to radio frequency interference like any piece of electronic equipment. As if the cancer, diabetes, and heart disease that now afflict a majority of the Earth's population are not metabolic diseases that result from interference with our cellular machinery. As if insects everywhere, and the birds and animals that eat them, are not starving to death as a result.

People like Musk and Gates believe in their limitless Wetiko arrogance that they can do whatever they like to the world because they own it. Consequences for humanity are irrelevant. It's absolutely time that we stopped taking this shit from these self-styled masters of the Earth when you consider where this is going.

Why is the Cult so anti-human?

I hear this question often: Why would they do this when it will affect them, too? Ah, but will it? Who is this *them*? Forget their bodies. They are just vehicles for Wetiko consciousness. When you break it all down to the foundations we are looking at a state of severely distorted consciousness targeting another state of consciousness for assimilation. The rest is detail. The simulation is the fly-trap in which unique sensations of the five senses create a cycle of addiction called reincarnation. Renegade Minds see that everything which happens in our reality is a smaller version of the whole picture in line with the holographic principle. Addiction to the radiation of smart technology is a smaller version of addiction to the whole simulation. Connecting the body/brain to AI is taking that addiction on a giant step further to total ongoing control by assimilating human incarnate consciousness into Wetiko. I have watched during the 'Covid' hoax how many are becoming ever more profoundly attached to Wetiko's perceptual calling cards of aggressive response to any other point of view ('There is no other god but me'), psychopathic lack of compassion and empathy, and servile submission to the narrative and will of authority. Wetiko is the psychopaths *and* subservience to psychopaths. The Cult of Wetiko is

so anti-human because it is *not* human. It embarked on a mission to destroy human by targeting everything that it means to be human and to survive as human. 'Covid' is not the end, just a means to an end. The Cult with its Wetiko consciousness is seeking to change Earth systems, including the atmosphere, to suit them, not humans. The gathering bombardment of 5G alone from ground and space is dramatically changing The Field with which the five senses interact. There is so much more to come if we sit on our hands and hope it will all go away. It is not meant to go away. It is meant to get ever more extreme and we need to face that while we still can – just.

Carbon dioxide is the gas of life. Without that human is over. Kaput, gone, history. No natural world, no human. The Cult has created a cock and bull story about carbon dioxide and climate change to justify its reduction to the point where Gates and the ignoramus Biden 'climate chief' John Kerry want to suck it out of the atmosphere. Kerry wants to do this because his master Gates does. Wetikos have made the gas of life a demon with the usual support from the Wokers of Extinction Rebellion and similar organisations and the bewildered puppet-child that is Greta Thunberg who was put on the world stage by Klaus Schwab and the World Economic Forum. The name Extinction Rebellion is both ironic and as always Wetiko inversion. The gas that we need to survive must be reduced to save us from extinction. The most basic need of human is oxygen and we now have billions walking around in face nappies depriving body and brain of this essential requirement of human existence. More than that 5G at 60 gigahertz interacts with the oxygen molecule to reduce the amount of oxygen the body can absorb into the bloodstream. The obvious knock-on consequences of that for respiratory and cognitive problems and life itself need no further explanation. Psychopaths like Musk are assembling a global system of satellites to deluge the human atmosphere with this insanity. The man should be in jail. Here we have two most basic of human needs, oxygen and carbon dioxide, being dismantled.

Two others, water and food, are getting similar treatment with the United Nations Agendas 21 and 2030 – the Great Reset – planning to

centrally control all water and food supplies. People will not even own rain water that falls on their land. Food is affected at the most basic level by reducing carbon dioxide. We have genetic modification or GMO infiltrating the food chain on a mass scale, pesticides and herbicides polluting the air and destroying the soil. Freshwater fish that provide livelihoods for 60 million people and feed hundreds of millions worldwide are being 'pushed to the brink' according the conservationists while climate change is the only focus. Now we have Gates and Schwab wanting to dispense with current food sources all together and replace them with a synthetic version which the Wetiko Cult would control in terms of production and who eats and who doesn't. We have been on the Totalitarian Tiptoe to this for more than 60 years as food has become ever more processed and full of chemical shite to the point today when it's not natural food at all. As Dr Tom Cowan says: 'If it has a label don't eat it.' Bill Gates is now the biggest owner of farmland in the United States and he does nothing without an ulterior motive involving the Cult. Klaus Schwab wrote: 'To feed the world in the next 50 years we will need to produce as much food as was produced in the last 10,000 years … food security will only be achieved, however, if regulations on genetically modified foods are adapted to reflect the reality that gene editing offers a precise, efficient and safe method of improving crops.' Liar. People and the world are being targeted with aluminium through vaccines, chemtrails, food, drink cans, and endless other sources when aluminium has been linked to many health issues including dementia which is increasing year after year. Insects, bees and wildlife essential to the food chain are being deleted by pesticides, herbicides and radiation which 5G is dramatically increasing with 6G and 7G to come. The pollinating bee population is being devastated while wildlife including birds, dolphins and whales are having their natural radar blocked by the effects of ever-increasing radiation. In the summer windscreens used to be splattered with insects so numerous were they. It doesn't happen now. Where have they gone?

Synthetic everything

The Cult is introducing genetically-modified versions of trees, plants and insects including a Gates-funded project to unleash hundreds of millions of genetically-modified, lab-altered and patented male mosquitoes to mate with wild mosquitoes and induce genetic flaws that cause them to die out. Clinically-insane Gates-funded Japanese researchers have developed mosquitos that spread vaccine and are dubbed 'flying vaccinators'. Gates is funding the modification of weather patterns in part to sell the myth that this is caused by carbon dioxide and he's funding geoengineering of the skies to change the atmosphere. Some of this came to light with the Gates-backed plan to release tonnes of chalk into the atmosphere to 'deflect the Sun and cool the planet'. Funny how they do this while the heating effect of the Sun is not factored into climate projections focussed on carbon dioxide. The reason is that they want to reduce carbon dioxide (so don't mention the Sun), but at the same time they do want to reduce the impact of the Sun which is so essential to human life and health. I have mentioned the sun-cholesterol-vitamin D connection as they demonise the Sun with warnings about skin cancer (caused by the chemicals in sun cream they tell you to splash on). They come from the other end of the process with statin drugs to reduce cholesterol that turns sunlight into vitamin D. A lack of vitamin D leads to a long list of health effects and how vitamin D levels must have fallen with people confined to their homes over 'Covid'. Gates is funding other forms of geoengineering and most importantly chemtrails which are dropping heavy metals, aluminium and self-replicating nanotechnology onto the Earth which is killing the natural world. See *Everything You Need To Know, But Have Never Been Told* for the detailed background to this.

Every human system is being targeted for deletion by a force that's not human. The Wetiko Cult has embarked on the process of transforming the human body from biological to synthetic biological as I have explained. Biological is being replaced by the artificial and synthetic – Archontic 'countermimicry' – right across human society. The plan eventually is to dispense with the human body altogether

and absorb human consciousness – which it wouldn't really be by then – into cyberspace (the simulation which is Wetiko/Yaldabaoth). Preparations for that are already happening if people would care to look. The alternative media rightly warns about globalism and 'the globalists', but this is far bigger than that and represents the end of the human race as we know it. The 'bad copy' of prime reality that Gnostics describe was a bad copy of harmony, wonder and beauty to start with before Wetiko/Yaldabaoth set out to change the simulated 'copy' into something very different. The process was slow to start with. Entrapped humans in the simulation timeline were not technologically aware and they had to be brought up to intellectual speed while being suppressed spiritually to the point where they could build their own prison while having no idea they were doing so. We have now reached that stage where technological intellect has the potential to destroy us and that's why events are moving so fast. Central American shaman Don Juan Matus said:

> Think for a moment, and tell me how you would explain the contradictions between the intelligence of man the engineer and the stupidity of his systems of belief, or the stupidity of his contradictory behaviour. Sorcerers believe that the predators have given us our systems of beliefs, our ideas of good and evil; our social mores. They are the ones who set up our dreams of success or failure. They have given us covetousness, greed, and cowardice. It is the predator who makes us complacent, routinary, and egomaniacal.
>
> In order to keep us obedient and meek and weak, the predators engaged themselves in a stupendous manoeuvre – stupendous, of course, from the point of view of a fighting strategist; a horrendous manoeuvre from the point of those who suffer it. They gave us their mind. The predators' mind is baroque, contradictory, morose, filled with the fear of being discovered any minute now.

For 'predators' see Wetiko, Archons, Yaldabaoth, Jinn, and all the other versions of the same phenomenon in cultures and religions all over the world. The theme is always the same because it's true and it's real. We have reached the point where we have to deal with it. The question is – how?

Don't fight – walk away

I thought I'd use a controversial subheading to get things moving in terms of our response to global fascism. What do you mean 'don't fight'? What do you mean 'walk away'? We've got to fight. We can't walk away. Well, it depends what we mean by fight and walk away. If fighting means physical combat we are playing Wetiko's game and falling for its trap. It wants us to get angry, aggressive, and direct hate and hostility at the enemy we think we must fight. Every war, every battle, every conflict, has been fought with Wetiko leading both sides. It's what it does. Wetiko wants a fight, anywhere, any place. Just hit me, son, so I can hit you back. Wetiko hits Wetiko and Wetiko hits Wetiko in return. I am very forthright as you can see in exposing Wetikos of the Cult, but I don't hate them. I refuse to hate them. It's what they want. What you hate you become. What you *fight* you become. Wokers, 'anti-haters' and 'anti-fascists' prove this every time they reach for their keyboards or don their balaclavas. By walk away I mean to disengage from Wetiko which includes ceasing to cooperate with its tyranny. Paul Levy says of Wetiko:

> The way to 'defeat' evil is not to try to destroy it (for then, in playing evil's game, we have already lost), but rather, to find the invulnerable place within ourselves where evil is unable to vanquish us – this is to truly 'win' our battle with evil.

Wetiko is everywhere in human society and it's been on steroids since the 'Covid' hoax. Every shouting match over wearing masks has Wetiko wearing a mask and Wetiko not wearing one. It's an electrical circuit of push and resist, push and resist, with Wetiko pushing *and* resisting. Each polarity is Wetiko empowering itself. Dictionary definitions of 'resist' include 'opposing, refusing to accept or comply with' and the word to focus on is 'opposing'. What form does this take – setting police cars alight or 'refusing to accept or comply with'? The former is Wetiko opposing Wetiko while the other points the way forward. This is the difference between those aggressively demanding that government fascism must be obeyed who stand in stark contrast to the great majority of Pushbackers. We saw this clearly with a march by thousands of Pushbackers against lockdown in London followed days later by a Woker-hijacked

protest in Bristol in which police cars were set on fire. Masks were virtually absent in London and widespread in Bristol. Wetiko wants lockdown on every level of society and infuses its aggression to police it through its unknowing stooges. Lockdown protesters are the ones with the smiling faces and the hugs, The two blatantly obvious states of being – getting more obvious by the day – are the result of Wokers and their like becoming ever more influenced by the simulation Field of Wetiko and Pushbackers ever more influenced by The Field of a far higher vibration beyond the simulation. Wetiko can't invade the heart which is where most lockdown opponents are coming from. It's the heart that allows them to see through the lies to the truth in ways I will be highlighting.

Renegade Minds know that calmness is the place from which wisdom comes. You won't find wisdom in a hissing fit and wisdom is what we need in abundance right now. Calmness is not weakness – you don't have to scream at the top of your voice to be strong. Calmness is indeed a sign of strength. 'No' means I'm not doing it. *NOOOO!!!* doesn't mean you're not doing it even more. Volume does not advance 'No – I'm not doing it'. You are just not doing it. Wetiko possessed and influenced don't know how to deal with that. Wetiko wants a fight and we should not give it one. What it needs more than anything is our *cooperation* and we should not give that either. Mass rallies and marches are great in that they are a visual representation of feeling, but if it ends there they are irrelevant. You demand that Wetikos act differently? Well, they're not going to are they? They are Wetikos. We don't need to waste our time demanding that something doesn't happen when that will make no difference. We need to delete the means that *allows* it to happen. This, invariably, is our cooperation. You can demand a child stop firing a peashooter at the dog or you can refuse to buy the peashooter. If you provide the means you are cooperating with the dog being smacked on the nose with a pea. How can the authorities enforce mask-wearing if millions in a country refuse? What if the 74 million Pushbackers that voted for Trump in 2020 refused to wear masks, close their businesses or stay in their homes. It would be unenforceable. The

few control the many through the compliance of the many and that's always been the dynamic be it 'Covid' regulations or the Roman Empire. I know people can find it intimidating to say no to authority or stand out in a crowd for being the only one with a face on display; but it has to be done or it's over. I hope I've made clear in this book that where this is going will be far more intimidating than standing up now and saying 'No' – I will not cooperate with my own enslavement and that of my children. There might be consequences for some initially, although not so if enough do the same. The question that must be addressed is what is going to happen if we don't? It is time to be strong and unyieldingly so. No means no. Not here and there, but *everywhere* and *always*. I have refused to wear a mask and obey all the other nonsense. I will not comply with tyranny. I repeat: Fascism is not imposed by fascists – there are never enough of them. Fascism is imposed by the population acquiescing to fascism. *I will not do it*. I will die first, or my body will. Living meekly under fascism is a form of death anyway, the death of the spirit that Martin Luther King described.

Making things happen

We must not despair. This is not over till it's over and it's far from that. The 'fat lady' must refuse to sing. The longer the 'Covid' hoax has dragged on and impacted on more lives we have seen an awakening of phenomenal numbers of people worldwide to the realisation that what they have believed all their lives is not how the world really is. Research published by the system-serving University of Bristol and King's College London in February, 2021, concluded: 'One in every 11 people in Britain say they trust David Icke's take on the coronavirus pandemic.' It will be more by now and we have gathering numbers to build on. We must urgently progress from seeing the scam to ceasing to cooperate with it. Prominent German lawyer Reiner Fuellmich, also licenced to practice law in America, is doing a magnificent job taking the legal route to bring the psychopaths to justice through a second Nuremberg tribunal for crimes against humanity. Fuellmich has an impressive record of

beating the elite in court and he formed the German Corona Investigative Committee to pursue civil charges against the main perpetrators with a view to triggering criminal charges. Most importantly he has grasped the foundation of the hoax – the PCR test not testing for the 'virus' – and Christian Drosten is therefore on his charge sheet along with Gates frontman Tedros at the World Health Organization. Major players must be not be allowed to inflict their horrors on the human race without being brought to book. A life sentence must follow for Bill Gates and the rest of them. A group of researchers has also indicted the government of Norway for crimes against humanity with copies sent to the police and the International Criminal Court. The lawsuit cites participation in an internationally-planned false pandemic and violation of international law and human rights, the European Commission's definition of human rights by coercive rules, Nuremberg and Hague rules on fundamental human rights, and the Norwegian constitution. We must take the initiative from hereon and not just complain, protest and react.

There are practical ways to support vital mass non-cooperation. Organising in numbers is one. Lockdown marches in London in the spring in 2021 were mass non-cooperation that the authorities could not stop. There were too many people. Hundreds of thousands walked the London streets in the centre of the road for mile after mile while the Face-Nappies could only look on. They were determined, but calm, and just *did it* with no histrionics and lots of smiles. The police were impotent. Others are organising group shopping without masks for mutual support and imagine if that was happening all over. Policing it would be impossible. If the store refuses to serve people in these circumstances they would be faced with a long line of trolleys full of goods standing on their own and everything would have to be returned to the shelves. How would they cope with that if it kept happening? I am talking here about moving on from complaining to being pro-active; from watching things happen to making things happen. I include in this our relationship with the police. The behaviour of many Face-Nappies

has been disgraceful and anyone who thinks they would never find concentration camp guards in the 'enlightened' modern era have had that myth busted big-time. The period and setting may change – Wetikos never do. I watched film footage from a London march in which a police thug viciously kicked a protestor on the floor who had done nothing. His fellow Face-Nappies stood in a ring protecting him. What he did was a criminal assault and with a crowd far outnumbering the police this can no longer be allowed to happen unchallenged. I get it when people chant 'shame on you' in these circumstances, but that is no longer enough. They *have* no shame those who do this. Crowds needs to start making a citizen's arrest of the police who commit criminal offences and brutally attack innocent people and defenceless women. A citizen's arrest can be made under section 24A of the UK Police and Criminal Evidence (PACE) Act of 1984 and you will find something similar in other countries. I prefer to call it a Common Law arrest rather than citizen's for reasons I will come to shortly. Anyone can arrest a person committing an indictable offence or if they have reasonable grounds to suspect they are committing an indictable offence. On both counts the attack by the police thug would have fallen into this category. A citizen's arrest can be made to stop someone:

- Causing physical injury to himself or any other person
- Suffering physical injury
- Causing loss of or damage to property
- Making off before a constable can assume responsibility for him

A citizen's arrest may also be made to prevent a breach of the peace under Common Law and if they believe a breach of the peace will happen or anything related to harm likely to be done or already done in their presence. This is the way to go I think – the Common Law version. If police know that the crowd and members of the public will no longer be standing and watching while they commit

their thuggery and crimes they will think twice about acting like Brownshirts and Blackshirts.

Common Law – common sense

Mention of Common Law is very important. Most people think the law is the law as in one law. This is not the case. There are two bodies of law, Common Law and Statute Law, and they are not the same. Common Law is founded on the simple premise of do no harm. It does not recognise victimless crimes in which no harm is done while Statute Law does. There is a Statute Law against almost everything. So what is Statute Law? Amazingly it's the law of the *sea* that was brought ashore by the Cult to override the law of the land which is Common Law. They had no right to do this and as always they did it anyway. They had to. They could not impose their will on the people through Common Law which only applies to do no harm. How could you stitch up the fine detail of people's lives with that? Instead they took the law of the sea, or Admiralty Law, and applied it to the population. Statute Law refers to all the laws spewing out of governments and their agencies including all the fascist laws and regulations relating to 'Covid'. The key point to make is that Statute Law is *contract law*. It only applies between *contracting* corporations. Most police officers don't even know this. They have to be kept in the dark, too. Long ago when merchants and their sailing ships began to trade with different countries a contractual law was developed called Admiralty Law and other names. Again it only applied to *contracts* agreed between *corporate* entities. If there is no agreed contract the law of the sea had no jurisdiction *and that still applies to its new alias of Statute Law*. The problem for the Cult when the law of the sea was brought ashore was an obvious one. People were not corporations and neither were government entities. To overcome the latter they made governments and all associated organisations corporations. All the institutions are *private corporations* and I mean governments and their agencies, local councils, police, courts, military, US states, the whole lot. Go to the

Dun and Bradstreet corporate listings website for confirmation that they are all corporations. You are arrested by a private corporation called the police by someone who is really a private security guard and they take you to court which is another private corporation. Neither have jurisdiction over you unless you consent and *contract* with them. This is why you hear the mantra about law enforcement policing by *consent* of the people. In truth the people 'consent' only in theory through monumental trickery.

Okay, the Cult overcame the corporate law problem by making governments and institutions corporate entities; but what about people? They are not corporations are they? Ah ... well in a sense, and *only* a sense, they are. Not people exactly – the illusion of people. The Cult creates a corporation in the name of everyone at the time that their birth certificate is issued. Note birth/ *berth* certificate and when you go to court under the law of the sea on land you stand in a *dock*. These are throwbacks to the origin. My Common Law name is David Vaughan Icke. The name of the corporation created by the government when I was born is called Mr David Vaughan Icke usually written in capitals as MR DAVID VAUGHAN ICKE. That is not me, the living, breathing man. It is a fictitious corporate entity. The trick is to make you think that David Vaughan Icke and MR DAVID VAUGHAN ICKE are the same thing. *They are not*. When police charge you and take you to court they are prosecuting the corporate entity and not the living, breathing, man or woman. They have to trick you into identifying as the corporate entity and contracting with them. Otherwise they have no jurisdiction. They do this through a language known as legalese. Lawful and legal are not the same either. Lawful relates to Common Law and legal relates to Statute Law. Legalese is the language of Statue Law which uses terms that mean one thing to the public and another in legalese. Notice that when a police officer tells someone why they are being charged he or she will say at the end: 'Do you understand?' To the public that means 'Do you comprehend?' In legalese it means 'Do you stand under me?' Do you stand under my authority? If you say

yes to the question you are unknowingly agreeing to give them jurisdiction over you in a contract between two corporate entities.

This is a confidence trick in every way. Contracts have to be agreed between informed parties and if you don't know that David Vaughan Icke is agreeing to be the corporation MR DAVID VAUGHAN ICKE you cannot knowingly agree to contract. They are deceiving you and another way they do this is to ask for proof of identity. You usually show them a driving licence or other document on which your corporate name is written. In doing so you are accepting that you are that corporate entity when you are not. Referring to yourself as a 'person' or 'citizen' is also identifying with your corporate fiction which is why I made the Common Law point about the citizen's arrest. If you are approached by a police officer you identify yourself immediately as a living, breathing, man or woman and say 'I do not consent, I do not contract with you and I do not understand' or stand under their authority. I have a Common Law birth certificate as a living man and these are available at no charge from commonlawcourt.com. Businesses registered under the Statute Law system means that its laws apply. There are, however, ways to run a business under Common Law. Remember all 'Covid' laws and regulations are Statute Law – the law of *contracts* and you do not have to contract. This doesn't mean that you can kill someone and get away with it. Common Law says do no harm and that applies to physical harm, financial harm etc. Police are employees of private corporations and there needs to be a new system of non-corporate Common Law constables operating outside the Statute Law system. If you go to davidicke.com and put Common Law into the search engine you will find videos that explain Common Law in much greater detail. It is definitely a road we should walk.

With all my heart

I have heard people say that we are in a spiritual war. I don't like the term 'war' with its Wetiko dynamic, but I know what they mean. Sweep aside all the bodily forms and we are in a situation in which two states of consciousness are seeking very different realities.

Wetiko wants upheaval, chaos, fear, suffering, conflict and control. The other wants love, peace, harmony, fairness and freedom. That's where we are. We should not fall for the idea that Wetiko is all-powerful and there's nothing we can do. Wetiko is not all-powerful. It's a joke, pathetic. It doesn't have to be, but it has made that choice for now. A handful of times over the years when I have felt the presence of its frequency I have allowed it to attach briefly so I could consciously observe its nature. The experience is not pleasant, the energy is heavy and dark, but the ease with which you can kick it back out the door shows that its real power is in persuading us that it has power. It's all a con. Wetiko is a con. It's a trickster and not a power that can control us if we unleash our own. The con is founded on manipulating humanity to give its power to Wetiko which recycles it back to present the illusion that it has power when its power is *ours* that we gave away. This happens on an energetic level and plays out in the world of the seen as humanity giving its power to Wetiko authority which uses that power to control the population when the power is only the power the population has handed over. How could it be any other way for billions to be controlled by a relative few? I have had experiences with people possessed by Wetiko and again you can kick its arse if you do it with an open heart. Oh yes – the *heart* which can transform the world of perceived 'matter'.

We are receiver-transmitters and processors of information, but what information and where from? Information is processed into perception in three main areas – the brain, the heart and the belly. These relate to thinking, knowing, and emotion. Wetiko wants us to be head and belly people which means we think within the confines of the Matrix simulation and low-vibrational emotional reaction scrambles balance and perception. A few minutes on social media and you see how emotion is the dominant force. Woke is all emotion and is therefore thought-free and fact-free. Our heart is something different. It *knows* while the head *thinks* and has to try to work it out because it doesn't know. The human energy field has seven prime vortexes which connect us with wider reality (Fig 23). Chakra means

'wheels of light' in the Sanskrit language of ancient India. The main ones are: The crown chakra on top of the head; brow (or 'third eye') chakra in the centre of the forehead; throat chakra; heart chakra in the centre of the chest; solar plexus chakra below the sternum; sacral chakra beneath the navel; and base chakra at the bottom of the spine. Each one has a particular function or functions. We feel anxiety and nervousness in the belly where the sacral chakra is located and this processes emotion that can affect the colon to give people 'the shits' or make them 'shit scared' when they are nervous. Chakras all play an important role, but the Mr and Mrs Big is the heart chakra which sits at the centre of the seven, above the chakras that connect us to the 'physical' and below those that connect with higher realms (or at least should). Here in the heart chakra we feel love, empathy and compassion – 'My heart goes out to you'. Those with closed hearts become literally 'heart-less' in their attitudes and behaviour (see Bill Gates). Native Americans portrayed Wetiko with what Paul Levy calls a 'frigid, icy heart, devoid of mercy' (see Bill Gates).

Figure 23: The chakra system which interpenetrates the human energy field. The heart chakra is the governor – or should be.

Wetiko trembles at the thought of heart energy which it cannot infiltrate. The frequency is too high. What it seeks to do instead is close the heart chakra vortex to block its perceptual and energetic influence. Psychopaths have 'hearts of stone' and emotionally-damaged people have 'heartache' and 'broken hearts'. The astonishing amount of heart disease is related to heart chakra

disruption with its fundamental connection to the 'physical' heart. Dr Tom Cowan has written an outstanding book challenging the belief that the heart is a pump and making the connection between the 'physical' and spiritual heart. Rudolph Steiner who was way ahead of his time said the same about the fallacy that the heart is a pump. *What*? The heart is not a pump? That's crazy, right? Everybody knows that. Read Cowan's *Human Heart, Cosmic Heart* and you will realise that the very idea of the heart as a pump is ridiculous when you see the evidence. How does blood in the feet so far from the heart get pumped horizontally up the body by the heart?? Cowan explains in the book the real reason why blood moves as it does. Our 'physical' heart is used to symbolise love when the source is really the heart vortex or spiritual heart which is our most powerful energetic connection to 'out there' expanded consciousness. That's why we feel *knowing* – intuitive knowing – in the centre of the chest. Knowing doesn't come from a process of thoughts leading to a conclusion. It is there in an instant all in one go. Our heart knows because of its connection to levels of awareness that *do* know. This is the meaning and source of intuition – intuitive *knowing*.

For the last more than 30 years of uncovering the global game and the nature of reality my heart has been my constant antenna for truth and accuracy. An American intelligence insider once said that I had quoted a disinformer in one of my books and yet I had only quoted the part that was true. He asked: 'How do you do that?' By using my heart antenna was the answer and anyone can do it. Heart-centred is how we are meant to be. With a closed heart chakra we withdraw into a closed mind and the bubble of five-sense reality. If you take a moment to focus your attention on the centre of your chest, picture a spinning wheel of light and see it opening and expanding. You will feel it happening, too, and perceptions of the heart like joy and love as the heart impacts on the mind as they interact. The more the chakra opens the more you will feel expressions of heart consciousness and as the process continues, and becomes part of you, insights and knowings will follow. An open

heart is connected to that level of awareness that knows all is *One*. You will see from its perspective that the fault-lines that divide us are only illusions to control us. An open heart does not process the illusions of race, creed and sexuality except as brief experiences for a consciousness that is all. Our heart does not see division, only unity (Figs 24 and 25). There's something else, too. Our hearts love to laugh. Mark Twain's quote that says 'The human race has one really effective weapon, and that is laughter' is really a reference to the heart which loves to laugh with the joy of knowing the true nature of infinite reality and that all the madness of human society is an illusion of the mind. Twain also said: 'Against the assault of laughter nothing can stand.' This is so true of Wetiko and the Cult. Their insecurity demands that they be taken seriously and their power and authority acknowledged and feared. We should do nothing of the sort. We should not get aggressive or fearful which their insecurity so desires. We should laugh in their face. Even in their no-face as police come over in their face-nappies and expect to be taken seriously. They don't take themselves seriously looking like that so why should we? Laugh in the face of intimidation. Laugh in the face of tyranny. You will see by its reaction that you have pressed all of its buttons. Wetiko does not know what to do in the face of laughter or when its targets refuse to concede their joy to fear. We have seen many examples during the 'Covid' hoax when people have expressed their energetic power and the string puppets of Wetiko retreat with their tail limp between their knees. Laugh – the world is bloody mad after all and if it's a choice between laughter and tears I know which way I'm going.

Figure 24: Head consciousness without the heart sees division and everything apart from everything else.

Figure 25: Heart consciousness sees everything as One.

'Vaccines' and the soul

The foundation of Wetiko/Archon control of humans is the separation of incarnate five-sense mind from the infinite 'I' and closing the heart chakra where the True 'I' lives during a human life. The goal has been to achieve complete separation in both cases. I was interested therefore to read an account by a French energetic healer of what she said she experienced with a patient who had been given the 'Covid' vaccine. Genuine energy healers can sense information and consciousness fields at different levels of being which are referred to as 'subtle bodies'. She described treating the patient who later returned after having, without the healer's knowledge, two doses of the 'Covid vaccine'. The healer said:

I noticed immediately the change, very heavy energy emanating from [the] subtle bodies. The scariest thing was when I was working on the heart chakra, I connected with her soul: it was detached from the physical body, it had no contact and it was, as if it was floating in a state of total confusion: a damage to the consciousness that loses contact with the physical body, i.e. with our biological machine, there is no longer any communication between them.

I continued the treatment by sending light to the heart chakra, the soul of the person, but it seemed that the soul could no longer receive any light, frequency or energy. It was a very powerful experience for me. Then I understood that this substance is indeed used to detach consciousness so that this consciousness can no longer interact through this body that it possesses in life, where there is no longer any contact, no frequency, no light, no more energetic balance or mind.

This would create a human that is rudderless and at the extreme almost zombie-like operating with a fractional state of consciousness at the mercy of Wetiko. I was especially intrigued by what the healer said in the light of the prediction by the highly-informed Rudolf Steiner more than a hundred years ago. He said:

> In the future, we will eliminate the soul with medicine. Under the pretext of a 'healthy point of view', there will be a vaccine by which the human body will be treated as soon as possible directly at birth, so that the human being cannot develop the thought of the existence of soul and Spirit. To materialistic doctors will be entrusted the task of removing the soul of humanity.
>
> As today, people are vaccinated against this disease or that disease, so in the future, children will be vaccinated with a substance that can be produced precisely in such a way that people, thanks to this vaccination, will be immune to being subjected to the 'madness' of spiritual life. He would be extremely smart, but he would not develop a conscience, and that is the true goal of some materialistic circles.

Steiner said the vaccine would detach the physical body from the etheric body (subtle bodies) and 'once the etheric body is detached the relationship between the universe and the etheric body would become extremely unstable, and man would become an automaton'. He said 'the physical body of man must be polished on this Earth by spiritual will – so the vaccine becomes a kind of arymanique (Wetiko) force' and 'man can no longer get rid of a given materialistic feeling'. Humans would then, he said, become 'materialistic of constitution and can no longer rise to the spiritual'. I have been writing for years about DNA being a receiver-transmitter of information that connects us to other levels of reality and these 'vaccines' changing DNA can be likened to changing an antenna and what it can transmit and receive. Such a disconnection would clearly lead to changes in personality and perception. Steiner further predicted the arrival of AI. Big Pharma 'Covid vaccine' makers, expressions of Wetiko, are testing their DNA-manipulating evil on children as I write with a view to giving the 'vaccine' to babies. If it's a soul-body disconnector – and I say that it is or can be – every child would be disconnected from 'soul' at birth and the 'vaccine' would create a closed system in which spiritual guidance from the greater self would play no part. This has been the ambition of Wetiko all

along. A Pentagon video from 2005 was leaked of a presentation explaining the development of vaccines to change behaviour by their effect on the brain. Those that believe this is not happening with the 'Covid' genetically-modifying procedure masquerading as a 'vaccine' should make an urgent appointment with Naivety Anonymous. Klaus Schwab wrote in 2018:

> Neurotechnologies enable us to better influence consciousness and thought and to understand many activities of the brain. They include decoding what we are thinking in fine levels of detail through new chemicals and interventions that can influence our brains to correct for errors or enhance functionality.

The plan is clear and only the heart can stop it. With every heart that opens, every mind that awakens, Wetiko is weakened. Heart and love are far more powerful than head and hate and so nothing like a majority is needed to turn this around.

Beyond the Phantom

Our heart is the prime target of Wetiko and so it must be the answer to Wetiko. We *are* our heart which is part of one heart, the infinite heart. Our heart is where the true self lives in a human life behind firewalls of five-sense illusion when an imposter takes its place – *Phantom Self*; but our heart waits patiently to be set free any time we choose to see beyond the Phantom, beyond Wetiko. A Wetikoed Phantom Self can wreak mass death and destruction while the love of forever is locked away in its heart. The time is here to unleash its power and let it sweep away the fear and despair that is Wetiko. Heart consciousness does not seek manipulated, censored, advantage for its belief or religion, its activism and desires. As an expression of the One it treats all as One with the same rights to freedom and opinion. Our heart demands fairness for itself no more than for others. From this unity of heart we can come together in mutual support and transform this Wetikoed world into what reality is meant to be – a place of love, joy, happiness, fairness, justice and freedom. Wetiko has another agenda and that's why the world is as

it is, but enough of this nonsense. Wetiko can't stay where hearts are open and it works so hard to keep them closed. Fear is its currency and its food source and love in its true sense has no fear. Why would love have fear when it knows it is *All That Is, Has Been, And Ever Can Be* on an eternal exploration of all possibility? Love in this true sense is not the physical attraction that passes for love. This can be an expression of it, yes, but Infinite Love, a love without condition, goes far deeper to the core of all being. It *is* the core of all being. Infinite realty was born from love beyond the illusions of the simulation. Love infinitely expressed is the knowing that all is One and the swiftly-passing experience of separation is a temporary hallucination. You cannot disconnect from Oneness; you can only *perceive* that you have and withdraw from its influence. This is the most important of all perception trickery by the mind parasite that is Wetiko and the foundation of all its potential for manipulation.

If we open our hearts, open the sluice gates of the mind, and redefine self-identity amazing things start to happen. Consciousness expands or contracts in accordance with self-identity. When true self is recognised as infinite awareness and label self – Phantom Self – is seen as only a series of brief experiences life is transformed. Consciousness expands to the extent that self-identity expands and everything changes. You see unity, not division, the picture, not the pixels. From this we can play the long game. No more is an experience something in and of itself, but a fleeting moment in the eternity of forever. Suddenly people in uniform and dark suits are no longer intimidating. Doing what your heart knows to be right is no longer intimidating and consequences for those actions take on the same nature of a brief experience that passes in the blink of an infinite eye. Intimidation is all in the mind. Beyond the mind there is no intimidation.

An open heart does not consider consequences for what it knows to be right. To do so would be to consider not doing what it knows to be right and for a heart in its power that is never an option. The Renegade Mind is really the Renegade Heart. Consideration of consequences will always provide a getaway car for the mind and

the heart doesn't want one. What is right in the light of what we face today is to stop cooperating with Wetiko in all its forms and to do it without fear or compromise. You cannot compromise with tyranny when tyranny always demands more until it has everything. Life is your perception and you are your destiny. Change your perception and you change your life. Change collective perception and we change the world.

Come on people … One human family, One heart, One goal … *FREEEEEEDOM*!

We must settle for nothing less.

Postscript

The big scare story as the book goes to press is the 'Indian' variant and the world is being deluged with propaganda about the 'Covid catastrophe' in India which mirrors in its lies and misrepresentations what happened in Italy before the first lockdown in 2020.

The *New York Post* published a picture of someone who had 'collapsed in the street from Covid' in India in April, 2021, which was actually taken during a gas leak in May, 2020. Same old, same old. Media articles in mid-February were asking why India had been so untouched by 'Covid' and then as their vaccine rollout gathered pace the alleged 'cases' began to rapidly increase. Indian 'Covid vaccine' maker Bharat Biotech was funded into existence by the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation (the pair announced their divorce in May, 2021, which is a pity because they so deserve each other). The Indian 'Covid crisis' was ramped up by the media to terrify the world and prepare people for submission to still more restrictions. The scam that worked the first time was being repeated only with far more people seeing through the deceit. Davidicke.com and Ickonic.com have sought to tell the true story of what is happening by talking to people living through the Indian nightmare which has nothing to do with 'Covid'. We posted a letter from 'Alisha' in Pune who told a very different story to government and media mendacity. She said scenes of dying people and overwhelmed hospitals were designed to hide what was really happening – genocide and starvation. Alisha said that millions had already died of starvation during the ongoing lockdowns while government and media were lying and making it look like the 'virus':

Restaurants, shops, gyms, theatres, basically everything is shut. The cities are ghost towns. Even so-called 'essential' businesses are only open till 11am in the morning. You basically have just an hour to buy food and then your time is up.

Inter-state travel and even inter-district travel is banned. The cops wait at all major crossroads to question why you are traveling outdoors or to fine you if you are not wearing a mask.

The medical community here is also complicit in genocide, lying about hospitals being full and turning away people with genuine illnesses, who need immediate care. They have even created a shortage of oxygen cylinders.

This is the classic Cult modus operandi played out in every country. Alisha said that people who would not have a PCR test not testing for the 'virus' were being denied hospital treatment. She said the people hit hardest were migrant workers and those in rural areas. Most businesses employed migrant workers and with everything closed there were no jobs, no income and no food. As a result millions were dying of starvation or malnutrition. All this was happening under Prime Minister Narendra Modi, a 100-percent asset of the Cult, and it emphasises yet again the scale of pure anti-human evil we are dealing with. Australia banned its people from returning home from India with penalties for trying to do so of up to five years in jail and a fine of £37,000. The manufactured 'Covid' crisis in India was being prepared to justify further fascism in the West. Obvious connections could be seen between the Indian 'vaccine' programme and increased 'cases' and this became a common theme. The Seychelles, the most per capita 'Covid vaccinated' population in the world, went back into lockdown after a 'surge of cases'.

Long ago the truly evil Monsanto agricultural biotechnology corporation with its big connections to Bill Gates devastated Indian farming with genetically-modified crops. Human rights activist Gurcharan Singh highlighted the efforts by the Indian government to complete the job by destroying the food supply to hundreds of millions with 'Covid' lockdowns. He said that 415 million people at the bottom of the disgusting caste system (still going whatever they say) were below the poverty line and struggled to feed themselves every year. Now the government was imposing lockdown at just the

time to destroy the harvest. This deliberate policy was leading to mass starvation. People may reel back at the suggestion that a government would do that, but Wetiko-controlled 'leaders' are capable of any level of evil. In fact what is described in India is in the process of being instigated worldwide. The food chain and food supply are being targeted at every level to cause world hunger and thus control. Bill Gates is not the biggest owner of farmland in America for no reason and destroying access to food aids both the depopulation agenda and the plan for synthetic 'food' already being funded into existence by Gates. Add to this the coming hyper-inflation from the suicidal creation of fake 'money' in response to 'Covid' and the breakdown of container shipping systems and you have a cocktail that can only lead one way and is meant to. The Cult plan is to crash the entire system to 'build back better' with the Great Reset.

'Vaccine' transmission

Reports from all over the world continue to emerge of women suffering menstrual and fertility problems after having the fake 'vaccine' and of the non-'vaccinated' having similar problems when interacting with the 'vaccinated'. There are far too many for 'coincidence' to be credible. We've had menopausal women getting periods, others having periods stop or not stopping for weeks, passing clots, sometimes the lining of the uterus, breast irregularities, and miscarriages (which increased by 400 percent in parts of the United States). Non-'vaccinated' men and children have suffered blood clots and nose bleeding after interaction with the 'vaccinated'. Babies have died from the effects of breast milk from a 'vaccinated' mother. Awake doctors – the small minority – speculated on the cause of non-'vaccinated' suffering the same effects as the 'vaccinated'. Was it nanotechnology in the synthetic substance transmitting frequencies or was it a straight chemical bioweapon that was being transmitted between people? I am not saying that some kind of chemical transmission is not one possible answer, but the foundation of all that the Cult does is frequency and

this is fertile ground for understanding how transmission can happen. American doctor Carrie Madej, an internal medicine physician and osteopath, has been practicing for the last 20 years, teaching medical students, and she says attending different meetings where the agenda for humanity was discussed. Madej, who operates out of Georgia, did not dismiss other possible forms of transmission, but she focused on frequency in search of an explanation for transmission. She said the Moderna and Pfizer 'vaccines' contained nano-lipid particles as a key component. This was a brand new technology never before used on humanity. 'They're using a nanotechnology which is pretty much little tiny computer bits … nanobots or hydrogel.' Inside the 'vaccines' was 'this sci-fi kind of substance' which suppressed immune checkpoints to get into the cell. I referred to this earlier as the 'Trojan horse' technique that tricks the cell into opening a gateway for the self-replicating synthetic material and while the immune system is artificially suppressed the body has no defences. Madej said the substance served many purposes including an on-demand ability to 'deliver the payload' and using the nano 'computer bits' as biosensors in the body. 'It actually has the ability to accumulate data from your body, like your breathing, your respiration, thoughts, emotions, all kinds of things.'

She said the technology obviously has the ability to operate through Wi-Fi and transmit and receive energy, messages, frequencies or impulses. 'Just imagine you're getting this new substance in you and it can react to things all around you, the 5G, your smart device, your phones.' We had something completely foreign in the human body that had never been launched large scale at a time when we were seeing 5G going into schools and hospitals (plus the Musk satellites) and she believed the 'vaccine' transmission had something to do with this: '… if these people have this inside of them … it can act like an antenna and actually transmit it outwardly as well.' The synthetic substance produced its own voltage and so it could have that kind of effect. This fits with my own contention that the nano receiver-transmitters are designed to connect people to the

Smart Grid and break the receiver-transmitter connection to expanded consciousness. That would explain the French energy healer's experience of the disconnection of body from 'soul' with those who have had the 'vaccine'. The nanobots, self-replicating inside the body, would also transmit the synthetic frequency which could be picked up through close interaction by those who have not been 'vaccinated'. Madej speculated that perhaps it was 5G and increased levels of other radiation that was causing the symptoms directly although interestingly she said that non-'vaccinated' patients had shown improvement when they were away from the 'vaccinated' person they had interacted with. It must be remembered that you can control frequency and energy with your mind and you can consciously create energetic barriers or bubbles with the mind to stop damaging frequencies from penetrating your field. American paediatrician Dr Larry Palevsky said the 'vaccine' was not a 'vaccine' and was never designed to protect from a 'viral' infection. He called it 'a massive, brilliant propaganda of genocide' because they didn't have to inject everyone to get the result they wanted. He said the content of the jabs was able to infuse any material into the brain, heart, lungs, kidneys, liver, sperm and female productive system. 'This is genocide; this is a weapon of mass destruction.' At the same time American colleges were banning students from attending if they didn't have this life-changing and potentially life-ending 'vaccine'. Class action lawsuits must follow when the consequences of this college fascism come to light. As the book was going to press came reports about fertility effects on sperm in 'vaccinated' men which would absolutely fit with what I have been saying and hospitals continued to fill with 'vaccine' reactions. Another question is what about transmission via blood transfusions? The NHS has extended blood donation restrictions from seven days after a 'Covid vaccination' to 28 days after even a sore arm reaction.

I said in the spring of 2020 that the then touted 'Covid vaccine' would be ongoing each year like the flu jab. A year later Pfizer CEO, the appalling Albert Bourla, said people would 'likely' need a 'booster dose' of the 'vaccine' within 12 months of getting 'fully

vaccinated' and then a yearly shot. 'Variants will play a key role', he said confirming the point. Johnson & Johnson CEO Alex Gorsky also took time out from his 'vaccine' disaster to say that people may need to be vaccinated against 'Covid-19' each year. UK Health Secretary, the psychopath Matt Hancock, said additional 'boosters' would be available in the autumn of 2021. This is the trap of the 'vaccine passport'. The public will have to accept every last 'vaccine' they introduce, including for the fake 'variants', or it would cease to be valid. The only other way in some cases would be continuous testing with a test not testing for the 'virus' and what is on the swabs constantly pushed up your noise towards the brain every time?

'Vaccines' changing behaviour

I mentioned in the body of the book how I believed we would see gathering behaviour changes in the 'vaccinated' and I am already hearing such comments from the non-'vaccinated' describing behaviour changes in friends, loved ones and work colleagues. This will only increase as the self-replicating synthetic material and nanoparticles expand in body and brain. An article in the *Guardian* in 2016 detailed research at the University of Virginia in Charlottesville which developed a new method for controlling brain circuits associated with complex animal behaviour. The method, dubbed 'magnetogenetics', involves genetically-engineering a protein called ferritin, which stores and releases iron, to create a magnetised substance – 'Magneto' – that can activate specific groups of nerve cells from a distance. This is claimed to be an advance on other methods of brain activity manipulation known as optogenetics and chemogenetics (the Cult has been developing methods of brain control for a long time). The ferritin technique is said to be non-invasive and able to activate neurons 'rapidly and reversibly'. In other words, human thought and perception. The article said that earlier studies revealed how nerve cell proteins 'activated by heat and mechanical pressure can be genetically engineered so that they become sensitive to radio waves and magnetic fields, by attaching them to an iron-storing protein called ferritin, or to inorganic

paramagnetic particles'. Sensitive to radio waves and magnetic fields? You mean like 5G, 6G and 7G? This is the human-AI Smart Grid hive mind we are talking about. The *Guardian* article said:

> … the researchers injected Magneto into the striatum of freely behaving mice, a deep brain structure containing dopamine-producing neurons that are involved in reward and motivation, and then placed the animals into an apparatus split into magnetised and non-magnetised sections.
>
> Mice expressing Magneto spent far more time in the magnetised areas than mice that did not, because activation of the protein caused the striatal neurons expressing it to release dopamine, so that the mice found being in those areas rewarding. This shows that Magneto can remotely control the firing of neurons deep within the brain, and also control complex behaviours.

Make no mistake this basic methodology will be part of the 'Covid vaccine' cocktail and using magnetics to change brain function through electromagnetic field frequency activation. The Pentagon is developing a 'Covid vaccine' using ferritin. Magnetics would explain changes in behaviour and why videos are appearing across the Internet as I write showing how magnets stick to the skin at the point of the 'vaccine' shot. Once people take these 'vaccines' anything becomes possible in terms of brain function and illness which will be blamed on 'Covid-19' and 'variants'. Magnetic field manipulation would further explain why the non-'vaccinated' are reporting the same symptoms as the 'vaccinated' they interact with and why those symptoms are reported to decrease when not in their company. Interestingly 'Magneto', a 'mutant', is a character in the Marvel Comic *X-Men* stories with the ability to manipulate magnetic fields and he believes that mutants should fight back against their human oppressors by any means necessary. The character was born Erik Lehnsherr to a Jewish family in Germany.

Cult-controlled courts

The European Court of Human Rights opened the door for mandatory 'Covid-19 vaccines' across the continent when it ruled in a Czech Republic dispute over childhood immunisation that legally

enforced vaccination could be 'necessary in a democratic society'. The 17 judges decided that compulsory vaccinations did not breach human rights law. On the face of it the judgement was so inverted you gasp for air. If not having a vaccine infused into your body is not a human right then what is? Ah, but they said human rights law which has been specifically written to delete all human rights at the behest of the state (the Cult). Article 8 of the European Convention on Human Rights relates to the right to a private life. The crucial word here is *'except'*:

> There shall be no interference by a public authority with the exercise of this right EXCEPT such as is in accordance with the law and is necessary in a democratic society in the interests of national security, public safety or the economic wellbeing of the country, for the prevention of disorder or crime, for the protection of health or morals, or for the protection of the rights and freedoms of others [My emphasis].

No interference *except* in accordance with the law means there *are* no 'human rights' *except* what EU governments decide you can have at their behest. 'As is necessary in a democratic society' explains that reference in the judgement and 'in the interests of national security, public safety or the economic well-being of the country, for the prevention of disorder or crime, for the protection of health or morals, or for the protection of the rights and freedoms of others' gives the EU a coach and horses to ride through 'human rights' and scatter them in all directions. The judiciary is not a check and balance on government extremism; it is a vehicle to enforce it. This judgement was almost laughably predictable when the last thing the Cult wanted was a decision that went against mandatory vaccination. Judges rule over and over again to benefit the system of which they are a part. Vaccination disputes that come before them are invariably delivered in favour of doctors and authorities representing the view of the state which owns the judiciary. Oh, yes, and we have even had calls to stop putting 'Covid-19' on death certificates within 28 days of a 'positive test' because it is claimed the practice makes the 'vaccine' appear not to work. They are laughing at you.

The scale of madness, inhumanity and things to come was highlighted when those not 'vaccinated' for 'Covid' were refused evacuation from the Caribbean island of St Vincent during massive volcanic eruptions. Cruise ships taking residents to the safety of another island allowed only the 'vaccinated' to board and the rest were left to their fate. Even in life and death situations like this we see 'Covid' stripping people of their most basic human instincts and the insanity is even more extreme when you think that fake 'vaccine'-makers are not even claiming their body-manipulating concoctions stop 'infection' and 'transmission' of a 'virus' that doesn't exist. St Vincent Prime Minister Ralph Gonsalves said: 'The chief medical officer will be identifying the persons already vaccinated so that we can get them on the ship.' Note again the power of the chief medical officer who, like Whitty in the UK, will be answering to the World Health Organization. This is the Cult network structure that has overridden politicians who 'follow the science' which means doing what WHO-controlled 'medical officers' and 'science advisers' tell them. Gonsalves even said that residents who were 'vaccinated' after the order so they could board the ships would still be refused entry due to possible side effects such as 'wooziness in the head'. The good news is that if they were woozy enough in the head they could qualify to be prime minister of St Vincent.

Microchipping freedom

The European judgement will be used at some point to justify moves to enforce the 'Covid' DNA-manipulating procedure. Sandra Ro, CEO of the Global Blockchain Business Council, told a World Economic Forum event that she hoped 'vaccine passports' would help to 'drive forced consent and standardisation' of global digital identity schemes: 'I'm hoping with the desire and global demand for some sort of vaccine passport – so that people can get travelling and working again – [it] will drive forced consent, standardisation, and frankly, cooperation across the world.' The lady is either not very bright, or thoroughly mendacious, to use the term 'forced consent'.

You do not 'consent' if you are forced – you *submit*. She was describing what the plan has been all along and that's to enforce a digital identity on every human without which they could not function. 'Vaccine passports' are opening the door and are far from the end goal. A digital identity would allow you to be tracked in everything you do in cyberspace and this is the same technique used by Cult-owned China to enforce its social credit system of total control. The ultimate 'passport' is planned to be a microchip as my books have warned for nearly 30 years. Those nice people at the Pentagon working for the Cult-controlled Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (DARPA) claimed in April, 2021, they have developed a microchip inserted under the skin to detect 'asymptomatic Covid-19 infection' before it becomes an outbreak and a 'revolutionary filter' that can remove the 'virus' from the blood when attached to a dialysis machine. The only problems with this are that the 'virus' does not exist and people transmitting the 'virus' with no symptoms is brain-numbing bullshit. This is, of course, not a ruse to get people to be microchipped for very different reasons. DARPA also said it was producing a one-stop 'vaccine' for the 'virus' and all 'variants'. One of the most sinister organisations on Planet Earth is doing this? Better have it then. These people are insane because Wetiko that possesses them is insane.

Researchers from the Salk Institute in California announced they have created an embryo that is part human and part monkey. My books going back to the 1990s have exposed experiments in top secret underground facilities in the United States where humans are being crossed with animal and non-human 'extraterrestrial' species. They are now easing that long-developed capability into the public arena and there is much more to come given we are dealing with psychiatric basket cases. Talking of which – Elon Musk's scientists at Neuralink trained a monkey to play Pong and other puzzles on a computer screen using a joystick and when the monkey made the correct move a metal tube squirted banana smoothie into his mouth which is the basic technique for training humans into unquestioning compliance. Two Neuralink chips were in the monkey's skull and

more than 2,000 wires 'fanned out' into its brain. Eventually the monkey played a video game purely with its brain waves. Psychopathic narcissist Musk said the 'breakthrough' was a step towards putting Neuralink chips into human skulls and merging minds with artificial intelligence. *Exactly*. This man is so dark and Cult to his DNA.

World Economic Fascism (WEF)

The World Economic Forum is telling you the plan by the statements made at its many and various events. Cult-owned fascist YouTube CEO Susan Wojcicki spoke at the 2021 WEF Global Technology Governance Summit (see the name) in which 40 governments and 150 companies met to ensure 'the responsible design and deployment of emerging technologies'. Orwellian translation: 'Ensuring the design and deployment of long-planned technologies will advance the Cult agenda for control and censorship.' Freedom-destroyer and Nuremberg-bound Wojcicki expressed support for tech platforms like hers to censor content that is 'technically legal but could be harmful'. Who decides what is 'harmful'? She does and they do. 'Harmful' will be whatever the Cult doesn't want people to see and we have legislation proposed by the UK government that would censor content on the basis of 'harm' no matter if the information is fair, legal and provably true. Make that *especially* if it is fair, legal and provably true. Wojcicki called for a global coalition to be formed to enforce content moderation standards through automated censorship. This is a woman and mega-censor so self-deluded that she shamelessly accepted a 'free expression' award – *Wojcicki* – in an event sponsored by her own *YouTube*. They have no shame and no self-awareness.

You know that 'Covid' is a scam and Wojcicki a Cult operative when YouTube is censoring medical and scientific opinion purely on the grounds of whether it supports or opposes the Cult 'Covid' narrative. Florida governor Ron DeSantis compiled an expert panel with four professors of medicine from Harvard, Oxford, and Stanford Universities who spoke against forcing children and

vaccinated people to wear masks. They also said there was no proof that lockdowns reduced spread or death rates of 'Covid-19'. Cult-gofer Wojcicki and her YouTube deleted the panel video 'because it included content that contradicts the consensus of local and global health authorities regarding the efficacy of masks to prevent the spread of Covid-19'. This 'consensus' refers to what the Cult tells the World Health Organization to say and the WHO tells 'local health authorities' to do. Wojcicki knows this, of course. The panellists pointed out that censorship of scientific debate was responsible for deaths from many causes, but Wojcicki couldn't care less. She would not dare go against what she is told and as a disgrace to humanity she wouldn't want to anyway. The UK government is seeking to pass a fascist 'Online Safety Bill' to specifically target with massive fines and other means non-censored video and social media platforms to make them censor 'lawful but harmful' content like the Cult-owned Facebook, Twitter, Google and YouTube. What is 'lawful but harmful' would be decided by the fascist Blair-created Ofcom.

Another WEF obsession is a cyber-attack on the financial system and this is clearly what the Cult has planned to take down the bank accounts of everyone – except theirs. Those that think they have enough money for the Cult agenda not to matter to them have got a big lesson coming if they continue to ignore what is staring them in the face. The World Economic Forum, funded by Gates and fronted by Klaus Schwab, announced it would be running a 'simulation' with the Russian government and global banks of just such an attack called Cyber Polygon 2021. What they simulate – as with the 'Covid' Event 201 – they plan to instigate. The WEF is involved in a project with the Cult-owned Carnegie Endowment for International Peace called the WEF-Carnegie Cyber Policy Initiative which seeks to merge Wall Street banks, 'regulators' (I love it) and intelligence agencies to 'prevent' (arrange and allow) a cyber-attack that would bring down the global financial system as long planned by those that control the WEF and the Carnegie operation. The Carnegie Endowment for International Peace sent an instruction to First World

War US President Woodrow Wilson not to let the war end before society had been irreversibly transformed.

The Wuhan lab diversion

As I close, the Cult-controlled authorities and lapdog media are systematically pushing 'the virus was released from the Wuhan lab' narrative. There are two versions – it happened by accident and it happened on purpose. Both are nonsense. The perceived existence of the never-shown-to-exist 'virus' is vital to sell the impression that there is actually an infective agent to deal with and to allow the endless potential for terrifying the population with 'variants' of a 'virus' that does not exist. The authorities at the time of writing are going with the 'by accident' while the alternative media is promoting the 'on purpose'. Cable news host Tucker Carlson who has questioned aspects of lockdown and 'vaccine' compulsion has bought the Wuhan lab story. 'Everyone now agrees' he said. Well, I don't and many others don't and the question is *why* does the system and its media suddenly 'agree'? When the media moves as one unit with a narrative it is always a lie – witness the hour by hour mendacity of the 'Covid' era. Why would this Cult-owned combination which has unleashed lies like machine gun fire suddenly 'agree' to tell the truth??

Much of the alternative media is buying the lie because it fits the conspiracy narrative, but it's the *wrong* conspiracy. The real conspiracy is that *there is no virus* and that is what the Cult is desperate to hide. The idea that the 'virus' was released by accident is ludicrous when the whole 'Covid' hoax was clearly long-planned and waiting to be played out as it was so fast in accordance with the Rockefeller document and Event 201. So they prepared everything in detail over decades and then sat around strumming their fingers waiting for an 'accidental' release from a bio-lab? *What??* It's crazy. Then there's the 'on purpose' claim. You want to circulate a 'deadly virus' and hide the fact that you've done so and you release it down the street from the highest-level bio-lab in China? I repeat – *What??*

You would release it far from that lab to stop any association being made. But, no, we'll do it in a place where the connection was certain to be made. Why would you need to scam 'cases' and 'deaths' and pay hospitals to diagnose 'Covid-19' if you had a real 'virus'? What are sections of the alternative media doing believing this crap? Where were all the mass deaths in Wuhan from a 'deadly pathogen' when the recovery to normal life after the initial propaganda was dramatic in speed? Why isn't the 'deadly pathogen' now circulating all over China with bodies in the street? Once again we have the technique of tell them what they want to hear and they will likely believe it. The alternative media has its 'conspiracy' and with Carlson it fits with his 'China is the danger' narrative over years. China *is* a danger as a global Cult operations centre, but not for this reason. The Wuhan lab story also has the potential to instigate conflict with China when at some stage the plan is to trigger a Problem-Reaction-Solution confrontation with the West. Question everything – *everything* – and especially when the media agrees on a common party line.

Third wave ... fourth wave ... fifth wave ...

As the book went into production the world was being set up for more lockdowns and a 'third wave' supported by invented 'variants' that were increasing all the time and will continue to do so in public statements and computer programs, but not in reality. India became the new Italy in the 'Covid' propaganda campaign and we were told to be frightened of the new 'Indian strain'. Somehow I couldn't find it within myself to do so. A document produced for the UK government entitled 'Summary of further modelling of easing of restrictions – Roadmap Step 2' declared that a third wave was inevitable (of course when it's in the script) and it would be the fault of children and those who refuse the health-destroying fake 'Covid vaccine'. One of the computer models involved came from the Cult-owned *Imperial College* and the other from Warwick University which I wouldn't trust to tell me the date in a calendar factory. The document states that both models presumed extremely high uptake

of the 'Covid vaccines' and didn't allow for 'variants'. The document states: 'The resurgence is a result of some people (mostly children) being ineligible for vaccination; others choosing not to receive the vaccine; and others being vaccinated but not perfectly protected.' The mendacity takes the breath away. Okay, blame those with a brain who won't take the DNA-modifying shots and put more pressure on children to have it as 'trials' were underway involving children as young as six months with parents who give insanity a bad name. Massive pressure is being put on the young to have the fake 'vaccine' and child age consent limits have been systematically lowered around the world to stop parents intervening. Most extraordinary about the document was its claim that the 'third wave' would be driven by 'the resurgence in both hospitalisations and deaths … dominated by *those that have received two doses of the vaccine*, comprising around 60-70% of the wave respectively'. The predicted peak of the 'third wave' suggested 300 deaths per day with 250 of them *fully 'vaccinated' people*. How many more lies do acquiescers need to be told before they see the obvious? Those who took the jab to 'protect themselves' are projected to be those who mostly get sick and die? So what's in the 'vaccine'? The document went on:

> It is possible that a summer of low prevalence could be followed by substantial increases in incidence over the following autumn and winter. Low prevalence in late summer should not be taken as an indication that SARS-CoV-2 has retreated or that the population has high enough levels of immunity to prevent another wave.

They are telling you the script and while many British people believed 'Covid' restrictions would end in the summer of 2021 the government was preparing for them to be ongoing. Authorities were awarding contracts for 'Covid marshals' to police the restrictions with contracts starting in July, 2021, and going through to January 31st, 2022, and the government was advertising for 'Media Buying Services' to secure media propaganda slots worth a potential £320 million for 'Covid-19 campaigns' with a contract not ending until March, 2022. The recipient – via a list of other front companies – was reported to be American media marketing giant Omnicom Group

Inc. While money is no object for 'Covid' the UK waiting list for all other treatment – including life-threatening conditions – passed 4.5 million. Meantime the Cult is seeking to control all official 'inquiries' to block revelations about what has really been happening and why. It must not be allowed to – we need Nuremberg jury trials in every country. The cover-up doesn't get more obvious than appointing ultra-Zionist professor Philip Zelikow to oversee two dozen US virologists, public health officials, clinicians, former government officials and four American 'charitable foundations' to 'learn the lessons' of the 'Covid' debacle. The personnel will be those that created and perpetuated the 'Covid' lies while Zelikow is the former executive director of the 9/11 Commission who ensured that the truth about those attacks never came out and produced a report that must be among the most mendacious and manipulative documents ever written – see *The Trigger* for the detailed exposure of the almost unimaginable 9/11 story in which Sabbatians can be found at every level.

Passive no more

People are increasingly challenging the authorities with amazing numbers of people taking to the streets in London well beyond the ability of the Face-Nappies to stop them. Instead the Nappies choose situations away from the mass crowds to target, intimidate, and seek to promote the impression of 'violent protestors'. One such incident happened in London's Hyde Park. Hundreds of thousands walking through the streets in protest against 'Covid' fascism were ignored by the Cult-owned BBC and most of the rest of the mainstream media, but they delighted in reporting how police were injured in 'clashes with protestors'. The truth was that a group of people gathered in Hyde Park at the end of one march when most had gone home and they were peacefully having a good time with music and chat. Face-Nappies who couldn't deal with the full-march crowd then waded in with their batons and got more than they bargained for. Instead of just standing for this criminal brutality the crowd used their numerical superiority to push the Face-Nappies out of the

park. Eventually the Nappies turned and ran. Unfortunately two or three idiots in the crowd threw drink cans striking two officers which gave the media and the government the image they wanted to discredit the 99.9999 percent who were peaceful. The idiots walked straight into the trap and we must always be aware of potential agent provocateurs used by the authorities to discredit their targets.

This response from the crowd – the can people apart – must be a turning point when the public no longer stand by while the innocent are arrested and brutally attacked by the Face-Nappies. That doesn't mean to be violent, that's the last thing we need. We'll leave the violence to the Face-Nappies and government. But it does mean that when the Face-Nappies use violence against peaceful people the numerical superiority is employed to stop them and make citizen's arrests or Common Law arrests for a breach of the peace. The time for being passive in the face of fascism is over.

We are the many, they are the few, and we need to make that count before there is no freedom left and our children and grandchildren face an ongoing fascist nightmare.

COME ON PEOPLE – IT'S TIME.

One final thought …

The power of love
A force from above
Cleaning my soul
Flame on burn desire
Love with tongues of fire
Purge the soul
Make love your goal

I'll protect you from the hooded claw
Keep the vampires from your door
When the chips are down I'll be around
With my undying, death-defying
Love for you

Envy will hurt itself
Let yourself be beautiful
Sparkling love, flowers
And pearls and pretty girls
Love is like an energy
Rushin' rushin' inside of me

This time we go sublime
Lovers entwine, divine, divine,
Love is danger, love is pleasure
Love is pure – the only treasure

I'm so in love with you
Purge the soul
Make love your goal

The power of love
A force from above
Cleaning my soul
The power of love
A force from above
A sky-scraping dove

Flame on burn desire
Love with tongues of fire
Purge the soul
Make love your goal

Frankie Goes To Hollywood

APPENDIX

Cowan-Kaufman-Morell Statement on Virus Isolation (SOVI)

Isolation: The action of isolating; the fact or condition of being isolated or standing alone; separation from other things or persons; solitariness
Oxford English Dictionary

The controversy over whether the SARS-CoV-2 virus has ever been isolated or purified continues. However, using the above definition, common sense, the laws of logic and the dictates of science, any unbiased person must come to the conclusion that the SARS-CoV-2 virus has never been isolated or purified. As a result, no confirmation of the virus' existence can be found. The logical, common sense, and scientific consequences of this fact are:

- the structure and composition of something not shown to exist can't be known, including the presence, structure, and function of any hypothetical spike or other proteins;
- the genetic sequence of something that has never been found can't be known;
- "variants" of something that hasn't been shown to exist can't be known;
- it's impossible to demonstrate that SARS-CoV-2 causes a disease called Covid-19.

In as concise terms as possible, here's the proper way to isolate, characterize and demonstrate a new virus. First, one takes samples (blood, sputum, secretions) from many people (e.g. 500) with symptoms which are unique and specific enough to characterize an illness. Without mixing these samples with ANY tissue or products that also contain genetic material, the virologist macerates, filters and ultracentrifuges i.e. *purifies* the specimen. This common virology technique, done for decades to isolate bacteriophages[1] and so-called giant viruses in every virology lab, then allows the virologist to demonstrate with electron microscopy thousands of identically sized and shaped particles. These particles are the isolated and purified virus.

These identical particles are then checked for uniformity by physical and/or microscopic techniques. Once the purity is determined, the particles may be further characterized. This would include examining the structure, morphology, and chemical composition of the particles. Next, their genetic makeup is characterized by extracting the genetic material directly from the purified particles and using genetic-sequencing techniques, such as Sanger sequencing, that have also been around for decades. Then one does an analysis to confirm that these uniform particles are exogenous (outside) in origin as a virus is conceptualized to be, and not the normal breakdown products of dead and dying tissues.[2] (As of May 2020, we know that virologists have no way to determine whether the particles they're seeing are viruses or just normal breakdown products of dead and dying tissues.)[3]

---

1 Isolation, characterization and analysis of bacteriophages from the haloalkaline lake Elmenteita, KenyaJuliah Khayeli Akhwale et al, PLOS One, Published: April 25, 2019. https://journals.plos.org/plosone/article?id=10.1371/journal.pone.0215734 – accessed 2/15/21

2 "Extracellular Vesicles Derived From Apoptotic Cells: An Essential Link Between Death and Regeneration," Maojiao Li1 et al, Frontiers in Cell and Developmental Biology, 2020 October 2. https://www.frontiersin.org/articles/10.3389/fcell.2020.573511/full – accessed 2/15/21

3 "The Role of Extraellular Vesicles as Allies of HIV, HCV and SARS Viruses," Flavia Giannessi, et al, Viruses, 2020 May

If we have come this far then we have fully isolated, characterized, and genetically sequenced an exogenous virus particle. However, we still have to show it is causally related to a disease. This is carried out by exposing a group of healthy subjects (animals are usually used) to this isolated, purified virus in the manner in which the disease is thought to be transmitted. If the animals get sick with the same disease, as confirmed by clinical and autopsy findings, one has now shown that the virus actually causes a disease. This demonstrates infectivity and transmission of an infectious agent.

None of these steps has even been attempted with the SARS-CoV-2 virus, nor have all these steps been successfully performed for any so-called pathogenic virus. Our research indicates that a single study showing these steps does not exist in the medical literature.

Instead, since 1954, virologists have taken unpurified samples from a relatively few people, often less than ten, with a similar disease. They then minimally process this sample and inoculate this unpurified sample onto tissue culture containing usually four to six other types of material – all of which contain identical genetic material as to what is called a "virus." The tissue culture is starved and poisoned and naturally disintegrates into many types of particles, some of which contain genetic material. Against all common sense, logic, use of the English language and scientific integrity, this process is called "virus isolation." This brew containing fragments of genetic material from many sources is then subjected to genetic analysis, which then creates in a computer-simulation process the alleged sequence of the alleged virus, a so called in silico genome. At no time is an actual virus confirmed by electron microscopy. At no time is a genome extracted and sequenced from an actual virus. This is scientific fraud.

The observation that the unpurified specimen — inoculated onto tissue culture along with toxic antibiotics, bovine fetal tissue, amniotic fluid and other tissues — destroys the kidney tissue onto which it is inoculated is given as evidence of the virus' existence and pathogenicity. This is scientific fraud.

From now on, when anyone gives you a paper that suggests the SARS-CoV-2 virus has been isolated, please check the methods sections. If the researchers used Vero cells or any other culture method, you know that their process was not isolation. You will hear the following excuses for why actual isolation isn't done:

1. There were not enough virus particles found in samples from patients to analyze.

2. Viruses are intracellular parasites; they can't be found outside the cell in this manner.

If No. 1 is correct, and we can't find the virus in the sputum of sick people, then on what evidence do we think the virus is dangerous or even lethal? If No. 2 is correct, then how is the virus spread from person to person? We are told it emerges from the cell to infect others. Then why isn't it possible to find it?

Finally, questioning these virology techniques and conclusions is not some distraction or divisive issue. Shining the light on this truth is essential to stop this terrible fraud that humanity is confronting. For, as we now know, if the virus has never been isolated, sequenced or shown to cause illness, if the virus is imaginary, then why are we wearing masks, social distancing and putting the whole world into prison?

Finally, if pathogenic viruses don't exist, then what is going into those injectable devices erroneously called "vaccines," and what is their purpose? This scientific question is the most urgent and relevant one of our time.

We are correct. The SARS-CoV2 virus does not exist.

Sally Fallon Morell, MA
Dr. Thomas Cowan, MD
Dr. Andrew Kaufman, MD

Bibliography

Alinsky, Saul: *Rules for Radicals* (Vintage, 1989)

Antelman, Rabbi Marvin: *To Eliminate the Opiate* (Zahavia, 1974)

Bastardi, Joe: *The Climate Chronicles* (Relentless Thunder Press, 2018)

Cowan, Tom: *Human Heart, Cosmic Heart* (Chelsea Green Publishing, 2016)

Cowan, Tom, and Fallon Morell, Sally: *The Contagion Myth* (Skyhorse Publishing, 2020)

Forbes, Jack D: *Columbus And Other Cannibals – The Wetiko Disease of Exploitation, Imperialism, and Terrorism* (Seven Stories Press, 2008 – originally published in 1979)

Gates, Bill: *How to Avoid a Climate Disaster: The Solutions We Have and the Breakthroughs We Need* (Allen Lane, 2021)

Huxley, Aldous: *Brave New World* (Chatto & Windus, 1932)

Köhnlein, Dr Claus, and Engelbrecht, Torsten: *Virus Mania* (emu-Vertag, Lahnstein, 2020)

Lanza, Robert, and Berman, Bob: *Biocentrism* (BenBella Books, 2010)

Lash, John Lamb: *Not In His Image* (Chelsea Green Publishing, 2006)

Lester, Dawn, and Parker, David: *What Really Makes You Ill – Why everything you thought you knew about disease is wrong* (Independently Published, 2019)

Levy, Paul: *Dispelling Wetiko, Breaking the Spell of Evil* (North Atlantic Books, 2013)

Marx, Karl: *A World Without Jews* (Philosophical Library, first edition, 1959)

Mullis, Kary: *Dancing Naked in the Mine Field* (Bloomsbury, 1999)

O'Brien, Cathy: *Trance-Formation of America* (Reality Marketing, 1995)

Scholem, Gershon: *The Messianic Idea in Judaism* (Schocken Books, 1994)

Schwab, Klaus, and Davis, Nicholas: *Shaping the Future of the Fourth Industrial Revolution: A guide to building a better world* (Penguin Books, 2018)

Schwab, Klaus: *The Great Reset* (Agentur Schweiz, 2020)

Sunstein, Cass and Thaler, Richard: *Nudge: Improving Decisions About Health, Wealth, and Happiness* (Penguin, 2009)

Swan, Shanna: *Count Down: How Our Modern World Is Threatening Sperm Counts, Altering Male and Female Reproductive Development and Imperiling the Future of the Human Race* (Scribner, 2021)

Tegmark, Max: *Our Mathematical Universe: My Quest for the Ultimate Nature of Reality* (Penguin, 2015)

Velikovsky, Immanuel: *Worlds in Collision* (Paradigma, 2009)

Wilton, Robert: *The Last Days of the Romanovs* (Blurb, 2018, first published 1920)

Index

A

abusive relationships
blaming themselves, abused as ref1
children ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9, ref10
conspiracy theories ref1
domestic abuse ref1, ref2
economic abuse and dependency ref1
isolation ref1
physical abuse ref1
psychological abuse ref1
signs of abuse ref1
addiction
alcoholism ref1
frequencies ref1
substance abuse ref1, ref2
technology ref1, ref2, ref3
Adelson, Sheldon ref1, ref2, ref3
Agenda 21/Agenda 2030 (UN) ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
AIDs/HIV ref1
causal link between HIV and AIDs ref1, ref2
retroviruses ref1
testing ref1, ref2
trial-run for Covid-19, as ref1, ref2
aliens/extraterrestrials ref1, ref2
aluminium ref1
Amazon ref1, ref2, ref3

amplification cycles ref1, ref2
anaphylactic shock ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
animals ref1, ref2, ref3
antibodies ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
Antifa ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
antigens ref1, ref2
anti-Semitism ref1, ref2, ref3
Archons ref1, ref2
  consciousness ref1, ref2, ref3
  energy ref1, ref2, ref3
  ennoia ref1
  genetic manipulation ref1, ref2
  inversion ref1, ref2, ref3
  lockdowns ref1
  money ref1
  radiation ref1
  religion ref1, ref2
  technology ref1, ref2, ref3
  Wetiko factor ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
artificial intelligence (AI) ref1
army made up of robots ref1, ref2
  Human 2.0 ref1, ref2
  Internet ref1
  MHRA ref1
  Morgellons fibres ref1, ref2
  Smart Grid ref1
  Wetiko factor ref1
asymptomatic, Covid-19 as ref1, ref2, ref3
aviation industry ref1

B

banking, finance and money ref1, ref2, ref3
2008 crisis ref1, ref2
boom and bust ref1
cashless digital money systems ref1
central banks ref1
credit ref1
digital currency ref1
fractional reserve lending ref1
Great Reset ref1
guaranteed income ref1, ref2, ref3
Human 2.0 ref1
incomes, destruction of ref1, ref2
interest ref1
one per cent ref1, ref2
scams ref1
BBC ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8
Becker-Phelps, Leslie ref1
Behavioural Insights Team (BIT) (Nudge Unit) ref1, ref2, ref3
behavioural scientists *and* **psychologists, advice from** ref1, ref2
Bezos, Jeff ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Biden, Hunter ref1
Biden, Joe ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9, ref10, ref11, ref12, ref13, ref14, ref15, ref16, ref17
Big Pharma
cholesterol ref1
health professionals ref1, ref2
immunity from prosecution in US ref1
vaccines ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8
Wetiko factor ref1, ref2
WHO ref1, ref2, ref3
Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7

billionaires ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9 ref10, ref11
bird flu (H5N1) ref1
Black Lives Matter (BLM) ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
Blair, Tony ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7
Brin, Sergei ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7
British Empire ref1
Bush, George HW ref1, ref2
Bush, George W ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Byrd, Robert ref1

C

Canada
  Global Cult ref1
  hate speech ref1
  internment ref1
  masks ref1
  old people ref1
  SARS-COV-2 ref1
  satellites ref1
  vaccines ref1
  wearable technology ref1
Capitol Hill riot ref1, ref2
  agents provocateur ref1
  Antifa ref1
  Black Lives Matter (BLM) ref1, ref2
  QAnon ref1
  security precautions, lack of ref1, ref2, ref3
carbon dioxide ref1, ref2
care homes, deaths in ref1, ref2
cashless digital money systems ref1
censorship ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5

fact-checkers ref1
masks ref1
media ref1, ref2
private messages ref1
social media ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6
transgender persons ref1
vaccines ref1, ref2, ref3
Wokeness ref1
Centers for Disease Control (CDC) (United States) ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9, ref10, ref11, ref12, ref13
centralisation ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8
chakras ref1
change agents ref1, ref2, ref3
chemtrails ref1, ref2, ref3
chief medical officers and scientific advisers ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6
children *see also* **young people**
abuse ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9, ref10
care, taken into ref1, ref2, ref3
education ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
energy ref1
family courts ref1
hand sanitisers ref1
human sacrifice ref1
lockdowns ref1, ref2, ref3
masks ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
mental health ref1
old people ref1
parents, replacement of ref1, ref2
Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a ref1, ref2
reframing ref1
smartphone addiction ref1

social distancing and isolation ref1
social media ref1
transgender persons ref1, ref2
United States ref1
vaccines ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9, ref10
Wetiko factor ref1
China ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
anal swab tests ref1
Chinese Revolution ref1, ref2, ref3
digital currency ref1
Global Cult ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9
guaranteed income ref1
Imperial College ref1
Israel ref1
lockdown ref1, ref2
masculinity crisis ref1
masks ref1
media ref1
origins of virus in China ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
pollution causing respiratory diseases ref1
Sabbatians ref1, ref2
Smart Grid ref1, ref2
social credit system ref1
testing ref1, ref2
United States ref1, ref2
vaccines ref1, ref2
Wetiko factor ref1
wet market conspiracy ref1
Wuhan ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7
cholesterol ref1, ref2
Christianity ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
criticism ref1
cross, inversion of the ref1

Nag Hammadi texts ref1, ref2, ref3
Roman Catholic Church ref1, ref2
Sabbatians ref1, ref2
Satan ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Wokeness ref1
class ref1, ref2
climate change hoax ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
Agenda 21/Agenda 2030 ref1, ref2, ref3
carbon dioxide ref1, ref2
Club of Rome ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
fear ref1
funding ref1
Global Cult ref1
green new deals ref1
green parties ref1
inversion ref1
perception, control of ref1
PICC ref1
reframing ref1
temperature, increases in ref1
United Nations ref1, ref2
Wikipedia ref1
Wokeness ref1, ref2
Clinton, Bill ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6
Clinton, Hillary ref1, ref2, ref3
the cloud ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7
Club of Rome and climate change hoax ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
cognitive therapy ref1
Cohn, Roy ref1
Common Law ref1
Admiralty Law ref1
arrests ref1, ref2

contractual law, Statute Law as ref1
corporate entities, people as ref1
legalese ref1
sea, law of the ref1
Statute Law ref1
Common Purpose leadership programme ref1, ref2
communism ref1, ref2
co-morbidities ref1
computer-generated virus,
Covid-19 as ref1, ref2, ref3
computer models ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
connections ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
consciousness ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Archons ref1, ref2, ref3
expanded ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7
experience ref1
heart ref1
infinity ref1, ref2
religion ref1, ref2
self-identity ref1
simulation thesis ref1
vaccines ref1
Wetiko factor ref1, ref2
conspiracy theorists ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
contradictory rules ref1
contrails ref1
Corman-Drosten test ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
countermimicry ref1, ref2, ref3
Covid-19 vaccines *see* vaccines
Covidiots ref1, ref2
Cowan, Tom ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
crimes against humanity ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8

cyber-operations ref1
cyberwarfare ref1

D

DARPA (Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency) ref1
deaths
  care homes ref1
  certificates ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
  mortality rate ref1
  post-mortems/autopsies ref1
  recording ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7
  vaccines ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
deceit
  pyramid of deceit ref1, ref2
  sequence of deceit ref1
decoding ref1, ref2, ref3
dehumanisation ref1, ref2, ref3
Delphi technique ref1
democracy ref1
dependency ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
Descartes, René ref1
DNA
  numbers ref1
  vaccines ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9, ref10
DNR (do not resuscitate)
  orders ref1
domestic abuse ref1, ref2
downgrading of Covid-19 ref1
Drosten, Christian ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7
Duesberg, Peter ref1, ref2

E

economic abuse ref1
Edmunds, John ref1, ref2
education ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
electromagnetic spectrum ref1, ref2
Enders, John ref1
energy
  Archons ref1, ref2, ref3
  children and young people ref1
  consciousness ref1
  decoding ref1
  frequencies ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
  heart ref1
  human energy field ref1
  source, humans as an energy ref1, ref2
  vaccines ref1
  viruses ref1
ennoia ref1
Epstein, Jeffrey ref1, ref2
eternal 'I' ref1, ref2
ethylene oxide ref1
European Union ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Event ref1 *and* **Bill Gates** ref2
exosomes, Covid-19 as natural defence mechanism called ref1
experience ref1, ref2
Extinction Rebellion ref1, ref2

F

Facebook
  addiction ref1, 448–50
  Facebook

Archons ref1
censorship ref1, ref2, ref3
hate speech ref1
monopoly, as ref1
private messages, censorship of ref1
Sabbatians ref1
United States election fraud ref1
vaccines ref1
Wetiko factor ref1
fact-checkers ref1
Fauci, Anthony ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9, ref10, ref11, ref12
fear ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
climate change ref1
computer models ref1
conspiracy theories ref1
empty hospitals ref1
Italy ref1, ref2, ref3
lockdowns ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
masks ref1, ref2
media ref1, ref2
medical staff ref1
Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a ref1
Wetiko factor ref1, ref2
female infertility ref1
Fermi Paradox ref1
Ferguson, Neil ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7
fertility, decline in ref1
The Field ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8
finance *see* **banking, finance and money**
five-senses ref1, ref2
Archons ref1, ref2, ref3

censorship ref1
consciousness, expansion of ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6
decoding ref1
education ref1, ref2
the Field ref1, ref2
God, personification of ref1
infinity ref1, ref2
media ref1
paranormal ref1
perceptual programming ref1, ref2
Phantom Self ref1
pneuma not nous, using ref1
reincarnation ref1
self-identity ref1
Wetiko factor ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6
5G ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8
Floyd, George and protests, killing of ref1
flu, re-labelling of ref1, ref2, ref3
food and water, control of ref1, ref2
Freemasons ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6
Frei, Rosemary ref1
frequencies
addictions ref1
Archons ref1, ref2, ref3
awareness ref1
chanting and mantras ref1
consciousness ref1
decoding ref1, ref2
education ref1
electromagnetic (EMF) frequencies ref1
energy ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
fear ref1

the Field ref1, ref2 5G ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9, ref10
five-senses ref1, ref2
ghosts ref1
Gnostics ref1
hive-minds ref1
human, meaning of ref1
light ref1, ref2
love ref1, ref2
magnetism ref1
perception ref1
reality ref1, ref2, ref3
simulation ref1
terror ref1
vaccines ref1
Wetiko ref1, ref2, ref3
Fuellmich, Reiner ref1, ref2, ref3
furlough/rescue payments ref1

G

Gallo, Robert ref1, ref2, ref3
Gates, Bill
Archons ref1, ref2, ref3
climate change ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Daily Pass tracking system ref1
Epstein ref1
fascism ref1
five senses ref1
GAVI ref1
Great Reset ref1
GSK ref1
Imperial College ref1, ref2
Johns Hopkins University ref1, ref2, ref3

lockdowns ref1, ref2
masks ref1
Nuremberg trial, proposal for ref1, ref2
Rockefellers ref1, ref2
social distancing and isolation ref1
Sun, dimming the ref1
synthetic meat ref1, ref2
vaccines ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7
Wellcome Trust ref1
Wetiko factor ref1, ref2, ref3
WHO ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9, ref10
Wokeness ref1
World Economic Forum ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Gates, Melinda ref1, ref2, ref3
GAVI vaccine alliance ref1
genetics, manipulation of ref1, ref2, ref3
Germany ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6 *see also* **Nazi Germany**
Global Cult ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
anti-human, why Global Cult is ref1
Black Lives Matter (BLM) ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
China ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9
climate change hoax ref1
contradictory rules ref1
Covid-19 ref1, ref2, ref3
fascism ref1
geographical origins ref1
immigration ref1
Internet ref1
mainstream media ref1, ref2
masks ref1, ref2
monarchy ref1
non-human dimension ref1

perception ref1
political parties ref1, ref2
pyramidal hierarchy ref1, ref2, ref3
reframing ref1
Sabbantian-Frankism ref1, ref2
science, manipulation of ref1
spider and the web ref1
transgender persons ref1
vaccines ref1
who controls the Cult ref1
Wokeness ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
globalisation ref1, ref2
Gnostics ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
Google ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
government
behavioural scientists and psychologists, advice from ref1, ref2
definition ref1
Joint Biosecurity Centre (JBC) ref1
people, abusive relationship with ref1
Great Reset ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6
fascism ref1, ref2, ref3
financial system ref1
Human 2.0 ref1
water and food, control of ref1
green parties ref1
Griesz-Brisson, Margarite ref1
guaranteed income ref1, ref2, ref3

H

Hancock, Matt ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
hand sanitisers ref1
heart ref1, ref2

hive-minds/groupthink ref1, ref2, ref3
holographs ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
hospitals, empty ref1
human, meaning of ref1
Human 2.0 ref1
addiction to technology ref1
artificial intelligence (AI) ref1, ref2
elimination of Human 1.0 ref1
fertility, decline in ref1
Great Reset ref1
implantables ref1
money ref1
mRNA ref1
nanotechnology ref1
parents, replacement of ref1, ref2
Smart Grid, connection to ref1, ref2
synthetic biology ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
testosterone levels, decrease in ref1
transgender = transhumanism ref1, ref2, ref3
vaccines ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
human sacrifice ref1, ref2, ref3
Hunger Games Society ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7
Huxley, Aldous ref1, ref2, ref3

I

identity politics ref1, ref2, ref3
Illuminati ref1, ref2
illusory physical reality ref1
immigration ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Imperial College ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6
implantables ref1, ref2

incomes, destruction of ref1, ref2
Infinite Awareness ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Internet ref1, ref2 *see also* social media
  artificial intelligence (AI) ref1
  independent journalism, lack of ref1
  Internet of Bodies (IoB) ref1
Internet of Everything (IoE) ref1, ref2
Internet of Things (IoT) ref1, ref2
lockdowns ref1
Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a ref1
  trolls ref1
intersectionality ref1
inversion
  Archons ref1, ref2, ref3
  climate change hoax ref1
  energy ref1
  Judaism ref1, ref2, ref3
  symbolism ref1
  Wetiko factor ref1
  Wokeness ref1, ref2, ref3
Islam
  Archons ref1
  crypto-Jews ref1
  Islamic State ref1, ref2
  Jinn and Djinn ref1, ref2, ref3
  Ottoman Empire ref1
  Wahhabism ref1
isolation *see* **social distancing** *and* **isolation**
Israel
  China ref1
  Cyber Intelligence Unit Beersheba complex ref1
  expansion of illegal settlements ref1

formation ref1
Global Cult ref1
Judaism ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
medical experiments, consent for ref1
Mossad ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Palestine-Israel conflict ref1, ref2, ref3
parents, replacement of ref1
Sabbatians ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
September 11, 2001, terrorist attacks on United States ref1
Silicon Valley ref1
Smart Grid ref1, ref2
United States ref1, ref2
vaccines ref1
Wetiko factor ref1

Italy
fear ref1, ref2, ref3
Lombardy ref1, ref2, ref3
vaccines ref1

J

Johns Hopkins University ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7
Johnson, Boris ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8
Joint Biosecurity Centre (JBC) ref1
Judaism
anti-Semitism ref1, ref2, ref3
Archons ref1, ref2
crypto-Jews ref1
inversion ref1, ref2, ref3
Israel ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
Labour Party ref1
Nazi Germany ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Sabbatians ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5

Silicon Valley ref1
Torah ref1
United States ref1, ref2
Zionists ref1, ref2, ref3

K

Kaufman, Andrew ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
knowledge ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6
Koch's postulates ref1
Kurzweil, Ray ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7
Kushner, Jared **ref1**, **ref2**

L

Labour Party ref1, ref2
Lanka, Stefan ref1, ref2
Lateral Flow Device (LFD) ref1
Levy, Paul ref1, ref2, ref3
Life Program ref1
lockdowns ref1, ref2, ref3
amplification tampering ref1
Archons ref1
Behavioural Insights Team ref1
Black Lives Matter (BLM) ref1
care homes, deaths in ref1
children
abuse ref1, ref2
mental health ref1
China ref1, ref2
computer models ref1
consequences ref1, ref2
dependency ref1, ref2, ref3

domestic abuse ref1
fall in cases ref1
fear ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
guaranteed income ref1
Hunger Games Society ref1, ref2, ref3
interaction, destroying ref1
Internet ref1, ref2
overdoses ref1
perception ref1
police-military state ref1, ref2
protests ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
psychopathic personality ref1, ref2, ref3
reporting/snitching, encouragement of ref1, ref2
testing ref1
vaccines ref1
Wetiko factor ref1
WHO ref1
love ref1, ref2, ref3
Lucifer ref1, ref2, ref3

M

Madej, Carrie ref1, ref2
Magufuli, John ref1, ref2
mainstream media ref1
BBC ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8
censorship ref1, ref2
China ref1
climate change hoax ref1
fear ref1, ref2
Global Cult ref1, ref2
independent journalism, lack of ref1
Ofcom ref1, ref2, ref3

perception ref1, ref2
Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a ref1
Sabbatians ref1, ref2
social disapproval ref1
social distancing and isolation ref1
United States ref1, ref2
vaccines ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
Mao Zedong ref1, ref2, ref3
Marx and Marxism ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6
masculinity ref1
masks/face coverings ref1, ref2, ref3
censorship ref1
children ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
China, made in ref1
dehumanisation ref1, ref2, ref3
fear ref1, ref2
flu ref1
health professionals ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
isolation ref1
laughter ref1
mass non-cooperation ref1
microplastics, risk of ref1
mind control ref1
multiple masks ref1
oxygen deficiency ref1, ref2, ref3
police ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
pollution, as cause of plastic ref1
Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a ref1
reframing ref1, ref2
risk assessments, lack of ref1, ref2
self-respect ref1
surgeons ref1

United States ref1
vaccines ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
Wetiko factor ref1
'worms' ref1
The Matrix movies ref1, ref2, ref3
measles ref1, ref2
media see mainstream media
Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (MHRA) ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Mesopotamia ref1
messaging ref1
military-police state ref1, ref2, ref3
mind control ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6 *see also* **MKUltra**
MKUltra ref1, ref2, ref3
monarchy ref1
money *see* **banking, finance and money**
Montagnier, Luc ref1, ref2, ref3
Mooney, Bel ref1
Morgellons disease ref1, ref2
mortality rate ref1
Mullis, Kary ref1, ref2, ref3
Musk, Elon ref1

N

Nag Hammadi texts ref1, ref2, ref3
nanotechnology ref1, ref2, ref3
narcissism ref1
Nazi Germany ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8
near-death experiences ref1, ref2
Neocons ref1, ref2, ref3

Neuro-Linguistic Programming (NLP) and the Delphi technique ref1
NHS (National Health Service)
amplification cycles ref1
Common Purpose ref1, ref2
mind control ref1
NHS England ref1
saving the NHS ref1, ref2
vaccines ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
whistle-blowers ref1, ref2, ref3
No-Problem-Reaction-Solution ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
non-human dimension of Global Cult ref1
nous ref1
numbers, reality as ref1
Nuremberg Codes ref1, ref2, ref3
Nuremberg-like tribunal, proposal for ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9, ref10, ref11, ref12

O

Obama, Barack ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9, ref10
O'Brien, Cathy ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Ochel, Evita ref1
Ofcom ref1, ref2, ref3
old people ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
Oneness ref1, ref2, ref3
Open Society Foundations (Soros) ref1, ref2, ref3
oxygen 406, 528–34

P

paedophilia ref1, ref2
Page, Larry ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7

Palestine-Israel conflict ref1, ref2, ref3
pandemic, definition of ref1
pandemic and health crisis scenarios/simulations ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
paranormal ref1
PCR tests ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8
Pearl Harbor attacks, prior knowledge of ref1
Pelosi, Nancy ref1, ref2, ref3
perception ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
  climate change hoax ref1
  control ref1, ref2, ref3
  decoding ref1, ref2
  enslavement ref1
  externally-delivered perceptions ref1
  five senses ref1
  human labels ref1
  media ref1, ref2
  political parties ref1, ref2
  Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a ref1
  sale of perception ref1
  self-identity ref1, ref2
  Wokeness ref1
Phantom Self ref1, ref2, ref3
pharmaceutical industry *see* **Big Pharma**
phthalates ref1
Plato's Allegory of the Cave ref1, ref2
pneuma ref1
police
  Black Lives Matter (BLM) ref1
  brutality ref1
  citizen's arrests ref1, ref2
  common law arrests ref1, ref2

Common Purpose ref1
defunding ref1
lockdowns ref1, ref2
masks ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
police-military state ref1, ref2, ref3
psychopathic personality ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
reframing ref1
United States ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Wokeness ref1

polio ref1

political correctness ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4

political parties ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4

political puppets ref1

pollution ref1, ref2, ref3

post-mortems/autopsies ref1

Postage Stamp Consensus ref1, ref2

pre-emptive programming ref1

Problem-Reaction-Solution ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8

Project for the New American Century ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4

psychopathic personality ref1
Archons ref1
heart energy ref1
lockdowns ref1, ref2, ref3
police ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
recruitment ref1, ref2
vaccines ref1
wealth ref1
Wetiko ref1, ref2

Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5

Pushbackers ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4

pyramid structure ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4

Q

QAnon Psyop ref1, ref2, ref3

R

racism *see also* **Black Lives**
Matter (BLM)
anti-racism industry ref1
class ref1
critical race theory ref1
culture ref1
intersectionality ref1
reverse racism ref1
white privilege ref1, ref2
white supremacy ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
Wokeness ref1, ref2, ref3
radiation ref1, ref2
randomness, illusion of ref1, ref2, ref3
reality ref1, ref2, ref3
reframing ref1, ref2
change agents ref1, ref2
children ref1
climate change ref1
Common Purpose leadership programme ref1, ref2
contradictory rules ref1
enforcers ref1
masks ref1, ref2
NLP and the Delphi technique ref1
police ref1
Wetiko factor ref1
Wokeness ref1, ref2
religion *see also* particular religions
alien invasions ref1

Archons ref1, ref2
consciousness ref1, ref2
control, system of ref1, ref2, ref3
criticism, prohibition on ref1
five senses ref1
good and evil, war between ref1
hidden non-human forces ref1, ref2
Sabbatians ref1
save me syndrome ref1
Wetiko ref1
Wokeness ref1
repetition and mind control ref1, ref2, ref3
reporting/snitching, encouragement of ref1, ref2
Reptilians/Grey entities ref1
rewiring the mind ref1
Rivers, Thomas Milton ref1, ref2
Rockefeller family ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9
Rockefeller Foundation documents ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Roman Empire ref1
Rothschild family ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9
RT-PCR tests ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8
Russia
collusion inquiry in US ref1
Russian Revolution ref1, ref2
Sabbatians ref1

S

Sabbantian-Frankism ref1, ref2
anti-Semitism ref1, ref2
banking and finance ref1, ref2, ref3
China ref1, ref2
Israel ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5

Judaism ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
Lucifer ref1
media ref1, ref2
Nazis ref1, ref2
QAnon ref1
Rothschilds ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6
Russia ref1
Saudi Arabia ref1
Silicon Valley ref1
Sumer ref1
United States ref1, ref2, ref3
Wetiko factor ref1
Wokeness ref1, ref2, ref3

SAGE (Scientific Advisory Group for Emergencies) ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4

SARS-1 ref1

SARs-CoV-2 ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8

Satan/Satanism ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7

satellites in low-orbit ref1

Saudi Arabia ref1

Save Me Syndrome ref1

scapegoating ref1

Schwab, Klaus ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9, ref10, ref11, ref12

science, manipulation of ref1

self-identity ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4

self-respect, attacks on ref1

September 11, 2001, terrorist attacks on United States ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4

77th Brigade of UK military ref1, ref2, ref3

Silicon Valley/tech giants ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6 *see also* **Facebook**

Israel ref1
Sabbatians ref1
technocracy ref1
Wetiko factor ref1
Wokeness ref1
simulation hypothesis ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
Smart Grid ref1, ref2, ref3
artificial intelligence (AI) ref1
China ref1, ref2
control centres ref1
the Field ref1
Great Reset ref1
Human 2.0 ref1, ref2
Israel ref1, ref2
vaccines ref1
Wetiko factor ref1
social disapproval ref1
social distancing *and* **isolation** ref1, ref2, ref3
abusive relationships ref1, ref2
children ref1
flats and apartments ref1
heart issues ref1
hugs ref1
Internet ref1
masks ref1
media ref1
older people ref1, ref2
one-metre (three feet) rule ref1
rewiring the mind ref1
simulation, universe as a ref1
SPI-B ref1
substance abuse ref1

suicide and self-harm ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
technology ref1
torture, as ref1, ref2
two-metre (six feet) rule ref1
women ref1
social justice ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
social media *see also* **Facebook bans on alternative views** ref1
censorship ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6
children ref1
emotion ref1
perception ref1
private messages ref1
Twitter ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7
Wetiko factor ref1
YouTube ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
Soros, George ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6
Spain ref1
SPI-B (Scientific Pandemic Insights Group on Behaviours) ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
spider and the web ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Starmer, Keir ref1
Statute Law ref1
Steiner, Rudolf ref1, ref2, ref3
Stockholm syndrome ref1
streptomycin ref1
suicide and self-harm ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
Sumer ref1, ref2
Sunstein, Cass ref1, ref2, ref3
swine flu (H1N1) ref1, ref2, ref3
synchronicity ref1
synthetic biology ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
synthetic meat ref1, ref2

T

technology *see also* **artificial intelligence (AI); Internet;**
social media addiction ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Archons ref1, ref2
the cloud ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7
cyber-operations ref1
cyberwarfare ref1
radiation ref1, ref2
social distancing and isolation ref1
technocracy ref1
Tedros Adhanom Ghebreyesus ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9, ref10, ref11, ref12, ref13
telepathy ref1
Tenpenny, Sherri ref1
Tesla, Nikola ref1
testosterone levels, decrease in ref1
testing for Covid-19 ref1, ref2
anal swab tests ref1
cancer ref1
China ref1, ref2, ref3
Corman-Drosten test ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
death certificates ref1, ref2
fraudulent testing ref1
genetic material, amplification of ref1
Lateral Flow Device (LFD) ref1
PCR tests ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8
vaccines ref1, ref2, ref3
Thunberg, Greta ref1, ref2, ref3
Totalitarian Tiptoe ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
transgender persons
activism ref1
artificial wombs ref1

censorship ref1
child abuse ref1, ref2
Human 2.0 ref1, ref2, ref3
Wokeness ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
women, deletion of rights and status of ref1, ref2
young persons ref1
travel restrictions ref1
Trudeau, Justin ref1, ref2, ref3
Trump, Donald ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9, ref10, ref11
Twitter **ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7**

U

UKColumn ref1, ref2
United Nations (UN) ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5 *see also* **Agenda 21/Agenda 2030 (UN)**
United States ref1, ref2
American Revolution ref1
borders ref1, ref2
Capitol Hill riot ref1, ref2
children ref1
China ref1, ref2
CIA ref1, ref2
Daily Pass tracking system ref1
demographics by immigration, changes in ref1
Democrats ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7
election fraud ref1
far-right domestic terrorists, pushbackers as ref1
Federal Reserve ref1
flu/respiratory diseases statistics ref1
Global Cult ref1, ref2
hand sanitisers, FDA warnings on ref1

immigration, effects of illegal ref1
impeachment ref1
Israel ref1, ref2
Judaism ref1, ref2, ref3
lockdown ref1
masks ref1
mass media ref1, ref2
nursing homes ref1
Pentagon ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
police ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
pushbackers ref1
Republicans ref1, ref2
borders ref1, ref2
Democrats ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
Russia, inquiry into collusion with ref1
Sabbatians ref1, ref2, ref3
September 11, 2001, terrorist attacks ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
UFO sightings, release of information on ref1
vaccines ref1
white supremacy ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Woke Democrats ref1, ref2

V

vaccines ref1, ref2, ref3
adverse reactions ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
Africa ref1
anaphylactic shock ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
animals ref1, ref2
anti-vax movement ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
AstraZeneca/Oxford ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
autoimmune diseases, rise in ref1, ref2
Big Pharma ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8

bioweapon, as real ref1, ref2
black and ethnic minority communities ref1
blood clots ref1, ref2
Brain Computer Interface (BCI) ref1
care homes, deaths in ref1
censorship ref1, ref2, ref3
chief medical officers and scientific advisers, financial interests of ref1, ref2
children ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9, ref10
China ref1, ref2
clinical trials ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6
compensation ref1
compulsory vaccinations ref1, ref2, ref3
computer programs ref1
consciousness ref1
cover-ups ref1
creation before Covid ref1
cytokine storm ref1
deaths and illnesses caused by vaccines ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
definition ref1
developing countries ref1
digital tattoos ref1
DNA-manipulation ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9, ref10
emergency approval ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
female infertility ref1
funding ref1
genetic suicide ref1
Global Cult ref1
heart chakras ref1
hesitancy ref1
Human 2.0 ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
immunity from prosecution ref1, ref2, ref3

implantable technology ref1
Israel ref1
Johnson & Johnson ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
lockdowns ref1
long-term effects ref1
mainstream media ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
masks ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (MHRA) ref1, ref2
messaging ref1
Moderna ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6
mRNA vaccines ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9
nanotechnology ref1, ref2
NHS ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
older people ref1, ref2
operating system ref1
passports ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Pfizer/BioNTech ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7
polyethylene glycol ref1
pregnant women ref1
psychopathic personality ref1
races, targeting different ref1
reverse transcription ref1
Smart Grid ref1
social distancing ref1
social media ref1
sterility ref1
synthetic material, introduction of ref1
tests ref1, ref2, ref3
travel restrictions ref1
variants ref1, ref2
viruses, existence of ref1
whistle-blowing ref1

WHO ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Wokeness ref1
working, vaccine as ref1
young people ref1
Vallance, Patrick ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9
variants ref1, ref2, ref3
vegans ref1
ventilators ref1, ref2
virology ref1, ref2
virtual reality ref1, ref2, ref3
viruses, existence of ref1
visual reality ref1, ref2
vitamin D ref1, ref2
von Braun, Wernher ref1, ref2

W

war-zone hospital myths ref1
waveforms ref1, ref2
wealth ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9 ref10, ref11
wet market conspiracy ref1
Wetiko factor ref1
alcoholism and drug addiction ref1
anti-human, why Global Cult is ref1
Archons ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
artificial intelligence (AI) ref1
Big Pharma ref1, ref2
children ref1
China ref1
consciousness ref1, ref2
education ref1
Facebook ref1

fear ref1, ref2
frequency ref1, ref2
Gates ref1, ref2
Global Cult ref1, ref2
heart ref1, ref2
lockdowns ref1
masks ref1
Native American concept ref1
psychopathic personality ref1, ref2
reframing/retraining programmes ref1
religion ref1
Silicon Valley ref1
Smart Grid ref1
smartphone addiction ref1, ref2
social media ref1
war ref1, ref2
WHO ref1
Wokeness ref1, ref2, ref3
Yaldabaoth ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4

whistle-blowing ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7

white privilege ref1, ref2

white supremacy ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5

Whitty, Christopher ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9, ref10

'who benefits' ref1

Wi-Fi ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4

Wikipedia ref1, ref2

Wojcicki, Susan ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7

Wokeness
Antifa ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
anti-Semitism ref1
billionaire social justice warriors ref1, ref2, ref3

Capitol Hill riot ref1, ref2
censorship ref1
Christianity ref1
climate change hoax ref1, ref2
culture ref1
education, control of ref1
emotion ref1
facts ref1
fascism ref1, ref2, ref3
Global Cult ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
group-think ref1
immigration ref1
indigenous people, solidarity with ref1
inversion ref1, ref2, ref3
left, hijacking the ref1, ref2
Marxism ref1, ref2, ref3
mind control ref1
New Woke ref1
Old Woke ref1
Oneness ref1
perceptual programming ref1
Phantom Self ref1
police ref1
defunding the ref1
reframing ref1
public institutions ref1
Pushbackers ref1, ref2, ref3
racism ref1, ref2, ref3
reframing ref1, ref2
religion, as ref1
Sabbatians ref1, ref2, ref3
Silicon Valley ref1
social justice ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4

transgender ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
United States ref1, ref2
vaccines ref1
Wetiko factor ref1, ref2, ref3
young people ref1, ref2, ref3
women, deletion of rights and status of ref1, ref2
World Economic Forum (WEF) ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9
World Health Organization (WHO) ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9
AIDs/HIV ref1
amplification cycles ref1
Big Pharma ref1, ref2, ref3
cooperation in health emergencies ref1
creation ref1, ref2
fatality rate ref1
funding ref1, ref2, ref3
Gates ref1
Internet ref1
lockdown ref1
vaccines ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Wetiko factor ref1
world number 1 (masses) ref1, ref2
world number 2 ref1
Wuhan ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7 ref8

Y

Yaldabaoth ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6
Yeadon, Michael ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
young people *see also* **children** addiction to technology ref1
Human 2.0 ref1
vaccines ref1, ref2

Wokeness ref1, ref2, ref3
YouTube ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
WHO 548

Z

Zaks, Tal ref1
Zionism ref1, ref2, ref3
Zuckerberg, Mark ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9, ref10, ref11, ref12
Zulus ref1

ICKONIC
THE ALTERNATIVE

Ickonic is something that has been a dream of mine for the last 5 years, growing up around alternative information I have always had a natural interest in what is going on in the World and what could I do to make it better.
Across the range of subjects and positions of influence occupied mainly by people who don't strive to make things better it's the Media that I have always found the most frustrating and fascinating. Mainly because if the Media did their Jobs properly then so much of the negative things happening in the World simply would not be able to happen, because they would be exposed within a heartbeat.
Free Press and the Opportunities that the internet could have given would mean that the Media are able to expose things like never before and hold people to account for their actions. As we all know there are 'Untouchables' that walk among us, people the Media simply won't touch, expose or investigate and that leads to the dark underworlds that infest the establishment the World over.
Well I say enough, it's time for something different, a different kind of Media, where no one is off limits from exposing and investigating. All we're interested in at Ickonic is the truth of what is really going on in the World on whichever subject we're covering.
We hope you enjoy what we have created and take something away from the platform, we aim to deliver information that's informative and most importantly self-empowering, you're not a little person, you're part of something much bigger than that and its time we as a collective race began to understand that and look to the future as ours to take.

It's time...

Jaymie Icke - Founder Ickonic Alternative Media.

SIGN UP NOW AT ICKONIC.COM

DAVID ICKE

THE ANSWER

We live in extraordinary times with billions bewildered and seeking answers for what is happening. David Icke, the man who has been proved right again and again, has spent 30 years uncovering the truth behind world affairs and in a stream of previous books he predicted current events.

The Answer will change your every perception of life and the world and set you free of the illusions that control human society. There is nothing more vital for our collective freedom than humanity becoming aware of what is in this book.

Available now at davidicke.com.

THE TRIGGER

THE LIE THAT CHANGED THE WORLD – WHO REALLY DID IT AND WHY

DAVID ICKE

EVERYTHING YOU NEED TO KNOW

BUT HAVE NEVER BEEN TOLD

DAVID ICKE

DAVIDICKE.COM

DAVID ICKE STORE

LATEST NEWS ARTICLES

DAVID ICKE VIDEOS

WEEKLY DOT-CONNECTOR PODCASTS

LIVE EVENTS

WWW.DAVIDICKE.COM

THE LIFE STORY OF DAVID ICKE

RENEGADE

THE FEATURE LENGTH FILM

/ˈren·ɪˌɡeɪd/

noun

A person who behaves in a rebelliously unconventional manner.

AVAILABLE NOW AT DAVIDICKE.COM

2 NEW BOOKS
BY NEIL HAGUE
ORION'S DOOR
SYMBOLS OF CONSCIOUSNESS & BLUEPRINTS OF CONTROL
- THE STORY OF ORION'S INFLUENCE OVER HUMANITY
CUTTING EDGE VISIONARY ART
& UNIQUE ILLUSTRATED BOOKS
THE DR. COVID UNIVERSE
ADVENTURES IN CLOWNLAND
NEIL HAGUE
FOR
BOOKS, PRINTS & T-SHIRTS
VISIT:
NEILHAGUEBOOKS.COM
OR NEILHAGUE.COM

Before you go ...

For more detail, background and evidence about the subjects in *Perceptions of a Renegade Mind* – and so much more – see my others books including *And The Truth Shall Set You Free; The Biggest Secret; Children of the Matrix; The David Icke Guide to the Global Conspiracy; Tales from the Time Loop; The Perception Deception; Remember Who You Are; Human Race Get Off Your Knees; Phantom Self; Everything You Need To Know But Have Never Been Told, The Trigger and The Answer*.

You can subscribe to the fantastic new Ickonic media platform where there are many hundreds of hours of cutting-edge information in videos, documentaries and series across a whole range of subjects which are added to every week. This includes my 90 minute breakdown of the week's news every Friday to explain *why* events are happening and to what end.

PERCEPTIONS OF A RENEGADE MIND

DAVID ICKE

PERCEPTIONS
OF A
RENEGADE
MIND
DAVID ICKE

PERCEPTIONS OF A RENEGADE MIND

ickonic
publishing

First published in July 2021.

New Enterprise House
St Helens Street
Derby
DE1 3GY
UK

email: gareth.icke@davidicke.com

Copyright © 2021 David Icke

No part of this book may be reproduced in any form without permission from the Publisher, except for the quotation of brief passages in criticism

Cover Design: Gareth Icke
Book Design: Neil Hague

British Library Cataloguing-in Publication Data
A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

eISBN 978-18384153-1-0

PERCEPTIONS OF A RENEGADE MIND

DAVID ICKE

Dedication:

To *Freeeeeedom!*

ICKONIC
THE ALTERNATIVE

NEW. DIFFERENT. REVOLUTIONARY

HUNDREDS OF CUTTING EDGE DOCUMENTARIES,
FEATURE FILMS, SERIES & PODCASTS.

SIGN UP NOW AT ICKONIC.COM

THE LIFE STORY OF DAVID ICKE

RENEGADE

THE FEATURE LENGTH FILM

AVAILABLE NOW AT DAVIDICKE.COM

Renegade:
Adjective
'Having rejected tradition: Unconventional.'
Merriam-Webster Dictionary

Acquiescence to tyranny is the death of the spirit

You may be 38 years old, as I happen to be. And one day, some great opportunity stands before you and calls you to stand up for some great principle, some great issue, some great cause. And you refuse to do it because you are afraid … You refuse to do it because you want to live longer … You're afraid that you will lose your job, or you are afraid that you will be criticised or that you will lose your popularity, or you're afraid that somebody will stab you, or shoot at you or bomb your house; so you refuse to take the stand.

Well, you may go on and live until you are 90, but you're just as dead at 38 as you would be at 90. And the cessation of breathing in your life is but the belated announcement of an earlier death of the spirit.

Martin Luther King

How the few control the many and always have – the many do whatever they're told

'Forward, the Light Brigade!'
Was there a man dismayed?
Not though the soldier knew
Someone had blundered.
Theirs not to make reply,
Theirs not to reason why,
Theirs but to do and die.
Into the valley of Death
Rode the six hundred.

Cannon to right of them,
Cannon to left of them,
Cannon in front of them
Volleyed and thundered;
Stormed at with shot and shell,
Boldly they rode and well,
Into the jaws of Death,
Into the mouth of hell
Rode the six hundred

Alfred Lord Tennyson (1809-1892)

The mist is lifting slowly
I can see the way ahead
And I've left behind the empty streets
That once inspired my life
And the strength of the emotion
Is like thunder in the air
'Cos the promise that we made each other
Haunts me to the end

The secret of your beauty
And the mystery of your soul
I've been searching for in everyone I meet
And the times I've been mistaken
It's impossible to say
And the grass is growing
Underneath our feet

The words that I remember
From my childhood still are true
That there's none so blind
As those who will not see
And to those who lack the courage
And say it's dangerous to try
Well they just don't know
That love eternal will not be denied

I know you're out there somewhere
Somewhere, somewhere
I know you're out there somewhere

Somewhere you can hear my voice
I know I'll find you somehow
Somehow, somehow
I know I'll find you somehow
And somehow I'll return again to you

The Moody Blues

Are you a gutless wonder - or a Renegade Mind?

Monuments put from pen to paper,
Turns me into a gutless wonder,
And if you tolerate this,
Then your children will be next.
Gravity keeps my head down,
Or is it maybe shame ...

Manic Street Preachers

Rise like lions after slumber
In unvanquishable number.
Shake your chains to earth like dew
Which in sleep have fallen on you.
Ye are many – they are few.

Percy Shelley

Contents

CHAPTER 1 'I'm thinking' – Oh, but *are* you?
CHAPTER 2 Renegade perception
CHAPTER 3 The Pushbacker sting
CHAPTER 4 'Covid': The calculated catastrophe
CHAPTER 5 There *is no* 'virus'
CHAPTER 6 Sequence of deceit
CHAPTER 7 War on your mind
CHAPTER 8 'Reframing' insanity
CHAPTER 9 We must have it? So what is it?
CHAPTER 10 Human 2.0
CHAPTER 11 Who controls the Cult?
CHAPTER 12 Escaping Wetiko

POSTSCRIPT
APPENDIX Cowan-Kaufman-Morell Statement on Virus Isolation
BIBLIOGRAPHY
INDEX

CHAPTER ONE

I'm thinking' – Oh, but *are* you?

Think for yourself and let others enjoy the privilege of doing so too
Voltaire

French-born philosopher, mathematician and scientist René Descartes became famous for his statement in Latin in the 17th century which translates into English as: 'I think, therefore I am.'

On the face of it that is true. Thought reflects perception and perception leads to both behaviour and self-identity. In that sense 'we' are what we think. But who or what is doing the thinking and is thinking the only route to perception? Clearly, as we shall see, 'we' are not always the source of 'our' perception, indeed with regard to humanity as a whole this is rarely the case; and thinking is far from the only means of perception. Thought is the village idiot compared with other expressions of consciousness that we all have the potential to access and tap into. This has to be true when we *are* those other expressions of consciousness which are infinite in nature. We have forgotten this, or, more to the point, been manipulated to forget.

These are not just the esoteric musings of the navel. The whole foundation of human control and oppression is control of perception. Once perception is hijacked then so is behaviour which is dictated by perception. Collective perception becomes collective behaviour and collective behaviour is what we call human society. Perception is all and those behind human control know that which is

why perception is the target 24/7 of the psychopathic manipulators that I call the Global Cult. They know that if they dictate perception they will dictate behaviour and collectively dictate the nature of human society. They are further aware that perception is formed from information received and if they control the circulation of information they will to a vast extent direct human behaviour. Censorship of information and opinion has become globally Nazi-like in recent years and never more blatantly than since the illusory 'virus pandemic' was triggered out of China in 2019 and across the world in 2020. Why have billions submitted to house arrest and accepted fascistic societies in a way they would have never believed possible? Those controlling the information spewing from government, mainstream media and Silicon Valley (all controlled by the same Global Cult networks) told them they were in danger from a 'deadly virus' and only by submitting to house arrest and conceding their most basic of freedoms could they and their families be protected. This monumental and provable lie became the *perception* of the billions and therefore the *behaviour* of the billions. In those few words you have the whole structure and modus operandi of human control. Fear is a perception – **F**alse **E**motion **A**ppearing **R**eal – and fear is the currency of control. In short … get them by the balls (or give them the impression that you have) and their hearts and minds will follow. Nothing grips the dangly bits and freezes the rear-end more comprehensively than fear.

World number 1

There are two 'worlds' in what appears to be one 'world' and the prime difference between them is knowledge. First we have the mass of human society in which the population is maintained in coldly-calculated ignorance through control of information and the 'education' (indoctrination) system. That's all you really need to control to enslave billions in a perceptual delusion in which what are perceived to be *their* thoughts and opinions are ever-repeated mantras that the system has been downloading all their lives through 'education', media, science, medicine, politics and academia

in which the personnel and advocates are themselves overwhelmingly the perceptual products of the same repetition. Teachers and academics in general are processed by the same programming machine as everyone else, but unlike the great majority they never leave the 'education' program. It gripped them as students and continues to grip them as programmers of subsequent generations of students. The programmed become the programmers – the programmed programmers. The same can largely be said for scientists, doctors and politicians and not least because as the American writer Upton Sinclair said: 'It is difficult to get a man to understand something when his salary depends upon his not understanding it.' If your career and income depend on thinking the way the system demands then you will – bar a few free-minded exceptions – concede your mind to the Perceptual Mainframe that I call the Postage Stamp Consensus. This is a tiny band of perceived knowledge and possibility 'taught' (downloaded) in the schools and universities, pounded out by the mainstream media and on which all government policy is founded. Try thinking, and especially speaking and acting, outside of the 'box' of consensus and see what that does for your career in the Mainstream Everything which bullies, harasses, intimidates and ridicules the population into compliance. Here we have the simple structure which enslaves most of humanity in a perceptual prison cell for an entire lifetime and I'll go deeper into this process shortly. Most of what humanity is taught as fact is nothing more than programmed belief. American science fiction author Frank Herbert was right when he said: 'Belief can be manipulated. Only knowledge is dangerous.' In the 'Covid' age belief is promoted and knowledge is censored. It was always so, but never to the extreme of today.

World number 2

A 'number 2' is slang for 'doing a poo' and how appropriate that is when this other 'world' is doing just that on humanity every minute of every day. World number 2 is a global network of secret societies and semi-secret groups dictating the direction of society via

governments, corporations and authorities of every kind. I have spent more than 30 years uncovering and exposing this network that I call the Global Cult and knowing its agenda is what has made my books so accurate in predicting current and past events. Secret societies are secret for a reason. They want to keep their hoarded knowledge to themselves and their chosen initiates and to hide it from the population which they seek through ignorance to control and subdue. The whole foundation of the division between World 1 and World 2 is *knowledge*. What number 1 knows number 2 must not. Knowledge they have worked so hard to keep secret includes (a) the agenda to enslave humanity in a centrally-controlled global dictatorship, and (b) the nature of reality and life itself. The latter (b) must be suppressed to allow the former (a) to prevail as I shall be explaining. The way the Cult manipulates and interacts with the population can be likened to a spider's web. The 'spider' sits at the centre in the shadows and imposes its will through the web with each strand represented in World number 2 by a secret society, satanic or semi-secret group, and in World number 1 – the world of the seen – by governments, agencies of government, law enforcement, corporations, the banking system, media conglomerates and Silicon Valley (Fig 1 overleaf). The spider and the web connect and coordinate all these organisations to pursue the same global outcome while the population sees them as individual entities working randomly and independently. At the level of the web governments *are* the banking system *are* the corporations *are* the media *are* Silicon Valley *are* the World Health Organization working from their inner cores as one unit. Apparently unconnected countries, corporations, institutions, organisations and people are on the *same team* pursuing the same global outcome. Strands in the web immediately around the spider are the most secretive and exclusive secret societies and their membership is emphatically restricted to the Cult inner-circle emerging through the generations from particular bloodlines for reasons I will come to. At the core of the core you would get them in a single room. That's how many people are dictating the direction of human society and its transformation

through the 'Covid' hoax and other means. As the web expands out from the spider we meet the secret societies that many people will be aware of – the Freemasons, Knights Templar, Knights of Malta, Opus Dei, the inner sanctum of the Jesuit Order, and such like. Note how many are connected to the Church of Rome and there is a reason for that. The Roman Church was established as a revamp, a rebranding, of the relocated 'Church' of Babylon and the Cult imposing global tyranny today can be tracked back to Babylon and Sumer in what is now Iraq.

Figure 1: The global web through which the few control the many. (Image Neil Hague.)

Inner levels of the web operate in the unseen away from the public eye and then we have what I call the cusp organisations located at the point where the hidden meets the seen. They include a series of satellite organisations answering to a secret society founded in London in the late 19th century called the Round Table and among them are the Royal Institute of International Affairs (UK, founded in 1920); Council on Foreign Relations (US, 1921); Bilderberg Group (worldwide, 1954); Trilateral Commission (US/worldwide, 1972); and the Club of Rome (worldwide, 1968) which was created to exploit environmental concerns to justify the centralisation of global power to 'save the planet'. The Club of Rome instigated with others the human-caused climate change hoax which has led to all the 'green

new deals' demanding that very centralisation of control. Cusp organisations, which include endless 'think tanks' all over the world, are designed to coordinate a single global policy between political and business leaders, intelligence personnel, media organisations and anyone who can influence the direction of policy in their own sphere of operation. Major players and regular attenders will know what is happening – or some of it – while others come and go and are kept overwhelmingly in the dark about the big picture. I refer to these cusp groupings as semi-secret in that they can be publicly identified, but what goes on at the inner-core is kept very much 'in house' even from most of their members and participants through a fiercely-imposed system of compartmentalisation. Only let them know what they need to know to serve your interests and no more. The structure of secret societies serves as a perfect example of this principle. Most Freemasons never get higher than the bottom three levels of 'degree' (degree of knowledge) when there are 33 official degrees of the Scottish Rite. Initiates only qualify for the next higher 'compartment' or degree if those at that level choose to allow them. Knowledge can be carefully assigned only to those considered 'safe'. I went to my local Freemason's lodge a few years ago when they were having an 'open day' to show how cuddly they were and when I chatted to some of them I was astonished at how little the rank and file knew even about the most ubiquitous symbols they use. The mushroom technique – keep them in the dark and feed them bullshit – applies to most people in the web as well as the population as a whole. Sub-divisions of the web mirror in theme and structure transnational corporations which have a headquarters somewhere in the world dictating to all their subsidiaries in different countries. Subsidiaries operate in their methodology and branding to the same centrally-dictated plan and policy in pursuit of particular ends. The Cult web functions in the same way. Each country has its own web as a subsidiary of the global one. They consist of networks of secret societies, semi-secret groups and bloodline families and their job is to impose the will of the spider and the global web in their particular country. Subsidiary networks control and manipulate the national political system, finance, corporations, media, medicine, etc. to

ensure that they follow the globally-dictated Cult agenda. These networks were the means through which the 'Covid' hoax could be played out with almost every country responding in the same way.

The 'Yessir' pyramid

Compartmentalisation is the key to understanding how a tiny few can dictate the lives of billions when combined with a top-down sequence of imposition and acquiescence. The inner core of the Cult sits at the peak of the pyramidal hierarchy of human society (Fig 2 overleaf). It imposes its will – its agenda for the world – on the level immediately below which acquiesces to that imposition. This level then imposes the Cult will on the level below them which acquiesces and imposes on the next level. Very quickly we meet levels in the hierarchy that have no idea there even is a Cult, but the sequence of imposition and acquiescence continues down the pyramid in just the same way. 'I don't know why we are doing this but the order came from "on-high" and so we better just do it.' Alfred Lord Tennyson said of the cannon fodder levels in his poem *The Charge of the Light Brigade*: 'Theirs not to reason why; theirs but to do and die.' The next line says that 'into the valley of death rode the six hundred' and they died because they obeyed without question what their perceived 'superiors' told them to do. In the same way the population capitulated to 'Covid'. The whole hierarchical pyramid functions like this to allow the very few to direct the enormous many. Eventually imposition-acquiescence-imposition-acquiescence comes down to the mass of the population at the foot of the pyramid. If they acquiesce to those levels of the hierarchy imposing on them (governments/law enforcement/doctors/media) a circuit is completed between the population and the handful of super-psychopaths in the Cult inner core at the top of the pyramid. Without a circuit-breaking refusal to obey, the sequence of imposition and acquiescence allows a staggeringly few people to impose their will upon the entirety of humankind. We are looking at the very sequence that has subjugated billions since the start of 2020. Our freedom has not been taken from us. Humanity has given it

away. Fascists do not impose fascism because there are not enough of them. Fascism is imposed by the population acquiescing to fascism. Put another way allowing their perceptions to be programmed to the extent that leads to the population giving their freedom away by giving their perceptions – their mind – away. If this circuit is not broken by humanity ceasing to cooperate with their own enslavement then nothing can change. For that to happen people have to critically think and see through the lies and window dressing and then summon the backbone to act upon what they see. The Cult spends its days working to stop either happening and its methodology is systematic and highly detailed, but it can be overcome and that is what this book is all about.

Figure 2: The simple sequence of imposition and compliance that allows a handful of people at the peak of the pyramid to dictate the lives of billions.

The Life Program

Okay, back to world number 1 or the world of the 'masses'. Observe the process of what we call 'life' and it is a perceptual download from cradle to grave. The Cult has created a global structure in which perception can be programmed and the program continually topped-up with what appears to be constant confirmation that the program is indeed true reality. The important word here is 'appears'.

This is the structure, the fly-trap, the Postage Stamp Consensus or Perceptual Mainframe, which represents that incredibly narrow band of perceived possibility delivered by the 'education' system, mainstream media, science and medicine. From the earliest age the download begins with parents who have themselves succumbed to the very programming their children are about to go through. Most parents don't do this out of malevolence and mostly it is quite the opposite. They do what they believe is best for their children and that is what the program has told them is best. Within three or four years comes the major transition from parental programming to full-blown state (Cult) programming in school, college and university where perceptually-programmed teachers and academics pass on their programming to the next generations. Teachers who resist are soon marginalised and their careers ended while children who resist are called a problem child for whom Ritalin may need to be prescribed. A few years after entering the 'world' children are under the control of authority figures representing the state telling them when they have to be there, when they can leave and when they can speak, eat, even go to the toilet. This is calculated preparation for a lifetime of obeying authority in all its forms. Reflex-action fear of authority is instilled by authority from the start. Children soon learn the carrot and stick consequences of obeying or defying authority which is underpinned daily for the rest of their life. Fortunately I daydreamed through this crap and never obeyed authority simply because it told me to. This approach to my alleged 'betters' continues to this day. There can be consequences of pursuing open-minded freedom in a world of closed-minded conformity. I spent a lot of time in school corridors after being ejected from the classroom for not taking some of it seriously and now I spend a lot of time being ejected from Facebook, YouTube and Twitter. But I can tell you that being true to yourself and not compromising your self-respect is far more exhilarating than bowing to authority for authority's sake. You don't have to be a sheep to the shepherd (authority) and the sheep dog (fear of not obeying authority).

The perceptual download continues throughout the formative years in school, college and university while script-reading 'teachers', 'academics' 'scientists', 'doctors' and 'journalists' insist that ongoing generations must be as programmed as they are. Accept the program or you will not pass your 'exams' which confirm your 'degree' of programming. It is tragic to think that many parents pressure their offspring to work hard at school to download the program and qualify for the next stage at college and university. The late, great, American comedian George Carlin said: 'Here's a bumper sticker I'd like to see: We are proud parents of a child who has resisted his teachers' attempts to break his spirit and bend him to the will of his corporate masters.' Well, the best of luck finding many of those, George. Then comes the moment to leave the formal programming years in academia and enter the 'adult' world of work. There you meet others in your chosen or prescribed arena who went through the same Postage Stamp Consensus program before you did. There is therefore overwhelming agreement between almost everyone on the basic foundations of Postage Stamp reality and the rejection, even contempt, of the few who have a mind of their own and are prepared to use it. This has two major effects. Firstly, the consensus confirms to the programmed that their download is really how things are. I mean, everyone knows that, right? Secondly, the arrogance and ignorance of Postage Stamp adherents ensure that anyone questioning the program will have unpleasant consequences for seeking their own truth and not picking their perceptions from the shelf marked: 'Things you must believe without question and if you don't you're a dangerous lunatic conspiracy theorist and a harebrained nutter'.

Every government, agency and corporation is founded on the same Postage Stamp prison cell and you can see why so many people believe the same thing while calling it their own 'opinion'. Fusion of governments and corporations in pursuit of the same agenda was the definition of fascism described by Italian dictator Benito Mussolini. The pressure to conform to perceptual norms downloaded for a lifetime is incessant and infiltrates society right

down to family groups that become censors and condemners of their own 'black sheep' for not, ironically, being sheep. We have seen an explosion of that in the 'Covid' era. Cult-owned global media unleashes its propaganda all day every day in support of the Postage Stamp and targets with abuse and ridicule anyone in the public eye who won't bend their mind to the will of the tyranny. Any response to this is denied (certainly in my case). They don't want to give a platform to expose official lies. Cult-owned-and-created Internet giants like Facebook, Google, YouTube and Twitter delete you for having an unapproved opinion. Facebook boasts that its AI censors delete 97-percent of 'hate speech' before anyone even reports it. Much of that 'hate speech' will simply be an opinion that Facebook and its masters don't want people to see. Such perceptual oppression is widely known as fascism. Even Facebook executive Benny Thomas, a 'CEO Global Planning Lead', said in comments secretly recorded by investigative journalism operation Project Veritas that Facebook is 'too powerful' and should be broken up:

> I mean, no king in history has been the ruler of two billion people, but Mark Zuckerberg is … And he's 36. That's too much for a 36-year-old ... You should not have power over two billion people. I just think that's wrong.

Thomas said Facebook-owned platforms like Instagram, Oculus, and WhatsApp needed to be separate companies. 'It's too much power when they're all one together'. That's the way the Cult likes it, however. We have an executive of a Cult organisation in Benny Thomas that doesn't know there is a Cult such is the compartmentalisation. Thomas said that Facebook and Google 'are no longer companies, they're countries'. Actually they are more powerful than countries on the basis that if you control information you control perception and control human society.

I love my oppressor

Another expression of this psychological trickery is for those who realise they are being pressured into compliance to eventually

convince themselves to believe the official narratives to protect their self-respect from accepting the truth that they have succumbed to meek and subservient compliance. Such people become some of the most vehement defenders of the system. You can see them everywhere screaming abuse at those who prefer to think for themselves and by doing so reminding the compliers of their own capitulation to conformity. 'You are talking dangerous nonsense you Covidiot!!' Are you trying to convince me or yourself? It is a potent form of Stockholm syndrome which is defined as: 'A psychological condition that occurs when a victim of abuse identifies and attaches, or bonds, positively with their abuser.' An example is hostages bonding and even 'falling in love' with their kidnappers. The syndrome has been observed in domestic violence, abused children, concentration camp inmates, prisoners of war and many and various Satanic cults. These are some traits of Stockholm syndrome listed at goodtherapy.org:

- Positive regard towards perpetrators of abuse or captor [see 'Covid'].
- Failure to cooperate with police and other government authorities when it comes to holding perpetrators of abuse or kidnapping accountable [or in the case of 'Covid' cooperating with the police to enforce and defend their captors' demands].
- Little or no effort to escape [see 'Covid'].
- Belief in the goodness of the perpetrators or kidnappers [see 'Covid'].
- Appeasement of captors. This is a manipulative strategy for maintaining one's safety. As victims get rewarded – perhaps with less abuse or even with life itself – their appeasing behaviours are reinforced [see 'Covid'].
- Learned helplessness. This can be akin to 'if you can't beat 'em, join 'em'. As the victims fail to escape the abuse or captivity, they may start giving up and soon realize it's just easier for everyone if they acquiesce all their power to their captors [see 'Covid'].

- Feelings of pity toward the abusers, believing they are actually victims themselves. Because of this, victims may go on a crusade or mission to 'save' [protect] their abuser [see the venom unleashed on those challenging the official 'Covid' narrative].
- Unwillingness to learn to detach from their perpetrators and heal. In essence, victims may tend to be less loyal to themselves than to their abuser [*definitely* see 'Covid'].

Ponder on those traits and compare them with the behaviour of great swathes of the global population who have defended governments and authorities which have spent every minute destroying their lives and livelihoods and those of their children and grandchildren since early 2020 with fascistic lockdowns, house arrest and employment deletion to 'protect' them from a 'deadly virus' that their abusers' perceptually created to bring about this very outcome. We are looking at mass Stockholm syndrome. All those that agree to concede their freedom will believe those perceptions are originating in their own independent 'mind' when in fact by conceding their reality to Stockholm syndrome they have by definition conceded any independence of mind. Listen to the 'opinions' of the acquiescing masses in this 'Covid' era and what gushes forth is the repetition of the official version of everything delivered unprocessed, unfiltered and unquestioned. The whole programming dynamic works this way. I must be free because I'm told that I am and so I think that I am.

You can see what I mean with the chapter theme of 'I'm thinking – Oh, but *are* you?' The great majority are not thinking, let alone for themselves. They are repeating what authority has told them to believe which allows them to be controlled. Weaving through this mentality is the fear that the 'conspiracy theorists' are right and this again explains the often hysterical abuse that ensues when you dare to contest the official narrative of anything. Denial is the mechanism of hiding from yourself what you don't want to be true. Telling people what they want to hear is easy, but it's an infinitely greater challenge to tell them what they would rather not be happening.

One is akin to pushing against an open door while the other is met with vehement resistance no matter what the scale of evidence. I don't want it to be true so I'll convince myself that it's not. Examples are everywhere from the denial that a partner is cheating despite all the signs to the reflex-action rejection of any idea that world events in which country after country act in exactly the same way are centrally coordinated. To accept the latter is to accept that a force of unspeakable evil is working to destroy your life and the lives of your children with nothing too horrific to achieve that end. Who the heck wants that to be true? But if we don't face reality the end is duly achieved and the consequences are far worse and ongoing than breaking through the walls of denial today with the courage to make a stand against tyranny.

Connect the dots – but how?

A crucial aspect of perceptual programming is to portray a world in which everything is random and almost nothing is connected to anything else. Randomness cannot be coordinated by its very nature and once you perceive events as random the idea they could be connected is waved away as the rantings of the tinfoil-hat brigade. You can't plan and coordinate random you idiot! No, you can't, but you can hide the coldly-calculated and long-planned behind the *illusion* of randomness. A foundation manifestation of the Renegade Mind is to scan reality for patterns that connect the apparently random and turn pixels and dots into pictures. This is the way I work and have done so for more than 30 years. You look for similarities in people, modus operandi and desired outcomes and slowly, then ever quicker, the picture forms. For instance: There would seem to be no connection between the 'Covid pandemic' hoax and the human-caused global-warming hoax and yet they are masks (appropriately) on the same face seeking the same outcome. Those pushing the global warming myth through the Club of Rome and other Cult agencies are driving the lies about 'Covid' – Bill Gates is an obvious one, but they are endless. Why would the same people be involved in both when they are clearly not connected? Oh, but they

are. Common themes with personnel are matched by common goals. The 'solutions' to both 'problems' are centralisation of global power to impose the will of the few on the many to 'save' humanity from 'Covid' and save the planet from an 'existential threat' (we need 'zero Covid' and 'zero carbon emissions'). These, in turn, connect with the 'dot' of globalisation which was coined to describe the centralisation of global power in every area of life through incessant political and corporate expansion, trading blocks and superstates like the European Union. If you are the few and you want to control the many you have to centralise power and decision-making. The more you centralise power the more power the few at the centre will have over the many; and the more that power is centralised the more power those at the centre have to centralise even quicker. The momentum of centralisation gets faster and faster which is exactly the process we have witnessed. In this way the hoaxed 'pandemic' and the fakery of human-caused global warming serve the interests of globalisation and the seizure of global power in the hands of the Cult inner-circle which is behind 'Covid', 'climate change' *and* globalisation. At this point random 'dots' become a clear and obvious picture or pattern.

Klaus Schwab, the classic Bond villain who founded the Cult's Gates-funded World Economic Forum, published a book in 2020, *The Great Reset*, in which he used the 'problem' of 'Covid' to justify a total transformation of human society to 'save' humanity from 'climate change'. Schwab said: 'The pandemic represents a rare but narrow window of opportunity to reflect, reimagine, and reset our world.' What he didn't mention is that the Cult he serves is behind both hoaxes as I show in my book *The Answer*. He and the Cult don't have to reimagine the world. They know precisely what they want and that's why they destroyed human society with 'Covid' to 'build back better' in their grand design. Their job is not to imagine, but to get humanity to imagine and agree with their plans while believing it's all random. It must be pure coincidence that 'The Great Reset' has long been the Cult's code name for the global imposition of fascism and replaced previous code-names of the 'New World

Order' used by Cult frontmen like Father George Bush and the 'New Order of the Ages' which emerged from Freemasonry and much older secret societies. New Order of the Ages appears on the reverse of the Great Seal of the United States as 'Novus ordo seclorum' underneath the Cult symbol used since way back of the pyramid and all seeing-eye (Fig 3). The pyramid is the hierarchy of human control headed by the illuminated eye that symbolises the force behind the Cult which I will expose in later chapters. The term 'Annuit Coeptis' translates as 'He favours our undertaking'. We are told the 'He' is the Christian god, but 'He' is not as I will be explaining.

Figure 3: The all-seeing eye of the Cult 'god' on the Freemason-designed Great Seal of the United States and also on the dollar bill.

Having you on

Two major Cult techniques of perceptual manipulation that relate to all this are what I have called since the 1990s Problem-Reaction-Solution (PRS) and the Totalitarian Tiptoe (TT). They can be uncovered by the inquiring mind with a simple question: Who benefits? The answer usually identifies the perpetrators of a given action or happening through the concept of 'he who most benefits from a crime is the one most likely to have committed it'. The Latin 'Cue bono?' – Who benefits? – is widely attributed to the Roman orator and statesman Marcus Tullius Cicero. No wonder it goes back so far when the concept has been relevant to human behaviour since

history was recorded. Problem-Reaction-Solution is the technique used to manipulate us every day by covertly creating a problem (or the illusion of one) and offering the solution to the problem (or the illusion of one). In the first phase you create the problem and blame someone or something else for why it has happened. This may relate to a financial collapse, terrorist attack, war, global warming or pandemic, anything in fact that will allow you to impose the 'solution' to change society in the way you desire at that time. The 'problem' doesn't have to be real. PRS is manipulation of perception and all you need is the population to believe the problem is real. Human-caused global warming and the 'Covid pandemic' only have to be *perceived* to be real for the population to accept the 'solutions' of authority. I refer to this technique as NO-Problem-Reaction-Solution. Billions did not meekly accept house arrest from early 2020 because there was a real deadly 'Covid pandemic' but because they perceived – believed – that to be the case. The antidote to Problem-Reaction-Solution is to ask who benefits from the proposed solution. Invariably it will be anyone who wants to justify more control through deletion of freedom and centralisation of power and decision-making.

The two world wars were Problem-Reaction-Solutions that transformed and realigned global society. Both were manipulated into being by the Cult as I have detailed in books since the mid-1990s. They dramatically centralised global power, especially World War Two, which led to the United Nations and other global bodies thanks to the overt and covert manipulations of the Rockefeller family and other Cult bloodlines like the Rothschilds. The UN is a stalking horse for full-blown world government that I will come to shortly. The land on which the UN building stands in New York was donated by the Rockefellers and the same Cult family was behind Big Pharma scalpel and drug 'medicine' and the creation of the World Health Organization as part of the UN. They have been stalwarts of the eugenics movement and funded Hitler's race-purity expert' Ernst Rudin. The human-caused global warming hoax has been orchestrated by the Club of Rome through the UN which is

manufacturing both the 'problem' through its Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change and imposing the 'solution' through its Agenda 21 and Agenda 2030 which demand the total centralisation of global power to 'save the world' from a climate hoax the United Nations is itself perpetrating. What a small world the Cult can be seen to be particularly among the inner circles. The bedfellow of Problem-Reaction-Solution is the Totalitarian Tiptoe which became the Totalitarian Sprint in 2020. The technique is fashioned to hide the carefully-coordinated behind the cover of apparently random events. You start the sequence at 'A' and you know you are heading for 'Z'. You don't want people to know that and each step on the journey is presented as a random happening while all the steps strung together lead in the same direction. The speed may have quickened dramatically in recent times, but you can still see the incremental approach of the Tiptoe in the case of 'Covid' as each new imposition takes us deeper into fascism. Tell people they have to do this or that to get back to 'normal', then this and this and this. With each new demand adding to the ones that went before the population's freedom is deleted until it disappears. The spider wraps its web around the flies more comprehensively with each new diktat. I'll highlight this in more detail when I get to the 'Covid' hoax and how it has been pulled off. Another prime example of the Totalitarian Tiptoe is how the Cult-created European Union went from a 'free-trade zone' to a centralised bureaucratic dictatorship through the Tiptoe of incremental centralisation of power until nations became mere administrative units for Cult-owned dark suits in Brussels.

The antidote to ignorance is knowledge which the Cult seeks vehemently to deny us, but despite the systematic censorship to that end the Renegade Mind can overcome this by vociferously seeking out the facts no matter the impediments put in the way. There is also a method of thinking and perceiving – *knowing* – that doesn't even need names, dates, place-type facts to identify the patterns that reveal the story. I'll get to that in the final chapter. All you need to know about the manipulation of human society and to what end is still out there – *at the time of writing* – in the form of books, videos

and websites for those that really want to breach the walls of programmed perception. To access this knowledge requires the abandonment of the mainstream media as a source of information in the awareness that this is owned and controlled by the Cult and therefore promotes mass perceptions that suit the Cult. Mainstream media lies all day, every day. That is its function and very reason for being. Where it does tell the truth, here and there, is only because the truth and the Cult agenda very occasionally coincide. If you look for fact and insight to the BBC, CNN and virtually all the rest of them you are asking to be conned and perceptually programmed.

Know the outcome and you'll see the journey

Events seem random when you have no idea where the world is being taken. Once you do the random becomes the carefully planned. Know the outcome and you'll see the journey is a phrase I have been using for a long time to give context to daily happenings that appear unconnected. Does a problem, or illusion of a problem, trigger a proposed 'solution' that further drives society in the direction of the outcome? Invariably the answer will be yes and the random – *abracadabra* – becomes the clearly coordinated. So what is this outcome that unlocks the door to a massively expanded understanding of daily events? I will summarise its major aspects – the fine detail is in my other books – and those new to this information will see that the world they thought they were living in is a very different place. The foundation of the Cult agenda is the incessant centralisation of power and all such centralisation is ultimately in pursuit of Cult control on a global level. I have described for a long time the planned world structure of top-down dictatorship as the Hunger Games Society. The term obviously comes from the movie series which portrayed a world in which a few living in military-protected hi-tech luxury were the overlords of a population condemned to abject poverty in isolated 'sectors' that were not allowed to interact. 'Covid' lockdowns and travel bans anyone? The 'Hunger Games' pyramid of structural control has the inner circle of the Cult at the top with pretty much the entire

population at the bottom under their control through dependency for survival on the Cult. The whole structure is planned to be protected and enforced by a military-police state (Fig 4).

Here you have the reason for the global lockdowns of the fake pandemic to coldly destroy independent incomes and livelihoods and make everyone dependent on the 'state' (the Cult that controls the 'states'). I have warned in my books for many years about the plan to introduce a 'guaranteed income' – a barely survivable pittance – designed to impose dependency when employment was destroyed by AI technology and now even more comprehensively at great speed by the 'Covid' scam. Once the pandemic was played and lockdown consequences began to delete independent income the authorities began to talk right on cue about the need for a guaranteed income and a 'Great Reset'. Guaranteed income will be presented as benevolent governments seeking to help a desperate people – desperate as a direct result of actions of the same governments. The truth is that such payments are a trap. You will only get them if you do exactly what the authorities demand including mass vaccination (genetic manipulation). We have seen this theme already in Australia where those dependent on government benefits have them reduced if parents don't agree to have their children vaccinated according to an insane health-destroying government-dictated schedule. Calculated economic collapse applies to governments as well as people. The Cult wants rid of countries through the creation of a world state with countries broken up into regions ruled by a world government and super states like the European Union. Countries must be bankrupted, too, to this end and it's being achieved by the trillions in 'rescue packages' and furlough payments, trillions in lost taxation, and money-no-object spending on 'Covid' including constant all-medium advertising (programming) which has made the media dependent on government for much of its income. The day of reckoning is coming – as planned – for government spending and given that it has been made possible by printing money and not by production/taxation there is inflation on the way that has the

potential to wipe out monetary value. In that case there will be no need for the Cult to steal your money. It just won't be worth anything (see the German Weimar Republic before the Nazis took over). Many have been okay with lockdowns while getting a percentage of their income from so-called furlough payments without having to work. Those payments are dependent, however, on people having at least a theoretical job with a business considered non-essential and ordered to close. As these business go under because they are closed by lockdown after lockdown the furlough stops and it will for everyone eventually. Then what? The 'then what?' is precisely the idea.

Figure 4: The Hunger Games Society structure I have long warned was planned and now the 'Covid' hoax has made it possible. This is the real reason for lockdowns.

Hired hands

Between the Hunger Games Cult elite and the dependent population is planned to be a vicious military-police state (a fusion of the two into one force). This has been in the making for a long time with police looking ever more like the military and carrying weapons to match. The pandemic scam has seen this process accelerate so fast as

lockdown house arrest is brutally enforced by carefully recruited fascist minds and gormless system-servers. The police and military are planned to merge into a centrally-directed world army in a global structure headed by a world government which wouldn't be elected even by the election fixes now in place. The world army is not planned even to be human and instead wars would be fought, primarily against the population, using robot technology controlled by artificial intelligence. I have been warning about this for decades and now militaries around the world are being transformed by this very AI technology. The global regime that I describe is a particular form of fascism known as a technocracy in which decisions are not made by clueless and co-opted politicians but by unelected technocrats – scientists, engineers, technologists and bureaucrats. Cult-owned-and-controlled Silicon Valley giants are examples of technocracy and they already have far more power to direct world events than governments. They are with their censorship *selecting* governments. I know that some are calling the 'Great Reset' a Marxist communist takeover, but fascism and Marxism are different labels for the same tyranny. Tell those who lived in fascist Germany and Stalinist Russia that there was a difference in the way their freedom was deleted and their lives controlled. I could call it a fascist technocracy or a Marxist technocracy and they would be equally accurate. The Hunger Games society with its world government structure would oversee a world army, world central bank and single world cashless currency imposing its will on a microchipped population (Fig 5). Scan its different elements and see how the illusory pandemic is forcing society in this very direction at great speed. Leaders of 23 countries and the World Health Organization (WHO) backed the idea in March, 2021, of a global treaty for 'international cooperation' in 'health emergencies' and nations should 'come together as a global community for peaceful cooperation that extends beyond this crisis'. Cut the Orwellian bullshit and this means another step towards global government. The plan includes a cashless digital money system that I first warned about in 1993. Right at the start of 'Covid' the deeply corrupt Tedros

Adhanom Ghebreyesus, the crooked and merely gofer 'head' of the World Health Organization, said it was possible to catch the 'virus' by touching cash and it was better to use cashless means. The claim was ridiculous nonsense and like the whole 'Covid' mind-trick it was nothing to do with 'health' and everything to do with pushing every aspect of the Cult agenda. As a result of the Tedros lie the use of cash has plummeted. The Cult script involves a single world digital currency that would eventually be technologically embedded in the body. China is a massive global centre for the Cult and if you watch what is happening there you will know what is planned for everywhere. The Chinese government is developing a digital currency which would allow fines to be deducted immediately via AI for anyone caught on camera breaking its fantastic list of laws and the money is going to be programmable with an expiry date to ensure that no one can accrue wealth except the Cult and its operatives.

Figure 5: The structure of global control the Cult has been working towards for so long and this has been enormously advanced by the 'Covid' illusion.

Serfdom is so smart

The Cult plan is far wider, extreme, and more comprehensive than even most conspiracy researchers appreciate and I will come to the true depths of deceit and control in the chapters 'Who controls the

Cult?' and 'Escaping Wetiko'. Even the world that we know is crazy enough. We are being deluged with ever more sophisticated and controlling technology under the heading of 'smart'. We have smart televisions, smart meters, smart cards, smart cars, smart driving, smart roads, smart pills, smart patches, smart watches, smart skin, smart borders, smart pavements, smart streets, smart cities, smart communities, smart environments, smart growth, smart planet ... smart *everything* around us. Smart technologies and methods of operation are designed to interlock to create a global Smart Grid connecting the entirety of human society including human minds to create a centrally-dictated 'hive' mind. 'Smart cities' is code for densely-occupied megacities of total surveillance and control through AI. Ever more destructive frequency communication systems like 5G have been rolled out without any official testing for health and psychological effects (colossal). 5G/6G/7G systems are needed to run the Smart Grid and each one becomes more destructive of body and mind. Deleting independent income is crucial to forcing people into these AI-policed prisons by ending private property ownership (except for the Cult elite). The Cult's Great Reset now openly foresees a global society in which no one will own any possessions and everything will be rented while the Cult would own literally everything under the guise of government and corporations. The aim has been to use the lockdowns to destroy sources of income on a mass scale and when the people are destitute and in unrepayable amounts of debt (problem) Cult assets come forward with the pledge to write-off debt in return for handing over all property and possessions (solution). Everything – literally everything including people – would be connected to the Internet via AI. I was warning years ago about the coming Internet of Things (IoT) in which all devices and technology from your car to your fridge would be plugged into the Internet and controlled by AI. Now we are already there with much more to come. The next stage is the Internet of Everything (IoE) which is planned to include the connection of AI to the human brain and body to replace the human mind with a centrally-controlled AI mind. Instead of perceptions

being manipulated through control of information and censorship those perceptions would come direct from the Cult through AI. What do you think? You think whatever AI decides that you think. In human terms there would be no individual 'think' any longer. Too incredible? The ravings of a lunatic? Not at all. Cult-owned crazies in Silicon Valley have been telling us the plan for years without explaining the real motivation and calculated implications. These include Google executive and 'futurist' Ray Kurzweil who highlights the year 2030 for when this would be underway. He said:

> Our thinking ... will be a hybrid of biological and non-biological thinking ... humans will be able to extend their limitations and 'think in the cloud' ... We're going to put gateways to the cloud in our brains ... We're going to gradually merge and enhance ourselves ... In my view, that's the nature of being human – we transcend our limitations.
>
> As the technology becomes vastly superior to what we are then the small proportion that is still human gets smaller and smaller and smaller until it's just utterly negligible.

The sales-pitch of Kurzweil and Cult-owned Silicon Valley is that this would make us 'super-human' when the real aim is to make us post-human and no longer 'human' in the sense that we have come to know. The entire global population would be connected to AI and become the centrally-controlled 'hive-mind' of externally-delivered perceptions. The Smart Grid being installed to impose the Cult's will on the world is being constructed to allow particular locations – even one location – to control the whole global system. From these prime control centres, which absolutely include China and Israel, anything connected to the Internet would be switched on or off and manipulated at will. Energy systems could be cut, communication via the Internet taken down, computer-controlled driverless autonomous vehicles driven off the road, medical devices switched off, the potential is limitless given how much AI and Internet connections now run human society. We have seen nothing yet if we allow this to continue. Autonomous vehicle makers are working with law enforcement to produce cars designed to automatically pull over if they detect a police or emergency vehicle flashing from up to 100 feet away. At a police stop the car would be unlocked and the

window rolled down automatically. Vehicles would only take you where the computer (the state) allowed. The end of petrol vehicles and speed limiters on all new cars in the UK and EU from 2022 are steps leading to electric computerised transport over which ultimately you have no control. The picture is far bigger even than the Cult global network or web and that will become clear when I get to the nature of the 'spider'. There is a connection between all these happenings and the instigation of DNA-manipulating 'vaccines' (which aren't 'vaccines') justified by the 'Covid' hoax. That connection is the unfolding plan to transform the human body from a biological to a synthetic biological state and this is why synthetic biology is such a fast-emerging discipline of mainstream science. 'Covid vaccines' are infusing self-replicating synthetic genetic material into the cells to cumulatively take us on the Totalitarian Tiptoe from Human 1.0 to the synthetic biological Human 2.0 which will be physically and perceptually attached to the Smart Grid to one hundred percent control every thought, perception and deed. Humanity needs to wake up and *fast*.

This is the barest explanation of where the 'outcome' is planned to go but it's enough to see the journey happening all around us. Those new to this information will already see 'Covid' in a whole new context. I will add much more detail as we go along, but for the minutiae evidence see my mega-works, *The Answer, The Trigger* and *Everything You Need to Know But Have Never Been Told*.

Now – how does a Renegade Mind see the 'world'?

CHAPTER TWO

Renegade Perception

It is one thing to be clever and another to be wise
George R.R. Martin

A simple definition of the difference between a programmed mind and a Renegade Mind would be that one sees only dots while the other connects them to see the picture. Reading reality with accuracy requires the observer to (a) know the planned outcome and (b) realise that everything, but *everything*, is connected.

The entirety of infinite reality is connected – that's its very nature – and with human society an expression of infinite reality the same must apply. Simple cause and effect is a connection. The effect is triggered by the cause and the effect then becomes the cause of another effect. Nothing happens in isolation because it *can't*. Life in whatever reality is simple choice and consequence. We make choices and these lead to consequences. If we don't like the consequences we can make different choices and get different consequences which lead to other choices and consequences. The choice and the consequence are not only connected they are indivisible. You can't have one without the other as an old song goes. A few cannot control the world unless those being controlled allow that to happen – cause and effect, choice and consequence. Control – who has it and who doesn't – is a two-way process, a symbiotic relationship, involving the controller and controlled. 'They took my freedom away!!' Well, yes, but you also gave it to them. Humanity is

subjected to mass control because humanity has acquiesced to that control. This is all cause and effect and literally a case of give and take. In the same way world events of every kind are connected and the Cult works incessantly to sell the illusion of the random and coincidental to maintain the essential (to them) perception of dots that hide the picture. Renegade Minds know this and constantly scan the world for patterns of connection. This is absolutely pivotal in understanding the happenings in the world and without that perspective clarity is impossible. First you know the planned outcome and then you identify the steps on the journey – the day-by-day apparently random which, when connected in relation to the outcome, no longer appear as individual events, but as the proverbial *chain* of events leading in the same direction. I'll give you some examples:

Political puppet show

We are told to believe that politics is 'adversarial' in that different parties with different beliefs engage in an endless tussle for power. There may have been some truth in that up to a point – and only a point – but today divisions between 'different' parties are rhetorical not ideological. Even the rhetorical is fusing into one-speak as the parties eject any remaining free thinkers while others succumb to the ever-gathering intimidation of anyone with the 'wrong' opinion. The Cult is not a new phenomenon and can be traced back thousands of years as my books have documented. Its intergenerational initiates have been manipulating events with increasing effect the more that global power has been centralised. In ancient times the Cult secured control through the system of monarchy in which 'special' bloodlines (of which more later) demanded the right to rule as kings and queens simply by birthright and by vanquishing others who claimed the same birthright. There came a time, however, when people had matured enough to see the unfairness of such tyranny and demanded a say in who governed them. Note the word – *governed* them. Not served them – *governed* them, hence government defined as 'the political direction and control exercised over the

actions of the members, citizens, or inhabitants of communities, societies, and states; direction of the affairs of a state, community, etc.' Governments exercise control over rather than serve just like the monarchies before them. Bizarrely there are still countries like the United Kingdom which are ruled by a monarch *and* a government that officially answers to the monarch. The UK head of state and that of Commonwealth countries such as Canada, Australia and New Zealand is 'selected' by who in a *single family* had unprotected sex with whom and in what order. Pinch me it can't be true. Ouch! Shit, it is. The demise of monarchies in most countries offered a potential vacuum in which some form of free and fair society could arise and the Cult had that base covered. Monarchies had served its interests but they couldn't continue in the face of such widespread opposition and, anyway, replacing a 'royal' dictatorship that people could see with a dictatorship 'of the people' hiding behind the concept of 'democracy' presented far greater manipulative possibilities and ways of hiding coordinated tyranny behind the illusion of 'freedom'.

Democracy is quite wrongly defined as government selected by the population. This is not the case at all. It is government selected by *some* of the population (and then only in theory). This 'some' doesn't even have to be the majority as we have seen so often in first-past-the-post elections in which the so-called majority party wins fewer votes than the 'losing' parties combined. Democracy can give total power to a party in government from a minority of the votes cast. It's a sleight of hand to sell tyranny as freedom. Seventy-four million Trump-supporting Americans didn't vote for the 'Democratic' Party of Joe Biden in the distinctly dodgy election in 2020 and yet far from acknowledging the wishes and feelings of that great percentage of American society the Cult-owned Biden government set out from day one to destroy them and their right to a voice and opinion. Empty shell Biden and his Cult handlers said they were doing this to 'protect democracy'. Such is the level of lunacy and sickness to which politics has descended. Connect the dots and relate them to the desired outcome – a world government run by self-appointed technocrats and no longer even elected

politicians. While operating through its political agents in government the Cult is at the same time encouraging public distain for politicians by putting idiots and incompetents in theoretical power on the road to deleting them. The idea is to instil a public reaction that says of the technocrats: 'Well, they couldn't do any worse than the pathetic politicians.' It's all about controlling perception and Renegade Minds can see through that while programmed minds cannot when they are ignorant of both the planned outcome and the manipulation techniques employed to secure that end. This knowledge can be learned, however, and fast if people choose to get informed.

Politics may at first sight appear very difficult to control from a central point. I mean look at the 'different' parties and how would you be able to oversee them all and their constituent parts? In truth, it's very straightforward because of their structure. We are back to the pyramid of imposition and acquiescence. Organisations are structured in the same way as the system as a whole. Political parties are not open forums of free expression. They are hierarchies. I was a national spokesman for the British Green Party which claimed to be a different kind of politics in which influence and power was devolved; but I can tell you from direct experience – and it's far worse now – that Green parties are run as hierarchies like all the others however much they may try to hide that fact or kid themselves that it's not true. A very few at the top of all political parties are directing policy and personnel. They decide if you are elevated in the party or serve as a government minister and to do that you have to be a yes man or woman. Look at all the maverick political thinkers who never ascended the greasy pole. If you want to progress within the party or reach 'high-office' you need to fall into line and conform. Exceptions to this are rare indeed. Should you want to run for parliament or Congress you have to persuade the local or state level of the party to select you and for that you need to play the game as dictated by the hierarchy. If you secure election and wish to progress within the greater structure you need to go on conforming to what is acceptable to those running the hierarchy

from the peak of the pyramid. Political parties are perceptual gulags and the very fact that there are party 'Whips' appointed to 'whip' politicians into voting the way the hierarchy demands exposes the ridiculous idea that politicians are elected to serve the people they are supposed to represent. Cult operatives and manipulation has long seized control of major parties that have any chance of forming a government and at least most of those that haven't. A new party forms and the Cult goes to work to infiltrate and direct. This has reached such a level today that you see video compilations of 'leaders' of all parties whether Democrats, Republicans, Conservative, Labour and Green parroting the same Cult mantra of 'Build Back Better' and the 'Great Reset' which are straight off the Cult song-sheet to describe the transformation of global society in response to the Cult-instigated hoaxes of the 'Covid pandemic' and human-caused 'climate change'. To see Caroline Lucas, the Green Party MP that I knew when I was in the party in the 1980s, speaking in support of plans proposed by Cult operative Klaus Schwab representing the billionaire global elite is a real head-shaker.

Many parties – one master

The party system is another mind-trick and was instigated to change the nature of the dictatorship by swapping 'royalty' for dark suits that people believed – though now ever less so – represented their interests. Understanding this trick is to realise that a single force (the Cult) controls all parties either directly in terms of the major ones or through manipulation of perception and ideology with others. You don't need to manipulate Green parties to demand your transformation of society in the name of 'climate change' when they are obsessed with the lie that this is essential to 'save the planet'. You just give them a platform and away they go serving your interests while believing they are being environmentally virtuous. America's political structure is a perfect blueprint for how the two or multi-party system is really a one-party state. The Republican Party is controlled from one step back in the shadows by a group made up of billionaires and their gofers known as neoconservatives or Neocons.

I have exposed them in fine detail in my books and they were the driving force behind the policies of the imbecilic presidency of Boy George Bush which included 9/11 (see *The Trigger* for a comprehensive demolition of the official story), the subsequent 'war on terror' (war *of* terror) and the invasions of Afghanistan and Iraq. The latter was a No-Problem-Reaction-Solution based on claims by Cult operatives, including Bush and British Prime Minister Tony Blair, about Saddam Hussein's 'weapons of mass destruction' which did not exist as war criminals Bush and Blair well knew.

Figure 6: Different front people, different parties – same control system.

The Democratic Party has its own 'Neocon' group controlling from the background which I call the 'Democons' and here's the penny-drop – the Neocons and Democons answer to the same masters one step further back into the shadows (Fig 6). At that level of the Cult the Republican and Democrat parties are controlled by the same people and no matter which is in power the Cult is in power. This is how it works in almost every country and certainly in Britain with Conservative, Labour, Liberal Democrat and Green parties now all on the same page whatever the rhetoric may be in their feeble attempts to appear different. Neocons operated at the time of Bush through a think tank called The Project for the New American Century which in September, 2000, published a document entitled *Rebuilding America's Defenses: Strategies, Forces, and Resources*

For a New Century demanding that America fight 'multiple, simultaneous major theatre wars' as a 'core mission' to force regime-change in countries including Iraq, Libya and Syria. Neocons arranged for Bush ('Republican') and Blair ('Labour Party') to front-up the invasion of Iraq and when they departed the Democons orchestrated the targeting of Libya and Syria through Barack Obama ('Democrat') and British Prime Minister David Cameron ('Conservative Party'). We have 'different' parties and 'different' people, but the same unfolding script. The more the Cult has seized the reigns of parties and personnel the more their policies have transparently pursued the same agenda to the point where the fascist 'Covid' impositions of the Conservative junta of Jackboot Johnson in Britain were opposed by the Labour Party because they were not fascist enough. The Labour Party is likened to the US Democrats while the Conservative Party is akin to a British version of the Republicans and on both sides of the Atlantic they all speak the same language and support the direction demanded by the Cult although some more enthusiastically than others. It's a similar story in country after country because it's all centrally controlled. Oh, but what about Trump? I'll come to him shortly. Political 'choice' in the 'party' system goes like this: You vote for Party A and they get into government. You don't like what they do so next time you vote for Party B and they get into government. You don't like what they do when it's pretty much the same as Party A and why wouldn't that be with both controlled by the same force? Given that only two, sometimes three, parties have any chance of forming a government to get rid of Party B that you don't like you have to vote again for Party A which … you don't like. This, ladies and gentlemen, is what they call 'democracy' which we are told – wrongly – is a term interchangeable with 'freedom'.

The cult of cults

At this point I need to introduce a major expression of the Global Cult known as Sabbatian-Frankism. Sabbatian is also spelt as Sabbatean. I will summarise here. I have published major exposés

and detailed background in other works. Sabbatian-Frankism combines the names of two frauds posing as 'Jewish' men, Sabbatai Zevi (1626-1676), a rabbi, black magician and occultist who proclaimed he was the Jewish messiah; and Jacob Frank (1726-1791), the Polish 'Jew', black magician and occultist who said he was the reincarnation of 'messiah' Zevi and biblical patriarch Jacob. They worked across two centuries to establish the Sabbatian-Frankist cult that plays a major, indeed central, role in the manipulation of human society by the Global Cult which has its origins much further back in history than Sabbatai Zevi. I should emphasise two points here in response to the shrill voices that will scream 'anti-Semitism': (1) Sabbatian-Frankists are NOT Jewish and only pose as such to hide their cult behind a Jewish façade; and (2) my information about this cult has come from Jewish sources who have long realised that their society and community has been infiltrated and taken over by interloper Sabbatian-Frankists. Infiltration has been the foundation technique of Sabbatian-Frankism from its official origin in the 17th century. Zevi's Sabbatian sect attracted a massive following described as the biggest messianic movement in Jewish history, spreading as far as Africa and Asia, and he promised a return for the Jews to the 'Promised Land' of Israel. Sabbatianism was not Judaism but an inversion of everything that mainstream Judaism stood for. So much so that this sinister cult would have a feast day when Judaism had a fast day and whatever was forbidden in Judaism the Sabbatians were encouraged and even commanded to do. This included incest and what would be today called Satanism. Members were forbidden to marry outside the sect and there was a system of keeping their children ignorant of what they were part of until they were old enough to be trusted not to unknowingly reveal anything to outsiders. The same system is employed to this day by the Global Cult in general which Sabbatian-Frankism has enormously influenced and now largely controls.

Zevi and his Sabbatians suffered a setback with the intervention by the Sultan of the Islamic Ottoman Empire in the Middle East and what is now the Republic of Turkey where Zevi was located. The

Sultan gave him the choice of proving his 'divinity', converting to Islam or facing torture and death. Funnily enough Zevi chose to convert or at least appear to. Some of his supporters were disillusioned and drifted away, but many did not with 300 families also converting – only in theory – to Islam. They continued behind this Islamic smokescreen to follow the goals, rules and rituals of Sabbatianism and became known as 'crypto-Jews' or the 'Dönmeh' which means 'to turn'. This is rather ironic because they didn't 'turn' and instead hid behind a fake Islamic persona. The process of appearing to be one thing while being very much another would become the calling card of Sabbatianism especially after Zevi's death and the arrival of the Satanist Jacob Frank in the 18th century when the cult became Sabbatian-Frankism and plumbed still new depths of depravity and infiltration which included – still includes – human sacrifice and sex with children. Wherever Sabbatians go paedophilia and Satanism follow and is it really a surprise that Hollywood is so infested with child abuse and Satanism when it was established by Sabbatian-Frankists and is still controlled by them? Hollywood has been one of the prime vehicles for global perceptual programming and manipulation. How many believe the version of 'history' portrayed in movies when it is a travesty and inversion (again) of the truth? Rabbi Marvin Antelman describes Frankism in his book, *To Eliminate the Opiate*, as 'a movement of complete evil' while Jewish professor Gershom Scholem said of Frank in *The Messianic Idea in Judaism*: 'In all his actions [he was] a truly corrupt and degenerate individual ... one of the most frightening phenomena in the whole of Jewish history.' Frank was excommunicated by traditional rabbis, as was Zevi, but Frank was undeterred and enjoyed vital support from the House of Rothschild, the infamous banking dynasty whose inner-core are Sabbatian-Frankists and not Jews. Infiltration of the Roman Church and Vatican was instigated by Frank with many Dönmeh 'turning' again to convert to Roman Catholicism with a view to hijacking the reins of power. This was the ever-repeating modus operandi and continues to be so. Pose as an advocate of the religion, culture or country that you want to control and then

manipulate your people into the positions of authority and influence largely as advisers, administrators and Svengalis for those that appear to be in power. They did this with Judaism, Christianity (Christian Zionism is part of this), Islam and other religions and nations until Sabbatian-Frankism spanned the world as it does today.

Sabbatian Saudis and the terror network

One expression of the Sabbatian-Frankist Dönmeh within Islam is the ruling family of Saudi Arabia, the House of Saud, through which came the vile distortion of Islam known as Wahhabism. This is the violent creed followed by terrorist groups like Al-Qaeda and ISIS or Islamic State. Wahhabism is the hand-chopping, head-chopping 'religion' of Saudi Arabia which is used to keep the people in a constant state of fear so the interloper House of Saud can continue to rule. Al-Qaeda and Islamic State were lavishly funded by the House of Saud while being created and directed by the Sabbatian-Frankist network in the United States that operates through the Pentagon, CIA and the government in general of whichever 'party'. The front man for the establishment of Wahhabism in the middle of the 18th century was a Sabbatian-Frankist 'crypto-Jew' posing as Islamic called Muhammad ibn Abd al-Wahhab. His daughter would marry the son of Muhammad bin Saud who established the first Saudi state before his death in 1765 with support from the British Empire. Bin Saud's successors would establish modern Saudi Arabia in league with the British and Americans in 1932 which allowed them to seize control of Islam's major shrines in Mecca and Medina. They have dictated the direction of Sunni Islam ever since while Iran is the major centre of the Shiite version and here we have the source of at least the public conflict between them. The Sabbatian network has used its Wahhabi extremists to carry out Problem-Reaction-Solution terrorist attacks in the name of 'Al-Qaeda' and 'Islamic State' to justify a devastating 'war on terror', ever-increasing surveillance of the population and to terrify people into compliance. Another insight of the Renegade Mind is the streetwise understanding that

just because a country, location or people are attacked doesn't mean that those apparently representing that country, location or people are not behind the attackers. Often they are *orchestrating* the attacks because of the societal changes that can be then justified in the name of 'saving the population from terrorists'.

I show in great detail in *The Trigger* how Sabbatian-Frankists were the real perpetrators of 9/11 and not '19 Arab hijackers' who were blamed for what happened. Observe what was justified in the name of 9/11 alone in terms of Middle East invasions, mass surveillance and control that fulfilled the demands of the Project for the New American Century document published by the Sabbatian Neocons. What appear to be enemies are on the deep inside players on the same Sabbatian team. Israel and Arab 'royal' dictatorships are all ruled by Sabbatians and the recent peace agreements between Israel and Saudi Arabia, the United Arab Emirates (UAE) and others are only making formal what has always been the case behind the scenes. Palestinians who have been subjected to grotesque tyranny since Israel was bombed and terrorised into existence in 1948 have never stood a chance. Sabbatian-Frankists have controlled Israel (so the constant theme of violence and war which Sabbatians love) and they have controlled the Arab countries that Palestinians have looked to for real support that never comes. 'Royal families' of the Arab world in Saudi Arabia, Bahrain, UAE, etc., are all Sabbatians with allegiance to the aims of the cult and not what is best for their Arabic populations. They have stolen the oil and financial resources from their people by false claims to be 'royal dynasties' with a genetic right to rule and by employing vicious militaries to impose their will.

Satanic 'illumination'

The Satanist Jacob Frank formed an alliance in 1773 with two other Sabbatians, Mayer Amschel Rothschild (1744-1812), founder of the Rothschild banking dynasty, and Jesuit-educated fraudulent Jew, Adam Weishaupt, and this led to the formation of the Bavarian Illuminati, firstly under another name, in 1776. The Illuminati would

be the manipulating force behind the French Revolution (1789-1799) and was also involved in the American Revolution (1775-1783) before and after the Illuminati's official creation. Weishaupt would later become (in public) a Protestant Christian in archetypal Sabbatian style. I read that his name can be decoded as Adam-Weishaupt or 'the first man to lead those who know'. He wasn't a leader in the sense that he was a subordinate, but he did lead those below him in a crusade of transforming human society that still continues today. The theme was confirmed as early as 1785 when a horseman courier called Lanz was reported to be struck by lighting and extensive Illuminati documents were found in his saddlebags. They made the link to Weishaupt and detailed the plan for world takeover. Current events with 'Covid' fascism have been in the making for a very long time. Jacob Frank was jailed for 13 years by the Catholic Inquisition after his arrest in 1760 and on his release he headed for Frankfurt, Germany, home city and headquarters of the House of Rothschild where the alliance was struck with Mayer Amschel Rothschild and Weishaupt. Rothschild arranged for Frank to be given the title of Baron and he became a wealthy nobleman with a big following of Jews in Germany, the Austro-Hungarian Empire and other European countries. Most of them would have believed he was on their side.

The name 'Illuminati' came from the Zohar which is a body of works in the Jewish mystical 'bible' called the Kabbalah. 'Zohar' is the foundation of Sabbatian-Frankist belief and in Hebrew 'Zohar' means 'splendour', 'radiance', 'illuminated', and so we have 'Illuminati'. They claim to be the 'Illuminated Ones' from their knowledge systematically hidden from the human population and passed on through generations of carefully-chosen initiates in the global secret society network or Cult. Hidden knowledge includes an awareness of the Cult agenda for the world and the nature of our collective reality that I will explore later. Cult 'illumination' is symbolised by the torch held by the Statue of Liberty which was gifted to New York by French Freemasons in Paris who knew exactly what it represents. 'Liberty' symbolises the goddess worshipped in

Babylon as Queen Semiramis or Ishtar. The significance of this will become clear. Notice again the ubiquitous theme of inversion with the Statue of 'Liberty' really symbolising mass control (Fig 7). A mirror-image statute stands on an island in the River Seine in Paris from where New York Liberty originated (Fig 8). A large replica of the Liberty flame stands on top of the Pont de l'Alma tunnel in Paris where Princess Diana died in a Cult ritual described in *The Biggest Secret*. Lucifer 'the light bringer' is related to all this (and much more as we'll see) and 'Lucifer' is a central figure in Sabbatian-Frankism and its associated Satanism. Sabbatians reject the Jewish Torah, or Pentateuch, the 'five books of Moses' in the Old Testament known as Genesis, Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers, and Deuteronomy which are claimed by Judaism and Christianity to have been dictated by 'God' to Moses on Mount Sinai. Sabbatians say these do not apply to them and they seek to replace them with the Zohar to absorb Judaism and its followers into their inversion which is an expression of a much greater global inversion. They want to delete all religions and force humanity to worship a one-world religion – Sabbatian Satanism that also includes worship of the Earth goddess. Satanic themes are being more and more introduced into mainstream society and while Christianity is currently the foremost target for destruction the others are planned to follow.

Figure 7: The Cult goddess of Babylon disguised as the Statue of Liberty holding the flame of Lucifer the 'light bringer'.

Figure 8: Liberty's mirror image in Paris where the New York version originated.

Marx brothers

Rabbi Marvin Antelman connects the Illuminati to the Jacobins in *To Eliminate the Opiate* and Jacobins were the force behind the French Revolution. He links both to the Bund der Gerechten, or League of the Just, which was the network that inflicted communism/Marxism on the world. Antelman wrote:

> The original inner circle of the Bund der Gerechten consisted of born Catholics, Protestants and Jews [Sabbatian-Frankist infiltrators], and those representatives of respective subdivisions formulated schemes for the ultimate destruction of their faiths. The heretical Catholics laid plans which they felt would take a century or more for the ultimate destruction of the church; the apostate Jews for the ultimate destruction of the Jewish religion.

Sabbatian-created communism connects into this anti-religion agenda in that communism does not allow for the free practice of religion. The Sabbatian 'Bund' became the International Communist Party and Communist League and in 1848 'Marxism' was born with the Communist Manifesto of Sabbatian assets Karl Marx and Friedrich Engels. It is absolutely no coincidence that Marxism, just a different name for fascist and other centrally-controlled tyrannies, is being imposed worldwide as a result of the 'Covid' hoax and nor that Marxist/fascist China was the place where the hoax originated. The reason for this will become very clear in the chapter 'Covid: The calculated catastrophe'. The so-called 'Woke' mentality has hijacked

traditional beliefs of the political left and replaced them with far-right make-believe 'social justice' better known as Marxism. Woke will, however, be swallowed by its own perceived 'revolution' which is really the work of billionaires and billionaire corporations feigning being 'Woke'. Marxism is being touted by Wokers as a replacement for 'capitalism' when we don't have 'capitalism'. We have cartelism in which the market is stitched up by the very Cult billionaires and corporations bankrolling Woke. Billionaires love Marxism which keeps the people in servitude while they control from the top. Terminally naïve Wokers think they are 'changing the world' when it's the Cult that is doing the changing and when they have played their vital part and become surplus to requirements they, too, will be targeted. The Illuminati-Jacobins were behind the period known as 'The Terror' in the French Revolution in 1793 and 1794 when Jacobin Maximillian de Robespierre and his Orwellian 'Committee of Public Safety' killed 17,000 'enemies of the Revolution' who had once been 'friends of the Revolution'. Karl Marx (1818-1883), whose Sabbatian creed of Marxism has cost the lives of at least 100 million people, is a hero once again to Wokers who have been systematically kept ignorant of real history by their 'education' programming. As a result they now promote a Sabbatian 'Marxist' abomination destined at some point to consume them. Rabbi Antelman, who spent decades researching the Sabbatian plot, said of the League of the Just and Karl Marx:

> Contrary to popular opinion Karl Marx did not originate the Communist Manifesto. He was paid for his services by the League of the Just, which was known in its country of origin, Germany, as the Bund der Geaechteten.

Antelman said the text attributed to Marx was the work of other people and Marx 'was only repeating what others already said'. Marx was 'a hired hack – lackey of the wealthy Illuminists'. Marx famously said that religion was the 'opium of the people' (part of the Sabbatian plan to demonise religion) and Antelman called his books, *To Eliminate the Opiate*. Marx was born Jewish, but his family converted to Christianity (Sabbatian modus operandi) and he

attacked Jews, not least in his book, *A World Without Jews*. In doing so he supported the Sabbatian plan to destroy traditional Jewishness and Judaism which we are clearly seeing today with the vindictive targeting of orthodox Jews by the Sabbatian government of Israel over 'Covid' laws. I don't follow any religion and it has done much damage to the world over centuries and acted as a perceptual straightjacket. Renegade Minds, however, are always asking *why* something is being done. It doesn't matter if they agree or disagree with what is happening – *why* is it happening is the question. The 'why?' can be answered with regard to religion in that religions create interacting communities of believers when the Cult wants to dismantle all discourse, unity and interaction (see 'Covid' lockdowns) and the ultimate goal is to delete all religions for a one-world religion of Cult Satanism worshipping their 'god' of which more later. We see the same 'why?' with gun control in America. I don't have guns and don't want them, but why is the Cult seeking to disarm the population at the same time that law enforcement agencies are armed to their molars and why has every tyrant in history sought to disarm people before launching the final takeover? They include Hitler, Stalin, Pol Pot and Mao who followed confiscation with violent seizing of power. You know it's a Cult agenda by the people who immediately race to the microphones to exploit dead people in multiple shootings. Ultra-Zionist Cult lackey Senator Chuck Schumer was straight on the case after ten people were killed in Boulder, Colorado in March, 2121. Simple rule … if Schumer wants it the Cult wants it and the same with his ultra-Zionist mate the wild-eyed Senator Adam Schiff. At the same time they were calling for the disarmament of Americans, many of whom live a long way from a police response, Schumer, Schiff and the rest of these pampered clowns were sitting on Capitol Hill behind a razor-wired security fence protected by thousands of armed troops in addition to their own armed bodyguards. Mom and pop in an isolated home? They're just potential mass shooters.

Zion Mainframe

Sabbatian-Frankists and most importantly the Rothschilds were behind the creation of 'Zionism', a political movement that demanded a Jewish homeland in Israel as promised by Sabbatai Zevi. The very symbol of Israel comes from the German meaning of the name Rothschild. Dynasty founder Mayer Amschel Rothschild changed the family name from Bauer to Rothschild, or 'Red-Shield' in German, in deference to the six-pointed 'Star of David' hexagram displayed on the family's home in Frankfurt. The symbol later appeared on the flag of Israel after the Rothschilds were centrally involved in its creation. Hexagrams are not a uniquely Jewish symbol and are widely used in occult ('hidden') networks often as a symbol for Saturn (see my other books for why). Neither are Zionism and Jewishness interchangeable. Zionism is a political movement and philosophy and not a 'race' or a people. Many Jews oppose Zionism and many non-Jews, including US President Joe Biden, call themselves Zionists as does Israel-centric Donald Trump. America's support for the Israel government is pretty much a gimme with ultra-Zionist billionaires and corporations providing fantastic and dominant funding for both political parties. Former Congresswoman Cynthia McKinney has told how she was approached immediately she ran for office to 'sign the pledge' to Israel and confirm that she would always vote in that country's best interests. All American politicians are approached in this way. Anyone who refuses will get no support or funding from the enormous and all-powerful Zionist lobby that includes organisations like mega-lobby group AIPAC, the American Israel Public Affairs Committee. Trump's biggest funder was ultra-Zionist casino and media billionaire Sheldon Adelson while major funders of the Democratic Party include ultra-Zionist George Soros and ultra-Zionist financial and media mogul, Haim Saban. Some may reel back at the suggestion that Soros is an Israel-firster (Sabbatian-controlled Israel-firster), but Renegade Minds watch the actions not the words and everywhere Soros donates his billions the Sabbatian agenda benefits. In the spirit of Sabbatian inversion Soros pledged $1 billion for a new university network to promote 'liberal values and tackle intolerance'. He made the announcement during his annual speech

at the Cult-owned World Economic Forum in Davos, Switzerland, in January, 2020, after his 'harsh criticism' of 'authoritarian rulers' around the world. You can only laugh at such brazen mendacity. How *he* doesn't laugh is the mystery. Translated from the Orwellian 'liberal values and tackle intolerance' means teaching non-white people to hate white people and for white people to loathe themselves for being born white. The reason for that will become clear.

The 'Anti-Semitism' fraud

Zionists support the Jewish homeland in the land of Palestine which has been the Sabbatian-Rothschild goal for so long, but not for the benefit of Jews. Sabbatians and their global Anti-Semitism Industry have skewed public and political opinion to equate opposing the violent extremes of Zionism to be a blanket attack and condemnation of all Jewish people. Sabbatians and their global Anti-Semitism Industry have skewed public and political opinion to equate opposing the violent extremes of Zionism to be a blanket attack and condemnation of all Jewish people. This is nothing more than a Sabbatian protection racket to stop legitimate investigation and exposure of their agendas and activities. The official definition of 'anti-Semitism' has more recently been expanded to include criticism of Zionism – a *political movement* – and this was done to further stop exposure of Sabbatian infiltrators who created Zionism as we know it today in the 19th century. Renegade Minds will talk about these subjects when they know the shit that will come their way. People must decide if they want to know the truth or just cower in the corner in fear of what others will say. Sabbatians have been trying to label me as 'anti-Semitic' since the 1990s as I have uncovered more and more about their background and agendas. Useless, gutless, fraudulent 'journalists' then just repeat the smears without question and on the day I was writing this section a pair of unquestioning repeaters called Ben Quinn and Archie Bland (how appropriate) outright called me an 'anti-Semite' in the establishment propaganda sheet, the London *Guardian*, with no supporting evidence. The

Sabbatian Anti-Semitism Industry said so and who are they to question that? They wouldn't dare. Ironically 'Semitic' refers to a group of languages in the Middle East that are almost entirely Arabic. 'Anti-Semitism' becomes 'anti-Arab' which if the consequences of this misunderstanding were not so grave would be hilarious. Don't bother telling Quinn and Bland. I don't want to confuse them, bless 'em. One reason I am dubbed 'anti-Semitic' is that I wrote in the 1990s that Jewish operatives (Sabbatians) were heavily involved in the Russian Revolution when Sabbatians overthrew the Romanov dynasty. This apparently made me 'anti-Semitic'. Oh, really? Here is a section from *The Trigger*:

British journalist Robert Wilton confirmed these themes in his 1920 book *The Last Days of the Romanovs* when he studied official documents from the Russian government to identify the members of the Bolshevik ruling elite between 1917 and 1919. The Central Committee included 41 Jews among 62 members; the Council of the People's Commissars had 17 Jews out of 22 members; and 458 of the 556 most important Bolshevik positions between 1918 and 1919 were occupied by Jewish people. Only 17 were Russian. Then there were the 23 Jews among the 36 members of the vicious Cheka Soviet secret police established in 1917 who would soon appear all across the country.

Professor Robert Service of Oxford University, an expert on 20th century Russian history, found evidence that ['Jewish'] Leon Trotsky had sought to make sure that Jews were enrolled in the Red Army and were disproportionately represented in the Soviet civil bureaucracy that included the Cheka which performed mass arrests, imprisonment and executions of 'enemies of the people'. A US State Department Decimal File (861.00/5339) dated November 13th, 1918, names [Rothschild banking agent in America] Jacob Schiff and a list of ultra-Zionists as funders of the Russian Revolution leading to claims of a 'Jewish plot', but the key point missed by all is they were not 'Jews' – they were Sabbatian-Frankists.

Britain's Winston Churchill made the same error by mistake or otherwise. He wrote in a 1920 edition of the *Illustrated Sunday Herald* that those behind the Russian revolution were part of a 'worldwide conspiracy for the overthrow of civilisation and for the reconstitution of society on the basis of arrested development, of envious malevolence, and impossible equality' (see 'Woke' today because that has been created by the same network). Churchill said there was no need to exaggerate the part played in the creation of Bolshevism and in the actual bringing about of the Russian

Revolution 'by these international and for the most part atheistical Jews' ['atheistical Jews' = Sabbatians]. Churchill said it is certainly a very great one and probably outweighs all others: 'With the notable exception of Lenin, the majority of the leading figures are Jews.' He went on to describe, knowingly or not, the Sabbatian modus operandi of placing puppet leaders nominally in power while they control from the background:

> Moreover, the principal inspiration and driving power comes from the Jewish leaders. Thus Tchitcherin, a pure Russian, is eclipsed by his nominal subordinate, Litvinoff, and the influence of Russians like Bukharin or Lunacharski cannot be compared with the power of Trotsky, or of Zinovieff, the Dictator of the Red Citadel (Petrograd), or of Krassin or Radek – all Jews. In the Soviet institutions the predominance of Jews is even more astonishing. And the prominent, if not indeed the principal, part in the system of terrorism applied by the Extraordinary Commissions for Combatting Counter-Revolution has been taken by Jews, and in some notable cases by Jewesses.

What I said about seriously disproportionate involvement in the Russian Revolution by Jewish 'revolutionaries' (Sabbatians) is provable fact, but truth is no defence against the Sabbatian Anti-Semitism Industry, its repeater parrots like Quinn and Bland, and the now breathtaking network of so-called 'Woke' 'anti-hate' groups with interlocking leaderships and funding which have the role of discrediting and silencing anyone who gets too close to exposing the Sabbatians. We have seen 'truth is no defence' confirmed in legal judgements with the Saskatchewan Human Rights Commission in Canada decreeing this: 'Truthful statements can be presented in a manner that would meet the definition of hate speech, and not all truthful statements must be free from restriction.' Most 'anti-hate' activists, who are themselves consumed by hatred, are too stupid and ignorant of the world to know how they are being used. They are far too far up their own virtue-signalling arses and it's far too dark for them to see anything.

The 'revolution' game

The background and methods of the 'Russian' Revolution are straight from the Sabbatian playbook seen in the French Revolution

and endless others around the world that appear to start as a revolution of the people against tyrannical rule and end up with a regime change to more tyrannical rule overtly or covertly. Wars, terror attacks and regime overthrows follow the Sabbatian cult through history with its agents creating them as Problem-Reaction-Solutions to remove opposition on the road to world domination. Sabbatian dots connect the Rothschilds with the Illuminati, Jacobins of the French Revolution, the 'Bund' or League of the Just, the International Communist Party, Communist League and the Communist Manifesto of Karl Marx and Friedrich Engels that would lead to the Rothschild-funded Russian Revolution. The sequence comes under the heading of 'creative destruction' when you advance to your global goal by continually destroying the status quo to install a new status quo which you then also destroy. The two world wars come to mind. With each new status quo you move closer to your planned outcome. Wars and mass murder are to Sabbatians a collective blood sacrifice ritual. They are obsessed with death for many reasons and one is that death is an inversion of life. Satanists and Sabbatians are obsessed with death and often target churches and churchyards for their rituals. Inversion-obsessed Sabbatians explain the use of inverted symbolism including the *inverted* pentagram and *inverted* cross. The inversion of the cross has been related to targeting Christianity, but the cross was a religious symbol long before Christianity and its inversion is a statement about the Sabbatian mentality and goals more than any single religion.

Sabbatians operating in Germany were behind the rise of the occult-obsessed Nazis and the subsequent Jewish exodus from Germany and Europe to Palestine and the United States after World War Two. The Rothschild dynasty was at the forefront of this both as political manipulators and by funding the operation. Why would Sabbatians help to orchestrate the horrors inflicted on Jews by the Nazis and by Stalin after they organised the Russian Revolution? Sabbatians hate Jews and their religion, that's why. They pose as Jews and secure positions of control within Jewish society and play the 'anti-Semitism' card to protect themselves from exposure

through a global network of organisations answering to the Sabbatian-created-and-controlled globe-spanning intelligence network that involves a stunning web of military-intelligence operatives and operations for a tiny country of just nine million. Among them are Jewish assets who are not Sabbatians but have been convinced by them that what they are doing is for the good of Israel and the Jewish community to protect them from what they have been programmed since childhood to believe is a Jew-hating hostile world. The Jewish community is just a highly convenient cover to hide the true nature of Sabbatians. Anyone getting close to exposing their game is accused by Sabbatian place-people and gofers of 'anti-Semitism' and claiming that all Jews are part of a plot to take over the world. I am not saying that. I am saying that Sabbatians – the *real* Jew-haters – have infiltrated the Jewish community to use them both as a cover and an 'anti-Semitic' defence against exposure. Thus we have the Anti-Semitism Industry targeted researchers in this way and most Jewish people think this is justified and genuine. They don't know that their 'Jewish' leaders and institutions of state, intelligence and military are not controlled by Jews at all, but cultists and stooges of Sabbatian-Frankism. I once added my name to a pro-Jewish freedom petition online and the next time I looked my name was gone and text had been added to the petition blurb to attack me as an 'anti-Semite' such is the scale of perceptual programming.

Moving on America

I tell the story in *The Trigger* and a chapter called 'Atlantic Crossing' how particularly after Israel was established the Sabbatians moved in on the United States and eventually grasped control of government administration, the political system via both Democrats and Republicans, the intelligence community like the CIA and National Security Agency (NSA), the Pentagon and mass media. Through this seriously compartmentalised network Sabbatians and their operatives in Mossad, Israeli Defense Forces (IDF) and US agencies pulled off 9/11 and blamed it on 19 'Al-Qaeda hijackers' dominated by men from, or connected to, Sabbatian-ruled Saudi

Arabia. The '19' were not even on the planes let alone flew those big passenger jets into buildings while being largely incompetent at piloting one-engine light aircraft. 'Hijacker' Hani Hanjour who is said to have flown American Airlines Flight 77 into the Pentagon with a turn and manoeuvre most professional pilots said they would have struggled to do was banned from renting a small plane by instructors at the Freeway Airport in Bowie, Maryland, just *six weeks* earlier on the grounds that he was an incompetent pilot. The Jewish population of the world is just 0.2 percent with even that almost entirely concentrated in Israel (75 percent Jewish) and the United States (around two percent). This two percent and globally 0.2 percent refers to *Jewish* people and not Sabbatian interlopers who are a fraction of that fraction. What a sobering thought when you think of the fantastic influence on world affairs of tiny Israel and that the Project for the New America Century (PNAC) which laid out the blueprint in September, 2000, for America's war on terror and regime change wars in Iraq, Libya and Syria was founded and dominated by Sabbatians known as 'Neocons'. The document conceded that this plan would not be supported politically or publicly without a major attack on American soil and a Problem-Reaction-Solution excuse to send troops to war across the Middle East. Sabbatian Neocons said:

> ... [The] process of transformation ... [war and regime change] ... is likely to be a long one, absent some catastrophic and catalysing event – like a new Pearl Harbor.

Four months later many of those who produced that document came to power with their inane puppet George Bush from the long-time Sabbatian Bush family. They included Sabbatian Dick Cheney who was officially vice-president, but really de-facto president for the entirety of the 'Bush' government. Nine months after the 'Bush' inauguration came what Bush called at the time 'the Pearl Harbor of the 21st century' and with typical Sabbatian timing and symbolism 2001 was the 60th anniversary of the attack in 1941 by the Japanese Air Force on Pearl Harbor, Hawaii, which allowed President Franklin Delano Roosevelt to take the United States into a Sabbatian-

instigated Second World War that he said in his election campaign that he never would. The evidence is overwhelming that Roosevelt and his military and intelligence networks knew the attack was coming and did nothing to stop it, but they did make sure that America's most essential naval ships were not in Hawaii at the time. Three thousand Americans died in the Pearl Harbor attacks as they did on September 11th. By the 9/11 year of 2001 Sabbatians had widely infiltrated the US government, military and intelligence operations and used their compartmentalised assets to pull off the 'Al-Qaeda' attacks. If you read *The Trigger* it will blow your mind to see the utterly staggering concentration of 'Jewish' operatives (Sabbatian infiltrators) in essential positions of political, security, legal, law enforcement, financial and business power before, during, and after the attacks to make them happen, carry them out, and then cover their tracks – and I do mean *staggering* when you think of that 0.2 percent of the world population and two percent of Americans which are Jewish while Sabbatian infiltrators are a fraction of that. A central foundation of the 9/11 conspiracy was the hijacking of government, military, Air Force and intelligence computer systems in real time through 'back-door' access made possible by Israeli (Sabbatian) 'cyber security' software. Sabbatian-controlled Israel is on the way to rivalling Silicon Valley for domination of cyberspace and is becoming the dominant force in cyber-security which gives them access to entire computer systems and their passcodes across the world. Then add to this that Zionists head (officially) Silicon Valley giants like Google (Larry Page and Sergey Brin), Google-owned YouTube (Susan Wojcicki), Facebook (Mark Zuckerberg and Sheryl Sandberg), and Apple (Chairman Arthur D. Levinson), and that ultra-Zionist hedge fund billionaire Paul Singer has a $1 billion stake in Twitter which is only nominally headed by 'CEO' pothead Jack Dorsey. As cable news host Tucker Carlson said of Dorsey: 'There used to be debate in the medical community whether dropping a ton of acid had permanent effects and I think that debate has now ended.' Carlson made the comment after Dorsey told a hearing on Capitol Hill (if you cut through his bullshit) that he

believed in free speech so long as he got to decide what you can hear and see. These 'big names' of Silicon Valley are only front men and women for the Global Cult, not least the Sabbatians, who are the true controllers of these corporations. Does anyone still wonder why these same people and companies have been ferociously censoring and banning people (like me) for exposing any aspect of the Cult agenda and especially the truth about the 'Covid' hoax which Sabbatians have orchestrated?

The Jeffrey Epstein paedophile ring was a Sabbatian operation. He was officially 'Jewish' but he was a Sabbatian and women abused by the ring have told me about the high number of 'Jewish' people involved. The Epstein horror has Sabbatian written all over it and matches perfectly their modus operandi and obsession with sex and ritual. Epstein was running a Sabbatian blackmail ring in which famous people with political and other influence were provided with young girls for sex while everything was being filmed and recorded on hidden cameras and microphones at his New York house, Caribbean island and other properties. Epstein survivors have described this surveillance system to me and some have gone public. Once the famous politician or other figure knew he or she was on video they tended to do whatever they were told. Here we go again …when you've got them by the balls their hearts and minds will follow. Sabbatians use this blackmail technique on a wide scale across the world to entrap politicians and others they need to act as demanded. Epstein's private plane, the infamous 'Lolita Express', had many well-known passengers including Bill Clinton while Bill Gates has flown on an Epstein plane and met with him four years after Epstein had been jailed for paedophilia. They subsequently met many times at Epstein's home in New York according to a witness who was there. Epstein's infamous side-kick was Ghislaine Maxwell, daughter of Mossad agent and ultra-Zionist mega-crooked British businessman, Bob Maxwell, who at one time owned the *Daily Mirror* newspaper. Maxwell was murdered at sea on his boat in 1991 by Sabbatian-controlled Mossad when he became a liability with his

business empire collapsing as a former Mossad operative has confirmed (see *The Trigger*).

Money, money, money, funny money ...

Before I come to the Sabbatian connection with the last three US presidents I will lay out the crucial importance to Sabbatians of controlling banking and finance. Sabbatian Mayer Amschel Rothschild set out to dominate this arena in his family's quest for total global control. What is freedom? It is, in effect, choice. The more choices you have the freer you are and the fewer your choices the more you are enslaved. In the global structure created over centuries by Sabbatians the biggest decider and restrictor of choice is … money. Across the world if you ask people what they would like to do with their lives and why they are not doing that they will reply 'I don't have the money'. This is the idea. A global elite of multi-billionaires are described as 'greedy' and that is true on one level; but control of money – who has it and who doesn't – is not primarily about greed. It's about control. Sabbatians have seized ever more control of finance and sucked the wealth of the world out of the hands of the population. We talk now, after all, about the 'One-percent' and even then the wealthiest are a lot fewer even than that. This has been made possible by a money scam so outrageous and so vast it could rightly be called the scam of scams founded on creating 'money' out of nothing and 'loaning' that with interest to the population. Money out of nothing is called 'credit'. Sabbatians have asserted control over governments and banking ever more completely through the centuries and secured financial laws that allow banks to lend hugely more than they have on deposit in a confidence trick known as fractional reserve lending. Imagine if you could lend money that doesn't exist and charge the recipient interest for doing so. You would end up in jail. Bankers by contrast end up in mansions, private jets, Malibu and Monaco.

Banks are only required to keep a fraction of their deposits and wealth in their vaults and they are allowed to lend 'money' they don't have called 'credit. Go into a bank for a loan and if you succeed

the banker will not move any real wealth into your account. They will type into your account the amount of the agreed 'loan' – say £100,000. This is not wealth that really exists; it is non-existent, fresh-air, created-out-of-nothing 'credit' which has never, does not, and will never exist except in theory. Credit is backed by nothing except wind and only has buying power because people think that it has buying power and accept it in return for property, goods and services. I have described this situation as like those cartoon characters you see chasing each other and when they run over the edge of a cliff they keep running forward on fresh air until one of them looks down, realises what's happened, and they all crash into the ravine. The whole foundation of the Sabbatian financial system is to stop people looking down except for periodic moments when they want to crash the system (as in 2008 and 2020 ongoing) and reap the rewards from all the property, businesses and wealth their borrowers had signed over as 'collateral' in return for a 'loan' of fresh air. Most people think that money is somehow created by governments when it comes into existence from the start as a debt through banks 'lending' illusory money called credit. Yes, the very currency of exchange is a *debt* from day one issued as an interest-bearing loan. Why don't governments create money interest-free and lend it to their people interest-free? Governments are controlled by Sabbatians and the financial system is controlled by Sabbatians for whom interest-free money would be a nightmare come true. Sabbatians underpin their financial domination through their global network of central banks, including the privately-owned US Federal Reserve and Britain's Bank of England, and this is orchestrated by a privately-owned central bank coordination body called the Bank for International Settlements in Basle, Switzerland, created by the usual suspects including the Rockefellers and Rothschilds. Central bank chiefs don't answer to governments or the people. They answer to the Bank for International Settlements or, in other words, the Global Cult which is dominated today by Sabbatians.

Built-in disaster

There are so many constituent scams within the overall banking scam. When you take out a loan of thin-air credit only the amount of that loan is theoretically brought into circulation to add to the amount in circulation; but you are paying back the principle plus interest. The additional interest is not created and this means that with every 'loan' there is a shortfall in the money in circulation between what is borrowed and what has to be paid back. There is never even close to enough money in circulation to repay all outstanding public and private debt including interest. Coldly weaved in the very fabric of the system is the certainty that some will lose their homes, businesses and possessions to the banking 'lender'. This is less obvious in times of 'boom' when the amount of money in circulation (and the debt) is expanding through more people wanting and getting loans. When a downturn comes and the money supply contracts it becomes painfully obvious that there is not enough money to service all debt and interest. This is less obvious in times of 'boom' when the amount of money in circulation (and the debt) is expanding through more people wanting and getting loans. When a downturn comes and the money supply contracts and it becomes painfully obvious – as in 2008 and currently – that there is not enough money to service all debt and interest. Sabbatian banksters have been leading the human population through a calculated series of booms (more debt incurred) and busts (when the debt can't be repaid and the banks get the debtor's tangible wealth in exchange for non-existent 'credit'). With each 'bust' Sabbatian bankers have absorbed more of the world's tangible wealth and we end up with the One-percent. Governments are in bankruptcy levels of debt to the same system and are therefore owned by a system they do not control. The Federal Reserve, 'America's central bank', is privately-owned and American presidents only nominally appoint its chairman or woman to maintain the illusion that it's an arm of government. It's not. The 'Fed' is a cartel of private banks which handed billions to its associates and friends after the crash of 2008 and has been Sabbatian-controlled since it was manipulated into being in 1913 through the covert trickery of Rothschild banking agents Jacob Schiff and Paul

Warburg, and the Sabbatian Rockefeller family. Somehow from a Jewish population of two-percent and globally 0.2 percent (Sabbatian interlopers remember are far smaller) ultra-Zionists headed the Federal Reserve for 31 years between 1987 and 2018 in the form of Alan Greenspan, Bernard Bernanke and Janet Yellen (now Biden's Treasury Secretary) with Yellen's deputy chairman a Israeli-American duel citizen and ultra-Zionist Stanley Fischer, a former governor of the Bank of Israel. Ultra-Zionist Fed chiefs spanned the presidencies of Ronald Reagan ('Republican'), Father George Bush ('Republican'), Bill Clinton ('Democrat'), Boy George Bush ('Republican') and Barack Obama ('Democrat'). We should really add the pre-Greenspan chairman, Paul Adolph Volcker, 'appointed' by Jimmy Carter ('Democrat') who ran the Fed between 1979 and 1987 during the Carter and Reagan administrations before Greenspan took over. Volcker was a long-time associate and business partner of the Rothschilds. No matter what the 'party' officially in power the United States economy was directed by the same force. Here are members of the Obama, Trump and Biden administrations and see if you can make out a common theme.

Barack Obama ('Democrat')

Ultra-Zionists Robert Rubin, Larry Summers, and Timothy Geithner ran the US Treasury in the Clinton administration and two of them reappeared with Obama. Ultra-Zionist Fed chairman Alan Greenspan had manipulated the crash of 2008 through deregulation and jumped ship just before the disaster to make way for ultra-Zionist Bernard Bernanke to hand out trillions to Sabbatian 'too big to fail' banks and businesses, including the ubiquitous ultra-Zionist Goldman Sachs which has an ongoing staff revolving door operation between itself and major financial positions in government worldwide. Obama inherited the fallout of the crash when he took office in January, 2009, and fortunately he had the support of his ultra-Zionist White House Chief of Staff Rahm Emmanuel, son of a terrorist who helped to bomb Israel into being in 1948, and his ultra-Zionist senior adviser David Axelrod, chief strategist in Obama's two

successful presidential campaigns. Emmanuel, later mayor of Chicago and former senior fundraiser and strategist for Bill Clinton, is an example of the Sabbatian policy after Israel was established of migrating insider families to America so their children would be born American citizens. 'Obama' chose this financial team throughout his administration to respond to the Sabbatian-instigated crisis:

Timothy Geithner (ultra-Zionist) Treasury Secretary; Jacob J. Lew, Treasury Secretary; Larry Summers (ultra-Zionist), director of the White House National Economic Council; Paul Adolph Volcker (Rothschild business partner), chairman of the Economic Recovery Advisory Board; Peter Orszag (ultra-Zionist), director of the Office of Management and Budget overseeing all government spending; Penny Pritzker (ultra-Zionist), Commerce Secretary; Jared Bernstein (ultra-Zionist), chief economist and economic policy adviser to Vice President Joe Biden; Mary Schapiro (ultra-Zionist), chair of the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC); Gary Gensler (ultra-Zionist), chairman of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission (CFTC); Sheila Bair (ultra-Zionist), chair of the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC); Karen Mills (ultra-Zionist), head of the Small Business Administration (SBA); Kenneth Feinberg (ultra-Zionist), Special Master for Executive [bail-out] Compensation. Feinberg would be appointed to oversee compensation (with strings) to 9/11 victims and families in a campaign to stop them having their day in court to question the official story. At the same time ultra-Zionist Bernard Bernanke was chairman of the Federal Reserve and these are only some of the ultra-Zionists with allegiance to Sabbatian-controlled Israel in the Obama government. Obama's biggest corporate donor was ultra-Zionist Goldman Sachs which had employed many in his administration.

Donald Trump ('Republican')

Trump claimed to be an outsider (he wasn't) who had come to 'drain the swamp'. He embarked on this goal by immediately appointing ultra-Zionist Steve Mnuchin, a Goldman Sachs employee for 17

years, as his Treasury Secretary. Others included Gary Cohn (ultra-Zionist), chief operating officer of Goldman Sachs, his first Director of the National Economic Council and chief economic adviser, who was later replaced by Larry Kudlow (ultra-Zionist). Trump's senior adviser throughout his four years in the White House was his sinister son-in-law Jared Kushner, a life-long friend of Israel Prime Minister Benjamin Netanyahu. Kushner is the son of a convicted crook who was pardoned by Trump in his last days in office. Other ultra-Zionists in the Trump administration included: Stephen Miller, Senior Policy Adviser; Avrahm Berkowitz, Deputy Adviser to Trump and his Senior Adviser Jared Kushner; Ivanka Trump, Adviser to the President, who converted to Judaism when she married Jared Kushner; David Friedman, Trump lawyer and Ambassador to Israel; Jason Greenblatt, Trump Organization executive vice president and chief legal officer, who was made Special Representative for International Negotiations and the Israeli-Palestinian Conflict; Rod Rosenstein, Deputy Attorney General; Elliot Abrams, Special Representative for Venezuela, then Iran; John Eisenberg, National Security Council Legal Adviser and Deputy Council to the President for National Security Affairs; Anne Neuberger, Deputy National Manager, National Security Agency; Ezra Cohen-Watnick, Acting Under Secretary of Defense for Intelligence; Elan Carr, Special Envoy to monitor and combat anti-Semitism; Len Khodorkovsky, Deputy Special Envoy to monitor and combat anti-Semitism; Reed Cordish, Assistant to the President, Intragovernmental and Technology Initiatives. Trump Vice President Mike Pence and Secretary of State Mike Pompeo, both Christian Zionists, were also vehement supporters of Israel and its goals and ambitions.

Donald 'free-speech believer' Trump pardoned a number of financial and violent criminals while ignoring calls to pardon Julian Assange and Edward Snowden whose crimes are revealing highly relevant information about government manipulation and corruption and the widespread illegal surveillance of the American people by US 'security' agencies. It's so good to know that Trump is on the side of freedom and justice and not mega-criminals with

allegiance to Sabbatian-controlled Israel. These included a pardon for Israeli spy Jonathan Pollard who was jailed for life in 1987 under the Espionage Act. Aviem Sella, the Mossad agent who recruited Pollard, was also pardoned by Trump while Assange sat in jail and Snowden remained in exile in Russia. Sella had 'fled' (was helped to escape) to Israel in 1987 and was never extradited despite being charged under the Espionage Act. A Trump White House statement said that Sella's clemency had been 'supported by Benjamin Netanyahu, Ron Dermer, Israel's US Ambassador, David Friedman, US Ambassador to Israel and Miriam Adelson, wife of leading Trump donor Sheldon Adelson who died shortly before. Other friends of Jared Kushner were pardoned along with Sholom Weiss who was believed to be serving the longest-ever white-collar prison sentence of more than 800 years in 2000. The sentence was commuted of Ponzi-schemer Eliyahu Weinstein who defrauded Jews and others out of $200 million. I did mention that Assange and Snowden were ignored, right? Trump gave Sabbatians almost everything they asked for in military and political support, moving the US Embassy from Tel Aviv to Jerusalem with its critical symbolic and literal implications for Palestinian statehood, and the 'deal of the Century' designed by Jared Kushner and David Friedman which gave the Sabbatian Israeli government the green light to substantially expand its already widespread program of building illegal Jewish-only settlements in the occupied land of the West Bank. This made a two-state 'solution' impossible by seizing all the land of a potential Palestinian homeland and that had been the plan since 1948 and then 1967 when the Arab-controlled Gaza Strip, West Bank, Sinai Peninsula and Syrian Golan Heights were occupied by Israel. All the talks about talks and road maps and delays have been buying time until the West Bank was physically occupied by Israeli real estate. Trump would have to be a monumentally ill-informed idiot not to see that this was the plan he was helping to complete. The Trump administration was in so many ways the Kushner administration which means the Netanyahu administration which means the Sabbatian administration. I understand why many opposing Cult fascism in all its forms gravitated to Trump, but he

was a crucial part of the Sabbatian plan and I will deal with this in the next chapter.

Joe Biden ('Democrat')

A barely cognitive Joe Biden took over the presidency in January, 2021, along with his fellow empty shell, Vice-President Kamala Harris, as the latest Sabbatian gofers to enter the White House. Names on the door may have changed and the 'party' – the force behind them remained the same as Zionists were appointed to a stream of pivotal areas relating to Sabbatian plans and policy. They included: Janet Yellen, Treasury Secretary, former head of the Federal Reserve, and still another ultra-Zionist running the US Treasury after Mnuchin (Trump), Lew and Geithner (Obama), and Summers and Rubin (Clinton); Anthony Blinken, Secretary of State; Wendy Sherman, Deputy Secretary of State (so that's 'Biden's' Sabbatian foreign policy sorted); Jeff Zients, White House coronavirus coordinator; Rochelle Walensky, head of the Centers for Disease Control; Rachel Levine, transgender deputy health secretary (that's 'Covid' hoax policy under control); Merrick Garland, Attorney General; Alejandro Mayorkas, Secretary of Homeland Security; Cass Sunstein, Homeland Security with responsibility for new immigration laws; Avril Haines, Director of National Intelligence; Anne Neuberger, National Security Agency cybersecurity director (note, cybersecurity); David Cohen, CIA Deputy Director; Ronald Klain, Biden's Chief of Staff (see Rahm Emanuel); Eric Lander, a 'leading geneticist', Office of Science and Technology Policy director (see Smart Grid, synthetic biology agenda); Jessica Rosenworcel, acting head of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) which controls Smart Grid technology policy and electromagnetic communication systems including 5G. How can it be that so many pivotal positions are held by two-percent of the American population and 0.2 percent of the world population administration after administration no matter who is the president and what is the party? It's a coincidence? Of course it's not and this is why Sabbatians have built their colossal global web of interlocking 'anti-

hate' hate groups to condemn anyone who asks these glaring questions as an 'anti-Semite'. The way that Jewish people horrifically abused in Sabbatian-backed Nazi Germany are exploited to this end is stomach-turning and disgusting beyond words.

Political fusion

Sabbatian manipulation has reversed the roles of Republicans and Democrats and the same has happened in Britain with the Conservative and Labour Parties. Republicans and Conservatives were always labelled the 'right' and Democrats and Labour the 'left', but look at the policy positions now and the Democrat-Labour 'left' has moved further to the 'right' than Republicans and Conservatives under the banner of 'Woke', the Cult-created far-right tyranny. Where once the Democrat-Labour 'left' defended free speech and human rights they now seek to delete them and as I said earlier despite the 'Covid' fascism of the Jackboot Johnson Conservative government in the UK the Labour Party of leader Keir Starmer demanded even more extreme measures. The Labour Party has been very publicly absorbed by Sabbatians after a political and media onslaught against the previous leader, the weak and inept Jeremy Corbyn, over made-up allegations of 'anti-Semitism' both by him and his party. The plan was clear with this 'anti-Semite' propaganda and what was required in response was a swift and decisive 'fuck off' from Corbyn and a statement to expose the Anti-Semitism Industry (Sabbatian) attempt to silence Labour criticism of the Israeli government (Sabbatians) and purge the party of all dissent against the extremes of ultra-Zionism (Sabbatians). Instead Corbyn and his party fell to their knees and appeased the abusers which, by definition, is impossible. Appeasing one demand leads only to a new demand to be appeased until takeover is complete. Like I say – 'fuck off' would have been a much more effective policy and I have used it myself with great effect over the years when Sabbatians are on my case which is most of the time. I consider that fact a great compliment, by the way. The outcome of the Labour Party capitulation is that we now have a Sabbatian-controlled

Conservative Party 'opposed' by a Sabbatian-controlled Labour Party in a one-party Sabbatian state that hurtles towards the extremes of tyranny (the Sabbatian cult agenda). In America the situation is the same. Labour's Keir Starmer spends his days on his knees with his tongue out pointing to Tel Aviv, or I guess now Jerusalem, while Boris Johnson has an 'anti-Semitism czar' in the form of former Labour MP John Mann who keeps Starmer company on his prayer mat.

Sabbatian influence can be seen in Jewish members of the Labour Party who have been ejected for criticism of Israel including those from families that suffered in Nazi Germany. Sabbatians despise real Jewish people and target them even more harshly because it is so much more difficult to dub them 'anti-Semitic' although in their desperation they do try.

CHAPTER THREE

The Pushbacker sting

Until you realize how easy it is for your mind to be manipulated, you remain the puppet of someone else's game
Evita Ochel

I will use the presidencies of Trump and Biden to show how the manipulation of the one-party state plays out behind the illusion of political choice across the world. No two presidencies could – on the face of it – be more different and apparently at odds in terms of direction and policy.

A Renegade Mind sees beyond the obvious and focuses on outcomes and consequences and not image, words and waffle. The Cult embarked on a campaign to divide America between those who blindly support its agenda (the mentality known as 'Woke') and those who are pushing back on where the Cult and its Sabbatians want to go. This presents infinite possibilities for dividing and ruling the population by setting them at war with each other and allows a perceptual ring fence of demonisation to encircle the Pushbackers in a modern version of the Little Big Horn in 1876 when American cavalry led by Lieutenant Colonel George Custer were drawn into a trap, surrounded and killed by Native American tribes defending their land of thousands of years from being seized by the government. In this modern version the roles are reversed and it's those defending themselves from the Sabbatian government who are surrounded and the government that's seeking to destroy them. This trap was set years ago and to explain how we must return to 2016

and the emergence of Donald Trump as a candidate to be President of the United States. He set out to overcome the best part of 20 other candidates in the Republican Party before and during the primaries and was not considered by many in those early stages to have a prayer of living in the White House. The Republican Party was said to have great reservations about Trump and yet somehow he won the nomination. When you know how American politics works – politics in general – there is no way that Trump could have become the party's candidate unless the Sabbatian-controlled 'Neocons' that run the Republican Party wanted that to happen. We saw the proof in emails and documents made public by WikiLeaks that the Democratic Party hierarchy, or Democons, systematically undermined the campaign of Bernie Sanders to make sure that Sabbatian gofer Hillary Clinton won the nomination to be their presidential candidate. If the Democons could do that then the Neocons in the Republican Party could have derailed Trump in the same way. But they didn't and at that stage I began to conclude that Trump could well be the one chosen to be president. If that was the case the 'why' was pretty clear to see – the goal of dividing America between Cult agenda-supporting Wokers and Pushbackers who gravitated to Trump because he was telling them what they wanted to hear. His constituency of support had been increasingly ignored and voiceless for decades and profoundly through the eight years of Sabbatian puppet Barack Obama. Now here was someone speaking their language of pulling back from the incessant globalisation of political and economic power, the exporting of American jobs to China and elsewhere by 'American' (Sabbatian) corporations, the deletion of free speech, and the mass immigration policies that had further devastated job opportunities for the urban working class of all races and the once American heartlands of the Midwest.

Beware the forked tongue

Those people collectively sighed with relief that at last a political leader was apparently on their side, but another trait of the Renegade Mind is that you look even harder at people telling you

what you want to hear than those who are telling you otherwise. Obviously as I said earlier people wish what they want to hear to be true and genuine and they are much more likely to believe that than someone saying what they don't want to here and don't want to be true. Sales people are taught to be skilled in eliciting by calculated questioning what their customers want to hear and repeating that back to them as their own opinion to get their targets to like and trust them. Assets of the Cult are also sales people in the sense of selling perception. To read Cult manipulation you have to play the long and expanded game and not fall for the Vaudeville show of party politics. Both American parties are vehicles for the Cult and they exploit them in different ways depending on what the agenda requires at that moment. Trump and the Republicans were used to be the focus of dividing America and isolating Pushbackers to open the way for a Biden presidency to become the most extreme in American history by advancing the full-blown Woke (Cult) agenda with the aim of destroying and silencing Pushbackers now labelled Nazi Trump supporters and white supremacists.

Sabbatians wanted Trump in office for the reasons described by ultra-Zionist Saul Alinsky (1909-1972) who was promoting the Woke philosophy through 'community organising' long before anyone had heard of it. In those days it still went by its traditional name of Marxism. The reason for the manipulated Trump phenomenon was laid out in Alinsky's 1971 book, *Rules for Radicals*, which was his blueprint for overthrowing democratic and other regimes and replacing them with Sabbatian Marxism. Not surprisingly his to-do list was evident in the Sabbatian French and Russian 'Revolutions' and that in China which will become very relevant in the next chapter about the 'Covid' hoax. Among Alinsky's followers have been the deeply corrupt Barack Obama, House Speaker Nancy Pelosi and Hillary Clinton who described him as a 'hero'. All three are Sabbatian stooges with Pelosi personifying the arrogant corrupt idiocy that so widely fronts up for the Cult inner core. Predictably as a Sabbatian advocate of the 'light-bringer' Alinsky features Lucifer on the dedication page of his book as the original radical who gained

his own kingdom ('Earth' as we shall see). One of Alinsky's golden radical rules was to pick an individual and focus all attention, hatred and blame on them and not to target faceless bureaucracies and corporations. *Rules for Radicals* is really a Sabbatian handbook with its contents repeatedly employed all over the world for centuries and why wouldn't Sabbatians bring to power their designer-villain to be used as the individual on which all attention, hatred and blame was bestowed? This is what they did and the only question for me is how much Trump knew that and how much he was manipulated. A bit of both, I suspect. This was Alinsky's Trump technique from a man who died in 1972. The technique has spanned history:

> Pick the target, freeze it, personalize it, polarize it. Don't try to attack abstract corporations or bureaucracies. Identify a responsible individual. Ignore attempts to shift or spread the blame.

From the moment Trump came to illusory power everything was about him. It wasn't about Republican policy or opinion, but all about Trump. Everything he did was presented in negative, derogatory and abusive terms by the Sabbatian-dominated media led by Cult operations such as CNN, MSNBC, *The New York Times* and the Jeff Bezos-owned *Washington Post* – 'Pick the target, freeze it, personalize it, polarize it.' Trump was turned into a demon to be vilified by those who hated him and a demi-god loved by those who worshipped him. This, in turn, had his supporters, too, presented as equally demonic in preparation for the punchline later down the line when Biden was about to take office. It was here's a Trump, there's a Trump, everywhere a Trump, Trump. Virtually every news story or happening was filtered through the lens of 'The Donald'. You loved him or hated him and which one you chose was said to define you as Satan's spawn or a paragon of virtue. Even supporting some Trump policies or statements and not others was enough for an assault on your character. No shades of grey were or are allowed. Everything is black and white (literally and figuratively). A Californian I knew had her head utterly scrambled by her hatred for Trump while telling people they should love each other. She was so totally consumed by

Trump Derangement Syndrome as it became to be known that this glaring contradiction would never have occurred to her. By definition anyone who criticised Trump or praised his opponents was a hero and this lady described Joe Biden as 'a kind, honest gentleman' when he's a provable liar, mega-crook and vicious piece of work to boot. Sabbatians had indeed divided America using Trump as the fall-guy and all along the clock was ticking on the consequences for his supporters.

In hock to his masters

Trump gave Sabbatians via Israel almost everything they wanted in his four years. Ask and you shall receive was the dynamic between himself and Benjamin Netanyahu orchestrated by Trump's ultra-Zionist son-in-law Jared Kushner, his ultra-Zionist Ambassador to Israel, David Friedman, and ultra-Zionist 'Israel adviser', Jason Greenblatt. The last two were central to the running and protecting from collapse of his business empire, the Trump Organisation, and colossal business failures made him forever beholding to Sabbatian networks that bailed him out. By the start of the 1990s Trump owed $4 billion to banks that he couldn't pay and almost $1billion of that was down to him personally and not his companies. This mega-disaster was the result of building two new casinos in Atlantic City and buying the enormous Taj Mahal operation which led to crippling debt payments. He had borrowed fantastic sums from 72 banks with major Sabbatian connections and although the scale of debt should have had him living in a tent alongside the highway they never foreclosed. A plan was devised to lift Trump from the mire by BT Securities Corporation and Rothschild Inc. and the case was handled by Wilber Ross who had worked for the Rothschilds for 27 years. Ross would be named US Commerce Secretary after Trump's election. Another crucial figure in saving Trump was ultra-Zionist 'investor' Carl Icahn who bought the Taj Mahal casino. Icahn was made special economic adviser on financial regulation in the Trump administration. He didn't stay long but still managed to find time to make a tidy sum of a reported $31.3 million when he sold his

holdings affected by the price of steel three days before Trump imposed a 235 percent tariff on steel imports. What amazing bits of luck these people have. Trump and Sabbatian operatives have long had a close association and his mentor and legal adviser from the early 1970s until 1986 was the dark and genetically corrupt ultra-Zionist Roy Cohn who was chief counsel to Senator Joseph McCarthy's 'communist' witch-hunt in the 1950s. *Esquire* magazine published an article about Cohn with the headline 'Don't mess with Roy Cohn'. He was described as the most feared lawyer in New York and 'a ruthless master of dirty tricks ... [with] ... more than one Mafia Don on speed dial'. Cohn's influence, contacts, support and protection made Trump a front man for Sabbatians in New York with their connections to one of Cohn's many criminal employers, the 'Russian' Sabbatian Mafia. Israel-centric media mogul Rupert Murdoch was introduced to Trump by Cohn and they started a long friendship. Cohn died in 1986 weeks after being disbarred for unethical conduct by the Appellate Division of the New York State Supreme Court. The wheels of justice do indeed run slow given the length of Cohn's crooked career.

QAnon-sense

We are asked to believe that Donald Trump with his fundamental connections to Sabbatian networks and operatives has been leading the fight to stop the Sabbatian agenda for the fascistic control of America and the world. Sure he has. A man entrapped during his years in the White House by Sabbatian operatives and whose biggest financial donor was casino billionaire Sheldon Adelson who was Sabbatian to his DNA?? Oh, do come on. Trump has been used to divide America and isolate Pushbackers on the Cult agenda under the heading of 'Trump supporters', 'insurrectionists' and 'white supremacists'. The US Intelligence/Mossad Psyop or psychological operation known as QAnon emerged during the Trump years as a central pillar in the Sabbatian campaign to lead Pushbackers into the trap set by those that wished to destroy them. I knew from the start that QAnon was a scam because I had seen the same scenario many

times before over 30 years under different names and I had written about one in particular in the books. 'Not again' was my reaction when QAnon came to the fore. The same script is pulled out every few years and a new name added to the letterhead. The story always takes the same form: 'Insiders' or 'the good guys' in the government-intelligence-military 'Deep State' apparatus were going to instigate mass arrests of the 'bad guys' which would include the Rockefellers, Rothschilds, Barack Obama, Hillary Clinton, George Soros, etc., etc. Dates are given for when the 'good guys' are going to move in, but the dates pass without incident and new dates are given which pass without incident. The central message to Pushbackers in each case is that they don't have to do anything because there is 'a plan' and it is all going to be sorted by the 'good guys' on the inside. 'Trust the plan' was a QAnon mantra when the only plan was to misdirect Pushbackers into putting their trust in a Psyop they believed to be real. Beware, beware, those who tell you what you want to hear and always check it out. Right up to Biden's inauguration QAnon was still claiming that 'the Storm' was coming and Trump would stay on as president when Biden and his cronies were arrested and jailed. It was never going to happen and of course it didn't, but what did happen as a result provided that punchline to the Sabbatian Trump/QAnon Psyop.

On January 6th, 2021, a very big crowd of Trump supporters gathered in the National Mall in Washington DC down from the Capitol Building to protest at what they believed to be widespread corruption and vote fraud that stopped Trump being re-elected for a second term as president in November, 2020. I say as someone that does not support Trump or Biden that the evidence is clear that major vote-fixing went on to favour Biden, a man with cognitive problems so advanced he can often hardly string a sentence together without reading the words written for him on the Teleprompter. Glaring ballot discrepancies included serious questions about electronic voting machines that make vote rigging a comparative cinch and hundreds of thousands of paper votes that suddenly appeared during already advanced vote counts and virtually all of

them for Biden. Early Trump leads in crucial swing states suddenly began to close and disappear. The pandemic hoax was used as the excuse to issue almost limitless numbers of mail-in ballots with no checks to establish that the recipients were still alive or lived at that address. They were sent to streams of people who had not even asked for them. Private organisations were employed to gather these ballots and who knows what they did with them before they turned up at the counts. The American election system has been manipulated over decades to become a sick joke with more holes than a Swiss cheese for the express purpose of dictating the results. Then there was the criminal manipulation of information by Sabbatian tech giants like Facebook, Twitter and Google-owned YouTube which deleted pro-Trump, anti-Biden accounts and posts while everything in support of Biden was left alone. Sabbatians wanted Biden to win because after the dividing of America it was time for full-on Woke and every aspect of the Cult agenda to be unleashed.

Hunter gatherer

Extreme Silicon Valley bias included blocking information by the *New York Post* exposing a Biden scandal that should have ended his bid for president in the final weeks of the campaign. Hunter Biden, his monumentally corrupt son, is reported to have sent a laptop to be repaired at a local store and failed to return for it. Time passed until the laptop became the property of the store for non-payment of the bill. When the owner saw what was on the hard drive he gave a copy to the FBI who did nothing even though it confirmed widespread corruption in which the Joe Biden family were using his political position, especially when he was vice president to Obama, to make multiple millions in countries around the world and most notably Ukraine and China. Hunter Biden's one-time business partner Tony Bobulinski went public when the story broke in the *New York Post* to confirm the corruption he saw and that Joe Biden not only knew what was going on he also profited from the spoils. Millions were handed over by a Chinese company with close

connections – like all major businesses in China – to the Chinese communist party of President Xi Jinping. Joe Biden even boasted at a meeting of the Cult's World Economic Forum that as vice president he had ordered the government of Ukraine to fire a prosecutor. What he didn't mention was that the same man just happened to be investigating an energy company which was part of Hunter Biden's corrupt portfolio. The company was paying him big bucks for no other reason than the influence his father had. Overnight Biden's presidential campaign should have been over given that he had lied publicly about not knowing what his son was doing. Instead almost the entire Sabbatian-owned mainstream media and Sabbatian-owned Silicon Valley suppressed circulation of the story. This alone went a mighty way to rigging the election of 2020. Cult assets like Mark Zuckerberg at Facebook also spent hundreds of millions to be used in support of Biden and vote 'administration'.

The Cult had used Trump as the focus to divide America and was now desperate to bring in moronic, pliable, corrupt Biden to complete the double-whammy. No way were they going to let little things like the will of the people thwart their plan. Silicon Valley widely censored claims that the election was rigged because it *was* rigged. For the same reason anyone claiming it was rigged was denounced as a 'white supremacist' including the pathetically few Republican politicians willing to say so. Right across the media where the claim was mentioned it was described as a 'false claim' even though these excuses for 'journalists' would have done no research into the subject whatsoever. Trump won seven million more votes than any sitting president had ever achieved while somehow a cognitively-challenged soon to be 78-year-old who was hidden away from the public for most of the campaign managed to win more votes than any presidential candidate in history. It makes no sense. You only had to see election rallies for both candidates to witness the enthusiasm for Trump and the apathy for Biden. Tens of thousands would attend Trump events while Biden was speaking in empty car parks with often only television crews attending and framing their shots to hide the fact that no one was there. It was pathetic to see

footage come to light of Biden standing at a podium making speeches only to TV crews and party fixers while reading the words written for him on massive Teleprompter screens. So, yes, those protestors on January 6th had a point about election rigging, but some were about to walk into a trap laid for them in Washington by the Cult Deep State and its QAnon Psyop. This was the Capitol Hill riot ludicrously dubbed an 'insurrection'.

The spider and the fly

Renegade Minds know there are not two 'sides' in politics, only one side, the Cult, working through all 'sides'. It's a stage show, a puppet show, to direct the perceptions of the population into focusing on diversions like parties and candidates while missing the puppeteers with their hands holding all the strings. The Capitol Hill 'insurrection' brings us back to the Little Big Horn. Having created two distinct opposing groupings – Woke and Pushbackers – the trap was about to be sprung. Pushbackers were to be encircled and isolated by associating them all in the public mind with Trump and then labelling Trump as some sort of Confederate leader. I knew immediately that the Capitol riot was a set-up because of two things. One was how easy the rioters got into the building with virtually no credible resistance and secondly I could see – as with the 'Covid' hoax in the West at the start of 2020 – how the Cult could exploit the situation to move its agenda forward with great speed. My experience of Cult techniques and activities over more than 30 years has showed me that while they do exploit situations they haven't themselves created this never happens with events of fundamental agenda significance. Every time major events giving cultists the excuse to rapidly advance their plan you find they are manipulated into being for the specific reason of providing that excuse – Problem-Reaction-Solution. Only a tiny minority of the huge crowd of Washington protestors sought to gain entry to the Capitol by smashing windows and breaching doors. That didn't matter. The whole crowd and all Pushbackers, even if they did not support Trump, were going to be lumped together as dangerous

insurrectionists and conspiracy theorists. The latter term came into widespread use through a CIA memo in the 1960s aimed at discrediting those questioning the nonsensical official story of the Kennedy assassination and it subsequently became widely employed by the media. It's still being used by inept 'journalists' with no idea of its origin to discredit anyone questioning anything that authority claims to be true. When you are perpetrating a conspiracy you need to discredit the very word itself even though the dictionary definition of conspiracy is merely 'the activity of secretly planning with other people to do something bad or illegal' and 'a general agreement to keep silent about a subject for the purpose of keeping it secret'. On that basis there are conspiracies almost wherever you look. For obvious reasons the Cult and its lapdog media have to claim there are no conspiracies even though the word appears in state laws as with conspiracy to defraud, to murder, and to corrupt public morals.

Agent provocateurs are widely used by the Cult Deep State to manipulate genuine people into acting in ways that suit the desired outcome. By genuine in this case I mean protestors genuinely supporting Trump and claims that the election was stolen. In among them, however, were agents of the state wearing the garb of Trump supporters and QAnon to pump-prime the Capital riot which some genuine Trump supporters naively fell for. I described the situation as 'Come into my parlour said the spider to the fly'. Leaflets appeared through the Woke paramilitary arm Antifa, the anti-fascist fascists, calling on supporters to turn up in Washington looking like Trump supporters even though they hated him. Some of those arrested for breaching the Capitol Building were sourced to Antifa and its stable mate Black Lives Matter. Both organisations are funded by Cult billionaires and corporations. One man charged for the riot was according to his lawyer a former FBI agent who had held top secret security clearance for 40 years. Attorney Thomas Plofchan said of his client, 66-year-old Thomas Edward Caldwell:

He has held a Top Secret Security Clearance since 1979 and has undergone multiple Special Background Investigations in support of his clearances. After retiring from the Navy, he

worked as a section chief for the Federal Bureau of Investigation from 2009-2010 as a GS-12 [mid-level employee].

He also formed and operated a consulting firm performing work, often classified, for U.S government customers including the US. Drug Enforcement Agency, Department of Housing and Urban Development, the US Coast Guard, and the US Army Personnel Command.

A judge later released Caldwell pending trial in the absence of evidence about a conspiracy or that he tried to force his way into the building. *The New York Post* reported a 'law enforcement source' as saying that 'at least two known Antifa members were spotted' on camera among Trump supporters during the riot while one of the rioters arrested was John Earle Sullivan, a seriously extreme Black Lives Matter Trump-hater from Utah who was previously arrested and charged in July, 2020, over a BLM-Antifa riot in which drivers were threatened and one was shot. Sullivan is the founder of Utah-based Insurgence USA which is an affiliate of the Cult-created-and-funded Black Lives Matter movement. Footage appeared and was then deleted by Twitter of Trump supporters calling out Antifa infiltrators and a group was filmed changing into pro-Trump clothing before the riot. Security at the building was *pathetic* – as planned. Colonel Leroy Fletcher Prouty, a man with long experience in covert operations working with the US security apparatus, once described the tell-tale sign to identify who is involved in an assassination. He said:

No one has to direct an assassination – it happens. The active role is played secretly by permitting it to happen. This is the greatest single clue. Who has the power to call off or reduce the usual security precautions?

This principle applies to many other situations and certainly to the Capitol riot of January 6th, 2021.

The sting

With such a big and potentially angry crowd known to be gathering near the Capitol the security apparatus would have had a major police detail to defend the building with National Guard troops on

standby given the strength of feeling among people arriving from all over America encouraged by the QAnon Psyop and statements by Donald Trump. Instead Capitol Police 'security' was flimsy, weak, and easily breached. The same number of officers was deployed as on a regular day and that is a blatant red flag. They were not staffed or equipped for a possible riot that had been an obvious possibility in the circumstances. No protective and effective fencing worth the name was put in place and there were no contingency plans. The whole thing was basically a case of standing aside and waving people in. Once inside police mostly backed off apart from one Capitol police officer who ridiculously shot dead unarmed Air Force veteran protestor Ashli Babbitt without a warning as she climbed through a broken window. The 'investigation' refused to name or charge the officer after what must surely be considered a murder in the circumstances. They just lifted a carpet and swept. The story was endlessly repeated about five people dying in the 'armed insurrection' when there was no report of rioters using weapons. Apart from Babbitt the other four died from a heart attack, strokes and apparently a drug overdose. Capitol police officer Brian Sicknick was reported to have died after being bludgeoned with a fire extinguisher when he was alive after the riot was over and died later of what the Washington Medical Examiner's Office said was a stroke. Sicknick had no external injuries. The lies were delivered like rapid fire. There was a narrative to build with incessant repetition of the lie until the lie became the accepted 'everybody knows that' truth. The 'Big Lie' technique of Nazi Propaganda Minister Joseph Goebbels is constantly used by the Cult which was behind the Nazis and is today behind the 'Covid' and 'climate change' hoaxes. Goebbels said:

> If you tell a lie big enough and keep repeating it, people will eventually come to believe it. The lie can be maintained only for such time as the State can shield the people from the political, economic and/or military consequences of the lie. It thus becomes vitally important for the State to use all of its powers to repress dissent, for the truth is the mortal enemy of the lie, and thus by extension, the truth is the greatest enemy of the State.

Most protestors had a free run of the Capitol Building. This allowed pictures to be taken of rioters in iconic parts of the building including the Senate chamber which could be used as propaganda images against all Pushbackers. One Congresswoman described the scene as 'the worst kind of non-security anybody could ever imagine'. Well, the first part was true, but someone obviously did imagine it and made sure it happened. Some photographs most widely circulated featured people wearing QAnon symbols and now the Psyop would be used to dub all QAnon followers with the ubiquitous fit-all label of 'white supremacist' and 'insurrectionists'. When a Muslim extremist called Noah Green drove his car at two police officers at the Capitol Building killing one in April, 2021, there was no such political and media hysteria. They were just disappointed he wasn't white.

The witch-hunt

Government prosecutor Michael Sherwin, an aggressive, dark-eyed, professional Rottweiler led the 'investigation' and to call it over the top would be to understate reality a thousand fold. Hundreds were tracked down and arrested for the crime of having the wrong political views and people were jailed who had done nothing more than walk in the building, committed no violence or damage to property, took a few pictures and left. They were labelled a 'threat to the Republic' while Biden sat in the White House signing executive orders written for him that were dismantling 'the Republic'. Even when judges ruled that a mother and son should not be in jail the government kept them there. Some of those arrested have been badly beaten by prison guards in Washington and lawyers for one man said he suffered a fractured skull and was made blind in one eye. Meanwhile a woman is shot dead for no reason by a Capitol Police officer and we are not allowed to know who he is never mind what has happened to him although that will be *nothing*. The Cult's QAnon/Trump sting to identify and isolate Pushbackers and then target them on the road to crushing and deleting them was a resounding success. You would have thought the Russians had

invaded the building at gunpoint and lined up senators for a firing squad to see the political and media reaction. Congresswoman Alexandria Ocasio-Cortez is a child in a woman's body, a terrible-twos, me, me, me, Woker narcissist of such proportions that words have no meaning. She said she thought she was going to die when 'insurrectionists' banged on her office door. It turned out she wasn't even in the Capitol Building when the riot was happening and the 'banging' was a Capitol Police officer. She referred to herself as a 'survivor' which is an insult to all those true survivors of violent and sexual abuse while she lives her pampered and privileged life talking drivel for a living. Her Woke colleague and fellow mega-narcissist Rashida Tlaib broke down describing the devastating effect on her, too, of *not being* in the building when the rioters were there. Ocasio-Cortez and Tlaib are members of a fully-Woke group of Congresswomen known as 'The Squad' along with Ilhan Omar and Ayanna Pressley. The Squad from what I can see can be identified by its vehement anti-white racism, anti-white men agenda, and, as always in these cases, the absence of brain cells on active duty.

The usual suspects were on the riot case immediately in the form of Democrat ultra-Zionist senators and operatives Chuck Schumer and Adam Schiff demanding that Trump be impeached for 'his part in the insurrection'. The same pair of prats had led the failed impeachment of Trump over the invented 'Russia collusion' nonsense which claimed Russia had helped Trump win the 2016 election. I didn't realise that Tel Aviv had been relocated just outside Moscow. I must find an up-to-date map. The Russia hoax was a Sabbatian operation to keep Trump occupied and impotent and to stop any rapport with Russia which the Cult wants to retain as a perceptual enemy to be pulled out at will. Puppet Biden began attacking Russia when he came to office as the Cult seeks more upheaval, division and war across the world. A two-year stage show 'Russia collusion inquiry' headed by the not-very-bright former 9/11 FBI chief Robert Mueller, with support from 19 lawyers, 40 FBI agents plus intelligence analysts, forensic accountants and other

staff, devoured tens of millions of dollars and found no evidence of Russia collusion which a ten-year-old could have told them on day one. Now the same moronic Schumer and Schiff wanted a second impeachment of Trump over the Capitol 'insurrection' (riot) which the arrested development of Schumer called another 'Pearl Harbor' while others compared it with 9/11 in which 3,000 died and, in the case of CNN, with the Rwandan genocide in the 1990s in which an estimated 500,000 to 600,000 were murdered, between 250, 000 and 500,000 women were raped, and populations of whole towns were hacked to death with machetes. To make those comparisons purely for Cult political reasons is beyond insulting to those that suffered and lost their lives and confirms yet again the callous inhumanity that we are dealing with. Schumer is a monumental idiot and so is Schiff, but they serve the Cult agenda and do whatever they're told so they get looked after. Talking of idiots – another inane man who spanned the Russia and Capitol impeachment attempts was Senator Eric Swalwell who had the nerve to accuse Trump of collusion with the Russians while sleeping with a Chinese spy called Christine Fang or 'Fang Fang' which is straight out of a Bond film no doubt starring Klaus Schwab as the bloke living on a secret island and controlling laser weapons positioned in space and pointing at world capitals. Fang Fang plays the part of Bond's infiltrator girlfriend which I'm sure she would enjoy rather more than sharing a bed with the brainless Swalwell, lying back and thinking of China. The FBI eventually warned Swalwell about Fang Fang which gave her time to escape back to the Chinese dictatorship. How very thoughtful of them. The second Trump impeachment also failed and hardly surprising when an impeachment is supposed to remove a sitting president and by the time it happened Trump was no longer president. These people are running your country America, well, officially anyway. Terrifying isn't it?

Outcomes tell the story - always

The outcome of all this – and it's the *outcome* on which Renegade Minds focus, not the words – was that a vicious, hysterical and

obviously pre-planned assault was launched on Pushbackers to censor, silence and discredit them and even targeted their right to earn a living. They have since been condemned as 'domestic terrorists' that need to be treated like Al-Qaeda and Islamic State. 'Domestic terrorists' is a label the Cult has been trying to make stick since the period of the Oklahoma bombing in 1995 which was blamed on 'far-right domestic terrorists'. If you read *The Trigger* you will see that the bombing was clearly a Problem-Reaction-Solution carried out by the Deep State during a Bill Clinton administration so corrupt that no dictionary definition of the term would even nearly suffice. Nearly 30, 000 troops were deployed from all over America to the empty streets of Washington for Biden's inauguration. Ten thousand of them stayed on with the pretext of protecting the capital from insurrectionists when it was more psychological programming to normalise the use of the military in domestic law enforcement in support of the Cult plan for a police-military state. Biden's fascist administration began a purge of 'wrong-thinkers' in the military which means anyone that is not on board with Woke. The Capitol Building was surrounded by a fence with razor wire and the Land of the Free was further symbolically and literally dismantled. The circle was completed with the installation of Biden and the exploitation of the QAnon Psyop.

America had never been so divided since the civil war of the 19th century, Pushbackers were isolated and dubbed terrorists and now, as was always going to happen, the Cult immediately set about deleting what little was left of freedom and transforming American society through a swish of the hand of the most controlled 'president' in American history leading (officially at least) the most extreme regime since the country was declared an independent state on July 4th, 1776. Biden issued undebated, dictatorial executive orders almost by the hour in his opening days in office across the whole spectrum of the Cult wish-list including diluting controls on the border with Mexico allowing thousands of migrants to illegally enter the United States to transform the demographics of America and import an election-changing number of perceived Democrat

voters. Then there were Biden deportation amnesties for the already illegally resident (estimated to be as high as 20 or even 30 million). A bill before Congress awarded American citizenship to anyone who could prove they had worked in agriculture for just 180 days in the previous two years as 'Big Ag' secured its slave labour long-term. There were the plans to add new states to the union such as Puerto Rico and making Washington DC a state. They are all parts of a plan to ensure that the Cult-owned Woke Democrats would be permanently in power.

Border – what border?

I have exposed in detail in other books how mass immigration into the United States and Europe is the work of Cult networks fuelled by the tens of billions spent to this and other ends by George Soros and his global Open Society (open borders) Foundations. The impact can be seen in America alone where the population has increased by *100 million* in little more than 30 years mostly through immigration. I wrote in *The Answer* that the plan was to have so many people crossing the southern border that the numbers become unstoppable and we are now there under Cult-owned Biden. El Salvador in Central America puts the scale of what is happening into context. A third of the population now lives in the United States, much of it illegally, and many more are on the way. The methodology is to crush Central and South American countries economically and spread violence through machete-wielding psychopathic gangs like MS-13 based in El Salvador and now operating in many American cities. Biden-imposed lax security at the southern border means that it is all but open. He said before his 'election' that he wanted to see a surge towards the border if he became president and that was the green light for people to do just that after election day to create the human disaster that followed for both America and the migrants. When that surge came the imbecilic Alexandria Ocasio-Cortez said it wasn't a 'surge' because they are 'children, not insurgents' and the term 'surge' (used by Biden) was a claim of 'white supremacists'.

This disingenuous lady may one day enter the realm of the most basic intelligence, but it won't be any time soon.

Sabbatians and the Cult are in the process of destroying America by importing violent people and gangs in among the genuine to terrorise American cities and by overwhelming services that cannot cope with the sheer volume of new arrivals. Something similar is happening in Europe as Western society in general is targeted for demographic and cultural transformation and upheaval. The plan demands violence and crime to create an environment of intimidation, fear and division and Soros has been funding the election of district attorneys across America who then stop prosecuting many crimes, reduce sentences for violent crimes and free as many violent criminals as they can. Sabbatians are creating the chaos from which order – their order – can respond in a classic Problem-Reaction-Solution. A Freemasonic moto says 'Ordo Ab Chao' (Order out of Chaos) and this is why the Cult is constantly creating chaos to impose a new 'order'. Here you have the reason the Cult is constantly creating chaos. The 'Covid' hoax can be seen with those entering the United States by plane being forced to take a 'Covid' test while migrants flooding through southern border processing facilities do not. Nothing is put in the way of mass migration and if that means ignoring the government's own 'Covid' rules then so be it. They know it's all bullshit anyway. Any pushback on this is denounced as 'racist' by Wokers and Sabbatian fronts like the ultra-Zionist Anti-Defamation League headed by the appalling Jonathan Greenblatt which at the same time argues that Israel should not give citizenship and voting rights to more Palestinian Arabs or the 'Jewish population' (in truth the Sabbatian network) will lose control of the country.

Society-changing numbers

Biden's masters have declared that countries like El Salvador are so dangerous that their people must be allowed into the United States for humanitarian reasons when there are fewer murders in large parts of many Central American countries than in US cities like

Baltimore. That is not to say Central America cannot be a dangerous place and Cult-controlled American governments have been making it so since way back, along with the dismantling of economies, in a long-term plan to drive people north into the United States. Parts of Central America are very dangerous, but in other areas the story is being greatly exaggerated to justify relaxing immigration criteria. Migrants are being offered free healthcare and education in the United States as another incentive to head for the border and there is no requirement to be financially independent before you can enter to prevent the resources of America being drained. You can't blame migrants for seeking what they believe will be a better life, but they are being played by the Cult for dark and nefarious ends. The numbers since Biden took office are huge. In February, 2021, more than 100,000 people were known to have tried to enter the US illegally through the southern border (it was 34,000 in the same month in 2020) and in March it was 170,000 – a 418 percent increase on March, 2020. These numbers are only known people, not the ones who get in unseen. The true figure for migrants illegally crossing the border in a single month was estimated by one congressman at 250,000 and that number will only rise under Biden's current policy. Gangs of murdering drug-running thugs that control the Mexican side of the border demand money – thousands of dollars – to let migrants cross the Rio Grande into America. At the same time gun battles are breaking out on the border several times a week between rival Mexican drug gangs (which now operate globally) who are equipped with sophisticated military-grade weapons, grenades and armoured vehicles. While the Capitol Building was being 'protected' from a non-existent 'threat' by thousands of troops, and others were still deployed at the time in the Cult Neocon war in Afghanistan, the southern border of America was left to its fate. This is not incompetence, it is cold calculation.

By March, 2021, there were 17,000 unaccompanied children held at border facilities and many of them are ensnared by people traffickers for paedophile rings and raped on their journey north to America. This is not conjecture – this is fact. Many of those designated

children are in reality teenage boys or older. Meanwhile Wokers posture their self-purity for encouraging poor and tragic people to come to America and face this nightmare both on the journey and at the border with the disgusting figure of House Speaker Nancy Pelosi giving disingenuous speeches about caring for migrants. The woman's evil. Wokers condemned Trump for having children in cages at the border (so did Obama, *Shhhh*), but now they are sleeping on the floor without access to a shower with one border facility 729 percent over capacity. The Biden insanity even proposed flying migrants from the southern border to the northern border with Canada for 'processing'. The whole shambles is being overseen by ultra-Zionist Secretary of Homeland Security, the moronic liar Alejandro Mayorkas, who banned news cameras at border facilities to stop Americans seeing what was happening. Mayorkas said there was not a ban on news crews; it was just that they were not allowed to film. Alongside him at Homeland Security is another ultra-Zionist Cass Sunstein appointed by Biden to oversee new immigration laws. Sunstein despises conspiracy researchers to the point where he suggests they should be banned or *taxed* for having such views. The man is not bonkers or anything. He's perfectly well-adjusted, but adjusted to what is the question. Criticise what is happening and you are a 'white supremacist' when earlier non-white immigrants also oppose the numbers which effect their lives and opportunities. Black people in poor areas are particularly damaged by uncontrolled immigration and the increased competition for work opportunities with those who will work for less. They are also losing voting power as Hispanics become more dominant in former black areas. It's a downward spiral for them while the billionaires behind the policy drone on about how much they care about black people and 'racism'. None of this is about compassion for migrants or black people – that's just wind and air. Migrants are instead being mercilessly exploited to transform America while the countries they leave are losing their future and the same is true in Europe. Mass immigration may now be the work of Woke Democrats, but it can be traced back to the 1986 Immigration Reform and Control Act (it

wasn't) signed into law by Republican hero President Ronald Reagan which gave amnesty to millions living in the United States illegally and other incentives for people to head for the southern border. Here we have the one-party state at work again.

Save me syndrome

Almost every aspect of what I have been exposing as the Cult agenda was on display in even the first days of 'Biden' with silencing of Pushbackers at the forefront of everything. A Renegade Mind will view the Trump years and QAnon in a very different light to their supporters and advocates as the dots are connected. The QAnon/Trump Psyop has given the Cult all it was looking for. We may not know how much, or little, that Trump realised he was being used, but that's a side issue. This pincer movement produced the desired outcome of dividing America and having Pushbackers isolated. To turn this around we have to look at new routes to empowerment which do not include handing our power to other people and groups through what I will call the 'Save Me Syndrome' – 'I want someone else to do it so that I don't have to'. We have seen this at work throughout human history and the QAnon/Trump Psyop is only the latest incarnation alongside all the others. Religion is an obvious expression of this when people look to a 'god' or priest to save them or tell them how to be saved and then there are 'save me' politicians like Trump. Politics is a diversion and not a 'saviour'. It is a means to block positive change, not make it possible.

Save Me Syndrome always comes with the same repeating theme of handing your power to whom or what you believe will save you while your real 'saviour' stares back from the mirror every morning. Renegade Minds are constantly vigilant in this regard and always asking the question 'What can I do?' rather than 'What can someone else do for me?' Gandhi was right when he said: 'You must be the change you want to see in the world.' We are indeed the people we have been waiting for. We are presented with a constant raft of reasons to concede that power to others and forget where the real power is. Humanity has the numbers and the Cult does not. It has to

use diversion and division to target the unstoppable power that comes from unity. Religions, governments, politicians, corporations, media, QAnon, are all different manifestations of this power-diversion and dilution. Refusing to give your power to governments and instead handing it to Trump and QAnon is not to take a new direction, but merely to recycle the old one with new names on the posters. I will explore this phenomenon as we proceed and how to break the cycles and recycles that got us here through the mists of repeating perception and so repeating history.

For now we shall turn to the most potent example in the entire human story of the consequences that follow when you give your power away. I am talking, of course, of the 'Covid' hoax.

CHAPTER FOUR

'Covid': Calculated catastrophe

Facts are threatening to those invested in fraud
DaShanne Stokes

We can easily unravel the real reason for the 'Covid pandemic' hoax by employing the Renegade Mind methodology that I have outlined this far. We'll start by comparing the long-planned Cult outcome with the 'Covid pandemic' outcome. Know the outcome and you'll see the journey.

I have highlighted the plan for the Hunger Games Society which has been in my books for so many years with the very few controlling the very many through ongoing dependency. To create this dependency it is essential to destroy independent livelihoods, businesses and employment to make the population reliant on the state (the Cult) for even the basics of life through a guaranteed pittance income. While independence of income remained these Cult ambitions would be thwarted. With this knowledge it was easy to see where the 'pandemic' hoax was going once talk of 'lockdowns' began and the closing of all but perceived 'essential' businesses to 'save' us from an alleged 'deadly virus'. Cult corporations like Amazon and Walmart were naturally considered 'essential' while mom and pop shops and stores had their doors closed by fascist decree. As a result with every new lockdown and new regulation more small and medium, even large businesses not owned by the Cult, went to the wall while Cult giants and their frontmen and women grew financially fatter by the second. Mom and pop were

denied an income and the right to earn a living and the wealth of people like Jeff Bezos (Amazon), Mark Zuckerberg (Facebook) and Sergei Brin and Larry Page (Google/Alphabet) have reached record levels. The Cult was increasing its own power through further dramatic concentrations of wealth while the competition was being destroyed and brought into a state of dependency. Lockdowns have been instigated to secure that very end and were never anything to do with health. My brother Paul spent 45 years building up a bus repair business, but lockdowns meant buses were running at a fraction of normal levels for months on end. Similar stories can told in their hundreds of millions worldwide. Efforts of a lifetime coldly destroyed by Cult multi-billionaires and their lackeys in government and law enforcement who continued to earn their living from the taxation of the people while denying the right of the same people to earn theirs. How different it would have been if those making and enforcing these decisions had to face the same financial hardships of those they affected, but they never do.

Gates of Hell

Behind it all in the full knowledge of what he is doing and why is the psychopathic figure of Cult operative Bill Gates. His puppet Tedros at the World Health Organization declared 'Covid' a pandemic in March, 2020. The WHO had changed the definition of a 'pandemic' in 2009 just a month before declaring the 'swine flu pandemic' which would not have been so under the previous definition. The same applies to 'Covid'. The definition had included… 'an infection by an infectious agent, occurring simultaneously in different countries, with a significant mortality rate relative to the proportion of the population infected'. The new definition removed the need for 'significant mortality'. The 'pandemic' has been fraudulent even down to the definition, but Gates demanded economy-destroying lockdowns, school closures, social distancing, mandatory masks, a 'vaccination' for every man, woman and child on the planet and severe consequences and restrictions for those that refused. Who gave him this power? The

Cult did which he serves like a little boy in short trousers doing what his daddy tells him. He and his psychopathic missus even smiled when they said that much worse was to come (what they knew was planned to come). Gates responded in the matter-of-fact way of all psychopaths to a question about the effect on the world economy of what he was doing:

> Well, it won't go to zero but it will shrink. Global GDP is probably going to take the biggest hit ever [Gates was smiling as he said this] … in my lifetime this will be the greatest economic hit. But you don't have a choice. People act as if you have a choice. People don't feel like going to the stadium when they might get infected … People are deeply affected by seeing these stats, by knowing they could be part of the transmission chain, old people, their parents and grandparents, could be affected by this, and so you don't get to say ignore what is going on here.
>
> There will be the ability to open up, particularly in rich countries, if things are done well over the next few months, but for the world at large normalcy only returns when we have largely vaccinated the entire population.

The man has no compassion or empathy. How could he when he's a psychopath like all Cult players? My own view is that even beyond that he is very seriously mentally ill. Look in his eyes and you can see this along with his crazy flailing arms. You don't do what he has done to the world population since the start of 2020 unless you are mentally ill and at the most extreme end of psychopathic. You especially don't do it when to you know, as we shall see, that cases and deaths from 'Covid' are fakery and a product of monumental figure massaging. 'These stats' that Gates referred to are based on a 'test' that's not testing for the 'virus' as he has known all along. He made his fortune with big Cult support as an infamously ruthless software salesman and now buys global control of 'health' (death) policy without the population he affects having any say. It's a breathtaking outrage. Gates talked about people being deeply affected by fear of 'Covid' when that was because of *him* and his global network lying to them minute-by-minute supported by a lying media that he seriously influences and funds to the tune of hundreds of millions. He's handed big sums to media operations including the BBC, NBC, Al Jazeera, Univision, *PBS NewsHour*,

ProPublica, National Journal, The Guardian, The Financial Times, The Atlantic, Texas Tribune, USA Today publisher Gannett, *Washington Monthly, Le Monde,* Center for Investigative Reporting, Pulitzer Center on Crisis Reporting, National Press Foundation, International Center for Journalists, Solutions Journalism Network, the Poynter Institute for Media Studies, and many more. Gates is everywhere in the 'Covid' hoax and the man must go to prison – or a mental facility – for the rest of his life and his money distributed to those he has taken such enormous psychopathic pleasure in crushing.

The Muscle

The Hunger Games global structure demands a police-military state – a fusion of the two into one force – which viciously imposes the will of the Cult on the population and protects the Cult from public rebellion. In that regard, too, the 'Covid' hoax just keeps on giving. Often unlawful, ridiculous and contradictory 'Covid' rules and regulations have been policed across the world by moronic automatons and psychopaths made faceless by face-nappy masks and acting like the Nazi SS and fascist blackshirts and brownshirts of Hitler and Mussolini. The smallest departure from the rules decreed by the psychos in government and their clueless gofers were jumped upon by the face-nappy fascists. Brutality against public protestors soon became commonplace even on girls, women and old people as the brave men with the batons – the Face-Nappies as I call them – broke up peaceful protests and handed out fines like confetti to people who couldn't earn a living let alone pay hundreds of pounds for what was once an accepted human right. Robot Face-Nappies of Nottingham police in the English East Midlands fined one group £11,000 for attending a child's birthday party. For decades I charted the transformation of law enforcement as genuine, decent officers were replaced with psychopaths and the brain dead who would happily and brutally do whatever their masters told them. Now they were let loose on the public and I would emphasise the point that none of this just happened. The step-by-step change in the dynamic between police and public was orchestrated from the shadows by

those who knew where this was all going and the same with the perceptual reframing of those in all levels of authority and official administration through 'training courses' by organisations such as Common Purpose which was created in the late 1980s and given a massive boost in Blair era Britain until it became a global phenomenon. Supposed public 'servants' began to view the population as the enemy and the same was true of the police. This was the start of the explosion of behaviour manipulation organisations and networks preparing for the all-war on the human psyche unleashed with the dawn of 2020. I will go into more detail about this later in the book because it is a core part of what is happening.

Police desecrated beauty spots to deter people gathering and arrested women for walking in the countryside alone 'too far' from their homes. We had arrogant, clueless sergeants in the Isle of Wight police where I live posting on Facebook what they insisted the population must do or else. A schoolmaster sergeant called Radford looked young enough for me to ask if his mother knew he was out, but he was posting what he *expected* people to do while a Sergeant Wilkinson boasted about fining lads for meeting in a McDonald's car park where they went to get a lockdown takeaway. Wilkinson added that he had even cancelled their order. What a pair of prats these people are and yet they have increasingly become the norm among Jackboot Johnson's Yellowshirts once known as the British police. This was the theme all over the world with police savagery common during lockdown protests in the United States, the Netherlands, and the fascist state of Victoria in Australia under its tyrannical and again moronic premier Daniel Andrews. Amazing how tyrannical and moronic tend to work as a team and the same combination could be seen across America as arrogant, narcissistic Woke governors and mayors such as Gavin Newsom (California), Andrew Cuomo (New York), Gretchen Whitmer (Michigan), Lori Lightfoot (Chicago) and Eric Garcetti (Los Angeles) did their Nazi and Stalin impressions with the full support of the compliant brutality of their enforcers in uniform as they arrested small business owners defying

fascist shutdown orders and took them to jail in ankle shackles and handcuffs. This happened to bistro owner Marlena Pavlos-Hackney in Gretchen Whitmer's fascist state of Michigan when police arrived to enforce an order by a state-owned judge for 'putting the community at risk' at a time when other states like Texas were dropping restrictions and migrants were pouring across the southern border without any 'Covid' questions at all. I'm sure there are many officers appalled by what they are ordered to do, but not nearly enough of them. If they were truly appalled they would not do it. As the months passed every opportunity was taken to have the military involved to make their presence on the streets ever more familiar and 'normal' for the longer-term goal of police-military fusion.

Another crucial element to the Hunger Games enforcement network has been encouraging the public to report neighbours and others for 'breaking the lockdown rules'. The group faced with £11,000 in fines at the child's birthday party would have been dobbed-in by a neighbour with a brain the size of a pea. The technique was most famously employed by the Stasi secret police in communist East Germany who had public informants placed throughout the population. A police chief in the UK says his force doesn't need to carry out 'Covid' patrols when they are flooded with so many calls from the public reporting other people for visiting the beach. Dorset police chief James Vaughan said people were so enthusiastic about snitching on their fellow humans they were now operating as an auxiliary arm of the police: 'We are still getting around 400 reports a week from the public, so we will respond to reports …We won't need to be doing hotspot patrols because people are very quick to pick the phone up and tell us.' Vaughan didn't say that this is a pillar of all tyrannies of whatever complexion and the means to hugely extend the reach of enforcement while spreading distrust among the people and making them wary of doing anything that might get them reported. Those narcissistic Isle of Wight sergeants Radford and Wilkinson never fail to add a link to their Facebook posts where the public can inform on their fellow slaves.

Neither would be self-aware enough to realise they were imitating the Stasi which they might well never have heard of. Government psychologists that I will expose later laid out a policy to turn communities against each other in the same way.

A coincidence? Yep, and I can knit fog

I knew from the start of the alleged pandemic that this was a Cult operation. It presented limitless potential to rapidly advance the Cult agenda and exploit manipulated fear to demand that every man, woman and child on the planet was 'vaccinated' in a process never used on humans before which infuses self-replicating *synthetic* material into human cells. Remember the plan to transform the human body from a biological to a synthetic biological state. I'll deal with the 'vaccine' (that's not actually a vaccine) when I focus on the genetic agenda. Enough to say here that mass global 'vaccination' justified by this 'new virus' set alarms ringing after 30 years of tracking these people and their methods. The 'Covid' hoax officially beginning in China was also a big red flag for reasons I will be explaining. The agenda potential was so enormous that I could dismiss any idea that the 'virus' appeared naturally. Major happenings with major agenda implications never occur without Cult involvement in making them happen. My questions were twofold in early 2020 as the media began its campaign to induce global fear and hysteria: Was this alleged infectious agent released on purpose by the Cult or did it even exist at all? I then did what I always do in these situations. I sat, observed and waited to see where the evidence and information would take me. By March and early April synchronicity was strongly – and ever more so since then – pointing me in the direction of *there is no 'virus'*. I went public on that with derision even from swathes of the alternative media that voiced a scenario that the Chinese government released the 'virus' in league with Deep State elements in the United States from a top-level bio-lab in Wuhan where the 'virus' is said to have first appeared. I looked at that possibility, but I didn't buy it for several reasons. Deaths from the 'virus' did not in any way match what they

would have been with a 'deadly bioweapon' and it is much more effective if you sell the *illusion* of an infectious agent rather than having a real one unless you can control through injection who has it and who doesn't. Otherwise you lose control of events. A made-up 'virus' gives you a blank sheet of paper on which you can make it do whatever you like and have any symptoms or mutant 'variants' you choose to add while a real infectious agent would limit you to what it actually does. A phantom disease allows you to have endless ludicrous 'studies' on the 'Covid' dollar to widen the perceived impact by inventing ever more 'at risk' groups including one study which said those who walk slowly may be almost four times more likely to die from the 'virus'. People are in psychiatric wards for less.

A real 'deadly bioweapon' can take out people in the hierarchy that are not part of the Cult, but essential to its operation. Obviously they don't want that. Releasing a real disease means you immediately lose control of it. Releasing an illusory one means you don't. Again it's vital that people are extra careful when dealing with what they want to hear. A bioweapon unleashed from a Chinese laboratory in collusion with the American Deep State may fit a conspiracy narrative, but is it true? Would it not be far more effective to use the excuse of a 'virus' to justify the real bioweapon – the 'vaccine'? That way your disease agent does not have to be transmitted and arrives directly through a syringe. I saw a French virologist Luc Montagnier quoted in the alternative media as saying he had discovered that the alleged 'new' severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus , or SARS-CoV-2, was made artificially and included elements of the human immunodeficiency 'virus' (HIV) and a parasite that causes malaria. SARS-CoV-2 is alleged to trigger an alleged illness called Covid-19. I remembered Montagnier's name from my research years before into claims that an HIV 'retrovirus' causes AIDs – claims that were demolished by Berkeley virologist Peter Duesberg who showed that no one had ever proved that HIV causes acquired immunodeficiency syndrome or AIDS. Claims that become accepted as fact, publicly and medically, with no proof whatsoever are an ever-recurring story that profoundly applies to

'Covid'. Nevertheless, despite the lack of proof, Montagnier's team at the Pasteur Institute in Paris had a long dispute with American researcher Robert Gallo over which of them discovered and isolated the HIV 'virus' and with *no evidence* found it to cause AIDS. You will see later that there is also no evidence that any 'virus' causes any disease or that there is even such a thing as a 'virus' in the way it is said to exist. The claim to have 'isolated' the HIV 'virus' will be presented in its real context as we come to the shocking story – and it is a story – of SARS-CoV-2 and so will Montagnier's assertion that he identified the full SARS-CoV-2 genome.

Hoax in the making

We can pick up the 'Covid' story in 2010 and the publication by the Rockefeller Foundation of a document called 'Scenarios for the Future of Technology and International Development'. The inner circle of the Rockefeller family has been serving the Cult since John D. Rockefeller (1839-1937) made his fortune with Standard Oil. It is less well known that the same Rockefeller – the Bill Gates of his day – was responsible for establishing what is now referred to as 'Big Pharma', the global network of pharmaceutical companies that make outrageous profits dispensing scalpel and drug 'medicine' and are obsessed with pumping vaccines in ever-increasing number into as many human arms and backsides as possible. John D. Rockefeller was the driving force behind the creation of the 'education' system in the United States and elsewhere specifically designed to program the perceptions of generations thereafter. The Rockefeller family donated exceptionally valuable land in New York for the United Nations building and were central in establishing the World Health Organization in 1948 as an agency of the UN which was created from the start as a Trojan horse and stalking horse for world government. Now enter Bill Gates. His family and the Rockefellers have long been extremely close and I have seen genealogy which claims that if you go back far enough the two families fuse into the same bloodline. Gates has said that the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation was inspired by the Rockefeller Foundation and why not

when both are serving the same Cult? Major tax-exempt foundations are overwhelmingly criminal enterprises in which Cult assets fund the Cult agenda in the guise of 'philanthropy' while avoiding tax in the process. Cult operatives can become mega-rich in their role of front men and women for the psychopaths at the inner core and they, too, have to be psychopaths to knowingly serve such evil. Part of the deal is that a big percentage of the wealth gleaned from representing the Cult has to be spent advancing the ambitions of the Cult and hence you have the Rockefeller Foundation, Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation (and *so* many more) and people like George Soros with his global Open Society Foundations spending their billions in pursuit of global Cult control. Gates is a global public face of the Cult with his interventions in world affairs including Big Tech influence; a central role in the 'Covid' and 'vaccine' scam; promotion of the climate change shakedown; manipulation of education; geoengineering of the skies; and his food-control agenda as the biggest owner of farmland in America, his GMO promotion and through other means. As one writer said: 'Gates monopolizes or wields disproportionate influence over the tech industry, global health and vaccines, agriculture and food policy (including biopiracy and fake food), weather modification and other climate technologies, surveillance, education and media.' The almost limitless wealth secured through Microsoft and other not-allowed-to-fail ventures (including vaccines) has been ploughed into a long, long list of Cult projects designed to enslave the entire human race. Gates and the Rockefellers have been working as one unit with the Rockefeller-established World Health Organization leading global 'Covid' policy controlled by Gates through his mouth-piece Tedros. Gates became the WHO's biggest funder when Trump announced that the American government would cease its donations, but Biden immediately said he would restore the money when he took office in January, 2021. The Gates Foundation (the Cult) owns through limitless funding the world health system and the major players across the globe in the 'Covid' hoax.

Okay, with that background we return to that Rockefeller Foundation document of 2010 headed 'Scenarios for the Future of Technology and International Development' and its 'imaginary' epidemic of a virulent and deadly influenza strain which infected 20 percent of the global population and killed eight million in seven months. The Rockefeller scenario was that the epidemic destroyed economies, closed shops, offices and other businesses and led to governments imposing fierce rules and restrictions that included mandatory wearing of face masks and body-temperature checks to enter communal spaces like railway stations and supermarkets. The document predicted that even after the height of the Rockefeller-envisaged epidemic the authoritarian rule would continue to deal with further pandemics, transnational terrorism, environmental crises and rising poverty. Now you may think that the Rockefellers are our modern-day seers or alternatively, and rather more likely, that they well knew what was planned a few years further on. Fascism had to be imposed, you see, to 'protect citizens from risk and exposure'. The Rockefeller scenario document said:

During the pandemic, national leaders around the world flexed their authority and imposed airtight rules and restrictions, from the mandatory wearing of face masks to body-temperature checks at the entries to communal spaces like train stations and supermarkets. Even after the pandemic faded, this more authoritarian control and oversight of citizens and their activities stuck and even intensified. In order to protect themselves from the spread of increasingly global problems – from pandemics and transnational terrorism to environmental crises and rising poverty – leaders around the world took a firmer grip on power.

At first, the notion of a more controlled world gained wide acceptance and approval. Citizens willingly gave up some of their sovereignty – and their privacy – to more paternalistic states in exchange for greater safety and stability. Citizens were more tolerant, and even eager, for top-down direction and oversight, and national leaders had more latitude to impose order in the ways they saw fit.

In developed countries, this heightened oversight took many forms: biometric IDs for all citizens, for example, and tighter regulation of key industries whose stability was deemed vital to national interests. In many developed countries, enforced cooperation with a suite of new regulations and agreements slowly but steadily restored both order and, importantly, economic growth.

There we have the prophetic Rockefellers in 2010 and three years later came their paper for the Global Health Summit in Beijing, China, when government representatives, the private sector, international organisations and groups met to discuss the next 100 years of 'global health'. The Rockefeller Foundation-funded paper was called 'Dreaming the Future of Health for the Next 100 Years and more prophecy ensued as it described a dystopian future: 'The abundance of data, digitally tracking and linking people may mean the 'death of privacy' and may replace physical interaction with transient, virtual connection, generating isolation and raising questions of how values are shaped in virtual networks.' Next in the 'Covid' hoax preparation sequence came a 'table top' simulation in 2018 for another 'imaginary' pandemic of a disease called Clade X which was said to kill 900 million people. The exercise was organised by the Gates-funded Johns Hopkins University's Center for Health Security in the United States and this is the very same university that has been compiling the disgustingly and systematically erroneous global figures for 'Covid' cases and deaths. Similar Johns Hopkins health crisis scenarios have included the Dark Winter exercise in 2001 and Atlantic Storm in 2005.

Nostradamus 201

For sheer predictive genius look no further prophecy-watchers than the Bill Gates-funded Event 201 held only six weeks before the 'coronavirus pandemic' is supposed to have broken out in China and Event 201 was based on a scenario of a global 'coronavirus pandemic'. Melinda Gates, the great man's missus, told the BBC that he had 'prepared for years' for a coronavirus pandemic which told us what we already knew. Nostradamugates had predicted in a TED talk in 2015 that a pandemic was coming that would kill a lot of people and demolish the world economy. My god, the man is a machine – possibly even literally. Now here he was only weeks before the real thing funding just such a simulated scenario and involving his friends and associates at Johns Hopkins, the World Economic Forum Cult-front of Klaus Schwab, the United Nations,

Johnson & Johnson, major banks, and officials from China and the Centers for Disease Control in the United States. What synchronicity – Johns Hopkins would go on to compile the fraudulent 'Covid' figures, the World Economic Forum and Schwab would push the 'Great Reset' in response to 'Covid', the Centers for Disease Control would be at the forefront of 'Covid' policy in the United States, Johnson & Johnson would produce a 'Covid vaccine', and everything would officially start just weeks later in China. Spooky, eh? They were even accurate in creating a simulation of a 'virus' pandemic because the 'real thing' would also be a simulation. Event 201 was not an exercise preparing for something that might happen; it was a rehearsal for what those in control knew was *going* to happen and very shortly. Hours of this simulation were posted on the Internet and the various themes and responses mirrored what would soon be imposed to transform human society. News stories were inserted and what they said would be commonplace a few weeks later with still more prophecy perfection. Much discussion focused on the need to deal with misinformation and the 'anti-vax movement' which is exactly what happened when the 'virus' arrived – was said to have arrived – in the West.

Cult-owned social media banned criticism and exposure of the official 'virus' narrative and when I said there *was* no 'virus' in early April, 2020, I was banned by one platform after another including YouTube, Facebook and later Twitter. The mainstream broadcast media in Britain was in effect banned from interviewing me by the Tony-Blair-created government broadcasting censor Ofcom headed by career government bureaucrat Melanie Dawes who was appointed just as the 'virus' hoax was about to play out in January, 2020. At the same time the Ickonic media platform was using Vimeo, another ultra-Zionist-owned operation, while our own player was being created and they deleted in an instant hundreds of videos, documentaries, series and shows to confirm their unbelievable vindictiveness. We had copies, of course, and they had to be restored one by one when our player was ready. These people have no class. Sabbatian Facebook promised free advertisements for the Gates-

controlled World Health Organization narrative while deleting 'false claims and conspiracy theories' to stop 'misinformation' about the alleged coronavirus. All these responses could be seen just a short while earlier in the scenarios of Event 201. Extreme censorship was absolutely crucial for the Cult because the official story was so ridiculous and unsupportable by the evidence that it could never survive open debate and the free-flow of information and opinion. If you can't win a debate then don't have one is the Cult's approach throughout history. Facebook's little boy front man – front boy – Mark Zuckerberg equated 'credible and accurate information' with official sources and exposing their lies with 'misinformation'.

Silencing those that can see

The censorship dynamic of Event 201 is now the norm with an army of narrative-supporting 'fact-checker' organisations whose entire reason for being is to tell the public that official narratives are true and those exposing them are lying. One of the most appalling of these 'fact-checkers' is called NewsGuard founded by ultra-Zionist Americans Gordon Crovitz and Steven Brill. Crovitz is a former publisher of *The Wall Street Journal*, former Executive Vice President of Dow Jones, a member of the Council on Foreign Relations (CFR), and on the board of the American Association of Rhodes Scholars. The CFR and Rhodes Scholarships, named after Rothschild agent Cecil Rhodes who plundered the gold and diamonds of South Africa for his masters and the Cult, have featured widely in my books. NewsGuard don't seem to like me for some reason – I really can't think why – and they have done all they can to have me censored and discredited which is, to quote an old British politician, like being savaged by a dead sheep. They are, however, like all in the censorship network, very well connected and funded by organisations themselves funded by, or connected to, Bill Gates. As you would expect with anything associated with Gates NewsGuard has an offshoot called HealthGuard which 'fights online health care hoaxes'. How very kind. Somehow the NewsGuard European Managing Director Anna-Sophie Harling, a remarkably young-

looking woman with no broadcasting experience and little hands-on work in journalism, has somehow secured a position on the 'Content Board' of UK government broadcast censor Ofcom. An executive of an organisation seeking to discredit dissidents of the official narratives is making decisions for the government broadcast 'regulator' about content?? Another appalling 'fact-checker' is Full Fact funded by George Soros and global censors Google and Facebook.

It's amazing how many activists in the 'fact-checking', 'anti-hate', arena turn up in government-related positions – people like UK Labour Party activist Imran Ahmed who heads the Center for Countering Digital Hate founded by people like Morgan McSweeney, now chief of staff to the Labour Party's hapless and useless 'leader' Keir Starmer. Digital Hate – which is what it really is – uses the American spelling of Center to betray its connection to a transatlantic network of similar organisations which in 2020 shapeshifted from attacking people for 'hate' to attacking them for questioning the 'Covid' hoax and the dangers of the 'Covid vaccine'. It's just a coincidence, you understand. This is one of Imran Ahmed's hysterical statements: 'I would go beyond calling anti-vaxxers conspiracy theorists to say they are an extremist group that pose a national security risk.' No one could ever accuse this prat of understatement and he's including in that those parents who are now against vaccines after their children were damaged for life or killed by them. He's such a nice man. Ahmed does the rounds of the Woke media getting soft-ball questions from spineless 'journalists' who never ask what right he has to campaign to destroy the freedom of speech of others while he demands it for himself. There also seems to be an overrepresentation in Ofcom of people connected to the narrative-worshipping BBC. This incredible global network of narrative-support was super-vital when the 'Covid' hoax was played in the light of the mega-whopper lies that have to be defended from the spotlight cast by the most basic intelligence.

Setting the scene

The Cult plays the long game and proceeds step-by-step ensuring that everything is in place before major cards are played and they don't come any bigger than the 'Covid' hoax. The psychopaths can't handle events where the outcome isn't certain and as little as possible – preferably nothing – is left to chance. Politicians, government and medical officials who would follow direction were brought to illusory power in advance by the Cult web whether on the national stage or others like state governors and mayors of America. For decades the dynamic between officialdom, law enforcement and the public was changed from one of service to one of control and dictatorship. Behaviour manipulation networks established within government were waiting to impose the coming 'Covid' rules and regulations specifically designed to subdue and rewire the psyche of the people in the guise of protecting health. These included in the UK the Behavioural Insights Team part-owned by the British government Cabinet Office; the Scientific Pandemic Insights Group on Behaviours (SPI-B); and a whole web of intelligence and military groups seeking to direct the conversation on social media and control the narrative. Among them are the cyberwarfare (on the people) 77th Brigade of the British military which is also coordinated through the Cabinet Office as civilian and military leadership continues to combine in what they call the Fusion Doctrine. The 77th Brigade is a British equivalent of the infamous Israeli (Sabbatian) military cyberwarfare and Internet manipulation operation Unit 8200 which I expose at length in *The Trigger*. Also carefully in place were the medical and science advisers to government – many on the payroll past or present of Bill Gates – and a whole alternative structure of unelected government stood by to take control when elected parliaments were effectively closed down once the 'Covid' card was slammed on the table. The structure I have described here and so much more was installed in every major country through the Cult networks. The top-down control hierarchy looks like this: The Cult – Cult-owned Gates – the World Health Organization and Tedros – Gates-funded or controlled chief medical officers and science 'advisers' (dictators) in each country –

political 'leaders'– law enforcement – The People. Through this simple global communication and enforcement structure the policy of the Cult could be imposed on virtually the entire human population so long as they acquiesced to the fascism. With everything in place it was time for the button to be pressed in late 2019/early 2020.

These were the prime goals the Cult had to secure for its will to prevail:

1) Locking down economies, closing all but designated 'essential' businesses (Cult-owned corporations were 'essential'), and putting the population under house arrest was an imperative to destroy independent income and employment and ensure dependency on the Cult-controlled state in the Hunger Games Society. Lockdowns had to be established as the global blueprint from the start to respond to the 'virus' and followed by pretty much the entire world.

2) The global population had to be terrified into believing in a deadly 'virus' that didn't actually exist so they would unquestioningly obey authority in the belief that authority must know how best to protect them and their families. Software salesman Gates would suddenly morph into the world's health expert and be promoted as such by the Cult-owned media.

3) A method of testing that wasn't testing for the 'virus', but was only claimed to be, had to be in place to provide the illusion of 'cases' and subsequent 'deaths' that had a very different cause to the 'Covid-19' that would be scribbled on the death certificate.

4) Because there was no 'virus' and the great majority testing positive with a test not testing for the 'virus' would have no symptoms of anything the lie had to be sold that people without symptoms (without the 'virus') could still pass it on to others. This was crucial to justify for the first time quarantining – house arresting – healthy people. Without this the economy-destroying lockdown of *everybody* could not have been credibly sold.

5) The 'saviour' had to be seen as a vaccine which beyond evil drug companies were working like angels of mercy to develop as quickly as possible, with all corners cut, to save the day. The public must absolutely not know that the 'vaccine' had nothing to do with a 'virus' or that the contents were ready and waiting with a very different motive long before the 'Covid' card was even lifted from the pack.

I said in March, 2020, that the 'vaccine' would have been created way ahead of the 'Covid' hoax which justified its use and the following December an article in the New York *Intelligencer* magazine said the Moderna 'vaccine' had been 'designed' by

January, 2020. This was 'before China had even acknowledged that the disease could be transmitted from human to human, more than a week before the first confirmed coronavirus case in the United States'. The article said that by the time the first American death was announced a month later 'the vaccine had already been manufactured and shipped to the National Institutes of Health for the beginning of its Phase I clinical trial'. The 'vaccine' was actually 'designed' long before that although even with this timescale you would expect the article to ask how on earth it could have been done that quickly. Instead it asked why the 'vaccine' had not been rolled out then and not months later. Journalism in the mainstream is truly dead. I am going to detail in the next chapter why the 'virus' has never existed and how a hoax on that scale was possible, but first the foundation on which the Big Lie of 'Covid' was built.

The test that doesn't test

Fraudulent 'testing' is the bottom line of the whole 'Covid' hoax and was the means by which a 'virus' that did not exist *appeared* to exist. They could only achieve this magic trick by using a test not testing for the 'virus'. To use a test that *was* testing for the 'virus' would mean that every test would come back negative given there was no 'virus'. They chose to exploit something called the RT-PCR test invented by American biochemist Kary Mullis in the 1980s who said publicly that his PCR test … *cannot detect infectious disease*. Yes, the 'test' used worldwide to detect infectious 'Covid' to produce all the illusory 'cases' and 'deaths' compiled by Johns Hopkins and others *cannot detect infectious disease*. This fact came from the mouth of the man who invented PCR and was awarded the Nobel Prize in Chemistry in 1993 for doing so. Sadly, and incredibly conveniently for the Cult, Mullis died in August, 2019, at the age of 74 just before his test would be fraudulently used to unleash fascism on the world. He was said to have died from pneumonia which was an irony in itself. A few months later he would have had 'Covid-19' on his death certificate. I say the timing of his death was convenient because had he lived Mullis, a brilliant, honest and decent man, would have been

vociferously speaking out against the use of his test to detect 'Covid' when it was never designed, or able, to do that. I know that to be true given that Mullis made the same point when his test was used to 'detect' – not detect – HIV. He had been seriously critical of the Gallo/Montagnier claim to have isolated the HIV 'virus' and shown it to cause AIDS for which Mullis said there was no evidence. AIDS is actually not a disease but a series of diseases from which people die all the time. When they die from those *same diseases* after a positive 'test' for HIV then AIDS goes on their death certificate. I think I've heard that before somewhere. Countries instigated a policy with 'Covid' that anyone who tested positive with a test not testing for the 'virus' and died of any other cause within 28 days and even longer 'Covid-19' had to go on the death certificate. Cases have come from the test that can't test for infectious disease and the deaths are those who have died of *anything* after testing positive with a test not testing for the 'virus'. I'll have much more later about the death certificate scandal.

Mullis was deeply dismissive of the now US 'Covid' star Anthony Fauci who he said was a liar who didn't know anything about anything – 'and I would say that to his face – nothing.' He said of Fauci: 'The man thinks he can take a blood sample, put it in an electron microscope and if it's got a virus in there you'll know it – he doesn't understand electron microscopy and he doesn't understand medicine and shouldn't be in a position like he's in.' That position, terrifyingly, has made him the decider of 'Covid' fascism policy on behalf of the Cult in his role as director since 1984 of the National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIAID) while his record of being wrong is laughable; but being wrong, so long as it's the *right kind* of wrong, is why the Cult loves him. He'll say anything the Cult tells him to say. Fauci was made Chief Medical Adviser to the President immediately Biden took office. Biden was installed in the White House by Cult manipulation and one of his first decisions was to elevate Fauci to a position of even more control. This is a coincidence? Yes, and I identify as a flamenco dancer called Lola. How does such an incompetent criminal like Fauci remain in that

pivotal position in American health since *the 1980s*? When you serve the Cult it looks after you until you are surplus to requirements. Kary Mullis said prophetically of Fauci and his like: 'Those guys have an agenda and it's not an agenda we would like them to have … they make their own rules, they change them when they want to, and Tony Fauci does not mind going on television in front of the people who pay his salary and lie directly into the camera.' Fauci has done that almost daily since the 'Covid' hoax began. Lying is in Fauci's DNA. To make the situation crystal clear about the PCR test this is a direct quote from its inventor Kary Mullis:

> It [the PCR test] doesn't tell you that you're sick and doesn't tell you that the thing you ended up with was really going to hurt you ...'

Ask yourself why governments and medical systems the world over have been using this very test to decide who is 'infected' with the SARS-CoV-2 'virus' and the alleged disease it allegedly causes, 'Covid-19'. The answer to that question will tell you what has been going on. By the way, here's a little show-stopper – the 'new' SARS-CoV-2 'virus' was 'identified' as such right from the start using … *the PCR test not testing for the 'virus'*. If you are new to this and find that shocking then stick around. I have hardly started yet. Even worse, other 'tests', like the 'Lateral Flow Device' (LFD), are considered so useless that they have to be *confirmed* by the PCR test! Leaked emails written by Ben Dyson, adviser to UK 'Health' Secretary Matt Hancock, said they were 'dangerously unreliable'. Dyson, executive director of strategy at the Department of Health, wrote: 'As of today, someone who gets a positive LFD result in (say) London has at best a 25 per cent chance of it being a true positive, but if it is a self-reported test potentially as low as 10 per cent (on an optimistic assumption about specificity) or as low as 2 per cent (on a more pessimistic assumption).' These are the 'tests' that schoolchildren and the public are being urged to have twice a week or more and have to isolate if they get a positive. Each fake positive goes in the statistics as a 'case' no matter how ludicrously inaccurate and the

'cases' drive lockdown, masks and the pressure to 'vaccinate'. The government said in response to the email leak that the 'tests' were accurate which confirmed yet again what shocking bloody liars they are. The real false positive rate is *100 percent* as we'll see. In another 'you couldn't make it up' the UK government agreed to pay £2.8 billion to California's Innova Medical Group to supply the irrelevant lateral flow tests. The company's primary test-making centre is in China. Innova Medical Group, established in March, 2020, is owned by Pasaca Capital Inc, chaired by Chinese-American millionaire Charles Huang who was born in Wuhan.

How it works – and how it doesn't

The RT-PCR test, known by its full title of Polymerase chain reaction, is used across the world to make millions, even billions, of copies of a DNA/RNA genetic information sample. The process is called 'amplification' and means that a tiny sample of genetic material is amplified to bring out the detailed content. I stress that it is not testing for an infectious disease. It is simply amplifying a sample of genetic material. In the words of Kary Mullis: 'PCR is … just a process that's used to make a whole lot of something out of something.' To emphasise the point companies that make the PCR tests circulated around the world to 'test' for 'Covid' warn on the box that it can't be used to detect 'Covid' or infectious disease and is for research purposes only. It's okay, rest for a minute and you'll be fine. This is the test that produces the 'cases' and 'deaths' that have been used to destroy human society. All those global and national medical and scientific 'experts' demanding this destruction to 'save us' *KNOW* that the test is not testing for the 'virus' and the cases and deaths they claim to be real are an almost unimaginable fraud. Every one of them and so many others including politicians and psychopaths like Gates and Tedros must be brought before Nuremburg-type trials and jailed for the rest of their lives. The more the genetic sample is amplified by PCR the more elements of that material become sensitive to the test and by that I don't mean sensitive for a 'virus' but for elements of the genetic material which

is *naturally* in the body or relates to remnants of old conditions of various kinds lying dormant and causing no disease. Once the amplification of the PCR reaches a certain level *everyone* will test positive. So much of the material has been made sensitive to the test that everyone will have some part of it in their body. Even lying criminals like Fauci have said that once PCR amplifications pass 35 cycles everything will be a false positive that cannot be trusted for the reasons I have described. I say, like many proper doctors and scientists, that 100 percent of the 'positives' are false, but let's just go with Fauci for a moment.

He says that any amplification over 35 cycles will produce false positives and yet the US Centers for Disease Control (CDC) and Food and Drug Administration (FDA) have recommended up to *40 cycles* and the National Health Service (NHS) in Britain admitted in an internal document for staff that it was using *45 cycles* of amplification. A long list of other countries has been doing the same and at least one 'testing' laboratory has been using *50 cycles*. Have you ever heard a doctor, medical 'expert' or the media ask what level of amplification has been used to claim a 'positive'. The 'test' comes back 'positive' and so you have the 'virus', end of story. Now we can see how the government in Tanzania could send off samples from a goat and a pawpaw fruit under human names and both came back positive for 'Covid-19'. Tanzania president John Magufuli mocked the 'Covid' hysteria, the PCR test and masks and refused to import the DNA-manipulating 'vaccine'. The Cult hated him and an article sponsored by the Bill Gates Foundation appeared in the London *Guardian* in February, 2021, headed 'It's time for Africa to rein in Tanzania's anti-vaxxer president'. Well, 'reined in' he shortly was. Magufuli appeared in good health, but then, in March, 2021, he was dead at 61 from 'heart failure'. He was replaced by Samia Hassan Suhulu who is connected to Klaus Schwab's World Economic Forum and she immediately reversed Magufuli's 'Covid' policy. A sample of cola tested positive for 'Covid' with the PCR test in Germany while American actress and singer-songwriter Erykah Badu tested positive in one nostril and negative in the other. Footballer Ronaldo called

the PCR test 'bullshit' after testing positive three times and being forced to quarantine and miss matches when there was nothing wrong with him. The mantra from Tedros at the World Health Organization and national governments (same thing) has been test, test, test. They know that the more tests they can generate the more fake 'cases' they have which go on to become 'deaths' in ways I am coming to. The UK government has its Operation Moonshot planned to test multiple millions every day in workplaces and schools with free tests for everyone to use twice a week at home in line with the Cult plan from the start to make testing part of life. A government advertisement for an 'Interim Head of Asymptomatic Testing Communication' said the job included responsibility for delivering a 'communications strategy' (propaganda) 'to support the expansion of asymptomatic testing that *'normalises testing as part of everyday life'*. More tests means more fake 'cases', 'deaths' and fascism. I have heard of, and from, many people who booked a test, couldn't turn up, and yet got a positive result through the post for a test they'd never even had. The whole thing is crazy, but for the Cult there's method in the madness. Controlling and manipulating the level of amplification of the test means the authorities can control whenever they want the number of apparent 'cases' and 'deaths'. If they want to justify more fascist lockdown and destruction of livelihoods they keep the amplification high. If they want to give the illusion that lockdowns and the 'vaccine' are working then they lower the amplification and 'cases' and 'deaths' will appear to fall. In January, 2021, the Cult-owned World Health Organization suddenly warned laboratories about over-amplification of the test and to lower the threshold. Suddenly headlines began appearing such as: 'Why ARE "Covid" cases plummeting?' This was just when the vaccine rollout was underway and I had predicted months before they would make cases appear to fall through amplification tampering when the 'vaccine' came. These people are so predictable.

Cow vaccines?

The question must be asked of what is on the test swabs being poked far up the nose of the population to the base of the brain? A nasal swab punctured one woman's brain and caused it to leak fluid. Most of these procedures are being done by people with little training or medical knowledge. Dr Lorraine Day, former orthopaedic trauma surgeon and Chief of Orthopaedic Surgery at San Francisco General Hospital, says the tests are really a *'vaccine'*. Cows have long been vaccinated this way. She points out that masks have to cover the nose and the mouth where it is claimed the 'virus' exists in saliva. Why then don't they take saliva from the mouth as they do with a DNA test instead of pushing a long swab up the nose towards the brain? The ethmoid bone separates the nasal cavity from the brain and within that bone is the cribriform plate. Dr Day says that when the swab is pushed up against this plate and twisted the procedure is 'depositing things back there'. She claims that among these 'things' are nanoparticles that can enter the brain. Researchers have noted that a team at the Gates-funded Johns Hopkins have designed tiny, star-shaped micro-devices that can latch onto intestinal mucosa and release drugs into the body. Mucosa is the thin skin that covers the inside surface of parts of the body such as *the nose* and mouth and produces mucus to protect them. The Johns Hopkins micro-devices are called 'theragrippers' and were 'inspired' by a parasitic worm that digs its sharp teeth into a host's intestines. Nasal swabs are also coated in the sterilisation agent ethylene oxide. The US National Cancer Institute posts this explanation on its website:

> At room temperature, ethylene oxide is a flammable colorless gas with a sweet odor. It is used primarily to produce other chemicals, including antifreeze. In smaller amounts, ethylene oxide is used as a pesticide and a sterilizing agent. The ability of ethylene oxide to damage DNA makes it an effective sterilizing agent but also accounts for its cancer-causing activity.

The Institute mentions lymphoma and leukaemia as cancers most frequently reported to be associated with occupational exposure to ethylene oxide along with stomach and breast cancers. How does anyone think this is going to work out with the constant testing

regime being inflicted on adults and children at home and at school that will accumulate in the body anything that's on the swab?

Doctors know best

It is vital for people to realise that 'hero' doctors 'know' only what the Big Pharma-dominated medical authorities tell them to 'know' and if they refuse to 'know' what they are told to 'know' they are out the door. They are mostly not physicians or healers, but repeaters of the official narrative – or else. I have seen alleged professional doctors on British television make shocking statements that we are supposed to take seriously. One called 'Dr' Amir Khan, who is actually telling patients how to respond to illness, said that men could take the birth pill to 'help slow down the effects of Covid-19'. In March, 2021, another ridiculous 'Covid study' by an American doctor proposed injecting men with the female sex hormone progesterone as a 'Covid' treatment. British doctor Nighat Arif told the BBC that face coverings were now going to be part of ongoing normal. Yes, the vaccine protects you, she said (evidence?) … but the way to deal with viruses in the community was always going to come down to hand washing, face covering and keeping a physical distance. That's not what we were told before the 'vaccine' was circulating. Arif said she couldn't imagine ever again going on the underground or in a lift without a mask. I was just thanking my good luck that she was not my doctor when she said – in March, 2021 – that if 'we are *behaving* and we are doing all the right things' she thought we could 'have our nearest and dearest around us at home … around *Christmas* and N*ew Year!* Her patronising delivery was the usual school teacher talking to six-year-olds as she repeated every government talking point and probably believed them all. If we have learned anything from the 'Covid' experience surely it must be that humanity's perception of doctors needs a fundamental rethink. NHS 'doctor' Sara Kayat told her television audience that the 'Covid vaccine' would '100 percent prevent hospitalisation and death'. Not even Big Pharma claimed that. We have to stop taking 'experts' at their word without question when so many of them are

clueless and only repeating the party line on which their careers depend. That is not to say there are not brilliants doctors – there are and I have spoken to many of them since all this began – but you won't see them in the mainstream media or quoted by the psychopaths and yes-people in government.

Remember the name – Christian Drosten

German virologist Christian Drosten, Director of Charité Institute of Virology in Berlin, became a national star after the pandemic hoax began. He was feted on television and advised the German government on 'Covid' policy. Most importantly to the wider world Drosten led a group that produced the 'Covid' testing protocol for the PCR test. What a remarkable feat given the PCR cannot test for infectious disease and even more so when you think that Drosten said that his method of testing for SARS-CoV-2 was developed 'without having virus material available'. *He developed a test for a 'virus' that he didn't have and had never seen*. Let that sink in as you survey the global devastation that came from what he did. The whole catastrophe of Drosten's 'test' was based on the alleged genetic sequence published by Chinese scientists on the Internet. We will see in the next chapter that this alleged 'genetic sequence' has never been produced by China or anyone and cannot be when there *is no* SARS-CoV-2. Drosten, however, doesn't seem to let little details like that get in the way. He was the lead author with Victor Corman from the same Charité Hospital of the paper 'Detection of 2019 novel coronavirus (2019-nCoV) by real-time PCR' published in a magazine called *Eurosurveillance*. This became known as the Corman-Drosten paper. In November, 2020, with human society devastated by the effects of the Corman-Drosten test baloney, the protocol was publicly challenged by 22 international scientists and independent researchers from Europe, the United States, and Japan. Among them were senior molecular geneticists, biochemists, immunologists, and microbiologists. They produced a document headed 'External peer review of the RTPCR test to detect SARS-Cov-2 Reveals 10 Major Flaws At The Molecular and Methodological Level: Consequences

For False-Positive Results'. The flaws in the Corman-Drosten test included the following:

- The test is non-specific because of erroneous design
- Results are enormously variable
- The test is unable to discriminate between the whole 'virus' and viral fragments
- It doesn't have positive or negative controls
- The test lacks a standard operating procedure
- It is unsupported by proper peer view

The scientists said the PCR 'Covid' testing protocol was not founded on science and they demanded the Corman-Drosten paper be retracted by *Eurosurveillance*. They said all present and previous Covid deaths, cases, and 'infection rates' should be subject to a massive retroactive inquiry. Lockdowns and travel restrictions should be reviewed and relaxed and those diagnosed through PCR to have 'Covid-19' should not be forced to isolate. Dr Kevin Corbett, a health researcher and nurse educator with a long academic career producing a stream of peer-reviewed publications at many UK universities, made the same point about the PCR test debacle. He said of the scientists' conclusions: 'Every scientific rationale for the development of that test has been totally destroyed by this paper. It's like Hiroshima/Nagasaki to the Covid test.' He said that China hadn't given them an isolated 'virus' when Drosten developed the test. Instead they had developed the test from *a sequence in a gene bank*.' Put another way … *they made it up*! The scientists were supported in this contention by a Portuguese appeals court which ruled in November, 2020, that PCR tests are unreliable and it is unlawful to quarantine people based solely on a PCR test. The point about China not providing an isolated virus must be true when the 'virus' has never been isolated to this day and the consequences of that will become clear. Drosten and company produced this useless 'protocol' right on cue in January, 2020, just as the 'virus' was said to

be moving westward and it somehow managed to successfully pass a peer-review in 24 hours. In other words there was no peer-review for a test that would be used to decide who had 'Covid' and who didn't across the world. The Cult-created, Gates-controlled World Health Organization immediately recommended all its nearly 200 member countries to use the Drosten PCR protocol to detect 'cases' and 'deaths'. The sting was underway and it continues to this day.

So who is this Christian Drosten that produced the means through which death, destruction and economic catastrophe would be justified? His education background, including his doctoral thesis, would appear to be somewhat shrouded in mystery and his track record is dire as with another essential player in the 'Covid' hoax, the Gates-funded Professor Neil Ferguson at the Gates-funded Imperial College in London of whom more shortly. Drosten predicted in 2003 that the alleged original SARS 'virus' (SARS-1') was an epidemic that could have serious effects on economies and an effective vaccine would take at least two years to produce. Drosten's answer to every alleged 'outbreak' is a vaccine which you won't be shocked to know. What followed were just 774 official deaths worldwide and none in Germany where there were only nine cases. That is even if you believe there ever was a SARS 'virus' when the evidence is zilch and I will expand on this in the next chapter. Drosten claims to be co-discoverer of 'SARS-1' and developed a test for it in 2003. He was screaming warnings about 'swine flu' in 2009 and how it was a widespread infection far more severe than any dangers from a vaccine could be and people should get vaccinated. It would be helpful for Drosten's vocal chords if he simply recorded the words 'the virus is deadly and you need to get vaccinated' and copies could be handed out whenever the latest made-up threat comes along. Drosten's swine flu epidemic never happened, but Big Pharma didn't mind with governments spending hundreds of millions on vaccines that hardly anyone bothered to use and many who did wished they hadn't. A study in 2010 revealed that the risk of dying from swine flu, or H1N1, was no higher than that of the annual seasonal flu which is what at least most of 'it' really was as in

the case of 'Covid-19'. A media investigation into Drosten asked how with such a record of inaccuracy he could be *the* government adviser on these issues. The answer to that question is the same with Drosten, Ferguson and Fauci – they keep on giving the authorities the 'conclusions' and 'advice' they want to hear. Drosten certainly produced the goods for them in January, 2020, with his PCR protocol garbage and provided the foundation of what German internal medicine specialist Dr Claus Köhnlein, co-author of *Virus Mania*, called the 'test pandemic'. The 22 scientists in the *Eurosurveillance* challenge called out conflicts of interest within the Drosten 'protocol' group and with good reason. Olfert Landt, a regular co-author of Drosten 'studies', owns the biotech company TIB Molbiol Syntheselabor GmbH in Berlin which manufactures and sells the tests that Drosten and his mates come up with. They have done this with SARS, Enterotoxigenic E. coli (ETEC), MERS, Zika 'virus', yellow fever, and now 'Covid'. Landt told the *Berliner Zeitung* newspaper:

> The testing, design and development came from the Charité [Drosten and Corman]. We simply implemented it immediately in the form of a kit. And if we don't have the virus, which originally only existed in Wuhan, we can make a synthetic gene to simulate the genome of the virus. That's what we did very quickly.

This is more confirmation that the Drosten test was designed without access to the 'virus' and only a synthetic simulation which is what SARS-CoV-2 really is – a computer-generated synthetic fiction. It's quite an enterprise they have going here. A Drosten team decides what the test for something should be and Landt's biotech company flogs it to governments and medical systems across the world. His company must have made an absolute fortune since the 'Covid' hoax began. Dr Reiner Fuellmich, a prominent German consumer protection trial lawyer in Germany and California, is on Drosten's case and that of Tedros at the World Health Organization for crimes against humanity with a class-action lawsuit being prepared in the United States and other legal action in Germany.

Why China?

Scamming the world with a 'virus' that doesn't exist would seem impossible on the face of it, but not if you have control of the relatively few people that make policy decisions and the great majority of the global media. Remember it's not about changing 'real' reality it's about controlling *perception* of reality. You don't have to make something happen you only have make people *believe* that it's happening. Renegade Minds understand this and are therefore much harder to swindle. 'Covid-19' is not a 'real' 'virus'. It's a mind virus, like a computer virus, which has infected the minds, not the bodies, of billions. It all started, publically at least, in China and that alone is of central significance. The Cult was behind the revolution led by its asset Mao Zedong, or Chairman Mao, which established the People's Republic of China on October 1st, 1949. It should have been called The Cult's Republic of China, but the name had to reflect the recurring illusion that vicious dictatorships are run by and for the people (see all the 'Democratic Republics' controlled by tyrants). In the same way we have the 'Biden' Democratic Republic of America officially ruled by a puppet tyrant (at least temporarily) on behalf of Cult tyrants. The creation of Mao's merciless communist/fascist dictatorship was part of a frenzy of activity by the Cult at the conclusion of World War Two which, like the First World War, it had instigated through its assets in Germany, Britain, France, the United States and elsewhere. Israel was formed in 1948; the Soviet Union expanded its 'Iron Curtain' control, influence and military power with the Warsaw Pact communist alliance in 1955; the United Nations was formed in 1945 as a Cult precursor to world government; and a long list of world bodies would be established including the World Health Organization (1948), World Trade Organization (1948 under another name until 1995), International Monetary Fund (1945) and World Bank (1944). Human society was redrawn and hugely centralised in the global Problem-Reaction-Solution that was World War Two. All these changes were significant. Israel would become the headquarters of the Sabbatians

and the revolution in China would prepare the ground and control system for the events of 2019/2020.

Renegade Minds know there are no borders except for public consumption. The Cult is a seamless, borderless global entity and to understand the game we need to put aside labels like borders, nations, countries, communism, fascism and democracy. These delude the population into believing that countries are ruled within their borders by a government of whatever shade when these are mere agencies of a global power. America's illusion of democracy and China's communism/fascism are subsidiaries – vehicles – for the same agenda. We may hear about conflict and competition between America and China and on the lower levels that will be true; but at the Cult level they are branches of the same company in the way of the McDonald's example I gave earlier. I have tracked in the books over the years support by US governments of both parties for Chinese Communist Party infiltration of American society through allowing the sale of land, even military facilities, and the acquisition of American business and university influence. All this is underpinned by the infamous stealing of intellectual property and technological know-how. Cult-owned Silicon Valley corporations waive their fraudulent 'morality' to do business with human-rights-free China; Cult-controlled Disney has become China's PR department; and China in effect owns 'American' sports such as basketball which depends for much of its income on Chinese audiences. As a result any sports player, coach or official speaking out against China's horrific human rights record is immediately condemned or fired by the China-worshipping National Basketball Association. One of the first acts of China-controlled Biden was to issue an executive order telling federal agencies to stop making references to the 'virus' by the 'geographic location of its origin'. Long-time Congressman Jerry Nadler warned that criticising China, America's biggest rival, leads to hate crimes against Asian people in the United States. So shut up you bigot. China is fast closing in on Israel as a country that must not be criticised which is apt, really, given that Sabbatians control them both. The two countries have

developed close economic, military, technological and strategic ties which include involvement in China's 'Silk Road' transport and economic initiative to connect China with Europe. Israel was the first country in the Middle East to recognise the establishment of Mao's tyranny in 1950 months after it was established.

Project Wuhan – the 'Covid' Psyop

I emphasise again that the Cult plays the long game and what is happening to the world today is the result of centuries of calculated manipulation following a script to take control step-by-step of every aspect of human society. I will discuss later the common force behind all this that has spanned those centuries and thousands of years if the truth be told. Instigating the Mao revolution in China in 1949 with a 2020 'pandemic' in mind is not only how they work – the 71 years between them is really quite short by the Cult's standards of manipulation preparation. The reason for the Cult's Chinese revolution was to create a fiercely-controlled environment within which an extreme structure for human control could be incubated to eventually be unleashed across the world. We have seen this happen since the 'pandemic' emerged from China with the Chinese control-structure founded on AI technology and tyrannical enforcement sweep across the West. Until the moment when the Cult went for broke in the West and put its fascism on public display Western governments had to pay some lip-service to freedom and democracy to not alert too many people to the tyranny-in-the-making. Freedoms were more subtly eroded and power centralised with covert government structures put in place waiting for the arrival of 2020 when that smokescreen of 'freedom' could be dispensed with. The West was not able to move towards tyranny before 2020 anything like as fast as China which was created as a tyranny and had no limits on how fast it could construct the Cult's blueprint for global control. When the time came to impose that structure on the world it was the same Cult-owned Chinese communist/fascist government that provided the excuse – the 'Covid pandemic'. It was absolutely crucial to the Cult plan for the Chinese response to the 'pandemic' –

draconian lockdowns of the entire population – to become the blueprint that Western countries would follow to destroy the livelihoods and freedom of their people. This is why the Cult-owned, Gates-owned, WHO Director-General Tedros said early on:

> The Chinese government is to be congratulated for the extraordinary measures it has taken to contain the outbreak. China is actually setting a new standard for outbreak response and it is not an exaggeration.

Forbes magazine said of China: '… those measures protected untold millions from getting the disease'. The Rockefeller Foundation 'epidemic scenario' document in 2010 said 'prophetically':

> However, a few countries did fare better – China in particular. The Chinese government's quick imposition and enforcement of mandatory quarantine for all citizens, as well as its instant and near-hermetic sealing off of all borders, saved millions of lives, stopping the spread of the virus far earlier than in other countries and enabling a swifter post-pandemic recovery.

Once again – *spooky*.

The first official story was the 'bat theory' or rather the bat diversion. The source of the 'virus outbreak' we were told was a ''wet market' in Wuhan where bats and other animals are bought and eaten in horrifically unhygienic conditions. Then another story emerged through the alternative media that the 'virus' had been released on purpose or by accident from a BSL-4 (biosafety level 4) laboratory in Wuhan not far from the wet market. The lab was reported to create and work with lethal concoctions and bioweapons. Biosafety level 4 is the highest in the World Health Organization system of safety and containment. Renegade Minds are aware of what I call designer manipulation. The ideal for the Cult is for people to buy its prime narrative which in the opening salvoes of the 'pandemic' was the wet market story. It knows, however, that there is now a considerable worldwide alternative media of researchers sceptical of anything governments say and they are often given a version of events in a form they can perceive as credible while misdirecting them from the real truth. In this case let them

think that the conspiracy involved is a 'bioweapon virus' released from the Wuhan lab to keep them from the real conspiracy – *there is no 'virus'*. The WHO's current position on the source of the outbreak at the time of writing appears to be: 'We haven't got a clue, mate.' This is a good position to maintain mystery and bewilderment. The inner circle will know where the 'virus' came from – *nowhere*. The bottom line was to ensure the public believed there *was* a 'virus' and it didn't much matter if they thought it was natural or had been released from a lab. The belief that there was a 'deadly virus' was all that was needed to trigger global panic and fear. The population was terrified into handing their power to authority and doing what they were told. They had to or they were 'all gonna die'.

In March, 2020, information began to come my way from real doctors and scientists and my own additional research which had my intuition screaming: 'Yes, that's it! *There is no virus*.' The 'bioweapon' was not the 'virus'; it was the *'vaccine'* already being talked about that would be the bioweapon. My conclusion was further enhanced by happenings in Wuhan. The 'virus' was said to be sweeping the city and news footage circulated of people collapsing in the street (which they've never done in the West with the same 'virus'). The Chinese government was building 'new hospitals' in a matter of ten days to 'cope with demand' such was the virulent nature of the 'virus'. Yet in what seemed like no time the 'new hospitals' closed – even if they even opened – and China declared itself 'virus-free'. It was back to business as usual. This was more propaganda to promote the Chinese draconian lockdowns in the West as the way to 'beat the virus'. Trouble was that we subsequently had lockdown after lockdown, but never business as usual. As the people of the West and most of the rest of the world were caught in an ever-worsening spiral of lockdown, social distancing, masks, isolated old people, families forced apart, and livelihood destruction, it was party-time in Wuhan. Pictures emerged of thousands of people enjoying pool parties and concerts. It made no sense until you realised there never was a 'virus' and the

whole thing was a Cult set-up to transform human society out of one its major global strongholds – China.

How is it possible to deceive virtually the entire world population into believing there is a deadly virus when there is not even a 'virus' let alone a deadly one? It's nothing like as difficult as you would think and that's clearly true because it happened.

Postscript: See end of book Postscript for more on the 'Wuhan lab virus release' story which the authorities and media were pushing heavily in the summer of 2021 to divert attention from the truth that the 'Covid virus' is pure invention.

CHAPTER FIVE

There *is no* 'virus'

You can fool some of the people all of the time, and all of the people some of the time, but you cannot fool all of the people all of the time
Abraham Lincoln

The greatest form of mind control is repetition. The more you repeat the same mantra of alleged 'facts' the more will accept them to be true. It becomes an 'everyone knows that, mate'. If you can also censor any other version or alternative to your alleged 'facts' you are pretty much home and cooking.

By the start of 2020 the Cult owned the global mainstream media almost in its entirety to spew out its 'Covid' propaganda and ignore or discredit any other information and view. Cult-owned social media platforms in Cult-owned Silicon Valley were poised and ready to unleash a campaign of ferocious censorship to obliterate all but the official narrative. To complete the circle many demands for censorship by Silicon Valley were led by the mainstream media as 'journalists' became full-out enforcers for the Cult both as propagandists and censors. Part of this has been the influx of young people straight out of university who have become 'journalists' in significant positions. They have no experience and a headful of programmed perceptions from their years at school and university at a time when today's young are the most perceptually-targeted generations in known human history given the insidious impact of technology. They enter the media perceptually prepared and ready to repeat the narratives of the system that programmed them to

repeat its narratives. The BBC has a truly pathetic 'specialist disinformation reporter' called Marianna Spring who fits this bill perfectly. She is clueless about the world, how it works and what is really going on. Her role is to discredit anyone doing the job that a proper journalist would do and system-serving hacks like Spring wouldn't dare to do or even see the need to do. They are too busy licking the arse of authority which can never be wrong and, in the case of the BBC propaganda programme, *Panorama*, contacting payments systems such as PayPal to have a donations page taken down for a film company making documentaries questioning vaccines. Even the BBC soap opera *EastEnders* included a disgracefully biased scene in which an inarticulate white working class woman was made to look foolish for questioning the 'vaccine' while a well-spoken black man and Asian woman promoted the government narrative. It ticked every BBC box and the fact that the black and minority community was resisting the 'vaccine' had nothing to do with the way the scene was written. The BBC has become a disgusting tyrannical propaganda and censorship operation that should be defunded and disbanded and a free media take its place with a brief to stop censorship instead of demanding it. A BBC 'interview' with Gates goes something like: 'Mr Gates, sir, if I can call you sir, would you like to tell our audience why you are such a great man, a wonderful humanitarian philanthropist, and why you should absolutely be allowed as a software salesman to decide health policy for approaching eight billion people? Thank you, sir, please sir.' Propaganda programming has been incessant and merciless and when all you hear is the same story from the media, repeated by those around you who have only heard the same story, is it any wonder that people on a grand scale believe absolute mendacious garbage to be true? You are about to see, too, why this level of information control is necessary when the official 'Covid' narrative is so nonsensical and unsupportable by the evidence.

Structure of Deceit

The pyramid structure through which the 'Covid' hoax has been manifested is very simple and has to be to work. As few people as possible have to be involved with full knowledge of what they are doing – and why – or the real story would get out. At the top of the pyramid are the inner core of the Cult which controls Bill Gates who, in turn, controls the World Health Organization through his pivotal funding and his puppet Director-General mouthpiece, Tedros. Before he was appointed Tedros was chair of the Gates-founded Global Fund to 'fight against AIDS, tuberculosis and malaria', a board member of the Gates-funded 'vaccine alliance' GAVI, and on the board of another Gates-funded organisation. Gates owns him and picked him for a specific reason – Tedros is a crook and worse. 'Dr' Tedros (he's not a medical doctor, the first WHO chief not to be) was a member of the tyrannical Marxist government of Ethiopia for decades with all its human rights abuses. He has faced allegations of corruption and misappropriation of funds and was exposed three times for covering up cholera epidemics while Ethiopia's health minister. Tedros appointed the mass-murdering genocidal Zimbabwe dictator Robert Mugabe as a WHO goodwill ambassador for public health which, as with Tedros, is like appointing a psychopath to run a peace and love campaign. The move was so ridiculous that he had to drop Mugabe in the face of widespread condemnation. American economist David Steinman, a Nobel peace prize nominee, lodged a complaint with the International Criminal Court in The Hague over alleged genocide by Tedros when he was Ethiopia's foreign minister. Steinman says Tedros was a 'crucial decision maker' who directed the actions of Ethiopia's security forces from 2013 to 2015 and one of three officials in charge when those security services embarked on the 'killing' and 'torturing' of Ethiopians. You can see where Tedros is coming from and it's sobering to think that he has been the vehicle for Gates and the Cult to direct the global response to 'Covid'. Think about that. A psychopathic Cult dictates to psychopath Gates who dictates to psychopath Tedros who dictates how countries of the world must respond to a 'Covid virus' never scientifically shown to exist. At the same time psychopathic Cult-owned Silicon Valley information

giants like Google, YouTube, Facebook and Twitter announced very early on that they would give the Cult/Gates/Tedros/WHO version of the narrative free advertising and censor those who challenged their intelligence-insulting, mendacious story.

The next layer in the global 'medical' structure below the Cult, Gates and Tedros are the chief medical officers and science 'advisers' in each of the WHO member countries which means virtually all of them. Medical officers and arbiters of science (they're not) then take the WHO policy and recommended responses and impose them on their country's population while the political 'leaders' say they are deciding policy (they're clearly not) by 'following the science' on the advice of the 'experts' – the same medical officers and science 'advisers' (dictators). In this way with the rarest of exceptions the entire world followed the same policy of lockdown, people distancing, masks and 'vaccines' dictated by the psychopathic Cult, psychopathic Gates and psychopathic Tedros who we are supposed to believe give a damn about the health of the world population they are seeking to enslave. That, amazingly, is all there is to it in terms of crucial decision-making. Medical staff in each country then follow like sheep the dictates of the shepherds at the top of the national medical hierarchies – chief medical officers and science 'advisers' who themselves follow like sheep the shepherds of the World Health Organization and the Cult. Shepherds at the national level often have major funding and other connections to Gates and his Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation which carefully hands out money like confetti at a wedding to control the entire global medical system from the WHO down.

Follow the money

Christopher Whitty, Chief Medical Adviser to the UK Government at the centre of 'virus' policy, a senior adviser to the government's Scientific Advisory Group for Emergencies (SAGE), and Executive Board member of the World Health Organization, was gifted a grant of $40 million by the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation for malaria research in Africa. The BBC described the unelected Whitty as 'the

official who will probably have the greatest impact on our everyday lives of any individual policymaker in modern times' and so it turned out. What Gates and Tedros have said Whitty has done like his equivalents around the world. Patrick Vallance, co-chair of SAGE and the government's Chief Scientific Adviser, is a former executive of Big Pharma giant GlaxoSmithKline with its fundamental financial and business connections to Bill Gates. In September, 2020, it was revealed that Vallance owned a deferred bonus of shares in GlaxoSmithKline worth £600,000 while the company was 'developing' a 'Covid vaccine'. Move along now – nothing to see here – what could possibly be wrong with that? Imperial College in London, a major player in 'Covid' policy in Britain and elsewhere with its 'Covid-19' Response Team, is funded by Gates and has big connections to China while the now infamous Professor Neil Ferguson, the useless 'computer modeller' at Imperial College is also funded by Gates. Ferguson delivered the dramatically inaccurate excuse for the first lockdowns (much more in the next chapter). The Institute for Health Metrics and Evaluation (IHME) in the United States, another source of outrageously false 'Covid' computer models to justify lockdowns, is bankrolled by Gates who is a vehement promotor of lockdowns. America's version of Whitty and Vallance, the again now infamous Anthony Fauci, has connections to 'Covid vaccine' maker Moderna as does Bill Gates through funding from the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation. Fauci is director of the National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIAID), a major recipient of Gates money, and they are very close. Deborah Birx who was appointed White House Coronavirus Response Coordinator in February, 2020, is yet another with ties to Gates. Everywhere you look at the different elements around the world behind the coordination and decision making of the 'Covid' hoax there is Bill Gates and his money. They include the World Health Organization; Centers for Disease Control (CDC) in the United States; National Institutes of Health (NIH) of Anthony Fauci; Imperial College and Neil Ferguson; the London School of Hygiene where Chris Whitty worked; Regulatory agencies like the UK Medicines & Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (MHRA)

which gave emergency approval for 'Covid vaccines'; Wellcome Trust; GAVI, the Vaccine Alliance; the Coalition for Epidemic Preparedness Innovations (CEPI); Johns Hopkins University which has compiled the false 'Covid' figures; and the World Economic Forum. A Nationalfile.com article said:

> Gates has a lot of pull in the medical world, he has a multi-million dollar relationship with Dr. Fauci, and Fauci originally took the Gates line supporting vaccines and casting doubt on [the drug hydroxychloroquine]. Coronavirus response team member Dr. Deborah Birx, appointed by former president Obama to serve as United States Global AIDS Coordinator, also sits on the board of a group that has received billions from Gates' foundation, and Birx reportedly used a disputed Bill Gates-funded model for the White House's Coronavirus effort. Gates is a big proponent for a population lockdown scenario for the Coronavirus outbreak.

Another funder of Moderna is the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (DARPA), the technology-development arm of the Pentagon and one of the most sinister organisations on earth. DARPA had a major role with the CIA covert technology-funding operation In-Q-Tel in the development of Google and social media which is now at the centre of global censorship. Fauci and Gates are extremely close and openly admit to talking regularly about 'Covid' policy, but then why wouldn't Gates have a seat at every national 'Covid' table after his Foundation committed $1.75 billion to the 'fight against Covid-19'. When passed through our Orwellian Translation Unit this means that he has bought and paid for the Cult-driven 'Covid' response worldwide. Research the major 'Covid' response personnel in your own country and you will find the same Gates funding and other connections again and again. Medical and science chiefs following World Health Organization 'policy' sit atop a medical hierarchy in their country of administrators, doctors and nursing staff. These 'subordinates' are told they must work and behave in accordance with the policy delivered from the 'top' of the national 'health' pyramid which is largely the policy delivered by the WHO which is the policy delivered by Gates and the Cult. The whole 'Covid' narrative has been imposed on medical staff by a climate of fear although great numbers don't even need that to comply. They do so through breathtaking levels of ignorance and

include doctors who go through life simply repeating what Big Pharma and their hierarchical masters tell them to say and believe. No wonder Big Pharma 'medicine' is one of the biggest killers on Planet Earth.

The same top-down system of intimidation operates with regard to the Cult Big Pharma cartel which also dictates policy through national and global medical systems in this way. The Cult and Big Pharma agendas are the same because the former controls and owns the latter. 'Health' administrators, doctors, and nursing staff are told to support and parrot the dictated policy or they will face consequences which can include being fired. How sad it's been to see medical staff meekly repeating and imposing Cult policy without question and most of those who can see through the deceit are only willing to speak anonymously off the record. They know what will happen if their identity is known. This has left the courageous few to expose the lies about the 'virus', face masks, overwhelmed hospitals that aren't, and the dangers of the 'vaccine' that isn't a vaccine. When these medical professionals and scientists, some renowned in their field, have taken to the Internet to expose the truth their articles, comments and videos have been deleted by Cult-owned Facebook, Twitter and YouTube. What a real head-shaker to see YouTube videos with leading world scientists and highly qualified medical specialists with an added link underneath to the notorious Cult propaganda website *Wikipedia* to find the 'facts' about the same subject.

HIV – the 'Covid' trial-run

I'll give you an example of the consequences for health and truth that come from censorship and unquestioning belief in official narratives. The story was told by PCR inventor Kary Mullis in his book *Dancing Naked in the Mind Field*. He said that in 1984 he accepted as just another scientific fact that Luc Montagnier of France's Pasteur Institute and Robert Gallo of America's National Institutes of Health had independently discovered that a 'retrovirus' dubbed HIV (human immunodeficiency virus) caused AIDS. They

were, after all, Mullis writes, specialists in retroviruses. This is how the medical and science pyramids work. Something is announced or *assumed* and then becomes an everybody-knows-that purely through repetition of the assumption as if it is fact. Complete crap becomes accepted truth with no supporting evidence and only repetition of the crap. This is how a 'virus' that doesn't exist became the 'virus' that changed the world. The HIV-AIDS fairy story became a multi-billion pound industry and the media poured out propaganda terrifying the world about the deadly HIV 'virus' that caused the lethal AIDS. By then Mullis was working at a lab in Santa Monica, California, to detect retroviruses with his PCR test in blood donations received by the Red Cross. In doing so he asked a virologist where he could find a reference for HIV being the cause of AIDS. 'You don't need a reference,' the virologist said … *'Everybody knows it.'* Mullis said he wanted to quote a reference in the report he was doing and he said he felt a little funny about not knowing the source of such an important discovery when everyone else seemed to. The virologist suggested he cite a report by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) on morbidity and mortality. Mullis read the report, but it only said that an organism had been identified and did not say how. The report did not identify the original scientific work. Physicians, however, *assumed* (key recurring theme) that if the CDC was convinced that HIV caused AIDS then proof must exist. Mullis continues:

I did computer searches. Neither Montagnier, Gallo, nor anyone else had published papers describing experiments which led to the conclusion that HIV probably caused AIDS. I read the papers in Science for which they had become well known as AIDS doctors, but all they had said there was that they had found evidence of a past infection by something which was probably HIV in some AIDS patients.

They found antibodies. Antibodies to viruses had always been considered evidence of past disease, not present disease. Antibodies signaled that the virus had been defeated. The patient had saved himself. There was no indication in these papers that this virus caused a disease. They didn't show that everybody with the antibodies had the disease. In fact they found some healthy people with antibodies.

Mullis asked why their work had been published if Montagnier and Gallo hadn't really found this evidence, and why had they been fighting so hard to get credit for the discovery? He says he was hesitant to write 'HIV is the probable cause of AIDS' until he found published evidence to support that. 'Tens of thousands of scientists and researchers were spending billions of dollars a year doing research based on this idea,' Mullis writes. 'The reason had to be there somewhere; otherwise these people would not have allowed their research to settle into one narrow channel of investigation.' He said he lectured about PCR at numerous meetings where people were always talking about HIV and he asked them how they knew that HIV was the cause of AIDS:

> Everyone said something. Everyone had the answer at home, in the office, in some drawer. They all knew, and they would send me the papers as soon as they got back. But I never got any papers. Nobody ever sent me the news about how AIDS was caused by HIV.

Eventually Mullis was able to ask Montagnier himself about the reference proof when he lectured in San Diego at the grand opening of the University of California AIDS Research Center. Mullis says this was the last time he would ask his question without showing anger. Montagnier said he should reference the CDC report. 'I read it', Mullis said, and it didn't answer the question. 'If Montagnier didn't know the answer who the hell did?' Then one night Mullis was driving when an interview came on National Public Radio with Peter Duesberg, a prominent virologist at Berkeley and a California Scientist of the Year. Mullis says he finally understood why he could not find references that connected HIV to AIDS – *there weren't any!* No one had ever proved that HIV causes AIDS even though it had spawned a multi-billion pound global industry and the media was repeating this as fact every day in their articles and broadcasts terrifying the shit out of people about AIDS and giving the impression that a positive test for HIV (see 'Covid') was a death sentence. Duesberg was a threat to the AIDS gravy train and the agenda that underpinned it. He was therefore abused and castigated after he told the Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences

there was no good evidence implicating the new 'virus'. Editors rejected his manuscripts and his research funds were deleted. Mullis points out that the CDC has defined AIDS as one of more than 30 diseases *if accompanied* by a positive result on a test that detects antibodies to HIV; but those same diseases are not defined as AIDS cases when antibodies are not detected:

> If an HIV-positive woman develops uterine cancer, for example, she is considered to have AIDS. If she is not HIV positive, she simply has uterine cancer. An HIV-positive man with tuberculosis has AIDS; if he tests negative he simply has tuberculosis. If he lives in Kenya or Colombia, where the test for HIV antibodies is too expensive, he is simply presumed to have the antibodies and therefore AIDS, and therefore he can be treated in the World Health Organization's clinic. It's the only medical help available in some places. And it's free, because the countries that support WHO are worried about AIDS.

Mullis accuses the CDC of continually adding new diseases (see ever more 'Covid symptoms') to the grand AIDS definition and of virtually doctoring the books to make it appear as if the disease continued to spread. He cites how in 1993 the CDC enormously broadened its AIDS definition and county health authorities were delighted because they received $2,500 per year from the Federal government for every reported AIDS case. Ladies and gentlemen, I have just described, via Kary Mullis, the 'Covid pandemic' of 2020 and beyond. Every element is the same and it's been pulled off in the same way by the same networks.

The 'Covid virus' exists? Okay – prove it. Er … still waiting

What Kary Mullis described with regard to 'HIV' has been repeated with 'Covid'. A claim is made that a new, or 'novel', infection has been found and the entire medical system of the world repeats that as fact exactly as they did with HIV and AIDS. No one in the mainstream asks rather relevant questions such as 'How do you know?' and 'Where is your proof?' The SARS-Cov-2 'virus' and the 'Covid-19 disease' became an overnight 'everybody-knows-that'. The origin could be debated and mulled over, but what you could not suggest was that 'SARS-Cov-2' didn't exist. That would be

ridiculous. 'Everybody knows' the 'virus' exists. Well, I didn't for one along with American proper doctors like Andrew Kaufman and Tom Cowan and long-time American proper journalist Jon Rappaport. We dared to pursue the obvious and simple question: 'Where's the evidence?' The overwhelming majority in medicine, journalism and the general public did not think to ask that. After all, *everyone knew* there was a new 'virus'. Everyone was saying so and I heard it on the BBC. Some would eventually argue that the 'deadly virus' was nothing like as deadly as claimed, but few would venture into the realms of its very existence. Had they done so they would have found that the evidence for that claim had gone AWOL as with HIV causes AIDS. In fact, not even that. For something to go AWOL it has to exist in the first place and scientific proof for a 'SARS-Cov-2' can be filed under nothing, nowhere and zilch.

Dr Andrew Kaufman is a board-certified forensic psychiatrist in New York State, a Doctor of Medicine and former Assistant Professor and Medical Director of Psychiatry at SUNY Upstate Medical University, and Medical Instructor of Hematology and Oncology at the Medical School of South Carolina. He also studied biology at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT) and trained in Psychiatry at Duke University. Kaufman is retired from allopathic medicine, but remains a consultant and educator on natural healing, I saw a video of his very early on in the 'Covid' hoax in which he questioned claims about the 'virus' in the absence of any supporting evidence and with plenty pointing the other way. I did everything I could to circulate his work which I felt was asking the pivotal questions that needed an answer. I can recommend an excellent pull-together interview he did with the website The Last Vagabond entitled *Dr Andrew Kaufman: Virus Isolation, Terrain Theory and Covid-19* and his website is andrewkaufmanmd.com. Kaufman is not only a forensic psychiatrist; he is forensic in all that he does. He always reads original scientific papers, experiments and studies instead of second-third-fourth-hand reports about the 'virus' in the media which are repeating the repeated repetition of the narrative. When he did so with the original Chinese 'virus' papers Kaufman

realised that there was no evidence of a 'SARS-Cov-2'. They had never – from the start – shown it to exist and every repeat of this claim worldwide was based on the accepted existence of proof that was nowhere to be found – see Kary Mullis and HIV. Here we go again.

Let's postulate

Kaufman discovered that the Chinese authorities immediately concluded that the cause of an illness that broke out among about 200 initial patients in Wuhan was a 'new virus' when there were no grounds to make that conclusion. The alleged 'virus' was not isolated from other genetic material in their samples and then shown through a system known as Koch's postulates to be the causative agent of the illness. The world was told that the SARS-Cov-2 'virus' caused a disease they called 'Covid-19' which had 'flu-like' symptoms and could lead to respiratory problems and pneumonia. If it wasn't so tragic it would almost be funny. *'Flu-like' symptoms'? Pneumonia? Respiratory disease?* What in *CHINA* and particularly in *Wuhan*, one of the most polluted cities in the world with a resulting epidemic of respiratory disease?? Three hundred thousand people get pneumonia in China every year and there are nearly a billion cases worldwide of 'flu-like symptoms'. These have a whole range of causes – including pollution in Wuhan – but no other possibility was credibly considered in late 2019 when the world was told there was a new and deadly 'virus'. The global prevalence of pneumonia and 'flu-like systems' gave the Cult networks unlimited potential to re-diagnose these other causes as the mythical 'Covid-19' and that is what they did from the very start. Kaufman revealed how Chinese medical and science authorities (all subordinates to the Cult-owned communist government) took genetic material from the lungs of only a few of the first patients. The material contained their own cells, bacteria, fungi and other microorganisms living in their bodies. The only way you could prove the existence of the 'virus' and its responsibility for the alleged 'Covid-19' was to isolate the virus from all the other material – a process also known as 'purification' – and

then follow the postulates sequence developed in the late 19th century by German physician and bacteriologist Robert Koch which became the 'gold standard' for connecting an alleged causation agent to a disease:

1. The microorganism (bacteria, fungus, virus, etc.) must be present in every case of the disease and all patients must have the same symptoms. It must also *not be present in healthy individuals*.

2. The microorganism must be isolated from the host with the disease. If the microorganism is a bacteria or fungus it must be grown in a pure culture. If it is a virus, it must be purified (i.e. containing no other material except the virus particles) from a clinical sample.

3. The specific disease, with all of its characteristics, must be reproduced when the infectious agent (the purified virus or a pure culture of bacteria or fungi) is inoculated into a healthy, susceptible host.

4. The microorganism must be recoverable from the experimentally infected host as in step 2.

Not one of these criteria has been met in the case of 'SARS-Cov-2' and 'Covid-19'. Not ONE. *EVER*. Robert Koch refers to bacteria and not viruses. What are called 'viral particles' are so minute (hence masks are useless by any definition) that they could only be seen after the invention of the electron microscope in the 1930s and can still only be observed through that means. American bacteriologist and virologist Thomas Milton Rivers, the so-called 'Father of Modern Virology' who was very significantly director of the Rockefeller Institute for Medical Research in the 1930s, developed a less stringent version of Koch's postulates to identify 'virus' causation known as 'Rivers criteria'. 'Covid' did not pass that process either. Some even doubt whether any 'virus' can be isolated from other particles containing genetic material in the Koch method. Freedom of Information requests in many countries asking for scientific proof that the 'Covid virus' has been purified and isolated and shown to exist have all come back with a 'we don't have that' and when this happened with a request to the UK Department of Health they added this comment:

However, outside of the scope of the [Freedom of Information Act] and on a discretionary basis, the following information has been advised to us, which may be of interest. Most infectious diseases are caused by viruses, bacteria or fungi. Some bacteria or fungi have the capacity to grow on their own in isolation, for example in colonies on a petri dish. Viruses are different in that they are what we call 'obligate pathogens' – that is, they cannot survive or reproduce without infecting a host ...

… For some diseases, it is possible to establish causation between a microorganism and a disease by isolating the pathogen from a patient, growing it in pure culture and reintroducing it to a healthy organism. These are known as 'Koch's postulates' and were developed in 1882. However, as our understanding of disease and different disease-causing agents has advanced, these are no longer the method for determining causation [Andrew Kaufman asks why in that case are there two published articles falsely claiming to satisfy Koch's postulates].

It has long been known that viral diseases cannot be identified in this way as viruses cannot be grown in 'pure culture'. When a patient is tested for a viral illness, this is normally done by looking for the presence of antigens, or viral genetic code in a host with molecular biology techniques [Kaufman asks how you could know the origin of these chemicals without having a pure culture for comparison].

For the record 'antigens' are defined so:

Invading microorganisms have antigens on their surface that the human body can recognise as being foreign – meaning not belonging to it. When the body recognises a foreign antigen, lymphocytes (white blood cells) produce antibodies, which are complementary in shape to the antigen.

Notwithstanding that this is open to question in relation to 'SARS-Cov-2' the presence of 'antibodies' can have many causes and they are found in people that are perfectly well. Kary Mullis said: 'Antibodies … had always been considered evidence of past disease, not present disease.'

'Covid' really is a *computer* 'virus'

Where the UK Department of Health statement says 'viruses' are now 'diagnosed' through a 'viral genetic code in a host with molecular biology techniques', they mean … *the PCR test* which its inventor said cannot test for infectious disease. They have no credible method of connecting a 'virus' to a disease and we will see that there is no scientific proof that any 'virus' causes any disease or there is any such thing as a 'virus' in the way that it is described. Tenacious Canadian researcher Christine Massey and her team made

some 40 Freedom of Information requests to national public health agencies in different countries asking for proof that SARS-CoV-2 has been isolated and not one of them could supply that information. Massey said of her request in Canada: 'Freedom of Information reveals Public Health Agency of Canada has no record of 'SARS-COV-2' isolation performed by anyone, anywhere, ever.' If you accept the comment from the UK Department of Health it's because they can't isolate a 'virus'. Even so many 'science' papers claimed to have isolated the 'Covid virus' until they were questioned and had to admit they hadn't. A reply from the Robert Koch Institute in Germany was typical: 'I am not aware of a paper which purified isolated SARS-CoV-2.' So what the hell was Christian Drosten and his gang using to design the 'Covid' testing protocol that has produced all the illusory Covid' cases and 'Covid' deaths when the head of the Chinese version of the CDC admitted there was a problem right from the start in that the 'virus' had never been isolated/purified? Breathe deeply: What they are calling 'Covid' is actually created by a *computer program* i.e. *they made it up* – er, that's it. They took lung fluid, with many sources of genetic material, from one single person alleged to be infected with Covid-19 by a PCR test which they *claimed*, without clear evidence, contained a 'virus'. They used several computer programs to create a model of a theoretical virus genome sequence from more than fifty-six million small sequences of RNA, each of an unknown source, assembling them like a puzzle with no known solution. The computer filled in the gaps with sequences from bits in the gene bank to make it look like a bat SARS-like coronavirus! A wave of the magic wand and poof, an in silico (computer-generated) genome, a scientific fantasy, was created. UK health researcher Dr Kevin Corbett made the same point with this analogy:

> … It's like giving you a few bones and saying that's your fish. It could be any fish. Not even a skeleton. Here's a few fragments of bones. That's your fish … It's all from gene bank and the bits of the virus sequence that weren't there they made up.
>
> They synthetically created them to fill in the blanks. That's what genetics is; it's a code. So it's ABBBCCDDD and you're missing some what you think is EEE so you put it in. It's all

synthetic. You just manufacture the bits that are missing. This is the end result of the geneticization of virology. This is basically a computer virus.

Further confirmation came in an email exchange between British citizen journalist Frances Leader and the government's Medicines & Healthcare Products Regulatory Agency (the Gates-funded MHRA) which gave emergency permission for untested 'Covid vaccines' to be used. The agency admitted that the 'vaccine' is not based on an isolated 'virus', but comes from a *computer-generated model*. Frances Leader was naturally banned from Cult-owned fascist Twitter for making this exchange public. The process of creating computer-generated alleged 'viruses' is called 'in silico' or 'in silicon' – computer chips – and the term 'in silico' is believed to originate with biological experiments using only a computer in 1989. 'Vaccines' involved with 'Covid' are also produced 'in silico' or by computer not a natural process. If the original 'virus' is nothing more than a made-up computer model how can there be 'new variants' of something that never existed in the first place? They are not new 'variants'; they are new *computer models* only minutely different to the original program and designed to further terrify the population into having the 'vaccine' and submitting to fascism. You want a 'new variant'? Click, click, enter – there you go. Tell the medical profession that you have discovered a 'South African variant', 'UK variants' or a 'Brazilian variant' and in the usual HIV-causes-AIDS manner they will unquestioningly repeat it with no evidence whatsoever to support these claims. They will go on television and warn about the dangers of 'new variants' while doing nothing more than repeating what they have been told to be true and knowing that any deviation from that would be career suicide. Big-time insiders will know it's a hoax, but much of the medical community is clueless about the way they are being played and themselves play the public without even being aware they are doing so. What an interesting 'coincidence' that AstraZeneca and Oxford University were conducting 'Covid vaccine trials' in the three countries – the UK, South Africa and Brazil – where the first three 'variants' were claimed to have 'broken out'.

Here's your 'virus' – it's a unicorn

Dr Andrew Kaufman presented a brilliant analysis describing how the 'virus' was imagined into fake existence when he dissected an article published by *Nature* and written by 19 authors detailing *alleged* 'sequencing of a complete viral genome' of the 'new SARS-CoV-2 virus'. This computer-modelled *in silico* genome was used as a template for all subsequent genome sequencing experiments that resulted in the so-called variants which he said now number more than *6,000*. The fake genome was constructed from more than 56 million individual short strands of RNA. Those little pieces were assembled into longer pieces by finding areas of overlapping sequences. The computer programs created over two million possible combinations from which the authors simply chose the longest one. They then compared this to a 'bat virus' and the computer 'alignment' rearranged the sequence and filled in the gaps! They called this computer-generated abomination the 'complete genome'. Dr Tom Cowan, a fellow medical author and collaborator with Kaufman, said such computer-generation constitutes scientific fraud and he makes this superb analogy:

> Here is an equivalency: A group of researchers claim to have found a unicorn because they found a piece of a hoof, a hair from a tail, and a snippet of a horn. They then add that information into a computer and program it to re-create the unicorn, and they then claim this computer re-creation is the real unicorn. Of course, they had never actually seen a unicorn so could not possibly have examined its genetic makeup to compare their samples with the actual unicorn's hair, hooves and horn.
>
> The researchers claim they decided which is the real genome of SARS-CoV-2 by 'consensus', sort of like a vote. Again, different computer programs will come up with different versions of the imaginary 'unicorn', so they come together as a group and decide which is the real imaginary unicorn.

This is how the 'virus' that has transformed the world was brought into fraudulent 'existence'. Extraordinary, yes, but as the Nazis said the bigger the lie the more will believe it. Cowan, however, wasn't finished and he went on to identify what he called the real blockbuster in the paper. He quotes this section from a paper written

by virologists and published by the CDC and then explains what it means:

> Therefore, we examined the capacity of SARS-CoV-2 to infect and replicate in several common primate and human cell lines, including human adenocarcinoma cells (A549), human liver cells (HUH 7.0), and human embryonic kidney cells (HEK-293T). In addition to Vero E6 and Vero CCL81 cells. ... Each cell line was inoculated at high multiplicity of infection and examined 24h post-infection.
>
> No CPE was observed in any of the cell lines except in Vero cells, which grew to greater than 10 to the 7th power at 24 h post-infection. In contrast, HUH 7.0 and 293T showed only modest viral replication, and A549 cells were incompatible with SARS CoV-2 infection.

Cowan explains that when virologists attempt to prove infection they have three possible 'hosts' or models on which they can test. The first was humans. Exposure to humans was generally not done for ethical reasons and has never been done with SARS-CoV-2 or any coronavirus. The second possible host was animals. Cowan said that forgetting for a moment that they never actually use purified virus when exposing animals they do use solutions that they *claim* contain the virus. Exposure to animals has been done with SARS-CoV-2 in an experiment involving mice and this is what they found: *None of the wild (normal) mice got sick*. In a group of genetically-modified mice, a statistically insignificant number lost weight and had slightly bristled fur, but they experienced nothing like the illness called 'Covid-19'. Cowan said the third method – the one they mostly rely on – is to inoculate solutions they *say* contain the virus onto a variety of tissue cultures. This process had never been shown to kill tissue *unless* the sample material was starved of nutrients and poisoned as *part of the process*. Yes, incredibly, in tissue experiments designed to show the 'virus' is responsible for killing the tissue they starve the tissue of nutrients and add toxic drugs including antibiotics and they do not have control studies to see if it's the starvation and poisoning that is degrading the tissue rather than the 'virus' they allege to be in there somewhere. You want me to pinch you? Yep, I understand. Tom Cowan said this about the whole nonsensical farce as he explains what that quote from the CDC paper really means:

The shocking thing about the above quote is that using their own methods, the virologists found that solutions containing SARS-CoV-2 – even in high amounts – were NOT, I repeat NOT, infective to any of the three human tissue cultures they tested. In plain English, this means they proved, on their terms, that this 'new coronavirus' is not infectious to human beings. It is ONLY infective to monkey kidney cells, and only then when you add two potent drugs (gentamicin and amphotericin), known to be toxic to kidneys, to the mix.

My friends, read this again and again. These virologists, published by the CDC, performed a clear proof, on their terms, showing that the SARS-CoV-2 virus is harmless to human beings. That is the only possible conclusion, but, unfortunately, this result is not even mentioned in their conclusion. They simply say they can provide virus stocks cultured only on monkey Vero cells, thanks for coming.

Cowan concluded: 'If people really understood how this "science" was done, I would hope they would storm the gates and demand honesty, transparency and truth.' Dr Michael Yeadon, former Vice President and Chief Scientific Adviser at drug giant Pfizer has been a vocal critic of the 'Covid vaccine' and its potential for multiple harm. He said in an interview in April, 2021, that 'not one [vaccine] has the virus. He was asked why vaccines normally using a 'dead' version of a disease to activate the immune system were not used for 'Covid' and instead we had the synthetic methods of the 'mRNA Covid vaccine'. Yeadon said that to do the former 'you'd have to have some of [the virus] wouldn't you?' He added: 'No-one's got any – seriously.' Yeadon said that surely they couldn't have fooled the whole world for a year without having a virus, 'but oddly enough ask around – no one's got it'. He didn't know why with all the 'great labs' around the world that the virus had not been isolated – 'Maybe they've been too busy running bad PCR tests and vaccines that people don't need.' What is today called 'science' is not 'science' at all. Science is no longer what is, but whatever people can be manipulated to *believe* that it is. Real science has been hijacked by the Cult to dispense and produce the 'expert scientists' and contentions that suit the agenda of the Cult. How big-time this has happened with the 'Covid' hoax which is entirely based on fake science delivered by fake 'scientists' and fake 'doctors'. The human-caused climate change hoax is also entirely based on fake science delivered by fake 'scientists' and fake 'climate experts'. In both cases real

scientists, climate experts and doctors have their views suppressed and deleted by the Cult-owned science establishment, media and Silicon Valley. This is the 'science' that politicians claim to be 'following' and a common denominator of 'Covid' and climate are Cult psychopaths Bill Gates and his mate Klaus Schwab at the Gates-funded World Economic Forum. But, don't worry, it's all just a coincidence and absolutely nothing to worry about. *Zzzzzzzz*.

What is a 'virus' REALLY?

Dr Tom Cowan is one of many contesting the very existence of viruses let alone that they cause disease. This is understandable when there is no scientific evidence for a disease-causing 'virus'. German virologist Dr Stefan Lanka won a landmark case in 2017 in the German Supreme Court over his contention that there is no such thing as a measles virus. He had offered a big prize for anyone who could prove there is and Lanka won his case when someone sought to claim the money. There is currently a prize of more than 225,000 euros on offer from an Isolate Truth Fund for anyone who can prove the isolation of SARS-CoV-2 and its genetic substance. Lanka wrote in an article headed 'The Misconception Called Virus' that scientists think a 'virus' is causing tissue to become diseased and degraded when in fact it is the *processes they are using* which do that – not a 'virus'. Lanka has done an important job in making this point clear as Cowan did in his analysis of the CDC paper. Lanka says that all claims about viruses as disease-causing pathogens are wrong and based on 'easily recognisable, understandable and verifiable misinterpretations.' Scientists believed they were working with 'viruses' in their laboratories when they were really working with 'typical particles of specific dying tissues or cells …' Lanka said that the tissue decaying process claimed to be caused by a 'virus' still happens when no alleged 'virus' is involved. It's the *process* that does the damage and not a 'virus'. The genetic sample is deprived of nutrients, removed from its energy supply through removal from the body and then doused in toxic antibiotics to remove any bacteria. He confirms again that establishment scientists do not (pinch me)

conduct control experiments to see if this is the case and if they did they would see the claims that 'viruses' are doing the damage is nonsense. He adds that during the measles 'virus' court case he commissioned an independent laboratory to perform just such a control experiment and the result was that the tissues and cells died in the exact same way as with alleged 'infected' material. This is supported by a gathering number of scientists, doctors and researchers who reject what is called 'germ theory' or the belief in the body being infected by contagious sources emitted by other people. Researchers Dawn Lester and David Parker take the same stance in their highly-detailed and sourced book *What Really Makes You Ill – Why everything you thought you knew about disease is wrong* which was recommended to me by a number of medical professionals genuinely seeking the truth. Lester and Parker say there is no provable scientific evidence to show that a 'virus' can be transmitted between people or people and animals or animals and people:

> The definition also claims that viruses are the cause of many diseases, as if this has been definitively proven. But this is not the case; there is no original scientific evidence that definitively demonstrates that any virus is the cause of any disease. The burden of proof for any theory lies with those who proposed it; but none of the existing documents provides 'proof' that supports the claim that 'viruses' are pathogens.

Dr Tom Cowan employs one of his clever analogies to describe the process by which a 'virus' is named as the culprit for a disease when what is called a 'virus' is only material released by cells detoxing themselves from infiltration by chemical or radiation poisoning. The tidal wave of technologically-generated radiation in the 'smart' modern world plus all the toxic food and drink are causing this to happen more than ever. Deluded 'scientists' misread this as a gathering impact of what they wrongly label 'viruses'.

Paper can infect houses

Cowan said in an article for davidicke.com – with his tongue only mildly in his cheek – that he believed he had made a tremendous

discovery that may revolutionise science. He had discovered that small bits of paper are alive, 'well alive-ish', can 'infect' houses, and then reproduce themselves inside the house. The result was that this explosion of growth in the paper inside the house causes the house to explode, blowing it to smithereens. His evidence for this new theory is that in the past months he had carefully examined many of the houses in his neighbourhood and found almost no scraps of paper on the lawns and surrounds of the house. There was an occasional stray label, but nothing more. Then he would return to these same houses a week or so later and with a few, not all of them, particularly the old and decrepit ones, he found to his shock and surprise they were littered with stray bits of paper. He knew then that the paper had infected these houses, made copies of itself, and blew up the house. A young boy on a bicycle at one of the sites told him he had seen a demolition crew using dynamite to explode the house the previous week, but Cowan dismissed this as the idle thoughts of silly boys because 'I was on to something big'. He was on to how 'scientists' mistake genetic material in the detoxifying process for something they call a 'virus'. Cowan said of his house and paper story:

If this sounds crazy to you, it's because it should. This scenario is obviously nuts. But consider this admittedly embellished, for effect, current viral theory that all scientists, medical doctors and virologists currently believe.

He takes the example of the 'novel SARS-Cov2' virus to prove the point. First they take someone with an undefined illness called 'Covid-19' and don't even attempt to find any virus in their sputum. Never mind the scientists still describe how this 'virus', which they have not located attaches to a cell receptor, injects its genetic material, in 'Covid's' case, RNA, into the cell. The RNA once inserted exploits the cell to reproduce itself and makes 'thousands, nay millions, of copies of itself … Then it emerges victorious to claim its next victim':

If you were to look in the scientific literature for proof, actual scientific proof, that uniform SARS-CoV2 viruses have been properly isolated from the sputum of a sick person, that actual spike proteins could be seen protruding from the virus (which has not been found), you would find that such evidence doesn't exist.

If you go looking in the published scientific literature for actual pictures, proof, that these spike proteins or any viral proteins are ever attached to any receptor embedded in any cell membrane, you would also find that no such evidence exists. If you were to look for a video or documented evidence of the intact virus injecting its genetic material into the body of the cell, reproducing itself and then emerging victorious by budding off the cell membrane, you would find that no such evidence exists.

The closest thing you would find is electron micrograph pictures of cellular particles, possibly attached to cell debris, both of which to be seen were stained by heavy metals, a process that completely distorts their architecture within the living organism. This is like finding bits of paper stuck to the blown-up bricks, thereby proving the paper emerged by taking pieces of the bricks on its way out.

The Enders baloney

Cowan describes the 'Covid' story as being just as make-believe as his paper story and he charts back this fantasy to a Nobel Prize winner called John Enders (1897-1985), an American biomedical scientist who has been dubbed 'The Father of Modern Vaccines'. Enders is claimed to have 'discovered' the process of the viral culture which 'proved' that a 'virus' caused measles. Cowan explains how Enders did this 'by using the EXACT same procedure that has been followed by every virologist to find and characterize every new virus since 1954'. Enders took throat swabs from children with measles and immersed them in 2ml of milk. Penicillin (100u/ml) and the antibiotic streptomycin (50,g/ml) were added and the whole mix was centrifuged – rotated at high speed to separate large cellular debris from small particles and molecules as with milk and cream, for example. Cowan says that if the aim is to find little particles of genetic material ('viruses') in the snot from children with measles it would seem that the last thing you would do is mix the snot with other material – milk –that also has genetic material. 'How are you ever going to know whether whatever you found came from the snot or the milk?' He points out that streptomycin is a 'nephrotoxic' or poisonous-to-the-kidney drug. You will see the relevance of that

shortly. Cowan says that it gets worse, much worse, when Enders describes the culture medium upon which the virus 'grows': 'The culture medium consisted of bovine amniotic fluid (90%), beef embryo extract (5%), horse serum (5%), antibiotics and phenol red as an indicator of cell metabolism.' Cowan asks incredulously: 'Did he just say that the culture medium also contained fluids and tissues that are themselves rich sources of genetic material?' The genetic cocktail, or 'medium', is inoculated onto tissue and cells from rhesus monkey *kidney* tissue. This is where the importance of streptomycin comes in and currently-used antimicrobials and other drugs that are *poisonous to kidneys* and used in ALL modern viral cultures (e.g. gentamicin, streptomycin, and amphotericin). Cowan asks: 'How are you ever going to know from this witch's brew where any genetic material comes from as we now have five different sources of rich genetic material in our mix?' Remember, he says, that all genetic material, whether from monkey kidney tissues, bovine serum, milk, etc., is made from the exact same components. The same central question returns: 'How are you possibly going to know that it was the virus that killed the kidney tissue and not the toxic antibiotic and starvation rations on which you are growing the tissue?' John Enders answered the question himself – *you can't*:

A second agent was obtained from an uninoculated culture of monkey kidney cells. The cytopathic changes [death of the cells] it induced in the unstained preparations could not be distinguished with confidence from the viruses isolated from measles.

The death of the cells ('cytopathic changes') happened in exactly the same manner, whether they inoculated the kidney tissue with the measles snot or not, Cowan says. 'This is evidence that the destruction of the tissue, the very proof of viral causation of illness, was not caused by anything in the snot because they saw the same destructive effect when the snot was not even used … the cytopathic, i.e., cell-killing, changes come from the process of the culture itself, not from any virus in any snot, period.' Enders quotes in his 1957 paper a virologist called Ruckle as reporting similar findings 'and in addition has isolated an agent from monkey kidney tissue that is so

far indistinguishable from human measles virus'. In other words, Cowan says, these particles called 'measles viruses' are simply and clearly breakdown products of the starved and poisoned tissue. For measles 'virus' see all 'viruses' including the so-called 'Covid virus'. Enders, the 'Father of Modern Vaccines', also said:

There is a potential risk in employing cultures of primate cells for the production of vaccines composed of attenuated virus, since the presence of other agents possibly latent in primate tissues cannot be definitely excluded by any known method.

Cowan further quotes from a paper published in the journal *Viruses* in May, 2020, while the 'Covid pandemic' was well underway in the media if not in reality. 'EVs' here refers to particles of genetic debris from our own tissues, such as exosomes of which more in a moment: 'The remarkable resemblance between EVs and viruses has caused quite a few problems in the studies focused on the analysis of EVs released during viral infections.' Later the paper adds that to date a reliable method that can actually guarantee a complete separation (of EVs from viruses) DOES NOT EXIST. This was published at a time when a fairy tale 'virus' was claimed in total certainty to be causing a fairy tale 'viral disease' called 'Covid-19' – a fairy tale that was already well on the way to transforming human society in the image that the Cult has worked to achieve for so long. Cowan concludes his article:

To summarize, there is no scientific evidence that pathogenic viruses exist. What we think of as 'viruses' are simply the normal breakdown products of dead and dying tissues and cells. When we are well, we make fewer of these particles; when we are starved, poisoned, suffocated by wearing masks, or afraid, we make more.

There is no engineered virus circulating and making people sick. People in laboratories all over the world are making genetically modified products to make people sick. These are called vaccines. There is no virome, no 'ecosystem' of viruses, viruses are not 8%, 50% or 100 % of our genetic material. These are all simply erroneous ideas based on the misconception called a virus.

What is 'Covid'? Load of bollocks

The background described here by Cowan and Lanka was emphasised in the first video presentation that I saw by Dr Andrew Kaufman when he asked whether the 'Covid virus' was in truth a natural defence mechanism of the body called 'exosomes'. These are released by cells when in states of toxicity – see the same themes returning over and over. They are released ever more profusely as chemical and radiation toxicity increases and think of the potential effect therefore of 5G alone as its destructive frequencies infest the human energetic information field with a gathering pace (5G went online in Wuhan in 2019 as the 'virus' emerged). I'll have more about this later. Exosomes transmit a warning to the rest of the body that 'Houston, we have a problem'. Kaufman presented images of exosomes and compared them with 'Covid' under an electron microscope and the similarity was remarkable. They both attach to the same cell receptors (*claimed* in the case of 'Covid'), contain the same genetic material in the form of RNA or ribonucleic acid, and both are found in 'viral cell cultures' with damaged or dying cells. James Hildreth MD, President and Chief Executive Officer of the Meharry Medical College at Johns Hopkins, said: 'The virus is fully an exosome in every sense of the word.' Kaufman's conclusion was that there is no 'virus': 'This entire pandemic is a completely manufactured crisis … there is no evidence of anyone dying from [this] illness.' Dr Tom Cowan and Sally Fallon Morell, authors of *The Contagion Myth*, published a statement with Dr Kaufman in February, 2021, explaining why the 'virus' does not exist and you can read it that in full in the Appendix.

'Virus' theory can be traced to the 'cell theory' in 1858 of German physician Rudolf Virchow (1821-1920) who contended that disease originates from a single cell infiltrated by a 'virus'. Dr Stefan Lanka said that findings and insights with respect to the structure, function and central importance of tissues in the creation of life, which were already known in 1858, comprehensively refute the cell theory. Virchow ignored them. We have seen the part later played by John Enders in the 1950s and Lanka notes that infection theories were only established as a global dogma through the policies and

eugenics of the Third Reich in Nazi Germany (creation of the same Sabbatian cult behind the 'Covid' hoax). Lanka said: 'Before 1933, scientists dared to contradict this theory; after 1933, these critical scientists were silenced'. Dr Tom Cowan's view is that ill-heath is caused by too much of something, too little of something, or toxification from chemicals and radiation – not contagion. We must also highlight as a major source of the 'virus' theology a man still called the 'Father of Modern Virology' – Thomas Milton Rivers (1888-1962). There is no way given the Cult's long game policy that it was a coincidence for the 'Father of Modern Virology' to be director of the Rockefeller Institute for Medical Research from 1937 to 1956 when he is credited with making the Rockefeller Institute a leader in 'viral research'. Cult Rockefellers were the force behind the creation of Big Pharma 'medicine', established the World Health Organisation in 1948, and have long and close associations with the Gates family that now runs the WHO during the pandemic hoax through mega-rich Cult gofer and psychopath Bill Gates.

Only a Renegade Mind can see through all this bullshit by asking the questions that need to be answered, not taking 'no' or prevarication for an answer, and certainly not hiding from the truth in fear of speaking it. Renegade Minds have always changed the world for the better and they will change this one no matter how bleak it may currently appear to be.

CHAPTER SIX

Sequence of deceit

If you tell the truth, you don't have to remember anything
Mark Twain

Against the background that I have laid out this far the sequence that took us from an invented 'virus' in Cult-owned China in late 2019 to the fascist transformation of human society can be seen and understood in a whole new context.

We were told that a deadly disease had broken out in Wuhan and the world media began its campaign (coordinated by behavioural psychologists as we shall see) to terrify the population into unquestioning compliance. We were shown images of Chinese people collapsing in the street which never happened in the West with what was supposed to be the same condition. In the earliest days when alleged cases and deaths were few the fear register was hysterical in many areas of the media and this would expand into the common media narrative across the world. The real story was rather different, but we were never told that. The Chinese government, one of the Cult's biggest centres of global operation, said they had discovered a new illness with flu-like and pneumonia-type symptoms in a city with such toxic air that it is overwhelmed with flu-like symptoms, pneumonia and respiratory disease. Chinese scientists said it was a new – 'novel' – coronavirus which they called Sars-Cov-2 and that it caused a disease they labelled 'Covid-19'. There was no evidence for this and the 'virus' has never to this day been isolated, purified and its genetic code established from that. It

was from the beginning a computer-generated fiction. Stories of Chinese whistleblowers saying the number of deaths was being supressed or that the 'new disease' was related to the Wuhan bio-lab misdirected mainstream and alternative media into cul-de-sacs to obscure the real truth – there was no 'virus'.

Chinese scientists took genetic material from the lung fluid of just a few people and said they had found a 'new' disease when this material had a wide range of content. There was no evidence for a 'virus' for the very reasons explained in the last two chapters. The 'virus' has never been shown to (a) exist and (b) cause any disease. People were diagnosed on symptoms that are so widespread in Wuhan and polluted China and with a PCR test that can't detect infectious disease. On this farce the whole global scam was sold to the rest of the world which would also diagnose respiratory disease as 'Covid-19' from symptoms alone or with a PCR test not testing for a 'virus'. Flu miraculously disappeared *worldwide* in 2020 and into 2021 as it was redesignated 'Covid-19'. It was really the same old flu with its 'flu-like' symptoms attributed to 'flu-like' 'Covid-19'. At the same time with very few exceptions the Chinese response of draconian lockdown and fascism was the chosen weapon to respond across the West as recommended by the Cult-owned Tedros at the Cult-owned World Health Organization run by the Cult-owned Gates. All was going according to plan. Chinese scientists – everything in China is controlled by the Cult-owned government – compared their contaminated RNA lung-fluid material with other RNA sequences and said it appeared to be just under 80 percent identical to the SARS-CoV-1 'virus' claimed to be the cause of the SARS (severe acute respiratory syndrome) 'outbreak' in 2003. They decreed that because of this the 'new virus' had to be related and they called it SARS-CoV-2. There are some serious problems with this assumption and *assumption* was all it was. Most 'factual' science turns out to be assumptions repeated into everyone-knows-that. A match of under 80-percent is meaningless. Dr Kaufman makes the point that there's a *96 percent* genetic correlation between humans and chimpanzees, but 'no one would say our genetic material is part

of the chimpanzee family'. Yet the Chinese authorities were claiming that a much lower percentage, less than 80 percent, proved the existence of a new 'coronavirus'. For goodness sake human DNA is 60 percent similar to a *banana*.

You are feeling sleepy

The entire 'Covid' hoax is a global Psyop, a psychological operation to program the human mind into believing and fearing a complete fantasy. A crucial aspect of this was what *appeared* to happen in Italy. It was all very well streaming out daily images of an alleged catastrophe in Wuhan, but to the Western mind it was still on the other side of the world in a very different culture and setting. A reaction of 'this could happen to me and my family' was still nothing like as intense enough for the mind-doctors. The Cult needed a Western example to push people over that edge and it chose Italy, one of its major global locations going back to the Roman Empire. An Italian 'Covid' crisis was manufactured in a particular area called Lombardy which just happens to be notorious for its toxic air and therefore respiratory disease. Wuhan, China, déjà vu. An hysterical media told horror stories of Italians dying from 'Covid' in their droves and how Lombardy hospitals were being overrun by a tidal wave of desperately ill people needing treatment after being struck down by the 'deadly virus'. Here was the psychological turning point the Cult had planned. Wow, if this is happening in Italy, the Western mind concluded, this indeed could happen to me and my family. Another point is that Italian authorities responded by following the Chinese blueprint so vehemently recommended by the Cult-owned World Health Organization. They imposed fascistic lockdowns on the whole country viciously policed with the help of surveillance drones sweeping through the streets seeking out anyone who escaped from mass house arrest. Livelihoods were destroyed and psychology unravelled in the way we have witnessed since in all lockdown countries. Crucial to the plan was that Italy responded in this way to set the precedent of suspending freedom and imposing fascism in a 'Western liberal democracy'. I emphasised in an

animated video explanation on davidicke.com posted in the summer of 2020 how important it was to the Cult to expand the Chinese lockdown model across the West. Without this, and the bare-faced lie that non-symptomatic people could still transmit a 'disease' they didn't have, there was no way locking down the whole population, sick and not sick, could be pulled off. At just the right time and with no evidence Cult operatives and gofers claimed that people without symptoms could pass on the 'disease'. In the name of protecting the 'vulnerable' like elderly people, who lockdowns would kill by the tens of thousands, we had for the first time healthy people told to isolate as well as the sick. The great majority of people who tested positive had no symptoms because there was nothing wrong with them. It was just a trick made possible by a test not testing for the 'virus'.

Months after my animated video the Gates-funded Professor Neil Ferguson at the Gates-funded Imperial College confirmed that I was right. He didn't say it in those terms, naturally, but he did say it. Ferguson will enter the story shortly for his outrageously crazy 'computer models' that led to Britain, the United States and many other countries following the Chinese and now Italian methods of response. Put another way, following the Cult script. Ferguson said that SAGE, the UK government's scientific advisory group which has controlled 'Covid' policy from the start, wanted to follow the Chinese lockdown model (while they all continued to work and be paid), but they wondered if they could possibly, in Ferguson's words, 'get away with it in Europe'. 'Get away with it'? Who the hell do these moronic, arrogant people think they are? This appalling man Ferguson said that once Italy went into national lockdown they realised they, too, could mimic China:

> It's a communist one-party state, we said. We couldn't get away with it in Europe, we thought … and then Italy did it. And we realised we could. Behind this garbage from Ferguson is a simple fact: Doing the same as China in every country was the plan from the start and Ferguson's 'models' would play a central role in achieving that. It's just a coincidence, of course, and absolutely nothing to worry your little head about.

Oops, sorry, our mistake

Once the Italian segment of the Psyop had done the job it was designed to do a very different story emerged. Italian authorities revealed that 99 percent of those who had 'died from Covid-19' in Italy had one, two, three, or more 'co-morbidities' or illnesses and health problems that could have ended their life. The US Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) published a figure of 94 percent for Americans dying of 'Covid' while having other serious medical conditions – on average two to three (some five or six) other potential causes of death. In terms of death from an unproven 'virus' I say it is 100 percent. The other one percent in Italy and six percent in the US would presumably have died from 'Covid's' flu-like symptoms with a range of other possible causes in conjunction with a test not testing for the 'virus'. Fox News reported that even more startling figures had emerged in one US county in which 410 of 422 deaths attributed to 'Covid-19' had other potentially deadly health conditions. The Italian National Health Institute said later that the average age of people dying with a 'Covid-19' diagnosis in Italy was about 81. Ninety percent were over 70 with ten percent over 90. In terms of other reasons to die some 80 percent had two or more chronic diseases with half having three or more including cardiovascular problems, diabetes, respiratory problems and cancer. Why is the phantom 'Covid-19' said to kill overwhelmingly old people and hardly affect the young? Old people continually die of many causes and especially respiratory disease which you can re-diagnose 'Covid-19' while young people die in tiny numbers by comparison and rarely of respiratory disease. Old people 'die of Covid' because they die of other things that can be redesignated 'Covid' and it really is that simple.

Flu has flown

The blueprint was in place. Get your illusory 'cases' from a test not testing for the 'virus' and redesignate other causes of death as 'Covid-19'. You have an instant 'pandemic' from something that is nothing more than a computer-generated fiction. With near-on a

billion people having 'flu-like' symptoms every year the potential was limitless and we can see why flu quickly and apparently miraculously disappeared *worldwide* by being diagnosed 'Covid-19'. The painfully bloody obvious was explained away by the childlike media in headlines like this in the UK '*Independent*': 'Not a single case of flu detected by Public Health England this year as Covid restrictions suppress virus'. I kid you not. The masking, social distancing and house arrest that did not make the 'Covid virus' disappear somehow did so with the 'flu virus'. Even worse the article, by a bloke called Samuel Lovett, suggested that maybe the masking, sanitising and other 'Covid' measures should continue to keep the flu away. With a ridiculousness that disturbs your breathing (it's 'Covid-19') the said Lovett wrote: 'With widespread social distancing and mask-wearing measures in place throughout the UK, the usual routes of transmission for influenza have been blocked.' He had absolutely no evidence to support that statement, but look at the consequences of him acknowledging the obvious. With flu not disappearing at all and only being relabelled 'Covid-19' he would have to contemplate that 'Covid' was a hoax on a scale that is hard to imagine. You need guts and commitment to truth to even go there and that's clearly something Samuel Lovett does not have in abundance. He would never have got it through the editors anyway.

Tens of thousands die in the United States alone every winter from flu including many with pneumonia complications. CDC figures record *45 million* Americans diagnosed with flu in 2017-2018 of which 61,000 died and some reports claim 80,000. Where was the same hysteria then that we have seen with 'Covid-19'? Some 250,000 Americans are admitted to hospital with pneumonia every year with about 50,000 cases proving fatal. About 65 million suffer respiratory disease every year and three million deaths makes this the third biggest cause of death worldwide. You only have to redesignate a portion of all these people 'Covid-19' and you have an instant global pandemic or the *appearance* of one. Why would doctors do this? They are told to do this and all but a few dare not refuse those who must be obeyed. Doctors in general are not researching their own

knowledge and instead take it direct and unquestioned from the authorities that own them and their careers. The authorities say they must now diagnose these symptoms 'Covid-19' and not flu, or whatever, and they do it. Dark suits say put 'Covid-19' on death certificates no matter what the cause of death and the doctors do it. Renegade Minds don't fall for the illusion that doctors and medical staff are all highly-intelligent, highly-principled, seekers of medical truth. *Some are*, but not the majority. They are repeaters, gofers, and yes sir, no sir, purveyors of what the system demands they purvey. The 'Covid' con is not merely confined to diseases of the lungs. Instructions to doctors to put 'Covid-19' on death certificates for anyone dying of *anything* within 28 days (or much more) of a positive test not testing for the 'virus' opened the floodgates. The term dying *with* 'Covid' and not *of* 'Covid' was coined to cover the truth. Whether it was a *with* or an *of* they were all added to the death numbers attributed to the 'deadly virus' compiled by national governments and globally by the Gates-funded Johns Hopkins operation in the United States that was so involved in those 'pandemic' simulations. Fraudulent deaths were added to the ever-growing list of fraudulent 'cases' from false positives from a false test. No wonder Professor Walter Ricciardi, scientific advisor to the Italian minister of health, said after the Lombardy hysteria had done its job that 'Covid' death rates were due to Italy having the second oldest population in the world and to *how hospitals record deaths*:

> The way in which we code deaths in our country is very generous in the sense that all the people who die in hospitals with the coronavirus are deemed to be dying of the coronavirus. On re-evaluation by the National Institute of Health, only 12 per cent of death certificates have shown a direct causality from coronavirus, while 88 per cent of patients who have died have at least one pre-morbidity – many had two or three.

This is extraordinary enough when you consider the propaganda campaign to use Italy to terrify the world, but how can they even say twelve percent were genuine when the 'virus' has not been shown to exist, its 'code' is a computer program, and diagnosis comes from a test not testing for it? As in China, and soon the world, 'Covid-19' in

Italy was a redesignation of diagnosis. Lies and corruption were to become the real 'pandemic' fuelled by a pathetically-compliant medical system taking its orders from the tiny few at the top of their national hierarchy who answered to the World Health Organization which answers to Gates and the Cult. Doctors were told – ordered – to diagnose a particular set of symptoms 'Covid-19' and put that on the death certificate for any cause of death if the patient had tested positive with a test not testing for the virus or had 'Covid' symptoms like the flu. The United States even introduced big financial incentives to manipulate the figures with hospitals receiving £4,600 from the Medicare system for diagnosing someone with regular pneumonia, $13,000 if they made the diagnosis from the same symptoms 'Covid-19' pneumonia, and $39, 000 if they put a 'Covid' diagnosed patient on a ventilator that would almost certainly kill them. A few – painfully and pathetically few – medical whistleblowers revealed (before Cult-owned YouTube deleted their videos) that they had been instructed to 'let the patient crash' and put them straight on a ventilator instead of going through a series of far less intrusive and dangerous methods as they would have done before the pandemic hoax began and the financial incentives kicked in. We are talking cold-blooded murder given that ventilators are so damaging to respiratory systems they are usually the last step before heaven awaits. Renegade Minds never fall for the belief that people in white coats are all angels of mercy and cannot be full-on psychopaths. I have explained in detail in *The Answer* how what I am describing here played out across the world coordinated by the World Health Organization through the medical hierarchies in almost every country.

Medical scientist calls it

Information about the non-existence of the 'virus' began to emerge for me in late March, 2020, and mushroomed after that. I was sent an email by Sir Julian Rose, a writer, researcher, and organic farming promotor, from a medical scientist friend of his in the United States. Even at that early stage in March the scientist was able to explain

how the 'Covid' hoax was being manipulated. He said there were no reliable tests for a specific 'Covid-19 virus' and nor were there any reliable agencies or media outlets for reporting numbers of actual 'Covid-19' cases. We have seen in the long period since then that he was absolutely right. 'Every action and reaction to Covid-19 is based on totally flawed data and we simply cannot make accurate assessments,' he said. Most people diagnosed with 'Covid-19' were showing nothing more than cold and flu-like symptoms 'because most coronavirus strains *are* nothing more than cold/flu-like symptoms'. We had farcical situations like an 84-year-old German man testing positive for 'Covid-19' and his nursing home ordered to quarantine only for him to be found to have a common cold. The scientist described back then why PCR tests and what he called the 'Mickey Mouse test kits' were useless for what they were claimed to be identifying. 'The idea these kits can isolate a specific virus like Covid-19 is nonsense,' he said. Significantly, he pointed out that 'if you want to create a totally false panic about a totally false pandemic – pick a coronavirus'. This is exactly what the Cult-owned Gates, World Economic Forum and Johns Hopkins University did with their Event 201 'simulation' followed by their real-life simulation called the 'pandemic'. The scientist said that all you had to do was select the sickest of people with respiratory-type diseases in a single location – 'say Wuhan' – and administer PCR tests to them. You can then claim that anyone showing 'viral sequences' similar to a coronavirus 'which will inevitably be quite a few' is suffering from a 'new' disease:

> Since you already selected the sickest flu cases a fairly high proportion of your sample will go on to die. You can then say this 'new' virus has a CFR [case fatality rate] higher than the flu and use this to infuse more concern and do more tests which will of course produce more 'cases', which expands the testing, which produces yet more 'cases' and so on and so on. Before long you have your 'pandemic', and all you have done is use a simple test kit trick to convert the worst flu and pneumonia cases into something new that doesn't ACTUALLY EXIST [my emphasis].

He said that you then 'just run the same scam in other countries' and make sure to keep the fear message running high 'so that people

will feel panicky and less able to think critically'. The only problem to overcome was the fact *there is no* actual new deadly pathogen and only regular sick people. This meant that deaths from the 'new deadly pathogen' were going to be way too low for a real new deadly virus pandemic, but he said this could be overcome in the following ways – all of which would go on to happen:

1. You can claim this is just the beginning and more deaths are imminent [you underpin this with fantasy 'computer projections']. Use this as an excuse to quarantine everyone and then claim the quarantine prevented the expected millions of dead.

2. You can [say that people] 'minimizing' the dangers are irresponsible and bully them into not talking about numbers.

3. You can talk crap about made up numbers hoping to blind people with pseudoscience.

4. You can start testing well people (who, of course, will also likely have shreds of coronavirus [RNA] in them) and thus inflate your 'case figures' with 'asymptomatic carriers' (you will of course have to spin that to sound deadly even though any virologist knows the more symptom-less cases you have the less deadly is your pathogen).

The scientist said that if you take these simple steps 'you can have your own entirely manufactured pandemic up and running in weeks'. His analysis made so early in the hoax was brilliantly prophetic of what would actually unfold. Pulling all the information together in these recent chapters we have this is simple 1, 2, 3, of how you can delude virtually the entire human population into believing in a 'virus' that doesn't exist:

- A 'Covid case' is someone who tests positive with a test not testing for the 'virus'.

- A 'Covid death' is someone who dies of *any cause* within 28 days (or much longer) of testing positive with a test not testing for the 'virus.

- Asymptomatic means there is nothing wrong with you, but they claim you can pass on what you don't have to justify locking

down (quarantining) healthy people in totality.

The foundations of the hoax are that simple. A study involving ten million people in Wuhan, published in November, 2020, demolished the whole lie about those without symptoms passing on the 'virus'. They found '300 asymptomatic cases' and traced their contacts to find that not one of them was detected with the 'virus'. 'Asymptomatic' patients and their contacts were isolated for no less than two weeks and nothing changed. I know it's all crap, but if you are going to claim that those without symptoms can transmit 'the virus' then you must produce evidence for that and they never have. Even World Health Organization official Dr Maria Van Kerkhove, head of the emerging diseases and zoonosis unit, said as early as June, 2020, that she doubted the validity of asymptomatic transmission. She said that 'from the data we have, it still seems to be rare that an asymptomatic person actually transmits onward to a secondary individual' and by 'rare' she meant that she couldn't cite any case of asymptomatic transmission.

The Ferguson factor

The problem for the Cult as it headed into March, 2020, when the script had lockdown due to start, was that despite all the manipulation of the case and death figures they still did not have enough people alleged to have died from 'Covid' to justify mass house arrest. This was overcome in the way the scientist described: 'You can claim this is just the beginning and more deaths are imminent … Use this as an excuse to quarantine everyone and then claim the quarantine prevented the expected millions of dead.' Enter one Professor Neil Ferguson, the Gates-funded 'epidemiologist' at the Gates-funded Imperial College in London. Ferguson is Britain's Christian Drosten in that he has a dire record of predicting health outcomes, but is still called upon to advise government on the next health outcome when another 'crisis' comes along. This may seem to be a strange and ridiculous thing to do. Why would you keep turning for policy guidance to people who have a history of being

monumentally wrong? Ah, but it makes sense from the Cult point of view. These 'experts' keep on producing predictions that suit the Cult agenda for societal transformation and so it was with Neil Ferguson as he revealed his horrific (and clearly insane) computer model predictions that allowed lockdowns to be imposed in Britain, the United States and many other countries. Ferguson does not have even an A-level in biology and would appear to have no formal training in computer modelling, medicine or epidemiology, according to Derek Winton, an MSc in Computational Intelligence. He wrote an article somewhat aghast at what Ferguson did which included taking no account of respiratory disease 'seasonality' which means it is far worse in the winter months. Who would have thought that respiratory disease could be worse in the winter? Well, certainly not Ferguson.

The massively China-connected Imperial College and its bizarre professor provided the excuse for the long-incubated Chinese model of human control to travel westward at lightning speed. Imperial College confirms on its website that it collaborates with the Chinese Research Institute; publishes more than 600 research papers every year with Chinese research institutions; has 225 Chinese staff; 2,600 Chinese students – the biggest international group; 7,000 former students living in China which is the largest group outside the UK; and was selected for a tour by China's President Xi Jinping during his state visit to the UK in 2015. The college takes major donations from China and describes itself as the UK's number one university collaborator with Chinese research institutions. The China communist/fascist government did not appear phased by the woeful predictions of Ferguson and Imperial when during the lockdown that Ferguson induced the college signed a five-year collaboration deal with China tech giant Huawei that will have Huawei's indoor 5G network equipment installed at the college's West London tech campus along with an 'AI cloud platform'. The deal includes Chinese sponsorship of Imperial's Venture Catalyst entrepreneurship competition. Imperial is an example of the enormous influence the Chinese government has within British and North American

universities and research centres – and further afield. Up to 200 academics from more than a dozen UK universities are being investigated on suspicion of 'unintentionally' helping the Chinese government build weapons of mass destruction by 'transferring world-leading research in advanced military technology such as aircraft, missile designs and cyberweapons'. Similar scandals have broken in the United States, but it's all a coincidence. Imperial College serves the agenda in many other ways including the promotion of every aspect of the United Nations Agenda 21/2030 (the Great Reset) and produced computer models to show that human-caused 'climate change' is happening when in the real world it isn't. Imperial College is driving the climate agenda as it drives the 'Covid' agenda (both Cult hoaxes) while Patrick Vallance, the UK government's Chief Scientific Adviser on 'Covid', was named Chief Scientific Adviser to the UN 'climate change' conference known as COP26 hosted by the government in Glasgow, Scotland. 'Covid' and 'climate' are fundamentally connected.

Professor Woeful

From Imperial's bosom came Neil Ferguson still advising government despite his previous disasters and it was announced early on that he and other key people like UK Chief Medical Adviser Chris Whitty had caught the 'virus' as the propaganda story was being sold. Somehow they managed to survive and we had Prime Minister Boris Johnson admitted to hospital with what was said to be a severe version of the 'virus' in this same period. His whole policy and demeanour changed when he returned to Downing Street. It's a small world with these government advisors – especially in their communal connections to Gates – and Ferguson had partnered with Whitty to write a paper called 'Infectious disease: Tough choices to reduce Ebola transmission' which involved another scare-story that didn't happen. Ferguson's 'models' predicted that up to150, 000 could die from 'mad cow disease', or BSE, and its version in sheep if it was transmitted to humans. BSE was not transmitted and instead triggered by an organophosphate pesticide used to treat a pest on

cows. Fewer than 200 deaths followed from the human form. Models by Ferguson and his fellow incompetents led to the unnecessary culling of millions of pigs, cattle and sheep in the foot and mouth outbreak in 2001 which destroyed the lives and livelihoods of farmers and their families who had often spent decades building their herds and flocks. Vast numbers of these animals did not have foot and mouth and had no contact with the infection. Another 'expert' behind the cull was Professor Roy Anderson, a computer modeller at Imperial College specialising in the epidemiology of *human*, not animal, disease. Anderson has served on the Bill and Melinda Gates Grand Challenges in Global Health advisory board and chairs another Gates-funded organisation. Gates is everywhere.

In a precursor to the 'Covid' script Ferguson backed closing schools 'for prolonged periods' over the swine flu 'pandemic' in 2009 and said it would affect a third of the world population if it continued to spread at the speed he claimed to be happening. His mates at Imperial College said much the same and a news report said: 'One of the authors, the epidemiologist and disease modeller Neil Ferguson, who sits on the World Health Organisation's emergency committee for the outbreak, said the virus had "full pandemic potential".' Professor Liam Donaldson, the Chris Whitty of his day as Chief Medical Officer, said the worst case could see 30 percent of the British people infected by swine flu with 65,000 dying. Ferguson and Donaldson were indeed proved correct when at the end of the year the number of deaths attributed to swine flu was 392. The term 'expert' is rather liberally applied unfortunately, not least to complete idiots. Swine flu 'projections' were great for GlaxoSmithKline (GSK) as millions rolled in for its Pandemrix influenza vaccine which led to brain damage with children most affected. The British government (taxpayers) paid out more than £60 million in compensation after GSK was given immunity from prosecution. Yet another 'Covid' déjà vu. Swine flu was supposed to have broken out in Mexico, but Dr Wolfgang Wodarg, a German doctor, former member of parliament and critic of the 'Covid' hoax, observed 'the spread of swine flu' in Mexico City at the time. He

said: 'What we experienced in Mexico City was a very mild flu which did not kill more than usual – which killed even fewer people than usual.' Hyping the fear against all the facts is not unique to 'Covid' and has happened many times before. Ferguson is reported to have over-estimated the projected death toll of bird flu (H5N1) by some three million-fold, but bird flu vaccine makers again made a killing from the scare. This is some of the background to the Neil Ferguson who produced the perfectly-timed computer models in early 2020 predicting that half a million people would die in Britain without draconian lockdown and 2.2 million in the United States. Politicians panicked, people panicked, and lockdowns of alleged short duration were instigated to 'flatten the curve' of cases gleaned from a test not testing for the 'virus'. I said at the time that the public could forget the 'short duration' bit. This was an agenda to destroy the livelihoods of the population and force them into mass control through dependency and there was going to be nothing 'short' about it. American researcher Daniel Horowitz described the consequences of the 'models' spewed out by Gates-funded Ferguson and Imperial College:

> What led our government and the governments of many other countries into panic was a single Imperial College of UK study, funded by global warming activists, that predicted 2.2 million deaths if we didn't lock down the country. In addition, the reported 8-9% death rate in Italy scared us into thinking there was some other mutation of this virus that they got, which might have come here.
>
> Together with the fact that we were finally testing and had the ability to actually report new cases, we thought we were headed for a death spiral. But again … we can't flatten a curve if we don't know when the curve started.

How about it *never* started?

Giving them what they want

An investigation by German news outlet *Welt Am Sonntag (World on Sunday)* revealed how in March, 2020, the German government gathered together 'leading scientists from several research institutes and universities' and 'together, they were to produce a [modelling]

paper that would serve as legitimization for further tough political measures'. The Cult agenda was justified by computer modelling not based on evidence or reality; it was specifically constructed to justify the Cult demand for lockdowns all over the world to destroy the independent livelihoods of the global population. All these modellers and everyone responsible for the 'Covid' hoax have a date with a trial like those in Nuremberg after World War Two when Nazis faced the consequences of their war crimes. These corrupt-beyond-belief 'modellers' wrote the paper according to government instructions and it said that that if lockdown measures were lifted then up to one million Germans would die from 'Covid-19' adding that some would die 'agonizingly at home, gasping for breath' unable to be treated by hospitals that couldn't cope. All lies. No matter – it gave the Cult all that it wanted. What did long-time government 'modeller' Neil Ferguson say? If the UK and the United States didn't lockdown half a million would die in Britain and 2.2 million Americans. Anyone see a theme here? 'Modellers' are such a crucial part of the lockdown strategy that we should look into their background and follow the money. Researcher Rosemary Frei produced an excellent article headlined 'The Modelling-paper Mafiosi'. She highlights a guy called John Edmunds, a British epidemiologist, and professor in the Faculty of Epidemiology and Population Health at the London School of Hygiene & Tropical Medicine. He studied at Imperial College. Edmunds is a member of government 'Covid' advisory bodies which have been dictating policy, the New and Emerging Respiratory Virus Threats Advisory Group (NERVTAG) and the Scientific Advisory Group for Emergencies (SAGE).

Ferguson, another member of NERVTAG and SAGE, led the way with the original 'virus' and Edmunds has followed in the 'variant' stage and especially the so-called UK or Kent variant known as the 'Variant of Concern' (VOC) B.1.1.7. He said in a co-written report for the Centre for Mathematical modelling of Infectious Diseases at the London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine, with input from the Centre's 'Covid-19' Working Group, that there was 'a realistic

possibility that VOC B.1.1.7 is associated with an increased risk of death compared to non-VOC viruses'. Fear, fear, fear, get the vaccine, fear, fear, fear, get the vaccine. Rosemary Frei reveals that almost all the paper's authors and members of the modelling centre's 'Covid-19' Working Group receive funding from the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation and/or the associated Gates-funded Wellcome Trust. The paper was published by e-journal *Medr χiv* which only publishes papers not peer-reviewed and the journal was established by an organisation headed by Facebook's Mark Zuckerberg and his missus. What a small world it is. Frei discovered that Edmunds is on the Scientific Advisory Board of the Coalition for Epidemic Preparedness Innovations (CEPI) which was established by the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation, Klaus Schwab's Davos World Economic Forum and Big Pharma giant Wellcome. CEPI was 'launched in Davos [in 2017] to develop vaccines to stop future epidemics', according to its website. 'Our mission is to accelerate the development of vaccines against emerging infectious diseases and enable equitable access to these vaccines for people during outbreaks.' What kind people they are. Rosemary Frei reveals that Public Health England (PHE) director Susan Hopkins is an author of her organisation's non-peer-reviewed reports on 'new variants'. Hopkins is a professor of infectious diseases at London's Imperial College which is gifted tens of millions of dollars a year by the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation. Gates-funded modelling disaster Neil Ferguson also co-authors Public Health England reports and he spoke in December, 2020, about the potential danger of the B.1.1.7. 'UK variant' promoted by Gates-funded modeller John Edmunds. When I come to the 'Covid vaccines' the 'new variants' will be shown for what they are – bollocks.

Connections, connections

All these people and modellers are lockdown-obsessed or, put another way, they demand what the Cult demands. Edmunds said in January, 2021, that to ease lockdowns too soon would be a disaster and they had to 'vaccinate much, much, much more widely than the

elderly'. Rosemary Frei highlights that Edmunds is married to Jeanne Pimenta who is described in a LinkedIn profile as director of epidemiology at GlaxoSmithKline (GSK) and she held shares in the company. Patrick Vallance, co-chair of SAGE and the government's Chief Scientific Adviser, is a former executive of GSK and has a deferred bonus of shares in the company worth £600,000. GSK has serious business connections with Bill Gates and is collaborating with mRNA-'vaccine' company CureVac to make 'vaccines' for the new variants that Edmunds is talking about. GSK is planning a 'Covid vaccine' with drug giant Sanofi. Puppet Prime Minister Boris Johnson announced in the spring of 2021 that up to 60 million vaccine doses were to be made at the GSK facility at Barnard Castle in the English North East. Barnard Castle, with a population of just 6,000, was famously visited in breach of lockdown rules in April, 2020, by Johnson aide Dominic Cummings who said that he drove there 'to test his eyesight' before driving back to London. Cummings would be better advised to test his integrity – not that it would take long. The GSK facility had nothing to do with his visit then although I'm sure Patrick Vallance would have been happy to arrange an introduction and some tea and biscuits. Ruthless psychopath Gates has made yet another fortune from vaccines in collaboration with Big Pharma companies and gushes at the phenomenal profits to be made from vaccines – more than a 20-to-1 return as he told one interviewer. Gates also tweeted in December, 2019, with the foreknowledge of what was coming: 'What's next for our foundation? I'm particularly excited about what the next year could mean for one of the best buys in global health: vaccines.'

Modeller John Edmunds is a big promotor of vaccines as all these people appear to be. He's the dean of the London School of Hygiene & Tropical Medicine's Faculty of Epidemiology and Population Health which is primarily funded by the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation and the Gates-established and funded GAVI vaccine alliance which is the Gates vehicle to vaccinate the world. The organisation Doctors Without Borders has described GAVI as being 'aimed more at supporting drug-industry desires to promote new

products than at finding the most efficient and sustainable means for fighting the diseases of poverty'. But then that's why the psychopath Gates created it. John Edmunds said in a video that the London School of Hygiene & Tropical Medicine is involved in every aspect of vaccine development including large-scale clinical trials. He contends that mathematical modelling can show that vaccines protect individuals and society. That's on the basis of shit in and shit out, I take it. Edmunds serves on the UK Vaccine Network as does Ferguson and the government's foremost 'Covid' adviser, the grim-faced, dark-eyed Chris Whitty. The Vaccine Network says it works 'to support the government to identify and shortlist targeted investment opportunities for the most promising vaccines and vaccine technologies that will help combat infectious diseases with epidemic potential, and to address structural issues related to the UK's broader vaccine infrastructure'. Ferguson is acting Director of the Imperial College Vaccine Impact Modelling Consortium which has funding from the Bill and Melina Gates Foundation and the Gates-created GAVI 'vaccine alliance'. Anyone wonder why these characters see vaccines as the answer to every problem? Ferguson is wildly enthusiastic in his support for GAVI's campaign to vaccine children en masse in poor countries. You would expect someone like Gates who has constantly talked about the need to reduce the population to want to fund vaccines to keep more people alive. I'm sure that's why he does it. The John Edmunds London School of Hygiene & Tropical Medicine (LSHTM) has a Vaccines Manufacturing Innovation Centre which develops, tests and commercialises vaccines. Rosemary Frei writes:

> The vaccines centre also performs affiliated activities like combating 'vaccine hesitancy'. The latter includes the Vaccine Confidence Project. The project's stated purpose is, among other things, 'to provide analysis and guidance for early response and engagement with the public to ensure sustained confidence in vaccines and immunisation'. The Vaccine Confidence Project's director is LSHTM professor Heidi Larson. For more than a decade she's been researching how to combat vaccine hesitancy.

How the bloody hell can blokes like John Edmunds and Neil Ferguson with those connections and financial ties model 'virus' case

and death projections for the government and especially in a way that gives their paymasters like Gates exactly what they want? It's insane, but this is what you find throughout the world.

'Covid' is not dangerous, oops, wait, yes it is

Only days before Ferguson's nightmare scenario made Jackboot Johnson take Britain into a China-style lockdown to save us from a deadly 'virus' the UK government website gov.uk was reporting something very different to Ferguson on a page of official government guidance for 'high consequence infectious diseases (HCID)'. It said this about 'Covid-19':

> As of 19 March 2020, COVID-19 *is no longer considered to be a high consequence infectious diseases (HCID) in the UK* [my emphasis]. The 4 nations public health HCID group made an interim recommendation in January 2020 to classify COVID-19 as an HCID. This was based on consideration of the UK HCID criteria about the virus and the disease with information available during the early stages of the outbreak.
>
> Now that more is known about COVID-19, the public health bodies in the UK have reviewed the most up to date information about COVID-19 against the UK HCID criteria. They have determined that several features have now changed; in particular, more information is available about mortality rates (low overall), and there is now greater clinical awareness and a specific and sensitive laboratory test, the availability of which continues to increase. The Advisory Committee on Dangerous Pathogens (ACDP) is also of the opinion that COVID-19 should no longer be classified as an HCID.

Soon after the government had been exposed for downgrading the risk they upgraded it again and everyone was back to singing from the same Cult hymn book. Ferguson and his fellow Gates clones indicated that lockdowns and restrictions would have to continue until a Gates-funded vaccine was developed. Gates said the same because Ferguson and his like were repeating the Gates script which is the Cult script. 'Flatten the curve' became an ongoing nightmare of continuing lockdowns with periods in between of severe restrictions in pursuit of destroying independent incomes and had nothing to do with protecting health about which the Cult gives not a shit. Why wouldn't Ferguson be pushing a vaccine 'solution' when he's owned by vaccine-obsessive Gates who makes a fortune from them and

when Ferguson heads the Vaccine Impact Modelling Consortium at Imperial College funded by the Gates Foundation and GAVI, the 'vaccine alliance', created by Gates as his personal vaccine promotion operation? To compound the human catastrophe that Ferguson's 'models' did so much to create he was later exposed for breaking his own lockdown rules by having sexual liaisons with his married girlfriend Antonia Staats at his home while she was living at another location with her husband and children. Staats was a 'climate' activist and senior campaigner at the Soros-funded Avaaz which I wouldn't trust to tell me that grass is green. Ferguson had to resign as a government advisor over this hypocrisy in May, 2020, but after a period of quiet he was back being quoted by the ridiculous media on the need for more lockdowns and a vaccine rollout. Other government-advising 'scientists' from Imperial College' held the fort in his absence and said lockdown could be indefinite until a vaccine was found. The Cult script was being sung by the payrolled choir. I said there was no intention of going back to 'normal' when the 'vaccine' came because the 'vaccine' is part of a very different agenda that I will discuss in Human 2.0. Why would the Cult want to let the world go back to normal when destroying that normal forever was the whole point of what was happening? House arrest, closing businesses and schools through lockdown, (un)social distancing and masks all followed the Ferguson fantasy models. Again as I predicted (these people are so predictable) when the 'vaccine' arrived we were told that house arrest, lockdown, (un)social distancing and masks would still have to continue. I will deal with the masks in the next chapter because they are of fundamental importance.

Where's the 'pandemic'?

Any mildly in-depth assessment of the figures revealed what was really going on. Cult-funded and controlled organisations still have genuine people working within them such is the number involved. So it is with Genevieve Briand, assistant program director of the Applied Economics master's degree program at Johns Hopkins

University. She analysed the impact that 'Covid-19' had on deaths from *all* causes in the United States using official data from the CDC for the period from early February to early September, 2020. She found that allegedly 'Covid' *related*-deaths exceeded those from heart disease which she found strange with heart disease always the biggest cause of fatalities. Her research became even more significant when she noted the sudden decline in 2020 of *all* non-'Covid' deaths: 'This trend is completely contrary to the pattern observed in all previous years … the total decrease in deaths by other causes almost exactly equals the increase in deaths by Covid-19.' This was such a game, set and match in terms of what was happening that Johns Hopkins University deleted the article on the grounds that it 'was being used to support false and dangerous inaccuracies about the impact of the pandemic'. No – because it exposed the scam from official CDC figures and this was confirmed when those figures were published in January, 2021. Here we can see the effect of people dying from heart attacks, cancer, road accidents and gunshot wounds – *anything* – having 'Covid-19' on the death certificate along with those diagnosed from 'symptoms' who had even not tested positive with a test not testing for the 'virus'. I am not kidding with the gunshot wounds, by the way. Brenda Bock, coroner in Grand County, Colorado, revealed that two gunshot victims tested positive for the 'virus' within the previous 30 days and were therefore classified as 'Covid deaths'. Bock said: 'These two people had tested positive for Covid, but that's not what killed them. A gunshot wound is what killed them.' She said she had not even finished her investigation when the state listed the gunshot victims as deaths due to the 'virus'. The death and case figures for 'Covid-19' are an absolute joke and yet they are repeated like parrots by the media, politicians and alleged medical 'experts'. The official Cult narrative is the only show in town.

Genevieve Briand found that deaths from all causes were not exceptional in 2020 compared with previous years and a Spanish magazine published figures that said the same about Spain which was a 'Covid' propaganda hotspot at one point. *Discovery Salud*, a

health and medicine magazine, quoted government figures which showed how 17,000 *fewer* people died in Spain in 2020 than in 2019 and more than 26,000 fewer than in 2018. The age-standardised mortality rate for England and Wales when age distribution is taken into account was significantly lower in 2020 than the 1970s, 80s and 90s, and was only the ninth highest since 2000. Where is the 'pandemic'?

Post mortems and autopsies virtually disappeared for 'Covid' deaths amid claims that 'virus-infected' bodily fluids posed a risk to those carrying out the autopsy. This was rejected by renowned German pathologist and forensic doctor Klaus Püschel who said that he and his staff had by then done 150 autopsies on 'Covid' patients with no problems at all. He said they were needed to know why some 'Covid' patients suffered blood clots and not severe respiratory infections. The 'virus' is, after all, called SARS or 'severe acute respiratory syndrome'. I highlighted in the spring of 2020 this phenomenon and quoted New York intensive care doctor Cameron Kyle-Sidell who posted a soon deleted YouTube video to say that they had been told to prepare to treat an infectious disease called 'Covid-19', but that was not what they were dealing with. Instead he likened the lung condition of the most severely ill patients to what you would expect with cabin depressurisation in a plane at 30,000 feet or someone dropped on the top of Everest without oxygen or acclimatisation. I have never said this is not happening to a small minority of alleged 'Covid' patients – I am saying this is not caused by a phantom 'contagious virus'. Indeed Kyle-Sidell said that 'Covid-19' was not the disease they were told was coming their way. 'We are operating under a medical paradigm that is untrue,' he said, and he believed they were treating the wrong disease: 'These people are being slowly starved of oxygen.' Patients would take off their oxygen masks in a state of fear and stress and while they were blue in the face on the brink of death. They did not look like patients dying of pneumonia. You can see why they don't want autopsies when their virus doesn't exist and there is another condition in some people that they don't wish to be uncovered. I should add here that

the 5G system of millimetre waves was being rapidly introduced around the world in 2020 and even more so now as they fire 5G at the Earth from satellites. At 60 gigahertz within the 5G range that frequency interacts with the oxygen molecule and stops people breathing in sufficient oxygen to be absorbed into the bloodstream. They are installing 5G in schools and hospitals. The world is not mad or anything. 5G can cause major changes to the lungs and blood as I detail in *The Answer* and these consequences are labelled 'Covid-19', the alleged symptoms of which can be caused by 5G and other electromagnetic frequencies as cells respond to radiation poisoning.

The 'Covid death' scam

Dr Scott Jensen, a Minnesota state senator and medical doctor, exposed 'Covid' Medicare payment incentives to hospitals and death certificate manipulation. He said he was sent a seven-page document by the US Department of Health 'coaching' him on how to fill out death certificates which had never happened before. The document said that he didn't need to have a laboratory test for 'Covid-19' to put that on the death certificate and that shocked him when death certificates are supposed to be about facts. Jensen described how doctors had been 'encouraged, if not pressured' to make a diagnosis of 'Covid-19' if they thought it was probable or *'presumed*'. No positive test was necessary – not that this would have mattered anyway. He said doctors were told to diagnose 'Covid' by symptoms when these were the same as colds, allergies, other respiratory problems, and certainly with influenza which 'disappeared' in the 'Covid' era. A common sniffle was enough to get the dreaded verdict. Ontario authorities decreed that a single care home resident with *one* symptom from a long list must lead to the isolation of the entire home. Other courageous doctors like Jensen made the same point about death figure manipulation and how deaths by other causes were falling while 'Covid-19 deaths' were rising at the same rate due to re-diagnosis. Their videos rarely survive long on YouTube with its Cult-supporting algorithms courtesy of CEO Susan Wojcicki and her bosses at Google. Figure-tampering was so glaring

and ubiquitous that even officials were letting it slip or outright saying it. UK chief scientific adviser Patrick Vallance said on one occasion that 'Covid' on the death certificate doesn't mean 'Covid' was the cause of death (so why the hell is it there?) and we had the rare sight of a BBC reporter telling the truth when she said: 'Someone could be successfully treated for Covid, in say April, discharged, and then in June, get run over by a bus and die … That person would still be counted as a Covid death in England.' Yet the BBC and the rest of the world media went on repeating the case and death figures as if they were real. Illinois Public Health Director Dr Ngozi Ezike revealed the deceit while her bosses must have been clenching their buttocks:

> If you were in a hospice and given a few weeks to live and you were then found to have Covid that would be counted as a Covid death. [There might be] a clear alternate cause, but it is still listed as a Covid death. So everyone listed as a Covid death doesn't mean that was the cause of the death, but that they had Covid at the time of death.

Yes, a 'Covid virus' never shown to exist and tested for with a test not testing for the 'virus'. In the first period of the pandemic hoax through the spring of 2020 the process began of designating almost everything a 'Covid' death and this has continued ever since. I sat in a restaurant one night listening to a loud conversation on the next table where a family was discussing in bewilderment how a relative who had no symptoms of 'Covid', and had died of a long-term problem, could have been diagnosed a death by the 'virus'. I could understand their bewilderment. If they read this book they will know why this medical fraud has been perpetrated the world over.

Some media truth shock

The media ignored the evidence of death certificate fraud until eventually one columnist did speak out when she saw it first-hand. Bel Mooney is a long-time national newspaper journalist in Britain currently working for the *Daily Mail*. Her article on February 19th, 2021, carried this headline: 'My dad Ted passed three Covid tests

and died of a chronic illness yet he's officially one of Britain's 120,000 victims of the virus and is far from alone ... so how many more are there?' She told how her 99-year-old father was in a care home with a long-standing chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and vascular dementia. Maybe, but he was still aware enough to tell her from the start that there was no 'virus' and he refused the 'vaccine' for that reason. His death was not unexpected given his chronic health problems and Mooney said she was shocked to find that 'Covid-19' was declared the cause of death on his death certificate. She said this was a 'bizarre and unacceptable untruth' for a man with long-time health problems who had tested negative twice at the home for the 'virus'. I was also shocked by this story although not by what she said. I had been highlighting the death certificate manipulation for ten months. It was the confirmation that a professional full-time journalist only realised this was going on when it affected her directly and neither did she know that whether her dad tested positive or negative was irrelevant with the test not testing for the 'virus'. Where had she been? She said she did not believe in 'conspiracy theories' without knowing I'm sure that this and 'conspiracy theorists' were terms put into widespread circulation by the CIA in the 1960s to discredit those who did not accept the ridiculous official story of the Kennedy assassination. A blanket statement of 'I don't believe in conspiracy theories' is always bizarre. The dictionary definition of the term alone means the world is drowning in conspiracies. What she said was even more daft when her dad had just been affected by the 'Covid' conspiracy. Why else does she think that 'Covid-19' was going on the death certificates of people who died of something else?

To be fair once she saw from personal experience what was happening she didn't mince words. Mooney was called by the care home on the morning of February 9th to be told her father had died in his sleep. When she asked for the official cause of death what came back was 'Covid-19'. Mooney challenged this and was told there had been deaths from Covid on the dementia floor (confirmed by a test not testing for the 'virus') so they considered it 'reasonable

to assume'. 'But doctor,' Mooney rightly protested, 'an assumption isn't a diagnosis.' She said she didn't blame the perfectly decent and sympathetic doctor – 'he was just doing his job'. Sorry, but that's *bullshit*. He wasn't doing his job at all. He was putting a false cause of death on the death certificate and that is a criminal offence for which he should be brought to account and the same with the millions of doctors worldwide who have done the same. They were not doing their job they were following orders and that must not wash at new Nuremberg trials any more than it did at the first ones. Mooney's doctor was 'assuming' (presuming) as he was told to, but 'just following orders' makes no difference to his actions. A doctor's job is to serve the patient and the truth, not follow orders, but that's what they have done all over the world and played a central part in making the 'Covid' hoax possible with all its catastrophic consequences for humanity. Shame on them and they must answer for their actions. Mooney said her disquiet worsened when she registered her father's death by telephone and was told by the registrar there had been very many other cases like hers where 'the deceased' had not tested positive for 'Covid' yet it was recorded as the cause of death. The test may not matter, but those involved at their level *think* it matters and it shows a callous disregard for accurate diagnosis. The pressure to do this is coming from the top of the national 'health' pyramids which in turn obey the World Health Organization which obeys Gates and the Cult. Mooney said the registrar agreed that this must distort the national figures adding that 'the strangest thing is that every winter we record countless deaths from flu, and this winter there have been none. Not one!' She asked if the registrar thought deaths from flu were being misdiagnosed and lumped together with 'Covid' deaths. The answer was a 'puzzled yes'. Mooney said that the funeral director said the same about 'Covid' deaths which had nothing to do with 'Covid'. They had lost count of the number of families upset by this and other funeral companies in different countries have had the same experience. Mooney wrote:

The nightly shroud-waving and shocking close-ups of pain imposed on us by the TV news bewildered and terrified the population into eager compliance with lockdowns. We were invited to 'save the NHS' and to grieve for strangers – the real-life loved ones behind those shocking death counts. Why would the public imagine what I now fear, namely that the way Covid-19 death statistics are compiled might make the numbers seem greater than they are?

Oh, just a little bit – like 100 percent.

Do the maths

Mooney asked why a country would wish to skew its mortality figures by wrongly certifying deaths? What had been going on? Well, if you don't believe in conspiracies you will never find the answer which is that *it's a conspiracy*. She did, however, describe what she had discovered as a 'national scandal'. In reality it's a global scandal and happening everywhere. Pillars of this conspiracy were all put into place before the button was pressed with the Drosten PCR protocol and high amplifications to produce the cases and death certificate changes to secure illusory 'Covid' deaths. Mooney notes that normally two doctors were needed to certify a death, with one having to know the patient, and how the rules were changed in the spring of 2020 to allow one doctor to do this. In the same period 'Covid deaths' were decreed to be all cases where Covid-19 was put on the death certificate even without a positive test or any symptoms. Mooney asked: 'How many of the 30,851 (as of January 15) care home resident deaths with Covid-19 on the certificate (32.4 per cent of all deaths so far) were based on an assumption, like that of my father? And what has that done to our national psyche?'All of them is the answer to the first question and it has devastated and dismantled the national psyche, actually the global psyche, on a colossal scale. In the UK case and death data is compiled by organisations like Public Health England (PHE) and the Office for National Statistics (ONS). Mooney highlights the insane policy of counting a death from any cause as 'Covid-19' if this happens within 28 days of a positive test (with a test not testing for the 'virus') and she points out that ONS statistics reflect deaths 'involving Covid' 'or due to Covid' which meant in practice any

death where 'Covid-19' was mentioned on the death certificate. She described the consequences of this fraud:

> Most people will accept the narrative they are fed, so panicky governments here and in Europe witnessed the harsh measures enacted in totalitarian China and jumped into lockdown. Headlines about Covid deaths tolled like the knell that would bring doomsday to us all. Fear stalked our empty streets. Politicians parroted the frankly ridiculous aim of 'zero Covid' and shut down the economy, while most British people agreed that lockdown was essential and (astonishingly to me, as a patriotic Brit) even wanted more restrictions.
>
> For what? Lies on death certificates? Never mind the grim toll of lives ruined, suicides, schools closed, rising inequality, depression, cancelled hospital treatments, cancer patients in a torture of waiting, poverty, economic devastation, loneliness, families kept apart, and so on. How many lives have been lost as a direct result of lockdown?

She said that we could join in a national chorus of shock and horror at reaching the 120,000 death toll which was surely certain to have been totally skewed all along, but what about the human cost of lockdown justified by these 'death figures'? *The British Medical Journal* had reported a 1,493 percent increase in cases of children taken to Great Ormond Street Hospital with abusive head injuries alone and then there was the effect on families:

> Perhaps the most shocking thing about all this is that families have been kept apart – and obeyed the most irrational, changing rules at the whim of government – because they believed in the statistics. They succumbed to fear, which his generation rejected in that war fought for freedom. Dad (God rest his soul) would be angry. And so am I.

Another theme to watch is that in the winter months when there are more deaths from all causes they focus on 'Covid' deaths and in the summer when the British Lung Foundation says respiratory disease plummets by 80 percent they rage on about 'cases'. Either way fascism on population is always the answer.

Nazi eugenics in the 21st century

Elderly people in care homes have been isolated from their families month after lonely month with no contact with relatives and grandchildren who were banned from seeing them. We were told

that lockdown fascism was to 'protect the vulnerable' like elderly people. At the same time Do Not Resuscitate (DNR) orders were placed on their medical files so that if they needed resuscitation it wasn't done and 'Covid-19' went on their death certificates. Old people were not being 'protected' they were being culled – murdered in truth. DNR orders were being decreed for disabled and young people with learning difficulties or psychological problems. The UK Care Quality Commission, a non-departmental body of the Department of Health and Social Care, found that 34 percent of those working in health and social care were pressured into placing 'do not attempt cardiopulmonary resuscitation' orders on 'Covid' patients who suffered from disabilities and learning difficulties without involving the patient or their families in the decision. UK judges ruled that an elderly woman with dementia should have the DNA-manipulating 'Covid vaccine' against her son's wishes and that a man with severe learning difficulties should have the jab despite his family's objections. Never mind that many had already died. The judiciary always supports doctors and government in fascist dictatorships. They wouldn't dare do otherwise. A horrific video was posted showing fascist officers from Los Angeles police forcibly giving the 'Covid' shot to women with special needs who were screaming that they didn't want it. The same fascists are seen giving the jab to a sleeping elderly woman in a care home. This is straight out of the Nazi playbook. Hitler's Nazis committed mass murder of the mentally ill and physically disabled throughout Germany and occupied territories in the programme that became known as Aktion T4, or just T4. Sabbatian-controlled Hitler and his grotesque crazies set out to kill those they considered useless and unnecessary. The Reich Committee for the Scientific Registering of Hereditary and Congenital Illnesses registered the births of babies identified by physicians to have 'defects'. By 1941 alone more than 5,000 children were murdered by the state and it is estimated that in total the number of innocent people killed in Aktion T4 was between 275,000 and 300,000. Parents were told their children had been sent away for 'special treatment' never to return. It is rather pathetic to see claims about plans for new extermination camps being dismissed today

when the same force behind current events did precisely that 80 years ago. Margaret Sanger was a Cult operative who used 'birth control' to sanitise her programme of eugenics. Organisations she founded became what is now Planned Parenthood. Sanger proposed that 'the whole dysgenic population would have its choice of segregation or sterilization'. These included epileptics, 'feeble-minded', and prostitutes. Sanger opposed charity because it perpetuated 'human waste'. She reveals the Cult mentality and if anyone thinks that extermination camps are a 'conspiracy theory' their naivety is touching if breathtakingly stupid.

If you don't believe that doctors can act with callous disregard for their patients it is worth considering that doctors and medical staff agreed to put government-decreed DNR orders on medical files and do nothing when resuscitation is called for. I don't know what you call such people in your house. In mine they are Nazis from the Josef Mengele School of Medicine. Phenomenal numbers of old people have died worldwide from the effects of lockdown, depression, lack of treatment, the 'vaccine' (more later) and losing the will to live. A common response at the start of the manufactured pandemic was to remove old people from hospital beds and transfer them to nursing homes. The decision would result in a mass cull of elderly people in those homes through lack of treatment – *not* 'Covid'. Care home whistleblowers have told how once the 'Covid' era began doctors would not come to their homes to treat patients and they were begging for drugs like antibiotics that often never came. The most infamous example was ordered by New York governor Andrew Cuomo, brother of a moronic CNN host, who amazingly was given an Emmy Award for his handling of the 'Covid crisis' by the ridiculous Wokers that hand them out. Just how ridiculous could be seen in February, 2021, when a Department of Justice and FBI investigation began into how thousands of old people in New York died in nursing homes after being discharged from hospital to make way for 'Covid' patients on Cuomo's say-so – and how he and his staff covered up these facts. This couldn't have happened to a nicer psychopath. Even then there was a 'Covid' spin. Reports said that

thousands of old people who tested positive for 'Covid' in hospital were transferred to nursing homes to both die of 'Covid' and transmit it to others. No – they were in hospital because they were ill and the fact that they tested positive with a test not testing for the 'virus' is irrelevant. They were ill often with respiratory diseases ubiquitous in old people near the end of their lives. Their transfer out of hospital meant that their treatment stopped and many would go on to die.

They're old. Who gives a damn?

I have exposed in the books for decades the Cult plan to cull the world's old people and even to introduce at some point what they call a 'demise pill' which at a certain age everyone would take and be out of here by law. In March, 2021, Spain legalised euthanasia and assisted suicide following the Netherlands, Belgium, Luxembourg and Canada on the Tiptoe to the demise pill. Treatment of old people by many 'care' homes has been a disgrace in the 'Covid' era. There are many, many, caring staff – I know some. There have, however, been legions of stories about callous treatment of old people and their families. Police were called when families came to take their loved ones home in the light of isolation that was killing them. They became prisoners of the state. Care home residents in insane, fascist Ontario, Canada, were not allowed to leave their *room* once the 'Covid' hoax began. UK staff have even wheeled elderly people away from windows where family members were talking with them. Oriana Criscuolo from Stockport in the English North West dropped off some things for her 80-year-old father who has Parkinson's disease and dementia and she wanted to wave to him through a ground-floor window. She was told that was 'illegal'. When she went anyway they closed the curtains in the middle of the day. Oriana said:

> It's just unbelievable. I cannot understand how care home staff – people who are being paid to care – have become so uncaring. Their behaviour is inhumane and cruel. It's beyond belief.

She was right and this was not a one-off. What a way to end your life in such loveless circumstances. UK registered nurse Nicky Millen, a proper old school nurse for 40 years, said that when she started her career care was based on dignity, choice, compassion and empathy. Now she said 'the things that are important to me have gone out of the window.' She was appalled that people were dying without their loved ones and saying goodbye on iPads. Nicky described how a distressed 89-year-old lady stroked her face and asked her 'how many paracetamol would it take to finish me off'. Life was no longer worth living while not seeing her family. Nicky said she was humiliated in front of the ward staff and patients for letting the lady stroke her face and giving her a cuddle. Such is the dehumanisation that the 'Covid' hoax has brought to the surface. Nicky worked in care homes where patients told her they were being held prisoner. 'I want to live until I die', one said to her. 'I had a lady in tears because she hadn't seen her great-grandson.' Nicky was compassionate old school meeting psychopathic New Normal. She also said she had worked on a 'Covid' ward with no 'Covid' patients. Jewish writer Shai Held wrote an article in March, 2020, which was headlined 'The Staggering, Heartless Cruelty Toward the Elderly'. What he described was happening from the earliest days of lockdown. He said 'the elderly' were considered a group and not unique individuals (the way of the Woke). Shai Held said:

> Notice how the all-too-familiar rhetoric of dehumanization works: 'The elderly' are bunched together as a faceless mass, all of them considered culprits and thus effectively deserving of the suffering the pandemic will inflict upon them. Lost entirely is the fact that the elderly are individual human beings, each with a distinctive face and voice, each with hopes and dreams, memories and regrets, friendships and marriages, loves lost and loves sustained.

'The elderly' have become another dehumanised group for which anything goes and for many that has resulted in cold disregard for their rights and their life. The distinctive face that Held talks about is designed to be deleted by masks until everyone is part of a faceless mass.

'War-zone' hospitals myth

Again and again medical professionals have told me what was really going on and how hospitals 'overrun like war zones' according to the media were virtually empty. The mantra from medical whistleblowers was please don't use my name or my career is over. Citizen journalists around the world sneaked into hospitals to film evidence exposing the 'war-zone' lie. They really *were* largely empty with closed wards and operating theatres. I met a hospital worker in my town on the Isle of Wight during the first lockdown in 2020 who said the only island hospital had never been so quiet. Lockdown was justified by the psychopaths to stop hospitals being overrun. At the same time that the island hospital was near-empty the military arrived here to provide *extra beds*. It was all propaganda to ramp up the fear to ensure compliance with fascism as were never-used temporary hospitals with thousands of beds known as Nightingales and never-used make-shift mortuaries opened by the criminal UK government. A man who helped to install those extra island beds attributed to the army said they were never used and the hospital was empty. Doctors and nurses 'stood around talking or on their phones, wandering down to us to see what we were doing'. There were no masks or social distancing. He accused the useless local island paper, the *County Press*, of 'pumping the fear as if our hospital was overrun and we only have one so it should have been'. He described ambulances parked up with crews outside in deck chairs. When his brother called an ambulance he was told there was a two-hour backlog which he called 'bullshit'. An old lady on the island fell 'and was in a bad way', but a caller who rang for an ambulance was told the situation wasn't urgent enough. Ambulance stations were working under capacity while people would hear ambulances with sirens blaring driving through the streets. When those living near the stations realised what was going on they would follow them as they left, circulated around an urban area with the sirens going, and then came back without stopping. All this was to increase levels of fear and the same goes for the 'ventilator shortage crisis' that cost tens of millions for hastily produced ventilators never to be used.

Ambulance crews that agreed to be exploited in this way for fear propaganda might find themselves a mirror. I wish them well with that. Empty hospitals were the obvious consequence of treatment and diagnoses of non-'Covid' conditions cancelled and those involved handed a death sentence. People have been dying at home from undiagnosed and untreated cancer, heart disease and other life-threatening conditions to allow empty hospitals to deal with a 'pandemic' that wasn't happening.

Death of the innocent

'War-zones' have been laying off nursing staff, even doctors where they can. There was no work for them. Lockdown was justified by saving lives and protecting the vulnerable they were actually killing with DNR orders and preventing empty hospitals being 'overrun'. In Britain the mantra of stay at home to 'save the NHS' was everywhere and across the world the same story was being sold when it was all lies. Two California doctors, Dan Erickson and Artin Massihi at Accelerated Urgent Care in Bakersfield, held a news conference in April, 2020, to say that intensive care units in California were 'empty, essentially', with hospitals shutting floors, not treating patients and laying off doctors. The California health system was working at minimum capacity 'getting rid of doctors because we just don't have the volume'. They said that people with conditions such as heart disease and cancer were not coming to hospital out of fear of 'Covid-19'. Their video was deleted by Susan Wojcicki's Cult-owned YouTube after reaching five million views. Florida governor Ron Desantis, who rejected the severe lockdowns of other states and is being targeted for doing so, said that in March, 2020, every US governor was given models claiming they would run out of hospital beds in days. That was never going to happen and the 'modellers' knew it. Deceit can be found at every level of the system. Urgent children's operations were cancelled including fracture repairs and biopsies to spot cancer. Eric Nicholls, a consultant paediatrician, said 'this is obviously concerning and we need to return to normal operating and to increase capacity as soon as possible'. Psychopaths

in power were rather less concerned *because* they are psychopaths. Deletion of urgent care and diagnosis has been happening all over the world and how many kids and others have died as a result of the actions of these cold and heartless lunatics dictating 'health' policy? The number must be stratospheric. Richard Sullivan, professor of cancer and global health at King's College London, said people feared 'Covid' more than cancer such was the campaign of fear. 'Years of lost life will be quite dramatic', Sullivan said, with 'a huge amount of avoidable mortality'. Sarah Woolnough, executive director for policy at Cancer Research UK, said there had been a 75 percent drop in urgent referrals to hospitals by family doctors of people with suspected cancer. Sullivan said that 'a lot of services have had to scale back – we've seen a dramatic decrease in the amount of elective cancer surgery'. Lockdown deaths worldwide has been absolutely fantastic with the *New York Post* reporting how data confirmed that 'lockdowns end more lives than they save':

> There was a sharp decline in visits to emergency rooms and an increase in fatal heart attacks because patients didn't receive prompt treatment. Many fewer people were screened for cancer. Social isolation contributed to excess deaths from dementia and Alzheimer's.
>
> Researchers predicted that the social and economic upheaval would lead to tens of thousands of "deaths of despair" from drug overdoses, alcoholism and suicide. As unemployment surged and mental-health and substance-abuse treatment programs were interrupted, the reported levels of anxiety, depression and suicidal thoughts increased dramatically, as did alcohol sales and fatal drug overdoses.

This has been happening while nurses and other staff had so much time on their hands in the 'war-zones' that Tic-Tok dancing videos began appearing across the Internet with medical staff dancing around in empty wards and corridors as people died at home from causes that would normally have been treated in hospital.

Mentions in dispatches

One brave and truth-committed whistleblower was Louise Hampton, a call handler with the UK NHS who made a viral Internet video saying she had done 'fuck all' during the 'pandemic'

which was 'a load of bollocks'. She said that 'Covid-19' was rebranded flu and of course she lost her job. This is what happens in the medical and endless other professions now when you tell the truth. Louise filmed inside 'war-zone' accident and emergency departments to show they were empty and I mean *empty* as in no one there. The mainstream media could have done the same and blown the gaff on the whole conspiracy. They haven't to their eternal shame. Not that most 'journalists' seem capable of manifesting shame as with the psychopaths they slavishly repeat without question. The relative few who were admitted with serious health problems were left to die alone with no loved ones allowed to see them because of 'Covid' rules and they included kids dying without the comfort of mum and dad at their bedside while the evil behind this couldn't give a damn. It was all good fun to them. A Scottish NHS staff nurse publicly quit in the spring of 2021 saying: 'I can no longer be part of the lies and the corruption by the government.' She said hospitals 'aren't full, the beds aren't full, beds have been shut, wards have been shut'. Hospitals were never busy throughout 'Covid'. The staff nurse said that Nicola Sturgeon, tragically the leader of the Scottish government, was on television saying save the hospitals and the NHS – 'but the beds are empty' and 'we've not seen flu, we always see flu every year'. She wrote to government and spoke with her union Unison (the unions are Cult-compromised and *useless*, but nothing changed. Many of her colleagues were scared of losing their jobs if they spoke out as they wanted to. She said nursing staff were being affected by wearing masks all day and 'my head is splitting every shift from wearing a mask'. The NHS is part of the fascist tyranny and must be dismantled so we can start again with human beings in charge. (Ironically, hospitals were reported to be busier again when official 'Covid' cases *fell* in spring/summer of 2021 and many other conditions required treatment at the same time as *the fake vaccine rollout*.)

I will cover the 'Covid vaccine' scam in detail later, but it is another indicator of the sickening disregard for human life that I am highlighting here. The DNA-manipulating concoctions do not fulfil

the definition of a 'vaccine', have never been used on humans before and were given only emergency approval because trials were not completed and they continued using the unknowing public. The result was what a NHS senior nurse with responsibility for 'vaccine' procedure said was 'genocide'. She said the 'vaccines' were not 'vaccines'. They had not been shown to be safe and claims about their effectiveness by drug companies were 'poetic licence'. She described what was happening as a 'horrid act of human annihilation'. The nurse said that management had instigated a policy of not providing a Patient Information Leaflet (PIL) before people were 'vaccinated' even though health care professionals are supposed to do this according to protocol. Patients should also be told that they are taking part in an ongoing clinical trial. Her challenges to what is happening had seen her excluded from meetings and ridiculed in others. She said she was told to 'watch my step … or I would find myself surplus to requirements'. The nurse, who spoke anonymously in fear of her career, said she asked her NHS manager why he/she was content with taking part in genocide against those having the 'vaccines'. The reply was that everyone had to play their part and to 'put up, shut up, and get it done'. Government was 'leaning heavily' on NHS management which was clearly leaning heavily on staff. This is how the global 'medical' hierarchy operates and it starts with the Cult and its World Health Organization.

She told the story of a doctor who had the Pfizer jab and when questioned had no idea what was in it. The doctor had never read the literature. We have to stop treating doctors as intellectual giants when so many are moral and medical pygmies. The doctor did not even know that the 'vaccines' were not fully approved or that their trials were ongoing. They were, however, asking their patients if they minded taking part in follow-ups for research purposes – yes, the *ongoing clinical trial*. The nurse said the doctor's ignorance was not rare and she had spoken to a hospital consultant who had the jab without any idea of the background or that the 'trials' had not been completed. Nurses and pharmacists had shown the same ignorance.

'My NHS colleagues have forsaken their duty of care, broken their code of conduct – Hippocratic Oath – and have been brainwashed just the same as the majority of the UK public through propaganda …' She said she had not been able to recruit a single NHS colleague, doctor, nurse or pharmacist to stand with her and speak out. Her union had refused to help. She said that if the genocide came to light she would not hesitate to give evidence at a Nuremberg-type trial against those in power who could have affected the outcomes but didn't.

And all for what?

To put the nonsense into perspective let's say the 'virus' does exist and let's go completely crazy and accept that the official manipulated figures for cases and deaths are accurate. *Even then* a study by Stanford University epidemiologist Dr John Ioannidis published on the World Health Organization website produced an average infection to fatality rate of … *0.23 percent!* Ioannidis said: 'If one could sample equally from all locations globally, the median infection fatality rate might even be substantially lower than the 0.23% observed in my analysis.' For healthy people under 70 it was … *0.05 percent*! This compares with the 3.4 percent claimed by the Cult-owned World Health Organization when the hoax was first played and maximum fear needed to be generated. An updated Stanford study in April, 2021, put the 'infection' to 'fatality' rate at just 0.15 percent. Another team of scientists led by Megan O'Driscoll and Henrik Salje studied data from 45 countries and published their findings on the Nature website. For children and young people the figure is so small it virtually does not register although authorities will be hyping dangers to the young when they introduce DNA-manipulating 'vaccines' for children. The O'Driscoll study produced an average infection-fatality figure of 0.003 for children from birth to four; 0.001 for 5 to 14; 0.003 for 15 to 19; and it was still only 0.456 up to 64. To claim that children must be 'vaccinated' to protect them from 'Covid' is an obvious lie and so there must be another reason and there is. What's more the average age of a 'Covid' death is akin

to the average age that people die in general. The average age of death in England is about 80 for men and 83 for women. The average age of death from alleged 'Covid' is between 82 and 83. California doctors, Dan Erickson and Artin Massihi, said at their April media conference that projection models of millions of deaths had been 'woefully inaccurate'. They produced detailed figures showing that Californians had a 0.03 chance of dying from 'Covid' based on the number of people who tested positive (with a test not testing for the 'virus'). Erickson said there was a 0.1 percent chance of dying from 'Covid' in the *state* of New York, not just the city, and a 0.05 percent chance in Spain, a centre of 'Covid-19' hysteria at one stage. The Stanford studies supported the doctors' data with fatality rate estimates of 0.23 and 0.15 percent. How close are these figures to my estimate of *zero*? Death-rate figures claimed by the World Health Organization at the start of the hoax were some 15 times higher. The California doctors said there was no justification for lockdowns and the economic devastation they caused. Everything they had ever learned about quarantine was that you quarantine the *sick* and not the healthy. They had never seen this before and it made no medical sense.

Why in the in the light of all this would governments and medical systems the world over say that billions must go under house arrest; lose their livelihood; in many cases lose their mind, their health and their life; force people to wear masks dangerous to health and psychology; make human interaction and even family interaction a criminal offence; ban travel; close restaurants, bars, watching live sport, concerts, theatre, and any activity involving human togetherness and discourse; and closing schools to isolate children from their friends and cause many to commit suicide in acts of hopelessness and despair? The California doctors said lockdown consequences included increased child abuse, partner abuse, alcoholism, depression, and other impacts they were seeing every day. Who would do that to the entire human race if not mentally-ill psychopaths of almost unimaginable extremes like Bill Gates? We must face the reality of what we are dealing with and come out of

denial. Fascism and tyranny are made possible only by the target population submitting and acquiescing to fascism and tyranny. The whole of human history shows that to be true. Most people naively and unquestioning believed what they were told about a 'deadly virus' and meekly and weakly submitted to house arrest. Those who didn't believe it – at least in total – still submitted in fear of the consequences of not doing so. For the rest who wouldn't submit draconian fines have been imposed, brutal policing by psychopaths *for* psychopaths, and condemnation from the meek and weak who condemn the Pushbackers on behalf of the very force that has them, too, in its gunsights. 'Pathetic' does not even begin to suffice. Britain's brainless 'Health' Secretary Matt Hancock warned anyone lying to border officials about returning from a list of 'hotspot' countries could face a jail sentence of up to ten years which is more than for racially-aggravated assault, incest and attempting to have sex with a child under 13. Hancock is a lunatic, but he has the state apparatus behind him in a Cult-led chain reaction and the same with UK 'Vaccine Minister' Nadhim Zahawi, a prominent member of the mega-Cult secret society, Le Cercle, which featured in my earlier books. The Cult enforces its will on governments and medical systems; government and medical systems enforce their will on business and police; business enforces its will on staff who enforce it on customers; police enforce the will of the Cult on the population and play their essential part in creating a world of fascist control that their own children and grandchildren will have to live in their entire lives. It is a hierarchical pyramid of imposition and acquiescence and, yes indeedy, of clinical insanity.

Does anyone bright enough to read this book have to ask what the answer is? I think not, but I will reveal it anyway in the fewest of syllables: Tell the psychos and their moronic lackeys to fuck off and let's get on with our lives. We are many – They are few.

CHAPTER SEVEN

War on your mind

One believes things because one has been conditioned to believe them
Aldous Huxley, *Brave New World*

I have described the 'Covid' hoax as a 'Psyop' and that is true in every sense and on every level in accordance with the definition of that term which is psychological warfare. Break down the 'Covid pandemic' to the foundation themes and it is psychological warfare on the human individual and collective mind.

The same can be said for the entire human belief system involving every subject you can imagine. Huxley was right in his contention that people believe what they are conditioned to believe and this comes from the repetition throughout their lives of the same falsehoods. They spew from government, corporations, media and endless streams of 'experts' telling you what the Cult wants you to believe and often believing it themselves (although *far* from always). 'Experts' are rewarded with 'prestigious' jobs and titles and as agents of perceptual programming with regular access to the media. The Cult has to control the narrative – control *information* – or they lose control of the vital, crucial, without-which-they-cannot-prevail public perception of reality. The foundation of that control today is the Internet made possible by the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (DARPA), the incredibly sinister technological arm of the Pentagon. The Internet is the result of military technology.

DARPA openly brags about establishing the Internet which has been a long-term project to lasso the minds of the global population. I have said for decades the plan is to control information to such an extreme that eventually no one would see or hear anything that the Cult does not approve. We are closing in on that end with ferocious censorship since the 'Covid' hoax began and in my case it started back in the 1990s in terms of books and speaking venues. I had to create my own publishing company in 1995 precisely because no one else would publish my books even then. I think they're all still running.

Cult Internet

To secure total control of information they needed the Internet in which pre-programmed algorithms can seek out 'unclean' content for deletion and even stop it being posted in the first place. The Cult had to dismantle print and non-Internet broadcast media to ensure the transfer of information to the appropriate-named 'Web' – a critical expression of the *Cult* web. We've seen the ever-quickening demise of traditional media and control of what is left by a tiny number of corporations operating worldwide. Independent journalism in the mainstream is already dead and never was that more obvious than since the turn of 2020. The Cult wants all information communicated via the Internet to globally censor and allow the plug to be pulled any time. Lockdowns and forced isolation has meant that communication between people has been through electronic means and no longer through face-to-face discourse and discussion. Cult psychopaths have targeted the bars, restaurants, sport, venues and meeting places in general for this reason. None of this is by chance and it's to stop people gathering in any kind of privacy or number while being able to track and monitor all Internet communications and block them as necessary. Even private messages between individuals have been censored by these fascists that control Cult fronts like Facebook, Twitter, Google and YouTube which are all officially run by Sabbatian place-people and from the background by higher-level Sabbatian place people.

Facebook, Google, Amazon and their like were seed-funded and supported into existence with money-no-object infusions of funds either directly or indirectly from DARPA and CIA technology arm In-Q-Tel. The Cult plays the long game and prepares very carefully for big plays like 'Covid'. Amazon is another front in the psychological war and pretty much controls the global market in book sales and increasingly publishing. Amazon's limitless funds have deleted fantastic numbers of independent publishers to seize global domination on the way to deciding which books can be sold and circulated and which cannot. Moves in that direction are already happening. Amazon's leading light Jeff Bezos is the grandson of Lawrence Preston Gise who worked with DARPA predecessor ARPA. Amazon has big connections to the CIA and the Pentagon. The plan I have long described went like this:

1. Employ military technology to establish the Internet.

2. Sell the Internet as a place where people can freely communicate without censorship and allow that to happen until the Net becomes the central and irreversible pillar of human society. If the Internet had been highly censored from the start many would have rejected it.

3. Fund and manipulate major corporations into being to control the circulation of information on your Internet using cover stories about geeks in garages to explain how they came about. Give them unlimited funds to expand rapidly with no need to make a profit for years while non-Cult companies who need to balance the books cannot compete. You know that in these circumstances your Googles, YouTubes, Facebooks and Amazons are going to secure near monopolies by either crushing or buying up the opposition.

4. Allow freedom of expression on both the Internet and communication platforms to draw people in until the Internet is the central and irreversible pillar of human society and your communication corporations have reached a stage of near monopoly domination.

5. Then unleash your always-planned frenzy of censorship on the basis of 'where else are you going to go?' and continue to expand that until nothing remains that the Cult does not want its human targets to see.

The process was timed to hit the 'Covid' hoax to ensure the best chance possible of controlling the narrative which they knew they had to do at all costs. They were, after all, about to unleash a 'deadly virus' that didn't really exist. If you do that in an environment of free-flowing information and opinion you would be dead in the

water before you could say Gates is a psychopath. The network was in place through which the Cult-created-and-owned World Health Organization could dictate the 'Covid' narrative and response policy slavishly supported by Cult-owned Internet communication giants and mainstream media while those telling a different story were censored. Google, YouTube, Facebook and Twitter openly announced that they would do this. What else would we expect from Cult-owned operations like Facebook which former executives have confirmed set out to make the platform more addictive than cigarettes and coldly manipulates emotions of its users to sow division between people and groups and scramble the minds of the young? If Zuckerberg lives out the rest of his life without going to jail for crimes against humanity, and most emphatically against the young, it will be a travesty of justice. Still, no matter, cause and effect will catch up with him eventually and the same with Sergey Brin and Larry Page at Google with its CEO Sundar Pichai who fix the Google search results to promote Cult narratives and hide the opposition. Put the same key words into Google and other search engines like DuckDuckGo and you will see how different results can be. Wikipedia is another intensely biased 'encyclopaedia' which skews its content to the Cult agenda. YouTube links to Wikipedia's version of 'Covid' and 'climate change' on video pages in which experts in their field offer a different opinion (even that is increasingly rare with Wojcicki censorship). Into this 'Covid' silence-them network must be added government media censors, sorry 'regulators', such as Ofcom in the UK which imposed tyrannical restrictions on British broadcasters that had the effect of banning me from ever appearing. Just to debate with me about my evidence and views on 'Covid' would mean breaking the fascistic impositions of Ofcom and its CEO career government bureaucrat Melanie Dawes. Gutless British broadcasters tremble at the very thought of fascist Ofcom.

Psychos behind 'Covid'

The reason for the 'Covid' catastrophe in all its facets and forms can be seen by whom and what is driving the policies worldwide in such a coordinated way. Decisions are not being made to protect health, but to target psychology. The dominant group guiding and 'advising' government policy are not medical professionals. They are psychologists and behavioural scientists. Every major country has its own version of this phenomenon and I'll use the British example to show how it works. In many ways the British version has been affecting the wider world in the form of the huge behaviour manipulation network in the UK which operates in other countries. The network involves private companies, government, intelligence and military. The Cabinet Office is at the centre of the government 'Covid' Psyop and part-owns, with 'innovation charity' Nesta, the Behavioural Insights Team (BIT) which claims to be independent of government but patently isn't. The BIT was established in 2010 and its job is to manipulate the psyche of the population to acquiesce to government demands and so much more. It is also known as the 'Nudge Unit', a name inspired by the 2009 book by two ultra-Zionists, Cass Sunstein and Richard Thaler, called *Nudge: Improving Decisions About Health, Wealth, and Happiness*. The book, as with the Behavioural Insights Team, seeks to 'nudge' behaviour (manipulate it) to make the public follow patterns of action and perception that suit those in authority (the Cult). Sunstein is so skilled at this that he advises the World Health Organization and the UK Behavioural Insights Team and was Administrator of the White House Office of Information and Regulatory Affairs in the Obama administration. Biden appointed him to the Department of Homeland Security – another ultra-Zionist in the fold to oversee new immigration laws which is another policy the Cult wants to control. Sunstein is desperate to silence anyone exposing conspiracies and co-authored a 2008 report on the subject in which suggestions were offered to ban 'conspiracy theorizing' or impose 'some kind of tax, financial or otherwise, on those who disseminate such theories'. I guess a psychiatrist's chair is out of the question?

Sunstein's mate Richard Thaler, an 'academic affiliate' of the UK Behavioural Insights Team, is a proponent of 'behavioural economics' which is defined as the study of 'the effects of psychological, cognitive, emotional, cultural and social factors on the decisions of individuals and institutions'. Study the effects so they can be manipulated to be what you want them to be. Other leading names in the development of behavioural economics are ultra-Zionists Daniel Kahneman and Robert J. Shiller and they, with Thaler, won the Nobel Memorial Prize in Economic Sciences for their work in this field. The Behavioural Insights Team is operating at the heart of the UK government and has expanded globally through partnerships with several universities including Harvard, Oxford, Cambridge, University College London (UCL) and Pennsylvania. They claim to have 'trained' (reframed) 20,000 civil servants and run more than 750 projects involving 400 randomised controlled trials in dozens of countries' as another version of mind reframers Common Purpose. BIT works from its office in New York with cities and their agencies, as well as other partners, across the United States and Canada – this is a company part-owned by the British government Cabinet Office. An executive order by President Cult-servant Obama established a US Social and Behavioral Sciences Team in 2015. They all have the same reason for being and that's to brainwash the population directly and by brainwashing those in positions of authority.

'Covid' mind game

Another prime aspect of the UK mind-control network is the 'independent' [joke] Scientific Pandemic Insights Group on Behaviours (SPI-B) which 'provides behavioural science advice aimed at anticipating and helping people adhere to interventions that are recommended by medical or epidemiological experts'. That means manipulating public perception and behaviour to do whatever government tells them to do. It's disgusting and if they really want the public to be 'safe' this lot should all be under lock and key. According to the government website SPI-B consists of

'behavioural scientists, health and social psychologists, anthropologists and historians' and advises the Whitty-Vallance-led Scientific Advisory Group for Emergencies (SAGE) which in turn advises the government on 'the science' (it doesn't) and 'Covid' policy. When politicians say they are being guided by 'the science' this is the rabble in each country they are talking about and that 'science' is dominated by behaviour manipulators to enforce government fascism through public compliance. The Behaviour Insight Team is headed by psychologist David Solomon Halpern, a visiting professor at King's College London, and connects with a national and global web of other civilian and military organisations as the Cult moves towards its goal of fusing them into one fascistic whole in every country through its 'Fusion Doctrine'. The behaviour manipulation network involves, but is not confined to, the Foreign Office; National Security Council; government communications headquarters (GCHQ); MI5; MI6; the Cabinet Office-based Media Monitoring Unit; and the Rapid Response Unit which 'monitors digital trends to spot emerging issues; including misinformation and disinformation; and identifies the best way to respond'.

There is also the 77th Brigade of the UK military which operates like the notorious Israeli military's Unit 8200 in manipulating information and discussion on the Internet by posing as members of the public to promote the narrative and discredit those who challenge it. Here we have the military seeking to manipulate *domestic* public opinion while the Nazis in government are fine with that. Conservative Member of Parliament Tobias Ellwood, an advocate of lockdown and control through 'vaccine passports', is a Lieutenant Colonel reservist in the 77th Brigade which connects with the military operation jHub, the 'innovation centre' for the Ministry of Defence and Strategic Command. jHub has also been involved with the civilian National Health Service (NHS) in 'symptom tracing' the population. The NHS is a key part of this mind control network and produced a document in December, 2020, explaining to staff how to use psychological manipulation with different groups and ages to get them to have the DNA-manipulating 'Covid vaccine'

that's designed to cumulatively rewrite human genetics. The document, called 'Optimising Vaccination Roll Out – Do's and Dont's for all messaging, documents and "communications" in the widest sense', was published by NHS England and the NHS Improvement *Behaviour Change Unit* in partnership with Public Health England and Warwick Business School. I hear the mantra about 'save the NHS' and 'protect the NHS' when we need to scrap the NHS and start again. The current version is far too corrupt, far too anti-human and totally compromised by Cult operatives and their assets. UK government broadcast media censor Ofcom will connect into this web – as will the BBC with its tremendous Ofcom influence – to control what the public see and hear and dictate mass perception. Nuremberg trials must include personnel from all these organisations.

The fear factor

The 'Covid' hoax has led to the creation of the UK Cabinet Office-connected Joint Biosecurity Centre (JBC) which is officially described as providing 'expert advice on pandemics' using its independent [all Cult operations are 'independent'] analytical function to provide real-time analysis about infection outbreaks to identify and respond to outbreaks of Covid-19'. Another role is to advise the government on a response to spikes in infections – 'for example by closing schools or workplaces in local areas where infection levels have risen'. Put another way, promoting the Cult agenda. The Joint Biosecurity Centre is modelled on the Joint Terrorism Analysis Centre which analyses intelligence to set 'terrorism threat levels' and here again you see the fusion of civilian and military operations and intelligence that has led to military intelligence producing documents about 'vaccine hesitancy' and how it can be combated. Domestic civilian matters and opinions should not be the business of the military. The Joint Biosecurity Centre is headed by Tom Hurd, director general of the Office for Security and Counter-Terrorism from the establishment-to-its-fingertips Hurd family. His father is former Foreign Secretary Douglas Hurd. How coincidental that Tom

Hurd went to the elite Eton College and Oxford University with Boris Johnson. Imperial College with its ridiculous computer modeller Neil Ferguson will connect with this gigantic web that will itself interconnect with similar set-ups in other major and not so major countries. Compared with this Cult network the politicians, be they Boris Johnson, Donald Trump or Joe Biden, are bit-part players 'following the science'. The network of psychologists was on the 'Covid' case from the start with the aim of generating maximum fear of the 'virus' to ensure compliance by the population. A government behavioural science group known as SPI-B produced a paper in March, 2020, for discussion by the main government science advisory group known as SAGE. It was headed 'Options for increasing adherence to social distancing measures' and it said the following in a section headed 'Persuasion':

- A substantial number of people still do not feel sufficiently personally threatened; it could be that they are reassured by the low death rate in their demographic group, although levels of concern may be rising. Having a good understanding of the risk has been found to be positively associated with adoption of COVID-19 social distancing measures in Hong Kong.

- The perceived level of personal threat needs to be increased among those who are complacent, using hard-hitting evaluation of options for increasing social distancing emotional messaging. To be effective this must also empower people by making clear the actions they can take to reduce the threat.

- Responsibility to others: There seems to be insufficient understanding of, or feelings of responsibility about, people's role in transmitting the infection to others … Messaging about actions need to be framed positively in terms of protecting oneself and the community, and increase confidence that they will be effective.

- Some people will be more persuaded by appeals to play by the rules, some by duty to the community, and some to personal risk.

> All these different approaches are needed. The messaging also needs to take account of the realities of different people's lives. Messaging needs to take account of the different motivational levers and circumstances of different people.

All this could be achieved the SPI-B psychologists said by *using the media to increase the sense of personal threat* which translates as terrify the shit out of the population, including children, so they all do what we want. That's not happened has it? Those excuses for 'journalists' who wouldn't know journalism if it bit them on the arse (the great majority) have played their crucial part in serving this Cult-government Psyop to enslave their own kids and grandkids. How they live with themselves I have no idea. The psychological war has been underpinned by constant government 'Covid' propaganda in almost every television and radio ad break, plus the Internet and print media, which has pounded out the fear with taxpayers footing the bill for their own programming. The result has been people terrified of a 'virus' that doesn't exist or one with a tiny fatality rate even if you believe it does. People walk down the street and around the shops wearing face-nappies damaging their health and psychology while others report those who refuse to be that naïve to the police who turn up in their own face-nappies. I had a cameraman come to my flat and he was so frightened of 'Covid' he came in wearing a mask and refused to shake my hand in case he caught something. He had – naïveitis – and the thought that he worked in the mainstream media was both depressing and made his behaviour perfectly explainable. The fear which has gripped the minds of so many and frozen them into compliance has been carefully cultivated by these psychologists who are really psychopaths. If lives get destroyed and a lot of young people commit suicide it shows our plan is working. SPI-B then turned to compulsion on the public to comply. 'With adequate preparation, rapid change can be achieved', it said. Some countries had introduced mandatory self-isolation on a wide scale without evidence of major public unrest and a large majority of the UK's population appeared to be supportive of more coercive measures with 64 percent of adults saying they would

support putting London under a lockdown (watch the 'polls' which are designed to make people believe that public opinion is in favour or against whatever the subject in hand).

For 'aggressive protective measures' to be effective, the SPI-B paper said, special attention should be devoted to those population groups that are more at risk. Translated from the Orwellian this means making the rest of population feel guilty for not protecting the 'vulnerable' such as old people which the Cult and its agencies were about to kill on an industrial scale with lockdown, lack of treatment and the Gates 'vaccine'. Psychopath psychologists sold their guilt-trip so comprehensively that Los Angeles County Supervisor Hilda Solis reported that children were apologising (from a distance) to their parents and grandparents for bringing 'Covid' into their homes and getting them sick. '… These apologies are just some of the last words that loved ones will ever hear as they die alone,' she said. Gut-wrenchingly Solis then used this childhood tragedy to tell children to stay at home and 'keep your loved ones alive'. Imagine heaping such potentially life-long guilt on a kid when it has absolutely nothing to do with them. These people are deeply disturbed and the psychologists behind this even more so.

Uncivil war – divide and rule

Professional mind-controllers at SPI-B wanted the media to increase a sense of responsibility to others (do as you're told) and promote 'positive messaging' for those actions while in contrast to invoke 'social disapproval' by the unquestioning, obedient, community of anyone with a mind of their own. Again the compliant Goebbels-like media obliged. This is an old, old, trick employed by tyrannies the world over throughout human history. You get the target population to keep the target population in line – *your* line. SPI-B said this could 'play an important role in preventing anti-social behaviour or discouraging failure to enact pro-social behaviour'. For 'anti-social' in the Orwellian parlance of SPI-B see any behaviour that government doesn't approve. SPI-B recommendations said that 'social disapproval' should be accompanied by clear messaging and

promotion of strong collective identity – hence the government and celebrity mantra of 'we're all in this together'. Sure we are. The mind doctors have such contempt for their targets that they think some clueless comedian, actor or singer telling them to do what the government wants will be enough to win them over. We have had UK comedian Lenny Henry, actor Michael Caine and singer Elton John wheeled out to serve the propagandists by urging people to have the DNA-manipulating 'Covid' non-'vaccine'. The role of Henry and fellow black celebrities in seeking to coax a 'vaccine' reluctant black community into doing the government's will was especially stomach-turning. An emotion-manipulating script and carefully edited video featuring these black 'celebs' was such an insult to the intelligence of black people and where's the self-respect of those involved selling their souls to a fascist government agenda? Henry said he heard black people's 'legitimate worries and concerns', but people must 'trust the facts' when they were doing exactly that by not having the 'vaccine'. They had to include the obligatory reference to Black Lives Matter with the line … 'Don't let coronavirus cost even more black lives – because we matter'. My god, it was pathetic. 'I know the vaccine is safe and what it does.' How? 'I'm a comedian and it says so in my script.'

SPI-B said social disapproval needed to be carefully managed to avoid victimisation, scapegoating and misdirected criticism, but they knew that their 'recommendations' would lead to exactly that and the media were specifically used to stir-up the divide-and-conquer hostility. Those who conform like good little baa, baas, are praised while those who have seen through the tidal wave of lies are 'Covidiots'. The awake have been abused by the fast asleep for not conforming to fascism and impositions that the awake know are designed to endanger their health, dehumanise them, and tear asunder the very fabric of human society. We have had the curtain-twitchers and morons reporting neighbours and others to the face-nappied police for breaking 'Covid rules' with fascist police delighting in posting links and phone numbers where this could be done. The Cult cannot impose its will without a compliant police

and military or a compliant population willing to play their part in enslaving themselves and their kids. The words of a pastor in Nazi Germany are so appropriate today:

First they came for the socialists and I did not speak out because I was not a socialist.

Then they came for the trade unionists and I did not speak out because I was not a trade unionist.

Then they came for the Jews and I did not speak out because I was not a Jew.

Then they came for me and there was no one left to speak for me.

Those who don't learn from history are destined to repeat it and so many are.

'Covid' rules: Rewiring the mind

With the background laid out to this gigantic national and global web of psychological manipulation we can put 'Covid' rules into a clear and sinister perspective. Forget the claims about protecting health. 'Covid' rules are about dismantling the human mind, breaking the human spirit, destroying self-respect, and then putting Humpty Dumpty together again as a servile, submissive slave. Social isolation through lockdown and distancing have devastating effects on the human psyche as the psychological psychopaths well know and that's the real reason for them. Humans need contact with each other, discourse, closeness and touch, or they eventually, and literarily, go crazy. Masks, which I will address at some length, fundamentally add to the effects of isolation and the Cult agenda to dehumanise and de-individualise the population. To do this while knowing – in fact *seeking* – this outcome is the very epitome of evil and psychologists involved in this *are* the epitome of evil. They must like all the rest of the Cult demons and their assets stand trial for crimes against humanity on a scale that defies the imagination. Psychopaths in uniform use isolation to break enemy troops and agents and make them subservient and submissive to tell what they know. The technique is rightly considered a form of torture and

torture is most certainly what has been imposed on the human population.

Clinically-insane American psychologist Harry Harlow became famous for his isolation experiments in the 1950s in which he separated baby monkeys from their mothers and imprisoned them for months on end in a metal container or 'pit of despair'. They soon began to show mental distress and depression as any idiot could have predicted. Harlow put other monkeys in steel chambers for three, six or twelve months while denying them any contact with animals or humans. He said that the effects of total social isolation for six months were 'so devastating and debilitating that we had assumed initially that twelve months of isolation would not produce any additional decrement'; but twelve months of isolation 'almost obliterated the animals socially'. This is what the Cult and its psychopaths are doing to you and your children. Even monkeys in partial isolation in which they were not allowed to form relationships with other monkeys became 'aggressive and hostile, not only to others, but also towards their own bodies'. We have seen this in the young as a consequence of lockdown. UK government psychopaths launched a public relations campaign telling people not to hug each other even after they received the 'Covid-19 vaccine' which we were told with more lies would allow a return to 'normal life'. A government source told *The Telegraph*: 'It will be along the lines that it is great that you have been vaccinated, but if you are going to visit your family and hug your grandchildren there is a chance you are going to infect people you love.' The source was apparently speaking from a secure psychiatric facility. Janet Lord, director of Birmingham University's Institute of Inflammation and Ageing, said that parents and grandparents should avoid hugging their children. Well, how can I put it, Ms Lord? Fuck off. Yep, that'll do.

Destroying the kids – where are the parents?

Observe what has happened to people enslaved and isolated by lockdown as suicide and self-harm has soared worldwide,

particularly among the young denied the freedom to associate with their friends. A study of 49,000 people in English-speaking countries concluded that almost half of young adults are at clinical risk of mental health disorders. A national survey in America of 1,000 currently enrolled high school and college students found that 5 percent reported attempting suicide during the pandemic. Data from the US CDC's National Syndromic Surveillance Program from January 1st to October 17th, 2020, revealed a *31 percent* increase in mental health issues among adolescents aged 12 to 17 compared with 2019. The CDC reported that America in general suffered the biggest drop in life expectancy since World War Two as it fell by a year in the first half of 2020 as a result of 'deaths of despair' – overdoses and suicides. Deaths of despair have leapt by more than 20 percent during lockdown and include the highest number of fatal overdoses ever recorded in a single year – 81,000. Internet addiction is another consequence of being isolated at home which lowers interest in physical activities as kids fall into inertia and what's the point? Children and young people are losing hope and giving up on life, sometimes literally. A 14-year-old boy killed himself in Maryland because he had 'given up' when his school district didn't reopen; an 11-year-old boy shot himself during a zoom class; a teenager in Maine succumbed to the isolation of the 'pandemic' when he ended his life after experiencing a disrupted senior year at school. Children as young as nine have taken their life and all these stories can be repeated around the world. Careers are being destroyed before they start and that includes those in sport in which promising youngsters have not been able to take part. The plan of the psycho-psychologists is working all right. Researchers at Cambridge University found that lockdowns cause significant harm to children's mental health. Their study was published in the *Archives of Disease in Childhood*, and followed 168 children aged between 7 and 11. The researchers concluded:

> During the UK lockdown, children's depression symptoms have increased substantially, relative to before lockdown. The scale of this effect has direct relevance for the continuation of different elements of lockdown policy, such as complete or partial school closures …

… Specifically, we observed a statistically significant increase in ratings of depression, with a medium-to-large effect size. Our findings emphasise the need to incorporate the potential impact of lockdown on child mental health in planning the ongoing response to the global pandemic and the recovery from it.

Not a chance when the Cult's psycho-psychologists were getting exactly what they wanted. The UK's Royal College of Paediatrics and Child Health has urged parents to look for signs of eating disorders in children and young people after a three to four fold increase. Specialists say the 'pandemic' is a major reason behind the rise. You don't say. The College said isolation from friends during school closures, exam cancellations, loss of extra-curricular activities like sport, and an increased use of social media were all contributory factors along with fears about the virus (psycho-psychologists again), family finances, and students being forced to quarantine. Doctors said young people were becoming severely ill by the time they were seen with 'Covid' regulations reducing face-to-face consultations. Nor is it only the young that have been devastated by the psychopaths. Like all bullies and cowards the Cult is targeting the young, elderly, weak and infirm. A typical story was told by a British lady called Lynn Parker who was not allowed to visit her husband in 2020 for the last ten and half months of his life 'when he needed me most' between March 20th and when he died on December 19th. This vacates the criminal and enters the territory of evil. The emotional impact on the immune system alone is immense as are the number of people of all ages worldwide who have died as a result of Cult-demanded, Gates-demanded, lockdowns.

Isolation is torture

The experience of imposing solitary confinement on millions of prisoners around the world has shown how a large percentage become 'actively psychotic and/or acutely suicidal'. Social isolation has been found to trigger 'a specific psychiatric syndrome, characterized by hallucinations; panic attacks; overt paranoia; diminished impulse control; hypersensitivity to external stimuli; and difficulties with thinking, concentration and memory'. Juan Mendez,

a United Nations rapporteur (investigator), said that isolation is a form of torture. Research has shown that even after isolation prisoners find it far more difficult to make social connections and I remember chatting to a shop assistant after one lockdown who told me that when her young son met another child again he had no idea how to act or what to do. Hannah Flanagan, Director of Emergency Services at Journey Mental Health Center in Dane County, Wisconsin, said: 'The specificity about Covid social distancing and isolation that we've come across as contributing factors to the suicides are really new to us this year.' But they are not new to those that devised them. They are getting the effect they want as the population is psychologically dismantled to be rebuilt in a totally different way. Children and the young are particularly targeted. They will be the adults when the full-on fascist AI-controlled technocracy is planned to be imposed and they are being prepared to meekly submit. At the same time older people who still have a memory of what life was like before – and how fascist the new normal really is – are being deleted. You are going to see efforts to turn the young against the old to support this geriatric genocide. Hannah Flanagan said the big increase in suicide in her county proved that social isolation is not only harmful, but deadly. Studies have shown that isolation from others is one of the main risk factors in suicide and even more so with women. Warnings that lockdown could create a 'perfect storm' for suicide were ignored. After all this was one of the *reasons* for lockdown. Suicide, however, is only the most extreme of isolation consequences. There are many others. Dr Dhruv Khullar, assistant professor of healthcare policy at Weill Cornell Medical College, said in a *New York Times* article in 2016 long before the fake 'pandemic':

> A wave of new research suggests social separation is bad for us. Individuals with less social connection have disrupted sleep patterns, altered immune systems, more inflammation and higher levels of stress hormones. One recent study found that isolation increases the risk of heart disease by 29 percent and stroke by 32 percent. Another analysis that pooled data from 70 studies and 3.4 million people found that socially isolated individuals had a 30 percent higher risk of dying in the next seven years, and that this effect was largest in middle age.

Loneliness can accelerate cognitive decline in older adults, and isolated individuals are twice as likely to die prematurely as those with more robust social interactions. These effects start early: Socially isolated children have significantly poorer health 20 years later, even after controlling for other factors. All told, loneliness is as important a risk factor for early death as obesity and smoking.

There you have proof from that one article alone four years before 2020 that those who have enforced lockdown, social distancing and isolation knew what the effect would be and that is even more so with professional psychologists that have been driving the policy across the globe. We can go back even further to the years 2000 and 2003 and the start of a major study on the effects of isolation on health by Dr Janine Gronewold and Professor Dirk M. Hermann at the University Hospital in Essen, Germany, who analysed data on 4,316 people with an average age of 59 who were recruited for the long-term research project. They found that socially isolated people are more than 40 percent more likely to have a heart attack, stroke, or other major cardiovascular event and nearly 50 percent more likely to die from any cause. Given the financial Armageddon unleashed by lockdown we should note that the study found a relationship between increased cardiovascular risk and lack of financial support. After excluding other factors social isolation was still connected to a 44 percent increased risk of cardiovascular problems and a 47 percent increased risk of death by any cause. Lack of financial support was associated with a 30 percent increase in the risk of cardiovascular health events. Dr Gronewold said it had been known for some time that feeling lonely or lacking contact with close friends and family can have an impact on physical health and the study had shown that having strong social relationships is of high importance for heart health. Gronewold said they didn't understand yet why people who are socially isolated have such poor health outcomes, but this was obviously a worrying finding, particularly during these times of prolonged social distancing. Well, it can be explained on many levels. You only have to identify the point in the body where people feel loneliness and missing people they are parted from – it's in the centre of the chest where they feel the ache of loneliness and the ache of missing people. 'My heart aches for

you' … 'My heart aches for some company.' I will explain this more in the chapter Escaping Wetiko, but when you realise that the body is the mind – they are expressions of each other – the reason why state of the mind dictates state of the body becomes clear.

American psychologist Ranjit Powar was highlighting the effects of lockdown isolation as early as April, 2020. She said humans have evolved to be social creatures and are wired to live in interactive groups. Being isolated from family, friends and colleagues could be unbalancing and traumatic for most people and could result in short or even long-term psychological and physical health problems. An increase in levels of anxiety, aggression, depression, forgetfulness and hallucinations were possible psychological effects of isolation. 'Mental conditions may be precipitated for those with underlying pre-existing susceptibilities and show up in many others without any pre-condition.' Powar said personal relationships helped us cope with stress and if we lost this outlet for letting off steam the result can be a big emotional void which, for an average person, was difficult to deal with. 'Just a few days of isolation can cause increased levels of anxiety and depression' – so what the hell has been the effect on the global population of *18 months* of this at the time of writing? Powar said: 'Add to it the looming threat of a dreadful disease being repeatedly hammered in through the media and you have a recipe for many shades of mental and physical distress.' For those with a house and a garden it is easy to forget that billions have had to endure lockdown isolation in tiny overcrowded flats and apartments with nowhere to go outside. The psychological and physical consequences of this are unimaginable and with lunatic and abusive partners and parents the consequences have led to tremendous increases in domestic and child abuse and alcoholism as people seek to shut out the horror. Ranjit Powar said:

> Staying in a confined space with family is not all a rosy picture for everyone. It can be extremely oppressive and claustrophobic for large low-income families huddled together in small single-room houses. Children here are not lucky enough to have many board/electronic games or books to keep them occupied.

Add to it the deep insecurity of running out of funds for food and basic necessities. On the other hand, there are people with dysfunctional family dynamics, such as domineering, abusive or alcoholic partners, siblings or parents which makes staying home a period of trial. Incidence of suicide and physical abuse against women has shown a worldwide increase. Heightened anxiety and depression also affect a person's immune system, making them more susceptible to illness.

To think that Powar's article was published on April 11th, 2020.

Six-feet fantasy

Social (unsocial) distancing demanded that people stay six feet or two metres apart. UK government advisor Robert Dingwall from the New and Emerging Respiratory Virus Threats Advisory Group said in a radio interview that the two-metre rule was 'conjured up out of nowhere' and was not based on science. No, it was not based on *medical* science, but it didn't come out of nowhere. The distance related to *psychological* science. Six feet/two metres was adopted in many countries and we were told by people like the criminal Anthony Fauci and his ilk that it was founded on science. Many schools could not reopen because they did not have the space for six-feet distancing. Then in March, 2021, after a year of six-feet 'science', a study published in the *Journal of Infectious Diseases* involving more than 500,000 students and almost 100,000 staff over 16 weeks revealed no significant difference in 'Covid' cases between six feet and three feet and Fauci changed his tune. Now three feet was okay. There is no difference between six feet and three *inches* when there is no 'virus' and they got away with six feet for psychological reasons for as long as they could. I hear journalists and others talk about 'unintended consequences' of lockdown. They are not *unintended* at all; they have been coldly-calculated for a specific outcome of human control and that's why super-psychopaths like Gates have called for them so vehemently. Super-psychopath psychologists have demanded them and psychopathic or clueless, spineless, politicians have gone along with them by 'following the science'. But it's not science at all. 'Science' is not what is; it's only what people can be manipulated to believe it is. The whole 'Covid' catastrophe is

founded on mind control. Three word or three statement mantras issued by the UK government are a well-known mind control technique and so we've had 'Stay home/protect the NHS/save lives', 'Stay alert/control the virus/save lives' and 'hands/face/space'. One of the most vocal proponents of extreme 'Covid' rules in the UK has been Professor Susan Michie, a member of the British Communist Party, who is not a medical professional. Michie is the director of the Centre for Behaviour Change at University College London. She is a *behavioural psychologist* and another filthy rich 'Marxist' who praised China's draconian lockdown. She was known by fellow students at Oxford University as 'Stalin's nanny' for her extreme Marxism. Michie is an influential member of the UK government's Scientific Advisory Group for Emergencies (SAGE) and behavioural manipulation groups which have dominated 'Covid' policy. She is a consultant adviser to the World Health Organization on 'Covid-19' and behaviour. Why the hell are lockdowns anything to do with her when they are claimed to be about health? Why does a behavioural psychologist from a group charged with changing the behaviour of the public want lockdown, human isolation and mandatory masks? Does that question really need an answer? Michie *absolutely* has to explain herself before a Nuremberg court when humanity takes back its world again and even more so when you see the consequences of masks that she demands are compulsory. This is a Michie classic:

> The benefits of getting primary school children to wear masks is that regardless of what little degree of transmission is occurring in those age groups it could help normalise the practice. Young children wearing masks may be more likely to get their families to accept masks.

Those words alone should carry a prison sentence when you ponder on the callous disregard for children involved and what a statement it makes about the mind and motivations of Susan Michie. What a lovely lady and what she said there encapsulates the mentality of the psychopaths behind the 'Covid' horror. Let us compare what Michie said with a countrywide study in Germany published at researchsquare.com involving 25,000 school children and 17,854 health complaints submitted by parents. Researchers

found that masks are harming children physically, psychologically, and behaviourally with 24 health issues associated with mask wearing. They include: shortness of breath (29.7%); dizziness (26.4%); increased headaches (53%); difficulty concentrating (50%); drowsiness or fatigue (37%); and malaise (42%). Nearly a third of children experienced more sleep issues than before and a quarter developed new fears. Researchers found health issues and other impairments in 68 percent of masked children covering their faces for an average of 4.5 hours a day. Hundreds of those taking part experienced accelerated respiration, tightness in the chest, weakness, and short-term impairment of consciousness. A reminder of what Michie said again:

> The benefits of getting primary school children to wear masks is that regardless of what little degree of transmission is occurring in those age groups it could help normalise the practice. Young children wearing masks may be more likely to get their families to accept masks.

Psychopaths in government and psychology now have children and young people – plus all the adults – wearing masks for hours on end while clueless teachers impose the will of the psychopaths on the young they should be protecting. What the hell are parents doing?

Cult lab rats

We have some schools already imposing on students microchipped buzzers that activate when they get 'too close' to their pals in the way they do with lab rats. How apt. To the Cult and its brain-dead servants our children *are* lab rats being conditioned to be unquestioning, dehumanised slaves for the rest of their lives. Children and young people are being weaned and frightened away from the most natural human instincts including closeness and touch. I have tracked in the books over the years how schools were banning pupils from greeting each other with a hug and the whole Cult-induced Me Too movement has terrified men and boys from a relaxed and natural interaction with female friends and work colleagues to the point where many men try never to be in a room

alone with a woman that's not their partner. Airhead celebrities have as always played their virtue-signalling part in making this happen with their gross exaggeration. For every monster like Harvey Weinstein there are at least tens of thousands of men that don't treat women like that; but everyone must be branded the same and policy changed for them as well as the monster. I am going to be using the word 'dehumanise' many times in this chapter because that is what the Cult is seeking to do and it goes very deep as we shall see. Don't let them kid you that social distancing is planned to end one day. That's not the idea. We are seeing more governments and companies funding and producing wearable gadgets to keep people apart and they would not be doing that if this was meant to be short-term. A tech start-up company backed by GCHQ, the British Intelligence and military surveillance headquarters, has created a social distancing wrist sensor that alerts people when they get too close to others. The CIA has also supported tech companies developing similar devices. The wearable sensor was developed by Tended, one of a number of start-up companies supported by GCHQ (see the CIA and DARPA). The device can be worn on the wrist or as a tag on the waistband and will vibrate whenever someone wearing the device breaches social distancing and gets anywhere near natural human contact. The company had a lucky break in that it was developing a distancing sensor when the 'Covid' hoax arrived which immediately provided a potentially enormous market. How fortunate. The government in big-time Cult-controlled Ontario in Canada is investing $2.5 million in wearable contact tracing technology that 'will alert users if they may have been exposed to the Covid-19 in the workplace and will beep or vibrate if they are within six feet of another person'. Facedrive Inc., the technology company behind this, was founded in 2016 with funding from the Ontario Together Fund and obviously they, too, had a prophet on the board of directors. The human surveillance and control technology is called TraceSCAN and would be worn by the human cyborgs in places such as airports, workplaces, construction sites, care homes and … *schools*.

I emphasise schools with children and young people the prime targets. You know what is planned for society as a whole if you keep your eyes on the schools. They have always been places where the state program the next generation of slaves to be its compliant worker-ants – or Woker-ants these days; but in the mist of the 'Covid' madness they have been transformed into mind laboratories on a scale never seen before. Teachers and head teachers are just as programmed as the kids – often more so. Children are kept apart from human interaction by walk lanes, classroom distancing, staggered meal times, masks, and the rolling-out of buzzer systems. Schools are now physically laid out as a laboratory maze for lab-rats. Lunatics at a school in Anchorage, Alaska, who should be prosecuted for child abuse, took away desks and forced children to kneel (know your place) on a mat for five hours a day while wearing a mask and using their chairs as a desk. How this was supposed to impact on a 'virus' only these clinically insane people can tell you and even then it would be clap-trap. The school banned recess (interaction), art classes (creativity), and physical exercise (getting body and mind moving out of inertia). Everyone behind this outrage should be in jail or better still a mental institution. The behavioural manipulators are all for this dystopian approach to schools. Professor Susan Michie, the mind-doctor and British Communist Party member, said it was wrong to say that schools were safe. They had to be made so by 'distancing', masks and ventilation (sitting all day in the cold). I must ask this lady round for dinner on a night I know I am going to be out and not back for weeks. She probably wouldn't be able to make it, anyway, with all the visits to her own psychologist she must have block-booked.

Masking identity

I know how shocking it must be for you that a behaviour manipulator like Michie wants everyone to wear masks which have long been a feature of mind-control programs like the infamous MKUltra in the United States, but, there we are. We live and learn. I spent many years from 1996 to right across the millennium

researching mind control in detail on both sides of the Atlantic and elsewhere. I met a large number of mind-control survivors and many had been held captive in body and mind by MKUltra. MK stands for mind-control, but employs the German spelling in deference to the Nazis spirited out of Germany at the end of World War Two by Operation Paperclip in which the US authorities, with help from the Vatican, transported Nazi mind-controllers and engineers to America to continue their work. Many of them were behind the creation of NASA and they included Nazi scientist and SS officer Wernher von Braun who swapped designing V-2 rockets to bombard London with designing the Saturn V rockets that powered the NASA moon programme's Apollo craft. I think I may have mentioned that the Cult has no borders. Among Paperclip escapees was Josef Mengele, the Angel of Death in the Nazi concentration camps where he conducted mind and genetic experiments on children often using twins to provide a control twin to measure the impact of his 'work' on the other. If you want to observe the Cult mentality in all its extremes of evil then look into the life of Mengele. I have met many people who suffered mercilessly under Mengele in the United States where he operated under the name Dr Greene and became a stalwart of MKUltra programming and torture. Among his locations was the underground facility in the Mojave Desert in California called the China Lake Naval Weapons Station which is almost entirely below the surface. My books *The Biggest Secret*, *Children of the Matrix* and *The Perception Deception* have the detailed background to MKUltra.

The best-known MKUltra survivor is American Cathy O'Brien. I first met her and her late partner Mark Phillips at a conference in Colorado in 1996. Mark helped her escape and deprogram from decades of captivity in an offshoot of MKUltra known as Project Monarch in which 'sex slaves' were provided for the rich and famous including Father George Bush, Dick Cheney and the Clintons. Read Cathy and Mark's book *Trance-Formation of America* and if you are new to this you will be shocked to the core. I read it in 1996 shortly before, with the usual synchronicity of my life, I found

myself given a book table at the conference right next to hers. MKUltra never ended despite being very publicly exposed (only a small part of it) in the 1970s and continues in other guises. I am still in touch with Cathy. She contacted me during 2020 after masks became compulsory in many countries to tell me how they were used as part of MKUltra programming. I had been observing 'Covid regulations' and the relationship between authority and public for months. I saw techniques that I knew were employed on individuals in MKUltra being used on the global population. I had read many books and manuals on mind control including one called *Silent Weapons for Quiet Wars* which came to light in the 1980s and was a guide on how to perceptually program on a mass scale. 'Silent Weapons' refers to mind-control. I remembered a line from the manual as governments, medical authorities and law enforcement agencies have so obviously talked to – or rather at – the adult population since the 'Covid' hoax began as if they are children. The document said:

> If a person is spoken to by a T.V. advertiser as if he were a twelve-year-old, then, due to suggestibility, he will, with a certain probability, respond or react to that suggestion with the uncritical response of a twelve-year-old and will reach in to his economic reservoir and deliver its energy to buy that product on impulse when he passes it in the store.

That's why authority has spoken to adults like children since all this began.

Why did Michael Jackson wear masks?

Every aspect of the 'Covid' narrative has mind-control as its central theme. Cathy O'Brien wrote an article for davidicke.com about the connection between masks and mind control. Her daughter Kelly who I first met in the 1990s was born while Cathy was still held captive in MKUltra. Kelly was forced to wear a mask as part of her programming from the age of *two* to dehumanise her, target her sense of individuality and reduce the amount of oxygen her brain and body received. *Bingo*. This is the real reason for compulsory

masks, why they have been enforced en masse, and why they seek to increase the number they demand you wear. First one, then two, with one disgraceful alleged 'doctor' recommending four which is nothing less than a death sentence. Where and how often they must be worn is being expanded for the purpose of mass mind control and damaging respiratory health which they can call 'Covid-19'. Canada's government headed by the man-child Justin Trudeau, says it's fine for children of two and older to wear masks. An insane 'study' in Italy involving just 47 children concluded there was no problem for babies as young as *four months* wearing them. Even after people were 'vaccinated' they were still told to wear masks by the criminal that is Anthony Fauci. Cathy wrote that mandating masks is allowing the authorities literally to control the air we breathe which is what was done in MKUltra. You might recall how the singer Michael Jackson wore masks and there is a reason for that. He was subjected to MKUltra mind control through Project Monarch and his psyche was scrambled by these simpletons. Cathy wrote:

> In MKUltra Project Monarch mind control, Michael Jackson had to wear a mask to silence his voice so he could not reach out for help. Remember how he developed that whisper voice when he wasn't singing? Masks control the mind from the outside in, like the redefining of words is doing. By controlling what we can and cannot say for fear of being labeled racist or beaten, for example, it ultimately controls thought that drives our words and ultimately actions (or lack thereof).
>
> Likewise, a mask muffles our speech so that we are not heard, which controls voice … words … mind. This is Mind Control. Masks are an obvious mind control device, and I am disturbed so many people are complying on a global scale. Masks depersonalize while making a person feel as though they have no voice. It is a barrier to others. People who would never choose to comply but are forced to wear a mask in order to keep their job, and ultimately their family fed, are compromised. They often feel shame and are subdued. People have stopped talking with each other while media controls the narrative.

The 'no voice' theme has often become literal with train passengers told not to speak to each other in case they pass on the 'virus', singing banned for the same reason and bonkers California officials telling people riding roller coasters that they cannot shout and scream. Cathy said she heard every day from healed MKUltra survivors who cannot wear a mask without flashing back on ways

their breathing was controlled – 'from ball gags and penises to water boarding'. She said that through the years when she saw images of people in China wearing masks 'due to pollution' that it was really to control their oxygen levels. 'I knew it was as much of a population control mechanism of depersonalisation as are burkas', she said. Masks are another Chinese communist/fascist method of control that has been swept across the West as the West becomes China at lightning speed since we entered 2020.

Mask-19

There are other reasons for mandatory masks and these include destroying respiratory health to call it 'Covid-19' and stunting brain development of children and the young. Dr Margarite Griesz-Brisson MD, PhD, is a Consultant Neurologist and Neurophysiologist and the Founder and Medical Director of the London Neurology and Pain Clinic. Her CV goes down the street and round the corner. She is clearly someone who cares about people and won't parrot the propaganda. Griesz-Brisson has a PhD in pharmacology, with special interest in neurotoxicology, environmental medicine, neuroregeneration and neuroplasticity (the way the brain can change in the light of information received). She went public in October, 2020, with a passionate warning about the effects of mask-wearing laws:

> The reinhalation of our exhaled air will without a doubt create oxygen deficiency and a flooding of carbon dioxide. We know that the human brain is very sensitive to oxygen deprivation. There are nerve cells for example in the hippocampus that can't be longer than 3 minutes without oxygen – they cannot survive. The acute warning symptoms are headaches, drowsiness, dizziness, issues in concentration, slowing down of reaction time – reactions of the cognitive system.

Oh, I know, let's tell bus, truck and taxi drivers to wear them and people working machinery. How about pilots, doctors and police? Griesz-Brisson makes the important point that while the symptoms she mentions may fade as the body readjusts this does not alter the fact that people continue to operate in oxygen deficit with long list of

potential consequences. She said it was well known that neurodegenerative diseases take years or decades to develop. 'If today you forget your phone number, the breakdown in your brain would have already started 20 or 30 years ago.' She said degenerative processes in your brain are getting amplified as your oxygen deprivation continues through wearing a mask. Nerve cells in the brain are unable to divide themselves normally in these circumstances and lost nerve cells will no longer be regenerated. 'What is gone is gone.' Now consider that people like shop workers and *schoolchildren* are wearing masks for hours every day. What in the name of sanity is going to be happening to them? 'I do not wear a mask, I need my brain to think', Griesz-Brisson said, 'I want to have a clear head when I deal with my patients and not be in a carbon dioxide-induced anaesthesia'. If you are told to wear a mask anywhere ask the organisation, police, store, whatever, for their risk assessment on the dangers and negative effects on mind and body of enforcing mask-wearing. They won't have one because it has never been done not even by government. All of them must be subject to class-action lawsuits as the consequences come to light. They don't do mask risk assessments for an obvious reason. They know what the conclusions would be and independent scientific studies that *have* been done tell a horror story of consequences.

'Masks are criminal'

Dr Griesz-Brisson said that for children and adolescents, masks are an absolute no-no. They had an extremely active and adaptive immune system and their brain was incredibly active with so much to learn. 'The child's brain, or the youth's brain, is thirsting for oxygen.' The more metabolically active an organ was, the more oxygen it required; and in children and adolescents every organ was metabolically active. Griesz-Brisson said that to deprive a child's or adolescent's brain of oxygen, or to restrict it in any way, was not only dangerous to their health, it was absolutely criminal. 'Oxygen deficiency inhibits the development of the brain, and the damage that has taken place as a result CANNOT be reversed.' Mind

manipulators of MKUltra put masks on two-year-olds they wanted to neurologically rewire and you can see why. Griesz-Brisson said a child needs the brain to learn and the brain needs oxygen to function. 'We don't need a clinical study for that. This is simple, indisputable physiology.' Consciously and purposely induced oxygen deficiency was an absolutely deliberate health hazard, and an absolute medical contraindication which means that 'this drug, this therapy, this method or measure should not be used, and is not allowed to be used'. To coerce an entire population to use an absolute medical contraindication by force, she said, there had to be definite and serious reasons and the reasons must be presented to competent interdisciplinary and independent bodies to be verified and authorised. She had this warning of the consequences that were coming if mask wearing continued:

> When, in ten years, dementia is going to increase exponentially, and the younger generations couldn't reach their god-given potential, it won't help to say 'we didn't need the masks'. I know how damaging oxygen deprivation is for the brain, cardiologists know how damaging it is for the heart, pulmonologists know how damaging it is for the lungs. Oxygen deprivation damages every single organ. Where are our health departments, our health insurance, our medical associations? It would have been their duty to be vehemently against the lockdown and to stop it and stop it from the very beginning.
>
> Why do the medical boards issue punishments to doctors who give people exemptions? Does the person or the doctor seriously have to prove that oxygen deprivation harms people? What kind of medicine are our doctors and medical associations representing? Who is responsible for this crime? The ones who want to enforce it? The ones who let it happen and play along, or the ones who don't prevent it?

All of the organisations and people she mentions there either answer directly to the Cult or do whatever hierarchical levels above them tell them to do. The outcome of both is the same. 'It's not about masks, it's not about viruses, it's certainly not about your health', Griesz-Brisson said. 'It is about much, much more. I am not participating. I am not afraid.' They were taking our air to breathe and there was no unfounded medical exemption from face masks. Oxygen deprivation was dangerous for every single brain. It had to be the free decision of every human being whether they want to

wear a mask that was absolutely ineffective to protect themselves from a virus. She ended by rightly identifying where the responsibility lies for all this:

> The imperative of the hour is personal responsibility. We are responsible for what we think, not the media. We are responsible for what we do, not our superiors. We are responsible for our health, not the World Health Organization. And we are responsible for what happens in our country, not the government.

Halle-bloody-lujah.

But surgeons wear masks, right?

Independent studies of mask-wearing have produced a long list of reports detailing mental, emotional and physical dangers. What a definition of insanity to see police officers imposing mask-wearing on the public which will cumulatively damage their health while the police themselves wear masks that will cumulatively damage *their* health. It's utter madness and both public and police do this because 'the government says so' – yes a government of brain-donor idiots like UK Health Secretary Matt Hancock reading the 'follow the science' scripts of psychopathic, lunatic psychologists. The response you get from Stockholm syndrome sufferers defending the very authorities that are destroying them and their families is that 'surgeons wear masks'. This is considered the game, set and match that they must work and don't cause oxygen deficit. Well, actually, scientific studies have shown that they *do* and oxygen levels are monitored in operating theatres to compensate. Surgeons wear masks to stop spittle and such like dropping into open wounds – not to stop 'viral particles' which are so miniscule they can only be seen through an electron microscope. Holes in the masks are significantly bigger than 'viral particles' and if you sneeze or cough they will breach the mask. I watched an incredibly disingenuous 'experiment' that claimed to prove that masks work in catching 'virus' material from the mouth and nose. They did this with a slow motion camera and the mask did block big stuff which stayed inside the mask and

against the face to be breathed in or cause infections on the face as we have seen with many children. 'Viral particles', however, would never have been picked up by the camera as they came through the mask when they are far too small to be seen. The 'experiment' was therefore disingenuous *and* useless.

Studies have concluded that wearing masks in operating theatres (and thus elsewhere) make no difference to preventing infection while the opposite is true with toxic shite building up in the mask and this had led to an explosion in tooth decay and gum disease dubbed by dentists 'mask mouth'. You might have seen the Internet video of a furious American doctor urging people to take off their masks after a four-year-old patient had been rushed to hospital the night before and nearly died with a lung infection that doctors sourced to mask wearing. A study in the journal *Cancer Discovery* found that inhalation of harmful microbes can contribute to advanced stage lung cancer in adults and long-term use of masks can help breed dangerous pathogens. Microbiologists have said frequent mask wearing creates a moist environment in which microbes can grow and proliferate before entering the lungs. The Canadian Agency for Drugs and Technologies in Health, or CADTH, a Canadian national organisation that provides research and analysis to healthcare decision-makers, said this as long ago as 2013 in a report entitled 'Use of Surgical Masks in the Operating Room: A Review of the Clinical Effectiveness and Guidelines'. It said:

- No evidence was found to support the use of surgical face masks to reduce the frequency of surgical site infections
- No evidence was found on the effectiveness of wearing surgical face masks to protect staff from infectious material in the operating room.
- Guidelines recommend the use of surgical face masks by staff in the operating room to protect both operating room staff and patients (despite the lack of evidence).

We were told that the world could go back to 'normal' with the arrival of the 'vaccines'. When they came, fraudulent as they are, the story changed as I knew that it would. We are in the midst of transforming 'normal', not going back to it. Mary Ramsay, head of immunisation at Public Health England, echoed the words of US criminal Anthony Fauci who said masks and other regulations must stay no matter if people are vaccinated. The Fauci idiot continued to wear two masks – different colours so both could be clearly seen – after he *claimed* to have been vaccinated. Senator Rand Paul told Fauci in one exchange that his double-masks were 'theatre' and he was right. It's all theatre. Mary Ramsay back-tracked on the vaccine-return-to-normal theme when she said the public may need to wear masks and social-distance for years despite the jabs. 'People have got used to those lower-level restrictions now, and [they] can live with them', she said telling us what the idea has been all along. 'The vaccine does not give you a pass, even if you have had it, you must continue to follow all the guidelines' said a Public Health England statement which reneged on what we had been told before and made having the 'vaccine' irrelevant to 'normality' even by the official story. Spain's fascist government trumped everyone by passing a law mandating the wearing of masks on the beach and even when swimming in the sea. The move would have devastated what's left of the Spanish tourist industry, posed potential breathing dangers to swimmers and had Northern European sunbathers walking around with their forehead brown and the rest of their face white as a sheet. The ruling was so crazy that it had to be retracted after pressure from public and tourist industry, but it confirmed where the Cult wants to go with masks and how clinically insane authority has become. The determination to make masks permanent and hide the serious dangers to body and mind can be seen in the censorship of scientist Professor Denis Rancourt by Bill Gates-funded academic publishing website ResearchGate over his papers exposing the dangers and uselessness of masks. Rancourt said:

ResearchGate today has permanently locked my account, which I have had since 2015. Their reasons graphically show the nature of their attack against democracy, and their corruption of

science … By their obscene non-logic, a scientific review of science articles reporting on harms caused by face masks has a 'potential to cause harm'. No criticism of the psychological device (face masks) is tolerated, if the said criticism shows potential to influence public policy.

This is what happens in a fascist world.

Where are the 'greens' (again)?

Other dangers of wearing masks especially regularly relate to the inhalation of minute plastic fibres into the lungs and the deluge of discarded masks in the environment and oceans. Estimates predicted that more than 1.5 billion disposable masks will end up in the world's oceans every year polluting the water with tons of plastic and endangering marine wildlife. Studies project that humans are using 129 billion face masks each month worldwide – about three million a minute. Most are disposable and made from plastic, non-biodegradable microfibers that break down into smaller plastic particles that become widespread in ecosystems. They are littering cities, clogging sewage channels and turning up in bodies of water. I have written in other books about the immense amounts of microplastics from endless sources now being absorbed into the body. Rolf Halden, director of the Arizona State University (ASU) Biodesign Center for Environmental Health Engineering, was the senior researcher in a 2020 study that analysed 47 human tissue samples and found microplastics in all of them. 'We have detected these chemicals of plastics in every single organ that we have investigated', he said. I wrote in *The Answer* about the world being deluged with microplastics. A study by the Worldwide Fund for Nature (WWF) found that people are consuming on average every week some 2,000 tiny pieces of plastic mostly through water and also through marine life and the air. Every year humans are ingesting enough microplastics to fill a heaped dinner plate and in a life-time of 79 years it is enough to fill two large waste bins. Marco Lambertini, WWF International director general said: 'Not only are plastics polluting our oceans and waterways and killing marine life – it's in all of us and we can't escape consuming plastics,' American

geologists found tiny plastic fibres, beads and shards in rainwater samples collected from the remote slopes of the Rocky Mountain National Park near Denver, Colorado. Their report was headed: 'It is raining plastic.' Rachel Adams, senior lecturer in Biomedical Science at Cardiff Metropolitan University, said that among health consequences are internal inflammation and immune responses to a 'foreign body'. She further pointed out that microplastics become carriers of toxins including mercury, pesticides and dioxins (a known cause of cancer and reproductive and developmental problems). These toxins accumulate in the fatty tissues once they enter the body through microplastics. Now this is being compounded massively by people putting plastic on their face and throwing it away.

Workers exposed to polypropylene plastic fibres known as 'flock' have developed 'flock worker's lung' from inhaling small pieces of the flock fibres which can damage lung tissue, reduce breathing capacity and exacerbate other respiratory problems. *Now* … commonly used surgical masks have three layers of melt-blown textiles made of … polypropylene. We have billions of people putting these microplastics against their mouth, nose and face for hours at a time day after day in the form of masks. How does anyone think that will work out? I mean – what could possibly go wrong? We posted a number of scientific studies on this at davidicke.com, but when I went back to them as I was writing this book the links to the science research website where they were hosted were dead. Anything that challenges the official narrative in any way is either censored or vilified. The official narrative is so unsupportable by the evidence that only deleting the truth can protect it. A study by Chinese scientists still survived – with the usual twist which it why it was still active, I guess. Yes, they found that virtually all the masks they tested increased the daily intake of microplastic fibres, but people should still wear them because the danger from the 'virus' was worse said the crazy 'team' from the Institute of Hydrobiology in Wuhan. Scientists first discovered microplastics in lung tissue of some patients who died of lung cancer

in the 1990s. Subsequent studies have confirmed the potential health damage with the plastic degrading slowly and remaining in the lungs to accumulate in volume. Wuhan researchers used a machine simulating human breathing to establish that masks shed up to nearly 4,000 microplastic fibres in a month with reused masks producing more. Scientists said some masks are laced with toxic chemicals and a variety of compounds seriously restricted for both health and environmental reasons. They include cobalt (used in blue dye) and formaldehyde known to cause watery eyes, burning sensations in the eyes, nose, and throat, plus coughing, wheezing and nausea. No – that must be 'Covid-19'.

Mask 'worms'

There is another and potentially even more sinister content of masks. Mostly new masks of different makes filmed under a microscope around the world have been found to contain strange black fibres or 'worms' that appear to move or 'crawl' by themselves and react to heat and water. The nearest I have seen to them are the self-replicating fibres that are pulled out through the skin of those suffering from Morgellons disease which has been connected to the phenomena of 'chemtrails' which I will bring into the story later on. Morgellons fibres continue to grow outside the body and have a form of artificial intelligence. Black 'worm' fibres in masks have that kind of feel to them and there is a nanotechnology technique called 'worm micelles' which carry and release drugs or anything else you want to deliver to the body. For sure the suppression of humanity by mind altering drugs is the Cult agenda big time and the more excuses they can find to gain access to the body the more opportunities there are to make that happen whether through 'vaccines' or masks pushed against the mouth and nose for hours on end.

So let us summarise the pros and cons of masks:

Against masks: Breathing in your own carbon dioxide; depriving the body and brain of sufficient oxygen; build-up of toxins in the mask that can be breathed into the lungs and cause rashes on the face and 'mask-mouth'; breathing microplastic fibres and toxic chemicals into the lungs; dehumanisation and deleting individualisation by literally making people faceless; destroying human emotional interaction through facial expression and deleting parental connection with their babies which look for guidance to their facial expression.

For masks: They don't protect you from a 'virus' that doesn't exist and even if it did 'viral' particles are so minute they are smaller than the holes in the mask.

Governments, police, supermarkets, businesses, transport companies, and all the rest who seek to impose masks have done no risk assessment on their consequences for health and psychology and are now open to group lawsuits when the impact becomes clear with a cumulative epidemic of respiratory and other disease. Authorities will try to exploit these effects and hide the real cause by dubbing them 'Covid-19'. Can you imagine setting out to force the population to wear health-destroying masks without doing any assessment of the risks? It is criminal and it is evil, but then how many people targeted in this way, who see their children told to wear them all day at school, have asked for a risk assessment? Billions can't be imposed upon by the few unless the billions allow it. Oh, yes, with just a tinge of irony, 85 percent of all masks made worldwide come from *China*.

Wash your hands in toxic shite

'Covid' rules include the use of toxic sanitisers and again the health consequences of constantly applying toxins to be absorbed through the skin is obvious to any level of Renegade Mind. America's Food and Drug Administration (FDA) said that sanitisers are drugs and issued a warning about 75 dangerous brands which contain

methanol used in antifreeze and can cause death, kidney damage and blindness. The FDA circulated the following warning even for those brands that it claims to be safe:

> Store hand sanitizer out of the reach of pets and children, and children should use it only with adult supervision. Do not drink hand sanitizer. This is particularly important for young children, especially toddlers, who may be attracted by the pleasant smell or brightly colored bottles of hand sanitizer.
>
> Drinking even a small amount of hand sanitizer can cause alcohol poisoning in children. (However, there is no need to be concerned if your children eat with or lick their hands after using hand sanitizer.) During this coronavirus pandemic, poison control centers have had an increase in calls about accidental ingestion of hand sanitizer, so it is important that adults monitor young children's use.
>
> Do not allow pets to swallow hand sanitizer. If you think your pet has eaten something potentially dangerous, call your veterinarian or a pet poison control center right away. Hand sanitizer is flammable and should be stored away from heat and flames. When using hand sanitizer, rub your hands until they feel completely dry before performing activities that may involve heat, sparks, static electricity, or open flames.

There you go, perfectly safe, then, and that's without even a mention of the toxins absorbed through the skin. Come on kids – sanitise your hands everywhere you go. It will save you from the 'virus'. Put all these elements together of the 'Covid' normal and see how much health and psychology is being cumulatively damaged, even devastated, to 'protect your health'. Makes sense, right? They are only imposing these things because they care, right? *Right?*

Submitting to insanity

Psychological reframing of the population goes very deep and is done in many less obvious ways. I hear people say how contradictory and crazy 'Covid' rules are and how they are ever changing. This is explained away by dismissing those involved as idiots. It is a big mistake. The Cult is delighted if its cold calculation is perceived as incompetence and idiocy when it is anything but. Oh, yes, there are idiots within the system – lots of them – but they are *administering* the Cult agenda, mostly unknowingly. They are not deciding and dictating it. The bulwark against tyranny is self-

respect, always has been, always will be. It is self-respect that has broken every tyranny in history. By its very nature self-respect will not bow to oppression and its perpetrators. There is so little self-respect that it's always the few that overturn dictators. Many may eventually follow, but the few with the iron spines (self-respect) kick it off and generate the momentum. The Cult targets self-respect in the knowledge that once this has gone only submission remains. Crazy, contradictory, ever-changing 'Covid' rules are systematically applied by psychologists to delete self-respect. They *want* you to see that the rules make no sense. It is one thing to decide to do something when *you* have made the choice based on evidence and logic. You still retain your self-respect. It is quite another when you can see what you are being told to do is insane, ridiculous and makes no sense, and *yet you still do it*. Your self-respect is extinguished and this has been happening as ever more obviously stupid and nonsensical things have been demanded and the great majority have complied even when they can see they are stupid and nonsensical.

People walk around in face-nappies knowing they are damaging their health and make no difference to a 'virus'. They do it in fear of not doing it. I know it's daft, but I'll do it anyway. When that happens something dies inside of you and submissive reframing has begun. Next there's a need to hide from yourself that you have conceded your self-respect and you convince yourself that you have not really submitted to fear and intimidation. You begin to believe that you are complying with craziness because it's the right thing to do. When first you concede your self-respect of 2+2 = 4 to 2+2 = 5 you *know* you are compromising your self-respect. Gradually to avoid facing that fact you begin to *believe* that 2+2=5. You have been reframed and I have been watching this process happening in the human psyche on an industrial scale. The Cult is working to break your spirit and one of its major tools in that war is humiliation. I read how former American soldier Bradley Manning (later Chelsea Manning after a sex-change) was treated after being jailed for supplying WikiLeaks with documents exposing the enormity of

government and elite mendacity. Manning was isolated in solitary confinement for eight months, put under 24-hour surveillance, forced to hand over clothing before going to bed, and stand naked for every roll call. This is systematic humiliation. The introduction of anal swab 'Covid' tests in China has been done for the same reason to delete self-respect and induce compliant submission. Anal swabs are mandatory for incoming passengers in parts of China and American diplomats have said they were forced to undergo the indignity which would have been calculated humiliation by the Cult-owned Chinese government that has America in its sights.

Government-people: An abusive relationship

Spirit-breaking psychological techniques include giving people hope and apparent respite from tyranny only to take it away again. This happened in the UK during Christmas, 2020, when the psycho-psychologists and their political lackeys announced an easing of restrictions over the holiday only to reimpose them almost immediately on the basis of yet another lie. There is a big psychological difference between getting used to oppression and being given hope of relief only to have that dashed. Psychologists know this and we have seen the technique used repeatedly. Then there is traumatising people before you introduce more extreme regulations that require compliance. A perfect case was the announcement by the dark and sinister Whitty and Vallance in the UK that 'new data' predicted that 4,000 could die every day over the winter of 2020/2021 if we did not lockdown again. I think they call it lying and after traumatising people with that claim out came Jackboot Johnson the next day with new curbs on human freedom. Psychologists know that a frightened and traumatised mind becomes suggestable to submission and behaviour reframing. Underpinning all this has been to make people fearful and suspicious of each other and see themselves as a potential danger to others. In league with deleted self-respect you have the perfect psychological recipe for self-loathing. The relationship between authority and public is now demonstrably the same as that of

subservience to an abusive partner. These are signs of an abusive relationship explained by psychologist Leslie Becker-Phelps:

Psychological and emotional abuse: Undermining a partner's self-worth with verbal attacks, name-calling, and belittling. Humiliating the partner in public, unjustly accusing them of having an affair, or interrogating them about their every behavior. Keeping partner confused or off balance by saying they were just kidding or blaming the partner for 'making' them act this way … Feigning in public that they care while turning against them in private. This leads to victims frequently feeling confused, incompetent, unworthy, hopeless, and chronically self-doubting. [Apply these techniques to how governments have treated the population since New Year, 2020, and the parallels are obvious.]

Physical abuse: The abuser might physically harm their partner in a range of ways, such as grabbing, hitting, punching, or shoving them. They might throw objects at them or harm them with a weapon. [Observe the physical harm imposed by masks, lockdown, and so on.]

Threats and intimidation: One way abusers keep their partners in line is by instilling fear. They might be verbally threatening, or give threatening looks or gestures. Abusers often make it known that they are tracking their partner's every move. They might destroy their partner's possessions, threaten to harm them, or threaten to harm their family members. Not surprisingly, victims of this abuse often feel anxiety, fear, and panic. [No words necessary.]

Isolation: Abusers often limit their partner's activities, forbidding them to talk or interact with friends or family. They might limit access to a car or even turn off their phone. All of this might be done by physically holding them against their will, but is often accomplished through psychological abuse and intimidation. The more isolated a person feels, the fewer resources they have to help gain perspective on their situation and to escape from it. [No words necessary.]

Economic abuse: Abusers often make their partners beholden to them for money by controlling access to funds of any kind. They might prevent their partner from getting a job or withhold access to money they earn from a job. This creates financial dependency that makes leaving the relationship very difficult. [See destruction of livelihoods and the proposed meagre 'guaranteed income' so long as you do whatever you are told.]

Using children: An abuser might disparage their partner's parenting skills, tell their children lies about their partner, threaten to take custody of their children, or threaten to harm their children. These tactics instil fear and often elicit compliance. [See reframed social service mafia and how children are being mercilessly abused by the state over 'Covid' while their parents look on too frightened to do anything.]

A further recurring trait in an abusive relationship is the abused blaming themselves for their abuse and making excuses for the abuser. We have the public blaming each other for lockdown abuse by government and many making excuses for the government while attacking those who challenge the government. How often we have heard authorities say that rules are being imposed or reimposed only because people have refused to 'behave' and follow the rules. We don't want to do it – it's *you*.

Renegade Minds are an antidote to all of these things. They will never concede their self-respect no matter what the circumstances. Even when apparent humiliation is heaped upon them they laugh in its face and reflect back the humiliation on the abuser where it belongs. Renegade Minds will never wear masks they know are only imposed to humiliate, suppress and damage both physically and psychologically. Consequences will take care of themselves and they will never break their spirit or cause them to concede to tyranny. UK newspaper columnist Peter Hitchens was one of the few in the mainstream media to speak out against lockdowns and forced vaccinations. He then announced he had taken the jab. He wanted to see family members abroad and he believed vaccine passports were inevitable even though they had not yet been introduced. Hitchens

has a questioning and critical mind, but not a Renegade one. If he had no amount of pressure would have made him concede. Hitchens excused his action by saying that the battle has been lost. Renegade Minds never accept defeat when freedom is at stake and even if they are the last one standing the self-respect of not submitting to tyranny is more important than any outcome or any consequence.

That's why Renegade Minds are the only minds that ever changed anything worth changing.

CHAPTER EIGHT

'Reframing' insanity

Insanity is relative. It depends on who has who locked in what cage
Ray Bradbury

'Reframing' a mind means simply to change its perception and behaviour. This can be done subconsciously to such an extent that subjects have no idea they have been 'reframed' while to any observer changes in behaviour and attitudes are obvious.

Human society is being reframed on a ginormous scale since the start of 2020 and here we have the reason why psychologists rather than doctors have been calling the shots. Ask most people who have succumbed to 'Covid' reframing if they have changed and most will say 'no'; but they *have* and fundamentally. The Cult's long-game has been preparing for these times since way back and crucial to that has been to prepare both population and officialdom mentally and emotionally. To use the mind-control parlance they had to reframe the population with a mentality that would submit to fascism and reframe those in government and law enforcement to impose fascism or at least go along with it. The result has been the fact-deleted mindlessness of 'Wokeness' and officialdom that has either enthusiastically or unquestioningly imposed global tyranny demanded by reframed politicians on behalf of psychopathic and deeply evil cultists. 'Cognitive reframing' identifies and challenges the way someone sees the world in the form of situations, experiences and emotions and then restructures those perceptions to view the same set of circumstances in a different way. This can have

benefits if the attitudes are personally destructive while on the other side it has the potential for individual and collective mind control which the subject has no idea has even happened.

Cognitive therapy was developed in the 1960s by Aaron T. Beck who was born in Rhode Island in 1921 as the son of Jewish immigrants from the Ukraine. He became interested in the techniques as a treatment for depression. Beck's daughter Judith S. Beck is prominent in the same field and they founded the Beck Institute for Cognitive Behavior Therapy in Philadelphia in 1994. Cognitive reframing, however, began to be used worldwide by those with a very dark agenda. The Cult reframes politicians to change their attitudes and actions until they are completely at odds with what they once appeared to stand for. The same has been happening to government administrators at all levels, law enforcement, military and the human population. Cultists love mind control for two main reasons: It allows them to control what people think, do and say to secure agenda advancement and, by definition, it calms their legendary insecurity and fear of the unexpected. I have studied mind control since the time I travelled America in 1996. I may have been talking to next to no one in terms of an audience in those years, but my goodness did I gather a phenomenal amount of information and knowledge about so many things including the techniques of mind control. I have described this in detail in other books going back to *The Biggest Secret* in 1998. I met a very large number of people recovering from MKUltra and its offshoots and successors and I began to see how these same techniques were being used on the population in general. This was never more obvious than since the 'Covid' hoax began.

Reframing the enforcers

I have observed over the last two decades and more the very clear transformation in the dynamic between the police, officialdom and the public. I tracked this in the books as the relationship mutated from one of serving the public to seeing them as almost the enemy and certainly a lower caste. There has always been a class divide

based on income and always been some psychopathic, corrupt, and big-I-am police officers. This was different. Wholesale change was unfolding in the collective dynamic; it was less about money and far more about position and perceived power. An us-and-them was emerging. Noses were lifted skyward by government administration and law enforcement and their attitude to the public they were *supposed* to be serving changed to one of increasing contempt, superiority and control. The transformation was so clear and widespread that it had to be planned. Collective attitudes and dynamics do not change naturally and organically that quickly on that scale. I then came across an organisation in Britain called Common Purpose created in the late 1980s by Julia Middleton who would work in the office of Deputy Prime Minister John Prescott during the long and disastrous premiership of war criminal Tony Blair. When Blair speaks the Cult is speaking and the man should have been in jail a long time ago. Common Purpose proclaims itself to be one of the biggest 'leadership development' organisations in the world while functioning as a *charity* with all the financial benefits which come from that. It hosts 'leadership development' courses and programmes all over the world and claims to have 'brought together' what it calls 'leaders' from more than 100 countries on six continents. The modus operandi of Common Purpose can be compared with the work of the UK government's reframing network that includes the Behavioural Insights Team 'nudge unit' and 'Covid' reframing specialists at SPI-B. WikiLeaks described Common Purpose long ago as 'a hidden virus in our government and schools' which is unknown to the general public: 'It recruits and trains "leaders" to be loyal to the directives of Common Purpose and the EU, instead of to their own departments, which they then undermine or subvert, the NHS [National Health Service] being an example.' This is a vital point to understand the 'Covid' hoax. The NHS, and its equivalent around the world, has been utterly reframed in terms of administrators and much of the medical personnel with the transformation underpinned by recruitment policies. The outcome has been the criminal and psychopathic behaviour of the

NHS over 'Covid' and we have seen the same in every other major country. WikiLeaks said Common Purpose trainees are 'learning to rule without regard to democracy' and to usher in a police state (current events explained). Common Purpose operated like a 'glue' and had members in the NHS, BBC, police, legal profession, church, many of Britain's 7,000 quangos, local councils, the Civil Service, government ministries and Parliament, and controlled many RDA's (Regional Development Agencies). Here we have one answer for how and why British institutions and their like in other countries have changed so negatively in relation to the public. This further explains how and why the beyond-disgraceful reframed BBC has become a propaganda arm of 'Covid' fascism. They are all part of a network pursuing the same goal.

By 2019 Common Purpose was quoting a figure of 85,000 'leaders' that had attended its programmes. These 'students' of all ages are known as Common Purpose 'graduates' and they consist of government, state and local government officials and administrators, police chiefs and officers, and a whole range of others operating within the national, local and global establishment. Cressida Dick, Commissioner of the London Metropolitan Police, is the Common Purpose graduate who was the 'Gold Commander' that oversaw what can only be described as the murder of Brazilian electrician Jean Charles de Menezes in 2005. He was held down by psychopathic police and shot seven times in the head by a psychopathic lunatic after being mistaken for a terrorist when he was just a bloke going about his day. Dick authorised officers to pursue and keep surveillance on de Menezes and ordered that he be stopped from entering the underground train system. Police psychopaths took her at her word clearly. She was 'disciplined' for this outrage by being *promoted* – eventually to the top of the 'Met' police where she has been a disaster. Many Chief Constables controlling the police in different parts of the UK are and have been Common Purpose graduates. I have heard the 'graduate' network described as a sort of Mafia or secret society operating within the fabric of government at all levels pursuing a collective policy

ingrained at Common Purpose training events. Founder Julia Middleton herself has said:

> Locally and internationally, Common Purpose graduates will be 'lighting small fires' to create change in their organisations and communities … The Common Purpose effect is best illustrated by the many stories of small changes brought about by leaders, who themselves have changed.

A Common Purpose mission statement declared:

> Common Purpose aims to improve the way society works by expanding the vision, decision-making ability and influence of all kinds of leaders. The organisation runs a variety of educational programmes for leaders of all ages, backgrounds and sectors, in order to provide them with the inspirational, information and opportunities they need to change the world.

Yes, but into what? Since 2020 the answer has become clear.

NLP and the Delphi technique

Common Purpose would seem to be a perfect name or would common programming be better? One of the foundation methods of reaching 'consensus' (group think) is by setting the agenda theme and then encouraging, cajoling or pressuring everyone to agree a 'consensus' in line with the core theme promoted by Common Purpose. The methodology involves the 'Delphi technique', or an adaption of it, in which opinions are expressed that are summarised by a 'facilitator or change agent' at each stage. Participants are 'encouraged' to modify their views in the light of what others have said. Stage by stage the former individual opinions are merged into group consensus which just happens to be what Common Purpose wants them to believe. A key part of this is to marginalise anyone refusing to concede to group think and turn the group against them to apply pressure to conform. We are seeing this very technique used on the general population to make 'Covid' group-thinkers hostile to those who have seen through the bullshit. People can be reframed by using perception manipulation methods such as Neuro-Linguistic Programming (NLP) in which you change perception with the use of

carefully constructed language. An NLP website described the technique this way:

> … A method of influencing brain behaviour (the 'neuro' part of the phrase) through the use of language (the 'linguistic' part) and other types of communication to enable a person to 'recode' the way the brain responds to stimuli (that's the 'programming') and manifest new and better behaviours. Neuro-Linguistic Programming often incorporates hypnosis and self-hypnosis to help achieve the change (or 'programming') that is wanted.

British alternative media operation UKColumn has done very detailed research into Common Purpose over a long period. I quoted co-founder and former naval officer Brian Gerrish in my book *Remember Who You Are*, published in 2011, as saying the following years before current times:

> It is interesting that many of the mothers who have had children taken by the State speak of the Social Services people being icily cool, emotionless and, as two ladies said in slightly different words, '… like little robots'. We know that NLP is cumulative, so people can be given small imperceptible doses of NLP in a course here, another in a few months, next year etc. In this way, major changes are accrued in their personality, but the day by day change is almost unnoticeable.

In these and other ways 'graduates' have had their perceptions uniformly reframed and they return to their roles in the institutions of government, law enforcement, legal profession, military, 'education', the UK National Health Service and the whole swathe of the establishment structure to pursue a common agenda preparing for the 'post-industrial', 'post-democratic' society. I say 'preparing' but we are now there. 'Post-industrial' is code for the Great Reset and 'post-democratic' is 'Covid' fascism. UKColumn has spoken to partners of those who have attended Common Purpose 'training'. They have described how personalities and attitudes of 'graduates' changed very noticeably for the worse by the time they had completed the course. They had been 'reframed' and told they are the 'leaders' – the special ones – who know better than the population. There has also been the very demonstrable recruitment of psychopaths and narcissists into government administration at all

levels and law enforcement. If you want psychopathy hire psychopaths and you get a simple cause and effect. If you want administrators, police officers and 'leaders' to perceive the public as lesser beings who don't matter then employ narcissists. These personalities are identified using 'psychometrics' that identifies knowledge, abilities, attitudes and personality traits, mostly through carefully-designed questionnaires and tests. As this policy has passed through the decades we have had power-crazy, power-trippers appointed into law enforcement, security and government administration in preparation for current times and the dynamic between public and law enforcement/officialdom has been transformed. UKColumn's Brian Gerrish said of the narcissistic personality:

> Their love of themselves and power automatically means that they will crush others who get in their way. I received a major piece of the puzzle when a friend pointed out that when they made public officials re-apply for their own jobs several years ago they were also required to do psychometric tests. This was undoubtedly the start of the screening process to get 'their' sort of people in post.

How obvious that has been since 2020 although it was clear what was happening long before if people paid attention to the changing public-establishment dynamic.

Change agents

At the centre of events in 'Covid' Britain is the National Health Service (NHS) which has behaved disgracefully in slavishly following the Cult agenda. The NHS management structure is awash with Common Purpose graduates or 'change agents' working to a common cause. Helen Bevan, a Chief of Service Transformation at the NHS Institute for Innovation and Improvement, co-authored a document called 'Towards a million change agents, a review of the social movements literature: implications for large scale change in the NHS'. The document compared a project management approach to that of change and social movements where 'people change

themselves and each other – peer to peer'. Two definitions given for a 'social movement' were:

A group of people who consciously attempt to build a radically new social order; involves people of a broad range of social backgrounds; and deploys politically confrontational and socially disruptive tactics – Cyrus Zirakzadeh 1997

Collective challenges, based on common purposes and social solidarities, in sustained interaction with elites, opponents, and authorities – Sidney Tarrow 1994

Helen Bevan wrote another NHS document in which she defined 'framing' as 'the process by which leaders construct, articulate and put across their message in a powerful and compelling way in order to win people to their cause and call them to action'. I think I could come up with another definition that would be rather more accurate. The National Health Service and institutions of Britain and the wider world have been taken over by reframed 'change agents' and that includes everything from the United Nations to national governments, local councils and social services which have been kidnapping children from loving parents on an extraordinary and gathering scale on the road to the end of parenthood altogether. Children from loving homes are stolen and kidnapped by the state and put into the 'care' (inversion) of the local authority through council homes, foster parents and forced adoption. At the same time children are allowed to be abused without response while many are under council 'care'. UKColumn highlighted the Common Purpose connection between South Yorkshire Police and Rotherham council officers in the case of the scandal in that area of the sexual exploitation of children to which the authorities turned not one blind eye, but both:

We were alarmed to discover that the Chief Executive, the Strategic Director of Children and Young People's Services, the Manager for the Local Strategic Partnership, the Community Cohesion Manager, the Cabinet Member for Cohesion, the Chief Constable and his predecessor had all attended Leadership training courses provided by the pseudo-charity Common Purpose.

Once 'change agents' have secured positions of hire and fire within any organisation things start to move very quickly. Personnel are then hired and fired on the basis of whether they will work towards the agenda the change agent represents. If they do they are rapidly promoted even though they may be incompetent. Those more qualified and skilled who are pre-Common Purpose 'old school' see their careers stall and even disappear. This has been happening for decades in every institution of state, police, 'health' and social services and all of them have been transformed as a result in their attitudes to their jobs and the public. Medical professions, including nursing, which were once vocations for the caring now employ many cold, callous and couldn't give a shit personality types. The UKColumn investigation concluded:

By blurring the boundaries between people, professions, public and private sectors, responsibility and accountability, Common Purpose encourages 'graduates' to believe that as new selected leaders, they can work together, outside of the established political and social structures, to achieve a paradigm shift or CHANGE – so called 'Leading Beyond Authority'. In doing so, the allegiance of the individual becomes 'reframed' on CP colleagues and their NETWORK.

Reframing the Face-Nappies

Nowhere has this process been more obvious than in the police where recruitment of psychopaths and development of unquestioning mind-controlled group-thinkers have transformed law enforcement into a politically-correct 'Woke' joke and a travesty of what should be public service. Today they wear their face-nappies like good little gofers and enforce 'Covid' rules which are fascism under another name. Alongside the specifically-recruited psychopaths we have software minds incapable of free thought. Brian Gerrish again:

An example is the policeman who would not get on a bike for a press photo because he had not done the cycling proficiency course. Normal people say this is political correctness gone mad. Nothing could be further from the truth. The policeman has been reframed, and in his reality it is perfect common sense not to get on the bike 'because he hasn't done the cycling course'.

Another example of this is where the police would not rescue a boy from a pond until they had taken advice from above on the 'risk assessment'. A normal person would have arrived, perhaps thought of the risk for a moment, and dived in. To the police now 'reframed', they followed 'normal' procedure.

There are shocking cases of reframed ambulance crews doing the same. Sheer unthinking stupidity of London Face-Nappies headed by Common Purpose graduate Cressida Dick can be seen in their behaviour at a vigil in March, 2021, for a murdered woman, Sarah Everard. A police officer had been charged with the crime. Anyone with a brain would have left the vigil alone in the circumstances. Instead they 'manhandled' women to stop them breaking 'Covid rules' to betray classic reframing. Minds in the thrall of perception control have no capacity for seeing a situation on its merits and acting accordingly. 'Rules is rules' is their only mind-set. My father used to say that rules and regulations are for the guidance of the intelligent and the blind obedience of the idiot. Most of the intelligent, decent, coppers have gone leaving only the other kind and a few old school for whom the job must be a daily nightmare. The combination of psychopaths and rule-book software minds has been clearly on public display in the 'Covid' era with automaton robots in uniform imposing fascistic 'Covid' regulations on the population without any personal initiative or judging situations on their merits. There are thousands of examples around the world, but I'll make my point with the infamous Derbyshire police in the English East Midlands – the ones who think pouring dye into beauty spots and using drones to track people walking in the countryside away from anyone is called 'policing'. To them there are rules decreed by the government which they have to enforce and in their bewildered state a group gathering in a closed space and someone walking alone in the countryside are the same thing. It is beyond idiocy and enters the realm of clinical insanity.

Police officers in Derbyshire said they were 'horrified' – *horrified* – to find 15 to 20 'irresponsible' kids playing a football match at a closed leisure centre 'in breach of coronavirus restrictions'. When they saw the police the kids ran away leaving their belongings behind and the reframed men and women of Derbyshire police were seeking to establish their identities with a view to fining their parents. The most natural thing for youngsters to do – kicking a ball about – is turned into a criminal activity and enforced by the moronic software programs of Derbyshire police. You find the same mentality in every country. These barely conscious 'horrified' officers said they had to take action because 'we need to ensure these rules are being followed' and 'it is of the utmost importance that you ensure your children are following the rules and regulations for Covid-19'. Had any of them done ten seconds of research to see if this parroting of their masters' script could be supported by any evidence? Nope. Reframed people don't think – others think for them and that's the whole idea of reframing. I have seen police officers one after the other repeating without question word for word what officialdom tells them just as I have seen great swathes of the public doing the same. Ask either for 'their' opinion and out spews what they have been told to think by the official narrative. Police and public may seem to be in different groups, but their mentality is the same. Most people do whatever they are told in fear not doing so or because they believe what officialdom tells them; almost the entirety of the police do what they are told for the same reason. Ultimately it's the tiny inner core of the global Cult that's telling both what to do.

So Derbyshire police were 'horrified'. Oh, really? Why did they think those kids were playing football? It was to relieve the psychological consequences of lockdown and being denied human contact with their friends and interaction, touch and discourse vital to human psychological health. Being denied this month after month has dismantled the psyche of many children and young people as depression and suicide have exploded. Were Derbyshire police *horrified by that*? Are you kidding? Reframed people don't have those

mental and emotional processes that can see how the impact on the psychological health of youngsters is far more dangerous than any 'virus' even if you take the mendacious official figures to be true. The reframed are told (programmed) how to act and so they do. The Derbyshire Chief Constable in the first period of lockdown when the black dye and drones nonsense was going on was Peter Goodman. He was the man who severed the connection between his force and the Derbyshire Constabulary *Male Voice* Choir when he decided that it was not inclusive enough to allow women to join. The fact it was a male voice choir making a particular sound produced by male voices seemed to elude a guy who terrifyingly ran policing in Derbyshire. He retired weeks after his force was condemned as disgraceful by former Supreme Court Justice Jonathan Sumption for their behaviour over extreme lockdown impositions. Goodman was replaced by his deputy Rachel Swann who was in charge when her officers were 'horrified'. The police statement over the boys committing the hanging-offence of playing football included the line about the youngsters being 'irresponsible in the times we are all living through' missing the point that the real relevance of the 'times we are all living through' is the imposition of fascism enforced by psychopaths and reframed minds of police officers playing such a vital part in establishing the fascist tyranny that their own children and grandchildren will have to live in their entire lives. As a definition of insanity that is hard to beat although it might be run close by imposing masks on people that can have a serious effect on their health while wearing a face nappy all day themselves. Once again public and police do it for the same reason – the authorities tell them to and who are they to have the self-respect to say no?

Wokers in uniform

How reframed do you have to be to arrest a *six-year-old* and take him to court for *picking a flower* while waiting for a bus? Brain dead police and officialdom did just that in North Carolina where criminal proceedings happen regularly for children under nine. Attorney Julie Boyer gave the six-year-old crayons and a colouring book

during the 'flower' hearing while the 'adults' decided his fate. County Chief District Court Judge Jay Corpening asked: 'Should a child that believes in Santa Claus, the Easter Bunny and the tooth fairy be making life-altering decisions?' Well, of course not, but common sense has no meaning when you have a common purpose and a reframed mind. Treating children in this way, and police operating in American schools, is all part of the psychological preparation for children to accept a police state as normal all their adult lives. The same goes for all the cameras and biometric tracking technology in schools. Police training is focused on reframing them as snowflake Wokers and this is happening in the military. Pentagon top brass said that 'training sessions on extremism' were needed for troops who asked why they were so focused on the Capitol Building riot when Black Lives Matter riots were ignored. What's the difference between them some apparently and rightly asked. Actually, there is a difference. Five people died in the Capitol riot, only one through violence, and that was a police officer shooting an unarmed protestor. BLM riots killed at least 25 people and cost billions. Asking the question prompted the psychopaths and reframed minds that run the Pentagon to say that more 'education' (programming) was needed. Troop training is all based on psychological programming to make them fodder for the Cult – 'Military men are just dumb, stupid animals to be used as pawns in foreign policy' as Cult-to-his-DNA former Secretary of State Henry Kissinger famously said. Governments see the police in similar terms and it's time for those among them who can see this to defend the people and stop being enforcers of the Cult agenda upon the people.

The US military, like the country itself, is being targeted for destruction through a long list of Woke impositions. Cult-owned gaga 'President' Biden signed an executive order when he took office to allow taxpayer money to pay for transgender surgery for active military personnel and veterans. Are you a man soldier? No, I'm a LGBTQIA+ with a hint of Skoliosexual and Spectrasexual. Oh, good man. Bad choice of words you bigot. The Pentagon announced in March, 2021, the appointment of the first 'diversity and inclusion

officer' for US Special Forces. Richard Torres-Estrada arrived with the publication of a 'D&I Strategic Plan which will guide the enterprise-wide effort to institutionalize and sustain D&I'. If you think a Special Forces 'Strategic Plan' should have something to do with defending America you haven't been paying attention. Defending Woke is now the military's new role. Torres-Estrada has posted images comparing Donald Trump with Adolf Hitler and we can expect no bias from him as a representative of the supposedly non-political Pentagon. Cable news host Tucker Carlson said: 'The Pentagon is now the Yale faculty lounge but with cruise missiles.' Meanwhile Secretary of Defense Lloyd Austin, a board member of weapons-maker Raytheon with stock and compensation interests in October, 2020, worth $1.4 million, said he was purging the military of the 'enemy within' – anyone who isn't Woke and supports Donald Trump. Austin refers to his targets as 'racist extremists' while in true Woke fashion being himself a racist extremist. Pentagon documents pledge to 'eradicate, eliminate and conquer all forms of racism, sexism and homophobia'. The definitions of these are decided by 'diversity and inclusion committees' peopled by those who see racism, sexism and homophobia in every situation and opinion. Woke (the Cult) is dismantling the US military and purging testosterone as China expands its military and gives its troops 'masculinity training'. How do we think that is going to end when this is all Cult coordinated? The US military, like the British military, is controlled by Woke and spineless top brass who just go along with it out of personal career interests.

'Woke' means fast asleep

Mind control and perception manipulation techniques used on individuals to create group-think have been unleashed on the global population in general. As a result many have no capacity to see the obvious fascist agenda being installed all around them or what 'Covid' is really all about. Their brains are firewalled like a computer system not to process certain concepts, thoughts and realisations that are bad for the Cult. The young are most targeted as the adults they

will be when the whole fascist global state is planned to be fully implemented. They need to be prepared for total compliance to eliminate all pushback from entire generations. The Cult has been pouring billions into taking complete control of 'education' from schools to universities via its operatives and corporations and not least Bill Gates as always. The plan has been to transform 'education' institutions into programming centres for the mentality of 'Woke'. James McConnell, professor of psychology at the University of Michigan, wrote in *Psychology Today* in 1970:

> The day has come when we can combine sensory deprivation with drugs, hypnosis, and astute manipulation of reward and punishment, to gain almost absolute control over an individual's behaviour. It should then be possible to achieve a very rapid and highly effective type of brainwashing that would allow us to make dramatic changes in a person's behaviour and personality ...
>
> … We should reshape society so that we all would be trained from birth to want to do what society wants us to do. We have the techniques to do it... no-one owns his own personality you acquired, and there's no reason to believe you should have the right to refuse to acquire a new personality if your old one is anti-social.

This was the potential for mass brainwashing in 1970 and the mentality there displayed captures the arrogant psychopathy that drives it forward. I emphasise that not all young people have succumbed to Woke programming and those that haven't are incredibly impressive people given that today's young are the most perceptually-targeted generations in history with all the technology now involved. Vast swathes of the young generations, however, have fallen into the spell – and that's what it is – of Woke. The Woke mentality and perceptual program is founded on *inversion* and you will appreciate later why that is so significant. Everything with Woke is inverted and the opposite of what it is claimed to be. Woke was a term used in African-American culture from the 1900s and referred to an awareness of social and racial justice. This is not the meaning of the modern version or 'New Woke' as I call it in *The Answer*. Oh, no, Woke today means something very different no matter how much Wokers may seek to hide that and insist Old Woke and New

Woke are the same. See if you find any 'awareness of social justice' here in the modern variety:

- Woke demands 'inclusivity' while excluding anyone with a different opinion and calls for mass censorship to silence other views.

- Woke claims to stand against oppression when imposing oppression is the foundation of all that it does. It is the driver of political correctness which is nothing more than a Cult invention to manipulate the population to silence itself.

- Woke believes itself to be 'liberal' while pursuing a global society that can only be described as fascist (see 'anti-fascist' fascist Antifa).

- Woke calls for 'social justice' while spreading injustice wherever it goes against the common 'enemy' which can be easily identified as a differing view.

- Woke is supposed to be a metaphor for 'awake' when it is solid-gold asleep and deep in a Cult-induced coma that meets the criteria for 'off with the fairies'.

I state these points as obvious facts if people only care to look. I don't do this with a sense of condemnation. We need to appreciate that the onslaught of perceptual programming on the young has been incessant and merciless. I can understand why so many have been reframed, or, given their youth, framed from the start to see the world as the Cult demands. The Cult has had access to their minds day after day in its 'education' system for their entire formative years. Perception is formed from information received and the Cult-created system is a life-long download of information delivered to elicit a particular perception, thus behaviour. The more this has expanded into still new extremes in recent decades and ever-increasing censorship has deleted other opinions and information why wouldn't that lead to a perceptual reframing on a mass scale? I

have described already cradle-to-grave programming and in more recent times the targeting of young minds from birth to adulthood has entered the stratosphere. This has taken the form of skewing what is 'taught' to fit the Cult agenda and the omnipresent techniques of group-think to isolate non-believers and pressure them into line. There has always been a tendency to follow the herd, but we really are in a new world now in relation to that. We have parents who can see the 'Covid' hoax told by their children not to stop them wearing masks at school, being 'Covid' tested or having the 'vaccine' in fear of the peer-pressure consequences of being different. What is 'peer-pressure' if not pressure to conform to group-think? Renegade Minds never group-think and always retain a set of perceptions that are unique to them. Group-think is always underpinned by consequences for not group-thinking. Abuse now aimed at those refusing DNA-manipulating 'Covid vaccines' are a potent example of this. The biggest pressure to conform comes from the very group which is itself being manipulated. 'I am programmed to be part of a hive mind and so you must be.'

Woke control structures in 'education' now apply to every mainstream organisation. Those at the top of the 'education' hierarchy (the Cult) decide the policy. This is imposed on governments through the Cult network; governments impose it on schools, colleges and universities; their leadership impose the policy on teachers and academics and they impose it on children and students. At any level where there is resistance, perhaps from a teacher or university lecturer, they are targeted by the authorities and often fired. Students themselves regularly demand the dismissal of academics (increasingly few) at odds with the narrative that the students have been programmed to believe in. It is quite a thought that students who are being targeted by the Cult become so consumed by programmed group-think that they launch protests and demand the removal of those who are trying to push back against those targeting the students. Such is the scale of perceptual inversion. We see this with 'Covid' programming as the Cult imposes the rules via psycho-psychologists and governments on

shops, transport companies and businesses which impose them on their staff who impose them on their customers who pressure Pushbackers to conform to the will of the Cult which is in the process of destroying them and their families. Scan all aspects of society and you will see the same sequence every time.

Fact free Woke and hijacking the 'left'

There is no more potent example of this than 'Woke', a mentality only made possible by the deletion of factual evidence by an 'education' system seeking to produce an ever more uniform society. Why would you bother with facts when you don't know any? Deletion of credible history both in volume and type is highly relevant. Orwell said: 'Who controls the past controls the future: who controls the present controls the past.' They who control the perception of the past control the perception of the future and they who control the present control the perception of the past through the writing and deleting of history. Why would you oppose the imposition of Marxism in the name of Wokeism when you don't know that Marxism cost at least 100 million lives in the 20th century alone? Watch videos and read reports in which Woker generations are asked basic historical questions – it's mind-blowing. A survey of 2,000 people found that six percent of millennials (born approximately early1980s to early 2000s) believed the Second World War (1939-1945) broke out with the assassination of President Kennedy (in 1963) and one in ten thought Margaret Thatcher was British Prime Minister at the time. She was in office between 1979 and 1990. We are in a post-fact society. Provable facts are no defence against the fascism of political correctness or Silicon Valley censorship. Facts don't matter anymore as we have witnessed with the 'Covid' hoax. Sacrificing uniqueness to the Woke group-think religion is all you are required to do and that means thinking for yourself is the biggest Woke no, no. All religions are an expression of group-think and censorship and Woke is just another religion with an orthodoxy defended by group-think and censorship. Burned at

the stake becomes burned on Twitter which leads back eventually to burned at the stake as Woke humanity regresses to ages past.

The biggest Woke inversion of all is its creators and funders. I grew up in a traditional left of centre political household on a council estate in Leicester in the 1950s and 60s – you know, the left that challenged the power of wealth-hoarding elites and threats to freedom of speech and opinion. In those days students went on marches defending freedom of speech while today's Wokers march for its deletion. What on earth could have happened? Those very elites (collectively the Cult) that we opposed in my youth and early life have funded into existence the antithesis of that former left and hijacked the 'brand' while inverting everything it ever stood for. We have a mentality that calls itself 'liberal' and 'progressive' while acting like fascists. Cult billionaires and their corporations have funded themselves into control of 'education' to ensure that Woke programming is unceasing throughout the formative years of children and young people and that non-Wokers are isolated (that word again) whether they be students, teachers or college professors. The Cult has funded into existence the now colossal global network of Woke organisations that have spawned and promoted all the 'causes' on the Cult wish-list for global transformation and turned Wokers into demanders of them. Does anyone really think it's a coincidence that the Cult agenda for humanity is a carbon (sorry) copy of the societal transformations desired by Woke?? These are only some of them:

Political correctness: The means by which the Cult deletes all public debates that it knows it cannot win if we had the free-flow of information and evidence.

Human-caused 'climate change': The means by which the Cult seeks to transform society into a globally-controlled dictatorship imposing its will over the fine detail of everyone's lives 'to save the planet' which doesn't actually need saving.

Transgender obsession: Preparing collective perception to accept the 'new human' which would not have genders because it would be created technologically and not through procreation. I'll have much more on this in Human 2.0.

Race obsession: The means by which the Cult seeks to divide and rule the population by triggering racial division through the perception that society is more racist than ever when the opposite is the case. Is it perfect in that regard? No. But to compare today with the racism of apartheid and segregation brought to an end by the civil rights movement in the 1960s is to insult the memory of that movement and inspirations like Martin Luther King. Why is the 'anti-racism' industry (which it is) so dominated by privileged white people?

White supremacy: This is a label used by privileged white people to demonise poor and deprived white people pushing back on tyranny to marginalise and destroy them. White people are being especially targeted as the dominant race by number within Western society which the Cult seeks to transform in its image. If you want to change a society you must weaken and undermine its biggest group and once you have done that by using the other groups you next turn on them to do the same … 'Then they came for the Jews and I was not a Jew so I did nothing.'

Mass migration: The mass movement of people from the Middle East, Africa and Asia into Europe, from the south into the United States and from Asia into Australia are another way the Cult seeks to dilute the racial, cultural and political influence of white people on Western society. White people ask why their governments appear to be working against them while being politically and culturally biased towards incoming cultures. Well, here's your answer. In the same way sexually 'straight' people, men and women, ask why the

authorities are biased against them in favour of other sexualities. The answer is the same – that's the way the Cult wants it to be for very sinister motives.

These are all central parts of the Cult agenda and central parts of the Woke agenda and Woke was created and continues to be funded to an immense degree by Cult billionaires and corporations. If anyone begins to say 'coincidence' the syllables should stick in their throat.

Billionaire 'social justice warriors'

Joe Biden is a 100 percent-owned asset of the Cult and the Wokers' man in the White House whenever he can remember his name and for however long he lasts with his rapidly diminishing cognitive function. Even walking up the steps of an aircraft without falling on his arse would appear to be a challenge. He's not an empty-shell puppet or anything. From the minute Biden took office (or the Cult did) he began his executive orders promoting the Woke wish-list. You will see the Woke agenda imposed ever more severely because it's really the *Cult* agenda. Woke organisations and activist networks spawned by the Cult are funded to the extreme so long as they promote what the Cult wants to happen. Woke is funded to promote 'social justice' by billionaires who become billionaires by destroying social justice. The social justice mantra is only a cover for dismantling social justice and funded by billionaires that couldn't give a damn about social justice. Everything makes sense when you see that. One of Woke's premier funders is Cult billionaire financier George Soros who said: 'I am basically there to make money, I cannot and do not look at the social consequences of what I do.' This is the same Soros who has given more than $32 billion to his Open Society Foundations global Woke network and funded Black Lives Matter, mass immigration into Europe and the United States, transgender activism, climate change activism, political correctness and groups targeting 'white supremacy' in the form of privileged white thugs that dominate Antifa. What a scam it all is and when

you are dealing with the unquestioning fact-free zone of Woke scamming them is child's play. All you need to pull it off in all these organisations are a few in-the-know agents of the Cult and an army of naïve, reframed, uninformed, narcissistic, know-nothings convinced of their own self-righteousness, self-purity and virtue.

Soros and fellow billionaires and billionaire corporations have poured hundreds of millions into Black Lives Matter and connected groups and promoted them to a global audience. None of this is motivated by caring about black people. These are the billionaires that have controlled and exploited a system that leaves millions of black people in abject poverty and deprivation which they do absolutely nothing to address. The same Cult networks funding BLM were behind the *slave trade!* Black Lives Matter hijacked a phrase that few would challenge and they have turned this laudable concept into a political weapon to divide society. You know that BLM is a fraud when it claims that *All* Lives Matter, the most inclusive statement of all, is 'racist'. BLM and its Cult masters don't want to end racism. To them it's a means to an end to control all of humanity never mind the colour, creed, culture or background. What has destroying the nuclear family got to do with ending racism? Nothing – but that is one of the goals of BLM and also happens to be a goal of the Cult as I have been exposing in my books for decades. Stealing children from loving parents and giving schools ever more power to override parents is part of that same agenda. BLM is a Marxist organisation and why would that not be the case when the Cult created Marxism *and* BLM? Patrisse Cullors, a BLM co-founder, said in a 2015 video that she and her fellow organisers, including co-founder Alicia Garza, are 'trained Marxists'. The lady known after marriage as Patrisse Khan-Cullors bought a $1.4 million home in 2021 in one of the whitest areas of California with a black population of just 1.6 per cent and has so far bought *four* high-end homes for a total of $3.2 million. How very Marxist. There must be a bit of spare in the BLM coffers, however, when Cult corporations and billionaires have handed over the best part of $100 million. Many black people can see that Black Lives Matter is not

working for them, but against them, and this is still more confirmation. Black journalist Jason Whitlock, who had his account suspended by Twitter for simply linking to the story about the 'Marxist's' home buying spree, said that BLM leaders are 'making millions of dollars off the backs of these dead black men who they wouldn't spit on if they were on fire and alive'.

Black Lies Matter

Cult assets and agencies came together to promote BLM in the wake of the death of career criminal George Floyd who had been jailed a number of times including for forcing his way into the home of a black woman with others in a raid in which a gun was pointed at her stomach. Floyd was filmed being held in a Minneapolis street in 2020 with the knee of a police officer on his neck and he subsequently died. It was an appalling thing for the officer to do, but the same technique has been used by police on peaceful protestors of lockdown without any outcry from the Woke brigade. As unquestioning supporters of the Cult agenda Wokers have supported lockdown and all the 'Covid' claptrap while attacking anyone standing up to the tyranny imposed in its name. Court documents would later include details of an autopsy on Floyd by County Medical Examiner Dr Andrew Baker who concluded that Floyd had taken a fatal level of the drug fentanyl. None of this mattered to fact-free, question-free, Woke. Floyd's death was followed by worldwide protests against police brutality amid calls to defund the police. Throwing babies out with the bathwater is a Woke speciality. In the wake of the murder of British woman Sarah Everard a Green Party member of the House of Lords, Baroness Jones of Moulescoomb (Nincompoopia would have been better), called for a 6pm curfew for all men. This would be in breach of the Geneva Conventions on war crimes which ban collective punishment, but that would never have crossed the black and white Woke mind of Baroness Nincompoopia who would have been far too convinced of her own self-righteousness to compute such details. Many American cities did defund the police in the face of Floyd riots

and after $15 million was deleted from the police budget in Washington DC under useless Woke mayor Muriel Bowser car-jacking alone rose by 300 percent and within six months the US capital recorded its highest murder rate in 15 years. The same happened in Chicago and other cities in line with the Cult/Soros plan to bring fear to streets and neighbourhoods by reducing the police, releasing violent criminals and not prosecuting crime. This is the mob-rule agenda that I have warned in the books was coming for so long. Shootings in the area of Minneapolis where Floyd was arrested increased by 2,500 percent compared with the year before. Defunding the police over George Floyd has led to a big increase in dead people with many of them black. Police protection for politicians making these decisions stayed the same or increased as you would expect from professional hypocrites. The Cult doesn't actually want to abolish the police. It wants to abolish local control over the police and hand it to federal government as the psychopaths advance the Hunger Games Society. Many George Floyd protests turned into violent riots with black stores and businesses destroyed by fire and looting across America fuelled by Black Lives Matter. Woke doesn't do irony. If you want civil rights you must loot the liquor store and the supermarket and make off with a smart TV. It's the only way.

It's not a race war – it's a class war

Black people are patronised by privileged blacks and whites alike and told they are victims of white supremacy. I find it extraordinary to watch privileged blacks supporting the very system and bloodline networks behind the slave trade and parroting the same Cult-serving manipulative crap of their privileged white, often billionaire, associates. It is indeed not a race war but a class war and colour is just a diversion. Black Senator Cory Booker and black Congresswoman Maxine Waters, more residents of Nincompoopia, personify this. Once you tell people they are victims of someone else you devalue both their own responsibility for their plight and the power they have to impact on their reality and experience. Instead

we have: 'You are only in your situation because of whitey – turn on them and everything will change.' It won't change. Nothing changes in our lives unless *we* change it. Crucial to that is never seeing yourself as a victim and always as the creator of your reality. Life is a simple sequence of choice and consequence. Make different choices and you create different consequences. *You* have to make those choices – not Black Lives Matter, the Woke Mafia and anyone else that seeks to dictate your life. Who are they these Wokers, an emotional and psychological road traffic accident, to tell you what to do? Personal empowerment is the last thing the Cult and its Black Lives Matter want black people or anyone else to have. They claim to be defending the underdog while *creating* and perpetuating the underdog. The Cult's worst nightmare is human unity and if they are going to keep blacks, whites and every other race under economic servitude and control then the focus must be diverted from what they have in common to what they can be manipulated to believe divides them. Blacks have to be told that their poverty and plight is the fault of the white bloke living on the street in the same poverty and with the same plight they are experiencing. The difference is that your plight black people is due to him, a white supremacist with 'white privilege' living on the street. Don't unite as one human family against your mutual oppressors and suppressors – fight the oppressor with the white face who is as financially deprived as you are. The Cult knows that as its 'Covid' agenda moves into still new levels of extremism people are going to respond and it has been spreading the seeds of disunity everywhere to stop a united response to the evil that targets *all of us*.

Racist attacks on 'whiteness' are getting ever more outrageous and especially through the American Democratic Party which has an appalling history for anti-black racism. Barack Obama, Joe Biden, Hillary Clinton and Nancy Pelosi all eulogised about Senator Robert Byrd at his funeral in 2010 after a nearly 60-year career in Congress. Byrd was a brutal Ku Klux Klan racist and a violent abuser of Cathy O'Brien in MKUltra. He said he would never fight in the military 'with a negro by my side' and 'rather I should die a thousand times,

and see Old Glory trampled in the dirt never to rise again, than to see this beloved land of ours become degraded by race mongrels, a throwback to the blackest specimen from the wilds'. Biden called Byrd a 'very close friend and mentor'. These 'Woke' hypocrites are not anti-racist they are anti-poor and anti-people not of their perceived class. Here is an illustration of the scale of anti-white racism to which we have now descended. Seriously Woke and moronic *New York Times* contributor Damon Young described whiteness as a 'virus' that 'like other viruses will not die until there are no bodies left for it to infect'. He went on: '… the only way to stop it is to locate it, isolate it, extract it, and kill it.' Young can say that as a black man with no consequences when a white man saying the same in reverse would be facing a jail sentence. *That's* racism. We had super-Woke numbskull senators Tammy Duckworth and Mazie Hirono saying they would object to future Biden Cabinet appointments if he did not nominate more Asian Americans and Pacific Islanders. Never mind the ability of the candidate what do they look like? Duckworth said: 'I will vote for racial minorities and I will vote for LGBTQ, but anyone else I'm not voting for.' Appointing people on the grounds of race is illegal, but that was not a problem for this ludicrous pair. They were on-message and that's a free pass in any situation.

Critical race racism

White children are told at school they are intrinsically racist as they are taught the divisive 'critical race theory'. This claims that the law and legal institutions are inherently racist and that race is a socially constructed concept used by white people to further their economic and political interests at the expense of people of colour. White is a 'virus' as we've seen. Racial inequality results from 'social, economic, and legal differences that white people create between races to maintain white interests which leads to poverty and criminality in minority communities'. I must tell that to the white guy sleeping on the street. The principal of East Side Community School in New York sent white parents a manifesto that called on

them to become 'white traitors' and advocate for full 'white abolition'. These people are teaching your kids when they urgently need a psychiatrist. The 'school' included a chart with 'eight white identities' that ranged from 'white supremacist' to 'white abolition' and defined the behaviour white people must follow to end 'the regime of whiteness'. Woke blacks and their privileged white associates are acting exactly like the slave owners of old and Ku Klux Klan racists like Robert Byrd. They are too full of their own self-purity to see that, but it's true. Racism is not a body type; it's a state of mind that can manifest through any colour, creed or culture.

Another racial fraud is *'equity'*. Not equality of treatment and opportunity – equity. It's a term spun as equality when it means something very different. Equality in its true sense is a raising up while 'equity' is a race to the bottom. Everyone in the same level of poverty is 'equity'. Keep everyone down – that's equity. The Cult doesn't want anyone in the human family to be empowered and BLM leaders, like all these 'anti-racist' organisations, continue their privileged, pampered existence by perpetuating the perception of gathering racism. When is the last time you heard an 'anti-racist' or 'anti-Semitism' organisation say that acts of racism and discrimination have *fallen?* It's not in the interests of their fund-raising and power to influence and the same goes for the professional soccer anti-racism operation, Kick It Out. Two things confirmed that the Black Lives Matter riots in the summer of 2020 were Cult creations. One was that while anti-lockdown protests were condemned in this same period for 'transmitting 'Covid' the authorities supported mass gatherings of Black Lives Matter supporters. I even saw self-deluding people claiming to be doctors say the two types of protest were not the same. No – the non-existent 'Covid' was in favour of lockdowns and attacked those that protested against them while 'Covid' supported Black Lives Matter and kept well away from its protests. The whole thing was a joke and as lockdown protestors were arrested, often brutally, by reframed Face-Nappies we had the grotesque sight of police officers taking the knee to Black Lives Matter, a Cult-funded Marxist

organisation that supports violent riots and wants to destroy the nuclear family and white people.

He's not white? Shucks!

Woke obsession with race was on display again when ten people were shot dead in Boulder, Colorado, in March, 2021. Cult-owned Woke TV channels like CNN said the shooter appeared to be a white man and Wokers were on Twitter condemning 'violent white men' with the usual mantras. Then the shooter's name was released as Ahmad Al Aliwi Alissa, an anti-Trump Arab-American, and the sigh of disappointment could be heard five miles away. Never mind that ten people were dead and what that meant for their families. Race baiting was all that mattered to these sick Cult-serving people like Barack Obama who exploited the deaths to further divide America on racial grounds which is his job for the Cult. This is the man that 'racist' white Americans made the first black president of the United States and then gave him a second term. Not-very-bright Obama has become filthy rich on the back of that and today appears to have a big influence on the Biden administration. Even so he's still a downtrodden black man and a victim of white supremacy. This disingenuous fraud reveals the contempt he has for black people when he puts on a Deep South Alabama accent whenever he talks to them, no, *at* them.

Another BLM red flag was how the now fully-Woke (fully-Cult) and fully-virtue-signalled professional soccer authorities had their teams taking the knee before every match in support of Marxist Black Lives Matter. Soccer authorities and clubs displayed 'Black Lives Matter' on the players' shirts and flashed the name on electronic billboards around the pitch. Any fans that condemned what is a Freemasonic taking-the-knee ritual were widely condemned as you would expect from the Woke virtue-signallers of professional sport and the now fully-Woke media. We have reverse racism in which you are banned from criticising any race or culture except for white people for whom anything goes – say what you like, no problem. What has this got to do with racial harmony and

equality? We've had black supremacists from Black Lives Matter telling white people to fall to their knees in the street and apologise for their white supremacy. Black supremacists acting like white supremacist slave owners of the past couldn't breach their self-obsessed, race-obsessed sense of self-purity. Joe Biden appointed a race-obsessed black supremacist Kristen Clarke to head the Justice Department Civil Rights Division. Clarke claimed that blacks are endowed with 'greater mental, physical and spiritual abilities' than whites. If anyone reversed that statement they would be vilified. Clarke is on-message so no problem. She's never seen a black-white situation in which the black figure is anything but a virtuous victim and she heads the Civil Rights Division which should treat everyone the same or it isn't civil rights. Another perception of the Renegade Mind: If something or someone is part of the Cult agenda they will be supported by Woke governments and media no matter what. If they're not, they will be condemned and censored. It really is that simple and so racist Clarke prospers despite (make that because of) her racism.

The end of culture

Biden's administration is full of such racial, cultural and economic bias as the Cult requires the human family to be divided into warring factions. We are now seeing racially-segregated graduations and everything, but everything, is defined through the lens of perceived 'racism. We have 'racist' mathematics, 'racist' food and even 'racist' *plants*. World famous Kew Gardens in London said it was changing labels on plants and flowers to tell its pre-'Covid' more than two million visitors a year how racist they are. Kew director Richard Deverell said this was part of an effort to 'move quickly to decolonise collections' after they were approached by one Ajay Chhabra 'an actor with an insight into how sugar cane was linked to slavery'. They are *plants* you idiots. 'Decolonisation' in the Woke manual really means colonisation of society with its mentality and by extension colonisation by the Cult. We are witnessing a new Chinese-style 'Cultural Revolution' so essential to the success of all

Marxist takeovers. Our cultural past and traditions have to be swept away to allow a new culture to be built-back-better. Woke targeting of long-standing Western cultural pillars including historical monuments and cancelling of historical figures is what happened in the Mao revolution in China which 'purged remnants of capitalist and traditional elements from Chinese society' and installed Maoism as the dominant ideology'. For China see the Western world today and for 'dominant ideology' see Woke. Better still see Marxism or Maoism. The 'Covid' hoax has specifically sought to destroy the arts and all elements of Western culture from people meeting in a pub or restaurant to closing theatres, music venues, sports stadiums, places of worship and even banning *singing*. Destruction of Western society is also why criticism of any religion is banned except for Christianity which again is the dominant religion as white is the numerically-dominant race. Christianity may be fading rapidly, but its history and traditions are weaved through the fabric of Western society. Delete the pillars and other structures will follow until the whole thing collapses. I am not a Christian defending that religion when I say that. I have no religion. It's just a fact. To this end Christianity has itself been turned Woke to usher its own downfall and its ranks are awash with 'change agents' – knowing and unknowing – at every level including Pope Francis (*definitely* knowing) and the clueless Archbishop of Canterbury Justin Welby (possibly not, but who can be sure?). Woke seeks to coordinate attacks on Western culture, traditions, and ways of life through 'intersectionality' defined as 'the complex, cumulative way in which the effects of multiple forms of discrimination (such as racism, sexism, and classism) combine, overlap, or intersect especially in the experiences of marginalised individuals or groups'. Wade through the Orwellian Woke-speak and this means coordinating disparate groups in a common cause to overthrow freedom and liberal values.

The entire structure of public institutions has been infested with Woke – government at all levels, political parties, police, military, schools, universities, advertising, media and trade unions. This abomination has been achieved through the Cult web by appointing

Wokers to positions of power and battering non-Wokers into line through intimidation, isolation and threats to their job. Many have been fired in the wake of the empathy-deleted, vicious hostility of 'social justice' Wokers and the desire of gutless, spineless employers to virtue-signal their Wokeness. Corporations are filled with Wokers today, most notably those in Silicon Valley. Ironically at the top they are not Woke at all. They are only exploiting the mentality their Cult masters have created and funded to censor and enslave while the Wokers cheer them on until it's their turn. Thus the Woke 'liberal left' is an inversion of the traditional liberal left. Campaigning for justice on the grounds of power and wealth distribution has been replaced by campaigning for identity politics. The genuine traditional left would never have taken money from today's billionaire abusers of fairness and justice and nor would the billionaires have wanted to fund that genuine left. It would not have been in their interests to do so. The division of opinion in those days was between the haves and have nots. This all changed with Cult manipulated and funded identity politics. The division of opinion today is between Wokers and non-Wokers and not income brackets. Cult corporations and their billionaires may have taken wealth disparity to cataclysmic levels of injustice, but as long as they speak the language of Woke, hand out the dosh to the Woke network and censor the enemy they are 'one of us'. Billionaires who don't give a damn about injustice are laughing at them till their bellies hurt. Wokers are not even close to self-aware enough to see that. The transformed 'left' dynamic means that Wokers who drone on about 'social justice' are funded by billionaires that have destroyed social justice the world over. It's *why* they are billionaires.

The climate con

Nothing encapsulates what I have said more comprehensively than the hoax of human-caused global warming. I have detailed in my books over the years how Cult operatives and organisations were the pump-primers from the start of the climate con. A purpose-built vehicle for this is the Club of Rome established by the Cult in 1968

with the Rockefellers and Rothschilds centrally involved all along. Their gofer frontman Maurice Strong, a Canadian oil millionaire, hosted the Earth Summit in Rio de Janeiro, Brazil, in 1992 where the global 'green movement' really expanded in earnest under the guiding hand of the Cult. The Earth Summit established Agenda 21 through the Cult-created-and-owned United Nations to use the illusion of human-caused climate change to justify the transformation of global society to save the world from climate disaster. It is a No-Problem-Reaction-Solution sold through governments, media, schools and universities as whole generations have been terrified into believing that the world was going to end in their lifetimes unless what old people had inflicted upon them was stopped by a complete restructuring of how everything is done. Chill, kids, it's all a hoax. Such restructuring is precisely what the Cult agenda demands (purely by coincidence of course). Today this has been given the codename of the Great Reset which is only an updated term for Agenda 21 and its associated Agenda 2030. The latter, too, is administered through the UN and was voted into being by the General Assembly in 2015. Both 21 and 2030 seek centralised control of all resources and food right down to the raindrops falling on your own land. These are some of the demands of Agenda 21 established in 1992. See if you recognise this society emerging today:

- End national sovereignty
- State planning and management of all land resources, ecosystems, deserts, forests, mountains, oceans and fresh water; agriculture; rural development; biotechnology; and ensuring *'equity'*
- The state to 'define the role' of business and financial resources
- Abolition of private property
- 'Restructuring' the family unit (see BLM)
- Children raised by the state
- People told what their job will be
- Major restrictions on movement
- Creation of 'human settlement zones'

- Mass resettlement as people are forced to vacate land where they live
- Dumbing down education
- Mass global depopulation in pursuit of all the above

The United Nations was created as a Trojan horse for world government. With the climate con of critical importance to promoting that outcome you would expect the UN to be involved. Oh, it's involved all right. The UN is promoting Agenda 21 and Agenda 2030 justified by 'climate change' while also driving the climate hoax through its Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC), one of the world's most corrupt organisations. The IPCC has been lying ferociously and constantly since the day it opened its doors with the global media hanging unquestioningly on its every mendacious word. The Green movement is entirely Woke and has long lost its original environmental focus since it was co-opted by the Cult. An obsession with 'global warming' has deleted its values and scrambled its head. I experienced a small example of what I mean on a beautiful country walk that I have enjoyed several times a week for many years. The path merged into the fields and forests and you felt at one with the natural world. Then a 'Green' organisation, the Hampshire and Isle of Wight Wildlife Trust, took over part of the land and proceeded to cut down a large number of trees, including mature ones, to install a horrible big, bright steel 'this-is-ours-stay-out' fence that destroyed the whole atmosphere of this beautiful place. No one with a feel for nature would do that. Day after day I walked to the sound of chainsaws and a magnificent mature weeping willow tree that I so admired was cut down at the base of the trunk. When I challenged a Woke young girl in a green shirt (of course) about this vandalism she replied: 'It's a weeping willow – it will grow back.' This is what people are paying for when they donate to the Hampshire and Isle of Wight Wildlife Trust and many other 'green' organisations today. It is not the environmental movement that I knew and instead has become a support-system – as with Extinction Rebellion – for a very dark agenda.

Private jets for climate justice

The Cult-owned, Gates-funded, World Economic Forum and its founder Klaus Schwab were behind the emergence of Greta Thunberg to harness the young behind the climate agenda and she was invited to speak to the world at … the UN. Schwab published a book, *Covid-19: The Great Reset* in 2020 in which he used the 'Covid' hoax and the climate hoax to lay out a new society straight out of Agenda 21 and Agenda 2030. Bill Gates followed in early 2021 when he took time out from destroying the world to produce a book in his name about the way to save it. Gates flies across the world in private jets and admitted that 'I probably have one of the highest greenhouse gas footprints of anyone on the planet … my personal flying alone is gigantic.' He has also bid for the planet's biggest private jet operator. Other climate change saviours who fly in private jets include John Kerry, the US Special Presidential Envoy for Climate, and actor Leonardo DiCaprio, a 'UN Messenger of Peace with special focus on climate change'. These people are so full of bullshit they could corner the market in manure. We mustn't be sceptical, though, because the Gates book, *How to Avoid a Climate Disaster: The Solutions We Have and the Breakthroughs We Need*, is a genuine attempt to protect the world and not an obvious pile of excrement attributed to a mega-psychopath aimed at selling his masters' plans for humanity. The Gates book and the other shite-pile by Klaus Schwab could have been written by the same person and may well have been. Both use 'climate change' and 'Covid' as the excuses for their new society and by coincidence the Cult's World Economic Forum and Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation promote the climate hoax and hosted Event 201 which pre-empted with a 'simulation' the very 'coronavirus' hoax that would be simulated for real on humanity within weeks. The British 'royal' family is promoting the 'Reset' as you would expect through Prince 'climate change caused the war in Syria' Charles and his hapless son Prince William who said that we must 'reset our relationship with nature and our trajectory as a species' to avoid a climate disaster. Amazing how many promotors of the 'Covid' and 'climate change' control

systems are connected to Gates and the World Economic Forum. A 'study' in early 2021 claimed that carbon dioxide emissions must fall by the equivalent of a global lockdown roughly every two years for the next decade to save the planet. The 'study' appeared in the same period that the Schwab mob claimed in a video that lockdowns destroying the lives of billions are good because they make the earth 'quieter' with less 'ambient noise'. They took down the video amid a public backlash for such arrogant, empathy-deleted stupidity You see, however, where they are going with this. Corinne Le Quéré, a professor at the Tyndall Centre for Climate Change Research, University of East Anglia, was lead author of the climate lockdown study, and she writes for … the World Economic Forum. Gates calls in 'his' book for changing 'every aspect of the economy' (long-time Cult agenda) and for humans to eat synthetic 'meat' (predicted in my books) while cows and other farm animals are eliminated. Australian TV host and commentator Alan Jones described what carbon emission targets would mean for farm animals in Australia alone if emissions were reduced as demanded by 35 percent by 2030 and zero by 2050:

> Well, let's take agriculture, the total emissions from agriculture are about 75 million tonnes of carbon dioxide, equivalent. Now reduce that by 35 percent and you have to come down to 50 million tonnes, I've done the maths. So if you take for example 1.5 million cows, you're going to have to reduce the herd by 525,000 [by] 2030, nine years, that's 58,000 cows a year. The beef herd's 30 million, reduce that by 35 percent, that's 10.5 million, which means 1.2 million cattle have to go every year between now and 2030. This is insanity!
>
> There are 75 million sheep. Reduce that by 35 percent, that's 26 million sheep, that's almost 3 million a year. So under the Paris Agreement over 30 million beasts. dairy cows, cattle, pigs and sheep would go. More than 8,000 every minute of every hour for the next decade, do these people know what they're talking about?

Clearly they don't at the level of campaigners, politicians and administrators. The Cult *does* know; that's the outcome it wants. We are faced with not just a war on humanity. Animals and the natural world are being targeted and I have been saying since the 'Covid' hoax began that the plan eventually was to claim that the 'deadly virus' is able to jump from animals, including farm animals and

domestic pets, to humans. Just before this book went into production came this story: 'Russia registers world's first Covid-19 vaccine for cats & dogs as makers of Sputnik V warn pets & farm animals could spread virus'. The report said 'top scientists warned that the deadly pathogen could soon begin spreading through homes and farms' and 'the next stage is the infection of farm and domestic animals'. Know the outcome and you'll see the journey. Think what that would mean for animals and keep your eye on a term called zoonosis or zoonotic diseases which transmit between animals and humans. The Cult wants to break the connection between animals and people as it does between people and people. Farm animals fit with the Cult agenda to transform food from natural to synthetic.

The gas of life is killing us

There can be few greater examples of Cult inversion than the condemnation of carbon dioxide as a dangerous pollutant when it is the gas of life. Without it the natural world would be dead and so we would all be dead. We breathe in oxygen and breathe out carbon dioxide while plants produce oxygen and absorb carbon dioxide. It is a perfect symbiotic relationship that the Cult wants to dismantle for reasons I will come to in the final two chapters. Gates, Schwab, other Cult operatives and mindless repeaters, want the world to be 'carbon neutral' by at least 2050 and the earlier the better. 'Zero carbon' is the cry echoed by lunatics calling for 'Zero Covid' when we already have it. These carbon emission targets will deindustrialise the world in accordance with Cult plans – the post-industrial, post-democratic society – and with so-called renewables like solar and wind not coming even close to meeting human energy needs blackouts and cold are inevitable. Texans got the picture in the winter of 2021 when a snow storm stopped wind turbines and solar panels from working and the lights went down along with water which relies on electricity for its supply system. Gates wants everything to be powered by electricity to ensure that his masters have the kill switch to stop all human activity, movement, cooking, water and warmth any time they like. The climate lie is so

stupendously inverted that it claims we must urgently reduce carbon dioxide when we *don't have enough*.

Co2 in the atmosphere is a little above 400 parts per million when the optimum for plant growth is 2,000 ppm and when it falls anywhere near 150 ppm the natural world starts to die and so do we. It fell to as low as 280 ppm in an 1880 measurement in Hawaii and rose to 413 ppm in 2019 with industrialisation which is why the planet has become *greener* in the industrial period. How insane then that psychopathic madman Gates is not satisfied only with blocking the rise of Co2. He's funding technology to suck it out of the atmosphere. The reason why will become clear. The industrial era is not destroying the world through Co2 and has instead turned around a potentially disastrous ongoing fall in Co2. Greenpeace co-founder and scientist Patrick Moore walked away from Greenpeace in 1986 and has exposed the green movement for fear-mongering and lies. He said that 500 million years ago there was *17 times* more Co2 in the atmosphere than we have today and levels have been falling for hundreds of millions of years. In the last 150 million years Co2 levels in Earth's atmosphere had reduced by *90 percent*. Moore said that by the time humanity began to unlock carbon dioxide from fossil fuels we were at '38 seconds to midnight' and in that sense: 'Humans are [the Earth's] salvation.' Moore made the point that only half the Co2 emitted by fossil fuels stays in the atmosphere and we should remember that all pollution pouring from chimneys that we are told is carbon dioxide is in fact nothing of the kind. It's pollution. Carbon dioxide is an invisible gas.

William Happer, Professor of Physics at Princeton University and long-time government adviser on climate, has emphasised the Co2 deficiency for maximum growth and food production. Greenhouse growers don't add carbon dioxide for a bit of fun. He said that most of the warming in the last 100 years, after the earth emerged from the super-cold period of the 'Little Ice Age' into a natural warming cycle, was over by 1940. Happer said that a peak year for warming in 1988 can be explained by a 'monster El Nino' which is a natural and cyclical warming of the Pacific that has nothing to do with 'climate

change'. He said the effect of Co2 could be compared to painting a wall with red paint in that once two or three coats have been applied it didn't matter how much more you slapped on because the wall will not get much redder. Almost all the effect of the rise in Co2 has already happened, he said, and the volume in the atmosphere would now have to *double* to increase temperature by a single degree. Climate hoaxers know this and they have invented the most ridiculously complicated series of 'feedback' loops to try to overcome this rather devastating fact. You hear puppet Greta going on cluelessly about feedback loops and this is why.

The Sun affects temperature? No you *climate denier*

Some other nonsense to contemplate: Climate graphs show that rises in temperature do not follow rises in Co2 – *it's the other way round* with a lag between the two of some 800 years. If we go back 800 years from present time we hit the Medieval Warm Period when temperatures were higher than now without any industrialisation and this was followed by the Little Ice Age when temperatures plummeted. The world was still emerging from these centuries of serious cold when many climate records began which makes the ever-repeated line of the 'hottest year since records began' meaningless when you are not comparing like with like. The coldest period of the Little Ice Age corresponded with the lowest period of sunspot activity when the Sun was at its least active. Proper scientists will not be at all surprised by this when it confirms the obvious fact that earth temperature is affected by the scale of Sun activity and the energetic power that it subsequently emits; but when is the last time you heard a climate hoaxer talking about the Sun as a source of earth temperature?? Everything has to be focussed on Co2 which makes up just 0.117 percent of so-called greenhouse gases and only a fraction of even that is generated by human activity. The rest is natural. More than *90 percent* of those greenhouse gases are water vapour and clouds (Fig 9). Ban moisture I say. Have you noticed that the climate hoaxers no longer use the polar bear as their promotion image? That's because far from becoming extinct polar

bear communities are stable or thriving. Joe Bastardi, American meteorologist, weather forecaster and outspoken critic of the climate lie, documents in his book *The Climate Chronicles* how weather patterns and events claimed to be evidence of climate change have been happening since long before industrialisation: 'What happened before naturally is happening again, as is to be expected given the cyclical nature of the climate due to the design of the planet.' If you read the detailed background to the climate hoax in my other books you will shake your head and wonder how anyone could believe the crap which has spawned a multi-trillion dollar industry based on absolute garbage (see HIV causes AIDs and Sars-Cov-2 causes 'Covid-19'). Climate and 'Covid' have much in common given they have the same source. They both have the contradictory *everything* factor in which everything is explained by reference to them. It's hot – 'it's climate change'. It's cold – 'it's climate change'. I got a sniffle – 'it's Covid'. I haven't got a sniffle – 'it's Covid'. Not having a sniffle has to be a symptom of 'Covid'. Everything is and not having a sniffle is especially dangerous if you are a slow walker. For sheer audacity I offer you a Cambridge University 'study' that actually linked 'Covid' to 'climate change'. It had to happen eventually. They concluded that climate change played a role in 'Covid-19' spreading from animals to humans because … wait for it … I kid you not … *the two groups were forced closer together as populations grow*. Er, that's it. The whole foundation on which this depended was that 'Bats are the likely zoonotic origin of SARS-CoV-1 and SARS-CoV-2'. Well, they are not. They are nothing to do with it. Apart from bats not being the origin and therefore 'climate change' effects on bats being irrelevant I am in awe of their academic insight. Where would we be without them? Not where we are that's for sure.

Figure 9: The idea that the gas of life is disastrously changing the climate is an insult to brain cell activity.

One other point about the weather is that climate modification is now well advanced and not every major weather event is natural – or earthquake come to that. I cover this subject at some length in other books. China is openly planning a rapid expansion of its weather modification programme which includes changing the climate in an area more than one and a half times the size of India. China used weather manipulation to ensure clear skies during the 2008 Olympics in Beijing. I have quoted from US military documents detailing how to employ weather manipulation as a weapon of war and they did that in the 1960s and 70s during the conflict in Vietnam with Operation Popeye manipulating monsoon rains for military purposes. Why would there be international treaties on weather modification if it wasn't possible? Of course it is. Weather is energetic information and it can be changed.

How was the climate hoax pulled off? See 'Covid'

If you can get billions to believe in a 'virus' that doesn't exist you can get them to believe in human-caused climate change that doesn't exist. Both are being used by the Cult to transform global society in the way it has long planned. Both hoaxes have been achieved in pretty much the same way. First you declare a lie is a fact. There's a

'virus' you call SARS-Cov-2 or humans are warming the planet with their behaviour. Next this becomes, via Cult networks, the foundation of government, academic and science policy and belief. Those who parrot the mantra are given big grants to produce research that confirms the narrative is true and ever more 'symptoms' are added to make the 'virus'/'climate change' sound even more scary. Scientists and researchers who challenge the narrative have their grants withdrawn and their careers destroyed. The media promote the lie as the unquestionable truth and censor those with an alternative view or evidence. A great percentage of the population believe what they are told as the lie becomes an everybody-knows-that and the believing-masses turn on those with a mind of their own. The technique has been used endlessly throughout human history. Wokers are the biggest promotors of the climate lie *and* 'Covid' fascism because their minds are owned by the Cult; their sense of self-righteous self-purity knows no bounds; and they exist in a bubble of reality in which facts are irrelevant and only get in the way of looking without seeing.

Running through all of this like veins in a blue cheese is control of information, which means control of perception, which means control of behaviour, which collectively means control of human society. The Cult owns the global media and Silicon Valley fascists for the simple reason that it *has* to. Without control of information it can't control perception and through that human society. Examine every facet of the Cult agenda and you will see that anything supporting its introduction is never censored while anything pushing back is always censored. I say again: Psychopaths that know why they are doing this must go before Nuremberg trials and those that follow their orders must trot along behind them into the same dock. 'I was just following orders' didn't work the first time and it must not work now. Nuremberg trials must be held all over the world before public juries for politicians, government officials, police, compliant doctors, scientists and virologists, and all Cult operatives such as Gates, Tedros, Fauci, Vallance, Whitty, Ferguson, Zuckerberg, Wojcicki, Brin, Page, Dorsey, the whole damn lot of

them – including, no *especially*, the psychopath psychologists. Without them and the brainless, gutless excuses for journalists that have repeated their lies, none of this could be happening. Nobody can be allowed to escape justice for the psychological and economic Armageddon they are all responsible for visiting upon the human race.

As for the compliant, unquestioning, swathes of humanity, and the self-obsessed, all-knowing ignorance of the Wokers … don't start me. God help their kids. God help their grandkids. God *help them*.

CHAPTER NINE

We must have it? So what is it?

Well I won't back down. No, I won't back down. You can stand me up at the Gates of Hell. But I won't back down
Tom Petty

I will now focus on the genetically-manipulating 'Covid vaccines' which do not meet this official definition of a vaccine by the US Centers for Disease Control (CDC): 'A product that stimulates a person's immune system to produce immunity to a specific disease, protecting the person from that disease.' On that basis 'Covid vaccines' are not a vaccine in that the makers don't even claim they stop infection or transmission.

They are instead part of a multi-levelled conspiracy to change the nature of the human body and what it means to be 'human' and to depopulate an enormous swathe of humanity. What I shall call Human 1.0 is on the cusp of becoming Human 2.0 and for very sinister reasons. Before I get to the 'Covid vaccine' in detail here's some background to vaccines in general. Government regulators do not test vaccines – the makers do – and the makers control which data is revealed and which isn't. Children in America are given 50 vaccine doses by age six and 69 by age 19 and the effect of the whole combined schedule has never been tested. Autoimmune diseases when the immune system attacks its own body have soared in the mass vaccine era and so has disease in general in children and the young. Why wouldn't this be the case when vaccines target the *immune system?* The US government gave Big Pharma drug

companies immunity from prosecution for vaccine death and injury in the 1986 National Childhood Vaccine Injury Act (NCVIA) and since then the government (taxpayer) has been funding compensation for the consequences of Big Pharma vaccines. The criminal and satanic drug giants can't lose and the vaccine schedule has increased dramatically since 1986 for this reason. There is no incentive to make vaccines safe and a big incentive to make money by introducing ever more. Even against a ridiculously high bar to prove vaccine liability, and with the government controlling the hearing in which it is being challenged for compensation, the vaccine court has so far paid out more than $4 billion. These are the vaccines we are told are safe and psychopaths like Zuckerberg censor posts saying otherwise. The immunity law was even justified by a ruling that vaccines by their nature were 'unavoidably unsafe'.

Check out the ingredients of vaccines and you will be shocked if you are new to this. *They put that in children's bodies?? What??* Try aluminium, a brain toxin connected to dementia, aborted foetal tissue and formaldehyde which is used to embalm corpses. World-renowned aluminium expert Christopher Exley had his research into the health effect of aluminium in vaccines shut down by Keele University in the UK when it began taking funding from the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation. Research when diseases 'eradicated' by vaccines began to decline and you will find the fall began long *before* the vaccine was introduced. Sometimes the fall even plateaued after the vaccine. Diseases like scarlet fever for which there was no vaccine declined in the same way because of environmental and other factors. A perfect case in point is the polio vaccine. Polio began when lead arsenate was first sprayed as an insecticide and residues remained in food products. Spraying started in 1892 and the first US polio epidemic came in Vermont in 1894. The simple answer was to stop spraying, but Rockefeller-created Big Pharma had a better idea. Polio was decreed to be caused by the *poliovirus* which 'spreads from person to person and can infect a person's spinal cord'. Lead arsenate was replaced by the lethal DDT which had the same effect of causing paralysis by damaging the brain and central nervous

system. Polio plummeted when DDT was reduced and then banned, but the vaccine is still given the credit for something it didn't do. Today by far the biggest cause of polio is the vaccines promoted by Bill Gates. Vaccine justice campaigner Robert Kennedy Jr, son of assassinated (by the Cult) US Attorney General Robert Kennedy, wrote:

> In 2017, the World Health Organization (WHO) reluctantly admitted that the global explosion in polio is predominantly vaccine strain. The most frightening epidemics in Congo, Afghanistan, and the Philippines, are all linked to vaccines. In fact, by 2018, 70% of global polio cases were vaccine strain.

Vaccines make fortunes for Cult-owned Gates and Big Pharma while undermining the health and immune systems of the population. We had a glimpse of the mentality behind the Big Pharma cartel with a report on WION (World is One News), an international English language TV station based in India, which exposed the extraordinary behaviour of US drug company Pfizer over its 'Covid vaccine'. The WION report told how Pfizer had made fantastic demands of Argentina, Brazil and other countries in return for its 'vaccine'. These included immunity from prosecution, even for Pfizer negligence, government insurance to protect Pfizer from law suits and handing over as collateral sovereign assets of the country to include Argentina's bank reserves, military bases and embassy buildings. Pfizer demanded the same of Brazil in the form of waiving sovereignty of its assets abroad; exempting Pfizer from Brazilian laws; and giving Pfizer immunity from all civil liability. This is a 'vaccine' developed with government funding. Big Pharma is evil incarnate as a creation of the Cult and all must be handed tickets to Nuremberg.

Phantom 'vaccine' for a phantom 'disease'

I'll expose the 'Covid vaccine' fraud and then go on to the wider background of why the Cult has set out to 'vaccinate' every man, woman and child on the planet for an alleged 'new disease' with a survival rate of 99.77 percent (or more) even by the grotesquely-

manipulated figures of the World Health Organization and Johns Hopkins University. The 'infection' to 'death' ratio is 0.23 to 0.15 percent according to Stanford epidemiologist Dr John Ioannidis and while estimates vary the danger remains tiny. I say that if the truth be told the fake infection to fake death ratio is zero. Never mind all the evidence I have presented here and in *The Answer* that there is no 'virus' let us just focus for a moment on that death-rate figure of say 0.23 percent. The figure includes all those worldwide who have tested positive with a test not testing for the 'virus' and then died within 28 days or even longer of any other cause – *any other cause*. Now subtract all those illusory 'Covid' deaths on the global data sheets from the 0.23 percent. What do you think you would be left with? *Zero*. A vaccination has never been successfully developed for a so-called coronavirus. They have all failed at the animal testing stage when they caused hypersensitivity to what they were claiming to protect against and made the impact of a disease far worse. Cult-owned vaccine corporations got around that problem this time by bypassing animal trials, going straight to humans and making the length of the 'trials' before the public rollout as short as they could get away with. Normally it takes five to ten years or more to develop vaccines that still cause demonstrable harm to many people and that's without including the long-term effects that are never officially connected to the vaccination. 'Covid' non-vaccines have been officially produced and approved in a matter of months from a standing start and part of the reason is that (a) they were developed before the 'Covid' hoax began and (b) they are based on computer programs and not natural sources. Official non-trials were so short that government agencies gave *emergency*, not full, approval. 'Trials' were not even completed and full approval cannot be secured until they are. Public 'Covid vaccination' is actually a *continuation of the trial*. Drug company 'trials' are not scheduled to end until 2023 by which time a lot of people are going to be dead. Data on which government agencies gave this emergency approval was supplied by the Big Pharma corporations themselves in the form of Pfizer/BioNTech, AstraZeneca, Moderna, Johnson & Johnson, and

others, and this is the case with all vaccines. By its very nature *emergency* approval means drug companies do not have to prove that the 'vaccine' is 'safe and effective'. How could they with trials way short of complete? Government regulators only have to *believe* that they *could* be safe and effective. It is criminal manipulation to get products in circulation with no testing worth the name. Agencies giving that approval are infested with Big Pharma-connected place-people and they act in the interests of Big Pharma (the Cult) and not the public about whom they do not give a damn.

More human lab rats

'Covid vaccines' produced in record time by Pfizer/BioNTech and Moderna employ a technique *never approved before for use on humans*. They are known as mRNA 'vaccines' and inject a synthetic version of 'viral' mRNA or 'messenger RNA'. The key is in the term 'messenger'. The body works, or doesn't, on the basis of information messaging. Communications are constantly passing between and within the genetic system and the brain. Change those messages and you change the state of the body and even its very nature and you can change psychology and behaviour by the way the brain processes information. I think you are going to see significant changes in personality and perception of many people who have had the 'Covid vaccine' synthetic potions. Insider Aldous Huxley predicted the following in 1961 and mRNA 'vaccines' can be included in the term 'pharmacological methods':

> There will be, in the next generation or so, a pharmacological method of making people love their servitude, and producing dictatorship without tears, so to speak, producing a kind of painless concentration camp for entire societies, so that people will in fact have their own liberties taken away from them, but rather enjoy it, because they will be distracted from any desire to rebel by propaganda or brainwashing, or brainwashing enhanced by pharmacological methods. And this seems to be the final revolution.

Apologists claim that mRNA synthetic 'vaccines' don't change the DNA genetic blueprint because RNA does not affect DNA only the other way round. This is so disingenuous. A process called 'reverse

transcription' can convert RNA into DNA and be integrated into DNA in the cell nucleus. This was highlighted in December, 2020, by scientists at Harvard and Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT). Geneticists report that more than 40 percent of mammalian genomes results from reverse transcription. On the most basic level if messaging changes then that sequence must lead to changes in DNA which is receiving and transmitting those communications. How can introducing synthetic material into cells not change the cells where DNA is located? The process is known as transfection which is defined as 'a technique to insert foreign nucleic acid (DNA or RNA) into a cell, typically with the intention of altering the properties of the cell'. Researchers at the Sloan Kettering Institute in New York found that changes in messenger RNA can deactivate tumour-suppressing proteins and thereby promote cancer. This is what happens when you mess with messaging. 'Covid vaccine' maker Moderna was founded in 2010 by Canadian stem cell biologist Derrick J. Rossi after his breakthrough discovery in the field of transforming and reprogramming stem cells. These are neutral cells that can be programmed to become any cell including sperm cells. Moderna was therefore founded on the principle of genetic manipulation and has never produced any vaccine or drug before its genetically-manipulating synthetic 'Covid' shite. Look at the name – Mode-RNA or Modify-RNA. Another important point is that the US Supreme Court has ruled that genetically-modified DNA, or complementary DNA (cDNA) synthesized in the laboratory from messenger RNA, can be patented and owned. These psychopaths are doing this to the human body.

Cells replicate synthetic mRNA in the 'Covid vaccines' and in theory the body is tricked into making antigens which trigger antibodies to target the 'virus spike proteins' which as Dr Tom Cowan said have *never been seen*. Cut the crap and these 'vaccines' deliver *self-replicating* synthetic material to the cells with the effect of changing human DNA. The more of them you have the more that process is compounded while synthetic material is all the time self-replicating. 'Vaccine'-maker Moderna describes mRNA as 'like

software for the cell' and so they are messing with the body's software. What happens when you change the software in a computer? Everything changes. For this reason the Cult is preparing a production line of mRNA 'Covid vaccines' and a long list of excuses to use them as with all the 'variants' of a 'virus' never shown to exist. The plan is further to transfer the mRNA technique to other vaccines mostly given to children and young people. The cumulative consequences will be a transformation of human DNA through a constant infusion of synthetic genetic material which will kill many and change the rest. Now consider that governments that have given emergency approval for a vaccine that's not a vaccine; never been approved for humans before; had no testing worth the name; and the makers have been given immunity from prosecution for any deaths or adverse effects suffered by the public. The UK government awarded *permanent legal indemnity* to itself and its employees for harm done when a patient is being treated for 'Covid-19' or 'suspected Covid-19'. That is quite a thought when these are possible 'side-effects' from the 'vaccine' (they are not 'side', they are effects) listed by the US Food and Drug Administration:

Guillain-Barre syndrome; acute disseminated encephalomyelitis; transverse myelitis; encephalitis; myelitis; encephalomyelitis; meningoencephalitis; meningitis; encephalopathy; convulsions; seizures; stroke; narcolepsy; cataplexy; anaphylaxis; acute myocardial infarction (heart attack); myocarditis; pericarditis; autoimmune disease; death; implications for pregnancy, and birth outcomes; other acute demyelinating diseases; non anaphylactic allergy reactions; thrombocytopenia ; disseminated intravascular coagulation; venous thromboembolism; arthritis; arthralgia; joint pain; Kawasaki disease; multisystem inflammatory syndrome in children; vaccine enhanced disease. The latter is the way the 'vaccine' has the potential to make diseases far worse than they would otherwise be.

UK doctor and freedom campaigner Vernon Coleman described the conditions in this list as 'all unpleasant, most of them very serious, and you can't get more serious than death'. The thought that anyone at all has had the 'vaccine' in these circumstances is testament to the potential that humanity has for clueless, unquestioning, stupidity and for many that programmed stupidity has already been terminal.

An insider speaks

Dr Michael Yeadon is a former Vice President, head of research and Chief Scientific Adviser at vaccine giant Pfizer. Yeadon worked on the inside of Big Pharma, but that did not stop him becoming a vocal critic of 'Covid vaccines' and their potential for multiple harms, including infertility in women. By the spring of 2021 he went much further and even used the no, no, term 'conspiracy'. When you begin to see what is going on it is impossible not to do so. Yeadon spoke out in an interview with freedom campaigner James Delingpole and I mentioned earlier how he said that no one had samples of 'the virus'. He explained that the mRNA technique originated in the anti-cancer field and ways to turn on and off certain genes which could be advantageous if you wanted to stop cancer growing out of control. 'That's the origin of them. They are a very unusual application, really.' Yeadon said that treating a cancer patient with an aggressive procedure might be understandable if the alternative was dying, but it was quite another thing to use the same technique as a public health measure. Most people involved wouldn't catch the infectious agent you were vaccinating against and if they did they probably wouldn't die:

> If you are really using it as a public health measure you really want to as close as you can get to zero sides-effects … I find it odd that they chose techniques that were really cutting their teeth in the field of oncology and I'm worried that in using gene-based vaccines that have to be injected in the body and spread around the body, get taken up into some cells, and the regulators haven't quite told us which cells they get taken up into … you are going to be generating a wide range of responses … with multiple steps each of which could go well or badly.

I doubt the Cult intends it to go well. Yeadon said that you can put any gene you like into the body through the 'vaccine'. 'You can certainly give them a gene that would do them some harm if you wanted.' I was intrigued when he said that when used in the cancer field the technique could turn genes on and off. I explore this process in *The Answer* and with different genes having different functions you could create mayhem – physically and psychologically – if you turned the wrong ones on and the right ones off. I read reports of an experiment by researchers at the University of Washington's school of computer science and engineering in which they encoded DNA to infect computers. The body is itself a biological computer and if human DNA can inflict damage on a computer why can't the computer via synthetic material mess with the human body? It can. The Washington research team said it was possible to insert malicious malware into 'physical DNA strands' and corrupt the computer system of a gene sequencing machine as it 'reads gene letters and stores them as binary digits 0 and 1'. They concluded that hackers could one day use blood or spit samples to access computer systems and obtain sensitive data from police forensics labs or infect genome files. It is at this level of digital interaction that synthetic 'vaccines' need to be seen to get the full picture and that will become very clear later on. Michael Yeadon said it made no sense to give the 'vaccine' to younger people who were in no danger from the 'virus'. What was the benefit? It was all downside with potential effects:

> The fact that my government in what I thought was a civilised, rational country, is raining [the 'vaccine'] on people in their 30s and 40s, even my children in their 20s, they're getting letters and phone calls, I know this is not right and any of you doctors who are vaccinating you know it's not right, too. They are not at risk. They are not at risk from the disease, so you are now hoping that the side-effects are so rare that you get away with it. You don't give new technology … that you don't understand to 100 percent of the population.

Blood clot problems with the AstraZeneca 'vaccine' have been affecting younger people to emphasise the downside risks with no benefit. AstraZeneca's version, produced with Oxford University, does not use mRNA, but still gets its toxic cocktail inside cells where

it targets DNA. The Johnson & Johnson 'vaccine' which uses a similar technique has also produced blood clot effects to such an extent that the United States paused its use at one point. They are all 'gene therapy' (cell modification) procedures and not 'vaccines'. The truth is that once the content of these injections enter cells we have no idea what the effect will be. People can speculate and some can give very educated opinions and that's good. In the end, though, only the makers know what their potions are designed to do and even they won't know every last consequence. Michael Yeadon was scathing about doctors doing what they knew to be wrong. 'Everyone's mute', he said. Doctors in the NHS must know this was not right, coming into work and injecting people. 'I don't know how they sleep at night. I know I couldn't do it. I know that if I were in that position I'd have to quit.' He said he knew enough about toxicology to know this was not a good risk-benefit. Yeadon had spoken to seven or eight university professors and all except two would not speak out publicly. Their universities had a policy that no one said anything that countered the government and its medical advisors. They were afraid of losing their government grants. This is how intimidation has been used to silence the truth at every level of the system. I say silence, but these people could still speak out if they made that choice. Yeadon called them 'moral cowards' – 'This is about your children and grandchildren's lives and you have just buggered off and left it.'

'Variant' nonsense

Some of his most powerful comments related to the alleged 'variants' being used to instil more fear, justify more lockdowns, and introduce more 'vaccines'. He said government claims about 'variants' were nonsense. He had checked the alleged variant 'codes' and they were 99.7 percent identical to the 'original'. This was the human identity difference equivalent to putting a baseball cap on and off or wearing it the other way round. A 0.3 percent difference would make it impossible for that 'variant' to escape immunity from the 'original'. This made no sense of having new 'vaccines' for

'variants'. He said there would have to be at least a *30 percent* difference for that to be justified and even then he believed the immune system would still recognise what it was. Gates-funded 'variant modeller' and 'vaccine'-pusher John Edmunds might care to comment. Yeadon said drug companies were making new versions of the 'vaccine' as a 'top up' for 'variants'. Worse than that, he said, the 'regulators' around the world like the MHRA in the UK had got together and agreed that because 'vaccines' for 'variants' were so similar to the first 'vaccines' *they did not have to do safety studies*. How transparently sinister that is. This is when Yeadon said: 'There is a conspiracy here.' There was no need for another vaccine for 'variants' and yet we were told that there was and the country had shut its borders because of them. 'They are going into hundreds of millions of arms without passing 'go' or any regulator. Why did they do that? Why did they pick this method of making the vaccine?'

The reason had to be something bigger than that it seemed and 'it's not protection against the virus'. It's was a far bigger project that meant politicians and advisers were willing to do things and not do things that knowingly resulted in avoidable deaths – 'that's already happened when you think about lockdown and deprivation of health care for a year.' He spoke of people prepared to do something that results in the avoidable death of their fellow human beings and it not bother them. This is the penny-drop I have been working to get across for more than 30 years – the level of pure evil we are dealing with. Yeadon said his friends and associates could not believe there could be that much evil, but he reminded them of Stalin, Pol Pot and Hitler and of what Stalin had said: 'One death is a tragedy. A million? A statistic.' He could not think of a benign explanation for why you need top-up vaccines 'which I'm sure you don't' and for the regulators 'to just get out of the way and wave them through'. Why would the regulators do that when they were still wrestling with the dangers of the 'parent' vaccine? He was clearly shocked by what he had seen since the 'Covid' hoax began and now he was thinking the previously unthinkable:

> If you wanted to depopulate a significant proportion of the world and to do it in a way that doesn't involve destruction of the environment with nuclear weapons, poisoning everyone with anthrax or something like that, and you wanted plausible deniability while you had a multi-year infectious disease crisis, I actually don't think you could come up with a better plan of work than seems to be in front of me. I can't say that's what they are going to do, but I can't think of a benign explanation why they are doing it.

He said he never thought that they would get rid of 99 percent of humans, but now he wondered. 'If you wanted to that this would be a hell of a way to do it – it would be unstoppable folks.' Yeadon had concluded that those who submitted to the 'vaccine' would be allowed to have some kind of normal life (but for how long?) while screws were tightened to coerce and mandate the last few percent. 'I think they'll put the rest of them in a prison camp. I wish I was wrong, but I don't think I am.' Other points he made included: There were no coronavirus vaccines then suddenly they all come along at the same time; we have no idea of the long term affect with trials so short; coercing or forcing people to have medical procedures is against the Nuremberg Code instigated when the Nazis did just that; people should at least delay having the 'vaccine'; a quick Internet search confirms that masks don't reduce respiratory viral transmission and 'the government knows that'; they have smashed civil society and they know that, too; two dozen peer-reviewed studies show no connection between lockdown and reducing deaths; he knew from personal friends the elite were still flying around and going on holiday while the public were locked down; the elite were not having the 'vaccines'. He was also asked if 'vaccines' could be made to target difference races. He said he didn't know, but the document by the Project for the New American Century in September, 2000, said developing 'advanced forms of biological warfare that can target *specific genotypes* may transform biological warfare from the realm of terror to a politically useful tool.' Oh, they're evil all right. Of that we can be *absolutely* sure.

Another cull of old people

We have seen from the CDC definition that the mRNA 'Covid vaccine' is not a vaccine and nor are the others that *claim* to reduce 'severity of symptoms' in *some* people, but not protect from infection or transmission. What about all the lies about returning to 'normal' if people were 'vaccinated'? If they are not claimed to stop infection and transmission of the alleged 'virus', how does anything change? This was all lies to manipulate people to take the jabs and we are seeing that now with masks and distancing still required for the 'vaccinated'. How did they think that elderly people with fragile health and immune responses were going to be affected by infusing their cells with synthetic material and other toxic substances? They *knew* that in the short and long term it would be devastating and fatal as the culling of the old that began with the first lockdowns was continued with the 'vaccine'. Death rates in care homes soared immediately residents began to be 'vaccinated' – infused with synthetic material. Brave and committed whistleblower nurses put their careers at risk by exposing this truth while the rest kept their heads down and their mouths shut to put their careers before those they are supposed to care for. A long-time American Certified Nursing Assistant who gave his name as James posted a video in which he described emotionally what happened in his care home when vaccination began. He said that during 2020 very few residents were sick with 'Covid' and no one died during the entire year; but shortly after the Pfizer mRNA injections 14 people died within two weeks and many others were near death. 'They're dropping like flies', he said. Residents who walked on their own before the shot could no longer and they had lost their ability to conduct an intelligent conversation. The home's management said the sudden deaths were caused by a 'super-spreader' of 'Covid-19'. Then how come, James asked, that residents who refused to take the injections were not sick? It was a case of inject the elderly with mRNA synthetic potions and blame their illness and death that followed on the 'virus'. James described what was happening in care homes as 'the greatest crime of genocide this country has ever seen'. Remember the NHS staff nurse from earlier who used the same

word ‘genocide’ for what was happening with the ‘vaccines’ and that it was an ‘act of human annihilation’. A UK care home whistleblower told a similar story to James about the effect of the ‘vaccine’ in deaths and ‘outbreaks’ of illness dubbed ‘Covid’ after getting the jab. She told how her care home management and staff had zealously imposed government regulations and no one was allowed to even question the official narrative let alone speak out against it. She said the NHS was even worse. Again we see the results of reframing. A worker at a local care home where I live said they had not had a single case of ‘Covid’ there for almost a year and when the residents were ‘vaccinated’ they had 19 positive cases in two weeks with eight dying.

It’s not the ‘vaccine’ – honest

The obvious cause and effect was being ignored by the media and most of the public. Australia’s health minister Greg Hunt (a former head of strategy at the World Economic Forum) was admitted to hospital after he had the ‘vaccine’. He was suffering according to reports from the skin infection ‘cellulitis’ and it must have been a severe case to have warranted days in hospital. Immediately the authorities said this was nothing to do with the ‘vaccine’ when an effect of some vaccines is a ‘cellulitis-like reaction’. We had families of perfectly healthy old people who died after the ‘vaccine’ saying that if only they had been given the ‘vaccine’ earlier they would still be alive. As a numbskull rating that is off the chart. A father of four ‘died of Covid’ at aged 48 when he was taken ill two days after having the ‘vaccine’. The man, a health administrator, had been ‘shielding during the pandemic’ and had ‘not really left the house’ until he went for the ‘vaccine’. Having the ‘vaccine’ and then falling ill and dying does not seem to have qualified as a possible cause and effect and ‘Covid-19’ went on his death certificate. His family said they had no idea how he ‘caught the virus’. A family member said: ‘Tragically, it could be that going for a vaccination ultimately led to him catching Covid …The sad truth is that they are never going to know where it came from.’ The family warned people to remember

that the virus still existed and was 'very real'. So was their stupidity. Nurses and doctors who had the first round of the 'vaccine' were collapsing, dying and ending up in a hospital bed while they or their grieving relatives were saying they'd still have the 'vaccine' again despite what happened. I kid you not. You mean if your husband returned from the dead he'd have the same 'vaccine' again that killed him??

Doctors at the VCU Medical Center in Richmond, Virginia, said the Johnson & Johnson 'vaccine' was to blame for a man's skin peeling off. Patient Richard Terrell said: 'It all just happened so fast. My skin peeled off. It's still coming off on my hands now.' He said it was stinging, burning and itching and when he bent his arms and legs it was very painful with 'the skin swollen and rubbing against itself'. Pfizer/BioNTech and Moderna vaccines use mRNA to change the cell while the Johnson & Johnson version uses DNA in a process similar to AstraZeneca's technique. Johnson & Johnson and AstraZeneca have both had their 'vaccines' paused by many countries after causing serious blood problems. Terrell's doctor Fnu Nutan said he could have died if he hadn't got medical attention. It sounds terrible so what did Nutan and Terrell say about the 'vaccine' now? Oh, they still recommend that people have it. A nurse in a hospital bed 40 minutes after the vaccination and unable to swallow due to throat swelling was told by a doctor that he lost mobility in his arm for 36 hours following the vaccination. What did he say to the ailing nurse? 'Good for you for getting the vaccination.' We are dealing with a serious form of cognitive dissonance madness in both public and medical staff. There is a remarkable correlation between those having the 'vaccine' and trumpeting the fact and suffering bad happenings shortly afterwards. Witold Rogiewicz, a Polish doctor, made a video of his 'vaccination' and ridiculed those who were questioning its safety and the intentions of Bill Gates: 'Vaccinate yourself to protect yourself, your loved ones, friends and also patients. And to mention quickly I have info for anti-vaxxers and anti-Coviders if you want to contact Bill Gates you can do this through me.' He further ridiculed the dangers of 5G. Days later he

was dead, but naturally the vaccination wasn't mentioned in the verdict of 'heart attack'.

Lies, lies and more lies

So many members of the human race have slipped into extreme states of insanity and unfortunately they include reframed doctors and nursing staff. Having a 'vaccine' and dying within minutes or hours is not considered a valid connection while death from any cause within 28 days or longer of a positive test with a test not testing for the 'virus' means 'Covid-19' goes on the death certificate. How could that 'vaccine'-death connection not have been made except by calculated deceit? US figures in the initial rollout period to February 12th, 2020, revealed that a third of the deaths reported to the CDC after 'Covid vaccines' happened within 48 hours. Five men in the UK suffered an 'extremely rare' blood clot problem after having the AstraZeneca 'vaccine', but no causal link was established said the Gates-funded Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (MHRA) which had given the 'vaccine' emergency approval to be used. Former Pfizer executive Dr Michael Yeadon explained in his interview how the procedures could cause blood coagulation and clots. People who should have been at no risk were dying from blood clots in the brain and he said he had heard from medical doctor friends that people were suffering from skin bleeding and massive headaches. The AstraZeneca 'shot' was stopped by some 20 countries over the blood clotting issue and still the corrupt MHRA, the European Medicines Agency (EMA) and the World Health Organization said that it should continue to be given even though the EMA admitted that it 'still cannot rule out definitively' a link between blood clotting and the 'vaccine'. Later Marco Cavaleri, head of EMA vaccine strategy, said there was indeed a clear link between the 'vaccine' and thrombosis, but they didn't know why. So much for the trials showing the 'vaccine' is safe. Blood clots were affecting younger people who would be under virtually no danger from 'Covid' even if it existed which makes it all the more stupid and sinister.

The British government responded to public alarm by wheeling out June Raine, the terrifyingly weak infant school headmistress sound-alike who heads the UK MHRA drug 'regulator'. The idea that she would stand up to Big Pharma and government pressure is laughable and she told us that all was well in the same way that she did when allowing untested, never-used-on-humans-before, genetically-manipulating 'vaccines' to be exposed to the public in the first place. Mass lying is the new normal of the 'Covid' era. The MHRA later said 30 cases of rare blood clots had by then been connected with the AstraZeneca 'vaccine' (that means a lot more in reality) while stressing that the benefits of the jab in preventing 'Covid-19' outweighed any risks. A more ridiculous and disingenuous statement with callous disregard for human health it is hard to contemplate. Immediately after the mendacious 'all-clears' two hospital workers in Denmark experienced blood clots and cerebral haemorrhaging following the AstraZeneca jab and one died. Top Norwegian health official Pål Andre Holme said the 'vaccine' was the only common factor: 'There is nothing in the patient history of these individuals that can give such a powerful immune response … I am confident that the antibodies that we have found are the cause, and I see no other explanation than it being the vaccine which triggers it.' Strokes, a clot or bleed in the brain, were clearly associated with the 'vaccine' from word of mouth and whistleblower reports. Similar consequences followed with all these 'vaccines' that we were told were so safe and as the numbers grew by the day it was clear we were witnessing human carnage.

Learning the hard way

A woman interviewed by UKColumn told how her husband suffered dramatic health effects after the vaccine when he'd been in good health all his life. He went from being a little unwell to losing all feeling in his legs and experiencing 'excruciating pain'. Misdiagnosis followed twice at Accident and Emergency (an 'allergy' and 'sciatica') before he was admitted to a neurology ward where doctors said his serious condition had been caused by the

‘vaccine’. Another seven ‘vaccinated’ people were apparently being treated on the same ward for similar symptoms. The woman said he had the ‘vaccine’ because they believed media claims that it was safe. ‘I didn’t think the government would give out a vaccine that does this to somebody; I believed they would be bringing out a vaccination that would be safe.’ What a tragic way to learn that lesson. Another woman posted that her husband was transporting stroke patients to hospital on almost every shift and when he asked them if they had been ‘vaccinated’ for ‘Covid’ they all replied ‘yes’. One had a ‘massive brain bleed’ the day after his second dose. She said her husband reported the ‘just been vaccinated’ information every time to doctors in A and E only for them to ignore it, make no notes and appear annoyed that it was even mentioned. This particular report cannot be verified, but it expresses a common theme that confirms the monumental underreporting of ‘vaccine’ consequences. Interestingly as the ‘vaccines’ and their brain blood clot/stroke consequences began to emerge the UK National Health Service began a publicity campaign telling the public what to do in the event of a stroke. A Scottish NHS staff nurse who quit in disgust in March, 2021, said:

> I have seen traumatic injuries from the vaccine, they’re not getting reported to the yellow card [adverse reaction] scheme, they’re treating the symptoms, not asking why, why it’s happening. It’s just treating the symptoms and when you speak about it you’re dismissed like you’re crazy, I’m not crazy, I’m not crazy because every other colleague I’ve spoken to is terrified to speak out, they’ve had enough.

Videos appeared on the Internet of people uncontrollably shaking after the ‘vaccine’ with no control over muscles, limbs and even their face. A Scottish mother broke out in a severe rash all over her body almost immediately after she was given the AstraZeneca ‘vaccine’. The pictures were horrific. Leigh King, a 41-year-old hairdresser from Lanarkshire said: ‘Never in my life was I prepared for what I was about to experience … My skin was so sore and constantly hot … I have never felt pain like this …’ But don’t you worry, the ‘vaccine’ is perfectly safe. Then there has been the effect on medical

staff who have been pressured to have the 'vaccine' by psychopathic 'health' authorities and government. A London hospital consultant who gave the name K. Polyakova wrote this to the *British Medical Journal* or *BMJ*:

> I am currently struggling with … the failure to report the reality of the morbidity caused by our current vaccination program within the health service and staff population. The levels of sickness after vaccination is unprecedented and staff are getting very sick and some with neurological symptoms which is having a huge impact on the health service function. Even the young and healthy are off for days, some for weeks, and some requiring medical treatment. Whole teams are being taken out as they went to get vaccinated together.
>
> Mandatory vaccination in this instance is stupid, unethical and irresponsible when it comes to protecting our staff and public health. We are in the voluntary phase of vaccination, and encouraging staff to take an unlicensed product that is impacting on their immediate health … it is clearly stated that these vaccine products do not offer immunity or stop transmission. In which case why are we doing it?

Not to protect health that's for sure. Medical workers are lauded by governments for agenda reasons when they couldn't give a toss about them any more than they can for the population in general. Schools across America faced the same situation as they closed due to the high number of teachers and other staff with bad reactions to the Pfizer/BioNTech, Moderna, and Johnson & Johnson 'Covid vaccines' all of which were linked to death and serious adverse effects. The *BMJ* took down the consultant's comments pretty quickly on the grounds that they were being used to spread 'disinformation'. They were exposing the truth about the 'vaccine' was the real reason. The cover-up is breathtaking.

Hiding the evidence

The scale of the 'vaccine' death cover-up worldwide can be confirmed by comparing official figures with the personal experience of the public. I heard of many people in my community who died immediately or soon after the vaccine that would never appear in the media or even likely on the official totals of 'vaccine' fatalities and adverse reactions when only about ten percent are estimated to be

reported and I have seen some estimates as low as one percent in a Harvard study. In the UK alone by April 29th, 2021, some 757,654 adverse reactions had been officially reported from the Pfizer/BioNTech, Oxford/AstraZeneca and Moderna 'vaccines' with more than a thousand deaths linked to jabs and that means an estimated ten times this number in reality from a ten percent reporting rate percentage. That's seven million adverse reactions and 10,000 potential deaths and a one percent reporting rate would be ten times *those* figures. In 1976 the US government pulled the swine flu vaccine after *53* deaths. The UK data included a combined 10,000 eye disorders from the 'Covid vaccines' with more than 750 suffering visual impairment or blindness and again multiply by the estimated reporting percentages. As 'Covid cases' officially fell hospitals virtually empty during the 'Covid crisis' began to fill up with a range of other problems in the wake of the 'vaccine' rollout. The numbers across America have also been catastrophic. Deaths linked to *all* types of vaccine increased by *6,000 percent* in the first quarter of 2021 compared with 2020. A 39-year-old woman from Ogden, Utah, died four days after receiving a second dose of Moderna's 'Covid vaccine' when her liver, heart and kidneys all failed despite the fact that she had no known medical issues or conditions. Her family sought an autopsy, but Dr Erik Christensen, Utah's chief medical examiner, said proving vaccine injury as a cause of death almost never happened. He could think of only one instance where an autopsy would name a vaccine as the official cause of death and that would be anaphylaxis where someone received a vaccine and died almost instantaneously. 'Short of that, it would be difficult for us to definitively say this is the vaccine,' Christensen said. If that is true this must be added to the estimated ten percent (or far less) reporting rate of vaccine deaths and serious reactions and the conclusion can only be that vaccine deaths and serious reactions – including these 'Covid' potions' – are phenomenally understated in official figures. The same story can be found everywhere. Endless accounts of deaths and serious reactions among the public, medical

and care home staff while official figures did not even begin to reflect this.

Professional script-reader Dr David Williams, a 'top public-health official' in Ontario, Canada, insulted our intelligence by claiming only four serious adverse reactions and no deaths from the more than 380,000 vaccine doses then given. This bore no resemblance to what people knew had happened in their owns circles and we had Dirk Huyer in charge of getting millions vaccinated in Ontario while at the same time he was Chief Coroner for the province investigating causes of death including possible death from the vaccine. An aide said he had stepped back from investigating deaths, but evidence indicated otherwise. Rosemary Frei, who secured a Master of Science degree in molecular biology at the Faculty of Medicine at Canada's University of Calgary before turning to investigative journalism, was one who could see that official figures for 'vaccine' deaths and reactions made no sense. She said that doctors seldom reported adverse events and when people got really sick or died after getting a vaccination they would attribute that to anything except the vaccines. It had been that way for years and anyone who wondered aloud whether the 'Covid vaccines' or other shots cause harm is immediately branded as 'anti-vax' and 'anti-science'. This was 'career-threatening' for health professionals. Then there was the huge pressure to support the push to 'vaccinate' billions in the quickest time possible. Frei said:

> So that's where we're at today. More than half a million vaccine doses have been given to people in Ontario alone. The rush is on to vaccinate all 15 million of us in the province by September. And the mainstream media are screaming for this to be sped up even more. That all adds up to only a very slim likelihood that we're going to be told the truth by officials about how many people are getting sick or dying from the vaccines.

What is true of Ontario is true of everywhere.

They KNEW – and still did it

The authorities knew what was going to happen with multiple deaths and adverse reactions. The UK government's Gates-funded

and Big Pharma-dominated Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (MHRA) hired a company to employ AI in compiling the projected reactions to the 'vaccine' that would otherwise be uncountable. The request for applications said: 'The MHRA urgently seeks an Artificial Intelligence (AI) software tool to process the expected high volume of Covid-19 vaccine Adverse Drug Reaction …' This was from the agency, headed by the disingenuous June Raine, that gave the 'vaccines' emergency approval and the company was hired before the first shot was given. 'We are going to kill and maim you – is that okay?' 'Oh, yes, perfectly fine – I'm very grateful, thank you, doctor.' The range of 'Covid vaccine' adverse reactions goes on for page after page in the MHRA criminally underreported 'Yellow Card' system and includes affects to eyes, ears, skin, digestion, blood and so on. Raine's MHRA amazingly claimed that the 'overall safety experience … is so far as expected from the clinical trials'. The death, serious adverse effects, deafness and blindness were *expected?* When did they ever mention that? If these human tragedies were expected then those that gave approval for the use of these 'vaccines' must be guilty of crimes against humanity including murder – a definition of which is 'killing a person with malice aforethought or with recklessness manifesting extreme indifference to the value of human life.' People involved at the MHRA, the CDC in America and their equivalent around the world must go before Nuremberg trials to answer for their callous inhumanity. We are only talking here about the immediate effects of the 'vaccine'. The longer-term impact of the DNA synthetic manipulation is the main reason they are so hysterically desperate to inoculate the entire global population in the shortest possible time.

Africa and the developing world are a major focus for the 'vaccine' depopulation agenda and a mass vaccination sales-pitch is underway thanks to caring people like the Rockefellers and other Cult assets. The Rockefeller Foundation, which pre-empted the 'Covid pandemic' in a document published in 2010 that 'predicted' what happened a decade later, announced an initial $34.95 million grant in February, 2021, 'to ensure more equitable access to Covid-19

testing and vaccines' among other things in Africa in collaboration with '24 organizations, businesses, and government agencies'. The pan-Africa initiative would focus on 10 countries: Burkina Faso, Ethiopia, Ghana, Kenya, Nigeria, Rwanda, South Africa, Tanzania, Uganda, and Zambia'. Rajiv Shah, President of the Rockefeller Foundation and former administrator of CIA-controlled USAID, said that if Africa was not mass-vaccinated (to change the DNA of its people) it was a 'threat to all of humanity' and not fair on Africans. When someone from the Rockefeller Foundation says they want to do something to help poor and deprived people and countries it is time for a belly-laugh. They are doing this out of the goodness of their 'heart' because 'vaccinating' the entire global population is what the 'Covid' hoax set out to achieve. Official 'decolonisation' of Africa by the Cult was merely a prelude to financial colonisation on the road to a return to physical colonisation. The 'vaccine' is vital to that and the sudden and convenient death of the 'Covid' sceptic president of Tanzania can be seen in its true light. A lot of people in Africa are aware that this is another form of colonisation and exploitation and they need to stand their ground.

The 'vaccine is working' scam

A potential problem for the Cult was that the 'vaccine' is meant to change human DNA and body messaging and not to protect anyone from a 'virus' never shown to exist. The vaccine couldn't work because it was not designed to work and how could they make it *appear* to be working so that more people would have it? This was overcome by lowering the amplification rate of the PCR test to produce fewer 'cases' and therefore fewer 'deaths'. Some of us had been pointing out since March, 2020, that the amplification rate of the test not testing for the 'virus' had been made artificially high to generate positive tests which they could call 'cases' to justify lockdowns. The World Health Organization recommended an absurdly high 45 amplification cycles to ensure the high positives required by the Cult and then remained silent on the issue until January 20th, 2021 – Biden's Inauguration Day. This was when the

'vaccinations' were seriously underway and on that day the WHO recommended after discussions with America's CDC that laboratories *lowered their testing amplification*. Dr David Samadi, a certified urologist and health writer, said the WHO was encouraging all labs to reduce their cycle count for PCR tests. He said the current cycle was much too high and was 'resulting in any particle being declared a positive case'. Even one mainstream news report I saw said this meant the number of 'Covid' infections may have been 'dramatically inflated'. Oh, just a little bit. The CDC in America issued new guidance to laboratories in April, 2021, to use 28 cycles *but only for 'vaccinated' people*. The timing of the CDC/WHO interventions were cynically designed to make it appear the 'vaccines' were responsible for falling cases and deaths when the real reason can be seen in the following examples. New York's state lab, the Wadsworth Center, identified 872 positive tests in July, 2020, based on a threshold of 40 cycles. When the figure was lowered to 35 cycles *43 percent* of the 872 were no longer 'positives'. At 30 cycles the figure was 63 percent. A Massachusetts lab found that between *85 to 90 percent* of people who tested positive in July with a cycle threshold of 40 would be negative at 30 cycles, Ashish Jha, MD, director of the Harvard Global Health Institute, said: 'I'm really shocked that it could be that high … Boy, does it really change the way we need to be thinking about testing.' I'm shocked that I could see the obvious in the spring of 2020, with no medical background, and most medical professionals still haven't worked it out. No, that's not shocking – it's terrifying.

Three weeks after the WHO directive to lower PCR cycles the London *Daily Mail* ran this headline: 'Why ARE Covid cases plummeting? New infections have fallen 45% in the US and 30% globally in the past 3 weeks but experts say vaccine is NOT the main driver because only 8% of Americans and 13% of people worldwide have received their first dose.' They acknowledged that the drop could not be attributed to the 'vaccine', but soon this morphed throughout the media into the 'vaccine' has caused cases and deaths to fall when it was the PCR threshold. In December, 2020, there was

chaos at English Channel ports with truck drivers needing negative 'Covid' tests before they could board a ferry home for Christmas. The government wanted to remove the backlog as fast as possible and they brought in troops to do the 'testing'. Out of 1,600 drivers just *36* tested positive and the rest were given the all clear to cross the Channel. I guess the authorities thought that 36 was the least they could get away with without the unquestioning catching on. The amplification trick which most people believed in the absence of information in the mainstream applied more pressure on those refusing the 'vaccine' to succumb when it 'obviously worked'. The truth was the exact opposite with deaths in care homes soaring with the 'vaccine' and in Israel the term used was 'skyrocket'. A re-analysis of published data from the Israeli Health Ministry led by Dr Hervé Seligmann at the Medicine Emerging Infectious and Tropical Diseases at Aix-Marseille University found that Pfizer's 'Covid vaccine' killed 'about 40 times more [elderly] people than the disease itself would have killed' during a five-week vaccination period and *260 times* more younger people than would have died from the 'virus' even according to the manipulated 'virus' figures. Dr Seligmann and his co-study author, Haim Yativ, declared after reviewing the Israeli 'vaccine' death data: 'This is a new Holocaust.'

Then, in mid-April, 2021, after vast numbers of people worldwide had been 'vaccinated', the story changed with clear coordination. The UK government began to prepare the ground for more future lockdowns when Nuremberg-destined Boris Johnson told yet another whopper. He said that cases had fallen because of *lockdowns* not 'vaccines'. Lockdowns are irrelevant when *there is no 'virus'* and the test and fraudulent death certificates are deciding the number of 'cases' and 'deaths'. Study after study has shown that lockdowns don't work and instead kill and psychologically destroy people. Meanwhile in the United States Anthony Fauci and Rochelle Walensky, the ultra-Zionist head of the CDC, peddled the same line. More lockdown was the answer and not the 'vaccine', a line repeated on cue by the moron that is Canadian Prime Minister Justin Trudeau. Why all the hysteria to get everyone 'vaccinated' if lockdowns and

not 'vaccines' made the difference? None of it makes sense on the face of it. Oh, but it does. The Cult wants lockdowns *and* the 'vaccine' and if the 'vaccine' is allowed to be seen as the total answer lockdowns would no longer be justified when there are still livelihoods to destroy. 'Variants' and renewed upward manipulation of PCR amplification are planned to instigate never-ending lockdown *and* more 'vaccines'.

You *must* have it – we're desperate

Israel, where the Jewish and Arab population are ruled by the Sabbatian Cult, was the front-runner in imposing the DNA-manipulating 'vaccine' on its people to such an extent that Jewish refusers began to liken what was happening to the early years of Nazi Germany. This would seem to be a fantastic claim. Why would a government of Jewish people be acting like the Nazis did? If you realise that the Sabbatian Cult was behind the Nazis and that Sabbatians hate Jews the pieces start to fit and the question of why a 'Jewish' government would treat Jews with such callous disregard for their lives and freedom finds an answer. Those controlling the government of Israel *aren't Jewish* – they're Sabbatian. Israeli lawyer Tamir Turgal was one who made the Nazi comparison in comments to German lawyer Reiner Fuellmich who is leading a class action lawsuit against the psychopaths for crimes against humanity. Turgal described how the Israeli government was vaccinating children and pregnant women on the basis that there was no evidence that this was dangerous when they had no evidence that it *wasn't* dangerous either. They just had no evidence. This was medical experimentation and Turgal said this breached the Nuremberg Code about medical experimentation and procedures requiring informed consent and choice. Think about that. A Nuremberg Code developed because of Nazi experimentation on Jews and others in concentration camps by people like the evil-beyond-belief Josef Mengele is being breached by the *Israeli* government; but when you know that it's a *Sabbatian* government along with its intelligence and military agencies like Mossad, Shin Bet and the Israeli Defense Forces, and that Sabbatians

were the force behind the Nazis, the kaleidoscope comes into focus. What have we come to when Israeli Jews are suing their government for violating the Nuremberg Code by essentially making Israelis subject to a medical experiment using the controversial 'vaccines'? It's a shocker that this has to be done in the light of what happened in Nazi Germany. The Anshe Ha-Emet, or 'People of the Truth', made up of Israeli doctors, lawyers, campaigners and public, have launched a lawsuit with the International Criminal Court. It says:

> When the heads of the Ministry of Health as well as the prime minister presented the vaccine in Israel and began the vaccination of Israeli residents, the vaccinated were not advised, that, in practice, they are taking part in a medical experiment and that their consent is required for this under the Nuremberg Code.

The irony is unbelievable, but easily explained in one word: Sabbatians. The foundation of Israeli 'Covid' apartheid is the 'green pass' or 'green passport' which allows Jews and Arabs who have had the DNA-manipulating 'vaccine' to go about their lives – to work, fly, travel in general, go to shopping malls, bars, restaurants, hotels, concerts, gyms, swimming pools, theatres and sports venues, while non-'vaccinated' are banned from all those places and activities. Israelis have likened the 'green pass' to the yellow stars that Jews in Nazi Germany were forced to wear – the same as the yellow stickers that a branch of UK supermarket chain Morrisons told exempt mask-wears they had to display when shopping. How very sensitive. The Israeli system is blatant South African-style apartheid on the basis of compliance or non-compliance to fascism rather than colour of the skin. How appropriate that the Sabbatian Israeli government was so close to the pre-Mandela apartheid regime in Pretoria. The Sabbatian-instigated 'vaccine passport' in Israel is planned for everywhere. Sabbatians struck a deal with Pfizer that allowed them to lead the way in the percentage of a national population infused with synthetic material and the result was catastrophic. Israeli freedom activist Shai Dannon told me how chairs were appearing on beaches that said 'vaccinated only'. Health Minister Yuli Edelstein said that anyone unwilling or unable to get

the jabs that 'confer immunity' will be 'left behind'. The man's a liar. Not even the makers claim the 'vaccines' confer immunity. When you see those figures of 'vaccine' deaths these psychopaths were saying that you must take the chance the 'vaccine' will kill you or maim you while knowing it will change your DNA or lockdown for you will be permanent. That's fascism. The Israeli parliament passed a law to allow personal information of the non-vaccinated to be shared with local and national authorities for three months. This was claimed by its supporters to be a way to 'encourage' people to be vaccinated. Hadas Ziv from Physicians for Human Rights described this as a 'draconian law which crushed medical ethics and the patient rights'. But that's the idea, the Sabbatians would reply.

Your papers, please

Sabbatian Israel was leading what has been planned all along to be a global 'vaccine pass' called a 'green passport' without which you would remain in permanent lockdown restriction and unable to do anything. This is how badly – *desperately* – the Cult is to get everyone 'vaccinated'. The term and colour 'green' was not by chance and related to the psychology of fusing the perception of the green climate hoax with the 'Covid' hoax and how the 'solution' to both is the same Great Reset. Lying politicians, health officials and psychologists denied there were any plans for mandatory vaccinations or restrictions based on vaccinations, but they knew that was exactly what was meant to happen with governments of all countries reaching agreements to enforce a global system. 'Free' Denmark and 'free' Sweden unveiled digital vaccine certification. Cyprus, Czech Republic, Estonia, Greece, Hungary, Iceland, Italy, Poland, Portugal, Slovakia, and Spain have all committed to a vaccine passport system and the rest including the whole of the EU would follow. The satanic UK government will certainly go this way despite mendacious denials and at the time of writing it is trying to manipulate the public into having the 'vaccine' so they could go abroad on a summer holiday. How would that work without something to prove you had the synthetic toxicity injected into you?

Documents show that the EU's European Commission was moving towards 'vaccine certificates' in 2018 and 2019 before the 'Covid' hoax began. They knew what was coming. Abracadabra – Ursula von der Leyen, the German President of the Commission, announced in March, 2021, an EU 'Digital Green Certificate' – green again – to track the public's 'Covid status'. The passport sting is worldwide and the Far East followed the same pattern with South Korea ruling that only those with 'vaccination' passports – again the *green* pass – would be able to 'return to their daily lives'.

Bill Gates has been preparing for this 'passport' with other Cult operatives for years and beyond the paper version is a Gates-funded 'digital tattoo' to identify who has been vaccinated and who hasn't. The 'tattoo' is reported to include a substance which is externally readable to confirm who has been vaccinated. This is a bio-luminous light-generating enzyme (think fireflies) called … *Luciferase*. Yes, named after the Cult 'god' Lucifer the 'light bringer' of whom more to come. Gates said he funded the readable tattoo to ensure children in the developing world were vaccinated and no one was missed out. He cares so much about poor kids as we know. This was just the cover story to develop a vaccine tagging system for everyone on the planet. Gates has been funding the ID2020 'alliance' to do just that in league with other lovely people at Microsoft, GAVI, the Rockefeller Foundation, Accenture and IDEO.org. He said in interviews in March, 2020, before any 'vaccine' publicly existed, that the world must have a globalised digital certificate to track the 'virus' and who had been vaccinated. Gates knew from the start that the mRNA vaccines were coming and when they would come and that the plan was to tag the 'vaccinated' to marginalise the intelligent and stop them doing anything including travel. Evil just doesn't suffice. Gates was exposed for offering a $10 million bribe to the Nigerian House of Representatives to invoke compulsory 'Covid' vaccination of all Nigerians. Sara Cunial, a member of the Italian Parliament, called Gates a 'vaccine criminal'. She urged the Italian President to hand him over to the International Criminal Court for crimes against

humanity and condemned his plans to 'chip the human race' through ID2020.

You know it's a long-planned agenda when war criminal and Cult gofer Tony Blair is on the case. With the scale of arrogance only someone as dark as Blair can muster he said: 'Vaccination in the end is going to be your route to liberty.' Blair is a disgusting piece of work and he confirms that again. The media has given a lot of coverage to a bloke called Charlie Mullins, founder of London's biggest independent plumbing company, Pimlico Plumbers, who has said he won't employ anyone who has not been vaccinated or have them go to any home where people are not vaccinated. He said that if he had his way no one would be allowed to walk the streets if they have not been vaccinated. Gates was cheering at the time while I was alerting the white coats. The plan is that people will qualify for 'passports' for having the first two doses and then to keep it they will have to have all the follow ups and new ones for invented 'variants' until human genetics is transformed and many are dead who can't adjust to the changes. Hollywood celebrities – the usual propaganda stunt – are promoting something called the WELL Health-Safety Rating to verify that a building or space has 'taken the necessary steps to prioritize the health and safety of their staff, visitors and other stakeholders'. They included Lady Gaga, Jennifer Lopez, Michael B. Jordan, Robert DeNiro, Venus Williams, Wolfgang Puck, Deepak Chopra and 17th Surgeon General Richard Carmona. Yawn. WELL Health-Safety has big connections with China. Parent company Delos is headed by former Goldman Sachs partner Paul Scialla. This is another example – and we will see so many others – of using the excuse of 'health' to dictate the lives and activities of the population. I guess one confirmation of the 'safety' of buildings is that only 'vaccinated' people can go in, right?

Electronic concentration camps

I wrote decades ago about the plans to restrict travel and here we are for those who refuse to bow to tyranny. This can be achieved in one go with air travel if the aviation industry makes a blanket decree.

The 'vaccine' and guaranteed income are designed to be part of a global version of China's social credit system which tracks behaviour 24/7 and awards or deletes 'credits' based on whether your behaviour is supported by the state or not. I mean your entire lifestyle – what you do, eat, say, everything. Once your credit score falls below a certain level consequences kick in. In China tens of millions have been denied travel by air and train because of this. All the locations and activities denied to refusers by the 'vaccine' passports will be included in one big mass ban on doing almost anything for those that don't bow their head to government. It's beyond fascist and a new term is required to describe its extremes – I guess fascist technocracy will have to do. The way the Chinese system of technological – technocratic – control is sweeping the West can be seen in the Los Angeles school system and is planned to be expanded worldwide. Every child is required to have a 'Covid'-tracking app scanned daily before they can enter the classroom. The so-called Daily Pass tracking system is produced by Gates' Microsoft which I'm sure will shock you rigid. The pass will be scanned using a barcode (one step from an inside-the-body barcode) and the information will include health checks, 'Covid' tests and vaccinations. Entry codes are for one specific building only and access will only be allowed if a student or teacher has a negative test with a test not testing for the 'virus', has no symptoms of anything alleged to be related to 'Covid' (symptoms from a range of other illness), and has a temperature under 100 degrees. No barcode, no entry, is planned to be the case for everywhere and not only schools.

Kids are being psychologically prepared to accept this as 'normal' their whole life which is why what they can impose in schools is so important to the Cult and its gofers. Long-time American freedom campaigner John Whitehead of the Rutherford Institute was not exaggerating when he said: 'Databit by databit, we are building our own electronic concentration camps.' Canada under its Cult gofer prime minister Justin Trudeau has taken a major step towards the real thing with people interned against their will if they test positive with a test not testing for the 'virus' when they arrive at a Canadian

airport. They are jailed in internment hotels often without food or water for long periods and with many doors failing to lock there have been sexual assaults. The interned are being charged sometimes $2,000 for the privilege of being abused in this way. Trudeau is fully on board with the Cult and says the 'Covid pandemic' has provided an opportunity for a global 'reset' to permanently change Western civilisation. His number two, Deputy Prime Minister Chrystia Freeland, is a trustee of the World Economic Forum and a Rhodes Scholar. The Trudeau family have long been servants of the Cult. See *The Biggest Secret* and Cathy O'Brien's book *Trance-Formation of America* for the horrific background to Trudeau's father Pierre Trudeau another Canadian prime minister. Hide your fascism behind the façade of a heart-on-the-sleeve liberal. It's a well-honed Cult technique.

What can the 'vaccine' *really* do?

We have a 'virus' never shown to exist and 'variants' of the 'virus' that have also never been shown to exist except, like the 'original', as computer-generated fictions. Even if you believe there's a 'virus' the 'case' to 'death' rate is in the region of 0.23 to 0.15 percent and those 'deaths' are concentrated among the very old around the same average age that people die anyway. In response to this lack of threat (in truth none) psychopaths and idiots, knowingly and unknowingly answering to Gates and the Cult, are seeking to 'vaccinate' every man, woman and child on Planet Earth. Clearly the 'vaccine' is not about 'Covid' – none of this ever has been. So what is it all about *really*? Why the desperation to infuse genetically-manipulating synthetic material into everyone through mRNA fraudulent 'vaccines' with the intent of doing this over and over with the excuses of 'variants' and other 'virus' inventions? Dr Sherri Tenpenny, an osteopathic medical doctor in the United States, has made herself an expert on vaccines and their effects as a vehement campaigner against their use. Tenpenny was board certified in emergency medicine, the director of a level two trauma centre for 12 years, and moved to Cleveland in 1996 to start an integrative

medicine practice which has treated patients from all 50 states and some 17 other countries. Weaning people off pharmaceutical drugs is a speciality.

She became interested in the consequences of vaccines after attending a meeting at the National Vaccine Information Center in Washington DC in 2000 where she 'sat through four days of listening to medical doctors and scientists and lawyers and parents of vaccine injured kids' and asked: 'What's going on?' She had never been vaccinated and never got ill while her father was given a list of vaccines to be in the military and was 'sick his entire life'. The experience added to her questions and she began to examine vaccine documents from the Centers for Disease Control (CDC). After reading the first one, the 1998 version of *The General Recommendations of Vaccination*, she thought: 'This is it?' The document was poorly written and bad science and Tenpenny began 20 years of research into vaccines that continues to this day. She began her research into 'Covid vaccines' in March, 2020, and she describes them as 'deadly'. For many, as we have seen, they already have been. Tenpenny said that in the first 30 days of the 'vaccine' rollout in the United States there had been more than 40,000 adverse events reported to the vaccine adverse event database. A document had been delivered to her the day before that was 172 pages long. 'We have over 40,000 adverse events; we have over 3,100 cases of [potentially deadly] anaphylactic shock; we have over 5,000 neurological reactions.' Effects ranged from headaches to numbness, dizziness and vertigo, to losing feeling in hands or feet and paraesthesia which is when limbs 'fall asleep' and people have the sensation of insects crawling underneath their skin. All this happened in the first 30 days and remember that only about *ten percent* (or far less) of adverse reactions and vaccine-related deaths are estimated to be officially reported. Tenpenny said:

So can you think of one single product in any industry, any industry, for as long as products have been made on the planet that within 30 days we have 40,000 people complaining of side effects that not only is still on the market but … we've got paid actors telling us how great

they are for getting their vaccine. We're offering people $500 if they will just get their vaccine and we've got nurses and doctors going; 'I got the vaccine, I got the vaccine'.

Tenpenny said they were not going to be 'happy dancing folks' when they began to suffer Bell's palsy (facial paralysis), neuropathies, cardiac arrhythmias and autoimmune reactions that kill through a blood disorder. 'They're not going to be so happy, happy then, but we're never going to see pictures of those people' she said. Tenpenny described the 'vaccine' as 'a well-designed killing tool'.

No off-switch

Bad as the initial consequences had been Tenpenny said it would be maybe 14 months before we began to see the 'full ravage' of what is going to happen to the 'Covid vaccinated' with full-out consequences taking anything between two years and 20 years to show. You can understand why when you consider that variations of the 'Covid vaccine' use mRNA (messenger RNA) to in theory activate the immune system to produce protective antibodies without using the actual 'virus'. How can they when it's a computer program and they've never isolated what they claim is the 'real thing'? Instead they use *synthetic* mRNA. They are inoculating synthetic material into the body which through a technique known as the Trojan horse is absorbed into cells to change the nature of DNA. Human DNA is changed by an infusion of messenger RNA and with each new 'vaccine' of this type it is changed even more. Say so and you are banned by Cult Internet platforms. The contempt the contemptuous Mark Zuckerberg has for the truth and human health can be seen in an internal Facebook video leaked to the Project Veritas investigative team in which he said of the 'Covid vaccines': '… I share some caution on this because we just don't know the long term side-effects of basically modifying people's DNA and RNA.' At the same time this disgusting man's Facebook was censoring and banning anyone saying exactly the same. He must go before a Nuremberg trial for crimes against humanity when he *knows* that he

is censoring legitimate concerns and denying the right of informed consent on behalf of the Cult that owns him. People have been killed and damaged by the very 'vaccination' technique he cast doubt on himself when they may not have had the 'vaccine' with access to information that he denied them. The plan is to have at least annual 'Covid vaccinations', add others to deal with invented 'variants', and change all other vaccines into the mRNA system. Pfizer executives told shareholders at a virtual Barclays Global Healthcare Conference in March, 2021, that the public may need a third dose of 'Covid vaccine', plus regular yearly boosters and the company planned to hike prices to milk the profits in a 'significant opportunity for our vaccine'. These are the professional liars, cheats and opportunists who are telling you their 'vaccine' is safe. Given this volume of mRNA planned to be infused into the human body and its ability to then replicate we will have a transformation of human genetics from biological to synthetic biological – exactly the long-time Cult plan for reasons we'll see – and many will die. Sherri Tenpenny said of this replication:

> It's like having an on-button but no off-button and that whole mechanism … they actually give it a name and they call it the Trojan horse mechanism, because it allows that [synthetic] virus and that piece of that [synthetic] virus to get inside of your cells, start to replicate and even get inserted into other parts of your DNA as a Trojan-horse.

Ask the overwhelming majority of people who have the 'vaccine' what they know about the contents and what they do and they would reply: 'The government says it will stop me getting the virus.' Governments give that false impression on purpose to increase take-up. You can read Sherri Tenpenny's detailed analysis of the health consequences in her blog at Vaxxter.com, but in summary these are some of them. She highlights the statement by Bill Gates about how human beings can become their own 'vaccine manufacturing machine'. The man is insane. ['Vaccine'-generated] 'antibodies' carry synthetic messenger RNA into the cells and the damage starts, Tenpenny contends, and she says that lungs can be adversely affected through varying degrees of pus and bleeding which

obviously affects breathing and would be dubbed 'Covid-19'. Even more sinister was the impact of 'antibodies' on macrophages, a white blood cell of the immune system. They consist of Type 1 and Type 2 which have very different functions. She said Type 1 are 'hyper-vigilant' white blood cells which 'gobble up' bacteria etc. However, in doing so, this could cause inflammation and in extreme circumstances be fatal. She says these affects are mitigated by Type 2 macrophages which kick in to calm down the system and stop it going rogue. They clear up dead tissue debris and reduce inflammation that the Type 1 'fire crews' have caused. Type 1 kills the infection and Type 2 heals the damage, she says. This is her punchline with regard to 'Covid vaccinations': She says that mRNA 'antibodies' block Type 2 macrophages by attaching to them and deactivating them. This meant that when the Type 1 response was triggered by infection there was nothing to stop that getting out of hand by calming everything down. There's an on-switch, but no off-switch, she says. What follows can be 'over and out, see you when I see you'.

Genetic suicide

Tenpenny also highlights the potential for autoimmune disease – the body attacking itself – which has been associated with vaccines since they first appeared. Infusing a synthetic foreign substance into cells could cause the immune system to react in a panic believing that the body is being overwhelmed by an invader (it is) and the consequences can again be fatal. There is an autoimmune response known as a 'cytokine storm' which I have likened to a homeowner panicked by an intruder and picking up a gun to shoot randomly in all directions before turning the fire on himself. The immune system unleashes a storm of inflammatory response called cytokines to a threat and the body commits hara-kiri. The lesson is that you mess with the body's immune response at your peril and these 'vaccines' seriously – fundamentally – mess with immune response. Tenpenny refers to a consequence called anaphylactic shock which is a severe and highly dangerous allergic reaction when the immune system

floods the body with chemicals. She gives the example of having a bee sting which primes the immune system and makes it sensitive to those chemicals. When people are stung again maybe years later the immune response can be so powerful that it leads to anaphylactic shock. Tenpenny relates this 'shock' with regard to the 'Covid vaccine' to something called polyethylene glycol or PEG. Enormous numbers of people have become sensitive to this over decades of use in a whole range of products and processes including food, drink, skin creams and 'medicine'. Studies have claimed that some 72 percent of people have antibodies triggered by PEG compared with two percent in the 1960s and allergic hypersensitive reactions to this become a gathering cause for concern. Tenpenny points out that the 'mRNA vaccine' is coated in a 'bubble' of polyethylene glycol which has the potential to cause anaphylactic shock through immune sensitivity. Many reports have appeared of people reacting this way after having the 'Covid vaccine'. What do we think is going to happen as humanity has more and more of these 'vaccines'? Tenpenny said: 'All these pictures we have seen with people with these rashes … these weepy rashes, big reactions on their arms and things like that – it's an acute allergic reaction most likely to the polyethylene glycol that you've been previously primed and sensitised to.'

Those who have not studied the conspiracy and its perpetrators at length might think that making the population sensitive to PEG and then putting it in these 'vaccines' is just a coincidence. It is not. It is instead testament to how carefully and coldly-planned current events have been and the scale of the conspiracy we are dealing with. Tenpenny further explains that the 'vaccine' mRNA procedure can breach the blood-brain barrier which protects the brain from toxins and other crap that will cause malfunction. In this case they could make two proteins corrupt brain function to cause Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS) , a progressive nervous system disease leading to loss of muscle control, and frontal lobe degeneration – Alzheimer's and dementia. Immunologist J. Bart Classon published a paper connecting mRNA 'vaccines' to prion

disease which can lead to Alzheimer's and other forms of neurogenerative disease while others have pointed out the potential to affect the placenta in ways that make women infertile. This will become highly significant in the next chapter when I will discuss other aspects of this non-vaccine that relate to its nanotechnology and transmission from the injected to the uninjected.

Qualified in idiocy

Tenpenny describes how research has confirmed that these 'vaccine'-generated antibodies can interact with a range of other tissues in the body and attack many other organs including the lungs. 'This means that if you have a hundred people standing in front of you that all got this shot they could have a hundred different symptoms.' Anyone really think that Cult gofers like the Queen, Tony Blair, Christopher Whitty, Anthony Fauci, and all the other psychopaths have really had this 'vaccine' in the pictures we've seen? Not a bloody chance. Why don't doctors all tell us about all these dangers and consequences of the 'Covid vaccine'? Why instead do they encourage and pressure patients to have the shot? Don't let's think for a moment that doctors and medical staff can't be stupid, lazy, and psychopathic and that's without the financial incentives to give the jab. Tenpenny again:

> Some people are going to die from the vaccine directly but a large number of people are going to start to get horribly sick and get all kinds of autoimmune diseases 42 days to maybe a year out. What are they going to do, these stupid doctors who say; 'Good for you for getting that vaccine.' What are they going to say; 'Oh, it must be a mutant, we need to give an extra dose of that vaccine.'
>
> Because now the vaccine, instead of one dose or two doses we need three or four because the stupid physicians aren't taking the time to learn anything about it. If I can learn this sitting in my living room reading a 19 page paper and several others so can they. There's nothing special about me, I just take the time to do it.

Remember how Sara Kayat, the NHS and TV doctor, said that the 'Covid vaccine' would '100 percent prevent hospitalisation and death'. Doctors can be idiots like every other profession and they

should not be worshipped as infallible. They are not and far from it. Behind many medical and scientific 'experts' lies an uninformed prat trying to hide themselves from you although in the 'Covid' era many have failed to do so as with UK narrative-repeating 'TV doctor' Hilary Jones. Pushing back against the minority of proper doctors and scientists speaking out against the 'vaccine' has been the entire edifice of the Cult global state in the form of governments, medical systems, corporations, mainstream media, Silicon Valley, and an army of compliant doctors, medical staff and scientists willing to say anything for money and to enhance their careers by promoting the party line. If you do that you are an 'expert' and if you won't you are an 'anti-vaxxer' and 'Covidiot'. The pressure to be 'vaccinated' is incessant. We have even had reports claiming that the 'vaccine' can help cure cancer and Alzheimer's and make the lame walk. I am waiting for the announcement that it can bring you coffee in the morning and cook your tea. Just as the symptoms of 'Covid' seem to increase by the week so have the miracles of the 'vaccine'. American supermarket giant Kroger Co. offered nearly 500,000 employees in 35 states a $100 bonus for having the 'vaccine' while donut chain Krispy Kreme promised 'vaccinated' customers a free glazed donut every day for the rest of 2021. Have your DNA changed and you will get a doughnut although we might not have to give you them for long. Such offers and incentives confirm the desperation.

Perhaps the worse vaccine-stunt of them all was UK 'Health' Secretary Matt-the-prat Hancock on live TV after watching a clip of someone being 'vaccinated' when the roll-out began. Hancock faked tears so badly it was embarrassing. Brain-of-Britain Piers Morgan, the lockdown-supporting, 'vaccine' supporting, 'vaccine' passport-supporting, TV host played along with Hancock – 'You're quite emotional about that' he said in response to acting so atrocious it would have been called out at a school nativity which will presumably today include Mary and Jesus in masks, wise men keeping their camels six feet apart, and shepherds under tent arrest. System-serving Morgan tweeted this: 'Love the idea of covid vaccine passports for everywhere: flights, restaurants, clubs, football, gyms,

shops etc. It's time covid-denying, anti-vaxxer loonies had their bullsh*t bluff called & bar themselves from going anywhere that responsible citizens go.' If only I could aspire to his genius. To think that Morgan, who specialises in shouting over anyone he disagrees with, was lauded as a free speech hero when he lost his job after storming off the set of his live show like a child throwing his dolly out of the pram. If he is a free speech hero we are in real trouble. I have no idea what 'bullsh*t' means, by the way, the * throws me completely.

The Cult is desperate to infuse its synthetic DNA-changing concoction into everyone and has been using every lie, trick and intimidation to do so. The question of '*Why*?' we shall now address.

CHAPTER TEN

Human 2.0

I believe that at the end of the century the use of words and general educated opinion will have altered so much that one will be able to speak of machines thinking without expecting to be contradicted –
Alan Turing (1912-1954), the 'Father of artificial intelligence'

I have been exposing for decades the plan to transform the human body from a biological to a synthetic-biological state. The new human that I will call Human 2.0 is planned to be connected to artificial intelligence and a global AI 'Smart Grid' that would operate as one global system in which AI would control everything from your fridge to your heating system to your car to your mind. Humans would no longer be 'human', but post-human and sub-human, with their thinking and emotional processes replaced by AI.

What I said sounded crazy and beyond science fiction and I could understand that. To any balanced, rational, mind it *is* crazy. Today, however, that world is becoming reality and it puts the 'Covid vaccine' into its true context. Ray Kurzweil is the ultra-Zionist 'computer scientist, inventor and futurist' and co-founder of the Singularity University. Singularity refers to the merging of humans with machines or 'transhumanism'. Kurzweil has said humanity would be connected to the cyber 'cloud' in the period of the ever-recurring year of 2030:

Our thinking … will be a hybrid of biological and non-biological thinking … humans will be able to extend their limitations and 'think in the cloud' … We're going to put gateways to the

cloud in our brains ... We're going to gradually merge and enhance ourselves ... In my view, that's the nature of being human – we transcend our limitations. As the technology becomes vastly superior to what we are then the small proportion that is still human gets smaller and smaller and smaller until it's just utterly negligible.

They are trying to sell this end-of-humanity-as-we-know-it as the next stage of 'evolution' when we become super-human and 'like the gods'. They are lying to you. Shocked, eh? The population, and again especially the young, have been manipulated into addiction to technologies designed to enslave them for life. First they induced an addiction to smartphones (holdables); next they moved to technology on the body (wearables); and then began the invasion of the body (implantables). I warned way back about the plan for microchipped people and we are now entering that era. We should not be diverted into thinking that this refers only to chips we can see. Most important are the nanochips known as smart dust, neural dust and nanobots which are far too small to be seen by the human eye. Nanotechnology is everywhere, increasingly in food products, and released into the atmosphere by the geoengineering of the skies funded by Bill Gates to 'shut out the Sun' and 'save the planet from global warming'. Gates has been funding a project to spray millions of tonnes of chalk (calcium carbonate) into the stratosphere over Sweden to 'dim the Sun' and cool the Earth. Scientists warned the move could be disastrous for weather systems in ways no one can predict and opposition led to the Swedish space agency announcing that the 'experiment' would not be happening as planned in the summer of 2021; but it shows where the Cult is going with dimming the impact of the Sun and there's an associated plan to change the planet's atmosphere. Who gives psychopath Gates the right to dictate to the entire human race and dismantle planetary systems? The world will not be safe while this man is at large.

The global warming hoax has made the Sun, like the gas of life, something to fear when both are essential to good health and human survival (more inversion). The body transforms sunlight into vital vitamin D through a process involving … *cholesterol*. This is the cholesterol we are also told to fear. We are urged to take Big Pharma

statin drugs to reduce cholesterol and it's all systematic. Reducing cholesterol means reducing vitamin D uptake with all the multiple health problems that will cause. At least if you take statins long term it saves the government from having to pay you a pension. The delivery system to block sunlight is widely referred to as chemtrails although these have a much deeper agenda, too. They appear at first to be contrails or condensation trails streaming from aircraft into cold air at high altitudes. Contrails disperse very quickly while chemtrails do not and spread out across the sky before eventually their content falls to earth. Many times I have watched aircraft cross-cross a clear blue sky releasing chemtrails until it looks like a cloudy day. Chemtrails contain many things harmful to humans and the natural world including toxic heavy metals, aluminium (see Alzheimer's) and nanotechnology. Ray Kurzweil reveals the reason without actually saying so: 'Nanobots will infuse all the matter around us with information. Rocks, trees, everything will become these intelligent creatures.' How do you deliver that? *From the sky*. Self-replicating nanobots would connect everything to the Smart Grid. The phenomenon of Morgellons disease began in the chemtrail era and the correlation has led to it being dubbed the 'chemtrail disease'. Self-replicating fibres appear in the body that can be pulled out through the skin. Morgellons fibres continue to grow outside the body and have a form of artificial intelligence. I cover this at greater length in *Phantom Self*.

'Vaccine' operating system

'Covid vaccines' with their self-replicating synthetic material are also designed to make the connection between humanity and Kurzweil's 'cloud'. American doctor and dedicated campaigner for truth, Carrie Madej, an Internal Medicine Specialist in Georgia with more than 20 years medical experience, has highlighted the nanotechnology aspect of the fake 'vaccines'. She explains how one of the components in at least the Moderna and Pfizer synthetic potions are 'lipid nanoparticles' which are 'like little tiny computer bits' – a 'sci-fi substance' known as nanobots and hydrogel which can be 'triggered

at any moment to deliver its payload' and act as 'biosensors'. The synthetic substance had 'the ability to accumulate data from your body like your breathing, your respiration, thoughts and emotions, all kind of things' and each syringe could carry a *million* nanobots:

This substance because it's like little bits of computers in your body, crazy, but it's true, it can do that, [and] obviously has the ability to act through Wi-Fi. It can receive and transmit energy, messages, frequencies or impulses. That issue has never been addressed by these companies. What does that do to the human?

Just imagine getting this substance in you and it can react to things all around you, the 5G, your smart device, your phones, what is happening with that? What if something is triggering it, too, like an impulse, a frequency? We have something completely foreign in the human body.

Madej said her research revealed that electromagnetic (EMF) frequencies emitted by phones and other devices had increased dramatically in the same period of the 'vaccine' rollout and she was seeing more people with radiation problems as 5G and other electromagnetic technology was expanded and introduced to schools and hospitals. She said she was 'floored with the EMF coming off' the devices she checked. All this makes total sense and syncs with my own work of decades when you think that Moderna refers in documents to its mRNA 'vaccine' as an 'operating system':

Recognizing the broad potential of mRNA science, we set out to create an mRNA technology platform that functions very much like an operating system on a computer. It is designed so that it can plug and play interchangeably with different programs. In our case, the 'program' or 'app' is our mRNA drug – the unique mRNA sequence that codes for a protein …

… Our MRNA Medicines – 'The 'Software Of Life': When we have a concept for a new mRNA medicine and begin research, fundamental components are already in place. Generally, the only thing that changes from one potential mRNA medicine to another is the coding region – the actual genetic code that instructs ribosomes to make protein. Utilizing these instruction sets gives our investigational mRNA medicines a software-like quality. We also have the ability to combine different mRNA sequences encoding for different proteins in a single mRNA investigational medicine.

Who needs a real 'virus' when you can create a computer version to justify infusing your operating system into the entire human race on the road to making living, breathing people into cyborgs? What is missed with the 'vaccines' is the *digital* connection between synthetic material and the body that I highlighted earlier with the study that hacked a computer with human DNA. On one level the body is digital, based on mathematical codes, and I'll have more about that in the next chapter. Those who ridiculously claim that mRNA 'vaccines' are not designed to change human genetics should explain the words of Dr Tal Zaks, chief medical officer at Moderna, in a 2017 TED talk. He said that over the last 30 years 'we've been living this phenomenal digital scientific revolution, and I'm here today to tell you, that we are actually *hacking the software of life*, and that it's changing the way we think about prevention and treatment of disease':

In every cell there's this thing called messenger RNA, or mRNA for short, that transmits the critical information from the DNA in our genes to the protein, which is really the stuff we're all made out of. This is the critical information that determines what the cell will do. So we think about it as an operating system. So if you could change that, if you could introduce a line of code, or change a line of code, it turns out, that has profound implications for everything, from the flu to cancer.

Zaks should more accurately have said that this has profound implications for the human genetic code and the nature of DNA. Communications within the body go both ways and not only one. But, hey, no, the 'Covid vaccine' will not affect your genetics. Cult fact-checkers say so even though the man who helped to develop the mRNA technique says that it does. Zaks said in 2017:

If you think about what it is we're trying to do. We've taken information and our understanding of that information and how that information is transmitted in a cell, and we've taken our understanding of medicine and how to make drugs, and we're fusing the two. We think of it as information therapy.

I have been writing for decades that the body is an information field communicating with itself and the wider world. This is why

radiation which is information can change the information field of body and mind through phenomena like 5G and change their nature and function. 'Information therapy' means to change the body's information field and change the way it operates. DNA is a receiver-transmitter of information and can be mutated by information like mRNA synthetic messaging. Technology to do this has been ready and waiting in the underground bases and other secret projects to be rolled out when the 'Covid' hoax was played. 'Trials' of such short and irrelevant duration were only for public consumption. When they say the 'vaccine' is 'experimental' that is not true. It may appear to be 'experimental' to those who don't know what's going on, but the trials have already been done to ensure the Cult gets the result it desires. Zaks said that it took decades to sequence the human genome, completed in 2003, but now they could do it in a week. By 'they' he means scientists operating in the public domain. In the secret projects they were sequencing the genome in a week long before even 2003.

Deluge of mRNA

Highly significantly the Moderna document says the guiding premise is that if using mRNA as a medicine works for one disease then it should work for many diseases. They were leveraging the flexibility afforded by their platform and the fundamental role mRNA plays in protein synthesis to pursue mRNA medicines for a broad spectrum of diseases. Moderna is confirming what I was saying through 2020 that multiple 'vaccines' were planned for 'Covid' (and later invented 'variants') and that previous vaccines would be converted to the mRNA system to infuse the body with massive amounts of genetically-manipulating synthetic material to secure a transformation to a synthetic-biological state. The 'vaccines' are designed to kill stunning numbers as part of the long-exposed Cult depopulation agenda and transform the rest. Given this is the goal you can appreciate why there is such hysterical demand for every human to be 'vaccinated' for an alleged 'disease' that has an estimated 'infection' to 'death' ratio of 0.23-0.15 percent. As I write

children are being given the 'vaccine' in trials (their parents are a disgrace) and ever-younger people are being offered the vaccine for a 'virus' that even if you believe it exists has virtually zero chance of harming them. Horrific effects of the 'trials' on a 12-year-old girl were revealed by a family member to be serious brain and gastric problems that included a bowel obstruction and the inability to swallow liquids or solids. She was unable to eat or drink without throwing up, had extreme pain in her back, neck and abdomen, and was paralysed from the waist down which stopped her urinating unaided. When the girl was first taken to hospital doctors said it was all in her mind. She was signed up for the 'trial' by her parents for whom no words suffice. None of this 'Covid vaccine' insanity makes any sense unless you see what the 'vaccine' really is – a body-changer. Synthetic biology or 'SynBio' is a fast-emerging and expanding scientific discipline which includes everything from genetic and molecular engineering to electrical and computer engineering. Synthetic biology is defined in these ways:

- A multidisciplinary area of research that seeks to create new biological parts, devices, and systems, or to redesign systems that are already found in nature.

- The use of a mixture of physical engineering and genetic engineering to create new (and therefore synthetic) life forms.

- An emerging field of research that aims to combine the knowledge and methods of biology, engineering and related disciplines in the design of chemically-synthesized DNA to create organisms with novel or enhanced characteristics and traits (synthetic organisms including humans).

We now have synthetic blood, skin, organs and limbs being developed along with synthetic body parts produced by 3D printers. These are all elements of the synthetic human programme and this comment by Kurzweil's co-founder of the Singularity University,

Peter Diamandis, can be seen in a whole new light with the 'Covid' hoax and the sanctions against those that refuse the 'vaccine':

Anybody who is going to be resisting the progress forward [to transhumanism] is going to be resisting evolution and, fundamentally, they will die out. It's not a matter of whether it's good or bad. It's going to happen.

'Resisting evolution'? What absolute bollocks. The arrogance of these people is without limit. His 'it's going to happen' mantra is another way of saying 'resistance is futile' to break the spirit of those pushing back and we must not fall for it. Getting this genetically-transforming 'vaccine' into everyone is crucial to the Cult plan for total control and the desperation to achieve that is clear for anyone to see. Vaccine passports are a major factor in this and they, too, are a form of resistance is futile. It's NOT. The paper funded by the Rockefeller Foundation for the 2013 'health conference' in China said:

We will interact more with artificial intelligence. The use of robotics, bio-engineering to augment human functioning is already well underway and will advance. Re-engineering of humans into potentially separate and unequal forms through genetic engineering or mixed human-robots raises debates on ethics and equality.

A new demography is projected to emerge after 2030 [that year again] of technologies (robotics, genetic engineering, nanotechnology) producing robots, engineered organisms, 'nanobots' and artificial intelligence (AI) that can self-replicate. Debates will grow on the implications of an impending reality of human designed life.

What is happening today is so long planned. The world army enforcing the will of the world government is intended to be a robot army, not a human one. Today's military and its technologically 'enhanced' troops, pilotless planes and driverless vehicles are just stepping stones to that end. Human soldiers are used as Cult fodder and its time they woke up to that and worked for the freedom of the population instead of their own destruction and their family's destruction – the same with the police. Join us and let's sort this out. The phenomenon of enforce my own destruction is widespread in the 'Covid' era with Woker 'luvvies' in the acting and entertainment

industries supporting 'Covid' rules which have destroyed their profession and the same with those among the public who put signs on the doors of their businesses 'closed due to Covid – stay safe' when many will never reopen. It's a form of masochism and most certainly insanity.

Transgender = transhumanism

When something explodes out of nowhere and is suddenly everywhere it is always the Cult agenda and so it is with the tidal wave of claims and demands that have infiltrated every aspect of society under the heading of 'transgenderism'. The term 'trans' is so 'in' and this is the dictionary definition:

> A prefix meaning 'across', 'through', occurring … in loanwords from Latin, used in particular for denoting movement or conveyance from place to place (transfer; transmit; transplant) or complete change (transform; transmute), or to form adjectives meaning 'crossing', 'on the other side of', or 'going beyond' the place named (transmontane; transnational; trans-Siberian).

Transgender means to go beyond gender and transhuman means to go beyond human. Both are aspects of the Cult plan to transform the human body to a synthetic state with *no gender*. Human 2.0 is not designed to procreate and would be produced technologically with no need for parents. The new human would mean the end of parents and so men, and increasingly women, are being targeted for the deletion of their rights and status. Parental rights are disappearing at an ever-quickening speed for the same reason. The new human would have no need for men or women when there is no procreation and no gender. Perhaps the transgender movement that appears to be in a permanent state of frenzy might now contemplate on how it is being used. This was never about transgender rights which are only the interim excuse for confusing gender, particularly in the young, on the road to *fusing* gender. Transgender activism is not an end; it is a *means* to an end. We see again the technique of creative destruction in which you destroy the status quo to 'build back better' in the form that you want. The gender status quo had to be

destroyed by persuading the Cult-created Woke mentality to believe that you can have 100 genders or more. A programme for 9 to 12 year olds produced by the Cult-owned BBC promoted the 100 genders narrative. The very idea may be the most monumental nonsense, but it is not what is true that counts, only what you can make people *believe* is true. Once the gender of 2 + 2 = 4 has been dismantled through indoctrination, intimidation and 2 + 2 = 5 then the new no-gender normal can take its place with Human 2.0. Aldous Huxley revealed the plan in his prophetic *Brave New World* in 1932:

> Natural reproduction has been done away with and children are created, decanted', and raised in 'hatcheries and conditioning centres'. From birth, people are genetically designed to fit into one of five castes, which are further split into 'Plus' and 'Minus' members and designed to fulfil predetermined positions within the social and economic strata of the World State.

How could Huxley know this in 1932? For the same reason George Orwell knew about the Big Brother state in 1948, Cult insiders I have quoted knew about it in 1969, and I have known about it since the early 1990s. If you are connected to the Cult or you work your balls off to uncover the plan you can predict the future. The process is simple. If there is a plan for the world and nothing intervenes to stop it then it will happen. Thus if you communicate the plan ahead of time you are perceived to have predicted the future, but you haven't. You have revealed the plan which without intervention will become the human future. The whole reason I have done what I have is to alert enough people to inspire an intervention and maybe at last that time has come with the Cult and its intentions now so obvious to anyone with a brain in working order.

The future is here

Technological wombs that Huxley described to replace parent procreation are already being developed and they are only the projects we know about in the public arena. Israeli scientists told *The Times of Israel* in March, 2021, that they have grown 250-cell embryos

into mouse foetuses with fully formed organs using artificial wombs in a development they say could pave the way for gestating humans outside the womb. Professor Jacob Hanna of the Weizmann Institute of Science said:

> We took mouse embryos from the mother at day five of development, when they are just of 250 cells, and had them in the incubator from day five until day 11, by which point they had grown all their organs.
>
> By day 11 they make their own blood and have a beating heart, a fully developed brain. Anybody would look at them and say, 'this is clearly a mouse foetus with all the characteristics of a mouse.' It's gone from being a ball of cells to being an advanced foetus.

A special liquid is used to nourish embryo cells in a laboratory dish and they float on the liquid to duplicate the first stage of embryonic development. The incubator creates all the right conditions for its development, Hanna said. The liquid gives the embryo 'all the nutrients, hormones and sugars they need' along with a custom-made electronic incubator which controls gas concentration, pressure and temperature. The cutting-edge in the underground bases and other secret locations will be light years ahead of that, however, and this was reported by the London *Guardian* in 2017:

> We are approaching a biotechnological breakthrough. Ectogenesis, the invention of a complete external womb, could completely change the nature of human reproduction. In April this year, researchers at the Children's Hospital of Philadelphia announced their development of an artificial womb.

The article was headed 'Artificial wombs could soon be a reality. What will this mean for women?' What would it mean for children is an even bigger question. No mother to bond with only a machine in preparation for a life of soulless interaction and control in a world governed by machines (see the *Matrix* movies). Now observe the calculated manipulations of the 'Covid' hoax as human interaction and warmth has been curtailed by distancing, isolation and fear with people communicating via machines on a scale never seen before.

These are all dots in the same picture as are all the personal assistants, gadgets and children's toys through which kids and adults communicate with AI as if it is human. The AI 'voice' on Sat-Nav should be included. All these things are psychological preparation for the Cult endgame. Before you can make a physical connection with AI you have to make a psychological connection and that is what people are being conditioned to do with this ever gathering human-AI interaction. Movies and TV programmes depicting the transhuman, robot dystopia relate to a phenomenon known as 'pre-emptive programming' in which the world that is planned is portrayed everywhere in movies, TV and advertising. This is conditioning the conscious and subconscious mind to become familiar with the planned reality to dilute resistance when it happens for real. What would have been a shock such is the change is made less so. We have young children put on the road to transgender transition surgery with puberty blocking drugs at an age when they could never be able to make those life-changing decisions.

Rachel Levine, a professor of paediatrics and psychiatry who believes in treating children this way, became America's highest-ranked openly-transgender official when she was confirmed as US Assistant Secretary at the Department of Health and Human Services after being nominated by Joe Biden (the Cult). Activists and governments press for laws to deny parents a say in their children's transition process so the kids can be isolated and manipulated into agreeing to irreversible medical procedures. A Canadian father Robert Hoogland was denied bail by the Vancouver Supreme Court in 2021 and remained in jail for breaching a court order that he stay silent over his young teenage daughter, a minor, who was being offered life-changing hormone therapy without parental consent. At the age of 12 the girl's 'school counsellor' said she may be transgender, referred her to a doctor and told the school to treat her like a boy. This is another example of state-serving schools imposing ever more control over children's lives while parents have ever less.

Contemptible and extreme child abuse is happening all over the world as the Cult gender-fusion operation goes into warp-speed.

Why the war on men – and now women?

The question about what artificial wombs mean for women should rightly be asked. The answer can be seen in the deletion of women's rights involving sport, changing rooms, toilets and status in favour of people in male bodies claiming to identify as women. I can identify as a mountain climber, but it doesn't mean I can climb a mountain any more than a biological man can be a biological woman. To believe so is a triumph of belief over factual reality which is the very perceptual basis of everything Woke. Women's sport is being destroyed by allowing those with male bodies who say they identify as female to 'compete' with girls and women. Male body 'women' dominate 'women's' competition with their greater muscle mass, bone density, strength and speed. With that disadvantage sport for women loses all meaning. To put this in perspective nearly 300 American high school boys can run faster than the quickest woman sprinter in the world. Women are seeing their previously protected spaces invaded by male bodies simply because they claim to identify as women. That's all they need to do to access all women's spaces and activities under the Biden 'Equality Act' that destroys equality for women with the usual Orwellian Woke inversion. Male sex offenders have already committed rapes in women's prisons after claiming to identify as women to get them transferred. Does this not matter to the Woke 'equality' hypocrites? Not in the least. What matters to Cult manipulators and funders behind transgender activists is to advance gender fusion on the way to the no-gender 'human'. When you are seeking to impose transparent nonsense like this, or the 'Covid' hoax, the only way the nonsense can prevail is through censorship and intimidation of dissenters, deletion of factual information, and programming of the unquestioning, bewildered and naive. You don't have to scan the world for long to see that all these things are happening.

Many women's rights organisations have realised that rights and status which took such a long time to secure are being eroded and that it is systematic. Kara Dansky of the global Women's Human Rights Campaign said that Biden's transgender executive order immediately he took office, subsequent orders, and Equality Act legislation that followed 'seek to erase women and girls in the law as a category'. *Exactly*. I said during the long ago-started war on men (in which many women play a crucial part) that this was going to turn into a war on them. The Cult is phasing out *both* male and female genders. To get away with that they are brought into conflict so they are busy fighting each other while the Cult completes the job with no unity of response. Unity, people, *unity*. We need unity everywhere. Transgender is the only show in town as the big step towards the no-gender human. It's not about rights for transgender people and never has been. Woke political correctness is deleting words relating to genders to the same end. Wokers believe this is to be 'inclusive' when the opposite is true. They are deleting words describing gender because gender *itself* is being deleted by Human 2.0. Terms like 'man', 'woman', 'mother' and 'father' are being deleted in the universities and other institutions to be replaced by the *no*-gender, not trans-gender, 'individuals' and 'guardians'. Women's rights campaigner Maria Keffler of Partners for Ethical Care said: 'Children are being taught from kindergarten upward that some boys have a vagina, some girls have a penis, and that kids can be any gender they want to be.' Do we really believe that suddenly countries all over the world at the same time had the idea of having drag queens go into schools or read transgender stories to very young children in the local library? It's coldly-calculated confusion of gender on the way to the fusion of gender. Suzanne Vierling, a psychologist from Southern California, made another important point:

> Yesterday's slave woman who endured gynecological medical experiments is today's girl-child being butchered in a booming gender-transitioning sector. Ovaries removed, pushing her into menopause and osteoporosis, uncharted territory, and parents' rights and authority decimated.

The erosion of parental rights is a common theme in line with the Cult plans to erase the very concept of parents and 'ovaries removed, pushing her into menopause' means what? Those born female lose the ability to have children – another way to discontinue humanity as we know it.

Eliminating Human 1.0 (before our very eyes)

To pave the way for Human 2.0 you must phase out Human 1.0. This is happening through plummeting sperm counts and making women infertile through an onslaught of chemicals, radiation (including smartphones in pockets of men) and mRNA 'vaccines'. Common agriculture pesticides are also having a devastating impact on human fertility. I have been tracking collapsing sperm counts in the books for a long time and in 2021 came a book by fertility scientist and reproductive epidemiologist Shanna Swan, *Count Down: How Our Modern World Is Threatening Sperm Counts, Altering Male and Female Reproductive Development and Imperiling the Future of the Human Race*. She reports how the global fertility rate dropped by *half* between 1960 and 2016 with America's birth rate 16 percent below where it needs to be to sustain the population. Women are experiencing declining egg quality, more miscarriages, and more couples suffer from infertility. Other findings were an increase in erectile dysfunction, infant boys developing more genital abnormalities, male problems with conception, and plunging levels of the male hormone testosterone which would explain why so many men have lost their backbone and masculinity. This has been very evident during the 'Covid' hoax when women have been prominent among the Pushbackers and big strapping blokes have bowed their heads, covered their faces with a nappy and quietly submitted. Mind control expert Cathy O'Brien also points to how global education introduced the concept of 'we're all winners' in sport and classrooms: 'Competition was defused, and it in turn defused a sense of fighting back.' This is another version of the 'equity' doctrine in which you drive down rather than raise up. What a contrast in Cult-controlled China with its global ambitions

where the government published plans in January, 2021, to 'cultivate masculinity' in boys from kindergarten through to high school in the face of a 'masculinity crisis'. A government adviser said boys would be soon become 'delicate, timid and effeminate' unless action was taken. Don't expect any similar policy in the targeted West. A 2006 study showed that a 65-year-old man in 2002 had testosterone levels *15 percent* lower than a 65-year-old man in 1987 while a 2020 study found a similar story with young adults and adolescents. Men are getting prescriptions for testosterone replacement therapy which causes an even greater drop in sperm count with up to 99 percent seeing sperm counts drop to zero during the treatment. More sperm is defective and malfunctioning with some having two heads or not pursuing an egg.

A class of *synthetic* chemicals known as phthalates are being blamed for the decline. These are found everywhere in plastics, shampoos, cosmetics, furniture, flame retardants, personal care products, pesticides, canned foods and even receipts. Why till receipts? Everyone touches them. Let no one delude themselves that all this is not systematic to advance the long-time agenda for human body transformation. Phthalates mimic hormones and disrupt the hormone balance causing testosterone to fall and genital birth defects in male infants. Animals and fish have been affected in the same way due to phthalates and other toxins in rivers. When fish turn gay or change sex through chemicals in rivers and streams it is a pointer to why there has been such an increase in gay people and the sexually confused. It doesn't matter to me what sexuality people choose to be, but if it's being affected by chemical pollution and consumption then we need to know. Does anyone really think that this is not connected to the transgender agenda, the war on men and the condemnation of male 'toxic masculinity'? You watch this being followed by 'toxic femininity'. It's already happening. When breastfeeding becomes 'chest-feeding', pregnant women become pregnant people along with all the other Woke claptrap you know that the world is going insane and there's a Cult scam in progress. Transgender activists are promoting the Cult agenda while Cult

billionaires support and fund the insanity as they laugh themselves to sleep at the sheer stupidity for which humans must be infamous in galaxies far, far away.

'Covid vaccines' and female infertility

We can now see why the 'vaccine' has been connected to potential infertility in women. Dr Michael Yeadon, former Vice President and Chief Scientific Advisor at Pfizer, and Dr Wolfgang Wodarg in Germany, filed a petition with the European Medicines Agency in December, 2020, urging them to stop trials for the Pfizer/BioNTech shot and all other mRNA trials until further studies had been done. They were particularly concerned about possible effects on fertility with 'vaccine'-produced antibodies attacking the protein Syncytin-1 which is responsible for developing the placenta. The result would be infertility 'of indefinite duration' in women who have the 'vaccine' with the placenta failing to form. Section 10.4.2 of the Pfizer/BioNTech trial protocol says that pregnant women or those who might become so should not have mRNA shots. Section 10.4 warns men taking mRNA shots to 'be abstinent from heterosexual intercourse' and not to donate sperm. The UK government said that it *did not know* if the mRNA procedure had an effect on fertility. *Did not know?* These people have to go to jail. UK government advice did not recommend at the start that pregnant women had the shot and said they should avoid pregnancy for at least two months after 'vaccination'. The 'advice' was later updated to pregnant women should only have the 'vaccine' if the benefits outweighed the risks to mother and foetus. What the hell is that supposed to mean? Then 'spontaneous abortions' began to appear and rapidly increase on the adverse reaction reporting schemes which include only a fraction of adverse reactions. Thousands and ever-growing numbers of 'vaccinated' women are describing changes to their menstrual cycle with heavier blood flow, irregular periods and menstruating again after going through the menopause – all links to reproduction effects. Women are passing blood clots and the lining of their uterus while men report erectile dysfunction and blood effects. Most

significantly of all *un*vaccinated women began to report similar menstrual changes after interaction with *'vaccinated'* people and men and children were also affected with bleeding noses, blood clots and other conditions. 'Shedding' is when vaccinated people can emit the content of a vaccine to affect the unvaccinated, but this is different. 'Vaccinated' people were not shedding a 'live virus' allegedly in 'vaccines' as before because the fake 'Covid vaccines' involve synthetic material and other toxicity. Doctors exposing what is happening prefer the term 'transmission' to shedding. Somehow those that have had the shots are transmitting effects to those that haven't. Dr Carrie Madej said the nano-content of the 'vaccines' can 'act like an antenna' to others around them which fits perfectly with my own conclusions. This 'vaccine' transmission phenomenon was becoming known as the book went into production and I deal with this further in the Postscript.

Vaccine effects on sterility are well known. The World Health Organization was accused in 2014 of sterilising millions of women in Kenya with the evidence confirmed by the content of the vaccines involved. The same WHO behind the 'Covid' hoax admitted its involvement for more than ten years with the vaccine programme. Other countries made similar claims. Charges were lodged by Tanzania, Nicaragua, Mexico, and the Philippines. The Gardasil vaccine claimed to protect against a genital 'virus' known as HPV has also been linked to infertility. Big Pharma and the WHO (same thing) are criminal and satanic entities. Then there's the Bill Gates Foundation which is connected through funding and shared interests with 20 pharmaceutical giants and laboratories. He stands accused of directing the policy of United Nations Children's Fund (UNICEF), vaccine alliance GAVI, and other groupings, to advance the vaccine agenda and silence opposition at great cost to women and children. At the same time Gates wants to reduce the global population. Coincidence?

Great Reset = Smart Grid = new human

The Cult agenda I have been exposing for 30 years is now being openly promoted by Cult assets like Gates and Klaus Schwab of the World Economic Forum under code-terms like the 'Great Reset', 'Build Back Better' and 'a rare but narrow window of opportunity to reflect, reimagine, and reset our world'. What provided this 'rare but narrow window of opportunity'? The 'Covid' hoax did. Who created that? *They* did. My books from not that long ago warned about the planned 'Internet of Things' (IoT) and its implications for human freedom. This was the plan to connect all technology to the Internet and artificial intelligence and today we are way down that road with an estimated 36 billion devices connected to the World Wide Web and that figure is projected to be 76 billion by 2025. I further warned that the Cult planned to go beyond that to the Internet of *Everything* when the human brain was connected via AI to the Internet and Kurzweil's 'cloud'. Now we have Cult operatives like Schwab calling for precisely that under the term 'Internet of Bodies', a fusion of the physical, digital and biological into one centrally-controlled Smart Grid system which the Cult refers to as the 'Fourth Industrial Revolution'. They talk about the 'biological', but they really mean the synthetic-biological which is required to fully integrate the human body and brain into the Smart Grid and artificial intelligence planned to replace the human mind. We have everything being synthetically manipulated including the natural world through GMO and smart dust, the food we eat and the human body itself with synthetic 'vaccines'. I said in *The Answer* that we would see the Cult push for synthetic meat to replace animals and in February, 2021, the so predictable psychopath Bill Gates called for the introduction of synthetic meat to save us all from 'climate change'. The climate hoax just keeps on giving like the 'Covid' hoax. The war on meat by vegan activists is a carbon (oops, sorry) copy of the manipulation of transgender activists. They have no idea (except their inner core) that they are being used to promote and impose the agenda of the Cult or that they are only the *vehicle* and not the *reason*. This is not to say those who choose not to eat meat shouldn't be respected and supported in that right, but there are ulterior motives

for those in power. A *Forbes* article in December, 2019, highlighted the plan so beloved of Schwab and the Cult under the heading: 'What Is The Internet of Bodies? And How Is It Changing Our World?' The article said the human body is the latest data platform (remember 'our vaccine is an operating system'). *Forbes* described the plan very accurately and the words could have come straight out of my books from long before:

> The Internet of Bodies (IoB) is an extension of the IoT and basically connects the human body to a network through devices that are ingested, implanted, or connected to the body in some way. Once connected, data can be exchanged, and the body and device can be remotely monitored and controlled.

They were really describing a human hive mind with human perception centrally-dictated via an AI connection as well as allowing people to be 'remotely monitored and controlled'. Everything from a fridge to a human mind could be directed from a central point by these insane psychopaths and 'Covid vaccines' are crucial to this. Forbes explained the process I mentioned earlier of holdable and wearable technology followed by implantable. The article said there were three generations of the Internet of Bodies that include:

- Body external: These are wearable devices such as Apple Watches or Fitbits that can monitor our health.

- Body internal: These include pacemakers, cochlear implants, and digital pills that go inside our bodies to monitor or control various aspects of health.

- Body embedded: The third generation of the Internet of Bodies is embedded technology where technology and the human body are melded together and have a real-time connection to a remote machine.

Forbes noted the development of the Brain Computer Interface (BCI) which merges the brain with an external device for monitoring and controlling in real-time. 'The ultimate goal is to help restore function to individuals with disabilities by using brain signals rather than conventional neuromuscular pathways.' Oh, do fuck off. The goal of brain interface technology is controlling human thought and emotion from the central point in a hive mind serving its masters wishes. Many people are now agreeing to be chipped to open doors without a key. You can recognise them because they'll be wearing a mask, social distancing and lining up for the 'vaccine'. The Cult plans a Great Reset money system after they have completed the demolition of the global economy in which 'money' will be exchanged through communication with body operating systems. Rand Corporation, a Cult-owned think tank, said of the Internet of Bodies or IoB:

> Internet of Bodies technologies fall under the broader IoT umbrella. But as the name suggests, IoB devices introduce an even more intimate interplay between humans and gadgets. IoB devices monitor the human body, collect health metrics and other personal information, and transmit those data over the Internet. Many devices, such as fitness trackers, are already in use … IoB devices … and those in development can track, record, and store users' whereabouts, bodily functions, and what they see, hear, and even think.

Schwab's World Economic Forum, a long-winded way of saying 'fascism' or 'the Cult', has gone full-on with the Internet of Bodies in the 'Covid' era. 'We're entering the era of the Internet of Bodies', it declared, 'collecting our physical data via a range of devices that can be implanted, swallowed or worn'. The result would be a huge amount of health-related data that could improve human wellbeing around the world, and prove crucial in fighting the 'Covid-19 pandemic'. Does anyone think these clowns care about 'human wellbeing' after the death and devastation their pandemic hoax has purposely caused? Schwab and co say we should move forward with the Internet of Bodies because 'Keeping track of symptoms could help us stop the spread of infection, and quickly detect new cases'. How wonderful, but keeping track' is all they are really bothered

about. Researchers were investigating if data gathered from smartwatches and similar devices could be used as viral infection alerts by tracking the user's heart rate and breathing. Schwab said in his 2018 book *Shaping the Future of the Fourth Industrial Revolution*:

> The lines between technologies and beings are becoming blurred and not just by the ability to create lifelike robots or synthetics. Instead it is about the ability of new technologies to literally become part of us. Technologies already influence how we understand ourselves, how we think about each other, and how we determine our realities. As the technologies … give us deeper access to parts of ourselves, we may begin to integrate digital technologies into our bodies.

You can see what the game is. Twenty-four hour control and people – if you could still call them that – would never know when something would go ping and take them out of circulation. It's the most obvious rush to a global fascist dictatorship and the complete submission of humanity and yet still so many are locked away in their Cult-induced perceptual coma and can't see it.

Smart Grid control centres

The human body is being transformed by the 'vaccines' and in other ways into a synthetic cyborg that can be attached to the global Smart Grid which would be controlled from a central point and other sub-locations of Grid manipulation. Where are these planned to be? Well, China for a start which is one of the Cult's biggest centres of operation. The technological control system and technocratic rule was incubated here to be unleashed across the world after the 'Covid' hoax came out of China in 2020. Another Smart Grid location that will surprise people new to this is Israel. I have exposed in *The Trigger* how Sabbatian technocrats, intelligence and military operatives were behind the horrors of 9/11 and not '19 Arab hijackers' who somehow manifested the ability to pilot big passenger airliners when instructors at puddle-jumping flying schools described some of them as a joke. The 9/11 attacks were made possible through control of civilian and military air computer systems and those of the White House, Pentagon and connected agencies. See *The Trigger* – it

will blow your mind. The controlling and coordinating force were the Sabbatian networks in Israel and the United States which by then had infiltrated the entire US government, military and intelligence system. The real name of the American Deep State is 'Sabbatian State'. Israel is a tiny country of only nine million people, but it is one of the global centres of cyber operations and fast catching Silicon Valley in importance to the Cult. Israel is known as the 'start-up nation' for all the cyber companies spawned there with the Sabbatian specialisation of 'cyber security' that I mentioned earlier which gives those companies access to computer systems of their clients in real time through 'backdoors' written into the coding when security software is downloaded. The Sabbatian centre of cyber operations outside Silicon Valley is the Israeli military Cyber Intelligence Unit, the biggest infrastructure project in Israel's history, headquartered in the desert-city of Beersheba and involving some 20,000 'cyber soldiers'. Here are located a literal army of Internet trolls scanning social media, forums and comment lists for anyone challenging the Cult agenda. The UK military has something similar with its 77th Brigade and associated operations. The Beersheba complex includes research and development centres for other Cult operations such as Intel, Microsoft, IBM, Google, Apple, Hewlett-Packard, Cisco Systems, Facebook and Motorola. Techcrunch.com ran an article about the Beersheba global Internet technology centre headlined 'Israel's desert city of Beersheba is turning into a cybertech oasis':

> The military's massive relocation of its prestigious technology units, the presence of multinational and local companies, a close proximity to Ben Gurion University and generous government subsidies are turning Beersheba into a major global cybertech hub. Beersheba has all of the ingredients of a vibrant security technology ecosystem, including Ben Gurion University with its graduate program in cybersecurity and Cyber Security Research Center, and the presence of companies such as EMC, Deutsche Telekom, PayPal, Oracle, IBM, and Lockheed Martin. It's also the future home of the INCB (Israeli National Cyber Bureau); offers a special income tax incentive for cyber security companies, and was the site for the relocation of the army's intelligence corps units.

Sabbatians have taken over the cyber world through the following process: They scan the schools for likely cyber talent and develop them at Ben Gurion University and their period of conscription in the Israeli Defense Forces when they are stationed at the Beersheba complex. When the cyber talented officially leave the army they are funded to start cyber companies with technology developed by themselves or given to them by the state. Much of this is stolen through backdoors of computer systems around the world with America top of the list. Others are sent off to Silicon Valley to start companies or join the major ones and so we have many major positions filled by apparently 'Jewish' but really Sabbatian operatives. Google, YouTube and Facebook are all run by 'Jewish' CEOs while Twitter is all but run by ultra-Zionist hedge-fund shark Paul Singer. At the centre of the Sabbatian global cyber web is the Israeli army's Unit 8200 which specialises in hacking into computer systems of other countries, inserting viruses, gathering information, instigating malfunction, and even taking control of them from a distance. A long list of Sabbatians involved with 9/11, Silicon Valley and Israeli cyber security companies are operatives of Unit 8200. This is not about Israel. It's about the Cult. Israel is planned to be a Smart Grid hub as with China and what is happening at Beersheba is not for the benefit of Jewish people who are treated disgustingly by the Sabbatian elite that control the country. A glance at the Nuremberg Codes will tell you that.

The story is much bigger than 'Covid', important as that is to where we are being taken. Now, though, it's time to really strap in. There's more … much more …

CHAPTER ELEVEN

Who controls the Cult?

Awake, arise or be forever fall'n
John Milton, *Paradise Lost*

I have exposed this far the level of the Cult conspiracy that operates in the world of the seen and within the global secret society and satanic network which operates in the shadows one step back from the seen. The story, however, goes much deeper than that.

The 'Covid' hoax is major part of the Cult agenda, but only part, and to grasp the biggest picture we have to expand our attention beyond the realm of human sight and into the infinity of possibility that we cannot see. It is from here, ultimately, that humanity is being manipulated into a state of total control by the force which dictates the actions of the Cult. How much of reality can we see? Next to damn all is the answer. We may appear to see all there is to see in the 'space' our eyes survey and observe, but little could be further from the truth. The human 'world' is only a tiny band of frequency that the body's visual and perceptual systems can decode into *perception* of a 'world'. According to mainstream science the electromagnetic spectrum is 0.005 percent of what exists in the Universe (Fig 10). The maximum estimate I have seen is 0.5 percent and either way it's miniscule. I say it is far, far, smaller even than 0.005 percent when you compare reality we see with the totality of reality that we don't. Now get this if you are new to such information: Visible light, the only band of frequency that we can see, is a *fraction* of the 0.005

percent (Fig 11 overleaf). Take this further and realise that our universe is one of infinite universes and that universes are only a fragment of overall reality – *infinite* reality. Then compare that with the almost infinitesimal frequency band of visible light or human sight. You see that humans are as near blind as it is possible to be without actually being so. Artist and filmmaker, Sergio Toporek, said:

Figure 10: Humans can perceive such a tiny band of visual reality it's laughable.

Figure 11: We can see a smear of the 0.005 percent electromagnetic spectrum, but we still know it all. Yep, makes sense.

Consider that you can see less than 1% of the electromagnetic spectrum and hear less than 1% of the acoustic spectrum. 90% of the cells in your body carry their own microbial DNA and are not 'you'. The atoms in your body are 99.9999999999999999% empty space and none of them are the ones you were born with ... Human beings have 46 chromosomes, two less than a potato.

The existence of the rainbow depends on the conical photoreceptors in your eyes; to animals without cones, the rainbow does not exist. So you don't just look at a rainbow, you create it. This is pretty amazing, especially considering that all the beautiful colours you see represent less than 1% of the electromagnetic spectrum.

Suddenly the 'world' of humans looks a very different place. Take into account, too, that Planet Earth when compared with the projected size of this single universe is the equivalent of a billionth of a pinhead. Imagine the ratio that would be when compared to infinite reality. To think that Christianity once insisted that Earth and humanity were the centre of everything. This background is vital if we are going to appreciate the nature of 'human' and how we can be manipulated by an unseen force. To human visual reality virtually *everything* is unseen and yet the prevailing perception within the institutions and so much of the public is that if we can't see it, touch it, hear it, taste it and smell it then it cannot exist. Such perception is indoctrinated and encouraged by the Cult and its agents because it isolates believers in the strictly limited, village-idiot, realm of the five senses where perceptions can be firewalled and information controlled. Most of those perpetuating the 'this-world-is-all-there-is' insanity are themselves indoctrinated into believing the same delusion. While major players and influencers know that official reality is laughable most of those in science, academia and medicine really believe the nonsense they peddle and teach succeeding generations. Those who challenge the orthodoxy are dismissed as nutters and freaks to protect the manufactured illusion from exposure. Observe the dynamic of the 'Covid' hoax and you will see how that takes the same form. The inner-circle psychopaths knows it's a gigantic scam, but almost the entirety of those imposing their fascist rules believe that 'Covid' is all that they're told it is.

Stolen identity

Ask people who they are and they will give you their name, place of birth, location, job, family background and life story. Yet that is not who they are – it is what they are *experiencing*. The difference is *absolutely crucial*. The true 'I', the eternal, infinite 'I', is consciousness,

a state of being aware. Forget 'form'. That is a vehicle for a brief experience. Consciousness does not come *from* the brain, but *through* the brain and even that is more symbolic than literal. We are awareness, pure awareness, and this is what withdraws from the body at what we call 'death' to continue our eternal beingness, *isness*, in other realms of reality within the limitlessness of infinity or the Biblical 'many mansions in my father's house'. Labels of a human life, man, woman, transgender, black, white, brown, nationality, circumstances and income are not who we are. They are what we are – awareness – is *experiencing* in a brief connection with a band of frequency we call 'human'. The labels are not the self; they are, to use the title of one of my books, a *Phantom* Self. I am not David Icke born in Leicester, England, on April 29th, 1952. I am the consciousness *having that experience*. The Cult and its non-human masters seek to convince us through the institutions of 'education', science, medicine, media and government that what we are *experiencing* is who we *are*. It's so easy to control and direct perception locked away in the bewildered illusions of the five senses with no expanded radar. Try, by contrast, doing the same with a humanity aware of its true self and its true power to consciously create its reality and experience. How is it possible to do this? We do it all day every day. If you perceive yourself as 'little me' with no power to impact upon your life and the world then your life experience will reflect that. You will hand the power you don't think you have to authority in all its forms which will use it to control your experience. This, in turn, will appear to confirm your perception of 'little me' in a self-fulfilling feedback loop. But that is what 'little me' really is – a *perception*. We are all 'big-me', infinite me, and the Cult has to make us forget that if its will is to prevail. We are therefore manipulated and pressured into self-identifying with human labels and not the consciousness/awareness *experiencing* those human labels.

The phenomenon of identity politics is a Cult-instigated manipulation technique to sub-divide previous labels into even smaller ones. A United States university employs this list of letters to

describe student identity: LGBTTQQFAGPBDSM or lesbian, gay, bisexual, transgender, transsexual, queer, questioning, flexual, asexual, gender-fuck, polyamorous, bondage/discipline, dominance/submission and sadism/masochism. I'm sure other lists are even longer by now as people feel the need to self-identity the 'I' with the minutiae of race and sexual preference. Wokers programmed by the Cult for generations believe this is about 'inclusivity' when it's really the Cult locking them away into smaller and smaller versions of Phantom Self while firewalling them from the influence of their true self, the infinite, eternal 'I'. You may notice that my philosophy which contends that we are all unique points of attention/awareness within the same infinite whole or Oneness is the ultimate non-racism. The very sense of Oneness makes the judgement of people by their body-type, colour or sexuality utterly ridiculous and confirms that racism has no understanding of reality (including anti-white racism). Yet despite my perception of life Cult agents and fast-asleep Wokers label me racist to discredit my information while they are themselves phenomenally racist and sexist. All they see is race and sexuality and they judge people as good or bad, demons or untouchables, by their race and sexuality. All they see is *Phantom Self* and perceive themselves in terms of Phantom Self. They are pawns and puppets of the Cult agenda to focus attention and self-identity in the five senses and play those identities against each other to divide and rule. Columbia University has introduced segregated graduations in another version of social distancing designed to drive people apart and teach them that different racial and cultural groups have nothing in common with each other. The last thing the Cult wants is unity. Again the pump-primers of this will be Cult operatives in the knowledge of what they are doing, but the rest are just the Phantom Self blind leading the Phantom Self blind. We *do* have something in common – we are all *the same consciousness* having different temporary experiences.

What is this 'human'?

Yes, what *is* 'human'? That is what we are supposed to be, right? I mean 'human'? True, but 'human' is the experience not the 'I'. Break it down to basics and 'human' is the way that information is processed. If we are to experience and interact with this band of frequency we call the 'world' we must have a vehicle that operates within that band of frequency. Our consciousness in its prime form cannot do that; it is way beyond the frequency of the human realm. My consciousness or awareness could not tap these keys and pick up the cup in front of me in the same way that radio station A cannot interact with radio station B when they are on different frequencies. The human body is the means through which we have that interaction. I have long described the body as a biological computer which processes information in a way that allows consciousness to experience this reality. The body is a receiver, transmitter and processor of information in a particular way that we call human. We visually perceive only the world of the five senses in a wakened state – that is the limit of the body's visual decoding system. In truth it's not even visual in the way we experience 'visual reality' as I will come to in a moment. We are 'human' because the body processes the information sources of human into a reality and behaviour system that we *perceive* as human. Why does an elephant act like an elephant and not like a human or a duck? The elephant's biological computer is a different information field and processes information according to that program into a visual and behaviour type we call an elephant. The same applies to everything in our reality. These body information fields are perpetuated through procreation (like making a copy of a software program). The Cult wants to break that cycle and intervene technologically to transform the human information field into one that will change what we call humanity. If it can change the human information field it will change the way that field processes information and change humanity both 'physically' and psychologically. Hence the *messenger* (information) RNA 'vaccines' and so much more that is targeting human genetics by changing the body's information – *messaging* – construct through food, drink, radiation, toxicity and other means.

Reality that we experience is nothing like reality as it really is in the same way that the reality people experience in virtual reality games is not the reality they are really living in. The game is only a decoded source of information that appears to be a reality. Our world is also an information construct – a *simulation* (more later). In its base form our reality is a wavefield of information much the same in theme as Wi-Fi. The five senses decode wavefield information into electrical information which they communicate to the brain to decode into holographic (illusory 'physical') information. Different parts of the brain specialise in decoding different senses and the information is fused into a reality that appears to be outside of us but is really inside the brain and the genetic structure in general (Fig 12 overleaf). DNA is a receiver-transmitter of information and a vital part of this decoding process and the body's connection to other realities. Change DNA and you change the way we decode and connect with reality – see 'Covid vaccines'. Think of computers decoding Wi-Fi. You have information encoded in a radiation field and the computer decodes that information into a very different form on the screen. You can't see the Wi-Fi until its information is made manifest on the screen and the information on the screen is inside the computer and not outside. I have just described how we decode the 'human world'. All five senses decode the waveform 'Wi-Fi' field into electrical signals and the brain (computer) constructs reality inside the brain and not outside – 'You don't just look at a rainbow, you create it'. Sound is a simple example. We don't hear sound until the brain decodes it. Waveform sound waves are picked up by the hearing sense and communicated to the brain in an electrical form to be decoded into the sounds that we hear. Everything we hear is inside the brain along with everything we see, feel, smell and taste. Words and language are waveform fields generated by our vocal chords which pass through this process until they are decoded by the brain into words that we hear. Different languages are different frequency fields or sound waves generated by vocal chords. Late British philosopher Alan Watts said:

Figure 12: The brain receives information from the five senses and constructs from that our perceived reality.

[Without the brain] the world is devoid of light, heat, weight, solidity, motion, space, time or any other imaginable feature. All these phenomena are interactions, or transactions, of vibrations with a certain arrangement of neurons.

That's exactly what they are and scientist Robert Lanza describes in his book, *Biocentrism*, how we decode electromagnetic waves and energy into visual and 'physical' experience. He uses the example of a flame emitting photons, electromagnetic energy, each pulsing electrically and magnetically:

… these … invisible electromagnetic waves strike a human retina, and if (and only if) the waves happen to measure between 400 and 700 nano meters in length from crest to crest, then their energy is just right to deliver a stimulus to the 8 million cone-shaped cells in the retina.

Each in turn send an electrical pulse to a neighbour neuron, and on up the line this goes, at 250 mph, until it reaches the … occipital lobe of the brain, in the back of the head. There, a cascading complex of neurons fire from the incoming stimuli, and we subjectively perceive this experience as a yellow brightness occurring in a place we have been conditioned to call the 'external world'.

You hear what you decode

If a tree falls or a building collapses they make no noise unless someone is there to decode the energetic waves generated by the disturbance into what we call sound. Does a falling tree make a noise? Only if you hear it – *decode* it. Everything in our reality is a frequency field of information operating within the overall 'Wi-Fi' field that I call The Field. A vibrational disturbance is generated in The Field by the fields of the falling tree or building. These disturbance waves are what we decode into the sound of them falling. If no one is there to do that then neither will make any noise. Reality is created by the observer – *decoder* – and the *perceptions* of the observer affect the decoding process. For this reason different people – different *perceptions* – will perceive the same reality or situation in a different way. What one may perceive as a nightmare another will see as an opportunity. The question of why the Cult is so focused on controlling human perception now answers itself. All experienced reality is the act of decoding and we don't experience Wi-Fi until it is decoded on the computer screen. The sight and sound of an Internet video is encoded in the Wi-Fi all around us, but we don't see or hear it until the computer decodes that information. Taste, smell and touch are all phenomena of the brain as a result of the same process. We don't taste, smell or feel anything except in the brain and there are pain relief techniques that seek to block the signal from the site of discomfort to the brain because if the brain doesn't decode that signal we don't feel pain. Pain is in the brain and only appears to be at the point of impact thanks to the feedback loop between them. We don't see anything until electrical information from the sight senses is decoded in an area at the back of the brain. If that area is damaged we can go blind when our eyes are perfectly okay. So why do we go blind if we damage an eye? We damage the information processing between the waveform visual information and the visual decoding area of the brain. If information doesn't reach the brain in a form it can decode then we can't see the visual reality that it represents. What's more the brain is decoding only a fraction of the information it receives and the rest is absorbed by the

sub-conscious mind. This explanation is from the science magazine, *Wonderpedia*:

> Every second, 11 million sensations crackle along these [brain] pathways ... The brain is confronted with an alarming array of images, sounds and smells which it rigorously filters down until it is left with a manageable list of around 40. Thus 40 sensations per second make up what we perceive as reality.

The 'world' is not what people are told to believe that is it and the inner circles of the Cult *know that*.

Illusory 'physical' reality

We can only see a smear of 0.005 percent of the Universe which is only one of a vast array of universes – 'mansions' – within infinite reality. Even then the brain decodes only 40 pieces of information ('sensations') from a potential *11 million* that we receive every second. Two points strike you from this immediately: The sheer breathtaking stupidity of believing we know anything so rigidly that there's nothing more to know; and the potential for these processes to be manipulated by a malevolent force to control the reality of the population. One thing I can say for sure with no risk of contradiction is that when you can perceive an almost indescribable fraction of infinite reality there is always more to know as in tidal waves of it. Ancient Greek philosopher Socrates was so right when he said that wisdom is to know how little we know. How obviously true that is when you think that we are experiencing a physical world of solidity that is neither physical nor solid and a world of apartness when everything is connected. Cult-controlled 'science' dismisses the so-called 'paranormal' and all phenomena related to that when the 'para'-normal is perfectly normal and explains the alleged 'great mysteries' which dumbfound scientific minds. There is a reason for this. A 'scientific mind' in terms of the mainstream is a material mind, a five-sense mind imprisoned in see it, touch it, hear it, smell it and taste it. Phenomena and happenings that can't be explained that way leave the 'scientific mind' bewildered and the rule is that if they

can't account for why something is happening then it can't, by definition, be happening. I beg to differ. Telepathy is thought waves passing through The Field (think wave disturbance again) to be decoded by someone able to connect with that wavelength (information). For example: You can pick up the thought waves of a friend at any distance and at the very least that will bring them to mind. A few minutes later the friend calls you. 'My god', you say, 'that's incredible – I was just thinking of you.' Ah, but *they* were thinking of *you* before they made the call and that's what you decoded. Native peoples not entrapped in five-sense reality do this so well it became known as the 'bush telegraph'. Those known as psychics and mediums (genuine ones) are doing the same only across dimensions of reality. 'Mind over matter' comes from the fact that matter and mind are the *same*. The state of one influences the state of the other. Indeed one *and* the other are illusions. They are aspects of the same field. Paranormal phenomena are all explainable so why are they still considered 'mysteries' or not happening? Once you go down this road of understanding you begin to expand awareness beyond the five senses and that's the nightmare for the Cult.

Figure 13: Holograms are not solid, but the best ones appear to be.

Figure 14: How holograms are created by capturing a waveform version of the subject image.

Holographic 'solidity'

Our reality is not solid, it is holographic. We are now well aware of holograms which are widely used today. Two-dimensional information is decoded into a three-dimensional reality that is not solid although can very much appear to be (Fig 13). Holograms are created with a laser divided into two parts. One goes directly onto a holographic photographic print ('reference beam') and the other takes a waveform image of the subject ('working beam') before being directed onto the print where it 'collides' with the other half of the laser (Fig 14). This creates a *waveform* interference pattern which contains the wavefield information of whatever is being photographed (Fig 15 overleaf). The process can be likened to dropping pebbles in a pond. Waves generated by each one spread out across the water to collide with the others and create a wave representation of where the stones fell and at what speed, weight and distance. A waveform interference pattern of a hologram is akin to the waveform information in The Field which the five senses decode into electrical signals to be decoded by the brain into a holographic illusory 'physical' reality. In the same way when a laser (think human attention) is directed at the waveform interference pattern a three-dimensional version of the subject is projected into apparently 'solid' reality (Fig 16). An amazing trait of holograms reveals more 'paranormal mysteries'. Information of the *whole*

hologram is encoded in waveform in every part of the interference pattern by the way they are created. This means that every *part* of a hologram is a smaller version of the whole. Cut the interference wave-pattern into four and you won't get four parts of the image. You get quarter-sized versions of the *whole* image. The body is a hologram and the same applies. Here we have the basis of acupuncture, reflexology and other forms of healing which identify representations of the whole body in all of the parts, hands, feet, ears, everywhere. Skilled palm readers can do what they do because the information of whole body is encoded in the hand. The concept of as above, so below, comes from this.

Figure 15: A waveform interference pattern that holds the information that transforms into a hologram.

Figure 16: Holographic people including 'Elvis' holographically inserted to sing a duet with Celine Dion.

The question will be asked of why, if solidity is illusory, we can't just walk through walls and each other. The resistance is not solid against solid; it is electromagnetic field against electromagnetic field and we decode this into the *experience* of solid against solid. We should also not underestimate the power of belief to dictate reality. What you believe is impossible *will be*. Your belief impacts on your decoding processes and they won't decode what you think is impossible. What we believe we perceive and what we perceive we experience. 'Can't dos' and 'impossibles' are like a firewall in a computer system that won't put on the screen what the firewall blocks. How vital that is to understanding how human experience has been hijacked. I explain in *The Answer*, *Everything You Need To Know But Have Never Been Told* and other books a long list of 'mysteries' and 'paranormal' phenomena that are not mysterious and perfectly normal once you realise what reality is and how it works. 'Ghosts' can be seen to pass through 'solid' walls because the walls are not solid and the ghost is a discarnate entity operating on a frequency so different to that of the wall that it's like two radio stations sharing the same space while never interfering with each other. I have seen ghosts do this myself. The apartness of people and objects is also an illusion. Everything is connected by the Field like all sea life is connected by the sea. It's just that within the limits of our visual reality we only 'see' holographic information and not the field of information that connects everything and from which the holographic world is made manifest. If you can only see holographic 'objects' and not the field that connects them they will appear to you as unconnected to each other in the same way that we see the computer while not seeing the Wi-Fi.

What you don't know *can* hurt you

Okay, we return to those 'two worlds' of human society and the Cult with its global network of interconnecting secret societies and satanic groups which manipulate through governments, corporations, media, religions, etc. The fundamental difference between them is *knowledge*. The idea has been to keep humanity

ignorant of the plan for its total enslavement underpinned by a crucial ignorance of reality – who we are and where we are – and how we interact with it. 'Human' should be the interaction between our expanded eternal consciousness and the five-sense body experience. We are meant to be *in* this world in terms of the five senses but not *of* this world in relation to our greater consciousness and perspective. In that state we experience the small picture of the five senses within the wider context of the big picture of awareness beyond the five senses. Put another way the five senses see the dots and expanded awareness connects them into pictures and patterns that give context to the apparently random and unconnected. Without the context of expanded awareness the five senses see only apartness and randomness with apparently no meaning. The Cult and its other-dimensional controllers seek to intervene in the frequency realm where five-sense reality is supposed to connect with expanded reality and to keep the two apart (more on this in the final chapter). When that happens five-sense mental and emotional processes are no longer influenced by expanded awareness, or the True 'I', and instead are driven by the isolated perceptions of the body's decoding systems. They are in the world *and* of it. Here we have the human plight and why humanity with its potential for infinite awareness can be so easily manipulatable and descend into such extremes of stupidity.

Once the Cult isolates five-sense mind from expanded awareness it can then program the mind with perceptions and beliefs by controlling information that the mind receives through the 'education' system of the formative years and the media perceptual bombardment and censorship of an entire lifetime. Limit perception and a sense of the possible through limiting knowledge by limiting and skewing information while censoring and discrediting that which could set people free. As the title of another of my books says *… And The Truth Shall Set You Free*. For this reason the last thing the Cult wants in circulation is the truth about anything – especially the reality of the eternal 'I' – and that's why it is desperate to control information. The Cult knows that information becomes perception

which becomes behaviour which, collectively, becomes human society. Cult-controlled and funded mainstream 'science' denies the existence of an eternal 'I' and seeks to dismiss and trash all evidence to the contrary. Cult-controlled mainstream religion has a version of 'God' that is little more than a system of control and dictatorship that employs threats of damnation in an afterlife to control perceptions and behaviour in the here and now through fear and guilt. Neither is true and it's the 'neither' that the Cult wishes to suppress. This 'neither' is that everything is an expression, a point of attention, within an infinite state of consciousness which is the real meaning of the term 'God'.

Perceptual obsession with the 'physical body' and five-senses means that 'God' becomes personified as a bearded bloke sitting among the clouds or a raging bully who loves us if we do what 'he' wants and condemns us to the fires of hell if we don't. These are no more than a 'spiritual' fairy tales to control and dictate events and behaviour through fear of this 'God' which has bizarrely made 'God-fearing' in religious circles a state to be desired. I would suggest that fearing *anything* is not to be encouraged and celebrated, but rather deleted. You can see why 'God fearing' is so beneficial to the Cult and its religions when *they* decide what 'God' wants and what 'God' demands (the Cult demands) that everyone do. As the great American comedian Bill Hicks said satirising a Christian zealot: 'I think what God meant to say.' How much of this infinite awareness ('God') that we access is decided by how far we choose to expand our perceptions, self-identity and sense of the possible. The scale of self-identity reflects itself in the scale of awareness that we can connect with and are influenced by – how much knowing and insight we have instead of programmed perception. You cannot expand your awareness into the infinity of possibility when you believe that you are little me Peter the postman or Mary in marketing and nothing more. I'll deal with this in the concluding chapter because it's crucial to how we turnaround current events.

Where the Cult came from

When I realised in the early 1990s there was a Cult network behind global events I asked the obvious question: When did it start? I took it back to ancient Rome and Egypt and on to Babylon and Sumer in Mesopotamia, the 'Land Between Two Rivers', in what we now call Iraq. The two rivers are the Tigris and Euphrates and this region is of immense historical and other importance to the Cult, as is the land called Israel only 550 miles away by air. There is much more going with deep esoteric meaning across this whole region. It's not only about 'wars for oil'. Priceless artefacts from Mesopotamia were stolen or destroyed after the American and British invasion of Iraq in 2003 justified by the lies of Boy Bush and Tony Blair (their Cult masters) about non-existent 'weapons of mass destruction'. Mesopotamia was the location of Sumer (about 5,400BC to 1,750BC), and Babylon (about 2,350BC to 539BC). Sabbatians may have become immensely influential in the Cult in modern times but they are part of a network that goes back into the mists of history. Sumer is said by historians to be the 'cradle of civilisation'. I disagree. I say it was the re-start of what we call human civilisation after cataclysmic events symbolised in part as the 'Great Flood' destroyed the world that existed before. These fantastic upheavals that I have been describing in detail in the books since the early1990s appear in accounts and legends of ancient cultures across the world and they are supported by geological and biological evidence. Stone tablets found in Iraq detailing the Sumer period say the cataclysms were caused by non-human 'gods' they call the Anunnaki. These are described in terms of extraterrestrial visitations in which knowledge supplied by the Anunnaki is said to have been the source of at least one of the world's oldest writing systems and developments in astronomy, mathematics and architecture that were way ahead of their time. I have covered this subject at length in *The Biggest Secret* and *Children of the Matrix* and the same basic 'Anunnaki' story can be found in Zulu accounts in South Africa where the late and very great Zulu high shaman Credo Mutwa told me that the Sumerian Anunnaki were known by Zulus as the Chitauri or 'children of the serpent'. See my six-hour video interview with Credo on this subject entitled *The*

Reptilian Agenda recorded at his then home near Johannesburg in 1999 which you can watch on the Ickonic media platform.

The Cult emerged out of Sumer, Babylon and Egypt (and elsewhere) and established the Roman Empire before expanding with the Romans into northern Europe from where many empires were savagely imposed in the form of Cult-controlled societies all over the world. Mass death and destruction was their calling card. The Cult established its centre of operations in Europe and European Empires were Cult empires which allowed it to expand into a global force. Spanish and Portuguese colonialists headed for Central and South America while the British and French targeted North America. Africa was colonised by Britain, France, Belgium, the Netherlands, Portugal, Spain, Italy, and Germany. Some like Britain and France moved in on the Middle East. The British Empire was by far the biggest for a simple reason. By now Britain was the headquarters of the Cult from which it expanded to form Canada, the United States, Australia and New Zealand. The Sun never set on the British Empire such was the scale of its occupation. London remains a global centre for the Cult along with Rome and the Vatican although others have emerged in Israel and China. It is no accident that the 'virus' is alleged to have come out of China while Italy was chosen as the means to terrify the Western population into compliance with 'Covid' fascism. Nor that Israel has led the world in 'Covid' fascism and mass 'vaccination'.

You would think that I would mention the United States here, but while it has been an important means of imposing the Cult's will it is less significant than would appear and is currently in the process of having what power it does have deleted. The Cult in Europe has mostly loaded the guns for the US to fire. America has been controlled from Europe from the start through Cult operatives in Britain and Europe. The American Revolution was an illusion to make it appear that America was governing itself while very different forces were pulling the strings in the form of Cult families such as the Rothschilds through the Rockefellers and other subordinates. The Rockefellers are extremely close to Bill Gates and

established both scalpel and drug 'medicine' and the World Health Organization. They play a major role in the development and circulation of vaccines through the Rockefeller Foundation on which Bill Gates said his Foundation is based. Why wouldn't this be the case when the Rockefellers and Gates are on the same team? Cult infiltration of human society goes way back into what we call history and has been constantly expanding and centralising power with the goal of establishing a global structure to dictate everything. Look how this has been advanced in great leaps with the 'Covid' hoax.

The non-human dimension

I researched and observed the comings and goings of Cult operatives through the centuries and even thousands of years as they were born, worked to promote the agenda within the secret society and satanic networks, and then died for others to replace them. Clearly there had to be a coordinating force that spanned this entire period while operatives who would not have seen the end goal in their lifetimes came and went advancing the plan over millennia. I went in search of that coordinating force with the usual support from the extraordinary synchronicity of my life which has been an almost daily experience since 1990. I saw common themes in religious texts and ancient cultures about a non-human force manipulating human society from the hidden. Christianity calls this force Satan, the Devil and demons; Islam refers to the Jinn or Djinn; Zulus have their Chitauri (spelt in other ways in different parts of Africa); and the Gnostic people in Egypt in the period around and before 400AD referred to this phenomena as the 'Archons', a word meaning rulers in Greek. Central American cultures speak of the 'Predators' among other names and the same theme is everywhere. I will use 'Archons' as a collective name for all of them. When you see how their nature and behaviour is described all these different sources are clearly talking about the same force. Gnostics described the Archons in terms of 'luminous fire' while Islam relates the Jinn to 'smokeless fire'. Some refer to beings in form that could occasionally be seen, but the most common of common theme is that they operate from

unseen realms which means almost all existence to the visual processes of humans. I had concluded that this was indeed the foundation of human control and that the Cult was operating within the human frequency band on behalf of this hidden force when I came across the writings of Gnostics which supported my conclusions in the most extraordinary way.

A sealed earthen jar was found in 1945 near the town of Nag Hammadi about 75-80 miles north of Luxor on the banks of the River Nile in Egypt. Inside was a treasure trove of manuscripts and texts left by the Gnostic people some 1,600 years earlier. They included 13 leather-bound papyrus codices (manuscripts) and more than 50 texts written in Coptic Egyptian estimated to have been hidden in the jar in the period of 400AD although the source of the information goes back much further. Gnostics oversaw the Great or Royal Library of Alexandria, the fantastic depository of ancient texts detailing advanced knowledge and accounts of human history. The Library was dismantled and destroyed in stages over a long period with the death-blow delivered by the Cult-established Roman Church in the period around 415AD. The Church of Rome was the Church of Babylon relocated as I said earlier. Gnostics were not a race. They were a way of perceiving reality. Whenever they established themselves and their information circulated the terrorists of the Church of Rome would target them for destruction. This happened with the Great Library and with the Gnostic Cathars who were burned to death by the psychopaths after a long period of oppression at the siege of the Castle of Monségur in southern France in 1244. The Church has always been terrified of Gnostic information which demolishes the official Christian narrative although there is much in the Bible that supports the Gnostic view if you read it in another way. To anyone studying the texts of what became known as the Nag Hammadi Library it is clear that great swathes of Christian and Biblical belief has its origin with Gnostics sources going back to Sumer. Gnostic themes have been twisted to manipulate the perceived reality of Bible believers. Biblical texts have been in the open for centuries where they could be changed while Gnostic

documents found at Nag Hammadi were sealed away and untouched for 1,600 years. What you see is what they wrote.

Use your *pneuma* not your *nous*

Gnosticism and Gnostic come from 'gnosis' which means knowledge, or rather *secret* knowledge, in the sense of spiritual awareness – knowledge about reality and life itself. The desperation of the Cult's Church of Rome to destroy the Gnostics can be understood when the knowledge they were circulating was the last thing the Cult wanted the population to know. Sixteen hundred years later the same Cult is working hard to undermine and silence me for the same reason. The dynamic between knowledge and ignorance is a constant. 'Time' appears to move on, but essential themes remain the same. We are told to 'use your nous', a Gnostic word for head/brain/intelligence. They said, however, that spiritual awakening or 'salvation' could only be secured by expanding awareness *beyond* what they called *nous* and into *pneuma* or Infinite Self. Obviously as I read these texts the parallels with what I have been saying since 1990 were fascinating to me. There is a universal truth that spans human history and in that case why wouldn't we be talking the same language 16 centuries apart? When you free yourself from the perception program of the five senses and explore expanded realms of consciousness you are going to connect with the same information no matter what the perceived 'era' within a manufactured timeline of a single and tiny range of manipulated frequency. Humans working with 'smart' technology or knocking rocks together in caves is only a timeline appearing to operate within the human frequency band. Expanded awareness and the knowledge it holds have always been there whether the era be Stone Age or computer age. We can only access that knowledge by opening ourselves to its frequency which the five-sense prison cell is designed to stop us doing. Gates, Fauci, Whitty, Vallance, Zuckerberg, Brin, Page, Wojcicki, Bezos, and all the others behind the 'Covid' hoax clearly have a long wait before their range of frequency can make that connection given that an open heart is

crucial to that as we shall see. Instead of accessing knowledge directly through expanded awareness it is given to Cult operatives by the secret society networks of the Cult where it has been passed on over thousands of years outside the public arena. Expanded realms of consciousness is where great artists, composers and writers find their inspiration and where truth awaits anyone open enough to connect with it. We need to go there fast.

Archon hijack

A fifth of the Nag Hammadi texts describe the existence and manipulation of the Archons led by a 'Chief Archon' they call 'Yaldabaoth', or the 'Demiurge', and this is the Christian 'Devil', 'Satan', 'Lucifer', and his demons. Archons in Biblical symbolism are the 'fallen ones' which are also referred to as fallen angels after the angels expelled from heaven according to the Abrahamic religions of Judaism, Christianity and Islam. These angels are claimed to tempt humans to 'sin' ongoing and you will see how accurate that symbolism is during the rest of the book. The theme of 'original sin' is related to the 'Fall' when Adam and Eve were 'tempted by the serpent' and fell from a state of innocence and 'obedience' (connection) with God into a state of disobedience (disconnection). The Fall is said to have brought sin into the world and corrupted everything including human nature. Yaldabaoth, the 'Lord Archon', is described by Gnostics as a 'counterfeit spirit', 'The Blind One', 'The Blind God', and 'The Foolish One'. The Jewish name for Yaldabaoth in Talmudic writings is Samael which translates as 'Poison of God', or 'Blindness of God'. You see the parallels. Yaldabaoth in Islamic belief is the Muslim Jinn devil known as Shaytan – Shaytan is Satan as the same themes are found all over the world in every religion and culture. The 'Lord God' of the Old Testament is the 'Lord Archon' of Gnostic manuscripts and that's why he's such a bloodthirsty bastard. Satan is known by Christians as 'the Demon of Demons' and Gnostics called Yaldabaoth the 'Archon of Archons'. Both are known as 'The Deceiver'. We are talking about the same 'bloke' for sure and these common themes

using different names, storylines and symbolism tell a common tale of the human plight.

Archons are referred to in Nag Hammadi documents as mind parasites, inverters, guards, gatekeepers, detainers, judges, pitiless ones and deceivers. The 'Covid' hoax alone is a glaring example of all these things. The Biblical 'God' is so different in the Old and New Testaments because they are not describing the same phenomenon. The vindictive, angry, hate-filled, 'God' of the Old Testament, known as Yahweh, is Yaldabaoth who is depicted in Cult-dictated popular culture as the 'Dark Lord', 'Lord of Time', Lord (Darth) Vader and Dormammu, the evil ruler of the 'Dark Dimension' trying to take over the 'Earth Dimension' in the Marvel comic movie, *Dr Strange*. Yaldabaoth is both the Old Testament 'god' and the Biblical 'Satan'. Gnostics referred to Yaldabaoth as the 'Great Architect of the Universe'and the Cult-controlled Freemason network calls their god 'the 'Great Architect of the Universe' (also Grand Architect). The 'Great Architect' Yaldabaoth is symbolised by the Cult as the all-seeing eye at the top of the pyramid on the Great Seal of the United States and the dollar bill. Archon is encoded in *arch*-itect as it is in *arch*-angels and *arch*-bishops. All religions have the theme of a force for good and force for evil in some sort of spiritual war and there is a reason for that – the theme is true. The Cult and its non-human masters are quite happy for this to circulate. They present themselves as the force for good fighting evil when they are really the force of evil (absence of love). The whole foundation of Cult modus operandi is inversion. They promote themselves as a force for good and anyone challenging them in pursuit of peace, love, fairness, truth and justice is condemned as a satanic force for evil. This has been the game plan throughout history whether the Church of Rome inquisitions of non-believers or 'conspiracy theorists' and 'anti-vaxxers' of today. The technique is the same whatever the timeline era.

Yaldabaoth is revolting (true)

Yaldabaoth and the Archons are said to have revolted against God with Yaldabaoth claiming to *be* God – the *All That Is*. The Old Testament 'God' (Yaldabaoth) demanded to be worshipped as such: '*I am* the LORD, and there is none else, there is no God beside me' (Isaiah 45:5). I have quoted in other books a man who said he was the unofficial son of the late Baron Philippe de Rothschild of the Mouton-Rothschild wine producing estates in France who died in 1988 and he told me about the Rothschild 'revolt from God'. The man said he was given the name Phillip Eugene de Rothschild and we shared long correspondence many years ago while he was living under another identity. He said that he was conceived through 'occult incest' which (within the Cult) was 'normal and to be admired'. 'Phillip' told me about his experience attending satanic rituals with rich and famous people whom he names and you can see them and the wider background to Cult Satanism in my other books starting with *The Biggest Secret*. Cult rituals are interactions with Archontic 'gods'. 'Phillip' described Baron Philippe de Rothschild as 'a master Satanist and hater of God' and he used the same term 'revolt from God' associated with Yaldabaoth/Satan/Lucifer/the Devil in describing the Sabbatian Rothschild dynasty. 'I played a key role in my family's revolt from God', he said. That role was to infiltrate in classic Sabbatian style the Christian Church, but eventually he escaped the mind-prison to live another life. The Cult has been targeting religion in a plan to make worship of the Archons the global one-world religion. Infiltration of Satanism into modern 'culture', especially among the young, through music videos, stage shows and other means, is all part of this.

Nag Hammadi texts describe Yaldabaoth and the Archons in their prime form as energy – consciousness – and say they can take form if they choose in the same way that consciousness takes form as a human. Yaldabaoth is called 'formless' and represents a deeply inverted, distorted and chaotic state of consciousness which seeks to attached to humans and turn them into a likeness of itself in an attempt at assimilation. For that to happen it has to manipulate

humans into low frequency mental and emotional states that match its own. Archons can certainly appear in human form and this is the origin of the psychopathic personality. The energetic distortion Gnostics called Yaldabaoth *is* psychopathy. When psychopathic Archons take human form that human will be a psychopath as an expression of Yaldabaoth consciousness. Cult psychopaths are Archons in human form. The principle is the same as that portrayed in the 2009 *Avatar* movie when the American military travelled to a fictional Earth-like moon called Pandora in the Alpha Centauri star system to infiltrate a society of blue people, or Na'vi, by hiding within bodies that looked like the Na'vi. Archons posing as humans have a particular hybrid information field, part human, part Archon, (the ancient 'demigods') which processes information in a way that manifests behaviour to match their psychopathic evil, lack of empathy and compassion, and stops them being influenced by the empathy, compassion and love that a fully-human information field is capable of expressing. Cult bloodlines interbreed, be they royalty or dark suits, for this reason and you have their obsession with incest. Interbreeding with full-blown humans would dilute the Archontic energy field that guarantees psychopathy in its representatives in the human realm.

Gnostic writings say the main non-human forms that Archons take are *serpentine* (what I have called for decades 'reptilian' amid unbounded ridicule from the Archontically-programmed) and what Gnostics describe as 'an unborn baby or foetus with grey skin and dark, unmoving eyes'. This is an excellent representation of the ET 'Greys' of UFO folklore which large numbers of people claim to have seen and been abducted by – Zulu shaman Credo Mutwa among them. I agree with those that believe in extraterrestrial or interdimensional visitations today and for thousands of years past. No wonder with their advanced knowledge and technological capability they were perceived and worshipped as gods for technological and other 'miracles' they appeared to perform. Imagine someone arriving in a culture disconnected from the modern world with a smartphone and computer. They would be

seen as a 'god' capable of 'miracles'. The Renegade Mind, however, wants to know the source of everything and not only the way that source manifests as human or non-human. In the same way that a Renegade Mind seeks the original source material for the 'Covid virus' to see if what is claimed is true. The original source of Archons in form is consciousness – the distorted state of consciousness known to Gnostics as Yaldabaoth.

'Revolt from God' is energetic disconnection

Where I am going next will make a lot of sense of religious texts and ancient legends relating to 'Satan', Lucifer' and the 'gods'. Gnostic descriptions sync perfectly with the themes of my own research over the years in how they describe a consciousness distortion seeking to impose itself on human consciousness. I've referred to the core of infinite awareness in previous books as Infinite Awareness in Awareness of Itself. By that I mean a level of awareness that knows that it is all awareness and is aware of all awareness. From here comes the frequency of love in its true sense and balance which is what love is on one level – the balance of all forces into a single whole called Oneness and Isness. The more we disconnect from this state of love that many call 'God' the constituent parts of that Oneness start to unravel and express themselves as a part and not a whole. They become individualised as intellect, mind, selfishness, hatred, envy, desire for power over others, and such like. This is not a problem in the greater scheme in that 'God', the *All That Is*, can experience all these possibilities through different expressions of itself including humans. What we as expressions of the whole experience the *All That Is* experiences. We are the *All That Is* experiencing itself. As we withdraw from that state of Oneness we disconnect from its influence and things can get very unpleasant and very stupid. Archontic consciousness is at the extreme end of that. It has so disconnected from the influence of Oneness that it has become an inversion of unity and love, an inversion of everything, an inversion of life itself. Evil is appropriately live written backwards. Archontic consciousness is obsessed with death, an inversion of life,

and so its manifestations in Satanism are obsessed with death. They use inverted symbols in their rituals such as the inverted pentagram and cross. Sabbatians as Archontic consciousness incarnate invert Judaism and every other religion and culture they infiltrate. They seek disunity and chaos and they fear unity and harmony as they fear love like garlic to a vampire. As a result the Cult, Archons incarnate, act with such evil, psychopathy and lack of empathy and compassion disconnected as they are from the source of love. How could Bill Gates and the rest of the Archontic psychopaths do what they have to human society in the 'Covid' era with all the death, suffering and destruction involved and have no emotional consequence for the impact on others? Now you know. Why have Zuckerberg, Brin, Page, Wojcicki and company callously censored information warning about the dangers of the 'vaccine' while thousands have been dying and having severe, sometimes life-changing reactions? Now you know. Why have Tedros, Fauci, Whitty, Vallance and their like around the world been using case and death figures they're aware are fraudulent to justify lockdowns and all the deaths and destroyed lives that have come from that? Now you know. Why did Christian Drosten produce and promote a 'testing' protocol that he knew couldn't test for infectious disease which led to a global human catastrophe. Now you know. The Archontic mind doesn't give a shit (Fig 17). I personally think that Gates and major Cult insiders are a form of AI cyborg that the Archons want humans to become.

Figure 17: Artist Neil Hague's version of the 'Covid' hierarchy.

Human batteries

A state of such inversion does have its consequences, however. The level of disconnection from the Source of All means that you withdraw from that source of energetic sustenance and creativity. This means that you have to find your own supply of energetic power and it has – *us*. When the Morpheus character in the first *Matrix* movie held up a battery he spoke a profound truth when he said: 'The Matrix is a computer-generated dream world built to keep us under control in order to change the human being into one of

these.' The statement was true in all respects. We do live in a technologically-generated virtual reality simulation (more very shortly) and we have been manipulated to be an energy source for Archontic consciousness. The Disney-Pixar animated movie *Monsters, Inc*. in 2001 symbolised the dynamic when monsters in their world had no energy source and they would enter the human world to terrify children in their beds, catch the child's scream, terror (low-vibrational frequencies), and take that energy back to power the monster world. The lead character you might remember was a single giant eye and the symbolism of the Cult's all-seeing eye was obvious. Every thought and emotion is broadcast as a frequency unique to that thought and emotion. Feelings of love and joy, empathy and compassion, are high, quick, frequencies while fear, depression, anxiety, suffering and hate are low, slow, dense frequencies. Which kind do you think Archontic consciousness can connect with and absorb? In such a low and dense frequency state there's no way it can connect with the energy of love and joy. Archons can only feed off energy compatible with their own frequency and they and their Cult agents want to delete the human world of love and joy and manipulate the transmission of low vibrational frequencies through low-vibrational human mental and emotional states. *We are their energy source*. Wars are energetic banquets to the Archons – a world war even more so – and think how much low-frequency mental and emotional energy has been generated from the consequences for humanity of the 'Covid' hoax orchestrated by Archons incarnate like Gates.

The ancient practice of human sacrifice 'to the gods', continued in secret today by the Cult, is based on the same principle. 'The gods' are Archontic consciousness in different forms and the sacrifice is induced into a state of intense terror to generate the energy the Archontic frequency can absorb. Incarnate Archons in the ritual drink the blood which contains an adrenaline they crave which floods into the bloodstream when people are terrorised. Most of the sacrifices, ancient and modern, are children and the theme of 'sacrificing young virgins to the gods' is just code for children. They

have a particular pre-puberty energy that Archons want more than anything and the energy of the young in general is their target. The California Department of Education wants students to chant the names of Aztec gods (Archontic gods) once worshipped in human sacrifice rituals in a curriculum designed to encourage them to 'challenge racist, bigoted, discriminatory, imperialist/colonial beliefs', join 'social movements that struggle for social justice', and 'build new possibilities for a post-racist, post-systemic racism society'. It's the usual Woke crap that inverts racism and calls it anti-racism. In this case solidarity with 'indigenous tribes' is being used as an excuse to chant the names of 'gods' to which people were sacrificed (and still are in secret). What an example of Woke's inability to see beyond black and white, us and them, They condemn the colonisation of these tribal cultures by Europeans (quite right), but those cultures sacrificing people including children to their 'gods', and mass murdering untold numbers as the Aztecs did, is just fine. One chant is to the Aztec god Tezcatlipoca who had a man sacrificed to him in the 5th month of the Aztec calendar. His heart was cut out and he was eaten. Oh, that's okay then. Come on children … after three … Other sacrificial 'gods' for the young to chant their allegiance include Quetzalcoatl, Huitzilopochtli and Xipe Totec. The curriculum says that 'chants, affirmations, and energizers can be used to bring the class together, build unity around ethnic studies principles and values, and to reinvigorate the class following a lesson that may be emotionally taxing or even when student engagement may appear to be low'. Well, that's the cover story, anyway. Chanting and mantras are the repetition of a particular frequency generated from the vocal cords and chanting the names of these Archontic 'gods' tunes you into their frequency. That is the last thing you want when it allows for energetic synchronisation, attachment and perceptual influence. Initiates chant the names of their 'Gods' in their rituals for this very reason.

Vampires of the Woke

Paedophilia is another way that Archons absorb the energy of children. Paedophiles possessed by Archontic consciousness are used as the conduit during sexual abuse for discarnate Archons to vampire the energy of the young they desire so much. Stupendous numbers of children disappear every year never to be seen again although you would never know from the media. Imagine how much low-vibrational energy has been generated by children during the 'Covid' hoax when so many have become depressed and psychologically destroyed to the point of killing themselves. Shocking numbers of children are now taken by the state from loving parents to be handed to others. I can tell you from long experience of researching this since 1996 that many end up with paedophiles and assets of the Cult through corrupt and Cult-owned social services which in the reframing era has hired many psychopaths and emotionless automatons to do the job. Children are even stolen to order using spurious reasons to take them by the corrupt and secret (because they're corrupt) 'family courts'. I have written in detail in other books, starting with *The Biggest Secret* in 1997, about the ubiquitous connections between the political, corporate, government, intelligence and military elites (Cult operatives) and Satanism and paedophilia. If you go deep enough both networks have an interlocking leadership. The Woke mentality has been developed by the Cult for many reasons: To promote almost every aspect of its agenda; to hijack the traditional political left and turn it fascist; to divide and rule; and to target agenda pushbackers. But there are other reasons which relate to what I am describing here. How many happy and joyful Wokers do you ever see especially at the extreme end? They are a mental and psychological mess consumed by emotional stress and constantly emotionally cocked for the next explosion of indignation at someone referring to a female as a female. They are walking, talking, batteries as Morpheus might say emitting frequencies which both enslave them in low-vibrational bubbles of perceptual limitation and feed the Archons. Add to this the hatred claimed to be love; fascism claimed to 'anti-fascism', racism claimed to be 'anti-racism';

exclusion claimed to inclusion; and the abuse-filled Internet trolling. You have a purpose-built Archontic energy system with not a wind turbine in sight and all founded on Archontic *inversion*. We have whole generations now manipulated to serve the Archons with their actions and energy. They will be doing so their entire adult lives unless they snap out of their Archon-induced trance. Is it really a surprise that Cult billionaires and corporations put so much money their way? Where is the energy of joy and laughter, including laughing at yourself which is confirmation of your own emotional security? Mark Twain said: 'The human race has one really effective weapon, and that is laughter.' We must use it all the time. Woke has destroyed comedy because it has no humour, no joy, sense of irony, or self-deprecation. Its energy is dense and intense. *Mmmmm*, lunch says the Archontic frequency. Rudolf Steiner (1861-1925) was the Austrian philosopher and famous esoteric thinker who established Waldorf education or Steiner schools to treat children like unique expressions of consciousness and not minds to be programmed with the perceptions determined by authority. I'd been writing about this energy vampiring for decades when I was sent in 2016 a quote by Steiner. He was spot on:

> There are beings in the spiritual realms for whom anxiety and fear emanating from human beings offer welcome food. When humans have no anxiety and fear, then these creatures starve. If fear and anxiety radiates from people and they break out in panic, then these creatures find welcome nutrition and they become more and more powerful. These beings are hostile towards humanity. Everything that feeds on negative feelings, on anxiety, fear and superstition, despair or doubt, are in reality hostile forces in super-sensible worlds, launching cruel attacks on human beings, while they are being fed ... These are exactly the feelings that belong to contemporary culture and materialism; because it estranges people from the spiritual world, it is especially suited to evoke hopelessness and fear of the unknown in people, thereby calling up the above mentioned hostile forces against them.

Pause for a moment from this perspective and reflect on what has happened in the world since the start of 2020. Not only will pennies drop, but billion dollar bills. We see the same theme from Don Juan Matus, a Yaqui Indian shaman in Mexico and the information source for Peruvian-born writer, Carlos Castaneda, who wrote a series of

books from the 1960s to 1990s. Don Juan described the force manipulating human society and his name for the Archons was the predator:

> We have a predator that came from the depths of the cosmos and took over the rule of our lives. Human beings are its prisoners. The predator is our lord and master. It has rendered us docile, helpless. If we want to protest, it suppresses our protest. If we want to act independently, it demands that we don't do so ... indeed we are held prisoner!
>
> They took us over because we are food to them, and they squeeze us mercilessly because we are their sustenance. Just as we rear chickens in coops, the predators rear us in human coops, humaneros. Therefore, their food is always available to them.
>
> Different cultures, different eras, same recurring theme.

The 'ennoia' dilemma

Nag Hammadi Gnostic manuscripts say that Archon consciousness has no 'ennoia'. This is directly translated as 'intentionality', but I'll use the term 'creative imagination'. The *All That Is* in awareness of itself is the source of all creativity – all possibility – and the more disconnected you are from that source the more you are subsequently denied 'creative imagination'. Given that Archon consciousness is almost entirely disconnected it severely lacks creativity and has to rely on far more mechanical processes of thought and exploit the creative potential of those that do have 'ennoia'. You can see cases of this throughout human society. Archon consciousness almost entirely dominates the global banking system and if we study how that system works you will appreciate what I mean. Banks manifest 'money' out of nothing by issuing lines of 'credit' which is 'money' that has never, does not, and will never exist except in theory. It's a confidence trick. If you think 'credit' figures-on-a-screen 'money' is worth anything you accept it as payment. If you don't then the whole system collapses through lack of confidence in the value of that 'money'. Archontic bankers with no 'ennoia' are 'lending' 'money' that doesn't exist to humans that *do* have creativity – those that have the inspired ideas and create businesses and products. Archon banking feeds off human creativity

which it controls through 'money' creation and debt. Humans have the creativity and Archons exploit that for their own benefit and control while having none themselves. Archon Internet platforms like Facebook claim joint copyright of everything that creative users post and while Archontic minds like Zuckerberg may officially head that company it will be human creatives on the staff that provide the creative inspiration. When you have limitless 'money' you can then buy other companies established by creative humans. Witness the acquisition record of Facebook, Google and their like. Survey the Archon-controlled music industry and you see non-creative dark suit executives making their fortune from the human creativity of their artists. The cases are endless. Research the history of people like Gates and Zuckerberg and how their empires were built on exploiting the creativity of others. Archon minds cannot create out of nothing, but they are skilled (because they have to be) in what Gnostic texts call 'countermimicry'. They can imitate, but not innovate. Sabbatians trawl the creativity of others through backdoors they install in computer systems through their cybersecurity systems. Archon-controlled China is globally infamous for stealing intellectual property and I remember how Hong Kong, now part of China, became notorious for making counterfeit copies of the creativity of others – 'countermimicry'. With the now pervasive and all-seeing surveillance systems able to infiltrate any computer you can appreciate the potential for Archons to vampire the creativity of humans. Author John Lamb Lash wrote in his book about the Nag Hammadi texts, *Not In His Image*:

> Although they cannot originate anything, because they lack the divine factor of ennoia (intentionality), Archons can imitate with a vengeance. Their expertise is simulation (HAL, virtual reality). The Demiurge [Yaldabaoth] fashions a heaven world copied from the fractal patterns [of the original] ... His construction is celestial kitsch, like the fake Italianate villa of a Mafia don complete with militant angels to guard every portal.

This brings us to something that I have been speaking about since the turn of the millennium. Our reality is a simulation; a virtual reality that we think is real. No, I'm not kidding.

Human reality? Well, virtually

I had pondered for years about whether our reality is 'real' or some kind of construct. I remembered being immensely affected on a visit as a small child in the late 1950s to the then newly-opened Planetarium on the Marylebone Road in London which is now closed and part of the adjacent Madame Tussauds wax museum. It was in the middle of the day, but when the lights went out there was the night sky projected in the Planetarium's domed ceiling and it appeared to be so real. The experience never left me and I didn't know why until around the turn of the millennium when I became certain that our 'night sky' and entire reality is a projection, a virtual reality, akin to the illusory world portrayed in the *Matrix* movies. I looked at the sky one day in this period and it appeared to me like the domed roof of the Planetarium. The release of the first *Matrix* movie in 1999 also provided a synchronistic and perfect visual representation of where my mind had been going for a long time. I hadn't come across the Gnostic Nag Hammadi texts then. When I did years later the correlation was once again astounding. As I read Gnostic accounts from 1,600 years and more earlier it was clear that they were describing the same simulation phenomenon. They tell how the Yaldabaoth 'Demiurge' and Archons created a 'bad copy' of original reality to rule over all that were captured by its illusions and the body was a prison to trap consciousness in the 'bad copy' fake reality. Read how Gnostics describe the 'bad copy' and update that to current times and they are referring to what we would call today a virtual reality simulation.

Author John Lamb Lash said 'the Demiurge fashions a heaven world copied from the fractal patterns' of the original through expertise in 'HAL' or virtual reality simulation. Fractal patterns are part of the energetic information construct of our reality, a sort of blueprint. If these patterns were copied in computer terms it would indeed give you a copy of a 'natural' reality in a non-natural frequency and digital form. The principle is the same as making a copy of a website. The original website still exists, but now you can change the copy version to make it whatever you like and it can

become very different to the original website. Archons have done this with our reality, a *synthetic* copy of prime reality that still exists beyond the frequency walls of the simulation. Trapped within the illusions of this synthetic Matrix, however, were and are human consciousness and other expressions of prime reality and this is why the Archons via the Cult are seeking to make the human body synthetic and give us synthetic AI minds to complete the job of turning the entire reality synthetic including what we perceive to be the natural world. To quote Kurzweil: 'Nanobots will infuse all the matter around us with information. Rocks, trees, everything will become these intelligent creatures.' Yes, *synthetic* 'creatures' just as 'Covid' and other genetically-manipulating 'vaccines' are designed to make the human body synthetic. From this perspective it is obvious why Archons and their Cult are so desperate to infuse synthetic material into every human with their 'Covid' scam.

Let there be (electromagnetic) light

Yaldabaoth, the force that created the simulation, or Matrix, makes sense of the Gnostic reference to 'The Great Architect' and its use by Cult Freemasonry as the name of its deity. The designer of the Matrix in the movies is called 'The Architect' and that trilogy is jam-packed with symbolism relating to these subjects. I have contended for years that the angry Old Testament God (Yaldabaoth) is the 'God' being symbolically 'quoted' in the opening of Genesis as 'creating the world'. This is not the creation of prime reality – it's the creation of the *simulation*. The Genesis 'God' says: 'Let there be Light: and there was light.' But what is this 'Light'? I have said for decades that the speed of light (186,000 miles per second) is not the fastest speed possible as claimed by mainstream science and is in fact the frequency walls or outer limits of the Matrix. You can't have a fastest or slowest anything within all possibility when everything is possible. The human body is encoded to operate within the speed of light or *within the simulation* and thus we see only the tiny frequency band of visible *light*. Near-death experiencers who perceive reality outside the body during temporary 'death' describe a very different

form of light and this is supported by the Nag Hammadi texts. Prime reality beyond the simulation ('Upper Aeons' to the Gnostics) is described as a realm of incredible beauty, bliss, love and harmony – a realm of 'watery light' that is so powerful 'there are no shadows'. Our false reality of Archon control, which Gnostics call the 'Lower Aeons', is depicted as a realm with a different kind of 'light' and described in terms of chaos, 'Hell', 'the Abyss' and 'Outer Darkness', where trapped souls are tormented and manipulated by demons (relate that to the 'Covid' hoax alone). The watery light theme can be found in near-death accounts and it is not the same as *simulation* 'light' which is electromagnetic or radiation light within the speed of light – the 'Lower Aeons'. Simulation 'light' is the 'luminous fire' associated by Gnostics with the Archons. The Bible refers to Yaldabaoth as 'that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world' (Revelation 12:9). I think that making a simulated copy of prime reality ('countermimicry') and changing it dramatically while all the time manipulating humanity to believe it to be real could probably meet the criteria of deceiving the whole world. Then we come to the Cult god Lucifer – the *Light Bringer*. Lucifer is symbolic of Yaldabaoth, the bringer of radiation light that forms the bad copy simulation within the speed of light. 'He' is symbolised by the lighted torch held by the Statue of Liberty and in the name 'Illuminati'. Sabbatian-Frankism declares that Lucifer is the true god and Lucifer is the real god of Freemasonry honoured as their 'Great or Grand Architect of the Universe' (simulation).

I would emphasise, too, the way Archontic technologically-generated luminous fire of radiation has deluged our environment since I was a kid in the 1950s and changed the nature of The Field with which we constantly interact. Through that interaction technological radiation is changing us. The Smart Grid is designed to operate with immense levels of communication power with 5G expanding across the world and 6G, 7G, in the process of development. Radiation is the simulation and the Archontic manipulation system. Why wouldn't the Archon Cult wish to unleash radiation upon us to an ever-greater extreme to form

Kurzweil's 'cloud'? The plan for a synthetic human is related to the need to cope with levels of radiation beyond even anything we've seen so far. Biological humans would not survive the scale of radiation they have in their script. The Smart Grid is a technological sub-reality within the technological simulation to further disconnect five-sense perception from expanded consciousness. It's a technological prison of the mind.

Infusing the 'spirit of darkness'

A recurring theme in religion and native cultures is the manipulation of human genetics by a non-human force and most famously recorded as the biblical 'sons of god' (the god*s* plural in the original) who interbred with the daughters of men. The Nag Hammadi *Apocryphon of John* tells the same story this way:

> He [Yaldabaoth] sent his angels [Archons/demons] to the daughters of men, that they might take some of them for themselves and raise offspring for their enjoyment. And at first they did not succeed. When they had no success, they gathered together again and they made a plan together ... And the angels changed themselves in their likeness into the likeness of their mates, filling them with the spirit of darkness, which they had mixed for them, and with evil ... And they took women and begot children out of the darkness according to the likeness of their spirit.

Possession when a discarnate entity takes over a human body is an age-old theme and continues today. It's very real and I've seen it. Satanic and secret society rituals can create an energetic environment in which entities can attach to initiates and I've heard many stories of how people have changed their personality after being initiated even into lower levels of the Freemasons. I have been inside three Freemasonic temples, one at a public open day and two by just walking in when there was no one around to stop me. They were in Ryde, the town where I live, Birmingham, England, when I was with a group, and Boston, Massachusetts. They all felt the same energetically – dark, dense, low-vibrational and sinister. Demonic attachment can happen while the initiate has no idea what is going on. To them it's just a ritual to get in the Masons and do a bit of good

business. In the far more extreme rituals of Satanism human possession is even more powerful and they are designed to make possession possible. The hierarchy of the Cult is dictated by the power and perceived status of the possessing Archon. In this way the Archon hierarchy becomes the Cult hierarchy. Once the entity has attached it can influence perception and behaviour and if it attaches to the extreme then so much of its energy (information) infuses into the body information field that the hologram starts to reflect the nature of the possessing entity. This is the *Exorcist* movie type of possession when facial features change and it's known as shapeshifting. Islam's Jinn are said to be invisible tricksters who change shape, 'whisper', confuse and take human form. These are all traits of the Archons and other versions of the same phenomenon. Extreme possession could certainty infuse the 'spirit of darkness' into a partner during sex as the Nag Hammadi texts appear to describe. Such an infusion can change genetics which is also energetic information. Human genetics is information and the 'spirit of darkness' is information. Mix one with the other and change must happen. Islam has the concept of a 'Jinn baby' through possession of the mother and by Jinn taking human form. There are many ways that human genetics can be changed and remember that Archons have been aware all along of advanced techniques to do this. What is being done in human society today – and far more – was known about by Archons at the time of the 'fallen ones' and their other versions described in religions and cultures.

Archons and their human-world Cult are obsessed with genetics as we see today and they know this dictates how information is processed into perceived reality during a human life. They needed to produce a human form that would decode the simulation and this is symbolically known as 'Adam and Eve' who left the 'garden' (prime reality) and 'fell' into Matrix reality. The simulation is not a 'physical' construct (there is no 'physical'); it is a source of information. Think Wi-Fi again. The simulation is an energetic field encoded with information and body-brain systems are designed to decode that information encoded in wave or frequency form which

is transmitted to the brain as electrical signals. These are decoded by the brain to construct our sense of reality – an illusory 'physical' world that only exists in the brain or the mind. Virtual reality games mimic this process using the same sensory decoding system. Information is fed to the senses to decode a virtual reality that can appear so real, but isn't (Figs 18 and 19). Some scientists believe – and I agree with them – that what we perceive as 'physical' reality only exists when we are looking or observing. The act of perception or focus triggers the decoding systems which turn waveform information into holographic reality. When we are not observing something our reality reverts from a holographic state to a waveform state. This relates to the same principle as a falling tree not making a noise unless someone is there to hear it or decode it. The concept makes sense from the simulation perspective. A computer is not decoding all the information in a Wi-Fi field all the time and only decodes or brings into reality on the screen that part of Wi-Fi that it's decoding – focusing upon – at that moment.

Figure 18: Virtual reality technology 'hacks' into the body's five-sense decoding system.

Figure 19: The result can be experienced as very 'real'.

Interestingly, Professor Donald Hoffman at the Department of Cognitive Sciences at the University of California, Irvine, says that our experienced reality is like a computer interface that shows us only the level with which we interact while hiding all that exists beyond it: 'Evolution shaped us with a user interface that hides the truth. Nothing that we see is the truth – the very language of space and time and objects is the wrong language to describe reality.' He is correct in what he says on so many levels. Space and time are not a universal reality. They are a phenomenon of decoded *simulation* reality as part of the process of enslaving our sense of reality. Near-death experiencers report again and again how space and time did not exist as we perceive them once they were free of the body – body decoding systems. You can appreciate from this why Archons and their Cult are so desperate to entrap human attention in the five senses where we are in the Matrix and of the Matrix. Opening your mind to expanded states of awareness takes you beyond the information confines of the simulation and you become aware of knowledge and insights denied to you before. This is what we call 'awakening' – *awakening from the Matrix* – and in the final chapter I will relate this to current events.

Where are the 'aliens'?

A simulation would explain the so-called 'Fermi Paradox' named after Italian physicist Enrico Fermi (1901-1954) who created the first nuclear reactor. He considered the question of why there is such a lack of extraterrestrial activity when there are so many stars and planets in an apparently vast universe; but what if the night sky that we see, or think we do, is a simulated projection as I say? If you control the simulation and your aim is to hold humanity fast in essential ignorance would you want other forms of life including advanced life coming and going sharing information with humanity? Or would you want them to believe they were isolated and apparently alone? Themes of human isolation and apartness are common whether they be the perception of a lifeless universe or the fascist isolation laws of the 'Covid' era. Paradoxically the very

existence of a simulation means that we are not alone when some force had to construct it. My view is that experiences that people have reported all over the world for centuries with Reptilians and Grey entities are Archon phenomena as Nag Hammadi texts describe; and that benevolent 'alien' interactions are non-human groups that come in and out of the simulation by overcoming Archon attempts to keep them out. It should be highlighted, too, that Reptilians and Greys are obsessed with *genetics* and *technology* as related by cultural accounts and those who say they have been abducted by them. Technology is their way of overcoming some of the limitations in their creative potential and our technology-driven and controlled human society of today is *arch*etypical Archon-Reptilian-Grey modus operandi. Technocracy is really *Archon*tocracy. The Universe does not have to be as big as it appears with a simulation. There is no space or distance only information decoded into holographic reality. What we call 'space' is only the absence of holographic 'objects' and that 'space' is The Field of energetic information which connects everything into a single whole. The same applies with the artificially-generated information field of the simulation. The Universe is not big or small as a physical reality. It is decoded information, that's all, and its perceived size is decided by the way the simulation is encoded to make it appear. The entire night sky as we perceive it only exists in our brain and so where are those 'millions of light years'? The 'stars' on the ceiling of the Planetarium looked a vast distance away.

There's another point to mention about 'aliens'. I have been highlighting since the 1990s the plan to stage a fake 'alien invasion' to justify the centralisation of global power and a world military. Nazi scientist Werner von Braun, who was taken to America by Operation Paperclip after World War Two to help found NASA, told his American assistant Dr Carol Rosin about the Cult agenda when he knew he was dying in 1977. Rosin said that he told her about a sequence that would lead to total human control by a one-world government. This included threats from terrorism, rogue nations, meteors and asteroids before finally an 'alien invasion'. All of these

things, von Braun said, would be bogus and what I would refer to as a No-Problem-Reaction-Solution. Keep this in mind when 'the aliens are coming' is the new mantra. The aliens are not coming – they are *already here* and they have infiltrated human society while looking human. French-Canadian investigative journalist Serge Monast said in 1994 that he had uncovered a NASA/military operation called Project Blue Beam which fits with what Werner von Braun predicted. Monast died of a 'heart attack' in 1996 the day after he was arrested and spent a night in prison. He was 51. He said Blue Beam was a plan to stage an alien invasion that would include religious figures beamed holographically into the sky as part of a global manipulation to usher in a 'new age' of worshipping what I would say is the Cult 'god' Yaldabaoth in a one-world religion. Fake holographic asteroids are also said to be part of the plan which again syncs with von Braun. How could you stage an illusory threat from asteroids unless they were holographic inserts? This is pretty straightforward given the advanced technology outside the public arena and the fact that our 'physical' reality is holographic anyway. Information fields would be projected and we would decode them into the illusion of a 'physical' asteroid. If they can sell a global 'pandemic' with a 'virus' that doesn't exist what will humans not believe if government and media tell them?

All this is particularly relevant as I write with the Pentagon planning to release in June, 2021, information about 'UFO sightings'. I have been following the UFO story since the early 1990s and the common theme throughout has been government and military denials and cover up. More recently, however, the Pentagon has suddenly become more talkative and apparently open with Air Force pilot radar images released of unexplained craft moving and changing direction at speeds well beyond anything believed possible with human technology. Then, in March, 2021, former Director of National Intelligence John Ratcliffe said a Pentagon report months later in June would reveal a great deal of information about UFO sightings unknown to the public. He said the report would have 'massive implications'. The order to do this was included bizarrely

in a $2.3 trillion 'coronavirus' relief and government funding bill passed by the Trump administration at the end of 2020. I would add some serious notes of caution here. I have been pointing out since the 1990s that the US military and intelligence networks have long had craft – 'flying saucers' or anti-gravity craft – which any observer would take to be extraterrestrial in origin. Keeping this knowledge from the public allows craft flown by *humans* to be perceived as alien visitations. I am not saying that 'aliens' do not exist. I would be the last one to say that, but we have to be streetwise here. President Ronald Reagan told the UN General Assembly in 1987: 'I occasionally think how quickly our differences worldwide would vanish if we were facing an alien threat from outside this world.' That's the idea. Unite against a common 'enemy' with a common purpose behind your 'saviour force' (the Cult) as this age-old technique of mass manipulation goes global.

Science moves this way ...

I could find only one other person who was discussing the simulation hypothesis publicly when I concluded it was real. This was Nick Bostrom, a Swedish-born philosopher at the University of Oxford, who has explored for many years the possibility that human reality is a computer simulation although his version and mine are not the same. Today the simulation and holographic reality hypothesis have increasingly entered the scientific mainstream. Well, the more open-minded mainstream, that is. Here are a few of the ever-gathering examples. American nuclear physicist Silas Beane led a team of physicists at the University of Bonn in Germany pursuing the question of whether we live in a simulation. They concluded that we probably do and it was likely based on a lattice of cubes. They found that cosmic rays align with that specific pattern. The team highlighted the Greisen–Zatsepin–Kuzmin (GZK) limit which refers to cosmic ray particle interaction with cosmic background radiation that creates an apparent boundary for cosmic ray particles. They say in a paper entitled 'Constraints on the Universe as a Numerical Simulation' that this 'pattern of constraint' is exactly what you

would find with a computer simulation. They also made the point that a simulation would create its own 'laws of physics' that would limit possibility. I've been making the same point for decades that the *perceived* laws of physics relate only to this reality, or what I would later call the simulation. When designers write codes to create computer and virtual reality games they are the equivalent of the laws of physics for that game. Players interact within the limitations laid out by the coding. In the same way those who wrote the codes for the simulation decided the laws of physics that would apply. These can be overridden by expanded states of consciousness, but not by those enslaved in only five-sense awareness where simulation codes rule. Overriding the codes is what people call 'miracles'. They are not. They are bypassing the encoded limits of the simulation. A population caught in simulation perception would have no idea that this was their plight. As the Bonn paper said: 'Like a prisoner in a pitch-black cell we would not be able to see the "walls" of our prison,' That's true if people remain mesmerised by the five senses. Open to expanded awareness and those walls become very clear. The main one is the speed of light.

American theoretical physicist James Gates is another who has explored the simulation question and found considerable evidence to support the idea. Gates was Professor of Physics at the University of Maryland, Director of The Center for String and Particle Theory, and on Barack Obama's Council of Advisors on Science and Technology. He and his team found *computer codes* of digital data embedded in the fabric of our reality. They relate to on-off electrical charges of 1 and 0 in the binary system used by computers. 'We have no idea what they are doing there', Gates said. They found within the energetic fabric mathematical sequences known as error-correcting codes or block codes that 'reboot' data to its original state or 'default settings' when something knocks it out of sync. Gates was asked if he had found a set of equations embedded in our reality indistinguishable from those that drive search engines and browsers and he said: 'That is correct.' Rich Terrile, director of the Centre for Evolutionary Computation and Automated Design at NASA's Jet

Propulsion Laboratory, has said publicly that he believes the Universe is a digital hologram that must have been created by a form of intelligence. I agree with that in every way. Waveform information is delivered electrically by the senses to the brain which constructs a *digital* holographic reality that we call the 'world'. This digital level of reality can be read by the esoteric art of numerology. Digital holograms are at the cutting edge of holographics today. We have digital technology everywhere designed to access and manipulate our digital level of perceived reality. Synthetic mRNA in 'Covid vaccines' has a digital component to manipulate the body's digital 'operating system'.

Reality is numbers

How many know that our reality can be broken down to numbers and codes that are the same as computer games? Max Tegmark, a physicist at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT), is the author of *Our Mathematical Universe* in which he lays out how reality can be entirely described by numbers and maths in the way that a video game is encoded with the 'physics' of computer games. Our world and computer virtual reality are essentially the same. Tegmark imagines the perceptions of characters in an advanced computer game when the graphics are so good they don't know they are in a game. They think they can bump into real objects (electromagnetic resistance in our reality), fall in love and feel emotions like excitement. When they began to study the apparently 'physical world' of the video game they would realise that everything was made of pixels (which have been found in our energetic reality as must be the case when on one level our world is digital). What computer game characters thought was physical 'stuff', Tegmark said, could actually be broken down into numbers:

> And we're exactly in this situation in our world. We look around and it doesn't seem that mathematical at all, but everything we see is made out of elementary particles like quarks and electrons. And what properties does an electron have? Does it have a smell or a colour or a texture? No! ... We physicists have come up with geeky names for [Electron] properties, like

electric charge, or spin, or lepton number, but the electron doesn't care what we call it, the properties are just numbers.

This is the illusory reality Gnostics were describing. This is the simulation. The A, C, G, and T codes of DNA have a binary value – A and C = 0 while G and T = 1. This has to be when the simulation is digital and the body must be digital to interact with it. Recurring mathematical sequences are encoded throughout reality and the body. They include the Fibonacci sequence in which the two previous numbers are added to get the next one, as in ... 1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, 21, 34, 55, etc. The sequence is encoded in the human face and body, proportions of animals, DNA, seed heads, pine cones, trees, shells, spiral galaxies, hurricanes and the number of petals in a flower. The list goes on and on. There are fractal patterns – a 'never-ending pattern that is infinitely complex and self-similar across all scales in the as above, so below, principle of holograms. These and other famous recurring geometrical and mathematical sequences such as Phi, Pi, Golden Mean, Golden Ratio and Golden Section are *computer codes* of the simulation. I had to laugh and give my head a shake the day I finished this book and it went into the production stage. I was sent an article in *Scientific American* published in April, 2021, with the headline 'Confirmed! We Live in a Simulation'. Two decades after I first said our reality is a simulation and the speed of light is it's outer limit the article suggested that we do live in a simulation and that the speed of light is its outer limit. I left school at 15 and never passed a major exam in my life while the writer was up to his eyes in qualifications. As I will explain in the final chapter *knowing* is far better than thinking and they come from very different sources. The article rightly connected the speed of light to the processing speed of the 'Matrix' and said what has been in my books all this time … 'If we are in a simulation, as it appears, then space is an abstract property written in code. It is not real'. No it's not and if we live in a simulation something created it and it wasn't *us*. 'That David Icke says we are manipulated by aliens' – he's crackers.'

Wow ...

The reality that humanity thinks is so real is an illusion. Politicians, governments, scientists, doctors, academics, law enforcement, media, school and university curriculums, on and on, are all founded on a world that *does not exist* except as a simulated prison cell. Is it such a stretch to accept that 'Covid' doesn't exist when our entire 'physical' reality doesn't exist? Revealed here is the knowledge kept under raps in the Cult networks of compartmentalised secrecy to control humanity's sense of reality by inducing the population to believe in a reality that's not real. If it wasn't so tragic in its experiential consequences the whole thing would be hysterically funny. None of this is new to Renegade Minds. Ancient Greek philosopher Plato (about 428 to about 347BC) was a major influence on Gnostic belief and he described the human plight thousands of years ago with his Allegory of the Cave. He told the symbolic story of prisoners living in a cave who had never been outside. They were chained and could only see one wall of the cave while behind them was a fire that they could not see. Figures walked past the fire casting shadows on the prisoners' wall and those moving shadows became their sense of reality. Some prisoners began to study the shadows and were considered experts on them (today's academics and scientists), but what they studied was only an illusion (today's academics and scientists). A prisoner escaped from the cave and saw reality as it really is. When he returned to report this revelation they didn't believe him, called him mad and threatened to kill him if he tried to set them free. Plato's tale is not only a brilliant analogy of the human plight and our illusory reality. It describes, too, the dynamics of the 'Covid' hoax. I have only skimmed the surface of these subjects here. The aim of this book is to crisply connect all essential dots to put what is happening today into its true context. All subject areas and their connections in this chapter are covered in great evidential detail in *Everything You Need To Know, But Have Never Been Told* and *The Answer*.

They say that bewildered people 'can't see the forest for the trees'. Humanity, however, can't see the forest for the *twigs*. The five senses

see only twigs while Renegade Minds can see the forest and it's the forest where the answers lie with the connections that reveals. Breaking free of perceptual programming so the forest can be seen is the way we turn all this around. Not breaking free is how humanity got into this mess. The situation may seem hopeless, but I promise you it's not. We are a perceptual heartbeat from paradise if only we knew.

CHAPTER TWELVE

Escaping Wetiko

Life is simply a vacation from the infinite
Dean Cavanagh

Renegade Minds weave the web of life and events and see common themes in the apparently random. They are always there if you look for them and their pursuit is aided by incredible synchronicity that comes when your mind is open rather than mesmerised by what it thinks it can see.

Infinite awareness is infinite possibility and the more of infinite possibility that we access the more becomes infinitely possible. That may be stating the apparently obvious, but it is a devastatingly-powerful fact that can set us free. We are a point of attention within an infinity of consciousness. The question is how much of that infinity do we choose to access? How much knowledge, insight, awareness, wisdom, do we want to connect with and explore? If your focus is only in the five senses you will be influenced by a fraction of infinite awareness. I mean a range so tiny that it gives new meaning to infinitesimal. Limitation of self-identity and a sense of the possible limit accordingly your range of consciousness. We are what we think we are. Life is what we think it is. The dream is the dreamer and the dreamer is the dream. Buddhist philosophy puts it this way: 'As a thing is viewed, so it appears.' Most humans live in the realm of touch, taste, see, hear, and smell and that's the limit of their sense of the possible and sense of self. Many will follow a religion and speak of a God in his heaven, but their lives are still

dominated by the five senses in their perceptions and actions. The five senses become the arbiter of everything. When that happens all except a smear of infinity is sealed away from influence by the rigid, unyielding, reality bubbles that are the five-sense human or Phantom Self. Archon Cult methodology is to isolate consciousness within five-sense reality – the simulation – and then program that consciousness with a sense of self and the world through a deluge of life-long information designed to instil the desired perception that allows global control. Efforts to do this have increased dramatically with identity politics as identity bubbles are squeezed into the minutiae of five-sense detail which disconnect people even more profoundly from the infinite 'I'.

Five-sense focus and self-identity are like a firewall that limits access to the infinite realms. You only perceive one radio or television station and no other. We'll take that literally for a moment. Imagine a vast array of stations giving different information and angles on reality, but you only ever listen to one. Here we have the human plight in which the population is overwhelmingly confined to CultFM. This relates only to the frequency range of CultFM and limits perception and insight to that band – limits *possibility* to that band. It means you are connecting with an almost imperceptibly minuscule range of possibility and creative potential within the infinite Field. It's a world where everything seems apart from everything else and where synchronicity is rare. Synchronicity is defined in the dictionary as 'the happening by chance of two or more related or similar events at the same time'. Use of 'by chance' betrays a complete misunderstanding of reality. Synchronicity is not 'by chance'. As people open their minds, or 'awaken' to use the term, they notice more and more coincidences in their lives, bits of 'luck', apparently miraculous happenings that put them in the right place at the right time with the right people. Days become peppered with 'fancy meeting you here' and 'what are the chances of that?' My entire life has been lived like this and ever more so since my own colossal awakening in 1990 and 91 which transformed my sense of reality. Synchronicity is not 'by chance'; it is by accessing expanded

realms of possibility which allow expanded potential for manifestation. People broadcasting the same vibe from the same openness of mind tend to be drawn 'by chance' to each other through what I call frequency magnetism and it's not only people. In the last more than 30 years incredible synchronicity has also led me through the Cult maze to information in so many forms and to crucial personal experiences. These 'coincidences' have allowed me to put the puzzle pieces together across an enormous array of subjects and situations. Those who have breached the bubble of five-sense reality will know exactly what I mean and this escape from the perceptual prison cell is open to everyone whenever they make that choice. This may appear super-human when compared with the limitations of 'human', but it's really our natural state. 'Human' as currently experienced is consciousness in an unnatural state of induced separation from the infinity of the whole. I'll come to how this transformation into unity can be made when I have described in more detail the force that holds humanity in servitude by denying this access to infinite self.

The Wetiko factor

I have been talking and writing for decades about the way five-sense mind is systematically barricaded from expanded awareness. I have used the analogy of a computer (five-sense mind) and someone at the keyboard (expanded awareness). Interaction between the computer and the operator is symbolic of the interaction between five-sense mind and expanded awareness. The computer directly experiences the Internet and the operator experiences the Internet via the computer which is how it's supposed to be – the two working as one. Archons seek to control that point where the operator connects with the computer to stop that interaction (Fig 20). Now the operator is banging the keyboard and clicking the mouse, but the computer is not responding and this happens when the computer is taken over – *possessed* – by an appropriately-named computer 'virus'. The operator has lost all influence over the computer which goes its own way making decisions under the control of the 'virus'. I have

just described the dynamic through which the force known to Gnostics as Yaldabaoth and Archons disconnects five-sense mind from expanded awareness to imprison humanity in perceptual servitude.

Figure 20: The mind 'virus' I have been writing about for decades seeks to isolate five-sense mind (the computer) from the true 'I'. (Image by Neil Hague).

About a year ago I came across a Native American concept of Wetiko which describes precisely the same phenomenon. Wetiko is the spelling used by the Cree and there are other versions including wintiko and windigo used by other tribal groups. They spell the name with lower case, but I see Wetiko as a proper noun as with Archons and prefer a capital. I first saw an article about Wetiko by writer and researcher Paul Levy which so synced with what I had been writing about the computer/operator disconnection and later the Archons. I then read his book, the fascinating *Dispelling Wetiko, Breaking the Spell of Evil*. The parallels between what I had concluded long before and the Native American concept of Wetiko were so clear and obvious that it was almost funny. For Wetiko see the Gnostic Archons for sure and the Jinn, the Predators, and every other name for a force of evil, inversion and chaos. Wetiko is the Native American name for the force that divides the computer from

the operator (Fig 21). Indigenous author Jack D. Forbes, a founder of the Native American movement in the 1960s, wrote another book about Wetiko entitled *Columbus And Other Cannibals – The Wetiko Disease of Exploitation, Imperialism, and Terrorism* which I also read. Forbes says that Wetiko refers to an evil person or spirit 'who terrorizes other creatures by means of terrible acts, including cannibalism'. Zulu shaman Credo Mutwa told me that African accounts tell how cannibalism was brought into the world by the Chitauri 'gods' – another manifestation of Wetiko. The distinction between 'evil person or spirit' relates to Archons/Wetiko possessing a human or acting as pure consciousness. Wetiko is said to be a sickness of the soul or spirit and a state of being that takes but gives nothing back – the Cult and its operatives perfectly described. Black Hawk, a Native American war leader defending their lands from confiscation, said European invaders had 'poisoned hearts' – Wetiko hearts – and that this would spread to native societies. Mention of the heart is very significant as we shall shortly see. Forbes writes: 'Tragically, the history of the world for the past 2,000 years is, in great part, the story of the epidemiology of the wetiko disease.' Yes, and much longer. Forbes is correct when he says: 'The wetikos destroyed Egypt and Babylon and Athens and Rome and Tenochtitlan [capital of the Aztec empire] and perhaps now they will destroy the entire earth.' Evil, he said, is the number one export of a Wetiko culture – see its globalisation with 'Covid'. Constant war, mass murder, suffering of all kinds, child abuse, Satanism, torture and human sacrifice are all expressions of Wetiko and the Wetiko possessed. The world is Wetiko made manifest, *but it doesn't have to be*. There is a way out of this even now.

Figure 21: The mind 'virus' is known to Native Americans as 'Wetiko'. (Image by Neil Hague).

Cult of Wetiko

Wetiko is the Yaldabaoth frequency distortion that seeks to attach to human consciousness and absorb it into its own. Once this connection is made Wetiko can drive the perceptions of the target which they believe to be coming from their own mind. All the horrors of history and today from mass killers to Satanists, paedophiles like Jeffrey Epstein and other psychopaths, are the embodiment of Wetiko and express its state of being in all its grotesqueness. The Cult is Wetiko incarnate, Yaldabaoth incarnate, and it seeks to facilitate Wetiko assimilation of humanity in totality into its distortion by manipulating the population into low frequency states that match its own. Paul Levy writes: 'Holographically enforced within the psyche of every human being the wetiko virus pervades and underlies the entire field of consciousness, and can therefore potentially manifest through any one of us at any moment if we are not mindful.' The 'Covid' hoax has achieved this with many people, but others have not fallen into Wetiko's frequency lair. Players in the 'Covid' human catastrophe including Gates, Schwab, Tedros, Fauci, Whitty, Vallance, Johnson, Hancock, Ferguson, Drosten, and all the rest, including the psychopath psychologists, are expressions of Wetiko. This is why

they have no compassion or empathy and no emotional consequence for what they do that would make them stop doing it. Observe all the people who support the psychopaths in authority against the Pushbackers despite the damaging impact the psychopaths have on their own lives and their family's lives. You are again looking at Wetiko possession which prevents them seeing through the lies to the obvious scam going on. *Why can't they see it?* Wetiko won't let them see it. The perceptual divide that has now become a chasm is between the Wetikoed and the non-Wetikoed.

Paul Levy describes Wetiko in the same way that I have long described the Archontic force. They are the same distorted consciousness operating across dimensions of reality: '… the subtle body of wetiko is not located in the third dimension of space and time, literally existing in another dimension … it is able to affect ordinary lives by mysteriously interpenetrating into our three-dimensional world.' Wetiko does this through its incarnate representatives in the Cult and by weaving itself into The Field which on our level of reality is the electromagnetic information field of the simulation or Matrix. More than that, the simulation *is* Wetiko / Yaldabaoth. Caleb Scharf, Director of Astrobiology at Columbia University, has speculated that 'alien life' could be so advanced that it has transcribed itself into the quantum realm to become what we call physics. He said intelligence indistinguishable from the fabric of the Universe would solve many of its greatest mysteries:

> Perhaps hyper-advanced life isn't just external. Perhaps it's already all around. It is embedded in what we perceive to be physics itself, from the root behaviour of particles and fields to the phenomena of complexity and emergence ... In other words, life might not just be in the equations. It might BE the equations [My emphasis].

Scharf said it is possible that 'we don't recognise advanced life because it forms an integral and unsuspicious part of what we've considered to be the natural world'. I agree. Wetiko/Yaldabaoth *is* the simulation. We are literally in the body of the beast. But that doesn't mean it has to control us. We all have the power to overcome Wetiko

influence and the Cult knows that. I doubt it sleeps too well because it knows that.

Which Field?

This, I suggest, is how it all works. There are two Fields. One is the fierce electromagnetic light of the Matrix within the speed of light; the other is the 'watery light' of The Field beyond the walls of the Matrix that connects with the Great Infinity. Five-sense mind and the decoding systems of the body attach us to the Field of Matrix light. They have to or we could not experience this reality. Five-sense mind sees only the Matrix Field of information while our expanded consciousness is part of the Infinity Field. When we open our minds, and most importantly our hearts, to the Infinity Field we have a mission control which gives us an expanded perspective, a road map, to understand the nature of the five-sense world. If we are isolated only in five-sense mind there is no mission control. We're on our own trying to understand a world that's constantly feeding us information to ensure we do not understand. People in this state can feel 'lost' and bewildered with no direction or radar. You can see ever more clearly those who are influenced by the Fields of Big Infinity or little five-sense mind simply by their views and behaviour with regard to the 'Covid' hoax. We have had this division throughout known human history with the mass of the people on one side and individuals who could see and intuit beyond the walls of the simulation – Plato's prisoner who broke out of the cave and saw reality for what it is. Such people have always been targeted by Wetiko/Archon-possessed authority, burned at the stake or demonised as mad, bad and dangerous. The Cult today and its global network of 'anti-hate', 'anti-fascist' Woke groups are all expressions of Wetiko attacking those exposing the conspiracy, 'Covid' lies and the 'vaccine' agenda.

Woke as a whole is Wetiko which explains its black and white mentality and how at one it is with the Wetiko-possessed Cult. Paul Levy said: 'To be in this paradigm is to still be under the thrall of a two-valued logic – where things are either true or false – of a

wetikoized mind.' Wetiko consciousness is in a permanent rage, therefore so is Woke, and then there is Woke inversion and contradiction. 'Anti-fascists' act like fascists because fascists *and* 'anti-fascists' are both Wetiko at work. Political parties act the same while claiming to be different for the same reason. Secret society and satanic rituals are attaching initiates to Wetiko and the cold, ruthless, psychopathic mentality that secures the positions of power all over the world is Wetiko. Reframing 'training programmes' have the same cumulative effect of attaching Wetiko and we have their graduates described as automatons and robots with a cold, psychopathic, uncaring demeanour. They are all traits of Wetiko possession and look how many times they have been described in this book and elsewhere with regard to personnel behind 'Covid' including the police and medical profession. Climbing the greasy pole in any profession in a Wetiko society requires traits of Wetiko to get there and that is particularly true of politics which is not about fair competition and pre-eminence of ideas. It is founded on how many backs you can stab and arses you can lick. This culminated in the global 'Covid' coordination between the Wetiko possessed who pulled it off in all the different countries without a trace of empathy and compassion for their impact on humans. Our sight sense can see only holographic form and not the Field which connects holographic form. Therefore we perceive 'physical' objects with 'space' in between. In fact that 'space' is energy/consciousness operating on multiple frequencies. One of them is Wetiko and that connects the Cult psychopaths, those who submit to the psychopaths, and those who serve the psychopaths in the media operations of the world. Wetiko is Gates. Wetiko is the mask-wearing submissive. Wetiko is the fake journalist and 'fact-checker'. The Wetiko Field is coordinating the whole thing. Psychopaths, gofers, media operatives, 'anti-hate' hate groups, 'fact-checkers' and submissive people work as one unit *even without human coordination* because they are attached to the *same* Field which is organising it all (Fig 22). Paul Levy is here describing how Wetiko-possessed people are drawn together and refuse to let any information breach their rigid

perceptions. He was writing long before 'Covid', but I think you will recognise followers of the 'Covid' religion *oh just a little bit*:

> People who are channelling the vibratory frequency of wetiko align with each other through psychic resonance to reinforce their unspoken shared agreement so as to uphold their deranged view of reality. Once an unconscious content takes possession of certain individuals, it irresistibly draws them together by mutual attraction and knits them into groups tied together by their shared madness that can easily swell into an avalanche of insanity.
>
> A psychic epidemic is a closed system, which is to say that it is insular and not open to any new information or informing influences from the outside world which contradict its fixed, limited, and limiting perspective.

There we have the Woke mind and the 'Covid' mind. Compatible resonance draws the awakening together, too, which is clearly happening today.

Figure 22: The Wetiko Field from which the Cult pyramid and its personnel are made manifest. (Image by Neil Hague).

Spiritual servitude

Wetiko doesn't care about humans. It's not human; it just possesses humans for its own ends and the effect (depending on the scale of

possession) can be anything from extreme psychopathy to unquestioning obedience. Wetiko's worst nightmare is for human consciousness to expand beyond the simulation. Everything is focussed on stopping that happening through control of information, thus perception, thus frequency. The 'education system', media, science, medicine, academia, are all geared to maintaining humanity in five-sense servitude as is the constant stimulation of low-vibrational mental and emotional states (see 'Covid'). Wetiko seeks to dominate those subconscious spaces between five-sense perception and expanded consciousness where the computer meets the operator. From these subconscious hiding places Wetiko speaks to us to trigger urges and desires that we take to be our own and manipulate us into anything from low-vibrational to psychopathic states. Remember how Islam describes the Jinn as invisible tricksters that 'whisper' and confuse. Wetiko is the origin of the 'trickster god' theme that you find in cultures all over the world. Jinn, like the Archons, are Wetiko which is terrified of humans awakening and reconnecting with our true self for then its energy source has gone. With that the feedback loop breaks between Wetiko and human perception that provides the energetic momentum on which its very existence depends as a force of evil. Humans are both its target and its source of survival, but only if we are operating in low-vibrational states of fear, hate, depression and the background anxiety that most people suffer. We are Wetiko's target because we are its key to survival. It needs us, not the other way round. Paul Levy writes:

> A vampire has no intrinsic, independent, substantial existence in its own right; it only exists in relation to us. The pathogenic, vampiric mind-parasite called wetiko is nothing in itself – not being able to exist from its own side – yet it has a 'virtual reality' such that it can potentially destroy our species …
>
> …The fact that a vampire is not reflected by a mirror can also mean that what we need to see is that there's nothing, no-thing to see, other than ourselves. The fact that wetiko is the expression of something inside of us means that the cure for wetiko is with us as well. The critical issue is finding this cure within us and then putting it into effect.

Evil begets evil because if evil does not constantly expand and find new sources of energetic sustenance its evil, its *distortion*, dies with the assimilation into balance and harmony. Love is the garlic to Wetiko's vampire. Evil, the absence of love, cannot exist in the presence of love. I think I see a way out of here. I have emphasised so many times over the decades that the Archons/Wetiko and their Cult are not all powerful. *They are not*. I don't care how it looks even now *they are not*. I have not called them little boys in short trousers for effect. I have said it because it is true. Wetiko's insatiable desire for power over others is not a sign of its omnipotence, but its insecurity. Paul Levy writes: 'Due to the primal fear which ultimately drives it and which it is driven to cultivate, wetiko's body politic has an intrinsic and insistent need for centralising power and control so as to create imagined safety for itself.' *Yeeeeeees!* Exactly! Why does Wetiko want humans in an ongoing state of fear? Wetiko itself *is* fear and it is petrified of love. As evil is an absence of love, so love is an absence of fear. Love conquers all and *especially* Wetiko which *is* fear. Wetiko brought fear into the world when it wasn't here before. *Fear* was the 'fall', the fall into low-frequency ignorance and illusion – fear is **F**alse **E**motion **A**ppearing **R**eal. The simulation is driven and energised by fear because Wetiko/Yaldabaoth (fear) *are* the simulation. Fear is the absence of love and Wetiko is the absence of love.

Wetiko today

We can now view current events from this level of perspective. The 'Covid' hoax has generated momentous amounts of ongoing fear, anxiety, depression and despair which have empowered Wetiko. No wonder people like Gates have been the instigators when they are Wetiko incarnate and exhibit every trait of Wetiko in the extreme. See how cold and unemotional these people are like Gates and his cronies, how dead of eye they are. That's Wetiko. Sabbatians are Wetiko and everything they control including the World Health Organization, Big Pharma and the 'vaccine' makers, national 'health'

hierarchies, corporate media, Silicon Valley, the banking system, and the United Nations with its planned transformation into world government. All are controlled and possessed by the Wetiko distortion into distorting human society in its image. We are with this knowledge at the gateway to understanding the world. Divisions of race, culture, creed and sexuality are diversions to hide the real division between those possessed and influenced by Wetiko and those that are not. The 'Covid' hoax has brought both clearly into view. Human behaviour is not about race. Tyrants and dictatorships come in all colours and creeds. What unites the US president bombing the innocent and an African tribe committing genocide against another as in Rwanda? What unites them? *Wetiko*. All wars are Wetiko, all genocide is Wetiko, all hunger over centuries in a world of plenty is Wetiko. Children going to bed hungry, including in the West, is Wetiko. Cult-generated Woke racial divisions that focus on the body are designed to obscure the reality that divisions in behaviour are manifestations of mind, not body. Obsession with body identity and group judgement is a means to divert attention from the real source of behaviour – mind and perception. Conflict sown by the Woke both within themselves and with their target groups are Wetiko providing lunch for itself through still more agents of the division, chaos, and fear on which it feeds. The Cult is seeking to assimilate the entirety of humanity and all children and young people into the Wetiko frequency by manipulating them into states of fear and despair. Witness all the suicide and psychological unravelling since the spring of 2020. Wetiko psychopaths want to impose a state of unquestioning obedience to authority which is no more than a conduit for Wetiko to enforce its will and assimilate humanity into itself. It needs us to believe that resistance is futile when it fears resistance and even more so the game-changing non-cooperation with its impositions. It can use violent resistance for its benefit. Violent impositions and violent resistance are *both* Wetiko. The Power of Love with its Power of No will sweep Wetiko from our world. Wetiko and its Cult know that. They just don't want us to know.

AI Wetiko

This brings me to AI or artificial intelligence and something else Wetikos don't want us to know. What is AI *really*? I know about computer code algorithms and AI that learns from data input. These, however, are more diversions, the expeditionary force, for the real AI that they want to connect to the human brain as promoted by Silicon Valley Wetikos like Kurzweil. What is this AI? It is the frequency of *Wetiko*, the frequency of the Archons. The connection of AI to the human brain is the connection of the Wetiko frequency to create a Wetiko hive mind and complete the job of assimilation. The hive mind is planned to be controlled from Israel and China which are both 100 percent owned by Wetiko Sabbatians. The assimilation process has been going on minute by minute in the 'smart' era which fused with the 'Covid' era. We are told that social media is scrambling the minds of the young and changing their personality. This is true, but what is social media? Look more deeply at how it works, how it creates divisions and conflict, the hostility and cruelty, the targeting of people until they are destroyed. That's Wetiko. Social media is manipulated to tune people to the Wetiko frequency with all the emotional exploitation tricks employed by platforms like Facebook and its Wetiko front man, Zuckerberg. Facebook's Instagram announced a new platform for children to overcome a legal bar on them using the main site. This is more Wetiko exploitation and manipulation of kids. Amnesty International likened the plan to foxes offering to guard the henhouse and said it was incompatible with human rights. Since when did Wetiko or Zuckerberg (I repeat myself) care about that? Would Brin and Page at Google, Wojcicki at YouTube, Bezos at Amazon and whoever the hell runs Twitter act as they do if they were not channelling Wetiko? Would those who are developing technologies for no other reason than human control? How about those designing and selling technologies to kill people and Big Pharma drug and 'vaccine' producers who know they will end or devastate lives? Quite a thought for these people to consider is that if you are Wetiko in a human life you are Wetiko on the 'other side' unless your frequency

changes and that can only change by a change of perception which becomes a change of behaviour. Where Gates is going does not bear thinking about although perhaps that's exactly where he wants to go. Either way, that's where he's going. His frequency will make it so.

The frequency lair

I have been saying for a long time that a big part of the addiction to smartphones and devices is that a frequency is coming off them that entraps the mind. People spend ages on their phones and sometimes even a minute or so after they put them down they pick them up again and it all repeats. 'Covid' lockdowns will have increased this addiction a million times for obvious reasons. Addictions to alcohol overindulgence and drugs are another way that Wetiko entraps consciousness to attach to its own. Both are symptoms of low-vibrational psychological distress which alcoholism and drug addiction further compound. Do we think it's really a coincidence that access to them is made so easy while potions that can take people into realms beyond the simulation are banned and illegal? I have explored smartphone addiction in other books, the scale is mind-blowing, and that level of addiction does not come without help. Tech companies that make these phones are Wetiko and they will have no qualms about destroying the minds of children. We are seeing again with these companies the Wetiko perceptual combination of psychopathic enforcers and weak and meek unquestioning compliance by the rank and file.

The global Smart Grid is the Wetiko Grid and it is crucial to complete the Cult endgame. The simulation is radiation and we are being deluged with technological radiation on a devastating scale. Wetiko frauds like Elon Musk serve Cult interests while occasionally criticising them to maintain his street-cred. 5G and other forms of Wi-Fi are being directed at the earth from space on a volume and scale that goes on increasing by the day. Elon Musk's (officially) SpaceX Starlink project is in the process of putting tens of thousands of satellites in low orbit to cover every inch of the planet with 5G and other Wi-Fi to create Kurzweil's global 'cloud' to which the

human mind is planned to be attached very soon. SpaceX has approval to operate 12,000 satellites with more than 1,300 launched at the time of writing and applications filed for *30,000* more. Other operators in the Wi-Fi, 5G, low-orbit satellite market include OneWeb (UK), Telesat (Canada), and AST & Science (US). Musk tells us that AI could be the end of humanity and then launches a company called Neuralink to connect the human brain to computers. Musk's (in theory) Tesla company is building electric cars and the driverless vehicles of the smart control grid. As frauds and bullshitters go Elon Musk in my opinion is Major League.

5G and technological radiation in general are destructive to human health, genetics and psychology and increasing the strength of artificial radiation underpins the five-sense perceptual bubbles which are themselves expressions of radiation or electromagnetism. Freedom activist John Whitehead was so right with his 'databit by databit, we are building our own electronic concentration camps'. The Smart Grid and 5G is a means to control the human mind and infuse perceptual information into The Field to influence anyone in sync with its frequency. You can change perception and behaviour en masse if you can manipulate the population into those levels of frequency and this is happening all around us today. The arrogance of Musk and his fellow Cult operatives knows no bounds in the way that we see with Gates. Musk's satellites are so many in number already they are changing the night sky when viewed from Earth. The astronomy community has complained about this and they have seen nothing yet. Some consequences of Musk's Wetiko hubris include: Radiation; visible pollution of the night sky; interference with astronomy and meteorology; ground and water pollution from intensive use of increasingly many spaceports; accumulating space debris; continual deorbiting and burning up of aging satellites, polluting the atmosphere with toxic dust and smoke; and ever-increasing likelihood of collisions. A collective public open letter of complaint to Musk said:

We are writing to you … because SpaceX is in process of surrounding the Earth with a network of thousands of satellites whose very purpose is to irradiate every square inch of the

Earth. SpaceX, like everyone else, is treating the radiation as if it were not there. As if the mitochondria in our cells do not depend on electrons moving undisturbed from the food we digest to the oxygen we breathe.

As if our nervous systems and our hearts are not subject to radio frequency interference like any piece of electronic equipment. As if the cancer, diabetes, and heart disease that now afflict a majority of the Earth's population are not metabolic diseases that result from interference with our cellular machinery. As if insects everywhere, and the birds and animals that eat them, are not starving to death as a result.

People like Musk and Gates believe in their limitless Wetiko arrogance that they can do whatever they like to the world because they own it. Consequences for humanity are irrelevant. It's absolutely time that we stopped taking this shit from these self-styled masters of the Earth when you consider where this is going.

Why is the Cult so anti-human?

I hear this question often: Why would they do this when it will affect them, too? Ah, but will it? Who is this *them*? Forget their bodies. They are just vehicles for Wetiko consciousness. When you break it all down to the foundations we are looking at a state of severely distorted consciousness targeting another state of consciousness for assimilation. The rest is detail. The simulation is the fly-trap in which unique sensations of the five senses create a cycle of addiction called reincarnation. Renegade Minds see that everything which happens in our reality is a smaller version of the whole picture in line with the holographic principle. Addiction to the radiation of smart technology is a smaller version of addiction to the whole simulation. Connecting the body/brain to AI is taking that addiction on a giant step further to total ongoing control by assimilating human incarnate consciousness into Wetiko. I have watched during the 'Covid' hoax how many are becoming ever more profoundly attached to Wetiko's perceptual calling cards of aggressive response to any other point of view ('There is no other god but me'), psychopathic lack of compassion and empathy, and servile submission to the narrative and will of authority. Wetiko is the psychopaths *and* subservience to psychopaths. The Cult of Wetiko is

so anti-human because it is *not* human. It embarked on a mission to destroy human by targeting everything that it means to be human and to survive as human. 'Covid' is not the end, just a means to an end. The Cult with its Wetiko consciousness is seeking to change Earth systems, including the atmosphere, to suit them, not humans. The gathering bombardment of 5G alone from ground and space is dramatically changing The Field with which the five senses interact. There is so much more to come if we sit on our hands and hope it will all go away. It is not meant to go away. It is meant to get ever more extreme and we need to face that while we still can – just.

Carbon dioxide is the gas of life. Without that human is over. Kaput, gone, history. No natural world, no human. The Cult has created a cock and bull story about carbon dioxide and climate change to justify its reduction to the point where Gates and the ignoramus Biden 'climate chief' John Kerry want to suck it out of the atmosphere. Kerry wants to do this because his master Gates does. Wetikos have made the gas of life a demon with the usual support from the Wokers of Extinction Rebellion and similar organisations and the bewildered puppet-child that is Greta Thunberg who was put on the world stage by Klaus Schwab and the World Economic Forum. The name Extinction Rebellion is both ironic and as always Wetiko inversion. The gas that we need to survive must be reduced to save us from extinction. The most basic need of human is oxygen and we now have billions walking around in face nappies depriving body and brain of this essential requirement of human existence. More than that 5G at 60 gigahertz interacts with the oxygen molecule to reduce the amount of oxygen the body can absorb into the bloodstream. The obvious knock-on consequences of that for respiratory and cognitive problems and life itself need no further explanation. Psychopaths like Musk are assembling a global system of satellites to deluge the human atmosphere with this insanity. The man should be in jail. Here we have two most basic of human needs, oxygen and carbon dioxide, being dismantled.

Two others, water and food, are getting similar treatment with the United Nations Agendas 21 and 2030 – the Great Reset – planning to

centrally control all water and food supplies. People will not even own rain water that falls on their land. Food is affected at the most basic level by reducing carbon dioxide. We have genetic modification or GMO infiltrating the food chain on a mass scale, pesticides and herbicides polluting the air and destroying the soil. Freshwater fish that provide livelihoods for 60 million people and feed hundreds of millions worldwide are being 'pushed to the brink' according the conservationists while climate change is the only focus. Now we have Gates and Schwab wanting to dispense with current food sources all together and replace them with a synthetic version which the Wetiko Cult would control in terms of production and who eats and who doesn't. We have been on the Totalitarian Tiptoe to this for more than 60 years as food has become ever more processed and full of chemical shite to the point today when it's not natural food at all. As Dr Tom Cowan says: 'If it has a label don't eat it.' Bill Gates is now the biggest owner of farmland in the United States and he does nothing without an ulterior motive involving the Cult. Klaus Schwab wrote: 'To feed the world in the next 50 years we will need to produce as much food as was produced in the last 10,000 years … food security will only be achieved, however, if regulations on genetically modified foods are adapted to reflect the reality that gene editing offers a precise, efficient and safe method of improving crops.' Liar. People and the world are being targeted with aluminium through vaccines, chemtrails, food, drink cans, and endless other sources when aluminium has been linked to many health issues including dementia which is increasing year after year. Insects, bees and wildlife essential to the food chain are being deleted by pesticides, herbicides and radiation which 5G is dramatically increasing with 6G and 7G to come. The pollinating bee population is being devastated while wildlife including birds, dolphins and whales are having their natural radar blocked by the effects of ever-increasing radiation. In the summer windscreens used to be splattered with insects so numerous were they. It doesn't happen now. Where have they gone?

Synthetic everything

The Cult is introducing genetically-modified versions of trees, plants and insects including a Gates-funded project to unleash hundreds of millions of genetically-modified, lab-altered and patented male mosquitoes to mate with wild mosquitoes and induce genetic flaws that cause them to die out. Clinically-insane Gates-funded Japanese researchers have developed mosquitos that spread vaccine and are dubbed 'flying vaccinators'. Gates is funding the modification of weather patterns in part to sell the myth that this is caused by carbon dioxide and he's funding geoengineering of the skies to change the atmosphere. Some of this came to light with the Gates-backed plan to release tonnes of chalk into the atmosphere to 'deflect the Sun and cool the planet'. Funny how they do this while the heating effect of the Sun is not factored into climate projections focussed on carbon dioxide. The reason is that they want to reduce carbon dioxide (so don't mention the Sun), but at the same time they do want to reduce the impact of the Sun which is so essential to human life and health. I have mentioned the sun-cholesterol-vitamin D connection as they demonise the Sun with warnings about skin cancer (caused by the chemicals in sun cream they tell you to splash on). They come from the other end of the process with statin drugs to reduce cholesterol that turns sunlight into vitamin D. A lack of vitamin D leads to a long list of health effects and how vitamin D levels must have fallen with people confined to their homes over 'Covid'. Gates is funding other forms of geoengineering and most importantly chemtrails which are dropping heavy metals, aluminium and self-replicating nanotechnology onto the Earth which is killing the natural world. See *Everything You Need To Know, But Have Never Been Told* for the detailed background to this.

Every human system is being targeted for deletion by a force that's not human. The Wetiko Cult has embarked on the process of transforming the human body from biological to synthetic biological as I have explained. Biological is being replaced by the artificial and synthetic – Archontic 'countermimicry' – right across human society. The plan eventually is to dispense with the human body altogether

and absorb human consciousness – which it wouldn't really be by then – into cyberspace (the simulation which is Wetiko/Yaldabaoth). Preparations for that are already happening if people would care to look. The alternative media rightly warns about globalism and 'the globalists', but this is far bigger than that and represents the end of the human race as we know it. The 'bad copy' of prime reality that Gnostics describe was a bad copy of harmony, wonder and beauty to start with before Wetiko/Yaldabaoth set out to change the simulated 'copy' into something very different. The process was slow to start with. Entrapped humans in the simulation timeline were not technologically aware and they had to be brought up to intellectual speed while being suppressed spiritually to the point where they could build their own prison while having no idea they were doing so. We have now reached that stage where technological intellect has the potential to destroy us and that's why events are moving so fast. Central American shaman Don Juan Matus said:

> Think for a moment, and tell me how you would explain the contradictions between the intelligence of man the engineer and the stupidity of his systems of belief, or the stupidity of his contradictory behaviour. Sorcerers believe that the predators have given us our systems of beliefs, our ideas of good and evil; our social mores. They are the ones who set up our dreams of success or failure. They have given us covetousness, greed, and cowardice. It is the predator who makes us complacent, routinary, and egomaniacal.
>
> In order to keep us obedient and meek and weak, the predators engaged themselves in a stupendous manoeuvre – stupendous, of course, from the point of view of a fighting strategist; a horrendous manoeuvre from the point of those who suffer it. They gave us their mind. The predators' mind is baroque, contradictory, morose, filled with the fear of being discovered any minute now.

For 'predators' see Wetiko, Archons, Yaldabaoth, Jinn, and all the other versions of the same phenomenon in cultures and religions all over the world. The theme is always the same because it's true and it's real. We have reached the point where we have to deal with it. The question is – how?

Don't fight – walk away

I thought I'd use a controversial subheading to get things moving in terms of our response to global fascism. What do you mean 'don't fight'? What do you mean 'walk away'? We've got to fight. We can't walk away. Well, it depends what we mean by fight and walk away. If fighting means physical combat we are playing Wetiko's game and falling for its trap. It wants us to get angry, aggressive, and direct hate and hostility at the enemy we think we must fight. Every war, every battle, every conflict, has been fought with Wetiko leading both sides. It's what it does. Wetiko wants a fight, anywhere, any place. Just hit me, son, so I can hit you back. Wetiko hits Wetiko and Wetiko hits Wetiko in return. I am very forthright as you can see in exposing Wetikos of the Cult, but I don't hate them. I refuse to hate them. It's what they want. What you hate you become. What you *fight* you become. Wokers, 'anti-haters' and 'anti-fascists' prove this every time they reach for their keyboards or don their balaclavas. By walk away I mean to disengage from Wetiko which includes ceasing to cooperate with its tyranny. Paul Levy says of Wetiko:

> The way to 'defeat' evil is not to try to destroy it (for then, in playing evil's game, we have already lost), but rather, to find the invulnerable place within ourselves where evil is unable to vanquish us – this is to truly 'win' our battle with evil.

Wetiko is everywhere in human society and it's been on steroids since the 'Covid' hoax. Every shouting match over wearing masks has Wetiko wearing a mask and Wetiko not wearing one. It's an electrical circuit of push and resist, push and resist, with Wetiko pushing *and* resisting. Each polarity is Wetiko empowering itself. Dictionary definitions of 'resist' include 'opposing, refusing to accept or comply with' and the word to focus on is 'opposing'. What form does this take – setting police cars alight or 'refusing to accept or comply with'? The former is Wetiko opposing Wetiko while the other points the way forward. This is the difference between those aggressively demanding that government fascism must be obeyed who stand in stark contrast to the great majority of Pushbackers. We saw this clearly with a march by thousands of Pushbackers against lockdown in London followed days later by a Woker-hijacked

protest in Bristol in which police cars were set on fire. Masks were virtually absent in London and widespread in Bristol. Wetiko wants lockdown on every level of society and infuses its aggression to police it through its unknowing stooges. Lockdown protesters are the ones with the smiling faces and the hugs, The two blatantly obvious states of being – getting more obvious by the day – are the result of Wokers and their like becoming ever more influenced by the simulation Field of Wetiko and Pushbackers ever more influenced by The Field of a far higher vibration beyond the simulation. Wetiko can't invade the heart which is where most lockdown opponents are coming from. It's the heart that allows them to see through the lies to the truth in ways I will be highlighting.

Renegade Minds know that calmness is the place from which wisdom comes. You won't find wisdom in a hissing fit and wisdom is what we need in abundance right now. Calmness is not weakness – you don't have to scream at the top of your voice to be strong. Calmness is indeed a sign of strength. 'No' means I'm not doing it. *NOOOO!!!* doesn't mean you're not doing it even more. Volume does not advance 'No – I'm not doing it'. You are just not doing it. Wetiko possessed and influenced don't know how to deal with that. Wetiko wants a fight and we should not give it one. What it needs more than anything is our *cooperation* and we should not give that either. Mass rallies and marches are great in that they are a visual representation of feeling, but if it ends there they are irrelevant. You demand that Wetikos act differently? Well, they're not going to are they? They are Wetikos. We don't need to waste our time demanding that something doesn't happen when that will make no difference. We need to delete the means that *allows* it to happen. This, invariably, is our cooperation. You can demand a child stop firing a peashooter at the dog or you can refuse to buy the peashooter. If you provide the means you are cooperating with the dog being smacked on the nose with a pea. How can the authorities enforce mask-wearing if millions in a country refuse? What if the 74 million Pushbackers that voted for Trump in 2020 refused to wear masks, close their businesses or stay in their homes. It would be unenforceable. The

few control the many through the compliance of the many and that's always been the dynamic be it 'Covid' regulations or the Roman Empire. I know people can find it intimidating to say no to authority or stand out in a crowd for being the only one with a face on display; but it has to be done or it's over. I hope I've made clear in this book that where this is going will be far more intimidating than standing up now and saying 'No' – I will not cooperate with my own enslavement and that of my children. There might be consequences for some initially, although not so if enough do the same. The question that must be addressed is what is going to happen if we don't? It is time to be strong and unyieldingly so. No means no. Not here and there, but *everywhere* and *always*. I have refused to wear a mask and obey all the other nonsense. I will not comply with tyranny. I repeat: Fascism is not imposed by fascists – there are never enough of them. Fascism is imposed by the population acquiescing to fascism. *I will not do it*. I will die first, or my body will. Living meekly under fascism is a form of death anyway, the death of the spirit that Martin Luther King described.

Making things happen

We must not despair. This is not over till it's over and it's far from that. The 'fat lady' must refuse to sing. The longer the 'Covid' hoax has dragged on and impacted on more lives we have seen an awakening of phenomenal numbers of people worldwide to the realisation that what they have believed all their lives is not how the world really is. Research published by the system-serving University of Bristol and King's College London in February, 2021, concluded: 'One in every 11 people in Britain say they trust David Icke's take on the coronavirus pandemic.' It will be more by now and we have gathering numbers to build on. We must urgently progress from seeing the scam to ceasing to cooperate with it. Prominent German lawyer Reiner Fuellmich, also licenced to practice law in America, is doing a magnificent job taking the legal route to bring the psychopaths to justice through a second Nuremberg tribunal for crimes against humanity. Fuellmich has an impressive record of

beating the elite in court and he formed the German Corona Investigative Committee to pursue civil charges against the main perpetrators with a view to triggering criminal charges. Most importantly he has grasped the foundation of the hoax – the PCR test not testing for the 'virus' – and Christian Drosten is therefore on his charge sheet along with Gates frontman Tedros at the World Health Organization. Major players must be not be allowed to inflict their horrors on the human race without being brought to book. A life sentence must follow for Bill Gates and the rest of them. A group of researchers has also indicted the government of Norway for crimes against humanity with copies sent to the police and the International Criminal Court. The lawsuit cites participation in an internationally-planned false pandemic and violation of international law and human rights, the European Commission's definition of human rights by coercive rules, Nuremberg and Hague rules on fundamental human rights, and the Norwegian constitution. We must take the initiative from hereon and not just complain, protest and react.

There are practical ways to support vital mass non-cooperation. Organising in numbers is one. Lockdown marches in London in the spring in 2021 were mass non-cooperation that the authorities could not stop. There were too many people. Hundreds of thousands walked the London streets in the centre of the road for mile after mile while the Face-Nappies could only look on. They were determined, but calm, and just *did it* with no histrionics and lots of smiles. The police were impotent. Others are organising group shopping without masks for mutual support and imagine if that was happening all over. Policing it would be impossible. If the store refuses to serve people in these circumstances they would be faced with a long line of trolleys full of goods standing on their own and everything would have to be returned to the shelves. How would they cope with that if it kept happening? I am talking here about moving on from complaining to being pro-active; from watching things happen to making things happen. I include in this our relationship with the police. The behaviour of many Face-Nappies

has been disgraceful and anyone who thinks they would never find concentration camp guards in the 'enlightened' modern era have had that myth busted big-time. The period and setting may change – Wetikos never do. I watched film footage from a London march in which a police thug viciously kicked a protestor on the floor who had done nothing. His fellow Face-Nappies stood in a ring protecting him. What he did was a criminal assault and with a crowd far outnumbering the police this can no longer be allowed to happen unchallenged. I get it when people chant 'shame on you' in these circumstances, but that is no longer enough. They *have* no shame those who do this. Crowds needs to start making a citizen's arrest of the police who commit criminal offences and brutally attack innocent people and defenceless women. A citizen's arrest can be made under section 24A of the UK Police and Criminal Evidence (PACE) Act of 1984 and you will find something similar in other countries. I prefer to call it a Common Law arrest rather than citizen's for reasons I will come to shortly. Anyone can arrest a person committing an indictable offence or if they have reasonable grounds to suspect they are committing an indictable offence. On both counts the attack by the police thug would have fallen into this category. A citizen's arrest can be made to stop someone:

- Causing physical injury to himself or any other person
- Suffering physical injury
- Causing loss of or damage to property
- Making off before a constable can assume responsibility for him

A citizen's arrest may also be made to prevent a breach of the peace under Common Law and if they believe a breach of the peace will happen or anything related to harm likely to be done or already done in their presence. This is the way to go I think – the Common Law version. If police know that the crowd and members of the public will no longer be standing and watching while they commit

their thuggery and crimes they will think twice about acting like Brownshirts and Blackshirts.

Common Law – common sense

Mention of Common Law is very important. Most people think the law is the law as in one law. This is not the case. There are two bodies of law, Common Law and Statute Law, and they are not the same. Common Law is founded on the simple premise of do no harm. It does not recognise victimless crimes in which no harm is done while Statute Law does. There is a Statute Law against almost everything. So what is Statute Law? Amazingly it's the law of the *sea* that was brought ashore by the Cult to override the law of the land which is Common Law. They had no right to do this and as always they did it anyway. They had to. They could not impose their will on the people through Common Law which only applies to do no harm. How could you stitch up the fine detail of people's lives with that? Instead they took the law of the sea, or Admiralty Law, and applied it to the population. Statute Law refers to all the laws spewing out of governments and their agencies including all the fascist laws and regulations relating to 'Covid'. The key point to make is that Statute Law is *contract law*. It only applies between *contracting* corporations. Most police officers don't even know this. They have to be kept in the dark, too. Long ago when merchants and their sailing ships began to trade with different countries a contractual law was developed called Admiralty Law and other names. Again it only applied to *contracts* agreed between *corporate* entities. If there is no agreed contract the law of the sea had no jurisdiction *and that still applies to its new alias of Statute Law*. The problem for the Cult when the law of the sea was brought ashore was an obvious one. People were not corporations and neither were government entities. To overcome the latter they made governments and all associated organisations corporations. All the institutions are *private corporations* and I mean governments and their agencies, local councils, police, courts, military, US states, the whole lot. Go to the

Dun and Bradstreet corporate listings website for confirmation that they are all corporations. You are arrested by a private corporation called the police by someone who is really a private security guard and they take you to court which is another private corporation. Neither have jurisdiction over you unless you consent and *contract* with them. This is why you hear the mantra about law enforcement policing by *consent* of the people. In truth the people 'consent' only in theory through monumental trickery.

Okay, the Cult overcame the corporate law problem by making governments and institutions corporate entities; but what about people? They are not corporations are they? Ah ... well in a sense, and *only* a sense, they are. Not people exactly – the illusion of people. The Cult creates a corporation in the name of everyone at the time that their birth certificate is issued. Note birth/ *berth* certificate and when you go to court under the law of the sea on land you stand in a *dock*. These are throwbacks to the origin. My Common Law name is David Vaughan Icke. The name of the corporation created by the government when I was born is called Mr David Vaughan Icke usually written in capitals as MR DAVID VAUGHAN ICKE. That is not me, the living, breathing man. It is a fictitious corporate entity. The trick is to make you think that David Vaughan Icke and MR DAVID VAUGHAN ICKE are the same thing. *They are not*. When police charge you and take you to court they are prosecuting the corporate entity and not the living, breathing, man or woman. They have to trick you into identifying as the corporate entity and contracting with them. Otherwise they have no jurisdiction. They do this through a language known as legalese. Lawful and legal are not the same either. Lawful relates to Common Law and legal relates to Statute Law. Legalese is the language of Statue Law which uses terms that mean one thing to the public and another in legalese. Notice that when a police officer tells someone why they are being charged he or she will say at the end: 'Do you understand?' To the public that means 'Do you comprehend?' In legalese it means 'Do you stand under me?' Do you stand under my authority? If you say

yes to the question you are unknowingly agreeing to give them jurisdiction over you in a contract between two corporate entities.

This is a confidence trick in every way. Contracts have to be agreed between informed parties and if you don't know that David Vaughan Icke is agreeing to be the corporation MR DAVID VAUGHAN ICKE you cannot knowingly agree to contract. They are deceiving you and another way they do this is to ask for proof of identity. You usually show them a driving licence or other document on which your corporate name is written. In doing so you are accepting that you are that corporate entity when you are not. Referring to yourself as a 'person' or 'citizen' is also identifying with your corporate fiction which is why I made the Common Law point about the citizen's arrest. If you are approached by a police officer you identify yourself immediately as a living, breathing, man or woman and say 'I do not consent, I do not contract with you and I do not understand' or stand under their authority. I have a Common Law birth certificate as a living man and these are available at no charge from commonlawcourt.com. Businesses registered under the Statute Law system means that its laws apply. There are, however, ways to run a business under Common Law. Remember all 'Covid' laws and regulations are Statute Law – the law of *contracts* and you do not have to contract. This doesn't mean that you can kill someone and get away with it. Common Law says do no harm and that applies to physical harm, financial harm etc. Police are employees of private corporations and there needs to be a new system of non-corporate Common Law constables operating outside the Statute Law system. If you go to davidicke.com and put Common Law into the search engine you will find videos that explain Common Law in much greater detail. It is definitely a road we should walk.

With all my heart

I have heard people say that we are in a spiritual war. I don't like the term 'war' with its Wetiko dynamic, but I know what they mean. Sweep aside all the bodily forms and we are in a situation in which two states of consciousness are seeking very different realities.

Wetiko wants upheaval, chaos, fear, suffering, conflict and control. The other wants love, peace, harmony, fairness and freedom. That's where we are. We should not fall for the idea that Wetiko is all-powerful and there's nothing we can do. Wetiko is not all-powerful. It's a joke, pathetic. It doesn't have to be, but it has made that choice for now. A handful of times over the years when I have felt the presence of its frequency I have allowed it to attach briefly so I could consciously observe its nature. The experience is not pleasant, the energy is heavy and dark, but the ease with which you can kick it back out the door shows that its real power is in persuading us that it has power. It's all a con. Wetiko is a con. It's a trickster and not a power that can control us if we unleash our own. The con is founded on manipulating humanity to give its power to Wetiko which recycles it back to present the illusion that it has power when its power is *ours* that we gave away. This happens on an energetic level and plays out in the world of the seen as humanity giving its power to Wetiko authority which uses that power to control the population when the power is only the power the population has handed over. How could it be any other way for billions to be controlled by a relative few? I have had experiences with people possessed by Wetiko and again you can kick its arse if you do it with an open heart. Oh yes – the *heart* which can transform the world of perceived 'matter'.

We are receiver-transmitters and processors of information, but what information and where from? Information is processed into perception in three main areas – the brain, the heart and the belly. These relate to thinking, knowing, and emotion. Wetiko wants us to be head and belly people which means we think within the confines of the Matrix simulation and low-vibrational emotional reaction scrambles balance and perception. A few minutes on social media and you see how emotion is the dominant force. Woke is all emotion and is therefore thought-free and fact-free. Our heart is something different. It *knows* while the head *thinks* and has to try to work it out because it doesn't know. The human energy field has seven prime vortexes which connect us with wider reality (Fig 23). Chakra means

'wheels of light' in the Sanskrit language of ancient India. The main ones are: The crown chakra on top of the head; brow (or 'third eye') chakra in the centre of the forehead; throat chakra; heart chakra in the centre of the chest; solar plexus chakra below the sternum; sacral chakra beneath the navel; and base chakra at the bottom of the spine. Each one has a particular function or functions. We feel anxiety and nervousness in the belly where the sacral chakra is located and this processes emotion that can affect the colon to give people 'the shits' or make them 'shit scared' when they are nervous. Chakras all play an important role, but the Mr and Mrs Big is the heart chakra which sits at the centre of the seven, above the chakras that connect us to the 'physical' and below those that connect with higher realms (or at least should). Here in the heart chakra we feel love, empathy and compassion – 'My heart goes out to you'. Those with closed hearts become literally 'heart-less' in their attitudes and behaviour (see Bill Gates). Native Americans portrayed Wetiko with what Paul Levy calls a 'frigid, icy heart, devoid of mercy' (see Bill Gates).

Figure 23: The chakra system which interpenetrates the human energy field. The heart chakra is the governor – or should be.

Wetiko trembles at the thought of heart energy which it cannot infiltrate. The frequency is too high. What it seeks to do instead is close the heart chakra vortex to block its perceptual and energetic influence. Psychopaths have 'hearts of stone' and emotionally-damaged people have 'heartache' and 'broken hearts'. The astonishing amount of heart disease is related to heart chakra

disruption with its fundamental connection to the 'physical' heart. Dr Tom Cowan has written an outstanding book challenging the belief that the heart is a pump and making the connection between the 'physical' and spiritual heart. Rudolph Steiner who was way ahead of his time said the same about the fallacy that the heart is a pump. *What*? The heart is not a pump? That's crazy, right? Everybody knows that. Read Cowan's *Human Heart, Cosmic Heart* and you will realise that the very idea of the heart as a pump is ridiculous when you see the evidence. How does blood in the feet so far from the heart get pumped horizontally up the body by the heart?? Cowan explains in the book the real reason why blood moves as it does. Our 'physical' heart is used to symbolise love when the source is really the heart vortex or spiritual heart which is our most powerful energetic connection to 'out there' expanded consciousness. That's why we feel *knowing* – intuitive knowing – in the centre of the chest. Knowing doesn't come from a process of thoughts leading to a conclusion. It is there in an instant all in one go. Our heart knows because of its connection to levels of awareness that *do* know. This is the meaning and source of intuition – intuitive *knowing*.

For the last more than 30 years of uncovering the global game and the nature of reality my heart has been my constant antenna for truth and accuracy. An American intelligence insider once said that I had quoted a disinformer in one of my books and yet I had only quoted the part that was true. He asked: 'How do you do that?' By using my heart antenna was the answer and anyone can do it. Heart-centred is how we are meant to be. With a closed heart chakra we withdraw into a closed mind and the bubble of five-sense reality. If you take a moment to focus your attention on the centre of your chest, picture a spinning wheel of light and see it opening and expanding. You will feel it happening, too, and perceptions of the heart like joy and love as the heart impacts on the mind as they interact. The more the chakra opens the more you will feel expressions of heart consciousness and as the process continues, and becomes part of you, insights and knowings will follow. An open

heart is connected to that level of awareness that knows all is *One*. You will see from its perspective that the fault-lines that divide us are only illusions to control us. An open heart does not process the illusions of race, creed and sexuality except as brief experiences for a consciousness that is all. Our heart does not see division, only unity (Figs 24 and 25). There's something else, too. Our hearts love to laugh. Mark Twain's quote that says 'The human race has one really effective weapon, and that is laughter' is really a reference to the heart which loves to laugh with the joy of knowing the true nature of infinite reality and that all the madness of human society is an illusion of the mind. Twain also said: 'Against the assault of laughter nothing can stand.' This is so true of Wetiko and the Cult. Their insecurity demands that they be taken seriously and their power and authority acknowledged and feared. We should do nothing of the sort. We should not get aggressive or fearful which their insecurity so desires. We should laugh in their face. Even in their no-face as police come over in their face-nappies and expect to be taken seriously. They don't take themselves seriously looking like that so why should we? Laugh in the face of intimidation. Laugh in the face of tyranny. You will see by its reaction that you have pressed all of its buttons. Wetiko does not know what to do in the face of laughter or when its targets refuse to concede their joy to fear. We have seen many examples during the 'Covid' hoax when people have expressed their energetic power and the string puppets of Wetiko retreat with their tail limp between their knees. Laugh – the world is bloody mad after all and if it's a choice between laughter and tears I know which way I'm going.

Figure 24: Head consciousness without the heart sees division and everything apart from everything else.

Figure 25: Heart consciousness sees everything as One.

'Vaccines' and the soul

The foundation of Wetiko/Archon control of humans is the separation of incarnate five-sense mind from the infinite 'I' and closing the heart chakra where the True 'I' lives during a human life. The goal has been to achieve complete separation in both cases. I was interested therefore to read an account by a French energetic healer of what she said she experienced with a patient who had been given the 'Covid' vaccine. Genuine energy healers can sense information and consciousness fields at different levels of being which are referred to as 'subtle bodies'. She described treating the patient who later returned after having, without the healer's knowledge, two doses of the 'Covid vaccine'. The healer said:

I noticed immediately the change, very heavy energy emanating from [the] subtle bodies. The scariest thing was when I was working on the heart chakra, I connected with her soul: it was detached from the physical body, it had no contact and it was, as if it was floating in a state of total confusion: a damage to the consciousness that loses contact with the physical body, i.e. with our biological machine, there is no longer any communication between them.

I continued the treatment by sending light to the heart chakra, the soul of the person, but it seemed that the soul could no longer receive any light, frequency or energy. It was a very powerful experience for me. Then I understood that this substance is indeed used to detach consciousness so that this consciousness can no longer interact through this body that it possesses in life, where there is no longer any contact, no frequency, no light, no more energetic balance or mind.

This would create a human that is rudderless and at the extreme almost zombie-like operating with a fractional state of consciousness at the mercy of Wetiko. I was especially intrigued by what the healer said in the light of the prediction by the highly-informed Rudolf Steiner more than a hundred years ago. He said:

> In the future, we will eliminate the soul with medicine. Under the pretext of a 'healthy point of view', there will be a vaccine by which the human body will be treated as soon as possible directly at birth, so that the human being cannot develop the thought of the existence of soul and Spirit. To materialistic doctors will be entrusted the task of removing the soul of humanity.
>
> As today, people are vaccinated against this disease or that disease, so in the future, children will be vaccinated with a substance that can be produced precisely in such a way that people, thanks to this vaccination, will be immune to being subjected to the 'madness' of spiritual life. He would be extremely smart, but he would not develop a conscience, and that is the true goal of some materialistic circles.

Steiner said the vaccine would detach the physical body from the etheric body (subtle bodies) and 'once the etheric body is detached the relationship between the universe and the etheric body would become extremely unstable, and man would become an automaton'. He said 'the physical body of man must be polished on this Earth by spiritual will – so the vaccine becomes a kind of arymanique (Wetiko) force' and 'man can no longer get rid of a given materialistic feeling'. Humans would then, he said, become 'materialistic of constitution and can no longer rise to the spiritual'. I have been writing for years about DNA being a receiver-transmitter of information that connects us to other levels of reality and these 'vaccines' changing DNA can be likened to changing an antenna and what it can transmit and receive. Such a disconnection would clearly lead to changes in personality and perception. Steiner further predicted the arrival of AI. Big Pharma 'Covid vaccine' makers, expressions of Wetiko, are testing their DNA-manipulating evil on children as I write with a view to giving the 'vaccine' to babies. If it's a soul-body disconnector – and I say that it is or can be – every child would be disconnected from 'soul' at birth and the 'vaccine' would create a closed system in which spiritual guidance from the greater self would play no part. This has been the ambition of Wetiko all

along. A Pentagon video from 2005 was leaked of a presentation explaining the development of vaccines to change behaviour by their effect on the brain. Those that believe this is not happening with the 'Covid' genetically-modifying procedure masquerading as a 'vaccine' should make an urgent appointment with Naivety Anonymous. Klaus Schwab wrote in 2018:

> Neurotechnologies enable us to better influence consciousness and thought and to understand many activities of the brain. They include decoding what we are thinking in fine levels of detail through new chemicals and interventions that can influence our brains to correct for errors or enhance functionality.

The plan is clear and only the heart can stop it. With every heart that opens, every mind that awakens, Wetiko is weakened. Heart and love are far more powerful than head and hate and so nothing like a majority is needed to turn this around.

Beyond the Phantom

Our heart is the prime target of Wetiko and so it must be the answer to Wetiko. We *are* our heart which is part of one heart, the infinite heart. Our heart is where the true self lives in a human life behind firewalls of five-sense illusion when an imposter takes its place – *Phantom Self*; but our heart waits patiently to be set free any time we choose to see beyond the Phantom, beyond Wetiko. A Wetikoed Phantom Self can wreak mass death and destruction while the love of forever is locked away in its heart. The time is here to unleash its power and let it sweep away the fear and despair that is Wetiko. Heart consciousness does not seek manipulated, censored, advantage for its belief or religion, its activism and desires. As an expression of the One it treats all as One with the same rights to freedom and opinion. Our heart demands fairness for itself no more than for others. From this unity of heart we can come together in mutual support and transform this Wetikoed world into what reality is meant to be – a place of love, joy, happiness, fairness, justice and freedom. Wetiko has another agenda and that's why the world is as

it is, but enough of this nonsense. Wetiko can't stay where hearts are open and it works so hard to keep them closed. Fear is its currency and its food source and love in its true sense has no fear. Why would love have fear when it knows it is *All That Is, Has Been, And Ever Can Be* on an eternal exploration of all possibility? Love in this true sense is not the physical attraction that passes for love. This can be an expression of it, yes, but Infinite Love, a love without condition, goes far deeper to the core of all being. It *is* the core of all being. Infinite realty was born from love beyond the illusions of the simulation. Love infinitely expressed is the knowing that all is One and the swiftly-passing experience of separation is a temporary hallucination. You cannot disconnect from Oneness; you can only *perceive* that you have and withdraw from its influence. This is the most important of all perception trickery by the mind parasite that is Wetiko and the foundation of all its potential for manipulation.

If we open our hearts, open the sluice gates of the mind, and redefine self-identity amazing things start to happen. Consciousness expands or contracts in accordance with self-identity. When true self is recognised as infinite awareness and label self – Phantom Self – is seen as only a series of brief experiences life is transformed. Consciousness expands to the extent that self-identity expands and everything changes. You see unity, not division, the picture, not the pixels. From this we can play the long game. No more is an experience something in and of itself, but a fleeting moment in the eternity of forever. Suddenly people in uniform and dark suits are no longer intimidating. Doing what your heart knows to be right is no longer intimidating and consequences for those actions take on the same nature of a brief experience that passes in the blink of an infinite eye. Intimidation is all in the mind. Beyond the mind there is no intimidation.

An open heart does not consider consequences for what it knows to be right. To do so would be to consider not doing what it knows to be right and for a heart in its power that is never an option. The Renegade Mind is really the Renegade Heart. Consideration of consequences will always provide a getaway car for the mind and

the heart doesn't want one. What is right in the light of what we face today is to stop cooperating with Wetiko in all its forms and to do it without fear or compromise. You cannot compromise with tyranny when tyranny always demands more until it has everything. Life is your perception and you are your destiny. Change your perception and you change your life. Change collective perception and we change the world.

Come on people … One human family, One heart, One goal … *FREEEEEEDOM*!

We must settle for nothing less.

Postscript

The big scare story as the book goes to press is the 'Indian' variant and the world is being deluged with propaganda about the 'Covid catastrophe' in India which mirrors in its lies and misrepresentations what happened in Italy before the first lockdown in 2020.

The *New York Post* published a picture of someone who had 'collapsed in the street from Covid' in India in April, 2021, which was actually taken during a gas leak in May, 2020. Same old, same old. Media articles in mid-February were asking why India had been so untouched by 'Covid' and then as their vaccine rollout gathered pace the alleged 'cases' began to rapidly increase. Indian 'Covid vaccine' maker Bharat Biotech was funded into existence by the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation (the pair announced their divorce in May, 2021, which is a pity because they so deserve each other). The Indian 'Covid crisis' was ramped up by the media to terrify the world and prepare people for submission to still more restrictions. The scam that worked the first time was being repeated only with far more people seeing through the deceit. Davidicke.com and Ickonic.com have sought to tell the true story of what is happening by talking to people living through the Indian nightmare which has nothing to do with 'Covid'. We posted a letter from 'Alisha' in Pune who told a very different story to government and media mendacity. She said scenes of dying people and overwhelmed hospitals were designed to hide what was really happening – genocide and starvation. Alisha said that millions had already died of starvation during the ongoing lockdowns while government and media were lying and making it look like the 'virus':

Restaurants, shops, gyms, theatres, basically everything is shut. The cities are ghost towns. Even so-called 'essential' businesses are only open till 11am in the morning. You basically have just an hour to buy food and then your time is up.

Inter-state travel and even inter-district travel is banned. The cops wait at all major crossroads to question why you are traveling outdoors or to fine you if you are not wearing a mask.

The medical community here is also complicit in genocide, lying about hospitals being full and turning away people with genuine illnesses, who need immediate care. They have even created a shortage of oxygen cylinders.

This is the classic Cult modus operandi played out in every country. Alisha said that people who would not have a PCR test not testing for the 'virus' were being denied hospital treatment. She said the people hit hardest were migrant workers and those in rural areas. Most businesses employed migrant workers and with everything closed there were no jobs, no income and no food. As a result millions were dying of starvation or malnutrition. All this was happening under Prime Minister Narendra Modi, a 100-percent asset of the Cult, and it emphasises yet again the scale of pure anti-human evil we are dealing with. Australia banned its people from returning home from India with penalties for trying to do so of up to five years in jail and a fine of £37,000. The manufactured 'Covid' crisis in India was being prepared to justify further fascism in the West. Obvious connections could be seen between the Indian 'vaccine' programme and increased 'cases' and this became a common theme. The Seychelles, the most per capita 'Covid vaccinated' population in the world, went back into lockdown after a 'surge of cases'.

Long ago the truly evil Monsanto agricultural biotechnology corporation with its big connections to Bill Gates devastated Indian farming with genetically-modified crops. Human rights activist Gurcharan Singh highlighted the efforts by the Indian government to complete the job by destroying the food supply to hundreds of millions with 'Covid' lockdowns. He said that 415 million people at the bottom of the disgusting caste system (still going whatever they say) were below the poverty line and struggled to feed themselves every year. Now the government was imposing lockdown at just the

time to destroy the harvest. This deliberate policy was leading to mass starvation. People may reel back at the suggestion that a government would do that, but Wetiko-controlled 'leaders' are capable of any level of evil. In fact what is described in India is in the process of being instigated worldwide. The food chain and food supply are being targeted at every level to cause world hunger and thus control. Bill Gates is not the biggest owner of farmland in America for no reason and destroying access to food aids both the depopulation agenda and the plan for synthetic 'food' already being funded into existence by Gates. Add to this the coming hyper-inflation from the suicidal creation of fake 'money' in response to 'Covid' and the breakdown of container shipping systems and you have a cocktail that can only lead one way and is meant to. The Cult plan is to crash the entire system to 'build back better' with the Great Reset.

'Vaccine' transmission

Reports from all over the world continue to emerge of women suffering menstrual and fertility problems after having the fake 'vaccine' and of the non-'vaccinated' having similar problems when interacting with the 'vaccinated'. There are far too many for 'coincidence' to be credible. We've had menopausal women getting periods, others having periods stop or not stopping for weeks, passing clots, sometimes the lining of the uterus, breast irregularities, and miscarriages (which increased by 400 percent in parts of the United States). Non-'vaccinated' men and children have suffered blood clots and nose bleeding after interaction with the 'vaccinated'. Babies have died from the effects of breast milk from a 'vaccinated' mother. Awake doctors – the small minority – speculated on the cause of non-'vaccinated' suffering the same effects as the 'vaccinated'. Was it nanotechnology in the synthetic substance transmitting frequencies or was it a straight chemical bioweapon that was being transmitted between people? I am not saying that some kind of chemical transmission is not one possible answer, but the foundation of all that the Cult does is frequency and

this is fertile ground for understanding how transmission can happen. American doctor Carrie Madej, an internal medicine physician and osteopath, has been practicing for the last 20 years, teaching medical students, and she says attending different meetings where the agenda for humanity was discussed. Madej, who operates out of Georgia, did not dismiss other possible forms of transmission, but she focused on frequency in search of an explanation for transmission. She said the Moderna and Pfizer 'vaccines' contained nano-lipid particles as a key component. This was a brand new technology never before used on humanity. 'They're using a nanotechnology which is pretty much little tiny computer bits … nanobots or hydrogel.' Inside the 'vaccines' was 'this sci-fi kind of substance' which suppressed immune checkpoints to get into the cell. I referred to this earlier as the 'Trojan horse' technique that tricks the cell into opening a gateway for the self-replicating synthetic material and while the immune system is artificially suppressed the body has no defences. Madej said the substance served many purposes including an on-demand ability to 'deliver the payload' and using the nano 'computer bits' as biosensors in the body. 'It actually has the ability to accumulate data from your body, like your breathing, your respiration, thoughts, emotions, all kinds of things.'

She said the technology obviously has the ability to operate through Wi-Fi and transmit and receive energy, messages, frequencies or impulses. 'Just imagine you're getting this new substance in you and it can react to things all around you, the 5G, your smart device, your phones.' We had something completely foreign in the human body that had never been launched large scale at a time when we were seeing 5G going into schools and hospitals (plus the Musk satellites) and she believed the 'vaccine' transmission had something to do with this: '… if these people have this inside of them … it can act like an antenna and actually transmit it outwardly as well.' The synthetic substance produced its own voltage and so it could have that kind of effect. This fits with my own contention that the nano receiver-transmitters are designed to connect people to the

Smart Grid and break the receiver-transmitter connection to expanded consciousness. That would explain the French energy healer's experience of the disconnection of body from 'soul' with those who have had the 'vaccine'. The nanobots, self-replicating inside the body, would also transmit the synthetic frequency which could be picked up through close interaction by those who have not been 'vaccinated'. Madej speculated that perhaps it was 5G and increased levels of other radiation that was causing the symptoms directly although interestingly she said that non-'vaccinated' patients had shown improvement when they were away from the 'vaccinated' person they had interacted with. It must be remembered that you can control frequency and energy with your mind and you can consciously create energetic barriers or bubbles with the mind to stop damaging frequencies from penetrating your field. American paediatrician Dr Larry Palevsky said the 'vaccine' was not a 'vaccine' and was never designed to protect from a 'viral' infection. He called it 'a massive, brilliant propaganda of genocide' because they didn't have to inject everyone to get the result they wanted. He said the content of the jabs was able to infuse any material into the brain, heart, lungs, kidneys, liver, sperm and female productive system. 'This is genocide; this is a weapon of mass destruction.' At the same time American colleges were banning students from attending if they didn't have this life-changing and potentially life-ending 'vaccine'. Class action lawsuits must follow when the consequences of this college fascism come to light. As the book was going to press came reports about fertility effects on sperm in 'vaccinated' men which would absolutely fit with what I have been saying and hospitals continued to fill with 'vaccine' reactions. Another question is what about transmission via blood transfusions? The NHS has extended blood donation restrictions from seven days after a 'Covid vaccination' to 28 days after even a sore arm reaction.

I said in the spring of 2020 that the then touted 'Covid vaccine' would be ongoing each year like the flu jab. A year later Pfizer CEO, the appalling Albert Bourla, said people would 'likely' need a 'booster dose' of the 'vaccine' within 12 months of getting 'fully

vaccinated' and then a yearly shot. 'Variants will play a key role', he said confirming the point. Johnson & Johnson CEO Alex Gorsky also took time out from his 'vaccine' disaster to say that people may need to be vaccinated against 'Covid-19' each year. UK Health Secretary, the psychopath Matt Hancock, said additional 'boosters' would be available in the autumn of 2021. This is the trap of the 'vaccine passport'. The public will have to accept every last 'vaccine' they introduce, including for the fake 'variants', or it would cease to be valid. The only other way in some cases would be continuous testing with a test not testing for the 'virus' and what is on the swabs constantly pushed up your noise towards the brain every time?

'Vaccines' changing behaviour

I mentioned in the body of the book how I believed we would see gathering behaviour changes in the 'vaccinated' and I am already hearing such comments from the non-'vaccinated' describing behaviour changes in friends, loved ones and work colleagues. This will only increase as the self-replicating synthetic material and nanoparticles expand in body and brain. An article in the *Guardian* in 2016 detailed research at the University of Virginia in Charlottesville which developed a new method for controlling brain circuits associated with complex animal behaviour. The method, dubbed 'magnetogenetics', involves genetically-engineering a protein called ferritin, which stores and releases iron, to create a magnetised substance – 'Magneto' – that can activate specific groups of nerve cells from a distance. This is claimed to be an advance on other methods of brain activity manipulation known as optogenetics and chemogenetics (the Cult has been developing methods of brain control for a long time). The ferritin technique is said to be non-invasive and able to activate neurons 'rapidly and reversibly'. In other words, human thought and perception. The article said that earlier studies revealed how nerve cell proteins 'activated by heat and mechanical pressure can be genetically engineered so that they become sensitive to radio waves and magnetic fields, by attaching them to an iron-storing protein called ferritin, or to inorganic

paramagnetic particles'. Sensitive to radio waves and magnetic fields? You mean like 5G, 6G and 7G? This is the human-AI Smart Grid hive mind we are talking about. The *Guardian* article said:

> … the researchers injected Magneto into the striatum of freely behaving mice, a deep brain structure containing dopamine-producing neurons that are involved in reward and motivation, and then placed the animals into an apparatus split into magnetised and non-magnetised sections.
>
> Mice expressing Magneto spent far more time in the magnetised areas than mice that did not, because activation of the protein caused the striatal neurons expressing it to release dopamine, so that the mice found being in those areas rewarding. This shows that Magneto can remotely control the firing of neurons deep within the brain, and also control complex behaviours.

Make no mistake this basic methodology will be part of the 'Covid vaccine' cocktail and using magnetics to change brain function through electromagnetic field frequency activation. The Pentagon is developing a 'Covid vaccine' using ferritin. Magnetics would explain changes in behaviour and why videos are appearing across the Internet as I write showing how magnets stick to the skin at the point of the 'vaccine' shot. Once people take these 'vaccines' anything becomes possible in terms of brain function and illness which will be blamed on 'Covid-19' and 'variants'. Magnetic field manipulation would further explain why the non-'vaccinated' are reporting the same symptoms as the 'vaccinated' they interact with and why those symptoms are reported to decrease when not in their company. Interestingly 'Magneto', a 'mutant', is a character in the Marvel Comic *X-Men* stories with the ability to manipulate magnetic fields and he believes that mutants should fight back against their human oppressors by any means necessary. The character was born Erik Lehnsherr to a Jewish family in Germany.

Cult-controlled courts

The European Court of Human Rights opened the door for mandatory 'Covid-19 vaccines' across the continent when it ruled in a Czech Republic dispute over childhood immunisation that legally

enforced vaccination could be 'necessary in a democratic society'. The 17 judges decided that compulsory vaccinations did not breach human rights law. On the face of it the judgement was so inverted you gasp for air. If not having a vaccine infused into your body is not a human right then what is? Ah, but they said human rights law which has been specifically written to delete all human rights at the behest of the state (the Cult). Article 8 of the European Convention on Human Rights relates to the right to a private life. The crucial word here is *'except'*:

> There shall be no interference by a public authority with the exercise of this right EXCEPT such as is in accordance with the law and is necessary in a democratic society in the interests of national security, public safety or the economic wellbeing of the country, for the prevention of disorder or crime, for the protection of health or morals, or for the protection of the rights and freedoms of others [My emphasis].

No interference *except* in accordance with the law means there *are* no 'human rights' *except* what EU governments decide you can have at their behest. 'As is necessary in a democratic society' explains that reference in the judgement and 'in the interests of national security, public safety or the economic well-being of the country, for the prevention of disorder or crime, for the protection of health or morals, or for the protection of the rights and freedoms of others' gives the EU a coach and horses to ride through 'human rights' and scatter them in all directions. The judiciary is not a check and balance on government extremism; it is a vehicle to enforce it. This judgement was almost laughably predictable when the last thing the Cult wanted was a decision that went against mandatory vaccination. Judges rule over and over again to benefit the system of which they are a part. Vaccination disputes that come before them are invariably delivered in favour of doctors and authorities representing the view of the state which owns the judiciary. Oh, yes, and we have even had calls to stop putting 'Covid-19' on death certificates within 28 days of a 'positive test' because it is claimed the practice makes the 'vaccine' appear not to work. They are laughing at you.

The scale of madness, inhumanity and things to come was highlighted when those not 'vaccinated' for 'Covid' were refused evacuation from the Caribbean island of St Vincent during massive volcanic eruptions. Cruise ships taking residents to the safety of another island allowed only the 'vaccinated' to board and the rest were left to their fate. Even in life and death situations like this we see 'Covid' stripping people of their most basic human instincts and the insanity is even more extreme when you think that fake 'vaccine'-makers are not even claiming their body-manipulating concoctions stop 'infection' and 'transmission' of a 'virus' that doesn't exist. St Vincent Prime Minister Ralph Gonsalves said: 'The chief medical officer will be identifying the persons already vaccinated so that we can get them on the ship.' Note again the power of the chief medical officer who, like Whitty in the UK, will be answering to the World Health Organization. This is the Cult network structure that has overridden politicians who 'follow the science' which means doing what WHO-controlled 'medical officers' and 'science advisers' tell them. Gonsalves even said that residents who were 'vaccinated' after the order so they could board the ships would still be refused entry due to possible side effects such as 'wooziness in the head'. The good news is that if they were woozy enough in the head they could qualify to be prime minister of St Vincent.

Microchipping freedom

The European judgement will be used at some point to justify moves to enforce the 'Covid' DNA-manipulating procedure. Sandra Ro, CEO of the Global Blockchain Business Council, told a World Economic Forum event that she hoped 'vaccine passports' would help to 'drive forced consent and standardisation' of global digital identity schemes: 'I'm hoping with the desire and global demand for some sort of vaccine passport – so that people can get travelling and working again – [it] will drive forced consent, standardisation, and frankly, cooperation across the world.' The lady is either not very bright, or thoroughly mendacious, to use the term 'forced consent'.

You do not 'consent' if you are forced – you *submit*. She was describing what the plan has been all along and that's to enforce a digital identity on every human without which they could not function. 'Vaccine passports' are opening the door and are far from the end goal. A digital identity would allow you to be tracked in everything you do in cyberspace and this is the same technique used by Cult-owned China to enforce its social credit system of total control. The ultimate 'passport' is planned to be a microchip as my books have warned for nearly 30 years. Those nice people at the Pentagon working for the Cult-controlled Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (DARPA) claimed in April, 2021, they have developed a microchip inserted under the skin to detect 'asymptomatic Covid-19 infection' before it becomes an outbreak and a 'revolutionary filter' that can remove the 'virus' from the blood when attached to a dialysis machine. The only problems with this are that the 'virus' does not exist and people transmitting the 'virus' with no symptoms is brain-numbing bullshit. This is, of course, not a ruse to get people to be microchipped for very different reasons. DARPA also said it was producing a one-stop 'vaccine' for the 'virus' and all 'variants'. One of the most sinister organisations on Planet Earth is doing this? Better have it then. These people are insane because Wetiko that possesses them is insane.

Researchers from the Salk Institute in California announced they have created an embryo that is part human and part monkey. My books going back to the 1990s have exposed experiments in top secret underground facilities in the United States where humans are being crossed with animal and non-human 'extraterrestrial' species. They are now easing that long-developed capability into the public arena and there is much more to come given we are dealing with psychiatric basket cases. Talking of which – Elon Musk's scientists at Neuralink trained a monkey to play Pong and other puzzles on a computer screen using a joystick and when the monkey made the correct move a metal tube squirted banana smoothie into his mouth which is the basic technique for training humans into unquestioning compliance. Two Neuralink chips were in the monkey's skull and

more than 2,000 wires 'fanned out' into its brain. Eventually the monkey played a video game purely with its brain waves. Psychopathic narcissist Musk said the 'breakthrough' was a step towards putting Neuralink chips into human skulls and merging minds with artificial intelligence. *Exactly*. This man is so dark and Cult to his DNA.

World Economic Fascism (WEF)

The World Economic Forum is telling you the plan by the statements made at its many and various events. Cult-owned fascist YouTube CEO Susan Wojcicki spoke at the 2021 WEF Global Technology Governance Summit (see the name) in which 40 governments and 150 companies met to ensure 'the responsible design and deployment of emerging technologies'. Orwellian translation: 'Ensuring the design and deployment of long-planned technologies will advance the Cult agenda for control and censorship.' Freedom-destroyer and Nuremberg-bound Wojcicki expressed support for tech platforms like hers to censor content that is 'technically legal but could be harmful'. Who decides what is 'harmful'? She does and they do. 'Harmful' will be whatever the Cult doesn't want people to see and we have legislation proposed by the UK government that would censor content on the basis of 'harm' no matter if the information is fair, legal and provably true. Make that *especially* if it is fair, legal and provably true. Wojcicki called for a global coalition to be formed to enforce content moderation standards through automated censorship. This is a woman and mega-censor so self-deluded that she shamelessly accepted a 'free expression' award – *Wojcicki* – in an event sponsored by her own *YouTube*. They have no shame and no self-awareness.

You know that 'Covid' is a scam and Wojcicki a Cult operative when YouTube is censoring medical and scientific opinion purely on the grounds of whether it supports or opposes the Cult 'Covid' narrative. Florida governor Ron DeSantis compiled an expert panel with four professors of medicine from Harvard, Oxford, and Stanford Universities who spoke against forcing children and

vaccinated people to wear masks. They also said there was no proof that lockdowns reduced spread or death rates of 'Covid-19'. Cult-gofer Wojcicki and her YouTube deleted the panel video 'because it included content that contradicts the consensus of local and global health authorities regarding the efficacy of masks to prevent the spread of Covid-19'. This 'consensus' refers to what the Cult tells the World Health Organization to say and the WHO tells 'local health authorities' to do. Wojcicki knows this, of course. The panellists pointed out that censorship of scientific debate was responsible for deaths from many causes, but Wojcicki couldn't care less. She would not dare go against what she is told and as a disgrace to humanity she wouldn't want to anyway. The UK government is seeking to pass a fascist 'Online Safety Bill' to specifically target with massive fines and other means non-censored video and social media platforms to make them censor 'lawful but harmful' content like the Cult-owned Facebook, Twitter, Google and YouTube. What is 'lawful but harmful' would be decided by the fascist Blair-created Ofcom.

Another WEF obsession is a cyber-attack on the financial system and this is clearly what the Cult has planned to take down the bank accounts of everyone – except theirs. Those that think they have enough money for the Cult agenda not to matter to them have got a big lesson coming if they continue to ignore what is staring them in the face. The World Economic Forum, funded by Gates and fronted by Klaus Schwab, announced it would be running a 'simulation' with the Russian government and global banks of just such an attack called Cyber Polygon 2021. What they simulate – as with the 'Covid' Event 201 – they plan to instigate. The WEF is involved in a project with the Cult-owned Carnegie Endowment for International Peace called the WEF-Carnegie Cyber Policy Initiative which seeks to merge Wall Street banks, 'regulators' (I love it) and intelligence agencies to 'prevent' (arrange and allow) a cyber-attack that would bring down the global financial system as long planned by those that control the WEF and the Carnegie operation. The Carnegie Endowment for International Peace sent an instruction to First World

War US President Woodrow Wilson not to let the war end before society had been irreversibly transformed.

The Wuhan lab diversion

As I close, the Cult-controlled authorities and lapdog media are systematically pushing 'the virus was released from the Wuhan lab' narrative. There are two versions – it happened by accident and it happened on purpose. Both are nonsense. The perceived existence of the never-shown-to-exist 'virus' is vital to sell the impression that there is actually an infective agent to deal with and to allow the endless potential for terrifying the population with 'variants' of a 'virus' that does not exist. The authorities at the time of writing are going with the 'by accident' while the alternative media is promoting the 'on purpose'. Cable news host Tucker Carlson who has questioned aspects of lockdown and 'vaccine' compulsion has bought the Wuhan lab story. 'Everyone now agrees' he said. Well, I don't and many others don't and the question is *why* does the system and its media suddenly 'agree'? When the media moves as one unit with a narrative it is always a lie – witness the hour by hour mendacity of the 'Covid' era. Why would this Cult-owned combination which has unleashed lies like machine gun fire suddenly 'agree' to tell the truth??

Much of the alternative media is buying the lie because it fits the conspiracy narrative, but it's the *wrong* conspiracy. The real conspiracy is that *there is no virus* and that is what the Cult is desperate to hide. The idea that the 'virus' was released by accident is ludicrous when the whole 'Covid' hoax was clearly long-planned and waiting to be played out as it was so fast in accordance with the Rockefeller document and Event 201. So they prepared everything in detail over decades and then sat around strumming their fingers waiting for an 'accidental' release from a bio-lab? *What??* It's crazy. Then there's the 'on purpose' claim. You want to circulate a 'deadly virus' and hide the fact that you've done so and you release it down the street from the highest-level bio-lab in China? I repeat – *What??*

You would release it far from that lab to stop any association being made. But, no, we'll do it in a place where the connection was certain to be made. Why would you need to scam 'cases' and 'deaths' and pay hospitals to diagnose 'Covid-19' if you had a real 'virus'? What are sections of the alternative media doing believing this crap? Where were all the mass deaths in Wuhan from a 'deadly pathogen' when the recovery to normal life after the initial propaganda was dramatic in speed? Why isn't the 'deadly pathogen' now circulating all over China with bodies in the street? Once again we have the technique of tell them what they want to hear and they will likely believe it. The alternative media has its 'conspiracy' and with Carlson it fits with his 'China is the danger' narrative over years. China *is* a danger as a global Cult operations centre, but not for this reason. The Wuhan lab story also has the potential to instigate conflict with China when at some stage the plan is to trigger a Problem-Reaction-Solution confrontation with the West. Question everything – *everything* – and especially when the media agrees on a common party line.

Third wave ... fourth wave ... fifth wave ...

As the book went into production the world was being set up for more lockdowns and a 'third wave' supported by invented 'variants' that were increasing all the time and will continue to do so in public statements and computer programs, but not in reality. India became the new Italy in the 'Covid' propaganda campaign and we were told to be frightened of the new 'Indian strain'. Somehow I couldn't find it within myself to do so. A document produced for the UK government entitled 'Summary of further modelling of easing of restrictions – Roadmap Step 2' declared that a third wave was inevitable (of course when it's in the script) and it would be the fault of children and those who refuse the health-destroying fake 'Covid vaccine'. One of the computer models involved came from the Cult-owned *Imperial College* and the other from Warwick University which I wouldn't trust to tell me the date in a calendar factory. The document states that both models presumed extremely high uptake

of the 'Covid vaccines' and didn't allow for 'variants'. The document states: 'The resurgence is a result of some people (mostly children) being ineligible for vaccination; others choosing not to receive the vaccine; and others being vaccinated but not perfectly protected.' The mendacity takes the breath away. Okay, blame those with a brain who won't take the DNA-modifying shots and put more pressure on children to have it as 'trials' were underway involving children as young as six months with parents who give insanity a bad name. Massive pressure is being put on the young to have the fake 'vaccine' and child age consent limits have been systematically lowered around the world to stop parents intervening. Most extraordinary about the document was its claim that the 'third wave' would be driven by 'the resurgence in both hospitalisations and deaths … dominated by *those that have received two doses of the vaccine*, comprising around 60-70% of the wave respectively'. The predicted peak of the 'third wave' suggested 300 deaths per day with 250 of them *fully 'vaccinated' people*. How many more lies do acquiescers need to be told before they see the obvious? Those who took the jab to 'protect themselves' are projected to be those who mostly get sick and die? So what's in the 'vaccine'? The document went on:

> It is possible that a summer of low prevalence could be followed by substantial increases in incidence over the following autumn and winter. Low prevalence in late summer should not be taken as an indication that SARS-CoV-2 has retreated or that the population has high enough levels of immunity to prevent another wave.

They are telling you the script and while many British people believed 'Covid' restrictions would end in the summer of 2021 the government was preparing for them to be ongoing. Authorities were awarding contracts for 'Covid marshals' to police the restrictions with contracts starting in July, 2021, and going through to January 31st, 2022, and the government was advertising for 'Media Buying Services' to secure media propaganda slots worth a potential £320 million for 'Covid-19 campaigns' with a contract not ending until March, 2022. The recipient – via a list of other front companies – was reported to be American media marketing giant Omnicom Group

Inc. While money is no object for 'Covid' the UK waiting list for all other treatment – including life-threatening conditions – passed 4.5 million. Meantime the Cult is seeking to control all official 'inquiries' to block revelations about what has really been happening and why. It must not be allowed to – we need Nuremberg jury trials in every country. The cover-up doesn't get more obvious than appointing ultra-Zionist professor Philip Zelikow to oversee two dozen US virologists, public health officials, clinicians, former government officials and four American 'charitable foundations' to 'learn the lessons' of the 'Covid' debacle. The personnel will be those that created and perpetuated the 'Covid' lies while Zelikow is the former executive director of the 9/11 Commission who ensured that the truth about those attacks never came out and produced a report that must be among the most mendacious and manipulative documents ever written – see *The Trigger* for the detailed exposure of the almost unimaginable 9/11 story in which Sabbatians can be found at every level.

Passive no more

People are increasingly challenging the authorities with amazing numbers of people taking to the streets in London well beyond the ability of the Face-Nappies to stop them. Instead the Nappies choose situations away from the mass crowds to target, intimidate, and seek to promote the impression of 'violent protestors'. One such incident happened in London's Hyde Park. Hundreds of thousands walking through the streets in protest against 'Covid' fascism were ignored by the Cult-owned BBC and most of the rest of the mainstream media, but they delighted in reporting how police were injured in 'clashes with protestors'. The truth was that a group of people gathered in Hyde Park at the end of one march when most had gone home and they were peacefully having a good time with music and chat. Face-Nappies who couldn't deal with the full-march crowd then waded in with their batons and got more than they bargained for. Instead of just standing for this criminal brutality the crowd used their numerical superiority to push the Face-Nappies out of the

park. Eventually the Nappies turned and ran. Unfortunately two or three idiots in the crowd threw drink cans striking two officers which gave the media and the government the image they wanted to discredit the 99.9999 percent who were peaceful. The idiots walked straight into the trap and we must always be aware of potential agent provocateurs used by the authorities to discredit their targets.

This response from the crowd – the can people apart – must be a turning point when the public no longer stand by while the innocent are arrested and brutally attacked by the Face-Nappies. That doesn't mean to be violent, that's the last thing we need. We'll leave the violence to the Face-Nappies and government. But it does mean that when the Face-Nappies use violence against peaceful people the numerical superiority is employed to stop them and make citizen's arrests or Common Law arrests for a breach of the peace. The time for being passive in the face of fascism is over.

We are the many, they are the few, and we need to make that count before there is no freedom left and our children and grandchildren face an ongoing fascist nightmare.

COME ON PEOPLE – IT'S TIME.

One final thought …

The power of love
A force from above
Cleaning my soul
Flame on burn desire
Love with tongues of fire
Purge the soul
Make love your goal

I'll protect you from the hooded claw
Keep the vampires from your door
When the chips are down I'll be around
With my undying, death-defying
Love for you

Envy will hurt itself
Let yourself be beautiful
Sparkling love, flowers
And pearls and pretty girls
Love is like an energy
Rushin' rushin' inside of me

This time we go sublime
Lovers entwine, divine, divine,
Love is danger, love is pleasure
Love is pure – the only treasure

I'm so in love with you
Purge the soul
Make love your goal

The power of love
A force from above
Cleaning my soul
The power of love
A force from above
A sky-scraping dove

Flame on burn desire
Love with tongues of fire
Purge the soul
Make love your goal

Frankie Goes To Hollywood

APPENDIX

Cowan-Kaufman-Morell Statement on Virus Isolation (SOVI)

Isolation: The action of isolating; the fact or condition of being isolated or standing alone; separation from other things or persons; solitariness
Oxford English Dictionary

The controversy over whether the SARS-CoV-2 virus has ever been isolated or purified continues. However, using the above definition, common sense, the laws of logic and the dictates of science, any unbiased person must come to the conclusion that the SARS-CoV-2 virus has never been isolated or purified. As a result, no confirmation of the virus' existence can be found. The logical, common sense, and scientific consequences of this fact are:

- the structure and composition of something not shown to exist can't be known, including the presence, structure, and function of any hypothetical spike or other proteins;
- the genetic sequence of something that has never been found can't be known;
- "variants" of something that hasn't been shown to exist can't be known;
- it's impossible to demonstrate that SARS-CoV-2 causes a disease called Covid-19.

In as concise terms as possible, here's the proper way to isolate, characterize and demonstrate a new virus. First, one takes samples (blood, sputum, secretions) from many people (e.g. 500) with symptoms which are unique and specific enough to characterize an illness. Without mixing these samples with ANY tissue or products that also contain genetic material, the virologist macerates, filters and ultracentrifuges i.e. *purifies* the specimen. This common virology technique, done for decades to isolate bacteriophages[1] and so-called giant viruses in every virology lab, then allows the virologist to demonstrate with electron microscopy thousands of identically sized and shaped particles. These particles are the isolated and purified virus.

These identical particles are then checked for uniformity by physical and/or microscopic techniques. Once the purity is determined, the particles may be further characterized. This would include examining the structure, morphology, and chemical composition of the particles. Next, their genetic makeup is characterized by extracting the genetic material directly from the purified particles and using genetic-sequencing techniques, such as Sanger sequencing, that have also been around for decades. Then one does an analysis to confirm that these uniform particles are exogenous (outside) in origin as a virus is conceptualized to be, and not the normal breakdown products of dead and dying tissues.[2] (As of May 2020, we know that virologists have no way to determine whether the particles they're seeing are viruses or just normal breakdown products of dead and dying tissues.)[3]

---

1 Isolation, characterization and analysis of bacteriophages from the haloalkaline lake Elmenteita, KenyaJuliah Khayeli Akhwale et al, PLOS One, Published: April 25, 2019. https://journals.plos.org/plosone/article?id=10.1371/journal.pone.0215734 – accessed 2/15/21

2 "Extracellular Vesicles Derived From Apoptotic Cells: An Essential Link Between Death and Regeneration," Maojiao Li1 et al, Frontiers in Cell and Developmental Biology, 2020 October 2. https://www.frontiersin.org/articles/10.3389/fcell.2020.573511/full – accessed 2/15/21

3 "The Role of Extraellular Vesicles as Allies of HIV, HCV and SARS Viruses," Flavia Giannessi, et al, Viruses, 2020 May

If we have come this far then we have fully isolated, characterized, and genetically sequenced an exogenous virus particle. However, we still have to show it is causally related to a disease. This is carried out by exposing a group of healthy subjects (animals are usually used) to this isolated, purified virus in the manner in which the disease is thought to be transmitted. If the animals get sick with the same disease, as confirmed by clinical and autopsy findings, one has now shown that the virus actually causes a disease. This demonstrates infectivity and transmission of an infectious agent.

None of these steps has even been attempted with the SARS-CoV-2 virus, nor have all these steps been successfully performed for any so-called pathogenic virus. Our research indicates that a single study showing these steps does not exist in the medical literature.

Instead, since 1954, virologists have taken unpurified samples from a relatively few people, often less than ten, with a similar disease. They then minimally process this sample and inoculate this unpurified sample onto tissue culture containing usually four to six other types of material – all of which contain identical genetic material as to what is called a "virus." The tissue culture is starved and poisoned and naturally disintegrates into many types of particles, some of which contain genetic material. Against all common sense, logic, use of the English language and scientific integrity, this process is called "virus isolation." This brew containing fragments of genetic material from many sources is then subjected to genetic analysis, which then creates in a computer-simulation process the alleged sequence of the alleged virus, a so called in silico genome. At no time is an actual virus confirmed by electron microscopy. At no time is a genome extracted and sequenced from an actual virus. This is scientific fraud.

The observation that the unpurified specimen — inoculated onto tissue culture along with toxic antibiotics, bovine fetal tissue, amniotic fluid and other tissues — destroys the kidney tissue onto which it is inoculated is given as evidence of the virus' existence and pathogenicity. This is scientific fraud.

From now on, when anyone gives you a paper that suggests the SARS-CoV-2 virus has been isolated, please check the methods sections. If the researchers used Vero cells or any other culture method, you know that their process was not isolation. You will hear the following excuses for why actual isolation isn't done:

1. There were not enough virus particles found in samples from patients to analyze.

2. Viruses are intracellular parasites; they can't be found outside the cell in this manner.

If No. 1 is correct, and we can't find the virus in the sputum of sick people, then on what evidence do we think the virus is dangerous or even lethal? If No. 2 is correct, then how is the virus spread from person to person? We are told it emerges from the cell to infect others. Then why isn't it possible to find it?

Finally, questioning these virology techniques and conclusions is not some distraction or divisive issue. Shining the light on this truth is essential to stop this terrible fraud that humanity is confronting. For, as we now know, if the virus has never been isolated, sequenced or shown to cause illness, if the virus is imaginary, then why are we wearing masks, social distancing and putting the whole world into prison?

Finally, if pathogenic viruses don't exist, then what is going into those injectable devices erroneously called "vaccines," and what is their purpose? This scientific question is the most urgent and relevant one of our time.

We are correct. The SARS-CoV2 virus does not exist.

Sally Fallon Morell, MA
Dr. Thomas Cowan, MD
Dr. Andrew Kaufman, MD

Bibliography

Alinsky, Saul: *Rules for Radicals* (Vintage, 1989)

Antelman, Rabbi Marvin: *To Eliminate the Opiate* (Zahavia, 1974)

Bastardi, Joe: *The Climate Chronicles* (Relentless Thunder Press, 2018)

Cowan, Tom: *Human Heart, Cosmic Heart* (Chelsea Green Publishing, 2016)

Cowan, Tom, and Fallon Morell, Sally: *The Contagion Myth* (Skyhorse Publishing, 2020)

Forbes, Jack D: *Columbus And Other Cannibals – The Wetiko Disease of Exploitation, Imperialism, and Terrorism* (Seven Stories Press, 2008 – originally published in 1979)

Gates, Bill: *How to Avoid a Climate Disaster: The Solutions We Have and the Breakthroughs We Need* (Allen Lane, 2021)

Huxley, Aldous: *Brave New World* (Chatto & Windus, 1932)

Köhnlein, Dr Claus, and Engelbrecht, Torsten: *Virus Mania* (emu-Vertag, Lahnstein, 2020)

Lanza, Robert, and Berman, Bob: *Biocentrism* (BenBella Books, 2010)

Lash, John Lamb: *Not In His Image* (Chelsea Green Publishing, 2006)

Lester, Dawn, and Parker, David: *What Really Makes You Ill – Why everything you thought you knew about disease is wrong* (Independently Published, 2019)

Levy, Paul: *Dispelling Wetiko, Breaking the Spell of Evil* (North Atlantic Books, 2013)

Marx, Karl: *A World Without Jews* (Philosophical Library, first edition, 1959)

Mullis, Kary: *Dancing Naked in the Mine Field* (Bloomsbury, 1999)

O'Brien, Cathy: *Trance-Formation of America* (Reality Marketing, 1995)

Scholem, Gershon: *The Messianic Idea in Judaism* (Schocken Books, 1994)

Schwab, Klaus, and Davis, Nicholas: *Shaping the Future of the Fourth Industrial Revolution: A guide to building a better world* (Penguin Books, 2018)

Schwab, Klaus: *The Great Reset* (Agentur Schweiz, 2020)

Sunstein, Cass and Thaler, Richard: *Nudge: Improving Decisions About Health, Wealth, and Happiness* (Penguin, 2009)

Swan, Shanna: *Count Down: How Our Modern World Is Threatening Sperm Counts, Altering Male and Female Reproductive Development and Imperiling the Future of the Human Race* (Scribner, 2021)

Tegmark, Max: *Our Mathematical Universe: My Quest for the Ultimate Nature of Reality* (Penguin, 2015)

Velikovsky, Immanuel: *Worlds in Collision* (Paradigma, 2009)

Wilton, Robert: *The Last Days of the Romanovs* (Blurb, 2018, first published 1920)

Index

A

abusive relationships
blaming themselves, abused as ref1
children ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9, ref10
conspiracy theories ref1
domestic abuse ref1, ref2
economic abuse and dependency ref1
isolation ref1
physical abuse ref1
psychological abuse ref1
signs of abuse ref1
addiction
alcoholism ref1
frequencies ref1
substance abuse ref1, ref2
technology ref1, ref2, ref3
Adelson, Sheldon ref1, ref2, ref3
Agenda 21/Agenda 2030 (UN) ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
AIDs/HIV ref1
causal link between HIV and AIDs ref1, ref2
retroviruses ref1
testing ref1, ref2
trial-run for Covid-19, as ref1, ref2
aliens/extraterrestrials ref1, ref2
aluminium ref1
Amazon ref1, ref2, ref3

amplification cycles ref1, ref2
anaphylactic shock ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
animals ref1, ref2, ref3
antibodies ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
Antifa ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
antigens ref1, ref2
anti-Semitism ref1, ref2, ref3
Archons ref1, ref2
  consciousness ref1, ref2, ref3
  energy ref1, ref2, ref3
  ennoia ref1
  genetic manipulation ref1, ref2
  inversion ref1, ref2, ref3
  lockdowns ref1
  money ref1
  radiation ref1
  religion ref1, ref2
  technology ref1, ref2, ref3
  Wetiko factor ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
artificial intelligence (AI) ref1
army made up of robots ref1, ref2
  Human 2.0 ref1, ref2
  Internet ref1
  MHRA ref1
  Morgellons fibres ref1, ref2
  Smart Grid ref1
  Wetiko factor ref1
asymptomatic, Covid-19 as ref1, ref2, ref3
aviation industry ref1

B

banking, finance and money ref1, ref2, ref3
2008 crisis ref1, ref2
boom and bust ref1
cashless digital money systems ref1
central banks ref1
credit ref1
digital currency ref1
fractional reserve lending ref1
Great Reset ref1
guaranteed income ref1, ref2, ref3
Human 2.0 ref1
incomes, destruction of ref1, ref2
interest ref1
one per cent ref1, ref2
scams ref1
BBC ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8
Becker-Phelps, Leslie ref1
Behavioural Insights Team (BIT) (Nudge Unit) ref1, ref2, ref3
behavioural scientists *and* **psychologists, advice from** ref1, ref2
Bezos, Jeff ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Biden, Hunter ref1
Biden, Joe ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9, ref10, ref11, ref12, ref13, ref14, ref15, ref16, ref17
Big Pharma
cholesterol ref1
health professionals ref1, ref2
immunity from prosecution in US ref1
vaccines ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8
Wetiko factor ref1, ref2
WHO ref1, ref2, ref3
Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7

billionaires ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9 ref10, ref11
bird flu (H5N1) ref1
Black Lives Matter (BLM) ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
Blair, Tony ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7
Brin, Sergei ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7
British Empire ref1
Bush, George HW ref1, ref2
Bush, George W ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Byrd, Robert ref1

C

Canada
  Global Cult ref1
  hate speech ref1
  internment ref1
  masks ref1
  old people ref1
  SARS-COV-2 ref1
  satellites ref1
  vaccines ref1
  wearable technology ref1
Capitol Hill riot ref1, ref2
  agents provocateur ref1
  Antifa ref1
  Black Lives Matter (BLM) ref1, ref2
  QAnon ref1
  security precautions, lack of ref1, ref2, ref3
carbon dioxide ref1, ref2
care homes, deaths in ref1, ref2
cashless digital money systems ref1
censorship ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5

fact-checkers ref1
masks ref1
media ref1, ref2
private messages ref1
social media ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6
transgender persons ref1
vaccines ref1, ref2, ref3
Wokeness ref1
Centers for Disease Control (CDC) (United States) ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9, ref10, ref11, ref12, ref13
centralisation ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8
chakras ref1
change agents ref1, ref2, ref3
chemtrails ref1, ref2, ref3
chief medical officers and scientific advisers ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6
children *see also* **young people**
abuse ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9, ref10
care, taken into ref1, ref2, ref3
education ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
energy ref1
family courts ref1
hand sanitisers ref1
human sacrifice ref1
lockdowns ref1, ref2, ref3
masks ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
mental health ref1
old people ref1
parents, replacement of ref1, ref2
Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a ref1, ref2
reframing ref1
smartphone addiction ref1

social distancing and isolation ref1
social media ref1
transgender persons ref1, ref2
United States ref1
vaccines ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9, ref10
Wetiko factor ref1
China ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
anal swab tests ref1
Chinese Revolution ref1, ref2, ref3
digital currency ref1
Global Cult ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9
guaranteed income ref1
Imperial College ref1
Israel ref1
lockdown ref1, ref2
masculinity crisis ref1
masks ref1
media ref1
origins of virus in China ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
pollution causing respiratory diseases ref1
Sabbatians ref1, ref2
Smart Grid ref1, ref2
social credit system ref1
testing ref1, ref2
United States ref1, ref2
vaccines ref1, ref2
Wetiko factor ref1
wet market conspiracy ref1
Wuhan ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7
cholesterol ref1, ref2
Christianity ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
criticism ref1
cross, inversion of the ref1

Nag Hammadi texts ref1, ref2, ref3
Roman Catholic Church ref1, ref2
Sabbatians ref1, ref2
Satan ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Wokeness ref1
class ref1, ref2
climate change hoax ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
Agenda 21/Agenda 2030 ref1, ref2, ref3
carbon dioxide ref1, ref2
Club of Rome ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
fear ref1
funding ref1
Global Cult ref1
green new deals ref1
green parties ref1
inversion ref1
perception, control of ref1
PICC ref1
reframing ref1
temperature, increases in ref1
United Nations ref1, ref2
Wikipedia ref1
Wokeness ref1, ref2
Clinton, Bill ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6
Clinton, Hillary ref1, ref2, ref3
the cloud ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7
Club of Rome and climate change hoax ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
cognitive therapy ref1
Cohn, Roy ref1
Common Law ref1
Admiralty Law ref1
arrests ref1, ref2

contractual law, Statute Law as ref1
corporate entities, people as ref1
legalese ref1
sea, law of the ref1
Statute Law ref1
Common Purpose leadership programme ref1, ref2
communism ref1, ref2
co-morbidities ref1
computer-generated virus,
Covid-19 as ref1, ref2, ref3
computer models ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
connections ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
consciousness ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Archons ref1, ref2, ref3
expanded ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7
experience ref1
heart ref1
infinity ref1, ref2
religion ref1, ref2
self-identity ref1
simulation thesis ref1
vaccines ref1
Wetiko factor ref1, ref2
conspiracy theorists ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
contradictory rules ref1
contrails ref1
Corman-Drosten test ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
countermimicry ref1, ref2, ref3
Covid-19 vaccines *see* vaccines
Covidiots ref1, ref2
Cowan, Tom ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
crimes against humanity ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8

cyber-operations ref1
cyberwarfare ref1

D

DARPA (Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency) ref1
deaths
  care homes ref1
  certificates ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
  mortality rate ref1
  post-mortems/autopsies ref1
  recording ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7
  vaccines ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
deceit
  pyramid of deceit ref1, ref2
  sequence of deceit ref1
decoding ref1, ref2, ref3
dehumanisation ref1, ref2, ref3
Delphi technique ref1
democracy ref1
dependency ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
Descartes, René ref1
DNA
  numbers ref1
  vaccines ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9, ref10
DNR (do not resuscitate)
  orders ref1
domestic abuse ref1, ref2
downgrading of Covid-19 ref1
Drosten, Christian ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7
Duesberg, Peter ref1, ref2

E

economic abuse ref1
Edmunds, John ref1, ref2
education ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
electromagnetic spectrum ref1, ref2
Enders, John ref1
energy
  Archons ref1, ref2, ref3
  children and young people ref1
  consciousness ref1
  decoding ref1
  frequencies ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
  heart ref1
  human energy field ref1
  source, humans as an energy ref1, ref2
  vaccines ref1
  viruses ref1
ennoia ref1
Epstein, Jeffrey ref1, ref2
eternal 'I' ref1, ref2
ethylene oxide ref1
European Union ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Event ref1 *and* **Bill Gates** ref2
exosomes, Covid-19 as natural defence mechanism called ref1
experience ref1, ref2
Extinction Rebellion ref1, ref2

F

Facebook
  addiction ref1, 448–50
  Facebook

Archons ref1
censorship ref1, ref2, ref3
hate speech ref1
monopoly, as ref1
private messages, censorship of ref1
Sabbatians ref1
United States election fraud ref1
vaccines ref1
Wetiko factor ref1
fact-checkers ref1
Fauci, Anthony ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9, ref10, ref11, ref12
fear ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
climate change ref1
computer models ref1
conspiracy theories ref1
empty hospitals ref1
Italy ref1, ref2, ref3
lockdowns ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
masks ref1, ref2
media ref1, ref2
medical staff ref1
Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a ref1
Wetiko factor ref1, ref2
female infertility ref1
Fermi Paradox ref1
Ferguson, Neil ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7
fertility, decline in ref1
The Field ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8
finance *see* **banking, finance and money**
five-senses ref1, ref2
Archons ref1, ref2, ref3

censorship ref1
consciousness, expansion of ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6
decoding ref1
education ref1, ref2
the Field ref1, ref2
God, personification of ref1
infinity ref1, ref2
media ref1
paranormal ref1
perceptual programming ref1, ref2
Phantom Self ref1
pneuma not nous, using ref1
reincarnation ref1
self-identity ref1
Wetiko factor ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6
5G ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8
Floyd, George and protests, killing of ref1
flu, re-labelling of ref1, ref2, ref3
food and water, control of ref1, ref2
Freemasons ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6
Frei, Rosemary ref1
frequencies
addictions ref1
Archons ref1, ref2, ref3
awareness ref1
chanting and mantras ref1
consciousness ref1
decoding ref1, ref2
education ref1
electromagnetic (EMF) frequencies ref1
energy ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
fear ref1

the Field ref1, ref2 5G ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9, ref10
five-senses ref1, ref2
ghosts ref1
Gnostics ref1
hive-minds ref1
human, meaning of ref1
light ref1, ref2
love ref1, ref2
magnetism ref1
perception ref1
reality ref1, ref2, ref3
simulation ref1
terror ref1
vaccines ref1
Wetiko ref1, ref2, ref3
Fuellmich, Reiner ref1, ref2, ref3
furlough/rescue payments ref1

G

Gallo, Robert ref1, ref2, ref3
Gates, Bill
Archons ref1, ref2, ref3
climate change ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Daily Pass tracking system ref1
Epstein ref1
fascism ref1
five senses ref1
GAVI ref1
Great Reset ref1
GSK ref1
Imperial College ref1, ref2
Johns Hopkins University ref1, ref2, ref3

lockdowns ref1, ref2
masks ref1
Nuremberg trial, proposal for ref1, ref2
Rockefellers ref1, ref2
social distancing and isolation ref1
Sun, dimming the ref1
synthetic meat ref1, ref2
vaccines ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7
Wellcome Trust ref1
Wetiko factor ref1, ref2, ref3
WHO ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9, ref10
Wokeness ref1
World Economic Forum ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Gates, Melinda ref1, ref2, ref3
GAVI vaccine alliance ref1
genetics, manipulation of ref1, ref2, ref3
Germany ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6 *see also* **Nazi Germany**
Global Cult ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
anti-human, why Global Cult is ref1
Black Lives Matter (BLM) ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
China ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9
climate change hoax ref1
contradictory rules ref1
Covid-19 ref1, ref2, ref3
fascism ref1
geographical origins ref1
immigration ref1
Internet ref1
mainstream media ref1, ref2
masks ref1, ref2
monarchy ref1
non-human dimension ref1

perception ref1
political parties ref1, ref2
pyramidal hierarchy ref1, ref2, ref3
reframing ref1
Sabbantian-Frankism ref1, ref2
science, manipulation of ref1
spider and the web ref1
transgender persons ref1
vaccines ref1
who controls the Cult ref1
Wokeness ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
globalisation ref1, ref2
Gnostics ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
Google ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
government
behavioural scientists and psychologists, advice from ref1, ref2
definition ref1
Joint Biosecurity Centre (JBC) ref1
people, abusive relationship with ref1
Great Reset ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6
fascism ref1, ref2, ref3
financial system ref1
Human 2.0 ref1
water and food, control of ref1
green parties ref1
Griesz-Brisson, Margarite ref1
guaranteed income ref1, ref2, ref3

H

Hancock, Matt ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
hand sanitisers ref1
heart ref1, ref2

hive-minds/groupthink ref1, ref2, ref3
holographs ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
hospitals, empty ref1
human, meaning of ref1
Human 2.0 ref1
addiction to technology ref1
artificial intelligence (AI) ref1, ref2
elimination of Human 1.0 ref1
fertility, decline in ref1
Great Reset ref1
implantables ref1
money ref1
mRNA ref1
nanotechnology ref1
parents, replacement of ref1, ref2
Smart Grid, connection to ref1, ref2
synthetic biology ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
testosterone levels, decrease in ref1
transgender = transhumanism ref1, ref2, ref3
vaccines ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
human sacrifice ref1, ref2, ref3
Hunger Games Society ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7
Huxley, Aldous ref1, ref2, ref3

I

identity politics ref1, ref2, ref3
Illuminati ref1, ref2
illusory physical reality ref1
immigration ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Imperial College ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6
implantables ref1, ref2

incomes, destruction of ref1, ref2
Infinite Awareness ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Internet ref1, ref2 *see also* social media
  artificial intelligence (AI) ref1
  independent journalism, lack of ref1
  Internet of Bodies (IoB) ref1
Internet of Everything (IoE) ref1, ref2
Internet of Things (IoT) ref1, ref2
lockdowns ref1
Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a ref1
  trolls ref1
intersectionality ref1
inversion
  Archons ref1, ref2, ref3
  climate change hoax ref1
  energy ref1
  Judaism ref1, ref2, ref3
  symbolism ref1
  Wetiko factor ref1
  Wokeness ref1, ref2, ref3
Islam
  Archons ref1
  crypto-Jews ref1
  Islamic State ref1, ref2
  Jinn and Djinn ref1, ref2, ref3
  Ottoman Empire ref1
  Wahhabism ref1
isolation *see* **social distancing** *and* **isolation**
Israel
  China ref1
  Cyber Intelligence Unit Beersheba complex ref1
  expansion of illegal settlements ref1

formation ref1
Global Cult ref1
Judaism ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
medical experiments, consent for ref1
Mossad ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Palestine-Israel conflict ref1, ref2, ref3
parents, replacement of ref1
Sabbatians ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
September 11, 2001, terrorist attacks on United States ref1
Silicon Valley ref1
Smart Grid ref1, ref2
United States ref1, ref2
vaccines ref1
Wetiko factor ref1

Italy
fear ref1, ref2, ref3
Lombardy ref1, ref2, ref3
vaccines ref1

J

Johns Hopkins University ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7
Johnson, Boris ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8
Joint Biosecurity Centre (JBC) ref1
Judaism
anti-Semitism ref1, ref2, ref3
Archons ref1, ref2
crypto-Jews ref1
inversion ref1, ref2, ref3
Israel ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
Labour Party ref1
Nazi Germany ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Sabbatians ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5

Silicon Valley ref1
Torah ref1
United States ref1, ref2
Zionists ref1, ref2, ref3

K

Kaufman, Andrew ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
knowledge ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6
Koch's postulates ref1
Kurzweil, Ray ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7
Kushner, Jared **ref1**, **ref2**

L

Labour Party ref1, ref2
Lanka, Stefan ref1, ref2
Lateral Flow Device (LFD) ref1
Levy, Paul ref1, ref2, ref3
Life Program ref1
lockdowns ref1, ref2, ref3
amplification tampering ref1
Archons ref1
Behavioural Insights Team ref1
Black Lives Matter (BLM) ref1
care homes, deaths in ref1
children
abuse ref1, ref2
mental health ref1
China ref1, ref2
computer models ref1
consequences ref1, ref2
dependency ref1, ref2, ref3

domestic abuse ref1
fall in cases ref1
fear ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
guaranteed income ref1
Hunger Games Society ref1, ref2, ref3
interaction, destroying ref1
Internet ref1, ref2
overdoses ref1
perception ref1
police-military state ref1, ref2
protests ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
psychopathic personality ref1, ref2, ref3
reporting/snitching, encouragement of ref1, ref2
testing ref1
vaccines ref1
Wetiko factor ref1
WHO ref1
love ref1, ref2, ref3
Lucifer ref1, ref2, ref3

M

Madej, Carrie ref1, ref2
Magufuli, John ref1, ref2
mainstream media ref1
BBC ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8
censorship ref1, ref2
China ref1
climate change hoax ref1
fear ref1, ref2
Global Cult ref1, ref2
independent journalism, lack of ref1
Ofcom ref1, ref2, ref3

perception ref1, ref2
Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a ref1
Sabbatians ref1, ref2
social disapproval ref1
social distancing and isolation ref1
United States ref1, ref2
vaccines ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
Mao Zedong ref1, ref2, ref3
Marx and Marxism ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6
masculinity ref1
masks/face coverings ref1, ref2, ref3
censorship ref1
children ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
China, made in ref1
dehumanisation ref1, ref2, ref3
fear ref1, ref2
flu ref1
health professionals ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
isolation ref1
laughter ref1
mass non-cooperation ref1
microplastics, risk of ref1
mind control ref1
multiple masks ref1
oxygen deficiency ref1, ref2, ref3
police ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
pollution, as cause of plastic ref1
Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a ref1
reframing ref1, ref2
risk assessments, lack of ref1, ref2
self-respect ref1
surgeons ref1

United States ref1
vaccines ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
Wetiko factor ref1
'worms' ref1
The Matrix movies ref1, ref2, ref3
measles ref1, ref2
media see mainstream media
Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (MHRA) ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Mesopotamia ref1
messaging ref1
military-police state ref1, ref2, ref3
mind control ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6 *see also* **MKUltra**
MKUltra ref1, ref2, ref3
monarchy ref1
money *see* **banking, finance and money**
Montagnier, Luc ref1, ref2, ref3
Mooney, Bel ref1
Morgellons disease ref1, ref2
mortality rate ref1
Mullis, Kary ref1, ref2, ref3
Musk, Elon ref1

N

Nag Hammadi texts ref1, ref2, ref3
nanotechnology ref1, ref2, ref3
narcissism ref1
Nazi Germany ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8
near-death experiences ref1, ref2
Neocons ref1, ref2, ref3

Neuro-Linguistic Programming (NLP) and the Delphi technique ref1
NHS (National Health Service)
amplification cycles ref1
Common Purpose ref1, ref2
mind control ref1
NHS England ref1
saving the NHS ref1, ref2
vaccines ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
whistle-blowers ref1, ref2, ref3
No-Problem-Reaction-Solution ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
non-human dimension of Global Cult ref1
nous ref1
numbers, reality as ref1
Nuremberg Codes ref1, ref2, ref3
Nuremberg-like tribunal, proposal for ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9, ref10, ref11, ref12

O

Obama, Barack ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9, ref10
O'Brien, Cathy ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Ochel, Evita ref1
Ofcom ref1, ref2, ref3
old people ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
Oneness ref1, ref2, ref3
Open Society Foundations (Soros) ref1, ref2, ref3
oxygen 406, 528–34

P

paedophilia ref1, ref2
Page, Larry ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7

Palestine-Israel conflict ref1, ref2, ref3
pandemic, definition of ref1
pandemic and health crisis scenarios/simulations ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
paranormal ref1
PCR tests ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8
Pearl Harbor attacks, prior knowledge of ref1
Pelosi, Nancy ref1, ref2, ref3
perception ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
  climate change hoax ref1
  control ref1, ref2, ref3
  decoding ref1, ref2
  enslavement ref1
  externally-delivered perceptions ref1
  five senses ref1
  human labels ref1
  media ref1, ref2
  political parties ref1, ref2
  Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a ref1
  sale of perception ref1
  self-identity ref1, ref2
  Wokeness ref1
Phantom Self ref1, ref2, ref3
pharmaceutical industry *see* **Big Pharma**
phthalates ref1
Plato's Allegory of the Cave ref1, ref2
pneuma ref1
police
  Black Lives Matter (BLM) ref1
  brutality ref1
  citizen's arrests ref1, ref2
  common law arrests ref1, ref2

Common Purpose ref1
defunding ref1
lockdowns ref1, ref2
masks ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
police-military state ref1, ref2, ref3
psychopathic personality ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
reframing ref1
United States ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Wokeness ref1

polio ref1

political correctness ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4

political parties ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4

political puppets ref1

pollution ref1, ref2, ref3

post-mortems/autopsies ref1

Postage Stamp Consensus ref1, ref2

pre-emptive programming ref1

Problem-Reaction-Solution ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8

Project for the New American Century ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4

psychopathic personality ref1
Archons ref1
heart energy ref1
lockdowns ref1, ref2, ref3
police ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
recruitment ref1, ref2
vaccines ref1
wealth ref1
Wetiko ref1, ref2

Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5

Pushbackers ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4

pyramid structure ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4

Q

QAnon Psyop ref1, ref2, ref3

R

racism *see also* **Black Lives**
Matter (BLM)
anti-racism industry ref1
class ref1
critical race theory ref1
culture ref1
intersectionality ref1
reverse racism ref1
white privilege ref1, ref2
white supremacy ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
Wokeness ref1, ref2, ref3
radiation ref1, ref2
randomness, illusion of ref1, ref2, ref3
reality ref1, ref2, ref3
reframing ref1, ref2
change agents ref1, ref2
children ref1
climate change ref1
Common Purpose leadership programme ref1, ref2
contradictory rules ref1
enforcers ref1
masks ref1, ref2
NLP and the Delphi technique ref1
police ref1
Wetiko factor ref1
Wokeness ref1, ref2
religion *see also* particular religions
alien invasions ref1

Archons ref1, ref2
consciousness ref1, ref2
control, system of ref1, ref2, ref3
criticism, prohibition on ref1
five senses ref1
good and evil, war between ref1
hidden non-human forces ref1, ref2
Sabbatians ref1
save me syndrome ref1
Wetiko ref1
Wokeness ref1
repetition and mind control ref1, ref2, ref3
reporting/snitching, encouragement of ref1, ref2
Reptilians/Grey entities ref1
rewiring the mind ref1
Rivers, Thomas Milton ref1, ref2
Rockefeller family ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9
Rockefeller Foundation documents ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Roman Empire ref1
Rothschild family ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9
RT-PCR tests ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8
Russia
collusion inquiry in US ref1
Russian Revolution ref1, ref2
Sabbatians ref1

S

Sabbantian-Frankism ref1, ref2
anti-Semitism ref1, ref2
banking and finance ref1, ref2, ref3
China ref1, ref2
Israel ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5

Judaism ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
Lucifer ref1
media ref1, ref2
Nazis ref1, ref2
QAnon ref1
Rothschilds ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6
Russia ref1
Saudi Arabia ref1
Silicon Valley ref1
Sumer ref1
United States ref1, ref2, ref3
Wetiko factor ref1
Wokeness ref1, ref2, ref3

SAGE (Scientific Advisory Group for Emergencies) ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4

SARS-1 ref1

SARs-CoV-2 ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8

Satan/Satanism ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7

satellites in low-orbit ref1

Saudi Arabia ref1

Save Me Syndrome ref1

scapegoating ref1

Schwab, Klaus ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9, ref10, ref11, ref12

science, manipulation of ref1

self-identity ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4

self-respect, attacks on ref1

September 11, 2001, terrorist attacks on United States ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4

77th Brigade of UK military ref1, ref2, ref3

Silicon Valley/tech giants ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6 *see also* **Facebook**

Israel ref1
Sabbatians ref1
technocracy ref1
Wetiko factor ref1
Wokeness ref1
simulation hypothesis ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
Smart Grid ref1, ref2, ref3
artificial intelligence (AI) ref1
China ref1, ref2
control centres ref1
the Field ref1
Great Reset ref1
Human 2.0 ref1, ref2
Israel ref1, ref2
vaccines ref1
Wetiko factor ref1
social disapproval ref1
social distancing *and* **isolation** ref1, ref2, ref3
abusive relationships ref1, ref2
children ref1
flats and apartments ref1
heart issues ref1
hugs ref1
Internet ref1
masks ref1
media ref1
older people ref1, ref2
one-metre (three feet) rule ref1
rewiring the mind ref1
simulation, universe as a ref1
SPI-B ref1
substance abuse ref1

suicide and self-harm ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
technology ref1
torture, as ref1, ref2
two-metre (six feet) rule ref1
women ref1
social justice ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
social media *see also* **Facebook bans on alternative views** ref1
censorship ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6
children ref1
emotion ref1
perception ref1
private messages ref1
Twitter ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7
Wetiko factor ref1
YouTube ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
Soros, George ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6
Spain ref1
SPI-B (Scientific Pandemic Insights Group on Behaviours) ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
spider and the web ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Starmer, Keir ref1
Statute Law ref1
Steiner, Rudolf ref1, ref2, ref3
Stockholm syndrome ref1
streptomycin ref1
suicide and self-harm ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
Sumer ref1, ref2
Sunstein, Cass ref1, ref2, ref3
swine flu (H1N1) ref1, ref2, ref3
synchronicity ref1
synthetic biology ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
synthetic meat ref1, ref2

T

technology *see also* **artificial intelligence (AI); Internet;**
social media addiction ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Archons ref1, ref2
the cloud ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7
cyber-operations ref1
cyberwarfare ref1
radiation ref1, ref2
social distancing and isolation ref1
technocracy ref1
Tedros Adhanom Ghebreyesus ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9, ref10, ref11, ref12, ref13
telepathy ref1
Tenpenny, Sherri ref1
Tesla, Nikola ref1
testosterone levels, decrease in ref1
testing for Covid-19 ref1, ref2
anal swab tests ref1
cancer ref1
China ref1, ref2, ref3
Corman-Drosten test ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
death certificates ref1, ref2
fraudulent testing ref1
genetic material, amplification of ref1
Lateral Flow Device (LFD) ref1
PCR tests ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8
vaccines ref1, ref2, ref3
Thunberg, Greta ref1, ref2, ref3
Totalitarian Tiptoe ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
transgender persons
activism ref1
artificial wombs ref1

censorship ref1
child abuse ref1, ref2
Human 2.0 ref1, ref2, ref3
Wokeness ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
women, deletion of rights and status of ref1, ref2
young persons ref1
travel restrictions ref1
Trudeau, Justin ref1, ref2, ref3
Trump, Donald ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9, ref10, ref11
Twitter **ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7**

U

UKColumn ref1, ref2
United Nations (UN) ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5 *see also* **Agenda 21/Agenda 2030 (UN)**
United States ref1, ref2
American Revolution ref1
borders ref1, ref2
Capitol Hill riot ref1, ref2
children ref1
China ref1, ref2
CIA ref1, ref2
Daily Pass tracking system ref1
demographics by immigration, changes in ref1
Democrats ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7
election fraud ref1
far-right domestic terrorists, pushbackers as ref1
Federal Reserve ref1
flu/respiratory diseases statistics ref1
Global Cult ref1, ref2
hand sanitisers, FDA warnings on ref1

immigration, effects of illegal ref1
impeachment ref1
Israel ref1, ref2
Judaism ref1, ref2, ref3
lockdown ref1
masks ref1
mass media ref1, ref2
nursing homes ref1
Pentagon ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
police ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
pushbackers ref1
Republicans ref1, ref2
borders ref1, ref2
Democrats ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
Russia, inquiry into collusion with ref1
Sabbatians ref1, ref2, ref3
September 11, 2001, terrorist attacks ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
UFO sightings, release of information on ref1
vaccines ref1
white supremacy ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Woke Democrats ref1, ref2

V

vaccines ref1, ref2, ref3
adverse reactions ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
Africa ref1
anaphylactic shock ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
animals ref1, ref2
anti-vax movement ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
AstraZeneca/Oxford ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
autoimmune diseases, rise in ref1, ref2
Big Pharma ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8

bioweapon, as real ref1, ref2
black and ethnic minority communities ref1
blood clots ref1, ref2
Brain Computer Interface (BCI) ref1
care homes, deaths in ref1
censorship ref1, ref2, ref3
chief medical officers and scientific advisers, financial interests of ref1, ref2
children ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9, ref10
China ref1, ref2
clinical trials ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6
compensation ref1
compulsory vaccinations ref1, ref2, ref3
computer programs ref1
consciousness ref1
cover-ups ref1
creation before Covid ref1
cytokine storm ref1
deaths and illnesses caused by vaccines ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
definition ref1
developing countries ref1
digital tattoos ref1
DNA-manipulation ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9, ref10
emergency approval ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
female infertility ref1
funding ref1
genetic suicide ref1
Global Cult ref1
heart chakras ref1
hesitancy ref1
Human 2.0 ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
immunity from prosecution ref1, ref2, ref3

implantable technology ref1
Israel ref1
Johnson & Johnson ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
lockdowns ref1
long-term effects ref1
mainstream media ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
masks ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (MHRA) ref1, ref2
messaging ref1
Moderna ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6
mRNA vaccines ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9
nanotechnology ref1, ref2
NHS ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
older people ref1, ref2
operating system ref1
passports ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Pfizer/BioNTech ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7
polyethylene glycol ref1
pregnant women ref1
psychopathic personality ref1
races, targeting different ref1
reverse transcription ref1
Smart Grid ref1
social distancing ref1
social media ref1
sterility ref1
synthetic material, introduction of ref1
tests ref1, ref2, ref3
travel restrictions ref1
variants ref1, ref2
viruses, existence of ref1
whistle-blowing ref1

WHO ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Wokeness ref1
working, vaccine as ref1
young people ref1
Vallance, Patrick ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9
variants ref1, ref2, ref3
vegans ref1
ventilators ref1, ref2
virology ref1, ref2
virtual reality ref1, ref2, ref3
viruses, existence of ref1
visual reality ref1, ref2
vitamin D ref1, ref2
von Braun, Wernher ref1, ref2

W

war-zone hospital myths ref1
waveforms ref1, ref2
wealth ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9 ref10, ref11
wet market conspiracy ref1
Wetiko factor ref1
alcoholism and drug addiction ref1
anti-human, why Global Cult is ref1
Archons ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
artificial intelligence (AI) ref1
Big Pharma ref1, ref2
children ref1
China ref1
consciousness ref1, ref2
education ref1
Facebook ref1

fear ref1, ref2
frequency ref1, ref2
Gates ref1, ref2
Global Cult ref1, ref2
heart ref1, ref2
lockdowns ref1
masks ref1
Native American concept ref1
psychopathic personality ref1, ref2
reframing/retraining programmes ref1
religion ref1
Silicon Valley ref1
Smart Grid ref1
smartphone addiction ref1, ref2
social media ref1
war ref1, ref2
WHO ref1
Wokeness ref1, ref2, ref3
Yaldabaoth ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4

whistle-blowing ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7

white privilege ref1, ref2

white supremacy ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5

Whitty, Christopher ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9, ref10

'who benefits' ref1

Wi-Fi ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4

Wikipedia ref1, ref2

Wojcicki, Susan ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7

Wokeness
Antifa ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
anti-Semitism ref1
billionaire social justice warriors ref1, ref2, ref3

Capitol Hill riot ref1, ref2
censorship ref1
Christianity ref1
climate change hoax ref1, ref2
culture ref1
education, control of ref1
emotion ref1
facts ref1
fascism ref1, ref2, ref3
Global Cult ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
group-think ref1
immigration ref1
indigenous people, solidarity with ref1
inversion ref1, ref2, ref3
left, hijacking the ref1, ref2
Marxism ref1, ref2, ref3
mind control ref1
New Woke ref1
Old Woke ref1
Oneness ref1
perceptual programming ref1
Phantom Self ref1
police ref1
defunding the ref1
reframing ref1
public institutions ref1
Pushbackers ref1, ref2, ref3
racism ref1, ref2, ref3
reframing ref1, ref2
religion, as ref1
Sabbatians ref1, ref2, ref3
Silicon Valley ref1
social justice ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4

transgender ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
United States ref1, ref2
vaccines ref1
Wetiko factor ref1, ref2, ref3
young people ref1, ref2, ref3
women, deletion of rights and status of ref1, ref2
World Economic Forum (WEF) ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9
World Health Organization (WHO) ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9
AIDs/HIV ref1
amplification cycles ref1
Big Pharma ref1, ref2, ref3
cooperation in health emergencies ref1
creation ref1, ref2
fatality rate ref1
funding ref1, ref2, ref3
Gates ref1
Internet ref1
lockdown ref1
vaccines ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
Wetiko factor ref1
world number 1 (masses) ref1, ref2
world number 2 ref1
Wuhan ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7 ref8

Y

Yaldabaoth ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6
Yeadon, Michael ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4
young people *see also* **children** addiction to technology ref1
Human 2.0 ref1
vaccines ref1, ref2

Wokeness ref1, ref2, ref3
YouTube ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5
WHO 548

Z

Zaks, Tal ref1
Zionism ref1, ref2, ref3
Zuckerberg, Mark ref1, ref2, ref3, ref4, ref5, ref6, ref7, ref8, ref9, ref10, ref11, ref12
Zulus ref1

ICKONIC
THE ALTERNATIVE

Ickonic is something that has been a dream of mine for the last 5 years, growing up around alternative information I have always had a natural interest in what is going on in the World and what could I do to make it better.
Across the range of subjects and positions of influence occupied mainly by people who don't strive to make things better it's the Media that I have always found the most frustrating and fascinating. Mainly because if the Media did their Jobs properly then so much of the negative things happening in the World simply would not be able to happen, because they would be exposed within a heartbeat.
Free Press and the Opportunities that the internet could have given would mean that the Media are able to expose things like never before and hold people to account for their actions. As we all know there are 'Untouchables' that walk among us, people the Media simply won't touch, expose or investigate and that leads to the dark underworlds that infest the establishment the World over.
Well I say enough, it's time for something different, a different kind of Media, where no one is off limits from exposing and investigating. All we're interested in at Ickonic is the truth of what is really going on in the World on whichever subject we're covering.
We hope you enjoy what we have created and take something away from the platform, we aim to deliver information that's informative and most importantly self-empowering, you're not a little person, you're part of something much bigger than that and its time we as a collective race began to understand that and look to the future as ours to take.

It's time...

Jaymie Icke - Founder Ickonic Alternative Media.

SIGN UP NOW AT ICKONIC.COM

DAVID ICKE

THE ANSWER

We live in extraordinary times with billions bewildered and seeking answers for what is happening. David Icke, the man who has been proved right again and again, has spent 30 years uncovering the truth behind world affairs and in a stream of previous books he predicted current events.

The Answer will change your every perception of life and the world and set you free of the illusions that control human society. There is nothing more vital for our collective freedom than humanity becoming aware of what is in this book.

Available now at davidicke.com.

THE TRIGGER

THE LIE THAT CHANGED THE WORLD – WHO REALLY DID IT AND WHY

DAVID ICKE

EVERYTHING YOU NEED TO KNOW

BUT HAVE NEVER BEEN TOLD

DAVID ICKE

DAVIDICKE.COM

DAVID ICKE STORE

LATEST NEWS ARTICLES

DAVID ICKE VIDEOS

WEEKLY DOT-CONNECTOR PODCASTS

LIVE EVENTS

WWW.DAVIDICKE.COM

THE LIFE STORY OF DAVID ICKE

RENEGADE

THE FEATURE LENGTH FILM

/ˈren·ɪˌɡeɪd/

noun

A person who behaves in a rebelliously unconventional manner.

AVAILABLE NOW AT DAVIDICKE.COM

2 NEW BOOKS
BY NEIL HAGUE
ORION'S DOOR
SYMBOLS OF CONSCIOUSNESS & BLUEPRINTS OF CONTROL
- THE STORY OF ORION'S INFLUENCE OVER HUMANITY
CUTTING EDGE VISIONARY ART
& UNIQUE ILLUSTRATED BOOKS
THE DR. COVID UNIVERSE
ADVENTURES IN CLOWNLAND
NEIL HAGUE
FOR
BOOKS, PRINTS & T-SHIRTS
VISIT:
NEILHAGUEBOOKS.COM
OR NEILHAGUE.COM

Before you go ...

For more detail, background and evidence about the subjects in *Perceptions of a Renegade Mind* – and so much more – see my others books including *And The Truth Shall Set You Free; The Biggest Secret; Children of the Matrix; The David Icke Guide to the Global Conspiracy; Tales from the Time Loop; The Perception Deception; Remember Who You Are; Human Race Get Off Your Knees; Phantom Self; Everything You Need To Know But Have Never Been Told, The Trigger and The Answer*.

You can subscribe to the fantastic new Ickonic media platform where there are many hundreds of hours of cutting-edge information in videos, documentaries and series across a whole range of subjects which are added to every week. This includes my 90 minute breakdown of the week's news every Friday to explain *why* events are happening and to what end.